

SLAVISTIC PRINTINGS AND REPRINTINGS

edited by

C. H. VAN SCHOONEVELD

Indiana University

304

TREVOR G. FENNELL
HENRY GELSEN

A GRAMMAR OF
MODERN LATVIAN

VOLUME I

MOUTON PUBLISHERS
THE HAGUE · PARIS · NEW YORK

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

Preface	XIII
Acknowledgements	XV
Abbreviations	XVII
Introduction	XIX
Lesson 1. The present tense of <i>būt</i> ; nominative singular and plural of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	1
Lesson 2. Singular declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	4
Lesson 3. Plural declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	8
Lesson 4. Dative of possession	11
Lesson 5. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i> : Present tense	15
Lesson 6. Dative case of the personal pronouns	18
Lesson 7. Negation of verbs, excluding possessive expressions	22
Lesson 8. Negation of possessive expressions	26
Lesson 9. Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	30
Lesson 10. Imperfect tense of mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	33
Lesson 11. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-īt</i> : present and imperfect; imperfect tense of <i>būt</i>	38
Lesson 12. Conjugation of the irregular verbs <i>iet</i> and <i>dot</i>	42
Lesson 13. Possessive adjectives	46
Lesson 14. The indefinite declension of adjectives	51
Lesson 15. Full declension of the personal pronouns	56
Lesson 16. The preposition <i>pie</i>	61
Lesson 17. Nouns and adjectives ending in <i>-š</i>	65
Lesson 18. Conjugation of <i>zināt</i> , <i>dziedāt</i> and <i>raudāt</i>	70
Lesson 19. More prepositions with the genitive	75
Lesson 20. Long conjugation verbs with infinitive in <i>-ot</i>	81
Lesson 21. Long conjugation verbs in <i>-āt</i>	87
Lesson 22. Revision and classification of verbs. Verbs with the indefinite subject	92
Lesson 23. Revision of adverbs	98
Lesson 24. Declension of feminine nouns ending in <i>-e</i>	104
Lesson 25. Revision of adjectives	108
Lesson 26. The definite declension of adjectives, masculine singular ..	113
Lesson 27. The definite declension of adjectives, feminine singular ...	118
Lesson 28. Revision of the definite declension of adjectives-singular ..	123

ISBN 90 279 7936 7

Lesson 29.	Definite declension of adjectives, masculine plural	127
Lesson 30.	Definite declension of adjectives, feminine plural	132
Lesson 31.	Further uses of the definite adjective	136
Lesson 32.	Verbs with palatalized consonant in the present tense. Some third person verbs. The prepositions <i>uz</i> and <i>no</i>	142
Lesson 33.	Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs. Three prepositions with the accusative	147
Lesson 34.	The Future tense	153
Lesson 35.	The numerals 1 to 10	159
Lesson 36.	Imperatives	166
Lesson 37.	Numerals from 11 to 20	172
Lesson 38.	The Accusative of duration of time	177
Lesson 39.	Formation of adverbs	182
Lesson 40.	The Conditional	188
Lesson 41.	The prepositions <i>līdz</i> and <i>uz</i>	192
Lesson 42.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	197
Lesson 43.	The relative pronoun and interrogative adjective <i>kurš</i>	202
Lesson 44.	Days of the week; time of day	209
Lesson 45.	Verbs with depalatalized present stems	214
Lesson 46.	Further negations with <i>ne-</i>	221
Lesson 47.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	225
Lesson 48.	Numerals from 20 to 59	230
Lesson 49.	Comparative degree of adjectives	235
Lesson 50.	Comparison structures	240
Lesson 51.	Some examples of compound verbs: Introduction to the notion of aspect	247
Lesson 52.	Superlative degree of the adjective	253
Lesson 53.	Feminine form of nouns in <i>-ājs</i> and <i>-nieks</i>	258
Lesson 54.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-īt</i> and <i>-ūt</i>	262
Lesson 55.	The English infinitive	266
Lesson 56.	Numerals from 60 to 100	271
Lesson 57.	The English infinitive used adjectivally	275
Lesson 58.	Conjugation of verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	279
Lesson 59.	Verb summary	284
Lesson 60.	Declension of <i>kas</i>	291
Lesson 61.	Postpositions	297
Lesson 62.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i>	302
Lesson 63.	Numerals from 100 to 1000	307
Lesson 64.	Further remarks on numerals: Conflicting case requirements	311
Lesson 65.	Declension and use of <i>tas</i>	317
Lesson 66.	Some invariable adjectives	322

Lesson 67.	<i>Neviens</i> and <i>kāds</i> as adjectives	327
Lesson 68.	The declension of certain masculine nouns in <i>-ens</i>	333
Lesson 69.	Accusative of extent of distance	337
Lesson 70.	Declension of <i>suns</i> 'dog'	343
Lesson 71.	The adjective and pronoun <i>abi</i> 'both'	347
Lesson 72.	Declension and use of <i>šis</i> 'this'	352
Lesson 73.	Ordinal numbers from 1st to 10th	357
Lesson 74.	Negations with <i>ne... ne</i> and <i>vairs</i>	361
Lesson 75.	Ordinal numbers from 11th to 20th	366
Lesson 76.	Latvian names and forms of address	371
Lesson 77.	Ordinal numbers from 21st to 100th	377
Lesson 78.	Ordinal numbers from 101st to 1000th	381
Lesson 79.	Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-s</i> ; the masculine noun <i>laudis</i>	385
Lesson 80.	Comparative degree of adverbs	390
Lesson 81.	Superlative degree of adverbs	395
Lesson 82.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	400
Lesson 83.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-e</i>	406
Lesson 84.	The genitive plural: irregular forms of feminine nouns in <i>-e</i> and <i>-s</i>	412
Lesson 85.	Summary of noun declensions	417
Lesson 86.	Time by the clock	422
Lesson 87.	Debitive mood: present tense	428
Lesson 88.	Debitive mood: imperfect tense	435
Lesson 89.	Debitive mood: future tense	440
Lesson 90.	Debitive mood: conditional	445

VOLUME II

Lesson 91.	Cardinal and ordinal numbers above 1000	449
Lesson 92.	Months and dates	454
Lesson 93.	The noun <i>reize</i> and its compounds	460
Lesson 94.	Declension and use of <i>pats</i>	464
Lesson 95.	Verbs of perception followed by a participle	470
Lesson 96.	Adverbs in <i>-up</i>	475
Lesson 97.	Masculine nouns in <i>-a</i> and <i>-e</i>	479
Lesson 98.	The preposition <i>pa</i> used distributively	483
Lesson 99.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i> and <i>-ns</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-s</i>	487

Lesson 100.	The vocative case	492
Lesson 101.	The past participle active; the present perfect tense	497
Lesson 102.	The past perfect tense	503
Lesson 103.	The future perfect tense	508
Lesson 104.	The conditional perfect	512
Lesson 105.	Adverbs in <i>-am</i> and <i>-ām</i>	516
Lesson 106.	More invariable adjectives	519
Lesson 107.	The verb <i>sargāt</i>	523
Lesson 108.	Verb summary	527
Lesson 109.	Open <i>ɸ</i> and closed <i>ɸ</i>	535
Lesson 110.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses	542
Lesson 111.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses. Verbs containing <i>e</i> in the stem	548
Lesson 112.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: compound tenses	552
Lesson 113.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>nākt</i>	556
Lesson 114.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>lēkt</i>	561
Lesson 115.	Agreement of adjectives with the debitive of <i>būt</i>	565
Lesson 116.	More adverbs of time	569
Lesson 117.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type	572
Lesson 118.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type, stems in <i>-st</i> , <i>-zt</i> ; alternation of <i>e</i>	577
Lesson 119.	The short conjugation: future tense of verbs in <i>-st</i> and <i>-zt</i>	582
Lesson 120.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: short vowel in the present tense	586
Lesson 121.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: long vowel in the imperfect only	591
Lesson 122.	Adjectives in <i>-ējs</i>	595
Lesson 123.	Adjectives modified by 'too'	600
Lesson 124.	The short conjugation: unchanged type	605
Lesson 125.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the imperfect	610
Lesson 126.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the present	616
Lesson 127.	The short conjugation: unchanged type, long vowel in the present (irregular)	621
Lesson 128.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: short vowel in the present	625
Lesson 129.	Adverbial nouns of place	629
Lesson 130.	<i>Kaut</i>	633

Lesson 131.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced)	637
Lesson 132.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced): long vowel in the present	641
Lesson 133.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced)	645
Lesson 134.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced): long vowel in the present	648
Lesson 135.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced and unvoiced): irregular long vowel in the present	652
Lesson 136.	Imperfective and perfective verbs	656
Lesson 137.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	660
Lesson 138.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	665
Lesson 139.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type	669
Lesson 140.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type, with dental (voiced and unvoiced)	674
Lesson 141.	<i>Šāds</i> and <i>tāds</i> : adjectives and pronouns	679
Lesson 142.	Irregular masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	682
Lesson 143.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type	686
Lesson 144.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, long vowel in the present	690
Lesson 145.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, with unvoiced dental, with and without long vowel in the present	694
Lesson 146.	Questions with <i>lai</i>	697
Lesson 147.	Avoidance of the possessive adjective	701
Lesson 148.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type	706
Lesson 149.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, short vowel in present and imperfect	710
Lesson 150.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-iet</i>	714
Lesson 151.	Omission of the verb <i>ir</i>	718
Lesson 152.	Omission of <i>ar</i>	722
Lesson 153.	The short conjugation: nasal type	726
Lesson 154.	The short conjugation: nasal type, with alternation <i>i-e-i</i>	730
Lesson 155.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i>	733
Lesson 156.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i> with an imperative	739
Lesson 157.	The short conjugation: nasal type (<i>-iet</i>) with anomalous imperfect	743
Lesson 158.	Countries, inhabitants and languages	747
Lesson 159.	Adjectives with the prefix <i>pa-</i>	752
Lesson 160.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, in <i>-ūt</i>	754
Lesson 161.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, infinitives in <i>-aut</i>	758
Lesson 162.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>aut</i>	762
Lesson 163.	The present participle active in <i>-ošs</i>	765

Lesson 164.	The present participle active in <i>-ot</i>	772
Lesson 165.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (unvoiced) type	777
Lesson 166.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (voiced) type	781
Lesson 167.	The dative absolute	787
Lesson 168.	The debitive of <i>būt</i> with a following noun	792
Lesson 169.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type	797
Lesson 170.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, alternation of <i>e</i>	802
Lesson 171.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-st</i>	806
Lesson 172.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, long vowel in the present	811
Lesson 173.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, irregular long vowel in the present	815
Lesson 174.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, some anomalous spellings	820
Lesson 175.	Alternative formation of the comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs	824
Lesson 176.	Prepositions and nouns cognate with postpositions and adverbs	828
Lesson 177.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (unvoiced) mixed type	833
Lesson 178.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (voiced) mixed type	837
Lesson 179.	The present participle passive	841
Lesson 180.	The present participle passive (cont.)	847
Lesson 181.	The present participle passive (cont.)	851
Lesson 182.	The present participle passive (cont.)	856
Lesson 183.	The present participle passive (cont.)	860
Lesson 184.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-j-</i>	865
Lesson 185.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-n-</i>	869
Lesson 186.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-v-</i>	873
Lesson 187.	The past participle passive	877
Lesson 188.	The passive voice	883
Lesson 189.	Avoidance of the passive voice	890
Lesson 190.	The short conjugation: the verbs <i>brist</i> and <i>līst</i>	895
Lesson 191.	The anomalous verb <i>virt</i>	899
Lesson 192.	Declension of <i>mēness</i> and <i>biedrs</i>	903
Lesson 193.	Summary of the short conjugation	906
Lesson 194.	The possessive pronouns	915

VOLUME III

Lesson 195.	Reflexive verbs: present tense	919
Lesson 196.	Reflexive verbs: imperfect tense	926
Lesson 197.	Reflexive verbs: future tense	930
Lesson 198.	Reflexive verbs: conditional	934
Lesson 199.	Reflexive verbs: imperatives	938
Lesson 200.	Reflexive verbs: past participle and perfect tenses	943
Lesson 201.	Reflexive verbs: the debitive mood	948
Lesson 202.	The past participle (active and reflexive) in participial phrases	952
Lesson 203.	The past participle (active and reflexive) used adjectivally	957
Lesson 204.	Reflexive verbs: other participial forms	962
Lesson 205.	Reflexive verbs: revision	967
Lesson 206.	Diminutive adjectives and adverbs	971
Lesson 207.	Indeclinable nouns	976
Lesson 208.	Partitive genitive and accusative of exclamation	980
Lesson 209.	Further remarks on the syntax of participles	986
Lesson 210.	Future imperatives	991
Lesson 211.	The verbal prefix <i>aiz-</i>	995
Lesson 212.	The verbal prefix <i>ap-</i>	1000
Lesson 213.	The verbal prefix <i>at-</i>	1005
Lesson 214.	The verbal prefix <i>ie-</i>	1010
Lesson 215.	The verbal prefix <i>iz-</i>	1015
Lesson 216.	The verbal prefix <i>no-</i>	1021
Lesson 217.	The verbal prefix <i>pa-</i>	1027
Lesson 218.	The verbal prefix <i>pār-</i>	1031
Lesson 219.	The verbal prefix <i>pie-</i>	1037
Lesson 220.	The verbal prefix <i>sa-</i>	1043
Lesson 221.	The verbal prefix <i>uz-</i>	1049
Lesson 222.	Interjections	1054
Lesson 223.	Verbal nouns in <i>-šana</i>	1060
Lesson 224.	Reflexive verbal nouns in <i>-šanās</i>	1065
Lesson 225.	Other reflexive nouns	1070
Lesson 226.	Further numerals	1076
Lesson 227.	Conjunctive mood: present tense	1084
Lesson 228.	Conjunctive mood: future tense	1090
Lesson 229.	Conjunctive mood: perfect tenses	1095
Lesson 230.	Conjunctive mood: debitive forms	1100
Lesson 231.	Conjunctive passive	1105
Lesson 232.	The adjectival suffix <i>-ains</i>	1110

Lesson 233.	The adjectival suffix <i>-isks</i>	1115
Lesson 234.	The adjectival suffix <i>-īgs</i>	1119
Lesson 235.	The noun suffix <i>-ums</i>	1124
Lesson 236.	The noun suffix <i>-iens</i>	1129
Lesson 237.	The noun suffix <i>-nieks</i> (fem. <i>-niece</i>)	1134
Lesson 238.	The noun suffix <i>-ība</i>	1140
Lesson 239.	The noun suffixes <i>-eklis</i> and <i>-ēklis</i>	1146
Lesson 240.	The noun suffixes <i>-ava</i> and <i>-uve</i>	1153
Lesson 241.	Factitive verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	1158
Lesson 242.	Further numerals	1164
Lesson 243.	Cognate adverbs	1170
Lesson 244.	The impersonal passive	1176
Latvian-English Vocabulary	1182	
English-Latvian Vocabulary	1273	
Select Bibliography	1361	
Grammatical Index	1363	
Index of Authors and Reading Passages	1369	

PREFACE

This work stems from a long period of collaboration between the two authors, during which time a great many questions, particularly in morphology and syntax, have necessarily occupied our attention. For some of these, we believe we have found satisfactory solutions; for others it is manifest that much more investigation needs to be undertaken before an adequate formulation can be reached. This is particularly true in phonology and lexicon.

Nonetheless, we present the work in its present form, fully conscious that it is not, and could never be, exhaustive. That it can claim to be more detailed and comprehensive than its predecessors in English, French, Russian and German should not be taken to mean that it can be regarded in any sense as definitive, but rather as an anticipatory indication of the measure in which any successors might reasonably hope to be more detailed and comprehensive than we have been able to be.

When the present work was first envisaged, only one book, and that long since out of print, existed in English; part of the original motivation to produce this volume was, in fact, the lack of works to which the foreign student, interested in a synchronic rather than a diachronic approach, could turn for guidance. In part, then, this book is an attempt to produce the work to which the authors, when working together as teacher and student, wished many times to be able to refer.

On the other hand, necessity is the mother of invention, and the present work contains much that stems from attempts to find our own solutions to the difficulties that beset us; this state of affairs is responsible for many of the innovations which the initiated reader will find in the following pages, and which, we hope, being born of difficulties encountered in practical study of the language, may prove relevant to the problems faced by others, be they laymen or trained linguists.

While much of the material is new, or presented in a non-traditional way, much remains that conforms to the traditional analyses and presentation, and for this we are, of course, indebted to our predecessors, Latvian and foreign.

We have tried throughout to harmonize the dual aims of the work: to provide a synchronic description of the modern language, providing the linguist with the kind of detailed material he is likely to want; and to offer a carefully programmed and graded course of instruction, which, with appropriate deletions

and occasional shifts of emphasis suggested by a competent teacher, the layman may find neither excessively abstruse nor insufficiently practical.

How far these aims may have been achieved will, of course, be determined by the experience of those for whom the book is written. We have, however, endeavoured at every stage to subject the material to practical tests, by using it extensively in classes, both for laymen and linguists; much valuable information was gained in this way, and a great many modifications have been made at the suggestion of students involved in experimental classes.

This work, then, attempts to fill a serious gap in the resources available to English-speaking students and scholars interested in the Latvian language, and has been prepared with both theoretical and practical considerations borne in mind; that it can do so only in part is the inevitable lot of any attempt to give an essentially limited description of the vast (and changing) phenomenon which is any natural language. We therefore offer this work in the sincere hope that, whatever new ground it may break, it may not be too long before other works will come to improve upon, add to, and perhaps supersede it.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors wish to acknowledge the generous assistance of many friends and associates. Mrs. A. Eichmane, Mrs. L. Felsberga-Bērziņa, Mr. K. Freimanis, Mrs. L. Kukura, Mrs. I. Reinfeldē, Miss B. Metuzāle, Mrs. A. Tamuža, Mrs. I. Thomas, Mrs. L. Ziemele and Mr. E. Ziemelis have all given a great deal of time and thought to the innumerable questions that we asked of them. We have, perhaps unwisely, not always followed their advice, and the responsibility for any shortcomings of the work rests entirely with the authors.

We also express our gratitude to the many students on whom the material of this book was tried out. Their comments have been of great value to us.

For permission to include reading passages and literary material, we **here** express our thanks to V. Strēlerte-Johansone, A. Niedra, J. Miesnieks, A. Eglītis, K. Ābele, and for permission to include works by Guntis Zariņš we are indebted to the magazine *Jaunā Gaita*.

For material assistance, we hereby acknowledge the generous support of the Australian Research Grants Committee, the Flinders University Research Committee, Mr. K. Līdums, the Daugavas Vanagi Organization in South Australia, the Australian Latvian Federation, the American Latvian Federation, the Free World Latvian Federation and through it other Latvian national organizations.

Many other people have contributed much; the list is prohibitively long. We are, nonetheless, very grateful for their assistance, and take this opportunity of thanking them collectively.

Adelaide
September, 1969

T. G. F. and H. G.

ABBREVIATIONS

acc.	accusative
adj.	adjective
adv., advb.	adverb
anat.	anatomical
bot.	botanical
cog.	cognate
colloq.	colloquial
comp.	comparative
conj.	conjugate(d); conjugation; conjunction
dat.	dative
dec.	declined, declension
def.	definite
dem.	demonstrative
dim.	diminutive
eccl.	ecclesiastical
emph.	emphatic
Eng.	English
f., fem.	feminine
gen.	genitive
geog.	geographical
gram.	grammatical
impers.	impersonal
indec.	indeclinable
indef.	indefinite
inf.	infinitive
int.	interrogative
interj.	interjection
intr., intrans.	intransitive
inv., invar.	invariable
irreg.	irregular
lit.	literally
loc.	locative
m., masc.	masculine

math.	mathematical
metaph.	metaphorical
mil.	military
mus.	musical
neg.	negative
nom.	nominative
num.	numerical
occ.	occasionally
part.	participle; particle
pass.	passive
pej.	pejorative
pl.	plural
poss.	possessive
postp.	postposition
prep.	preposition
pres.	present
prob.	probably
pron.	pronoun
refl.	reflexive
rel.	relative
sing.	singular
T. dz.	Tautas dziesma: folk-song
tr., trans.	transitive
voc.	vocative
zool.	zoological

INTRODUCTION

The number of works on modern Latvian grammar available to English-speaking students is very small. Even if one were to add to this the works which have appeared in French, German and Russian, the total is still far from large. If one further considers only those to have appeared since 1945, since earlier works are now largely out of date as a result of revisions to the orthography and quite considerable changes in lexicon, then to the best of our knowledge there are in existence only three grammars for the foreign student, one each in English, Russian and German.¹ There are, of course, works in Latvian, but these, by definition, can be of little help to the English-speaking student.

On the historical side, much work has been done by Latvian and foreign investigators, but the relevance of this to synchronic description is limited. The present work was envisaged in an attempt to fill the need for a comprehensive synchronic description, which as far as possible would leave aside questions of historical evolution.

We believe that such a description can serve a dual purpose, and the aim of this work is thus two-fold. We are concerned with the description *per se*, which we trust will be of interest not only to linguists in the Baltic and Slavic fields, but also to a wider spectrum of investigators within the Indo-European framework, for which the significance of the Baltic languages needs no exposition here. On the other hand, such a description is of obvious practical significance to those who merely wish to learn the language or to elucidate problems in a language they already possess.

We could see no valid reasons for separating these functions, and have endeavoured to make our description at once of interest to the linguist and appropriate to the requirements of an instruction manual and reference grammar. While in some cases conflicts naturally arise between these aims, particularly regarding the inclusion of more esoteric material, we have regularly resolved these by giving preference to the need for comprehensiveness. Under the guidance of a competent teacher appropriate deletions and shifts of emphasis can be easily effected for those whose purposes are practical rather than theoretical.

Nonetheless it is clearly impossible to be exhaustive in any treatment of language, and we have been forced to give less coverage to some areas than to others. We have, for example, limited our treatment of phonetics to the bare minimum compatible with serious exposition, when this topic could rightly

claim a complete volume in its own right. This curtailment was made because we felt morphology and syntax to be of more immediate relevance to our aims, and because the scientific study of Latvian phonetics is, in many respects, insufficiently advanced for us to be able to offer any treatment of it which would stand serious comparison with the work already carried out for other languages. It is to be hoped that a comprehensive work in this area will not be long in appearing.²

On the other hand, we have endeavoured to be comprehensive in syntax, and particularly so in morphology.

Very little emphasis has been placed on punctuation. The status of punctuation within the field of grammar can be seriously questioned, since it exists only in the written form of the language, but not in the spoken form. We attempt to give some elementary guidance, without any attempt at exhaustiveness.

We have endeavoured throughout to present the material in a rational progression. Thus in the early stages the syntax is kept as simple as possible, until the accumulation of morphological material is sufficient to allow more syntactic variation. Within the morphology, the three verbal conjugations are introduced separately as far as the simple finite forms are concerned; the compound and participial forms are left until their formation rules can be made to apply to a wider base; this has also been done with the reflexive forms. No doubt many other arrangements of the material are possible: we have chosen one which we believe to be not unworkable after extensive testing in practice, but would welcome suggestions as to how it could be improved.

Anyone familiar with traditional grammars of Latvian will undoubtedly find much in the following pages that breaks with previous practice. Some innovations are of a very minor nature, while others are more far-reaching.

Among the smaller departures from traditional practice is the question of terminology. The traditional First, Second and Third conjugations are referred to throughout as the Short, Long and Mixed conjugations, depending on the presence or absence of a syllabic infix in the present and imperfect forms. We have adopted a similar principle of directly descriptive terminology with participial forms and noun declensions.

Among the major departures are matters of orthography, descriptive technique and morphological classification.

In the present state of uncertainty in the spelling of foreign words, we recognize that it will be impossible to please everybody with the standards we have adopted. In an attempt to escape the utterly arbitrary spelling used by many authors we have followed throughout the recommendations of the *Svešvārdu vārdnīca* of Ozoliņš and Endzeliņš.³ On the question of *h* and *ch* we have retained the older conventions, while in the case of *r* and *ŗ* we have adopted the more modern practice of writing only *r*. Those who prefer to drop

ch or retain *ŗ* will not find it difficult to re-instate the form of their choice; we ourselves have by and large retained the symbol *ŗ* in those literary texts where authors have used it. Suppression of this symbol has morphological implications, particularly in the classification of verbs, and phonetic implications in the predictability of the quality of a preceding *e*, but these do not seem to us to be at all serious, and are easily accommodated.

In the matter of descriptive technique, it will be observed that nowhere in the text, with the exception of certain remarks on *ŗ*, have we had recourse to historical explanations. Thus, when we define and categorize, we do so, not on the basis of older forms or earlier patterns, but on the basis of currently observable systematic configurations, which may, of course, not always tally with what would have been arrived at by the use of other criteria.

This standpoint, of course, has implications for our morphological classifications in particular. The obvious case is that of verbs of the Short conjugation. Our assortment of these verbs into categories or types is different from that hitherto employed: we employ twelve basic groups instead of five, based upon contemporary similarities rather than historical development. This in turn necessitates the restatement of rules for the occurrence of the second person singular present and imperative ending *-i*. Not that we challenge the usefulness of the older classification for its own purposes; the two approaches are complementary rather than opposed.

Similarly with the instrumental case, which we do not specifically recognize in this work, having incorporated it into the accusative in the singular, and the dative in the plural. Thus we have preferred the five case analysis (leaving aside here the vocative) used by such predecessors as Prince, Lautenbach, Dravnieks, Blese and Brentano. We prefer their analysis to the traditional six case formulation on the grounds of economy. Certainly nothing appears to be lost by dropping the instrumental, which is of dubious value for a purely synchronic description.

Non-historical rules have been formulated for describing the relationship between definite and indefinite adjectival endings, and between active and reflexive verbal terminations. There is an obvious similarity between the two sets of correspondences when observed on a purely synchronic basis, and whatever the historical reasons may be, it is interesting to observe that while active participles formally distinguish definite from indefinite forms, reflexive participles do not. Reflexiveness and definiteness, phonetically similar, seem also to be morphologically incompatible, the former excluding the latter. The description adopted, i. e., lengthening of open vowels and diphthongization of closed vowels, is not without parallel in other types of morphological derivation. One finds it, for example, in vocalic alternations in some verbal stems, and in certain noun-verb relationships.

This grammar is not intended as normative; thus in places references will

be found to constructions not traditionally regarded as 'correct'. Notes have normally been appended where traditional opinion on a given point is condemnatory, but the authors are not in general concerned to take sides in what is after all a purely arbitrary argument. Some recommendations will however be found: these bear not upon the grammaticality or otherwise of the point at issue, but upon the extent of its acceptance, in spite of the purists, into ordinary speech.

But we would not wish to claim that this grammar was descriptive in the strictest sense of the term. Speech varies so much from one individual to another that what is an accurate description of the speech of one person may be quite inadequate or inaccurate as a description of the speech of another person. A thorough-going descriptive grammar cannot hope to describe more than the speech of one person. For our purposes, this is blatantly insufficient, and one is obliged to try and seek some kind of more generalized statement which will represent some kind of meaningful average of many speakers. But at this point a grammar ceases to be rigorously descriptive, although it does not necessarily become normative. It becomes synthetic, selective, approximate and perhaps artificial, but one must hope that it does not become partisan, exclusive or unreal, to all of which dangers normative grammars are especially prone when viewed from the descriptive standpoint.

By and large we have preferred to try and approximate to a meaningful average rather than follow the primrose path to the normativists' Utopia. Our attempted approximation may fall wide of the mark, and we look forward to receiving criticisms and suggestions which may have the effect of improving that approximation, bearing in mind what we are trying to approximate to.

In the later sections of the work, unabridged texts from Latvian authors are included. In general the grammar of such passages is such as has already been dealt with; where new points occur in the texts, appropriate notes are provided. The texts are as far as possible authentic; it has not always been possible to gain access to original editions, and a few passages from older authors may well reflect the good intentions of an anonymous intervening editor. For our own part, we have taken the texts as we found them, emending only where access to a more authoritative version pointed to editorial changes, and further, where the spelling of foreign words was not in conformity with the recommendations of the *Svešvārdu vārdnīca* of Ozoliņš and Endzelīns.

The authors of a book of this kind necessarily face a great many problems. The lack of extensive, modern Latvian-English dictionaries leads to difficulties in defining accurately the meaning of some culture-specific words; the lack of collocation studies makes it difficult to offer extensive guidance on word combination restrictions; the influence of comparatively recent superstrata, as indeed of earlier superstrata, complicates the choice of a meaningful average, and so on. We are extremely conscious of the gaps we have left unfilled, but

trust that a sympathetic public will treat our shortcomings not as indications that our aims and methods were inappropriate, but rather as focal points for further investigation, in the hope of achieving further elucidation.

In that sense, this book can be only a beginning: if it is necessary to make mistakes in order to realize that a problem exists and to catalyze efforts towards a solution, then whatever the shortcomings and inadequacies of this work, both they and it will have served a purpose.

In general the grammatical exposition and exemplary material have been the concern of Fennell and Gelsen respectively. Nonetheless all sections of the work have been subject to the joint scrutiny of both authors, who must collectively accept responsibility for any shortcomings, inadequacies or errors.

PHONETICS

The Latvian alphabet consists of the following letters:

a, b, c, č, d, e, f, g, ģ, h, i, j, k, ķ, l, ļ, m, n, ņ, o, p, r, (r), s, š, t, u, v, z, ž.

The vowels *a, e, i* and *u* are short: the corresponding long vowels are noted *ā, ē, ī, ū*. These symbols were sometimes accorded alphabetic status, but more recent dictionaries no longer distinguish between *a* and *ā*, etc., for the purposes of alphabetic ordering. The same is true of the digraphs *ch, dz, dž* and *ie*, which are now ordered under their initial element. Thus the older ordering was: *a, ā, b, c, č, ch, d, dz, dž, e, ē, f, g, ģ, h, i, ī, ie, j, k, ķ, l, ļ, m, n, ņ, o, p, r, r, s, š, t, u, ū, v, z, ž.*

In a few works the digraph *uo* is used where, in standard orthography, *o* appears. The digraph *uo*, when used, is listed immediately after *ū*. The student needs to be familiar with these various conventions in order to be able to consult the various dictionaries at his disposal.

The symbol *r* and the digraph *ch* are no longer used in the Latvian SSR, being replaced by *r* and *h* respectively, although they are still current in *émigré* texts, and are to be found in older works. In this work we follow the more recent practice of using *r* throughout, except where *r* occurs in passages quoted

¹ See Bibliography.

² A. Laua's recent *Latviešu literārās valodas fonētika* (156 pp.), while in some respects rather elementary, contains much useful information, and appears to be the fullest treatment available.

³ *Svešvārdu vārdnīca*, sakārtojis Ed. Ozoliņš. Rediģējis J. Endzelīns. Pārlabots un papildināts 3. izdevums. Andreja Ozoliņa Apgāds (Vācijā, 1958).

from Latvian authors. On the other hand, because of the impossibility of establishing distributional criteria for the different pronunciations of the new symbol *h*, we have preferred to retain *ch* in the two or three words used in this book for which the problem arises. However, in view of the tendency for the older pronunciation of *h* to be replaced by the pronunciation previously noted *ch*,¹ it may well be possible at some time in the future to use the symbol *h* unambiguously throughout.

In the following we attempt no more than an approximation to a description of the various Latvian vowels, diphthongs and consonants. More complete and rigorous description would necessarily be very lengthy and excessively technical.² In the majority of cases there is no substitute for the aid of several native speakers, who may serve as informants for the linguist or as models for the student.

In what follows, the term ENGLISH is to be interpreted as STANDARD SOUTHERN ENGLISH.

- A a* as in *mati, aka, pats, adata*.
An open vowel without perceptible rounding or spreading of the lips, like the *a* of English *father*, but shorter.
- Ā ā* as in *māte, ārsts, rāms, strādā*.
As for *A a* above, but lengthened, similar to the *a* of English *father*.
- B b* as in *bende, ubags, stabi, glāb*.
A voiced bi-labial plosive, like the *b* of English *butter*.
- C c* as in *cūka, muca, krāc, trīc*.
A voiceless affricate, like the *ts* of English *pots*.
- Č č* as in *četri, lāči, līči, čupa*.
A voiceless affricate, like the *ch* of English *church*.
- D d* as in *dod, dimd, draud, dārdēt*.
A voiced dental plosive, similar to the *d* of English *doubt*. The Latvian *d*, however, is dental, whereas English *d* is alveolar.
- E e* represents two different phonemes, known as "closed *e*" (*šaurais e*) and "open *e*" (*platais e*).
- (1) "Closed *e*" as in *nest, redzi, pele, debess*.
A closed front vowel with lip spreading, corresponding very approximately to the *e* of English *get*. It is similar to the French *é* in *thé*, although not quite so closed. This phoneme will be denoted *ɛ* in vocabularies.
- (2) "Open *e*" as in *nesam, redzu, vecs, ledus*.
An open front vowel with slight lip spreading, corresponding very approximately to the *a* of English *cat*. It can also be compared with the French *ai* in *laine*, although a little more open. This phoneme will be denoted *ɶ* in vocabularies.

- Ē ē* represents, like *E e*, two different phonemes, "closed *ē*" and "open *ē*".
(1) "Closed *ē*" as in *vēl, mēlēm, vēlēt, brēca*.
As for "closed *e*" above, but lengthened. This phoneme will be denoted *ē* in vocabularies.
- (2) "Open *ē*" as in *lēns, brēcām, aizvērts, jērs*.
As for "open *e*" above, but lengthened. This phoneme will be denoted *ɶ̄* in vocabularies.
- F f* as in *filma, fraka, flauta, profesors*.
A voiceless labio-dental fricative, like the *f* of English *film*. It occurs only in words of foreign origin.
- G g* as in *draugi, iegūt, graut, deg*.
A voiced velar plosive, like the *g* of English *good*. As in English, the point of articulation varies according to the phonetic environment.
- Ģ ģ* as in *ģērbties, soģis, noģist, kuģis*.
A voiced dorsal plosive, with no counterpart in English. The occlusion is effected by the central part of the tongue against the hard palate; *ģ* may therefore be described as a very advanced *g*, further advanced even than the *g* of English *geese*. English speakers are likely to perceive it as an odd kind of *d*.
- H h* as in *Holande, hormons, himna, alkoholišķs*.
Similar to the *h* of English *Holland*. There appears to be a tendency now to replace this sound by that represented by the digraph *ch, q. v.* It occurs only in words of foreign origin.
- I i* as in *ilgi, bildini, pliki, vilcini*.
A closed front vowel with lip spreading, like the *i* of English *tip*.
- Ī ī* as in *īgns, brīdī, trīs, dīķī*.
As for *I i* above, but lengthened, and a little more closed. It is similar to the *ea* of English *tea*, but a little more closed.
- J j* as in *jāja, pilij, deĵo, blēj*.
A voiced palatal open consonant (or semivowel). Similar to the *y* of English *yet*.
- K k* as in *koks, krauklis, pirkt, ak*.
A voiceless velar plosive, like the *k* of English *king*, but lacking the aspiration often associated with the latter. As in English, the point of articulation varies according to the phonetic environment.
- Ķ ķ* as in *ķiploks, kaķis, noķert, ķiķināt*.
A voiceless dorsal plosive, with no counterpart in English. The occlusion is effected by the central part of the tongue against the hard palate; *ķ* may therefore be described as a very advanced *k*, further advanced even than the *k* of English *king*. English speakers are likely to perceive it as an odd kind of *t*.

- L l* as in *liels, laulāt, alkoholisks, vēl*.
A voiced alveolar liquid, like the pre-vocalic *l* of English *link*.
- Ļ ļ* as in *ļaudis, veļa, dēļ, viņi*.
A voiced dorsal liquid, approximating to the *l+i* of English *million*. Cf. the similar sound of Italian *figlio*.
- M m* as in *mēmi, māmiņa, mātēm, ciemiem*.
A voiced bi-labial nasal sonant, like the *m* of English *meat*.
- N n* as in *neviens, nonākt, svin, melns*.
A voiced dental nasal sonant, like the *n* of English *neat*. The Latvian *n*, however, is dental, whereas the English *n* is alveolar.
- Ņ ņ* as in *ņemt, kaimiņi, ņiprs, viņi*.
A voiced dorsal nasal sonant, approximating to the *n+i* of English *onion*. Cf. the similar sound in Italian *ogni*.
- O o* represents three different sounds, although it is dubious whether three separate phonemes can be usefully postulated.
(1) A diphthong, with first element *u* and second element somewhat more open and a little more forward. This second element is subject to some variation, but in general may be likened to the unstressed second *a* of English *drama* or the *u* of English *up*. Exx. *ozols, joko, dot, dodot*.
Attention is drawn to words not having this pronunciation of *o* in notes to the vocabularies.
(2) An open back vowel with slight lip rounding, like the *o* of English *hot*. This sound occurs only in words of foreign origin.
Exx. *marmors, tomāts, Holande, Londona* (first *o* only).
(3) A closed back vowel with lip rounding, and longer than (2) above, with no real counterpart in English. It is similar to the French *o* in *rose*, but a little more open. This sound occurs only in words of foreign origin.
Exx. *Eiropa, Londona* (second *o* only), *hormons* (second *o* only), *oktobris* (second *o* only).
- P p* as in *pipari, paprasīt, piepeši, lejup*.
A voiceless bi-labial plosive, like the *p* of English *part*, but lacking the aspiration often associated with the latter.
- R r* as in *roka, raksturs, rīt, par*.
A voiced alveolar trill, with no counterpart in English. It is similar to the "rolled" *r* commonly used by Scots.
- Ņ r* as (for some speakers only) in *dzeru, karš, jūra, stūri*.
A voiced alveolar trill like *R r* above, but palatalized through the raising of the central part of the tongue to the hard palate. There is no counterpart in English; *r* may be compared with the Russian palatalized *p* as in *peka*. This symbol is no longer used in the official orthography, and the sound is heard mainly in dialects of Western Kurzeme.

- S s* as in *salas, stājusies, sausus, stāstīs*.
A voiceless fricative, like the *s* of English *sin*.
- Š š* as in *šeit, šurp, šaubījušies, šūšu*.
A voiceless fricative, like the *sh* of English *shin*.
- T t* as in *tauta, ticiet, tilts, tīt*.
A voiceless dental plosive, similar to the *t* of English *tin*. The Latvian *t*, however, is dental, whereas the English *t* is alveolar. The Latvian *t* also lacks the aspiration often associated with the English *t*.
- U u* as in *uts, mucu, šuvusi, uguns*.
A closed back vowel with lip rounding, like the *u* of English *push*.
- Ū ū* as in *ūdēns, krūms, brūns, kļūst*.
As for *U u*, but lengthened. Similar to the *oo* of English *fool*, but a little more closed.
- V v* as in *vāvere, vīns, brīvi, virtuve*.
A voiced labio-dental fricative, like the *v* of English *vine*.
- Z z* as in *zēns, kāzas, blāzma, uz*.
A voiced fricative, like the *z* of English *zoo*.
- Ž ž* as in *žēl, naži, griež, rožu*.
A voiced fricative, like the *s* of English *pleasure*, or the *j* of French *jardin*.
In addition, the following digraphs should be noted.
- Ch ch* as in *technisks, almanachs*. Now widely spelt *tehnisks, almanahs*.
A voiceless fricative, palatal after a front vowel (*technisks*), otherwise velar (*almanachs*). There is no counterpart in English, although the palatal variant may be compared with the initial sequence of the English *hue*, and the velar with the *ch* of Scots *loch*. For the palatal, cf. the *ch* of German *ich*, and for the velar, the *ch* of German *Buch*. Like the symbol *h*, by which it is widely replaced, it occurs only in words of foreign origin.
- Dz dz* as in *dziesma, redz*. Equivalent to *d+z*, i.e., a voiced counterpart of *c*. Cf. the *dz* of English *adze*.
- Dž dž* as in *sādža, dadži*. Equivalent to *d+ž*, i.e., a voiced counterpart of *č*. Cf. the *j* of English *jug*.
- Ie ie* as in *pie, liels*. A diphthong, with first element *i*, and a second element somewhat more open and a little more backward. This second element is subject to some variation, but in general may be likened to the unstressed second *a* of English *drama*. The whole diphthong approximates to the diphthongal element at the end of the English *fear, Philadelphia*, although the first element of the Latvian diphthong is a little more closed.
- Uo uo* Used only in specialized works. An alternative representation of *O o* (1) above, *q.v.*

In addition to the above digraphs, the following diphthongal combinations occur:

- ai* as in *daiļai*, *aitai*. Equivalent to *a+i*. Cf. English *fine*.
au as in *tauta*, *maurs*. Equivalent to *a+u*. There is no counterpart in English. Cf. German *Haus*.
ei as in *meita*, *puķei*. Equivalent to "closed *e*" + *i*. There is no counterpart in English, the *ay* of *day* having a somewhat more open first element.
eu as in *pseudo-*, *pneumatisks*.
 Equivalent to "closed *e*" + *u*. There is no counterpart in English. Cf. however the initial diphthong of Italian *Europa*. The spelling *eu* occurs only in words of foreign origin, in which both spelling and pronunciation now widely appear as *ei*: cf. *pseido-*, *pneimatisks*. In words like *sev* and *tev*, the final *v* is sometimes vocalized, thus creating a native *eu* diphthong.
iu as in *šmiukstēt*, *pliukšķēt*. Equivalent to *i+u*. There is no counterpart in English.
oi as in *Oidips*, *boikots*. Equivalent to *o (3)+i*. Similar to the *oy* of English *boy*. It occurs only in words of foreign origin.
ui as in *muiža*, *puika*. Equivalent to *u+i*. There is no counterpart in English. Cf. German *pfui*.

Other combinations of vowels occur, both in native words and foreign borrowings, cf. for native words *paeglis*, *paost*, *neass*, etc., and for foreign words *kakao*, *boa*, *neons*, *radio*, etc., but these are bi-syllabic.

The correlation between sound and symbol in Latvian is quite high. Thus in general Latvian words are spelt as they sound, and vice versa. In spite of obvious difficulties over *e* and *o*, there is a basic regularity in the orthographic system. A number of departures from this relatively systematic correlation, however, need to be noted.

1. ASSIMILATION

(a) in sonority

A voiced consonant, other than a sonant or a liquid, immediately preceding a voiceless consonant is normally devoiced. Thus *b*, *d*, *g*, *z*, *ž* represent respectively (p), (t), (k), (s), (š) in *labs*, *bads*, *zirgs*, *aiztrenkt*, *mežs*.

A voiceless consonant immediately preceding a voiced consonant other than a sonant or a liquid is normally voiced. Thus *c*, *k*, *p*, *s*, *š*, *t* represent respectively (dz), (g), (b), (z), (ž), (d) in *piecgade*, *nākdams*, *kāpdams*, *pusdivos*, *trešdiena*, *atdot*.

(b) in point of articulation

The dental nasal *n* occurs as a velar nasal before the velar plosives *k* and *g*. Thus in *banka*, *banga*, etc., the sound heard is that of the *ng* of English *sing*, followed by the *k* or *g*.

Before *š* or *č*, *s* is often assimilated to *š*; thus:

pusčetri is often pronounced (puščetri)

viššaurākais is often pronounced (viššaurākais).

Before *ž* or *dž*, *z* is often assimilated to *ž*; thus:

izzūt is often pronounced (ižžūt)

aizdžinkstēt is often pronounced (aiždžinkstēt).

At the end of a word the combination *-šs* becomes (šš) and reduces to (š); thus:

drošs is pronounced (droš).

(c) in both sonority and point of articulation

A combination of (a) and (b) above explains such cases as

uzšūt pronounced (uššūt)

mežs pronounced (meš).

2. VOWEL HARMONY

Apart from the general (and rather misleading) statement that *e* is pronounced closed when followed in the next syllable by a closed front vowel or diphthong, a palatalized consonant or *j*, and is otherwise pronounced open, a rather complex formulation is required to predict the occurrence of open and closed *e*. For basic guidance, however, see Lesson 109. These rules do not extend to *bez*, *ne*, etc., used as prefixes, where the quality of *e* does not normally vary from the closed pronunciation heard when these words are independently used. *Ne*, however, when prefixed to a word beginning with open *e* or open *ē* will itself usually be pronounced with open *e*; thus:

neņsmu is often pronounced (neņsmu)

neņrts is often pronounced (neņrts).

3. VOCALIZATION

In word final position, or *de facto* word final position after loss of a final vowel (see section 4, Weakening), or immediately before final *s*, *v* preceded by a short vowel is commonly vocalized to *u*; thus:

savs is normally pronounced (saus)

sev is normally pronounced (seu)

ziivs is normally pronounced (zius)

krav(u) is often pronounced (krau).

Note in particular that *nav* is almost always pronounced (nau).

After a long vowel or diphthong, the vocalization is much less common. If the following word begins with a vowel, the final or *de facto* final *v* is more likely to retain its consonantal articulation. Notice particularly that under these circumstances the word *jau* will often be pronounced (jav).

4. VOWEL WEAKENING

Many speakers subject final short vowels to considerable weakening. Frequently the vowel is merely whispered. Cf. the spelling *bij* for *bija*. In some cases this weakening seems to have led to the complete loss of the vowel, although this tendency cannot be considered as typical; thus:

bija may be reduced as far as (bij)

meita may be reduced as far as (meit)

klausa may be reduced as far as (klaus).

Short vowels immediately preceding a final *s* are subject to the same weakening, and in the case of some speakers, total loss. Thus:

bijis may be reduced as far as (bijs)

meitas may be reduced as far as (meits)

cepures may be reduced as far as (cepurs).

In the present tense of mixed conjugation verbs in *-īt* and *-ināt*, the endings containing *ā*, i. e., *-ām*, *-āmes*, *-āt*, *-āties*, *-ās*, are normally pronounced with short *a*.

5. STRESS

Latvian words are stressed on the first syllable. Exceptions to this rule (e. g., *neviens*, *pusotra*) are rare, and are indicated in notes to the vocabularies.

6. INTONATION

Long vowels and diphthongs (and for this purpose sequences of vowel plus *r*, *l*, *ļ*, *m*, *n*, *ņ* are considered diphthongal) are subject to certain intonation patterns. In a few areas three patterns are distinguished: the even intonation (*stieptā intonācija*), the falling intonation (*krītošā intonācija*) and the broken intonation (*lauztā intonācija*).

The even tone calls for very little comment: the vowel or diphthong is

uttered on a level tone with no significant variation in intensity. The falling tone³ begins more loudly, falling off towards the end.

The broken tone⁴ divides the duration of the vowel or diphthong into two sections: a rising, tense and loud beginning is followed in mid-syllable by a noticeable weakening, and a relaxed or weakened, sometimes even whispered, final segment.

However, many areas have only a two-way contrast; in some the falling and broken intonations are fused, in others the falling and even. These intonational variations limit the generalization that can be made to the broad statement that for most speakers the basic distinction is between an even intonation and a non-even intonation.⁵

In view of these variations, and the fact that the intonation patterns of the literary language have not been fully investigated,⁶ it would be illusory to attempt a rigid doctrine, just as it would be impossible to allow for even the major variations; we have therefore decided to limit our commentary to those cases where total homophony is prevented only by an intonation distinction, i.e., where the syllable intonation performs a distinctive function.

¹ See *Mūsdienu latviešu literārās valodas gramatika*, I, p. 37.

² The classification and description of Latvian phonemes are treated in more detail in *op. cit.*, pp. 20–37. See also Laua, A., *Latviešu literārās valodas fonētika*.

³ See Endzelīns, *Latviešu valodas gramatika*, p. 35.

⁴ See *op. cit.*, p. 34.

⁵ See *Mūsdienu latviešu literārās valodas gramatika*, I, p. 68.

⁶ *Ibid.*

LESSON 1

THE PRESENT TENSE OF *BŪT*: NOMINATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN -S

The verb *būt* 'to be' is conjugated in the Present tense as follows:

<i>ēs ēsmu</i>	I am
<i>tu esi</i>	you (singular) are
<i>viņš ir</i>	he is
<i>viņa ir</i>	she is
<i>mēs esam</i>	we are
<i>jūs esat</i>	you (plural) are
<i>viņi ir</i>	they (masculine) are
<i>viņas ir</i>	they (feminine) are

The form *tu esi* is used only when addressing a person who is a close friend. Adults will normally use it when speaking to a child, and children will normally use it speaking one to another. Its use is, however, restricted to the singular. When addressing more than one person, whatever the circumstances, the form *jūs esat* must always be used. *Jūs esat* is also the polite singular form.

A great number of Latvian nouns belong to the masculine -s declension, in which the nominative singular consists of a stem plus *s*, and the nominative plural consists of the same stem plus *i*. Compare:

<i>zirg-s</i>	horse	with	<i>zirg-i</i>	horses
<i>lauk-s</i>	field	with	<i>lauk-i</i>	fields

Note that there are no articles, definite or indefinite, in Latvian; thus *zirgs* can mean equally well 'a horse', 'the horse', or just simply 'horse'. The same applies in the plural, where *zirgi* may mean either 'the horses', 'some horses', or just 'horses'.

The following nouns are all identical in type with *zirgs* and *lauks*, i.e., they all have their nominative singular in -s and their nominative plural in -i.

Vocabulary

<i>zirgs</i>	horse	<i>nams</i>	city house
<i>lauks</i>	field	<i>tēvs</i>	father
<i>mežs</i>	forest, wood	<i>dēls</i>	son
<i>ārsts</i>	doctor	<i>tur</i>	there
<i>skolotājs</i>	school-teacher	<i>kur</i>	where
<i>cilvēks</i>	person	<i>būt</i>	to be
<i>un</i>	and		

NOTES: Before the unvoiced *-s* ending of the Nom. Sing., the *-g-* of *zirgs* and the *-ž-* of *mežs* are devoiced to *-k-* and *-š-* respectively. The voiced sounds *-g-* and *-ž-* are heard in all other forms of these words. Similarly, other voiced consonants are devoiced in this position, e.g., *-b-* to *-p-*, *-d-* to *-t-*, *-z-* to *-s-*, and sometimes *-v-* to *-f-* (but not in *tēvs*).

In a few words, *-v-* before *-s* is lost altogether. Thus *tēvs* is pronounced *tēs* in the nominative singular. The voiced *-v-* will, of course, be heard in all other forms of the word.

Notice the word order in questions beginning with *kur*.

Kur viņi ir? BUT *Kur ir zirgs?*

When a pronoun is the subject of the verb *būt* in such questions, inversion of subject and verb will not occur; where the subject is a noun, the inversion will occur. If the question involves a verb other than *būt*, the inversion does not occur, whether the subject be a noun or a pronoun.

Exercise 1a

Complete the conjugation, omitting the forms with *viņa* and *viņas*:

1. *Es esmu ārsts.*
2. *Es esmu skolotājs.*
3. *Es esmu tēvs.*
4. *Es esmu dēls.*

Exercise 1b

Translate into English:

1. *Viņš ir ārsts. Viņi ir ārsti.*
2. *Es esmu skolotājs. Mēs esam skolotāji.*
3. *Tu esi tēvs. Jūs esat tēvi.*

4. *Es esmu dēls, un tu esi dēls; mēs esam dēli.*
5. *Mēs esam ārsti; jūs esat skolotāji.*
6. *Mēs un jūs esam cilvēki.*
7. *Ārsti ir cilvēki; skolotāji ir cilvēki.*
8. *Kur ir tēvi un dēli? – Tēvi un dēli ir tur.*
9. *Kur ir nams? Nams ir tur.*
10. *Kur ir lauks? Lauks ir tur.*
11. *Kur ir lauki? Lauki ir tur.*
12. *Kur ir mežs? Mežs ir tur.*
13. *Kur ir meži? Meži ir tur.*
14. *Lauki un meži ir tur.*
15. *Tu esi skolotājs, un viņš ir ārsts.*
16. *Kur viņi ir? Viņi ir tur.*
17. *Tur viņi ir.*
18. *Jūs esat ārsti.*
19. *Kur viņa ir? Viņa ir tur.*
20. *Kur ir nami? Nami ir tur.*
21. *Nams un lauks ir tur.*
22. *Viņš ir skolotājs, viņš ir cilvēks.*
23. *Kur ir zirgi? Zirgi ir tur.*
24. *Es esmu skolotājs; skolotājs ir cilvēks.*
25. *Kur ir tēvs?*
26. *Kur ir zirgs? Zirgs ir tur.*
27. *Tēvs ir cilvēks.*
28. *Kur viņas ir? Viņas ir tur.*
29. *Kur viņa ir? Viņa ir tur.*

Exercise 1c

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where are the doctors and where are the teachers?
2. The horses and fields are there.
3. He is a father, and they are sons.
4. The forests are there.
5. There are houses there.
6. You are a doctor; I am a teacher.
7. There is the field.
8. We are fathers; you are a son.
9. Fathers and sons are people.
10. I am a person and you are a person: we are people.
11. Where is she? She is there.

12. Where are the horse and the field? The horse and the field are there.
13. Where are they (f.)? They (f.) are there.
14. Where is the horse? Where are the horses?
15. The horse, the field and the forest are there.
16. Where are you?
17. There are the people.
18. I am a doctor: you are a teacher.
19. He is a doctor: we are teachers.
20. Where is the son? He is there.
21. There are the fields, and there is the forest.
22. The father is a doctor and the son is a teacher.
23. The sons are teachers and the fathers are doctors.
24. Where is she? She is there.

LESSON 2

SINGULAR DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN -S

Latvian is an inflected language, and its nouns can be considered as having five cases: Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Locative. Each case of the noun requires a different ending. We have already met the endings of the Nominative singular and plural, *-s* and *-i* respectively. We are now concerned with the five case endings of the singular, which are as follows:

Nominative	<i>zirg-s</i>	(a, the) horse (subject)
Accusative	<i>zirg-u</i>	(a, the) horse (object)
Genitive	<i>zirg-a</i>	of a horse, of the horse
Dative	<i>zirg-am</i>	to a horse, to the horse
Locative	<i>zirg-ā</i>	in a horse, in the horse

We cannot as yet use all of these cases in sentences, as our limited vocabulary restricts us to the Nominative, Genitive and Locative.

Notice the use of these three cases:

NOM. *Tēvs ir tur.* The father is there.

In this sentence, the word 'father' is the subject, and is therefore in the nominative case. Similarly in the plural,

Tēvi ir tur. The fathers are there.

GEN. *Tur ir ārsta nams.* There is the doctor's house.

The genitive of *ārsts*, i.e., *ārsta*, means 'of the doctor' or 'the doctor's'; similarly, *tēva dēls* 'the father's son'; *skolotāja zirgi* 'the teacher's horses'; and *drauga dārzs* 'the garden of the friend'. Note that a possessive genitive precedes its noun in Latvian, just as the forms in 's precede the noun in English.

LOC. *Zirgs ir mežā.* The horse is in the forest.
Viņš ir pagrabā. He is in the cellar.
Galdi ir namā. The tables are in the house.

Notice the change of emphasis when these sentences are inverted:

Mežā ir zirgs. There is a horse in the forest.
Namā ir galdi. There are tables in the house.

All the nouns in the following vocabulary are masculine *-s* nouns and follow the pattern given above for *zirgs*.

Vocabulary

<i>galds</i>	table	<i>bērns</i>	child
<i>jumts</i>	roof	<i>dārzs</i>	garden
<i>putns</i>	bird	<i>draugs</i>	friend
<i>koks</i>	tree, wood	<i>bet</i>	but
<i>vīns</i>	wine	<i>arī</i>	also
<i>kalns</i>	mountain, hill	<i>ak!</i>	oh! oh dear!
<i>pagrabs</i>	cellar		

NOTES: The nouns *galds*, *pagrabs*, *dārzs* and *draugs* are pronounced with the devoiced consonant (*t*, *p*, *s*, *k* respectively) in the Nom. Sing. only. Note the phrase *koka galds* 'a wooden table'.

In addition to the five cases given above, there is also a Vocative, with which we shall be concerned at a later stage.

Exercise 2a

1. Give the accusative singular of: *galds*; *vīns*; *lauks*; *jumts*.
2. Give the genitive singular of: *zirgs*; *skolotājs*; *bērns*; *koks*.
3. Give the dative singular of: *ārsts*; *tēvs*; *draugs*; *putns*.
4. Give the locative singular of: *mežs*; *nams*; *dārzs*; *kalns*.

Exercise 2b

Decline in the singular: *pagrabs; dārzis; nams.*

Exercise 2c

Conjugate in the present tense, omitting the *viņa* and *viņas* forms:

1. *Es esmu bērna draugs.*
2. *Es esmu tēva ārsts.*
3. *Es esmu bērns.*
4. *Es esmu drauga namā.*

Exercise 2d

Translate into English:

1. Mēs esam bērni.
2. Kur viņa ir?
3. Jūs esat dārzā.
4. Galdi ir pagrabā.
5. Bērni ir mežā.
6. Dēls ir namā.
7. Tur ir lauki, meži un dārzi.
8. Dārzā ir koki, un mežā arī ir koki.
9. Dārzā ir putni, un putni ir arī mežā.
10. Namā ir tēvs, ārsts un skolotājs.
11. Ak, skolotāja zirgi ir tēva dārzā!
12. Skolotāja tēvs ir ārsts.
13. Ārsta dēls ir namā.
14. Viņa ir namā.
15. Kur ir tēva galds?
16. Mežā ir koki.
17. Vīns ir pagrabā. Kur ir pagrabs? Pagrabs ir tēva namā.
18. Bērni ir mežā, bet tēvs ir namā.
19. Ārsts ir tēva draugs.
20. Skolotājs ir bērna draugs.
21. Pagrabā ir vīns.
22. Jūs esat tēva draugs un arī skolotāja draugs.
23. Kur ir vīns? Vīns ir dēla pagrabā.
24. Es esmu cilvēks; mēs esam cilvēki.

25. Kur ir jumti? Jumti ir tur.
26. Tur ir koka galds.
27. Zirgs ir cilvēka draugs.
28. Kur ir bērna draugs? Viņš ir tēva laukā.
29. Kur ir drauga dēls? Viņš ir dārzā.
30. Es esmu bērns. Tu arī esi bērns. Mēs esam bērni.
31. Viņi ir draugi.

Exercise 2e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where are the mountains?
2. There are the child's friends.
3. I am a doctor, but you are a teacher.
4. Where is the wine? The wine is in the cellar of the house.
5. In the forest there are trees.
6. There is a wooden table.
7. The son of the teacher is in the forest.
8. The mountain is in the forest.
9. There are horses and birds in the doctor's garden.
10. There are people in the forest.
11. The child's friend is there.
12. The wooden tables are in the house.
13. There are people in the garden.
14. Where are father's horses?
15. We are friends of the child.
16. Where are the son's fields?
17. The father's fields are also there.
18. Where are they (f.)? They (f.) are in the cellar.
19. Where are you? I am in the house.
20. Where is she? She is in the garden.
21. Where is the bird? The bird is in the tree.
22. You are friends of the teacher.
23. They (m.) are there. He is also there.
24. Where is the wine? The wine is in the cellar of the doctor's house.
25. There are the roofs.
26. The tables are in the house.
27. There are trees in the garden.

LESSON 3

PLURAL DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN -S

The five case endings for the plural of masculine -s nouns are as follows:

Nominative	<i>dārz-i</i>	(the) gardens (subject)
Accusative	<i>dārz-us</i>	(the) gardens (object)
Genitive	<i>dārz-u</i>	of gardens, of the gardens
Dative	<i>dārz-iem</i>	to gardens, to the gardens
Locative	<i>dārz-os</i>	in gardens, in the gardens.

Note the use of the cases in the plural:

- Āboli ir dārzā.* The apples (subject) are in the garden.
Bērnu āboli ir dārzā. The apples of the children (Genitive) are in the garden.
Āboli tagad ir maisos. The apples are now in bags. (Locative)

All the nouns previously given, as well as those listed below, follow the above pattern.

Vocabulary

<i>darbs</i>	work	<i>maiznieks</i>	baker
<i>maiss</i>	bag, sack	<i>ubags</i>	beggar
<i>ābols</i>	apple	<i>skolnieks</i>	school-boy
<i>saimnieks</i>	farmer	<i>tagad</i>	now
<i>vīrs</i>	man; husband	<i>šodien</i>	today
<i>vilks</i>	wolf	<i>vēl</i>	still (advb)
<i>aploks</i>	enclosure (for animals), enclosed pasture	<i>tikai</i>	only (advb)

NOTE the devoiced pronunciation of the final consonant of the stem in *darbs* and *ubags*. Note too the phrase *darba galds* 'a work-table'.

Adverbs, e.g. *tagad*, *šodien*, *vēl*, normally precede the verb. *Tikai* normally precedes the word it most closely modifies.

- Es vēl esmu dārzā.* I am still in the garden.
Es esmu tikai ubags. I am only a beggar.

Exercise 3a

1. Give the accusative plural of: *darbs*; *ābols*; *saimnieks*; *ubags*.
2. Give the genitive plural of: *maiss*; *vīrs*; *vilks*; *maiznieks*.
3. Give the dative plural of: *skolnieks*; *koks*; *bērns*; *putns*.
4. Give the locative plural of: *lauks*; *nams*; *mežs*; *dārzis*.

Exercise 3b

1. Decline in the singular: *ābols*; *draugs*; *aploks*.
2. Decline in the plural: *maiss*; *ubags*; *vilks*.

Exercise 3c

Conjugate in the present tense:

1. *Es esmu saimnieka aplokā.*
2. *Es esmu maiznieka dēls.*
3. *Kur es esmu?*
4. *Es tagad esmu drauga namā.*
5. *Es šodien esmu mežā.*

Exercise 3d

Translate into English:

1. Zirgs ir aplokā. Zirgi ir aplokos.
2. Saimnieka laukos ir cilvēki un zirgi.
3. Ābols ir maisā.
4. Maisos ir āboli. Āboli ir maisos.
5. Skolnieki un skolotāji ir dārzā.
6. Viņš tagad ir ubags.
7. Skolotāja bērni šodien ir maiznieka namā.
8. Kur ir darba galds? Darba galds ir tur.
9. Ubagu maisi ir saimnieka namā.
10. Dārzā ir koks. Dārzos ir koki.
11. Mežā ir vilki.
12. Pagrabā vēl ir vīns.
13. Ārsts un skolotājs ir tēva namā.
14. Ubagi, saimnieki, maiznieki, skolnieki un ārsti ir cilvēki.
15. Kur viņas ir? Viņas ir pagrabā.

16. Kur ir skolnieku āboli?
17. Vīri vēl ir mežā.
18. Saimnieka dārzā ir koki.
19. Ubagu maisos ir āboli.
20. Es esmu maiznieka dēls; mēs esam maiznieku dēli.
21. Mežā ir vilki.
22. Viņi ir vīri.
23. Tu tagad esi skolnieks; jūs tagad esat skolnieki.
24. Kur viņa ir? Viņa ir tēva dārzā.
25. Kur ir zirgi? Zirgi ir aplokā.
26. Kur šodien ir vīri? Vīri šodien ir mežā.
27. Bērni vēl ir dārzā.
28. Pagrabā ir tikai vīns.
29. Bērnu draugi ir zirgu aplokā.
30. Tur ir koka galds.

Exercise 3e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The work-table is in the house.
2. I am only a beggar.
3. The baker's apples are in the bag.
4. The baker's apples are in the bags.
5. The pupils are also in the house.
6. The doctor is still in the baker's house.
7. Where are the beggar's apples?
8. You are only beggars.
9. The horses are in the enclosure today.
10. In the garden there are wooden tables.
11. The work-tables are in the cellar.
12. He is the school-boys' father.
13. You are the teacher's child.
14. There are animals in the farmer's enclosures.
15. The farmer's wine is now in the baker's cellar.
16. The beggars' bags are still in the garden.
17. Where is she today? Today she is in the mountains.
18. The men's friends are in the cellar.
19. In the mountains there are wolves.
20. He is only a school-boy, but you are a man.
21. The school-boys' apples are in the teacher's bag.

22. Where is the farmer today? Today the farmer is in the forest.
23. There are still wolves in the mountains.
24. Where are they (f.)? They (f.) are now in the garden.
25. There are only horses in the enclosure.

LESSON 4

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

In Latvian there is no verb corresponding to the English verb 'to have' and it is therefore impossible to translate literally such sentences as 'The farmer **has** a horse'. Instead we must use a paraphrase, and say 'To the farmer is a horse'. To translate the phrase 'to the farmer' we use the Dative case. This construction is the standard way of expressing possession in Latvian. Compare the following:

<i>English</i>	<i>Paraphrased English</i>	<i>Latvian</i>
The farmer has a horse.	To the farmer is a horse.	<i>Saimniekam ir zirgs.</i>
The teacher has a son.	To the teacher is a son.	<i>Skolotājam ir dēls.</i>
The beggars have bags.	To the beggars are bags.	<i>Ubagiem ir maisi.</i>

Note carefully that the possessor is in the Dative case, and that the thing possessed, which in English is the object of the verb 'to have', becomes in Latvian the subject of the verb 'to be': it is therefore in the Nominative case.

We have already said that possessive genitives precede their noun in Latvian; we should also now note that partitive genitives normally follow: compare

<i>nama jumts</i>	the roof of the house	(Possessive genitive)
<i>maiss ābolu</i>	a bag of apples	(Partitive genitive)

Vocabulary

<i>zobs</i>	tooth	<i>svārki</i> (pl.)	coat; skirt
<i>kakls</i>	neck	<i>rudzi</i> (pl.)	rye
<i>pirksts</i>	finger; toe	<i>rati</i> (pl.)	cart
<i>krūms</i>	bush	<i>vai</i>	interrogative particle
<i>lops</i>	(farm) animal	<i>šeit</i> (šē)	here
<i>mati</i> (pl.)	hair	<i>kāpēc</i>	why

NOTES: The *-b-* of *zobs* is devoiced to *-p-* in the Nom. Sing. only. The nouns *mati*, *svārki*, *rudzi* and *rati* are used only in the plural. Thus there is in Latvian no difference between 'a cart' and 'carts', 'a coat' and 'coats', which are both translated by *rati* and *svārki* respectively.

Notice the use of the particle *vai* in forming questions. It is added to any statement as an initial word, thereby making the sentence interrogative: compare

Jūs esat ārsts. You are a doctor.
Vai jūs esat ārsts? Are you a doctor?

There is never inversion of subject and verb after *kāpēc*.

Kāpēc jūs esat tur? Why are you there?
Kāpēc zirgi šodien ir aplokā? Why are the horses in the enclosure today?

Exercise 4a

Give the dative singular and plural of:

lops; ārsts; bērns; skolnieks; skolotājs; tēvs; dēls; saimnieks; maiznieks; cilvēks; vīrs; zirgs; vilks; ubags; putns; draugs.

Exercise 4b

1. Decline in the singular: *zobs; kakls; pirksts; krūms.*
2. Decline in the plural: *mati; svārki; rudzi; rati.*

Exercise 4c

Conjugate in the present tense, omitting the *viņa* and *viņas* forms:

1. *Es esmu skolotāja draugs.*
2. *Es esmu bērnu tēvs.*
3. *Vai es esmu saimnieka mežā?*
4. *Vai es esmu saimnieka rudzu laukos?*
5. *Es esmu maiznieka ratos.*

Exercise 4d

Translate into English:

1. Cilvēkiem un lopiem ir zobi.
2. Maizniekam ir maiss rudzu un maiss ābolu.
3. Skolotājam ir svārki.
4. Cilvēkam ir kakls un pirksti.
5. Kokā vēl ir āboli.
6. Putni ir krūmā.
7. Dārzā ir koki un krūmi.
8. Cilvēkiem ir mati.
9. Saimnieka bērni ir šeit.
10. Saimnieka dēlam ir zirgi.
11. Ārsta draugam ir koka galds pagrabā.
12. Pagrabā ir vīns un maiss ābolu.
13. Rudzu maisi ir ratos.
14. Zirgi ir aplokā.
15. Lopiem ir kakli.
16. Kur ir maiznieka rati?
17. Vai tu esi ārsts?
18. Cilvēkiem ir draugi.
19. Kur jūs esat? – Es esmu šeit.
20. Kur ir rudzi? – Rudzi ir maisā.
21. Vilkam ir zobi.
22. Bērnam ir svārki; bērniem ir svārki.
23. Tēvam ir mati; tēviem ir mati.
24. Kur viņa ir? Viņa ir šeit.
25. Kur viņas ir? Viņas ir tur.
26. Mēs esam saimnieka dārzā.
27. Lopam ir kakls; lopiem ir kakli.
28. Kāpēc tu esi dārzā?
29. Kāpēc jūs esat šeit?

Exercise 4e

Rewrite the sentences of Exercise 4d, changing the statements into questions with the help of the particle *vai*. Omit those sentences which are already questions.

Exercise 4f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Has the beggar a coat?
2. Do wolves have teeth?
3. The children have apples in (their) coats.
4. The doctor has a horse and a cart.
5. The beggar has a bag.
6. Is there wine in the cellar?
7. Why has the school-boy only an apple in (his) coat?
8. There are birds in the bushes.
9. Has the doctor a bag of rye in (his) cart?
10. Why is the beggar in the cellar?
11. Why are the horses in the garden?
12. Why are there horses in the garden?
13. Why are the children in the house?
14. Why have wolves got teeth?
15. Why is the beggar here in the house?
16. Has the father got a horse?
17. Is there wine in the farmer's cellar?
18. Has the beggar any friends?
19. Are you a doctor? Are you a teacher? Are you a beggar?
20. Are they school-boys? Are we people?
21. A person has fingers. People have fingers.
22. The farmer has bushes in the garden.
23. Where is he? He is here.
24. Where is she? She is there.
25. A person has a neck and teeth. People have necks and teeth.
26. Are the animals in the enclosure? The animals are in the enclosure.
27. Is the rye in the cart?
28. Where is father's cart?
29. Where is the farmer's rye? The farmer's rye is here.
30. I am in the cart.
31. They (f.) are in the son's house.

LESSON 5

MIXED CONJUGATION VERBS IN -ĒT: PRESENT TENSE

There are three types of conjugation in Latvian: a short conjugation, a mixed conjugation and a long conjugation.

The present tense of mixed conjugation verbs in -ēt is as follows:

Infinitive: *grib-ēt* 'to wish, to want'

<i>es grib-u</i>	I wish
<i>tu grib-i</i>	you (sing.) wish
<i>viņš grib</i>	he wishes
<i>mēs grib-am</i>	we wish
<i>jūs grib-at</i>	you (pl.) wish
<i>viņi grib</i>	they wish

From here on, we shall omit the forms *viņa* and *viņas* from our verbal paradigms — they are always construed with the same verbal forms as *viņš* and *viņi*. The one set of forms given above translates both the English 'I wish' and 'I am wishing', for which there is no special form in Latvian. Cf. *mēs turam* 'we keep' or 'we are keeping'.

All the verbs in the following vocabulary are conjugated like *gribēt*, and the nouns are declined like *zirgs*.

Vocabulary

<i>gribēt</i>	to want, to wish	<i>millēt</i>	to love
<i>redzēt</i>	to see	<i>varēt</i>	to be able
<i>dzirdēt</i>	to hear	<i>turēt</i>	to hold, to keep
<i>stāvēt</i>	to stand	<i>jautājums</i>	question
<i>atbildēt</i>	to answer	<i>stāsts</i>	story
<i>ticēt</i>	to believe	<i>kalps</i>	farm-worker

NOTES: The verbs *gribēt* and *varēt* are often construed with a following infinitive: e.g., *es gribu atbildēt* 'I want to answer', *es varu dzirdēt* 'I can hear'.

The verbs *atbildēt* and *ticēt* govern their object in the dative case, e.g., *Es atbildu skolotājam* 'I answer the teacher'. *Mēs ticam stāstam* 'We believe the story'.

The verb *redzēt* presents one peculiarity of conjugation: the closed *ē* of the stem is open throughout the present tense, except in the second person singular – thus *rēdzu, rēdzi, rēdz, rēdzam, rēdzat, rēdz*.

The *-ēt* of the infinitive is always closed.

Exercise 5a

Conjugate in the present tense:

1. *Es dzirdu putnu.*
2. *Es ticu ubaga stāstam.*
3. *Es mīlu maiznieka dēlu.*
4. *Es redzu tēva ratus.*
5. *Kur es esmu?*

Exercise 5b

Decline in the singular and plural: *jautājums; stāsts; kalps; vilks; mežs.*

Exercise 5c

Translate into English:

1. *Es gribu dzirdēt stāstu.*
2. *Kalps var redzēt vilkus mežā.*
3. *Vai jūs mīlat kalpa dēlu?*
4. *Tēvs stāv dārzā, bet dēls ir namā.*
5. *Vai viņas tic skolotāja stāstiem?*
6. *Vai jūs ticat saimnieka stāstam?*
7. *Vai tu atbildi skolotājam?*
8. *Viņš ir tur, pagrabā.*
9. *Mēs gribam ticēt ubaga stāstam.*
10. *Es gribu atbildēt.*
11. *Skolnieks grib atbildēt skolotājam.*
12. *Vai jūs redzat zirgus aplokā?*
13. *Vai jūs gribat atbildēt?*
14. *Zirgi stāv aplokā.*
15. *Viņa mīl maiznieka dēlu.*
16. *Vai tu dzirdi putnus?*
17. *Vai kalps var dzirdēt saimnieka stāstu?*
18. *Mežā ir koki, bet dārzā ir tikai krūmi.*
19. *Es dzirdu putnus mežā.*

20. *Vai tu gribi atbildēt skolotājam?*
21. *Kur ir bērnu draugi? Viņi ir kalpa namā.*
22. *Mēs mīlam dēlus.*
23. *Jūs turat zirgu.*
24. *Kalps stāv dārzā un tur zirgu.*
25. *Vai tu mīli tēvu?*
26. *Mēs esam pagrabā.*
27. *Vai saimnieks tic kalpu stāstiem?*
28. *Skolnieks dzird skolotāja jautājumus.*

Exercise 5d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Does she love the doctor's son?
2. Do you see the animals in the enclosure?
3. Why do you want to hear the beggar's story?
4. I can see a bag of rye in the farmer's cart.
5. There is also a bag of rye in the baker's cart.
6. Do you believe the child's story?
7. The farm-labourer answers the farmer's questions.
8. Does the son love the father?
9. Do you wish to hold the horse?
10. Can you see the wooden table in the cellar?
11. Why does he want to be in the garden? – He wants to see the trees and bushes.
12. Has the labourer any apples? The labourer has apples in the cellar.
13. We believe the doctor.
14. She is standing in the garden.
15. Can you see the baker's horse in the enclosure?
16. They (f.) believe the man's story.
17. I can see the wolf's teeth.
18. The labourer is standing in the enclosure, and is holding a horse.
19. Does she wish to answer the question?
20. Why do you believe beggars' stories?
21. Is the labourer still holding the horse?
22. I hear the question.
23. Can he hear the question?
24. The son still loves the father.
25. Is the teacher still standing in the garden?
26. Can you answer the question?
27. They are answering the teacher.

LESSON 6

DATIVE CASE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

In order to be able to express the notions 'I have', 'you have', etc., we must learn the dative forms of the personal pronouns, for, as we have already seen, these phrases must become in Latvian 'to me is a house', 'to you is a house', etc. 'To me' and 'to you' are represented by the Latvian dative case.

Nominative		Dative	
<i>es</i>	I	<i>man</i>	to me
<i>tu</i>	you (sing.)	<i>tev</i>	to you (sing.)
<i>viņš</i>	he	<i>viņam</i>	to him
<i>viņa</i>	she	<i>viņai</i>	to her
<i>mēs</i>	we	<i>mums</i>	to us
<i>jūs</i>	you (pl.)	<i>jums</i>	to you (pl.)
<i>viņi</i>	they (masc.)	<i>viņiem</i>	to them (masc.)
<i>viņas</i>	they (fem.)	<i>viņām</i>	to them (fem.)

Te is often pronounced *teu*.

Examples:	<i>Man ir nams.</i>	I have a house.
	<i>Tev ir zirgs.</i>	You have a horse.
	<i>Viņam ir dārzs.</i>	He has a garden.
	<i>Viņai ir draugi.</i>	She has friends.
	<i>Mums ir lauki.</i>	We have fields.
	<i>Vai jums ir galds?</i>	Have you a table?
	<i>Vai viņiem ir dēli?</i>	Have they any sons?
	<i>Vai viņām ir bērni?</i>	Have they any children?

All the nouns in the following vocabulary are declined like *zirgs*, and all the verbs are conjugated like *gribēt*.

Vocabulary

<i>siers</i>	cheese	<i>ezers</i>	lake
<i>piens</i>	milk	<i>okeāns</i>	ocean
<i>cimdš</i>	glove	<i>peldēt</i>	to swim; to float
<i>burkāns</i>	carrot	<i>labi</i>	well (advb.)
<i>kāposti</i> (pl.)	cabbage	<i>slikti</i>	badly
<i>sviests</i>	butter	<i>ļoti</i>	very (advb.)

NOTE the devoicing of the final stem consonant of *cimdš* in the Nom. Sing. only. The *o* of *okeāns* is pronounced like *o* in English *hot*. The spelling *okeāns* is also found.

Exercise 6a

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es peldu ezerā.*
2. *Vai es atbildu skolotājam?*
3. *Es redzu vilkus.*
4. *Es ticu ubagu stāstiem.*
5. *Man ir zirgi.*
6. *Vai man ir burkāni?*

Exercise 6b

1. Decline in the singular: *okeāns*; *ezers*; *kalps*.
2. Decline in the plural: *kāposti*; *mati*; *svārki*; *rati*.

Exercise 6c

Translate into English:

1. *Man ir siers.*
2. *Man ir piens pagrabā.*
3. *Vai tev ir cimdi?*
4. *Man ir sviests, burkāni un kāposti.*
5. *Man ir ļoti aplokā.*
6. *Man ir zobi.*
7. *Vai tev ir sviests?*
8. *Tev ir burkāni dārzā.*
9. *Kur tev ir vīns?*
10. *Viņam ir bērni.*
11. *Kur viņam ir cimdi?*
12. *Vai viņam ir nams?*
13. *Vai viņam ir maiss ābolu?*
14. *Viņam ir tikai kāposti.*
15. *Viņai ir dēls.*
16. *Vai viņai ir siers un piens?*
17. *Vai viņai ir svārki?*
18. *Viņai ir cimdi un svārki.*

19. Mums ir burkāni un kāposti dārzā.
20. Mums ir siers un piens pagrabā.
21. Vai mums pagrabā ir arī sviests?
22. Mums ir draugi.
23. Vai mums vēl ir vīns?
24. Vai jums šodien ir sviests un siers?
25. Vai jums tagad ir bērni?
26. Vai jums ir āboli kokā?
27. Kāpēc jums ir tikai krūmi dārzā? *atgriezties*
28. Viņiem ir rati.
29. Vai viņiem ir lauki?
30. Vai viņiem ir lopi aplokā?
31. Kāpēc viņiem pagrabā ir tikai siers un piens?
32. Viņiem ir vīns.
33. Viņām ir cimdi un svārki.
34. Viņām ir piens un sviests ratos.
35. Vai viņām tagad ir draugi?
36. Kur viņām ir cimdi?
37. Kāpēc viņām dārzā ir tikai burkāni un kāposti?
38. Es šodien gribu peldēt okeanā.
39. Vai tu peldi labi?
40. Zirgi peld ļoti labi.
41. Kalps ļoti slikti dzird.
42. Ak, viņš atbild ļoti slikti!
43. Vai tu redzi okeanu?
44. Es peldu ļoti slikti.
45. Kāpēc skolotājs tic bērnu stāstiem?
46. Vai maiznieka dēli šodien grib peldēt ezerā?
47. Kalps var turēt zirgus, un mēs varam peldēt ezerā.
48. Saimnieks redz ļoti labi.
49. Vai tu gribi peldēt okeanā?
50. Vai tu gribi dzirdēt stāstus? – Labi! (*Labi here means 'Very well!'*)
51. Vai jums tagad ir darbs?
52. Okeans ir šeit, bet kalns ir tur.
53. Namiem ir jumti.
54. Cilvēki stāv saimnieka aplokā.
55. Kur ir cimdi? – Cimdi ir šeit.
56. Kāpēc kalpi vēl ir laukos?
57. Tu vari peldēt, bet man šodien ir darbs.
58. Es ticu stāstam.
59. Kāpēc tu vēl turi zirgu aplokā?
60. Viņš grib atbildēt.

Exercise 6d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I have work.
2. I have fields.
3. I have wine.
4. I also have cheese.
5. Have I any milk?
6. Have you cabbages and carrots?
7. You have butter and cheese.
8. Have you any gloves?
9. Have you any wine?
10. Have you a garden?
11. He has a question.
12. He has work.
13. He has fingers.
14. Has he a horse?
15. She still has some wine.
16. Has she any butter now?
17. Has she any gloves?
18. She has a field in the mountains.
19. We have friends.
20. We have teeth.
21. We still have work.
22. Have we a work-table?
23. Today we have only cabbages.
24. You have cheese, milk, carrots, cabbages, butter and wine.
25. Have you a cart?
26. Have you a coat?
27. Have you children now?
28. You have houses and gardens.
29. They (m.) have cheese and milk.
30. They (m.) have only butter and carrots.
31. They (m.) have milk and wine today.
32. They (m.) have only cabbages.
33. Have they (m.) any coats?
34. They (f.) have gloves.
35. They (f.) have skirts.
36. They (f.) have carrots and cabbages.
37. They (f.) have butter and apples.
38. Have they (f.) any friends?

39. I want to hold the horses.
40. Can you see the people?
41. The farm-labourers are standing in the enclosure.
42. Does the father believe the son's story?
43. Why does she want to answer the question?
44. You can see the fields, but can you see the roofs?
45. Can they hear the teacher's questions?
46. He swims well, but she swims badly.
47. Oh dear, the gloves are in the wine!
48. Does the labourer believe the beggar's story?
49. The father is standing in the garden, and is holding the child.
50. Why are you here?
51. Oh dear, the horses are in the garden!
52. I swim very well, but they (f.) swim very badly.
53. The lake is here, but the ocean is there.
54. In the forest there is a lake.
55. The pupil answers questions very well.
56. Why can horses swim well?
57. Does she still swim badly?
58. The baker's son swims very badly.

LESSON 7

NEGATION OF VERBS, EXCLUDING POSSESSIVE EXPRESSIONS

To make a Latvian verb negative is a very simple matter: we simply prefix *ne-* to the verb in question.

Affirmative		Negative	
<i>es ticu</i>	I believe	<i>es neticu</i>	I do not believe
<i>tu tici</i>	you believe	<i>tu netici</i>	you do not believe
<i>viņš tic</i>	he believes	<i>viņš netic</i>	he does not believe
<i>mēs ticam</i>	we believe	<i>mēs neticam</i>	we do not believe
<i>jūs ticat</i>	you believe	<i>jūs neticat</i>	you do not believe
<i>viņi tic</i>	they believe	<i>viņi netic</i>	they do not believe

There is no problem with the negative-interrogative: compare: *vai es gribu/vai es negribu, etc.*

Notice that the prefix *ne-* is written as one word with the following verb, and that, being now the initial syllable, it takes the accent from the verb. Compare the position of the stress in

es tīcu AND *es nētīcu*

Although the verb *būt* is quite regular in the negative in most respects, the third person (singular and plural) is not quite what one would expect:

<i>es neesmu</i>	<i>mēs neesam</i>
<i>tu neesi</i>	<i>jūs neesat</i>
<i>viņš nav</i>	<i>viņi nav</i>

The word *nav* is pronounced as if it were *nau*.

Vocabulary

<i>aizstāvēt</i>	to defend	<i>jā</i>	yes
<i>palīdzēt</i>	to help	<i>nē</i>	no
<i>cerēt</i>	to hope	<i>ka</i>	that (conj.)
<i>piederēt</i>	to belong	<i>vienmēr</i>	always
		<i>bieži</i>	often
		<i>milti</i> (pl.)	flour

NOTES: The verbs *palīdzēt* and *piederēt* are followed by the dative case, e.g.,

<i>Es palīdzu tēvam.</i>	I am helping the father.
<i>Nami pieder saimniekam.</i>	The houses belong to the farmer.

The words *jā* and *nē*, when forming part of a sentence, are always separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma, e.g.,

<i>Vai jūs esat ārsts?</i>	<i>Jā, es esmu ārsts.</i>
<i>Vai jūs esat namā?</i>	<i>Nē, es esmu dārzā.</i>

The conjunction *ka* cannot be omitted as readily in Latvian as it can in English; compare:

I hope that there is wine in the cellar.
Es ceru, ka pagrabā ir vīns.

I hope there is wine in the cellar.
Es ceru, ka pagrabā ir vīns.

Note further that all subordinate clauses in Latvian are set off from the rest of the sentence by commas, hence the comma after *es ceru* in the examples given above.

Exercise 7a

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es neticu stāstam.*
2. *Es neesmu ārsts.*
3. *Es negribu palīdzēt tēvam.*
4. *Es nevaru dzirdēt putnus.*

Exercise 7b

1. Decline in the singular: *siers; piens; sviests.*
2. Decline in the plural: *krūms; koks; milti.*

Exercise 7c

Translate into English:

1. Es ceru, ka viņš ir pagrabā.
2. Saimnieks negrib aizstāvēt kalpu.
3. Vai nams tev pieder? Nē, nams man nepieder.
4. Es ceru, ka tēvs šodien ir tur.
5. Tur ir krūmi, koki un putni.
6. Vai maizniekam šodien ir milti? Jā, viņam ir milti.
7. Mēs ceram, ka maizniekam ir milti.
8. Es ceru, ka viņa labi peld. — Nē, viņa nepeld labi; viņa peld ļoti slikti.
9. Kāpēc tēvs vienmēr aizstāv dēlus?
10. Vai jums šodien ir milti?
11. Tēvs negrib aizstāvēt dēlus, bet skolotājs aizstāv.
12. Tu neesi kalps.
13. Viņš nav ārsts.
14. Viņa nav namā.
15. Mēs neesam pagrabā, bet dārzā.
16. Jūs neesat ratos.
17. Viņas nav aplokā.
18. Viņi nav kalpi, bet saimnieki.
19. Viņas nav dārzā.
20. Maiznieka namā ir piens, siers, burkāni, kāposti, sviests, milti, rudzi, āboli un arī vīns.
21. Vai kalps palīdz tēvam? Jā, viņš vienmēr palīdz tēvam.
22. Vai skolnieki tagad atbild skolotājam?

23. Vai viņam pieder cimdi? Nē, cimdi viņam nepieder.
24. Lauki pieder vīram.
25. Rudzi nepieder kalpam, bet maizniekam.
26. Saimnieks bieži ir aplokā.
27. Es neesmu ubags, un es nepalīdzu ubagiem.
28. Viņai ir siers un piens.
29. Mums ir burkāni un kāposti.
30. Mēs neticam vīra stāstiem.
31. Viņi bieži atbild ļoti slikti.
32. Kāpēc viņi stāv aplokā?

Exercise 7d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I hope that you can hear the birds in the garden.
2. Do you want to see the lake in the forest?
3. The horse belongs to the farmer.
4. The butter and flour are there.
5. The father does not wish to defend (his) son.
6. Why do you hope that the school-teacher is not in the house?
7. The school-boy does not answer the teacher's question; he is helping a friend.
8. Have you (some) gloves? Yes, I have (some) gloves.
9. I am often in the garden.
10. I hope he swims well. — No, he swims very badly.
11. Has the farm-labourer any rye? — Yes, he has some rye.
12. Has she any butter and cheese? — No, she has only cabbages and carrots.
13. Have we any milk in the cellar? — No, we have only butter.
14. Have you got any cabbages and carrots? — Yes, and we also have cheese.
15. Has he any flour? — No, but she has flour.
16. Why does the father not defend the son?
17. The teacher often helps the pupils.
18. The farm-hands always help the farmer.
19. I hope that there is wine in the cellar. — Yes, and there is also flour.
20. I hope that she does not love a beggar. — No, she loves the doctor's son.
21. Where are the men today?
22. We often keep the horses in the enclosure.
23. We do not believe the man's story.
24. Do fields always belong to farmers?
25. People often help beggars.
26. We always help (our) friends.

27. Why are the men defending the beggar?
 28. We very often defend (our) friends.
 29. Does the farmer see well? — No, he sees very badly.
 30. The house belongs to me.

LESSON 8

NEGATION OF POSSESSIVE EXPRESSIONS

We have seen that the normal way to negate a Latvian verb is to prefix *ne-* to the verb in question, and that normally this is the only change to take place.

However, when negating possessive expressions of the type *Saimniekam ir zirgs*, there is a further modification to note: firstly, of course, the *ir* becomes *nav*; secondly, the object possessed (or not possessed), which is in the Nominative when the sentence is affirmative, must be put into the Genitive when the sentence is negative.

Compare:

<i>Man ir zirgs.</i>	<i>Man nav zirga.</i>
I have a horse.	I have no horse.
<i>Tēvam ir rati.</i>	<i>Tēvam nav ratu.</i>
Father has a cart.	Father has no cart.
<i>Vai jums ir dārzs?</i>	<i>Nē, man nav dārza.</i>
Have you a garden?	No, I have no garden.

Note also that when *ir* meaning 'there is' or 'there are' is put into the negative, the genitive is required:

<i>Namā ir galdi.</i>	<i>Namā nav galdu. OR:</i>
	<i>Namā galdu nav.</i>
In the house there	In the house there are
are tables.	no tables.

Further, the subject of the verb *nav* is frequently put into the genitive, especially when the only complement is adverbial:

<i>Tēvs ir šeit.</i>	<i>Tēva nav šeit. OR:</i>
	<i>Tēva šeit nav.</i>
Father is here.	Father is not here.

If the subject is a third person pronoun, this tendency also applies. We shall study the case forms of the personal pronouns in a later lesson.

Vocabulary

<i>krēsls</i>	chair	<i>logs</i>	window
<i>cukurs</i>	sugar	<i>stāds</i>	plant
<i>šīpolš</i>	onion	<i>rīsi</i> (pl.)	rice
<i>citrons</i>	lemon	<i>salāti</i> (pl.)	lettuce, salad
<i>veikals</i>	shop	<i>dārzāji</i> (pl.)	vegetables
<i>tomāts</i>	tomato	<i>pipari</i> (pl.)	pepper

NOTE that in *logs* and *stāds* the Nominative Singular is pronounced with devoiced *-k-* and *-t-*. The nouns *rīsi*, *salāti*, *dārzāji* and *pipari* are normally used only in the plural, like *rati*, etc. *Citrons* and *tomāts* are both foreign words, and in borrowed words, the vowel *o* often has a pure vowel articulation rather than the Latvian diphthongized sound. In *citrons* the Latvian *o* is more normal, while in *tomāts*, a pure vowel is heard, the first syllable very closely resembling the English *Tom*. Cf. *okeans* in Lesson 6.

Exercise 8a

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Man ir cukurs.*
2. *Man ir rīsi.*
3. *Man nav tomātu.*
4. *Man nav dārzāju.*
5. *Vai man ir krēsls?*
6. *Vai man nav šīpolu?*

Exercise 8b

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es gribu dzirdēt stāstus.*
2. *Es netīcu ubagiem.*
3. *Es aizstāvu dēlus.*
4. *Es neesmu kalps.*

Exercise 8c

1. Decline in the singular: *veikals*; *logs*; *stāds*; *tomāts*.
2. Decline in the plural: *rīsi*; *salāti*; *dārzāji*; *pipari*; *milti*.

Exercise 8d

Translate into English:

1. Man nav cukura.
2. Tev nav dārzāju.
3. Vai viņam nav tomātu?
4. Viņai nav rīsu.
5. Mums nav stādu dārzā.
6. Jums nav krēsla.
7. Viņiem nav sīpolu.
8. Viņām nav citronu.
9. Maizniekam nav miltu veikalā.
10. Tēvam nav salātu.
11. Skolotājam nav piparu.
12. Es ceru, ka jums ir sīpoli un rīsi. – Nē, man nav rīsu.
13. Vai ubagam nav maisa?
14. Vai ārstam nav bērnu?
15. Vai jums ir piens? – Jā, man ir piens, bet nav sviesta.
16. Vai viņai ir siers? – Nē, viņai nav siera.
17. Kalpam laukā ir burkāni, bet viņam nav ābolu dārzā.
18. Mums ir stādi dārzā, bet nav koku.
19. Vai tev nav kāpostu?
20. Viņiem ir milti un arī rīsi.
21. Vai maizniekam ir āboli veikalā?
22. Vai skolniekam ir āboli? – Nē, viņam nav ābolu.
23. Es gribu redzēt tēva veikalu.
24. Namā ir galdi. Namā ir arī milti, sīpoli, dārzāji un cukurs.
25. Man nav tomātu, un tev nav citronu.
26. Vai kalnos ir koki? – Jā, tur ir koki un krūmi.
27. Viņai bieži nav salātu veikalā.
28. Vai mums ir cukurs? – Nē, mums nav cukura.
29. Vai dārzā ir stādi? – Jā, dārzā ir stādi.
30. Krēsli pieder saimnieka dēlam.
31. Vai ārsti palīdz cilvēkiem? – Jā, ārsti vienmēr palīdz cilvēkiem.
32. Vai cimdi pieder viņai? – Nē, viņai nav cimdu; cimdi pieder dēlam.
33. Es ļoti labi peldu okeanā.
34. Es ceru, ka skolotājs ir šeit.
35. Vai kalps ir pagrabā? – Nē, kalpa nav pagrabā.
36. Namā nav sīpolu.
37. Namā nav salātu.
38. Veikalā nav citronu.
39. Vilki nav laukos; laukos nav vilku.

40. Namam ir jumts un logi.
41. Ezers nav mežā; mežā nav ezera.
42. Tomāti nav ratos; ratos nav tomātu.
43. Dārzāji nav dārzā; dārzā nav dārzāju.
44. Pipari nav veikalā; veikalā nav piparu.
45. Ak, cukurā ir pipari!
46. Ak, lopi peld ezerā!
47. Kāpēc saimnieks vienmēr aizstāv ubagu?
48. Vai viņam ir darba svārki? – Nē, darba svārku viņam vēl nav.
49. Vai tu redzi putnu?
50. Mums ir tikai salāti un dārzāji.
51. Vai tēvs neaizstāv dēlu?
52. Tu bieži slikti atbildi skolotājam.
53. Kur ir krēsls? — Krēsls un galds tagad ir pagrabā.

Exercise 8e

Put into the negative all those sentences of Exercise 6c which allow of **this** change.

Exercise 8f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am very often in the hills.
2. In the enclosure there are no animals.
3. In the fields there are no people.
4. The animals are not in the enclosure.
5. The people are not in the fields.
6. We have no cheese, no milk, no butter, no sugar, no rice, no carrots, no cabbages, no flour, no lettuce, no onions, no lemons, no tomatoes and no pepper. We have only wine.
7. Oh dear, the doctor's gloves are in the lake!
8. There are no vegetables in the shop.
9. Does the farmer often help beggars? – No, he does not help them.
10. I hope that there is flour in the baker's shop.
11. Why do you hope that father is not here?
12. Do the chairs and tables belong to you?
13. Where are the windows of the house? – Has the house any windows? – Yes, houses always have windows.

14. Cabbages, carrots, lettuces and onions are vegetables.
15. Lemons are not vegetables.
16. In the farmer's garden there are bushes and trees, but no vegetables.
17. People have fingers, necks, teeth and hair.
18. Has father still got hair? – No, he has no hair now.
19. She has tomatoes and pepper.
20. Where is the farm-labourers' work today? – They have no work today.
21. The rice and onions are in bags.
22. The bags of sugar and flour are in the baker's cart.
23. They (f.) have no chairs. – Why have they (f.) no chairs?
24. In father's shop, there are lettuces and tomatoes, but no pepper.
25. Where are the tomato plants?
26. Have you any sugar? – No, I have no sugar.
27. There are onions and lemons in the shop.
28. Why is there no rice in the house?
29. She has pepper and lettuces.
30. Can you see the roof of the house very well? – No, I see very badly.
31. In the shop-window I can see some coats.
32. There are no plants in the garden.
33. I can see the sugar and lemons, but where are the carrots?
34. Here are the lettuces, but I have no cabbages.
35. I hope you have some rice.
36. There are lettuces, tomatoes, onions and carrots in the shop, but they have no sugar there.
37. I do not believe that they have no sugar. I can see the sugar, there in the bag.
38. The horse belongs to the labourer, but he has no cart.
39. Have you no coat?
40. We have only a bag of lemons.
41. The rye is in the cart.
42. The teacher has no hair.

LESSON 9

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS IN -A

A great number of Latvian feminine nouns end in *-a*; there are points of similarity with the masculine declension in *-s*, but there are also a number of divergences, which should be carefully noted. Feminine nouns in *-a* are declined as follows:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>meit-a</i>	<i>meit-as</i>
Accusative	<i>meit-u</i>	<i>meit-as</i>
Genitive	<i>meit-as</i>	<i>meit-u</i>
Dative	<i>meit-ai</i>	<i>meit-ām</i>
Locative	<i>meit-ā</i>	<i>meit-ās</i>

Meita means 'daughter' or 'farm-girl'.

All the nouns of the following vocabulary are similarly declined.

Vocabulary

<i>roka</i>	hand; arm	<i>cūka</i>	pig
<i>kāja</i>	foot; leg	<i>nauda</i>	money
<i>galva</i>	head	<i>grāmata</i>	book
<i>vista</i>	hen	<i>gaļa</i>	meat
<i>ola</i>	egg	<i>Latvija</i>	Latvia
<i>meita</i>	daughter; farm-girl, servant-girl	<i>Rīga</i>	Riga (the capital of Latvia)

NOTE that the nouns *cūka* and *gaļa* combine to form the compound noun *cūkas gaļa* 'pork'. The form *cūkgaļa* is also found.

Exercise 9a

Decline in the singular and plural: *vista*; *ola*; *logs*; *grāmata*; *kāja*.

Exercise 9b

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es neesmu ubags.*
2. *Es neticu kalpam.*
3. *Es atbildu skolotājam.*
4. *Man nav tomātu.*
5. *Vai man ir cimdi?*

Exercise 9c

Translate into English:

1. Vīram ir meita un dēls.
2. Nauda ir grāmatā.
3. Meitai nav naudas.
4. Cilvēkiem ir rokas un kājas.
5. Veikala logā es redzu cūkas gaļu un olas, bet dārzāju tur nav.
6. Meita tur grāmatu rokās.
7. Vai veikalā ir cūkas gaļa?
8. Latvijā dārzos citronu nav.
9. Latvijas dārzos ir tomāti, salāti un sīpoli, bet piparu tur nav.
10. Vistu olas ir krūmos.
11. Meita ir Rīgā, bet tēva Latvijā nav.
12. Vai vistas pieder saimniekam?
13. Veikalā nav cūkas gaļas; tur ir tikai rīsi, sīpoli, tomāti un arī olas.
14. Vai gaļa ir pagrabā?
15. Cūka pieder draugam.
16. Vai Rīgas veikalos ir cukurs, milti, gaļa un vīns?
17. Draugs palīdz draugam.
18. Krēsls stāv namā.
19. Grāmatās ir stāsti.
20. Viņa netic, ka Rīgā nav citronu un piparu.
21. Mēs ceram, ka saimniekam ir nauda.
22. Cilvēkiem un lopiem ir galvas.
23. Mums ir kāposti un arī cūkas gaļa un cūkas kājas. (i.e., pigs' trotters)
24. Krēsliem un galdiem ir kājas.
25. Vai jums ir nauda rokā?
26. Veikala logā nav rīsu un cukura.
27. Mums bieži nav miltu.
28. Es dzirdu, ka mums šodien nav gaļas.
29. Šeit ir grāmata.

Exercise 9d

1. Chairs and tables have legs.
2. In the shop-windows of Riga there are lettuces, vegetables, onions and tomatoes, but also meat and eggs.
3. The money and the pigs belong to the farmer's daughter.
4. Riga is in Latvia.
5. I hope the farmer has money.

6. She is holding eggs in her hands.
7. Hens are birds, but pigs are animals.
8. In the shop there are pork, rice and pepper.
9. I do not wish to hear the daughter's story.
10. In Latvia there are fields and forests.
11. They always have sugar, rice, lemons and wine.
12. The doctor's son loves the farmer's daughter.
13. He is holding an apple in (his) hand.
14. Books can often help us.
15. There are eggs and meat in the cellar.
16. In the baker's shop there are flour, sugar, lemons and pepper.
17. Have they any pork?
18. The friend of the man is standing there.
19. The money is in the coat.
20. In the cart there are onions, vegetables, tomatoes, lettuces and meat.
21. In the enclosure there are no plants.
22. They are in Riga.
23. We have no meat.
24. She has no pork.
25. Hens have no teeth.
26. Have you any pork? - No, we have only eggs.
27. Where is Riga? - In Latvia.

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT TENSE OF MIXED CONJUGATION VERBS IN -ĒT

The terminations of the imperfect tense correspond quite closely to those of the present tense. Note that the lengthening syllable *-ēj-* is used throughout.

dzirdēt 'to hear'

<i>es dzird-ēj-u</i>	I heard, I was hearing, I used to hear.
<i>tu dzird-ēj-i</i>	you (s.) heard, were hearing, used to hear.
<i>viņš dzird-ēj-a</i>	he heard, was hearing, used to hear.
<i>mēs dzird-ēj-ām</i>	we heard, were hearing, used to hear.
<i>jūs dzird-ēj-āt</i>	you (pl.) heard, were hearing, used to hear.
<i>viņi dzird-ēj-a</i>	they heard, were hearing, used to hear.

This pattern holds good for all Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-ēt*.

NOTE that the lengthening syllable *-ēj-* has always a "closed *ē*". The verb *redzēt*, which in the present tense had an alternation of open *ē* and closed *ē* has only the closed *ē* throughout the imperfect.

Vocabulary

<i>driksēt</i>	to be allowed	<i>ielā</i>	street
<i>jūra</i>	sea	<i>Anglija</i>	England
<i>ļķoda</i>	dish	<i>Krievija</i>	Russia
<i>mala</i>	edge	<i>ļķava</i>	meadow
<i>gulta</i>	bed	<i>jūrmala</i>	sea-side
<i>istaba</i>	room	<i>meļķmala</i>	edge of forest
<i>daudz</i> (+ gen.)	much, many		

NOTE the use of the verb *driksēt*:

Vai tu driksē peldēt ezerā? Are you allowed to swim in the lake? OR: Can you swim in the lake?

Driksēt, like *varēt* and *gribēt*, may be construed with a following infinitive.

In older orthography, the words *jūra* and *jūrmala* were written and pronounced *jūŗa* and *jūŗmala*, that is, with a palatalized *ŗ*. The student should observe the modern practice of writing and pronouncing them with a simple *r*, rather than with the palatalized *ŗ*, but he should nonetheless familiarize himself with the older variants.

The adverb of quantity *daudz* takes the genitive case:

<i>daudz naudas</i>	much money
<i>daudz zirgu</i>	many horses

Exercise 10a

Decline in the singular and plural: *jūra*; *ļķoda*; *apļķs*; *ļķava*; *gulta*; *dāŗzs*.

Exercise 10b

Conjugate:

1. *Es nedriksētēju peldēt ezerā.*
2. *Es redzēju zirgus apļķā.*
3. *Es dzirdēju putnus dāŗzā.*
4. *Es palldzēju draugiem.*
5. *Es neatbildēju skolotājam.*

Exercise 10c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *cerēt*; *varēt*; *gribēt*; *peldēt*; *driksēt*; *mlēt*; *piederēt*; *redzēt*; *ticēt*.

Exercise 10d

Put into the imperfect all the sentences of Exercise 7c which do not contain parts of the verb *būt*.

Exercise 10e

Translate into English:

1. Viņš gribēja peldēt jūrā, bet nedriksēja.
2. Ielas malā es redzēju daudz vistu.
3. Meļķmalā mēs dzirdējam vilkus.
4. Meita nedriksēja turēt olas rokā.
5. Nauda piederēja meitai.
6. Es negribēju peldēt jūrā.
7. Rudzu maiss stāvēja istabā.
8. Vai viŗi ir jūŗmalā?
9. Pļava piederēja tēvam, bet tagad pieder dēlam.
10. Vai meitām vēl ir darbs? – Nē, viŗām šodien darba nav.
11. Vai Latvijā ir daudz cūku? – Jā, un arī daudz lopu un vistu.
12. Skolnieks neatbildēja skolotājam.
13. Viŗa neticēja ubaga stāstam.
14. Ārsti vienmēr palldzēja cilvēkiem.
15. Krievijā ir daudz kalnu un mežu. Anglijā ir daudz pļavu un lauku.
16. Dāŗzs ir ielas malā.
17. Cūkas gaļa ir ļķodā.
18. Istabai ir daudz logu.
19. Dēls nedriksēja atbildēt tēvam.
20. Vai gaļa ir pagrabā?
21. Vai maiznieka dēls vēl ir gultā?
22. Meļķā ir daudz koku, bet meļķmalā ir arī krūmi.
23. Lopi un vistas ir pļavā un dāŗzā.
24. Namā ir daudz istabu.
25. Rļģā ir daudz veikalu.
26. Krievijā ir daudz mežu.
27. Rudzu milti ir ļķodā.

28. Sviesta bļoda ir šeit.
29. Saimnieka ratos nav cūkas gaļas.
30. Grāmatā ir stāsti.
31. Man ir kakls, galva, rokas, kājas, pirksti un mati.
32. Nauda un grāmatas ir istabā.
33. Anglijā un Krievijā ir daudz cilvēku.
34. Vai veikalā ir daudz gaļas?
35. Vai tu redzi stādus dārzā?
36. Gultām, galdiem un krēsliem ir kājas.
37. Lopi stāvēja ezera malā.

Exercise 10f

Put into the present tense those sentences of Exercise 10e which contain verbs in the imperfect.

Exercise 10g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The teacher wanted to help the baker's daughter.
2. The school-boy was unable to answer the teacher's questions.
3. The daughters saw many birds on the edge of the forest, but they did not see many wolves.
4. In England, many fields belong to farm-labourers.
5. The teacher's sons were not allowed to swim in the lake.
6. Why was she not allowed to hear the story?
7. The farmer's house has many windows, but not many rooms.
8. Is the baker still in bed?
9. In Riga there are many shops.
10. They could not see the dishes.
11. The horses were in the rye-field.
12. Why are the maids in the meadow?
13. Did the child not wish to help (his) friend?
14. You still have a lot of work.
15. The pigs were standing in the enclosure.
16. The father has meat but no vegetables; the daughter has vegetables but no meat.
17. The beggar held (his) head in (his) hands.
18. I do not believe that you have a house in the mountains.
19. Has she any pork and eggs?

20. Why has he no money? – He has no work.
21. In Riga, we saw many streets and many shops.
22. People always have hands, feet and fingers, but they do not always have hair.
23. The men were standing on the edge of the street.
24. Is Riga on the sea-coast?
25. The rice and onions are in dishes.
26. The pupil has no books; he cannot answer questions.
27. The money is in father's coat.
28. The children were swimming in the sea.
29. He was not allowed to help the doctor's daughter.
30. The man's house is on the edge of the street.
31. Are there many mountains in Latvia? – No, but there are many mountains in Russia.
32. The table is in the cellar, and the chairs are in the garden.
33. Are there many trees in the farmer's meadow?
34. Where are the books? They are in father's room.
35. We are not allowed to swim in the sea.
36. The farm-worker was standing on the edge of the enclosure.
37. There are many windows in the room.
38. Where is the doctor's son? Is he in Latvia? – No, he is in England.
39. The pig's trotters belonged to the farmer.
40. There is no pork in the shop.
41. The labourer is not in the meadow; he is still in bed.
42. Where is the bed? – In the child's room.
43. Why is the cheese in the butter-dish?
44. Many trees stood on the edge of the garden.
45. The doctor is now in Russia, and the teacher is in England.
46. Why are the dishes in the cellar?
47. We saw a bag on the side of the road.
48. There are many meadows in Russia.
49. The wine is in the farmer's cellar.
50. We often used to swim in the ocean.
51. The gloves belong to the baker's daughter.
52. There are no cabbages and carrots in the shop, only lettuces and tomatoes.
53. The pupils do not always answer the teacher's questions well; often they answer very badly.
54. We have no sugar, only lemons.

LESSON 11

MIXED CONJUGATION VERBS IN *IT*: PRESENT
AND IMPERFECTIMPERFECT TENSE OF *BŪT**darīt* 'to do'

Present Tense

<i>es dar-u</i> I do, etc.	<i>mēs dar-ām</i>
<i>tu dar-i</i>	<i>jūs dar-āt</i>
<i>viņš dar-a</i>	<i>viņi dar-a</i>

Imperfect Tense

<i>es dar-lj-u</i> I did, etc.	<i>mēs dar-lj-ām</i>
<i>tu dar-lj-i</i>	<i>jūs dar-lj-āt</i>
<i>viņš dar-lj-a</i>	<i>viņi dar-lj-a</i>

NOTE that mixed verbs in *-īt* are conjugated like mixed verbs in *-ēt*, except that

- (1) an *-a* is added to the third person singular and plural of the present tense;
- (2) the first and second persons plural of the present tense have *-ām*, *-āt* where the *-ēt* verbs have *-am*, *-at*;
- (3) the lengthening syllable in the imperfect is *-lj-* instead of *-ēj-*: in all mixed conjugation verbs the characteristic vowel of the infinitive reappears as the characteristic vowel of the imperfect.

IMPERFECT TENSE OF *BŪT*

The verb *būt* is irregular in the imperfect as well as in the present. The imperfect is conjugated as follows:

<i>es bij-u</i> I was, etc.	<i>mēs bij-ām</i>
<i>tu bij-i</i>	<i>jūs bij-āt</i>
<i>viņš bij-a</i>	<i>viņi bij-a</i>

Vocabulary

<i>lasīt</i>	to read	<i>stāstīt</i>	to recount, to tell
<i>darīt</i>	to do	<i>stādīt</i>	to plant, to place
<i>rakstīt</i>	to write	<i>kā</i>	how
<i>pelnīt</i>	to earn	<i>kas</i>	who, what (Nom.)
<i>tīrīt</i>	to clean	<i>ko</i>	whom, what (Acc.)
<i>prasīt</i>	to ask	<i>tāpēc ka</i>	because

All verbs in this list are conjugated like *darīt*.

NOTE that *prasīt* and *stāstīt* are construed with the dative of the person.

The constructions with *prasīt* should be carefully noted:

- (1) *Es prasu naudu*. 'I ask for money.'
- (2) *Es prasu saimniekam naudu*. 'I ask the farmer for money.'
(The dative usually precedes the accusative.)
- (3) *Es prasīju, kur viņš bija*. 'I asked where he was'.

The words *kas* and *ko*, besides translating the English 'who', 'whom', 'which', also translate the English 'what' in the sense of 'that which'.

Viņa dara, ko viņa grib. She does what she likes.

Exercise 11a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Es lasu grāmatu</i> . | 5. <i>Es nestāstu stāstus</i> . |
| 2. <i>Es tīru namu</i> . | 6. <i>Es netīcu meitām</i> . |
| 3. <i>Es prasu, kur ir zirgi</i> . | 7. <i>Man nav sviesta</i> . |
| 4. <i>Ko es daru?</i> | 8. <i>Vai man nav sīpolu?</i> |

Exercise 11b

Decline in the singular and plural: *ielā; pļava; jūra; pagrabs; bļoda*.

Exercise 11c

Translate into Latvian:

1. She has no plants.
2. We have no vegetables.
3. Haven't you a chair?
4. I have no horses.
5. You have no fields.
6. He has no table.
7. The house has no roof.
8. She has no wine.
9. We haven't got a cellar.
10. Have you no bags?
11. They (m.) have no apples.

12. There are no wolves in the forest.
13. There are no animals in the enclosure.
14. You have no hair.
15. Have they (f.) any skirts?
16. He hasn't got a cart.
17. We have no cheese.
18. You have no milk.
19. They (f.) have no gloves.
20. They (m.) have no carrots.
21. I have no butter.
22. You often have no flour.
23. She has no sugar.
24. There are no lemons in the shop.
25. She has no tomatoes and rice.
26. I hope you have lettuces and pepper.

Exercise 11d

Translate into English:

1. Kāpēc tu nelasi grāmatu?
2. Ko jūs darāt?
3. Vai meita tīra istabu?
4. Skolotājs prasīja, kur ir Rīga, un skolnieks atbildēja, ka Rīga ir Latvijā.
5. Kalpi pelna naudu.
6. Kas ir bļodā? – Bļodā ir gaļa.
7. Kāpēc tu nebiji jūrmalā? – Tāpēc, ka es nedrīkstu peldēt jūrā.
8. Ko viņi stāstīja?
9. Skolnieks vēl rakstīja ļoti slikti, bet viņš lasīja labi.
10. Kāpēc tu netici stāstam, ko es stāstīju?
11. Viņas tagad tīra istabas.
12. Vai jūs dzirdējāt, ko viņš stāstīja?
13. Es prasīju, ko tu dari; kāpēc tu neatbildi?
14. Ubags prasīja vīram naudu.
15. Mēs stādījām kokus ielas malā.
16. Bērni nevar darīt, ko mēs darām.
17. Viņš tēvam nerakstīja.
18. Es palīdzu ubagiem, tāpēc ka viņiem nav naudas.
19. Es nevaru pelnīt naudu, tāpēc ka man nav darba.
20. Es varu lasīt, ko es gribu.
21. Kā tu drīksti tēvam stāstīt, ka es biju jūrmalā?
22. Kalps nelasīja grāmatu.

23. Tagad mēs vēl varam prasīt saimniekam naudu.
24. Mēs peldējām jūrā.
25. Vai tu dzirdēji putnus?
26. Pļava bija mežmalā.
27. Mēs bijām ielas malā.
28. Vai cūkas un vistas šodien bija pļavā?
29. Šeit tu nevari stādīt kokus.
30. Vai tur bija daudz olu?
31. Kas tur peld jūrā?
32. Cūkas gaļa nebija bļodā.
33. Ko jūs redzējāt pļavā?
34. Kāpēc jūs nebijāt šeit? – Tāpēc, ka es biju mežmalā.
35. Kā mēs varam palīdzēt tēvam?
36. Kas kalpam bija rokā?
37. Kāpēc tu negribi būt jūrmalā? – Tāpēc, ka tur ir daudz cilvēku.

Exercise 11e

Translate into Latvian:

1. They (f.) were cleaning the rooms.
2. People earn money.
3. Farm-labourers do not earn much money.
4. Pigs are not allowed to be in the meadow.
5. There were many trees on the roadside.
6. The children were not allowed to read (their) father's books.
7. What are they doing?
8. Why has the daughter no books?
9. In the dish there were hens' eggs.
10. Beggars earn no money; they ask people for money.
11. What did she ask for?
12. Did they clean the streets?
13. The girls are cleaning the rooms today.
14. Why don't you reply? – Because I did not hear what you told me.
15. What did he tell (his) father?
16. The pupils were reading and writing.
17. Did the house stand on the beach? – No, it was on the edge of the forest.
18. What are they doing? – They are planting bushes on the edge of the forest.
19. In the room stood a bed.
20. The teacher is writing, but what are the pupils doing?
21. The pork was in the dish.

22. He did not believe what we told him.
23. The pupil did not want to do what the teacher asked.
24. Why doesn't she write to (her) father?
25. The girls were reading books on the edge of the meadow.
26. We were not planting cabbages; we were planting onions.
27. I asked him what he used to earn in England.
28. The farmer asked the girl why she was planting bushes in the garden.
29. Who told you that I was still in Russia?
30. Who wants to have a swim in the sea today?
31. The eggs, meat and rye belong to the doctor.
32. In Russia and Latvia there are many lakes.
33. How can a beggar earn money? – He can't.
34. How can I do what you ask?
35. How was the baker's son able to help you?
36. Who are you? – I am a friend.
37. There is a lake in Riga.

LESSON 12

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS *IET* AND *DOT**iet* 'to go'

Present

<i>es ej-u</i>	I go, etc.
<i>tu ej</i>	you go, etc.
<i>viņš iet</i>	he goes, etc.
<i>mēs ej-am</i>	we go, etc.
<i>jūs ej-at</i>	you go, etc.
<i>viņi iet</i>	they go, etc.

<i>es gāj-u</i>	
<i>tu gāj-i</i>	
<i>viņš gāj-a</i>	
<i>mēs gāj-ām</i>	
<i>jūs gāj-āt</i>	
<i>viņi gāj-a</i>	

Imperfect

I went, etc.
you went, etc.
he went, etc.
we went, etc.
you went, etc.
they went, etc.

dot 'to give'

Present

<i>es dod-u</i>	I give, etc.
<i>tu dod</i>	you give, etc.
<i>viņš dod</i>	he gives, etc.
<i>mēs dod-am</i>	we give, etc.
<i>jūs dod-at</i>	you give, etc.
<i>viņi dod</i>	they give, etc.

<i>es dēv-u</i>	
<i>tu dēv-i</i>	
<i>viņš dēv-a</i>	
<i>mēs dēv-ām</i>	
<i>jūs dēv-āt</i>	
<i>viņi dēv-a</i>	

Imperfect

I gave, etc.
you gave, etc.
he gave, etc.
we gave, etc.
you gave, etc.
they gave, etc.

Except for the second person singular of the present tense, the endings are the same as those already learnt for Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-ēt*; it is the stem which presents the irregularity.

Like *iet* is conjugated *aiziet* 'to go away', and like *dot* are conjugated *atdot* 'to give back, to give away'; *piedot* 'to forgive'; and *iedot* 'to give'.

Vocabulary

<i>iet</i>	to go	<i>iedot</i>	to give
<i>aiziet</i>	to go away	<i>uzdevums</i>	task, duty, written exercise. In the plural, homework.
<i>dot</i>	to give	<i>miesnieks</i>	butcher
<i>piedot</i>	to forgive	<i>skola</i>	school
<i>piedodiet!</i>	excuse me!	<i>kad</i>	when
<i>atdot</i>	to give away, give back	<i>tad</i>	then

NOTES: The verb *piedot* governs the dative, e.g., *Es piedevu ubagam*. 'I forgave the beggar.'

In *atdot*, the *t* preceding the *d* is voiced.

The difference between *dot* and *iedot* is primarily one of aspect, the former being imperfective, the latter perfective. The perfective form will be found where the action is envisaged as being completed (in the past, present or future), whereas the imperfective will be found where an end is not envisaged to the action. See lessons 51 and 136. Both *dot* and *iedot*, as well as *atdot*, require the dative of the person to whom something is given.

Iet normally implies 'going on foot'.

Exercise 12a

Decline in singular and plural: *skola*; *bjoda*; *iela*.

Exercise 12b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *rakstīt*; *iet*; *pelnīt*; *atdot*; *piuslīt*; *varēt*; *aiziet*; *dot*; *būt*.

Exercise 12c

Conjugate:

1. *Man nav viņa pagrabā.*
2. *Es viņai nerakstīju.*
3. *Man nebija naudas.*
4. *Ko es šodien daru?*
5. *Es iedevu ubagam naudu.*
6. *Es aizgāju.*

Exercise 12d

Translate into English:

1. Saimnieka bērni iet skolā.
2. Kur viņi šodien aizgāja?
3. Vai jūs iedevāt miesniekam bļodu?
4. Kāpēc jūs iedevāt ubagam naudu?
5. Šodien skolotājs nedod skolniekiem uzdevumus.
6. Skolnieku uzdevums ir atbildēt skolotājam.
7. Piedodiet, bet mēs šodien nevaram dot ārstam naudu.
8. Vai jūs ejat skolā?
9. Kad viņš atdeva saimniekam ratus? – Kad saimnieks viņam prasīja.
10. Kad skolotājs prasa, mēs atbildam.
11. Tēvs nepiedod dēlam.
12. Vai jūs atdevāt miesniekam gaļas bļodas?
13. Piedodiet, kāpēc jūs man neatbildat?
14. Saimnieks vēl ir rudzu laukā.
15. Kur tu ej?
16. Skolotājs piedeva skolniekam, kad viņš atdeva draugam viņa grāmatu.
17. Ārsts nedrīkstēja atbildēt bērnam. (*Drīkstēt* also means *to dare*.)
18. Miesnieks iedeva kalpam cūkas gaļu.
19. Viņi vēl gāja skolā.
20. Vai es drīkstu prasīt, kur viņa tagad ir?
21. Vai viņa aizgāja peldēt jūrā?
22. Saimnieks kalpiem deva daudz darba.
23. Cilvēks bieži nepiedod cilvēkam.
24. Saimnieks negrib dot zirgu.
25. Ak, tēvs negrib piedot dēlam!
26. Vai bērniem ir uzdevumi? – Nē, bērniem šodien nav uzdevumu.
27. Kāpēc viņš netur saimnieka zirgu?

28. Kāpēc viņš aizstāv maiznieku? – Tāpēc, ka maiznieks viņam palīdzēja.
29. Meitas negribēja tīrīt namu.
30. Kas tev stāstīja, ka kalpi tīra pagrabu?
31. Skolotājs man stāstīja, ka viņš šeit daudz nepelna.
32. Ko tu dari? – Es lasu. – Ko tu lasi? – Grāmatu.
33. Ko viņš darīja?
34. Vai Anglijā un Krievijā ir pļavas?
35. Meitas istabā ir gulta.
36. Vai tu man piedod? – Jā, es tev piedodu.

Exercise 12e

Translate into Latvian:

1. I hope the teacher forgave the school-boy.
2. Do the children go to school?
3. The butcher returned the money to the farmer.
4. When did you give her the eggs? – When she left.
5. Can he give father any work?
6. The children had a lot of homework.
7. I gave you the money when you returned the cart.
8. Who gave the beggar money?
9. Excuse me, is the butcher in the shop?
10. The father forgave (his) children.
11. You may go when you wish.
12. Did she return the butcher's dish?
13. The girl gave cabbages to the pigs.
14. They (f.) are going to school.
15. He went off to the enclosure.
16. The butcher has meat and eggs in the shop.
17. I could not answer the teacher's question.
18. The exercise was in the book.
19. Why aren't you going to school? – Because father has no money.
20. I do not wish to answer the question.
21. Do you forgive her?
22. We gave the rye to the hens.
23. I gave the farm-labourer a coat.
24. He returned the money.
25. Who gave vegetables to the animals?
26. Why didn't he go away? – Because the farmer forgave him.
27. How did the pupils answer the questions today?
28. He did not do what you asked.

29. Why do you not wish to help him?
 30. The girls cleaned the windows, but they did not clean the tables.
 31. The doctor was telling me that he earned a lot of money in England.
 32. The farmer's daughter often reads in bed.
 33. Do the farmers in England plant rice?
 34. Can I plant some bushes on the edge of the garden?
 35. The doctor's gloves were not in the room.
 36. We do not see many carts in the streets of Riga now.
 37. How can I help you?

LESSON 13

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

There are in Latvian two types of possessive adjective. The first type, which is represented by 'my', 'your' (s.), and 'one's own', has a declension, and agrees with the nouns it qualifies in number, gender and case. The declension of these possessive adjectives is identical with that of masculine nouns in -s and feminine nouns in -a, as the following paradigm with *mans*, *mana* 'my' will show.

MASCULINE

Singular

Plural

Nom.	<i>man-s dārz-s</i> 'my garden'	<i>man-i dārz-i</i> 'my gardens'
Acc.	<i>man-u dārz-u</i>	<i>man-us dārz-us</i>
Gen.	<i>man-a dārz-a</i>	<i>man-u dārz-u</i>
Dat.	<i>man-am dārz-am</i>	<i>man-iem dārz-iem</i>
Loc.	<i>man-ā dārz-ā</i>	<i>man-os dārz-os</i>

FEMININE

Singular

Plural

Nom.	<i>man-a grāmat-a</i> 'my book'	<i>man-as grāmat-as</i> 'my books'
Acc.	<i>man-u grāmat-u</i>	<i>man-as grāmat-as</i>
Gen.	<i>man-as grāmat-as</i>	<i>man-u grāmat-u</i>
Dat.	<i>man-ai grāmat-ai</i>	<i>man-ām grāmat-ām</i>
Loc.	<i>man-ā grāmat-ā</i>	<i>man-ās grāmat-ās</i>

Similarly declined are *tavs*, *tava* 'your' (s.) and *savs*, *sava* 'one's own'.

The other possessive adjectives, i.e., 'his', 'her', 'our', 'your' (pl.) and 'their' are completely indeclinable, cf. the following paradigm with *mūsu* 'our'. These indeclinable forms are in fact the genitive forms of the personal pronouns.

MASCULINE

Singular

Plural

Nom.	<i>mūsu dārzs</i> 'our garden'	<i>mūsu dārzi</i> 'our gardens'
Acc.	<i>mūsu dārzu</i>	<i>mūsu dārzus</i>
Gen.	<i>mūsu dārza</i>	<i>mūsu dārzu</i>
Dat.	<i>mūsu dārzam</i>	<i>mūsu dārziem</i>
Loc.	<i>mūsu dārzā</i>	<i>mūsu dārzos</i>

FEMININE

Singular

Plural

Nom.	<i>mūsu grāmata</i> 'our book'	<i>mūsu grāmatas</i> 'our books'
Acc.	<i>mūsu grāmatu</i>	<i>mūsu grāmatas</i>
Gen.	<i>mūsu grāmatas</i>	<i>mūsu grāmatu</i>
Dat.	<i>mūsu grāmatai</i>	<i>mūsu grāmatām</i>
Loc.	<i>mūsu grāmatā</i>	<i>mūsu grāmatās</i>

The possessive adjectives *jūsu* 'your' (pl.), *viņa* 'his', *viņas* 'her', and *viņu* 'their' (m. & f.) are invariable like *mūsu*.

Vocabulary

<i>mans</i> (m.), <i>mana</i> (f.) my	<i>jūsu</i> (invariable) your (pl.)
<i>tavs</i> (m.), <i>tava</i> (f.) your (s.)	<i>viņu</i> (invariable) their (m. & f.)
<i>savs</i> (m.), <i>sava</i> (f.) one's own	<i>lapa</i> leaf, sheet (of paper)
<i>viņa</i> (invariable) his	<i>mašīna</i> car
<i>viņas</i> (invariable) her	<i>papīrs</i> paper
<i>mūsu</i> (invariable) our	<i>kā jums iet?</i> how are you?

NOTES: In the Masculine Nominative Singular only, *tavs* and *savs* are pronounced as if they were *taus*, *saus*.

Kā jums iet? literally translated, means 'How goes it to you?'

Savs must be used in any case where the possessive adjective refers to the subject of the clause, cf.:

Es redzu tavu zirgu.

I see your horse.

Tu redzi manu zirgu.

You see my horse.

BUT:

Es redzu savu zirgu.

I see my horse.

Tu redzi savu zirgu.

You see your horse.

Similarly,

Mēs redzam jūsu zirgus.

We see your horses.

Jūs redzat mūsu zirgus.

You see our horses.

BUT:

Mēs redzam savus zirgus.

We see our horses.

Jūs redzat savus zirgus.

You see your horses.

Mašīna, meaning 'car', is somewhat colloquial; many prefer the less ambiguous *automašīna*.

Exercise 13a

Decline in the singular and plural: *my house; your(s.) street; his car; your (pl.) bag.*

Exercise 13b

Conjugate:

1. *Kur ir mana mašīna?*
2. *Es palīdzēju viņa tēvam.*
3. *Es redzēju savus dēlus laukos.*
4. *Es lasu viņas grāmatu.*
5. *Vai es nebiju veikalā?*

Exercise 13c

Translate into English:

1. Vai mans tēvs bija šeit? – Jā, viņš bija šeit, bet tagad viņš ir sava drauga namā.
2. Viņš iedeva savam dēlam naudu.
3. Vai tava drauga šeit nav?
4. Manā namā nav viņa.
5. Vai tavai meitai ir skolas grāmatas?
6. Kur ir mana mašīna? – Jūsu mašīna stāv ielas malā.
7. Tavos ratos nav rudzu.
8. Saimnieks iedeva savam zirgam cukuru.
9. Mēs tagad esam savā namā.
10. Manām meitām un taviem dēliem ir daudz draugu.
11. Viņa mašīna stāv jūrmalā.

12. Viņas draugi nav mani draugi.
13. Viņu tēvs ir Latvijā.
14. Mūsu zirgi šodien nav aplokā.
15. Kā jums iet? – Ļoti labi, un jums?
16. Šeit ir papīra lapa.
17. Galdā bija tikai gaļa un piens.
18. Anglijā ir daudz lapu koku, bet Krievijā nav daudz.
19. Vai viņu tēvs ir ārsts?
20. Kokiem un krūmiem tagad nav lapu.
21. Kur ir mūsu āboli? – Jūsu āboli ir papīra maisā.
22. Kur ir meitas grāmata?
23. Viņa svārki ir istabā.
24. Mūsu istabā ir galdi un krēsli.
25. Viņas vistas ir aplokā.
26. Jūsu dēls šodien nebija skolā.
27. Viņu dārzā ir daudz koku.
28. Vai viņa rati ir šeit?
29. Viņas tēvam nav ābolu dārzā.
30. Kur ir viņu svārki?
31. Kāpēc tu aizgāji, kad es tev prasīju naudu?
32. Miesnieks negrib atdot maizniekam maisus.
33. Kā jums iet, mani draugi? – Ļoti labi, un tev?
34. Kā miesniekam gāja?
35. Kur tu ej? – Tu nedrīksti prasīt, kur es eju.
36. Vai es jums atdevu grāmatas?
37. Ko tu darīji? – Es stādīju dārzā kāpostus.
38. Mēs gājām peldēt ezerā.
39. Mēs viņiem nepiedevām.
40. Piedodiet, kur ir maiznieka veikals?
41. Vai jūs nedodat naudu? – Nē, es nedodu naudu.
42. Vai jūs pelnāt daudz naudas?
43. Skolotājs nepiedeva skolniekiem.
44. Viņš vienmēr stāsta, ko viņš lasa.
45. Kā viņam iet? Kā viņai iet?

Exercise 13d

Translate into Latvian:

1. His friends are also our friends.
2. Has your father any horses?
3. Are there many pupils at your school?

4. Her books are in my car.
5. Have your children any apples?
6. Their skirts are in my room.
7. We forgive our children.
8. Your daughter's hens are in our garden.
9. The tree has no leaves.
10. Our son is still in England.
11. I cannot answer your question.
12. How are you? – Very well, and you?
13. I see my friend's car.
14. My son has no car.
15. Who was in our house today?
16. She gave her children apples.
17. Is the coat in his cart?
18. Has her father any cattle? (farm-animals)
19. There are sheets of paper in his cart.
20. In the house there were tables and chairs.
21. Are the children in your house?
22. Oh, the horses are in your garden!
23. There is no wine in his cellar.
24. Her book is in the farmer's room.
25. The cabbages are in the cart.
26. The trees have no leaves now.
27. How is she?
28. How are they (m.)?
29. How are they (f.)?
30. Does your son still go to school?
31. The baker's daughters were cleaning the shop today.
32. May I ask you why you did not return my car?
33. The plant had many leaves.
34. She does not believe that there are wolves in the forest.
35. The pork belongs to the butcher, but the flour belongs to the baker.
36. We often used to plant tomatoes in our garden.
37. She often has cheese, butter and milk, but she often has no lemons, lettuces and pepper.
38. The beggar has not got many teeth.
39. We went off for a swim in the sea.
40. Their gloves are in the doctor's car.
41. Why do you not do what I ask?
42. On the edge of the forest there is a lake; we often go there.
43. She does not write to us very often.
44. We always give beggars meat, because we do not wish to give them money.

45. She was holding a bird in her hand.
46. Can you see the roof of the butcher's shop?
47. Can the farmer give me work? – No, he cannot give you any work.
48. I did not forgive him, because he did not forgive me.
49. Where is your homework?
50. I do not wish to hear your story.
51. Why did he not give her back the dish?
52. How do you clean your car?
53. He earned a lot of money in Riga.
54. The doctor had a house in Riga, where he used to write his books.
55. My daughter writes very badly, but she reads very well.
56. He is still only a child.

LESSON 14

THE INDEFINITE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

Although Latvian has no article, and cannot distinguish between 'a man' and 'the man', it can make this type of distinction when an adjective accompanies the noun: 'a good man' can and must be distinguished from 'the good man'.

This distinction is achieved by using different forms of the adjective. Adjectives have, in Latvian, two types of declension: the INDEFINITE declension, which is used to translate phrases of the type 'a good man', and the DEFINITE declension, which is used to translate phrases of the type 'the good man'.

We are concerned at this stage only with the Indefinite declension, which is inflected in precisely the same way as the possessive adjectives *mans*, *tavs*, *šaus*, as can be seen from the paradigm below. Adjectives agree with their nouns in number, gender and case, whether used attributively or predicatively.

labs 'good'

MASCULINE

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	<i>lab-s</i>	<i>vīr-s</i>	<i>lab-i</i>	<i>vīr-i</i>
Acc.	<i>lab-u</i>	<i>vīr-u</i>	<i>lab-us</i>	<i>vīr-us</i>
Gen.	<i>lab-a</i>	<i>vīr-a</i>	<i>lab-u</i>	<i>vīr-u</i>
Dat.	<i>lab-am</i>	<i>vīr-am</i>	<i>lab-iem</i>	<i>vīr-iem</i>
Loc.	<i>lab-ā</i>	<i>vīr-ā</i>	<i>lab-os</i>	<i>vīr-os</i>

FEMININE

Singular

Plural

Nom.	<i>lab-a pļav-a</i> 'a good meadow'	<i>lab-as pļav-as</i> 'good meadows'
Acc.	<i>lab-u pļav-u</i>	<i>lab-as pļav-as</i>
Gen.	<i>lab-as pļav-as</i>	<i>lab-u pļav-u</i>
Dat.	<i>lab-ai pļav-ai</i>	<i>lab-ām pļav-ām</i>
Loc.	<i>lab-ā pļav-ā</i>	<i>lab-ās pļav-ās</i>

All the adjectives in the following vocabulary are declined in exactly the same way as *labs, laba*.

Vocabulary

<i>labs</i> (m.)	<i>laba</i> (f.)	good	<i>skaists -a</i>	beautiful
<i>slikts -a</i>		bad	<i>kluss -a</i>	quiet
<i>liels -a</i>		big	<i>vecs -a</i>	old
<i>mazs -a</i>		small	<i>jauns -a</i>	new; young
<i>balts -a</i>		white	<i>interesants -a</i>	interesting
<i>mēlns -a</i>		black	<i>viss -a</i>	all; whole

NOTES: Note the devoicing of *b* to *p* and *z* to *s* in the forms *labs* and *mazs*.

The adjective *viss* has no Definite declension: it is used, even in its indefinite form, to translate phrases including the word 'the'. Cf.

all books	<i>visas grāmatas</i>
all the books	<i>visas grāmatas</i>

Exercise 14a

Decline in the singular and plural: *kluss mežs; mazs bērns; interesanta grāmata; vecs veikals; liela kāja*.

Exercise 14b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Kur es eju?*
2. *Es neesmu jauns cilvēks.*
3. *Es varu redzēt skaistu namu.*

4. *Es stādu mazus stādus.*
5. *Kur ir mana bļoda?*
6. *Es lasu interesantu grāmatu.*
7. *Es viņam iedodu visu savu naudu.*

Exercise 14c

Translate into Latvian:

1. On the table were small lemons and large tomatoes.
2. Do the cabbages and carrots belong to you?
3. She asked where the sugar and pepper were.
4. The pork is bad, but the lettuce is good.
5. There are always a lot of people at the sea-side.
6. Do you not want to help her?
7. She has a big head, but a beautiful neck.
8. He answered that he had no apples and no flour.
9. Her hands and fingers are very beautiful.
10. Where is your coat? – In the bushes.
11. Did the girls clean the house? – Yes, they were here today, and they cleaned the whole house.
12. We saw the sea and the mountains.
13. Why did you defend the labourer? – Because he is a good man.
14. I hope that your horses are not in our meadow.

Exercise 14d

Translate into English:

1. *Mūsu saimniekam ir skaista meita.*
2. *Vai jūsu dēlam ir mazi bērni?*
3. *Anglijā ir skaisti kalni.*
4. *Mums ir daudz lielu namu.*
5. *Visas jūsu meitas ir skaistas, mans draugs!*
6. *Vai viņa zirgs ir balts?*
7. *Visi redzēja viņu bērnu.*
8. *Rīgā ir daudz jaunu veikalu un vecu namu.*
9. *Ko dara labi dēli?*
10. *Mežā ir ļoti veci koki.*
11. *Es redzēju savus draugus jūsu mašīnā.*
12. *Vai taviem bērniem ir labas grāmatas?*

13. Saimniekiem bieži ir daudz naudas.
14. Mēs lasām vecu grāmatu, kas ir ļoti interesanta.
15. Jūsu draugs ir ļoti interesants cilvēks.
16. Viņas vīram ir melni mati.
17. Manās istabās ir daudz lielu krēslu.
18. Krievijā ir daudz ļoti vecu cilvēku.
19. Okeans šodien ir kluss.
20. Vai maiznieka meita nav skaista?
21. Gaļa, ko mēs turējam pagrabā, vēl ir laba.
22. Mēs mīlam jaunus cilvēkus.
23. Viņš iedeva savam dēlam skaistu, jaunu mašīnu.
24. Saimniekam ir lieli, melni rati.
25. Kas nemīl mazus bērnus, ir slikts cilvēks.
26. Tavs jautājums ir interesants, bet nav jauns.
27. Viņas vīrs ir labs, kluss cilvēks.
28. Viss nama jumts bija balts.
29. Saimniekam ir balti un melni zirgi aplokā.
30. Manam draugam ir melni mati.
31. Mūsu istaba ir maza un klusa.
32. Viņas rokas ir baltas.
33. Ak, tavam dēlam ir daudz sliktu draugu!
34. Kā jums iet? – Labi! – Un jūsu vīram?
35. Viņš grib iet skolā.
36. Kad viņš tev iedeva naudu?
37. Maiznieks deva ubagam naudu.
38. Es nevaru atdot tavu naudu.
39. Vai jums ir dārzāji? – Man ir tikai sīpoli un salāti.
40. Kāpēc miesnieks bija manā pļavā?
41. Es piedodu tikai saviem draugiem.
42. Kur ir miesnieka veikals?
43. Krievijā ir lieli ezeri.

Exercise 14e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Her husband has a beautiful big house.
2. There are some black birds in the garden.
3. The doctor's question was very interesting.
4. An old person can tell many interesting stories.
5. Their husbands are young men. (Use *cilvēki*.)
6. He has bad teeth.

7. We have a big and silent car.
8. Our father is a good man.
9. Her house has a white roof.
10. Old beggars are standing in the street.
11. The whole forest was silent.
12. Did you see a small, black glove in our car?
13. There was a large black bird on the roof.
14. Their father is a little old man.
15. Your daughter has beautiful black hair.
16. I could see my whole garden.
17. The farmer has a lovely young daughter.
18. In our house there are large windows.
19. Hens' eggs are white.
20. Is your table very small?
21. Where are you going now, my friend?
22. Don't you believe your son?
23. Excuse me, have you a sheet of paper?
24. The butcher's son did not go to school today.
25. Your daughter is still very young.
26. He gave me some money.
27. How are you? – Well! And you?
28. We are not allowed to write badly in school.
29. Did he return the farmer's horse and cart?
30. All the bags of rye were in the cart.
31. The house was quiet when the children left.
32. The teacher did not wish to forgive the pupils.
33. Have you any good cheese? – No, but I have some old wine in the cellar.
34. Old trees have many leaves.
35. His vegetables are in a small white dish.
36. The butter in the shop was very bad.
37. Is your work very interesting?
38. Why did the farmer want to plant rice in his fields?
39. The meadows of Latvia are very beautiful.
40. He is a good doctor, but a bad father.
41. On the edge of the road, in a quiet forest, there was a beautiful little lake.
42. Was the child's homework good today?
43. Our teacher is not very interesting. – Then he is a bad teacher.
44. We were planting white onions in the garden.
45. He swims well, but his friend swims badly.
46. Where is the forest? – There, on the mountain.

LESSON 15

FULL DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

We already know the Nominative and Dative forms of the personal pronouns. The paradigms given below complete these declensions.

Singular				
Nom.	<i>es</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>viņš</i>	<i>viņa</i>
Acc.	<i>mani</i>	<i>tevi</i>	<i>viņu</i>	<i>viņu</i>
Gen.	<i>manis</i>	<i>tevis</i>	<i>viņa</i>	<i>viņas</i>
Dat.	<i>man</i>	<i>tev</i>	<i>viņam</i>	<i>viņai</i>
Loc.	<i>manī</i>	<i>tevl</i>	<i>viņā</i>	<i>viņā</i>

Plural				
Nom.	<i>mēs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>viņi</i>	<i>viņas</i>
Acc.	<i>mūs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>viņus</i>	<i>viņas</i>
Gen.	<i>mūsu</i>	<i>jūsu</i>	<i>viņu</i>	<i>viņu</i>
Dat.	<i>mums</i>	<i>jums</i>	<i>viņiem</i>	<i>viņām</i>
Loc.	<i>mūsos</i>	<i>jūsos</i>	<i>viņos</i>	<i>viņās</i>

There also exists a reflexive pronoun, which has the same form for singular and plural, and for all persons alike: it has no nominative case.

Nom.	—
Acc.	<i>sevi</i>
Gen.	<i>sevis</i>
Dat.	<i>sev</i>
Loc.	<i>sevl</i>

The reflexive pronoun is used in the same way as the reflexive possessive adjective, *savs*, cf.

You are writing to me. *Tu man raksti.*
I am writing to you. *Es tev rakstu.*

BUT:

I am writing to myself. *Es sev rakstu.*
You are writing to yourself. *Tu sev raksti.*
You are writing to yourselves. *Jūs sev rakstāt.*

NOTE: Pronouns in the accusative or dative usually precede the verb, although they may follow it if they are to be emphasized:

Es viņam ticu. I believe him.
Es ticu viņam. I believe *him* (and not *you!*).

Vocabulary

<i>priecīgs -a</i>	happy, glad	<i>šorīt</i>	this morning
<i>laimīgs -a</i>	fortunate, happy	<i>pagalms</i>	yard
<i>bēdīgs -a</i>	sad	<i>pie mums</i>	to our house, at our house
<i>vakar</i>	yesterday	<i>pie jums</i>	to your house, at your house
<i>aizvakar</i>	the day before yesterday		

Remember to devoice the *g* in the Masc. Nom. Sing. of *laimīgs*, *bēdīgs* and *priecīgs*.

Exercise 15a

Conjugate in present and imperfect:

1. *Tēvs mani redz.*
2. *Ārsta dēls man netic.*
3. *Kur ir mana grāmata?*
4. *Es lasu ļoti slikti.*
5. *Es šorīt aizeju.*
6. *Viņš man atdod naudu.*
7. *Es tevi mīlu.* (Omit the *jūs* form.)
8. *Es eju pie jums.* (Omit the *tu* form.)

Exercise 15b

Decline in the singular and plural: *es*; *tu*; *viņš*; *viņa*; *aploks*; *mašīna*.

Exercise 15c

Translate into Latvian:

1. My onions; your lettuce; his rice; her vegetables; our pepper; your pork; their meat.
2. I can see the whole field.

3. The teacher's work-table is very large.
4. There are carrots, cabbages and lemons in the shop-windows of Riga.
5. I am not allowed to swim in the sea.
6. I hope there is some old wine in your cellar.
7. There are no plants in the enclosure.
8. The labourers were planting bushes on the edge of the forest.
9. Why do you not answer my question?
10. The pupil was holding his book in his hand.
11. The school-roof was white.
12. The cheese was in a small white dish, the butter in a large black dish.
13. Do hens have teeth?
14. What did you do at the seaside yesterday?
15. An old beggar was standing on the edge of the field.
16. Do people earn a lot of money in England?
17. Did he return your chair to you?
18. Oceans are large, but seas are small.

Exercise 15d

Translate into English:

1. Vai ārsts vakar bija pie jums?
2. Vakars viņa bija bēdīga, bet šorīt viņa ir ļoti priecīga.
3. Mūsu dēls nav pie mums; viņš tagad ir savā namā.
4. Viņš viņu mīl, bet viņa viņu nemīl.
5. Kāpēc jūs negribat mūs aizstāvēt?
6. Skolotājs viņiem nepiedeva.
7. Viņa mašīna šorīt stāv mūsu pagalmā.
8. Es vakar biju pie jums.
9. Viņš vakar rakstīja savam dēlam.
10. Es negribu tevi aizstāvēt.
11. Mēs tevi neaizstāvējām.
12. Viņš sevī redz lielu vīru. (*Liels here = great*)
13. Ko viņš sevī redz?
14. Vai jūs esat laimīgs? – Jā, man ir labi bērni.
15. Es viņiem iedevu savus cukura maisus.
16. Viņš ir bēdīgs, tāpēc ka viņa bērni šorīt aizgāja.
17. Ārsts aizvakar bija pie mums, un šorīt viņš bija pie jums.
18. Jūsu tēvs ir laimīgs.
19. Viņas bija bēdīgas.
20. Lopi stāvēja viņa pagalmā.

21. Kāpēc cilvēki pie jums ir melni? (*Pie mums, pie jums also mean in your country, in your part of the world, etc.*)
22. Es neredzēju tavus svārkus istabā.
23. Meitas tīrīja pagalmu.
24. Aizvakars viņa bija priecīga.
25. Viņa ir bēdīga, tāpēc ka viņas drauga nav šeit.
26. Viņš redzēja savus ratus pie jums.
27. Viņu nav pie mums; viņas ir pļavā.
28. Vai tu mani redzi? – Jā, es tevi redzu.
29. Vai jūs varat mūs dzirdēt? – Jā, mēs varam jūs dzirdēt.
30. Ko viņa manī redz?
31. Ko viņa jūsos redz?
32. Ko mans draugs tevī redz?
33. Tur ir miesnieka mašīna.
34. Mūsu namā ir daudz mazu istabu.
35. Saimnieka dēls viņu nemīl.
36. Vecas grāmatas vienmēr ir ļoti interesantas.
37. Visas olas bija baltas.
38. Jaunām meitām bieži ir skaisti, melni mati.
39. Vai ubagi vienmēr ir slikti cilvēki?
40. Visas manas grāmatas ir manā istabā.
41. Maiznieka tēvs ir interesants, vecs vīrs.
42. Maziem bērniem ir mazas rokas, mazas kājas un mazi pirksti.
43. Mežs bija kluss; mēs dzirdējām tikai putnus.
44. Ko viņa mūsos redzēja?
45. Vai koku lapas nav skaistas?
46. Man nav balta papīra.
47. Kā tev iet? – Ļoti labi!
48. Skolnieki šodien ir ļoti klusi.
49. Vai jauni saimnieki ir slikti saimnieki?

Exercise 15e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Young girls are always happy.
2. Why were you sad yesterday, my friend?
3. Was your father in the forest the day before yesterday?
4. In the car I saw a white glove, which belonged to my daughter.
5. Yesterday everybody was sad, but this morning everyone is happy.
6. He told me a sad story.

7. She is happy, because her daughter is here, at our place.
8. There is no cart in his yard. The cart is standing in your yard.
9. The doctor was at our place this morning.
10. I saw my daughter at your place.
11. Did you see your son yesterday?
12. Happy people don't always have a lot of money.
13. He gave his horse some sugar.
14. The car was still standing in his yard yesterday.
15. They do not want to be at our place.
16. She is always very happy at your place.
17. I heard them in your yard.
18. He gave me his coat.
19. What does she see in him?
20. What do you see in yourself?
21. Why doesn't he defend you?
22. I do not forgive myself for not being (=that I was not) here the day before yesterday.
23. You can believe me that I was at your place this morning.
24. This morning there were birds in our garden.
25. Who gave them apples?
26. We are happy that there are no wolves in our part of the world.
27. I was at your place the day before yesterday, but you were not there.
28. Why do you tell the children sad stories?
29. He heard me, but I did not hear him.
30. Can you see us? – No, we cannot see you.
31. Does the labourer love you, my daughter?
32. Where are the sheets of paper?
33. The lake, which was in an old forest, was very quiet and beautiful.
34. Your daughter has a beautiful, white neck.
35. In Latvia there are many small hills; in Russia there are many large mountains.
36. I am now reading an interesting, new book.
37. Good sons help their fathers.
38. Oh, your flour is bad!
39. He is a very quiet person, but also very interesting.
40. What does he see in them (m.)?
41. Where are the girls? I cannot see them.
42. What does he see in them (f.)?

LESSON 16

THE PREPOSITION *PIE*

The preposition *pie* is construed with a following genitive (in the singular). *Pie* means 'to the house of, at the house of': cf. *pie skolotāja* 'to/at the school-teacher's house'; *pie ārsta* 'to/at the doctor's house'; *pie manis* 'to/at my house'; *pie viņas* 'to/at her place'.

All prepositions in Latvian, with whatever case they are construed in the singular, require the dative case in the plural, cf. *pie skolotājiem* 'to/at the school-teachers'; *pie vīriem* 'to/at the men's place(s)'; *pie mums* 'to/at our place'; *pie viņām* 'to/at their (f.) place'.

Pie also means 'near', 'by' or 'at', cf. *pie loga* 'by the window'; *pie logiem* 'at the windows'; *pie galda* 'at the table'; *pie akas* 'at/near/by the well'; *pie akām* 'at/near/by the wells'.

Vocabulary

<i>pie</i>	at, near; to the house of, at the house of	<i>aka</i>	well (noun)
		<i>sēta</i>	yard; fence
		<i>pilsēta</i>	city
<i>krusttēvs</i>	uncle; god-father	<i>māsa</i>	sister
<i>brālēns</i>	cousin (m.)	<i>Anna</i>	Anne
<i>vārds</i>	word; name	<i>Ieva</i>	Eve
<i>vārdā</i>	by name	<i>vārti</i> (pl.)	gate
<i>Pāvils</i>	Paul		
<i>Artūrs</i>	Arthur		

NOTES: The word *krusttēvs* has a silent *v* (like *tēvs*) in the nominative singular only.

The *d* of *vārds* is devoiced in the Nom. Sing. only.

Exercise 16a

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; veikals; viņš; aka; tu; pilsēta; nams; viņa*.

Exercise 16b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Viņas ir pie manis.*
2. *Es negribu iet pie viņiem.*
3. *Es nelasu viņu grāmatu.*
4. *Es esmu tikai ubags.*
5. *Kur ir mani cimdi?*
6. *Mans brālēns iedod Annai naudu.*
7. *Artūrs mani neredz.*

Exercise 16c

Translate into Latvian:

1. At the doctor's; at the teacher's; at my place; at your (sing.) place; at his place; at her place; at our place; at your (pl.) place; at their (m.) place; at their (f.) place.
2. He wanted to give me a big bag of sugar.
3. The coat belongs to the doctor.
4. There are no animals in the enclosure, only birds.
5. The legs of the chair were black.
6. I hope you have some meat and cabbage.
7. Children often read well, but write badly.
8. Are there many large meadows in Russia?
9. Your daughter has a beautiful neck and beautiful fingers.
10. I do not want to clean my room today.

Exercise 16d

Put into the plural:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Es esmu pie māsas.</i> | 6. <i>Viņš iet pie drauga.</i> |
| 2. <i>Maiznieks ir pie ārsta.</i> | 7. <i>Meita gāja pie tēva.</i> |
| 3. <i>Dēls ir pie tēva.</i> | 8. <i>Tu esi pie brālēna.</i> |
| 4. <i>Viņa negrib iet pie dēla.</i> | 9. <i>Saimnieks ir pie skolotāja.</i> |
| 5. <i>Tēvs negāja pie māsas.</i> | 10. <i>Kāpēc tu ej pie krusttēva?</i> |

Exercise 16e

Translate into English:

1. Mana brālēna vārds ir Artūrs.
2. Viņš iet pie sava krusttēva.
3. Artūrs vakar bija pie Pāvila.
4. Mana māsa Ieva ir pilsētā pie sava brālēna.
5. Vai viņš ir pie savām māsām? – Nē, viņš ir pie saviem draugiem.
6. Vai jūsu pilsētā ir lieli un skaisti nami?
7. Tavai mātai Annai ir ļoti skaisti zobi.
8. Anna stāvēja pie akas mūsu sētā.
9. Maniem brālēniem ir jaunas mašīnas.
10. Krusttēvs stāv pie vārtiem.
11. Rīga ir liela un skaista pilsēta.
12. Vai jūsu pilsēta ir pie jūras?
13. Krusttēva vārds ir Pāvils; viņš ir mūsu tēva brālēns.
14. Latvijā ir pilsēta, vārdā Rīga.
15. Pie miesnieka veikala bija aka.
16. Maiznieka sētai ir lieli, veci vārti.
17. Anna stāvēja pie loga.
18. Vai Ieva ir pie jums?
19. Dēls ir pie tēva.
20. Viņš ir bēdīgs, tāpēc ka mēs negribam iet pie viņa.
21. Skolotāja nams ir pie skolas.
22. Māsas vīra vārds ir Artūrs.
23. Ievai nav krusttēvu.
24. Kāpēc Pāvila sētā nav akas?
25. Anna stāvēja pie vārtiem; viņa gribēja redzēt, kas ir dārzā.
26. Viņš nestāv pie loga, viņš ir pie galda.
27. Artūram ir skaisti, melni mati.
28. Pāvils neaizgāja pie ārsta.
29. Vai tu dzirdēji manus vārdus?
30. Es neticēju viņas vārdiem.
31. Vai tu vari mani redzēt? – Jā, es varu tevi redzēt.
32. Pāvils dzirdēja Artūra māsu dārzā.
33. Ieva vakar bija priecīga, bet šodien viņa ir bēdīga.
34. Vai tu aizvakar biji pie manis? – Nē, es nebiju pie tevis.
35. Tu esi labs bērns.
36. Mums ir baltas vistas, bet melnu vistu mums nav.
37. Mēs negribam jūs aizstāvēt, tāpēc ka jūs mūs neaizstāvējāt.
38. Kur ir zirgi?
39. Kur bija olas? – Olas bija pagrabā.

40. Viņa māšas vārds ir Anna.
41. Vai viņu cimdī ir jūsu istabā?
42. Kur ir Pāvils? Es viņu neredzu.
43. Kur ir Ieva? Es viņu neredzu.
44. Kāpēc viss vīns ir pie viņa? – Tāpēc, ka viņam ir liels vīna pagrabs.
45. Vai tu šorīt redzēji vecu ubagu savā pagalmā?
46. Kāpēc tu lasi sliktas grāmatas?
47. Viņš stāstīja skaistu stāstu.
48. Ko saimnieks aizvakar darija?
49. Kalpiem šodien ir darbs kalnā.
50. Ielas malā bija daudz jaunu veikalu.
51. Ak, siers ir sviesta bļodā!

Exercise 16f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The gate of the house is white.
2. I asked my sister her friend's name.
3. At your place I always see many beautiful girls.
4. Anne was at Eve's place.
5. The well is by the gate.
6. Your cousin was at my uncle's place.
7. Paul is a cousin of Anne's and Arthur's.
8. Their god-father's name is Arthur.
9. In England, many cities are by the sea.
10. Is Eve at her sister's place?
11. In the yard there was only a cart.
12. Paul was helping his uncle.
13. Anne's uncle and Eve's cousin are at the sea-side.
14. Who is standing there at the gate? – Just an old beggar.
15. Does the whole house belong to Paul?
16. Your sister has a beautiful name.
17. Oh dear, the child is by the well!
18. The butcher is at my father's place.
19. The butcher is at his father's place.
20. Paul is in town, at the baker's place.
21. Your cousin always has some good, old wine.
22. The coat is there by the gate.
23. Arthur is not allowed to stand by the well.
24. Can you hear the hens in Paul's yard?
25. Small children are not allowed to go to the well.
26. I asked them the name of their town, but they did not answer me.

27. She went to the well, which was by the gate.
28. My sister does not go to school; she is still small.
29. There are no bushes in their garden; only cabbages, lettuces, onions and tomatoes.
30. Do you believe his words?
31. I heard your words.
32. Arthur is not happy this morning; he is sad.
33. Did he see you yesterday? – Yes, he saw me in Riga.
34. The day before yesterday, I saw a wolf on the edge of the forest.
35. There is a new cart in the yard this morning.
36. Yesterday, the pork at the butcher's shop was bad.
37. You have a very big yard.
38. The beggar was sad, because he had no money and no friends.
39. My sister Eve was very happy the day before yesterday.
40. The leaves of the plants are still very small.
41. An old person often cannot answer the questions of a young child.
42. All the animals were swimming in the lake.
43. Then he forgave me.
44. There is a bag of apples in the cellar.
45. In her hand she held a small bag of lemons.
46. The men were planting rice and lettuces.
47. Why is there pepper in the flour?
48. Paul has a very large head.
49. I cannot return your money today.
50. Do you earn much money?

LESSON 17

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -š

Nouns and adjectives ending in -š are declined in exactly the same way as nouns and adjectives in -s: the only difference is in the Masculine Nominative singular.

garš ceļš 'a long road'

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	<i>gar-š</i>	<i>ceļ-š</i>	<i>gar-i</i>	<i>ceļ-i</i>
Acc.	<i>gar-u</i>	<i>ceļ-u</i>	<i>gar-us</i>	<i>ceļ-us</i>
Gen.	<i>gar-a</i>	<i>ceļ-a</i>	<i>gar-u</i>	<i>ceļ-u</i>
Dat.	<i>gar-am</i>	<i>ceļ-am</i>	<i>gar-iem</i>	<i>ceļ-iem</i>
Loc.	<i>gar-ā</i>	<i>ceļ-ā</i>	<i>gar-os</i>	<i>ceļ-os</i>

dziļa aka 'a deep well'

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	<i>dziļ-a</i>	<i>ak-a</i>	<i>dziļ-as</i>	<i>ak-as</i>
Acc.	<i>dziļ-u</i>	<i>ak-u</i>	<i>dziļ-as</i>	<i>ak-as</i>
Gen.	<i>dziļ-as</i>	<i>ak-as</i>	<i>dziļ-u</i>	<i>ak-u</i>
Dat.	<i>dziļ-ai</i>	<i>ak-ai</i>	<i>dziļ-ām</i>	<i>ak-ām</i>
Loc.	<i>dziļ-ā</i>	<i>ak-ā</i>	<i>dziļ-ās</i>	<i>ak-ās</i>

Vocabulary

<i>zaļš</i>	green; raw	<i>stiprs</i>	strong
<i>garš</i>	long	<i>kaimiņš</i>	neighbour
<i>mīļš</i>	dear, beloved	<i>ceļš</i>	road, journey, trip
<i>dziļš</i>	deep	<i>teļš</i>	calf
<i>drīz</i>	soon	<i>vējš</i>	wind
<i>jau</i>	already	<i>māsīca</i>	cousin (f.)
<i>vājš</i>	weak	<i>agri no rīta</i>	early in the morning

NOTES: Nouns and adjectives ending in *-rš* were, in older Latvian, written and pronounced *-rš*.

Drīz is often strengthened with *jau*, especially if the soonness is unexpected, or if it is to be emphasized for any reason.

Jau also serves as an emphatic particle, meaning *surely, indeed*, particularly with negative verbs.

The expression *Laimīgu ceļu!* 'Have a happy trip!' is in the accusative, object of an understood verb. Other similar wishes are also in the accusative for the same reason.

Exercise 17a

Decline in the singular and plural: *dziļa aka; garš ceļš; zaļš mežs; mīļa pilsēta*.

Exercise 17b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Man ir daudz teļu.*
2. *Mans kaimiņš iet pie ārsta.*
3. *Es lasu grāmatu pie galda.*

4. *Es viņas redzu, bet nedzirdu.*
5. *Es tev iedodu daudz grāmatu.*
6. *Saimnieks mani aizstāv.*

Exercise 17c

Translate into Latvian:

1. He doesn't swim well, he swims badly.
2. Paul has a long neck and long fingers.
3. What then were you doing in my car?
4. I saw a dish of onions at his place.
5. The children are very quiet.
6. Can you give the beggar a bed?
7. The pig is in the farmer's cart.

Exercise 17d

Translate into English:

1. *Aka pie vārtiem ir ļoti dziļa.*
2. *Mūsu ceļš bija ļoti garš.*
3. *Viņu nams stāv pie ceļa.*
4. *Laimīgu ceļu!*
5. *Anglijā ceļi ir ļoti labi.*
6. *Teļam ir garas kājas.*
7. *Manai māsīcai ir gari, melni mati.*
8. *Kaimiņiem ir daudz teļu.*
9. *Anglijas pļavas ir zaļas un skaistas.*
10. *Mēs šorīt jau bijām jūrmalā.*
11. *Agri no rīta vēl bija vējš, bet tagad vēja nav.*
12. *Kalnās bija stiprs vējš.*
13. *Vai tava māsīca aizvakar bija pie sava kaimiņa? – Jā, viņa bija, bet viņa drīz aizgāja.*
14. *Māsīca jau aizgāja agri no rīta.*
15. *Agri no rīta vēja vēl nebija.*
16. *Teļa kājas vēl ir vājas.*
17. *Kaimiņam ir mīļš bērns.*
18. *Vai Latvijā ir lieli un dziļi ezeri?*
19. *Kaimiņš ir jauns un stiprs vīrs.*
20. *Pagrabā ir stiprs vīns.*

21. Tomāti vēl ir zaļi.
22. Mūsu meita mums ir mīļa.
23. Māšica tagad ir pie savas māšas.
24. Viņai ir garas rokas un lielas kājas, bet Pāvils viņu mīl.
25. Kalnos mēs bieži varam redzēt skaistus, zaļus putnus.
26. Agri no rīta mēs aizgājām un drīz jau bijām pie okeana.
27. Vai jūs vakar drīz aizgājāt?
28. Mežā ir mazs, bet dziļš ezers.
29. Mežmalā bija zaļas pļavas.
30. Rudzi ir lielos, stipros maisos.
31. Kalnos ezeri vienmēr ir dziļi.
32. Es šodien redzēju baltu mašīnu jūsu pagalmā.
33. Tev ir mīļš mazs dēls – kāpēc tu esi bēdīga?
34. Annas krusttēvs un Ievas brālēns stāvēja sētā, kad Pāvils un Artūrs aizgāja pie saviem draugiem.
35. Man nav brālēna, vārdā Artūrs.
36. Pāvils tagad nav pie manis – vai viņš ir pie tevis?
37. Viņas krusttēvs stāvēja sētā pie vārtiem.
38. Pilsētā es redzēju Annu un Ievu.
39. Vecās pilsētās ir daudz aku.
40. Vai māsa mūs dzirdēja? – Nē, viņa jūs nedzirdēja, tāpēc ka viņa tīrīja savu istabu.
41. Es viņu bieži redzu Rīgas ielās.
42. Lauka malā ir ļoti veci koki.
43. Visi viņai piedeva, tikai tēvs viņai nepiedeva.
44. Viņiem ir daudz mazu bērnu; mums bērnu nav.
45. Kur ir Anna un Ieva? Es biju pie viņām, bet viņu tur nebija.
46. Cūkas ir saimnieka aplokā.
47. Visas manas grāmatas ir pie jums.
48. Es vakar lasīju interesantus stāstus.
49. Ezera malā bija daudz zaļu koku.
50. Viņu milti ir tavos ratos.
51. Veikalu logos bija citroni, pipari, kāposti, burkāni, rīsi un cūkas gaļa.
52. Viņai bija sviests un piens, bet siera nebija.
53. Kalps viņu mīl, bet viņa viņu nemīl.
54. Maiznieks negrib viņas redzēt savā veikalā.
55. Skolnieki negrib iet skolā; viņi grib tikai peldēt jūrā.
56. Ubagi nepelna naudu.
57. Ak, lopi ir rudzu laukā!
58. Mana māsa tevi redzēja pie loga.
59. Mēs visi bijām pie galda.
60. Svārki pieder man; arī cimdi pieder man.

61. Kā viņa var mums palīdzēt?
62. Vai viņi tic visam, ko tēvs viņiem stāsta?
63. Kāpēc tu stādi krūmus pie sētas?
64. Tavi rati ir miesnieka pagalmā.

Exercise 17e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Now the fields and meadows in England are already green.
2. There are some very good roads in the forest.
3. I saw many young calves.
4. Oh, the neighbour's calves are in our garden.
5. Is the lake deep?
6. He is a dear child.
7. He was standing there in a strong wind.
8. Why are we not allowed to swim in the lake?
9. Did you see my cousin at the neighbour's place? – No, she was not there, she was at the butcher's shop.
10. Early in the morning we were already there.
11. The calves were soon big and strong.
12. I often swim in the lake.
13. Has the butcher any meat?
14. The wind is very strong this morning.
15. He has long arms and legs, but he is very weak.
16. My cousin (f.) swims badly.
17. We left soon, because their wine was not good.
18. Soon we could hear the birds in the forest.
19. There are many cars on the edge of the road.
20. His cousin has a long green skirt.
21. You are a dear child!
22. On the edge of the forest there was a deep well.
23. Our neighbour is at his cousin's (f.) place.
24. Is the trip long?
25. Here the sea is not deep.
26. I was soon at your place.
27. She went off early in the morning.
28. She is a dear child.
29. There are deep, green forests in Russia.
30. They have beautiful, long hair.
31. You are not to give the children green tomatoes.
32. Have a good trip!

33. Her neighbour was at my place the day before yesterday.
 34. When did she see me in your yard?
 35. I did not hear you.
 36. Your son is already very strong.
 37. The calves are weak, because they are still very young.
 38. Ann's uncle Paul and Eve's cousin Arthur were standing in the yard near the well.
 39. Can you hear us? – Yes, we can hear you now.
 40. Where are Anne and Eve? – I didn't see them in town today.
 41. Why don't you want to forgive her?
 42. Why do you love Eve? – I love her because she is very beautiful, and because she has a lot of money.
 43. I hope your gates are strong.
 44. She is happy, because she now has a dear, little daughter.
 45. Where are the apples? – I have already given them to the pigs.
 46. There was a man at her place by the name of Arthur.
 47. Are the roads good in England?
 48. The labourer is holding the farmer's horse at the gate of the enclosure.
 49. My cousin's name is Paul.
 50. Your uncle and your sister were in town today.
 51. Why is his sister standing in the yard?
 52. The teacher was at their place yesterday.
 53. Why do you not defend yourself?
 54. What does he see in you? And what do you see in yourself?
 55. He always tells sad stories.

LESSON 18

CONJUGATION OF ZINĀT, DZIEDĀT AND RAUDĀT

<i>zināt</i> 'to know'	<i>dziedāt</i> 'to sing'	<i>raudāt</i> 'to weep, cry'
Present		
<i>es zin-u</i>	<i>es dzied-u</i>	<i>es raud-u</i>
<i>tu zin-i</i>	<i>tu dzied-i</i>	<i>tu raud-i</i>
<i>viņš zin-a</i>	<i>viņš dzied</i>	<i>viņš raud</i>
<i>mēs zin-ām</i>	<i>mēs dzied-am</i>	<i>mēs raud-am</i>
<i>jūs zin-āt</i>	<i>jūs dzied-at</i>	<i>jūs raud-at</i>
<i>viņi zin-a</i>	<i>viņi dzied</i>	<i>viņi raud</i>

Imperfect

<i>es zin-āj-u</i>	<i>es dzied-āj-u</i>	<i>es raud-āj-u</i>
<i>tu zin-āj-i</i>	<i>tu dzied-āj-i</i>	<i>tu raud-āj-i</i>
<i>viņš zin-āj-a</i>	<i>viņš dzied-āj-a</i>	<i>viņš raud-āj-a</i>
<i>mēs zin-āj-ām</i>	<i>mēs dzied-āj-ām</i>	<i>mēs raud-āj-ām</i>
<i>jūs zin-āj-āt</i>	<i>jūs dzied-āj-āt</i>	<i>jūs raud-āj-āt</i>
<i>viņi zin-āj-a</i>	<i>viņi dzied-āj-a</i>	<i>viņi raud-āj-a</i>

It will be seen that while *zināt* is conjugated in the present tense like mixed conjugation -*īt* verbs, *dziedāt* and *raudāt* are conjugated like mixed conjugation -*ēt* verbs. In the imperfect tense, the endings are quite regular: notice that the lengthening syllable used throughout is -*āj-*, corresponding to the -*āt* of the infinitive. The lengthening syllable of the imperfect tense is always the same, vocally, as the infinitive termination.

Vocabulary

<i>zināt</i>	to know	<i>dziedātājs</i>	singer
<i>dziedāt</i>	to sing	<i>rakstnieks</i>	writer
<i>raudāt</i>	to weep, cry	<i>veikalnieks</i>	businessman
<i>dziesma</i>	song	<i>tirgotājs</i>	merchant; shop-keeper
<i>raudullgs</i>	tearful, snivelling	<i>laipns</i>	kind, friendly
<i>zinātnisks</i>	scientific	<i>nelaipns</i>	unkind, unfriendly
<i>nedaudz</i> (+ gen.)	a little	<i>dziesmu grāmata</i>	hymn book

NOTE: In English the verb 'to know' can be used in a variety of ways. It can be used to denote acquaintance with a person, as in 'I know Mr. Smith'. It can also be used to denote ability, as in 'I know how to swim'. Both these uses are reserved in Latvian for verbs other than *zināt*, which can be used only in the sense of 'being aware' – e.g., 'I know that he is here' *Es zinu, ka viņš ir šeit*. When the English 'to know' can be replaced by 'to be aware (of)' then the verb *zināt* may be used in Latvian.

Exercise 18a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- Es nezinu, kur es esmu.*
- Es dziedu bēdīgas dziesmas.*
- Es raudu, bet es nezinu kāpēc.*

4. *Es dodu miesniekam savus ratus.*
5. *Mani draugi mani aizstāv.*
6. *Veikalnieks man vienmēr tic.*
7. *Rakstnieks bieži ir pie manis.*

Exercise 18b

Decline in singular and plural: *dziļš okeans; zaļš mežs; skaista aka; jauna mašīna; kluss ezers; interesanta grāmata.*

Exercise 18c

Translate into Latvian:

1. The milk was still good, but the butter was bad.
2. Have you cheese and pork? – Yes, we have some cheese in a wooden dish, and some pork in the cellar.
3. My gloves were there by the window.
4. Can I help you?
5. He is always telling sad stories, but I do not believe them.
6. There was a lot of money in the businessman's house.
7. The apples which he gave us were very small.
8. The birds were singing in the bushes.
9. The butcher has black hair.
10. Does she swim well? – No, she swims badly.
11. Your daughter has a lovely neck.
12. We have many plants in our garden.

Exercise 18d

Translate into English:

1. Ārsts grib zināt, kāpēc Ievas bērns ir raudulīgs.
2. Dziesmu grāmatā ir daudz skaistu dziesmu.
3. Kāpēc jūs raudat? – Tāpēc, ka dziedātājs dzied skaistu dziesmu.
4. Kā jums iet? – Labi, un jums?
5. Es nezināju, ka jūs jau esat šeit mūsu pilsētā. (NOTE: In indirect speech, the tense of direct speech is retained, thus the use of the present *esat* here.)

6. Veikalnieka bērnam iet labi, bet viņš vienmēr ir raudulīgs.
7. Putnu dziesmas ir skaistas.
8. Tirgotājam bija daudz rudzu, bet tikai nedaudz miltu.
9. Rakstnieks tagad raksta tikai bērnu stāstus.
10. Raudulīgi bērni nedzied.
11. Dziedātājs bija ļoti laipns cilvēks.
12. Tu esi nelaipns; tu viņam neprasīji, kā viņam iet. (See note to no. 5 above.)
13. Es ceru, ka tu vēl visu zini, ko tu vakar dzirdēji pie Pāvila.
14. Mūsu tirgotājs ir labs veikalnieks.
15. Putni dzied jau agri no rīta.
16. Mēs zinām, ka ārsts pelna daudz naudas.
17. Viņš rakstīja zinātniskus darbus.
18. Viņa neraudāja, kad viņas vīrs aizgāja.
19. Veikalniekam ir tikai nedaudz rīsu, cukura un piparu veikalā.
20. Es iedevu savai mātai jaunu dziesmu grāmatu.
21. Vecās grāmatās ir daudz interesantu dziesmu.
22. Viņš ir vājš bērns; viņš arī ir raudulīgs.
23. Kāpēc jūs neejat viņa veikalā? – Tāpēc, ka tirgotājs vienmēr ir nelaipns.
24. Man vēl ir nedaudz darba.
25. Vai tu lasi interesantu zinātnisku grāmatu?
26. Es prasīju dziedātājam, kur viņš aizvakar bija.
27. Visiem skolniekiem jau ir jaunas dziesmu grāmatas.
28. Kāpēc tu raudāji, Anna?
29. Skolotājs bija ļoti laipns.
30. Vai tu vienmēr tici laipniem vārdiem?
31. Ubagi neiet pie nelaipniem cilvēkiem.
32. Šorīt mūsu tirgotājs bija ļoti laipns.
33. Manā grāmatu veikalā ir visu mūsu rakstnieku darbi.
34. Es lasu tikai labus rakstniekus.
35. Vai jūs vienmēr raudat, kad jūs dzirdat bēdīgus stāstus?
36. Vējš mežā ir ļoti stiprs.
37. Tavai māsiņai ir gari mati.
38. Maziem teļiem ir vājas kājas.
39. Vai jūsu kaimiņam ir zaļa mašīna?
40. Miesnieks atdeva maizniekam ratus.
41. Krievijā ir daudz dziļu ezeru.
42. Artūra krusttēvs stāvēja sētā pie akas.
43. Latvijā ir liela pilsēta, vārdā Rīga.
44. Gari ceļi var būt ļoti interesanti.
45. Kas redzēja ubagu pagalmā?
46. Mūsu vārti ir balti.
47. Saimnieks ir ļāvā vienmēr agri no rīta.

48. Tavs dēls ir mīļš bērns, mans draugs.
49. Manam brālēnam bija daudz stipra vīna pagrabā.
50. Mūsu dārzā ir burkāni, kāposti, salāti, tomāti, sīpoli... visi dārzāji.
51. Pāvils un Artūrs aizgāja agri no rīta.
52. Laimīgu ceļu!

Exercise 18e

Translate into Latvian:

1. All merchants are not good businessmen.
2. What does he know?
3. He is happy only when the birds are singing.
4. The singer was singing a sad song.
5. There was a hymn-book on the writer's table.
6. Your book is at my cousin's (m.) place.
7. The writer was also a singer.
8. There were only a few people on the beach.
9. He is a great singer, but an unkind person.
10. She is a lovable, kind girl.
11. I was hoping that you knew where my coat was. (See note to Ex. 18d, sentence no. 5.)
12. I did not know that the meat was bad.
13. The cattle-dealer (*lopu tirgotājs*) went to the businessman's place.
14. Was she crying because she was not allowed to swim in the sea?
15. The child cries often.
16. He knows that you are a bad writer.
17. Do you know the way? (*ceļš*)
18. We always used to sing at school.
19. Now you are crying, because the teacher did not forgive you.
20. The father was crying when his daughter sang.
21. I do not like long songs.
22. He was reading a long, scientific book.
23. There are some lovely old songs in the hymn-book.
24. The businessman had a little rice, pepper and sugar.
25. The merchant's cousin is an unkind man.
26. All the businessman's daughters are friendly.
27. Is he a book-dealer? – No, he is a cattle-dealer.
28. He is a good doctor, but he does not write scientific works.
29. There are only a few hens in the yard.
30. Why was your sister unfriendly this morning? – Because you also were unfriendly.

31. The doctor was very kind; he gave me a scientific book.
32. The neighbour's uncle was a very kind person.
33. Anne has a green skirt.
34. I knew that the ocean was very deep here.
35. My uncle always keeps his money in his hymn-book.
36. My son is already a doctor.
37. There is often a wind early in the morning in our part of the country.
38. A few calves were standing on the side of the street.
39. Can you give me a bed?
40. Your son has strong arms and strong fingers.
41. The roads of Latvia are very beautiful.
42. Do the horses belong to you? – No, they belong to my neighbour.
43. Eve was holding in her hand a small bag of lemons.
44. The chair stood near the window.
45. Is his well very deep?
46. The maids soon cleaned the rooms.
47. Our house has a black roof.
48. I saw a wolf near the enclosure today.
49. Paul is already at Arthur's place.
50. Their cousin (m.) went off to town early in the morning.
51. I do not know his sister's name.
52. Have they got wooden gates?
53. The wind was very strong at the forest's edge.
54. The teacher's son is a weak pupil.
55. At my place; at your (s.) place; at his place; at her place; at our place; at your (pl.) place; at their (m.) place; at their (f.) place.

LESSON 19

MORE PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE

The prepositions *aiz* 'behind, beyond'; *bez* 'without'; and *zem* 'under' are construed with the genitive case, cf.

aiz nama
bez naudas
zem gultas

behind the house
 without money
 under the bed

However, as was pointed out in lesson 16, all Latvian prepositions require the dative case when the noun (or pronoun) is plural, cf.

<i>aiz ezera</i>	beyond the lake	BUT:	<i>aiz ezeriem</i>	beyond the lakes
<i>bez zirga</i>	without a horse	BUT:	<i>bez zirgiem</i>	without horses
<i>zem bļodas</i>	under the dish	BUT:	<i>zem bļodām</i>	under the dishes

Vocabulary

<i>aiz</i> (+gen.)	behind, beyond	<i>dārznieks</i>	gardener
<i>bēz</i> (+gen.)	without	<i>aizdevums</i>	loan
<i>zem</i> (+gen.)	under	<i>banka</i>	bank
<i>aizdot</i>	to lend	<i>rēti</i>	rarely
<i>nekad</i>	never	<i>lūdzu</i>	please
<i>arvien</i>	always	<i>paldies</i>	thank you
<i>kam</i>	to whom	<i>atkal</i>	again

NOTES: *Aizdot* is conjugated like *dot* and requires the dative of the person.

Nekad, *arvien* and *paldies* are stressed on the second syllable. *Paldies* is sometimes used as a noun, and is then stressed on the first syllable.

Nekad always requires a negative verb:

Viņš nekad nedzied. He never sings.

For emphasis, *vēl* may be strengthened with *arvien*:

Artūrs arvien vēl raksta. Arthur is *still* writing.

Lūdzu and *paldies* are separated from the rest of their sentence by a comma.

Exercise 19a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es aizdodu dārzniekam naudu.*
2. *Es nekad nelasu grāmatas.*
3. *Es zinu, kur es esmu.*
4. *Es neraudu, kad man ir vīns.*
5. *Es dziedu ļoti labi.*
6. *Es mīlu savu dēlu.*
7. *Vai viņa man tic?*

Exercise 19b

Decline in the singular and plural: *skaists nams*; *dziļš ezers*; *es*; *zaļa pļava*; *laba bļoda*; *tu*; *viņa*; *viņš*.

Exercise 19c

Translate into English:

1. *Aiz akas*; *aiz mašīnas*; *aiz skolas*; *aiz jūras*; *aiz gultas*; *aiz krēsla*; *aiz loga*; *aiz ezera*; *aiz krūma*; *aiz galda*; *aiz kalna*; *aiz dārza*; *aiz lauka*; *aiz meža*; *aiz nama*; *aiz krēsliem*; *aiz logiem*; *aiz krūmiem*; *aiz gultām*.
2. *Bez kaimiņa*; *bez ceļa*; *bez teļa*; *bez vēja*; *bez vārda*; *bez māšas*; *bez Annas*; *bez mašīnas*; *bez naudas*; *bez dārznieka*; *bez cukura*; *bez tomāta*; *bez siera*; *bez piena*; *bez sviesta*; *bez cimdiem*; *bez uzdevumiem*; *bez rokām*; *bez kājām*; *bez pipariem*; *bez logiem*; *bez salātiem*; *bez risiem*.
3. *Zem kalna*; *zem gultas*; *zem galda*; *zem vistas*; *zem ezera*; *zem jūras*; *zem loga*; *zem sētas*; *zem bankas*; *zem ielas*; *zem ratiem*; *zem kājām*; *zem spēliem*; *zem miltiem*.

Exercise 19d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Much money; much meat; many books; many streets; many eggs; under the hen; under the bed; under the book; behind the car; behind Anne; without meat; I have no money; I have no meat; I have no book; I have no hen; I have no hens; Anne's hand; Eve's foot; the lakes of Latvia; the cities of England; the fields of Russia; at Anne's place; at Eve's place; at my sister's place; under a green car; behind a black hen; the hen's feet; the hens' feet.
2. Paul's father; Arthur's father; the teacher's house; the doctor's horse; the baker's garden; the edge of the lake; the edge of the field; the beggar's bag; the calf's neck; the leaves of the tree; the neighbour's gardens; I have no paper; I have no onions; we have no rice; you have no flour; I have no bag; on the other side of the mountain; beyond the field; under the roof; the wolf's teeth; the houses of my uncles; the horses of my cousins; the beggar's story; the gardener's plants; in the farmer's fields; in the singers' houses.

Exercise 19e

Translate into English:

1. Dārznieka darba svārki ir zem viņa ratiem.
2. Aiz aploka vārtiem stāvēja zirgs.
3. Banka negribēja viņam dot aizdevumu.
4. Tu nedrīksti aizdot draugiem savas grāmatas.
5. Vai jūs zināt, kam jūs aizdevāt savus cimdsus?
6. Dārznieks nekad negāja pie ārsta.
7. Pie vārtiem ir ubags.
8. Mūsu ielā stāv vecs nams bez jumta un bez logiem.
9. Viņš reti peld jūrā, bet bieži ezerā.
10. Bankas aizdevums nebija liels.
11. Kāpēc tu atkal aizgāji bez cimdiem?
12. Ubags arvien stāvēja pie bankas.
13. Kam bankas dod aizdevumus?
14. Tava grāmata bija zem galda.
15. Es ceru, ka viņš neaizgāja bez svārkiem.
16. Dārznieks atkal bija pagrabā pie vīna.
17. Galds un krēslī tagad stāv zem jumta.
18. Vai tu gribi mazu aizdevumu? – Paldies, nē!
19. Ak, šeit zem krūma ir olas!
20. Kam mēs iedevām savus ābolus?
21. Dārznieks ļoti reti lasa.
22. Viņš bieži iet pie sava krusttēva.
23. Kāpēc tu arvien dziedī? – Tāpēc, ka es nekad neesmu bēdīgs.
24. Viņš turēja kājas zem galda.
25. Pilsēta ir aiz kalna.
26. Aiz meža ir lauki un pļavas.
27. Dārzniekam tu nekad nedrīksti aizdot savas grāmatas; viņš reti atdod grāmatas.
28. Paldies, mans draugs!
29. Tu atkal nebiji savā istabā.
30. Piedodiet, lūdzu, kur šeit ir grāmatu veikals? – Grāmatu veikals ir aiz bankas. – Paldies, jūs esat ļoti laipns.
31. Lūdzu, kur ir tirgotāja nams? – Tur aiz bankas. — Paldies.
32. Pāvils ir labs dziedātājs; mēs vienmēr raudam, kad viņš dzied.
33. Mans draugs, kas ir rakstnieks, rakstīja arī daudz zinātnisku darbu.
34. Dziedātājs reti dzied bēdīgas dziesmas.
35. Vai viņu kaimiņi ir labi, laipni cilvēki?
36. Miesnieka sētā ir dziļa aka.
37. Kāpēc mana dziesmu grāmata nav šeit?

38. Anna raudāja, tāpēc ka viņa nedrīkstēja peldēt ezerā.
39. Ievas māsa dziedāja jaunu dziesmu.
40. Vai viņam ir labas zinātniskas grāmatas?
41. Veikalnieks ir ļoti nelaipns.
42. Ak, citroni vēl ir zaļi!
43. Manai māsīcai ir garas rokas, bet mazi pirksti.
44. Es šorīt redzēju mazu bērnu viņas dārzā.
45. Viņa dēli jau ir lieli un stipri.
46. Vakars bija ļoti stiprs vējš.
47. Vai lapas pie jums vienmēr ir zaļas?
48. Visi lopi bija pagalmā.
49. Teļam vēl nav vārda.

Exercise 19f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The bank is unable to assist.
2. The bank lent the gardener a lot of money.
3. The butcher asked the bank for a loan.
4. Was the bank loan very big?
5. He is an old man without friends.
6. Whom did you ask for a loan?
7. You knew very well that the gardener did not give me a loan.
8. Our children are not allowed to lend their books.
9. In the forest there are bushes and trees.
10. Beyond the mountain is a small town.
11. Where is the pig? – Here, under the cart.
12. To whom did you give your gloves?
13. You know that you are not allowed to go to the neighbour's, but I hear that you were there again yesterday.
14. He rarely goes to his godfather's.
15. He always tells me sad stories.
16. Is Paul behind the house?
17. I hope he has lent him the car.
18. The butcher's shop is behind the merchant's house.
19. The eggs are here, under the roof.
20. The cellar is under the house.
21. Whom can I believe now?
22. The dish is under the table.
23. He went to his uncle's and then to his sister's.
24. I still do not know to whom you lent your book.

25. Many young people are without work in our city.
26. I never believe her stories.
27. His cousin (m.) never has any money.
28. The gardener is still in the mountains.
29. Their car is here again.
30. The pigs were in the garden again.
31. He gave the money to the farm-worker.
32. This morning there were wolves near the enclosure again.
33. She was never beautiful.
34. Where is the school, please? – There, in the street behind the bank. – Oh yes, now I see. Thank you, you are very kind.
35. The gardener rarely plants cabbages in his garden.
36. Where is the doctor, please? – At his cousin's. – Thank you.
37. The singer sang many interesting songs.
38. He is not a good writer.
39. I do not read a lot of scientific works.
40. Why was your daughter weeping the day before yesterday? – Because the merchant was unkind to her.
41. Have you got a sheet of white paper? I want to write a new song.
42. Many kind friends are helping me.
43. The singer used always to be at my place.
44. The butter belongs to the merchant.
45. The children were weeping on the side of the street.
46. The calf had long legs, but a small head.
47. The farmer's money was in a deep well.
48. I cannot sing without a book, because I do not know the words.
49. Is the journey long, please? – No, not very long. – Thank you.
50. She now has a little black hen.
51. The baker's onions, tomatoes and lettuces were in a large bag.
52. Our teacher often does not forgive bad pupils.
53. I asked you where my book is.
54. The sea is quiet today.
55. There were many people on the beach yesterday.
56. How can we help them?
57. We cannot always do what we wish.
58. The girls cleaned the whole house.
59. His daughter has beautiful, long, black hair.
60. She swims very badly.
61. Oh dear, there is pepper in the sugar!

LESSON 20

LONG CONJUGATION VERBS WITH INFINITIVE IN *-OT*

Long Conjugation verbs differ from Mixed Conjugation verbs in that the former use a lengthening syllable in the present as well as in the imperfect. Note the peculiarities of the second and third persons singular, and of the third person plural.

<i>dzīvot</i> 'to live'	
Present	Imperfect
<i>es dzīv-oj-u</i>	<i>es dzīv-oj-u</i>
<i>tu dzīv-o</i>	<i>tu dzīv-oj-i</i>
<i>viņš dzīv-o</i>	<i>viņš dzīv-oj-a</i>
<i>mēs dzīv-oj-am</i>	<i>mēs dzīv-oj-ām</i>
<i>jūs dzīv-oj-at</i>	<i>jūs dzīv-oj-āt</i>
<i>viņi dzīv-o</i>	<i>viņi dzīv-oj-a</i>

All verbs in *-ot*, except *dot* and its compounds, belong to this type.

Vocabulary

<i>dzīvot</i>	to live	<i>ceļot</i>	to travel
<i>lietot</i>	to use	<i>aizceļot</i>	to travel away,
<i>svilpot</i>	to whistle		to travel abroad
<i>dejot</i>	to dance	<i>barot</i>	to feed (animals)
<i>dejotājs</i>	dancer (m.)	<i>ubagot</i>	to beg
<i>deja</i>	dance	<i>pārdot</i>	to sell
<i>tulkot</i>	to translate	<i>lai dzīvo!</i>	long live!
<i>tulkojums</i>	translation		

NOTES: *Pārdot* is a compound of *dot* and shares the same irregularities: viz. present *es pārdodu*, imperfect *es pārdevu*. It requires the dative of the person to whom something is sold.

Alongside *lietot* there is a less common form *lietāt*, for the conjugation of which see lesson 21.

Exercise 20a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es dzīvoju Anglijā.*
2. *Es bieži tulkoju grāmatas.*
3. *Es nezinu, kāpēc es raudu.*
4. *Es vienmēr dziedu, kad es esmu priecīgs.*
5. *Kas baro manus zirgus?*
6. *Anna mani redz.*
7. *Es zinu, ko es daru.*

Exercise 20b

Decline in singular and plural: *liels veikals; mazs mežs; melna mašīna; tu; jauna deļa; slikts tulkojums; es; bēdīga dziesma.*

Exercise 20c

Translate into Latvian:

1. I see a man.
2. I hear a bird.
3. I am feeding my horse.
4. I am reading a translation.
5. I am cleaning the house.
6. I cannot see the beggar.
7. You (s.) see a chair.
8. You (s.) are feeding the animal.
9. She asks for a loan.
10. You (s.) see the doctor.
11. I clean the window.
12. Do you (s.) see the onion?
13. He does not hear the wolf.
14. I see my neighbour.
15. The farm-labourer is feeding the calf.
16. I see the pig.
17. You (s.) hear the song.
18. He loves his daughter.
19. I am writing a book.
20. She sees a dish.
21. I can see the bed.

22. The father defends his daughter.
23. I can see the well.
24. Can you (s.) hear the hen?
25. He loves Arthur's sister.
26. I see the yard.
27. Can you (s.) hear a car?
28. I want to use your (s.) room.
29. He sees the school.
30. She sees a green meadow.

Exercise 20d

Put the sentences of Exercise 20c into the plural.

Exercise 20e

Put the sentences of Exercise 20c into the imperfect.

Exercise 20f

Translate into English:

1. Veikalnieks dzīvo skaistā, lielā namā.
2. Mūsu namā dzīvo dejotājs un dziedātājs.
3. Lai dzīvo mūsu skolotājs!
4. Es tulkoju vecas zinātniskas grāmatas.
5. Tirgotājs vienmēr pārdeva cukuru maisos.
6. Jūsu tulkojums ir ļoti slikts.
7. Nauda bija zem dziesmu grāmatas.
8. Dejtāja meita ir skaista, un viņa arī dzied.
9. Saimnieks pārdeva lopu tirgotājam visus savus teļus un visas savas cūkas.
10. Viss tulkojums ir vājš.
11. Meitas un kalpi baro saimnieka lopus.
12. Vai es drīkstu lietot jūsu bļodu? – Jā, lūdzu! (*Lūdzu here means please do!*)
13. Dziesmu tulkojumi reti ir labi.
14. Es gribu ceļot un redzēt Anglijas un Krievijas pilsētas.
15. Mēs neesam dejotāji.
16. Lai dzīvo mūsu dziedātāji!
17. Dejtāju kājas ir ļoti stipras.

18. Tu tagad driksti barot cūkas.
19. Kur jūs dzīvojāt?
20. Pie skolas un aiz bankas ubagi nedrīkst ubagot.
21. Ubaga bērni dzied un dejo ielās, un viņš ubago.
22. Deja bija ļoti gara, bet skaista.
23. Krievijā dejo skaistas, vecas dejas.
24. Mēs negribam dzīvot bez dziesmām un bez dejām.
25. Vai ārsts šeit dzīvo?
26. Vai jūs šeit aizvakar dejojāt? – Nē, aizvakar mēs vēl ceļojām, bet vakar mēs jau dejojām jūsu pilsētā.
27. Viņš tulko zinātniskus darbus.
28. Darbā tu nedrīksti svilpot.
29. Kas tur svilpo?
30. Viņi pārdeva savu namu un aizceļoja.
31. Tagad putni atkal aizceļo.
32. Vai mans brālēns šorīt lietoja tavu mašīnu?
33. Vai jūs šeit ubagojāt? – Nē, es tikai gribēju pārdot olas un sviestu.
34. Meitas baro vistas.
35. Kad jūs savus lopus barojat? – Es lopus baroju jau agri no rīta.
36. Viņas tulkojums ir interesants.
37. Vai jūs tulkojāt rakstnieka grāmatu? – Nē, mana māsiņa tulkoja.
38. Jūs ubagojāt pilsētas ielās: vai jūs nezinājāt, ka jūs nedrīkstat šeit ubagot?
39. Lai dzīvo mūsu draugi!
40. Putni svilpo un dzied mežmalā.
41. Dārziņš bieži stādīja sīpolus un tomātus, bet viņš reti stādīja salātus un kāpostus savā dārzā.
42. Aiz bankas stāvēja vecs vīrs, kas turēja ubaga maisu rokā.
43. Pāvila māsa Ieva raudāja, tāpēc ka viņa nedrīkstēja peldēt ezerā.
44. Tēva ratos bija siers un piens, bet gaļas nebija.
45. Vai maiznieks aizdeva miesniekam daudz naudas?
46. Viņa krusttēvs Artūrs stāvēja pie vārtiem.
47. Viņas vārds bija Anna.
48. Kam tavs draugs grib aizdot naudu?
49. Tirgotāja dēli grib aizceļot, bet viņi nevar pārdot namu.
50. Banka nedeva dārziņam aizdevumu.
51. Viņu sētā bija dziļa aka.
52. Lai dzīvo Pāvils!
53. Cilvēki šeit ir nelaipni, viņš grib aizceļot.
54. Es arvien vēl ticu saviem draugiem.
55. Kam tu prasīji, kur es biju?
56. Kā jums iet? – Kāpēc tu man prasi, kā man iet? Tu neesi mans draugs.
57. Skolnieks prasīja tēvam mazu aizdevumu.

58. Mūsu kaimiņa meita baro vistas.
59. Mēs nekad negribējām ceļot.
60. Es ceru, ka tu viņam palīdzēji.
61. Vai tu gribi dzīvot Rīgā?
62. Bērni šodien ir bēdīgi un raudulīgi.
63. Man vēl ir daudz laipnu draugu.
64. Vai pie mums koku lapas vienmēr ir zaļas?
65. Viņām ir skaisti, balti zobi.
66. Piedodiet, kāpēc jūs aizejat?
67. Kad viņš tev aizdeva zirgu?
68. Mēs iedevām bērniem ābolus.
69. Šodien vēja nav.
70. Vai tu dzirdēji stāstu, ko ubags mums stāstīja?

Exercise 20g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where do you live? – I live in England.
2. Why is Anne not dancing?
3. Did you feed the animals? – Yes, I fed the horses and pigs.
4. Paul and Eve wish to dance.
5. May we use your room?
6. People live in houses, but birds live in the forest.
7. He uses a lot of old words in his translations.
8. He sold his car.
9. I hope he didn't sell all the eggs.
10. She always whistles and dances when she is happy.
11. We saw (some) interesting old dances when we were travelling in Russia.
12. The dancer is a strong man.
13. Who translated the book?
14. Now he is able to dance again.
15. I cannot translate the book.
16. Why are you already feeding the pigs?
17. The businessman sold the dancer a new coat.
18. I cannot travel in the cart.
19. They travelled in the car.
20. I do not use butter and sugar.
21. Dancers' legs are very strong.
22. The beggar was whistling, and his children were dancing in the street.
23. They are not allowed to beg in shops.
24. Dancers use their arms and legs.

25. We translated the writer's book.
26. Here is a new translation.
27. Long live our doctor!
28. The birds were whistling in the forest.
29. The birds are on the move again.
30. Did you sell your translation?
31. This morning the merchant sold a lot of flour, cabbages, vegetables and rye.
32. Your translation is very weak.
33. Why were you begging at the baker's?
34. Long live the dancer!
35. We saw beautiful dances in Russia.
36. The singer sang the song which I translated yesterday.
37. They sold their house and moved away.
38. We are happy here, and we do not wish to travel away.
39. Have a good trip!
40. Did you see a man behind the bushes?
41. She never knows where her rice-bowl is.
42. When did they leave on their travels?
43. The bank lent money to our gardener.
44. He soon earned a lot of money.
45. We departed on our journey early in the morning.
46. Long live the teacher!
47. Did the man, to whom you gave the loan, have black hair?
48. People rarely sing when they are sad.
49. How did she translate the word "edge"?
50. Trees without leaves are not beautiful.
51. Anne's cousin was reading at the window.
52. Beyond the garden, the labourers were cleaning the well.
53. Where is the wine, please? - In the cellar. - Thank you.
54. You are very quiet today, Eve!
55. Long live uncle Arthur!
56. I have many kind friends who are helping me.
57. Did you lend her your book again?
58. Your gardener is a discourteous person.
59. Under the bank there is a cellar without windows.
60. The ocean is rarely quiet here.
61. His father never gives him a loan.
62. To whom do the gloves belong?
63. Where are the pork and pepper, please?
64. I do not want to forgive him.
65. She was holding a lemon in her hand.
66. His daughter had a beautiful, white neck.

67. Oh dear, the roof is not very strong!
68. Why are little children always crying?
69. Scientific books are often very interesting.
70. There is a snivelling beggar in the yard.
71. Beyond the mountains we could see the sea.
72. Has the gardener any new plants?
73. She writes badly, but reads well.

LESSON 21

LONG CONJUGATION VERBS IN -ĀT

Long Conjugation verbs in *-āt* are conjugated like those in *-ot*, except that the vowel *-ā-* appears in place of the diphthong *-o-*.

runāt 'to speak'

Present	Imperfect
<i>es run-āj-u</i>	<i>es run-āj-u</i>
<i>tu run-ā</i>	<i>tu run-āj-i</i>
<i>viņš run-ā</i>	<i>viņš run-āj-a</i>
<i>mēs run-āj-am</i>	<i>mēs run-āj-ām</i>
<i>jūs run-āj-at</i>	<i>jūs run-āj-āt</i>
<i>viņi run-ā</i>	<i>viņi run-āj-a</i>

All the verbs in the following vocabulary are conjugated like *runāt*.

Vocabulary

<i>runāt</i>	to speak	<i>pasts</i>	post office
<i>domāt</i>	to think; to intend	<i>bibliotēka</i>	library
<i>maksāt</i>	to pay; to cost	<i>aptieka</i>	pharmacy
<i>mazgāt</i>	to wash	<i>aptiekārs</i>	pharmacist
<i>strādāt</i>	to work	<i>Āfrika</i>	Africa
<i>jautāt</i>	to ask, to enquire	<i>Austrālija</i>	Australia

NOTES: The verb *maksāt* requires the dative of the person, e.g., 'He did not pay me'. *Viņš man nemaksāja*.

Mazgāt can be used only with an object. When it appears without an object, as in 'we washed', then Latvian uses a reflexive form which we will study later. Similarly, 'we wash ourselves' requires the reflexive verb, and cannot be done with the personal pronouns.

Jautāt requires the dative of the person.

Bibliotēka is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 21a

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; tu; viņš; viņa; dziļš ezers; liela pilsēta*.

Exercise 21b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es nepārdodu cukuru.*
2. *Es šorīt nestrādāju.*
3. *Es daru, ko es gribu.*
4. *Man ir brālēni, bet man nav māsiņu.*
5. *Kas var mani redzēt?*

Exercise 21c

Translate into English:

1. Viņš nekad nedomā; viņš tikai runā.
2. Kalpi strādāja pļavā aiz aploka.
3. Latvijā viņš bija aptiekārs, bet šeit Austrālijā viņš strādā pastā.
4. Šorīt es biju pie ārsta, un tagad es eju pie aptiekāra.
5. Mēs strādājam pilsētas bibliotēkā.
6. Vai tu domā, ka visi cilvēki ir labi?
7. Es nedomāju, ka viņš zina visu.
8. Vai jūs domājat, ka dejotāji jau ir šeit?
9. Vai tu domā iet pie viņas?
10. Ko viņa mazgāja pie akas? – Viņa mazgāja savus svārkus un cimdus.
11. Austrālijai nav vecu pilsētu.
12. Ubags nekad nemazgāja rokas.
13. Āfrikā ir daudz lielu ezeru.
14. Austrālijas pilsētās ir daudz banku.

15. Banka man deva aizdevumu.
16. Mana māsa tagad dzīvo Austrālijā.
17. Kur šeit ir aptieka? – Aptieka ir tur, pie pasta. – Piedodiet, bet es arvien vēl nezinu, kur ir pasts... ak, tagad es redzu! Aiz bibliotēkas.
18. Vai jūs bijāt Āfrikā?
19. Vai Anglija dod Austrālijai naudas aizdevumus?
20. Aptiekārs tagad mazgā savas bļodas.
21. Jaunas mašīnas maksā lielu naudu.
22. Kāpēc jūs runājat, bērni? – Mēs vienmēr runājam pie galda.
23. Mēs strādājām mežā aiz kalna.
24. Viņš šorīt nevar maksāt aptiekāram.
25. Ak, jūsu bērns jau runā!
26. Aptiekāram ir sava bibliotēka. (Notice that *sava*, not *viņa*, is required after the dative of possession.)
27. Āfrikas mežos ceļi ir slikti.
28. Āfrikā cilvēki dejo ļoti interesantas dejas.
29. Aptiekārs šorīt bija pastā, bet tagad viņš ir atkal savā aptiekā.
30. Aptiekā ir maza zinātniska bibliotēka.
31. Es viņai jautāju, kur viņa bija.
32. Es jautāju Annai, kāpēc viņa raudāja.
33. Mēs jautājām dārzniekam, kur viņš strādā.
34. Tu nekad nejautā, kā man iet.
35. Viņš pārdeva namu un aizceļoja.
36. Viņas tulkojumi ir ļoti skaisti.
37. Visas manas vistas ir melnas.
38. Vai viņš grib pārdot savu tulkojumu?
39. Vai tu tulko vecas dziesmas?
40. Skolnieki nedrīkst svilpot skolā.
41. Lai dzīvo mūsu kaimiņš!
42. Viņš neubago; viņš grib tikai pārdot grāmatas.
43. Meitas jau agri no rīta baroja cūkas.
44. Kam tu aizdevi savu dziesmu grāmatu?
45. Tava māsa Ieva dzied pagalmā.
46. Viņu krusttēvs reti ceļo.
47. Nams vakar bija kluss, tāpēc ka bērni bija skolā.
48. Vai dejotāji un dziedātāji ir laipni cilvēki?
49. Lūdzu, vai es drīkstu lietot jūsu ratus?
50. Miesnieks atdeva rakstniekam grāmatas.
51. Visi tirgotāji nav labi veikalnieki.
52. Artūrs ir ļoti raudulīgs bērns.
53. Koku lapas tagad ir zaļas.
54. Viņa māsa ir mazs bērns.

55. Sētas vārti bija balti.
56. Viņa vārds ir Artūrs.
57. Aizvakar mans brālēns bija ļoti bēdīgs.
58. Vai nelaiņš cilvēks var būt laimīgs?
59. Kāpēc tu nedejo?
60. Viņš dzīvoja Rīgā, bet tagad dzīvo pie jūras.
61. Mēs lietojām viņu grāmatas.
62. Viņš vienmēr ceļo: viņam ir daudz naudas.
63. Kāpēc tu gribi aizceļot?
64. Vai tu arvien baro cūkas?
65. Rakstnieks nevarēja tulkot savus darbus.
66. Vīri, kas arvien ubago, ir ubagi.

Exercise 21d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I did not know you were speaking.
2. I think there are wolves on the edge of the forest.
3. Excuse me, do you know where the post office is? – The post office is near the library, behind the bank. – Thank you, now I see, and there is also a pharmacy there.
4. Our pharmacist is already an old man.
5. To whom did you pay all the money?
6. Where did you work in Australia?
7. To whom does the pharmacy belong, please?
8. Did your car cost much money?
9. Arthur is now washing his feet.
10. This morning I washed my car.
11. They (f.) were working in the fields.
12. The cousin (m.) of the pharmacist works in the library, and his sister works at the post office.
13. There are not many people in Australia.
14. Are the children allowed to speak at the table?
15. I intend to travel in the forests of Africa.
16. His sister was washing the table and chairs in her room.
17. Why didn't he speak when he was at the pharmacist's place?
18. The horses of Australia are very good.
19. The lakes of Africa are deep.
20. The forests of Australia are always green.
21. Yesterday you were happy, but today you are sad.
22. In Africa live black people.

23. My cousin is washing her hair.
24. The people in Africa dance very interesting dances.
25. Did Paul pay his neighbour?
26. Anne is now living behind the library.
27. Doesn't he want to pay?
28. Arthur's godfather is a pharmacist. His pharmacy is by the post office.
29. In the library there are many scientific books.
30. I rarely go to the pharmacy.
31. He asked where the pharmacy was.
32. I asked what he intended to do.
33. He asked why Anne never speaks.
34. I asked him why he thought new dances were not beautiful.
35. We are selling our house and moving away.
36. He uses a lot of old words in his translations.
37. Oh dear, the girls did not feed the pigs this morning!
38. The writer was translating a new song when I was at his place the day before yesterday.
39. The dancers were begging in the streets because they had no money.
40. Long live our friends!
41. Long live your cousin (f.)!
42. The translation you are using is not very good.
43. He sold the lettuces to the merchant.
44. Does the dancer earn much money?
45. You are a very fine singer; why do you only whistle?
46. The farmer's daughters were dancing in the yard.
47. Can I feed the horses, please?
48. The gardener was here again this morning.
49. Does the bank always grant loans?
50. I lent him my car.
51. Arthur went away without Anne.
52. The beggar was standing by the gate in a strong wind.
53. The calf had long legs.
54. The teacher then forgave the pupil.
55. How does your son read? – Very well, thank you.
56. I asked what he was planting.
57. All the stories he tells are very sad.
58. We gave the money to the farm-labourer.
59. The girls were cleaning the car.

LESSON 22

REVISION AND CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS. VERBS WITH THE INDEFINITE SUBJECT

So far we have studied the following types of verb:

MIXED CONJUGATION:

- ēt: *drīkstēt; aizstāvēt; cerēt; palīdzēt; piederēt; peldēt; redzēt; dzirdēt; gribēt; mīlēt; varēt; atbildēt; turēt; stāvēt; ticēt.*
 -īt: *lasīt; darīt; rakstīt; pelnīt; tīrīt; prasīt; stāstīt; stādīt.*
 -āt: Type I: *dziedāt; raudāt.* Type II: *zināt.*

LONG CONJUGATION:

- āt: *runāt; domāt; maksāt; mazgāt; strādāt; jautāt.*
 -ot: *dzīvot; lietot; svīpot; dejot; ceļot; barot; tulkot; ubagot; aizceļot.*

IRREGULAR: *iet; aiziet; dot; aizdot; atdot; iedot; piedot; pārdot; būt.*

We have studied the *present* and *imperfect* tenses of these verbs.

The following classification by infinitive may be of help in assigning verbs to their appropriate conjugation: it excludes all monosyllabic verbs and their compounds.

Infinitives ending in *-āt*: These verbs belong mostly to the Long Conjugation. The only exceptions are *dziedāt, raudāt, sargāt* (which we shall study in a later lesson) and *zināt*, along with all other verbs in *-ināt*.

Infinitives ending in *-ēt*: So far we have studied only Mixed verbs of this type. There are, however, numerous verbs in *-ēt* which are of the Long Conjugation.

Infinitives ending in *-īt*: The great majority are Mixed. There are a few Long, which we shall study later.

Infinitives ending in *-ot*: All are long.

THE INDEFINITE SUBJECT

In English, the pronoun 'one' is often used as subject of a verb, as in 'One can see the sea from here', or 'What is one to do?' 'One' is the indefinite subject in English.

In Latvian there is no corresponding pronoun, although there is a corresponding usage. We simply use the third person of the verb without a subject, e.g.,

Šodien var redzēt kalnu.

One can see the mountain today.

However, the use of the indefinite subject 'one' is quite restricted in English, which very often substitutes 'you' without changing the indefinite nature of the subject: cf. 'You don't always get what you want'. In these cases, Latvian again uses the third person of the verb without a subject, cf.

You can't always do what you wish. *Nevar vienmēr darīt, ko grib.*

Vocabulary

<i>apturēt</i> (Mixed)	to stop (car, horse, etc.) (trans.)
<i>derēt</i> (Mixed)	to be suitable, useful, fitting. Cf. <i>tas neder</i> 'that's no good, no use'; <i>kam tas der?</i> 'what's the good of that?'; <i>jūsu cimdī man neder</i> 'your gloves do not fit me'.
<i>draudēt</i> (Mixed)	to threaten
<i>drēbēt</i> (Mixed)	to tremble, shiver, shake (intrans.)
<i>ierēdzēt</i> (Mixed)	to esteem, to respect; to put up with (someone) – (in negative only) Cf. <i>Es viņu neieredzu.</i> I don't like him. <i>Viņu labi ieredz.</i> He is very well liked.
<i>mācīt</i> (Mixed)	to teach
<i>mācītājs</i>	pastor, minister (of religion)
<i>kaut kas</i> (Nom.)	something, anything (subject)
<i>kaut ko</i> (Acc.)	something, anything (object)
<i>kāds</i> (regular declension)	some one
<i>tas</i> (Masc. Nom.)	that (pronoun), it, <i>occ.</i> he (as subject)
<i>to</i> (Masc. Acc.)	that (pronoun), it, <i>occ.</i> him (as object)
<i>vai</i>	whether; or

NOTES: The verb *draudēt* requires its object in the dative case: cf. *Es nedraudu saviem draugiem.* 'I do not threaten my friends'.

The alternation of *ŗ* and *ř* through the conjugation of *ieredzēt* is the same as that of *redzēt*.

The verb *mācīt* requires the accusative of the thing taught and the dative of the person taught, e.g., *Skolotājs māca skolniekiem dziesmu.* 'The teacher is teaching the pupils a song'. In the absence of the thing taught, the person taught is in the accusative, e.g., *Skolotājs māca skolniekus.* 'The teacher is

teaching the pupils.' This accusative of the person is retained if there is a following infinitive, e.g., *Skolotājs māca skolniekus rakstīt*. 'The teacher is teaching the pupils to write.' If the infinitive has a further object, then the person taught reverts to the dative, e.g., *Skolotājs māca skolniekiem dziedāt jaunu dziesmu*. 'The teacher is teaching the pupils to sing a new song.'

Exercise 22a

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; tu; viņš; viņa; jauna mašīna; interesants nams*.

Exercise 22b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Es neesmu ubags.</i> | 9. <i>Es nepelnu daudz naudas.</i> |
| 2. <i>Es eju skolā.</i> | 10. <i>Man ir nauda un draugi.</i> |
| 3. <i>Es viņai iedodu grāmatu.</i> | 11. <i>Kur ir mana grāmata?</i> |
| 4. <i>Kur es dzīvoju?</i> | 12. <i>Saimnieka meita mani nemīl.</i> |
| 5. <i>Es nezinu, kāpēc es raudu.</i> | 13. <i>Ko jūs mani redzat?</i> |
| 6. <i>Es slikti dziedu.</i> | 14. <i>Pāvils ir pie manis.</i> |
| 7. <i>Es domāju viņam draudēt.</i> | 15. <i>Vai Ieva aiziet bez manis?</i> |
| 8. <i>Es turu savu zirgu.</i> | 16. <i>Vai mani labi ieredz?</i> |

Exercise 22c

Translate into Latvian:

I am allowed;	they are going away;	you (s.) hope;
you (pl.) wished;	we can't;	you (pl.) held;
we asked;	they planted;	you (pl.) wept;
you (s.) feed;	I travel;	she is dancing;
we were speaking;	they travelled away;	you (pl.) begged;
I am reading;	you (s.) do;	she believes;
we defended;	she did not give back;	you (pl.) swam;
you (s.) are able;	I hold;	she wishes;
you (s.) were;	he gave;	he sold;
we sang;	I weep;	the horses belong to me;
do we believe?;	I earn;	
you (s.) are cleaning;	we were writing;	you (s.) defend;
they are;	I gave;	I help;

we heard;	you (pl.) ask;	I recount;
she went;	I love;	I paid;
we give back;	she worked;	they knew;
you (pl.) answered;	you (s.) stand;	I forgave;
we swim;	you (s.) heard;	they saw;
we danced;	they whistled;	they give;
you (pl.) think;	they fed;	they didn't stand;
I asked;	we go;	you (s.) are planting;
you (s.) know;	we used to live;	
you (pl.) pay;	they did;	they wash;
the horses used to belong to me;		
	you (pl.) earned;	they wish;
	they lend;	I see;
we hoped;	you (pl.) give;	they were not allowed;
we sell;	we work;	
we translate;	I beg;	they cleaned;
I use;	she answers;	you (s.) are whistling;
they loved;	you (pl.) recounted;	
he is asking;	you (pl.) used;	she is helping;
he lives;	he is speaking;	I think;
he translates;	you (s.) went away;	you (pl.) read;
you (s.) lent;	you (s.) washed;	he sings;
	you (pl.) forgive;	you (pl.) travelled.

Exercise 22d

Translate into English:

- Mācītājs zina, kas cilvēkiem der.
- Vai mācītājs jums aizdeva savu dziesmu grāmatu?
- Vai tu jau kaut ko zini?
- Viņa tikai raud un dreb.
- Lapas drebēja vējā.
- Vai kāds šorīt stāvēja pie vārtiem?
- Es savu brālēnu neieredzu.
- Vakar vai aizvakar mācītājs bija pilsētā.
- Kad mēs šorīt peldējām jūrā, bija stiprs vējš, un mēs visi drebējām.
- Kāpēc tu savam brālēnam draudēji?
- Vai viņš kaut ko darīja?
- Vājš vīns mums neder.
- Viņš mani apturēja un jautāja, kur ir aptieka.
- Vai kalps savam saimniekam draudēja?

15. Kāpēc jūs savam kaimiņam draudējāt?
16. Viņš ceļoja Austrālijā un Āfrikā.
17. Kāpēc tu apturēji mašīnu kalnos?
18. Mēs mācām savus bērnus, un arī skolotāji viņus māca.
19. Māšas cimdī man der.
20. Skolotājs mūs mācīja dziedāt.
21. Viņš nevar maksāt, un banka jau draud.
22. Kāpēc viņa neieredz savu brālēnu Artūru? Es domāju, ka viņš ir laipns cilvēks.
23. Es zinu, ka jūs tirgotāju neieredzat.
24. Vai veikalnieks jums pārdeva tikai miltus vai arī dārzājus?
25. Bērni nedrīkst runāt, kad tēvs lasa.
26. Vai jūs jau zināt kaut ko jaunu? (In Latvian, *something new* is *kaut kas jauns*, i.e., the word *jauns* agrees in case with *kaut kas*. Here the expression is the object of the sentence, and is hence in the accusative case. The same rules apply to any adjective used with *kaut kas*, e.g., *something big*, *something black*, etc.)
27. Kur viņš tagad strādā? – Es nezīnu... bankā vai pastā.
28. “Mans draugs,” viņa jautāja, “vai jūs vienmēr apturat savu mašīnu mežā?”
29. Es ceru, ka mani svārki tev der.
30. Es domāju, ka viņš ir dejotājs vai dziedātājs.
31. Mēs visi viņu ieredzam; viņš ir interesants un arī labs cilvēks.
32. Vai jums ir kaut kas rokā?
33. Tēvs mūs māca peldēt.
34. Vai kāds šodien bija rudzu laukā?
35. Kur ir putns? – Es to neredzu.
36. Kur ir tavi dēli? – To es nezīnu.
37. Tas ir ļoti interesants stāsts.
38. Vai kāds tagad dzīvo jūsu namā?
39. Kur ir maiznieka maiss? – Tas ir šeit.
40. Vai tu kādu redzēji pagalmā?
41. Bibliotēkās nedrīkst runāt.
42. Grāmatas nepārdod pastā.
43. Aptiekāru labi ieredz.
44. Kur šeit var mazgāt rokas?
45. Vai jūsu mašīna maksāja daudz naudas?
46. Vai šeit pārdod piparus un cūkas gaļu?
47. Strādā, tāpēc ka grib pelnīt naudu.
48. Aptiekā nepārdod vīnu.
49. Viņš mazgāja mašīnu un tad baroja cūkas.
50. Aptiekārs un rakstnieks lasīja bibliotēkā.
51. Vai Austrālijā vienmēr var peldēt okeanā?

52. Mēs lietojām vecu tulkojumu, kas nebija labs.
53. Ubaga bērni svilpoja un dejoja.
54. Lai dzīvo mani draugi!
55. Viņš negrib tulkot zinātniskas grāmatas.
56. “Vai šeit drīkst ubagot?” man prasīja vecs ubags.
57. Kāpēc tu aizceļo?

Exercise 22e

Translate into Latvian:

1. When he threatened her, she was trembling.
2. She taught them to dance.
3. I can't stand tearful children.
4. My husband could not stop the car.
5. The pastor's son is a pharmacist.
6. Does he live at his father's or at his uncle's?
7. The teacher is teaching his pupils.
8. Did he want something?
9. Why can't they stand the writer?
10. I can't see very well; is it Paul or Arthur at the well?
11. Have you anything in your cart? – Yes, a bag of rye and a bag of onions.
12. Did the butcher tell them anything?
13. The horses trembled when they heard the wolves.
14. The gardener went to the pastor's place.
15. The farm-hand could not stop the horses when they saw the car.
16. We all esteem him.
17. The pastor has a fine library.
18. Do you know what suits him?
19. The teacher was threatening us again.
20. Where are the hens? – I don't know... in the yard, or the garden.
21. Now you are trembling again!
22. Why did you swim in the lake early in the morning?
23. They are now in Russia or in England.
24. Some one is threatening my neighbour.
25. The beggar threatened the baker.
26. Can people be taught to read scientific books?
27. Do you know anything that suits everyone?
28. Some one is standing near the gate.
29. We cannot stop the sea or the winds.
30. What is the good of that? – No good at all!
31. I did not do that.

32. I think there is some one in the garden.
33. You are not allowed to whistle at school.
34. When did they travel away to the seaside?
35. There are many trees near the post office.
36. Will you sell me the apples which are in your cellar?
37. The horse had a long neck.
38. He thinks that hens have teeth.
39. We often feed the animals early in the morning.
40. I helped the gardener plant a few bushes.
41. Arthur has long fingers.
42. He never answers my questions.
43. What are you holding in your hand?
44. Butter, milk and cheese are sold in the shop. – Are cabbages and carrots also sold there?
45. There are still lemons in a bag under the table.
46. Is there somebody in the house?
47. On the edge of the garden, the farmer was putting in some plants.
48. Here is the sugar for you. – That's not sugar, that's a bag of rice!

LESSON 23

REVISION OF ADVERBS

We have so far met the following adverbs: *kur; tur; šē; šeit; kā; kad; tad; arī; tikai; šodien; agri no rīta; tagad; vēl; vienmēr; vakar; aizvakar; šorīt; kāpēc; labi; slikti; ļoti; daudz; nedaudz; bieži; drīz; jau; reti; nekad; arvien; atkal.*

The following list contains a number of new ones.

Vocabulary

<i>cik</i> (+ gen.)	how much, how many
<i>tik daudz</i> (+ gen.)	so much, so many
<i>vairāk</i> (+ gen.)	more
<i>maz</i> (+ gen.)	little, few
<i>mazāk</i> (+ gen.)	less, fewer
<i>diezgan</i> (+ gen.)	enough
<i>drusku</i> or <i>drusciņ</i> (+ gen.)	a little

<i>tūliņ</i> or <i>tūlīt</i>	immediately
<i>ārā</i> or <i>laukā</i>	outside
<i>šur un tur</i>	here and there
<i>visur</i>	everywhere
<i>nekā</i>	than

The following examples should make clear the use of these adverbs of quantity with following genitive, singular and plural.

<i>Cik naudas jums ir?</i>	How much money have you?
<i>Cik stādu ir dārzā?</i>	How many plants are there in the garden?
<i>Viņam ir tik daudz gaļas!</i>	He has so much meat!
<i>Viņam ir tik daudz draugu!</i>	He has so many friends!
<i>Man ir vairāk naudas nekā tev.</i>	I have more money than you.
<i>Mūsu pilsētā ir vairāk namu nekā jūsu pilsētā.</i>	There are more houses in our city than in your city.
<i>Mums ir (ļoti) maz sviesta.</i>	We have (very) little butter.
<i>Tēvam ir (ļoti) maz olu.</i>	The father has (very) few eggs.
<i>Mums ir mazāk vīna nekā viņiem.</i>	We have less wine than they.
<i>Tirgotājam ir mazāk zirgu nekā salmniekam.</i>	The merchant has fewer horses than the farmer.
<i>Vai jums ir diezgan gaļas?</i>	Have you enough meat?
<i>Krievijā nebija diezgan skolu.</i>	There used not to be enough schools in Russia.
<i>Viņš man iedeva drusku (drusciņ) siera.</i>	He gave me a little cheese.
<i>Viņš man iedeva drusku (drusciņ) rīsu.</i>	He gave me a little rice.

Note particularly that *drusku* (*drusciņ*) can be used with a plural only when the noun is one normally used in the plural only, such as *rīsi, milti*, etc.

Exercise 23a

Decline in singular and plural: *bēdīgs stāsts; dziļa aka; veca pilsēta; viss nams; es; tu.*

Exercise 23b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es nezīnu, kāpēc es gribu dziedāt.*
2. *Es bieži aizeju darbā agri no rīta.*
3. *Es pārdodu ābolus.*
4. *Es lietoju maisus.*
5. *Es neraudu, kad esmu priecīgs.*
6. *Es tīru savu istabu.*
7. *Es viņai nepalldzu.*
8. *Man ir maz draugu.*
9. *Mani labi ieredz.*
10. *Viņa aizgāja bez manis.*

Exercise 23c

Construe each of the nouns given in the second list below with each of the expressions given in the first list in turn.

1. (a) I have; (b) you (s.) have; (c) he has; (d) she has; (e) we have; (f) you (pl.) have; (g) they (m.) have; (h) they (f.) have.
2. Translation; gardener; song; hymn-book; neighbour; calf; gate; uncle; cousin (m.); cousin (f.); name; well; yard; sister; leaf; paper; car; exercise; dish; bed; meadow; head; pig; meat; pepper; chair; sugar; vegetables; lettuce; onion; lemon; pork; shop; tomato; rice; flour; cheese; milk; butter; glove; carrot; cabbage; question; teeth; neck; fingers; hair; coat; cart; rye; roof; house.

Exercise 23d

Put the sentences formed in Exercise 23c into the negative.

Exercise 23e

Translate into English:

1. Cik cilvēkam ir zobu?
2. Cik Latvijā ir pilsētu?
3. Cik dziesmu skolnieki jau zina?
4. Aptiekāram ir mazāk grāmatu nekā mācītājam.

5. Es nedomāju, ka man bankā ir tik daudz naudas.
6. Pāvilam ir vairāk matu nekā Artūram.
7. Krusttēvs zina vairāk vecu dziesmu nekā es.
8. Tu prasi vairāk jautājumu, nekā es tev varu atbildēt.
9. Anglijā dzīvo daudz vairāk cilvēku nekā Austrālijā.
10. Austrālijā dzīvo daudz mazāk cilvēku nekā Anglijā.
11. Es negribu tik daudz piparu – tikai drusku.
12. Man nav diezgan sviesta; vai tu nevari man aizdot drusku sviesta?
13. Ārā aiz vārtiem stāvēja ubags.
14. Stiprā vējā bērni nedrīkst iet laukā.
15. Visur tagad var redzēt tik daudz jaunu namu!
16. Tīrotājam šodien ir ļoti maz burkānu.
17. Šorīt pagrabā jau ir daudz mazāk vīna nekā vakar, bet vēl ir diezgan.
18. Ārsts tūlīt aizgāja pie viņa.
19. Kad es biju pilsētā, es tūlīt gāju pie ārsta.
20. Šorīt šeit ir maz cilvēku.
21. Šur un tur mežos vēl ir vilki.
22. Mācītājam ir mazāk lauku un pļavu nekā saimniekam.
23. Aptiekārs pelnīja mazāk naudas nekā tīrotājs.
24. Maisā ir ļoti maz cukura.
25. Vai jums ir rudzu diezgan?
26. Dārzos tagad visur redz zaļus stādus.
27. Viņš nevarēja tūlīt atbildēt skolotājam.
28. Kad Ieva nezināja dziesmas vārdus, skolotājs viņai tūlīt palīdzēja.
29. Šeit ir ļoti maz koku, un tikai šur un tur ir zaļi krūmi.
30. Kur ir tavs brālēns? – Tur ārā, aplokā pie saviem zirgiem.
31. Jūsu pilsētā visur redz skaistus dārzus un lielus namus.
32. Vai kādam ir vairāk dēlu nekā viņiem?
33. Vai jums ir diezgan papīra? – Jā, paldies.
34. Miesniekam bija tikai druscīņ cūkas gaļas.
35. Šur un tur aplokos kalpi jau baroja lopus.
36. Vai kāds tev draudēja?
37. Anna apturēja savu mašīnu aiz bibliotēkas.
38. Zem aptiekas bija liels pagrabs.
39. Es neieredzu dejotājus.
40. Viņas neieredz savu māsīcu.
41. Ko jūs mācāt viņu meitām?
42. Vai tas ir tavs teļš? – Nē, tas ir mana drauga teļš.
43. Bērniem neder vīns.
44. Ievas cimdi Annai neder.
45. Miesnieks iedeva dārzniekam gaļu, bet dārznieks viņam nemaksāja.
46. Es gribu tev mācīt kaut ko jaunu.

47. Mēs tūlīt apturējām mašīnu.
48. Kā jums iet, labi?
49. Es viņiem prasīju, vai viņi draudēja manam dēlam.
50. Vai jūs lasījāt kaut ko interesantu?
51. Meita drebēja, kad tēvs viņai draudēja.
52. Kalps jautāja mācītājam, kur ir Āfrika.
53. Ko viņas mazgā pie akas?
54. Lūdzu, kā es varu jums palīdzēt?
55. Es dejoju bieži, bet Pāvils dejo reti.
56. Arī Anna arvien grib dejoj.
57. Meitas baroja lopus.

Exercise 23f

Translate into Latvian:

1. She thinks her husband now loves her less.
2. Have you enough cheese? – I have a little cheese, but not enough.
3. How many books are there in the library?
4. There were leaves everywhere.
5. When I went outside, I immediately saw my cart.
6. You have so many friends!
7. Here and there, there were wells.
8. He always gave his daughter very little money.
9. There were many people in the house, but still more in the garden.
10. How many rooms are there in the baker's house?
11. How many sisters has the butcher?
12. He is able to travel everywhere, because he earns so much.
13. Why doesn't your cousin (f.) want to go outside this morning?
14. I have enough wine, thank you.
15. He has very few hens, but many animals.
16. Don't you want a little pepper? – No, thank you.
17. Here and there on the way (*ceļā*) we saw wolves.
18. The pharmacist works more than the merchant.
19. The bank is now giving fewer loans.
20. Today we have less homework than yesterday or the day before.
21. In Russia there are more forests than in England or Australia: there are also lakes everywhere.
22. I use very little sugar.
23. How many questions did the pupil ask?
24. The shop-keeper sold more vegetables today than yesterday.

25. I gave him a lot of money, but he is still threatening me.
26. I stopped the car at once.
27. There are enough beds in our house, but very few chairs.
28. Why are there so many dishes on the table?
29. This morning there are fewer people everywhere on the beach.
30. Oh dear, there is a wolf outside!
31. She went outside and fed the animals immediately.
32. The translations are here, but they are not good.
33. When the beggar asked me, I immediately gave him a bit of milk.
34. They lived here and there.
35. I now read very little.
36. Here and there a small hill could be seen.
37. Why are there so many pastors in our city?
38. Why is the teacher, who was well-liked, going away?
39. Did you see anybody in the fields?
40. Is that your house? – No, it belongs to my uncle.
41. I was trembling, because I heard something behind the bushes.
42. Our city is now without a pastor.
43. Your coat did not fit me.
44. Someone is threatening me, but I do not know who it is.
45. We could not stand the farmer's daughter – she was very unkind. Now **she** is going away, and we all are very happy.
46. He is teaching us the words of the song.
47. I wanted to sell something, because I had no money.
48. He stopped his car behind the post office.
49. The cart he wanted to sell did not suit me.
50. Our teacher taught us many new words today.
51. The children trembled when their father threatened them.
52. Begging is not allowed here.
53. Only bad pupils whistle at school.
54. The farmer moved away, because he wanted to live in Riga.
55. He is translating the writer's book.
56. I asked the man where the pharmacy was.
57. Children are never willing to wash their hands.
58. He is a very quiet child, and rarely speaks.
59. In Africa there are many large lakes.
60. There is a deep well in the yard.
61. I saw a little child in the garden.
62. I forgive only my friends.
63. He gave me back the money this morning.
64. He rarely tells an interesting story.
65. The girls were cleaning their rooms.

LESSON 24

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS ENDING IN *-E*

The most frequent type of feminine noun, after the type in *-a*, is the type ending in *-e*. The paradigm of such a word, *māte* 'mother', is given below.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>māt-e</i>	<i>māt-eš</i>
Acc.	<i>māt-i</i>	<i>māt-eš</i>
Gen.	<i>māt-eš</i>	<i>mā-š-u</i>
Dat.	<i>māt-ei</i>	<i>māt-ēm</i>
Loc.	<i>māt-ē</i>	<i>māt-ēs</i>

It should be observed that the *-e-* of the terminations is everywhere closed. The similarity of this type of declension to the type in *-a* is obvious: with the exception of the accusative singular and the genitive plural, the pattern is identical, with *-e-* substituted for *-a-*.

Notice in particular the transformation of the final stem consonant in the genitive plural. With very few exceptions, the nouns of the *-e* type have a modified consonant in this case. The simple consonant is replaced in the genitive plural by what is called a PALATALIZED CONSONANT.

The following table shows the palatalized equivalents of unpalatalized consonants, and should be very carefully studied:

<i>b</i>	becomes	<i>bj</i>
<i>c</i>	becomes	<i>č</i>
<i>d</i>	becomes	<i>ž</i>
<i>l</i>	becomes	<i>ļ</i>
<i>m</i>	becomes	<i>mj</i>
<i>n</i>	becomes	<i>ņ</i>
<i>p</i>	becomes	<i>pj</i>
<i>s</i>	becomes	<i>š</i>
<i>t</i>	becomes	<i>š</i>
<i>v</i>	becomes	<i>vj</i>
<i>z</i>	becomes	<i>ž</i>

The consonants of the second column, if they appear as the final stem consonant, remain unchanged as do the consonants *k*, *g*, and *r*. In older Latvian, *r* was regularly palatalized to *ŗ*, but since the disappearance of the latter, this palatalization no longer takes place. The words of the following vocabulary are all declined like *māte*. The genitive plural of each noun is given in brackets.

Vocabulary

<i>māte</i> (<i>māšu</i>)	mother	<i>kurpe</i> (<i>kurpju</i>)	shoe
<i>vēstule</i> (<i>vēstuļu</i>)	letter	<i>puķe</i> (<i>puķu</i>)	flower
<i>roze</i> (<i>rožu</i>)	rose	<i>zvaigzne</i> (<i>zvaigžņu</i>)	star
<i>saulē</i> (<i>sauļu</i>)	sun	<i>pasaule</i> (<i>pasauļu</i>)	world
<i>zeme</i> (<i>zemju</i>)	earth, land	<i>pele</i> (<i>peļu</i>)	mouse
<i>saitē</i> (<i>saišu</i>)	lace, cord, string	<i>bite</i> (<i>bišu</i>)	bee

Note the phrases *turēt saitē* and *turēt pie saitēs*: both mean 'to hold on a lead'.

The pronunciation *vēstule* is often heard instead of *vēstule*.

Exercise 24a

Decline in singular and plural:

- (a) *kurpe*; *vēstule*; *puķe*; *grāmata*; *pele*; *tulkojums*; *es*; *tu*.
 (b) *mana kurpe*; *visa vēstule*; *balta puķe*; *maza pele*.

Exercise 24b

What consonants remain unaffected in the genitive plural of feminine *-e* nouns?

Exercise 24c

Conjugate the following verbs in the present and imperfect, marking the open (*e*) and closed (*e*) *e*-vowels: *būt*; *redzēt*; *dejt*; *dot*.

Exercise 24d

Translate into English:

1. Man ir ļoti maz papīra.
2. Pasaulē ir tik daudz zemju!
3. Ak, mātes kurpē ir pele!
4. Saimniekam nav bišu.
5. Ubagam nav kurpju.
6. Ak, pagrabā ir tik daudz peļu!
7. Dārzā ir skaistas rozes.
8. Artūrs nevar iet pie mācītāja bez svārkiem.
9. Šodien veikalā ir daudz rožu.

10. Skolnieks nezināja, ka saule arī ir zvaigzne.
11. Mātes vēstules vienmēr ir garas.
12. Dejotājs bieži dejo bez kurpēm.
13. Dziedātājs vēl ir ļoti jauns, bet domā, ka viņš jau ir liela zvaigzne! (*Zvaigzne is here equivalent to the English star in the sense of celebrity.*)
14. Es nezinu, cik vēstuļu es viņai rakstīju, bet viņa man arvien vēl neatbild.
15. Visās pasaules malās ir tirgotāji.
16. Rozēm šeit nav diezgan saules.
17. Dārznieks stāda puķes.
18. Dārznieks domā, ka zem krūmiem dzīvo peles.
19. Tirgotājs turēja jaunu teļu garā saitē.
20. Krievija ir ļoti liela zeme.
21. Māte rakstīja vēstuli.
22. Es lasīju, ka jūsu zeme ir skaista, un ka tur ir daudz puķu.
23. Kalps tur zirgu pie saites.
24. Kāpēc tu šorīt neaizgāji pie savas mātes?
25. Cik tavas kurpes maksāja?
26. Pasaulē ir maz labu rakstnieku.
27. Mēs nezinām, kas ir aiz zvaigznēm.
28. Saule tagad jau ir aiz kalniem.
29. Mūsu zemē nav daudz bišu.
30. Ak, istabā ir bites!
31. Mans krusttēvs strādā bankā.
32. Mācītājs turēja savu zirgu saitē.
33. Anna neraksta garas vēstules.
34. Visas rozes ir puķes, bet visas puķes nav rozes.
35. Meita tur teļu saitē.
36. Man ir vairāk draugu nekā jums; jums ir mazāk draugu nekā man.
37. Vai tu vari man iedot druscīn gaļas?
38. Viņš man prasīja, vai man ir diezgan ābolu.
39. Šur un tur varēja redzēt putnus.
40. Skolotājs mums māca daudz jaunu vārdu.
41. Kas tas ir? – Tas ir citrons.
42. Vai visur Āfrikā ir lieli meži? – To es nezinu.
43. Vai kādam ir manas kurpes?
44. Tavi cimdi man neder.
45. Kam jūs šorīt draudējāt?
46. Tev ir vairāk vīna, bet mazāk piena nekā mums.
47. Saimnieks bieži strādā ārā dārzā.
48. Laukā stāvēja vecs ubags.
49. Austrālijā šur un tur redz zaļas pļavas, bet Latvijā zaļas pļavas redz visur.
50. Es viņam tūliņ iedevu drusku naudas.

Exercise 24e

Translate into Latvian:

1. There is more rice in the world than rye.
2. The sun is now behind the mountain.
3. On the beach, I always walk without shoes.
4. Mice live in cellars.
5. Why have you got so many cords?
6. The pharmacist's mother lives in Riga.
7. Your letter was very interesting.
8. He is writing a long letter.
9. Can you hear the mice?
10. Black earth is always very good.
11. I saw a little mouse near the cheese.
12. Cabbages have green leaves.
13. Eve has no white shoes.
14. There was an old woman (*māte*) who lived in a shoe. She had so many children she didn't know what to do.
15. Only unkind people do not help their mothers.
16. His mother always forgave him.
17. Beyond the stars are yet many worlds.
18. So many people live in the world now that the earth cannot feed (them) all.
19. The mice also want to live.
20. Why are you holding the pig on a lead?
21. I saw many mice in the enclosure this morning.
22. He is a good singer, but not a great star.
23. There are so many bees in the bush!
24. My mother is Uncle Paul's sister.
25. The shoes are old; they are useless.
26. How many legs has a bee?
27. Her letter was very unkind.
28. There is a little flour in the shop.
29. Oh dear, a bee is swimming in the wine!
30. The singer is a great star.
31. Why is the farm-hand still holding the horse on a lead?
32. The school-boy was holding the pastor's horse on a lead.
33. There are often more flowers in the cities than in the fields.
34. I do not know how many roses there are in the world, but there are very many.
35. Does anyone want to write letters this morning?
36. We have very few flowers in our garden.

37. Have you enough work?
38. I always believe less than I hear.
39. The farmers' carts could be seen here and there.
40. Outside the birds were singing.
41. Anne has a beautiful, long, white neck, but very small fingers.
42. I hope you have enough flour.
43. The doctor immediately wanted to defend his friends.
44. They gave the pigs lettuces.
45. The merchant had only a little sugar today.
46. The teacher has fewer books than the doctor.
47. The farmer immediately stopped the cart.
48. Girls often tremble when they are threatened.
49. I want to teach her something interesting. I want to teach her to sing.
50. That is good wine! Where is it sold?
51. I do not know whether my sister is in England or in Australia, because she does not write to me very often.
52. The teacher has very few pupils now.
53. She often gives her son a little wine.
54. Here and there in the garden, bushes were being planted.
55. The legs of the table are not very long.
56. Fowls have small heads.
57. Here the sea is very deep.
58. Are there many old houses in Riga? – Old houses can be seen everywhere in Riga.

LESSON 25

REVISION OF ADJECTIVES

So far we have met the following adjectives:

- (a) Possessive adjectives: *mans; tavs; savs*; (declined)
viņa; viņas; viņu; mūsu; jūsu; (not declined)
- (b) Adjectives in -š: *zaļš; garš; mīļš; dziļš; vājš;*
- (c) Adjectives in -s: *labs; slikts; liels; mazs; balts; melns; skaists; kluss;*
vecs; jauns; interesants; viss; priecīgs; laimīgs;
bēdīgs; stiprs; raudullīgs; zinātnisks; laipns; nelaiņns

We can now add the following to the list.

Vocabulary

<i>godīgs</i>	honest	<i>tīrs</i>	clean
<i>negodīgs</i>	dishonest	<i>netīrs</i>	dirty, unclean
<i>lēts</i>	cheap	<i>īss</i>	short
<i>dārgs</i>	expensive; dear	<i>sarkans</i>	red
<i>karsts</i>	hot	<i>ērts</i>	comfortable
<i>auksts</i>	cold	<i>neērts</i>	uncomfortable

Remember to devoice the -g- in the Masc. Sing. Nom. -īgs, and similarly with *dārgs*.

Note that *dārgs*, besides meaning 'dear' in the sense of 'expensive', also means 'dear' in the sense of 'beloved'.

Exercise 25a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es mācu savu dēlu.*
2. *Es draudu miesnieka meitai.*
3. *Es jautāju Pāvilam, kur ir pasts.*
4. *Es tulkoju vecu grāmatu.*
5. *Es neaizdodu ubagiem naudu.*
6. *Kad es esmu priecīgs, tad es dziedu.*

Exercise 25b

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; tīrs nams; ērta gulta; tu; dārga mašīna; skaista puķe; auksts vējš.*

Exercise 25c

Translate into English:

1. Manas kurpes ir neērtas.
2. Visi ieredz godīgus tirgotājus.
3. Kāpēc galds ir netīrs?
4. Pie jūras šodien ir ļoti auksts vējš.
5. Āfrika ir ļoti karsta zeme.
6. Lētas mašīnas nekad nav labas.

7. Mūsu kaimiņš ir negodīgs cilvēks; mēs viņu neieredzam.
8. Veikalā aizvakar bija nedaudz rīsu.
9. Viņu krēsli ir ļoti ērti.
10. Jaunas kurpes nekad nav ērtas.
11. Viņas vēstules vienmēr ir īsas.
12. Vakār kāposti, tomāti, salāti un milti bija dārgi, bet sīpoli bija lēti.
13. Austrālijas mežos var redzēt sarkanus putnus.
14. Jūs nedrīkstat peldēt, bērni, šodien ir auksts.
15. Mācītāja namam ir sarkans jumts.
16. Tomāti vēl nav sarkani.
17. Man ir tīrs un interesants darbs.
18. Sviests tagad ir ļoti dārgs, bet siers ir lēts.
19. Rakstnieks dzīvo dārgā namā.
20. Citroni ir sarkanā bļodā.
21. Šeit dzīvo tikai godīgi cilvēki.
22. Netīros pagrabos nevar turēt pienu vai sviestu.
23. Cūkas var būt netīri lopi, bet viņu gaļa ir laba.
24. Kāpēc tavai meitai tagad ir īsi mati?
25. Godīgiem cilvēkiem vienmēr ir draugi.
26. Kalpi dzīvo vecās, neērtās istabās.
27. Ubagam ir īsi, netīri svārki.
28. Skolotājam bija lēta, auksta un neērta istaba, bet viņš bija jauns un laimīgs.
29. Mācītājs piedod arī negodīgiem cilvēkiem.
30. Kāpēc viņš negrib strādāt godīgu darbu? (*To work at a job is usually just strādāt darbu.*)
31. Pilsētas ielas ir tīras.
32. Vai viņa rokas ir tīras?
33. Viņš ir negodīgs vīrs.
34. Mēs neieredzam negodīgus veikalniekus.
35. Anglijā ir daudz lielu namu.
36. Pāvils deva Artūram visu savu naudu.
37. Karstā saulē es nevaru dejot.
38. Ārsts jautāja, vai bērnam vēl vienmēr ir karsta galva.
39. Viņam bieži ir aukstas kājas.
40. Ērti krēsli ir ļoti dārgi.
41. Aptiekās viss arvien ir tīrs.
42. Meita iedeva mātei nedaudz naudas.
43. Mūsu saule ir tikai maza zvaigzne.
44. Mūsu dārzā ir vairāk puķu nekā jūsu dārzā.
45. Kalps turēja melnu teļu pie saites.
46. Bites arvien ir puķēs jau agri no rīta.
47. Ubags atkal aizgāja, kad mēs viņam nedevām naudu.

48. Visām jaunām meitām tagad ir īsi svārki.
49. Kur pasaulē visi cilvēki ir godīgi?
50. Pasaulē ir daudz zemju.
51. Ievas tēvs strādāja bibliotēkā, bet tagad strādā pastā.
52. Bērni raudāja, tāpēc ka māte viņiem draudēja ar pirkstu.
53. Kur ir rozes, tur ir arī bites.
54. Es turu savu zirgu garā saitē.
55. Ak, peles atkal ir pie siera!
56. Lūdzu, kur ir vēstule, ko es tev rakstīju?
57. Cik dziesmu ir jūsu dziesmu grāmatā?
58. Bankas tagad dod ļoti maz aizdevumu.
59. Vējš šeit reti ir stiprs.
60. Ko viņš jautāja skolotājam? – To es nezinu.
61. Maniem dēliem atkal ir netīras kurpes.
62. Vai tev ir diezgan piparu? – Nē, vai tu vari man dot drusku vairāk?
63. Vai tu gribēji man kaut ko jautāt?
64. Kāpēc jums ir tik daudz dārgu kurpju? – Tāpēc, ka es esmu dejojājs.
65. Es negribu būt jūrmalā – tur visur ir bērni, kas dzied un svilpo un raud.
66. Mēs šur un tur apturējām mašīnu un redzējām skaistas, zaļas pļavas, klusus mežus un ezerus un skaistus, vecus namus.
67. Es tūlīt redzēju, ka āboli nav labi.
68. Kas tur runāja tavā istabā?
69. Es lasu zinātniska darba tulkojumu.
70. Es ceru, ka gaļa nav dārga.
71. Kā jums iet? – Paldies, labi! – Un jūsu brālēnam? – Arī labi!

Exercise 25d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am not giving you the book, because your fingers are not clean.
2. Dishonest people are often unkind as well.
3. Roses are not suitable; we want cheap flowers.
4. The wine now stands in a cold cellar.
5. He gave his mother a lot of red roses.
6. Honest men have many friends, but dishonest men have few friends.
7. New houses are now very expensive. Old houses also are not cheap.
8. Where are my gloves?
9. Do you want some hot milk?
10. My room is very hot.
11. The baker's daughter has long red hair.
12. Are vegetables dear today?

13. Is your chair comfortable?
14. How much do red roses cost? – Red roses are very expensive.
15. We live in an uncomfortable and dirty old house.
16. Pigs have short necks.
17. She has many short skirts, because she knows she has beautiful long legs.
18. He sells cheap wine.
19. Old shoes are always very comfortable.
20. There are so many cheap houses in the town now.
21. Here there are more honest people than dishonest.
22. Paul has a deep, cold well in his courtyard.
23. His sons are honest.
24. Oh, you are very dishonest!
25. I have a cheap room, but expensive tables and chairs.
26. Today there are cheap apples in the shop.
27. In Latvia rice and lemons are expensive.
28. The baker always has clean white hands.
29. Arthur has a small comfortable cart and a strong horse.
30. The meat is still hot.
31. Australia and Africa are hot lands, but Latvia, Russia and England are cold lands.
32. Bees are clean, but mice are dirty.
33. I hope all your friends are honest.
34. Mother wrote in her letter that she now has many beautiful flowers in her garden.
35. She was shivering because the wind was cold.
36. I write fewer letters than you.
37. Are your shoes comfortable or uncomfortable?
38. He never uses short words when he can use long words.
39. Wolves cannot be held on a leash.
40. There are many worlds and stars that we cannot see.
41. There are new plants everywhere in the garden.
42. I still have a little work outside.
43. She hasn't enough sugar.
44. Children often do not wash their necks very well.
45. I immediately returned the money to him.
46. Here and there we saw beggars.
47. What can I teach you?
48. Begging is not allowed here.
49. You translate songs very badly.
50. Are you moving away?
51. Eve wanted to travel in Russia, but she hadn't enough money.
52. A kind friend lent her the money.

53. A sad farm-worker was standing at the gate of the yard.
54. Does the butcher's son still go to school?
55. How much do you earn in your new job?
56. The girls were cleaning the windows.
57. He recounted an interesting old tale.

LESSON 26

THE DEFINITE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES
MASCULINE SINGULAR

We have already studied the INDEFINITE declension of adjectives: expressions of the type 'a green field', 'an old house', etc. At that time it was pointed out that there exists a special declension for expressions of the type 'the green field', 'the old house'. This declension of adjectives is called the DEFINITE declension.

The definite declension is based on the indefinite declension, and is a modification of it in one or other of two ways:

- (1) The vowel of the indefinite ending is lengthened; or
- (2) The lengthening syllable *-aj-* is inserted between the stem and the indefinite ending.

Thus the definite declension (masculine singular) is as follows:

	Indefinite declension		Definite declension		Translation of definite series
Nom.	<i>vec-s</i>	<i>nam-s</i>	<i>vec-ai-s</i>	<i>nam-s</i>	the old house
Acc.	<i>vec-u</i>	<i>nam-u</i>	<i>vec-o</i>	<i>namu</i>	the old house
Gen.	<i>vec-a</i>	<i>nam-a</i>	<i>vec-ā</i>	<i>nama</i>	of the old house
Dat.	<i>vec-am</i>	<i>nam-am</i>	<i>vec-aj-am</i>	<i>namam</i>	to the old house
Loc.	<i>vec-ā</i>	<i>nam-ā</i>	<i>vec-aj-ā</i>	<i>namā</i>	in the old house

Note then, that in the masculine singular, the nominative, dative and locative have the lengthening syllable *-aj-*, which is spelt *-ai-* in the nominative only, and that the accusative and genitive lengthen the original vowel; in the genitive, *a* lengthens to *ā*, and in the accusative, *u* lengthens to *o*.

Those adjectives, which in the indefinite declension ended in *š*, lose this distinctive mark in the definite:

dziļš ezers a deep lake

dziļais ezers the deep lake

Remember also that the adjective *viss* 'all, whole' has no definite form, and that the indefinite must be used to express both types of phrase, e.g.,

the whole field *viss lauks*

Exercise 26a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Es bieži deju.</i> | 4. <i>Es nekad neraudu.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ko es daru?</i> | 5. <i>Es arvien strādāju.</i> |
| 3. <i>Es nezinu, kur es esmu.</i> | |

Exercise 26b

Decline in the singular only: *labais tulkojums; neērtais krēsls; dziļais ezers; aukstais vējš; klusais mežs; zaļais spēls.*

Exercise 26c

Translate into English:

- (1) *godlīgais ārsts; negodlīgais maiznieks; tīrais nams; netīrais aploks; sarkanais jumts; bēdīgais vīrs; laimīgais bērns; lielais vilks; vecais dārznieks; dziļais ezers.*
- (2) a) *Es redzēju skaisto mežu.*
b) *Visi ieredz laipno saimnieku.*
c) *Es nevaru pārdot dārgo namu.*
d) *Jauno skolotāju labi ieredz.*
e) *Mēs neieredzam raudulīgo ubagu.*
f) *Viņš mīl mazo bērnu.*
g) *Viņa redzēja sarkano ābolu.*
h) *Artūrs pārdeva lielo namu.*
- (3) *sliktā rakstnieka grāmata; baltā nama logi; aiz zaļā krūma; labā skolnieka tulkojums; zem ērtā krēsla; sarkanā putna kājas; aiz neērtā krēsla; godlīgā bērna tēvs; raudulīgā skolnieka stāsts; vecā koka lapas.*
- (4) a) *Viņš negrib maksāt jaunajam dārzniekam.*
b) *Vai tu tici interesantajam stāstam?*
c) *Skolotājs neticēja garajam stāstam.*
d) *Mācītājs draudēja negodlīgajam maizniekam.*
e) *Viņš neiedeva vecajam ubagam naudu.*
f) *Ko tu iedevi mazajam skolniekam?*

- g) *Vecajam saimniekam ir daudz naudas.*
- h) *Lielajam namam ir daudz logu.*
- i) *Jaunajam vīram ir jauna mašīna.*
- j) *Negodlīgajam tirgotājam ir liels veikals.*
- (5) a) *Klusajā mežā ir daudz putnu.*
b) *Jaunajā aplokā ir daudz cūku.*
c) *Mēs gribam peldēt dziļajā ezerā.*
d) *Bērni dejo lielajā pagalmā.*
e) *Netirajā maisā bija vecas kurpes.*
f) *Lielajā mežā ir vilki.*
g) *Gaļa tagad ir aukstajā pagrabā.*
h) *Mans krusttēvs dzīvo baltajā namā.*
i) *Zirgi stāvēja jaunajā aplokā.*

Exercise 26d

Translate into English:

1. *Labais draugs palīdzēja sliktajam skolniekam.*
2. *Mēs peldējām lielajā, dziļajā okeanā.*
3. *Vai tu redzi skaisto, zaļo koku?*
4. *Aukstajā pagrabā mēs vienmēr turam sviestu, olas, gaļu un arī stipro, sarkano vīnu.*
5. *Es negribu dzirdēt tavu garo stāstu.*
6. *Māte arvien aizstāv savu mīļo bērnu.*
7. *Jaunais, baltais zirgs stāv vecajā pagalmā.*
8. *Kur ir mazais, melnais teļš?*
9. *Visi dzirdēja laipnā vīra stāstu.*
10. *Visi putni dziedāja pie klusā ezera.*
11. *Kur ir laimīgais, jaunais tēvs?*
12. *Negodlīgais tirgotājs pārdeva veco namu savam kaimiņam.*
13. *Mēs ieredzam godīgo veikalnieku.*
14. *Pie neērtā galda skolnieks nevar strādāt.*
15. *Vai tu viņam iedevi karsto pienu?*
16. *Es jau dzirdēju bēdīgo stāstu.*
17. *Es lasu Iso tulkojumu.*
18. *Kāpēc viņa neiet pie sava mīļā drauga, kas viņai vienmēr palīdz?*
19. *Mazajā dārzā bija daudz rožu.*
20. *Lielā lauka malā bija daudz puķu.*
21. *Zirgs stāv zem zaļā koka.*
22. *Viņas cimdi ir zem vecā krēsla.*
23. *Kur ir jaunā kalpa kurpes?*

24. Interesantais, vecais dziedātājs bija laipns cilvēks.
25. Kur ir negodīgais vīrs, kam es aizdevu naudu?
26. Jaunais skolotājs negribēja dzīvot lielā pilsētā.
27. Peles bija zem vecā galda.
28. Vai bites ir visur pasaulē?

Exercise 26e

Translate into Latvian:

- (1) the dishonest doctor; the honest baker; the clean enclosure; the dirty house; the black horse; the happy man; the sad child; the black wolf; the kind gardener; the big lake.
- (2) a) I saw the green forest.
b) He sold the cheap house.
c) The baker did not like the old farmer.
d) The old pastor is well-liked.
e) Did you see the snivelling beggar?
f) He loves the dear child.
g) He saw the red apple.
h) Paul sold the small house.
- (3) the good writer's book; the windows of the green house; beyond the great mountain; the bad pupil's translation; the feet of the white bird; without the comfortable chair; the dishonest man's son; the translation of the scientific work; on the edge of the old garden.
- (4) a) He paid the good gardener a lot of money.
b) The teacher answered the short question.
c) The baker threatened the kind pastor.
d) We gave the young labourer money.
e) What did you give to the old beggar?
f) The sad farmer has very little money.
g) The small house has very few windows.
h) The old man has a new car.
i) The good pupil had a small bag.
- (5) a) Our cousin used to live in the green house.
b) Why are the children swimming in the deep lake?
c) In the great forest there are many wolves.
d) What have you got in the dirty bag?
e) The children were singing in the old house.
f) Is there someone in the deep cellar?
g) In the old field stood an old tree.
h) In the old tree there are many bees.

Exercise 26f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Everybody likes the young teacher.
2. I saw the big bird in the quiet forest.
3. Do you believe the long, sad story?
4. The pigs were standing in the dirty yard.
5. The red wine is in the deep cellar.
6. The old gardener planted the beautiful green plant.
7. In the big apple there is a lot of sugar.
8. The white house belongs to the old uncle.
9. He gave a loan to the good, honest friend.
10. The dishonest shop-keeper sold all the bad cheese.
11. Where does the young man live? – In the expensive house behind the hill.
12. Here is the shop of the unfriendly merchant.
13. She is the mother of the happy child.
14. The cabbages are in the good strong bag.
15. The hot milk is now in the cold cellar.
16. We lived in the clean and comfortable house.
17. The black horse has long, strong legs.
18. I sold the cheap table.
19. The small child is his son.
20. The young pupil wrote a short letter.
21. What was the old beggar doing?
22. The kind doctor earns a lot of money.
23. The young labourer was cleaning his shoes.
24. I asked him how much the expensive chair cost.
25. The old gardener told how he often planted roses behind the house.
26. The flowers they sell in the new shop are very dear.
27. He went away because he had no work.
28. The teacher did not forgive the bad pupil.
29. When did the butcher return their cart?
30. Then the children went off to school.
31. There are no mice in the cold cellar.
32. The sun is now behind the mountain.
33. Our world is not very big.
34. The rye is now in bags on the edge of the field.
35. Here and there in Riga one can see new shops.
36. The unkind farmer was holding the young calf on a short lead.

LESSON 27

DEFINITE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES
FEMININE SINGULAR

Nom.	<i>liel-ā</i>	<i>istaba</i>	'the big room'	<i>a</i> lengthens to <i>ā</i> .
Acc.	<i>liel-o</i>	<i>istabu</i>		<i>u</i> lengthens to <i>o</i> .
Gen.	<i>liel-ās</i>	<i>istabas</i>		<i>a</i> lengthens to <i>ā</i> .
Dat.	<i>liel-aj-ai</i>	<i>istabai</i>		insertion of <i>-aj-</i> .
Loc.	<i>liel-aj-ā</i>	<i>istabā</i>		insertion of <i>-aj-</i> .

The pattern is the same as in the masculine singular, except that the nominative singular here is lengthened, instead of being supplemented with *-aj-*.

Vocabulary

<i>dzeltenš</i>	yellow	<i>strādīgs</i>	hard-working
<i>brūns</i>	brown	<i>slinks</i>	lazy
<i>pelēks</i>	grey	<i>gudrs</i>	clever, wise
<i>plats</i>	wide, broad	<i>muļķīgs</i>	foolish, stupid
<i>plašs</i>	wide; extensive; spacious	<i>šēkls</i>	shallow
<i>šaurš</i>	narrow	<i>tukšs</i>	empty
<i>čakls</i>	industrious, keen	<i>pilns</i>	full

NOTES: *Plats* is used to describe things whose literal width can be measured, as, for example, in 'a wide street' or 'a broad foot'. When 'wide' is taken in a less literal sense, as in 'the wide world', or 'wide, rolling plains', i.e., when it is close in meaning to 'extensive', then *plašs* is required.

Šaurš also means 'tight', when speaking of shoes or other clothing.

Remember to devoice the *-g-* of the ending *-īgs*.

'Full of' is rendered in Latvian by *pilns* plus the genitive. There is an alternative construction with the preposition *ar* which we will study later.

Exercise 27a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es pārdodu maisu sīpolu.*
2. *Es bieži eju pie vecā skolotāja.*
3. *Es nezīnu, kāpēc es dziedu.*

4. *Man ir daudz burkānu dārzā.*
5. *Saimnieks mani neieredz.*
6. *Anna tagad ir pie manis.*
7. *Es gribēju ceļot Anglijā.*
8. *Es nekad nesvilpoju skolā.*

Exercise 27b

Decline in the singular only: *dzeltenā puķe; šaurā kurpe; brūnā bļoda; seklā aka; zinātniskā grāmata; dziļā jūra; tukšais maiss; pelēkais ezers; muļķīgais tulkojums; sarkanais ābols.*

Exercise 27c

Translate into English:

- (1) *lētā bļoda; karstā gaļa; zinātniskā grāmata; lās iela; baltā ola; skaistā meita; mljā māsa; dzeltenā roze; sarkanā puķe; dārgā kurpe.*
- (2) a) *Es lasīju interesanto grāmatu.*
b) *Viņa negribēja aizstāvēt veco māti.*
c) *Es nevaru pārdot dārgo bļodu.*
d) *Vai tu gribi lasīt muļķīgo grāmatu?*
e) *Vai tu lasi zinātnisko grāmatu?*
f) *Kas rakstlīja lso vēstuli?*
- (3) *skaistās meitas zobi; sarkanās rozes lapas; interesantās grāmatas rakstnieks; jaunās mātes bērni; vecās vistas olas; klusās pļavas malā; zinātniskās grāmatas tulkojums; bēdīgās dziesmas dziedātājs; netīrās pilsētas cilvēki; neērtās gultas mala.*
- (4) a) *Labajai meitai ir negodīgs tēvs.*
b) *Sarkanajai puķei ir daudz lapu.*
c) *Saimnieks maksā slinkajai meitai mazāk naudas nekā čaklajai.*
d) *Jaunajai mātai ir daudz draugu.*
e) *Godīgajai mātei ir negodīga meita.*
f) *Es iedevu bēdīgajai meitai naudu.*
g) *Negodīgajai meitai bija daudz naudas, bet maz draugu.*
h) *Čaklais skolnieks palīdzēja raudullīgajai mātai.*
- (5) *brūnajā bļodā; ērtajā gultā; tīrajā istabā; lāsajā ielā; dziļajā jūrā; karstajā saulē; neērtajā korpē; garajā saitē; lētajā grāmatā.*

Exercise 27d

Translate into English:

1. Pelēkā pele ir zem brūnās gultas.
2. Viņi šodien peldēja sekļajā ezerā.
3. Anna un Ieva ir ļoti strādīgas meitas.
4. Kur ir olas? – Tur, dzeltenajā bļodā!
5. Vecajā pilsētā ir daudz šauru ielu.
6. Gudrais vīrs raksta interesantu zinātnisku grāmatu.
7. Kāpēc tu runā muļķīgus, tukšus vārdus?
8. Vai jūs zināt gudrās meitas vārdu?
9. Tēvs mīl čaklo meitu, bet arī slinko dēlu viņš vienmēr aizstāv.
10. Kāpēc dzijā aka atkal ir tukša?
11. Es gribu ceļot plašajā pasaulē.
12. Veikali šorīt bija ļoti pilni.
13. Kur ir pilnā bļoda?
14. Vai tu man vari aizdot veco mašīnu?
15. Slinkā saimnieka meita ir ļoti strādīga.
16. Saimnieka slinkā meita nebaroja brūno zirgu.
17. Es pārdevu lielo, plato galdu.
18. Milti ir tur, sekļajā bļodā.
19. Kas ir pilnajā maisā?
20. Čaklā un strādīgā bite var kaut ko mācīt slinkajam skolniekam.
21. Lapas tagad jau ir dzeltenas.
22. Vecais maiss bija tukšs.
23. Ak, brūnajā korpē ir pelēka pele!
24. Plašajā pasaulē ir maz labu rakstnieku, bet daudz muļķīgu grāmatu.
25. Dzeltenā roze ir skaista.
26. Burkāni ir sekļajā bļodā.
27. Banka ir tur, platās ielas malā.
28. Visi ieredz laipno, strādīgo aptiekāru.
29. Kur ir platā, dzijā bļoda? Šaurā, sekļā bļoda šeit neder.
30. Lielais maiss tagad ir tukšs.
31. Vai jums nav drusciņ brūna papīra?
32. Pelēkā mašīna pieder viņu brālēnam.
33. Annai ir dzeltenī cimdī.
34. Artūrs ir čakls skolnieks.
35. Es tev nevaru palīdzēt; vai tu neredzi, ka man rokas ir pilnas?
36. Es neredzu pilno maisu.
37. Kā gudrs cilvēks var lasīt muļķīgu grāmatu?
38. Plašā pļava ir platā ceļa malā.

39. Čaklajai meitai ir šauras kurpes.
40. Lūdzu, kur sētā ir vārti?
41. Viņš apturēja veco mašīnu aiz mazās bibliotēkas.
42. Es tūlīt zināju, ka viņš ir labs dejotājs.
43. Vai tu gribi ceļot Āfrikā vai Austrālijā?
44. Ir tik daudz zvaigžņu, vairāk zvaigžņu nekā cilvēku!
45. Vai ārā ir diezgan rudzu maisu?
46. Viņš prasa mazāk jautājumu nekā viņa māsa.
47. Šur un tur varēja redzēt jaunus, zaļus kokus.
48. Viņš man jautāja, kur ir pilsētas aptieka.
49. Bērni bieži negrib mazgāt savus kaklus.
50. Tavs dēls reti raud; viņš ir ļoti kluss.
51. Kā tev iet? – Paldies, labi!

Exercise 27e

Translate into Latvian:

- (1) the yellow egg; the wide street; the clever girl; the stupid letter; the empty well; the hard-working mother; the cheap car; the clean room; the short letter; the red dish.
- (2) a) The young girl is well liked by everybody.
b) He held the long lead in his hand.
c) Where did you see the small brown egg?
d) Who wrote the stupid letter?
e) The labourer fed the dirty pig.
f) Arthur translated the scientific book.
g) We saw the white star.
- (3) at the intelligent girl's place; beyond the wide street; under the brown car; without the young sister; the cousin (f.) of the old mother; the leaves of the red flower; the feet of the grey mouse; behind the new bank; under the old library; the eggs of the white hen.
- (4) a) We wrote a letter to the old mother.
b) The grey mouse has a bit of cheese.
c) The house belongs to the young girl.
d) The beautiful star has a lot of money.
e) He gave cabbages to the old pig.
f) The extensive pharmacy has many windows.
g) I did not answer the stupid letter.
h) The new yard has a large, white gate.
i) The labourer threatened the young girl.

- (5) in the empty well; in the comfortable room; in the uncomfortable bed; he was begging in the narrow street; in the interesting old dance; in the deep sea; in the hot sun; in the new pharmacy; in the quiet library; in the wide world.

Exercise 27f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The yellow paper you gave me is very expensive.
2. The grey bag is full of brown onions.
3. The lazy beggar went away immediately.
4. The clever son of the diligent gardener does not love the lazy daughter of the butcher.
5. Paul did not believe the foolish story.
6. Beyond the wide road is a spacious field.
7. Australia is a very extensive country.
8. The grey mouse lives in the narrow old shoe.
9. In the wide world there are many countries and many people.
10. Paul thinks that the old pastor speaks only empty words.
11. The industrious baker had a great deal of work.
12. Were you at the empty well this morning?
13. Arthur has big feet; narrow shoes are not suitable for him.
14. The yellow car was behind the old post-office.
15. The beautiful daughter of the old dancer loves the young doctor.
16. Why did you give me the shallow dish?
17. The full bag is in the deep cellar.
18. The diligent cousin (f.) lives in the brown house.
19. The dear pastor's daughter is intelligent, but lazy.
20. Can you see the full dish?
21. The leaves of the old tree are already brown.
22. Clever people are not always diligent.
23. In the narrow street of the small town there are brown hens, grey mice and many dirty children.
24. The industrious and diligent man is now a beggar.
25. He asked a stupid question.
26. The dishonest farm-worker can not stand the diligent neighbour.
27. Long live the industrious merchant!
28. Who's that? – That's Paul!
29. Where's the horse? I can't see it!
30. Our teacher always teaches us something new.
31. The animals were shivering in the cold wind.
32. The day before yesterday there was an old beggar in your yard.

33. We always feed our animals early in the morning.
34. Where were you yesterday?
35. I don't know what she sees in you.
36. What do you see in us?
37. I saw you, but you didn't see me.
38. We heard you, but you didn't hear us.

LESSON 28

REVISION OF THE DEFINITE DECLENSION OF
ADJECTIVES – SINGULAR

No new grammar is included in this lesson, to give the student a chance to assimilate more thoroughly the very important material of the two previous lessons.

It will be recalled that the endings of the Definite Declension of adjectives in the singular are as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	-ais	-ā
Acc.	-o	-o
Gen.	-ā	-ās
Dat.	-ajam	-ajai
Loc.	-ajā	-ajā

Vocabulary

<i>rīts</i>	morning	<i>plašā pasaule</i>	the wide world
<i>vakars</i>	evening	<i>tukšām rokām</i>	empty-handed
<i>diena</i>	day	<i>pasaules mala</i>	the end of the earth
<i>kurpnieks</i>	shoemaker	<i>kino zvaigzne</i>	film-star
<i>lauku puķe</i>	wild-flower	<i>kakla saite</i>	neck-tie
<i>meža puķe</i>	wild-flower	<i>kurpju saite</i>	shoe-lace

NOTE that in *kino zvaigzne* the first element is invariable, and is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Note also the forms *rīta zvaigzne* 'the morning star' and *vakara zvaigzne* 'the evening star'.

Exercise 28a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es tagad tīru savu istabu.*
2. *Es baroju savu cūku.*
3. *Es nezīnu, kur es esmu.*
4. *Es strādāju jaunajā bibliotēkā.*
5. *Mans skolotājs mani redz lielu dejotāju.*
6. *Es turu mazo teļu garā saitē.*

Exercise 28b

Decline in the singular only:

<i>skaistais vakars;</i>	<i>karstā diena;</i>
<i>tukšais maiss;</i>	<i>plašā pasaule;</i>
<i>čaklais kurpnieks;</i>	<i>šaurā kurpe;</i>
<i>aukstais rīts;</i>	<i>interesantā vēstule;</i>
<i>plašais nams;</i>	<i>vecā bļoda;</i>
<i>dzeltenais citronis;</i>	<i>seklā aka;</i>
<i>garais tulkojums;</i>	<i>pelēkā jūra;</i>
<i>dziļais okeāns;</i>	<i>neērtā gulta;</i>
<i>zaļais dārzs;</i>	<i>melnā mašīna;</i>
<i>jaunais pasts;</i>	<i>platā iela.</i>

Exercise 28c

Translate into English:

1. Karstās dienās vecais kurpnieks strādā tikai vakarā.
2. Cik dienu jūs bijāt jūrmalā?
3. Ak, šodien ir skaists rīts!
4. Kur ir sarkanā kakla saite?
5. Karstās dienās es peldu dziļajā ezerā.
6. Priecīgais kurpnieks darbā vienmēr dziedāja.
7. Vai visās pasaules malās var redzēt skaisto rīta zvaigzni?
8. Vakaros mēs vienmēr redzējām balto vakara zvaigzni.
9. Ak, šeit ir daudz lauku un meža puķu!
10. Kurpniekiem tagad ir mazāk darba.
11. Skaistajai kino zvaigznei bija daudz naudas.
12. Tagad vakari jau ir auksti, bet dienā vēl var iet bez svārkkiem.
13. Es domāju, ka kurpnieki strādā vairāk nekā miesnieki un maiznieki.

14. Kāpēc tu domā, ka skolotāji strādā ļoti maz?
15. Jau agri no rīta strādīgais saimnieks baro savus lopus.
16. Kāpēc tavas kurpju saites ir netīras?
17. Tu nedrīksti iet tukšām rokām pie sava krusttēva.
18. Rīti tagad ir auksti, un dienas ir īsas.
19. Vai tu gribi ceļot plašajā pasaulē?
20. Vakarā vecais vīrs vienmēr lasa savā dziesmu grāmatā.
21. Veikalā nebija brūnu kurpju saišu.
22. Kāpēc tev nav kakla saites?
23. Plašajā pasaulē man ir daudz draugu, kas man bieži raksta vēstules.
24. Pelēkajai pelei ir īsas kājas.
25. Lielais maiss ir pilns sīpolu.
26. Jūsu kurpes man neder.
27. Pāvils neticēja muļķīgajam stāstam, ko kurpnieks viņam stāstīja.
28. Gudrā skolnieka tēvs arī ir gudrs.
29. Kaimiņš neieredzēja slinko saimnieku.
30. Negodīgais ubags neaizgāja tukšām rokām.
31. Strādīgajam kurpniekam bija daudz naudas.
32. Plašajā pasaulē ir daudz zemju, daudz cilvēku.
33. Čaklā kalpa gudrais dēls nemīl slinkā saimnieka raudulīgo meitu.
34. Čaklajam skolniekam ir vairāk grāmatu nekā slinkajam skolniekam.
35. Vecajam rakstniekam bija balti mati.
36. Brūnais maiss ir pilns dzeltena siera.
37. Anna grib redzēt plašo pasauli.
38. Kalpi strādāja plašajā laukā.
39. Grāmata ir pilna interesantu vārdu.
40. Mazais bērns nedrīkstēja peldēt seklajā ezerā.
41. Šaurajā, vecajā ielā bija daudz interesantu, vecu veikalu, bet jaunajā, platajā ielā bija tikai lielas bankas.
42. Seklā aka tagad ir tukša.
43. Mēs nekad neejam pie saviem draugiem tukšām rokām.
44. Kas dzīvo Anglijā, tas domā, ka Austrālija ir pasaules malā.
45. Rītos un vakaros viņš peldēja jūrā.
46. Putni dziedāja zaļajā mežā.
47. Saimnieka plašajā dārzā strādāja daudz kalpu.
48. Es ceru, ka tu viņai atdevi ērto, veco krēslu, ko viņa tev aizdeva.
49. Mūsu veikalā šorīt bija cukurs, rīsi, pipari un visi dārzeņi.
50. Piens un sviests ir aukstajā, dziļajā pagrabā.
51. Kalnos dzīvo lieli, pelēki vilki.
52. Vai Krievijā citroni ir ļoti dārgi?
53. Jaunā stāda lapas vēl bija ļoti mazas.
54. Viņš var visur ceļot, tāpēc ka pelna lielu naudu.

Exercise 28d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Paul was working in the pharmacy this morning.
2. Early in the morning Eve used to feed the hens and pigs.
3. In the evening he went immediately to the old uncle's house.
4. I often travel in all parts of the world, but only here can I see so many beautiful wild-flowers.
5. Arthur went away empty-handed.
6. Do shoemakers work more than butchers?
7. Does the shop-keeper sell milk early in the morning?
8. Here and there one can still see wild-flowers.
9. Paul worked more than Arthur.
10. The day before yesterday there was a cold morning but a hot day.
11. I can read only in the evenings.
12. In the mornings I work very well.
13. Oh dear, the shoemaker sold me shoes without shoe-laces!
14. I cannot go without a tie.
15. One can see the evening star in the evening.
16. The beautiful film-star saw all corners of the world.
17. The red wild-flower in her hair is very lovely.
18. Field-flowers are cheap.
19. In the evening he is always at the library.
20. He was still in Riga yesterday evening, but we do not know where he is now.
21. Now he stands here, empty-handed.
22. Why have you no tie?
23. The brown shoe-lace is very short.
24. The hard-working girl was feeding the dirty pig.
25. In Latvia pork is not very expensive.
26. Eve wants to travel and see the wide world.
27. The dishonest son of the lazy baker did not return the brown horse to the industrious labourer of the honest farmer.
28. The day was warm, but the evening was cold.
29. The clever shoemaker was cleaning his shop.
30. The labourers were working in the rye-field.
31. The deep well is still full, but the shallow well is already empty.
32. Beyond the wide road was a broad meadow.
33. The lazy shoemaker went empty-handed to his sister's.
34. The grey mouse saw the yellow cheese.
35. The old beggar went away empty-handed.
36. The brown bag is full of red apples.

37. The good old wine is in the cool, deep cellar.
38. There is a cart in the large enclosure.
39. The old singer has very long hair.
40. Did you see the empty dish in your room?
41. There are many industrious people in the wide world, but also many lazy people.
42. My mother is hard-working and clever, but my sister is lazy.
43. Do you want to plant anything in the garden?
44. The old teacher forgave the young pupil.
45. Do you want to read my book? – No, today I am working in the meadow.
46. What are you doing behind her house?
47. Someone was singing in the garden this morning.

LESSON 29

DEFINITE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES
MASCULINE PLURAL

You will recall that the DEFINITE endings can be formed from the INDEFINITE endings by lengthening the vowel, or in some cases by inserting the syllable *-aj-*. The definite declension of adjectives in the masculine plural is as follows:

Nom.	<i>dziļ-ie</i>	<i>ezeri</i>	'the deep lakes'	<i>-i</i> lengthens to <i>-ie</i> .
Acc.	<i>dziļ-os</i>	<i>ezerus</i>		<i>-u</i> lengthens to <i>-o</i> .
Gen.	<i>dziļ-o</i>	<i>ezeru</i>		<i>-u</i> lengthens to <i>-o</i> .
Dat.	<i>dziļ-aj-iem</i>	<i>ezeriem</i>		insertion of <i>-aj-</i> .
Loc.	<i>dziļ-aj-os</i>	<i>ezeros</i>		insertion of <i>-aj-</i> .

Exercise 29a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es vienmēr daru, ko es gribu.*
2. *Es gribu ceļot visās pasaules malās.*
3. *Es ubagoju, kad man nav naudas.*
4. *Miesnieks mani ieredz.*
5. *Es nezinu, ko cilvēki mani redz.*

Exercise 29b

Decline in the singular and plural: *dziļais ezers; pelēkais okeans; netīrais pagalmis; sliktais tulkojums; aukstais rīts; karstais vakars.*

Decline in the singular only: *dzeltenā bļoda; zaļā plava; sarkanā roze; interesantā vēstule.*

Exercise 29c

Translate into English:

- (1) *dzeltenie rati; brūnie lauki; pelēkie zirgi; platie logi; šaurie ceļi; slinkie skolnieki; gudrie dēli; strādīgie dārznieki; sekļie ezeri.*
- (2) a) *Es redzēju tukšos maisus.*
b) *Es neredzēju pilnos maisus.*
c) *Saimnieks ieredz godīgus kalpus.*
d) *Kalpi neieredz negodīgus saimniekus.*
e) *Es negribu neērtos krēslus, ko Pāvils man pārdeva.*
f) *Mēs redzējām lētos namus, ko viņš pārdod.*
g) *Vai jūs redzējāt dārgos galdus, ko Artūrs pārdeva?*
h) *Vai viņas redzēja pelēkos putnus mežā?*
i) *Kāpēc tu nelieto jaunus ratus, ko saimnieks tev iedeva?*
j) *Vai maiznieks tīrīja netīros maisus?*
- (3) *dzelteno putnu kājas; brūno zirgu galvas; pelēko vilku zobi; plašo lauku malā; čaklo skolnieku tēvs; slinko skolnieku krusttēvs; tukšo namu jumti; veco saimnieku dēli; jauno kalpu rokas; mazo putnu dziesmas.*
- (4) *slinkajiem ubagiem nav svārku; aiz neērtajiem krēsliem; bez brūnajiem zirgiem; zem lielajiem kokiem; gudrajiem skolniekiem ir daudz grāmatu; aiz plašajiem laukiem ir mežs; bez aukstajiem vējiem; bez labajiem skolniekiem; čaklajiem saimniekiem ir daudz lopu; lielajiem kokiem bija tikai mazas lapas.*
- (5) *zaļajos laukos; dziļajos ezeros; ērtajos krēslus; brūnajos maisos; skaistajos mežos; garajos tulkojumos; tukšajos namos; vecajos ratos.*

Exercise 29d

Translate into English:

1. Kas ir pilnajos, pelēkajos maisos?
2. Es neieredzu slinkos kalpus.
3. Baltie rīsi ir tīrajās maisos.
4. Saimnieks neticēja negodīgajiem kalpiem.
5. Kāpēc tu netici laipno vīru gudrajiem vārdiem?
6. Vai tu dzirdēji interesantos stāstus?
7. Melnie zirgi stāv lielajos aplokos.
8. Mazi cimdi neder lielām rokām.
9. Vecie vīri māca jaunus cilvēkus.
10. Labos vīnus mēs turam aukstajā, dziļajā pagrabā.
11. Kāpēc dārgie, zaļie svārki ir netīrajās ratos?
12. Māte stāstīja skaistus stāstus mazajiem bērniem.
13. Nelaiņus veikalniekus nekad neieredz.
14. Kur ir lētie, sarkanie āboli?
15. Ubags stāvēja pie šaurajiem vārtiem.
16. Dārznieks pārdeva dzeltenos burkānus un brūnos sīpolus.
17. Godīgie tirgotāji nepārdeva sliktos miltus.
18. Klusie, čaklie skolnieki aizstāvēja savus draugus.
19. Karstajos vakaros mēs peldējām sekļajā ezerā.
20. Strādīgie kalpi palīdzēja vecajiem kaimiņiem.
21. Latvijā rīti bieži ir ļoti auksti.
22. Vai vecajam kurpniekam ir sarkanas kurpju saites? – Nē, viņam nav sarkanu kurpju saišu, tikai melnas un brūnas kurpju saites.
23. Kur ir šaurā, pelēkā kakla saite, ko tava māte tev iedeva?
24. Kino zvaigznes var ceļot visās pasaules malās.
25. Ubagi nekad neaizgāja tukšām rokām.
26. Kad Latvijā ir rīts, tad Austrālijā jau ir vakars.
27. Dienas tagad jau ir garas.
28. Plašajā pasaulē ir daudz interesantu zemju.
29. Vai dienas šeit ir garas?
30. Vai Āfrikā ir daudz meža puķu?
31. Kāpēc tu ej pie mātes tukšām rokām?
32. Plašajā pasaulē ir daudz cilvēku bez darba.
33. Austrālija var būt pasaules malā, bet tur ir lielas pilsētas un plaši lauki.
34. Manai māsiņai reti ir nauda bankā.
35. Visi viņa brālēni dzīvo Rīgā.
36. Kāpēc bites arvien ir puķēs?
37. Jaunais aptiekārs aizgāja pie kaimiņa.
38. Es viņam jautāju, vai viņam ir diezgan salātu un tomātu.

39. Ārā meitas mazgāja dārzājus.
40. Cik tagad maksā pipari?
41. Kam banka deva aizdevumu?
42. Vai viņa atkal ir pilsētā? – Nē, viņa tagad ir pagalmā.
43. Kā jūsu mātei iet? – Slikti, viņa vēl nedrīkst iet laukā.
44. Vai tu vari man aizdot druscip siera?
45. Viņi apturēja veco mašīnu aiz jaunās bankas.
46. Mēs drebējām aukstajā vējā.
47. Ubagam bija daudz olu maisā.
48. Vai tas ir mācītājs? – Jā, tas ir viņš.

Exercise 29e

Translate into Latvian:

- (1) the cold mornings; the hot evenings; the sad shoemakers; the long necks; the beautiful black hair; the green cabbage; the white flour; the dishonest butchers; the full bags; the extensive gardens.
- (2) a) The old pastor is not very popular.
b) Who told the interesting stories?
c) I do not wish to hear the foolish questions.
d) He is not translating the scientific works.
e) In the morning the grey mountains can often be seen.
f) We saw the clean windows.
g) Why are you holding the black horses on a lead?
h) Can you see the brown rye?
i) The dirty beggars, to whom you gave the cold meat, are not well-liked.
- (3) the necks of the red birds; the heads of the young calves; the legs of the old dancers; the roofs of the expensive houses; the hands of the dear children; on the edge of the great forests; the teeth of the grey wolves; the leaves of the green bushes; the books of the old writers; the gates of the large enclosures.
- (4) at the old doctors' places; behind the empty houses; under the white gates; without the unkind words; the old shoemakers have no laces; beyond the great lakes; under the brown tables; the teacher did not forgive the lazy pupils; the pastor did not answer the interesting questions.
- (5) in the red cart; in the extensive gardens; in the small bushes; in the brown hills; in the full bags; in the short coat; in the long evenings; in the uncomfortable chairs; in the cheap, new houses; in the wide rye-fields.

Exercise 29f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where are the shallow lakes?
2. The kind old pastor gave us the strong red wine and the good yellow cheese.
3. The tight gloves are useless to me.
4. The diligent farm-labourers are working in the wide fields.
5. All the old houses have cellars, but the new houses have no cellars.
6. The cheap rye is in the large grey bags.
7. Eve gave the expensive flour to the dirty beggars.
8. Oh dear, the dishonest shop-keeper sold me bad vegetables!
9. The animals were standing in the narrow enclosures.
10. The cold milk is in the deep cellar.
11. In the long evenings our mother always told us interesting stories.
12. The cousin of the unfriendly pharmacist lives in the quiet **empty** house.
13. The evenings in Africa are often very hot.
14. My sister can't stand the lazy sons of the doctor.
15. I do not want to hear the beggar's sad story.
16. Anne loves the clever industrious cousin of the baker.
17. The bank gave a loan to the honest gardener.
18. Behind the clean windows I can see flowers.
19. The film-star is always whistling, because she is always happy.
20. He wanted to travel in all corners of the world.
21. Today the businessman sold more ties than yesterday.
22. How many ties have you got?
23. Yellow laces do not go with brown shoes.
24. There are fewer film-stars in Latvia than in England.
25. Arthur was standing there empty-handed.
26. The day was very hot.
27. Someone was begging behind the bank.
28. New dances are not very beautiful.
29. Do you wish to dance?
30. Why is Anne weeping? – Because she was not allowed to go to your **place** yesterday.
31. Thank you, my friends, you are very kind.
32. In all parts of the world there are honest men and dishonest men.
33. There are many wild-flowers in the wide world.
34. Paul went empty-handed to Anne's place.
35. Are the days always long and warm here?

36. Eve wants to see the wide world.
 37. Can you see me? – Yes, I can see you. – Can they hear us? – Yes, they can hear you.
 38. What does she see in you? What do you see in yourself?
 39. Have a happy trip!

LESSON 30

DEFINITE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES
FEMININE PLURAL

Nom.	<i>vec-ās</i>	<i>pilsētas</i>	'the old cities'	-a lengthens to -ā.
Acc.	<i>vec-ās</i>	<i>pilsētas</i>		-a lengthens to -ā.
Gen.	<i>vec-o</i>	<i>pilsētu</i>		-u lengthens to -o.
Dat.	<i>vec-aj-ām</i>	<i>pilsētām</i>		insertion of -aj-.
Loc.	<i>vec-aj-ās</i>	<i>pilsētās</i>		insertion of -aj-.

Vocabulary

<i>maize</i>	bread	<i>tase</i>	cup
<i>spīdēt</i>	to shine	<i>glāze</i>	a glass
<i>rietēt</i>	to set (of sun)	<i>pudēle</i>	bottle
<i>mirdzēt</i>	to glitter, twinkle, shine		

NOTES: Remember to palatalize the stem consonant of feminine nouns in -e in the genitive plural, e.g., *glāze* – *glāžu*.

Exercise 30a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- Es strādāju pastā.*
- Es slikti deju.*
- Es atdošu Annai viņas naudu.*
- Agri no rīta es eju darbā.*
- Es nekad nedziedu.*

Exercise 30b

Decline in the singular and plural:

<i>dzeltenais citrons;</i>	<i>dārgā glāze;</i>
<i>sliktais tulkojums;</i>	<i>tukšā pudele;</i>
<i>jaunais maiss;</i>	<i>vecā tase;</i>
<i>aukstais vējš;</i>	<i>netīrā istaba;</i>
<i>garais stāsts;</i>	<i>dziļā aka;</i>
<i>baltais nams;</i>	<i>klusā jūra.</i>

Exercise 30c

Translate into English:

- baltās zvaigznes; īsās ielas; neērtās gultas; netīrās istabas; godīgās meitas; dzeltenās puķes; pelēkās peles; brūnās sētas; melnās kurpes; gudrās mātes.*
- Es lasīju garās vēstules.*
 - Es nelasīju īsās vēstules.*
 - Pāvils redzēja šaurās kakla saites veikalā.*
 - Es neredzu melnās kurpju saites.*
 - Mācītājs neieredz negodīgās meitas.*
 - Anna neredzēja baltās zvaigznes.*
 - Mēs tulkojam interesantās, zinātniskās grāmatas.*
- vecu meitu svārki; pelēko peļu kājas; sarkano puķu lapas; dzelteni rožu lapas; gudro māšu meitas; jauno māsu tēvs; brūno vistu olas; zaļo pļavu malas; netīro cūku kājas; mazo, dzelteni putnu dziesmas.*
- godīgajām meitām bija daudz draugu; slinkajām māsām nav naudas; bez interesantajām grāmatām; aiz tukšajām akām; zem pelēkajām jūrām; bez garajām vēstulēm; aiz baltajām zvaigznēm; zem mazajām olām; brūnajām pelēm nav siera.*
- šaurajās ielās; dziļajās akās; interesantajās vēstulēs; plašajās pļavās; jaunajās skolās; lētajās mašīnās; brūnajās olās; sekļajās akās; tukšajās bļodās; šaurajās kurpēs.*

Exercise 30d

Translate into English:

- Netīrās, tukšās pudeles un glāzes ir zem galda.
- Tirgotājs nepārdod balto maizi, ko es gribēju.
- Kur ir čaklās māsas?
- Viņa turēja savās rokās skaistās, sarkanās rozes.
- Strādīgās bites ir dzeltenajās puķēs.
- Dziļajās akās peldēja brūnas lapas.

7. Vecās, interesantās dziesmu grāmatas nav jaunajā bibliotēkā.
8. Lētās, īsās kurpju saites neder dārgajām kurpēm.
9. Čaklās meitas baroja baltās vistas.
10. Ak, pelēkās peles jau ir visās istabās!
11. Seklajās tasēs ir piens.
12. Lielo pilsētu tirgotājiem ir vairāk naudas nekā saimnieku kalpiem.
13. Sliktās olas nevar dot cūkām.
14. Godīgās mātes neaizstāvēja slinkās meitas.
15. Karstajās dienās mēs bijām jūrmalā.
16. Pilnās bļodas bija viņam rokās.
17. Gudrajām māšicām bija daudz grāmatu.
18. Saimnieks nepiedeva nelaipnajām, negodīgajām meitām.
19. Zaļajās pudelēs ir vīns.
20. Tēvs savām meitām vienmēr palīdzēja.
21. Ubags negrib maizi; viņš grib naudu.
22. Saule jau riet.
23. Kad saule rietēja, mēs dzirdējām skaistās putnu dziesmas mežmalā.
24. Kāpēc tu viņam neiedevi pilnu glāzi?
25. Galdā bija tases un glāzes.
26. Vai šeit saule riet aiz kalniem? – Nē, aiz meža.
27. Dienā saule nespīdēja, bet vakarā mirdzēja zvaigznes.
28. Tagad tavas kurpes ir tīras un atkal spīd.
29. Kur ir maize?
30. Kas tur mirdzēja?
31. Mazajā pudelē nav piena.
32. Maizi nedrīkst turēt aukstajā pagrabā.
33. Plašajā pasaulē ir daudz lauku un meža puķu.
34. Saule vienmēr riet vakarā.
35. Pie mums rīti vienmēr ir ļoti auksti.
36. Kurpnieks aizgāja tukšām rokām, tāpēc ka es nevarēju viņam maksāt.
37. Visās pasaules malās ir daudz negodīgu cilvēku.
38. Ak, vīns ir auksts!
39. Rīts bija karsts, bet vakars bija auksts.
40. Viņš nekad man neatbild.
41. Vai Artūrs peld labi vai slikti?
42. Es ceru, ka jums ir diezgan sviesta.
43. Kā es varu tev palīdzēt?
44. Lūdzu, vai jūs varat man aizdot drusku cukura?
45. Dzeltenie citroni bija sarkanās bļodās.
46. Kam pieder dārgie nami?
47. Ezers šodien nemirdz, tāpēc ka saule nespīd.
48. Es viņam prasīju, kur ir cūkas gaļa.

49. Vai tu pelni vairāk naudas nekā es?
50. Vecais dārznieks stādīja krūmus mūsu dārzā.
51. Ko tu tagad gribi darīt? – Es gribu atdot miesniekam naudu, ko viņš man aizdeva.

Exercise 30e

Translate into Latvian:

- (1) the yellow flowers; the red roses; the hot days; the great film-stars; the narrow ties; the black shoe-laces; the beautiful wild-flowers; the old cars; the full bottles; the empty glasses.
- (2) a) Arthur did not read the new books.
b) I cannot stand the lazy daughters.
c) He is teaching the young girls.
d) We heard the industrious bees.
e) They were reading the long letters.
f) The labourers were holding the short leads.
g) We saw the brown eggs.
h) We didn't see the new pharmacies.
- (3) the translation of the scientific books; the tearful girls' story; the names of the beautiful flowers; the hands of the weak old mothers; the words of the sad songs; the heads of the black hens; on the edge of the deep seas; the windows of the comfortable rooms; the feet of the dirty pigs.
- (4) a) The kind old mothers had many sons and daughters.
b) The beautiful yellow flowers had long green leaves.
c) The narrow yellow shoes had short brown shoe-laces.
d) Beyond the white stars there are yet many worlds.
e) at the clean new pharmacies; under the broad streets; without the hard-working bees; under the empty bottles.
f) He did not help the lazy girls.
g) The pastor threatened the unkind mothers.
- (5) in the deep wells; in all the interesting corners of the world; in the shallow dishes; in the full bottles; in the yellow cups; in the dirty rooms; in the old books; in the quiet meadows; in the comfortable clean beds.

Exercise 30f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The windows of the houses shone when the sun was setting.
2. The diligent maids were helping the old farmer.
3. The brown and black hens are in the wide yard.

4. The god-father gave the beautiful new shoes to the friendly sisters.
5. Where are the red bottles and the expensive glasses?
6. The good schools are not always in the large cities.
7. He held her in his arms.
8. Why are the bad eggs still in the shallow dishes?
9. Oh dear, there are bees in the empty glasses!
10. Why are the dirty old carts still standing in the clean wide streets?
11. The pastor used to read the old hymn-books in the quiet evening.
12. He was travelling in the wide world.
13. Why do the clever honest maids work at their sister's place?
14. Where is the green cup? – Behind the brown bottle.
15. The sun is setting now.
16. Oh dear, the bread is under the table!
17. When the sun sets, the evening is immediately cold.
18. The sun is shining again.
19. His shoes did not shine.
20. Is there any wine in the bottle?
21. What is there in the cups and glasses?
22. The stars are shining.
23. The bread is still hot.
24. They are washing all the dirty cups and glasses.
25. How many bottles are there in the cellar? – Less than in the room.
26. I do not want to read the long and sad letters which your cousin wrote to you.
27. One cannot live without bread.
28. The white bread is behind the green cups.
29. Early in the morning the shoemaker was already at work.
30. The beggar wanted money, but went away empty-handed.

LESSON 31

FURTHER USES OF THE DEFINITE ADJECTIVE

The definite adjective, besides being used to translate English phrases of the type 'the good man', etc., is used also in the following cases:

- (1) after a possessive adjective:

my old car	<i>mana vecā mašīna</i>
in her old house	<i>viņas vecajā namā</i>
my dear son	<i>mans mīļais dēls</i>

- (2) after other possessives, especially nouns in the genitive:

Riga's old streets	<i>Rīgas vecās ielas</i>
in Latvia's beautiful fields	<i>Latvijas skaistajos laukos</i>
Paul's expensive chair	<i>Pāvila dārgais krēsls</i>

- (3) when the adjective qualifies a proper noun:

little Arthur	<i>mazais Artūrs</i>
little Eve	<i>mazā Ieva</i>
beautiful England	<i>skaistā Anglija</i>

- (4) when the adjective qualifies any noun in the vocative case:

dear friend	<i>dārgais draugs</i>
dear friends	<i>dārgie draugi</i>
kind people	<i>laipnie cilvēki</i>

N. B. The vocative is the case of direct address, and can for the present be considered as identical with the nominative.

Vocabulary

<i>māsas dēls</i>	nephew	<i>māsas meita</i>	niece
<i>brāļa dēls</i>	nephew	<i>brāļa meita</i>	niece
<i>krustmāte</i>	aunt; godmother	<i>austrumi</i> (pl.)	the east
<i>krustdēls</i>	godson	<i>vīna glāze</i>	a wineglass
<i>krustmeita</i>	goddaughter	<i>glāze vīna</i>	a glass of wine
<i>krustceļš</i>	cross-roads	<i>skaidrs</i>	clear
<i>ceļmala</i>	roadside	<i>skaidra nauda</i>	cash
<i>rietumi</i> (pl.)	the west	<i>bailes</i> (pl.)	fear
		<i>drēbēt aiz bailēm</i>	to shake with fear

NOTE the following expressions:

<i>krustceļos</i>	at the cross-roads
<i>rietumos</i>	in the west
<i>austrumos</i>	in the east
<i>rietumu vējš</i>	the west wind
<i>austrumu vējš</i>	the east wind
<i>skaidrā naudā</i>	in cash

The expressions *vīna glāze* and *glāze vīna* are representative of many similar ones, e.g., *vīna pudele* and *pudele vīna*, etc. The noun *bailes* has a contracted form which can be used in possessive expressions: instead of the fuller *man ir bailes*, the shorter *man bail* will often be found. Note particularly the omission

of the verb *ir* in this contracted form. In the negative, the *nav* cannot be omitted, e.g., *mums nav bail*. *Man bail* is equivalent to the English 'I am afraid'.

Māsas dēls and *māsas meita* refer to the children of one's sister, whereas *brāļa dēls* and *brāļa meita* refer to the children of one's brother. *Brāļa* is the genitive of the word *brālis* 'brother', the declension of which we shall study in a later lesson.

Exercise 31a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>es domāju;</i> | 4. <i>es tulkoju;</i> |
| 2. <i>es pelnu;</i> | 5. <i>es nezinu;</i> |
| 3. <i>es aizeju;</i> | 6. <i>vai es drīkstu?</i> |

Exercise 31b

Decline in the singular and plural:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>mūsu dziļā aka;</i> | 4. <i>saimnieka plašā pļava;</i> |
| 2. <i>viņas jaunais nams;</i> | 5. <i>mazā Anna</i> (singular only); |
| 3. <i>Artūra brūnais maiss;</i> | 6. <i>jaunais Pāvils</i> (singular only). |

Exercise 31c

Translate into English:

- Viņa nevar maksāt skaidrā naudā, bet banka var dot aizdevumu.
- Austrumos ir daudz interesantu zemju.
- Latvijai austrumos ir Krievija.
- Vīna glāzes ir zaļas.
- Es savam vecajam krusttēvam iedevu glāzi vīna.
- Ceļmalā ir skaistas puķes.
- Kāpēc tava mazā māsas meita raud? – Viņa vakar redzēja vilkus ceļmalā, un viņai vēl tagad bail.
- Krustmāte drebēja aiz bailēm, kad viņa redzēja tik daudz mašīnu krustceļos.
- Vai jūs nezinājāt, ka aptieka ir aiz krustceļa?
- Jūs man neatbildējāt skaidros vārdos.
- Es zinu, ka tev ir bailes.
- Austrālijas rietumos ir mazāk kalnu nekā austrumos.
- Sarkanās vīna glāzes ir ļoti dārgas.

- Kāpēc tu gribi runāt? Tava galva šodien nav skaidra.
- Ir auksta diena, tagad der glāze vīna.
- Cik vīna glāžu ir istabā?
- Mans mazais brāļa dēls vienmēr svilpo, kad viņam ir bailes.
- Tirgotājs nezina, cik viņam ir skaidrā naudā.
- Krustmeitas garais tulkojums bija vājš.
- Lielais krustceļš ir pilsētas rietumos.
- Vai visās zemēs saule riet rietumos?
- Pāvils drebēja aiz bailēm.
- Es krustmātei jautāju, kur ir krustceļš.
- Austrumu vējš šodien ir stiprs.
- Krustdēlam nekad nav bail, bet krustmeita arvien dreb aiz bailēm.
- Vai tev bail? – Nē, man nav bail.
- Lielās bailēs krustmāte aizgāja pie kaimiņiem.
- Kad krustmāte redzēja savu mazo māsas dēlu kokā, viņa drebēja aiz bailēm.
- Brāļa meitas bailes no pelēm ir muļķīgas.
- Vecais ārsts iedeva jaunajam maizniekam glāzi vīna.
- Vai šeit var maksāt skaidrā naudā?
- Ceļmalā es redzēju zaļos kokus.
- Kāpēc puķes ir dārgajā vīna glāzē?
- Cik jūsu pilsētā maksā glāze vīna? – Vairāk nekā pie jums rietumos.
- Lieli veikalnieki nekad nemaksā skaidrā naudā.
- Mūsu strādīgais kurpnieks stāvēja ceļmalā tukšām rokām.
- Rītos saule spīd austrumos, bet vakaros spīd rietumos.
- Vecajā Rīgā ir daudz vecu veikalu.
- Kur ir mazais Artūrs?
- Vai tu mīli jauno Pāvilu?
- Kā tev iet, dārgais draugs?
- Tava vecā krustmāte bija ļoti laipna.
- Kino zvaigzne gribēja daudz lauku puķu savā istabā.
- Skaistais ezers mirdzēja karstajā saulē.
- Jūra šodien ir zaļa.
- Dzeltenajām meža puķēm ir daudz lielu, zaļu lapu.
- Visi mīl mazo Ievu.
- Tavas šaurās kurpes man nederēja.
- Vecais vīns nav skaidrajās, zaļajās pudelēs; tas ir brūnajās glāzēs.
- Viņu pelēkās kakla saites ir ļoti lētas.
- Baltā maize ir aiz netīrajām tasēm.
- Saule jau riet.
- Mums šodien nav maizes.
- Jūsu īsās kurpju saites neder manām jaunajām kurpēm.
- Tagad vecais Artūrs ceļo plašajā pasaulē.

56. Kāpēc tavu slinko, jauno brālēnu neieredz?
57. Kāds man prasīja, kāpēc es drebu, un es atbildēju, ka vējš ir ļoti auksts.
58. Āfrikā ir ļoti maz bibliotēku.
59. Šur un tur bērni ubagoja.
60. Man ir mazāk papīra nekā es domāju.
61. Kalps turēja teļus saitē mūsu pagalmā.
62. Viņš grib drīz aizceļot.
63. Laimīgu ceļu!
64. Dziedātājs vienmēr dzied kaut ko ļoti interesantu.
65. Lūdzu, kur ir aptieka? – Aiz bankas. – Paldies!
66. Tagad vecais rakstnieks reti raksta.

Exercise 31d

Translate into Latvian:

1. my honest cousin; your dishonest sister; his narrow tie; our brown horses; Paul's empty bottles; Latvia's industrious farmers.
2. a) Did you see Paul's lazy father?
b) Little Eve is very well-liked.
c) Did you see my sister's green skirt?
d) She gave me her old cups.
e) The hard-working labourer is cleaning the courtyard.
3. the houses of my old aunts; the sisters of his young nephews; the skirts of our pretty nieces; the roof of Paul's old house; little Arthur's white mice; the books of his intelligent sister.
4. a) I gave my old aunt a little money.
b) I gave my young nephew many books.
c) I gave the grey mouse a little cheese.
d) under your empty bottles; without his old uncles; under Riga's old streets.
5. in his interesting letter; in your red car; in his dirty house; in Arthur's bad translation; in Eve's clean cups; in England's quiet forests.

Exercise 31e

Translate into Latvian:

1. In the west of our large country there are shallow lakes, but in the east there are mountains.
2. Do you want a glass of wine?
3. The clean wineglasses are by the window. The dirty wineglasses are under the table.

4. The aunt gave her young niece a red skirt.
5. The niece was shaking with fear when the dirty beggar threatened her.
6. I know that you are not afraid, but I am afraid.
7. All animals are afraid when they hear wolves.
8. The bank is on the other side of the cross-roads.
9. On clear evenings we can see the stars.
10. Can you pay in cash?
11. There are many interesting countries in the east.
12. Oh dear, there is a bee in the wine glass!
13. The sun is now in the west.
14. The car was standing on the side of the road.
15. My nephew's wineglass is still full.
16. Her tearful child was trembling with fear.
17. Where does the sun set, in the east or in the west?
18. There are huge forests in the east of Russia.
19. In fear, children often cry.
20. My aunt has so much work.
21. That is a very clear scientific work.
22. On the roadside were many empty bottles.
23. The niece gave the new wineglasses to her kind aunt.
24. She is not afraid.
25. Their fear of mice is foolish.
26. Why are you afraid?
27. You must not give your little nephew a glass of wine; he is still young.
28. How much did your nephew's new car cost?
29. The niece lives with her old aunt.
30. Who washed the wineglasses?
31. Where is the cross-roads?
32. I am afraid to ask the teacher whether he wants a glass of wine.
33. In the pharmacy they use only clear, clean glasses.
34. The butcher stopped his car at the cross-roads.
35. You are shaking with fright!
36. The farm-workers were working on the edge of the road.
37. The cross-roads is very wide.
38. Here you can pay only in cash.
39. The young dancer was trembling with fear.
40. She lives in great fear.
41. My young nephews were standing on the road-side.
42. We always pay the baker in cash.
43. We washed all our old cups and glasses the day before yesterday.
44. The pharmacist's green bottles were shining in the sun.
45. Australia is at the very end of the earth, beyond the broad oceans.

Exercise 32b

Decline in the singular and plural:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. mans plašais birojs; | 5. mūsu mīļā zeme; |
| 2. tava skaistā pildspalva; | 6. jūsu interesantais stāsts; |
| 3. viņa tukšā glāze; | 7. viņu netīrā mašīna; |
| 4. viņas vecais nams; | 8. Artūra jaunais draugs. |

Exercise 32c

Translate into English:

1. Ak, pildspalva atkal ir tukša! – Jā, bez tintes nevar rakstīt.
2. Putni sēž uz jumta un svilpo.
3. Artūrs jau agri no rīta strādā savā birojā.
4. Krievijas lielajos mežos ir daudz lapsu.
5. Putniem ir spalvas.
6. Uz tilta nedrīkst apturēt mašīnu.
7. Kāpēc tu nesēdi ērtajā krēslā?
8. Piedodiet, vai jūs jau gulējāt? – Nē, mēs vēl sēžam pie galda.
9. Putniem ir bail no lapsām.
10. Uz galda ir glāzes, tases, pudeles un bļodas.
11. Ubags vienmēr stāv uz vecā tilta.
12. Ak, šeit visur ir žurkas un peles!
13. Vecie rakstnieki savās grāmatās bieži stāsta, ka lapsa ir gudra.
14. Vai pudelē vēl ir tintes diezgan? – Nē, tikai drusku!
15. Skolnieki nedrīkst lietot pildspalvas, tikai spalvu un tinti.
16. Vai tev šorīt galva nesāp? – Tikai drusciņ.
17. Ārsts grib zināt, kur tev sāp. – Man sāp visi pirksti.
18. Vai Rīgas tilti ir gari un plati?
19. Ak, netīrās mušas atkal sēž uz gaļas un cukura!
20. Kas tev kaiš? – Man sāp galva.
21. No lielā tilta var redzēt visu pilsētu.
22. Biroja galdi ir no koka.
23. Šodien birojā nebija daudz darba.
24. Lapsa guļ ceļmalā.
25. Kas tavai meitai kaiš? – Viņai sāp zobi un arī kakls.
26. Aptiekārs prasīja, kas man kaiš.
27. Mušas sēž uz tīrā loga.
28. Annai ir lielas bailes no žurkām.
29. Krustmāte iedeva savam brāļa dēlam dārgu pildspalvu.

30. Uz galda ir tinte, spalva un papīrs.
31. Pagalmā ir vistu spalvas.
32. Cik kāju ir mušai?
33. Rudzos atkal ir žurkas.
34. Kāpēc mazie bērni vēl neguļ?
35. Mana pildspalva šorīt vēl bija uz biroja galda.
36. Saimnieka slinkais dēls grib aizceļot no Rīgas.
37. Kas jums kaiš? Jūs drebāt aiz bailēm!
38. Šeit maksā tikai skaidrā naudā.
39. Saule vienmēr riet rietumos.
40. Zvaigznes tagad nespīd: ir rīts.
41. Melns darbs, balta maize. (Proverb)
42. Manam čaklajam krustdēlam pagrabā ir daudz brūnu sīpolu un sarkanu tomātu.
43. Vai Latvijā cūkas gaļa un cūkas ir dārgas?
44. Anglijas skaistās pļavas vienmēr ir zaļas.
45. Man sāp rokas; es nevaru strādāt.
46. Kāpēc tu negribi iet pie viņas krustmātes?
47. Mana māšas meita palīdz savam mazajam brālēnam.
48. Dzeltenie āboli ir brūnajā maisā.
49. Mazie, jaunie rati ir plašajā laukā.
50. Tavi lielie cimdi neder manai mazajai krustmeitai.
51. Mācītājs drebēja aiz bailēm; viņa sētā bija vilks.
52. Maiznieks dzīvo pie krustceļa.
53. Bļodā bija nedaudz rīsu.
54. Ak, viņa glāzes ir tukšas, un mums viņa nav!
55. Man ir mazāk skaidras naudas nekā es domāju.
56. Mūsu raudulīgie bērni tagad guļ: mēs varam iet pie kaimiņiem.
57. Es gribu tulkot viņa jauno dziesmu.
58. Kas tev nav skaidrs?
59. Latvijā austrumu vējš bieži ir auksts, bet Austrālijas rietumos austrumu vējš ir karsts.
60. Pāvils iedeva Artūram glāzi viņa.
61. Ceļmalā bija daudz tukšu pudeļu.
62. Pie krustceļa ir liels, vecs koks.
63. Vai tu gribi glāzi viņa? – Jā, lūdzu, bet man nav viņa glāzes.
64. Kāpēc visi vīri tagad ir aplokā?
65. Dzeltenais siers, zaļie kāposti un sarkanie burkāni ir aukstajā pagrabā.
66. Sviests ir seklajā bļodā.
67. Tavi mati ir ļoti gari, dārgais draugs.

Exercise 32d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Are rats afraid of foxes?
2. When were you at the office?
3. On the office-table there was a little paper.
4. Was your fountain pen very expensive?
5. Is there enough red ink in the bottle?
6. Why aren't you sleeping? – Because there are flies and rats in the room.
7. Eve is sitting on her bed.
8. Behind the bridge there is a rose garden.
9. The narrow bridge is made of wood.
10. What is wrong with Anne? – She has a great fear of rats.
11. Where does it hurt? – I have a toothache.
12. The clever fox knows where the farmer's hens are.
13. I do not use pen and ink; I have a fountain pen.
14. On the table there are vegetables, flour and pepper.
15. What's the matter with you? – There's a fly in my glass!
16. From the doctor, he went to the pharmacy.
17. The girls are sitting by the deep well.
18. The new bridge is behind the old bridge.
19. Why is there no ink in the whole office? – Because everybody now uses fountain pens.
20. The birds of the hot Eastern countries often have beautiful feathers.
21. The young birds still have no feathers.
22. We are sitting in the office.
23. The fox is sleeping on the edge of the forest.
24. The dirty fly is sitting on the child's neck.
25. We are sitting in the comfortable old chairs.
26. He is already sleeping.
27. I have a sore neck. I cannot sleep.
28. There is no ink in my fountain pen.
29. Do rats fear foxes?
30. What did the bird do when it saw the fly?
31. What is wrong with your horse?
32. What was the matter with little Anne? – She was afraid of your old horse.
33. The wineglasses and the bread were on the wooden table.
34. Why can't you pay me in cash?
35. The animals were shaking with fear because there was a wolf on the edge of the woods.
36. I can't answer you, because your question was not clear.
37. In our part of the world, the west wind is cold and the east wind is hot.

38. My nephews are not allowed to swim in the sea.
39. Paul and Anne went swimming in the lake.
40. Do you want a glass of wine?
41. Very few people live in the west of Australia.
42. I never believe my nephew's stories.
43. Eve's old aunt is selling apples on the side of the street.
44. We saw a few empty wine bottles on the roadside.
45. Beggars often stand at cross-roads because there are more people there.
46. I wanted to pay the doctor in cash.
47. The pastor's daughter trembled with fear when he threatened her.
48. The sun is now setting in the west.
49. There are a lot of wild-flowers on the roadside.
50. The white cups we saw in the shop were very cheap.
51. How much does a glass of wine cost here?
52. Beyond the cross-roads is the old house where our teacher used to live.

LESSON 33

ADVERBS MODIFYING ADJECTIVES OR OTHER ADVERBS.
THREE PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

We already know the adverbs of quantity *cik* 'how much'; *tik daudz* 'so much'; *diezgan* 'enough'; *drusku* 'a little'. These adverbs can also be used with a following adjective or adverb.

The following examples will make this usage clear:

<i>cik labs</i>	how good (either as a question or as an exclamation)
<i>diezgan garš</i>	long enough, quite long
<i>drusku muļķīgs</i>	a little foolish
<i>tik laimīgs</i>	so happy (Note that <i>tik daudz</i> is not used in this way, and that the simple <i>tik</i> is found instead.)

The adverb *reti* can also be used in this way:

<i>reti labs</i>	uncommonly good, extraordinarily good
------------------	---------------------------------------

The prepositions *ar*, *par* and *gar*, meaning 'with', 'about' and 'along' respectively, are construed with the accusative case in the singular. This should be carefully noted, as all the prepositions we have studied to date have required the genitive.

<i>ar manu brālēnu</i>	with my cousin
<i>par Annu</i>	about Anne
<i>gar jūrmalu</i>	along the sea-shore

Remember, however, that all prepositions must be followed by the dative of a plural noun.

<i>ar maniem brālēniem</i>	with my cousins
<i>par laukiem</i>	about the fields
<i>gar malām</i>	along the edges

Actually, in traditional grammars, the preposition *ar* is described as being construed with the instrumental case: but as the instrumental singular is always identical with the accusative singular, and the instrumental plural likewise with the dative plural, we shall not use the term here.

Vocabulary

<i>ar</i> (+acc.)	with	<i>draudzene</i>	friend (f.), girl-friend
<i>par</i> (+acc.)	about, concerning	<i>dažreiz</i>	sometimes
<i>gar</i> (+acc.)	along	<i>daži</i>	some (adj.)
<i>upe</i>	river	<i>pavisam</i>	quite
<i>upmala</i>	river-bank	<i>tā</i>	it (f.) (nom.)
<i>bikses</i> (pl.)	trousers	<i>to</i>	it (f.) (acc.)
<i>jo</i>	for (conj.)		

NOTE that *pavisam* is stressed on the second syllable.

Tā and *to* can occasionally mean 'she', 'her' respectively.

Note the use of the conjunction *jo*:

Nams bija lēts, jo tas bija ļoti vecs.

The house was cheap, for it was very old.

Note the expression *runāt ar* 'to speak to'.

Exercise 33a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es guļu savā ērtajā gultā.*
2. *Es sēžu tavā skaistajā dārzā.*
3. *To es nezinu.*
4. *Es šodien nestrādāju.*
5. *Es nepelnu daudz naudas.*

Exercise 33b

Decline in the singular and plural: *skaistā upe*; *pelēkais okeans*; *mana vecā mašīna*; *viņu jaunais dārzs*; *saimnieka dziļā aka*; *Annas ērtais krēsls*.

Exercise 33c

Translate into English:

1. Viņš raksta grāmatu par Anglijas bankām.
2. Banka palīdzēja manam kaimiņam ar diezgan lielu aizdevumu.
3. Mēs gājām gar upmalu.
4. Cik dziļa ir upe šeit zem tilta? – Tā nav dziļa, tā ir pavisam sekla.
5. Cik garas ir tavas jaunās bikses?
6. Dažreiz tu esi pavisam slinks.
7. Es lasīju interesantu, zinātnisku darbu par Āfrikas upēm.
8. Artūrs runā ar dārznieku par savu darbu.
9. Artūrs runā ar dārznieku par viņa darbu.
10. Krusttēvs man iedeva dažus ābolus.
11. Ieva dažreiz domā par savu veco draudzeni.
12. Kāpēc tev ir tik šauras bikses?
13. Mācītājs viņiem piedeva, jo viņi ir labi bērni.
14. Vakārā mēs bieži ejam gar jūrmalu.
15. Es negribu balto glāzi, jo tā ir pavisam netīra.
16. Manas draudzenes gāja gar upmalu.
17. Ko tu domā par rakstnieka jauno grāmatu? – Tā ir diezgan interesanta, bet daži stāsti ir pavisam vāji.
18. Tēvs ar skolotāju nekad nerunā, jo viņš to neieredz.
19. Kāpēc jūsu pilsētā gar ielām nav koku?
20. Krievijā ir daudz garu un skaistu upju.
21. Upmalā sēž daži vīri.
22. Viņš ir nelaipns cilvēks, jo dažreiz viņš atbild, dažreiz ne. (*Ne* is here equivalent to the English *not*.)
23. Upes dažreiz ir pavisam dziļas.
24. Upmalā bija daži skaisti stādi.
25. Mana draudzene ir reti labs cilvēks.
26. Ar kaimiņu nevar runāt.
27. Karstās dienās es strādāju īsās biksēs.
28. Māsiņa viņai aizdeva dažus sīpolus.
29. Cik vecas tavas bikses jau ir?
30. Vai šeit drīkst iet gar upmalu?
31. Cik labi viņa dejo!

32. Cik skaistas dziesmas viņš dzied!
33. Cik interesantus stāstus viņš stāsta!
34. Ak, cik netīras ir tavas rokas!
35. Ak, cik tev ir netīras rokas!
36. Cik viņš ir gudrs!
37. Kur ir mana spalva? Es to neredzu.
38. Anna runāja ar Ievu sētā.
39. Jūsu mašīna tagad ir pavisam tīra.
40. Vai Pāvila draudzenei ir bail no lapsām?
41. Es lasu interesantu grāmatu.
42. Kāpēc tu drebi aiz bailēm? – Tāpēc, ka manā istabā ir žurka. Man bail no žurkām!
43. Es nekad nerakstu ar spalvu un tinti. Mūsu birojā lieto tikai pildspalvas.
44. Ak, mušas sēž uz gaļas!
45. Kur tev sāp? – Šeit, kājās!
46. Kas guļ dārzā? – Tas ir Pāvila brāļa dēls.
47. Kas tavai krustmātei kait? – Viņai sāp kakls.
48. Kāpēc tev ir tik daudz skaidras naudas?
49. Saule riet rietumos.
50. Ak, manā vīna glāzē ir muša.
51. Mūsu birojs ir pie jaunā tilta.
52. Uz galda bija melna tinte lielā pudelē.
53. Pildspalva bija uz biroja galda.
54. Mana krustmeita stāvēja pie krustceļa.
55. No ceļmalas var redzēt jūru rietumos un kalnus austrumos.
56. Vai tu negribi glāzi vīna?
57. Mūsu krēsli ir ļoti neērti.
58. Viss nams dreb, kad ir stiprs vējš.
59. Latvijā domā, ka Austrālija ir pasaules malā, bet Austrālijā domā, ka Latvija ir pasaules malā.
60. Manas rokas dreb; es nevaru rakstīt.
61. Saule un zvaigznes vienmēr spīd; sauli var redzēt tikai dienā, bet dienā zvaigznes nevar redzēt.

Exercise 33d

Translate into Latvian:

1. The young people were talking only about film-stars.
2. I always go to Paul's place along the river bank.
3. The horse was trembling with fear, for it heard the wolves on the edge of the forest.

4. Russia's wide rivers are very beautiful.
5. How long are your trousers?
6. Anne's girl-friend is here sometimes.
7. Now you are swimming really well.
8. The pastor and the teacher were walking along the river.
9. The children are not allowed to swim here, for the river is quite deep.
10. We are planting trees along the new wide road.
11. Why are your shoes and trousers so dirty?
12. The rivers of England are short.
13. He spoke with the pharmacist about some old scientific books.
14. What do you talk about? – Sometimes we talk about the world and the stars.
15. Your translation is really good, my son!
16. How many girl-friends has he?
17. Sometimes I do not believe his stories.
18. The old road was narrow, but the new road is wide.
19. He is going along the fence.
20. Why do the young people have such tight trousers?
21. Paul sometimes used to go to his aunt's.
22. On the river bank, there is a small field.
23. Some bottles are already empty.
24. Early in the morning the sun was already quite hot.
25. Is that a rose? – Yes, my friend, that is a rose.
26. That is your room, my friend.
27. I do not talk with my neighbour, for he is an unfriendly man.
28. I often sit with my girl-friend on the river-bank, for there are not so many people there.
29. Where is my fountain pen? I can't see it on the table.
30. I think there was a mouse or a rat in my room this morning, but I didn't see it.
31. My niece saw a few foxes in the forest yesterday.
32. His young nephew is quite an industrious pupil.
33. The shoemaker was sleeping under the old bridge.
34. The film-star never writes with pen and ink; she always uses her fountain pen.
35. Eve has a headache, and Paul has a sore neck.
36. Flies are very unclean.
37. There were many wineglasses in his office.
38. What's the matter with you? – I have a tooth-ache.
39. Anne is from England, but Eve is from Australia.
40. On the office table there was a pen, some ink and a few wild-flowers.
41. Are you frightened of rats and foxes?

42. The beggar was sitting on the bridge in the sun.
43. Am I sitting in your chair? Please excuse me!
44. The children are now sleeping.
45. We walked along the quiet river-bank.
46. Your trousers do not fit me; they are so small and I am so big!
47. Big businessmen never pay in cash.
48. He is writing a letter to some one, but I do not know to whom.
49. Paul is from the east of England, and Arthur from the west.
50. I have more grey ties than red.
51. He asked me where the post-office was.
52. Do you want a glass of wine?
53. Where is bread sold in your town?
54. I do not want to live at the cross-roads; one hears so many cars there.
55. On the roadside we saw some empty bottles.
56. The businessman has friends in many countries.
57. In the morning I work in the library.
58. Are there more honest men in the world than dishonest men?
59. He wanted a loan from the bank, but went away empty-handed.
60. Yellow laces are no good for black shoes.
61. Paul's mother was washing something at the well.
62. He went outside immediately.
63. Here and there we saw a few yellow flowers.
64. Your daughter is uncommonly beautiful.
65. He is an uncommonly kind man.

Exercise 33e

Construe 'how', 'so', 'enough', and 'quite' with the following adjectives: big; small; long; short; wide; narrow; deep; shallow; cheap; expensive; lazy; hard-working; clever; stupid; full; empty; good; bad.

Construe 'a little' and 'uncommonly' with those adjectives of the above list which are suitable.

LESSON 34

THE FUTURE TENSE

The future tense of all verbs of the Long and Mixed conjugations is formed directly from the infinitive: the *-t* of the infinitive is dropped, and is replaced by the endings *-šu, -si, -s, -sim, -sit, -s*. The following paradigms show the regularity of the future tense forms.

<i>redzēt</i>	<i>rakstīt</i>	<i>dzīvot</i>	<i>runāt</i>
<i>es redzēšu</i>	<i>es rakstīšu</i>	<i>es dzīvošu</i>	<i>es runāšu</i>
<i>tu redzēsi</i>	<i>tu rakstīsi</i>	<i>tu dzīvoši</i>	<i>tu runāsi</i>
<i>viņš redzēs</i>	<i>viņš rakstīs</i>	<i>viņš dzīvos</i>	<i>viņš runās</i>
<i>mēs redzēsim</i>	<i>mēs rakstīsim</i>	<i>mēs dzīvosim</i>	<i>mēs runāsim</i>
<i>jūs redzēsīt</i>	<i>jūs rakstīsīt</i>	<i>jūs dzīvosīt</i>	<i>jūs runāsīt</i>
<i>viņi redzēs</i>	<i>viņi rakstīs</i>	<i>viņi dzīvos</i>	<i>viņi runās</i>

The verbs *iet, dot, and būt* are quite regular in the future:

es iešu, tu iesi, viņš ies, mēs iesim, jūs iesīt, viņi ies.
es došu, tu dosi, viņš dos, mēs dosim, jūs dosīt, viņi dos.
es būšu, tu būsi, viņš būs, mēs būsim, jūs būsit, viņi būs.

Care should be taken with the tense sequence after *kad* and *ja*. If the main clause has a verb in the future tense, then the clause depending on *kad* or *ja* must also have a future verb, e.g.,

Ja tu runāsi, es tevi dzirdēšu.

If you speak, I shall hear you.

Es rakstīšu viņai, kad viņa rakstīs man.

I shall write to her when she writes to me.

It should be noted further that where English often has a conditional in indirect speech, Latvian normally uses the future, e.g.,

Es nedomāju, ka viņi atbildēs.

I did not think that they would answer.

Vocabulary

<i>ja</i>	if	<i>skūpstīt</i>	to kiss
<i>stunda</i>	hour; lesson	<i>skaitīt</i>	to count
<i>klausīt</i>	to obey	<i>sodīt</i>	to punish
<i>rādīt</i>	to show	<i>solīt</i>	to promise
<i>smaidīt</i>	to smile	<i>sūtīt</i>	to send
<i>gaidīt</i>	to wait; expect	<i>vārīt</i>	to cook, boil

Note the expressions:

<i>strādāt par skolotāju, ārstu, etc.</i>	to work as a teacher, doctor, etc.
<i>Kas par cilvēku, vīru, etc.</i>	What a person, man, etc. (either interrogative or exclamatory)
<i>Kas tā par puķi?</i>	What sort of flower is that?
<i>Kas tev par skaistu meitu!</i>	What a beautiful daughter you have!

NOTES: The verb *klausīt* requires its object in the dative case, particularly when the action is limited to one particular occasion. When the action is generalized, the accusative may be found.

The verbs *rādīt*, *solīt* and *sūtīt* take the accusative of the thing and the dative of the person, e.g.,

<i>Viņa man rāda grāmatas.</i>	She shows me books.
<i>Mēs jums nesollsim naudu.</i>	We shall not promise you money.
<i>Mēs viņai sūtījām vēstuli.</i>	We sent her a letter.

The verb *gaidīt* governs the accusative case, the English preposition *for* not being translated into Latvian:

<i>Es tevi gaidu.</i>	I am waiting for you.
<i>Ko tu gaidi?</i>	What are you waiting for?

The verb *vārīt* cannot be used intransitively, e.g.,

<i>Mēs vārām cūkas gaļu.</i>	We are cooking the pork.
------------------------------	--------------------------

BUT NOT: The pork is cooking.

Exercise 34a

Conjugate in the future tense: *gribēt*; *turēt*; *pelnīt*; *darīt*; *zināt*; *strādāt*; *dejoj*; *iet*; *dot*; *būt*.

Exercise 34b

Translate into Latvian: I shall obey; you will show; he will smile; we shall wait; you will kiss; they will count; I shall not punish; will you promise?; will he not send?; we shall cook.

Exercise 34c

Give the second person (singular and plural) of the following verbs, in (a) the present, (b) the imperfect, and (c) the future: *vārīt*; *peldēt*; *sūtīt*; *strādāt*; *solīt*; *būt*; *sodīt*; *aiziet*; *skaitīt*; *aizstāvēt*; *skūpstīt*; *ubagot*; *gaidīt*; *iedot*; *smaidīt*; *raudāt*; *rādīt*; *dziedāt*; *klausīt*; *maksāt*.

Exercise 34d

Decline in the singular and plural: a new book; the new book; an empty glass; the empty glass; an old house; the old house; a shallow lake; the shallow lake.

Exercise 34e

Translate into English:

1. Ja tu man rakstīsi, es tev atbildēšu.
2. Vai tu stāvēsi pie vārtiem un mani gaidīsi? – Nē, Pāvils gaidīs.
3. Viņa tūlī atkal smaidīs.
4. Es tur būšu drīz, bet vairāk es jums nevaru solīt.
5. Vai skolotājs bērņus sodīs? – Jā, ja viņi neklausīs, viņš to darīs.
6. Es jums rādīšu ceļu!
7. Es skaitīšu tomātus, un Anna skaitīs glāzes.
8. Es domāju, ka Artūrs nekad neskūpstīs Ievu.
9. Ja es tev došu ābolu, vai tu man rādīsi mazos putņus?
10. Tēvs bērņus nesodīs, ja viņi klausīs.
11. Ieva vārīs kāpostus, un mēs tīrīsim istabas.
12. Mēs sūtīsim māšas dēlu pie kaimiņa.
13. Vai jūs sūtīsiet savu dēlu pie aptiekāra?
14. Tirgotāji atkal mums sūtīs miltus, sviestu un sieru, ja mēs viņiem maksāsim.
15. Es tevi gaidīšu pie bankas.
16. Viņš vienmēr skūpstā mātei roku. (Notice this construction.)
17. Kas par skaistiem matiem!
18. Kas par gudru cilvēku!

19. Ko tu viņam solīji? – Es viņam solīju aizdevumu.
20. Es tev rādīšu, ja tu neklausīsi skolotājam! (The Latvian idiom corresponds exactly to the English *I'll show you!*)
21. Vai krusttēvs mums rādīs savu jauno zirgu?
22. Mazais Pāvils domā, ka lielie veikalnieki arvien skaita savu naudu.
23. Man solīja, ka es atkal varēšu strādāt par ārstu.
24. Mēs vārīsim kāpostus un burkānus.
25. Kāpēc viņa tik reti smaida?
26. Kāpēc jūs skolniekus nesodīsiet?
27. Ko jūs ārā darīsiet, mīļie bērni? – Mēs skaitīsim zvaigznes.
28. Vai viņš gaidīs ārā?
29. Vai mazā Anna drīkst vārīt olas? – Jā, viņa jau vāra rīsus un arī gaļu.
30. Viņš neticēja, ka viņu sodīs.
31. Mēs drīz būsime pilsētā un iesime veikalos.
32. Ko viņa darīs, ja es viņu skūpstīšu?
33. Vecais mācītājs smaidīja, kad bērni viņam rādīja savas jaunās dziesmu grāmatas.
34. Viņš strādās par aptiekāru.
35. Kas par interesantu tulkojumu!
36. Kad mēs iesime gar upi, mēs tur redzēsim jauno tiltu.
37. Es ubagiem nedošu naudu.
38. Viņš jautās dārzniekam, kur ir jaunās rozes.
39. Es šodien būšu aplokā pie zirgiem.
40. Anna un Ieva strādās pastā, tāpēc ka viņas grib pelnīt naudu.
41. Mana brāļa meita dzīvos Anglijā.
42. Mēs mācīsim bērnus.
43. Viņš pārdos namu.
44. Es apturēšu mašīnu.
45. Vai jūs strādāsiet laukos?
46. Viņš bankā pelnīs daudz naudas.
47. Kur jūs būsiet? – Mēs būsime pagrabā.
48. Viņa runās ar miesnieku.
49. Es domāšu par jums.
50. Kas par stipru vīru!
51. Viņš strādāja par kurpnieku.
52. Es tevi gaidīšu pie vārtiem.
53. Viņš tagad strādā par skolotāju.
54. Mēs jums neklausīsim.
55. Kur tu sūtīsi savu dēlu?
56. Cik stundu tu gribi strādāt?
57. Vai jūs strādājāt garas stundas birojā?
58. Es nedomāju, ka tu strādā vairāk stundu nekā es.

59. Mums šodien skolā nebija stundu, tāpēc ka skolotājam sāpēja galva.
60. Tinte ir zaļa, bet spalva ir melna.
61. Anna gāja ar savām draudzenēm gar skaisto upmalu.
62. Dažreiz upe ir sekla, dažreiz dziļa.
63. Runā, ka lapsas ir reti gudras.
64. Netīrā muša, kāpēc tu sēdi uz kūkas galas?
65. Vai mana pildspalva ir uz galda?
66. Par ko tu runāji?
67. Vecais tilts ir no koka.
68. Kas tev kaiš? – Man sāp zobs.
69. Es neiešu pie Pāvila, es gribu iet gar upmalu ar savu draudzeni.
70. Vai žurkas ir netīras?
71. Jūsu bikses ir pavisam īsas!
72. Kur ir mana kakla saite? Es to neredzu. – Tā ir uz tava galda.
73. Artūrs ir reti kluss bērns, bet Pāvils ļoti reti ir kluss.
74. Pagrabā nav vīna, jo visas pudeles ir tukšas.
75. Dažām kino zvaigznēm ir daudz naudas.
76. Tavas bikses man nederēs.
77. Viņš man atbildēja dažos īsos vārdos.
78. Zvaigznes tagad var pavisam labi redzēt.
79. Man nav naudas, jo es esmu tikai ubags.

Exercise 34f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Do you obey your teacher?
2. Will he obey his father?
3. Did the farm-labourers obey the farmer?
4. Why don't you show me your new gloves?
5. The children will not show me their new trousers.
6. Where were you waiting for me?
7. We shall be waiting at the well.
8. Are you kissing the beautiful girl?
9. When will you show the pastor your new hymn-book?
10. Why doesn't she smile? – She will smile soon.
11. My aunt will wait in the cart.
12. The unfriendly pharmacist never smiles.
13. We are still waiting!
14. Anne will smile at once, when Paul kisses her.
15. We are counting our cups and glasses. Eve will count the eggs.
16. Did he kiss you often? – I did not count.

- 17. The doctor kissed her hand. (See Ex. 34e, no. 16.)
- 18. The teacher will punish the lazy pupil.
- 19. Shall we punish the lazy farm-worker?
- 20. Will you punish the children? – No, we shall not punish them.
- 21. They promised me a loan.
- 22. I never promise more than I can do.
- 23. We shall not promise to sing and dance.
- 24. They were cooking pork with cabbages.
- 25. Lettuces must not be cooked.
- 26. He will send his cousin (f.) money if she asks him.
- 27. We shall send our sister money.
- 28. When will you cook the rice?
- 29. If it is a hot day, we shall not cook pork.
- 30. Today I shall not cook rice.
- 31. I'll show you, if you don't work!
- 32. Does he work as a teacher? – No, he works as a butcher.
- 33. Do you want to work as a shoemaker?
- 34. What a long letter!
- 35. What a beautiful rose!
- 36. What a big leaf!
- 37. We shall pay him in cash.
- 38. He will stand behind the fence.
- 39. We shall soon see the wide ocean.
- 40. I shall be sitting in the comfortable chair.
- 41. The beggars will again sleep outside.
- 42. Will you feed the hens?
- 43. Will your cousin (m.) travel in the wide world?
- 44. Arthur will teach the children to sing.
- 45. I shall speak with the shop-keeper.
- 46. I shall wash my feet.
- 47. The farmer will sell his pigs.
- 48. He will dance with his girl-friend.
- 49. Will they be in the library today?
- 50. When I see you, I shall whistle.
- 51. Will you ask your father for the money?
- 52. How many hours will you work today?
- 53. Bakers sometimes work very long hours.
- 54. How many hours are there in a day?
- 55. In the quiet evening hours we often sit in the garden.
- 56. If I work as a farm-labourer, I shall not earn much money.
- 57. What a dishonest man! He did not return the money!
- 58. He is always sending letters to his friends.

- 59. Some businessmen are quite honest.
- 60. I cannot write, for I have no pen and no ink. – You may use my fountain-pen. – Thank you.
- 61. How is your cousin? – Quite well, he is now working in the office again.
- 62. Why are you shaking? – I am trembling with fear! – With fear? – Yes, I am afraid of foxes.
- 63. Now there are flies on the vegetables again.
- 64. My niece had a headache.
- 65. Under the old bridge there are many rats.
- 66. Your uncle is so popular!
- 67. This morning we were speaking of trousers and skirts.
- 68. We sometimes walk along the river in the evenings.
- 69. Anne was walking along the river's edge with several girl-friends.
- 70. What sort of flower is that?
- 71. Where is my wineglass? I cannot see it!
- 72. You will soon be weeping, for I shall punish you.
- 73. Begging is not allowed now. How shall I live?
- 74. What a bad singer!
- 75. The merchant will sell me a young calf.
- 76. I never know whether you are happy or sad, for you never smile.

LESSON 35

THE NUMERALS 1 TO 10

The numerals from 1 to 10 are as follows:

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>viens</i>	<i>viena</i>	one
<i>divi</i>	<i>divas</i>	two
<i>trīs</i>	<i>trīs</i>	three
<i>četri</i>	<i>četras</i>	four
<i>pieci</i>	<i>piecas</i>	five
<i>seši</i>	<i>sešas</i>	six
<i>septiņi</i>	<i>septiņas</i>	seven
<i>astoņi</i>	<i>astoņas</i>	eight
<i>dēviņi</i>	<i>dēviņas</i>	nine
<i>dēsmi</i>	<i>dēsmi</i>	ten

All these forms, with the exception of *trīs* and *desmit*, are declined like ordinary adjectives in the plural, e.g.,

*pieci zirgi; sešas akas; ar astoņiem draugiem;
zem divām grāmatām; visos septiņos namos, etc.*

Viens, viena, is of course declined in the singular:

ar vienu vīru; vienā vēstulē.

However, when *viens, viena* is used with a plural noun such as *rati, svārki*, etc., it takes plural forms, e.g.,

vienas bikses; vieni rati.

The numeral *trīs* is irregularly declined as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	<i>trīs</i>	<i>trīs</i>
Acc.	<i>trīs</i>	<i>trīs</i>
Gen.	<i>triju</i>	<i>triju</i>
Dat.	<i>trim</i> or <i>trijiem</i>	<i>trim</i> or <i>trijām</i>
Loc.	<i>trīs</i> or <i>trijos</i>	<i>trīs</i> or <i>trijās</i>

The numeral *desmit* is indeclinable, and requires its noun in the genitive, e.g.,

desmit zirgu; desmit māslu; desmit peļu.

Note that although these numerals follow an adjectival declension, none of them has definite endings.

DOUBLE SUBJECTS

Very often a double subject is avoided in Latvian by the use of *ar* instead of *un*, e.g.,

Father and mother were sitting in the garden.
Tēvs ar māti sēdēja dārzā.

This construction is slightly varied when one of the subjects is the first person singular pronoun:

Arthur and I were swimming in the lake.
Mēs ar Artūru peldējām ezerā.

The plural *we* is anticipated in the pronoun, even though the second subject, *Artūrs*, is specifically mentioned. In this construction, a pronoun always

precedes a noun, contrary to English usage, where one refers to oneself only after referring to the other person(s).

If both subjects are pronouns, one still puts oneself first, and the other person second:

He and I will go away.

Mēs ar viņu aiziesim.

Vocabulary

Learn the numerals from 1 to 10.

<i>bagāts</i>	rich	<i>Eiropa</i>	Europe
<i>nabadzīgs</i>	poor	<i>Francija</i>	France
<i>Amerika</i>	America	<i>Vācija</i>	Germany
<i>Āzija</i>	Asia		

NOTE the following constructions:

<i>bagāts ar...</i>	rich in...
<i>pilns ar...</i>	full of...
(as well as <i>pilns</i> plus the genitive)	
<i>paldies par...</i>	thank you for...

Eiropa is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 35a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- Es eju pie Annas.*
- Es viņam sūtu naudu.*
- Es maksāju skaidrā naudā.*
- Es turu teļu pie saites.*
- Es guļu savā gultā.*
- Es nesēju tavā krēslā.*

Exercise 35b

Conjugate in the future tense: *gulēt; būt; aizdot; runāt; peldēt; solīt; vārtīt; aiziet.*

Exercise 35c

Decline in the singular and plural: *karstā diena; aukstais rīts; dzeltenā roze; plašais aploks; mans dārgais nams; viņu lētā mašīna.*

Exercise 35d

Decline in the plural only: *divi lauki; trīs akas; četras glāzes; pieci pagrabi; sešas sētas; septiņi rati; astoņas tases; deviņas vēstules; vienas bikses.*

Exercise 35e

- (1) Count from one to ten with the following nouns: *zirgs; cūka; teļš; lapsa; rati.*
- (2) Complete the following from one to ten:
 - (a) *Es redzēju vienu logu.*
 - (b) *Es baroju vienu cūku.*
 - (c) *Es pārdevu vienus svārkus.*

Exercise 35f

Translate into English:

1. Amerika ir bagāta zeme, bet Āzijā ir daudz nabadzīgu zemju.
2. Latvija ir bagāta ar mežiem.
3. Mēs redzējām piecas Eiropas zemes.
4. Francijā mēs redzēsīm tikai sešas pilsētas, bet Vācijā deviņas.
5. Mani trīs dēli tagad jau pelna sev maizi. (This expression is often used for *to earn one's living*.)
6. Uz galda ir astoņas glāzes; piecas ir pilnas, bet trijās glāzēs nav vīna.
7. Lopiem ir četras kājas, bet mušām un bitēm ir sešas.
8. Kaimiņiem ir daudz bērnu – viņiem ir divas meitas un seši dēli.
9. Visu triju namu vārti ir no koka.
10. Es saviem trim draugiem iedošu ābolus.
11. Bagātais, nelaiptais tirgotājs nekad nerunā ar nabadzīgo kurpnieku.
12. Septiņās dienās mana skaistā māsa jau būs Amerikā.
13. Viens bērns var jautāt vairāk, nekā septiņi gudri vīri var atbildēt.
14. Mūsu četru dēlu zirgi stāv aplokā.
15. Cilvēkam ir divas rokas un desmit pirkstu: ar savām divām rokām viņš var strādāt visus darbus.

16. Deviņās stundās mēs būsīm Vācijā.
17. Man ir divas jaunas tases.
18. Skolotāja namā ir četras istabas.
19. Krusttēvam ir četri dēli; divi ir šeit, viens ir Amerikā un viens Vācijā.
20. Uz galda ir deviņas olas un septiņi tomāti.
21. Ko tu darīsi ar sešām bļodām?
22. Viņš ir septiņu bērnu tēvs.
23. Astoņi cilvēki dzīvoja divās šaurās, nabadzīgās istabās.
24. Pagrabā ir septiņi maisi, bet tikai pieci vēl ir pilni.
25. Bez manis tur bija vēl deviņi cilvēki. (*Bez manis: lit. without me, here equivalent to without counting me, in addition to me.*)
26. Mēs bieži ceļojām Francijā.
27. Āfrikas nabadzīgajās pilsētās nav daudz mašīnu.
28. Āzijā visur ir ubagi.
29. Eiropas rietumos ir labi, plati ceļi.
30. Eiropas austrumos ir garas, platas upes un plaši lauki.
31. Vai Eiropas rietumos ir vilki?
32. Kad jūs būsīt Francijā?
33. Āzijā cilvēkiem nekad nav diezgan rīsu un dārzāju.
34. Amerika deva Vācijai ļoti lielus aizdevumus.
35. Mēs bieži runājam par biroja darbu.
36. Anna ar trijām draudzenēm gāja gar upmalu.
37. Kas tev par platām biksēm, mans draugs!
38. Kur ir tinte? Es to neredzu.
39. Es viņus nesodišu, jo viņi ir labi bērni.
40. Dažreiz Ieva vāra burkānus, dažreiz kāpostus.
41. Vai tu man nekad neklausīsi?
42. Artūrs nerādīs Pāvilam savu jauno pildspalvu.
43. Es tevi gaidīšu aiz tilta.
44. Viņa sūtīja savai māsiņai daudz naudas.
45. Viņš tagad strādā par dārznieku.
46. Es skaitīšu tases, ja tu skaitīsi glāzes.
47. Ja viņš strādā par kalpu, kā viņš var pelnīt tik daudz naudas?
48. Kas par skaistu rītu!
49. Divās stundās bērni jau gulēs, un mēs varēsīm iet pie saviem draugiem.
50. Viņš negribēja klausīt skolotāju.
51. Lūdzu, vai jūs man rādīsīt ceļu?
52. Ieva nesmaida, jo viņa ir bēdīga.
53. Es runāšu ar tevi, kad man būs mazāk darba.
54. Ieva negribēja skūpstīt Artūru.
55. Ko tu skūpstīji aiz krūmiem?
56. Pelēkajai pelei ir bail no cilvēkiem.

Exercise 35g

Translate into Latvian:

1. He travelled in Europe and Asia.
2. In France we shall see six cities, but only four in Germany.
3. He will be here in three days.
4. My three daughters still have no husbands.
5. Not counting me (i.e., without me) there are still five sons and two daughters.
6. How can nine people live in such a small room?
7. There are ten cups.
8. The windows of the three houses are clean.
9. I shall give her three new skirts.
10. Our four sisters are still small.
11. Europe has fewer forests and rivers than Asia.
12. Yesterday only one tooth was hurting, but today two already are aching.
13. Flies have six legs.
14. The rich farmer has ten farm-labourers.
15. When will he be here? – In four or five days.
16. They have seven children.
17. In the enclosure there are eight calves.
18. In the room there is one table, one bed and four comfortable chairs.
19. Our house has ten large windows.
20. Behind the gate there are two men.
21. My five friends have cars.
22. I shall read all six books.
23. The rich businessman has seven offices in the city.
24. Where did you live in France?
25. I shall give her ten eggs.
26. On the table there are eight glasses, but there is wine in only seven.
27. We shall pay cash in nine days.
28. The farmer sold seven pigs and nine hens to the honest old butcher.
29. Rich America sometimes helps poor countries.
30. Germany will again give loans to poor countries in Africa and Asia.
31. Mother wrote letters to her eight children.
32. Are there more libraries in France than in America?
33. America and Russia are now rich countries.
34. France and Germany are in Europe.
35. America still gives loans to some countries of Asia.
36. The teacher will punish the pupils if they do not obey him.
37. If the sun is shining, I shall wait for you at the gate.
38. Paul kissed Eve's hand.

39. What a hard-working father you have!
40. If I kiss you, will you smile?
41. If you wait for me, I shall show you my new books.
42. We were discussing rats and mice.
43. Along the river-bank there are a few quite beautiful houses.
44. Will Paul dance with Anne or with Eve?
45. What a strong man!
46. In three hours we shall be in Riga.
47. If you obey me, I shall not punish you.
48. The butcher promised to help the baker.
49. In Latvia he used to work as a doctor, but in America he is now working as a teacher.
50. Yesterday I cooked vegetables; today I shall cook meat.
51. He promised to give me his new book.
52. Will you show me the way, please?
53. Little Anne never smiles.
54. Where is your new car? – It is behind the house, in the courtyard.
55. We do not talk to our neighbour, for he is an unkind and dishonest man.
56. Were your new green trousers very expensive?
57. Sometimes in the evening we walk along the river-bank.
58. My hand is shaking; I cannot hold my pen.
59. Today we saw a large red fox in the forest.
60. What is the matter with you? – I have no new shoe-laces.
61. Where will you sit?
62. In all corners of the world the sun sets in the west.
63. The beggar asked me for some money, but went away empty-handed.
64. At the cross-roads there is an old, empty house.
65. On the road-side one can often see empty bottles.
66. Do you want a glass of wine? – No, thank you!
67. On clear evenings we often sit in the garden under the stars.
68. My new red shoes are very uncomfortable.
69. The labourer was holding the calf on a short lead.
70. I do not know how many lands there are in the world.
71. The days are cold now, and there are very few flowers in the garden.
72. Lettuces and cabbages will soon be cheap again.

LESSON 36

IMPERATIVES

The second person singular of the imperative is identical with the second person singular of the present indicative, with the pronoun omitted. Like all imperatives in Latvian, it requires an exclamation mark.

<i>redzi!</i>	see!
<i>strādā!</i>	work!
<i>lasī!</i>	read!

The second person plural of the imperative is formed from the second person plural of the present indicative, by changing the ending *-at* or *-āt* to *-iet*.

<i>dzirdiet!</i>	hear!
<i>runājiet!</i>	speak!
<i>rakstiet!</i>	write!

Note that before this ending *-iet* an open *ē* will become a closed *ē*, and that in those verbs of the mixed conjugation with a palatalized consonant in the present tense, the palatalized consonant is depalatalized before this ending:

<i>redziet!</i>	see!
<i>sēdīet!</i>	sit!
<i>guliet!</i>	sleep!

The first person plural of the imperative is identical with the first person plural of the future indicative, with the pronoun omitted:

<i>redzēsīsim!</i>	let us see!
<i>strādāsīsim!</i>	let us work!
<i>lasīsīsim!</i>	let us read!

The third person (singular and plural) of the imperative is formed from the third person of the present indicative, with the help of the particle *lai*. The noun or pronoun is not necessarily omitted:

<i>lai redz!</i>	let him see! let them see!
<i>lai strādā!</i>	let him work! let them work!
<i>lai lasa!</i>	let him read! let them read!

Or with the subject expressed:

<i>Lai dzīvo ārsts!</i>	Long live the doctor!
<i>Lai meitas dzied!</i>	Let the girls sing!
<i>Lai viņi prasa!</i>	Let them ask!

The irregular verbs *būt*, *iet*, and *dot* have their imperatives as follows:

	<i>būt</i>	<i>iet</i>	<i>dot</i>
2nd. Sing.	<i>esi!</i>	<i>ej!</i>	<i>dod!</i>
2nd. Plur.	<i>esiet!</i>	<i>ejiet!</i>	<i>dodiet!</i>
1st. Plur.	<i>būsim!</i>	<i>iesim!</i>	<i>dosim!</i>
3rd. person	<i>lai ir!</i>	<i>lai iet!</i>	<i>lai dod!</i>

The negative imperative is formed in the same way as the negative indicative:

<i>nelasi!</i>	don't read!
<i>neejiet!</i>	don't go!
<i>nedosim!</i>	don't let's give!
<i>lai nav!</i>	let it not be!
<i>lai nerunā!</i>	let him not speak!

Note that whereas object pronouns tend to precede a verb in the indicative, they follow a verb in the imperative, first or second person, but precede a third person imperative.

Compare:

<i>Viņa man iedeva ābolu.</i>	<i>Iedodiet man ābolu!</i>
<i>Es viņam rakstu.</i>	<i>Raksti viņam!</i>
<i>Viņš viņu soda.</i>	<i>Lai viņš viņu soda!</i>

Vocabulary

<i>māja</i>	house	<i>lidmašīna</i>	aeroplane
<i>mājā or mājās</i>	at home; home (wards)	<i>lidlauks</i>	airport
<i>laiks</i>	time; weather	<i>gaiss</i>	air
<i>lieta</i>	thing, matter, affair	<i>valoda</i>	language
<i>vieta</i>	place; position, job	<i>virtuve</i>	kitchen
<i>lidot</i>	to fly		

NOTE the expression *rakstīt ar tinti* 'to write in ink'.

Exercise 36a

Conjugate in the future tense: *sūtīt*; *ubagot*; *aiziet*; *atdot*; *vārlt*; *būt*; *raudāt*; *domāt*; *turēt*; *gulēt*; *sollt*; *sēdēt*.

Exercise 36b

Give the four imperative parts of: *mācīt; būt; strādāt; dziedāt; peldēt; ubagot; dot; sodīt; iet; pārdot; skūpstīt; skaitīt; maksāt; raudāt; tulkot; aizdot; sēdēt; darīt; gaidīt; gulēt; redzēt; barot.*

Exercise 36c

Count from one to ten with the following nouns: *lidmašīna; tilts; valoda; bikses; vakars; pildspalva; rati; birojs; upe; svārki.*

Exercise 36d

Translate into English:

1. Lūdzu, esiet lidlaukā agri no rīta!
2. Tagad ejiet mājā, bērni! Krustmātei sāp galva.
3. Gaidi mani vecajā vietā!
4. Neejiet laukā, ārā ir slikts laiks!
5. Nerunā tik muļķīgas lietas!
6. Dosim ubagam naudu! – Nē, lai bagātais saimnieks dod!
7. Redzi, gaisā lido lidmašīna!
8. Runāsim ar mācītāju par skolas lietām!
9. Iesim virtuvē!
10. Lai ubags nestāv pie mūsu vārtiem!
11. Nelasiet visu grāmatu!
12. Domā vairāk un runā mazāk!
13. Nedomā par viņu, viņš tevi nekad nemīlēja!
14. Lai viņi maksā skaidrā naudā!
15. Iesim gar upmalu!
16. Lai viņa aizstāv savu vīru!
17. Neskaitiet glāzes! Es zinu, cik tur ir.
18. Lieto lielo bļodu virtuvē!
19. Dejosim, mans draugs!
20. Runājiet mūsu draugu valodā!
21. Cik valodu viņš runā? – Viņš runā sešas valodas.
22. Neprasi man naudu!
23. Dariet, ko gribat!
24. Cerēsim, ka laiks būs labs!
25. Lai bērni stāsta par lidlauku!

26. Lidmašīna jau ir gaisā.
27. Bez gaisa mēs nevaram dzīvot.
28. Lūdzu, māciet mūsu bērnus!
29. Vai ārsts ir mājās?
30. Viņam ir laba vieta pastā.
31. Tīrīsim visu māju!
32. Nedod bērnam vīnu!
33. Lūdzu, rādiet man ceļu!
34. Upmalā ir daudz skaistu, klusu vietu.
35. Tā ir interesanta lieta.
36. Neraudi, mans bērns!
37. Dziedāsim vēl vienu dziesmu!
38. Lidlaukā stāvēja astoņas lidmašīnas.
39. Nesvilpo virtuvē!
40. Palīdziet man drusku!
41. Tā ir veca lieta; stāsti man kaut ko jaunu!
42. Iesim mājās!
43. No lidmašīnas var redzēt visu lielo ezeru.
44. Redziet, tur lido putni!
45. Lūdzu, atbildi manā vietā! (This is a common way of expressing *instead of me, in place of me.*)
46. Mūsu mājā ir divas virtuves.
47. Lai viņi dzied savā valodā!
48. Aiz mājas ir dziļa aka.
49. Ārsta nebija mājās.
50. Krustmātei šodien ir vārda diena. (Translate as *Name Day*. Most Latvian given names are correlated with a given day of the year, which people of that name celebrate somewhat like a birthday. Name Days are celebrated just as much as birthdays.)
51. Ak, kas par skaistu rītu, kas par skaistu dienu!
52. Āzijā ir daudz nabadzīgu zemju.
53. Viņš drīz ceļos Francijā un Vācijā.
54. Cik cilvēku dzīvo Amerikā?
55. Vai Artūrs šodien ir mājās?
56. Šorīt man nav laika.
57. Ir daži putni, kas nelido.
58. Septiņās stundās mēs būsim Amerikā.
59. Es tevi sodīšu, ja tu man neklausīsi.
60. Jūsu brālēns tagad strādā par dārznieku.
61. Pāvils sūtīs savu dēlu pie aptiekāra.
62. Cik Eiropā ir zemju?
63. Eiropā un Āzijā runā daudz valodu.

64. Kas ir priecīgs, tas smaida.
65. Francija un Vācija nav nabadzīgas zemes.
66. Bagātais dziedātājs solīja dziedāt mūsu pilsētā.
67. Neskūpsti mani, šeit mūs var redzēt.
68. Mēs stādīsim krūmus savā dārzā.
69. Ieva vēl peld ļoti slikti.
70. Pipari un citroni drīz būs dārgi mūsu veikalos.
71. Skolotājs piedeva bērniem, tāpēc ka viņš negribēja viņus sodīt.
72. Kad tu man atdosi naudu, ko es tev aizdevu?
73. Visi krūmi tagad ir zaļi.

Exercise 36e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Let them wait at the airport!
2. Go home!
3. Do not swim in the deep places of the river, children.
4. Let us feed the pigs.
5. Let us help mother in the kitchen.
6. Don't believe the beggar!
7. Sell your house!
8. Let her cook the carrots and cabbages with butter.
9. Tell us about Latvia.
10. Let's go home along the edge of the forest.
11. The birds are flying in the air.
12. Let Uncle tell about the airport and the aircraft. I have no time.
13. The weather is fine outside.
14. Let him speak in his (own) language!
15. Don't read such sad stories.
16. I shall answer instead of you. (See Ex. 36d, no. 45.)
17. The house stood in a quiet place.
18. The whole plane was shaking in the strong wind.
19. See, there are large birds flying in the air!
20. How many languages are there in the world?
21. Let's write a letter to our mother.
22. Everywhere there are already yellow and red leaves.
23. In cold weather the bees do not fly in the garden.
24. Do something!
25. Cold air will not harm you.
26. Threaten him!
27. Let's sit in the garden.

28. Let him sleep!
29. I was waiting at the gate.
30. Why are there so many flies in the kitchen?
31. That is an interesting language.
32. Do not go to your uncle's empty-handed.
33. The air is quite pure (*tīrs*) here.
34. He teaches eastern languages.
35. Let them (f.) go into the kitchen.
36. Now there are airfields in all corners of the world.
37. Where is the kitchen in your new house?
38. Let us hope that he will be home.
39. How many people can sit in the plane?
40. Don't tell me that there are more planes in France than in America!
41. The matter is now clear to me.
42. She shook with fear when she saw a rat in the kitchen.
43. He is still not home.
44. That is an expensive house.
45. Obey the teacher!
46. That's an interesting thing.
47. His home is very beautiful – and very expensive.
48. There are many poor homes in our street.
49. Airports are very interesting places.
50. When it is morning in Europe, then in the east of Asia it is already evening.
51. France is in the west of Europe, and Russia in the east.
52. Rich people are not always kind.
53. Do you want to see our home? – Yes, but I have no time today.
54. There are very few rich countries in Asia.
55. There are many cities in Germany, but in America there are many more.
56. Show me your book!
57. Let her smile if she wishes.
58. Let's count our money!
59. Do not punish your daughter, for she is such a kind child.
60. Paul does not want to work as a teacher.
61. What beautiful wild-flowers!
62. Let us send little Arthur to the doctor's!
63. France and Germany are not poor countries.
64. All my things are now at her place.
65. Does the aeroplane belong to you?
66. Your meadows are uncommonly green!
67. On the side of the street we saw eight old beggars.

LESSON 37

NUMERALS FROM 11 TO 20

The numerals from 11 to 20 are as follows:

<i>vienpadsmit</i>	eleven	<i>sešpadsmit</i>	sixteen
<i>divpadsmit</i>	twelve	<i>septiņpadsmit</i>	seventeen
<i>trīspadsmit</i>	thirteen	<i>astoņpadsmit</i>	eighteen
<i>četrpadsmit</i>	fourteen	<i>deviņpadsmit</i>	nineteen
<i>piecpadsmit</i>	fifteen	<i>divdesmit</i>	twenty

Divpadsmit and *divdesmit* are pronounced as if they were *diupadsmit* and *diudesmit*.

All of these numerals are indeclinable, and all except *divdesmit* take whatever case the construction of the sentence requires, like the numerals 1 to 9. *Divdesmit*, however, like *desmit*, requires the genitive case:

vienpadsmit vīri; *piecpadsmit zemes*, etc.

BUT: *divdesmit māju*; *divdesmit pilsētu*.

Vocabulary

<i>zāle</i>	grass	<i>zeķe</i>	sock, stocking
<i>zāles</i> (pl.)	medicine	<i>cepure</i>	hat, cap
<i>vasara</i>	summer	<i>krēkls</i>	shirt
<i>ziema</i>	winter	<i>blūze</i>	blouse
<i>apģērbs</i>	clothing	<i>uzvalks</i>	suit
<i>valkā</i>	to wear	<i>silts</i>	warm

Note the expression *vienos kreklos* 'in shirt-sleeves'.

Exercise 37a

Form the imperative parts of: *turēt*; *tulkot*; *dot*; *jautāt*; *dziedāt*; *runāt*; *zināt*; *peldēt*; *solīt*; *iet*; *būt*; *gaidīt*.

Exercise 37b

Conjugate in the future tense: *skaitīt*; *klausīt*; *būt*; *raudāt*; *ieredzēt*; *rādīt*; *barot*; *maksāt*; *iet*; *dejot*; *dot*; *ticēt*.

Exercise 37c

Give the second person plural, present, imperfect, future and imperative, of: *aizstāvēt*; *skūpstīt*; *ubagot*; *zināt*; *stādīt*; *mazgāt*; *aizdot*; *aiziet*.

Exercise 37d

Translate into English: *viens skolnieks*; *viena kūka*; *vieni svārki*; *vienas zāles*; *divi lauki*; *divas vistas*; *trīs tulkojumi*; *trīs kurpes*; *četri nami*; *četras kājas*; *pieci pirksti*; *piecas zvaigznes*; *seši dēļi*; *sešas meitas*; *septiņi ceļi*; *septiņas bibliotēkas*; *astoņi uzdevumi*; *astoņas tases*; *deviņi kalni*; *deviņas glāzes*; *desmit tēvu*; *desmit upju*; *vienpadsmit uzvalki*; *vienpadsmit blūzes*; *vienpadsmit kreklī*; *vienpadsmit cepures*; *divpadsmit rīti*; *divpadsmit zeķes*; *divpadsmit teļi*; *divpadsmit ziemas*; *trīspadsmit tilti*; *trīspadsmit vasaras*; *trīspadsmit dēļi*; *trīspadsmit dienas*; *četrpadsmit kurpnieki*; *četrpadsmit vakari*; *četrpadsmit kakla saites*; *četrpadsmit krustmeitas*; *piecpadsmit biroji*; *piecpadsmit pildspalvas*; *piecpadsmit mācītāji*; *piecpadsmit mājas*; *sešpadsmit dejotāji*; *sešpadsmit vēstules*; *sešpadsmit vārdi*; *sešpadsmit dziesmas*; *septiņpadsmit dārznieki*; *septiņpadsmit lidmašīnas*; *septiņpadsmit kaimiņi*; *septiņpadsmit puķes*; *astoņpadsmit tomāti*; *astoņpadsmit ielas*; *astoņpadsmit sīpoli*; *astoņpadsmit lietas*; *deviņpadsmit ubagi*; *deviņpadsmit valodas*; *deviņpadsmit dārzi*; *deviņpadsmit pilsētas*; *divdesmit vilku*; *divdesmit rožu*; *divdesmit logu*; *divdesmit peļu*.

Exercise 37e

Translate into Latvian: one teacher; one cart; one daughter; one pair of trousers; two shirts; two blouses; three suits; three hats; four airfields; four socks; five bridges; five winters; six nephews; six summers; seven evenings; seven kitchens; eight pharmacies; eight languages; nine gates; nine planes; ten words; ten bees; eleven shops; eleven chairs; eleven beds; eleven books; twelve lemons; twelve lettuces; twelve dishes; twelve rooms; thirteen carrots; thirteen lakes; thirteen pigs; thirteen wells; fourteen sisters; fourteen cities; fourteen uncles; fourteen questions; fifteen wolves; fifteen bags; fifteen lands; fifteen shoes; sixteen gloves; sixteen cabbages; seventeen bushes; seventeen friends (m.); seventeen friends (f.); seventeen places; eighteen meadows; eighteen gardens; eighteen children; eighteen houses; nineteen tables; nineteen apples; nineteen glasses; nineteen bottles; twenty cups; twenty stars; twenty people; twenty horses.

Exercise 37f

Translate into English: *vienos ratos; ar divām blūzēm; trijās stundās; četrus koku lapas; es redzēju piecus krūmus; sešas dienas; pie septiņiem draugiem; astoņu valodu vārdi; mēs dziedāsim deviņas dziesmas; desmit teļu; vienpadsmit virtuvēs; zem divpadsmit grāmatām; trīspadsmit veikalos; četrpadsmit namu jumti; viņa pārdeva piecpadsmit krekļus; sešpadsmit zemēs; aiz septiņpadsmit bļodām; astoņpadsmit peļu kājas; viņa stāstīja deviņpadsmit stāstus; divdesmit krekļus; divdesmit draudzeņu.*

Exercise 37g

Translate into Latvian: in one bag; with two girl-friends; the trousers of three suits; we saw four flies; in his five fingers; in six letters; under seven suits; the legs of eight rats; I read nine translations; ten stars; in eleven lakes; from twelve countries; the rice of thirteen farmers; he sold fourteen cups; he has only fifteen teeth; in sixteen hours; on seventeen tables; the words of eighteen songs; he wrote nineteen exercises; twenty hats.

Exercise 37h

Translate into English:

1. Karstā laikā var iet vienos kreklos un bez zeķēm.
2. Ziemā mēs valkājam siltu apģērbu.
3. Vai Austrālijā apģērbs ir dārgs?
4. Neej saulē bez cepures!
5. Zaļajā zālē ir sarkanās un dzeltenās puķes.
6. Zāles pārdod tikai aptiekā.
7. Prasi aptiekāram, kāpēc zāles ir tik stipras!
8. Anna bieži valkā svārkus ar blūzi.
9. Latvijā vasaras ir siltas, bet Austrālijā pavisam karstas.
10. Neej ārā savā jaunajā uzvalkā!
11. Nevalkā jauno uzvalku!
12. Tas ir mans vasaras uzvalks, un tas ir mans siltais ziemas uzvalks.
13. Ziemā mēs valkāsim siltas zeķes.
14. Viņam vienmēr ir cepure galvā un spalva pie cepures.
15. Nerunā tikai par apģērbu; vai tā ir tik interesanta lieta?
16. Viņa nevar dzīvot bez zālēm.
17. Krievijas austrumos ir īsas, bet karstas vasaras.
18. Skolniekiem ir melnas bikses un balti krekli.

19. Redzi, tava blūze jau ir netīra!
20. Meitas mazgā savas blūzes un zeķes.
21. Vai pie jums ziemas ir garas un aukstas?
22. Dārzā garajā zālē ir olas.
23. Tavas zeķes ir zem gultas.
24. Kāpēc cepure ir uz krēsla?
25. Pudelē ir zāles.
26. Ceļmalā zāle bija pavisam brūna.
27. Vai tu tici, ka viņai ir četrpadsmit blūzes? – Kāpēc ne? (=why not) — bagātai meitai var būt divdesmit svārkus un vēl vairāk blūžu!
28. Vasarā mēs bieži esam jūrmalā.
29. Drīz mēs atkal valkāsim siltu apģērbu.
30. Viņas cepure bija zālē.
31. Cik valodu runā Āzijā?
32. Lidlaukā šodien bija deviņpadsmit lidmašīnas.
33. Nabadzīgajiem ubagiem nav māju.
34. Vai jūs zinājāt, ka ir daži putni, kas nevar lidot?
35. Artūram ir laba vieta Rīgas pastā.
36. Es gribēju iet pie ārsta, bet viņa nav mājās. Ko es tagad darīšu?
37. Runā, ka kalnu gaiss ir tīrs.
38. Eiropā runā daudz valodu.
39. Vācijā dzīvo vairāk cilvēku nekā Francijā.
40. Gaidīsim Pāvilu lidlaukā!
41. Ko māte vāra virtuvē?
42. Anglijas lielajās pilsētās ir daudz interesantu vietu.
43. Visas manas bļodas ir tavā virtuvē.
44. Viņš ceļoja mazā lidmašīnā.
45. Rakstnieks vienmēr strādāja mājā.
46. Karstā laikā var iet vienos kreklos.
47. Mūsu māja bija pavisam lēta.
48. Esiet godīgi, mani dēli, tad jūs ieredzēs!
49. Nesēdiet manā neērtajā krēslā!
50. Ja tu būsi negodīgs, skolotājs tevī sodīs.
51. Kāpēc ērtie krēsli maksā vairāk nekā neērtie?
52. Neskaitiet tagad savu naudu!
53. Saule rietēja aiz meža.
54. Ievas draudzenes dažreiz neklausā savām mātēm.
55. Neej pie akas!
56. Ja tu būsi strādīga, mana meita, tu pelnīsi vairāk naudas nekā tad, ja tu būsi slinka.
57. Visā birojā nebija tintes.
58. Mēs redzējām dažas skaistas vīna glāzes Rīgas veikalu logos.

59. Vai tev bail no lapsām?
60. Visām mūsu vistām ir garas, baltas spalvas.
61. Šauras kakla saites tagad ir ļoti dārgas.
62. Vasarā saule spīd vairāk nekā ziemā.
63. Mūsu jaunā skola būs aiz krustceļa.
64. Lūdzu, dod man glāzi vīna!
65. Vasarā, kad skolā nav stundu, mūsu skolotājs strādā par dārznieku.
66. Kad Anna smaida, tad var redzēt, ka viņai ir skaisti, balti zobi.
67. Vai viņa solīja tev palīdzēt?
68. Ārsts skūpstīja Annai roku.

Exercise 37i

Translate into Latvian:

1. He was holding his shoes and socks in his hands.
2. In summer the grass is green.
3. The medicine helped him.
4. Let them wear their new suits and caps!
5. Why is your white shirt already so dirty?
6. Where are my socks?
7. We are working in shirt-sleeves.
8. He has a feather in (= *pie*) his hat.
9. In winter we shall wear warm suits.
10. The farm-workers are wearing warm work-shirts.
11. Clothes are very expensive here.
12. That is a cheap blouse.
13. Why is your blouse so short?
14. There was some long grass behind the enclosure.
15. She thinks that only strong medicine can help.
16. The clothes are clean again.
17. The dancer has expensive clothes.
18. The old pastor always wears a black suit.
19. Do the stockings belong to you?
20. Suits must not be washed.
21. Wash your blouses and stockings, girls.
22. All summers are not that warm!
23. Is the medicine in the bottle?
24. Medicine is sold only in pharmacies.
25. That was a long, cold winter.
26. The sun rarely shines in winter.
27. We were sitting in the grass.

28. Show me your new suit!
29. I have two hats and four shirts.
30. Oh dear, my new blouse is under the chair.
31. Can planes use the airport in winter?
32. There are many interesting places in France and Germany.
33. All my things are now in your car.
34. Fewer people live in Europe than in Asia.
35. America is rich in forests.
36. The air here is always clear in summer.
37. How many languages does the film-star speak? – She speaks **thirteen** languages.
38. We do not go outside on grey winter days.
39. In winter our shallow well is always full; in summer it is often empty.
40. There are fifteen planes at the airport today.
41. If the weather is cold, we often are not allowed to go outside.
42. On the other side of the wide road there is an extensive meadow.
43. The shoemaker had no shoe-laces today.
44. Is Paul at home, please? – No, he is not home now, but I think he will be here in one or two hours.
45. There are many beautiful homes in our street.
46. How many rooms are there in your house?
47. What beautiful weather!
48. A mother's place is in the kitchen!
49. In Russia we saw many beautiful wild-flowers.
50. There are still many things in our wide world which we do not know.
51. The clean mountain air will help you more than all the pharmacist's medicine.

LESSON 38

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

In English, duration of time is expressed by the preposition 'for', as in 'The war lasted for ten years'. This 'for' may be omitted, as in 'The war lasted ten years'.

In Latvian, such expressions of duration of time are put in the accusative case without a preposition, e.g.,

Viņa strādāja divas dienas.

She worked for two days.

Mēs dziedājām visu rītu.

We sang the whole morning.

Note particularly that where such an expression of duration of time is in English associated with a verb in the present perfect continuous, the corresponding Latvian verb will be in the present, and that similarly, an English past perfect continuous under such conditions corresponds to an imperfect in Latvian:

Viņš šeit dzīvo divus gadus. He has been living here for two years.
Mēs tur ilgi strādājām. We had been working there a long time.

In such constructions involving the verb 'to be', the English verbal form will not normally be continuous, but the Latvian still uses the simple instead of the compound tense:

Es jau ilgi esmu Rīgā. I have been in Riga for a long time.
Pāvils bija divus gadus Āfrikā. Paul had been in Africa for two years.

Vocabulary

<i>gads</i>	year	<i>sieva</i>	wife
<i>nedēļa</i>	week	<i>cits -a</i>	other
<i>zēns</i>	boy	<i>šad un tad</i>	now and then
<i>meitene</i>	girl	<i>ilgi</i>	for a long time
<i>kafija</i>	coffee	<i>zars</i>	branch, twig
<i>tēja</i>	tea	<i>ligzda</i>	nest

NOTE that the adjective *cits* has no definite declension, thus *citi cilvēki* 'other people' or 'the other people'.

Ilgi is often strengthened with *jau*, e.g.,

Es jau ilgi strādāju. I have been working a long time.

Exercise 38a

Give the third person singular, present, imperfect and future, of the following verbs: *turēt; solīt; raudāt; mazgāt; lietot; iet; dot; ticēt; darīt; zināt; jautāt; svilpot; būt; gulēt; sēdēt; kaitēt.*

Exercise 38b

Give the four imperative parts of: *sēdēt; paldzēt; vārit; dziedāt; tulkot; iet; gulēt; aizstāvēt; skūpstīt; runāt; dejot; dot.*

Exercise 38c

Count from 1 to 20 with the following nouns: *dārzs; māsa; zvaigzne; bikses; rati.*

Exercise 38d

Translate into English:

1. Vai tu redzi ligzdu koka zaros?
2. Cik gadā ir nedēļu?
3. Lūdzu, dodiet man tēju bez piena un cukura!
4. Mana sieva divus gadus strādā par skolotāju.
5. Vai jūs ilgi gaidījāt? – Nē, tikai četras stundas.
6. Zēns šad un tad aizgāja pie krusttēva.
7. Viņi tagad dzīvo citā vietā.
8. Meitenes vārīja stipru kafiju.
9. Kokiem ir zari un lapas.
10. Redzi, ligzdā ir sešas olas!
11. Kafija ir ļoti karsta.
12. Zēni dejoja ar meitenēm.
13. Sešu nedēļu laikā mēs būsīm mājās.
14. Zēnam bija nabadzīgs apģērbs.
15. Runājiet ar manu sievu; viņa zina, kur jūsu māsiņa dzīvo.
16. Meitenei bija jaunais, siltas zeķes.
17. Tavs dēls aizgāja ar citiem zēniem.
18. Mēs devīpus gadus dzīvojām Amerikā.
19. Tēja ir lielajā, baltajā tasē.
20. Kāpēc meitene ir tik raudulīga?
21. Kāpēc viņš ir tik bēdīgs? – Tāpēc, ka viņa sieva aizgāja pie cita vīra.
22. Manai sievai ir divas māšas.
23. Vai vistām arī ir ligzdas?
24. Cik ilgi tu biji Anglijā? – Trīs gadus.
25. Auksta tēja nav laba.
26. Vai jūs gribat glāzi vīna vai tasi kafijas?
27. Viņš šad un tad gāja arī pie citiem ārstiem.
28. Kokam ir daudz lielu zaru.
29. Vai jūs viņai bieži rakstāt? – Nē, tikai šad un tad.
30. Cik tev gadu? (Notice that in such constructions the *ir* may be omitted.) – Man ir septiņpadsmit gadi.
31. Cik ilgi Artūrs bija pie jums? – Dažas nedēļas.

32. Triju nedēļu laikā es atkal būšu mājās.
33. Cik ilgi jūs varat mani gaidīt? – Piecas stundas.
34. Kāpēc tu nevalkā siltu uzvalku?
35. Manas zeķes bija virtuvē zem galda.
36. Man nav zaļu kreklu, visi mani krekli ir balti.
37. Tirtotājs man pārdeva cepuri un uzvalku.
38. Vai tu zināji, ka Annai ir devīnpadsmit blūzes?
39. Kur ir gara zāle, tur bieži dzīvo žurkas vai peles.
40. Vasarā dārzāji ir lēti, bet ziemā dārgi.
41. Cepures un blūzes tagad ir ļoti dārgas.
42. Vasarā mēs valkājam mazāk apģērba nekā ziemā.
43. Cik valodu runā jūsu mājā?
44. Kalnu gaiss ir ļoti tīrs.
45. Cik lidmašīnu šodien bija lidlaukā? – Kad es agri no rīta skaitīju, bija četrpadsmit, bet es nezinu, cik bija visā dienā.
46. Zāles pārdod pudelēs.
47. Kas par skaistu laiku!
48. Ja tev būs diezgan laika, es tev stāstīšu dažas interesantas lietas.
49. Kur ir mana zāļu pudele?
50. Ak, kas par skaistām zvaigznēm!
51. Šur un tur upe ir sekla, bet peldēt tur var.
52. Apturiet mašīnu tūlīt!

Exercise 38e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The nest is made of twigs.
2. How long will you wait at the cross-roads? – One hour.
3. We waited three weeks.
4. For two years we lived in Australia.
5. The boys and girls were now and then at the neighbour's.
6. Look, there's a nest!
7. His wife is in England.
8. What are the boys and girls doing?
9. Go outside, boys, the weather is fine.
10. I want to go outside with the other girls.
11. The boy's father is a writer.
12. I lived there for several years.
13. The coffee is quite hot.
14. The tea is in the white cup.
15. Have you enough tea?

16. Do not boil the coffee.
17. Can you wait two years? – No, I cannot wait so long.
18. Have you got another suit?
19. Now and then he works in town.
20. What is in the cup, tea or coffee?
21. The pastor will speak for a fairly long time.
22. Branches are floating in the river.
23. The old bridge stood there for a long time.
24. My wife now works in another office.
25. I have another fountain-pen.
26. They travelled abroad with their wives and children.
27. The birds were sitting in the branches of the tree.
28. We work five days of the week, (= *nedēļā*) but in some countries people work six days.
29. The shoemaker's wife has a new blouse.
30. The girl has beautiful white teeth.
31. The boy's shirt was quite dirty.
32. Oh dear, there is a fly in the coffee!
33. How many weeks were you in the big city? – Eight weeks.
34. The wind is whistling in the branches of the tree.
35. I read only now and then.
36. Now and then the river is quite shallow.
37. Here the sun shines for only a few weeks in the year.
38. In winter the grass is green, but in summer, when the days are so warm, it is often brown.
39. There were eighteen planes at the airport today.
40. In our house we keep the medicine in the kitchen.
41. Arthur was not home yesterday.
42. In winter we wear warm clothing.
43. In summer we wear less clothing than in winter.
44. The day before yesterday the farm-labourers were working in shirt-sleeves.
45. All her stockings, hats and blouses were on her bed.
46. He has a good job because he speaks many languages.
47. The medicine which the pharmacist sold me is very weak.
48. Oh dear, I've got grass in my sock!
49. Arthur has a suit, but no hat.
50. The air was full of birds.
51. Anne's old uncle doesn't want to fly; he is afraid of aeroplanes.
52. My little sister is afraid of mice.
53. Someone was holding a horse on a lead in the yard.
54. How are you, my dear friend?
55. He is very happy today, because the bank gave him a loan.

56. To whom did you lend your book?
 57. He translates scientific works.
 58. Begging is not allowed here; go away!
 59. Your translation is very bad.

LESSON 39

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs of manner may be formed from most adjectives by adding *-i* to the stem: thus

<i>labs</i>	good	gives	<i>labi</i>	well
<i>slikts</i>	bad	gives	<i>slikti</i>	badly
<i>rēts</i>	rare	gives	<i>rēti</i>	rarely
<i>skaidrs</i>	clear	gives	<i>skaidri</i>	clearly.

This form in *-i* also serves as a kind of indeclinable neuter adjective, which, under certain circumstances, is required in agreement with an impersonal subject. Compare

<i>(Ir) labi, ka tu man rakstīji.</i>	It is good that you wrote to me.
<i>Vagonā bija neērti.</i>	It was uncomfortable in the carriage.
<i>Ārā ir auksts.</i>	It is cold outside.
<i>Āfrikā ir ļoti karsts.</i>	It is very hot in Africa.

The difference lies in the extent to which the statement impinges on the speaker. In the first sentence the "goodness" of the event does not exist independently of the experience of the speaker, and in the second, the "discomfort" is dependent upon the speaker's having suffered it. However in the third and fourth sentences, the "cold" and "heat" can be quite independent of the speaker. In the phrases,

<i>man ir auksti</i>	(lit. to me it is cold) and
<i>man ir karsti</i>	(lit. to me it is hot),

i.e., 'I am cold', 'I am hot', the statement is not independent of the speaker, and thus the form *-i* is found. Cf. also

<i>Vai tavai māsai ir auksti?</i>	Is your sister cold?
-----------------------------------	----------------------

The distinctions made above are of a general nature only, and variations will be found in many writers and speakers.

Vocabulary

<i>rēts</i>	rare	<i>perons</i>	railway platform
<i>vilciens</i>	train	<i>platforma</i>	railway platform
<i>atiet</i>	to depart	<i>mašīnists</i>	engine-driver
<i>stacija</i>	railway station	<i>konduktors</i>	(railway) conductor
<i>vilcienu saraksts</i>	train timetable	<i>pārbaudīt</i>	to examine
<i>biļete</i>	ticket	<i>vagons</i>	railway-carriage
<i>kase</i>	ticket-window; cash register	<i>signāls</i>	signal

NOTES: *Perons*, *platforma* and *konduktors* are all pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

The verb *atiet* follows the conjugation of *iet*.

Kase has an irregular genitive plural *kasu*.

Note the expression *sēdēt pie kases* 'to sit at the ticket-window', i.e., 'to sell tickets'.

Exercise 39a

Form adverbs of manner from the following adjectives: *labs*; *slikts*; *skaidrs*; *kluss*; *laimīgs*; *bēdīgs*; *priecīgs*; *dziļš*; *stiprs*; *vājš*; *zinātnisks*; *laipns*; *nelaipns*; *godīgs*; *negodīgs*; *ērts*; *neērts*; *čakls*; *slinks*; *gudrs*; *muļķīgs*; *skaidrs*; *rets*.

Exercise 39b

Translate into Latvian: for one hour; for two days; for three weeks; for four years; for five hours; for six days; for seven weeks; for eight years; in twelve hours; in thirteen days; in fourteen weeks; in fifteen years; in sixteen hours; in seventeen days; in eighteen weeks; in nineteen years.

Exercise 39c

Give the second person plural, present, imperfect and future, of: *peldēt*; *klausīt*; *dziedāt*; *runāt*; *lietot*; *iet*; *dot*; *gulēt*; *palīdzēt*; *prasīt*; *zināt*; *jautāt*; *tulkot*; *aiziet*; *atdot*; *sēdēt*.

Exercise 39d

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 39c.

Exercise 39e

Translate into Latvian:

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. We are cold. | 6. Are you hot? |
| 2. It is warm here. | 7. It was uncomfortable in the train. |
| 3. Is your sister cold? | 8. No, she is not cold. |
| 4. She sings beautifully. | 9. He does not speak clearly. |
| 5. Why are you so hot? | 10. In winter it is very cold. |

Exercise 39f

Decline in the singular and plural, definite and indefinite: *kluss mežs; gara vēstule*.

Exercise 39g

Translate into English:

1. Vilciens drīz aties no stacijas.
2. Artūrs gaidīja uz platformas.
3. Konduktors tūlīņ pārbaudīs mūsu biļetes.
4. Piedodiet, lūdzu, jūsu biļete neder; tā ir veca.
5. Vagonā mums bija ļoti karsti, un mēs nevarējām ērti gulēt.
6. Vai mašīnists neredzēja signālu?
7. Vai konduktors vilcienā pārdod biļetes?
8. Skaista meitene sēž pie kases un pārdod biļetes.
9. Kad vilciens atiet? – Es nezinu, man nav vilcienu saraksta.
10. Viņa reti ceļo vilcienā, bet bieži lidmašīnā.
11. Peroni bija pavisam netīri.
12. Mašīnists apturēja vilcienu, kad konduktors deva signālu.
13. Konduktors ilgi runāja ar mašīnistu.
14. Lūdzu, pārbaudiet naudu pie kases!
15. Kas par garu vagonu!
16. Vai jūs varat man aizdot savu vilcienu sarakstu? – Jā, lūdzu, bet mans vilcienu saraksts ir vecs.
17. Es neieredzu nelaipņus konduktorus.

18. Stacijā mums nebūs daudz laika, jo vilciens drīz aties. – Nē, vilciens vēl ilgi stāvēs stacijā.
19. Mašīnists nevarēja skaidri redzēt signālus.
20. Perona biļetes pārdod pie kases.
21. Vilcienu saraksts rāda, kad vilcieni atiet.
22. Tirgotājs vakarā vienmēr pārbauda savu kasi.
23. Vagonā sēdēja deviņpadsmit cilvēki.
24. Viņš svilpos, tas būs viņa signāls mums.
25. Viņi stāvēja uz platformas stīprā vējā.
26. Tā ir reta grāmata.
27. Bagātā tirgotāja dārzā ir viens ļoti rets koks.
28. Pāvils reti zina, kur ir viņa lietas.
29. Gadā ir vairāk nedēļu nekā dienu nedēļā.
30. Es gribu iet ārā ar citiem zēniem un meitenēm.
31. Mums ir tikai astoņas kafijas tases, bet deviņas tējas glāzes.
32. Vai nav muļķīgi ziemā iet laukā bez silta apģērba un cepures?
33. Mēs jau dzīvojam Francijā septiņpadsmit gadus.
34. Kāpēc jūsu sieva nemazgā jūsu netīros kreklus?
35. Zēni nevalkā blūzes.
36. Koku zaros bija daudz mazu ligzdu.
37. Tikai lielu putnu ligzdas ir no zariem.
38. Vai tu gribi tēju vai kafiju?
39. Mana sieva šad un tad vāra burkānus un kāpostus.
40. Kur ir manas jaunās zeķes?
41. Dažas Āzijas zemes ir bagātas ar tēju.
42. Zāles pārdod tikai aptiekā.
43. Cik maksāja tavs vasaras uzvalks?
44. Sētā zem virtuves loga zāle bija ļoti gara.
45. Skolotājs runā vienpadsmit valodas.
46. Kad visi skolnieki būs savās vietās, mēs lasīsim jaunu stāstu par divām lapsām un trijiem vilkiem.
47. Māte tikai smaidīja, kad viņas mazais dēls jautāja, vai cilvēks var lidot gaisā.
48. Mūsu jaunā māja ir pie lidlauka: bērni var skaitīt lidmašīnas.
49. Klausī skolotājam!
50. Soliet man, ka jūs būsit mājās!
51. Sodīsim negodīgo maiznieku!
52. Lai Artūrs skūpst savu draudzeni, ja viņš grib!
53. Nerādīsim tēvam un mātei savas jaunās grāmatas!
54. Vasaras vakaros mēs dažreiz ejam gar kluso upmalu; tur mēs dzirdam putnu dziesmas un redzam sauli, kas riet rietumos aiz kalniem.
55. Kāpēc viņa krustmāte vienmēr raksta ar spalvu un tinti?

56. Kas tev kait? Tu drebi aiz bailēm!
57. Cik maksā dzeltenās vīna glāzes?
58. Maksājiet man skaidrā naudā!
59. Mana glāze tagad ir tukša.
60. Es runāšu ar saviem četriem krustdēliem.
61. Kalpi vienmēr valkāja pelēkas bikses.
62. Kā viņš pelna sev maizi?
63. Ceļmalā bija tik daudz skaistu meža puķu, ka mēs apturējām mašīnu.

Exercise 39h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Engine-drivers earn more than conductors.
2. May I check your ticket?
3. What a long train!
4. From the carriage we cannot see all the signals.
5. We waited a long time on the platform.
6. Ask the conductor when the train will leave. – I know when it leaves, because I read the time-table. – But your time-table is old, it is of no use
7. She sells tickets at the ticket-window.
8. Large stations have many platforms.
9. The old platform was made of wood.
10. The engine-driver knows all the signals.
11. Let them wait at the station.
12. The old carriages were uncomfortable.
13. Please check your tickets.
14. The engine-driver rarely speaks to the conductor.
15. The teacher was examining the pupils.
16. The conductor is already examining the tickets.
17. There was very little money in the cash-register.
18. Sometimes the conductor sells tickets in the carriage, because at some stations there are no ticket-offices.
19. There are many large time-tables at the station.
20. Will the train leave soon? – No, it will leave early in the morning.
21. The engine-driver is waiting for the signal.
22. Let us wait on the platform.
23. How long did you wait at the ticket-window?
24. The train was full.
25. It was very warm in the carriage.
26. Was that the signal?

27. The signal was green.
28. The time-table is fairly new.
29. There are few rare books in the library.
30. The boys were cold.
31. The other girls are all in the kitchen, where it is warm.
32. We were waiting for a letter for three weeks.
33. He wore his old suit for fifteen years.
34. There are many interesting things and places in the wide world that I want to see.
35. Count how many eggs there are in the nest.
36. When will Eve wash her white blouse?
37. Anne's new stockings are very expensive.
38. In summer it is hot, but in the winter it is cold.
39. Is clothing very expensive here?
40. There were ten bottles of medicine on the table.
41. How many weeks are there in a year?
42. The boys and girls went outside because it was warm.
43. My tea is cold.
44. The coffee is in the white cups; the tea is in the black cups.
45. He has many rare flowers in his garden.
46. Let's wait on the other platform.
47. Your new hat is lying on the grass.
48. Now and then, when it is really warm, the farm-labourers work without shirts.
49. Birds' nests are often made of twigs.
50. In Asia wives work more than in Europe.
51. The branches of the tree are very strong.
52. Now and then, when it is warm, we go swimming in the lake.
53. Germany is an extensive country.
54. Have you a toothache?
55. The beggar wanted money, but went away empty-handed.
56. Shoe-laces are sold at the bootmaker's.
57. Your son is intelligent and hard-working.
58. Narrow shoes do not fit wide feet.
59. There are dishonest businessmen in all corners of the world.
60. He is very industrious; he sometimes works fourteen hours in a day.
61. Cheap books are not always bad.
62. Schoolteachers work short hours at school, but they often work long hours at home as well.
63. What sort of man is he, honest or dishonest?

LESSON 40

THE CONDITIONAL

This tense is very simply formed in Latvian: it suffices to add *-u* to the infinitive. There are no exceptions to this rule. There is, strictly speaking, no conjugation, as the same form in *-u* serves throughout, for all persons, both singular and plural, as will be clear from the following paradigms.

<i>būt</i> 'to be'		<i>darīt</i> 'to do'	
<i>es būtu</i>	I would be	<i>es darītu</i>	I would do
<i>tu būtu</i>	you would be	<i>tu darītu</i>	you would do
<i>viņš būtu</i>	he would be	<i>viņš darītu</i>	he would do
<i>mēs būtu</i>	we would be	<i>mēs darītu</i>	we would do
<i>jūs būtu</i>	you would be	<i>jūs darītu</i>	you would do
<i>viņi būtu</i>	they would be	<i>viņi darītu</i>	they would do

redzēt 'to see'

<i>es redzētu</i>	I would see
<i>tu redzētu</i>	you would see
<i>viņš redzētu</i>	he would see
<i>mēs redzētu</i>	we would see
<i>jūs redzētu</i>	you would see
<i>viņi redzētu</i>	they would see

Note particularly that the *e* of the ending *-ētu* is open, and that *e*-vowels preceding it in the verb are open as well, e.g., *peļdētu*, *ceļētu*, etc.

An *if*-clause, depending on a main clause with a verb in the conditional, also requires its verb in the conditional:

I would work if he paid me. *Es strādātu, ja viņš man maksātu.*

Vocabulary

<i>sudrabs</i>	silver	<i>sniegs</i>	snow
<i>zelts</i>	gold	<i>salna</i>	frost, hoar-frost
<i>tumšs</i>	dark	<i>grīda</i>	floor
<i>gaišs</i>	light, bright	<i>Baiba</i>	a Latvian feminine name
<i>Aivars</i>	a Latvian masculine name	<i>Māra</i>	a Latvian feminine name
	<i>lai</i> (conj. + conditional) in order that		

NOTE that *gaišs* means 'light' in respect of colour only.

Lai should not be used after a verb of motion. Here the simple infinitive is preferable.

Exercise 40a

Conjugate the following verbs in the future and conditional: *iet*; *ticēt*; *būt*; *solīt*; *dot*; *domāt*; *gulēt*; *barot*; *sēdēt*; *raudāt*.

Exercise 40b

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 40a.

Exercise 40c

Form adverbs from the following adjectives: *ērts*; *labs*; *rets*; *laimīgs*; *slikts*; *skaidrs*; *negodīgs*; *gudrs*; *laipns*; *kluss*.

Exercise 40d

Translate into English:

- Ko tu darītu, ja tev būtu daudz naudas?
- Ja tēvs mani tagad redzētu, viņš būtu pavisam bēdīgs.
- Es zinu, ko es darītu, ja man būtu zelts un sudrabs.
- Sudraba un zelta lietas ir ļoti dārgas.
- Ja ubagam būtu gulta, viņš negulētu uz grīdas.
- Baiba Aivaru nemīlētu, ja viņš nebūtu tik godīgs zēns.
- Mārai ir gaiši mati.
- Ja nebūtu tik liela salna, bērni varētu iet pie kaimiņa.
- Ak, sniegs ir tik balts!
- Kalnos vēl ir sniegs, bet šeit nav sniega un salnas.
- Vai Māra arvien vēl mīlētu Aivaru, ja viņa zinātu, ka viņš ir negodīgs cilvēks?
- Tumšajā istabā bērniem ir bailes.
- Es zinu, ka zem mūsu grīdas ir peles un žurkas.
- Būtu muļķīgi, ja Baiba ticētu Aivara skaistajiem vārdiem.
- Ja Māra Baibai palīdzētu, māte būtu priecīga.
- Ja būs liela salna, bērni nedrīkstēs iet laukā.
- Istaba nebūtu tik tumša, ja grīda būtu no gaiša koka.
- Gaisā lidoja liela lidmašīna.

19. Aivaram ir gaiša galva. (*i.e., a clear head, alert mind.*)
20. Tumšos vakaros, kad ārā bija salna, mēs sēdējām siltajā istabā.
21. Dažās zemēs vēl lieto zelta naudu.
22. Neejiet istabā ar savām netīrajām korpēm, bērni, grīda ir pavisam tīra.
23. Ja bļoda būtu no tīra sudraba, tā būtu ļoti dārga. (*tīrs: pure*)
24. Āfrika ir bagāta ar zeltu.
25. Vai šeit kalnos ir daudz sudraba?
26. Ja Māra man aizdotu savu blūzi, es varētu iet dejot.
27. Tirgotājs iedeva ubagam naudu, lai viņš tikai aizietu.
28. Viņa iet pagalmā barot vistas.
29. Mēs neesam pasaulē lai tikai dejotu, dziedātu un mīlētu, bet lai arī strādātu un palīdzētu citiem.
30. Perona biļetes pārdod tikai pie kases.
31. Vilciens aties no stacijas agri no rīta.
32. Austrālijas rietumos zaļa zāle ir ļoti reta.
33. Prasiet konduktoram, vai viņam nav vilcienu saraksts. (The negative here has no real negative force: it is merely an alternative statement of a positive question. In such cases, the nominative is used instead of the expected genitive.)
34. Konduktora sieva bieži iet pie mašīnista sievas.
35. Konduktors grib pārbaudīt tavu biļeti.
36. Biļešu kase ir uz platformas.
37. Ziemā man vienmēr ir auksti.
38. Kad vilciens aties no stacijas, konduktors pārbaudīs visas biļetes.
39. Vagonā mums bija pavisam karsti un neērti.
40. Vilcienam ir astoņpadsmit vagoni.
41. Putna ligzda bija no zariem un lapām.
42. Šad un tad meitenes palīdzēja mātei veikalā.
43. Vai tu gribi drusku citrona tējā?
44. Mēs bijām Vācijā četras nedēļas.
45. Vai jūs redzējāt sarkano signālu?
46. Veikalā pārdod ābolus, sieru, sviestu, miltus, sīpolus, tomātus, rīsus, salātus, piparus un arī vīnu.
47. Salāti un arī citi dārzeņi tagad ir ļoti dārgi.
48. Saimniekam bija pagrabā pieci maisi pilni rudzu.
49. Miesnieks pārdod cūkas gaļu.
50. Es ceru, ka jūs piedosīt savam draugam.
51. Man ir divi zirgi, bet tikai vieni rati.
52. Lauka malā bija daudz skaistu, zaļu krūmu.
53. No mežmalas var redzēt jūru.
54. Vai tev sāp kakls? – Nē, man sāp galva.
55. Kā tev iet, dārgais draugs?

Exercise 40e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Aivars would give all the world's gold and silver if Baiba only loved him.
2. If the window were not so small, the room would be bright.
3. If the table were not so small, the empty bottles would not be standing on the floor.
4. Aivars always used to wear a dark suit in the evenings.
5. Māra would not work such long hours if Baiba helped her.
6. Baiba would not wait so long in the snow, if she did not believe Māra's words.
7. If I had a lot of gold and silver, I would not keep it under the floor.
8. The child was shaking with fear in the dark room.
9. If I earned more I would pay you in cash.
10. I would help you with your home-work if I had more time.
11. In your place, I would never do that.
12. I would not be able to sleep in a bright room.
13. If you threatened him, he would promise you gold and silver.
14. Why is she dancing on the table? Isn't there room (=vieta) on the floor?
15. The dark cellar is under the floor of the kitchen.
16. Do not wear your light blouse with a light skirt.
17. In Russia there is more snow than in Western Europe.
18. If my head were aching very severely, I would go to the doctor's at once.
19. Now and then we saw bright signals in the mountains.
20. Would she believe me if I told her my story?
21. The teacher will punish you if you do not work.
22. He went to his neighbour's place to assist him with his work.
23. She went to the well to wash her blouses and stockings.
24. We work in order to earn money.
25. He went to the pastor's in order to discuss various things.
26. I shall not lend you my new gloves.
27. Return the books to me; only then shall I forgive you.
28. The ocean was shining in the sun.
29. I shall always defend what belongs to me.
30. Let's clean the car today.
31. Where is their homework?
32. In five weeks he wrote twenty letters to his wife.
33. Cabbages are cheap today, but the other vegetables are expensive.
34. The boys will be waiting for the girls at the station.
35. The train will leave in two hours' time.
36. I don't know where my ticket is! What shall I do if the conductor wants to examine it?

37. Let us go at once, for we have very little time.
38. Do they sell tea and coffee in the carriages?
39. Ask at the ticket-office whether they sell time-tables there.
40. The train cannot depart, because the driver and the conductor are still sitting on the platform.
41. Everywhere on the platforms there were old tickets.
42. Is there much money in the cash-register?
43. There are rarely more than five or six eggs in one nest.
44. The carriage windows are quite dirty.
45. He has been working as an engine-driver for nineteen years.
46. Our city now has a new station.
47. The birds are sitting on the green branch.
48. The old conductor rarely checks our tickets: he knows that we are honest.
49. The driver stopped the train, because the signal was red.
50. Have you a new time-table? My old time-table is of no use.

LESSON 41

THE PREPOSITIONS *LĪDZ* AND *UZ*

The preposition *līdz* 'until', 'as far as' requires the dative case:

No kalniem var redzēt līdz Rīgai. From the hills, one can see as far as Riga.

The preposition *uz* requires the genitive case when it corresponds to the English 'on' or 'on to':

Grāmatas ir uz galda. The books are on the table.

You will already be familiar with this usage. However, it has another meaning, i.e., 'towards', and in this sense it requires the accusative case:

Viņš grib ceļot uz Rīgu. He wants to travel to Riga.
Bērni iet uz skolu. The children are going to school.

Thus it will be seen that it is often expressed in English by the preposition 'to' denoting motion towards a place.

Remember that all prepositions in Latvian require the dative case in the plural:

Iesim līdz vārtiem!
 Let us walk as far as the gate.

Putni lidos uz siltām zemēm.

The birds will fly to warm lands.

Hence the two meanings of *uz* are not FORMALLY distinct in the plural.

Vocabulary

<i>līdz</i> (+dat.)	as far as; until	<i>tālu</i> (adv.)	far
<i>uz</i> (+acc.)	towards, to	<i>tuvu</i> (adv.)	near
<i>ziedēt</i>	to bloom	<i>Londona</i>	London
<i>taisīt</i>	to prepare, make	<i>Ņujorka</i>	New York
<i>slims</i>	ill	<i>Parīze</i>	Paris
<i>vešēls</i>	healthy, well (adj.)	<i>Ķemeri</i> (pl.)	Ķemeri (a well-known Latvian spa)

The adverb *tālu* is construed often with *no*:

tālu no jūras far from the sea

The adverb *tuvu* is construed often with *pie*, or with the dative case without preposition:

tuvu pie upes or *tuvu upei* near the river

The word *Londona* is pronounced with both *o*-vowels monophthongal, the second one lengthened, although this is not shown orthographically. *Ņujorka* also has monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 41a

Translate into English: *līdz Rīgai; līdz Parīzei; līdz tiltam; līdz kalniem; līdz jūrai; līdz upei; uz Vācijai; uz Krieviju; uz Āfriku; uz Ķemeriem; uz skolu; uz pastu.*

Exercise 41b

Translate into Latvian: as far as London; as far as New York; as far as Ķemeri; as far as the cross-roads; as far as the river-bank; until evening; until winter; until summer; towards the platform; to Australia; to France; to the library; to the pharmacies; to Asia; to Riga; to London; towards the house.

Exercise 41c

Conjugate the following verbs in the future and conditional: *taisīt; sodīt; mācīt; vērtīt; būt*.

Exercise 41d

Translate into Latvian: for two days; for eleven weeks; for nineteen years; for seven hours; for twelve weeks; for seventeen days; for nine hours.

Exercise 41e

Form adverbs from the following adjectives: *skaidrs; godīgs; laipns; zinātnisks; kluss; ērts*.

Exercise 41f

Translate into English:

1. Aivars lidoja no Ņujorkas uz Londonu, jo viņa tēvs bija slims.
2. Līdz ziemai ir tikai dažas nedēļas.
3. Iesim uz jūrmalu!
4. Rozes drīz atkal ziedēs.
5. Vai jūs esat no Rīgas? – Nē, es esmu no Ķemeriem.
6. Cik tālu ir aptieka? – Ja jūs iesit līdz bankai, jūs redzēsīt aptieku; tā ir pavisam tuvu pie bankas.
7. Ķemeri ir maza pilsēta, diezgan tuvu pie Rīgas.
8. Vai līdz stacijai ir tālu?
9. Māra bija ļoti slima, bet tagad viņa ir atkal vesela.
10. Kad mēs iesim uz staciju?
11. Vai es varu sūtīt naudu uz Londonu?
12. No koka var taisīt skaistas lietas.
13. Cik tālu Parīze ir no Londonas?
14. Artūrs ir jauns un vesels zēns.
15. No Ņujorkas lielajiem namiem var redzēt līdz okeanam.
16. Vai Artūrs nestrādā, tāpēc ka viņš ir slims? – Nē, viņš ir pavisam vesels, bet ir tikai slinks.
17. Ziemā bērni taisa sniega vīrus.
18. Es nezināju, ka jūs dzīvojat mums tik tuvu.
19. Ceļā (*on the way*) no Rīgas uz Ķemeriem jūs redzēsīt mežus, laukus, pļavas un arī divas lielas, platas upes.
20. Kad Parīzē ziedēs rozes, kino zvaigzne jau būs Ņujorkā.

21. Kurpnieks taisa jaunas kurpes.
22. Mans draugs ir slims; viņš vēl nevar ceļot uz Londonu un Parīzi.
23. Tālu aiz kalniem tagad zied skaistas puķes.
24. Skaistajos Ķemeros ziedēja koki un krūmi.
25. Bagātajā Ņujorkā ir arī daudz nabadzīgu vietu.
26. Vai stacija ir tuvu pilsētai?
27. Ja es rītā lidotu no Londonas līdz Parīzei, es vakarā jau varētu būt atkal mājās.
28. Ja laukā būs salna, bērni nevarēs iet ārā.
29. Es iešu ar tevi līdz vērtiem.
30. Mārai un Baibai ir tumši mati, bet Aivaram ir gaiši mati.
31. Ziemā visur ir sniegs.
32. Es gulēšu uz grīdas, ja nebūs diezgan gultu.
33. Man ir perona biļete, un es eju uz platformu.
34. Meitene, kas sēž pie kases, nezina, kad vilciens aties.
35. Vai konduktors drīz pārbaudīs biļetes?
36. Vagoni reti ir pilni.
37. Vagoni ir reti pilni.
38. Mašīnists apturēja vilcienu un gaidīja zaļo signālu.
39. Aivaram tagad nav vilcienu saraksta.
40. Kāpēc grīda jau ir tik netīra? Es to šorīt tīrīju!
41. Ja man būtu zelts un sudrabs, es ceļotu visur plašajā pasaulē.
42. Āfrika ir reti bagāta ar zeltu.
43. Ja istaba nebūs tumša, es nevarēšu gulēt.
44. Bļoda ir no tīra sudraba.
45. Artūrs varēs man palīdzēt, viņam ir gaiša galva.
46. Pāvils ilgi runāja ar citiem kalpiem.
47. Āzijā sievas vienmēr klausā saviem vīriem.
48. Skolotājs tagad māca bērnus skaitīt.
49. Kas par dārgiem krekliem un cepurēm!
50. Glāzes mirdzēja, kad saule spīdēja.
51. Jūs drīkstat man skūpstīt roku.
52. Rādi man, ko tu vari!
53. Vai lapsām ir bail no vilkiem?
54. Vai tu gribi glāzi vīna?
55. Piedodiet, jūsu jautājums man nav skaidrs.

Exercise 41g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Look, children, the birds are making a nest in the branches!
2. Does the train for (*uz*) Paris leave soon?
3. There are many stations in London.
4. Our friend Aivars from Ķemeri is now living in New York.
5. The rich, sick man would give away (*atdot*) all his money, gold and silver, if he could be well again.
6. Is it far to the river? – No, the river is quite near.
7. The singer will fly from London to New York.
8. In seven hours we shall be in Paris.
9. You are still sick; you are not allowed to go outside.
10. What are the children making out of snow?
11. The flowers will soon be blooming.
12. I read in a scientific work that the earth is not far from the sun.
13. From the roof of the house you can see as far as the edge of the forest.
14. Do not give the sick boy (any) coffee!
15. Let them go as far as the hills!
16. Only a healthy person can swim in the cold lake.
17. The flowers were blooming up until winter.
18. Why is the enclosure so near to the house?
19. The pharmacist lives near the doctor.
20. Beautiful little flowers were blooming on the edge of the road.
21. The children go to school early in the morning.
22. The children are making little aeroplanes out of paper.
23. Māra was ill, and did not go to school for three weeks.
24. What beautiful things can be made from wood!
25. The roses are blooming now.
26. The writer lived in a small town near London.
27. How far is the airport?
28. In New York many languages can be heard.
29. New York has very hot summers.
30. In Paris there are very large libraries.
31. I would like to be in Ķemeri in the summer.
32. I think that in London the air is never clean.
33. Is Ķemeri far from the sea?
34. More people live in Paris than in all Latvia.
35. When our godfather is well again, we shall go to his house.
36. Sick children are sometimes tearful.
37. Baiba, Māra and I shall fly to New York.
38. He keeps all his gold and silver under the floor.

39. Outside there was white frost.
40. Send the children outside, so that I can clean the floor.
41. Has your sister dark hair or light hair?
42. My table is of light-coloured wood.
43. The train-driver was talking to the conductor on the dark platform.
44. Please check your money at the ticket window.
45. Where are platform tickets sold?
46. Can you lend me your time-table, please?
47. Empty carriages are now very rare.
48. The driver did not see the red signal under the dark bridge.
49. Arthur's aunt has eleven nephews and ten nieces.
50. I never write with a pen and ink; I always use a fountain-pen.
51. My wife lived in America for eight years, and in France for three years.
52. When the sun sets, let us walk along the quiet river-bank.
53. He is wearing his new trousers.
54. Why are there so many flies in the office?
55. Eve was talking with her girl-friend at the cross-roads.
56. On the table there was wine, bread and cheese.
57. The wine is in cups, because we haven't enough wineglasses.
58. What are Baiba and Aivars doing in the kitchen?
59. She is such a happy girl; she is always smiling.

LESSON 42

LONG CONJUGATION VERBS IN *-ĒT*

Long Conjugation verbs in *-ēt* follow exactly the pattern of Long Conjugation verbs in *-āt* or *-ot*, with the substitution throughout of *-ē-* for *-ā-* or *-o-*. It should be carefully noted that the *-ē-* of these verbs is everywhere closed, except in the Conditional.

meklēt 'to look for'

Present

es meklēju
tu meklē
viņš meklē
mēs meklējam
jūs meklējat
viņi meklē

Imperfect

es meklēju
tu meklēji
viņš meklēja
mēs meklējām
jūs meklējāt
viņi meklēja

Future

es meklēšu
tu meklēsi
viņš meklēs
mēs meklēsim
jūs meklēsiet
viņi meklēs

Conditional

es meklētu
tu meklētu
viņš meklētu
mēs meklētu
jūs meklētu
viņi meklētu

Imperatives: *meklē! meklējiet! lai meklē! meklēsim!*

Vocabulary

<i>klusēt</i>	to be quiet	<i>zaudēt</i>	to lose
<i>aplaudēt</i>	to applaud	<i>pazaudēt</i>	to lose
<i>meklēt</i>	to seek, look for	<i>zīmēt</i>	to draw
<i>pīpēt</i>	to smoke	<i>uzzīmēt</i>	to draw
<i>slavēt</i>	to praise	<i>biedēt</i>	to frighten
<i>studēt</i>	to study (at university)	<i>kaitēt</i>	to harm
<i>smēķēt</i>	to smoke	<i>pīpe</i>	pipe
<i>slavens</i>	famous	<i>cigarete</i>	cigarette
<i>sals</i>	frost	<i>kavēt laiku</i>	to waste time, to kill time

NOTES: All the verbs in the above vocabulary are of the Long Conjugation. The verb *aplaudēt* requires its object in the dative case:

Aplaudēsim dziedātājiem! Let us applaud the singers.

The verb *meklēt* takes its object in the accusative case, the English preposition *for* being not translated:

Mēs meklējam savas kurpes. We are looking for our shoes.

Sals means 'frost' in the sense of 'great cold', whereas *salna* refers to the whiteness on the ground.

The difference between the verbs *zaudēt* and *pazaudēt*, like that between *zīmēt* and *uzzīmēt*, is analogous to the difference between *dot* and *iedot*, i.e., the second verb of each pair indicates completed action (perfective aspect), the first a continuing or non-completed action (imperfective aspect).

Artūrs uzzīmēja lielu putnu. Arthur drew a big bird.
Tu zīmē ļoti labi. You draw very well.

Distinguish carefully between the two conjugational patterns of the verb *kaitēt*. In the Long Conjugation (*es kaitēju, tu kaitē, etc.*) this verb means 'to harm', and requires its object in the dative case:

Sals kaitē stādiem. Frost harms plants.

In the Mixed Conjugation, it has only a third person form, (*kaiš* or *kait*) and is used in such expressions as *Kas tev kaiš?* 'What is the matter with you?' In tenses other than the present the forms are identical.

Exercise 42a

Conjugate in the present tense: *studēt; biedēt; palīdzēt; meklēt; gulēt; pazaudēt; sēdēt; slavēt; cerēt.*

Exercise 42b

Give the future and conditional of the verbs listed in Ex. 42a.

Exercise 42c

Give the four imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 42a.

Exercise 42d

Translate into English:

1. Vai slavenais ārsts no Londonas varēs palīdzēt jūsu slimajam dēlam?
2. Es klusēju, ja tu atdosi kaimiņam naudu.
3. Piedodiet, vai vagonā drīkst smēķēt?
4. Krusttēvs Artūrs vienmēr pīpē.
5. Es pazaudēju savu pīpi; palīdziet man meklēt, bērni!
6. Uzzīmējiet lidmašīnu, zēni, un meitenes lai zīmē ligzdu ar putniem!
7. Cigaretes tagad ir diezgan dārgas.
8. Cik cigarešu jūs smēķējat dienā?
9. Iesim uz staciju, šeit mēs tikai kavējam laiku! Vilciens drīz aties!
10. Mans draugs studēja Londonā.
11. Stāstos gudrā lapsa vienmēr slavēja vilku.
12. Slavenā kino zvaigzne sēdēja savā dārgajā mašīnā, turēja cigareti rokā un smaidīja, lai visi redzētu viņas skaistos, baltos zobus.
13. Vai jūsu dēls jau studē? – Jā, viņš studē jau divus gadus.

14. Tici man, Baiba nekļūs par to, ko viņa dzirdēja!
15. Vai Ņujorkā drīkst smēķēt vilcienos? – Jā, tur pīpē pīpes un smēķē cigaretes.
16. Kur tu biji? Es tevi gaidīju ļoti ilgi.
17. Kāpēc tu vienmēr kavē labu laiku?
18. Ko jūs meklējat? – Es meklēju savu pīpi.
19. Tīrotājs pazaudēja daudz naudas.
20. Bērni atkal biedēja vistas. Es viņus sodīšu.
21. Mēs visi aplaudējam dejotājiem.
22. Es ceru, ka tu klusēsi.
23. Aplaudējiet, tas jums nemaksā naudu!
24. Ziemā ir liels sals.
25. Ko Artūrs var zaudēt? Viņš ir liels vīrs, un visi viņu slavē.
26. Tu esi ļoti slims; ja tu tik daudz pīpēsi, tu nekad nebūsi vesels.
27. Ko mana sieva runā? Viņa mani tikai biedē.
28. Tu ar saviem muļķīgajiem stāstiem atkal biedē bērnus.
29. Pāvils zīmē labi, bet rakstīt un lasīt viņš negrib.
30. Nepazaudē savu jauno pildspalvu!
31. Mēs aplaudējam tik ilgi un stipri, ka mums sāpēja rokas.
32. Baiba nekad nezīmēs labi; viņa tikai kavē laiku.
33. Ko tu zīmēji? Es uzzīmēju peronu un vilcienu.
34. Es negribu pazaudēt visu savu naudu.
35. Dažas meitenes mūsu skolā zīmē ļoti labi.
36. Es uzzīmēšu teļu, un mana māsa uzzīmēs zvaigzni.
37. Vai Ķemerī ir tālu no Rīgas? – Nē, Ķemerī ir pavisam tuvu Rīgai.
38. Vai ir ļoti tālu no Ņujorkas līdz Parīzei?
39. Vasarā dārzā būs skaisti: tad visas puķes ziedēs.
40. Aivars taisa skaistas lietas no koka.
41. Ārsts domā, ka Māra drīz būs vesela.
42. Kad ir ļoti auksts, tad salnas var būt lielas.
43. Agri no rīta sniegs bija balts, bet vakarā sniegs jau bija pelēks un netīrs.
44. Vasarā visur zied lauku un meža puķes.
45. Pasts ir tuvu bibliotēkai.
46. Iesim uz peronu!
47. No mūsu jumta skaidrās dienās var redzēt līdz jūrai.
48. Anglijā taisa daudz lietu, ko sūta uz Āfriku un Āziju.
49. Kurpnieks deviņpadsmit gadus dzīvoja Ķemeros.
50. Zem tilta upe ir pavisam sekla.
51. Vecais ubags aizgāja no bagātā tirgotāja mājas tukšām rokām.
52. Stiprs sals kaitē rožu krūmiem.
53. Ja nebūtu tik liels sals, mēs varētu iet pie vecā kaimiņa.
54. Čaklie kalpi strādāja saimnieka plašajos laukos.
55. Vai es drīkstu iet pie mācītāja bez kakla saites?

Exercise 42e

Translate into Latvian:

1. If you were to smoke cigarettes, your cousin (f.) would not keep quiet about it.
2. Applaud the famous singer from New York! – Yes, let us applaud him!
3. I do not smoke cigarettes, I smoke my old pipe.
4. In England they make very good pipes from expensive wood.
5. Don't frighten the children with your foolish story!
6. I am studying your interesting scientific translation.
7. Study, don't waste time!
8. I lost my shoe-lace. Please help me to look for it.
9. What is he looking for on the edge of the forest?
10. Keep silent about everything you saw here!
11. Do you want to frighten me?
12. Small children often draw cars and horses.
13. We applauded him and praised him.
14. The famous writer kept silent when people praised him.
15. Are you allowed to smoke in aeroplanes?
16. If you were to frighten the hens, I would not keep quiet about it.
17. Now people applaud only young singers; rarely do they praise famous old singers and writers.
18. What did you lose? – I lost my ticket.
19. Let us examine the car. – No, we will only be wasting time.
20. Are more cigarettes made in America than in France or Germany?
21. Aivars will draw a mouse.
22. Let the little boy draw what he likes!
23. Obey your father, and don't smoke!
24. I shall smoke a cigarette; then I shall be able to sleep.
25. Why don't you keep quiet? We shall not be able to hear the signal.
26. We were looking everywhere for you.
27. My old uncle was sitting in his comfortable chair, and was smoking his pipe.
28. Do not look for me!
29. How long were you studying in Paris?
30. You will lose a lot of money, if you do not draw what people want.
31. Let us go on to the platform: we are wasting a lot of time.
32. The whole world praises his work. I think that if they didn't praise him, people would not read his books.
33. Go now, and don't waste any more time!
34. I always smoke a pipe, but Baiba and Māra never smoke pipes.
35. I don't know whether I draw well, but I know that my cousin (m.) draws very badly.

36. I am not drawing, I am writing.
37. The teacher is teaching the pupils to draw.
38. I would give much gold and silver in order to be well again.
39. London is close to Paris, but far from New York.
40. I shall fly from Australia to London, and from London to America.
41. Is Ķemeri very far from Riga?
42. I wouldn't want to live in Ķemeri.
43. My uncle is now very ill.
44. The dark house frightened the small children.
45. The kitchen floor is made of light wood.
46. Can you walk with me as far as the bridge?
47. The doctor's house is very close to the bank.
48. You are still unwell: you may not go outside in the frost.
49. From the sea as far as the mountains bloom red and yellow flowers.
50. When do roses bloom in Russia?
51. Whom did you ask for a loan yesterday?
52. Did you see anybody behind the house?
53. Translate the words of the song!
54. All my sisters travelled to Australia.
55. I lost my book the day before yesterday.
56. The gardener lost his new hat in the deep well.
57. How are you? – Very well, thank you. And you?
58. The farm-labourer was holding the calf on a rather short lead.
59. The animals were shivering in the cold wind.

LESSON 43

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE
KURŠ

There exists in Latvian a relative and interrogative form *kurš*, *kura* (formerly *kuŗš*, *kuŗa*) which is declined like regular indefinite adjectives as follows:

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>kurš</i>	<i>kura</i>	<i>kuri</i>	<i>kuras</i>
Acc.	<i>kuru</i>	<i>kuru</i>	<i>kurus</i>	<i>kuras</i>
Gen.	<i>kura</i>	<i>kuras</i>	<i>kuru</i>	<i>kuru</i>
Dat.	<i>kuram</i>	<i>kurai</i>	<i>kuriem</i>	<i>kurām</i>
Loc.	<i>kurā</i>	<i>kurā</i>	<i>kuros</i>	<i>kurās</i>

Kurš, like *kas*, is used as a relative pronoun (see note 3 below), but the differences in other directions should be very carefully noted.

1. As an interrogative adjective, in either direct or indirect questions, the use of *kurš* is obligatory.

Kurā istabā viņa guļ?

In which room does she sleep?

Es nezinu, kurā istabā viņa guļ.

I do not know which room she sleeps in.

2. As an interrogative pronoun, in either direct or indirect speech, *kas* is used.

Ko tu dari?

What are you doing?

Vai tu zini, ko tu dari?

Do you know what you are doing?

However when the interrogative calls for a choice between a known number of possibilities, *kurš* is used, often in conjunction with *no*.

Kurš no jums svilpoja dārzā?

Which one of you was whistling in the garden?

Kurš to darīja?

Who (of a given number) did it?

3. As an ordinary relative pronoun, both are used, but not always interchangeably. Two quite different factors determine the choice to be made. The first principle is largely morphological. The relative *kas* does not have a full declension to distinguish between masculine and feminine, singular and plural, and although theoretically its one set of forms may apply equally well to any combination of these, it will be observed that the forms of *kas* have a decidedly masculine singular look about them. This means that it looks and sounds a little incongruous to use a form like *kam* to represent a feminine dative plural. The result is that *kurš* is normally used to avoid such incongruity. The tolerances appear to be roughly as follows:

- (a) *kas* is perfectly acceptable in the nominative, singular and plural, masculine and feminine;
- (b) *ko* likewise can be used universally, although there is a tendency to *kuras* in the feminine plural;
- (c) *kam* is quite acceptable in the masculine singular, will often be found in the feminine singular and masculine plural, but is far less common in the feminine plural;

(d) *kas* has no locative forms, and here *kurš* is used. The adverb *kur* is also often found.

Discussion of the genitive case will be left for a later lesson.

After this first test has been applied, there is a semantic difference between *kas* and *kurš* to be considered. *Kurš* is a much more precise relative than *kas*, and as such will normally be used where the antecedent is precise, with *kas* being used where the antecedent is more indefinite. Compare:

Es redzēju vecu ubagu, kas stāvēja pie vārtiem.

I saw an old beggar, who was standing by the gate.

Skolotājs sodīja zēnus, kuri viņam neklausīja.

The teacher punished the boys who did not obey him.

In spite of the above, *kas* and *kurš* will sometimes be found where they would not normally be expected. It must be emphasized that the above are not universal rules, but merely general tendencies.

Vocabulary

<i>kurš -a</i>	who, which
<i>studēte</i>	university student (f.)
<i>students</i>	university student (m.)
<i>vārdnīca</i>	dictionary
<i>runāt latviski</i>	to speak Latvian
<i>runāt angļiski</i>	to speak English
<i>runāt vāciski</i>	to speak German
<i>runāt krieviski</i>	to speak Russian
<i>runāt franciski</i>	to speak French
<i>neviens</i> (pronoun)	nobody
<i>dakšīņa</i>	(table) fork
<i>karote</i>	spoon
<i>Biruta</i>	Latvian feminine name

NOTES: *Neviens* is accented on the second syllable. It requires a negative verb, e.g.,

Neviens negrib dziedāt.
Mēs neredzējām nevienu.

Nobody wants to sing.
We didn't see anybody.

When *neviens* is governed by a preposition, the negative prefix *ne-* is separated from the stem and the preposition is placed between the two elements, e.g.,

Es nerunāju ne ar vienu.

I did not speak to anybody.

The preposition *bez* is an exception to this rule, and does not cause separation, e.g.,

bez neviena

without anybody.

Exercise 43a

Conjugate in the present: *meklēt; aplaudēt; slavēt; ziedēt; zaudēt.*

Exercise 43b

Conjugate in the future and conditional: *pazaudēt; uzzīmēt; gulēt; aiziet.*

Exercise 43c

Give the four imperative parts of: *maksāt; aplaudēt; tulkot; dziedāt; gulēt; sēdēt; peldēt; solīt; būt.*

Exercise 43d

Form adverbs from the following adjectives: *labs; skaidrs; godīgs; rets; priecīgs; slikts.*

Exercise 43e

Translate into English:

1. *Studēte, kurai tu aizdevi savu vārdnīcu, ir Birutas māsa.*
2. *Kas vakar bija viņa istabā?*
3. *Kurš students runā franciski? – Šeit neviens nerunā franciski, mēs runājam tikai latviski un angļiski.*
4. *Vīrs, kuru tu slavē, ir negodīgs.*
5. *Nams, kurā Biruta dzīvo, pieder viņas krustmātei.*
6. *Karotes un dakšīpas, kuras mēs lietojam, ir no sudraba.*
7. *Tumšajā pagrabā es nevarēju redzēt, kurās pudelēs ir sarkanais un kurās ir baltais vīns.*

8. Kurām pilsētām ir lidlauki?
9. Kas tas par cilvēku, kuram visi aplaudēja?
10. Namā, kurā dzīvo studenti, ir arī daži biroji.
11. Kas ir nama saimnieks? (*Saimnieks* also means *landlord*.)
12. Vai studente, kura runā vāciski, vēl ir šeit?
13. Kurš no jums runā krieviski?
14. Mājās bērni runā latviski, bet ar saviem draugiem tikai angliki.
15. Kas dzīvo mājā aiz tilta?
16. Biruta nedejos ne ar vienu.
17. Māte virtuvē bieži lieto koka karoti.
18. Biruta domā, ka viņa varētu dzīvot bez neviena. (*Bez*, being in a sense a negative preposition, removes the need for the verb to be in the negative.)
19. Kuras studentes cimdus jūs meklējat?
20. Kurš no jums pazaudēja vārdnīcu?
21. Tā ir Aivara vārdnīca!
22. Runāsim latviski!
23. Daži studenti runā diezgan labi angliki, krieviski un arī citas valodas.
24. Jaunais students labi runā franciski un krieviski.
25. Kura studente tevi māca runāt vāciski?
26. Kuru studentu vārdnīcas ir uz mana galda?
27. Kurās zemēs runā vāciski un kurās angliki?
28. Dakšiņas un karotes tagad ir pavisam tīras.
29. Kurā skolā jūs sūtīsiet savu dēlu?
30. Vai Āzijas austrumos lieto dakšiņas?
31. Mūsu veikalā runā krieviski un franciski.
32. Anglijā Ieva reti runā latviski.
33. Ja jūs vairāk gulētu un smēķētu mazāk cigarešu, jūs nebūtu tik slims.
34. Bērni taisīja papīra cepures.
35. Ko jūs rakstāt? – Mēs nerakstām, mēs zīmējam.
36. Ja tu klusētu, es varētu strādāt.
37. Mans krusttēvs vienmēr pīpēja pīpi.
38. Ko tu studēsi Londonā?
39. Vai tu gribi mani biedēt?
40. Mazā Baiba uzzīmēja lielu namu.
41. Kāpēc tu nemeklē savu pīpi?
42. Es smēķēju tikai dārgas cigaretes.
43. Parīze un Ņujorka ir ļoti slavenas pilsētas.
44. Vai no Rīgas līdz Ķemeriem ir tālu? – Nē, Ķemeri ir diezgan tuvu pie Rīgas.
45. Ārsts nedomā, ka Māra ir vesela.
46. Tagad puķes zied: dārzs atkal ir skaists.
47. Aplaudēsim slavenajam dziedātājam!

48. Es nekad neslavēju slinkus studentus.
49. Es nevaru pīpēt, tāpēc ka es pazaudēju pīpi.
50. Ja jūs klusētu, es varētu lasīt.
51. Mazais Artūrs vienmēr zīmē.
52. Daži putni taisa ligzdas zālē; citi taisa ligzdas koku zaros.
53. Kas par stipru salnu!
54. Mēs iedevām ubagam maizi un glāzi vīna.
55. Es skaidri nedzirdēju, par ko tu runāji.
56. Ceļmalā bija tik skaisti: puķes ziedēja un zem kokiem bija tik klusi, **ka** mēs tur zālē sēdējām četras stundas.
57. Skolnieki raksta ar melnu tinti, bet skolotājs lieto arī sarkanu vai zaļu tinti.

Exercise 43f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I shall talk to no one, and I shall not go to anybody's place.
2. Which forks and spoons may I use?
3. The small fork and spoon are good only for a child.
4. Who speaks German?
5. Which student (f.) speaks Latvian and Russian?
6. Which one of you speaks English and French?
7. Biruta has no dictionary.
8. To which students did you give the tickets?
9. Which students wish to study for six years?
10. Some students work in summer.
11. Biruta smiled again when her father promised her new stockings and a lovely new blouse.
12. Are the forks and spoons of silver or of gold?
13. Who can swim as far as the bridge? – No one is allowed to swim that far: there are many very deep spots.
14. He speaks only French and English.
15. If the student spoke Russian and German, he could teach our son in the summer.
16. Nobody is so clever that he is able to translate without a dictionary. (Use *lai* and the conditional.)
17. Which dictionary did you use?
18. The students (f.) are wearing black skirts and white blouses.
19. If Biruta were to praise me, I should believe her.
20. Which student would not kiss a girl now and then?
21. Why is the famous man dancing with the young student (f.)?
22. Biruta is teaching her girl-friend to speak Latvian.

23. Which bottle is the medicine in?
24. Do you know which fork belongs to Anne?
25. Which bottle is the red wine in?
26. In what year did the writer live in America?
27. Students (f.) may smoke cigarettes if they wish, but girls who are still going to school may not.
28. The spoon is on the floor.
29. Do libraries also lend dictionaries?
30. In the comfortable railway-carriage in which we were sitting, there were also some singers and dancers, who spoke English, French and German.
31. Nobody here speaks Russian or Latvian.
32. In which countries in Western Europe are French and German spoken?
33. My students speak Latvian fairly well.
34. From which platform will the train be leaving?
35. Baiba sings from morning until evening.
36. Does our teacher also speak Russian?
37. If I didn't smoke a few cigarettes in the evening, I wouldn't be able to sleep.
38. Please do not smoke your pipe when I am in the room.
39. My niece will study in Paris, and my nephew will study in London.
40. More people live in New York than in all Latvia.
41. He is not a good teacher: he frightens the pupils.
42. He who studies cannot waste time with other things.
43. Paris is quite close to London.
44. He is making a small table of light-coloured wood.
45. He never remains silent: he tells everything to everybody.
46. The famous singer is quite old, but he still sings very well, and people still applaud him.
47. The old doctor always smoked a pipe.
48. Four or five people applauded the bad singer, but the others remained silent.
49. You may threaten me if you wish, but you are wasting your time.
50. Now all the leaves are green, and all the flowers are blooming.
51. Aivars is drawing a large aeroplane.
52. He lost his pen in order that he could ask Baiba to help him look for it.
53. My daughter is now well again.
54. I lost my platform ticket.
55. Boys always want to frighten girls.
56. What are you looking for on my table?
57. Why do you always praise Arthur? He is a very lazy pupil.
58. The industrious pupils were drawing trees and animals.
59. Would you like to draw something?

60. The engine-driver sat for four hours on the platform near the ticket-office.
61. Soon it will be winter, and we shall again be wearing warm suits.
62. The poor teacher always works as a shoemaker for twelve weeks in the summer.
63. Biruta is afraid of rats.
64. Sometimes we walk along the river-bank when the sun is setting: it is very beautiful.
65. I cannot pay you in cash, for all my money is at home.
66. The cups and glasses which we saw in the shop-window were quite cheap.

LESSON 44

DAYS OF THE WEEK; TIME OF DAY

The days of the week are as follows:

Monday	<i>pirmdiena</i>
Tuesday	<i>otrdiena</i>
Wednesday	<i>trešdiena</i>
Thursday	<i>četrtdiena</i>
Friday	<i>piektdiena</i>
Saturday	<i>sestdiena</i>
Sunday	<i>svētdiena</i>

In these words, *t* immediately preceding *d* is normally silent, and a voiceless consonant immediately preceding the *d* or *td* is voiced.

To translate expressions of the type 'on Monday', one simply uses the locative: *pirmdienā*. There is also, however, an adverbial form of these nouns, which is formed by dropping the final *a*, e.g., *pirmdien* 'on Monday', *otrdien* 'on Tuesday', etc. 'On Mondays' is translated simply by *pirmdienās*.

Where the English uses the name of the day adjectivally, as 'on Monday morning', Latvian has *pirmdienas rītā*, with *pirmdiena* in the genitive.

In answer to the question

Cik pulkstenis?

or very frequently

Cik pulkstenis?

What time is it?

one may say:

<i>Pulksten(i)s ir viens.</i>	It is one o'clock.
<i>Pulksten(i)s ir divi.</i>	It is two o'clock.
<i>Pulksten(i)s ir trīs.</i>	It is three o'clock.
<i>Pulksten(i)s ir desmit.</i>	It is ten o'clock.

As in English the answer may be elliptical:

<i>Pulksten(i)s viens.</i>	One o'clock.
<i>Pulksten(i)s pieci.</i>	Five o'clock.
<i>Pulksten(i)s divpadsmit.</i>	Twelve o'clock.

The question

<i>Cikos?</i>	At what time?
---------------	---------------

requires an answer in the locative plural, even in the case of *viens*.

<i>Pulkstens vienos.</i>	At one o'clock.
<i>Pulkstens septiņos.</i>	At seven o'clock.
<i>Pulkstens desmitos.</i>	At ten o'clock.
<i>Pulkstens vienpadsmitos.</i>	At eleven o'clock.
<i>Pulkstens divpadsmitos.</i>	At twelve o'clock.

Note that in the above examples the form *pulkstenis* is not found, and that the normally indeclinable *desmit*, *vienpadsmit* and *divpadsmit* acquire analogical endings: cf. also *cikos*.

In conjunction with a following locative, *pulkstens* may be shortened to *pulksten*:

<i>Pulksten divos.</i>	At two o'clock.
<i>Pulksten desmitos.</i>	At ten o'clock.

It may also be omitted entirely:

<i>Divos.</i>	At two.
<i>Trijos.</i>	At three.
<i>Vienpadsmitos.</i>	At eleven.

With prepositions the dative plural must be used, even in the case of *viens*.

<i>No diviem līdz pieciem.</i>	From two until five.
<i>No desmitiem līdz vieniem.</i>	From ten until one.
<i>No deviņiem līdz divpadsmitiem.</i>	From nine until twelve.

Or more fully:

No pulksten(s) diviem līdz pulksten(s) pieciem.

Here again *desmit*, *vienpadsmit* and *divpadsmit* acquire analogical endings.

Exercise 44a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, future, conditional and imperative: *dziedāt*; *domāt*; *peldēt*; *aplaudēt*; *vārīt*; *barot*; *gulēt*; *sēdēt*; *kaitēt* ('to harm'); *iet*; *būt*; *dot*.

Exercise 44b

Decline in the singular and plural: *es*; *tu*; *viņš*; *viņa*.

Exercise 44c

Translate into English: *pirmdien*; *trešdien*; *piektdienā*; *svētdienā*; *sestdienās*; *otrdienās*; *līdz ceturtdienai*; *no pirmdienas*.

Exercise 44d

Translate into English:

1. *Cik pulkstens?* – *Pulkstens ir viens.*
2. *Cik pulkstens?* – *Pulkstens ir deviņi.*
3. *Cik pulkstens?* – *Pulkstens ir divpadsmit.*
4. *Kad tu iesi gulēt?* – *Pulkstens astoņos.*
5. *Kad viņa būs šeit?* – *No trijiem līdz sešiem.*
6. *Cikos Artūrs dziedās?* – *Deviņos vai desmitos.*

Exercise 44e

Translate into English:

1. *Pirmdienā mana sieva bija pie ārsta.*
2. *Kas viņai kaiš?* – *Es nedomāju, ka viņa ir slima, bet viņai vienmēr sāp galva.*
3. *No pirmdienas līdz trešdienai es būšu savā birojā.*
4. *Otrdienās un ceturtdienās Aivars iet pie kaimiņa palīdzēt viņa dēlam.*
5. *Piektdien pulkstens četros bagātais veikalnieks lidos uz Londonu.*
6. *Sestdienās mēs nestrādājam tik garas stundas kā citās dienās.*
7. *Ko mēs darīsim svētdienā, ja būs stiprs sals?*

8. Cikos vilciens atiet uz Parīzi? Četros vai piecos, es nezinu. Kur ir mans vilcienu saraksts?
9. Cikos Anna baros kūkas? – Agri no rīta, laikam jau piecos.
10. Cik pulkstens? – Pulkstens ir viens.
11. Svētdienā mēs iesim uz jūrmalu.
12. Cikos bērni ies gulēt? – Septiņos.
13. No pulkstens diviem līdz četriem pie kases sēdēs Māra, bet no četriem līdz sešiem Biruta.
14. Es šeit kavēju daudz laika; es gribēju būt Parīzē jau otrdienā.
15. Pirmdienās, miesniekam ir laba kūkas gaļa.
16. Trešdien bija tik stiprs vējš, ka gaisā lidoja papīri un lapas.
17. Es nezinu, cik pulkstens, bet saule jau riet.
18. Es tevi gaidīšu pastā otrdien, pulkstens vienos.
19. Ja maiznieks gaidītu līdz ceturtdienai, es viņam maksātu skaidrā naudā.
20. Sestdienās, kād ārā ir stiprs sals, studenti sēž siltajā pagrabā pie viņa glāzes.
21. Vai piektdien pie jums bija labs laiks? – Pie mums bija ļoti auksts.
22. Piektdienās ubags stāv pie bankas.
23. Ceturtdien es iešu uz banku un sestdien pie kurpnieka.
24. Svētdien dārznieka meita bija slima, bet pirmdien viņa jau bija pavisam vesela.
25. Otrdien es pārbaudīšu savu mašīnu.
26. Pirmdienās un trešdienās no trijiem līdz pieciem aptiekārs nebūs savā aptiekā.
27. Tagad man nav laika, es runāšu ar tevi ceturtdien vai piektdien.
28. Svētdienās vecais skolotājs sēž savā ērtajā krēslā ar viņa glāzi rokā.
29. Ja mana sieva sestdienā tīra visas istabas, es eju ārā un strādāju dārzā.
30. Mašīnisti un konduktori strādā arī svētdienās, jo citi cilvēki arī tad grib ceļot.
31. Cikos tava māsiņa vārīs kafiju?
32. Cikos Pāvils aizies?
33. Ja tu klusētu, es varētu strādāt.
34. Kurus vārdus tu meklē vārdnīcā?
35. Kuras no studentēm runā angļiski un vāciski? – Biruta runā tikai vāciski, un Baiba runā tikai angļiski.
36. Kurās zemēs runā krieviski un franciski? – Krievijā runā krieviski un Francijā franciski.
37. Āfrikā dažās vietās nelieto dakšiņas un karotes.
38. Vai šeit neviens nerunā latviski?
39. Visi aplaudēja slavenajam dziedātājam.
40. Cik cigarešu tu smēķē dienā? – Es nesmēķēju cigaretes, es pīpēju pīpi.
41. Mūsu dakšiņas un karotes ir no tīra sudraba.

42. Vai visiem studentiem ir vārdnīcas?
43. Vai studente mājās runā latviski?
44. Es nerunāšu ne ar vienu.
45. Kāpēc tu gribi mani biedēt?
46. Mazais Pāvils vienmēr zīmē: dažreiz viņš uzzīmē cilvēkus, dažreiz lietas.
47. Lai citi slavē rakstnieka jauno grāmatu, es nedomāju, ka tā ir laba.
48. Visi dārzāji tagad ir dārgi.
49. Kāpēc tu domā, ka es tevi aizstāvēšu?
50. Šodien Māra vārīs burkānus un kāpostus un arī kūkas gaļu ar pipariem.
51. Cilvēkiem ir divas rokas un desmit pirkstu.

Exercise 44f

Translate into Latvian:

1. At what time does the sun set in winter? – At five o'clock, I think.
2. On Monday I shall go to the doctor's; my throat is sore.
3. At what time did Baiba feed the animals?
4. On Tuesday my wife wrote a letter to her sister, and her sister replied on Friday.
5. On Thursdays the farmer's wife makes butter and cheese.
6. He didn't believe that people do not work on Saturdays in our country.
7. Was the big bag still full of flour on Wednesday?
8. What shall we do on Sunday?
9. What is the time now?
10. At what time did you see the beggar near the bank?
11. Wait until Monday: then I shall answer your question.
12. On Tuesday the apples were still green.
13. On Wednesdays the boys used to help the gardener.
14. On Thursday the pharmacist will go to the bank to ask for a loan.
15. The day before yesterday was Friday.
16. There are only a few days until Sunday.
17. On Saturday at one o'clock Māra will be waiting for us on the platform.
18. Tickets are sold here only on Mondays, from three to four.
19. To whom did you lend your dictionary on Tuesday?
20. I saw the pastor on Sunday, with his hymn-book in his hand.
21. He will depart (*aizceļot*) on Wednesday or Thursday.
22. If you promised me to keep silent, I would tell you where Anne was on Friday.
23. What does Aivars usually do on Saturdays?
24. On what day was the butcher here? – On Wednesday, because on other days he is in Riga.

25. On Monday the famous writer will fly from London to Paris.
26. At what time will you go to the post office? – At one or two o'clock.
27. What is the time now in New York?
28. If in Australia it is Friday morning, then in America it is only Thursday evening.
29. It is forbidden to dance on Sundays in our town.
30. On Tuesday the farm-workers were very diligent, but today they are extremely lazy.
31. On Saturday our good friend will be home again.
32. Excuse me, do you speak French or German? – No, only English.
33. Does no one here speak Latvian or Russian?
34. Biruta smokes so many cigarettes that she never has any money.
35. Students sometimes waste time, but they often work long hours.
36. Do you always smoke a pipe?
37. I am looking for a student called Baiba.
38. Oh dear, all the forks and spoons are on the floor.
39. The student lost his dictionary.
40. Biruta cannot read if the children are crying.
41. Māra is a very hard-working student: she already speaks German and English well.
42. Nobody wanted to draw; everybody wanted to read.
43. Why didn't you applaud the young singers?
44. Were forks and spoons used in Latvia in olden times?
45. We speak Russian and French at home.
46. The teacher often used to praise the pupils, so that they would work more.
47. Which of you drew the white horse?
48. How does he earn so much money?
49. The new yellow cart was standing by the window.
50. My foot is sore.
51. If you count the lemons, I shall count the eggs.

LESSON 45

VERBS WITH DEPALATALIZED PRESENT STEMS

Verbs with infinitives in *-cīt* and *-dzīt* (exception: *mācīt*) regularly have the corresponding depalatalized consonant throughout the present tense, but not elsewhere. The pattern is shown by the following paradigms.

sacīt 'to say'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es saku</i>	<i>es sacīju</i>	
<i>tu saki</i>	<i>tu sacīji</i>	<i>saki!</i>
<i>viņš saka</i>	<i>viņš sacīja</i>	<i>lai saka!</i>
<i>mēs sakām</i>	<i>mēs sacījām</i>	<i>sacīsim!</i>
<i>jūs sakāt</i>	<i>jūs sacījāt</i>	<i>sakiet!</i>
<i>viņi saka</i>	<i>viņi sacīja</i>	<i>lai saka!</i>

Future: *es sacīšu, tu sacīsi, etc.*

Conditional: *es sacītu, tu sacītu, etc.*

Note particularly that the depalatalized consonant is retained in those imperative forms which are based on the forms of the present tense.

ieraudzīt 'to catch sight of'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es ieraugu</i>	<i>es ieraudzīju</i>	
<i>tu ieraugi</i>	<i>tu ieraudzīji</i>	<i>ieraugi!</i>
<i>viņš ierauga</i>	<i>viņš ieraudzīja</i>	<i>lai ierauga!</i>
<i>mēs ieraugām</i>	<i>mēs ieraudzījām</i>	<i>ieraudzīsim!</i>
<i>jūs ieraugāt</i>	<i>jūs ieraudzījāt</i>	<i>ieraugiet!</i>
<i>viņi ierauga</i>	<i>viņi ieraudzīja</i>	<i>lai ierauga!</i>

Future: *es ieraudzīšu, tu ieraudzīsi, etc.*

Conditional: *es ieraudzītu, tu ieraudzītu, etc.*

Again, note particularly that the depalatalized consonant is retained in the second and third person forms of the imperative.

There are also a limited number of verbs in *-cēt* and *-dzēt* which undergo the same depalatalization in the present tense. Unlike the *-cīt* and *-dzīt* verbs, however, these are the exception rather than the rule.

mācēt 'to know how'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es māku</i>	<i>es mācēju</i>	
<i>tu māki</i>	<i>tu mācēji</i>	<i>māki!</i>
<i>viņš māk</i>	<i>viņš mācēja</i>	<i>lai māk!</i>
<i>mēs mākam</i>	<i>mēs mācējām</i>	<i>mācēsim!</i>
<i>jūs mākat</i>	<i>jūs mācējāt</i>	<i>mākiet!</i>
<i>viņi māk</i>	<i>viņi mācēja</i>	<i>lai māk!</i>

Future: *es m̄acēšu, tu m̄acēsi, etc.*

Conditional: *es m̄acētu, tu m̄acētu, etc.*

Notice again the retention of the depalatalized consonant in the appropriate forms of the imperative.

The verb *tecēt* is slightly anomalous:

Present: *es tēku, tu tēci, viņš tēk, mēs tēkam, jūs tēkat, viņi tēk.*

The imperative forms are *tēci, lai tēk, tēcēsim, tēciet.*

Thus in this verb, the depalatalization does not occur before the vowel *-i*. The imperfect forms are regular: *es tēcēju, etc.*

The verb *vajadzēt* 'to be necessary' has a further irregularity – it takes an ending *-a* in the third person singular present. It is a defective verb, used only in the third person singular, and has no imperative forms.

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
–	–	–
–	–	–
<i>vajaga</i>	<i>vajadzēja</i>	–

Future: –, –, *vajadzēs.*

Conditional: –, –, *vajadzētu.*

Vajaga is often shortened to *vajag*.

Vajadzēt is used with the dative of the person to express need, the object *o*: the need being in the accusative, unless it is a partitive, when it is in the genitivef

<i>Man vajaga zirgu.</i>	I need a horse.
<i>Man vajaga sviesta.</i>	I need some butter.

In the negative, the genitive is always required:

<i>Man nevajaga zirga.</i>	I do not need a horse.
----------------------------	------------------------

Some grammars require the genitive always in the positive as well. *Vajadzēt* is also used with the dative of the person and the infinitive to express obligation:

<i>Mums vajadzēja barot cūkas.</i>	We had to feed the pigs.
------------------------------------	--------------------------

All the verbs in the following vocabulary have a depalatalized present stem.

Vocabulary

<i>tēcēt</i>	to flow; to leak	<i>izraudzīt</i>	to choose
<i>mācēt</i>	to know how to	<i>ieraudzīt</i>	to catch sight of
<i>vajadzēt</i>	to be necessary	<i>sacīt</i>	to say
<i>slaucīt</i>	to wipe, sweep	<i>mocīt</i>	to torment, worry
<i>locīt</i>	to bend, fold; to conjugate, decline		

NOTE: *Mocīt*, while retaining its conjugation with *-k-*, also has an alternative conjugation with *-c-* throughout.

Exercise 45a

Give the third person singular, present, imperfect, future and conditional, of: *tecēt; mācēt; vajadzēt; slaucīt; locīt; izraudzīt; sacīt; mocīt; ieraudzīt.*

Exercise 45b

Conjugate in the present tense the verbs listed in Ex. 45a.

Exercise 45c

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 45a.

Exercise 45d

Count from 1 to 20 with the following nouns: *dārznieks; bikses; roze; ratt.*

Exercise 45e

Give the days of the week in their Nominative singular, Locative singular, Locative plural and adverbial forms.

Exercise 45f

Complete:

pulkstens viens, etc.pulkstens divpadsmit.
pulkstens vienos, etc.pulkstens divpadsmitos.

Exercise 45g

Translate into English:

1. Es nesaku, ka viņa man nepalīdz.
2. Cik klusi tek upe!
3. Mazā Anna jau māc lasīt un rakstīt.
4. Ja mana sieva mācētu runāt angļiski, es būtu priecīgs.
5. Mums rožu nevajaga: mums dārzā ir daudz rožu.
6. Ja vajadzētu, es tevi aizstāvētu.
7. Meitas slauka grīdas visā mājā.
8. Nemokiet mani, mīļie bērni! Es neiešu ar jums uz jūrmaļu.
9. Kalps drebēja aiz bailēm, kad viņš ieraudzīja vilku mežmalā.
10. Krusttēvs Pāvils vienmēr saka, ko viņš domā.
11. Kāpēc viņš mūs moka ar saviem muļķīgajiem stāstiem?
12. Es kavēju daudz laika: man vienos vajadzēja būt stacijā.
13. Vai tu māki peldēt?
14. Kaut kas tek no jumta. Kas tas varētu būt?
15. Skolotājs izrauga divus skolniekus, kurus viņš sūtīs uz bibliotēku.
16. Redzēsim, kuras grāmatas viņi izraudzīs!
17. Tas ir stiprs zars, to nevar locīt.
18. Vai tu domā, ka Biruta tevi mīlētu, ja tu nemācētu dejot?
19. Meitenes mazgāja un slaucīja glāzes un tases.
20. Tu mocīji vistas! Ja tu to atkal darīsi, tēvs tevi sodīs.
21. Krustmātei vajadzēs iet pie ārsta.
22. Cik skaisti sarkanais vīns tek no pudeles!
23. Saki man, kāpēc tu izraudzīji sev lielo, melno zirgu, un ne mazo, balto?
24. Vai tu redzi zvaigzni? – Nē, es to nevaru ieraudzīt.
25. Ko Artūrs darīja, kad jūs viņu ieraudzījāt?
26. Ko tu sacīji? – Es sacīju, ka ārā ir liels sals.
27. Ejiet gulēt, bērni, un nemociet tēvu ar saviem jautājumiem!
28. Vai skolnieki jau loka visus vārdus? – Nē, viņi to vēl nemāk.
29. Mēs slaukām netīro pagalmu.
30. Kurš no jums ieraudzīja reto putnu?
31. Upe tecēja gar mežmalu.

32. Kuras kurpes un kuru blūzi Anna sev izraudzīja?
33. Kāpēc jūs nekad neslaukāt virtuves grīdu?
34. Es būšu Ķemeru no pirmdienas līdz ceturtdienai un Rīgā no piektdienas līdz svētdienai, tad man vajadzēs lidot uz Londonu.
35. Kur tu būsi trešdien? – Trešdien no trijiem līdz septiņiem es būšu mājās.
36. Cik pulkstens? – Pulkstens ir seši.
37. Cikos tu sestdien būsi mājās?
38. Otrdien mūsu pilsētas studenti un studentes dejas ielās.
39. Ak, es nekad nemācēšu runāt krieviski!
40. Pāvils domā, ka viņš mācēs runāt vāciski, ja tikai lasīs vārdnīcu.
41. Man vajadzētu lidot uz Vāciju pirmdien vai otrdien.
42. Ceturtdienās tirgotājs vienmēr iet uz banku.
43. Es vēl arvien varu būt pie tevis piecos.
44. Mūsu draugi negrib runāt angļiski, bet latviski.
45. Vai šeit neviens nemāk runāt franciski?
46. Piektdien mēs tīrīsim dakšiņas un sestdien karotes.
47. Cikos tu ej gulēt svētdienās?
48. Vai kafija kaitē cilvēkiem? – Jā, bet cigaretes mums kaitē vairāk nekā kafija.
49. Kuras puķes tagad zied viņu dārzā?
50. Londona ir tuvu Parīzei, bet tālu no Ņujorkas.
51. Ko tu meklē manā istabā?
52. Kas par skaistu dziesmu! Aplaudēsim!
53. Mazā Māra uzzīmēja sarkanus un zaļus zirgus savas mātes dziesmu grāmatā.
54. Virtuves grīda ir no gaiša koka.
55. Eiropā ir daudz plašu lidlauku, bet Āzijā nav.
56. Pāvilam tagad ir laba vieta: viņš strādā par dārznieku pie bagātas kino zvaigznes.

Exercise 45h

Translate into Latvian:

1. What would your wife say if she were to catch sight of a mouse?
2. Does the river also flow in winter?
3. You must say that he does not live here.
4. Let the girls sweep the floor.
5. What is wrong with me? I cannot bend my fingers.
6. Can the little boy already count? – Yes, but only as far as ten.
7. When Baiba caught sight of Arthur, she smiled.
8. Let us choose three men whom we can believe.

9. Can you swim?
10. Who said that he lives poorly?
11. The strong white wine was flowing all evening.
12. I do not need new trousers.
13. Why did you choose a grey suit and a dark shirt?
14. Look, you bent the beautiful feather!
15. From morning till evening the girls were sweeping the streets.
16. When she still couldn't read, she could already dance.
17. I don't need ink, I have a fountain pen.
18. Can you spot the morning-star in the east?
19. My tie is torturing me!
20. The flies were annoying the sick old man.
21. What did you catch sight of under the bridge?
22. Why did the kind people choose me?
23. Something is leaking from my car.
24. We shall not need a new bridge.
25. Which river flows here?
26. How do you fold sheets (*lapa*) of paper?
27. Aivars spotted the cross-roads from the aeroplane.
28. Let us sweep all four rooms.
29. We already know how to decline some words.
30. There are seven days in a week: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday. On Mondays, I work in the library; on Tuesdays I read books at home; on Wednesday I usually write letters; on Thursdays I clean the house; on Fridays I go again to the library; on Saturday, if it is hot, I go swimming with my friends, and on Sundays I sleep all day in my comfortable bed.
31. At what time will the platform be swept?
32. What is the time please? – The time is three o'clock.
33. At what time will the train depart? – At eight o'clock.
34. Which of the students can speak French well?
35. Can no one here speak German?
36. When did you lose your dictionary?
37. Biruta is not a good student; I don't know why everyone praises her!
38. My girl-friend speaks English and Russian.
39. The forks are already on the table.
40. What a beautiful spoon!
41. Why don't you keep quiet?
42. The famous writer always smokes a pipe; he never smokes cigarettes.
43. In summer we do not have to wear warm clothing.
44. He wore his old hat for five years.
45. The red signal shone for a long time, and the train could not depart.

46. If you do not obey your father, he will punish you.
47. How many languages can you speak?
48. Show me the nest: I do not believe that there are eighteen eggs there.
49. My son is always drawing; he does not want to write.
50. Frosts are always harmful to tomatoes.

LESSON 46

FURTHER NEGATIONS WITH NE-

Apart from its primary function of supplying the negative of verbs, cf. *es redzu*, *es neredzu*, *ne-* can also be used to negate a number of adjectives and adverbs, and less commonly, a few nouns. We have already met examples of this: *godīgs* and *negodīgs*, *tīrs* and *netīrs*, *ērts* and *neērts*.

Other examples are: *neskaidrs* 'unclear', *negudrs* 'mad'; *nelaimīgs* 'unhappy, unlucky'; *neliels* 'small, insignificant'; *nepilns* 'incomplete, not full'; *nevesels* 'indisposed'; *nereti* 'fairly often'; *nedarbs* 'mischief'; *nelabais* 'the evil one', 'the devil'.

This principle cannot, however, be universally applied, and the student should beware of using forms which he has not previously met, especially as some forms with *ne-* have acquired certain shades of meaning other than pure negation, cf. *nedarbs* above.

Vocabulary

<i>ātrs</i>	quick, fast	<i>glīts</i>	handsome, pretty
<i>lēns</i>	slow	<i>ilgs</i>	long (of time)
<i>parasts</i>	usual, common	<i>jauks</i>	fine, pleasant
<i>auglīgs</i>	fertile, fruitful	<i>laime</i>	happiness; good fortune, luck
<i>brīvs</i>	free		
<i>dērlīgs</i>	suitable, useful	<i>pareizs</i>	correct, exact
		<i>pateicīgs (par)</i>	grateful (for)

NOTE: *Brīvs* means 'free' (i.e. not imprisoned, not oppressed) and also 'free' (i.e. not taken up, still available).

Exercise 46a

Conjugate in the present tense: *gulēt; mocht; mācēt; sēdēt; izraudzīt; mācīt.*

Exercise 46b

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 46a.

Exercise 46c

Continue the following:

- a) *Pulkstens ir viens,*
- b) *Vilciens aties pulksten vienos,*
- c) *Ko tu darīsi pirmsdien?*

Exercise 46d

Negate the following, giving English translations: *parasts; parasti; auglīgs; derīgs; laime; pareizs; pateicīgs.*

Exercise 46e

Translate into English:

1. Es ceļošu ar ātro vilcienu, kas parasti atiet septiņos.
2. Dari, ko tu gribi! Tu esi brīvs cilvēks!
3. Savā brīvajā dienā Anna parasti iet uz bibliotēku.
4. Es tevi gaidīju ilgu laiku pie pasta.
5. Bērni ies gulēt parastajā laikā.
6. Kāpēc tases, dakšiņas un karotes nav parastajā vietā?
7. Biļetes ir derīgas trīs dienas.
8. Vai vilciens aties no stacijas pareizajā laikā?
9. Pateicīgais skolnieks arvien vēl slavē savu veco skolotāju.
10. Kas mums par laimi: šodien ir tik jauks laiks!
11. Ārsts man prasīja parastos jautājumus: kas jums kaiš, kur jums sāp, vai jūs labi gulat?
12. Man ir veca, lēna mašīna.
13. Ar lēno vilcienu mēs būsim Rīgā tikai deviņos vakarā.

14. Kino zvaigzne lidoja ātrajā lidmašīnā no Ņujorkas uz Parīzi.
15. Auglīgā zemē var stādīt visus dārzājus.
16. Biruta ir glīta un jauka meitene, bet tā ir liela nelaime, ka viņa mīl nelaipno un neglīto Pāvilu.
17. Austrālijā ir daudz neauglīgas zemes.
18. Piedodiet, vai šeit vēl ir brīva vieta? – Jā, divi krēsli vēl ir brīvi.
19. Saimnieks slavē savu ātro zirgu.
20. Vai tagad galds stāv pareizajā vietā?
21. Konduktors tūlīt ieraudzīja manu nederīgo biļeti.
22. Ilgu laiku māte gaidīja un cerēja, ka dēls studēs.
23. Iesim ātri uz staciju, vilciens tūlīt aties!
24. Skolnieks lēni domā, bet viņš atbild pareizi.
25. Es būtu ļoti pateicīgs, ja tu man aizdotu savu vārdnīcu.
26. Baiba bija pateicīga par jauko vakaru.
27. Artūrs ir ļoti jauks zēns, tikai drusciņ lēns darbā.
28. "Man laime nekad nesmaida," sacīja krusttēvs.
29. Tā bija liela laime, ka upe nebija dziļa un plata.
30. Veikalos tagad pārdod ļoti glītas kurpes.
31. Mīļie draugi, mēs sēžam nepareizajā vagonā; šeit nedrīkst smēķēt.
32. Es ar tik nepateicīgu cilvēku nekad nerunātu.
33. Ziemā auglīgie lauki ir zem sniega.
34. Upe šeit tek lēni.
35. Ko tu darīsi otrdien?
36. Ceturtdien es iešu pie maiznieka.
37. Vai kāds no jums māk runāt angļiski vai vāciski?
38. Piektdien četros man vajadzēs iet uz staciju.
39. Cikos tu ieraudzīji vakara zvaigzni?
40. Cik pulkstens? – Pulkstens ir desmit.
41. Sestdienās un svētdienās mēs nestrādājam.
42. No pirmdienas līdz trešdienai es būšu Ķemeros.
43. Slaukiet grīdu!
44. Kuras grāmatas students izraudzīja, lai lasītu savā brīvajā dienā?
45. Mums šodien nevajaga maizes.
46. Artūrs tagad māk locīt vārdu 'tase'.
47. Kāpēc tu saki, ka es tevi moku?
48. Piens tecēja no galda uz grīdas.
49. Ieva nekad neslauka virtuves grīdu.
50. Man sāp rokas; es nevaru locīt pirkstus.
51. Neizraugi sev dzeltenu kakla saiti!
52. Kāpēc tu drebi? Šorīt nav auksts!
53. Vai tu gribi aizdevumu? – Paldies, nē!
54. Aivars vienmēr lasa zinātniskus darbus.

Exercise 46f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Again he said the usual empty words.
2. Their happiness was short.
3. Anne has pretty fingers.
4. In your free hours you could help your cousin in the kitchen.
5. Is that a correct translation?
6. Cabbages cannot be planted in such an unfertile spot.
7. I would be grateful if you kept quiet about my misfortune.
8. There are some useless bottles here.
9. On fine days we do not usually think about frost and snow.
10. He could sell the house today.
11. The engine-driver was waiting for the correct signal.
12. For long years I kept silent, but now may the whole world hear me!
13. The grateful butcher gave the doctor a calf.
14. Do you know the right way to town?
15. Lovely girls are often not intelligent or kind.
16. Our aunt was ill for a long time, but now she is well again.
17. My old shoes are still useful.
18. Is my ticket still valid? (*derīgs*)
19. Nobody now uses slow old carts: everybody has new, fast cars.
20. The room is still free.
21. I went into the wrong house.
22. We saw an interesting slow dance in eastern Asia.
23. The river was shallow and fast.
24. Baiba is a pretty and intelligent girl.
25. The grateful pupils still write to their old teacher.
26. For a long time the gardener did not know that the soil was not fertile enough.
27. For long years we have been teaching him, but he still does not know how to decline the common words.
28. At what time shall we be in Paris by (*ar*) the slow morning train?
29. It is nice to see a grateful son.
30. If there were enough fertile soil in Australia, more people would live there.
31. Arthur is a very handsome boy.
32. Will you be free at three o'clock?
33. The soil here is unfertile.
34. On Monday I saw a very handsome man in the street.
35. Do you think that Aivars is handsome? – No, he is not handsome.
36. On Tuesdays we usually sweep the floors.
37. I don't need any books today.

38. The river flows in winter, but does not flow in summer.
39. What is the time? – The time is eleven o'clock.
40. At twelve o'clock on Thursday I must be at the airport.
41. Which of the students can speak Russian or French?
42. Why do you sweep the floor only on Fridays?
43. Conjugate the word "to torment".
44. What will you say on Saturday?
45. Why did you choose the name Paul for your son? – We chose it because it is a fine old name.
46. I was standing on the bridge when I caught sight of Baiba and Māra, who were walking along the river-bank.
47. Very few honest people esteem your cousin.
48. There is a deep well in the farmer's yard.
49. Why are you so sad this morning, dear sister?
50. Here and there old men were begging in the narrow streets.
51. Expensive chairs can be very uncomfortable.

LESSON 47

DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN *-IS*

brāl-is 'brother'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>brāl-is</i>	<i>brāl-i</i>
Acc.	<i>brāl-i</i>	<i>brāl-us</i>
Gen.	<i>brāl-a</i>	<i>brāl-u</i>
Dat.	<i>brāl-im</i>	<i>brāl-iem</i>
Loc.	<i>brāl-i</i>	<i>brāl-os</i>

The singular declension varies somewhat from that of masculine nouns in *-s*, but the plural has the same set of endings.

The most important aspect of the declension to note is the consonant palatalization. Consonants are palatalized in the genitive singular, and in all cases of the plural. These palatalizations follow the patterns established for the genitive plural of feminine nouns in *-e*, i.e.,

<i>b</i>	becomes	<i>bj</i>
<i>c</i>	becomes	<i>č</i>
<i>d</i>	becomes	<i>ž</i> , etc.

For older forms in *r* see lesson 24.

All the nouns in the following vocabulary are declined like *brālis*. To help the student remember the palatalizations, the genitive singular form is included in brackets.

Vocabulary

<i>brālis (brāļa)</i>	brother	<i>lācis (lāča)</i>	bear
<i>nazis (naža)</i>	knife	<i>zirnis (zirņa)</i>	pea
<i>pavasaris (pavasara)</i>	spring	<i>šķīvis (šķīvja)</i>	plate
<i>kaķis (kaķa)</i>	cat	<i>ziemeļi (pl.)</i>	north
<i>dzīvoklis (dzīvokļa)</i>	flat	<i>Jānis (Jāņa)</i>	John
<i>kartupeļis (kartupeļa)</i>	potato	<i>Kārlis (Kārļa)</i>	Charles

Exercise 47a

Decline in the singular and plural: *dzīvoklis; kartupeļis; šķīvis*.

Exercise 47b

Decline in the singular only: *silts pavasaris; siltais pavasaris; zaļš zirnis; zaļais zirnis*.

Exercise 47c

Decline in the plural only: *aukstie ziemeļi; karstie kartupeļi; melni kaķi; melnie kaķi*.

Exercise 47d

Give the genitive singular and nominative plural of: *brālis; nazis; pavasaris; kaķis; kartupeļis; zirnis; lācis; dzīvoklis; šķīvis*.

Exercise 47e

Give the genitive singular of: *Jānis; Kārlis*.

Exercise 47f

Conjugate in the present and future: *izraudzīt; sēdēt; mācēt; slaucīt; gulēt; locīt; vajadzēt; pazaudēt*.

Exercise 47g

Enumerate the days of the week, and the numbers from 1 to 20.

Exercise 47h

Translate into English:

1. Nedod savam mazajam brālim nazi rokā!
2. Saki man, ko tu darītu, ja kāds tev draudētu ar nazi!
3. Vai saimnieks zina, ka jūs turat kaķi dzīvoklī?
4. Pavasarī mēs stādīsim kartupeļus.
5. Amerikas ziemeļos un arī Krievijas austrumos vēl ir diezgan daudz lāču.
6. Latvijā cūkas parasti baro ar kartupeļiem.
7. Mana brāļa sieva strādā par skolotāju.
8. Kāpēc mēs šodien lietojam dārgos šķīvjus, sudraba karotes un dakšīpas? – Tāpēc, ka tavš brālis atkal ir mājās.
9. Mēs sēdējām ērtos krēslos Kārļa skaistajā dzīvoklī un runājām par jaunām grāmatām.
10. Cik skaista ir zaļā zāle siltajā pavasara saulē!
11. Krusttēvs Jānis, mūsu tēva brālis, ir ļoti stiprs vīrs.
12. Vai šķīvis ir no tīra sudraba?
13. Iedod lielajam brālim nazi un maizi!
14. Dzīvoklī tagad nav peļu, jo mums ir kaķis.
15. Eiropas ziemeļos pavasarī parasti vēl ir stiprs sals.
16. Kartupeļiem nevajaga ļoti auglīgas zemes.
17. Pelēkie zirņi ir uz šķīvja.
18. Lāčiem ir lieli, gari zobi.
19. Jānis mums rādīs pareizo ceļu uz ezeru.
20. Pelēm ir bail no kaķiem.
21. Ticiet man, skolotājs tur deviņus kaķus savā nabadzīgajā dzīvoklī!
22. Cik jauks ir pavasara laiks ziemeļos!
23. Jānis atkal tīra nazi pie biksēm!
24. No Anglijas un Vācijas sūta labus nažus uz visām pasaules malām.
25. Redzi, mans dēls, Jāņa un Kārļa šķīvji jau ir tukši, bet tavš šķīvis vēl arvien ir pilns!

26. Lāci guļ visu ziemu līdz pavasarim.
27. Vai Amerikas ziemeļos visur runā angļiski?
28. Es redzēju lāci mežā. Vai tu arī to ieraudzīji?
29. Ieva māc ātri lasīt, bet viņa raksta lēni.
30. Kas tā par laimi dzīvot bez naudas?
31. Arī gudriem vīriem nav skaidrs, kas ir laime.
32. Nepateicīgais bērns vienmēr raud, kad viņam nedod visu, ko viņš grib.
33. Upe šeit tek ļoti lēni.
34. Dziļas upes bieži tek lēni.
35. Es labu laiku slaucīju grīdu, bet tā arvien vēl ir netīra.
36. Jūs izraudzījāt ļoti neauglīgu vietu, tur dārzājus nevar stādīt.
37. Vecas biļetes ir nederīgas: biļetes ir derīgas tikai trīs dienas.
38. Kura zeme pasaulē ir tik brīva, ka tur var darīt, ko grib?
39. Kas par jauku laiku!
40. Es meklēju pareizo vārdu savā vārdnīcā.
41. Mūsu glītā māsiņa ir arī bagāta – kas viņai par laimi!
42. Vai tu māki pareizi locīt vārdu 'zirgs'?
43. Kāpēc viņa meita ir tik nepateicīga?
44. Vecais ārsts bija glīts cilvēks.
45. Cik ilgi tu gaidīji?
46. Bērniem bija bail tumšajā istabā.
47. Zelta lietas Āfrikā nav retas.
48. Mazā Anna uzzīmēja lopus.
49. Es māku zīmēt rokas un kājas, bet es nemāku zīmēt galvas.
50. Mazais Artūrs taisa sev papīra cepuri.
51. Vai Parīze ir tuvu pie Londonas?
52. Slavenais ārsts vienmēr pīpēja pīpi.
53. Dažreiz cilvēki aplaudēja, bet šad un tad kāds arī svilpoja.

Exercise 47i

Translate into Latvian:

1. On the plate were potatoes, peas, cabbages, lettuce and carrots, but only a little meat.
2. Haven't you seen John's knife?
3. Father gave Charles a new knife.
4. Paul is the godfather of his brother's daughter.
5. What did the clever fox say to the old bear?
6. Wolves do not fear bears.
7. In the north of Europe there are huge forests and deep lakes.
8. There are more than five flats in the large house.

9. Give the cats some milk!
10. Do you know what the cat is looking for on the river-bank?
11. Spring is not far away.
12. Spring is still far away.
13. Did you know that in the north of Africa there is more snow than in Latvia?
14. Which is Charles's plate?
15. From which flat can one see the mountains?
16. My wife is afraid of black cats.
17. Baiba trembled with fear when she caught sight of her little brother with a long knife in his hand.
18. Many people are now looking for flats.
19. What a lovely spring!
20. Potatoes can be kept in cellars all winter.
21. Please do not feed the bears.
22. Oh dear, the birds are at the peas again!
23. My mother's brother is the father of John and Charles: I am their cousin.
24. Butchers use long knives in their work, but cobblers have only short knives.
25. In olden times there were many bears in the west of Europe.
26. John's plate is empty.
27. Is your brother's name Charles? – No, I am Charles, and my brother's name is John.
28. In spring the birds fly from Africa to the north.
29. Did you see the peas in the bag? – No, the peas were in the bowl.
30. If that were a silver plate, I would not use it, I would sell it.
31. How much does a bag of potatoes cost here?
32. The soil near rivers is usually fertile.
33. Why does the teacher speak so quickly?
34. Shallow rivers flow quickly; deep rivers flow slowly.
35. Which pipe did you pick out for yourself?
36. "I am usually free on Wednesdays, but I am never free on Saturdays," said Māra.
37. We lived in France for a long time.
38. The old farm-labourer thought that paper-money was useless.
39. Is my translation correct? – No, several words are incorrect.
40. Paul is quite handsome, but it is unlucky for him that he has no money.
41. The pastor usually talks for a long time.
42. You are an ungrateful girl.
43. Why is all happiness so short?
44. Can Aivars still speak Latvian?
45. You need a new ticket: your old ticket is useless.
46. Be thankful that you are good-looking.

47. In the fertile gardens there were many bushes.
48. Do you always think so slowly?
49. Did you sweep under the beds?
50. The wind bent the trees.
51. In winter we wear warm clothing: long socks and warm suits.
52. Blouses, shirts and hats are sold here.
53. The plane is flying in the air.
54. Ask for a time-table at the ticket window on the platform.
55. I want to study many languages.
56. Let us now speak of other things.
57. In Australia people work from Monday until Friday.
58. He lost his platform ticket.
59. All cigarettes are harmful to people.
60. The nest was made of twigs and grass.
61. The hot countries send tea and coffee to the countries in Europe.
62. Our house was empty for fifteen weeks.
63. Don't waste time; it is already eleven o'clock.
64. At what time will you go away? – At seven. – And what is the time now? – Five o'clock.
65. On Tuesdays, Thursdays and Saturdays we work in Riga.

LESSON 48

NUMERALS FROM 20 TO 59.

- | | |
|----|-----------------------------|
| 20 | divdēsmīt (+ gen.) |
| 21 | divdesmīt viens -a |
| 22 | divdesmīt divi -as |
| 23 | divdesmīt trīs |
| 24 | divdesmīt četri -as |
| 25 | divdesmīt pieci -as |
| 26 | divdesmīt seši -as |
| 27 | divdesmīt septiņi -as |
| 28 | divdesmīt astoņi -as |
| 29 | divdesmīt deviņi -as |
| 30 | trīsdēsmīt (+ gen.) |
| 31 | trīsdesmīt viens -a |
| 32 | trīsdesmīt divi -as |
| 33 | trīsdesmīt trīs, and so on. |

- | | |
|----|---------------------------------|
| 40 | četrdesmīt (+ gen.) |
| 41 | četrdesmīt viens -a |
| 42 | četrdesmīt divi -as |
| 43 | četrdesmīt trīs, and so on. |
| 50 | piecdēsmīt (+ gen.) |
| 51 | piecdesmīt viens -a |
| 52 | piecdesmīt divi -as, and so on. |

It will be observed that the round tens all require the genitive case, just like *desmīt* and *divdesmīt* which were studied earlier.

Numbers ending with the unit *one*, viz. 21, 31, 41, etc. are followed by a singular noun, e.g.,

<i>divdesmīt viens vīrs</i>	twenty-one men
<i>ar trīsdesmīt vienu zirgu</i>	with thirty-one horses
<i>četrdesmīt vienā zemē</i>	in forty-one countries
<i>piecdesmīt viena mašīna</i>	fifty-one cars.

The only exception to this principle is when the following noun is used **only** in the plural:

<i>divdesmīt vieni rati</i>	twenty-one carts
-----------------------------	------------------

Vocabulary

Learn the numbers from 21 to 59.

<i>gailis (gaiļa)</i>	rooster	<i>putēkļi (pl.)</i>	dust
<i>papagailis (papagaiļa)</i>	parrot	<i>putēkļains</i>	dusty
<i>stūris (stūra)</i>	corner	<i>kuģis (kuģa)</i>	ship
<i>skapis (skapja)</i>	cupboard	<i>zaglis (zagļa)</i>	thief
<i>Miķēlis (Miķeļa)</i>	Michael		

NOTE: The sing. *puteklis* also exists, meaning 'a speck of dust'.

Exercise 48a

- (a) Count from 20 to 30 with the following nouns: *vilks; rati; zvaigzne*.
- (b) Count from 30 to 40 with the following nouns: *gailis; bikses; zaglis*.
- (c) Count from 40 to 50 with the following nouns: *kuģis; bite; kartupelis*.
- (d) Count from 50 to 59 with the following nouns: *skapis; kurpe; svārki*.

Exercise 48b

Decline in the singular and plural: *tumšs stūris; tukšs skapis; jauns kuģis; kurš nams; tumšais stūris; tukšais skapis; jaunais kuģis; kura aka.*

Exercise 48c

Conjugate in the present, and give the imperative forms: *slaucīt; mācīt; mācēt; sacīt; mocīt; gulēt; izraudzīt; sēdēt; locīt; studēt; runāt; dziedāt; smēķēt; ziedēt; tulkot.*

Exercise 48d

Enumerate the days of the week in the Nominative singular, Locative singular, Locative plural and adverbial forms.

Exercise 48e

Translate into English:

1. Zaglis sēž jau divdesmit vienu gadu, bet drīz viņš būs brīvs. (*Sēdēt* means also 'to cool one's heels in gaol'.)
2. Saimniekam bija vairāk nekā piecdesmit vistu, bet tikai daži gaiļi.
3. Zem skapja vēl ir putekļi, un grīda arī ir putekļaina.
4. Meklējiet grāmatu visos mājas stūros!
5. Es zinu, ka šeit uz kuģa ir zaglis.
6. Austrālijā visās malās var redzēt skaistus papagaiļus.
7. Ir laiks iet mājās; gaiļi jau dzied!
8. Kurā stūrī stāvēs lielais skapis?
9. Skapī ir četrdesmit šķīvju.
10. Ko vecais papagailis saka? – Viņš runā tikai dažus vārdus, ko dzirdēja uz kuģiem.
11. Miķelis strādā jau trīsdesmit vienu gadu par dārznieku.
12. Bīruta drebēja aiz bailēm, kad viņa ieraudzīja zagli zem gultas.
13. Zaļā zāle gar ceļmalu ir ļoti gara.
14. Bļodā ir četrdesmit piecas olas.
15. Lidlaukā stāvēja vairāk nekā trīsdesmit lidmašīnu.
16. Es zinu, kāpēc tev vienmēr sāp kakls – tāpēc, ka tu strādā putekļainā vietā.
17. Tīrīsim visu istabu, aiz skapja un arī zem gultām.
18. Garajam vilcienam bija četrdesmit vagonu.
19. Kalnos gaiss ir tīrs; tur nav putekļu.
20. Trīsdesmit divās dienās kuģis būs Londonā.
21. Gadā ir piecdesmit divas nedēļas.

22. Turiet zagli!
23. Kurā ielas stūrī Miķelis apturēja mašīnu?
24. Miķelis smēķē trīsdesmit cigarešu dienā.
25. Gaiļiem ir skaistas, garas spalvas.
26. Ak, visur ir putekļi!
27. Skapis ir no tumša koka.
28. Ubags sēž putekļainajā ceļmalā.
29. Es lidošu uz Ņujorku, jo kuģis iet ļoti lēni.
30. Kāpēc meitas neslauka putekļus?
31. Mans brālis Jānis ir mūsu dēla Miķeļa krusttēvs.
32. Gaiļiem ir garas, stipras kājas.
33. Cik saimniekam ir cūku? – Diezgan daudz, četrdesmit vai piecdesmit.
34. Kārlis ir Jāņa brālis.
35. Austrālijā ir daudz neauglīgas zemes.
36. Jaukā meitene bija ļoti pateicīga laipnajam vīram, kas viņai palīdzēja.
37. Kāpēc zirņi maksā vairāk nekā kartupeļi?
38. Mēs dzīvosim Anglijas ziemeļos visu pavasari.
39. Cik kaķu tu turi savā dzīvoklī?
40. Kārlis jau ilgu laiku grib pārdot savu dzīvokli.
41. Viņš ir slinks skolnieks un vienmēr atbild nepareizi.
42. Mēs lietosim parastos nažus un dakšīņas.
43. Tavas vecās karotes tagad ir pavisam nederīgas.
44. Visu ziemu lācis gulēja mežā.
45. Cik šķīvju vēl ir skapī?
46. Ja tikai Baiba mani mīlētu... kas par laimi!
47. Kas tev par skaistu kaķi!
48. Ātri, ātri, mēs kavējam laiku!
49. Pavasari atkal ziedēs puķes.
50. Kam tu aizdevi savu jauno nazi?
51. Kāpēc uz mana šķīvja nav zirņu?
52. Mana bagātā krustmeita ir Aivara draudzene.
53. Nestāviet tukšām rokām – še jums glāze vīna!
54. Amerikā runā daudz valodu.
55. Jaunajā veikalā pārdos zeķes, cepures, kreklus, blūzes un uzvalkus.

Exercise 48f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The thief had a large bag full of gold and silver spoons and forks, and other costly things.
2. Far out to sea (=tālu jūrā) Michael saw eleven ships.

3. Early in the morning Māra wiped the dust from the tables and chairs, but now everything is dusty again.
4. The butcher also sells young roosters.
5. Some parrots have green and red feathers.
6. In the cupboard there are glasses, cups and bottles.
7. Around (*aiz*) the corner of the house stood two thieves.
8. If I knew which one of you was the thief, I would not keep quiet.
9. There are fifty flats in the large building. (*nams*)
10. Don't let's wait on the dusty platform.
11. Michael is travelling to London by (*ar* or with loc.) ship.
12. There are some shoes in the corner of the cupboard.
13. The ship is very long and wide.
14. You too would shake with fear if you caught sight of a thief in the cupboard.
15. In which corner of the cellar is the red wine?
16. There are forty plates in the cupboard.
17. On some days forty trains leave from our station.
18. At what time did the cock crow? (*dziedāt*)
19. Where do parrots have their nests?
20. Is Michael afraid to kiss Biruta?
21. The beggar is wearing old clothes, and dusty shoes without laces.
22. Michael worked for thirty years as a doctor on ships.
23. Michael has been working for twenty-three years as a doctor on ships.
24. May we send parrots from Australia to Germany?
25. Why did you stop the car at the corner of the street?
26. Please do not frighten the parrot.
27. There are forty short stories in the book.
28. The rooster is afraid of the fox.
29. The merchant sold fifty-seven bags of rye.
30. The building has forty-eight windows.
31. The teacher has thirty-one pupils.
32. Why is there so much dust on the table?
33. The house is full of dust because there is a strong wind today.
34. Is that the right plate?
35. John and Charles often go to their brother's place.
36. At what time did you feed the cat?
37. In olden times bears were taught to dance in the streets.
38. The potatoes are now so old that they are useless.
39. We do not usually use silver knives and forks.
40. Barren soil is unsuitable for peas, but very suitable for potatoes.
41. Your brother is quite a handsome man.

42. The slow train leaves at nine o'clock, and the fast train leaves at eleven o'clock.
43. Did you give the cat some milk today?
44. No one can say what happiness is.
45. Bears sleep all the winter until spring.
46. My nephew was very grateful for the lovely new knife.
47. Have you been waiting for a long time?
48. Why is it so warm in the kitchen?
49. If you do not obey me, I shall punish you.
50. More people live in Asia than in Europe.
51. Often in summer I am so hot that I cannot work.
52. The pharmacist sold me some very expensive medicine.

LESSON 49

COMPARATIVE DEGREE OF ADJECTIVES

The comparative degree of the Latvian adjective is formed by adding the suffix *-āks* to the stem. Thus

<i>labs</i>	good	gives	<i>labāks</i>	better
<i>skaists</i>	beautiful	gives	<i>skaistāks</i>	more beautiful
<i>vecs</i>	old	gives	<i>vecāks</i>	older
<i>ērts</i>	comfortable	gives	<i>ērtāks</i>	more comfortable

We have already met some forms which are related to these *-āks* comparatives, viz. *mazāk* 'less, fewer'; and *vairāk* 'more'.

This form in *-āks* is the masculine nominative singular indefinite form. The comparative, like the positive, is fully inflected.

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>labāks</i>	<i>labāki</i>	<i>labāka</i>	<i>labākas</i>
Acc.	<i>labāku</i>	<i>labākus</i>	<i>labāku</i>	<i>labākas</i>
Gen.	<i>labāka</i>	<i>labāku</i>	<i>labākas</i>	<i>labāku</i>
Dat.	<i>labākam</i>	<i>labākiem</i>	<i>labākai</i>	<i>labākām</i>
Loc.	<i>labākā</i>	<i>labākos</i>	<i>labākā</i>	<i>labākās</i>

Thus: *labāks zēns* a better boy
ar labākām grāmatām with better books
labākos tulkojumos in better translations

The definite declension is what one would expect:

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>labākais</i>	<i>labākie</i>	<i>labākā</i>	<i>labākās</i>
Acc.	<i>labāko</i>	<i>labākos</i>	<i>labāko</i>	<i>labākās</i>
Gen.	<i>labākā</i>	<i>labāko</i>	<i>labākās</i>	<i>labāko</i>
Dat.	<i>labākajam</i>	<i>labākajiem</i>	<i>labākajai</i>	<i>labākajām</i>
Loc.	<i>labākajā</i>	<i>labākajos</i>	<i>labākajā</i>	<i>labākajās</i>

Thus: *labākie rati* the better cart
pie labākā skolotāja at the better teacher's house
labākajās mājās in the better houses

Vocabulary

<i>smags</i>	heavy	<i>svēšs</i>	foreign, strange
<i>viegls</i>	light; easy	<i>stikls</i>	glass
<i>grūts</i>	difficult	<i>ēna</i>	shade, shadow
<i>prieks</i>	joy	<i>lasīt</i>	to pick, gather, collect
<i>laikam</i>	presumably, probably	<i>oga</i>	berry
<i>varbūt</i>	perhaps	<i>vīnoga</i>	grape

Note the expression *aiz prieka* 'with joy', 'for joy'. Cf. *aiz bailēm*.

Viegls means 'light' only in terms of weight.

Varbūt is accented on the second syllable.

logu stikli 'window panes'

Exercise 49a

Form comparatives from the following adjectives: *smags*; *viegls*; *grūts*; *priecīgs*; *godīgs*; *ātrs*.

Exercise 49b

Decline in the singular and plural: *dziļāks ezers*; *mazāks dzīvoklis*; *interesantākais stāsts*; *jaunākais kuģis*; *zaļāka pļava*; *šaurāka kurpe*; *dārgākā blūze*; *seklākā upe*.

Exercise 49c

- (a) Count from 20 to 40 with the following nouns: *zaglis*; *ola*; *pele*; *kaimiņš*.
 (b) Count from 40 to 59 with the following nouns: *aka*; *kartupelis*; *tejš*; *roze*.

Exercise 49d

Conjugate in the present and imperative: *gulēt*; *sacīt*; *sēdēt*; *locīt*; *ieraudzīt*; *zaudēt*; *mācēt*; *mācīt*; *mocīt*.

Exercise 49e

Translate into English:

- Kad Latvijā ir sniegs un liels sals, tad Austrālijā jau ir vīnogu laiks.
- Miķelis ilgi bija slims; viņš meklē vieglāku darbu.
- Ēnā ogas vēl ir zaļas, bet tur, kur saule spīd, jau ir sarkanās.
- Ievai bija grūtas dienas, kad viņa strādāja smagu darbu pie **nelaipnā** saimnieka.
- Jānis laikam ir priecīgs, ka viņa sieva aizgāja.
- Vecais mācītājs laikam raudāja aiz prieka, kad jūs viņam stāstījāt par viņa slaveno dēlu.
- Smagākais maiss vēl ir ratos.
- Tēvam būtu liels prieks, ja viņa dēls studētu.
- Pudeles parasti taīsa no brūna vai zaļa stikla.
- Aptiekās visas zāles tur zem stikla.
- Viņš varbūt klusētu, ja tu viņam solītu naudu.
- Māte būtu priecīga, ja Biruta viņai palīdzētu virtuvē.
- Strādāsim ēnā; nestrādāsim karstajā saulē!
- Mazā Baiba smaidīja aiz prieka, kad krustmāte viņai iedeva ābolu.
- Cik glītas lietas tagad taīsa no stikla!
- Cik glītu lietu tagad taīsa no stikla?
- Varbūt es tev varu palīdzēt grūtajā uzdevumā.
- Tā ir pavisam viegla dziesma.
- Lai grūto darbu strādā citi!
- Kārlis vienmēr ir priecīgs un laipns zēns.
- Bērni laikam jau guļ.
- Dzeltenās vīnogas ir labākas nekā sarkanās.
- Jau vecos laikos cilvēki mācēja taīst stiklu.
- Jānis strādā grūtu darbu, bet viņš ir laimīgs.
- Kāpēc lielais, smagais skapis stāv šeit mazajā istabā?

26. Mūsu grūtākie gadi bija arī mūsu labākie gadi.
27. Vai jūs man varat palīdzēt? – Lūdzu, ar lielu prieku!
28. Ziemeļu zemēs meži ir bagāti ar ogām.
29. Kurā laikā šeit parasti lasa ogas?
30. Ziemeļos taisa vīnu no ogām un āboliem.
31. Vecā Anna atkal lasa zarus svešajā mežā. (*svešs* here = *belonging to someone else*)
32. Ak, kas par karstu rītu: ēnā arī ir karsti!
33. Kā tu vari svešam cilvēkam aizdot naudu?
34. Tā ir interesanta grāmata par svešām zemēm.
35. Ja zeme būtu auglīgāka, mums varbūt būtu lielāki kartupeļi un kāposti.
36. Jānis un Kārlis ir labi draugi, bet Aivars man ir vēl labāks draugs.
37. Ieva man ir labāka draudzene nekā Māra.
38. Maiss nav smags, tas ir pavisam viegls.
39. Es draudēju zaglim ar nazi.
40. Kāpēc uz Miķeļa šķīvja nav vairāk zirņu?
41. Mēs turam savā dzīvoklī divus papagaiļus un piecus kaķus.
42. Kā tu zināji, ka uz kuģa bija zaglis?
43. Pavasarī ielās ir mazāk putekļu nekā vasarā.
44. Ceļš šodien ir putekļaināks nekā vakar.
45. Gaiļi ir diezgan skaisti putni, bet papagaiļi ir vēl skaistāki.
46. Skapja stūrī bija daudz putekļu.
47. Es nezināju, ka manas kurpes ir tik putekļainas.
48. Es negribētu ceļot ar kuģi: man bail no jūras.
49. Cik pulkstens? – Pulkstens ir astoņi.
50. Svētdienā pulkstens desmitos es varbūt iešu pie Birutas.
51. Austrālijā ir daudz upju, kas vasarā netek.
52. Lokiet vārdu 'tēja'!
53. Ak, kafija ir reti stipra!
54. Vai tu pelni labu naudu? – Tikai šad un tad.
55. Neizraugi bibliotēkā grāmatu, ko tu varbūt nevarēsi lasīt!
56. Nemokiet mani, bērni! Ejiet gulēt!
57. Kāpēc signāli ielu stūros vienmēr ir sarkani, kad man nav laika?
58. Es nezināju, ka tu jau māki zīmēt.

Exercise 49f

Translate into Latvian:

1. In cold countries the berries are usually better than in warm countries.
2. John is doing (*strādāt*) a harder job than Michael.
3. That is an easy task.

4. Do grapes require (*vajadzēt*) fertile soil?
5. Let the children pick berries if they wish!
6. The streets of your city are quite unfamiliar to me.
7. Expensive things can be made from glass.
8. How nice that father was happy!
9. If I lived in Africa, I would probably always sit in the shade.
10. Aivars is a clever boy; he can answer more difficult questions **than** Paul.
11. People often weep for joy.
12. John would probably be happy if Baiba wrote to him.
13. I did not know that paper could be so heavy.
14. Biruta's aunt was very happy about the berries.
15. Have you a lighter suit in the store?
16. Charles earns his bread with hard work.
17. The forests of Latvia are rich in berries.
18. Why is the cupboard made of such heavy timber?
19. Perhaps you did not hear what your father said!
20. It is a warm day; I shall wear my light shoes.
21. Would you be happy if you had to live in the shadow of a famous **father**?
22. Why are the window-panes so dusty?
23. It is not easy to live in a foreign land.
24. Here you must draw shadows.
25. My uncle does not want to go to a strange doctor.
26. Pick only the larger berries!
27. Silver is heavy, but gold is heavier.
28. Windows are usually made of glass.
29. There is a lot of sugar in all grapes.
30. Glass plates are cheaper, but the more expensive plates are **probably** better.
31. It is a great pleasure for the children to swim in the sea.
32. Which is more beautiful, a rooster or a parrot?
33. Who is the more handsome, Michael or Charles?
34. Which is the more intelligent, a bear or a fox?
35. Which are dirtier, rats or mice?
36. Which is heavier, the cupboard or the bed?
37. Which is faster, a plane or a ship? – A plane is faster and a **ship** is slower.
38. If I were rich, I would always be afraid of thieves.
39. Are poor men always sad?
40. Which were dustier, the knives or the forks?
41. Nobody is so free as to be able (*lai varētu*) to do what he wishes.
42. Which is more **expensive**, a pen or a fountain-pen?

43. In spring my elder brother lives in a small flat in Riga.
44. The green peas and white potatoes are on the plates.
45. There was a lot of dust in the corner where the cat was sitting.
46. I must sit in a lighter corner; here it is difficult to read.
47. I would not like to live in the north of Russia in winter.
48. Where is your platform ticket? The conductor wishes to examine it.
49. The intelligent girl student speaks Latvian, Russian, French and German.
50. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday I shall not be at home.
51. I shall be in Ķemeri until Thursday or Friday.
52. They rarely have time-tables at the ticket-office.
53. My dictionary was dearer than yours.
54. I lost all my money on Saturday.
55. Everybody praised and applauded the famous dancer.
56. Our house is very close to the river.

LESSON 50

COMPARISON STRUCTURES

Comparisons are of two types, comparisons of equality and of inequality, and the distinction is formal rather than semantic. *A is as tall as B* is a comparison of equality, and *A is not as tall as B* is also a comparison of equality, although a negative one. Comparisons of equality contain the words *as . . . as*, or *not as . . . as*.

Comparisons of inequality involve a comparative form: *A is taller than B*, *B is shorter than A*, *A is not taller than B*. These are comparisons of inequality, the last example being negative.

In Latvian, comparisons of equality are constructed with the elements *tik . . . kā*. Cf.

<i>Tavs kreklis ir tik balts kā sniegs.</i>	Your shirt is as white as snow.
<i>Latvija nav tik liela kā Amerika.</i>	Latvia is not as big as America.
<i>Jānis ir tik stiprs kā zirgs.</i>	John is as strong as a horse.
<i>Tu neesi tik bagāts kā es.</i>	You are not as rich as I am.

With comparisons of inequality there are two constructions, one with *par* and the accusative – dative in the plural – and another with *nekā*, in which the case of the second element of the comparison is the same as that of the first element. Notice particularly that *nekā* is shortened to *kā* after a negative verb.

Where the comparative form stands immediately before the *than*, the construction with *par* is more common, although *nekā* (or *kā* after a negative verb) is also found.

<i>Viņš ir lielāks par mani.</i>	<i>Viņa ir mazāka par Annu.</i>
<i>Viņš ir lielāks nekā es.</i>	<i>Viņa ir mazāka nekā Anna.</i>
He is bigger than me.	She is smaller than Anne.
<i>Viņš nav lielāks par mani.</i>	<i>Viņa nav mazāka par Annu.</i>
<i>Viņš nav lielāks kā es.</i>	<i>Viņa nav mazāka kā Anna.</i>
He is not bigger than me.	She is not smaller than Anne.

Where the comparative form is separated from the *than* by a noun, *par* becomes impossible, and *nekā* (or *kā*) must be used.

Pāvils ir labāks skolnieks nekā Jānis.
Paul is a better pupil than John.

Pāvils dzīvo lielākā mājā nekā Jānis.
Paul lives in a bigger house than John.

Where the comparative is followed by a clause, *nekā* is again required.
Tulkojums ir grūtāks nekā es domāju.

The translation is more difficult than I thought.

Vocabulary

<i>kā</i>	as, like (in comparisons); than (in negative comparisons of inequality)	<i>viesnīca</i>	hotel
<i>vāvere</i>	squirrel	<i>skurstēnis</i>	chimney
<i>čūska</i>	snake	<i>ķieģelis</i>	brick
<i>nupat</i>	just now	<i>mute</i>	mouth
<i>zīls</i>	blue	<i>aste</i>	tail
<i>katrs</i>	each, every	<i>māls</i> or <i>māli</i> (pl.)	clay

NOTES: *Mute* and *aste* both have an unpalatalized genitive plural: *mutu, astu*.

When *māli* is used in the descriptive genitive, only the singular is found, e.g., *māla bļoda*, etc.

Nupat is stressed on the second syllable.

Exercise 50a

Translate into English:

1. *Es esmu lielāks par tevi.*
2. *Viņš ir čaklāks skolnieks nekā Pāvils.*
3. *Mēs esam vecāki par jums.*
4. *Biruta un Ieva ir skaistākas meitenes nekā Anna.*
5. *Tu esi jaunāks par viņu.*
6. *Viņi ir slinkāki par mums.*
7. *Jānis ir laipnāks vīrs nekā viņa tēvs.*
8. *Kurpnieks ir strādīgāks par miesnieku.*
9. *Zem mazāka koka; zem mazākiem kokiem.*
10. *Pie vecāka ārsta; pie vecākiem ārstiem.*
11. *Ar skaistāku meiteni; ar skaistākām meitenēm.*
12. *Gar platāku upi; gar platākām upēm.*
13. *Līdz interesantākai pilsētai; līdz interesantākām pilsētām.*
14. *Uz labāku skolu; uz labākām skolām.*
15. *Aukstākā zemē; aukstākās zemēs.*
16. *Karstākā dienā; karstākās dienās.*
17. *No gaišāka koka; gaišākos dzīvokļos.*
18. *Sarkanāks ķieģelis; sarkanāki ķieģeļi.*
19. *Tulkojums ir grūtāks nekā es domāju.*
20. *Spalvas ir vieglākas par zeltu.*
21. *Zelts nav tik viegls kā spalvas.*
22. *Māli ir smagāki par putekļiem.*
23. *Putekļi nav tik smagi kā māli.*
24. *Olas tagad ir dārgākas nekā bija vakar.*

Exercise 50b

Form the comparative degree (masculine nominative singular) of the following adjectives: *smags; viegls; grūts; pateicīgs; pareizs; glīts; auglīgs; ātrs; lēns; parasts; garš; īss.*

Exercise 50c

Translate into Latvian:

1. On a colder day; on colder days.
2. In a warmer land; in warmer lands.
3. Potatoes are cheaper than I thought.
4. She is cleverer than you.

5. John is a better gardener than Charles.
6. You are younger than me.
7. Bottles are usually bigger than cups.
8. The teacher is a kinder man than the baker.
9. They are lazier than you.
10. Ships are bigger than planes.
11. Planes are not as big as ships.
12. Behind the larger bush; behind larger bushes.
13. About a shorter song; about shorter songs.
14. A more comfortable chair; more comfortable chairs.
15. Made of darker timber; in darker rooms.
16. My uncle is more honest than my father.
17. My father is not as honest as my uncle.
18. On a bigger plate; on bigger plates.
19. A worse singer; worse singers.
20. With a whiter shirt; with whiter shirts.
21. In a quieter place; in quieter places.
22. Without my older brother; without my older brothers.
23. Anne is a prettier girl than Eve.
24. Paul is a worse teacher than Arthur.
25. Tomatoes are more expensive in winter than in summer.
26. The baker is more industrious than the butcher.
27. Horses are slower than trains.
28. Rats have longer tails than mice.
29. Russia is a bigger country than France.

Exercise 50d

- (a) Count from 1 to 10 with the noun *brālis*.
- (b) Count from 10 to 20 with the noun *ola*.
- (c) Count from 20 to 30 with the noun *svārki*.
- (d) Count from 30 to 40 with the noun *glāze*.
- (e) Count from 40 to 50 with the noun *kaķis*.
- (f) Count from 50 to 59 with the noun *kurpe*.

Exercise 50e

Decline in singular and plural: *lielāka viesnīca; netrāks skurstenis; plašāks dzīvoklis; sarkanāka roze.*

Exercise 50f

Conjugate in the present and imperative: *sacīt; gulēt; sēdēt; locīt; iet.*

Exercise 50g

Translate into English:

1. Kārlis stāvēja ielas stūrī ar cigareti mutē.
2. Vai slavenais rakstnieks ir viesnīcā? – Nē, viņš nupat aizgāja.
3. Melnais kaķis sēž aiz skursteņa.
4. Vai skursteņus taisa tikai no ķieģeļiem?
5. Zilā upe tek gar zaļajām pļavām.
6. Vai katrs no jums zina savu uzdevumu?
7. Ceļmalā ziedēja skaista, zila puķe.
8. Vai kaķiem ir garākas astes nekā vāverēm?
9. Tur pie jums laikam ir garākas čūskas nekā šeit mūsu zemē.
10. Ko tu nupat sacīji?
11. Viesnīcai ir garāki skursteņi nekā pastam.
12. Zemē ir zili, sarkani, pelēki un arī balti māli, bet ķieģeļus parasti taisa no sarkaniem māliem.
13. Māla zeme ir diezgan auglīga.
14. Varbūt mūsu viesnīca būs pavisam tuvu pie skaistās, zilās jūras.
15. Ak, skursteņi ir ligzda!
16. Lūdzu, piedodiet, es nedzirdēju, ko jūs nupat sacījāt!
17. Redzi, lielajai čūskai ir pele mutē!
18. Vai vāverēm ir bail no čūskām?
19. Skolotājs sodīs katru, kas viņam neklausīs.
20. Katrā dzīvoklī mēs redzējam ērtus krēslus, platas gultas un lielus, smagus skapjus.
21. Viesnīca nav tik veca kā pilsētas bibliotēka, bet ir vecāka par aptieku.
22. Anna svilpo kā putns.
23. Ieva nupat aizgāja uz virtuvi, lai vārītu kafiju.
24. Ja katrs tik labi strādātu kā Kārlis, saimnieks būtu priecīgs.
25. Kaķim bija māli pie astes.
26. Vai tu nebūtu bēdīgs, ja tu katru rītu no sava loga redzētu tikai netīrus skursteņus un kaimiņu nama pelēkos, putekļainos ķieģeļus?
27. No kalniem var redzēt līdz zilajiem mežiem, tālu aiz lielās, platās upes.
28. Bērni bieži tur visus pirkstus mutē.
29. Tu laikam domā, ka neviens nav tik gudrs kā tu.
30. Koka ēnā gulēja gara, zaļa čūska.
31. Vīnogas ir dārgākas par citām ogām.

32. Lidmašīnas ir ātrākas par kuģiem.
33. Sudrabs ir vieglāks par zeltu.
34. Varbūt zaglis ir godīgāks nekā es domāju.
35. Ubagi nav vienmēr godīgāki par zagļiem.
36. Miķelis ir mazāks par Jāni.
37. Lāči ir daudz smagāki par vāverēm.
38. Vāveres nav tik smagas kā lāči.
39. Kartupeļi ir lielāki par zirņiem.
40. Zirņi nav tik lieli kā kartupeļi.
41. Mani uzdevumi ir grūtāki nekā tu domā.
42. Anna ir priecīgāka meitene nekā Biruta.
43. Lidmašīnas ir smagākas par gaisu, bet lido.
44. Mans darbs ir grūtāks nekā Pāvila darbs.
45. Parīzes ielas man nav tik svešas kā Ņujorkas ielas.
46. Māte raudāja aiz prieka.
47. Tulkojums bija vieglāks nekā es domāju.
48. Svešās zemēs runā svešas valodas.
49. Loga stikli atkal ir putekļaini.
50. Lasīsim ogas, lai taisītu vīnu!
51. Kas par prieku karstā dienā gulēt ēnā zem liela koka!
52. Kāpēc stikla šķīvji ir lētāki par māla bļodām?

Exercise 50h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did you see the interesting blue flowers in the garden behind the hotel?
2. Just now I saw a small brown snake in the green grass.
3. Snakes have no legs.
4. Don't hold the pen in your mouth!
5. In olden times people made their cups and bowls only of clay.
6. Are squirrels afraid of snakes?
7. Cats are bigger than squirrels, but squirrels have longer tails than cats.
8. He made every brick with his (own) hands.
9. Did you know that snakes cannot hear?
10. Parrots usually have long tails.
11. The post-office in our town is not as big as the hotel, but bigger than the pharmacy.
12. If you were as old as I am, you too would not believe every word you hear.
13. Every day Biruta fed the squirrels under the tree.
14. The mother was shaking with fear, when her small son stood on the chimney.

15. The bricks of the chimney are already quite black.
16. Please do not talk with your mouth full! (=with a full mouth) — But I have only a bit of sugar in my mouth.
17. Clay is fairly heavy.
18. In summer all the hotels are full.
19. He is not as tall as his older brother.
20. In places where there are many rats, boys are paid money for (*par*) each rat's tail.
21. Far, far (away), I can see blue mountains.
22. Far (out) in the blue sea, a white ship was sailing. (= *peldēt*)
23. I heard every word which they spoke just now outside in the garden.
24. You are talking like the pastor!
25. There was a brick floor in the old kitchen.
26. It was lucky for you that you caught sight of the snake's tail.
27. Thank you, I do not smoke.
28. John can make beautiful things out of clay.
29. The rat was holding a small egg in its mouth.
30. Which chimney was taller?
31. The bricks were quite expensive, but he paid in cash.
32. I saw Charles in the street just now.
33. My wife is not as beautiful as her sister.
34. The bed is heavier than the cupboard.
35. Roosters are usually bigger than hens.
36. You are not sweeping the floor very well: there is still dust in all the corners.
37. Michael's shoes are dustier than John's shoes.
38. Are you happier today than you were the day before yesterday?
39. Is pepper heavier or lighter than rice?
40. Help me with my difficult translation.
41. The lemons, onions and flour belong to the butcher.
42. Perhaps we shall be able to pick some berries on Saturday.
43. Aivars wants to travel in foreign lands.
44. In cold countries tomatoes must be planted under glass.
45. Times were more difficult when I was young.
46. It is not a sad song — sing it joyfully.
47. John can pick more berries in one day than Charles in a whole week.
48. Which are more expensive: grapes or berries?
49. The girls danced for joy.
50. Perhaps he is a stranger in our country — let's help him.
51. The cattle were standing in the shade, because it was hot.
52. Do you know how glass is made?
53. Anne wept for joy when the doctor said she was well again.

54. Did you return the skirt and gloves to Eve?
55. Why is pork more expensive than other meat?
56. Little Arthur did not want to go to school.
57. On Mondays we used always to make butter and cheese.
58. Eve has long black hair.
59. The labourers are now working in the enclosure.
60. Why don't you forgive Paul?

LESSON 51

SOME EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS: INTRODUCTION
TO THE NOTION OF ASPECT

Latvian has both simple and compound verbs. Compound verbs are formed from simple verbs with one or other of the following eleven prefixes: *aiz-*, *ap-*, *at-*, *ie-*, *iz-*, *no-*, *pa-*, *pār-*, *pie-*, *sa-* and *uz-*. These prefixes will be studied in detail in later lessons.

All compound verbs have one factor in common, which distinguishes **them** from all simple verbs; a compound verb, irrespective of its dictionary meaning (which may well be identical with that of the corresponding simple verb), implies that *an end is envisaged to the action*, whether in the past, present or future. Conversely, simple verbs imply that *no end is envisaged to the action*. This type of distinction is known as *aspect*. Latvian distinguishes two aspects: (a) the IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT, where no end is envisaged to the action, and (b) the PERFECTIVE ASPECT, where an end is envisaged.

Simple verbs are imperfective; compound verbs are perfective.

Most imperfectives have corresponding perfectives, and vice versa. The vocabulary of this lesson lists just a few of these. Very often, however, more than one perfective verb (cf. below *mazgāt* and *maksāt*) can be formed from one imperfective verb. In such cases, the various perfective verbs have additional meanings, besides that of the perfective aspect in general: cf. *izmazgāt* 'to wash out' and *nomazgāt* 'to wash over'.

The following examples should clarify the general distinction:

Kad jūs mazgājat savus matus?

When do you wash your hair? (Imperfective)

Mēs nomazgājām galdu.

We washed over the tables. (Perfective)

Meitenes izmazgāja blūzes.

The girls washed out their blouses. (Perfective)

Mēs vienmēr maksājām skaidrā naudā.

We used always to pay cash. (Imperfective)

Es šorīt samaksāju par galdiem un krēsliem.

This morning I paid for the tables and chairs. (Perfective)

Kad jūs nomaksāsīt māju?

When will you finish paying for your house? (Perfective)

Jānis vēl nemāk lasīt.

John still cannot read. (Imperfective)

Es vakar izlasīju divas interesantas grāmatas.

I read two interesting books yesterday. (Perfective)

Vai ogas šeit var lasīt vasarā?

Can berries be picked here in summer? (Imperfective)

Mēs vakar salasījām daudz ogu.

Yesterday we picked a lot of berries. (Perfective)

Es vienmēr rakstu ar spalvu un tinti.

I always write with pen and ink. (Imperfective)

Vai jūs uzrakstīsīt tulkojumu?

Will you write out the translation? (Perfective)

Kā tu pelni maizi?

How do you earn your living? (Imperfective)

Cik tu nopelni vienā gadā?

How much do you earn in a year? (Perfective)

Saule riet rietumos.

The sun sets in the west. (Imperfective)

Saule norietēja sešos.

The sun set at six. (Perfective)

Katru piektdienu skolnieki rāda skolotājam savus uzdevumus.

Every Friday the pupils show the teacher their work. (Imperfective)

Parādiet man savu biļeti, lūdzu!

Show me your ticket, please. (Perfective)

Mazā Anna jau māc skaitīt.

Little Anne can already count. (Imperfective)

Saskaitiet visas tases un glāzes!

Count up all the cups and glasses. (Perfective)

Vārdi mani nebiedē.

Words don't frighten me. (Imperfective)

Vai es tevi sabiedēju?

Did I frighten you? (Perfective)

Vocabulary

<i>nomazgāt</i> (perfective)	to wash (with the particular nuance of washing over a surface of some kind)
<i>izmazgāt</i> (perfective)	to wash (with the particular nuance of washing out an interior, or some permeable material, e.g., hair, clothes)
<i>samaksāt</i> (perfective)	to pay (with <i>par</i> , to pay 'for')
<i>nomaksāt</i> (perfective)	to pay off, to finish paying for (cannot be construed with <i>par</i>)
<i>izlasīt</i> (perfective)	to read; <i>often</i> to read through
<i>salasīt</i> (perfective)	to pick; <i>often</i> to pick a stated quantity
<i>uzrakstīt</i> (perfective)	to write; <i>often</i> to write down, write out
<i>nopelnīt</i> (perfective)	to earn; <i>often</i> to earn a stated amount
<i>norietēt</i> (perfective)	to set (with the particular nuance of setting completely)
<i>parādīt</i> (perfective)	to show (with the implication that the showing has been, is being or will be brought to an end)
<i>saskaitīt</i> (perfective)	to count; <i>often</i> to count up
<i>sabiedēt</i> (perfective)	to frighten (with the implication that the frightening is somewhat more successfully managed than would be implied by the use of the simple verb <i>biedēt</i>)

Exercise 51a

Translate into Latvian:

1. Gold is heavier than silver.
2. Paul is a more grateful child than Aivars.
3. The translation is easier than I thought.
4. In Latvia the soil is more fertile than in Australia.
5. He earns more money than me.
6. She has more plates than us.
7. Silver is not as expensive as gold.
8. The river is not as deep as the ocean.
9. The cobbler is richer than the gardener.
10. Usually there are fifty-two weeks and one day in a year, but sometimes there are fifty-two weeks and two days.

Exercise 51b

Decline in the singular and plural: *sekls šķīvis; lielā viesnīca; smagais skapis.*

Exercise 51c

Count in Latvian from 1 to 59.

Exercise 51d

Translate into English:

1. Ej, nomazgā rokas!
2. Baiba agri no rīta izmazgāja savas blūzes un zeķes un arī tēva kreklus.
3. Piedodiet, jūs laikam nesamaksājāt par cigaretēm!
4. Deviņos gados Jānis nomaksāja māju un mašīnu.
5. Es izlasīju interesanto grāmatu, par kuru tu man stāstīji.
6. Mēs salasījām visus ābolus.
7. Kārlis uzrakstīja īsu zinātnisku darbu par bitēm.
8. Cik tu nopelni jaunajā vietā?
9. Kad saule norietēja, mēs drīz ieraudzījām dažas zvaigznes.
10. Kas var parādīt ceļu uz Ķemeriem?
11. Vai tu saskaitīji glāzes un tases skapī? – Nē, es vēl skaitu.
12. Kad Biruta mežā lasīja ogas, viņu sabiedēja čūska.
13. Es nomazgāju kaklu un izmazgāju matus.
14. Mašīnu es samaksāju skaidrā naudā, un arī māju es drīz nomaksāšu.
15. Uzraksti uz papīra, cik tu nopelni vienā gadā!
16. Parādiet man, kur saule šeit parasti noriet!
17. Es nevaru saskaitīt visas čūskas, kuras sabiedēja manu sievu, kad mēs ceļojām Āfrikas ziemeļos.
18. Es samaksāju lielu naudu par kuģa biļeti.
19. Viņš man parādīja vecu grāmatu, kas piederēja viņa tēvam.
20. Es izlasīju grāmatu, ko tu man aizdevi.
21. Katru nedēļu mēs dodam Annai netīrās zeķes un blūzes, kuras viņa tad izmazgā pie akas.
22. Kārlis uzrakstīs zinātnisku grāmatu.
23. Kas sabiedēja mazo Māru tumšajā pagrabā?
24. Vasarā Eiropas ziemeļos saule riet, bet tā nenoriet pavisam.
25. Lai meitenes izmazgā visas putekļainās pudeles!

26. Es viņai samaksāju, lai viņa izmazgātu manus kreklus.
27. Skolotājs nekad nenopelnīs tik daudz, lai varētu nomaksāt tik dārgu mašīnu.
28. Ja es nemaksātu par māju, man būtu vairāk naudas citām lietām.
29. Vai tu saskaitīji visas tases, ko Ieva nomazgāja?
30. No vīnogām taisa vīnu.
31. Viesnīca nav tik liela kā bibliotēka.
32. Skurstenis ir no māla ķieģeļiem.
33. Pudele bija no zila stikla.
34. Neturi karoti mutē!
35. Eiropas viesnīcās runā daudz valodu.
36. Dārzā nupat bija ēna, bet tagad spīd saule.
37. Meitenes dejoja aiz prieka.
38. Viņam nevajaga daudz, lai viņš būtu priecīgs.
39. Gailis nupat dziedāja pagalmā.
40. Austrālijā bieži redz namus bez skursteņiem.
41. Putekļi ir vieglāki par māliem.
42. Bērni, nerunājiet ar pilnu muti!
43. Puķes bija tik baltas kā sniegs.
44. Uz galda bija trīs pudeles zilās tintes.
45. Otrdien vai trešdien es aiziešu pie tevis.
46. Ejiet ārā, bērni, nemokiet tēvu ar saviem jautājumiem!
47. Piektdien mums vajadzēs locīt visus jaunus vārdus.
48. Artūrs vienmēr izrauga sev platas, dzeltenas kakla saites.
49. Cikos tu svētdien būsi pie manis? – Pulksten četros vai piecos.

Exercise 51e

Translate into Latvian:

1. It is good that we picked all the berries today.
2. Did the man pay for the roses?
3. We showed the conductor our tickets just now.
4. The girls washed the clay off the floor.
5. The pupil wrote down all he knew.
6. The pharmacist counted all the medicine bottles in the small cupboard.
7. Did you read Aivars's letter?
8. Did you count the shirts which Baiba washed?
9. We earned very little with the berries which we picked.
10. Oh dear, you frightened me!
11. With the money I earned, I paid off the house and a few other things.

12. Count the bricks, and write down on a sheet (*lapa*) of paper how many there are.
13. Didn't you read the book?
14. It is so hot; I shall be happy when the sun sets. – The sun is already setting.
15. He probably earns so much money that he could pay cash for the expensive car.
16. Nobody can count all the stars.
17. I shall show you the spot on the roadside where the big snake frightened us.
18. Did you pay for the hotel room?
19. It was not difficult to pay off the house.
20. Did you wash every cup?
21. I would pay her well, if she washed my socks.
22. I washed my dusty hair.
23. The sun is now setting behind the hills.
24. I sat in the shade, and wrote down all the words I know.
25. Did he read the scientific work about glass?
26. Show me what you gathered there.
27. The sun set at ten o'clock.
28. The shirt which my niece washed is as white as snow.
29. On Wednesdays I usually go to the bank.
30. Where can I wash my hands?
31. The boys were standing around (*aiz*) the corner in order to frighten their friend Michael.
32. Read the book through, and tell me what you think about it.
33. The house is unfamiliar to me: I do not know where I can wash my hands here.
34. The house was so expensive, and the loan so great, that we shall finish paying for it only in forty-five years.
35. The rooster has already been singing for a long time.
36. I paid off my house in twenty-four years.
37. Gardeners earn more money in summer than in winter.
38. Show me the right road to Ķemeri.
39. In our town all the chimneys are made of clay bricks.
40. In Africa the snakes are longer than in Europe.
41. It is easy to frighten a squirrel.
42. The old hotel has forty-eight chimneys.
43. Did you count all the blue plates?
44. What did you say just now?
45. Let us go and pick berries.
46. Be thankful that happiness is not expensive.
47. A chair stood in each corner of the room.

48. Anne has a pretty mouth, and still prettier hands.
49. How many teeth do people have? – People have thirty-two teeth.
50. In spring the days are warmer than in winter.
51. The ship is so slow that we shall be in London only in thirty-seven **days**.
52. The soil here is more fertile than in Australia.
53. When did you finish paying off your house and car?

LESSON 52

THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE OF THE ADJECTIVE

In Latvian, the superlative degree of the adjective is identical with the comparative degree, except that, by its very nature, it occurs only in the **definite** form. Latvian thus has no formal distinction between 'the better boy' and 'the best boy'.

<i>labākais zēns</i>	the best boy <i>or</i> the better boy
<i>skaistākā meitene</i>	the most beautiful girl <i>or</i> the more beautiful girl
<i>vecākajās grāmatās</i>	in the oldest books <i>or</i> in the older books
<i>ar slinkākajiem skolniekiem</i>	with the laziest pupils <i>or</i> with the lazier pupils

Often the prefix *vis-* is added to the superlative adjective. This prefix is **unstressed**, the accent being retained on the first syllable of the adjective **proper**.

<i>vislabākais zēns</i>	the best boy
<i>visvecākajās grāmatās</i>	in the oldest books
<i>visskaistākā meitene</i>	the most beautiful girl
<i>ar visslinkākajiem skolniekiem</i>	with the laziest pupils

The declension is exactly the same as for any definite adjective:

Masc. Sing.	-ais	-o	-ā	-ajam	-ajā
Masc. Pl.	-ie	-os	-o	-ajiem	-ajos
Fem. Sing.	-ā	-o	-ās	-ajai	-ajā
Fem. Pl.	-ās	-ās	-o	-ajām	-ajās

Vocabulary

<i>avīze</i>	newspaper	<i>vītols</i>	willow tree
<i>pavadīt</i>	to spend (of time)	<i>skābs</i>	sour
<i>ērglis</i>	eagle	<i>salds</i>	sweet
<i>ceļis</i>	knee	<i>siena</i>	wall
<i>puisis</i>	fellow, lad; farm-hand	<i>griesti</i> (pl.)	ceiling
<i>liepa</i>	linden tree	<i>ievārījums</i>	jam

NOTE the expression *skābi kāposti* 'sauerkraut'.

Exercise 52a

Decline in the singular and plural: *mazākais dzīvoklis; lielākais šķīvis*.

Exercise 52b

- Count from 20 to 30 with the noun *ķieģelis*.
- Count from 30 to 40 with the noun *vēstule*.
- Count from 40 to 50 with the noun *kurpe*.
- Count from 50 to 59 with the noun *nazis*.

Exercise 52c

Form the comparative and superlative degrees of the following: *skābs; salds; labs; slikts; bagāts; nabadzīgs*.

Exercise 52d

Conjugate in the present tense, giving the four imperative forms: *sēdēt; mācīt; sacīt; gulēt; izraudzīt*.

Exercise 52e

Translate into English:

- Man sāp ceļi, tāpēc ka es nupat mazgāju grīdu.
- Puiši uzrakstīja muļķīgus vārdus uz sienas.
- Es jums parādīšu visvecāko liepu mūsu mežā.

- Kāpēc ievārījums ir tik skābs?
- Piedodiet, vai jūs avīzi jau izlasījāt?
- Kad saule riet, tad uz baltajām namu sienām ir garas ēnas.
- Vītulus parasti redz gar upmalām.
- Nestāviet gar sienām, puiši, dejojiet!
- Vai tu gribi tēju ar saldu ievārījumu?
- Kāpēc griesti ir tumšāki par sienām?
- Kad liepas ziedēs, bitēm būs liels darbs.
- Eiropā nav daudz ērgļu.
- Ērgļi taisa savas ligzdas no zariem.
- Skābie kāposti ir pagrabā.
- Mēs pavadījām austrumos piecus gadus.
- Mēs stāvējām mālos līdz ceļiem.
- No vītolu zariem var taisīt skaistas lietas.
- Man sāp kāja zem ceļa.
- Avīzē bija tikai daži vārdi par slavenā rakstnieka jaunāko darbu.
- Puisis stāv ielas stūrī un pārdod avīzes.
- Saldais vīns ir stiprāks par skābo.
- Jānis ir glītāks puisis nekā Aivars.
- Mēs visi sēdējām vecās liepas ēnā.
- Kur jūs pavadīsiet savas brīvās dienas?
- Vāverēm ir bailes no ērgļa.
- Ak, uz griestiem atkal ir mušas!
- Kurā glāzē ir vissaldākais ievārījums?
- Citrons ir skābāks nekā es domāju.
- Iedod man vienu avīzes lapu! (*avīzes lapa = a sheet of newspaper*)
- Es esmu priecīga, ka jūs pavadījāt savu brīvo laiku pie krusttēva tik jauki.
- Visas ogas neder ievārījumam.
- Griesti varētu būt gaišāki.
- Cik lielas ir ērgļu olas?
- Liepa ir mans mīļākais koks.
- Vītoliem ir šauras lapas.
- Griesti laikam nav tik putekļaini kā sienas.
- Lielais vītols ceļmalā varbūt ir vecākais koks visā pilsētā.
- Netici Ievas saldajiem vārdiem; viņa ir čūska!
- Mēs pavadījām trīs jaukas dienas Ķemerose.
- Mēs nomaksājām māju trīsdesmit četrus gadus.
- Salasīsim dārzā ogas ievārījumam!
- Cik tu tagad nopelni?
- Mežā mūs sabiedēja liela čūska.
- Mēs samaksājām par savu istabu viesnīcā skaidrā naudā.
- Anna virtuvē izmazgāja savas blūzes.

46. Neviens nevar saskaitīt visas zvaigznes.
47. Es nupat samaksāju par ķieģeļiem.
48. Cik viesnīcai ir skursteņu? – Es nezinu. Saskaitīsim! Astoņi.
49. Meitenes nomazgās logus un izmazgās kreklus.
50. Vai tu tik īsā laikā salasīji pilnu bļodu ogu?
51. Aivaram tagad nav naudas, jo viņš nupat nomaksāja māju un mašīnu.
52. Šorīt es lasīju avīzē par svešu rakstnieku, kurš pavadīs trīs nedēļas mūsu pilsētā.
53. Lai katrs skolnieks uzraksta savu vārdu uz papīra lapas!
54. Es ceru šodien nopelnīt daudz naudas.
55. Tālu ziemeļos saule vasarā nenoriet.
56. Parādi man grāmatu, ko tu izraudzīji sev bibliotēkā!
57. Veikalnieks rādīja bagātai kino zvaigznei cepures un kurpes.
58. Ko tu kūpstīji dārzā, Baibu vai Ievu?
59. Gaidiet, lūdzu, Kārlis drīz būs mājās!
60. Mēs gaidījām uz aukstā perona trīs stundas.

Exercise 52f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Which jam is the sweetest and which is the sourest?
2. The walls of the hotel are blue.
3. The boys are looking for nests in the old willow-tree.
4. The linden-trees will soon be blooming.
5. Wash the clay off your knees.
6. Is that an eagle's feather?
7. Mother will make jam from the berries we picked.
8. Why is every wall white?
9. There is an interesting story in the paper about eagles in Australia.
10. In which bottle is the sweetest wine?
11. How long has your knee been hurting?
12. Are eagles' tails very long?
13. Where did the boys spend the whole day?
14. I read the paper just now.
15. Do willows also bloom?
16. Have you paid the boy for the newspaper?
17. Do eagles live long?
18. The sauerkraut is in the shallow bowl.
19. In some old houses the ceiling is of timber.
20. Now everywhere the linden-trees are blooming.

21. We spent the hot days in the shade of the willows on the bank of the river.
22. Boys usually wear socks up to the knees.
23. The sweet jam is now sour; it is useless.
24. Do you see something on the ceiling?
25. He always has sweet words in his mouth.
26. Lemons are much sourer than apples.
27. "Show me your bad (*slims*) knee," said the doctor.
28. The linden-trees already have yellow leaves, but the leaves of the willows are still green.
29. How much sugar does jam require?
30. Sheets of newspaper were flying in the wind as high as (*līdz*) the roofs and chimneys of the houses.
31. Charles spent long years in Germany and France; he now speaks French and German well.
32. Write down all the places where you spent more than one year.
33. The large snake frightened the small squirrel.
34. Show me the oldest tree in the forest.
35. Let us use only our best cups and glasses.
36. Anne was washing her best blouse.
37. I didn't have time to read the paper this morning.
38. Write down how much you earn.
39. You have more money than me because I paid for a more expensive car than you.
40. Wash only the dirtiest shirts.
41. Pick only the largest berries.
42. Why did the labourer say that he earned more than the doctor?
43. Did you pay off your house?
44. The teacher counted his thirty-eight pupils.
45. Go and wash your hands.
46. Did you pay for the cigarettes?
47. The train departed from the station.
48. Time-tables are sold at the ticket-window.
49. The engine-driver was talking to the conductor on the platform.
50. Do they always examine tickets at the airport?
51. Now and then my father sends me money.
52. In America he worked as a butcher.
53. In Asia the summers are very hot, but there are severe frosts in winter.

LESSON 53

FEMININE FORM OF NOUNS IN *-ĀJS* AND *-NIEKS*

Most nouns ending in *-ājs* have a corresponding feminine form in *-āja*:

<i>skolotājs</i>	a (man) teacher
<i>skolotāja</i>	a (woman) teacher
<i>dziedātājs</i>	a (man) singer
<i>dziedātāja</i>	a (woman) singer

Similarly, most nouns ending in *-nieks* have a corresponding feminine form in *-niece*:

<i>saimnieks</i>	a farmer; landlord
<i>saimniece</i>	a farmer's wife; housekeeper; landlady
<i>skolnieks</i>	schoolboy
<i>skolniece</i>	schoolgirl

Vocabulary

<i>ābele</i>	apple-tree	<i>alga</i>	salary, wages
<i>ozols</i>	oak-tree	<i>augsts</i>	high
<i>mēbeles</i> (pl.)	furniture	<i>zems</i>	low
<i>tālrunis</i>	telephone	<i>pēc</i> (+ gen.)	after
<i>numurs</i>	number	<i>pirms</i> (+ gen.)	before
<i>peļņu trauks</i>	ashtray	<i>sieviete</i>	woman

NOTES: The prepositions *pēc* and *pirms* will both, of course, govern the dative in the plural.

Pēc can be used only as a preposition; *pirms*, on the other hand, can be used both as a preposition and as a conjunction:

<i>pirms vakara</i>	before evening
<i>pirms saule riet</i>	before the sun sets

Pirms can also mean 'ago', cf.

<i>pirms divām stundām</i>	two hours ago
<i>pirms dažām nedēļām</i>	a few weeks ago

Notice particularly the two translations of 'in two hours':

- (a) *divās stundās* in the space of two hours
 (b) *pēc divām stundām* at the end of two hours

The singular *mēbele* means 'an item of furniture'.

Exercise 53a

Form feminine nouns corresponding to: *dejojājs*; *dārznieks*; *tirgotājs*; *veikalnieks*; *rakstnieks*; *dziedātājs*; *skolnieks*; *saimnieks*; *skolotājs*.

Exercise 53b

Form the comparative and superlative degrees of: *negodīgs*; *augsts*; *zems*; *skābs*; *salds*.

Exercise 53c

Count from 1 to 59.

Exercise 53d

Translate into English:

- Ozola mēbeles ir ļoti smagas.
- Šeit sievietēm maksā zemākas algas nekā citās zemēs.
- Pirms divām stundām pelnu trauks vēl nebija pilns.
- Dodiet man savu tālruņa numuru!
- Salasīsim visus ābolus, kas ir zem lielās ābeles!
- Jāņa mājas numurs ir laikam divdesmit septiņi. – Nē, viņa mājas numurs ir lielāks.
- Ērgļu ligzdas parasti ir tikai augstākajos kokos.
- Mūsu mājai ir zemi griesti.
- Kā var zināt, cik muļķīgs sieviešu apģērbs būs pēc dažiem gadiem?
- Parādiet, lūdzu, savas biļetes! Kuram no jums ir zemākais numurs?
- Uzraksti mašīnas numuru uz papīra lapas!
- Man mašīnas nav, jo es vēl maksāju par savām mēbelēm.
- No māliem taisa skaistus pelnu traukus.
- Es parasti izlasu avīzi pēc darba vilcienā.
- Augstos kalnos gaiss vienmēr ir auksts.
- No skolotāja algas ir grūti dzīvot (*dzīvot no = to live on, from*).

17. Sievietes var viegli sabiedēt.
18. Pēc dažiem gadiem daudz skolnieču jau būs studentes.
19. Mums dzīvoklī nav tālruņa, bet mēs varam lietot saimnieces tālruni.
20. Cerēsim, ka būsīm mājās, pirms saule noriet!
21. Pirms gada es pelnīju mazāk nekā tagad.
22. Kurš ir augstākais kalns pasaulē?
23. Kurā avīzes numurā tu lasīji par augstākām algām?
24. Gudri putni netaisa savas ligzdas zemos zaros.
25. Kas par laimi, ka ābeles ziedēja tikai pēc lielās salnas.
26. Vakar mūsu ābeļu dārzā bija zagļi.
27. Pirms dažām nedēļām kuģis vēl bija Londonā.
28. Ja jūsu celis pēc nedēļas nebūs vesels, ārsts jums dos citas zāles.
29. Pirms dažiem gadiem šeit bija tikai mazas, zemas mājas.
30. Kad Māra izmazgās pelnu trauku, tas atkal spīdēs.
31. Es redzēju, ka tu atkal runāji ar svešu sievieti.
32. Grīda ir no ozola, bet sienas ir no vieglāka koka.
33. Mūsu mācītāja alga nav liela, bet viņam ir arī sava zeme, kur viņš tur lopus un vistas.
34. Ak, mana jaunā pildspalva ir netīrajā pelnu traukā!
35. Kurš rakstnieks raksta savos darbos par zelta ābeli un zelta āboliem?
36. Saimnieks bija vīrs kā ozols.
37. Vai saimniece samaksāja tirgotājam par ievāriņumu?
38. Es nupat nomazgāju visus šķīvjus.
39. Latvijas rakstnieki un rakstnieces vasarā bieži pavada dažas dienas Ķemeros.
40. Dejojājām ir stipras kājas.
41. Ērgļi pavada ziemu aukstās zemēs.
42. Puisim sāpēja celis, viņam vajadzēja iet pie ārsta.
43. Vītolu lapas ir garākas par liepu lapām, bet liepu lapas ir platākas.
44. Mans vīrs domā, ka salds vīns der tikai sievietēm.
45. Ievāriņums ir pavisam skābs, tas ir nederīgs.
46. Kāpēc sienas ir tumšākas par griestiem?
47. Latvijā nav tik daudz čūsku kā Āfrikā.
48. Austrālijas austrumos zeme ir auglīgāka nekā rietumos.
49. Pateicīgais ubags raudāja aiz prieka, kad mēs viņam iedevām cepuri un kreklu.
50. Kāpēc zem skapjiem ir tik daudz putekļu?
51. Es skaitīju skurstenī katru ķieģeli. – Cik tu saskaitīji? – Piecdesmit astopus.

Exercise 53e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The train will leave in two hours.
2. I do not know the number of his flat.
3. Rooms with high ceilings are usually cold in winter.
4. In eastern Asia there are still places without a telephone.
5. Let us hope there will be no frost when the apple-trees are blooming.
6. Some years ago teachers' salaries were lower than (they are) now.
7. That is a very heavy ashtray.
8. The floor is of oak.
9. Women's wages here are not high.
10. Women's shoes are not sold here.
11. Eagles still live in the high mountains.
12. How much did you earn in the furniture shop? – The salary was quite good, but I had to work long hours.
13. There is wine in the tall (*augsts*) glasses, but what is in the short (*zems*) glasses?
14. After work he only reads the paper, and then goes to bed (*iet gulēt*).
15. Six years ago women's skirts were much longer, but now the knees can be seen.
16. In the oak-tree there is a squirrel's nest.
17. Apple-trees may be planted only in spring.
18. Didn't you hear the telephone?
19. The edges of the ashtray are still dusty.
20. Write down your telephone number.
21. Where will the furniture stand?
22. Do you also sell ashtrays in your furniture shop?
23. I would work without wages if I had a free flat.
24. Why is the bed so low?
25. The oak-tree is very tall (*garš*).
26. I planted the apple-tree eleven years ago.
27. In two hours the boy will be home.
28. A year ago we still had no telephone.
29. Many women work in hotels.
30. The oak-tree in our garden is much older than the apple-tree.
31. Is the ashtray made of glass?
32. After winter it is spring, and after spring, summer.
33. Excuse me, you did not pay for the newspaper.
34. In our garden there are many willows and a few linden-trees.
35. Did you spend a long time in New York?
36. Where do eagles and other birds spend the winter?

37. The boy keeps two squirrels in his father's flat.
 38. The walls and the ceiling are of heavy timber.
 39. Which is the sweetest jam?
 40. In the north, where it is very cold, willows and linden-trees are not to be seen.
 41. What is the matter with you? – I have a plate, but no knife.
 42. If you frighten your little brother, I shall punish you.
 43. Can jam be made of grapes?
 44. Today the children were picking berries.
 45. Blue walls are more beautiful than dirty grey walls.
 46. Tea with sugar is sweeter than tea with lemon.
 47. Mother is cooking sauerkraut today.
 48. Charles will wash the car, and Michael will wash the dirty socks.
 49. I have a pain in my leg, and cannot bend my knee.
 50. Show me exactly where the sun sets.
 51. Is our rooster not the finest in the whole world?
 52. Oh dear, the wine is quite sour!
 53. Why do you think that bears can only go slowly?
 54. Did you count all the new plates?
 55. How much did you pay for your furniture?
 56. Which of you frightened the parrot?

LESSON 54

CONJUGATION OF LONG VERBS IN *-ĪT* AND *-ŪT*

Long verbs in *-Īt* and *-Ūt* are conjugated like long verbs in *-āt*, *-ēt* and *-ot*, with the substitution (respectively) of *ī* and *ū* for *ā*, *ē* and *o*.

medīt 'to hunt'

Present

<i>es med-īj-u</i>	Imperfect:	<i>medīju, -īji, -īja, -ījām, -ījāt, -īja.</i>
<i>tu med-ī</i>		
<i>viņš med-ī</i>	Future:	<i>medīšu, -īsi, -īs, -īsim, -īsīt, -īs.</i>
<i>mēs med-īj-am</i>		
<i>jūs med-īj-at</i>	Conditional:	<i>medītu, -ītu, etc.</i>
<i>viņi med-ī</i>	Imperatives:	<i>medī! medījiet! medīsim! lai medī!</i>

dabūt 'to obtain, get'

Present

<i>es dab-ūj-u</i>	Imperfect:	<i>dabūju, -ūji, -ūja, -ūjām, -ūjāt, -ūja.</i>
<i>tu dab-ū</i>		
<i>viņš dab-ū</i>	Future:	<i>dabūšu, -ūsi, -ūs, -ūsīm, -ūsīt, -ūs.</i>
<i>mēs dab-ūj-am</i>		
<i>jūs dab-ūj-at</i>	Conditional:	<i>dabūtu, -ūtu, etc.</i>
<i>viņi dab-ū</i>	Imperatives:	<i>dabū! dabūjiet! dabūsim! lai dabū!</i>

There are very few long verbs in *-Īt*, and only one in *-Ūt*.

Vocabulary

<i>dabūt (-ūju, -ūju)</i>	to obtain, get	<i>baznīca</i>	church
<i>mēdīt (-īju, -īju)</i>	to hunt	<i>mēdnieks</i>	hunter
<i>svētīt (-īju, -īju)</i>	to bless	<i>zvērs</i>	(wild) animal
<i>iesvētīt (-īju, -īju)</i>	to confirm, to consecrate	<i>(meža) pīle</i>	(wild) duck
<i>kristīt (-īju, -īju)</i>	to baptize	<i>draudze</i>	congregation, parish
<i>dievs, Dievs</i>	a god, God		

In the word *dievs*, the *-v-* is silent in the nominative singular only, cf. *rēvs*.

Exercise 54a

Conjugate in the present tense only: *medīt*; *kristīt*; *dabūt*; *svētīt*; *lasīt*; *iesvētīt*.

Exercise 54b

Give the imperative parts of: *iesvētīt*; *slaucīt*; *sēdēt*; *medīt*; *gulēt*.

Exercise 54c

Give the comparative and superlative degrees of: *augsts*; *zems*; *salds*; *skābs*; *smags*; *viegls*; *grūts*; *jauks*; *lēns*.

Exercise 54d

Decline the personal pronouns *es*, *tu*, *viņš* and *viņa* in the singular and plural.

Exercise 54e

Translate into English:

1. Mācītājs svētī draudzi Dieva vārdā.
2. Kaķis medī peles un žurkas.
3. Krusttēvs raksta: "Es šeit Āfrikā medīju lielus zvērus."
4. Visvecākajos laikos cilvēki dzīvoja mežos, viņiem vēl nebija lopu un lauku, viņi bija tikai mednieki.
5. Vecais draudzes mācītājs, kurš mūs kristīja un iesvētīja, svētdien pulksten divos iesvētīs jauno baznīcu.
6. Redzēsīm, cik piļu mūsu slavenais mednieks šodien dabūs!
7. Zvēru dārzā (*zvēru dārzs = zoological gardens, zoo*) var redzēt zvērus no visām pasaules malām.
8. Vai jūsu bērnu kristīs baznīcā? – Nē, mācītājs viņu kristīs mājās, jo ārā ir liels sals.
9. Vai tu dabūji Jāņa tālruņa numuru?
10. Cik tu dabūsi par veco mašīnu?
11. Mācītājs šodien iesvētīs jauno draudzes skolu.
12. Pavasarī nedrīkst medīt meža pīles.
13. Kur ir skaistais, smagais pelnu trauks, ko tu dabūji no krusttēva?
14. Katram zvēram ir bailes no medniekiem.
15. Mednieka apģērbs parasti ir zaļš, lai zvēri viņu tik viegli neieraudzītu.
16. Pirms trijām nedēļām draudze dabūja jaunu mācītāju.
17. Cik baznīcu ir jūsu pilsētā?
18. Kad mūs iesvētīja, mēs vēl bijām skolnieki un skolnieces.
19. Mācītājs ir Dieva kalps. (Note this extended meaning of *kalps*.)
20. Mūsu baznīcai ir augsti, šauri logi ar dārgiem stikliem.
21. Mūsu mazajā pilsētā ir divas draudzes.
22. Piļu olas ir drusku lielākas par vistu olām.
23. Krustmāte tur bērnu, ko mācītājs kristī.
24. Meža piļu ligzdas ir ezera malā.
25. Mans brālis lasa avīzi vecā ozola ēnā.
26. Lūdzu, uzrakstiet savu tālruņa numuru!
27. Liepas parasti ir augstākas par ābelēm.
28. Puiši pavada vasaru smagā darbā.
29. Kāpēc zem mēbelēm un gar sienām ir tik daudz putekļu?
30. Visas mūsu mēbeles ir no ozola.
31. Kārļa un Miķeļa sievas pelna labu naudu.
32. Griesti ir ļoti zemi un tumši.
33. Kāpēc jūs turat pelnu trauku uz ceļiem? Vai šeit nav galda?
34. Kalnos mednieki medī lielus ērgļus.
35. Citroni ir skābi, un cukurs salds.

36. Amerikā ir labākas algas nekā Āfrikā.
37. Kur ir mūsu mājas sievietes? – Ieva un Baiba ir dārzā, bet Māra un Anna ir dzīvoklī.
38. Pasaulē laikam ir vairāk rakstnieku nekā rakstnieču.
39. Pēc diviem es nebūšu mājās.
40. Es viņam jautāju, kāpēc viņš netulko dziesmas.
41. Kalpi turēja teļus garās saitēs.
42. Es nedomāju, ka jaunās dejas ir tik skaistas kā vecās.
43. Šur un tur ielās varēja redzēt bērnus, kuri ubagoja.
44. Lai dzīvo mūsu draugi!
45. Ak, krēsli ir pavisam neērti!

Exercise 54f

Translate into Latvian:

1. In winter the ducks fly from the north to warmer countries.
2. We spent the evening in the parish hall (*nams*), where a famous **hunter** was telling us about the animals he hunted in the high mountains.
3. In hotels sweet wine and dry (*skābs*) wine can be obtained.
4. The old pastor baptized all our children, and his son, who is now **the pastor** of our parish, confirmed them.
5. The name of each person in the parish may be seen in the church **register** (*grāmata*).
6. How many girls and boys will the pastor confirm on Sunday?
7. It is easy to forgive one's friends.
8. Don't believe hunters' stories.
9. Does the bear hunt smaller animals?
10. In church we hear the word of God.
11. The parish hall (*nams*) is behind the church.
12. Wild ducks are available in the butcher's shop today.
13. In two weeks ducks may be hunted again.
14. I hope the teacher will forgive you!
15. I cannot stand the hunters who hunt in our forest.
16. The pastor consecrated our church several years ago.
17. The whole parish would be happy if we obtained a larger church.
18. May God bless all the children I am baptizing today!
19. In some countries the priests bless the sea.
20. A good hunter is not afraid of animals.
21. Who will christen the new ship?
22. Did you obtain all the books you wanted from the library?
23. On Sunday the pastor will baptize our youngest son and confirm our **eldest daughter**.

24. In the small lake in our zoo you will see some rare ducks from eastern Asia.
25. In olden times men had many gods.
26. In our garden there are oaks, willows, linden-trees and apple-trees.
27. Has the boy's knee been hurting long?
28. Please use the ashtrays: our new floor was very expensive.
29. The walls and ceilings are of oak.
30. I read some interesting things in the paper about eagles.
31. The clay bowl was full of sweet jam.
32. We want to sell our furniture before we move away.
33. Salaries in America are greater than salaries in France or Germany.
34. What was your friend's telephone number?
35. A lot of low furniture is now being sold in the shops.
36. What is the number of your friend's flat?
37. The ceiling of our flat is quite low.
38. I shall be home after nine o'clock.
39. Women are often paid lower wages than men.
40. How is your cousin (f.)? – Very well, thank you!
41. What were you washing at the well this morning?
42. I did not know that Baiba was so unkind.

LESSON 55

THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE

The uses of the infinitive in English and Latvian correspond fairly closely. The infinitive is used in Latvian, as in English, after modal auxiliaries, although in English the *to* is omitted in many cases.

I cannot answer.	<i>Es nevaru atbildēt.</i>
He wants to sing.	<i>Viņš grib dziedāt.</i>
Can she swim?	<i>Vai viņa māk peldēt?</i>
I had to be at the station at six.	<i>Man vajadzēja būt stacijā sešos.</i>

It is also used after a number of other verbs:

He promised to write.	<i>Viņš solīja rakstīt.</i>
We do not intend to work.	<i>Mēs nedomājam strādāt.</i>
I taught her to read.	<i>Es viņu mācīju lasīt.</i>
He threatened to go away.	<i>Viņš draudēja aiziet.</i>
He hoped to sell the car.	<i>Viņš cerēja pārdot mašīnu.</i>
Help me to sweep the floor.	<i>Palīdzi man slaucīt grīdu!</i>

The English infinitive is also used to express purpose, and in this usage may be strengthened with the words 'in order':

He works (in order) to earn money.
He went to Māra's place (in order) to return some books.

The infinitive of purpose can be translated literally into Latvian where it depends upon a verb of motion:

He went to Māra's place (in order) to return some books.
Viņš aizgāja pie Māras atdot dažas grāmatas.

Where the infinitive of purpose does not depend upon a verb of motion, the construction with *lai* and the conditional is more common.

He works (in order) to earn money.
Viņš strādā, lai pelnītu naudu.

Vocabulary

<i>sēga</i>	blanket	<i>miers</i>	peace
<i>palags</i>	sheet	<i>vilna</i>	wool
<i>aizkars</i>	curtain	<i>kabata</i>	pocket
<i>spilvens</i>	pillow	<i>zīmulis</i>	pencil
<i>ģimēne</i>	family	<i>sen</i>	a long time ago,
<i>karš</i>	war		for a long time
<i>te</i>	here	<i>nešēn</i>	not long ago,
			lately

NOTES: The adverb *sen* is often strengthened with *jau*:

Jānis jau sen strādā veikalā.
John has been working in the shop for a long time.

Observe also the Latvian present corresponding to the English present perfect continuous.

Nesen is stressed on the second syllable.

In older Latvian *karš* was written and pronounced *kaŗš*.

Exercise 55a

Conjugate in the present tense: *medīt*; *mācīt*; *iesvētīt*; *loct*; *svētīt*.

Exercise 55b

Form the comparative and superlative degrees of: *skaidrs; smags; viegls; grūts; dziļš*.

Exercise 55c

Put the comparative and superlative forms of Ex. 55b into the feminine.

Exercise 55d

Distinguish between: <i>nomazgāt</i>	and	<i>izmazgāt;</i>
<i>lasīt</i>	and	<i>izlasīt;</i>
<i>lasīt</i>	and	<i>salasīt;</i>
<i>skaitīt</i>	and	<i>saskaitīt.</i>

Exercise 55e

Translate into English:

- Ieva palīdzēja mātei mazgāt palagus un aizkarus.
- Siltas segas taisa no labākās vilnas.
- Pirms kara sieviešu algas bija daudz zemākas nekā pēc kara.
- Sestdienas rītā mēs iesim medīt meža pīles.
- Vai piļu spalvas der spilveniem?
- Visa ģimene palīdz saimniekam stādīt kartupeļus.
- Es nesen te biju, bet jūs nebijāt mājās.
- Vācijā taisa vislabākos zīmuļus.
- Te mēs neredzēsim meža zvērus, jo te ir daudz ceļu un nav miera.
- Austrālijas vilnu slavē visā pasaulē.
- Es nesen biju baznīcā.
- Krustmātes dziesmu grāmata parasti ir zem spilvena.
- Miķelis cerēja drīz atkal redzēt savu ģimeni.
- Neturi rokas kabatā, kad tu runā ar vecāku cilvēku!
- Ak, aizkari atkal ir putekļaini!
- Ziemā es parasti guļu zem četrām segām.
- Biruta dabūja no krustmātes spilvenu un labus, baltus palagus.
- Man laikam nav zīmuļa kabatā.
- Es jau sen mācēju peldēt un dejot, kad tu vēl gāji bērnu dārzā (*kindergarten*).

- Vai te var dabūt tēju un kafiju?
- Man segas nevajaga, es gulēšu tikai zem palaga, jo ir karsts.
- Es iešu uz veikalu samaksāt par dārzājiem.
- Pēc kara daudz cilvēku aizceļoja no Eiropas.
- Es nesen lasīju avīzē, ka slavenais dziedātājs ir slim.
- Vai tu vari gulēt bez spilvena?
- Aizkari varētu būt gaišāki.
- Ratos ir lielā, smagā zirgu sega.
- Sievietes aizgāja pie upes mazgāt visas ģimenes palagus.
- Anna jau sen gribēja aizceļot pie savas ģimenes.
- Aizkari varētu būt garāki.
- Saimnieks cer pārdot daudz vilnas.
- Es tev jau sen prasīju savu grāmatu.
- Drīz laikam būs karš, jo visās avīzēs raksta par mieru.
- Aukstās zemēs ziemā valkā vilnas zeķes.
- Es šodien strādāšu garas stundas, lai es otrdien būtu pavisam brīvs.
- Vai tu man nesen neiedevi savu tālruņa numuru?
- Mednieks medīja Āfrikā lielus zvērus.
- Svētdienās mācītājs vienmēr svētī draudzi.
- Visas mūsu mēbeles ir no ozola.
- Ko ubags jums prasīja?
- Nesodi viņus! Viņi ir tikai bērni!
- Cik ābeļu ir jūsu dārzā?
- Te uz zemā galda bija divi pelnu trauki, bet tagad nav.
- Istabas sienas ir brūnas, bet griesti ir dzelteni.
- Es būtu priecīgs, ja tu izlasītu manu jauno grāmatu.
- Vai tev sāp celis? Parādi man to!
- Es saskaitīju pagrabā trīsdesmit deviņas pudeles.
- Kafija nav salda. Lūdzu, dodiet man vairāk cukura!

Exercise 55f

Translate into Latvian:

- I require a longer pencil.
- In the furniture shop blankets, sheets, pillows and curtains are available.
- In pillows there are only the best duck feathers.
- After the war John and all his family travelled from Europe to Australia.
- Wool is now dearer than before the war.
- He has been intending to go to Charles' place for a long time.
- He writes in order to earn money.
- I told you just recently not to swim here.

9. Is there somebody here who can speak Russian?
10. On hot days we sleep with just sheets.
11. Why are the curtains so short?
12. Let us hope that we shall soon have peace.
13. Little Aivars is sitting on a pillow.
14. Not long ago I told you not to speak with your mouth full. (Translate: with a full mouth.)
15. During the war we got very little butter and sugar.
16. Every boy has a knife in his pocket.
17. I paid off my house a long time ago.
18. Do all families have cars?
19. Why are you standing behind the curtain? You probably intend to frighten your sister.
20. Can one obtain blue and red pencils here?
21. Auntie will teach you to make pillows and curtains.
22. I have been wanting to ask you for a long time where you obtained such good sheets and blankets.
23. Help Biruta to wash the sheets.
24. He recently promised to write to us.
25. During the war it was not easy to obtain woollen socks.
26. Wasn't there a big clay ashtray standing here a little while ago?
27. The old pastor consecrated the church in times of peace, before the war.
28. How much wool is required to make such a big blanket?
29. She has not been speaking to me for a long time.
30. Haven't you a pencil in your pocket?
31. I am waiting here in order to talk to the farmer.
32. The children went to the forest to pick berries, because mother wanted to make (*vārīt*) some sweet jam.
33. Very rarely is there peace everywhere in the world.
34. A family of wild ducks lives on the edge of the lake.
35. Hunters hunt large animals, and large animals hunt smaller animals.
36. Which is taller, the oak-tree or the apple-tree?
37. Did you get the woman's telephone number?
38. My salary is greater now than before the war.
39. Where do eagles spend the winter?
40. Chimneys are made of bricks, but cupboards are made of wood.
41. The squirrel lives in the woods.
42. Hasn't the parrot a beautiful tail?
43. The rooster was singing in the corner of the yard.
44. I saw a strange person in the yard just now: perhaps it was a thief!

LESSON 56

NUMERALS FROM 60 TO 100

- 60 *sešdesmit* (+ gen.)
 61 *sešdesmit viens* (+ sing. noun)
 62 *sešdesmit divi*, etc.
 70 *septiņdesmit* (+ gen.)
 71 *septiņdesmit viens* (+ sing. noun)
 72 *septiņdesmit divi*, etc.
 80 *astoņdesmit* (+ gen.)
 81 *astoņdesmit viens* (+ sing. noun)
 82 *astoņdesmit divi*, etc.
 90 *deviņdesmit* (+ gen.)
 91 *deviņdesmit viens* (+ sing. noun)
 92 *deviņdesmit divi*, etc.
 100 *simts* or *simt* (indeclinable, + gen.)

The form *simts* may also be declined.

Vocabulary

Numerals from 60 to 100.

<i>mēnešis</i>	month	<i>sekot</i>	to follow
<i>dolars</i>	dollar	<i>gandrīz</i>	almost, nearly
<i>ciets</i>	hard	<i>lai gan, kaut gan</i>	although
<i>miksts</i>	soft	<i>kokvilna</i>	cotton

NOTE the expression *Cik jums (ir) gadu?* 'How old are you?' and the answer to it: *Man ir trīsdesmit (etc.) gadu.*

Man ir divdesmit viens (etc.) gads.

Man ir sešdesmit divi (etc.) gadi.

Dolars is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Sekot requires its object in the dative case.

Gandrīz is accented on the second syllable.

Exercise 56a

- Count from 60 to 70 with the nouns *gailis* and *puķe*.
- Count from 70 to 80 with the nouns *zīmulis* and *kurpe*.
- Count from 80 to 90 with the nouns *nazis* and *vēstule*.
- Count from 90 to 100 with the nouns *kaķis* and *zvaigzne*.

Exercise 56b

Conjugate in the present tense: *slaucīt*; *mācīt*; *mocīt*.

Exercise 56c

Give the second person plural, present, imperfect, future, conditional and imperative, of: *sacīt*; *runāt*; *svilpot*; *dziedāt*; *meklēt*; *medīt*; *peldēt*.

Exercise 56d

Decline in the singular and plural: *dārgākais dzīvoklis*; *dziļākā aka*.

Exercise 56e

Translate into English:

- Aizkari laikam ir no kokvilnas.
- Dīvos mēnešos kuģis būs Ņujorkā.
- Kaut gan krustmātei jau ir deviņdesmit gadu, viņa vēl katru dienu baro vistas.
- Kurš ir aukstākais mēnesis gadā?
- Mēs gaidījām gandrīz trīs mēnešus.
- Mēs pavadījām sešdesmit divas dienas uz kuģa.
- Es saskaitīju visas astoņdesmit četras biļetes.
- Sekojet man! Es jums parādīšu pareizo ceļu.
- Lai gan tēvam ir jau gandrīz septiņdesmit viens gads, viņš arvien vēl ir stiprs vīrs un strādā smagus lauku darbus.
- Es zinu, kāpēc puisim ir tik mīkstas rokas – viņš nestrādā lauku darbus.
- Jūs varat iet uz jūrmalu, es jums drīz sekošu.
- Tu nopelni gandrīz simts dolaru nedēļā, vairāk nekā saimnieka kalps nopelna mēnesī.
- Sešos mēnešos es nomaksāju tikai septiņdesmit deviņus dolarus par mašīnu.

- Kokvilnas zeķes nav tik siltas kā vilnas zeķes.
- Austrālijas vilna ir slavena, tāpēc ka tā ir mīksta.
- Es par savu uzvalku samaksāju sešdesmit septiņus dolarus.
- Es domāju, ka deviņdesmit dolaru mēnesī ir ļoti maza alga.
- Kokvilnas stādiem vajaga auglīgas zemes un karstas saules.
- Vai tu tici, ka daži zvēri dzīvo septiņdesmit piecus gadus?
- Vai zelts ir cietāks vai mīkstāks par sudrabu?
- Ozolam ir daudz cietāks koks nekā liepai.
- Karstajai vasarai sekoja diezgan auksta ziema.
- Kaut gan saule ir ļoti karsta, māli arvien vēl ir mīksti.
- Kokvilnas blūzes parasti ir lētas.
- Es izlasīju gandrīz visu avīzi.
- Strādīgais kurpnieks aizdeva savam nabadzīgajam krustdēlam deviņdesmit piecus dolarus.
- Te nesen bija zīmulis, bet tagad es to neredzu.
- Vai segas un palagus var dabūt mēbeļu veikalā? – Jā, tur var dabūt segas un palagus un arī spilvenus un aizkarus.
- Vai te vilna ir lētāka par kokvilnu?
- Vecais krusttēvs Artūrs nesen aizgāja, un tagad atkal ir miers ģimenē.
- Vai Pāvilam ir zīmulis kabatā?
- Manam jaunajam uzvalkam ir ļoti mazas kabatas.
- Tavam vecajam uzvalkam ir ļoti maz kabatu.
- Mācītāja kaķis medīja peles un žurkas baznīcā un arī draudzes namā.
- Kuģus parasti kristī ar pudeli vīna.
- Meža pīlēm ir bail no medniekiem.
- Āfrikā cilvēkiem ir daudz dievu.
- Kurš no skolniekiem atbildēja skolotājam?
- Pirms mācītājs iesvētīja bērnus, viņš svētīja draudzi.
- Eiropā lielajos lidlaukos dzird daudz valodu.
- Mēs sūtām savu dēlu vislabākajā skolā, jo viņš ir ļoti čakls skolnieks.

Exercise 56f

Translate into Latvian:

- The plane ticket costs nearly a hundred dollars.
- In which month may wild ducks be hunted?
- Woollen socks are softer than cotton socks.
- Only a hundred people may be seated in the small church.
- I shall pay him eighty dollars and then I shall have peace.
- Seventy-five horses are needed here.
- In hot weather the clayey soil is quite hard.

8. Soft chairs are not always comfortable.
9. Let us follow the girls into the forest in order to frighten them.
10. Sixty-five years ago the train used to go only as far as Kēmeri.
11. Our family has been living here for ninety-one years.
12. Would you pay sixty dollars for a cotton suit?
13. After the war there followed seventy-seven happy years of peace.
14. They paid me two months' wages.
15. You say that, although you followed him, you still do not know in which house he lives?
16. In several months the ground will be soft again.
17. Why are you following me? I am not a famous film-star!
18. Give the soft pillows to the women; I want a harder pillow.
19. The floor is of the hardest timber.
20. How many dollars did the cotton blouse cost?
21. John is nearly as tall as his father, although he is only twelve.
22. Early in the morning the frost was very severe, and the butter in the kitchen was quite hard.
23. Silver is nearly as heavy as gold.
24. Women wear cotton gloves in the summer months.
25. We had no curtains.
26. Hunters always have a knife in their pocket.
27. My money was in the thief's pocket.
28. Where can I obtain red and blue pencils?
29. Not long ago wool was uncommonly dear.
30. Blankets and curtains are sold in the new shop.
31. The whole family went to the well to wash the dirty sheets.
32. Beggars are often cold in winter, because they cannot pay for sheets and blankets.
33. After the war our congregation was much smaller.
34. What is wrong with you? – I was sitting on a pencil.
35. In Africa there are more wild animals than in Europe.
36. Please count the wineglasses.
37. Don't stand there empty-handed! Here's a glass of wine.
38. There is no more beautiful bridge in the wide world.
39. Little Paul still does not know how to count.
40. I'll show you if you don't obey me!
41. What a lazy pupil!
42. Everywhere wild-flowers are blooming.
43. It is clear to me that your head is quite empty.
44. Why are ties now so narrow?
45. The labourers were working in the farmer's extensive rye-fields.
46. Wait for me at the cross-roads!

LESSON 57

THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE USED ADJECTIVALLY

Consider the sentences

I have a lot of dishes to wash.

Have you enough books to read?

There are many beautiful towns to see in England.

In these sentences, the infinitive depends upon a noun, and qualifies this noun: thus we can say that it is used adjectivally. When translating such adjectival infinitives into Latvian, we must give the infinitive a precise object, in most cases, *ko*. Thus the sentences given above appear in Latvian as

Man ir daudz bļodu ko mazgāt.

Vai tev ir diezgan grāmatu ko lasīt?

Anglijā ir daudz skaistu pilsētu ko redzēt.

Where the infinitive in question governs the dative case, *kam* is used in place of *ko*.

I have no one to tell my story to.

Man nav neviena, kam stāstīt stāstu.

I have very many friends to write letters to.

Man ir ļoti daudz draugu, kam rakstīt vēstules.

Intransitive verbs like *iet* require *kur* in this type of sentence:

I have no home to live in.

Man nav mājas kur dzīvot.

The beggar has no bed to sleep in.

Ubagam nav gultas kur gulēt.

Vocabulary

<i>žogs</i>	fence	<i>cālis</i>	chicken
<i>sagaidīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to expect, <i>occ.</i> to wait for, to meet (from train, etc.)	<i>labrīt</i>	good morning
<i>brilles (pl.)</i>	spectacles	<i>labdien</i>	good day
<i>citāds</i>	different	<i>labvakar</i>	good evening
<i>citādi</i>	otherwise	<i>ar labu nakti</i>	good night
<i>grēdzens</i>	ring	<i>nekur</i>	nowhere
<i>sakta</i>	brooch (usually in a folk costume context)		

NOTES: The words *labrīt*, *labdien*, *labvakar* and *nekur* are stressed on the second syllable.

Nekur requires a negative verb, cf. *neviens*.

Notice particularly the translation of such phrases as 'for five hours a day', 'for three days a week':

piecas stundas dienā

trīs dienas nedēļā

Exercise 57a

Count from 1 to 100.

Exercise 57b

Conjugate in the present tense: *medīt*; *slaucīt*; *dabūt*; *sacīt*; *mācēt*.

Exercise 57c

Give the imperative parts of: *dabūt*; *medīt*; *būt*; *iet*; *lasīt*; *meklēt*; *samaksāt*; *atbildēt*; *atdot*; *raudāt*.

Exercise 57d

Give the first person singular, present, imperfect, future and conditional, of: *redzēt*; *darīt*; *dziedāt*; *lietot*; *nomazgāt*; *smēķēt*; *medīt*; *dabūt*; *gulēt*; *sēdēt*; *mācēt*; *ieraudzīt*; *sacīt*.

Exercise 57e

Decline in the singular and plural: *visērtākais dzīvoklis*; *visseklākā upe*.

Exercise 57f

Translate into English:

1. Labrīt! Jūs mani laikam negaidījāt tik agri no rīta!
2. Labi, ka žogs ir tik augsts, citādi vistas un cāļi vienmēr būtu uz ielas.
3. Te nekur nevar dabūt mīkstu vilnu.
4. Jaunajā namā ir tik daudz loģu ko tīrīt un tik daudz grīdu ko slaucīt, ka manai sievai nekad nav laika lasīt grāmatas.
5. Jānis parasti pavada pie sava krusttēva trīs dienas mēnesī.
6. Kaut gan krusttēvam ir gandrīz astoņdesmit gadu, viņš arvien vēl lasa bez brillēm.

7. Saules brillēm parasti ir zaļi vai zili stikli.
8. Vai tu viņam sekoji? – Tur nebija neviena kam sekot!
9. Kas mani sagaidīs uz perona?
10. Manai meitai nav saktu ko aizdot.
11. Cāļa gaļa ir mīkstāka par vistas gaļu.
12. Jaunais mācītājs ir citāds vīrs nekā vecais. (Notice *citāds nekā* = *different from*.)
13. Labvakar! Vai šeit dzīvo aptiekārs? Mēs viņu visur meklējam.
14. Bīrutas pirkstā spīdēja skaists zelta gredzens.
15. Tu man atkal stāsti citādu stāstu nekā vakar. Kur tu redzēji saktu un gredzēnu?
16. Bērni nevar sagaidīt dienu, kad varēs atkal peldēt jūrā.
17. Vai jums ir vieta kur sēdēt?
18. Man nav naudas ko samaksāt par tik dārgu saktu.
19. Vācijā sievietēm ir citādi gredzeni nekā Anglijā.
20. Jūs nedrīkstat iet aiz žoga, bērni. Tur ir vistas un cāļi.
21. Šeit nav piļu ko medīt.
22. Katram nav gultas kur gulēt.
23. Šeit nekur nav vietas kur sēdēt.
24. Nerunā tik muļķīgi! Es tev nekur nesekoju!
25. Tēva brilles man neder.
26. Te gar žogu mēs stādīsim sīpolus.
27. Saimnieks samaksāja septiņdesmit vienu dolaru par jauno žogu.
28. Ar labu nakti, mīlie draugi: mani gaida grūta diena.
29. Bez saktas un gredzena Baiba nekad neiet baznīcā.
30. Labdien! Vai es varu jums palīdzēt?
31. Labvakar, bērni! – Labvakar, Māra!
32. Labrīt! Es esmu jūsu dēla skolotājs!
33. 'Labrīt!' saka tikai agri no rīta, un 'labvakar!' tikai vakarā.
34. Kāpēc tu nesacīji saviem draugiem 'Labdien'!
35. Vai vakarā var sacīt arī 'Labdien'?
36. Ja tu gribi iet gulēt, tad es tev saku 'Ar labu nakti!' – Ar labu nakti, mans draugs!
37. Ko saka vienos vai divos rītā: 'Labvakar' vai 'Labrīt'?
38. Cik mēnešu ir trijos gados?
39. Mans jaunais kokvilnas uzvalks maksāja deviņdesmit piecus dolarus.
40. Ak, mans spilvens ir tik ciets, ka es nevaru gulēt!
41. Mans krustdēls bija karā gandrīz piecus gadus.
42. Viņa kabatas vienmēr ir pilnas ar zīmuļiem.
43. Viņas mati nesen bija brūni, bet tagad ir melni.
44. Vai es nekur nevarēšu dzīvot mierā?
45. Vecās viesnīcas skursteņi ir pavisam melni.

46. Vai tu redzēji vāveri? – Nē, tikai asti.
47. Kas tev ir mutē, mans bērns?
48. Ej nomazgāt savus netīros ceļus!
49. Mūsu virtuvei ir baltas sienas un pelēki griesti.
50. Vītoliem ir šauras, zaļas lapas.

Exercise 57g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Father needs different spectacles.
2. The fence has been standing for nearly sixty-five years.
3. In Latvia the brooches are different from (those) in other eastern European countries.
4. Good morning! How nice it is that all of you are here at the station to meet me!
5. The ring is smaller than I thought.
6. There are many chickens to feed.
7. I expect better work from my pupils.
8. The fence is rather low; a different fence is needed here, or else the chickens will fly into the neighbours' yards.
9. Baiba has a silver brooch and a golden ring.
10. There are still seven brooches to clean.
11. I have many books to read! Where are my glasses?
12. I had a pencil in my pocket a little while ago.
13. Nowhere are there such good woollen blankets as in your shop.
14. Good day, we are looking for a flat near the railway station.
15. Nobody in our family needs spectacles.
16. In two months' time we can expect hot weather.
17. Good evening, where is the landlady? – She is standing at the fence, and is feeding the chickens.
18. I saw many beautiful brooches and rings, but nowhere such beautiful (ones) as you wear.
19. The chickens are following the old hen.
20. Good night, friends. That was a lovely evening.
21. It is nowhere as nice as at your place.
22. In my ring there is more silver than gold.
23. Good morning, children. How are you?
24. Good day, are you the gardener?
25. Good night, my friends.
26. "Good evening," said the pastor. "Can I help you?"
27. Is the ground here hard or soft?
28. The hunter was following the wild beast.

29. Although there are thirty-one days in some months, there are only thirty in others, and one month has only twenty-eight.
30. The sun set a long time ago: I shall say good night.
31. Good morning, I am your new neighbour.
32. Good evening, were you waiting for me?
33. White cotton sheets and soft woollen blankets can be obtained in several shops.
34. The curtains cost seventy dollars, and the pillows thirteen dollars.
35. The floor is of very hard wood.
36. Good morning, where is the newspaper, please?
37. Good day, Baiba. How are you today?
38. Good evening, friends.
39. After the war our parish was without a church for a long time.
40. When he says good night, I shall have peace.
41. Good day. I am your new teacher.
42. I wrote down his telephone number just now.
43. We shall go duck-hunting on Friday.
44. The jam was still sweet yesterday – why is it sour today?
45. Did you see the eagle that was sitting in the oak tree?
46. Wash the ashtrays, and then wash out your stockings.
47. The doctor waits only for the day when his wife goes to her niece's place.
48. The old pastor baptized and confirmed many children.
49. You are not allowed to whistle in school.

LESSON 58

CONJUGATION OF VERBS IN *-INĀT*

All verbs in *-ināt* belong to the Mixed Conjugation, and are conjugated like *zināt*, e.g.,

aicināt 'to invite'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es aicin-u</i>	<i>es aicin-āju</i>	–
<i>tu aicin-i</i>	<i>tu aicin-āji</i>	<i>aicini!</i>
<i>viņš aicin-a</i>	<i>viņš aicin-āja</i>	<i>lai aicina!</i>
<i>mēs aicin-ām</i>	<i>mēs aicin-ājām</i>	<i>aicināsim!</i>
<i>jūs aicin-āt</i>	<i>jūs aicin-ājāt</i>	<i>aiciniet!</i>
<i>viņi aicin-a</i>	<i>viņi aicin-āja</i>	<i>lai aicina!</i>

Future: *es aicināšu, tu aicināsi, viņš aicinās, etc.*

Conditional: *es aicinātu, tu aicinātu, viņš aicinātu, etc.*

Vocabulary

<i>aicināt</i>	to invite	<i>salīdzināt</i>	to compare
<i>bildināt</i>	to propose to	<i>sveicināt</i>	to greet
<i>modināt</i>	to wake (transitive)	<i>turpināt</i>	to continue
<i>dāvināt</i>	to present, to give (as a present)	<i>sludināt</i>	to advertize
<i>brīdināt</i>	to warn	<i>izrēķināt</i>	to work out
<i>mēģināt</i>	to try; rehearse	<i>pratināt</i>	to question, interrogate

NOTES: *aicināt uz* 'to invite to'

Mēs viņu aicinājām uz Rīgu. We invited her to Riga.

Bildināt requires its object in the accusative:

Aivars bildināja Ievu. Aivars proposed to Eve.

Dāvināt requires the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing:

Viņa man dāvināja skaistu pildspalvu. She gave me a beautiful fountain-pen.

brīdināt no 'to warn of'

Brīdināt can be construed with a following infinitive, particularly in the negative:

Es tevi brīdināju nepeldēt ezerā. I warned you not to swim in the lake.

Mēģināt can be construed with a following infinitive:

Mēģini gulēt! Try to sleep!

Turpināt may be construed with a following infinitive:

Turpiniet strādāt! Keep working.

Exercise 58a

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es aicinu tikai savus draugus.*
2. *Es mēģinu lasīt bez brillēm.*
3. *Es turpinu studēt valodas.*
4. *Es dāvinu mazajai meitenei saktu.*
5. *Es nekad nemedlju vāveres.*
6. *Es tagad sēžu ērtā krēslā.*

Exercise 58b

Translate into Latvian, writing the numbers in full: 73 houses; 87 horses; 91 days; 68 flowers; 90 bottles; 82 eggs; 60 tickets; 76 people; 61 days; 66 cats; 73 pens; 99 dollars; 85 rings.

Exercise 58c

Give the third person present, imperfect, future, conditional and imperative, of: *bildināt*; *dabūt*; *modināt*; *tecēt*; *brīdināt*; *medīt*; *salīdzināt*; *gulēt*; *sludināt*.

Exercise 58d

Translate into English:

1. Skolotājs mūs brīdināja nepeldēt zem tilta, jo tur ir dziļākā vieta **upē**.
2. Es mēģinu izrēķināt, cik es nopelnīju divos mēnešos.
3. Es jau sagaidīju, ka Jānis Baibu bildinās.
4. Kas tev dāvināja tik dārgu gredzenu un tik skaistu saktu?
5. Lūdzu, nesveicini svešas sievietes uz ielas!
6. Gailis mani modina agri no rīta.
7. Kārlis mani šodien bildināja.
8. Pēc divām stundām viņi turpinās pratināt zagli.
9. Es mēģināšu lasīt ar tavām brillēm.
10. Vai jūs aicināsiet arī kaimiņus?
11. Kā var salīdzināt mūsu Rīgu ar slaveno Parīzi, kaut gan arī Rīga ir skaista pilsēta?
12. Mēģini tagad gulēt! Es tevi modināšu agri no rīta.
13. Redzi, visi astoņdesmit pieci dolari, ko krusttēvs man dāvināja, man **vēl** ir kabatā!
14. Es tevi brīdinu no Kārļa: viņš ir negodīgs puisis.
15. Mēs nupat salīdzinājām vecos palagus ar jaunajiem un domājam, ka **vecie** ir labāki un stiprāki nekā jaunie.
16. Kad viņš bija bagāts, visi viņu laipni sveicināja, bet tagad neviens viņu neieredz.
17. "Es vēl biju jauns puisis," mednieks turpināja savu interesanto stāstu.
18. Nama māte (*housewife, hostess*) aicināja mūs visus pie galda.
19. Es nupat izrēķināju, cikos mēs būsim Ņujorkā.
20. Nepratīni mani, es neesmu tavs skolnieks!
21. Tēvs bieži aicināja kaimiņu pie žoga; tad viņi tur stāvēja un pīpēja un parasti salīdzināja savus cāļus un arī dārzājus, puķes, kokus un krūmus.

22. Avīzē sludina ērtu un diezgan lētu dzīvokli tuvu pie stacijas.
23. Kas tas bija par vīru, kas tevi nupat sveicināja? – Tas bija mūsu jaunais aptiekārs; viņš nesen bildināja ārsta meitu Birutu.
24. Tik vieglu uzdevumu katrs var izrēķināt!
25. Māte brīdināja bērnus nesekot svešiem cilvēkiem, kas viņus aicinātu savā mājā.
26. Cikos es jūs drīkstu modināt?
27. Skolnieks mēģināja uzzīmēt vāveri uz zara.
28. Tēvam bija trīsdesmit viens gads, kad viņš bildināja māti.
29. Vai Aivars ziemā turpinās studēt?
30. Salīdzināsim savas vārdnīcas, tad mēs redzēsim, kura ir labākā.
31. Krusttēvs mums dāvināja mēbeles un arī skaisto pelnu trauku.
32. Tēvs tevi brīdināja, bet tu viņam neklausīji.
33. Jums nevajadzēja dāvināt Ievai tik dārgas lietas, viņa ir tikai skolniece.
34. Nedomīniet mani pirms astoņiem, jo vilciens atiet tikai pēc desmitiem.
35. Kāpēc jūs viņu tūlī nepratinājāt?
36. Labdien! Vai jūs nesludinājāt avīzē, ka jūs gribat pārdot savu viesnīcu?
37. Jūs esat tikai konduktors – jūs varat pārbaudīt manu biļeti, bet jūs nedrīkstat mani pratināt.
38. Slavenā dejojāja mūs sveicināja jau no vagona loga.
39. Es turpināšu valkāt kokvilnas kreklus arī ziemā.
40. Vai jūs izrēķinājāt, cik jūs varēsīt mēnesī nomaksāt par māju?
41. Agri no rīta sniegs bija pavisam tīrs un mīksts, bet tagad tas ir ciets un netīrs.
42. Nekur pasaulē nestāda tik daudz rīsu kā Āzijā.
43. Labrīt, Māra! Kā tev iet? – Labrīt, Baiba! Ļoti labi, un tev?
44. Labdien, vai jūs esat jaunais kalps? – Nē, es esmu jūsu meitas draugs.
45. Cāļa gaļa ir diezgan lēta un arī laba.
46. Vai ubagam nav nekur gulēt?
47. Labvakar! Vai jūs varat man parādīt īsāko ceļu uz Ķemeriem? – Jā, lūdzu! Turpiniet iet līdz krustceļam: tur jūs redzēsīt, ka viens ceļš iet gar upi – tas ir pareizais ceļš. – Paldies! Ar labu nakti!
48. Viņš pārdod tikai sudraba saktas un zelta gredzenus.
49. Es nevaru lasīt avīzi bez brillēm.
50. Mums vajaga jaunu koka žogu.
51. Šodien mēs lidlaukā sagaidīsim draugus no Londonas.
52. Es tagad dzīvoju citā dzīvoklī.
53. Pulkstens ir gandrīz vienpadsmit: mana sieva mani gaidīja jau sešos – ar labu nakti!
54. Labvakar! Es nezināju, ka tu esi mūsu pilsētā.
55. Uz galda un uz grīdas bija daudz putekļu: visa istaba bija putekļaina.

Exercise 58e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Why don't you go on singing?
2. We worked out that our uncle would now be eighty-three years old.
3. Please compare your exercises.
4. I warn you not to propose to Baiba!
5. Why does everyone think he can question me?
6. Don't wake the cat: let it sleep!
7. If he will not greet me, I also shall not greet him.
8. Please continue your interesting story.
9. Try to write with the fountain-pen Auntie gave you.
10. They are now advertizing the latest cars in all newspapers.
11. Can you work out how much that will be in cash?
12. Who will invite the beggar to his table?
13. I did not believe my mother when she warned me of John.
14. I shall try to get father's car.
15. If they questioned me, I would keep silent.
16. "Look! A red signal!" said the engine-driver. "They are trying to warn us!"
17. It is foolish to compare the work of a writer with the work of a merchant.
18. When Māra was confirmed, her uncle gave her a beautiful golden ring and a large silver brooch.
19. When Arthur caught sight of Paul, he greeted him in a very friendly way.
20. Everywhere they warn people not to smoke cigarettes, but in the newspapers they still advertize how good cigarettes are!
21. Why did he not propose to the younger sister? She is much more attractive!
22. He is trying to say something.
23. When I questioned him again, he told me a different story.
24. Please wake me at four o'clock, because at five my train leaves. – Good, I shall wake you.
25. I shall continue reading, if you all keep quiet!
26. Don't compare me with the lazy shoemaker!
27. How can you give red roses to the lady of the house? (*nama māte*)
28. Who greeted us at the street corner?
29. We continued dancing until morning.
30. Let us work out how many people we can invite.
31. Wake me before six o'clock, because my plane leaves at seven.
32. We had been expecting Charles to propose to Baiba for a long time.
33. Although his friends invite him, he goes to no one's place.
34. You have a clear (*gaišs*) head, and strong hands, but you are lazy.
35. The housekeeper woke the maids early in the morning, in order to feed the animals.

36. What would she say if Aivars proposed to her?
37. Did you work out how much the new fence would cost?
38. Who gave you the gold ring?
39. Good evening! Can you please show me the road to Riga? – Walk as far as the bridge, and then you will see a road along the river bank – that is the way to Riga. – Thank you! Good night!
40. The old pastor cannot see without glasses.
41. Five chickens were following the hen along the road-side.
42. He earns only a hundred dollars a month.
43. Your fence is useless – it is so low!
44. Good day! I have been waiting for you for a long time.
45. Good night, my friends! It is almost morning!
46. Chicken is nowhere more expensive than in our city.
47. Do you know where my brooch is?
48. He cannot read without glasses.
49. Do they sell cotton shirts here?
50. Good evening, Māra! Is your mother at home?
51. Good day, children! Where are you going? – We are not going anywhere, we are waiting for a friend.

LESSON 59

VERB SUMMARY

In this lesson we shall attempt to summarize the various types of verb conjugation that we have studied so far.

Verbs in *-āt*: These are mainly of the Long Conjugation, e.g., *strādāt*, and have the endings *-āju, -ā, -ā, -ājam, -ājat, -ā* in the present tense. But exceptionally, *zināt* and all other *-ināt* verbs are of the Mixed Conjugation, with the endings *-u, -i, -a, -ām, -āt, -a* in the present. *Dziedāt* and *raudāt* are also of the Mixed Conjugation, with the present endings *-u, -i, -, -am, -at, -*.

Verbs in *-ēt*: Many are of the Long Conjugation (e.g., *smēķēt*) and have the present endings *-ēju, -ē, -ē, -ējam, -ējat, -ē*. Many others are of the Mixed Conjugation, with the present endings *-u, -i, -, -am, -at, -*. Within the latter category, however, there are three variant types:

- (a) with present palatalization (except in the 2nd person singular of the present and imperative and the second person plural imperative):
– revise *gulēt, sēdēt*.
- (b) with present depalatalization:
– revise *mācēt, tecēt*, but notice the irregularity of *tecēt*.
- (c) the impersonal verb *vajadzēt*. This regularly undergoes the depalatalization, but has an *-a* (although not obligatorily) in the third person.

Verbs in *-īt*: Very few of these are long (e.g., *medīt*). The Long Conjugation endings in the present are *-īju, -ī, -ī, -ījam, -ījat, -ī*. The majority are of the Mixed Conjugation (e.g., *darīt*) and have the present endings *-u, -i, -a, -ām, -āt, -a*. There is one variant group, that with present depalatalization. Verbs ending in *-cīt* (exception: *mācīt*) and *-dzīt* have *-k-* for *-c-* and *-g-* for *-dz-* throughout the present tense and imperative.

Verbs in *-ot*: These are all long, and have the present endings: *-oju, -o, -o, -ojam, -ojat, -o*.

Verbs in *-ūt*: There is only one verb in *-ūt* (*dabūt*) – it is long, with the present endings *-ūju, -ū, -ū, -ūjam, -ūjat, -ū*.

The above tabulation does not consider MONOSYLLABIC verbs, which belong exclusively to the Short Conjugation, which we shall study in later lessons. We have already learnt three irregular verbs of this conjugation, however; *būt, iet, and dot*. The forms of these verbs should be revised. Compounds of these verbs behave identically with the simple verb.

Vocabulary

<i>apcietināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to arrest	<i>saturēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to contain
<i>apdrošināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to insure	<i>dusmas</i> (pl.)	anger
<i>kaitināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to annoy, tease	<i>dusmīgs</i>	angry
<i>spēlēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to play (a game or instrument)	<i>apmēram</i>	approximately
<i>klavīres</i> (pl.)	piano	<i>mākslinieks</i>	artist
<i>briesmas</i> (pl.)	danger, peril	<i>krāsa</i>	colour, paint, dye

NOTE the expression *aiz dusmām* 'in anger, out of anger'. Cf. *aiz bailēm, aiz prieka*.

Saturēt means 'to contain', but not in the sense of a container:

Vinogas satur cukuru.

Grapes contain sugar.

BUT NOT: The bottle contains wine.

Exercise 59a

Count from 1 to 100.

Exercise 59b

Conjugate in the present:

1. *Es apcietinu zagli.*
2. *Es apdrošinu savu mašīnu.*
3. *Es kaitinu savu māsu.*
4. *Es nespētēju klavieres.*

Exercise 59c

Translate into Latvian:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (1) I wish | (2) you (s.) would lend |
| (3) let us sit | (4) let us examine |
| (5) I smoke | (6) the sun was shining |
| (7) you (s.) would sleep | (8) I cook |
| (9) he compared | (10) let them ask |
| (11) their hands are sore | (12) they would present |
| (13) grapes contain sugar | (14) you (pl.) saw |
| (15) you (s.) will wake him | (16) he will hear you (pl.) |
| (17) we proposed to them | (18) I kiss |
| (19) you (s.) would sing | (20) we would tremble |
| (21) you (pl.) played | (22) I warn |
| (23) I would follow | (24) he feeds |
| (25) hope! (s.) | (26) wine will not harm you |
| (27) I earn | (28) you (s.) cleaned |
| (29) he invites us | (30) she would love |
| (31) we would do | (32) I am stopping the car |
| (33) I would travel | (34) I calculated |
| (35) they advertize | (36) will you (s.) question him? |
| (37) we tease | (38) he will punish |
| (39) teach (pl.) them something | (40) you (pl.) would not believe |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (41) you (s.) whistled | (42) it will fit |
| (43) the river would flow | (44) we defend |
| (45) we shall wash | (46) it belongs to me |
| (47) I was allowed | (48) plant (pl.) a few bushes |
| (49) I esteem | (50) you (s.) will read |
| (51) let us insure | (52) try! (pl.) |
| (53) you (s.) counted | (54) they sang |
| (55) I shall weep | (56) it will be necessary |
| (57) we shall show | (58) you (pl.) threatened |
| (59) the sun will set | (60) you (s.) flew |
| (61) you (pl.) are preparing | (62) they love |
| (63) we would write down | (64) they stood |
| (65) you (s.) will sleep | (66) you (pl.) would smile |
| (67) let them seek | (68) you (s.) spend the summer |
| (69) he will ask | (70) you (pl.) would give |
| (71) let him live | (72) send! (s.) |
| (73) they chose | (74) you (pl.) blessed |
| (75) they would sell | (76) you (s.) would work |
| (77) the flower bloomed | (78) let them torment him |
| (79) we would greet | (80) continue! (pl.) |
| (81) he would arrest | (82) let us hold |
| (83) the stars were shining | (84) let them wait |
| (85) you (s.) will be able | (86) we would recount |
| (87) let us give back | (88) we would promise |
| (89) I shall catch sight of you | (90) we translated |
| (91) he paid | (92) we would not waste time |
| (93) wait! (pl.) | (94) I would help you |
| (95) you (s.) would applaud | (96) I hunted |
| (97) you (pl.) know | (98) he will study |
| (99) they will confirm | (100) she will wear |
| (101) I am gathering | (102) let her swim |
| (103) I frightened | (104) I went away |
| (105) you (pl.) are conjugating | (106) I talk |
| (107) draw! (pl.) | (108) write! (s.) |
| (109) let them obtain | (110) they go |
| (111) he will forgive | (112) we use |
| (113) you (pl.) praised | (114) would you (s.) say? |
| (115) we christen | (116) you (pl.) are not able |
| (117) I shall not answer | (118) did you (s.) obey her? |
| (119) we shall keep silent | (120) let us sweep |
| (121) you (pl.) will beg | (122) the train would not depart |
| (123) you (s.) paid off | (124) think! (pl.) |

Exercise 59d

Translate into English:

1. Modināsim bērņus!
2. Šeit mums draud briesmas no meža zvēriem.
3. Arī skābas ogas satur nedaudz cukura.
4. Zelta zobi satur daudz vairāk zelta nekā gredzeni un saktas.
5. Man ir lielas dusmas, kad es redzu bērņus, kas kaitina zvērus un biedē putņus.
6. Miķelis gaida pie vārtiem jau apmēram divas stundas.
7. Nav daudz mākslinieku, kas spēlē klavieres tik labi kā viņš.
8. Neesi dusmīgs, turpini spēlēt!
9. Vīrs, kuru vakar apcietināja un šodien pratinās, laikam ir zaglis, ko mēs apmēram sešas nedēļas meklējām.
10. Salīdzini sienu krāsas ar griestu krāsu!
11. Vai jūs apdrošināt arī mašīnas? – Nē, mēs apdrošinām tikai namus, mēbeles un klavieres.
12. Mēs visi ilgi aplaudējām slavenajam māksliniekam.
13. Māte būs dusmīga, ja viņa ieraudzīs glāzes un pudeles uz klavierēm.
14. Ja es salīdzinātu, kā lielais mākslinieks spēlē klavieres un kā es spēlēju, es varētu raudāt.
15. Ak, klavierēs ir peles!
16. Skolotājs drebēja aiz dusmām, kad viņš redzēja, ka viņa skolnieki kaitināja vecu ubagu.
17. Ja tu kaitināsi kaimiņu, tēvs būs dusmīgs, un viņš tevi sodīs.
18. Es gribu apdrošināt savu mašīnu.
19. Mākslinieku apcietināja pirms apmēram diviem mēnešiem, bet tagad viņš atkal ir brīvs.
20. Aizkaru krāsas nav skaistas.
21. Kārlis vēl arvien ir dusmīgs, viņš mani uz ielas nesveicināja.
22. Vai piens arī satur cukuru? – Es nezīnu, bet es zīnu, ka maize satur drusciņ cukura.
23. Kārlis nekad neparāda savas dusmas.
24. Es negribu domāt par karu un kara briesmām.
25. Pirms apmēram diviem mēnešiem saimnieks bija ļoti slims.
26. Vecos laikos nevienu nedrīkstēja baznīcā apcietināt.
27. Tu mani tikai kaitīni ar saviem stāstiem.
28. Lielās dusmās Miķelis aizgāja mājās.
29. Mašīna jau ir veca; es to jaunajā gadā neapdrošināšu.
30. Jūs laikam atkal apcietinājāt nepareizo vīru!
31. Es ceru, ka viņš izraudzīs savam bērņam jauku vārdu.
32. Pāvils bildināja Ievu zem liepas.

33. Vai jūs varēsīt samaksāt par jauno žogu?
34. Labrīt, es tevi gaidīju!
35. Kāpēc viņš nemēģināja mūs brīdināt?
36. Izrēķiniet, cik dolaru jūs nopelnāt mēnesī!
37. Kāpēc tu nesveicināji savus draugus?
38. Kad pratinās zagli?
39. Man ir bail bildināt savu draudzeni, jo viņa laikam atbildētu 'nē'.
40. Nemodiniet mani pirms astoņiem: es gribu ilgi gulēt.
41. Nesen avīzē sludināja lētus dzīvokļus.
42. Vai tu mēģināji lasīt ar manām brillēm?
43. Ko tu dāvināsi Mārai?
44. Izrēķini, cik draugu mēs varēsīm aicināt pie sevis!
45. Es turpināšu sludināt avīzē, ka gribu pārdot savu mašīnu.
46. Labvakar! Kā jums iet? – Labi! Un jums? – Paldies, arī labi!
47. Ar labu nakti, draugi! Mana sieva mani gaida mājās!
48. Vai tu gribētu citādus aizkarus?
49. Es tev nekur nesekošu.
50. Man ir maza alga: es nevaru samaksāt par mīkstām vilnas segām.
51. Te man nekad nebūs miera.
52. Es nevaru gulēt uz cieta spilvena.
53. Vasarā meitenes valkā kokvilnas svārkus.
54. Bīruta pavada visas savas brīvās stundas dārzā zem ābeles.
55. Aiz draudzes nama bija vecs ozols.

Exercise 59e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Which one of you arrested him?
2. Do you play the piano?
3. The piano teacher is teaching our child to play the piano.
4. The boy does not know that danger threatens him if he teases the big black horse.
5. How much silver does your brooch contain?
6. Do not tease the rooster; he is an angry bird.
7. In about two hours the sun will set; then the hills will shine in all (their) colours.
8. Did you read about the film-star who insured her legs for (par) a large sum? (*liela nauda*)
9. Children do not know the perils of war.
10. Can you see what colours the artist is using?

11. Don't go away in anger!
12. Does the medicine contain something which could harm people?
13. Although John felt (say 'had') no anger when Charles proposed to Māra, he was not happy.
14. Sweet apples contain more sugar than sour ones.
15. The farm-worker warned us of the dangers which threaten us in the great forest.
16. The artist is rehearsing a new song.
17. Today we shall again rehearse without the piano.
18. Anne plays nearly as well as her teacher.
19. Why was father so angry the day before yesterday?
20. The old beggar is never angry when children tease him.
21. Yesterday about sixty people were arrested.
22. The house has belonged to our family for about seventy-five years.
23. Father's anger will be still greater when he hears why you were arrested.
24. I hope you will not be angry if I return your dictionary only in three days' time.
25. You don't know what dangers threaten you in the high mountains.
26. How can lemons be so sour, if they contain sugar?
27. If we knew in which hotel the artist was living, we would give him flowers.
28. I did not believe his anger.
29. We arrested him a week ago, and we shall interrogate him tomorrow.
30. She did not greet me in the street; she is probably still angry.
31. I want to insure my car at once.
32. The artist will now play a few songs.
33. I did not invite you here so that you could propose to my girl-friend!
34. Good night! Please wake me early in the morning.
35. I am continuing to advertize my flat in the newspaper.
36. I warn you not to try to interrogate me!
37. Let us compare our homework.
38. The fence is so low that the chickens can easily fly into the neighbour's yard.
39. What shall I do if a strange man greets me in the street?
40. Father must not be woken before eight o'clock.
41. Oh dear, children, can't you work out how many days there are in fifty-two weeks?
42. I shall continue to give your daughter expensive rings if I wish!
43. Although he was expecting me, he did not greet me very amicably.
44. Good morning! I am your new neighbour.
45. Did you get his telephone number?
46. Where did you lose your spectacles?
47. Good evening! Let's sit under the willow tree and talk about your family.

48. Nowhere in the house was there a red pencil.
49. Good day, my friends! How are you?
50. I did not know that eagles hunted ducks.
51. How long has your knee been hurting?
52. John was very angry, because his sister was teasing him.

LESSON 60

DECLENSION OF *KAS*

Kas has only one set of forms, which serve for masculine and feminine, singular and plural alike. The declension is as follows:

Nom.	<i>kas</i>
Acc.	<i>ko</i>
Gen.	<i>kā</i>
Dat.	<i>kam</i>
Loc.	-

Kur often serves as a locative to *kas*.

The nominative, accusative and dative forms *kas*, *ko* and *kam* will already be familiar: the one unfamiliar form *kā* must be treated with some care, as its use is not as extensive as that of the other cases.

It is used mainly after prepositions that take the genitive:

Vīrs, pie kā viņš tagad dzīvo, ir maiznieks.

The man in whose house he now lives is a baker.

Mēs stāvējām uz augsta kalna, no kā varēja redzēt jūru.

We were standing on a high hill, from which the sea could be seen.

It will, however, be found occasionally without a preposition, meaning 'whose':

Kā grāmatu tu tagad lasi?

Whose book are you reading now?

The appropriate form of *kurs* is also found, e.g.,

Kura grāmatu tu tagad lasi?

When we are simply enquiring about the owner of something, the dative *kam*, with *piederēt* rather than *būt*, is usual:

Kam pieder grāmata? Whose book is it?
Kam pieder rati? Whose cart is it?

If *būt* is used, the meaning is different:

Kam ir grāmata? Who has a book?
Kam ir rati? Who has a cart?

Vocabulary

<i>osta</i>	harbour	<i>dvielis</i>	towel
<i>Ziemsvētki</i> (pl.)	Christmas	<i>mākonis</i>	cloud
<i>Lieldienas</i> (pl.)	Easter	<i>seja</i>	face
<i>plaukts</i>	shelf	<i>rīt(u)</i>	tomorrow
<i>sauss</i>	dry	<i>svarīgs</i>	important
<i>slapjš</i>	wet	<i>nekas</i>	nothing
<i>noslaucīt</i>	to wipe off		
(-slauku, -slaucīju)			

NOTES: In the masculine nominative singular indefinite only, the *-j-* of *slapjš* is silent.

kara osta 'naval base'

Nekas, like *neviens* and *nekur*, is stressed upon the second syllable, and requires a negative verb. It is declined like *kas*. Note particularly, however, that when used as a simple object, (i.e., where one would expect the accusative without a preposition) the genitive is in fact found instead:

Es nekā neredzu. I see nothing.
Mēs nekā nedzirdējām. We heard nothing.

Remember too that when used with prepositions (except *bez*) the preposition comes between the separated *ne* and *kas*:

ne ar ko with nothing
ne par ko about nothing

When 'something' *kaut kas* or 'nothing' *nekas* is used with a following adjective, as in 'something good', 'nothing new', the adjective agrees with the pronoun in the masculine singular:

Nom.	<i>kaut kas labs</i>	'something good'
Acc.	<i>kaut ko labu</i>	
Gen.	<i>kaut kā laba</i>	
Dat.	<i>kaut kam labam</i>	
Loc.	—	
Nom.	<i>nekas jauns</i>	'nothing new'
Acc.	<i>neko jaunu</i>	
Gen.	<i>nekā jauna</i>	(often used as direct object — see above)
Dat.	<i>nekam jaunam</i>	
Loc.	—	

Note the accusative case in the following:

divas dienas pēc Lieldienām two days after Easter
četrus mēnešus pirms Ziemsvētkiem four months before Christmas

Exercise 60a

Classify the different conjugational types represented by the infinitive endings *-āt, -ēt, -īt, -ot, -ūt*.

Exercise 60b

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; tu; kas* (sing. only).

Exercise 60c

Conjugate in the present and imperative: *aicināt; svilpot; dabūt; bildināt*.

Exercise 60d

Translate into English:

1. Rītu es nevaru iet pie krusttēva, jo man tā ir svarīga diena.
2. Viņš saka, ka nekas nav tik svarīgs kā nauda.
3. Kura ir Austrālijas svarīgākā osta?
4. Kam, lūdzu, ir sauss dvielis? Man nav sausa dvieļa, ar ko noslaucīt slapjšās rokas un seju.
5. Te nav koka, zem kā būtu ēna.

6. Pie kā tu pavadīji Ziemsvētkus? – Es biju pie vecākā brāļa.
7. Pēc kā viņš prasīja, kad viņš gulēja slimš svešā zemē? (*prasīt pēc* = to ask after, for, some one)
8. Rītu ir Lieldienas, tad bērni meklēs olas zālē un zem krūmiem.
9. No Ziemsvētkiem līdz Lieldienām Kārlis ceļoja plašajā pasaulē.
10. No kā taisa grāmatu plauktus? – Parasti no koka.
11. Tur uz plaukta aiz skapja ir sausie dvieļi.
12. No kā ērgļiem ir bailes? – Ne no viena!
13. Kāpēc jūs mani pratināt? Es nekā nezinu! – Ak, jūs nekā nezināt? Jūs laikam arī nezināt, kā namā jūs vakar bijāt un kā uzvalku valkājāt, kad mēs jūs apcietinājām!
14. Tā ir ļoti sausa, zinātniska grāmata.
15. Neejiet laukā, bērni, jūs dabūsit slapjas kājas!
16. Tēvs bija priecīgs, kad Ziemsvētkos visa ģimene atkal bija viņa mājā.
17. Kara ostā stāv tikai kara kuģi.
18. Mēs nevienam nestāstīsim, ko dāvināsim mātei Ziemsvētkos.
19. Mūsu laiku mākslinieki nedzīvo mākoņos.
20. Lūdzu, neej tīrajā istabā ar slapjām korpēm!
21. Krievijā Lieldienās bieži vēl ir sniegs un sals.
22. Rītu mēs draudzes namā runāsim par svarīgām lietām.
23. Glāzes un tases ir skapī uz viszemākā plaukta.
24. Pirms Lieldienām māte vēl bija vesela.
25. Kad jūs viņu pratināsīt, uzrakstiet, lūdzu, katru vārdu, jo katrs vārds ir svarīgs!
26. Pelnu trauks ir tur uz grāmatu plaukta.
27. Rīgas osta ir diezgan sekla.
28. Zēnam ir tik karsta seja, viņš laikam ir slimš.
29. Anna izmāzģās visus slapjos, netīros dvieļus.
30. Rītu bērni ies uz ostu, jo viņi grib redzēt jauno, lielo kara kuģi.
31. Lidmašīna lidoja zem augstajiem mākoņiem.
32. Man nav nekā ko tev dāvināt Ziemsvētkos.
33. Vai tu labi spēlē klavieres? – Nē, es spēlēju ļoti slikti.
34. Ja tu tagad modinātu tēvu, viņš būtu dusmīgs.
35. Noslaucīsim putekļus no galda!
36. Es šorīt eju apdrošināt savu mašīnu.
37. Anna brīdināja Pāvīlu viņu nekaitināt.
38. Kalpu apcietināja pirms apmēram sešām nedēļām.
39. Kuru meitu tu domā bildināt?
40. Ko tu sveicināji uz ielas?
41. Nesalīdzini mani ar savu brāli!
42. Es nedomāju, ka krāsas, kuras viņš izraudzīja savai mājai, ir ļoti skaistas.
43. Vai jūs gribat apdrošināt mēbeles?

44. Biruta slauka putekļus no plauktiem.
45. Lielās dusmās dziedātājs sludināja visās avīzēs, ka viņš nekad nedziedās Austrālijā.
46. Es noslaucītu rokas, ja man būtu sauss dvielis.
47. Pāvils nevienu neaicināja savās mājās, tāpēc ka viņš bija ļoti dusmīgs.
48. Es nevaru turpināt savu darbu bez naudas.
49. Es domāju, ka pilsētās cilvēkiem draud lielākas briesmas nekā mežos.
50. Nekaitiniet dusmīgos gaiļus!
51. Ja man būtu mājās siers un burkāni, man tagad nevajadzētu iet uz veikalu.
52. Dziļajā okeanā draud briesmas.
53. Veikalnieks pārdeva savai māsiņai četrus teļus.
54. Rietumu vējš dažreiz ir ļoti stiprs.
55. Es taisīšu savam māsas dēlam skaistu papīra cepuri.
56. Salāti un pipari tagad ir dārgāki nekā pirms dažām dienām.
57. Vai jūs pelnāt ļoti mazu algu?

Exercise 60e

Translate into Latvian:

1. At whose place did John spend Easter?
2. Anne spent the three months from Christmas until Easter at her aunt's place.
3. Your question is quite important, but Michael's question is much more important and interesting.
4. The plane was flying under the low clouds.
5. He was arrested in the port two days after Easter.
6. Do people in your country also give something to their children at Christmas?
7. There will again be a dry year in the east of Australia.
8. Why has the boy such a hot face?
9. I don't know whose towel it is.
10. May I use your towel?
11. I tell you every day to insure the car, but I know that tomorrow you will again do nothing.
12. Tomorrow we shall obtain a new book-shelf.
13. Why do you not know such an important telephone number?
14. The children got wet feet when they went along the river-bank.
15. Ships don't usually stay (*stāvēt*) long in a harbour.
16. Tea contains nothing that could harm a healthy person.
17. You told me nothing about the new port in the west of Australia.
18. On which shelf do you keep the milk bottles?

19. The road was dry and dusty, and our faces were soon dirty.
20. Mother will be angry if you get wet feet.
21. The children went swimming without a towel. – But today is a hot, dry day, and they will not need a towel.
22. His letter contains nothing important.
23. We gave the dry bread to the chickens.
24. Father was shaking with anger, when he heard that his son would spend Christmas with strange people.
25. Don't be sad, my friend! Tomorrow she will forgive you!
26. The colour of his face is not as good as (it was) the day before yesterday.
27. She was wiping the dust from the book-shelf.
28. How many weeks are there still until Easter?
29. The shelf does not need legs.
30. He is an artist; he lives in the clouds.
31. Tomorrow, at about four o'clock, the ship will be in the harbour.
32. At Christmas, our oldest sister used always to play the piano, and the whole family used to sing.
33. In the west I can see heavy, grey clouds.
34. When the sun was setting, the wet leaves and branches of the trees shone like gold.
35. Wipe the dust from your face.
36. Before you play, wipe the dust from the piano.
37. When did they arrest the artist? – About five days ago.
38. Father will be angry if you wake him.
39. Danger does not frighten a good hunter.
40. They will continue interrogating the thief today.
41. I warned you not to tease the hens.
42. Try to work out how many people we invited!
43. In the huge forest there is danger behind every tree.
44. Why don't you propose to her?
45. I want to compare my salary with your salary.
46. Do not greet strange men on the street.
47. Father's anger will be still greater when he knows where you were yesterday.
48. Do not tease your small brother!
49. He never insures anything.
50. He wiped his hands with a dry towel.

LESSON 61

POSTPOSITIONS

A postposition performs the same function as a preposition, the only difference between the two being that a postposition is put *after* the noun it governs, and not *before* as for prepositions. It should be noted that postpositions govern the same case in the plural as in the singular: this breaks with the prepositional usage of switching to the dative in the plural.

Examples: *priekšā* (+gen.) 'in front of'

<i>mājas priekšā</i>	in front of the house
<i>māju priekšā</i>	in front of the houses

vidū (+gen.) 'in the middle of'

<i>ielas vidū</i>	in the middle of the street
<i>draugu vidū</i>	among friends

Vocabulary

<i>priekšā</i> (postposition with gen.)	in front of
<i>vidū</i> (postposition with gen.)	in the middle of, among, amid
<i>starpā</i> (postposition with gen.)	between
<i>dēļ</i> (postposition with gen.)	because of, for the sake of
<i>labad</i> (postposition with gen.)	for the sake of, on behalf of
<i>līdzī</i> (occ. līdz) (postposition with dat.)	along with

Of the above, *priekšā*, *vidū* and *starpā* do not govern personal pronouns in the genitive, which are replaced by the locative of the corresponding possessive adjective, e.g.,

<i>manā priekšā</i>	in front of me
<i>mūsu priekšā</i>	in front of us
<i>viņu starpā</i>	between them

Priekšā, however, often prefers the dative of the personal pronoun, e.g.,

<i>man priekšā</i>	in front of me
<i>mums priekšā</i>	in front of us

Priekšā and *vidū* also function as pure adverbs, meaning 'in front' and 'in the middle' respectively. Other similar adverbs are

<i>augšā</i>	high up, upstairs
<i>apakšā</i>	down below, downstairs
<i>iekšā</i>	inside
<i>viršū</i>	on top

Viršū is often associated with a preceding dative, e.g.,

Vai zirgam ir sega viršū? Has the horse a blanket on?

It also occurs as a postposition with the genitive in the fixed expression

zemes viršū on the face of the earth

Starpā and *viršū* also have prepositional forms:

<i>starp</i> (prep. + acc.)	between, among
<i>virš</i> (prep. + gen.)	above

The difference between *starpā* and *starp* is that the first is used only when *one* noun is governed. *Starp* can be used to govern a single noun (*starp kokiem*) or to govern more than one noun (*starp žogu un ielu*).

Note the phrase *manis dēļ* 'as far as I am concerned'.

Exercise 61a

Translate into English: *sētas vidū; savā starpā; viņa dēļ; tavā priekšā; starp jūru un kalniem; maniem brāļiem līdz; tēva un mātes labad; virs jumta.*

Exercise 61b

Translate into Latvian: above the mountains; for the sake of peace; along with Paul and Arthur; between the gate and the road; in front of me; go inside; as far as I am concerned; above the city; between us; in the middle of the meadow.

Exercise 61c

Conjugate in the present and imperative: *kaitināt; brīdināt; zināt; bildināt.*

Exercise 61d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I have no money to give you.
2. We have many books to read.
3. John always has a lot of work to do.
4. Eve has five letters to answer.
5. The beggar has nowhere to go.
6. He sings to earn money.
7. I have no money to lend.
8. The bird is building a nest to live in.

Exercise 61e

Translate into English:

1. Pēc kara Vācijā un Francijā vilcieni bija tik pilni, ka cilvēki stāvēja un sēdēja vagonu starpā un arī uz jumtiem.
2. Nama priekšā bija daudz krūmu.
3. Tikai mātes dēļ Kārlis pavadīja Ziemsvētkus mājās.
4. Nams ir liels: augšā ir dzīvokļi, bet apakšā biroji un veikali.
5. Mašīnas (here: *engines*) parasti ir kuģa vidū.
6. Aivars gāja tēvam līdzī medīt meža pīles.
7. Es tev iešu līdzī uz veikalu.
8. Tur apakšā tek dziļā, tumšā upe.
9. Vai jūs meklējāt zagli visā namā? – Jā, augšā un apakšā.
10. Bibliotēkas priekšā jau zied rozes.
11. Vai tu gribi maizi? – Jā, un sviestu arī viršū.
12. Līdzmašīna lidoja virs mākopiem.
13. Segas vēl ir iekšā.
14. Mūsu vidū ir zaglis.
15. Piedodiet, vai jūsu vidū ir ārsts?
16. Es ceru, ka tu klusēsi par visu, ko runāsim savā starpā.
17. Manis dēļ plaukts var stāvēt stūrī vai skapju starpā.
18. Es biju pilsētā svarīgu lietu dēļ. Tur es runāju arī tevis labad ar dažiem cilvēkiem.
19. Man bija liels prieks pavadīt tik jauku vakaru jūsu vidū, mīļie draugi!
20. Mūsu skola ir starp bibliotēku un baznīcu.
21. Lidlauks ir starp ostu un staciju.
22. Šeit ir veikals. Iesim iekšā, jo tur ir daudz ko redzēt.
23. Kad Miķelis stāvēja skolotāja priekšā, viņam bija pavisam mūļīga seja.

24. Augšā dzīvokļi ir daudz gaišāki nekā apakšā.
25. Vai jūs lasījāt grāmatu "Vējiem līdzi"? (*Gone with the Wind*)
26. Augšā nabadzīgā dzīvoklī dzīvo mākslinieks, kam ir gari mati.
27. Zemes virsū laikam nav laimes.
28. Kā labad saimnieks tik smagi strādā?
29. Vai zemes virsū vēl ir godīgi cilvēki?
30. Anna ietu Miķelim līdzi uz visām pasaules malām.
31. Garajā ceļā Jānim bija līdzi tikai sausa maize un pudele piena.
32. Ārā ir auksts, bet iekšā ir silts.
33. Desmit dolaru dēļ zaglis tagad sēdēs sešus mēnešus.
34. Viņu apcietināja viņa mājas priekšā mēnesi pirms Lieldienām.
35. Starp Ziemeļsvētkiem un Lieldienām ir apmēram četri mēneši.
36. Kara lidmašīnas lidoja virs ostas.
37. Lai viņas noslauka savas slapjās rokas ar sausu dvieli!
38. Noslaucīsim putekļus no plauktiem!
39. Nesalīdziniet mani ar savu slinko dēlu!
40. Neejiet ārā slapjajā zālē bez kurpēm!
41. Pilsēta ir starp jūru un kalniem.
42. Neviens nezina, cik ilgi viņš dzīvos zemes virsū.
43. Aivars apdrošināja savu māju četras dienas pirms Ziemeļsvētkiem.
44. Ar kuru dvieli tu noslaucīsi seju?
45. Zaglis nekā svarīga nesacīja, kad viņu pratināja.
46. Vai tu māki spēlēt klavieres?
47. Ceļš kalnu starpā ir ļoti šaurs.
48. Virs nama lidoja liels ērglis.
49. Tikai mātes labad tēvs strādā tik smagu darbu.
50. Virs skapjiem pie sienas ir plaukti.
51. Saimnieks sodīja bērnus, kas kaitināja viņa gaili.

Exercise 61f

Translate into Latvian:

1. May we go along with the farm-workers to the enclosure? – As far as I am concerned, yes.
2. In front of us stood a huge bear.
3. Did you hear what the artists were saying amongst themselves?
4. There is no teacher among us.
5. He did it for the sake of the congregation.
6. Let us search for the thief in the house. – Only inside? – Yes, but upstairs and downstairs.

7. The doctor lives with his family upstairs, and the landlord (*saimnieks*) lives below.
8. When we were flying above the mountains, we saw rivers and lakes below.
9. In front of the bank there are some beautiful old linden-trees.
10. In the midst of his family the old man was happy.
11. He left his family because of another woman.
12. For her sake he would give away all that belongs to him.
13. There are not many famous writers in this world.
14. Above the clouds the sun is always shining.
15. I shall say it in front of everybody.
16. High in the mountains there is still a lot of snow, but down below the trees and bushes are already blooming.
17. Who will go along with the hunters?
18. There is no one among us who would not keep quiet.
19. I wanted to tell you that I shall be going with Charles tomorrow.
20. That is a beautiful old church, but it is very dark inside.
21. Let us hope there will be peace on the face of the earth.
22. A cart was standing in front of the gate.
23. There is no one upstairs.
24. Why don't you all sing together with us?
25. As far as I am concerned, you may use a new dry towel.
26. For the sake of the children we spend each summer on the beach.
27. There are only two roosters among the chickens.
28. I don't know on whose account he works so hard.
29. The city is between the mountains and the sea.
30. Good morning! I would like to insure my furniture.
31. He was arrested two days before Easter.
32. Where do you intend to spend Christmas?
33. Wipe the dust from the piano before you play.
34. Why didn't you warn us of the danger?
35. The sun cannot be seen today because there are so many clouds.
36. Tomorrow at about ten o'clock I shall go with the children to the harbour.
37. He did not greet me – perhaps he is angry.
38. How much sugar do grapes contain?
39. John never shows his anger.
40. The book-shelf is of oak.
41. You promised not to tease me!
42. The table is still dirty – let's wipe it over!
43. In Europe the months between Christmas and Easter are wet months.
44. Anne always chooses light colours.
45. Why is the book-shelf so dusty?
46. He never says anything important.

47. I am expecting a very important letter.
 48. How can I wipe my face without a towel?
 49. I read something interesting in the paper this morning.
 50. There is never anything interesting in the newspaper.
 51. Did he propose to her because of her pretty face or because of her father's money?
 52. Why are my spectacles and her brooch in your pocket?
 53. If you continue singing in front of the bank, I shall arrest you.
 54. I shall never be able to live in peace here!
 55. I see that they are again advertizing cotton sheets and pillows in the newspaper.
 56. Do you write with a hard or soft pencil?
 57. Nowhere was I able to obtain the cheap woollen curtains that I wanted.
 58. The fence between our houses has been standing for nearly seventy-five years.
 59. Good evening! Please follow me!
 60. Good night, my friends! My wife will be angry if I do not go home at once!
 61. Good day, Māra! How are you?

LESSON 62

DECLENSION OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN -US

A small group of masculine nouns has the ending *-us* in the nominative singular. Nouns of this type are declined as follows:

krogus 'tavern, inn'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>krog-us</i>	<i>krog-i</i>
Acc.	<i>krog-u</i>	<i>krog-us</i>
Gen.	<i>krog-us</i>	<i>krog-u</i>
Dat.	<i>krog-um</i>	<i>krog-iem</i>
Loc.	<i>krog-ū</i>	<i>krog-os</i>

It will be seen that in the plural the endings are identical with those of masculine nouns in *-s*. In the singular, particular attention should be paid to the genitive form.

Vocabulary

<i>lietus</i>	rain	<i>tirgus</i>	market
<i>alus</i>	beer	<i>kļēpus</i>	cough
<i>lēdus</i>	ice	<i>krogus</i>	tavern, inn, pub
<i>mēdus</i>	honey	<i>muca</i>	keg
<i>vidus</i>	middle, centre	<i>(ie)lēja</i>	valley
<i>dienvidi</i> (pl.)	south	<i>lējā</i> (advb.)	down, downwards

NOTES: *ledus kalns* ice-berg
viduslaiki the Middle Ages
vidusskola High School
garais klepus whooping-cough
ledus lācis polar bear

Exercise 62a

- (1) Decline in the singular: *lietus; medus; alus*.
 (2) Decline in the plural: *tirgus; krogus; dienvidi*.

Exercise 62b

Translate into Latvian: in front of us; in the middle of winter; on account of his cough; between the market and the inn; as far as we are concerned.

Exercise 62c

Decline in the singular and plural the personal pronouns: *es; tu; viņš; viņa*; and the reflexive pronoun.

Exercise 62d

What are the differences in conjugation between:

<i>mācīt</i>	and	<i>mocīt</i> ;
<i>dziedāt</i>	and	<i>zināt</i> ;
<i>strādāt</i>	and	<i>raudāt</i> ;
<i>medīt</i>	and	<i>sodīt</i> ;
<i>cerēt</i>	and	<i>gulēt</i> ;
<i>tecēt</i>	and	<i>vajadzēt</i> ;
<i>paldzēt</i>	and	<i>meklēt</i> ;
<i>domāt</i>	and	<i>bildināt</i> .

Exercise 62e

Translate into English:

1. Cik mums ir vīna glāžu?
2. Miķelis ir ļoti slimš, vai jūs dzirdat viņa klepu? – Dodiet viņam karstu tēju vai pienu ar medu, tas palīdzēs.
3. Istabas vidū stāvēja liela alus muca.
4. Eiropas dienvidos mazajās pilsētās tirgus parasti ir ielas vidū.
5. Līdz pilsētas vidum vēl ir tālu. Es iešu jums līdz līdzi tirgum.
6. Kalnos parasti ir vairāk sniega un lietus nekā ielejās.
7. Dažās vietās Austrālijā bērni nezina, kas ir lietus.
8. Medus satur ļoti daudz cukura.
9. Viduslaikos, kad vēl netaisīja pudeles, alu pārdeva tikai no mucām. Tad cilvēki tirgus dienās sēdēja krogū pie alus mucām un runāja par laiku, par lopiem vai bieži arī par karu.
10. Vai Krievijas ziemeļos ir ledus lāči?
11. Bērnam laikam ir garais klepus, rītu mēs iesim pie ārsta.
12. Medum ir ļoti skaista krāsa! – Jā, un tas ir pavisam skaidrs.
13. Cik ilgi vīna pudele jau stāv ledū?
14. Lielais, dziļais krogus pagrabs ir pilns ar mucām un pudelēm.
15. Mucas parasti taisa no viscietākā ozola.
16. Vai tu redzēji, ka krogum tagad ir jauns jumts?
17. Te augšā uz kalna gaiss ir aukstāks nekā lejā pie upes.
18. Pirms Ziemsvētkiem visos tirgos un krogos redz vairāk cilvēku nekā parastās tirgus dienās.
19. Austrālijas avīzēs vienmēr raksta par lietu, jo sausā zemē lietus ir svarīgāks nekā Eiropā.
20. Alus ir dažreiz tik auksts kā ledus.
21. Ja tu dabūsi klepu, es būšu ļoti dusmīga, jo es tevi brīdināju neiet ārā salā, bet tu man neklausīji!
22. Ielejā starp augstajiem kalniem ir maza pilsēta.
23. Upe tek no dienvidiem uz ziemeļiem.
24. Dziedātājiem vienmēr ir bailes no klepus.
25. Nemeklējiet viņu augšā, meklējiet apakšā! – Tur mēs jau meklējam visās malās.
26. Vai Amerikas dienvidos arī runā angļiski?
27. Dienvidos ieleja ir daudz plašāka nekā ziemeļos.
28. Viduslaikos medus bija svarīgāks nekā mūsu laikos, jo tad vēl nebija cukura.
29. Iesim lejā!
30. Mēs ar Jāni pavadīsim Lieldienas vecajā ostā.
31. Manis dēļ viņš nekā nedarīs.

32. Vai saimnieks ir mājās? – Jā, ejiet iekšā!
33. Lidmašīna lidoja virs tumšajiem mākoņiem.
34. Kas lietoja balto dvieļi? Tas vēl ir slapjš.
35. Uz plaukta grāmatu starpā bija arī avīzes.
36. Mana sieva vienmēr grib gulēt, un miera labad es nelasišu gultā.
37. Lauku starpā ir sēta.
38. Viņš strādā tikai savu bērnu dēļ.
39. Virs sētas ābeļu zaros dziedāja putni.
40. Bagātais tirgotājs vienmēr ceļo starp Londonu un Ņujorku.
41. Mazais Aivars aizgāja savam brālim līdzi uz skolu.
42. Starp namu un upi stāv pieci veci ozoli.
43. Jānis pazaudēja visu savu naudu tikai vienas skaistas meitas dēļ.
44. Kāpēc tu nupat svilpoji, kad mācītājs runāja?
45. Vai Āfrika ir lielāka vai mazāka par Krieviju?
46. Visretākās zāles pārdod tikai dažās aptiekās.
47. Ja jūsu pagalmš būtu tīrāks, tur būtu mazāk mušu un žurku.
48. Saka, ka bites ir čaklas un strādīgas.
49. Šur un tur ceļmalā zied lauku un meža puķes.

Exercise 62f

Translate into Latvian:

1. How much does wool cost on the world market?
2. The cough has been tormenting him for a long time.
3. The sun is now shining again after the rain.
4. There was a narrow valley between the high mountains.
5. The beer keg is empty!
6. Good day! Have you been standing here in front of the inn for a long time? – Yes! – Then you have probably seen my husband. – Yes, he is inside.
7. I hope the big, grey clouds above the hills will give us rain. – No, there will be no rain; the clouds are in the south!
8. The young doctor is writing a scientific work about whooping-cough.
9. In the middle of the lake the ice is not as strong as on the bank.
10. The honey has a yellow colour.
11. The woman who sells honey in the market is Baiba's godmother.
12. Let us go into the middle of the carriage; there are fewer people there.
13. Beer kegs are made of oak, and are very heavy.
14. From the hill the whole valley can be seen.
15. The old inn has a very large cellar.
16. Don't sit in the middle of the floor!

17. My husband cannot live without beer; when he goes to the market to sell honey, eggs and vegetables, he always goes to the inn as well. There he sits with his friends, and over (*pie*) a glass of beer, they talk about markets, and perhaps also about other things: about the dry weather in the south of the country, or about the new railway station in the valley.
18. Excuse me, please! Downstairs there is a man who is asking for (*pēc*) the landlord.
19. Your feet are as wet and as cold as ice; soon you will have a cough, as before Christmas. – I am not afraid of a cough; a bit of honey always helps.
20. In the middle of the room stood a large cupboard.
21. He was waiting in the rain.
22. The winebottle cannot be kept (*turēt*) in the ice for very long.
23. Charles already goes to High School.
24. At twelve o'clock in Europe the sun is in the south.
25. A large river flows in the valley.
26. Which one of you lives in the south of the city?
27. Did you also look for him between the kegs in the cellar? – No, we looked upstairs and downstairs at the inn, but we did not look in the cellar.
28. It is very dark down here.
29. Who is talking down there?
30. Let's go down by the river!
31. The rich film-star thinks that nothing is so important as a pretty face.
32. Will Arthur be travelling along with us tomorrow?
33. All the wet towels are in the large bag.
34. Why did you plant so many bushes in front of your house?
35. In some countries the animals are kept downstairs, and the people sleep upstairs.
36. There are many thieves on the face of the earth.
37. I could not live among artists for long.
38. Wipe the dust from the book-shelves.
39. There is still a lot of ice in the harbour at Easter.
40. As far as I am concerned, my son can travel to Paris with you.
41. In the Middle Ages, towns were much smaller than now.
42. Small planes cannot always fly above the clouds.
43. For whose sake does he work such long hours?
44. Down by the lake I saw an old beggar.
45. For the sake of her pretty face, Arthur lost all his money.
46. The bank gave him an unusually large loan.
47. Don't try to translate the more difficult words without a dictionary, or otherwise your translation will be very bad.
48. Don't beg in the streets! Ask your father for money!

49. Stop the car! There is a horse on the road in front of us.
50. Don't stand there empty-handed! Do you want a glass of wine?
51. How much money have you? – I don't know, I am still counting.
52. "Where does it hurt?" asked the doctor.
53. My shoe-laces are not long enough: I must go to the cobbler's again.
54. Sometimes the most honest men are not esteemed.
55. Why did you smile when I said that I used to work as a traindriver?
56. If you don't obey me, I'll soon show you!

LESSON 63

NUMERALS FROM 100 TO 1000

100	<i>simts</i> or <i>simt</i> (indec., +gen.)
101	<i>simt(s) viens</i> (+sing. noun)
102	<i>simt(s) divi</i> , etc.
110	<i>simt(s) desmit</i> (+gen.)
120	<i>simt(s) divdesmit</i> (+gen.), etc.
200	<i>divi simti</i> or <i>divsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
300	<i>trīs simti</i> or <i>trīssimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
400	<i>četri simti</i> or <i>četrsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
500	<i>pieci simti</i> or <i>piecsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
600	<i>seši simti</i> or <i>sešsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
700	<i>septiņi simti</i> or <i>septiņsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
800	<i>astoņi simti</i> or <i>astoņsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
900	<i>deviņi simti</i> or <i>deviņsimt</i> (indec., +gen.)
1000	<i>tūkstoš</i> (indec., +gen.)

The two sets of forms given here are interchangeable, although some speakers exhibit a preference for the non-contracted forms for the round hundreds, and for the contracted forms when the hundred is followed by any other number.

Vocabulary

Numerals from 100 to 1000

<i>skaitlis</i>	figure, number	<i>vajadzīgs</i>	necessary
<i>mārciņa</i>	pound (of money and weight)	<i>agri</i> (advb)	early
		<i>vēlu</i> (advb)	late
<i>dubļi</i> (pl.)	mud	<i>Juris</i>	male name
<i>migla</i>	fog	<i>Aija</i>	female name
<i>miglains</i>	foggy	<i>atbilde</i>	answer

NOTE: *Mārciņa* is not strictly speaking the English pound of 16 ounces, but 500 grammes, i.e., about $17\frac{1}{2}$ ounces.

Exercise 63a

Write the following numbers in Latvian: 184, 275, 366, 457, 639, 721, 812, 903, 999, 1543, 1826.

Exercise 63b

Decline in the singular and plural: *siltais krogus; putekļainais tirgus.*

Exercise 63c

Count in twelves from 363 to 507.

Exercise 63d

Translate into English:

1. Viduslaikos viena mārciņa bija liela nauda.
2. Tagad es redzu slaveno Londonas miglu, par kuru es tik bieži lasīju.
3. Kāpēc dažiem cilvēkiem ir bailes no skaitļa trīspadsmit? – Viņi domā, ka tas ir nelaimīgs skaitlis.
4. Pēc lietus mēs stāvējām dubļos līdz ceļiem.
5. Cik mārciņu medus var dabūt par vienu mārciņu?
6. Eiropas ziemeļos saule vasarā noriet ļoti vēlu.
7. Jura atbilde mūs visus sabiedēja.
8. Ostā stāvēja simt viens kuģis.
9. Cik smaga ir mazā alus muca? – Tikai simt divas mārciņas.
10. Šeit ir vajadzīgs vīrs, kam ir gaiša galva un stipras rokas.
11. Simt desmit vai simt divdesmit mārciņu ir laba mēneša alga.
12. Kalnos spīdēja saule, bet ieleja bija vēl pavisam miglaina.
13. Tirgū strādā cilvēki, kas nemāk rakstīt skaitļus, bet māk visu izrēķināt uz pirkstiem.
14. Juris gāja vēlu gulēt.
15. Miglainās dienās kalnus nevar redzēt.
16. Mākslinieka atbilde bija ļoti interesanta.
17. Lietus mums ir ļoti vajadzīgs.

18. Aijai ir četri simti dolaru bankā.
19. Tēvs būs dusmīgs par Jura atbildi.
20. Tūkstoš dolaru ir liela nauda, bet tūkstoš mārciņu ir daudz lielāka.
21. Jura mašīna maksāja gandrīz tūkstoš dolaru.
22. Viņš negrib, ka es viņam atdošu vārdnīcu jau šodien.
23. Viesnīcā tik vēlu nedrīkst dziedāt un svilpot.
24. Aija jau agri mācēja zīmēt un spēlēt klavieres, bet diezgan vēlu lasīt un rakstīt.
25. Lūdzu, modiniet mani agri, jo mans vilciens atiet pirms septiņiem.
26. Noslauki dubļus no kurpēm, jo es nupat mazgāju grīdu!
27. Baznīcai ir jau tūkstoš gadu.
28. Miglainās dienās Juris nestrādā, bet sēž krogū.
29. Cikos Aija aizgāja mājās? – Apmēram septiņos. – Kāpēc tik agri? – Tāpēc, ka ārā bija migla.
30. Juris pārdeva Artūram pieci simti ķieģeļu.
31. Vai tu dzirdēji Aijas gudro atbildi?
32. Mēs varam dabūt tirgū visu, kas mums ir vajadzīgs.
33. Ko tu tur meklē dubļos?
34. Āfrikā taisa ķieģeļus no dubļiem.
35. Miglainajā laikā pirms Ziemsvētkiem visai ģimenei bija klepus.
36. Mēs tevi meklējam visā mājā, augšā un apakšā, bet tu tur nebiji.
37. Kāpēc tu stāvi krogus priekšā, ja tu vari sēdēt iekšā?
38. Viņa nevarēja dziedāt stipra klepus dēļ.
39. Iesim lejā pie upmalas!
40. Krievijas dienvidos ziemā ir mazāk sniega un ledus nekā ziemeļos.
41. Vai tu gribi tējā cukuru vai medu? – Paldies, nē, tikai drusku citrona.
42. Baltais sniegs guļ uz pļavām un laukiem.
43. Vīrs mākoņiem vienmēr spīd saule.
44. Vai tavs dēls vēl iet vidusskolā?
45. Ieleja šeit ir šaura, un upe tek ļoti ātri.
46. Ak, ko viņš nedarītu naudas dēļ!
47. Francijā pārdod vairāk vīna nekā alus.
48. Anglijas dienvidos dzīvo vairāk cilvēku nekā ziemeļos.
49. Pavādīsim dažas dienas jūrmalā!
50. Galds stāvēja istabas vidū.
51. Vakars vienmēr seko dienai.
52. Labrīt! Es gribu apdrošināt savu veco mašīnu par divi simti mārciņām.
53. Ar labu nakti, mani draugi! Ja es tagad neiešu mājās, mana sieva būs ļoti dusmīga.
54. Noslauki seju sausajā dvielī, kas ir uz plaukta!
55. Zagli apcietināja un pratināja.
56. Nevar salīdzināt lielo Londonu ar mazajiem Ķemeriem.

57. Kas bija skaistā sieviete, kuru tu sveicināji uz ielas? – Tā bija mana māsiņa Ieva.
 58. Ko tu dāvināsi mātei Ziemsvētkos?

Exercise 63e

Translate into Latvian:

1. In the Middle Ages there were only forests where there are now large cities.
2. If thirteen is an unlucky number, which one is a lucky number?
3. Let us go to bed early, because tomorrow we are going hunting wild (*meža*) pigs.
4. Juris proposed to Aija in a letter, and now he is waiting for her reply.
5. On foggy days danger threatens every ship.
6. Juris got a thousand pounds for his old car.
7. In the fog, Aija did not see the mud, and now her beautiful white shoes are wet and dirty.
8. Juris has a hundred and twenty white mice.
9. The figure on the fence is probably the number of the house.
10. I did not expect that Juris would send his reply so late.
11. Will the bank lend me a thousand pounds? – Not that much, but perhaps eight or nine hundred pounds.
12. Why did Aija go to work so late this morning?
13. Who gave the best answer?
14. How heavy is the pig? – Six hundred and fifty-three pounds.
15. You will not see much fog in the south of our country, but in the north we have some very foggy days.
16. Do you need an ash-tray? – No, I am smoking a pipe.
17. Juris was very happy at (*par*) Aija's reply.
18. High in the mountains the sun shines quite early, but below there is often fog.
19. In front of the forest there was a foggy meadow.
20. You can't get beer in the inn that late!
21. No ice is required.
22. There is no mud in the middle of the road.
23. Juris is a big boy now; he can write figures.
24. Mud often contains clay.
25. A new shelf is not necessary, but a comfortable bed *is* needed.
26. Were you at the market that early?
27. In such foggy weather one can easily get a cough.
28. The student was still sitting over (*pie*) his books late in the evening.
29. My husband is always inside the tavern.

30. It is uncomfortable to sit for a long time on a beer keg.
31. Write down the number eight hundred and thirty-seven.
32. After rain there is always a lot of mud in the garden.
33. In the beautiful green valley flows a broad river.
34. Between the great oak-trees there were many smaller bushes.
35. In the centre of Australia there is very little rain, and the soil is very barren.
36. Is honey made only by bees?
37. In our High school there are nine hundred and twenty-six pupils.
38. In the cellar of the inn there were one hundred and forty-eight kegs of beer and seven hundred and eighty-one bottles of wine.
39. Is there still much ice in the harbour at Easter?
40. Do you want to go to town with father?
41. Eve has whooping-cough again.
42. As far as I am concerned, you may go down to the river if you wish.
43. Valleys between high mountains are usually quite narrow.
44. In Australia the south wind is usually quite cold.
45. Above the clouds there is no rain and no fog.
46. For his wife's sake Charles never goes to the inn.
47. Whom did you see in the market this morning?
48. Wool is softer than cotton, and it is also more expensive.
49. Nowhere are brooches and rings sold as cheaply as in Africa.
50. Did you know that your chickens are in my yard?
51. Do they still advertize flats in the paper?

LESSON 64

FURTHER REMARKS ON NUMERALS:
CONFLICTING CASE REQUIREMENTS

The numerals 10, 20, 100, 1000, etc. normally require a following genitive, e.g., *desmit vīru, simts zirgu*. It will be seen that, in a phrase like 'with ten men', a conflict will arise between the genitive after *desmit* and the dative here required by *ar*. Similar problems arise with the adverbs of quantity *maz, mazāk, vairāk, daudz, nedaudz, drusku*, etc.

In determining the case of the following noun, we must consider the word group of numeral (or adverb) plus noun as a whole, and examine its function in the sentence.

In the sentence 'Ten men are working in the garden', the group 'ten men' stands as the subject, and *taken as a whole*, can be considered as a nominative

group *in function*, even if not necessarily *in form*. Similarly in the sentence 'I saw ten men', the group 'ten men' is the object, and can be considered as being accusative in function.

In 'He stole the wages of ten men', 'I am working with ten men', and 'in ten men', the group 'ten men' fulfils respectively, in Latvian syntax, a genitive, dative and locative function.

When the group of numeral plus noun fulfils a nominative function, the noun will normally go into the genitive:

Desmit vīru strādā dārzā.

One will, however, occasionally find *desmit vīri*.

When the group of numeral plus noun fulfils an accusative function, we must consider the type of accusative involved. If it is an accusative of extent of time, e.g., 'for ten days', 'ten days after Easter', etc., then the noun will usually be in the accusative:

desmit dienas, desmit dienas pēc Lieldienām, desmit mēnešus, etc.

If the group is accusative because it is a direct object, then either the accusative or the genitive may be found:

Es redzēju desmit vīrus. Es redzēju desmit vīrus.

If the group of numeral plus noun fulfils a genitive function, then the genitive case of the noun is automatic:

desmit vīru algas; simts namu jumti.

If the group of numeral plus noun fulfils a dative function, then the dative case of the noun is automatic:

*Es atbildēju divdesmit vēstulēm.
Es strādāju ar simts vīriem.*

If the group of numeral plus noun fulfils a locative function, then the locative case of the noun is automatic:

desmit dienās; simt grāmatās; trīsdesmit dārzos.

Further, the priority of the genitive is completely lost when the group numeral plus plural noun is preceded by a declined word belonging to the group:

mani desmit dēli my ten sons
visas divdesmit pilsētas all twenty cities

It will be clear that any group of numeral plus noun will invariably mean a noun *in the plural*, whereas the adverbs of quantity may in general be followed either by a singular or by a plural.

In the singular, the genitive required by the adverb of quantity has priority over the case required by a preposition:

ar daudz naudas; ar vairāk naudas; ar maz naudas, etc.

In the plural the rules laid down for numerals plus plural noun apply:

ar daudz ratiem with many carts
ar desmit ratiem with ten carts

In order to express an approximate number, the numeral is often placed after the noun:

Es gaidīju piecas dienas. I waited five days.
Es gaidīju dienas piecas. I waited about five days.

Vocabulary

<i>ardievu</i>	good-bye	<i>tie/tos</i>	they (m.) nom./acc.
<i>ziepes</i> (pl.)	soap	<i>tās/tās</i>	they (f.) nom./acc.
<i>rātņi</i>	well-behaved	<i>(vis-)apkārt</i>	(with dat.) (all) around
<i>trauks</i>	dish, vessel	<i>sērkociņš</i>	match
<i>dzīve</i>	life	<i>kastīte</i>	(small) box
<i>nāve</i>	death	<i>acumirkli</i>	moment

NOTES: *Tie/tos* and *tās/tās*, like their singular counterparts *tas/to* and *tā/to*, are normally used of inanimates and animals, humans usually being represented by *viņi* and *viņas*.

Ardievu is stressed on the second syllable.

In either its ordinary form *apkārt* or augmented form *visapkārt*, this word can be used either as a preposition with the dative, as a postposition with the dative, or simply as an adverb. *Visapkārt* is stressed on the second syllable.

Acumirkli (acc. sing.) is often used alone to mean 'Wait a minute'. In this use only, it is stressed on the third syllable.

Exercise 64a

Translate into English: *pēc desmit dienām; ar daudz naudas; zem simts grāmatām; dienās piecās; septiņdesmit gados; mani desmit brālēni; visi desmit cilvēki; ar drusku sviesta; ar daudz ratiem.*

Exercise 64b

Translate into Latvian: in twenty years; after about ten days; my thirty hens; behind thirty chairs; with many words; in a hundred years; all forty school-boys; for fifty days; with a little money; with a little butter; with many carts.

Exercise 64c

Translate into Latvian, writing in full: 234; 345; 619; 851; 777; 240 pigs; 378 pounds; 521 men; 199 dollars.

Exercise 64d

Decline in the singular: *ledus; medus*.

Decline in the plural: *tirgus; dienvidi*.

Exercise 64e

Translate into English:

1. Esī rātns bērns! Saki krustmātei ardievu!
2. Es gribētu iet apkārt ezeram, bet nevaru, jo tur ir dažas slapjas vietas.
3. Medniekam vienmēr ir kastīte sērkociņu kabatā.
4. Vai jūsu vīrs ir mājās? – Jā, bet acumirkli! Viņš ir pie tālruņa.
5. Vai jūs parasti mazgājat matus ar ziepēm?
6. Vai sērkociņu kastītes ir tukšas? – Nē, tās ir pilnas, jūs tās nevarat dabūt, bērni!
7. Šeit visapkārt ir meži. Tas ir ļoti jauki, tad te būs klusa dzīve.
8. Pēc vīra nāves Aija pārdeva visus sudraba traukus, jo viņa bija slima sievietē, un viņa negribēja tos vienmēr tīrīt.
9. Vai tās ir labas ziepes? – Jā, es tās jau lietoju desmit gadus; tās var dabūt katrā veikalā un aptiekā.
10. Pirms acumirkļa sērkociņu kastīte vēl bija te uz galda.
11. Juris pārdeva ratus par simt divdesmit mārciņām.
12. Divi simti namos dzīvo septiņsimt četrdesmit seši cilvēki.
13. Es neticu, ka dzīve pilsētā ir jaukāka par lauku dzīvi.
14. Vai jūs ticat dzīvei pēc nāves?
15. Katrs cer, ka viņam būs viegla nāve.
16. Nedod bērniem sērkociņus!
17. Es vienmēr lietoju lētas ziepes, kad es mazgāju palagus un vilnas zeķes.

18. Kāpēc sērkociņu galvas parasti ir sarkanas?
19. Visi divi simti dolari, kurus Juris dabūja no krusttēva, tagad ir bankā.
20. Mēs meklējam Aijas gredzenu visur: visapkārt mājai un arī dārzā.
21. Vecos laikos cilvēkiem bija tikai māla trauki.
22. Te ir augsts žogs, ko mēs tagad darīsim? – Acumirkli! Mēs varam iet žogam apkārt.
23. Man acumirkli (*at the moment*) nav naudas.
24. Vai tu vari redzēt, kas ir kastītē iekšā?
25. Ja tu būsi rātns bērns, tu dabūsi visas manas tukšās cigarešu un sērkociņu kastītes.
26. Ir jau rīts, draugi, ardievu!
27. Viņi sacīja ardievu un gāja mājās.
28. No visiem desmit bērniem neviens nebija nerātņāks par Juri.
29. Ja Aija būs nerātņa, māte viņu sodīs.
30. Cāļi ir nedēļas piecas veci, es tos vēl nevaru pārdot.
31. Dienas sešas kuģis stāvēja ostā.
32. Stundas trīs mēs lidojām virs mākoņiem.
33. Kur tagad ir mani desmit kalpi? Es viņus nekur neredzu.
34. Vai tie ir jūsu jaunie ratī?
35. Pēc lietus visapkārt mājai bija dubļi.
36. Visas trīsdesmit alus mucas krogus pagrabā tagad ir tukšas.
37. Manas desmit mārciņas tagad ir krogus kasē.
38. Tagad visur ir tik daudz jaunu veikalu, vai tirgi vēl ir vajadzīgi?
39. Lidlaukos cilvēki strādā agri un vēlu.
40. Es ceru dabūt tikai desmit vai divdesmit atbilžu, kaut gan es uzrakstīju piecdesmit vēstuļu.
41. Eiropas dienvidos ziemā ir mazāk sniega un ledus nekā ziemeļos.
42. Mūsu vidusskolā visi septiņsimt piecdesmit skolnieki valkā zaļas cepures.
43. Bērnam ir klepus. Dod viņam karstu pienu ar medu!
44. Pirmdien bija lietus un migla, otrdien visur vēl bija dubļi, un trešdiena atkal bija miglaina diena.

Exercise 64f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Can you please keep silent for a moment?
2. There is mud all around the lake.
3. The matches are wet – they are useless.
4. Now say good-bye to your friends, for it is time to go to sleep.
5. There are about fifty matches in each match-box.
6. After a few months she followed her husband into death.

7. There is peace all around in the high mountains.
8. The best soap can be obtained only in pharmacies.
9. I do not need a box.
10. Which one of the girls will wash the dishes?
11. If you are naughty, nobody will give you anything for Christmas. (Locative)
12. After his wife's death there was no happiness in his life.
13. Some matches have red heads, and some have blue heads.
14. Aija is such a well-behaved child!
15. Early in his life Juris was already working hard.
16. Country (*lauku*) life is hard, and many people seek an easier life in the cities.
17. The pastor was speaking about life and death.
18. Good-bye! My train leaves in a few moments.
19. In thirteen months he paid off the four hundred and eighty dollars.
20. Of (*no*) the six hundred pounds, Juris paid off only about a hundred and fifty.
21. May I use your fountain-pen for a moment? – As far as I am concerned, yes.
22. The good towels are not to be used in the kitchen.
23. Is that good soap?
24. Around the house there are linden-trees and oaks.
25. Oh dear, there is a high fence in front of us – let's go around.
26. The boxes are empty – give them to the children.
27. The teacher will punish the naughty children.
28. The colour of the boxes is quite dark.
29. In which dish is the honey?
30. Juris was a naughty boy, but now he is an honest, hard-working man.
31. The dishes must not be washed with soap.
32. Just a moment – show me your ring.
33. In war-time death and danger are all around.
34. Good-bye, my friends, the sun is already setting, and my family is waiting for me at home.
35. Good-bye! Will you be at the market tomorrow?
36. Those are very beautiful flowers.
37. Juris is still waiting for Aija's answer.
38. I never go to bed early.
39. Those are very expensive forks and spoons.
40. On which platform is the big time-table?
41. In olden times farmers' wives used to make (= *vārlt*) soap at home.
42. I don't know how many chimneys the hotel has, because I did not count them.
43. There was fog on Thursday and rain on Friday.

44. Downstairs in the cellar there are fifty-eight kegs, all full of beer.
45. Another high school is needed in our town.
46. Juris proposed to Aija in a letter, and is still awaiting a reply.
47. The lady-teacher is now teaching the children to write figures.
48. The valleys are still foggy, although high in the mountains the sun is now shining.
49. Is honey sold in the market?
50. Don't let's waste time, the train may leave early.
51. On Sunday it was cold and foggy: now I have a cough.
52. The south of Africa is rich in gold.
53. Go and wash the mud from your knees!
54. The girl student speaks Latvian, Russian, French and German.
55. I have so much work to do that I never have the time to read a book.
56. Decline the word "glass".
57. Does your cousin (m.) work at home?
58. How many cigarettes do you usually smoke in a week?
59. Little Māra was trying to draw a man on a horse.
60. You can't frighten me!
61. Why do you praise your lazy daughter?
62. There is now no happiness in my life.
63. Can we go berry-picking today?
64. Who is so free that he can do as he wishes?
65. Anne was very grateful for the silver plate, which her aunt gave her.
66. All ten knives are in the cupboard.
67. Did you see her twenty cats?
68. Are all peas green?

LESSON 65

DECLENSION AND USE OF *TAS*

Besides being a demonstrative pronoun, *tas* is also a demonstrative adjective.

<i>Tas ir zirgs.</i>	That is a horse.
<i>Kur ir tas zirgs?</i>	Where is that horse?
<i>Tā ir vista.</i>	That is a hen.
<i>Kur ir tā vista?</i>	Where is that hen?

We now give the full declension of *tas* 'that' which is the same for both the pronominal and adjectival forms.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Nom.	<i>tas</i>	<i>tā</i>	<i>tie</i>	<i>tās</i>
Acc.	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>tos</i>	<i>tās</i>
Gen.	<i>tā</i>	<i>tās</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
Dat.	<i>tam</i>	<i>tai</i>	<i>tiem</i>	<i>tām</i>
Loc.	<i>tanī, tai, tajā</i>	<i>tanī, tai, tajā</i>	<i>tanīs, tajos, tais</i>	<i>tanīs, tajās, tais</i>

ar to vīru with that man
ar tiem vīriem with those men
zem tās rozēs under that rose
zem tām rozēm under those roses

When the demonstrative adjective *tas* is used in conjunction with another adjective, this second must be in the definite form, e.g.,

Kur ir tas vecais koks? Where is that old tree?
Ko tu lasi tajās jaunajās grāmatās? What are you reading in those new books?

Exercise 65a

Translate into English: *tas cilvēks; tā meitene; ar to nazi; ar to karoti; zem tā kalna; bez tās naudas; līdz tam laukam; līdz tai pilsētai; tai pagrabā; tajā stacijā; tie cilvēki; tās meitenes; ar tiem nažiem; ar tām karotēm; to koku starpā; to sieviešu labad; es neieredzu tos zēnus; tās meitenes nevar sabiedēt; tanīs pagrabos; tajās plāvās.*

Exercise 65b

Translate into Latvian: that black horse; that good daughter; along that road; with that money; behind that bush; under that old car; as far as that mountain; as far as that river; in that flat; in that letter; those black horses; those good daughters; along those roads; with those books; amid those friends; in those pharmacies; did you see those knives?; can you see those pigs?; in those cupboards; in those shoes.

Exercise 65c

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas vecais nams; tā interesantā grāmata; tā dziļā aka; tas zaļais kartupelis.*

Exercise 65d

Translate into Latvian: for ten hours; for twenty days; for thirty weeks; for forty years; with many friends; with a lot of butter; in fifty books; in seven hundred years; my ten sisters; four hundred birds.

Exercise 65e

Write in full in Latvian: 453 dishes; 631 matches; 810 boxes; 723 pounds; 151 kegs; 990 ships.

Exercise 65f

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas krogs; tas tirgus.*

Exercise 65g

Translate into English:

1. Vai tanī kastītē vēl ir sērkokči?
2. Ar tām ziepēm nekā nevar izmazgāt.
3. Lielajos mežos aiz tiem kalniem vēl ir vilki un lāči.
4. Tas kreklis man nav vajadzīgs.
5. Tai miglainajā vakarā Juris baidināja Aiju.
6. Vai tiem vīriem var ticēt?
7. To atbildi tu laikam nesagaidīji!
8. Tos sarkanos ķieģeļus vēl varētu lietot, jo tie vēl ir pavisam cieti.
9. Aiz tiem vītoliem ir upe.
10. Dārzam apkārt ir sēta.
11. Tai acumirkli, kad es apturēju mašīnu, es to puisi ieraudzīju.
12. Vai tā skaistā sieviete, kas sēž mums priekšā, nav tā, par kuru tu man nesen stāstīji? – Jā, viņa ir tā slavenā māksliniece, par kuru es tev stāstīju tanī vakarā, kad mēs bijām pie Jāņa.
13. Es vēl arvien neredzu to lidmašīnu. – Tur tā lido, aiz tiem augstajiem skurstepiem.
14. Tām sievietēm, kas nestrādā, rokas parasti ir skaistas un mīkstas.
15. Man tagad ir visas tās grāmatas, ko es gribēju lasīt.
16. Ar tiem kartupeļiem var barot tikai cūkas, jo tie dabūja salnu, un cilvēkiem tie neder.
17. Pēc sievas nāves viņa lielo namu laikam pārdos.
18. Tām laikam ir daudz naudas, ja viņas var dzīvot tanī namā.

19. Vai tu dzirdēji par to vīru, kuru nesen apcietināja?
20. Viņai dzīve nebija viegla ar to vīru, kas visas savas brīvās stundas pavadīja krogū.
21. Par tām tūkstoš mārciņām es varētu dabūt mašīnu.
22. Ievārījums ir tajā traukā.
23. Vai Juris atdeva tās seši simti mārciņas?
24. Tos aizkarus var mazgāt tai bļodā.
25. Mājai visapkārt bija liels mežs.
26. Cik tālu ir no tās pilsētas līdz tai pilsētai?
27. Vai to cilvēku vidū ir kāds, kuram varētu ticēt?
28. Tur augšā ir četri dzīvokļi.
29. Tā negodīgā cilvēka dēļ es pazaudēju savu māju. Man vēl tagad ir lielas dusmas, kad es par to domāju.
30. Visi tie zēni un meitenes svētdien būs jūrmalā.
31. Tanī avīzē vienmēr sludina visjaunākās grāmatas.
32. Tai meitenei ir tik skaisti mati!
33. Nekaitini to papagaili!
34. Ko tās sievietes savā starpā runāja?
35. Es to veco mašīnu nekad neapdrošinātu.
36. Tajās mucās ir alus, bet tajās ir vīns.
37. Mums tajos gados nebija naudas, bet tie grūtie gadi mūs mācīja strādāt un dzīvot.
38. Tagad nomazgāsim tos traukus, un tad tu vari spēlēt klavieres.
39. Acumirkli, es tūlīt iešu pie tālruņa!
40. Visas desmit sērkokociņu kastītes tagad ir tukšas.
41. Viduslaikos zagļus sodīja ar nāvi.
42. Vai tu parasti ej gulēt agri vai vēlu?
43. Skolotājs sodīs tos nerātņos skolniekus.
44. Kā es varu nomazgāt rokas? Šeit nav ziepju!
45. Neejiet ārā miglā un dubļos!

Exercise 65h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Everyone is afraid of those snakes.
2. The famous artist lives in that hotel.
3. From that light-coloured clay beautiful ashtrays could be made.
4. Look, what a long tail that squirrel has!
5. At that time my wages were very small.
6. Did you write that down?
7. Did you read that book?

8. Please show me the knee which is hurting you.
9. Let us frighten those little girls!
10. There is an eagle's nest in that high tree.
11. I was not home on that day.
12. Is that the telephone number which that man gave you?
13. Do those apple-trees have sweet apples? – No, they are fairly sour.
14. That huge oak is very old.
15. The coats of those hunters are green.
16. I read about that church in that famous book.
17. Under those grey blankets there are white sheets.
18. From that wool the warmest clothing is made.
19. I cannot draw with that pencil.
20. Although cotton is not expensive, it is quite strong.
21. Māra obtained that brooch and that ring from her godmother.
22. Why don't you say "good morning" or "good day" to those men?
23. Wait for me behind that high fence.
24. I cannot see with those spectacles.
25. Invite them into that room.
26. Can you work that out? – I shall try.
27. Who gave her that beautiful book-shelf?
28. In that danger everyone thought only of himself.
29. Do not compare those naughty children with our dear, well-behaved children!
30. Let us go around that mud.
31. He can already write those figures.
32. At that cold Easter there was still ice and snow all around.
33. What can we do for the good of (*labad*) those poor people?
34. Do those sour berries also contain sugar?
35. I had that cough for a long time.
36. You may use that low shelf if you wish.
37. Is that so important?
38. Are there many homes in that valley? – If you are thinking of that narrow valley in the south, no.
39. I shall not feed those chickens so early in the morning.
40. Those are rain clouds.
41. Those figures are not correct.
42. Do not go along with those naughty boys.
43. Is there something in that clay dish?
44. That car cost four hundred and fifty pounds.
45. That train usually departs late.
46. The yellow soap is on the cupboard.
47. A thief's life is never very happy.

48. Juris is now working as a merchant; he sells crockery and boxes of matches in the market.
 49. I have so much work to do that I cannot help you at the moment.
 50. I try to think only about life, never about death.
 51. There is a lot of fog down by the river.
 52. Do not wake me before nine.
 53. After her husband's death Aija travelled to America.
 54. Have you any dry matches? My wet box is useless.
 55. That cheese is like soap.
 56. I heard the teacher's question, but I did not hear Aija's answer.
 57. It is not necessary to greet every girl in the street, my son!

LESSON 66

SOME INVARIABLE ADJECTIVES

A number of nouns can be used in the genitive singular or plural to describe another noun, e.g., *koka karote*, *darba galds*, *sudraba gredzens*, *zelta sakta*, *austrumu vējš*, etc. These words have really become indeclinable adjectives, meaning 'wooden', etc.

Latvian uses a great many words in this way: in this lesson we shall consider those we have already met, together with invariable adjectives of nationality, place and direction.

The following are typical of those we have already met:

<i>koka</i>	wooden	as in	<i>koka karote</i>	a wooden spoon
<i>rudzu</i>	rye	as in	<i>rudzu maīze</i>	rye bread
<i>papīra</i>	paper	as in	<i>papīra maīss</i>	a paper bag
<i>rīta</i>	morning	as in	<i>rīta zvaigzne</i>	the morning star
<i>vakara</i>	evening	as in	<i>vakara zvaigzne</i>	the evening star
<i>rietumu</i>	west	as in	<i>rietumu vējš</i>	the west wind
<i>austrumu</i>	east	as in	<i>austrumu vējš</i>	the east wind
<i>vasaras</i>	summer	as in	<i>vasaras apģērbs</i>	summer clothing
<i>ziemas</i>	winter	as in	<i>ziemas apģērbs</i>	winter clothing
<i>sudraba</i>	silver	as in	<i>sudraba sakta</i>	a silver brooch
<i>zelta</i>	gold	as in	<i>zelta gredzens</i>	a gold ring
<i>pavasara</i>	spring	as in	<i>pavasara lietus</i>	spring rain
<i>ziemeļu</i>	north	as in	<i>ziemeļu vējš</i>	the north wind
<i>stikla</i>	glass	as in	<i>stikla plaukts</i>	a glass shelf

<i>māla</i>	clay	as in	<i>māla trauks</i>	a clay vessel
<i>vilnas</i>	woollen	as in	<i>vilnas sega</i>	a woollen blanket
<i>kokvilnas</i>	cotton	as in	<i>kokvilnas blūze</i>	a cotton blouse
<i>Ziemsvētku</i>	Christmas	as in	<i>Ziemsvētku vakars</i>	Christmas Eve
<i>Lieldienu</i>	Easter	as in	<i>Lieldienu olas</i>	Easter eggs
<i>vidus</i>	middle	as in	<i>viduslaiki</i>	the Middle Ages
<i>kara</i>	war	as in	<i>kara laiks</i>	wartime
<i>dienvidu</i>	south	as in	<i>dienvidu vējš</i>	the south wind.

Names of towns etc. may be used in a similar way:

<i>Londonas lidlauks</i>	London airport
<i>Parīzes veikali</i>	Paris shops
<i>Latvijas ezeri</i>	Latvian lakes

To these may be added the days of the week:

<i>otrdienas rītā</i>	on Tuesday morning
<i>piektdienas vakarā</i>	on Friday evening

Adjectives of nationality are of this indeclinable type. *Latvietis* 'a Latvian', has as its genitive plural *latviešu*, which is used as an adjective meaning 'Latvian' as in:

<i>latviešu valoda</i>	the Latvian language
<i>latviešu dziesmas</i>	Latvian songs

With directions too this invariable form is normal: we have already met *ziemeļu*, *dienvidu*, *austrumu*, *rietumu vējš*.

<i>austrumu Krievija</i>	east Russia
<i>dienvidu Francija</i>	southern France

The two elements may be completely fused when the area described has some political or geographical recognition in its own right:

<i>Dienvidaustrālija</i>	South Australia
<i>Rietumvācija</i>	West Germany
<i>Ziemeļamerika</i>	North America

as opposed to:

<i>ziemeļu Austrālija</i>	northern Australia
<i>rietumu Francija</i>	western France

Notice particularly that an adjective consisting of two directions is always written as a single word, with loss of the final *-u* of the first element.

Vocabulary

<i>dienvidu</i>	south, southern	<i>angļu</i>	English
<i>ziemeļu</i>	north, northern	<i>franču</i>	French
<i>austrumu</i>	east, eastern	<i>vācu</i>	German
<i>rietumu</i>	west, western	<i>austrāliešu</i>	Australian
<i>latviešu</i>	Latvian	<i>amerikāņu</i>	American
<i>krievu</i>	Russian	<i>Sidneja</i>	Sydney
		<i>Melburna</i>	Melbourne

With the exception of the two cities, all the words given above are indeclinable adjectives.

Exercise 66a

Translate into English: *Dienvidaustrālija; Ziemeļamerika; Dienvidaustrumāzija; trešdienas vakarā; krievu dejotāji; Londonas avīzēs; vilnas sega; stikla tase; Rietumvācija; austrumu Krievija; ziemeļrietumu Austrālija; sestdienas rītā; vācu mašīnas; Parīzes ielās; māla pelnu trauks; ziemas apģērbs.*

Exercise 66b

Translate into Latvian: southern France; Western Australia; South-West England; Sunday evening; English ships; in the Sydney newspapers; summer rain; woollen socks; North Germany; eastern Russia; North-East France; on Tuesday morning; French wine; in the New York streets; Easter eggs; in the Middle Ages.

Exercise 66c

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas lielais krogus; tā tukšā pudele; tā garā čūska; tas smagais maiss.*

Exercise 66d

Translate into Latvian: for ten years; with thirty other men; in ten days; forty years ago; after a hundred days; in ten countries; without a lot of money; with many carts.

Exercise 66e

Write in Latvian in full: 417 pounds; 671 stars; 880 war-ships; 1000 dollars; 213 books; 749 school-girls.

Exercise 66f

Translate into English:

1. Vai šeit var dabūt latviešu avīzi?
2. Dienvidaustrālija ir lielāka par Franciju.
3. Mēs pavadījām Ziemsvētku vakaru Rietumvācijā.
4. Austrālijas pilsētās var redzēt austrāliešu, angļu, amerikāņu, franču un vācu mašīnas.
5. Sidnejā ir viens no lielākajiem tiltiem pasaulē.
6. Melburna nav tik liela kā Sidneja.
7. Ziemeļamerikas mežos vēl ir vilki un lāči.
8. Vai krievu vidusskolās māca angļu un franču valodu?
9. Mūsu latviešu valodas skolotājs ir no Ķemeriem.
10. Melburnā mēs redzējām slavenos krievu dejotājus.
11. Cik tā mašīna maksā angļu mārciņās?
12. Ak, rīt atkal būs austrumu vējš, tad nav ko cerēt, (*there is no hoping*) ka būs lietus.
13. Vai krievu valoda ir grūta?
14. Avīžu zēns stāv ielas stūrī un pārdod jaunāko (*latest*) vakara avīzi.
15. Tai viesnīcā var dabūt franču vīnu, vācu alu un amerikāņu cigaretes.
16. Sidnejā dzīvo vairāk cilvēku nekā visā Dienvidaustrālijā.
17. Cik ir pulkstens Ziemeļamerikā, kad Rietumvācijā ir divpadsmit?
18. Rīga jau viduslaikos bija liela un bagāta pilsēta.
19. Austrāliešu alus ir diezgan stiprs.
20. Vai jūs redzējāt lielo krievu kuģi Melburnas ostā?
21. Vai tā ir dienvidamerikāņu kafija? – Nē, tā ir no austrumu Āfrikas.
22. Katrs austrāliešu skolnieks zina, ka Sidneja ir Austrālijas vecākā pilsēta.
23. Pēc kara Aivars strādāja amerikāņu lidlaukā Rietumvācijā.
24. Tikai tanī aptiekā var dabūt vācu zāles.
25. Tā baznīca pieder latviešu draudzei.
26. Dienvidāfrika ir ļoti bagāta ar zeltu.
27. Gandrīz visa ziemeļu Āzija pieder Krievijai.
28. Mēs jums drīz mācīsim latviešu dziesmas.
29. Tās laikam ir vecas franču mēbeles.
30. Mūsu priekšā bija plašā, pelēkā Ziemeļu jūra.
31. Kara laikā vācu pilsētām draudēja briesmas no angļu un amerikāņu lidmašīnām.
32. Es zinu, ka austrumu Eiropā bērniem dāvina Lieldienu olas, bet vai to dara arī rietumu Eiropā?
33. Mēs dzīvojam tanī viesnīcā no pirmdienas rīta līdz piektdienas vakaram.
34. Tie māla trauki ir tik stipri, ka tanīs var vārīt visu.
35. Kāpēc franču ziepes ir dārgākas par angļu ziepēm?

36. Nerātņajiem bērniem bija kabatās sērkociņi.
37. Kara laikā mums visapkārt draud nāve.
38. Savā garajā dzīvē vecais rakstnieks ceļoja daudz zemēs.
39. Lūdzu, nesveicini visas svešās sievietes, kuras tu redzi uz ielas!

Exercise 66g

Translate into Latvian:

1. At what time does the train leave for Melbourne?
2. In which street is Sydney's Latvian House?
3. Can one get Melbourne beer in Sydney hotels?
4. Russia pays American dollars for Australian wool.
5. Western Australia is rich in gold.
6. That is an old Latvian brooch.
7. Our Latvian language teacher also teaches us the German and Russian languages.
8. Some ports in northern Russia cannot be used in winter.
9. Are there still English soldiers in East Asia?
10. In all Australian hotels South Australian wine can be obtained.
11. The North American mountains are not as high as the South American mountains.
12. In the Middle Ages, people were seeking a sea route (*ceļš*) to eastern Asia.
13. In North Germany people speak differently from those who live in South Germany.
14. Let us go to the harbour; there is a German ship there, and we shall be able to obtain that famous German beer cheaply.
15. On Tuesday morning we shall be in Sydney.
16. That is very expensive old French furniture.
17. How many American dollars will I get for one English pound?
18. I didn't know that so many English and French words are used in the Russian language.
19. Sydney airport is quite near the sea.
20. In Western Europe one does not hear much about Australian writers, and of some famous Australian artists it is thought that they are English artists.
21. On Saturday night we saw the famous Russian dancers.
22. In American book-shops there are French and German books.
23. Why are your children so naughty?
24. Is there French wine in that bottle?
25. In northern Asia there is ice and snow everywhere.
26. Eastern England is on the North Sea.
27. Good-bye, friends, I hope to see you soon in Melbourne.

28. How many Latvian songs do you already know?
29. Many Russian writers write of life and death.
30. Give me some soap and ten boxes of matches, please.
31. At that moment I caught sight of the beautiful clay dish in the wooden cupboard.
32. The church windows are of blue and red glass.
33. The farm-labourers were picking berries in the forest.
34. Good evening! Where can I obtain a newspaper? – Newspapers are sold in the little shop between the library and the pharmacy. – Thank you. Good night!

LESSON 67

NEVIENS AND KĀDS AS ADJECTIVES

We have already studied *neviens* and *kāds* as pronouns, meaning 'nobody' and 'somebody' respectively.

Neviens to nedara.

Nobody does that.

Es redzēju kādu aiz krūmiem.

I saw someone behind the bushes.

In addition to this pronominal use, both these words are also used adjectivally, *neviens* meaning 'no, not any', and *kāds* meaning 'some (or other)'. In some instances, *kāds* is equivalent to *kurš* in its interrogative adjectival meaning, i.e., 'which'. *Kāds* is very often equivalent to an English indefinite article.

The adjectival use of these words will be clearly seen from the following examples:

1. *Tanl dzīvoklī dzīvo kāds mākslinieks.*
In that flat lives some artist or other.
In that flat lives an artist.
2. *Viņa runāja ar kādu draugu uz ielas.*
She was speaking to some friend in the street.
3. *Kādā laikā jūs būsiet mājās?*
At what time will you be home?

In this last example, *kāds* could well be replaced by *kurš*. Notice particularly in this respect the expression *Kādā krāsā...?* meaning 'Of what colour...?'

4. *Es nerunāšu ne ar vienu svešu cilvēku.*
I shall not talk to a single stranger.

Notice here the separation of *ne* and *viens*.

5. *Viņa nesacīja nevienu vārdu.*

She said not a single word.

In example 5, we have a genitive where one would have expected an accusative. You will remember a similar instance with *nekas*. The important thing to remember is that a direct object which contains a negative word (such as *nekas* or *neviens*) tends to be in the genitive rather than the accusative.

The adjectival *neviens* is often replaced in the genitive by the shorter *ne*:

Man nav ne gabala maizes. I haven't a single piece of bread.

or *Man nav nevienu gabala maizes.*

or (with less emphasis) simply

Man nav gabala maizes.

Vocabulary

<i>neviens -a</i> (adj.)	no, not any, not a one	<i>atpakaļ</i> (adv.)	back
<i>kāds</i>	some, some or other; which; what kind of	<i>zobārsts</i>	dentist
<i>pa</i> (+acc.)	along, through	<i>citur</i>	elsewhere
<i>smagā mašīna</i>	truck, lorry	<i>pēkšņi</i>	suddenly
<i>raibs</i>	many-coloured, colourful	<i>gabals</i>	piece
<i>daļa</i>	part, section, area	<i>īsts</i>	genuine, authentic, real

NOTES: *Kas tev par daļu?* 'What business is it of yours?'

In *smagā mašīna*, the adjective always has the definite form.

The preposition *pa* is also used in such expressions as:

<i>peldēt pa upi</i>	to swim in the river
<i>lidot pa gaisu</i>	to fly in the air
<i>ceļot pa Āfriku</i>	to travel in Africa
<i>pa tālruni</i>	by telephone.

Exercise 67a

Translate into English:

1. *Es nesacīšu viņiem nevienu vārdu.*
2. *Viņš aizgāja ar kādām draudzenēm.*
3. *Es nerunāšu ne ar vienu svešu cilvēku.*
4. *Es šodien neiešu ne pie viena.*
5. *Man nav nevienu drauga.*
6. *Tur stāvēja kāds mākslinieks ar gariem matiem.*
7. *Ieva runāja ar kādu cilvēku uz ielas.*
8. *Kādā pilsētā tu tagad dzīvo?*
9. *Vai jūs šeit neredzējāt kādu zirgu?*
10. *Mūsu pilsētā nav nevienas baznīcas, nevienu mācītāja.*

Exercise 67b

Translate into Latvian:

1. There is not a single mountain in our land.
2. In that flat lives some artist or other.
3. What colour is your new car?
4. The women were talking about some unimportant matter.
5. What sort of flat have you now?
6. The hunter went home without a single duck.
7. I did not go to any one's place yesterday.
8. I would never sell a single book.
9. The money was under some old papers.
10. Why did you leave without a word?

Exercise 67c

Translate into Latvian: a clay pipe; a summer's day; a war-ship; a gold ring; a paper bag; a cotton skirt; a winter evening; a Russian writer; in South-east Asia; a silver brooch; rye bread; the west wind.

Exercise 67d

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas darbs; tā bļoda; tā puķe; tas dzīvoklis.*

Exercise 67e

Translate into Latvian: for twenty years; in a hundred years; all five hundred pupils; behind a hundred other people; for ten days; my thirty cousins; with ten friends; fifty Australian dollars.

Exercise 67f

Translate into English:

1. Pēkšņi es ieraudzīju nama priekšā kādu smago mašīnu.
2. Tas ir īsts franču vīns.
3. Mūsu mazajā pilsētā nav neviena zobārsta.
4. Tikai šeit var dabūt īstu vācu alu, bet nekur citur.
5. Austrālijas austrumu daļā dzīvo daudz vairāk cilvēku nekā rietumos.
6. Kas man par daļu, ko viņa dara, vai viņa dzīvo citur, vai viņa iet atpakaļ pie sava vīra!
7. Mans uzvalks ir no īstas Austrālijas vilnas.
8. Nevienā ostā rietumu Eiropā dzīve nav tik raiba kā austrumu Āzijas ostās.
9. Kas tev par daļu, ko Juris man stāstīja pa tālruni?
10. Tā ir īsta viduslaiku baznīca.
11. Rītu mēs lidosim atpakaļ uz Sidneju.
12. Saimniece iedeva kalpam gabalu maizes.
13. Nevienā austrāliešu vidusskolā nemāca latviešu valodu.
14. Tik raibus svārkus tu nevari valkāt! – Kas tev par daļu, ka es valkāju raibus svārkus!
15. Pa kādu ceļu jūs gājāt?
16. Vai jūsu vidū nav kāds zobārsts? (The question could equally well have been formulated in the positive, hence the nominative and not the genitive.)
17. Līdz kalniem ir diezgan labs gabals ko iet. (Although *iet*, strictly speaking, is intransitive, and would normally require *kur* when used adjectivally in the infinitive, the verb is here used with a COGNATE ACCUSATIVE, *ko*. In such cases as this, a cognate accusative is quite normal. Alternatively, the *ko* may be regarded as accusative of extent of distance, see Lesson 69.)
18. Iesim atpakaļ, šeit visapkārt ir dubļi!
19. Ko tu darītu, ja pēkšņi ieraudzītu čūsku?
20. Kad Kārli pratināja, viņš pēkšņi nezināja nekā.
21. Lielākā daļa mūsu smago mašīnu ir no Amerikas.
22. Ķieģeļi ir tur aiz smagās mašīnas.
23. Tik grūtu gabalu mazā Aija vēl nevar spēlēt.
24. Pie tā nelaipnā zobārsta mūsu ielā es neiešu, ir arī citi zobārsti citur.
25. Pīles peld pa upēm un ezeriem, un arī lido pa gaisu.
26. Pirms stundas te vēl nebija neviena, tad pēkšņi visa iela bija pilna cilvēku.

27. Ardievu! Es gribētu būt mājās pirms sešiem.
28. Smagā mašīna būs drīz atpakaļ.
29. Kādu darbu Juris tagad strādā?
30. "Iesim atpakaļ pie ārsta, man sāp galva," viņš pēkšņi sacīja.
31. Ja arī (*Even if*) citur maksātu vairāk naudas, es neietu citur strādāt, jo šeit man ir māja un ģimene.
32. Viesnīcā nav nevienas brīvas istabas.
33. Kāpēc siena un griesti ir tik raibi?
34. Kāpēc jūs neejat atpakaļ pie savas ģimenes? – Es iešu atpakaļ pie ģimenes pirms Ziemsvētkiem.
35. Mana sieva negrib raibus aizkarus.
36. Krievu meitenes bieži valkā raibas blūzes.
37. Vācu vilcieni ir ātri un ērti.
38. Peldēsim šodien pa upi, bet nepeldēsim pa jūru!
39. Vai pa to ceļu var aiziet līdz mežam?
40. Dienvidāfrikā un Dienvidaustrālijā ir karstas vasaras, ziemeļu Krievijā un Ziemeļamerikā ir aukstas ziemas.
41. Sidnejā un Melburnā ir daudz latviešu ģimeņu.
42. Vai Amerikā, rietumu Eiropā un Austrālijā latviešu bērni labi runā latviski?
43. Vai tev ir grāmatas angļu valodā?
44. Melburnas ostā bieži ir amerikāņu un franču kuģi.
45. Augstu koku starpā bija mazāki krūmi.
46. Starp Melburnu un Sidneju ir tikai mazas pilsētas.
47. Vai sievas arī ceļos saviem vīriem līdzī?
48. Kad laiks ir miglains, lidmašīnas lido virs mākoņiem.
49. Veikalnieks jau izrēķina, cik viņš nopelnīs.
50. Kāpēc bērniem ir sērkokociņi?

Exercise 67g

Translate into Latvian:

1. On the way to the dentist's I always go along this street.
2. On Sundays I usually go to the zoo, as I have nowhere else to go.
3. Which bricks are better – the red ones or the brown ones?
4. That piece of wood is rather heavy.
5. Is that genuine coffee?
6. Has no one got a knife?
7. Tomorrow I shall fly back to Melbourne.
8. I suddenly spotted some person at the gate.
9. What colour is the floor?
10. The truck is full of potatoes.

11. The truck requires some new parts.
12. I shall not go back along that dusty road.
13. Do you think that if you have long hair you are a real artist?
14. In no other city are there as many beautiful girls as in our city.
15. "Here I am," said the hunter, "empty-handed and with not one single duck. On Saturday I shall hunt elsewhere."
16. Churches often have colourful windows.
17. Do not play such a sad piece.
18. I was standing behind the truck, when I suddenly caught sight of a grey American car in front of the bank. – Did you write down the number of the car? – No, that is none of my business.
19. We live in the northern part of Sydney.
20. What kind of roads are there in the western part of the country?
21. Not one road here is as good as those in the western and southern parts.
22. You could make a blouse from that piece of cotton.
23. There are fifteen bags of rye and eight kegs of beer on that truck.
24. At what time of the year (*gada laiks*) are the forests most beautiful?
25. That dentist's chair can be obtained only in West Germany and nowhere else.
26. "Do you smoke?" the dentist asked suddenly.
27. That is genuine French wine.
28. What a many-coloured cat!
29. I spoke to the dentist on the telephone.
30. Who knows whether that is his wife or only some girl-friend?
31. Why did you wake me so suddenly?
32. Is the Latvian language spoken anywhere else than in Latvia?
33. Quickly, quickly, I saw somebody down by the river!
34. French and German cities are much older than American and Australian cities.
35. There is more rain in southern and eastern Australia than in northern and western Australia.
36. English ships often spend several days at Melbourne and Sydney.
37. Let's swim in the river!
38. In the libraries of Riga there are many German and English books.
39. I would not want to live anywhere else.
40. Baiba wiped the dust from the book-shelf with a wet towel.
41. Above the clouds the sun is always shining.
42. Honey is sold in the market only on Wednesdays.
43. Let's go down by the river and sit on the bank!
44. There are often strong winds in deep valleys.
45. John was not allowed to go outside because of his cough.
46. The wind is from the south today.

47. Why did the train leave early? It usually leaves late!
48. For the sake of the famous film-star the plane waited for two hours at the airport.
49. High in the mountains there is still snow in summer.
50. The beggars usually slept underneath the bridge.

LESSON 68

THE DECLENSION OF CERTAIN MASCULINE NOUNS IN *-ENS*

A few masculine nouns in *-ens* are declined rather like masculine nouns in *-is*. There are differences only in the Nominative and Genitive singular.

<i>ūdens</i> 'water'		
	Singular	Plural
N.	<i>ūdens</i>	<i>ūdeņi</i>
A.	<i>ūdeni</i>	<i>ūdeņus</i>
G.	<i>ūdens</i>	<i>ūdeņu</i>
D.	<i>ūdenim</i>	<i>ūdeņiem</i>
L.	<i>ūdenī</i>	<i>ūdeņos</i>

All the *-ens* nouns of the following vocabulary are of the *ūdens* type. Any nouns in *-ens* occurring in future lessons will be declined like ordinary *-s* declension nouns (*galds*) unless it is specified that the noun in question belongs to the special *-ens* type.

Vocabulary

<i>ūdens</i>	water	<i>gada laiks</i>	season
<i>rudens</i>	autumn	<i>zibēnot</i>	to flash (of lightning)
<i>akmeņš</i>	stone	<i>zibēnātrumā</i>	as quick as lightning
<i>zibens</i>	lightning	<i>ūdeņains</i>	watery
<i>dārgakmeņš</i>	gem, precious stone	<i>akmeņains</i>	stony

NOTE: *Zibens* refers to a single flash of lightning. 'Lightning' in general is translated either by *zibens* or the plural *zibēni*, depending on context.

Exercise 68a

Decline in the singular and plural: *ūdens; akmens; rudens*.

Exercise 68b

Conjugate:

1. *Es neiešu ne pie viena.*
2. *Vai man nav neviena drauga?*
3. *Es redzu kādus bērnus nama priekšā.*
4. *Kādā krāsā ir mana jaunā mašīna?*

Exercise 68c

Translate into Latvian: a paper bag; South America; London airport; French songs; a clay dish; ten Easter eggs; East Germany; Sydney harbour; Australian wool; the Middle Ages.

Exercise 68d

Decline in the singular and plural: *tā vēstule; tas dārgakmens*.

Exercise 68e

Translate into English:

1. Klusi ūdeņi ir dziļi.
2. Kad Miķeli pratināja, viņš zibepātrumā atbildēja katram jautājumam.
3. Viduslaikos cilvēkiem bija bail no zibens.
4. Aukstākajos gada laikos nekad nezibējo.
5. Dārgakmeņi spīd un mirdz.
6. Vai tā ir sērkočiņu kastīte, kas tur peld pa ūdeni?
7. Tanis ūdeņos nedrīkst medīt pīles.
8. Tie kartupeļi neder, jo tie ir pavisam ūdeņaini.
9. Jaunās amerikāņu un krievu lidmašīnas lido zibepātrumā.
10. Ogas pēc lielās salnas ir pavisam skābas un ūdeņainas.
11. Tanī ielejā starp augstajiem kalniem zeme ir ļoti akmeņaina.
12. Iesim atpakaļ, tur aiz kalniem jau zibējo!
13. Nama vecākajā daļā sienas ir no lauku akmeņiem.
14. Tā bija skaista rudens diena, ko mēs pavadījām krusttēva lauku mājās.

15. Ak, te jau ūdens tek gar sienām!
16. Dienvidāfrika ir bagāta ar dārgakmeņiem.
17. Rudenim seko ziema.
18. Tu to laikam uzrakstīji zibepātrumā, jo es nevaru izlasīt neviena vārda.
19. Nupat rietumos zibējoja.
20. Bērni, kurš no jums var uzzīmēt mākoņus ar zibepiem?
21. Jūs vēl nesen man pārdevāt pavisam ūdeņainus tomātus.
22. Vēlu rudenī vīnogas ir ūdeņainas.
23. Tirgotājs saskaitīja naudu zibepātrumā.
24. Es lasīju kādā zinātniskā darbā par zibeni.
25. Tā mašīna (here=*machine*) var izrēķināt visgrūtākos uzdevumus zibepātrumā.
26. Kurš ir dārgākais dārgakmens?
27. Karavīri guļ uz cietās akmens grīdas.
28. Rudens ir mednieka labākais gada laiks.
29. Kādā gada laikā Austrālijā ir Lieldienas?
30. Kas par raibu akmeni!
31. Sniegs mirdz kā tūkstoš dārgakmeņus.
32. Jūrmala šeit ir tik akmeņaina!
33. Lauks ir tik akmeņains, ka tur nekā nevar stādīt.
34. Tā akmeņainā zeme neder burkāniem.
35. Mēs pēkšņi ieraudzījām, ka zibens zibējo.
36. Kuras ir labākas: vācu, franču vai amerikāņu smagās mašīnas?
37. Sidneja un Melburna ir lielas pilsētas, bet Londona ir vēl lielāka.
38. Mums mājās nav ne gabala gaļas.
39. Latviešu valodā nesaka, ka dārgakmeņi zibējo, saka, ka tie mirdz vai spīd.
40. Vai zobārsti lieto īstu zeltu?
41. Kas jums par daļu, ja zobārsts nekad nepavada savas brīvās dienas ar savu ģimeni?
42. Pēkšņi zibējoja.
43. Vai tā ir īsta, veca latviešu sakta?
44. Kāpēc tu gāji pa tiltu?
45. Mūsu mājas priekšā kāds pēkšņi apturēja lielu smago mašīnu.
46. Kura ir lielāka: Rietum- vai Austrumvācija?
47. Skaisti māla pelnu trauki tagad ir ļoti dārgi.
48. Vai tu šodien salasīji daudz ogu?
49. Es nomaksāšu māju un mašīnu un tad es ceļošu pa visu pasauli.
50. Kad jūs varēsiet samaksāt par jauno koka žogu?
51. Lai gan saule jau norietēja septiņos, desmitos vakars vēl bija ļoti silts.
52. Salds ievārljums satur daudz cukura.
53. Kas dod labāku šnu: liepa vai vītols?

54. Cik ilgi puisim jau sāp celis?
55. Vai es šeit varu dabūt Londonas un Ņujorkas avīzes?
56. Ērglis šorīt sēdēja uz mūsu skurstēņa.
57. Kāpēc sieviešu algas Eiropā parasti ir zemākas nekā Amerikā?
58. Draudzes nama mēbeles maksāja pieci simti dolāru.

Exercise 68f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Which season does autumn follow?
2. South Africa is rich in gold and gems.
3. There is water all around.
4. When the lightning flashed outside, the whole room was bright. There are still flashes of lightning here and there.
5. Is that a real gem? – No, that is only glass, which sparkles and flashes like a gem.
6. The lightning frightened the little girl.
7. Oh, what a watery wine!
8. The bird is flying at lightning speed.
9. The farm-labourers are gathering stones from the field.
10. Is lightning as bright as the sun?
11. Who says that autumn is the saddest season? It is the richest season.
12. In which season do they plant rice in South-east Asia?
13. If you give me such watery vegetables again, I shall be angry.
14. The teacher was reading at lightning speed, and no pupil could follow him.
15. Far out to sea there was lightning.
16. Don't stand there under the oak-tree – you are threatened by lightning.
17. Western Australia is a dry and stony country.
18. Are those water-colours?
19. Woollen socks must not be washed in hot water.
20. Now and then we could see lightning far away behind the hills.
21. In the autumn Anne's husband gave her a ring with a red gem.
22. The ice is as hard as stone.
23. The autumn flowers are still blooming.
24. The bank of the river is rather stony here.
25. The four seasons of the year are summer, autumn, winter and spring.
26. What sort of pencils do artists use?
27. In the streets of Sydney and Melbourne many American trucks can be seen.
28. Not a single word did he say.

29. The sheets, blankets and pillows are not in the cupboard. Let's look somewhere else.
30. I read in some book that Australian doctors and dentists earn more than English doctors and dentists.
31. Pieces of wood were floating in the lake.
32. When will the dentist fly back from Paris?
33. There are many bears in northern Russia.
34. In which part of the city do you now live? – In the eastern part.
35. The truck is full of bags of peas.
36. Who was the Russian writer who wrote the book *War and Peace*?
37. Suddenly there was a flash of lightning above the ocean.
38. Did the famous singer sing any old Latvian songs? – No, only French and German songs.
39. He walked back across the bridge, in order to see the old part of the town again.
40. Autumn is a beautiful season.
41. Nowhere else will you see such large pieces of meat.
42. We have been waiting almost nine months for his answer.
43. Chicken (meat) is cheaper than pork in Australia.
44. In his pockets, he has his glasses, money, pens, pencils and many other things.
45. We know many words to greet people: good morning, good day, good evening, good night, and good-bye.
46. Why didn't you try to warn us?
47. He is always inviting his friends to his flat.
48. I read in the paper this morning that approximately a hundred and fifty people were arrested in New York yesterday.
49. We insured our new piano for five hundred and seventy-five pounds.

LESSON 69

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF DISTANCE

We have already studied the accusative of duration of time. There is a close parallel in Latvian between expressions of distance and expressions of time. Cf.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Mēs gājām divas stundas.</i> | We walked for two hours. |
| <i>Mēs gājām divus kilometrus.</i> | We walked for two kilometres. |

2. *Liieldienas ir četrus mēnešus pēc Ziemsvētkiem.*

Easter is four months after Christmas.

Bibliotēka ir piecdesmit metrus no upes.

The library is fifty metres from the river.

3. *Jānis aizceļoja piecas dienas pirms Liieldienām.*

John departed five days before Easter.

Viņš dzīvo desmit kilometrus no pilsētas.

He lives ten kilometres from the city.

The accusative of extent of distance, like the accusative of duration of time, overrides the requirement that certain numbers and adverbs of quantity should be followed by the genitive.

Note also the accusative (of time and of distance) in the following phrase types:

<i>desmit pēdas garš</i>	ten feet long
<i>trīs metrus plats</i>	three metres wide
<i>piecus gadus vecs</i>	five years old.

Vocabulary

<i>centimētrs</i>	centimetre	<i>tāls</i> (adj.)	distant
<i>metrs</i>	metre	<i>tuvs</i> (adj.)	near-by, close
<i>kilomētrs</i>	kilometre	<i>tālums</i>	distance
<i>pēda</i>	foot (measurement)	<i>tuvums</i>	proximity, neighbourhood;
<i>colla</i>	inch		company
<i>gaisma</i>	light	<i>attālums</i>	distance

NOTES: *gaismas gads* 'a light year'*Vidusjūra* 'the Mediterranean Sea'The adjective *tāls* has a parallel form *tāļš*.

Attālums is used differently from *tālums*. The latter means 'distance' in the sense of 'a great way', whereas *attālums* is any measured distance without overtones of greatness:

Tālumā mirdzēja jūra.

Away in the distance the sea was shining.

Vai starp Rīgu un Ķemeriem ir liels attālums?

Is it far from Riga to Ķemeri?

Kilometrs and *colla* are both pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 69a

Translate into English: *divus kilometrus garš; desmit gadus vecs; četras collas plats; vienu kilometru garš; trīs pēdas plats; piecus metrus dziļš; tūkstoš gadus vecs; divus centimetrus dziļš.*

Exercise 69b

Translate into Latvian:

1. We walked ten kilometres.
2. She waited three hours.
3. Our house is sixty feet from the road.
4. Christmas is usually about thirteen weeks before Easter.
5. The road is fifteen metres wide.
6. The well is forty feet deep. (Don't forget the agreement of 'deep' with the feminine noun 'well'.)
7. The river is eight hundred and eighty one kilometres long.
8. Those trees are more than a thousand years old.
9. He lived ten kilometres from the city.
10. I used to walk five hundred metres every day.

Exercise 69c

Decline in the singular: *zibens; rudens.*Decline in the plural: *akmens; ūdens.*

Exercise 69d

Translate into English:

1. Cik liels ir attālums starp Rīgu un Ķemeriem? – Apmēram četrdesmit pieci kilometri.
2. Latvijā nelieto pēdas un collas, bet metrus un centimetrus.
3. No kāda attāluma var redzēt Sidnejas ostas tiltu?
4. Juris ir sešas pēdas un četras collas garš. (Here tall, not long.)
5. Varētu sagaidīt, ka tik īsu laiku pirms Ziemsvētkiem bērni būs pavisam rātni.
6. Tik tuvā ceļā nevajaga mašīnas.
7. Tur tālumā var redzēt zilus kalnus.

8. Vai šeit tuvumā nav kāds zobārsts? (Why have we the Nom. here?) – Nē, mūsu tuvumā zobārsta nav. Tuvākais zobārsts ir kilometrus piecdesmit no mūsu mājām.
9. Sērkokociņu kastīte ir apmēram divas collas gara.
10. Te zem tilta ūdens ir sešus metrus dziļš.
11. Tālumā zibepo.
12. Ar lidmašīnu mēs tagad stundas laikā esam Melburnā, bet pirms simts gadiem ar zirgiem un ratiem ceļā pavadīja dienas septiņas.
13. Krustmāte mums ir tik tuva kā īstā māte.
14. Cilvēks var dzīvot daudz ilgāku laiku bez maizes nekā bez ūdens.
15. Cilvēks meklē cilvēka tuvumu.
16. Es varu peldēt divdesmit piecus metrus zem ūdens.
17. Viens metrs ir drusku vairāk nekā trīs pēdas.
18. Karavīri parasti iet piecus sešus kilometrus stundā. (Note the omission of *vai* between the numbers. In approximations consisting of two or more numbers joined by *or*, the conjunction is not normally translated.)
19. No saules līdz zemei gaisma ceļo tikai īsu laiku, bet no dažām tālām zvaigznēm tā ceļo tūkstoš gadus un vēl ilgāk. Tos attālumus nevar skaitīt kilometros, bet tikai gaismas gados.
20. Jānis man ir tuvs draugs.
21. Tur tālumā peld ledus kalns. (*ledus kalns*=ice-berg)
22. Tā čūska ir tikai sešdesmit centimetrus gara.
23. Tanī acumirkļi manā tuvumā neviens nestāvēja.
24. Jau tālumā varēja dzirdēt jūsu dziesmas.
25. Cik centimetru ir vienā pēdā?
26. Kad Ziemeļeiropā jau ir rudens, tad Vidusjūras ūdeņos vēl var peldēt.
27. Cik centimetru ir vienā collā?
28. Kāpēc tu domā, ka rudens ir visklusākais gada laiks?
29. Tanīs akmeņainajos laukos mēs nekā nevaram stādīt.
30. Tālumā var redzēt gaismas signālu.
31. Šodien ir auksts laiks: neiesim ārā!
32. Visi raibie akmeņi nav dārgakmeņi.
33. Ūdeņains vīns ir lētāks par stipru vīnu.
34. Neprasiet viņam naudas, viņš ir ciets kā akmens!
35. Kurā gada laikā zibepo vairāk: vasarā vai rudenī?
36. Tagad lidmašīnas var ceļot gandrīz zibepātrumā.
37. Kāpēc jūsu vīns ir tik ūdeņains?
38. Lauka akmeņainajā daļā nekā nevar stādīt.
39. Ārā vēl ir gaisma, kaut gan pulkstens ir jau deviņi vakarā.
40. Viņš neviena vārda nesacīja un aizgāja.
41. Kad viņš būs atpakaļ Rīgā?
42. Es pēkšņi ieraudzīju mašīnas priekšā koka gabalu.

43. Vai tik mīkstas vilnas segas pārdod tikai šeit vai arī citur?
44. Lidmašīna stāvēja visu dienu lidlaukā, tāpēc ka laiks bija miglains.
45. Vakar vēlu un šodien agri bija liela migla.
46. Vai jums vajadzēja mani modināt tik agri?
47. Franču ziepes ir ļoti dārgas.
48. Sidnejas ielās var redzēt angļu, vācu un amerikāņu mašīnas.
49. Viņa gribēja redzēt slavenos krievu dziedātājus un dejotājus.

Exercise 69e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The distance between Melbourne and Sydney is about nine **hundred** kilometres.
2. That piece of wood is eighty centimetres long and sixteen centimetres **wide**.
3. The cupboard is seven feet high.
4. John is afraid to propose to Aija, but he is seeking her company.
5. I can see dark clouds in the distance.
6. The truck is six metres fifty-eight centimetres long, and one metre **ninety-two** centimetres wide; how much would that be in feet and inches?
7. The way to the beach is not far.
8. Paul is happy in Eve's company.
9. I am looking for my husband – haven't you seen him? – Why do you **not** look for him in the nearest pub?
10. They travelled a long distance in order to look for gold and **precious** stones.
11. He is as close to me as a brother.
12. The piece of stone was only two feet long, but it contained six pounds of silver.
13. It is difficult to calculate how many metres and centimetres **there are** in twenty-five feet six inches.
14. Distances on water are never counted in kilometres.
15. In the distance I can see a tall chimney.
16. Australia is such a vast country that the farmers in the north are **happy** if their neighbours live only a hundred kilometres from their farm.
17. John and I were close friends.
18. The lightning nearby probably frightened the horse in the enclosure.
19. Is that a ship there in the distance, or is it an ice-berg?
20. The **Mediterranean Sea** is almost five kilometres deep in its deepest place.
21. In the vicinity of Riga there are beautiful lakes and green forests.
22. The knife was not longer than six inches.
23. He lives eight kilometres from us.

24. There is lightning in the distance.
25. Up to what distance can one see from that mountain? – Up to seventy-five kilometres.
26. Uncle Aivars used always to tell us about the Far East. (*Tālie austrumi*)
27. The well is sixty feet deep.
28. The shelf stands five inches from the wall.
29. What colour were the stones you saw?
30. Autumn is the most beautiful season of the year.
31. The schoolboys were in the lake as quick as a flash.
32. The most distant stars are many light years from us.
33. Would you like to travel in the Far East?
34. The year has four seasons, but autumn is the most beautiful.
35. Let's go back over the bridge.
36. There is not one good dentist in our town.
37. Did you sell the chairs and tables?
38. When I was young I could walk ten kilometres in one hour.
39. Are genuine Latvian brooches sold anywhere else, or only in Riga?
40. More people live in the eastern part of Australia than in the western part.
41. The dirty dishes cannot be washed in cold water.
42. I cannot read in that corner of the room, because there is not enough light.
43. There is often rain after lightning.
44. The English sea-coast is very stony.
45. How many kegs of beer are there in the cellar of the pub?
46. Honey is sold in the market only on Thursdays.
47. The south wind was very strong today.
48. Wash the mud off your knees!
49. The doctor said that I have whooping-cough.
50. Let's go down by the river.

LESSON 70

DECLENSION OF *SUNS* 'DOG'

The noun *suns* is declined throughout as if it were an *-is* noun.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>suns</i>	<i>suņi</i>
Acc.	<i>suņi</i>	<i>suņus</i>
Gen.	<i>suņa</i>	<i>suņu</i>
Dat.	<i>suņim</i>	<i>suņiem</i>
Loc.	<i>suņī</i>	<i>suņos</i>

Like the other *-s* and *-is* nouns we have studied, *suns* is masculine. It is the only noun declined in this peculiar way.

Vocabulary

<i>suns</i>	dog	<i>policija</i>	police
<i>gan</i>	indeed	<i>policists</i>	policeman
<i>mēle</i>	tongue	<i>kārtībnieks</i>	policeman
<i>kucēns</i>	puppy	<i>kārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to put in order; transact
<i>puņns</i>	muzzle, snout	<i>sakārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to put in order
<i>spalva</i>	(animal's) coat, fur	<i>atkārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to repeat

NOTES: *rādīt kādam mēli* 'to poke one's tongue out at somebody'
gan jau 'jolly well, one of these days, sometime or other, sooner or later'

Gan jau tēvs tevi sodīs.

Father will jolly well punish you.

kas gan 'who on earth, what on earth' (subject)

ko gan 'whom on earth, what on earth' (object)

kur gan 'where on earth'

(other similar phrases are similarly formed)

Policija and *policists* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 70a

Decline in the singular and plural: *ūdens; akmens; suns*.

Exercise 70b

Translate into Latvian:

1. John is now ten years old.
2. The road is five hundred metres long.
3. for ten weeks; for a thousand years;
4. five inches from the wall;
5. six weeks before Christmas;
6. The ocean here is two kilometres deep.
7. The river is almost three hundred feet wide.
8. I had been waiting only three days.
9. John is now fourteen years old.
10. The chickens are only one week old.

Exercise 70c

Translate into English:

1. Lapsai ir gara spalva.
2. Sunim bija pavisam slapja un netīra spalva.
3. Kā Biruta var mīlēt to cilvēku? Viņš domā tikai par naudu.
4. Kārtībnieks stāv ielas stūrī.
5. Policisti strādā garas stundas par diezgan zemu algu.
6. Policijai ir daudz uzdevumu. (*Uzdevums* in this context means *duty, task*.)
7. Lūdzu, sakārto savas grāmatas! – Gan jau es tās sakārtošu!
– Nē, sakārto tās tūlīt!
8. Labdien! Vai es esmu policijas birojā?
– Jā gan!
– Es meklēju Akas ielu, vai tā ir šeit tuvumā?
– Labi, ka jūs neturpinājāt meklēt tik miglainā laikā! Akas iela ir pavisam tuvu – tikai divi simti metrus no mūsu biroja. Mūsu jaunais kārtībnieks jums parādīs, kur ir Akas iela. Viņš ies jums līdzi.
– Paldies, jūs esat ļoti laipns. Ardievu!
9. Ko gan tas suns tur meklē starp tiem akmeņiem?
10. Policijas suni palīdz policistiem meklēt zagļus.
11. Nerātnais zēns rādīja policistam mēli.
12. Kucēna spalva ir pavisam mīksta un silta.
13. Acumirkli, man nupat tas vārds bija uz mēles!
14. Kucēns laikam būs slims, jo tā purns ir karsts un sauss.
15. Kā jūs driekstat mani apcietināt?
16. Lūdzu, atkārtojiet savu jautājumu! Es nedzirdēju, ko jūs sacījāt.

17. Zvēru spalva ziemā ir daudz garāka nekā vasarā, un parasti ziemā tai ir arī cita krāsa.
18. Līdz svētdienai es sakārtošu visus tos papīrus.
19. Ko jūs birojā kārto? – Mēs šeit apdrošinām mājas un mašīnas.
20. Kad policisti pratināja Aivaru, viņš atkārtoja savu stāstu.
21. Tā kucēna purns ir īss un plats.
22. Čūskām ir garas mēles.
23. Es gribu to kucēnu ar balto purnu.
24. Kalps sacīja dažus vārdus, ko es negribētu šeit atkārtot. – Ja jūs negribat atkārtot, tad uzrakstiet tos! Policijai tas ir svarīgi!
25. Mēle cilvēkam ir ļoti svarīga, jo bez tās nevarētu runāt.
26. Kad tu sakārtosi savas lietas?
27. Zaļā čūska ir septiņas pēdas un četras collas gara, bet brūnā čūska tikai septiņdesmit centimetrus, tas ir divas pēdas un trīs collas.
28. Tālumā zibeno. Vai turpināsim ceļu? Varbūt zirgiem būs bail no zibens.
29. Cik kilometru skaita vienā gaismas gadā?
30. Lidmašīnas var lidot tūkstoš kilometru vienā stundā.
31. Vai rīsus var stādīt tikai zem ūdens?
32. Saki to tikai mūsu tuvākajiem draugiem!
33. Vai no Londonas līdz Parīzei ir liels attālums?
34. Vienā metrā ir simts centimetru, un vienā kilometrā ir tūkstoš metru. Izrēķiniet, cik centimetru ir vienā kilometrā!
35. Tālie austrumi (*The Far East*) ir bagāti ar dārgakmeņiem.
36. Rudens laikam ir skaistākais gada laiks.
37. Miķelis vienmēr meklē Ievas tuvumu.
38. Vai tu kaut ko ieraudzīji tālumā?
39. Sacīsim tikai tuvākajiem draugiem, ko mēs domājam darīt!
40. Jūrmala šeit ir ļoti akmeņaina: iesim citur!

Exercise 70d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Let's go! – Just a moment, I want to arrange my hair.
2. The people applauded for a long time, and then the singer repeated the lovely song.
3. Some dogs have long snouts, others have short ones.
4. The puppy's tail is very short, only a few inches long.
5. There stands a policeman with a police dog.
6. I'll arrange what I can.
7. Oh, what a soft fur the puppy has! – Yes, large dogs don't have such soft fur.

8. Wasn't there a single policeman there?
9. You say your head is aching. Please show me your tongue. Oh, your tongue is quite white!
10. The police have been looking for him for three weeks.
11. The police arrested the thief at the moment when he was trying to sell the gems in a tavern near the harbour.
12. What is the policeman looking for on the ground between the edge of the road and the tree?
13. Why is the policeman holding the dog on a leash?
14. A healthy puppy always has a cold snout.
15. Who will arrange the flowers on the table?
16. Why did you repeat his silly words?
17. Why did you threaten the policeman?
18. Some policeman warned us not to use the stony road about six kilometres beyond the bridge.
19. I don't want that puppy – it has a black snout, and its fur does not shine at all! – His fur will really shine if you feed the puppy well.
20. Here we handle only police matters. – Indeed, I didn't know that.
21. No, no, I did not poke my tongue out at the neighbour. – You did indeed poke your tongue out at the friendly old man.
22. Let us arrange the furniture so that the table is in front of the window.
23. The bear had honey all around its mouth.
24. Please repeat what I said just now!
25. Why didn't you stop the car when the policeman whistled? – Indeed I stopped, about a hundred metres from the corner.
26. A squirrel's fur is brown in summer and grey in winter.
27. The policemen followed him in a police car for about two hours.
28. Who arranged the sheets and pillows on the shelf in the cupboard?
29. Please repeat the words of that song; I want to write them down.
30. There are thirty centimetres in a foot.
31. There are twelve inches in a foot.
32. The chimney is twenty metres and fifty centimetres high.
33. There is not enough light in that corner of the room; I shall read by the window.
34. In the neighbourhood of the school there is a large meadow.
35. Did you see anything in the distance?
36. The butcher has no close friends.
37. Are the seasons in the Far East different from the seasons in Europe?
38. There is lightning in the distance – let's go back home.
39. In the light of a lightning flash I saw the thief in the garden.
40. Don't seek the company of dishonest men.
41. The sun is setting behind the distant hills.

42. There is more water in the lake in autumn than in summer.
43. How many close friends have you?
44. In the distance I saw the stones of an old fence.
45. People usually have thirty-two teeth.
46. The baker's neck had been hurting for a long time.
47. Māra is cooking apples with sugar and carrots with butter.
48. In the market on Tuesdays you can get flour, onions, pepper and pork.
49. Your brother did not forgive his little sister.
50. Early in the morning the day before yesterday some one was crying in the garden.
51. There are seven hundred and sixty-three songs in our new book.
52. To whom did you lend those colourful gloves?
53. Each week we sell about eight hundred hens in the market.
54. Don't wash those spoons – they are already clean.
55. He works in the post office, but he also translates songs. His translations are quite good.
56. Begging is not allowed in our city.
57. The gardener does not earn enough to pay for an expensive car.

LESSON 71

THE ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN *ABI* 'BOTH'

Abi (fem. *abas*) is declined like any other adjective, i.e.,

	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>abi</i>	<i>abas</i>
Acc.	<i>abus</i>	<i>abas</i>
Gen.	<i>abu</i>	<i>abu</i>
Dat.	<i>abiem</i>	<i>abām</i>
Loc.	<i>abos</i>	<i>abās</i>

It of course has no singular forms. It also has no definite forms. It is used adjectivally:

Es izlasīju abas grāmatas.

I read both books.

Es dzirdēju abus stāstus.

I heard both stories.

Abos namos ir žurkas.

There are rats in both houses.

Abām meitām ir melni mati.

Both daughters have black hair.

It is also used pronominally:

<i>Abas ir skaistas meitenes.</i>	Both are beautiful girls.
<i>Abām ir brūni mati.</i>	Both have brown hair.
<i>Man ir divi kaimiņi. Es bieži runāju ar abiem.</i>	I have two neighbours. I often speak with both.

Abi, abas is often strengthened with the numeral *divi, divas*, particularly in its pronominal use:

<i>Abas divas ir skaistas meitenes.</i>	(Pronominal)
<i>Abām divām ir brūni mati.</i>	(Pronominal)
<i>Es bieži runāju ar abiem diviem.</i>	(Pronominal)
<i>Es izlasīju abas divas grāmatas.</i>	(Adjectival)

Notice the translation of 'both of':

<i>Jūs abi esat ļoti laipni.</i>	Both of you are very kind.
<i>Man ir divi draugi, kuri abi ir ārsti.</i>	I have two friends, both of whom are doctors.

Notice also the word order in phrases like 'both my hands', etc., e.g., *manas abas rokas*.

Abi is normally followed by a definite adjective, cf.

abi mazie zēni both small boys.

Vocabulary

<i>abi</i>	both	<i>komēdija</i>	comedy
<i>teātris</i>	theatre	<i>cēliens</i>	act (of play)
<i>luga</i>	play	<i>aina</i>	scene (of play)
<i>mēģinājums</i>	rehearsal	<i>dēkorācijas</i> (pl.)	scenery (of play)
<i>aktieris</i>	actor	<i>zāle</i>	hall
<i>aktrise</i>	actress	<i>skatuve</i>	stage
<i>drāma</i>	drama	<i>drāmatīķis</i>	playwright
<i>priekšgars</i>	curtain	<i>baļets</i>	ballet
	(in theatre)	<i>opēra</i>	opera

NOTES: The genitive plural of *aktrise* is normally *aktrisu*, although *aktrišu* may occasionally be found.

biļete uz (+acc.) 'a ticket to'

Komēdija, dekorācijas and *opēra* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 71a

Decline: *abi stūri; abas ainas; abi divi mēģinājumi; abas divas operas*.

Exercise 71b

Decline in the singular and plural: *melns suns; tas melnais suns*.

Exercise 71c

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas aukstais ūdens; tas īstais dārgakmens; tas jaunais krogus; tā interesantā grāmata; tā garā vēstule*.

Exercise 71d

Translate into Latvian: for five kilometres; ten feet from the gate; two kilometres before the river; seventeen centimetres long; five hundred and thirty-eight kilometres long; four metres from the road; ten days before Christmas; five weeks after Easter; ten years old; thirty-seven feet and three inches wide.

Exercise 71e

Translate into English:

1. Rītu mēs atkārtosim abas divas ainas.
2. Man ir divas biļetes uz baletu.
3. Tai lugai ir trīs cēlieni un septiņpadsmit ainas.
4. Dekorācijas varētu būt drusku gaišākās krāsās.
5. Cik dejotāju ir jūsu baletā?
6. Abos pilsētas teātros tagad spēlē drāmas. – Tad es neiešu uz teātri, jo es gribu redzēt tikai komēdijas.
7. Rīt mums būs mēģinājums uz skatuves, bet bez dekorācijām.
8. Strādājiet, draugi, strādājiet! – Mums vēl ir tikai seši mēģinājumi.
9. Tā ir jaukāka aina visā komēdijā.
10. Slavenais aktieris tanī lugā spēlē kādu vecu laiku kārtībnieku.
11. Mēģinājuma laikā, lūdzu, nesmēķējiet zālē un uz skatuves!
12. Pilsētas nama abās zālēs var dejot. (*Pilsētas nams* = Town Hall)
13. Kuru drāmu lielais angļu drāmatīķis uzrakstīja divus mēnešus pirms nāves? – To gan es nezinu!
14. Vai aktrises un aktieri jau ir aiz priekškara?

15. Mēs tūlīt sakārtosim mēbeles uz skatuves.
16. Kurai aktrisei pieder gredzens ar sarkano akmeni, un kurai tas ar to dzelteno? – Abi pieder tai jaunajai aktrisei ar tumšajiem matiem.
17. Aktieri, operas dziedātāji, baleta dejotāji un arī drāmatiki ir mākslinieki.
18. Vai jums ir biļetes uz slaveno krievu baletu?
19. Rīgas teātros spēlē latviešu lugas, vācu drāmas un arī franču komēdijas.
20. Kurā cēlienā jūs lietosit tās dekorācijas? – Abos cēlienos.
21. Opera bija tik gara, un dziedātāji dziedāja tik slikti, ka mēs aizgājām cēliena vidū.
22. Spēlējiet labi, draugi! Lielais drāmatikišs šodien sēdēs zālē.
23. Te gan derētu jauns priekšskars.
24. Dekorācijas parasti taisa no koka un papīra.
25. Tai lugā katram cēlienam ir citas dekorācijas.
26. Šodien teātrī ir komēdija par policiju un policistiem.
27. Attālumus starp tālām zvaigznēm neskaita kilometros, bet gaismas gados.
28. Vienā metrā ir simts centimetru, bet vienā pēdā ir tikai divpadsmit collas.
29. Policistiem ir daudz interesantāks darbs nekā kalpiem.
30. Kāpēc suņiem un kucēniem ir tik auksti purni?
31. Kaut gan tālumā zibēno, turpināsim savu ceļu!
32. Suņu un kucēnu spalva ir citāda nekā putnu spalvas.
33. Kādas lietas jūs kārtojāt savā birojā?
34. Kāpēc šeit tuvumā nav zobārsta?
35. Es ceru, ka tu neatkārtosi, ko tu šeit nupat dzirdēji!
36. Ātri, ātri, puīši, pudeles skapī! Saimnieks ir pie vārtiem. Citādi viņš mūs atkal brīdinās no viņa briesmām!
37. Suns laikam ir slimš, jo tam ir silts purns.
38. Kura ir tuvākā zvaigzne? – Tā ir mūsu saule.
39. Lūdzu, divas kastītes sērskociņu un gabalu ziepju! – Paldies. Ardievu!
40. Kurā gada laikā jūsu zemē meži ir visskaistākie?
41. Kuras valodas runā Dienvidamerikā?
42. Vai tas ir īsts viduslaiku zelta gabals?
43. Mūsu bērni jau piecos bija atpakaļ mājās, bet kaimiņu nerātņie bērni tikai pēc septiņiem.
44. Vai tas pelēkais suns pieder kārtībniekam?

Exercise 71f

Translate into Latvian:

1. We keep the scenery in a cellar under the stage.
2. Smoking is not permitted in the hall of the theatre.
3. The actors had thirty-one rehearsals.

4. In old Latvian plays country life (*lauku dzīve*) is usually portrayed (*rādīt*).
5. The tickets for the Russian ballet are quite expensive.
6. In that scene you will see the young French actress.
7. In that theatre the curtains are green.
8. Let all the actors go to their places; we shall repeat the whole act.
9. In the Middle Ages, nobody liked (*ieredzēt*) actors.
10. There are not many good playwrights in our times.
11. Which act shall we repeat at the rehearsal tomorrow?
12. Let us arrange the stage.
13. My husband usually sleeps in the opera, and I do not awaken him when the ballet girls are on stage.
14. Why is the scenery so close to the curtains?
15. Who is the greatest English playwright? – What a silly question: every child knows that!
16. Both the playwright's daughters are actresses.
17. It would be foolish to say that dramas are better than comedies: they cannot be compared.
18. The curtains are sixteen feet high, and twenty-three feet six inches wide.
19. There are many cars in front of the theatre.
20. My wife and I go to the theatre now and then.
21. Both the comedies we saw were bad.
22. Don't tell me what will be portrayed (*rādīt*) in that scene!
23. That is an opera in three acts.
24. Don't put on an act! (*spēlēt komēdiju*)
25. Where can I get ballet shoes?
26. During (*loc.*) rehearsal time the hall will be dark. There will be lights only on the stage.
27. Every film-star is not an actress.
28. The actors did not act as well today as at the rehearsals.
29. Where shall we go after the rehearsal?
30. The play is quite long.
31. There are four acts and twenty-one scenes in that drama.
32. The hall has a very high ceiling.
33. That scenery is quite new.
34. Opera singers are usually not good actors.
35. German dramas are often very long.
36. Both dogs have a long nose and black fur.
37. What on earth is the dog looking for in the water?
38. I shall poke my tongue out at you if I wish!
39. Puppies' tongues are red.
40. A policeman always stands at that corner.
41. Seventy-five policemen are looking for the film star's gems.

12. Mēs šo ainu atkārtosim.
13. Kas kārto šo lietu?
14. Vai šī ir kāda jauna drāmatīķa luga?
15. Kāpēc šim sunim ir tik netīra spalva?
16. Policija šo cilvēku meklē jau divas nedēļas.
17. Vai jūs šim kārtībniekam iedevāt savu naudu?
18. Šis nerātnais zēns pēkšņi rādīja policistam mēli.
19. Šīm jaunajām aktrisēm laikam gan ir labas algas.
20. Tu gan varētu sakārtot šos papīrus uz plaukta.
21. Šo logu stikli ir raibi.
22. Šo aktieru mati ir gari.
23. Šo aktrisu algas ir augstas.
24. Šo dejotāju kājas ir garas un stipras.
25. Mēs neatkārtosim šo garo cēlienu šinī mēģinājumā.
26. Kas šai par daļu, ko zobārsts dara savā brīvajā dienā?
27. Šai operai ir divas daļas.
28. Šo slaveno drāmu jūs drīz redzēsiet mūsu teātrī.
29. Kas ir aiz šī priekškara?
30. Šīm dekorācijām ir skaistas krāsas.
31. Uz šīs skatuves bieži dejo baletu.
32. Šis lielais tilts ir gandrīz divus kilometrus garš.
33. Šie abi vārti ir divus metrus plati.
34. Vai šinīs kabatās ir nauda?
35. Vai neviens negrib šo siera gabalu?
36. Šis krogus gan ir tuvu.
37. Vai jūs dāvinājat šai aktrisei puķes?
38. Vai šie vīri sēdēja jūsu tuvumā?
39. Šajos mālos nevar stādīt kāpostus.
40. Šinīs namos dzīvo lielas ģimenes.
41. Šais mājās dzīvo bagāti cilvēki.
42. Šai kastītē ir sērkokoņi.
43. Šī luga ir ļoti interesanta.
44. Šai krogū nav alus.
45. Vai šīs mazās meitenes jau abas iet skolā?
46. Šis vīrs ir mūsu abu draugs.
47. Rītu mēs redzēsime šīs skaistās sievietes uz skatuves.
48. Seši cilvēki šai mašīnā var sēdēt pavisam ērti.
49. Šinīs mazajos dzīvokļos nedrīkst turēt suņus.
50. Tagad šī zirga spalva atkal spīd.
51. Šīs skolotājas vīrs ir drāmatīķis.
52. Šo raibo blūzi nevar mezgāt tik karstā ūdenī.
53. Šim mazajam kucēnam ir karsts purns.

54. Vai tu redzi abus skurstēpus tur tālumā?
55. Šai miglā es nekā neredzu!
56. Šīs bikses varētu būt divus centimetrus garākas.
57. Rītu mēs varam gulēt līdz desmitiem.
58. Vai šinī zemē lieto pēdas un collas?
59. Šī grāmata ir astoņpadsmit centimetrus plata.
60. Šais mājās ir daudz bērnu.
61. Šis dzeltenās puķes zied tikai rudenī.
62. Iesim atpakaļ pa šo ceļu!

Exercise 72e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The distance from this valley to that town is quite long.
2. These watery tomatoes are useless.
3. This gem is genuine.
4. Do you want to sell this puppy?
5. We shall leave after this act.
6. Did you ask this young policeman the way to the market?
7. How many actors are performing in this play?
8. The famous playwright used to live in this flat.
9. Where did you get these gems?
10. Do you know the names of those actors?
11. These policemen really have a difficult job.
12. The soil in these gardens is stony.
13. Does this truck belong to the police?
14. Only comedies are performed in this theatre.
15. This actress is playing in both theatres.
16. After that long rehearsal, let us all go to the tavern.
17. Did you see this interesting drama?
18. After this short scene, we shall arrange the furniture on the stage.
19. This colourful blouse belongs to this young actress.
20. More than a thousand people can sit in this hall.
21. This girl is a close friend of mine.
22. The fur of this dog is very soft.
23. Both dentists work in this old house.
24. These parts are useless for (*dat.*) this truck.
25. We shall repeat these scenes on Thursday.
26. The husbands of these two women are both engine-drivers.
27. What do these ballet-dancers really earn?
28. I do not want to work as a doctor.

29. There is red wine in these green glasses.
30. The lightning frightened this little puppy.
31. We gathered a lot of berries this autumn.
32. These white flowers bloom for only three days.
33. I read the letter at lightning speed.
34. Do both your feet hurt?
35. Is that lightning there in the distance, behind those hills?
36. Who is arranging all these things?
37. This dog really has a long tongue.
38. I saw this opera in Riga.
39. This newspaper is forty centimetres wide.
40. This window is only one metre wide.
41. Both police cars were in the vicinity of the market.
42. Six kilometres from this church there is a railway station.
43. What on earth would the people in this small town say, if they knew that my wife was an actress and ballet-dancer?
44. What indeed would these old walls say if they could speak?
45. I certainly do not want to see this opera.
46. Were you both sitting in this carriage?
47. Both our sons go to this school.
48. These are genuine American cigarettes.
49. I shall not go back along this stony road.
50. These flowers cannot be obtained anywhere else.
51. This new curtain has a darker colour than the old one.
52. He promised to lend me his cap.
53. Puppies have cold, wet noses.
54. There are few more industrious men in this town than our cobbler and his nephew.
55. There is a fly in my wine glass.
56. Sometimes when I catch sight of the wild-flowers at the cross-roads, I wish that I did not live in a dirty city.
57. My niece would follow John to the ends of the world.
58. Would you like a cup of tea, or a glass of wine?
59. I want to pay for the wine glasses in cash.
60. Why are all my ties and shoe-laces on the kitchen floor?
61. Yes, children, you may swim in the sea, if you swim only in the shallow water.
62. Little Arthur was shaking with fear because his old aunt wanted to kiss him.
63. Many birds make their nests from twigs and grass.
64. Three bottles of ink, please, and two pencils. (Case?)
65. Anne is such a happy child; she is always smiling!

LESSON 73

ORDINAL NUMBERS FROM 1ST TO 10TH

The ordinals from 1st to 10th are as follows:

<i>pirmais, pirmā</i>	first
<i>otrais, otrā</i>	second
<i>trešais, trešā</i>	third
<i>četrtais, ceturta</i>	fourth
<i>piektais, piektā</i>	fifth
<i>seštis, sestā</i>	sixth
<i>septītais, septīta</i>	seventh
<i>astotais, astotā</i>	eighth
<i>devītais, devīta</i>	ninth
<i>dešmitais, dešmitā</i>	tenth

These are declined just like ordinary adjectives in the definite declension. **The** only one of the above ordinals to have an indefinite form as well is *otrais* 'second'. The indefinite form *otrs, otra* means 'the other' (of two).

Man bija divas pudeles. Viena ir šeit, bet kur ir otra?

I had two bottles. One is here, but where is the other?

Es nedzirdēju otra vīra stāstu.

I did not hear the other man's story.

Note the following constructions with *otrs* and *cits*:

Divi vīri stāv pagalmā; viens runā, otrs smēķē.

Two men are standing in the yard: one is talking, the other smoking.

Pagrabā ir daudz vīru; cits stāv pie loga, cits sēž krēslā un cits guļ uz galda.

There are many men in the cellar: one is standing by the window, another is sitting in a chair, and another is lying on the table.

This construction with *cits... cits* has a corresponding plural form, *citi... citi*, meaning 'some... others':

Pasaulē ir daudz skolotāju; citi ir labi, citi slikti.

There are many teachers in the world: some are good, others are bad.

Vocabulary

Learn the ordinals from 1st to 10th.

<i>otrs</i>	the other	<i>koncerts</i>	concert
<i>orķestris</i>	orchestra, band	<i>koris</i>	choir
<i>mūzika</i>	music	<i>diriģēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to conduct
<i>mūziķis</i>	musician	<i>diriģents</i>	conductor
<i>rinda</i>	row, line (of poetry)		
	etc.		

NOTE: *Orķestris* and *koncerts* have foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 73a

Continue the following through from 1st to 10th: *pirmais koncerts; ar pirmo vīru; pirmā nama vārti; līdz pirmajam kokam; pirmajā dzīvoklī; pirmā rinda; ar pirmo sievieti; pirmās pļavas malā; līdz pirmajai ielai; pirmajā istabā.*

Exercise 73b

Decline in the singular and plural: *šis tirgus; šī istaba; šis ūdens; šī kastīte; tas dzīvoklis; tā bibliotēka.*

Exercise 73c

Decline in the singular and plural: *logs; aka; skapis; puķe; akmens; suns; krogus.*

Exercise 73d

Translate into Latvian: ten feet wide; six inches deep; five kilometres long; for a hundred feet; ten days after Christmas; fifty metres before the cross-roads.

Exercise 73e

Translate into English:

1. Šinī mēģinājumā mēs atkārtosim tikai otro cēlienu.
2. Drāmatiskis sēž pirmajā rindā astotajā vietā.
3. Tikai devītajā mēģinājumā mēs mēģināsim ar pilnu orķestri un kori.

4. Jaunais mūziķis šodien dos savu pirmo koncertu.
5. Ceļā no Parīzes uz Rīgu diriģents ar mūziķiem sēdēja sestajā vagonā, bet dziedātāji un balets sēdēja septītajā vagonā.
6. Jau trešo gadu šis diriģents diriģē mūsu pilsētas operas orķestri un kori. (Note this extension of the accusative of time construction, and particularly the tense of the verb.)
7. Pirmajās rindās var redzēt visu un dzirdēt katru vārdu, ko aktieri runā.
8. Pēc ceturtais glāzes viņš gribēja skūpstīt katru meiteni savā tuvumā, bet pēc astotās glāzes viņš jau gulēja ar galvu uz galda.
9. Es biju piektais no sešiem dēliem mūsu ģimenē.
10. Austrumu Āzijas mūzika mums ir sveša.
11. Katru sesto mēnesi mēs sūtām savus bērnus pie zobārsta, lai pārbaudītu viņu zobus.
12. Katra desmitā latviešu zēna vārds laikam ir Jānis.
13. Šis diriģents diriģē tikai korus.
14. Pēc desmitā kilometra gandrīz visiem karavīriem sāpēja kājas, jo ceļš bija akmeņains, un šur tur viņi gāja pa dubļiem.
15. Šis orķestris spēlēja tikai amerikāņu mūziku.
16. Tālumā varēja dzirdēt dejas mūziku.
17. Kas diriģēs kori pēc šī slavenā diriģenta nāves? Otru tik labu diriģentu **tik** ātri nedabūs.
18. Arī ceturtajā koncertā zāle bija pilna.
19. Koncerta otrajā daļā orķestris spēlēja krievu baleta mūziku.
20. Mūziķiem tagad ir diezgan labas algas.
21. Man šodien tā ir pirmā cigarete.
22. Devītā aina nav tik īsa kā desmitā.
23. Tu vari man ticēt, ka no septītajās rindas dzird labi, jo es tur bieži sēžu koncertos.
24. Viens grib gulēt, otrs grib dejot.
25. Nekur nav otra tik skaista nama visā pilsētā.
26. Cits lasīja avīzi, cits smēķēja, cits rakstīja vēstuli.
27. Vai tu gribi vēl vienu gabalu gaļas?
28. Aktieri un aktrises spēlēs mūsu teātrī jaunajā franču lugā: tā būs komēdija trīs cēlienos. Maniem abiem brāļiem ir bijetes.
29. Visas dekorācijas tagad ir uz skatuves.
30. Latviešu rakstnieki tagad raksta vairāk komēdiju nekā drāmu.

Exercise 73f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Give each musician a glass of beer!
2. The Latvian choir will sing in the Sydney Town Hall (*pilsētas nams*) today.
3. Aija is a music teacher.
4. In which hall does the choir usually have rehearsals?
5. Please show me your ticket! Your place is in the tenth row.
6. This is our sixth orchestra rehearsal.
7. I am going to this concert only because of the famous conductor.
8. The first concert was not as good as the second.
9. The musicians always wear black suits at orchestral concerts.
10. The young conductor will conduct his first concert on Sunday.
11. The pharmacist lives in the third house from this corner.
12. Is a conductor's job hard? – No, only the first twenty years are hard.
13. In the ninth carriage, people are dancing, and a small band is playing American and German dance music.
14. The play was so bad, that we left after the second act.
15. That was already the fourth or fifth flash of lightning.
16. Is this the seventh street after the bridge?
17. The third sister has the richest husband.
18. Please show me the eighth row!
19. She would indeed go to the first one who proposed to her.
20. After the second World War (*pasaules karš*) many people left Europe for Australia or America (*aizceļot no... uz*).
21. Another cup of tea? (Case!) – No, thank you! This is already the fourth!
22. Who is conducting the orchestra today? The musicians rarely play so well.
23. The police are now questioning this man for the fifth day.
24. Check every seventh car!
25. This is the scenery for the tenth scene.
26. This play is now being performed for the ninth week.
27. We are now working in this valley for the eighth month.
28. A long row of trucks is standing in front of the narrow bridge.
29. Does this music student conduct the whole male choir? (*vīru koris*)
30. In this opera a choir and a ballet are required.
31. Both the playwright's youngest daughters are actresses.
32. The actors are already in their places behind the curtains.
33. Is this play a comedy or a drama?
34. The new stage is forty feet wide and twenty-five feet deep.
35. Melbourne is in south-eastern Australia.
36. Do English students read many American and Australian writers?
37. In the north-west of Paris live many rich film-stars.

38. Didn't he say a single word?
39. Who lives in the sixth flat? – Some long-haired artist.
40. The distant stars are many light-years from our earth.
41. They keep three dogs and a puppy in their flat.
42. The tongue is very important, for without it people would not be able to speak.
43. The police-officer was putting away some old papers.
44. All financial matters may be transacted in a bank.
45. A policeman has been standing at that corner for four hours.

LESSON 74

NEGATIONS WITH *NE... NE* AND *VAIRS*

'Neither... nor' is translated into Latvian by *ne... ne* and a negative verb:

Es neesmu ne ārsts, ne skolotājs.

I am neither a doctor nor a teacher.

Artūrs nepārdotu savu veco zirgu ne par zeltu, ne par sudrabu.

Arthur would sell his old horse for neither gold nor silver.

An important point to notice is that in *ne... ne* constructions, the **genitive** is found for the direct object instead of the accusative, provided that the **negation** refers to the direct object in question:

Jānis neredzēja ne Kārļa, ne Pāvila. (Genitive)

John saw neither Charles nor Paul.

Ne Kārlis, ne Pāvils neredzēja Jāni. (Accusative)

Neither Charles nor Paul saw John.

Note too the following:

Ne es, ne tu neesam kurpnieki.

I am not a cobbler, and neither are you.

Ne Ieva, ne Anna nav dejotāja.

Neither Eve nor Anne is a dancer.

Ne Ievas, ne Annas nav mājās.

Neither Eve nor Anne is at home.

The genitive in this last example derives quite simply from the similar genitive in *Ievas nav mājās* 'Eve is not at home'. It must not be confused with the genitive which replaces certain accusatives, as shown above.

It is often possible to order the words of a 'neither... nor' construction as follows:

Ne viņa ir skaista, ne jauna.

She is neither beautiful nor young.

Ne tu esi gleznotājs, ne es dziedātājs.

Neither are you a painter nor I a singer.

In these constructions, the verb is not in the negative.

Vairs with a negative verb is used to translate the English 'no more', 'no longer':

Viņa vairs nedzīvo Melburnā.

She doesn't live in Melbourne any more.

Tu mani vairs neredzēsi.

You will see me no more.

Vīna vairs nav.

There is no more wine.

Vairs is normally placed before the verb, but can on occasions be placed after it.

Vocabulary

<i>amats</i>	trade; position; office	<i>krāsot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to paint; to dye
<i>amatnieks</i>	tradesman	<i>gleznot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to paint
<i>lielpilsēta</i>	large city, metropolis	<i>gleznotājs</i>	painter
<i>pamatskola</i>	primary school	<i>glezna</i>	painting
<i>vidusskola</i>	high school	<i>stāvs</i>	storey
<i>universitāte</i>	university	<i>staigāt (-āju, -āju) pa</i>	to walk along
<i>laiva</i>	(small) boat	<i>ne... ne</i>	neither... nor
<i>krasts</i>	bank, coast	<i>vairs</i>	no more, no longer

NOTES: *Krāsot* means 'to paint a house', whereas *gleznot* means 'to paint a picture'.

The noun *krāsa*, besides meaning 'colour', means also 'paint' or 'dye'.

būt augstā amatā 'to hold a high position'

Exercise 74a

Translate into Latvian:

1. The first street after the bridge.
2. In the second flat on the third floor.
3. The fifth place in the fourth row.
4. The cap of the sixth schoolboy.
5. Were you at the seventh concert?
6. Behind the eighth tree.
7. The ninth storey.
8. In Australia, every tenth person is from Europe.

Exercise 74b

Decline in the singular and plural: *šis kroguš; šī universitāte; šis suns; šī laiva.*

Exercise 74c

Decline in the plural: *šie abi āboli; šīs abas gleznas.*

Exercise 74d

Translate into English:

1. Viņš ir kādā augstā amatā universitātē.
2. Šā gleznotāja gleznas tagad ir ļoti dārgas.
3. Kas tur staigā pa ielu tik agri no rīta?
4. Es gan neesmu amatnieks, bet drusciņ krāsot es māku.
5. Jau pirms simts gadiem Rīga bija lielpilsēta.
6. Maiznieki, miesnieki un kurpnieki ir amatnieki.
7. No sestā stāva var redzēt upes otru krastu.
8. Vecais diriģents vairs nedarīgē orķestri lielos koncertos, viņš diriģē tikai mēģinājumos.
9. Visā savā dzīvē šis gleznotājs pārdeva tikai dažas gleznas par lētu naudu; bet tagad piecdesmit gadus pēc nāves viņš ir tik slavens, ka tikai visbagātākie cilvēki var samaksāt par viņa gleznām.
10. Viņš nav ne gleznotājs, ne mūziķis.
11. Kurā universitātē jūs studējat?
12. Gleznotājs laikam glezno šīs laivas, kas stāv krastā.

13. Latvijā jau pamatskolās māca svešas valodas, bet Anglijā un Austrālijā parasti tikai vidusskolās.
14. Aija strādā par mūzikas skolotāju kādā pamatskolā.
15. Visās Austrālijas lielpilsētās ir vidusskolas un arī viena vai divas universitātes.
16. Kāpēc laivas tik bieži krāso?
17. Pa šo akmeņaino ceļu ir grūti staigāt.
18. Ceturtajā stāvā dzīvo kāds angļu zobārsts.
19. Ar šīm kurbēm es varu staigāt pa akmeņiem un dubļiem.
20. Policista amats nav viegls.
21. Ne viņa ir skaista, ne jauna, bet viņa ir bagāta.
22. Mūsu vidusskolai ir plaša teātra un koncerta zāle.
23. Vasarā es gan negribētu dzīvot putekļainajā lielpilsētā.
24. Ne tu esi gleznotājs, ne es dziedātājs; mēs abi esam tikai amatnieki.
25. Vai tu māki gleznot ar abām rokām?
26. Es nezināju, ka jūsu namam ir arī otrs stāvs.
27. Mācītājs nav vienmēr laimīgs savā amatā, jo viņš bieži redz un dzird bēdīgas lietas.
28. Viņš tagad vairs neglezno ar tik gaišām krāsām.
29. Lieldienās mēs vienmēr krāsojam olas.
30. Jau pamatskolā Juris mācēja zīmēt un gleznot.
31. Te vairs nav ne koku, ne krūmu.
32. Zēni peldēja laivām apkārt.
33. Kad mēs bijām Ņujorkā, mēs dzīvojām trīsdesmit stāvu viesnīcā, un mūsu istabas bija devītajā stāvā.
34. Man ir biļetes uz kora koncertu astotajā rindā.
35. Ogas pēc lielām salnām ir ūdeņainas.
36. Draudzes namā tagad ir jauni aizkari.
37. Bez savām brillēm es nekā nevaru redzēt.
38. Viņa ir tik neglīta, ka neviens viņu nebildina.
39. Avīzē šorīt sludina lētus kokvilnas dvieļus.
40. Labrīt! Vai jums ir "Vējiem līdzi" un "Karš un miers"? – Jā, katra grāmata maksā trīs mārciņas. – Ak, man nav tik daudz naudas! Vai es varētu samaksāt rīt? – Jā, labi! Lūdzu, uzrakstiet šeit savu vārdu! – Paldies! Ardievu!
41. Ja jūs viņu neaicināsit, viņa būs ļoti dusmīga. – Man nav bail no viņas dusmām!
42. Noslauki putekļus no klavierēm, pirms tu spēlē!

Exercise 74e

Translate into Latvian:

1. It is not easy to get good tradesmen.
2. What sort of position does he hold in the university?
3. In big cities the air is not as clean as in the mountains.
4. In the harbour there are several large ships and many small boats.
5. Our daughter worked as a high school teacher in the nearby city.
6. On the tenth day we could see the rocky coast of southern France.
7. This painting is so expensive.
8. She is no longer young, but she still has beautiful black hair! – Yes, she dyes it!
9. There are some rare mediaeval paintings in this church.
10. The Great Lakes of America are so wide that one cannot see their other bank.
11. One cannot yet walk on the ice.
12. There are neither offices nor shops on the third storey; only doctors and dentists.
13. Our son no longer goes to Primary school; he is already in Highschool.
14. I would be happy if I were able to paint as well as that painter.
15. How many years has he held this office? – Thirty-one years.
16. Whatever would the famous old mediaeval painters say, if they saw some paintings of our times?
17. That clay dish cost twenty-three dollars.
18. Are gardeners also tradesmen?
19. Are any East Asian languages taught at this university?
20. Neither was he in the first, nor in the second boat.
21. When will you paint the boat again?
22. The painter is sitting on the bank of the river to paint those old willow-trees.
23. This young painter is now living in a poor flat on the eighth floor.
24. The cat is walking along the roof.
25. What job has your friend in the university? – It is his job to arrange all the financial matters.
26. This is a girls' High school.
27. Today the tradesmen will paint all the rooms on the fourth floor.
28. How many Primary schools are there in this city?
29. Primary school pupils paint only with water-colours (*ūdens krāsas*).
30. There are three flats on each floor.
31. Neither do you talk any more, nor do you sing! What is wrong with you?
32. He is neither a conductor, nor a musician: he is a dramatist.
33. We heard both concerts.

34. I shall not be naughty any more.
35. I shall never again (*nekad vairs*) go to such a foolish play.
36. Which row were you sitting in? – Baiba and I were sitting in the tenth row – didn't you see us?
37. More people live in a big city like Riga than in a small town like Ķemeri.
38. How many great cities are there in Latvia?
39. Why do so many people wish to help the conductor of the orchestra, and conduct with their hands every piece of music they hear?
40. The zoo paid a thousand Australian dollars for those eagles not long ago.
41. Near our house there are apple-trees, oak-trees and linden-trees: the farm-boys (*puisis*) often sit in the shade under these trees, although there is much work to be done.
42. This jam is very sweet, for it contains much sugar.
43. The famous duck-hunter will hunt near the lake tomorrow.
44. Please use the ashtrays; our new wooden floor was quite expensive!
45. In the cellar between the kegs there are a few empty wine bottles.
46. The University of Paris is in the south of that city.
47. Have you a cough again?
48. For whose sake does John work such long hours in the pharmacy?
49. Good evening! We didn't expect you so early!
50. Nowhere are chickens so expensive as here.
51. A duck was flying above the waters of the lake.
52. At the moment we have no more soap, but I shall send John to the shop at once.

LESSON 75

ORDINAL NUMBERS FROM 11TH TO 20TH

The ordinals from 11th to 20th are as follows:

<i>vienpadsmitais, -ā</i>	eleventh
<i>divpadsmitais, -ā</i>	twelfth
<i>trīspadsmitais, -ā</i>	thirteenth
<i>četrpadsmitais, -ā</i>	fourteenth
<i>piecpadsmitais, -ā</i>	fifteenth
<i>sešpadsmitais, -ā</i>	sixteenth
<i>septiņpadsmitais, -ā</i>	seventeenth
<i>astoņpadsmitais, -ā</i>	eighteenth
<i>deviņpadsmitais, -ā</i>	nineteenth
<i>divdesmitais, -ā</i>	twentieth.

They are declined exactly like the ordinals from 1st to 10th, i.e., like **any** adjective in the definite declension.

When an ordinal number is written in Arabic figures, it must be followed by a full stop, thereby being distinguished from cardinals. Should the ordinal be written in Roman numerals, the full stop is not added:

<i>Mēs stāvējām 3 rindās.</i>	We were standing in 3 rows.
<i>Mēs stāvējām 3. rindā.</i>	We were standing in the 3rd row.
<i>Mēs stāvējām III rindā.</i>	We were standing in the 3rd row.

In English we often use a noun in juxtaposition with a cardinal numeral to express an ordinal idea, e.g., 'on page eighteen', 'in room twenty-four', 'act two scene six'. This is not Latvian usage, and the ordinal must be given in full, before the noun.

<i>deviņpadsmitajā istabā</i>	in room nineteen
<i>pirmā cēliena pirmā aina</i>	scene one of act one OR act one, scene one
<i>piektā rinda</i>	row five
<i>uz astoņpadsmitās platformas</i>	on platform eighteen

These could equally well be written

19. *istabā* OR *XIX istabā*
1. *cēliena 1. aina* OR *I cēliena I aina*, etc.

Vocabulary

	Learn the ordinals from 11th to 20th.		
<i>kopā</i>	together	<i>nost</i>	off, away
<i>klāt</i>	present, at hand	<i>fabrika</i>	factory
<i>prom</i>	away, gone (of animates)	<i>ražot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to manufacture, to produce
<i>iērauds</i>	steel		

NOTES: *Kopā, klāt, prom* and *nost* are adverbs. Cf.

<i>Mēs bijām kopā.</i>	We were together.
<i>Viņa jau ir klāt.</i>	She is already here.
<i>Ej prom!</i>	Go away!
<i>Rokas nost!</i>	Hands off!

Klāt may also be used as a postposition with the dative:

<i>Neej sunim klāt!</i>	Don't go near the dog.
-------------------------	------------------------

Kopā may be construed with *ar*:

kopā ar draugiem together with friends

Nost may be construed with *no*:

Rokas nost no naudas! Hands off the money!

Notice particularly *iet nost* 'to come off' (of paint, stains, etc.).

Exercise 75a

Write in full: 11. *dzīvoklis*; 12. *diena*; 13. *stāvā*; 15. *gads*; 16. *nedēļā*; 17. *rindas*; 18. *vietā*; aiz 19. *nama*; 20. *numurs*.

Exercise 75b

Continue the following from 11th to 20th:

1. *Es dzīvoju vienpadsmitajā stāvā.*
2. *Tas ir mūsu vienpadsmitais bērns.*
3. *Tā man ir jau vienpadsmitā glāze.*
4. *Kāpēc vienpadsmitā stāva logi vienmēr ir netīri?*
5. *Vienpadsmitajai pamatskolai ir vislabākie skolotāji.*

Exercise 75c

Give the full declension of *šis* and *tas*.

Exercise 75d

Translate into English:

1. Šinī zālē pirmo vietu skaita no pirmās rindas līdz desmitajai rindai un otro vietu no vienpadsmitās rindas līdz divdesmitajai.
2. Kurā rindā jūs sēžat? – Acumirkli, kur ir biļetes?... Mūsu vietas ir divpadsmitajā rindā un vietu numuri ir septiņpadsmit, astoppadsmit un deviņpadsmit. – Ak, cik jauki, tad jau mēs sēžam kopā, jo mums ir četrpadsmitā, piecpadsmitā un sešpadsmitā vieta!
3. Rudens jau ir klāt.
4. Ar šo krāsu jūs varat krāsot savu laivu, tā neiet nost ne no tērauda, ne no koka.

5. Šinī fabrikā ražo automašīnu daļas. (*Automašīna* is more precise than *mašīna*, and the use of the fuller form avoids the ambiguity that might arise from the use of *mašīna* unqualified, which also means simply *machine*.)
6. Vācija ražo vairāk tērauda nekā Francija.
7. Šie naži un šīs dakšīpas ir no vislabākā angļu tērauda.
8. Rokas nost no gleznas, bērni! Krāsa vēl nav sausa.
9. Vai Jānis aizgāja? – Jā, viņš jau ir prom, bet viņš drīz būs atpakaļ.
10. Šinī lielpilsētā visas fabrikas ir upes krastā.
11. Neej šim sunim klāt!
12. Mēs kopā ar Biritu studējam Melburnas universitātē.
13. Jūs mani meklējāt trīspadsmitajā vagonā, bet es sēdēju septiņpadsmitajā vagonā kopā ar to gleznotāju no Sidnejas.
14. Kucēns šim kaķim vairs neiet klāt.
15. Zirgs neiet prom no manis, jo es tam iedevu gabalu cukura.
16. Šī fabrika ražo tikai sērkokļus.
17. Vai amatnieki vēl strādā astoppadsmitajā stāvā? – Nē, viņi tur vairs nestrādā; viņi tagad strādā deviņpadsmitajā stāvā.
18. Smagā mašīna jau ir klāt.
19. Nost no platformas, zēni! Vagonā vēl ir diezgan vietu.
20. Viņš glezno jau savu divpadsmito gleznu.
21. Mēs visi kopā staigājam pa jūrmalu.
22. Pelnu trauks nav ne no tērauda, ne no māla, bet no stikla.
23. Juris vairs nestrādā par skolotāju vienpadsmitajā pamatskolā; viņš nesen aizgāja prom uz trīspadsmito vidusskolu. – Tas ir jauki, tad viņš tagad ir augstākā amatā.
24. No sešpadsmitā stāva var redzēt līdz okeana krastam.
25. Tas divdesmit stāvu nams ir tikai drusku zemāks par tās fabrikas skursteni.
26. Vilciens atiet no četrpadsmitā perona.
27. Nost no ceļa!
28. Vācija ražo ļoti labas pildspalvas.
29. Šinī fabrikā vairs neražo zīmuļus.
30. Septiņpadsmitais vagonis ir pasta vagonis.
31. Teātrī astoppadsmitajā un deviņpadsmitajā rindā sēdēs skolnieki no pilsētas sešpadsmitās vidusskolas.
32. Visi aktieri un aktrises tagad ir savās vietās aiz priekšskara.
33. Tas vecais diriģents diriģē mūsu pilsētas operas kori un orķestri jau trīsdesmit vienu gadu.
34. Visi mūziķi jau bija uz skatuves un gaidīja diriģentu.
35. Vai tu gribētu dzirdēt latviešu mūzikas koncertu?

Exercise 75e

Translate into Latvian:

1. We went together to Primary school and to High school.
2. In autumn Charles is going away; then his room on the eleventh floor will be free.
3. Today we shall rehearse scenes seventeen and eighteen. (The word for 'scenes' will have to be in the singular; see Ex. 75d, Nos. 2 and 31.)
4. Is the doctor still not here?
5. In the twelfth rehearsal we shall rehearse together with the choir, the ballet and the orchestra.
6. Hands off my money!
7. Does ink come off with hot water and soap?
8. Which factory manufactures furniture?
9. Paint all the steel parts of the boat, because otherwise the sea-water will damage (*kaitēt*) them.
10. The doctor will soon be here.
11. From the fourteenth floor you can see the distant coast.
12. I shall go away if you continue mocking me.
13. We do not manufacture those sheets any more.
14. Nearly all precious stones are harder than steel.
15. Furniture factories are usually very dusty.
16. Let's go along the bridge together.
17. There is neither an airport nor a railway station here.
18. Don't poke your tongue out at me!
19. When Michael is present, I shall tell you an interesting story.
20. American factories will soon be manufacturing more steel.
21. I no longer wish to go away from this lovely valley.
22. This is the twelfth Sunday after Easter.
23. Let's all sing together!
24. She is the thirteenth and youngest child in this large family.
25. It is about two hundred metres to the fifteenth house.
26. Suddenly the policeman was at hand.
27. This glass factory produces only window panes.
28. Get away from the roses!
29. Gold is heavier and more expensive than steel.
30. The doctor went away long ago.
31. Above the sixteenth storey there is only the roof.
32. Who lives on the twentieth floor?
33. My nineteenth ticket had the lucky number.
34. The young painter is already painting his seventeenth picture.
35. It is very hard to get good tradesmen in this great city.

36. My uncle holds a high position in the university.
37. The musicians are giving a concert of French and German music in the theatre.
38. The conductor's wife always wants to sit in the first row, when her husband is conducting the orchestra.
39. This is a comedy in five acts.
40. Both conductors will conduct the orchestra at the rehearsals.
41. The dramatist is writing a new play, a drama in three acts.
42. The scenery is fifteen feet six inches high.
43. Although lightning was flashing in the distance, we continued our journey.
44. In the cold seasons, the days are shorter than in the warm seasons.
45. How fast does light travel?
46. What is the distance between the tree and the roadside? – About eight metres and fifty centimetres.
47. This morning there were police-cars in the vicinity of the inn.
48. I shall not repeat what he told me!

LESSON 76

LATVIAN NAMES AND FORMS OF ADDRESS

The English titles Mr, Mrs and Miss are translated respectively by *kungs*, *kundze*, and *jaunkundze*.

When these are followed by the surname, e.g., 'Mr Smith', Latvian uses the masculine genitive singular of the name, which precedes the title:

<i>Ozola kungs</i>	Mr. Ozols
<i>Ozola kundze</i>	Mrs. Ozols
<i>Ozola kungs ar kundzi</i>	Mr. and Mrs. Ozols.

If both the Christian and surname are given then the Latvian corresponds to the English:

<i>Jānis Ozols</i>	John Ozols
<i>Aivars Vītols</i>	Aivars Vītols

BUT:

<i>Jānis Ozola kungs</i>	Mr. John Ozols.
--------------------------	-----------------

In the case of feminine names given in this way, the surname is used in the feminine form:

Māra Ozola

Māra Ozols (Latvians in speaking English normally do not retain this feminine.)

Biruta Vītola

Biruta Vītols

Masculine surnames ending in *-s* or *-š* have corresponding feminine forms in *-a*: cf. *Ozols/Ozola* above. Exception: *-nieks/-niece*. To masculine names in *-is* or *-ens* (of the *Rudens* type only) correspond feminines in *-e*: *Zirnis/Zirne*, *Rudens/Rudene*.

Remember, however, that when the surname is used with the title Mrs. or Miss it is in the Masculine singular genitive form – see above.

In declension, only the title is inflected, the preceding genitive remaining unchanged throughout:

<i>ar Ozola kungu</i>	with Mr Ozols
<i>bez Kalniņa kundzes</i>	without Mrs Kalniņš
<i>Vītola jaunkundzes dēļ</i>	because of Miss Vītols

Declension of the full name, however, requires the inflection of both parts:

<i>ar Jāni Ozolu</i>	with John Ozols
<i>bez Māras Kalniņas</i>	without Māra Kalniņš
<i>aiz Baibas Zirnes</i>	behind Baiba Zirnis

Note the use of *kungs* (*kundze*) in conjunction with a noun denoting profession:

<i>skolotāja kungs</i>	teacher
<i>ārsta kundze</i>	doctor.

Vocabulary

<i>kungs</i>	Mr; gentleman	<i>drēbnieks</i>	tailor
<i>kundze</i>	Mrs; lady; wife	<i>fotografs</i>	photographer
<i>jaunkundze</i>	Miss; young lady	<i>fotografēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to photograph
<i>dāma</i>	lady		
<i>smalks</i>	fine; elegant	<i>nofotografēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to photograph
<i>mētelis</i>	overcoat		
<i>kažoks</i>	fur coat	<i>balle</i>	ball, dance
<i>kāzas</i> (pl.)	wedding	<i>ciemiņš</i>	visitor, guest
<i>drēbe</i>	cloth; material	<i>ciemos</i>	on a visit
<i>drēbes</i> (pl.)	clothes	<i>apciemot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to visit

NOTE the additional meanings of *kungs*, *kundze*, *jaunkundze*.

Ciemos is normally construed with a following locative, or with *pie* as the sense dictates:

<i>ciemos pie draugiem</i>	BUT	<i>ciemos Rīgā</i>
on a visit to friends	BUT	on a visit in Riga

Fotografēt and *nofotografēt* are corresponding imperfective and perfective forms.

The following have foreign monophthongal *o*: *fotografs*, *fotografēt* and, apart from the prefix *no-*, *nofotografēt*.

Exercise 76a

Translate into English: *Vītola kungs*; *Jānis Vītols*; *ar Vītola kungu*; *ar Jāni Vītolu*; *Kalniņa kundze*; *Māra Kalniņa*; *ar Kalniņa kundzi*; *ar Māru Kalniņu*; *Zirņa jaunkundze*; *Ieva Zirne*; *ar Zirņa jaunkundzi*; *ar Ievu Zirni*.

Exercise 76b

Translate into Latvian: *Mrs Ozoliņš*; *Biruta Ozoliņš*; *with Mrs Ozoliņš*; *with Biruta Ozoliņš*; *Miss Ērglis*; *Aija Ērglis*; *with Miss Ērglis*; *with Aija Ērglis*; *Mr Zaļums*; *Paul Zaļums*; *with Mr Zaļums*; *with Paul Zaļums*.

Exercise 76c

Continue the following through from 1st to 20th: *pirmais skolnieks*; *pirmajā stāvā*.

Exercise 76d

Decline in the singular and plural: *tas kažoks*; *tā dziesma*; *šis trauks*; *šī aka*; *es*; *tu*.

Exercise 76e

Translate into English:

1. Kāpēc Kalniņa kungs ballē nedejoja ar Lāča jaunkundzi?
2. Šis uzvalks ir no ļaunā angļu drēbes.
3. Mēs būtu ļoti priecīgi, ja Ozola kungs ar kundzi mūs apciemotu mūsu jaunajā dzīvoklī.

4. Šodien ziemas mēteļa nevajaga; var valkāt rudens mēteļi.
5. Krievijas aukstajās ziemās var iet ārā tikai kažokā.
6. Kad jūs bijāt ciemos pie sava krusttēva, vai jūs tur redzējāt arī Rudens kundzi un viņas meitu Baibu?
7. Vai tavās kāzās bija arī kāds fotografs? – Jā, bija gan, un viņš mūs nofotografēja baznīcas priekšā kopā ar mācītāju.
8. Ballēs parasti valkā vislabākās drēbes.
9. Lūdzu pie galda, mīļie ciemiņi!
10. Tik smalkas drēbes es gan nevalkāšu ciemos pie vecās Kalniņa jaunkundzes!
11. Drēbju veikalos pārdod uzvalkus, blūzes, mēteļus un kažokus.
12. Dāmas un kungi! Šeit mūsu vidū šodien ir slavenā dziedātāja Anna Zaļuma.
13. Ar kuriem studentiem tu sēdēji kopā studentu ballē? – Tur bija Jānis Ozols, Aivars Vilks, Baiba Sudraba, Juris Pavasaris, Ieva Dārziņa, Pāvils Lācis, Artūrs Miesnieks, Biruta Kalniņa, Aija Āboliņa, Māra Zaļuma, Kārlis Ērglis un vēl daži, kuru vārdus es nezinu. – Vai Māra Rudene nesēdēja pie jūsu galda? – Nē, bet viņa sēdēja mūsu tuvumā, laikam pie četrpadsmitā galda. Viņa jau agri aizgāja prom kopā ar Miķeli Zirni.
14. Krūma kundzei gan ir smalks kažoks!
15. Rītu es iešu pie drēbnieka un apciemošu Ērgļa kundzi.
16. Fotografs jau ir klāt; cerēsim, ka ciemiņi arī drīz būs šeit!
17. Šo ostas daļu nedrīkst fotografēt.
18. Es meklēju labu drēbnieku. – Tad ejiet pie Gaiļa kunga, viņš strādā labi un lēti.
19. Pēc balle mēs vēl aizgājām ciemos pie Jura Vītola.
20. Cik jums vakar bija ciemiņu?
21. Kurai dāmai pieder šie cimdi?
22. Es zinu, kāpēc Krūmiņa kundze mūs neapciemoja – tikai Vilka kundzes dēļ.
23. Visi fotografi prom! Nevienš nedrīkst fotografēt mūsu jaunākos kažokus un ziemas mēteļus!
24. Sestdien Sidnejas latviešu namā būs liela balle.
25. Mēs bijām ciemos pie manas māsiņas.
26. Es avīzē lasīju, ka mūsu drēbniekam rītu būs kāzas.
27. Šī fabrika pieder Jura Gaiļa tēvam. – Ko tur ražo? – Smalkas mašīnu daļas no tērauda.
28. Vai Kalniņa kungs dzīvo astoņpadsmitajā istabā? – Nē, viņš dzīvo vienpadsmitajā istabā, viesnīcas divpadsmitajā stāvā.
29. Zaļuma kungam tagad ir augsts amats mūsu universitātes bibliotēkā.
30. Šinī ielā nav ne pamatskolas, ne vidusskolas.
31. Cik bieži tu krāso savu laivu?

32. Vecais gleznotājs, kura gleznas visi tagad slavē, vairs neglezno.
33. Cik bieži tu ej ciemos pie Kalniņa jaunkundzes?
34. Gaiļa spalvas bija putekļu pilnas.
35. Kas par glītu kažoku!
36. Vai tu izmazgāji savas smalkās zeķes?
37. Vakaros veikalnieks saskaita naudu kasē.
38. Kad saule norietēja, mēs vēl bijām divdesmit piecus kilometrus no Rīgas.
39. Rītu es samaksāšu par jauno žogu.
40. “Vai tu zini, kur ir Ņujorka?” prasīja skolotājs. – “Jā, skolotāja kungs,” atbildēja Jānis Ozols, “Ņujorka ir Ziemeļamerikā.”
41. Kucēnam ir koka gabals mutē.

Exercise 76f

Translate into Latvian:

1. This is a painting of the famous painter Aivars Kalniņš.
2. Which of these ladies lost her ring? – That was Miss Krūms; **she was** looking for it just now.
3. Our son often goes visiting our neighbour, Mr Lācis.
4. The photographer cannot photograph those people in this light.
5. Mrs Ozols has very elegant gloves.
6. John Stūris was at Māra Vītols's wedding, together with Anna Krūmiņa.
7. Your overcoat is dusty.
8. That was a very nice ball! – Yes, we were there along with our **friends** from Melbourne.
9. Go inside, Mr Vilks is waiting for you. – I cannot go into his **office** in these clothes!
10. We hope you will visit us again soon.
11. With which lady is Mr. Zirnis dancing? – That is Miss Ērglis. – **Isn't she** Mr Kalniņš's cousin?
12. Hands off Mr Ozols's boat, boys; the paint is not yet dry!
13. In the zoo we shall photograph the bears and wolves.
14. Just now Mr Ābols was here, and now he is gone!
15. Mrs Ērglis's puppy is frightened of the tradesmen; it does not go up to them (*viņiem klāt*).
16. The tailor promised me the overcoat a week ago.
17. How many musicians played at that wedding?
18. This fur coat is light, but warm.
19. **After the wedding they** visited some old friends.
20. **The photographer is** already at hand.
21. **At balls the ladies** wear fine clothes.

22. English cloth is usually made from fine Australian wool.
23. At Christmas we shall have many visitors.
24. Miss Lācis was paying a call on Mrs Pavasaris.
25. Tailors are having hard times because many clothes are now produced in factories.
26. I photographed those beggars in a South Asian port.
27. The lady whom we saw with Mr Dārziņš at the ball was his cousin.
28. Not all fur coats are expensive.
29. Did you ask the guests whether they have enough wine?
30. At what time are we allowed to visit our sick friend?
31. What is harder than steel?
32. How many bricks does this factory manufacture in twenty-four hours?
33. The tailor was on a visit to his friend, the photographer.
34. In our city, there are two universities, fifty-nine high schools and a hundred and one primary schools.
35. John Kalniņš often paints on the bank of the river.
36. In Eastern Europe children paint eggs at Easter.
37. Neither does Mr Ozols live on the eleventh floor, nor on the twelfth.
38. Whom did you see yesterday when you were walking along the street?
39. Mr Zariņš has a high post in the police, and is no longer able to go to the theatre often.
40. Can time-tables be obtained at the ticket-window?
41. The conductor gave the signal, and the train departed.
42. Baiba is now a student, and she needs many new dictionaries.
43. Do you speak English or French? – No, only Russian and German.
44. How long have you been smoking a pipe?
45. Be quiet, or you will frighten the puppy!
46. I can't wipe anything with this wet towel.
47. Don't torment the cat!
48. John is choosing a new tie.
49. Can you decline the word "spoon"?
50. Baiba was very grateful to Aivars for the fur coat he gave her.
51. Good morning, children! – Good morning, teacher!

LESSON 77

ORDINAL NUMBERS FROM 21ST TO 100TH

The ordinal numbers from 21st to 100th are formed as follows:

<i>divdesmit pirmais</i>	twenty-first
<i>divdesmit otrais</i>	twenty-second, and so on.
<i>trīsdesmitais</i>	thirtieth
<i>trīsdesmit pirmais</i>	thirty-first, and so on.
<i>četrdesmitais</i>	fortieth, and so on.
<i>piecdesmitais</i>	fiftieth, and so on.
<i>sešdesmitais</i>	sixtieth, and so on.
<i>septiņdesmitais</i>	seventieth, and so on.
<i>astoņdesmitais</i>	eightieth, and so on.
<i>deviņdesmitais</i>	ninetieth, and so on.
<i>simtais</i>	hundredth

Note that in all the compound ordinals, only the last element is in the **ordinal** form, and that therefore only the last element can be declined.

Vocabulary

Learn the ordinals from 21st to 100th.

<i>viņole</i>	violin	<i>kaimiņos</i>	next door; in the neighbourhood
<i>dzimšanas diena</i>	birthday		
<i>diktēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to dictate	<i>minūte</i>	minute
<i>svinēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to celebrate	<i>blakus (+ dat.)</i>	alongside of

NOTES: The first element of *dzimšanas diena* is invariable. *Blakus* may sometimes be used postpositionally, still with the dative. It may also occur independently as an adverb.

Exercise 77a

Translate into English: *divdesmit otrajā rindā; vīrs trīsdesmit trešā stāva; piecdesmit septiņtajā dienā; mana divdesmit pirmā dzimšanas diena; pēc trīsdesmit ceturtās atnas; viņa deviņdesmit sestajā gadā.*

Exercise 77b

Translate into Latvian: under the thirty-sixth seat; in the forty-first row; on the thirty-ninth floor; in her fifty-eighth year; before scene twenty-four; on the eighty-second day; at table number sixty-five; in the twentieth carriage.

Exercise 77c

Translate into Latvian: Mr Gailis; Mrs Lācis; Miss Pavasaris; Arthur Rudens; Anne Rudens; Eve Krūms; John Krūms; Biruta Ozols; Charles Ozols; with Mr Miesnieks; with Mrs Dārziņš; with Miss Kalniņš; with Michael Zaļums; with Aija Vilks; with Biruta Zirnis.

Exercise 77d

Translate into English:

1. Vecais franču gleznotājs vēl glezno.
2. Lai otrās vijoles atkārtu šo gabalu!
3. Es nezināju, ka Stūra jaunkundze dzīvo kaimiņos.
4. Ko tev dāvināja tavā divdesmit pirmajā dzimšanas dienā? – Diezgan daudz: no tēva es dabāju gredzenu ar īstu dārgakmeni, no krustmātes skaistu sudraba saktu un no vecās Ozoliņa kundzes smalkas zeķes. – Tad gan tu esi bagāta meitene!
5. Lūdzu, nediktējiet tik ātri, Kalniņa kungs, es nevaru sekot!
6. Vakar mēs svinējām krusttēva piecdesmito dzimšanas dienu.
7. Piedodiet, kungs, šeit pārdod tikai uzvalku drēbi, bet tur blakus tajā veikalā jūs varat dabūt jaunus uzvalkus.
8. Ja tu vārīsi olas astoņas minūtes, tās būs cietas.
9. Vakar Juris bildināja Aiju Vītolu. – Tas ir jauki, tad jau šeit mūsu kaimiņos drīz svinēs kāzas.
10. Lūdzu, manas dāmas, vēl dažas minūtes, tad mēs jums parādīsim visjaunākās drēbes un visskaistākos kažokus!
11. Mūsu dienās nav vairs daudz amatnieku, kas māc taisīt vijoles.
12. Mans draugs Kārlis Stūris dzīvo Ņujorkā, Astoņdesmit sestajā ielā.
13. Vai es varētu runāt ar Sudraba kungu? – Apmēram pēc desmit minūtēm, jo viņš tagad diktē svarīgu vēstuli.
14. Šī vijole tagad jau ir simto gadu mūsu ģimenē.
15. Piedodiet, lūdzu, vai jums blakus kāds sēž? – Nē, vieta vēl ir brīva.
16. Māte nesen apciemoja kaimiņos kādu vecu dāmu, kura svinēja savu septiņdesmit piekto dzimšanas dienu.

17. Pēc pirmā pasaules kara Anglija, Francija un Amerika diktēja Vācijai mieru.
18. Aptieka ir blakus bibliotēkai.
19. Fotografs jau ir klāt! Viņš mūs visus nofotografēs balles zālē.
20. Mūsu kāzas kara laikā bija pavisam klusas.
21. Mana māsiņa neies ciemos pie Krūma kundzes; viņa to dāmu **neieredz**.
22. No trīsdesmit ceturtās rindas es bez brillēm nekā vairs neredzēju.
23. Šodien drēbniekam bija daudz ciemiņu.
24. Šinī gaismā nevar fotografēt.
25. Tanī fabrikā ražo arī tērauda pelnu traukus.
26. Kārlis vienmēr pie Māras ir mīļš ciemiņš.
27. Kucēnam ir plats purns un skaista melna spalva.
28. Bērni negribēja sakārtot savas lietas un iet gulēt.
29. Kādas lietas jūs kārtojat savā birojā?
30. Juri un Aiju vienmēr redz kopā.

Exercise 77e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Aivars Krūms plays first violin in our orchestra.
2. After your twenty-first birthday you may do what you like.
3. Miss Vītols has been celebrating her thirtieth birthday for **five years** already.
4. I shall dictate slowly, and if necessary I shall repeat a long or difficult word.
5. I was sitting next to Mrs Ozols in row twenty-eight.
6. This is the twenty-second Sunday after Easter.
7. There is a dirty, dusty factory in our neighbourhood.
8. The old teacher will celebrate his hundredth birthday tomorrow.
9. This is our thirty-first day at sea.
10. In a few minutes the sun will set.
11. Isn't there a single photographer in the neighbourhood?
12. In our country a wedding is usually celebrated for three days.
13. This is the seventy-fifth year after the famous writer's death.
14. Who is the interesting lady next to Mr Lācis?
15. Mr Stūris played the violin until his **seventieth** year.
16. This is already our forty-fifth wedding anniversary (*kāzu diena*).
17. **Where are my Sunday clothes?** In twenty minutes the visitors will be upon us! (*klāt*)
18. **After the eighty-fourth kilometre, he stopped the truck.**
19. **How many violins are there in this orchestra?**

20. My husband gave me fifty red roses on my fiftieth birthday.
21. There is a very good tailor in our neighbourhood.
22. Will you dictate your letter immediately, Mr Vilks? – Yes, Miss Krūms, in about two minutes.
23. Next to the bank there is a ball room (*balles zāle*).
24. Please excuse me, Mr Ērglis, I did not hear what you just dictated.
25. This cloth is fine but very strong.
26. Whom did he visit in the neighbourhood?
27. How much does this fur coat cost? – Only two hundred and sixty-eight dollars.
28. Don't go outside without your overcoat.
29. He paid a call on his friend the painter in the nearby city.
30. I can't photograph anything in this light!
31. Here is the school-teacher. Good day, sir!
32. John took Eve's photo in the garden.
33. I painted my boat this morning, and now the paint won't come off my hands.
34. A lot of steel is manufactured in Germany.
35. What is your profession, sir?
36. In our Primary school there are six hundred and thirty-three pupils, and in the High school three hundred and ninety-one pupils.
37. The first play in our new theatre will be a comedy in three acts.
38. Did you poke your tongue out at the policeman?
39. The largest building of the university has seventeen storeys.
40. I shall not walk along the shore with you, and I will not go with you to the opera.
41. The choir conductor will conduct a concert of opera and ballet music on the stage of our new theatre.
42. The dramatist's new play has sixteen scenes, and requires eight actors and four actresses.
43. At the first rehearsal we shall play without scenery.
44. How many scenes will you play in front of the curtain?

LESSON 78

ORDINAL NUMBERS FROM 101ST TO 1000TH

The higher ordinals are just as regular as the lower ones.

<i>simt(s) pirmais</i>	hundred and first, and so on.
<i>divi simtais</i>	two hundredth
<i>trīs simtais</i>	three hundredth
<i>četri simtais</i>	four hundredth
<i>pieci simtais</i>	five hundredth
<i>seši simtais</i>	six hundredth
<i>septiņi simtais</i>	seven hundredth
<i>astoņi simtais</i>	eight hundredth
<i>deviņi simtais</i>	nine hundredth
<i>tūkstošais</i> OR <i>tūkstotais</i>	thousandth

These ordinals may be fused into a single word as follows: *divsimtais*; *trīsimtais*; *četrsimtais*; *piecsimtais*; *sešsimtais*; *septiņsimtais*; *astoņsimtais*; *deviņsimtais*.

Remember that only the last element is declinable:

astoņsimt astoņdesmit astotais
eight hundred and eighty eighth.

Vocabulary

Learn the ordinals from 101st to 1000th.

<i>nodaļa</i>	chapter; section
<i>lapas puse</i>	page
<i>uzreiz</i>	suddenly, immediately
<i>pūlis</i>	crowd, mob
<i>vilnis</i> (gen. <i>viļņa</i>)	wave
<i>pants</i>	verse (of poetry); paragraph (of contract, scientific work, etc.)
<i>dzejolis</i>	poem

NOTES: The first element of *lapas puse* is invariable. *Uzreiz* is stressed on the second syllable.

Exercise 78a

Translate into English: *astonsimt četrdesmit piektā lapas puse; četrsimt deviņpadsmitais pants; simt trešā nodaļa; deviņsimt septiņdesmit sestajā pantā; simt pirmais stāvs; septiņsimt četrdesmit astotajā dienā.*

Exercise 78b

Translate into Latvian: page four hundred and eighty-four; on the eight hundred and ninth day; in his hundred and second year; the six hundred and seventy first line; in room two hundred and twenty-nine; for the two hundred and fiftieth year.

Exercise 78c

Translate into Latvian: Mr Zirnis; Mrs Zirnis; Miss Zirnis; with Mr Zirnis; without Mrs Zirnis; because of Miss Zirnis; Michael Krūms; Eve Krūms; Aija Krūms; after Michael Krūms; before Eve Krūms; at Aija Krūms's place.

Exercise 78d

Form feminine surnames from: *Zirnis; Lācis; Rudens; Pavasaris; Ērglis; Miesnieks.*

Exercise 78e

Decline in full:

es; tu; viņš; viņa; tas (m. & f.); šis (m. & f.).

Exercise 78f

Translate into English:

1. Nesen visā pasaulē svinēja lielā angļu drāmatika četri simto dzimšanas dienu.
2. Bibliotēkas simts pirmajā nodaļā ir grāmatas par teātri; tur ir arī drāmas, komēdijas un citas lugas, bet grāmatas par mūziku un par baletu ir divi simti sestajā nodaļā.
3. Mēs uzreiz apturējām mašīnu, kad redzējām uz ielas lielu pūli.

4. Es tevi gaidīju uz perona, bet lielajā pūlī tu mani laikam neieraudzīji.
5. Šeit, desmitajā nodaļā, trīs simtajā lapas pusē ir tas dzejolis, ko tu meklē. – Jā, pareizi, un es to meklēju pieci simtajā vai seši simtajā lapas pusē.
6. Kas par vilņiem! – Manas dāmas, mēs vēl esam ostā, bet drīz būsīm okeanā, tad gan jūs redzēsīt lielus vilņus.
7. Nupat tu vēl dziedāji un dejoji, bet tagad tu uzreiz gribi iet mājās.
8. Lūdzu, izlasiet visu septiņsimt sešdesmit deviņo pantu!
9. Es nupat lasīju tūkstošo lapas pusi.
10. Nestaigāsim pa to akmepaino ceļu!
11. Šim dzejolim ir ļoti gari panti.
12. Atkal tu nezini šā dzejoļa astoto pantu!
13. Sidnejas jūrmalā vienmēr ir augsti vilņi.
14. Es tev tagad diktēšu otro pantu.
15. Pēc dažām minūtēm tā lielā pūļa uz ielas vairs nebija.
16. Kurā nodaļā šeit kārto naudas lietas? – Sestajā nodaļā, četrpadsmitajā stāvā, deviņsimt četrdesmit pirmajā istabā.
17. Uzreiz viņam blakus stāvēja kārtībnieks.
18. Es vairs nezīnu, kurā lapas pusē es to dzejoli lasīju.
19. Lielais vilnis šo melno kucēnu laikam sabiedēja.
20. Cik rindu ir šinī dzejolī?
21. Vai tu jau māki spēlēt vijoli?
22. Šodien ir mana divdesmit otrā dzimšanas diena, un es gaidu ciemiņus.
23. Vītola kundze ar Sudraba jaunkundzi aizgāja uz operu; Vītola kundze bija smalkā mētelī, bet Sudraba jaunkundze valkāja dārgu kažoku. **Fotografs** viņas nofotografēja teātra priekšā, un tad abas dāmas gāja uz savām vietām pirmajā rindā, kur viņas sēdēja blakus slavenajam drēbniekam no **Parīzes**, Duponta kungam. (Note the apposition.)
24. Cik cilvēku bija skaistās kino zvaigznes kāzās? – Apmēram deviņi simti.
25. Apciešosim kaimiņos Kārli Ozoliņu, viņam vienmēr pagrabā ir **vīns un alus!**
26. Kad es biju ciemos pie Birutas Kalniņas, viņa man stāstīja par savu **brāti**, kurš studē Londonā.
27. Vai šo kara kuģi drīkst fotografēt?
28. Kad jūs sagaidāt viņas atbildi?
29. Vienā metrā ir trīs pēdas un trīs collas.
30. Kāds ir attālums starp sauli un zemi? – Apmēram astoņas gaismas minūtes.
31. Kuri ir četri gada laiki?
32. Šai vietā upe ir astoņus metrus dziļa.
33. Kastīte bija dārgakmeņi un arī zelts un sudrabs.
34. Šīs upes ūdens ir ļoti netīrs un tek ļoti lēni.
35. Austrālijas ziemeļu daļa ir karstāka par dienvidu daļu.
36. Vai Rietumvācija pārdod daudz tērauda Tāļajos austrumos?

Exercise 78g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Today the thousandth truck was produced in the new factory.
2. When the sun set, it was suddenly cold.
3. Is the story about the young tailor on page seven hundred and twenty-six in your new book? – No, it is on page six hundred and fifteen.
4. Why is there such a big crowd in that shop? – Because cheap fur coats are being sold there today.
5. Will you dictate that poem to me?
6. Was Mr Ozols also in the crowd in front of the theatre?
7. The hundred and first stanza of this long poem is very important.
8. The horse is afraid of the waves.
9. For (many) long years you used to wear cheap overcoats, but now suddenly you require a fur coat!
10. You are a good policeman, Mr Lācis!
11. We can expect another foggy day.
12. He wrote this poem in a few minutes.
13. What books are in section eight hundred and eighty-eight? – Books about painters and paintings.
14. There is again a large crowd in the ball-room.
15. This is the three hundred and sixty-third line of the poem.
16. The second chapter has more pages than the first.
17. I was standing at the window, and then suddenly I spotted Mr. Ozols in the big crowd.
18. This stanza has four lines.
19. Do you also sell violins in your music department?
20. Did you look for this stanza on page five hundred and thirty-seven?
21. Mr Vītols's office is in room nine hundred and twenty-two.
22. All of a sudden Mrs Zirnīs said: "I want to go home."
23. Today there is neither wind nor waves.
24. They are celebrating a wedding in the neighbourhood.
25. Whose birthday are they celebrating in that section of the factory?
26. Ladies and gentlemen! The photographer is here, and will photograph the guests until ten o'clock.
27. Two metres of English woollen cloth, please. – What colour, madam?
28. Did Mrs Vītols visit Miss Ozols today?
29. I can't take photos now – it is already dark!
30. Fine clothes are not always expensive.
31. John and Michael Gailis are on a visit to Aija Krūmiņš's place.
32. I cannot take photographs because of the dark clouds.
33. Wipe the dust from the bookshelf!

34. For whose sake does Charles work so hard?
35. Can I go along with them?
36. Above the clouds the sun is always shining.
37. Don't go outside in the rain.
38. That wine must be kept on ice.
39. The wind today is from the south.
40. You have a very bad cough.
41. The river flows fast through this deep valley.
42. Let's go down by the river-bank!
43. That book costs three pounds.
44. In the fog, Māra didn't see the mud, and now her new white shoes and fine stockings are dirty.

LESSON 79

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS IN -S
THE MASCULINE NOUN *ĻAUDIS*

Not all nouns ending in *-s* in the nominative singular are masculine. A small number of such words are feminine, and are declined quite differently from *zirgs*, as will be seen from the declension of *sirds*.

sirds 'heart'

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>sirds</i>	<i>sirdis</i>
Acc.	<i>sirdi</i>	<i>sirdis</i>
Gen.	<i>sirds</i>	<i>siržu</i>
Dat.	<i>sirdij</i>	<i>sirdīm</i>
Loc.	<i>sirdī</i>	<i>sirdīs</i>

Notice particularly the palatalization in the genitive plural. There is one masculine noun which follows this feminine declension, *ļaudis*. It is used in the plural only.

ļaudis 'people'

Nom.	<i>ļaudis</i>
Acc.	<i>ļaudis</i>
Gen.	<i>ļaužu</i>
Dat.	<i>ļaudīm</i>
Loc.	<i>ļaudīs</i>

Henceforth in the vocabularies, nouns ending in *-s* will be marked (f.) if they are feminine. An unmarked noun will be masculine and declined like *zirgs*.

Vocabulary

<i>govs</i> (f.)	cow	<i>nakts</i> (f.)	night
<i>zivs</i> (f.)	fish	<i>krāsns</i> (f.)	stove
<i>sāls</i> (f.)	salt	<i>smiltis</i> (f. pl.)	sand
<i>uguns</i> (f.)	fire	<i>kurināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to light (fire, etc., for heating)
<i>sirds</i> (f.)	heart	<i>iekurināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to light (fire, etc.)
<i>klints</i> (f.)	cliff	<i>makšķerēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to fish
<i>balsis</i> (f.)	voice; vote	<i>ļaudis</i> (m. pl.)	people
<i>durvis</i> (f. pl.)	door	<i>vaļā</i> (adv.)	open
<i>ciet</i> (adv.)	closed		

NOTES: In the nominative singular only, the *-v-* of *govs* is silent: cf. *tēvs*, *dievs*.

The noun *balsis* has an irregular genitive plural: the *-s-* is not palatalized, the form being *balsu*.

Krāsns has both consonants palatalized in the genitive plural: *krāšņu*. Cf. *zvaigzne*.

Makšķerēt is 'to fish with a line, to angle', but not 'to fish with a net'.

Exercise 79a

Decline in the singular and plural: *govs*; *nakts*; *sirds*; *klusā balsis*.

Decline in the plural only: *baltās durvis*; *labi ļaudis*.

Exercise 79b

Translate into Latvian: Mr Kalniņš; Miss Zirnī; Mrs Lācis; Arthur Vītols; Māra Ozols; Biruta Dārziņš; with Miss Ērglis; without Mr Zaļums; behind Mrs Krūms; with Paul Krūmiņš; about Anne Ozoliņš.

Exercise 79c

Translate into Latvian: the three hundred and ninety-third book; in the eight hundred and forty-seventh house; on the two hundred and eighth day; in the four hundred and seventy-fifth year; on page nine hundred and fifty-two; the six hundred and eighty-first kilometre.

Exercise 79d

Translate into English:

1. Pie durvīm stāv liels ļaužu pūlis.
2. Šai zivij ir gari zobi.
3. Kāpēc durvis ir vaļā?
4. Zivis parasti nevāra bez sāls.
5. Visiem zvēriem ir bail no uguns.
6. Šīs zivis makšķerē no klintīm.
7. Austrālijas sausajos laukos ļaudīm un lopiem vasarā draud briesmas no uguns.
8. Viduslaikos naktī visi pilsētas vārti bija ciet.
9. Stiklu taisa no tīrām, smalkām jūras smiltīm.
10. Saimniekam ir divdesmit piecas govīs.
11. Jūs varat makšķerēt no laivas, bet es makšķerēju no klints; redzēsim, kam būs vairāk zivju!
12. Istabā ir diezgan auksts; es iekurināju krāsni.
13. Mēs dzirdējām jūsu balsis jau tālumā.
14. Šis dzejolis ir manai sirdij tuvs.
15. Lasi šo pantu klusākā balsī!
16. Krievijā jau rudenī kurina krāsni.
17. Aiz tām klintīm ir smilšu kalni.
18. Šeit nav zagļu; mēs dienu un nakti (*day and night*) turam durvis vaļā.
19. Vai šinī veikala nodaļā pārdod arī krāsni?
20. Šeit apakšā nevar makšķerēt, jo draud briesmas no augstiem vilpiem.
21. Jūras ūdens satur daudz sāls.
22. Naktī karavīri sēdēja pie uguns un dziedāja bēdīgas dziesmas.
23. Šai govij drīz būs pirmais teļš.
24. Veikali jau ir ciet.
25. Labi, ka iekurinājam krāsni, jo naktī būs liels sals.
26. Vai tu māki dziedāt slaveno dziesmu: "Tev pieder mana sirds"?
27. Visapkārt bija kluss, bet tad uzreiz es dzirdēju ļaužu balsis.
28. Cik jauki gulēt siltajās jūrmalas smiltīs!
29. Vai jūs lietojat daudz piparu un sāls?

30. Cik labi, ka krogus jau ir vaļā! Iesim iekšā!
31. Šo govī es nekad nepārdotu.
32. Logs ir ciet, bet man arvien vēl ir auksti.
33. Divsimt sestajā lapas pusē ir īss stāsts par kādu franču gleznotāju.
34. Kad policists puisim sacīja, ko par viņu jau zina, viņam uzreiz bija mute ciet.
35. Tēvs un māte dāvināja Annai vijoli viņas desmitajā dzimšanas dienā.
36. Kaimiņos rītu svinēs kāzas.
37. Es tūlīt diktēšu svarīgu vēstuli, Lāča jaunkundze, un man to vajaga piecu minūšu laikā.
38. Šodien ir viņa septiņdesmitā dzimšanas diena.
39. Kas tev vakar teātrī sēdēja blakus?
40. Vai šī krāsa iet nost no tērauda?
41. Vai Zirņa kundze jau aizgāja prom?
42. Kas bija tās smalkās dāmas, kuras fotogrāfs ballē nofotografēja?
43. Vai šeit drīkst fotografēt?
44. Rudens kundze negrib apciemot Vītola kundzi.
45. Sestdien mums būs ciemiņi.
46. Jānis ir ciemos pie Pāvila.
47. Vai tā drēbe ir ļoti dārga?

Exercise 79e

Translate into Latvian:

1. There is great joy in our hearts.
2. Is there still fire in the stove?
3. This sand contains gold.
4. From this cliff one can see the whole harbour.
5. We were fishing all night from the boat. – Then you really got a lot of fish! – No, less than we hoped to get.
6. In Australia in summer you are not allowed to light fires outside.
7. What a beautiful voice!
8. The door of the shop is still open.
9. Were there many people at that wedding?
10. At what time will you light the stove?
11. These fish live only in salt water (*sāls ūdens*).
12. Are all the windows closed?
13. The farmer will sell this cow to the butcher.
14. The cat is sleeping in front of the stove.
15. What shall we do now? The pubs are already closed.
16. In some sections of the factory they work all night.

17. People with weak hearts are not allowed to sit in the hot sun.
18. How much milk does this cow give?
19. Let's see how many votes Mr Ozols will get!
20. Don't walk along those cliffs, because there is the danger of large waves.
21. The rivers and lakes of Russia are very rich in fish.
22. We were talking about him, and suddenly he was standing at the door.
23. Some taverns are open all night. – Where?
24. Oh dear, my shoes are full of sand!
25. Why is there neither salt nor pepper on the table?
26. Who knows how many soldiers are lying under the sand-hills (*smilšu kalns*) of North Africa?
27. A large crowd of people is standing in front of the door.
28. The singer had a cough and his voice was not clear.
29. Has the butcher already paid the farmer for those ten cows?
30. Mr. Vītols is fishing from the cliff.
31. From the boat we could see a fire on the coast.
32. It is not necessary to light the stove today.
33. May we fish in this salt lake? – You may if you wish, but the water contains so much salt that fish cannot live there.
34. Don't look for those verses on page a hundred and sixty-five; **they are** somewhere else. – No, I am looking for an entirely different poem.
35. An old heart is not as strong as a young heart.
36. The door is now closed, but soon it will be open again.
37. Can anyone in your neighbourhood play the violin?
38. The old man is today celebrating his hundredth birthday.
39. In two minutes I shall dictate the fifth verse.
40. Why does Anne always want to sit next to Paul?
41. Who will conduct the choir and orchestra at the concert on Sunday? – **Our** new conductor, Mr. Pavasaris; he is a very good musician.
42. I was sitting in the thirteenth row, together with my brother.
43. Melbourne is a great city, in which there are many high schools, **even** more primary schools and three universities.
44. The tradesmen are painting the walls of the shop.
45. He now has a high position in the police, and although he still wishes to paint, he has very little time.

LESSON 80

COMPARATIVE DEGREE OF ADVERBS

The comparative degree of the adverb is formed by dropping the *-s* of the comparative adjective, e.g.,

<i>skaidrāks</i>	clearer	<i>skaidrāk</i>	more clearly
<i>labāks</i>	better (adj.)	<i>labāk</i>	better (adv.)
<i>dziļāks</i>	deeper	<i>dziļāk</i>	more deeply

One can obtain the same result by substituting *-āk* for the *-i* of the positive degree:

<i>skaidri</i>	clearly	<i>skaidrāk</i>	more clearly
<i>labi</i>	well	<i>labāk</i>	better
<i>agri</i>	early	<i>agrāk</i>	earlier

Notice particularly the comparative forms of those adverbs which do not end in *-i* in the positive:

<i>tuvu</i>	near	<i>tuvāk</i>	nearer
<i>tālu</i>	far	<i>tālāk</i>	further
<i>vēlu</i>	late	<i>vēlāk</i>	later
<i>drīz</i>	soon	<i>drīzāk</i>	sooner

Just as the positive degree adverb in *-i* corresponded with the form of what we called the neuter adjective, so in the comparative degree the adverb and neuter adjective are identical in form:

<i>Šeit ir ērti.</i>	It is comfortable here.
<i>Šeit ir ērtāk.</i>	It is more comfortable here.

In comparisons involving a comparative adverb, the normal word for 'than' is *nekā* (reduced to *kā* after a negative verb) although *par* will be found when the comparison is being made between two subject or object nouns:

<i>Es dziedu labāk par Jāni.</i>	I sing better than John (sings).
<i>Es mīlu Ievu vairāk nekā Annu.</i>	I love Eve more than (I love) Anne.
<i>Es mīlu Kārli vairāk nekā Anna.</i>	I love Charles more than Anne (does).

In the last example *par* would theoretically have been possible, but because of the obvious confusion possible, *nekā* is always preferred in this type of sentence.

Vocabulary

<i>Jāņi</i> (pl.)	Midsummer's Day, St. John's Day
<i>svētki</i> (pl.)	feast-day, festival
<i>brīvlaiks</i>	vacation
<i>dūmi</i> (pl.)	smoke
<i>uzdot</i> (<i>-dodu, -dēvu</i>)	to charge, commission (some one to do something)
<i>paziņot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to inform, report
<i>lats</i>	a lat (unit of Latvia's former currency, worth approx. ten old pence sterling)
<i>santīms</i>	the one hundredth part of a lat, centime
<i>rublis</i>	rouble
<i>kapeika</i>	copeck – the one hundredth part of a rouble
<i>cents</i>	a cent
<i>architektis</i>	architect
<i>architektūra</i>	architecture
<i>inženieris</i>	engineer
<i>stils</i>	style
<i>laikmēts</i>	period

NOTE: *Uzdot* and *paziņot* require a dative of the person.

Exercise 80a

Form comparatives from the following adverbs: *reti; skaidri; drīz; labi; ērti; tuvu; tālu; vēlu*.

Exercise 80b

Decline in the singular and plural: *auksta nakts; vecā gov; klusa balss*.

Exercise 80c

Decline in the plural: *laipni ļaudis; jaunie ļaudis*.

Exercise 80d

Write in full: 833. grāmata; 917. diena; 213. māja; 789. cilvēks.

Exercise 80e

Translate into English:

1. Kāpēc logs ir vaļā? – Es nupat iekurināju krāsni, un istaba bija pilna dūmu.
2. Arhitekta birojs ir divsimt septiņpadsmitajā istabā.
3. Es paziņoju inženierim, ka šeit ūdens upē tek lēnāk nekā mēs domājām.
4. Mēs pavadījām vasaras brīvlaiku pie krusttēva.
5. Viņš dara visu, ko viņam uzdod.
6. Dažas nedēļas pēc Vasaras svētkiem jau ir Jāpi. (*Vasaras svētki*: lit. *summer festival*, i.e., *Whitsun*)
7. Tanī laikmetā gleznoja citā stilā.
8. Savā brīvlaikā tu gan varētu drusku palīdzēt lauku darbos.
9. Lūdzu, salīdziniet šo divu laikmetu architektūru!
10. Avīze maksā piecus centus.
11. Vai lats bija liela nauda? – Ja to salīdzina ar angļu mārciņu, tā bija maza. Par angļu mārciņu maksāja divdesmit piecus latus.
12. Akmens laikmetā (*akmens laikmets* = *the Stone Age*) cilvēki jau taisīja māla traukus.
13. Katram rakstniekam ir savs stils.
14. Cik rubļu maksā operas biļete? – Pirmā vieta maksā divus rubļus un piecdesmit kapeikas, bet otrā vieta tikai rubli un trīsdesmit piecas kapeikas.
15. Vai jūsu draugs Kārlis Krūms arī studē architektūru?
16. No Jāņiem līdz Ziemsvētkiem ir seši mēneši.
17. Kur jūs būsīt svētkos?
18. Aiz kalniem ir liels dūmu mākonis, laikam atkal mežā ir uguns.
19. Es nedotu par šīm zivīm ne santīma.
20. Policija paziņoja, ka uz visām ielām un uz visiem ceļiem naktī būs ledus.
21. Šodien es tavu balsi dzirdu labāk un skaidrāk pa tālruni.
22. Cik maksā vilciena biļete no Rīgas līdz Ķemeriem? – Latu un divdesmit piecus santīmus.
23. Kurš no pušiem te atkal smēķē? Istaba ir pilna cigarešu dūmu!
24. Jūs zīmējat tik glīti! Vai jūs esat arhitekts?
25. Mārciņa sāls maksā tikai dažus centus.
26. Šo uzdevumu mēs uzdosim inženierim, un mēs varam turpināt citus svarīgus darbus.
27. Vai jūs aicinājat arhitektu ar kundzi ciemos pie sevis?
28. Par diviem rubļiem un četrdesmit piecām kapeikām var dabūt pudeli laba vīna.
29. Savā brīvlaikā es ceļoju pa Franciju, lai studētu jaunus stilus arhitektūrā.
30. Vai tev kabatā nav kāds centa gabals? (Nominative instead of genitive, as the negative is simply an alternative statement of the positive.)
31. Inženieris mums vēlāk paziņos, cik akmeņu viņam vajaga.

32. Latvijā Jāņu naktī parasti neviens neguļ.
33. Rītu mēs iesim makšķerēt agrāk nekā šodien.
34. Iesim lēnāk, vilciens atiet tikai pēc stundas, un kase vēl būs ciet!
35. Kāpēc jūs mūs neapciemojat biežāk?
36. Šis jaunais zobārsts strādā labāk un lētāk nekā vecais.
37. Iesim tuvāk, lai redzētu, kas ir veikala logā!
38. Es tagad iešu, jo nevaru vairs ilgāk gaidīt.
39. Šī lidmašīna var lidot vēl ātrāk.
40. Tanī nodaļā tagad ir mazāk ļaužu nekā agrāk.
41. Dienvidāfrikā ir vairāk zelta nekā visās citās zemēs kopā.
42. Cik jums ir govju? – Mums ir divdesmit viena gov.
43. Ja durvis nebūs ciet, visā mājā būs smiltis uz grīdas.
44. Cik pantu ir divsimt četrdesmit piektajā lapas pusē?
45. Pie bankas durvīm stāvēja ļaužu pūlis.
46. Viļņi bija tik lieli, ka bērni nedrīkstēja iet peldēt.
47. Lai dzīvo mūsu draudzenes!

Exercise 80f

Translate into Latvian:

1. This medicine costs two lats and eighty centimes.
2. My birthday is on St. John's Day.
3. Will you be fishing in your vacation?
4. The architect reports that the site (*vieta*) is good; two metres below the sand there is solid rock (*cieta klints*).
5. The kitchen is full of smoke.
6. How many lats per month did the engineer earn?
7. Each period has its own style of architecture.
8. Tomorrow is a feast-day. – Then we can sleep a bit longer.
9. How many students are there in the school of architecture?
10. What do you know about architecture in the Middle Ages?
11. For ten cents you can get a small glass of wine in this tavern.
12. Give that beggar a few cents, then we shall have peace!
13. That style of architecture is older.
14. The architect is calculating the working hours of his men (*darba stundas*).
15. Let us charge an architect with this task.
16. I have eighty-five roubles and seventy-five copecks. How many Australian dollars shall I get for that?
17. The engineer has arrived; now you can report to him about the new factory.
18. Are you crying? – No, this smoke is tormenting me.
19. In the Stone Age, people kept neither cows nor hens, but they caught fish and hunted animals.

20. The door was open all night.
21. Speak more quietly! Your voice can be heard all around.
22. I paid only ninety cents for that towel.
23. Each day after Midsummer's Day the sun sets one minute earlier in Latvia.
24. Do you too see the smoke in the distance? – Just a moment, where are my spectacles? Yes, now I see it – there is a big fire.
25. After the holidays I shall be working in a different section.
26. It is not necessary to light the stove today.
27. A box of matches costs only a few centimes.
28. Did you have a long vacation?
29. This furniture is of a different period; its style does not match (*derēt kopā ar*) the architecture of the house.
30. The engineer has a weak heart because for many years he worked in very hot countries.
31. Please give me some finer salt.
32. He has sixteen roubles and sixty copecks in his pocket.
33. How many centimes are there in one lat?
34. We spent our holidays together with our children.
35. Where did you celebrate St. John's Day?
36. Now you are drawing much more prettily!
37. Let's go closer!
38. I see much more clearly with my new spectacles.
39. My husband now goes out hunting much more rarely than earlier.
40. Our children now visit us more frequently.
41. I shall work more diligently.
42. You cannot wear those trousers any longer.
43. Let us applaud more vigorously.
44. Here it is drier.
45. It is wetter on the meadow than on the road.
46. How many feast-days are there in the year?
47. Tomorrow is a feast-day. We can go to bed (*iet gulēt*) later.
48. Easter and Midsummer's Day are both festivals.
49. Why are all those people on the cliff?
50. Are the doors and windows closed?
51. On hot days it is better not to light fires.
52. On what page is that poem with only three verses?
53. Suddenly the waves were much higher.
54. Why is there a crowd in the street?
55. Do you always hold the cow on a lead when you feed it?
56. Somebody whistled when Aija walked along the street.
57. I shall not wear uncomfortable clothing.
58. Translations of poems are rarely good.

59. Do not go out in the sun without a hat and shirt.
60. Birds make their nests of twigs and grass.
61. You cannot go on a visit to your niece's and nephew's empty-handed.
62. Here the east wind is colder than the west wind.
63. I would like to travel everywhere in the wide world.
64. Begging is not allowed here.
65. I am shivering because I am cold.
66. Honey is sweeter than sugar.
67. Who is older: your cousin or your brother?
68. Why do you compare lazy Paul with industrious Arthur?
69. The river is often quite shallow in summer.
70. I shall pay for the wineglass in cash.
71. Wild-flowers are blooming on the side of the road.
72. We gave the beggar a piece of bread and a glass of wine.
73. At what time does the sun now set?
74. Eve shook with fear when she saw a rat on her bed.
75. Foxes are often larger than small dogs.
76. Charles has a new green pen.
77. I'll show you if you don't obey me!
78. Now and then we used to go to the port to see the big war-ships.

LESSON 81

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE OF ADVERBS

As with adjectives, the comparative and superlative degrees of the adverb are identical apart from the prefix *vis-*, which, you will remember, is **unstressed**. It should be noted, however, that whereas the use of *vis-* is largely a matter of preference as far as the adjective is concerned, it is all but obligatory with the adverb, and the student should always use it.

<i>labi</i>	well	<i>labāk</i>	better	<i>vislabāk</i>	best
<i>vēlu</i>	late	<i>vēlāk</i>	later	<i>visvēlāk</i>	latest
<i>skaidri</i>	clearly	<i>skaidrāk</i>	more clearly	<i>visskaidrāk</i>	most clearly

Again the form of the neuter adjective corresponds with that of the adverb:

<i>Šeit ir ērti.</i>	It is comfortable here.
<i>Šeit ir ērtāk.</i>	It is more comfortable here.
<i>Šeit ir visērtāk.</i>	It is most comfortable here.

Vocabulary

<i>līdzīgs</i> (+ dat.)	similar (to)	<i>pastāvēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to exist
<i>dzeja</i>	poetry	<i>eksistēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to exist, to subsist
<i>dzejnieks</i>	poet	<i>būvēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to build, construct
<i>uzņēmums</i>	firm, company, enterprise	<i>uzbūvēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to build, construct
<i>mierīgs</i>	peaceful, calm	<i>vannas istaba</i>	bathroom
<i>naidīgs</i>	hostile	<i>galvenais, -ā</i>	chief, main (adj.)
<i>ēdamistaba</i>	dining-room	<i>cilts</i> (f.)	tribe
<i>guļamistaba</i>	bedroom	<i>mežonis</i>	savage (noun)
<i>žēlīgs</i>	merciful	<i>nežēlīgs</i>	merciless, cruel

NOTES: *Būvēt* and *uzbūvēt* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

The first element of *vannas istaba* is invariable.

Žēlīgs Dievs! is often used as an interjection, meaning 'Good Lord!', 'Heavens above!' etc.

Exercise 81a

Form the comparative and superlative forms of the following adverbs: *labi*; *skaidri*; *vēlu*; *ērti*; *tuvu*; *agri*.

Exercise 81b

Decline in the singular and plural: *stiprā sirds*; *šī skaistā balss*.

Exercise 81c

Write in full: 753. *diena*; 817. *gadā*; 245. *iela*; 188. *kilometrs*.

Exercise 81d

Translate into English:

1. Vai vannas istaba ir brīva? – Nē, tēvs vēl ir iekšā.
2. Tanīs mežos vēl dzīvo nežēlīgas mežoņu ciltis.
3. Šī dzejnieka dzeja man ir sveša. (= *not familiar*)

4. Vai ciltis, kas dzīvo aiz šiem kalniem, ir naidīga? – Nē, tur jūs varat mierīgi ceļot.
5. Kurš no jums, kungi, šeit ir galvenais inženieris?
6. Arhitekts sola šo namu uzbūvēt septiņos mēnešos.
7. Dienvidamerikas mežos vēl dzīvo mežoņu ciltis.
8. Mūsu uzņēmums pastāv jau simt gadus.
9. Sidnejas operas nama arhitektūra ir interesanta.
10. Vannas istaba ir blakus guļamistabai, un blakus ēdamistabai ir virtuve.
11. Galvenā stacija ir pilsētas austrumu daļā.
12. Ņujorkā nesen uzbūvēja jaunu tiltu.
13. Vai jūsu uzņēmums būvē arī ģimenes mājas?
14. Šorīt jūra ir pavisam mierīga.
15. Lai Dievs jums ir žēlīgs tanī ielejā, kur dzīvo naidīgi mežoņi!
16. Skolotājs nebūs tik nežēlīgs, viņš jūs nesodīs.
17. Kādā stilā būvēja baznīcas tanī laikmetā?
18. Vītola kunga fabrika ir vislielākais uzņēmums mūsu pilsētā.
19. Mēs tikai reti sēžam ēdamistabā, jo virtuvē mums ir ērtāk un ziemā arī siltāk.
20. Šinī dzejolī dzejnieks raksta par naidīgo pasauli un par nežēlīgajiem cilvēkiem.
21. Šis zivis nav līdzīgas tām, kuras mēs maksķerējām Latvijas ūdeņos.
22. Žēlīgs Dievs! Mana sieva vēl neguļ, jo guļamistabā vēl ir gaisma; mīļie draugi, nesakiet viņai, ka mēs visu vakaru pavadījām krogū!
23. Es rītu krāsošu vannas istabu.
24. Vecais kungs bija labs un žēlīgs, un visi ļaudis viņu mīlēja.
25. Šie putni ir līdzīgi papagaiļiem.
26. Šo namu mēs uzbūvējām ar mazu bankas aizdevumu, kuru mēs nomaksājām desmit gados.
27. Vai Melburnā būvē kuģus?
28. Esiet mierīgāki, bērni!
29. Guļamistaba ir otrajā stāvā virs ēdamistabas.
30. Teātrī no desmitās rindas es dzirdu visskaidrāk.
31. Būtu ļoti jauki, ja mēs pavadītu savu brīvlaiku kopā.
32. Pēc svētkiem man nebija ne kapeikas.
33. Tēvs aizgāja no mājas visagrāk, Jānis aizgāja drusku vēlāk, un Aija vēl vēlāk.
34. Paziņo saimniekam, ka kalnos redz melnus dūmus!
35. Šai krēslā ir visērtāk sēdēt.
36. Jāņu naktī visās latviešu mājās dzied un dejo.
37. Iekuriniet krāsi – man ir auksti!
38. Maiss smilšu ir ļoti smags.
39. Ar ko var salīdzināt šīs dziedātājas balsi?

40. Cik mārciņu sāls es varu dabūt par desmit centiem?
41. Kam tagad pieder tava sirds?
42. Kāpēc visas durvis un visi logi ir ciet?

Exercise 81e

Translate into Latvian:

1. There is hot and cold water in the bathroom.
2. A new market and a concert hall will be built adjacent to the Town Hall which was recently constructed.
3. This old church was built by a famous German architect in the Middle Ages.
4. Good Lord, what does this poet write here? Such honest and kind people don't exist in life!
5. Why didn't you report that to the chief engineer?
6. This is a house with four bedrooms.
7. Mother knows that best.
8. There are tribes of hostile savages in that valley.
9. More than a thousand people work in this firm.
10. What do you think about the style of furniture in our dining-room?
11. The architecture of all North German cities is similar.
12. I am looking for a quiet spot.
13. Nobody reads this poet's poetry any more.
14. In our times small firms cannot exist easily.
15. We were all dancing like savages at that ball.
16. The servants (*kalpi*) are afraid of their merciless lord (*kungs*).
17. The main street of this city is twelve kilometres long.
18. I shall paint the dining-room and our bedroom. — Better give (*uzdot*) that job to a tradesman.
19. I would not give a single cent for the poetry of that old poet.
20. May God be merciful to you!
21. Why isn't there a dry towel in the bathroom?
22. We shall spend our vacation in a quiet town near the sea.
23. Why does this poet write such hostile words about the church?
24. The whole tribe is celebrating some feast — you can hear their voices in the distance.
25. We shall build a similar hall in our city.
26. The new lord is a merciless and hostile man.
27. When I lit the stove this morning, the whole bedroom was full of smoke.
28. Oh dear, there are rats in the dining-room!
29. The bathroom door is closed; there is probably some one inside.

30. Both sons are like the father.
31. These mountain tribes are now quite peaceful.
32. Good Lord, my train leaves in five minutes!
33. How could we build that fence most quickly?
34. We shall now visit the main enterprise in this town.
35. These cruel people did not help the poor children.
36. Does the old paint factory still exist?
37. This part of the church was the most slowly built.
38. I don't believe that this tribe is hostile.
39. Do those savages have songs and poetry?
40. Here on the cliff it is more peaceful.
41. When will they build a new bridge?
42. For twenty cents I can get eight pounds of salt.
43. On Midsummer's Night fires are lit in the fields in Latvia.
44. Those people have a lot of fish in their boat.
45. Don't walk on the wet sand, children!
46. The thief was happy when he observed that the door was open.
47. Cows' hearts are larger than human hearts.
48. Hands off my boat!
49. Along this coast you will see many high cliffs.
50. Does Miss Ozols attend high school or university?
51. Many painters live and work in this great city.
52. The ladies saw many new overcoats and fur coats in the tailor's **shop**.
53. How many photographers were at the wedding?
54. This factory produces a lot of steel: my husband has a high post **there**.
55. Oh dear, the painting is no longer there! There is a thief among the **guests**!
56. Let us photograph Miss Zirnīs in her new clothes.
57. Are we allowed to take photographs here?
58. Paul is on a visit to Anne's place.
59. Does anyone in the neighbourhood know how to play a violin?
60. I still have five important letters to dictate.
61. My birthday is on St. John's Day.
62. There are three verses on each page.
63. I suddenly caught sight of a crowd of people on the hill.
64. It is said that each ninth wave is bigger than the others.

LESSON 82

DIMINUTIVES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN -S
AND FEMININE NOUNS IN -A

In the masculine *-s* declension, the diminutive suffix is *-iņš*; in the feminine *-a* declension, it is *-iņa*. The diminutives are quite regularly declined, like *vējš* and *māsa* respectively.

<i>putns</i>	bird	<i>putniņš</i>	little bird, birdie
<i>dārzs</i>	garden	<i>dārziņš</i>	little garden
<i>galva</i>	head	<i>galviņa</i>	little head
<i>māsa</i>	sister	<i>māsiņa</i>	little sister

When the final stem consonant is a *k* or *g*, then it is palatalized to *c* or *dz* respectively, in both the masculine and feminine:

<i>zirgs</i>	horse	<i>zirdziņš</i>	little horse, horsie
<i>koks</i>	tree	<i>kociņš</i>	little tree, stick
<i>roka</i>	hand	<i>rociņa</i>	little hand
<i>oga</i>	berry	<i>odziņa</i>	little berry

In addition, an open *ē* in the stem will be closed to *ē* before the diminutive suffix:

<i>bērns</i>	child	<i>bēriņš</i>	little child, kiddie
<i>sēta</i>	yard, fence	<i>sētiņa</i>	little yard, little fence
<i>cilvēks</i>	person	<i>cilvēciņš</i>	little person

Where the final stem consonant of a masculine *-š* declension noun is palatalized, the palatalization disappears in the diminutive form:

<i>tēļš</i>	calf	<i>tēliņš</i>	little calf
<i>ceļš</i>	road	<i>ceļiņš</i>	little road, track

This is not applicable to feminines, which have no sub-group corresponding to the *-š* sub-group of the *-s* declension:

<i>gaļa</i>	meat	<i>gaļiņa</i>	little meat
-------------	------	---------------	-------------

The normal function of the diminutive is to indicate smallness, but it is very often used to express endearment or affection. Particularly in folk songs, the diminutive is extremely frequent, and quite often is nothing more than an alternative form of the original noun. Some diminutive forms have lost all diminutive meaning, and now exist simply as nouns in their own right, e.g., *kaimiņš*.

Vocabulary

<i>vaiņags</i>	garland, wreath	<i>tautietis</i>	countryman
<i>zlle</i>	acorn; bead	<i>slks</i>	tiny
<i>padoms</i>	advice, suggestion; <i>kopš</i> (+ gen.) (in folk songs, often wisdom)		since
<i>lakstīgala</i>	nightingale	<i>pateicība</i>	gratitude
<i>cielava</i>	wagtail	<i>āda</i>	skin; leather
<i>tauta</i>	the Folk, nation	<i>dēgus</i>	nose
<i>tautas deļa</i>	folk-dance	<i>zemeņa</i>	strawberry
<i>tautas dziesma</i>	folk-song	<i>vaicāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to ask, enquire

NOTES: *Vaiņags* will also be found with the spelling *vainags*.

Zīļu vaiņags: a decorative head-dress, often of cloth, with beads sewn on to it.

Strictly speaking, *ozola zlle* is an acorn, but the generic *zlle* is usually sufficient.

Tautietis, particularly in folk-songs, sometimes has simply the meaning of *man*. Cf. also usually in folk-songs, *tautu dēls* 'young man'. There are a number of expressions of this type.

Kopš is both a preposition (requiring the genitive) and a conjunction. It can therefore be followed either by a noun or a clause. Cf. *līdz*.

Kopš is not normally followed by a verb in a compound tense, the corresponding simple tense being preferred:

<i>kopš tu esi šeit</i>	since you have been here (conj.)
<i>Kopš kura laika tu esi šeit?</i>	Since when have you been here? (prep.)

Dēgus has an irregular diminutive: *dēguniņš*.

Vaicāt requires the dative of the person.

Exercise 82a

Translate into English: *putniņš*; *cūciņa*; *lodziņš*; *rociņa*; *latiņš*; *bēriņš*; *Anniņa*; *zirdziņš*; *galviņa*; *sētiņa*.

Exercise 82b

Form the comparative and superlative degrees of: *slikti*; *tālu*; *reti*; *vēlu*; *ātri*; *bieži*.

Exercise 82c

Decline in the plural only: *šis jaunās durvis; tie laipnie ļaudis.*

Exercise 82d

Translate into English:

- (1) Mēs bijām mātes meitas,
Visas mīļi dzīvojām:
Vienu zīļu vainadzīņu
Katru dienu valkājām.

(Tautas dziesma)

- (2) Dzīvo labi, man' māsiņa,
Ar visiem kaimiņiem!
Tautiet's gāja pie kaimiņa
Vaicāt tavu padomiņu.

(Tautas dziesma)

Exercise 82e

Translate into English:

- Bērniem ir aukstas rociņas un kājiņas.
- Kopš kura laika šis uzņēmums jau pastāv?
- Cūkas meklē zīles zem ozoliem.
- Par šo vaiņagu mēs samaksājām astopus latus un piecdesmit santīmus.
- Kāpēc šis dzejnieks vienmēr raksta par lakstīgalām?
- Rudens ir klāt – cielavas un lakstīgalas ir jau prom.
- Dāmu kurpes taisa no vislabākās ādas.
- Jāņu vakarā mēs dejosim tautas dejas.
- Šinī grāmatā ir tikai tautas dziesmas.
- Katra tauta grib būt brīva.
- Vai tanī trauciņā ir zemeņu ievārījums?
- Cielavas būvē glītas ligzdiņas.
- Vecos laikos vārīja zīļu kafiju, jo īstā kafija bija dārga.
- Es meklēju brilles, bet tās man ir uz deguna!
- Šinī uzņēmumā ražo sīkas mašīnu daļiņas.
- Mīļie tautieši, kā es jums varu parādīt savu pateicību?
- Vaicāsim inženierim padomu!

- Jāņos visiem kalpiem bija ozola lapu vaiņagi galvā, bet meitām puķu vaiņagi.
- Kopš veciem laikiem mūsu tauta savos svētkos dzied tautas dziesmas un dejo tautas dejas.
- Slavenais austrāliešu dejotājs un aktieris dzīvo Anglijā, bet viņš bieži apciemo savus tautiešus Austrālijā.
- Bērnam atkal tek deguns.
- Viņam mana padoma nevajadzēja, kad viņš aizceļoja pie naidīgajām mežoņu ciltīm.
- Nesēdi tik ilgi saulē; tava āda ir jau sarkana!
- Zemenes jau zied.
- Lakstīgala ir mazs pelēks putniņš.
- Zemenēm vajaga daudz saules un ūdens.
- Šī mazā cūciņa pēc gada būs apmēram divus metrus gara un seši simti mārciņas smaga. (Notice the parallelism between expressions of weight and expressions of distance and time.)
- Lauku darbos lieto lielas tērauda dakšas, bet pie galda lieto dakšīņas. (*Dakša* is the word of which *dakšīņa* is the diminutive: it means a large gardening fork or pitchfork.)
- Par katru tautas dziesmiņu, ko mazā Anniņa mācēja dziedāt, krusttēvs viņai iedeva latīņu.
- Cielavai ir gara aste.
- Es neprasu ne tautas pateicības, ne padoma.
- Ozola zilēm ir skaista brūna krāsa.
- Dzejnieks negaida tautiešu pateicību par savu dzeju.
- Šos sīkos stādiņus nav viegli stādīt.
- Šo tautas deju mūsu tautieši dejo vislabāk.
- Jau kopš simts gadiem vecais, žēlīgais kungs guļ zem šā smilšu kalnīņa.
- Ko gan es atbildēju, ja tēvs man vaicās, kāpēc ēdamistabā ir cigarešu dūmi?
- Uz krusttēva guļamistabas grīdas ir liela lāča āda.
- Galvenais arhitekts mani laikam neieredz.
- Mēs uzbūvējām mājiņu mierīgā vietā.
- Žēlīgais Dievs – vannas istabā vēl arvien tek ūdens!
- Šis putniņš ir līdzīgs cielavai.
- Vienā rublī ir simts kapeiku, un vienā dolarā ir simts centu.
- Tā laikmeta arhitektūras stils mums māca daudz par tā laika cilvēkiem un par viņu dzīvi.
- Nav dūmu bez uguns.
- Kas jums stāstīja, ka es bildināju Birutas māslu?

Exercise 82f

Translate into Latvian (Words marked with an asterisk (*) should be translated by a diminutive form.):

1. The child has cold *hands.
2. We shall ask the doctor for his advice.
3. Have you seen the tiny *eggs in the wagtail's nest?
4. There are many strawberries in the forests of Latvia.
5. These shoes are of snake-skin.
6. What a long nose!
7. At the folk-song festival the choirs will sing only folk-songs.
8. Some people from America will visit their countrymen in Australia.
9. Since olden times people in Latvia have been wearing garlands on St. John's Day.
10. "The voice of the people is the voice of God," said the pastor.
11. This is a very difficult dance.
12. It would be interesting to know how many folk-songs about the nightingale exist.
13. The soldiers are defending their country and their nation.
14. How shall we show our gratitude to the great poet?
15. This library was built by the old lord about fifty years ago.
16. A nightingale is building its nest in the old willow by the river.
17. Melba was the Australian nightingale.
18. In South Germany men dance folk-dances in short leather trousers.
19. A child, with its tiny *fingers, cannot hold this large wreath.
20. I asked his advice, but he gave me a foolish answer.
21. Since when (*Kopš kura laika*) has your skin been so red?
22. He kissed her only out of (*aiz*) gratitude.
23. Oh dear, the child has an acorn in his nose!
24. Is the *bowl (**trauks*) of strawberry jam in the dining-room?
25. Since when has the doctor been asking the pastor's advice?
26. These fish have tiny *teeth.
27. These strawberries are still green.
28. In the distance can be heard the song of the wagtail.
29. This is a scientific book about a (*kāds*) hostile and merciless tribe of savages in South America.
30. Latvian folk songs often have only four lines.
31. Latvian folk-dances are similar to the folk dances of other North European peoples.
32. Since when has Mr Kalniņš been chief engineer?
33. I always try to assist my countrymen.

34. Now he is sleeping at the table; soon his nose will be in the beer-glass.
35. The teacher is not asking for our gratitude.
36. How can a small girl wear such a heavy garland?
37. Wagtails build their nests of *twigs and fine *feathers.
38. The bedroom has two big windows, but the bathroom has only one small *window.
39. This is only a small *church.
40. He is a quiet *man.
41. His poetry is similar to folk-songs.
42. We built this *house without an architect.
43. I would like to build a small *house in some peaceful spot.
44. Charles wants to study the architectural styles of older periods.
45. I was informed that I would have my holidays soon after Easter.
46. There's no smoke without fire.
47. This ring cost sixty-eight lats and fifty centimes.
48. There are a hundred copecks in one rouble.
49. A glass of beer costs fifteen cents in this tavern.
50. Latvian folk dances are very old.
51. At the moment there is not a single American ship in the port of Melbourne.
52. Is the truck back already?
53. This road is thirty-five feet and six inches wide.
54. What is the distance between Western Australia and South Africa?
55. I shall not repeat what he said to me yesterday.
56. South Australia is rich in precious stones.
57. You can't plant roses in stony soil.
58. There were many police cars in the vicinity of the port this morning.
59. What languages are spoken in the Far East?
60. Dogs' tongues are longer than human tongues.
61. The puppy's tail is ten centimetres long.
62. Just a moment – I am still arranging my hair.
63. This morning we shall rehearse act three scene two on the stage.
64. All the scenery is now in place behind the curtain.
65. Why were some of the actresses not at the rehearsal?
66. Our new conductor is a fine musician – he has been conducting orchestras for many years.
67. What sort of music will be played at the concert on Sunday?
68. Don't go near the dog!

LESSON 83

DIMINUTIVES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN *-IS*
AND FEMININE NOUNS IN *-E*

For masculine nouns ending in *-is* the diminutive suffix is *-ītis*, cf.:

<i>brālis</i>	brother	<i>brālītis</i>	(little) brother
<i>kaķis</i>	cat	<i>kaķītis</i>	(little) cat
<i>puisis</i>	boy, farm-boy	<i>puisītis</i>	(little) boy.

For feminine nouns ending in *-e* the diminutive suffix is *-īte*, cf.:

<i>zīle</i>	acorn, bead	<i>zīlīte</i>	(little) acorn, (little) bead
<i>puķe</i>	flower	<i>puķīte</i>	(little) flower
<i>kurpe</i>	shoe	<i>kurpīte</i>	(little) shoe.

Remember that all masculine diminutives of this type will have the palatalization of *t* to *š* in the genitive singular and in all cases of the plural. In fact, nouns ending in *-ītis* behave exactly like any other noun in *-is*. The feminine diminutives in *-īte* behave exactly like any other feminine noun in *-e* and have the palatalization of *t* to *š* in the genitive plural. The paradigms given below will recall these declensions.

	<i>brālītis</i>	'brother'	<i>kurpīte</i>	'shoe'
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	<i>brālītis</i>	<i>brālīši</i>	<i>kurpīte</i>	<i>kurpītes</i>
Acc.	<i>brālīti</i>	<i>brālīšus</i>	<i>kurpīti</i>	<i>kurpītes</i>
Gen.	<i>brālīša</i>	<i>brālīšu</i>	<i>kurpītes</i>	<i>kurpīšu</i>
Dat.	<i>brālītim</i>	<i>brālīšiem</i>	<i>kurpītei</i>	<i>kurpītēm</i>
Loc.	<i>brālītī</i>	<i>brālīšos</i>	<i>kurpītē</i>	<i>kurpītēs</i>

Vocabulary

<i>birze</i>	birch-grove	<i>rupjš</i>	coarse, rough, rude
<i>bārenis</i>	orphan (m.)	<i>strūklaka</i>	fountain
<i>bārene</i>	orphan (f.)	<i>straume</i>	stream, current
<i>atmata</i>	fallow ground	<i>skaistums</i>	beauty
<i>košs</i>	bright, pretty	<i>dziļums</i>	depth
<i>gans</i>	shepherd,		
	shepherd-boy	<i>klusums</i>	quietness, silence

<i>ganīt (-u, -ļju)</i>	to tend (animals)	<i>avene</i>	raspberry
<i>iet ganos</i>	to go and tend animals	<i>frizieris</i>	hairdresser (m.)
<i>mieži (pl.)</i>	barley	<i>friziere</i>	hairdresser (f.)
<i>ieva</i>	berry-alder	<i>tā</i>	thus

NOTE: *Tā* 'thus' is pronounced with the broken tone. Cf. Phonetics.

Exercise 83a

Form diminutives from the following nouns: *puķe*; *brālis*; *kaķis*; *zīle*; *kurpe*; *zirgs*; *māsa*.

Exercise 83b

Form the comparative and superlative degrees of: *ērti*; *slikti*; *vēlu*; *skaidri*; *reti*; *tālu*; *tuvu*; *vieglī*; *grūti*; *agri*.

Exercise 83c

Decline in the singular: *tīrā sāls*; *aukstā nakts*; *karstā uguns*.
Decline in the plural: *vecie ļaudis*; *skaidrās balsis*; *tās durvis*.

Exercise 83d

Translate into English:

- (1) Zaļi koki, zaļi meži,
Zaļa visa vasariņa;
Zaļš ir mans vaipadziņš
No zaļām zīlītēm.

(T. dz.)

- (2) Ai, mīļā lakstīgala,
Dziedi visu vasariņu.
Kas tev kait nedziedāt (i.e., 'Why indeed shouldn't you sing...')
Zaļajā birzītē?

(T. dz.)

- (3) Koši zied atmatīņa
Sīkajās puķītēs;
Tā ziedēs mūs' māsiņas
Sīkajā sudrabā.

(T. dz.)

- (4) Balta, balta ieva zied,
Vēl baltāka ābelīte;
Skaista, skaista mātes meita,
Vēl skaistāka bārenīte.

(T. dz.)

Exercise 83e

Translate into English:

1. Dzejnieks meklē mieru un klusumu meža dziļumos.
2. Bārenei nav ne tēva, ne mātes.
3. Bāreņi dzīvo bāreņu namā (*bāreņu nams = orphanage*)
4. Puķītes koši zied visapkārt strūklakai.
5. Kad Juris jau studēja, viņa mazākais brālītis vēl gāja ganos.
6. Vai jums ir vēl rupjāka sāls?
7. Pavasarī upē ir ļoti stipra straume.
8. Atmata ir pilna ar nezālēm. (*nezāles: lit. un-grass, hence weeds*)
9. Kā bērns zina šo rupjo vārdu?
10. Alu taisa no miežiem.
11. Ja gans gulēs, govīs drīz būs miežos.
12. Dzejnieki slavē skaistumu.
13. Es jums vēl varētu parādīt kakla saiti aveņu krāsā, kungs!
14. Bīrzē dziedāja lakstīgala.
15. Vai šim frizierim ir liels uzņēmums? – Jā gan, viņam ir kungu un dāmu nodaļa, (Notice the singular) un abās nodaļās strādā divdesmit divi frizieri un frizieres.
16. Aiz tās atmatas ir miežu lauks.
17. Katrai puķītei ir savs skaistumiņš.
18. Daži ļaudis vienmēr peld straumei līdzī. (*lit. swim with the stream. Here metaphorically, follow the crowd, do as everybody else does.*)
19. Gleznotājs šo gleznu dāvināja draudzei aiz pateicības. (*Out of gratitude, cf. aiz bailēm.*)
20. Kaķīša aste ir melna.
21. Tautas dziesmās var bieži lasīt par bārenes skaistumu.
22. Rudenī būs daudz ābolu, jo ābelīte koši zied.

23. Kārlis vairs neiet ganos: viņš tagad jau strādā par puisī kaimiņos.
24. Naudīņa, ko jūs redzat šinī kastītē, palīdzēs uzbūvēt jaunu pamatskolu pie bāreņu nama.
25. Jūras dziļumos ir aukstas un siltas straumes.
26. Birzes malā ir avenas.
27. Šorīt mēs ar Aivaru salasījām akmeņus no atmatas.
28. Strūklakas priekšā ir košs rožu krūms.
29. Nakts klusumā mēs pēkšņi dzirdējām mūziku.
30. Bārenīte smaidīja, kad gans viņai iedeva avenas.
31. Frizieres ir čaklas kā bitītes.
32. Ganam neviens padomu neprasis.
33. Šo tautas deju es dejuju kopš tā laika, kad vēl gāju ganos.
34. Pie šī rupjā friziera es vairs neiešu!
35. Cāļus baro ar miežiem.
36. Karstajā laikā govīs gul birzes ēnā.
37. Starp Aijas draudzenēm ir arī kāda jauna friziere.
38. Mazās zivis peld sekļajā ūdenī, bet lielās dziļumā.
39. Lielpilsētā klusuma nav.
40. Iedod brālītim mazo šķīvīti!
41. Ja man būtu savs zemes stūrītis, es stādītu kartupelīšus un turētu vistīpas un gailīti.
42. Tas ir Anniņas vaiņags, ko viņa dabūja savā dzimšanas dienā.
43. Visu vasaru Kārlis ganīja lopus.
44. Man ir silts kažociņš no vāverīšu ādām.
45. Viņam vienmēr ir pīpīte mutē.
46. Saulīte spīd, un puķītes zied.
47. Ziemā bērni valkā ādas cepurītes un vilnas zeķītes.
48. Zemenītes jau zied; drīz varēsīm lasīt odziņas.
49. Cielava sēž savā ligzdīņā.
50. Mēs ar brāli ganījām cūkas.
51. Sīkus zariņus var viegli locīt.
52. Cik ilgi šis teātris jau pastāv?
53. Kucēnam ir melns purniņš un sarkana mēlīte.
54. Slavenais diriģents apciemo savus tautiešus.
55. Ievas zied koši un baltī.
56. "Tā tu nedrīksti runāt," tēvs sacīja.
57. Vai ieva ir līdzīga liepai?
58. Ēdamistaba un guļamistabas ir diezgan lielas, bet vannas istaba ir pavisam maza.
59. Vai šīs ciltis ir naidīgas?
60. Šeit gan nevar būvēt tiltu, jo straume ir ļoti stipra.
61. Cielava meklē muļas pie strūklakas.

Exercise 83f

Translate into Latvian (Words marked with an asterisk (*) should be translated by a diminutive form.):

1. No painter could show the real beauty of her face.
2. How long have you been seeking quietness in the shade of the birch-grove?
3. This painting has no depth.
4. From coarse sand fine glass is manufactured.
5. What a pretty garland!
6. Why is England not as cold as Latvia? – Because warm sea currents flow along her coast.
7. Each summer the orphan-girl tended the animals.
8. The shepherd was plagued (*mocīt*) by a heavy cough, but hot tea with sweet raspberry-jam helped him.
9. In our barley-field there are field-*mice. (*lauku *pele*)
10. For each squirrel-fur the farmer paid the orphan-boy twenty-five centimes.
11. The orphan-girl was sitting at the fountain.
12. Anne had been waiting at the hairdresser's for two hours.
13. The strongest current is in the middle of the river.
14. The fallow-ground is between the barley-field and the rye-field.
15. The hairdresser praised her pretty hair.
16. Where is that famous fountain? – There, in front of the theatre!
17. There is always silence in the depth of the forest.
18. These raspberries have a pretty colour.
19. The orphan-boy wears poor clothes.
20. The orphan-girl kissed the hand of the farmer's wife in gratitude.
21. In spring there are sometimes snakes in the birch-grove.
22. The fallow-ground is full of stones.
23. I see no beauty at all in that fountain.
24. Give the shepherd a rain-coat (*lietus mētēlis*); lightning is flashing in the distance.
25. Why doesn't the farmer's son tend the animals?
26. Are there any strawberries or raspberries in that birch-grove?
27. During the summer vacation John always used to tend the animals.
28. The film-star never goes to the hairdresser's; the hairdresser goes to her.
29. The hairdresser's son does not want to work as a hairdresser.
30. Only in the depth of the ocean is there always silence.
31. She has a rare beauty.
32. Now the fallow-ground is lying under a blanket of snow.
33. The cart is full of barley-bags.
34. The current flows most strongly under the bridge.

35. A new orphanage is being constructed in this street.
36. Folk-songs often praise the nightingale.
37. Nobody dances folk-dances in such fine *shoes.
38. The whole nation is celebrating a festival.
39. The *mouse has a grey *tail.
40. The wagtail has tiny *feathers.
41. There is wine in the *glass.
42. What is in those *boxes?
43. All our countrymen are singing the *song about the wedding of the *orphan-girl.
44. There is medicine in that *bottle.
45. The legs of that *cupboard are of wood.
46. The *cat has a *mouse in its mouth.
47. The *orphan-boy's *hands are cold.
48. Why are the laces of your *shoes undone? (*vaļā*)
49. Latvia is a small *country.
50. Give back your *brother's *knife.
51. I know a few poems about the berry-alder.
52. Hold the pen thus, between your fingers.
53. From my bedroom window, I can see a berry-alder.
54. Which birds make their nests in the branches of the berry-alder?
55. Thus writes the poet, but I don't believe him!
56. Was there any poetry in the Stone Age, or did people then have **only** songs?
57. Why is the dining-room next to the bathroom?
58. Is an Australian cent a greater amount (*nauda*) than a Russian **copeck**?
59. The company is now constructing new offices.
60. John is not like his father.
61. John often goes fishing on the cliffs.
62. In order to light the stove, you must hold the match thus.
63. I was informed that my salary would be seventy-five lats a week.
64. Why are the doors of that church always closed?
65. Mrs. Lācis and Miss Ozols both play the violin.
66. Today is the photographer's thirty-fifth birthday.
67. Who will photograph the guests?
68. The tailor sold five fur coats today.
69. Are we allowed to take photographs here?
70. The ceiling is now black with smoke.
71. The word "architecture" is on page five of the dictionary, but the word "wave" is on page four hundred and twenty-three.
72. To whom shall we entrust this important duty?
73. In Latvia Midsummer's Night is a great festival.

74. The writer's style is very heavy, and sometimes unclear.
 75. John is on a visit to Māra's place.
 76. This long poem has two hundred and thirty-one verses.
 77. Suddenly there was a crowd of people in the street.

LESSON 84

THE GENITIVE PLURAL: IRREGULAR FORMS OF FEMININE
 NOUNS IN -E AND -S

A number of feminine nouns in -e and in -s have an unpalatalized consonant in the genitive plural. Cf. *mutu* (from *mute*) and *balsu* (from *balss*). In this lesson we bring together most of the more common words sharing this irregularity. It should be pointed out, however, that particularly with foreign words, usage varies, and authorities are not always in agreement.

Note particularly that in the declension of feminine nouns in -s, words with an unpalatalized consonant in the genitive plural have in this case only open e's, in contrast with all the other cases, where e's are closed.

Vocabulary

(The forms of the genitive plural are given in parentheses)

<i>pajumte</i> (<i>pajumtu</i>)	shelter, refuge; accommodation	<i>dzelzs</i> (f.) (<i>dzelzu</i>)	iron
<i>flote</i> (<i>flotu</i>)	fleet, navy	<i>zoss</i> (f.) (<i>zосу</i>)	goose
<i>kaste</i> (<i>kastu</i>)	box	<i>uts</i> (f.) (<i>utu</i>)	louse
<i>pase</i> (<i>pasu</i>)	passport	<i>Cēsis</i> (f. pl.) (<i>Cēsu</i>)	Cēsis, a town in Latvia
<i>gāze</i> (<i>gāzu</i>)	gas; gauze	<i>valsts</i> (f.) (<i>valstu</i> , occ. <i>valšku</i>)	State, realm, nation
<i>klase</i> (<i>klasu</i> or <i>klašu</i>)	class	<i>sekunde</i> (<i>sekunžu</i> , occ. <i>sekundu</i>)	second
<i>acs</i> (f.) (<i>acu</i>)	eye	<i>dubļains</i>	muddy
<i>auss</i> (f.) (<i>ausu</i>)	ear		
<i>dēbēss</i> (f.) (<i>dēbēsu</i>)	sky, heaven		

NOTE: *Flote* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal o.

Exercise 84a

Form diminutives from the following nouns: *bārenis*; *birze*; *roka*; *pirksts*; *puķe*; *nazis*; *pele*; *zirgs*.

Exercise 84b

Give the comparative and superlative degrees of: *lēni*; *ātri*; *labi*; *vēlu*; *tuvu*; *agri*; *tālu*; *slikti*; *stipri*; *ilgi*; *jauki*.

Exercise 84c

Decline in the singular and plural: *priekšgars*; *atmata*; *bārene*; *frizieris*; *akmens*; *suns*; *alus*; *sirds*; *balss*; *pase*; *auss*; *debess*; *acs*; *nakts*.

Exercise 84d

Translate into English:

1. Pavasarī atmata bija dubļaina, bet tagad tur zied sīkas puķītes.
2. Pirmajā pasaules karā lietoja gāzes, kuras kaitēja acīm.
3. Acumirkli, es tev palīdzēšu meklēt gredzenu, jo četras acis redz labāk nekā divas.
4. Viss, ko ganam saka, iet pa vienu ausi iekšā un pa otru ausi ārā.
5. Viņš ir ausu, deguna un kakla ārsts.
6. Angļu kara flotei ir visu klasu kara kuģi.
7. Dzelzs laikmetā (*Dzelzs laikmets* = *the Iron Age*) jau eksistēja lielas valstis Āzijā, Ziemeļāfrikā un dienvidu Eiropā, bet citur dzīvoja tikai mežoņu ciltis.
8. Šai pasei ir trīsdesmit divas lapas puses.
9. Mana tēva mājas bija tuvu pie Cēsīm.
10. Vēl pirms simts gadiem rakstīja ar zosu spalvām.
11. Ubags lietū meklēja pajumti saimnieka mājā.
12. Katrā kastē ir piecdesmit pudeļu alus.
13. Ja viņš bankai nemaksās, viņa ģimene drīz būs bez pajumtes.
14. Cik kilometru gaisma ceļo vienā sekundē?
15. Kad saule norietēja, visa debess bija sarkana.
16. Ubaga kažociņš bija pilns ar utīm.
17. Lūdzu, parādiet savu pasi, citādi jums nebūs pajumtes šinī viesnīcā!
18. Vai tu lasīji stāstu par gudro zosu ganu? – Laikam gan, vai viņš nebija bārenis?

19. Manās acis (*in my opinion*) viņš nav mākslinieks, bet tikai amatnieks.
20. Ozoliņa jaunkundze strādāja par skolotāju Cēsu vidusskolā.
21. Utij ir sešas kājas.
22. Kurai valstij ir vislielākā flote?
23. Sestā klase ir otrajā stāvā.
24. Sāls ūdenī es nevaru turēt acis vaļā.
25. Tanī lielajā kastē ir tikai vecas, netīras dzelzis (*pieces of iron*).
26. Mūsu valsts gaisa flote (= *Air Force*) nav liela.
27. Zosīm, vistām un pīlēm bieži ir utis.
28. Ceļš uz birzi ir pavisam dubļains.
29. Ezera dziļumos ir daudz zivju.
30. Es neticēju savām ausīm, kad bērni manā klasē tik rupji runāja.
31. Avenes un zemenes satur daudz dzelzs.
32. Dažu sekundu laikā kaste bija tukša.
33. Šinī mājā vāra un kurina ar gāzi.
34. Straumē peldēja sērķociņu kastītes, sīki zariņi un tukšas pudeles.
35. Bārenīte sēž pie strūklakas un raud.
36. Pēc lietus visas puķītes koši zied.
37. Kad mednieks svīļoja, suns pēc dažām sekundēm bija klāt.
38. Zelts ir daudz smagāks par dzelzi.
39. Vai jūs šinī birojā kārtojat arī pasu lietas?
40. Dziedātājas balss jau zaudē skaistumu.
41. Krogus grīda ir dubļaina.
42. Otrās klases biļete no Cēsīm līdz Rīgai maksāja divus latus un trīsdesmit santīmus.
43. Viņš meklēja klusumu un mieru baznīcā.
44. Miķelis iet ganos jau trešo vasaru.
45. Gaisā lidoja lielas un ātras lidmašīnas.
46. Signālu mēs dodam tā: ar abām rokām.
47. Vai lakstīgalas un cielavas taisa savas ligzdas ievu zaros?
48. Kam pieder šie vainagi? – Tie pieder meitām, kuras dejoja tautas dejas.
49. Katrai tautai ir savas tautas dziesmas.
50. Kopš kura laika tu pārdod grāmatas?
51. Es viņam nevaicāšu padomu.
52. Dzejnieks neprasa savu tautiešu pateicību.
53. No zīlēm vecajos laikos taisīja kafiju.
54. Šodien vējš ir no dienvidiem.
55. Vai smagā mašīna ir jau atpakaļ?
56. Vecais vīrs tagad gaida tikai nāvi.
57. Lejā upmalā zied ievas.
58. Kad man ir sieva līdzi, es nesveicinu jaunkundzes uz ielas.
59. Zem skapja parasti ir daudz putekļu.

60. Zemes virsū vēl ir daži godīgi cilvēki.
61. Kā labad tu strādā tik ilgas stundas?
62. Miežu laukā ir vecs ozols.
63. Labvakar! Kā tev iet? Vai tev celis vēl arvien sāp? – Paldies, labāk!
– Jauki! Ar labu nakti!
64. Kopš tēva nāves mēs esam bāreņi.

Exercise 84e

Translate into Latvian (Words marked with an asterisk (*) should be translated by a diminutive form):

1. The boy is tending the geese on the fallow-(ground).
2. Why is the colour of these boxes so light?
3. The orphan-girl was walking along the muddy road between **the barley-** fields.
4. The cart has only a few iron parts.
5. It is good that lice cannot fly.
6. On which day did you lose your passport?
7. In a few seconds we shall see the signal.
8. The poet wrote of the beauty of her eyes.
9. The children believe that their puppy is now in heaven. (*debesis, pl.*)
10. A gas-stove can be lit within a few seconds.
11. The famous artist lived in the vicinity of Cēsis.
12. Does the American nation celebrate a national holiday? (*valsts svētki*)
13. The pupils of two classes went to the school-dentist this morning.
14. One is not allowed to photograph the newest vessel of the fleet.
15. We require accommodation for two persons (dative).
16. I shall send you to an ear-specialist (*ārsts*), sir.
17. We were looking for accommodation in the large, strange city.
18. In which European states do the people speak German, and in **which** ones French?
19. A few seconds ago the sky was quite clear, but now I can see dark clouds in the distance.
20. These gases are harmful to lice, but not geese and chickens.
21. The teacher could not believe his ears when the pupils of his class used rude words.
22. **There are silver dishes** in that box.
23. **Is the distance between Riga and Cēsis very great?**
24. **The land from the river as far as the birch-grove belongs to the State.**
25. **Do raspberries and strawberries contain iron?**

26. In some countries passport matters are handled by the police.
27. My cousin works as an eye-specialist in Cēsis.
28. Don't go into the clean kitchen with your muddy shoes!
29. The German fleet never had as many ships as the English fleet.
30. In the cities of Asia many people live without shelter.
31. Snakes have no ears and their eyes are fairly weak.
32. The *flowers were as blue as the skies.
33. From my passport you can see that I am a hairdresser (f.).
34. The newspaper was under the iron box.
35. There are thirty-one pupils in the sixth class.
36. The flowers at the fountain bloom most prettily in autumn.
37. Savages usually hunt in the silence of the night.
38. New theatres are no longer built with an iron curtain.
39. It is not easy to calculate the depth of the river.
40. The soldiers' clothes were muddy and full of lice.
41. The farmer gave the shepherd a new *knife.
42. The farm-labourer's son tends the animals in summer.
43. Eve was gathering *acorns in her *cap.
44. The *peas are in the big dish.
45. The hairdresser cannot work without his spectacles.
46. Don't ask my opinion; I know nothing about it.
47. Eve thinks that old folk-songs and dances are more interesting than the songs and dances of our times.
48. Since spring tiny *flowers have been blooming in all the fields.
49. John went out in the hot sun, and now the skin on his nose is red.
50. Is the nightingale similar to the wagtail?
51. Cotton curtains can now be obtained everywhere.
52. Why is the child afraid of soap and water?
53. Please wipe over the piano and the shelves.
54. When the police arrest somebody, they always warn him before they question him.
55. On foggy days there is often rain and mud.
56. Eagles build their nests in very high places.
57. Women's salaries are quite low in many countries.
58. The doctor blesses (*slavēt*) the day when his wife lost her voice!
59. How beautiful the berry-alders on the river bank are!

LESSON 85

SUMMARY OF NOUN DECLENSIONS

We have now covered all the principal declensions of Latvian nouns, seven in number. The following table recalls the terminations of these principal types.

	SINGULAR						
	Masculine				Feminine		
	-s, -š	-is	-ns	-us	-a	-e	-s
Nom.	-s, -š	-is	-s	-us	-a	-e	-s
Acc.	-u	-i	-i	-u	-u	-i	-i
Gen.	-a	*-a	-s	-us	-as	-es	-s
Dat.	-am	-im	-im	-um	-ai	-ei	-ij
Loc.	-ā	-ī	-ī	-ū	-ā	-ē	-ī
	PLURAL						
	Masculine				Feminine		
	-s, -š	-is	-ns	-us	-a	-e	-s
Nom.	-i	*-i	*-i	-i	-as	-es	-is
Acc.	-us	*-us	*-us	-us	-as	-es	-is
Gen.	-u	*-u	*-u	-u	-u	*-u	*-u
Dat.	-iem	*-iem	*-iem	-iem	-ām	-ēm	-īm
Loc.	-os	*-os	*-os	-os	-ās	-ēs	-īs

An asterisk (*) in the above tables indicates that the consonant preceding the case ending is to be palatalized.

The pattern of resemblances from declension to declension is very striking.

It will be remembered that the only exceptions we have met so far are *suns* 'dog', a few irregular genitives plural, and the masculine noun *ļaudis* 'people', which follows the plural pattern of feminine -s nouns.

We have also seen that stems ending in -k, -g and -r can not be palatalized; e.g., *stūris*, pl. *stūri*; *puķe*, gen. pl. *puķu*; *kuģis*, pl. *kuģi*.

The student will, however, come across palatalized *r* (written *r*) in reading older texts.

Note that nouns ending in -ste are a little unpredictable in the genitive plural. *Kaste* gives *kastu*, and similarly, most nouns in -ste can have the unpalatalized

genitive plural *-stu*. There does exist, however, a palatalized termination, *-šku*, and many *-ste* nouns hesitate between the two.

Nouns ending in *-kste* will normally have the palatalized termination *-kšku*, which appears to alternate with a shortened version *-kšu*. Even *-kstu* may occasionally be found.

With foreign words, too, there is sometimes hesitation about palatalization in the genitive plural, as may be seen from the following vocabulary.

Vocabulary

<i>fakultāte</i> (gen. pl. <i>-šu</i> , occ. <i>-tu</i>)	faculty
<i>fronte</i> (gen. pl. <i>-šu</i> , occ. <i>-tu</i>)	front (in battle)
<i>piekraste</i> (gen. pl. <i>-stu</i>)	littoral, hinterland (of lake, sea, river, etc.)
<i>torte</i> (gen. pl. <i>-tu</i> , occ. <i>-šu</i>)	cake, tart
<i>rikste</i> (gen. pl. <i>-kšu</i> or <i>-kšku</i> , occ. <i>-kstu</i>)	goad, switch
<i>sacīkste</i> (gen. pl. <i>-kšu</i>)	contest, match, race
<i>brokastis</i> (f. pl.) (gen. pl. <i>-stu</i> , occ. <i>-šku</i>)	breakfast
<i>vēste</i> (gen. pl. <i>-stu</i>)	waist-coat
<i>garšot</i>	to taste
<i>tāpēc</i>	therefore
<i>ducis</i> (+ gen.)	dozen
<i>tomēr</i>	however, still, for all that
<i>caur</i> (+ acc.)	through
<i>pils</i> (f.)	castle
<i>moderns</i>	modern
<i>pret</i> (+ acc.)	against, towards
<i>sports</i>	sport

NOTES: *Sports*, *fronte* and *torte* are pronounced with monophthongal *o*.

Garšot often means 'to taste good', cf.:

Šie āboli man garšo. I like (the taste of) these apples.

Notice the expression *par un pret* 'for and against'.

Exercise 85a

Decline in the singular and plural: *piekraste*; *torte*; *pils*; *balss*; *debess*.

Exercise 85b

Give the diminutive forms of: *oga*; *roka*; *zirgs*; *logs*; *vaiņags*; *zīle*; *birze*; *brālis*.

Exercise 85c

Give the comparative and superlative degrees of: *bieži*; *reti*; *agri*; *lēni*; *ātri*; *vēlu*.

Exercise 85d

Decline in the singular and plural: *karš*; *atmata*; *zvaigzne*; *kartupelis*; *akmens*; *krogus*; *nakts*.

Exercise 85e

Translate into English:

1. Es ceru, ka brokastis jums garšoja. – Paldies, garšoja ļoti labi!
2. Tanī kastē ir ducis alus pudeļu.
3. Modernā karā galvas pilsētām draud lielākas briesmas nekā karavīriem frontē. (*galvas pilsēta* = capital city)
4. Acumirkli, pase man tomēr ir vestes kabatā!
5. Sporta kurpes parasti taisa no mīkstas un vieglas ādas.
6. Šinī vietā jūras piekraste ir akmeņaina, bet tikai kilometrus divus tālāk ir klintis un tīras smiltis.
7. Zosis peldēja pret straumi.
8. Šodien šeit būs sporta sacīkstes fakultāšu starpā.
9. Vai šis vilciens iet caur Cēsīm?
10. Ganam bija rikste rokā.
11. Daži kungi valkā ļoti modernas vestes.
12. Labam ganam rīkšu nevajaga.
13. Ceļš līdz pilij iet pa piekrasti un tad caur košo birzi.
14. Cigarete garšo vislabāk pēc brokastīm.
15. Mēs ar vīru reti runājam pie brokastu galda, jo viņš parasti lasa rīta avīzi.
16. Pirmdien latviešu namā būs tautas deju vakars un sporta sacīkstes.
17. Vai šinī universitātē ir arhitektūras fakultāte?
18. Vai jums garšo aveņu tortes? – Jā, bet zemeņu tortes man garšo daudz labāk.
19. Sniegs mirdzēja zem zilajām debesīm kā tūkstoš dārgakmeņu.
20. Pēc sacīkstēm pils zālē būs balie.
21. Šinī bļodā ir trīs duči olu. — Cik tu samaksāji par duci? — Sešdesmit centu.
22. Pret nāvi zāju vēl nav.

23. Tu tomēr atkal gāji caur ēdamistabu; māte būs dusmīga, jo viņa nupat mazgāja grīdu.
24. Šī rīkste ir ļoti gara.
25. Šī cilts dzīvo tai vecajā pilī jau četrsimt gadus.
26. Mēs tagad esam frontes tuvumā, zēni; turiet savas acis un ausis vaļā!
27. Es redzēju piekrastē uguni! – Un tu mani modini nakts vidū, lai man to sacītu!
28. Mēs dzīvojam modernā valstī.
29. Cik fakultāšu ir jūsu universitātē?
30. Aptiekā var dabūt labas zāles pret utīm.
31. Mūsu galvenā flote ir Āzijas ūdeņos.
32. Es nedomāju, ka tajā viesnīcā mums dos pajumti.
33. Dzelzs ir cietāka par sudrabu.
34. Šinī dzejolī mēs lasām par diviem bāreņiem, kuri gāja ganos.
35. Blakus miežu laukam ir atmata.
36. Gans sēdēja ievas ēnā, un visapkārt bija klusums.
37. Frizieres māja ir pilsētas vidū, tuvu pie jaunās strūklakas.
38. Kas ir skaistums? Vai kāds var man atbildēt?
39. Ko jūs darijāt meža dziļumos?
40. Nebūvējiet smilšu pili tik tuvu pie ūdens, bērni!
41. Es esmu jūsu tautietis – lūdzu, dodiet man pajumti!
42. Gans gana lopus atmatā kopš brokastu laika.
43. Kas tam aktierim par garu degunu!
44. Turi zīmuli tā: starp pirmo pirkstu un otro!
45. Es neredzu nekā skaista mūsu modernajā pasaulē.

Exercise 85f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The whole family was sitting at the breakfast-table.
2. Is it possible to take photographs against the sun?
3. The animals are afraid of the shepherd's switch.
4. The merciful old lord lived in that dark castle on the hill.
5. Our State has a modern Air Force.
6. Don't you want another piece of tart after all? (*tomēr*)
7. A university faculty cannot be compared with a school class.
8. We have obtained a modern gas-stove.
9. The gate is narrow, but the truck will go through it.
10. The cows are in the barley again: where is my switch?
11. After the sporting competitions there will be a ball in the concert hall; students of all faculties will be there.

12. Juris Vītols had a weak heart, and therefore was not sent to the front.
13. These waistcoats are no longer fashionable, and therefore nobody wears them.
14. The shepherd lost his goad.
15. The front is now on the littoral, between the sea and the river.
16. After the horse-races (*zirgu sacīkstes*) I had only two lats and twenty-five centimes in the pocket of my waistcoat.
17. From the castle-windows can be seen the entire hinterland of the lake.
18. This tart, however, tastes best with coffee.
19. What would you do in a strange city, without shelter?
20. I can see the castle clearly against the light sky.
21. On Sunday we shall have sporting competitions against the students of the other faculties.
22. Iron and steel are often used in modern architecture.
23. How many dozen eggs are in this box?
24. Tomatoes taste better with salt and pepper.
25. At what time is breakfast in this hotel?
26. For a few seconds there was silence on the entire front.
27. Aunt Māra knew that the tart tasted good, and therefore she gave each child another big piece.
28. Although geese have ears, they cannot be seen, for they are under the feathers of the head.
29. The hairdresser is always polite to elderly people.
30. Where did you lose your passport, sir? – Probably here on this platform. You have better eyes than I have, please help me look for it!
31. By breakfast-time we shall already be in Cēsis.
32. Don't go through the bedroom with muddy shoes!
33. I don't need a waistcoat on such a warm day.
34. I wanted to speak to (*ar*) the architect and to the engineer, but their office-doors were closed.
35. Many people go fishing in their holidays.
36. The shepherd says that cows now cost about fifty roubles.
37. Orphans have no father whom they can ask for advice.
38. Let us entrust this work to a large firm.
39. That poet often used to write poetry in the bathroom.
40. Who will tend the animals today?
41. On the edge of the barley-field there are beautiful berry-alders.
42. The style of this stanza is a little different.
43. I don't know whether those tribes are hostile.
44. There are many folk songs about nightingales and wagtails.
45. The river flows through a birch-grove.

LESSON 86

TIME BY THE CLOCK

We are already familiar with the hours of the day: *pulksten(i)s ir četri, pieci, seši*, etc. We have similarly studied the locative use of these numbers to denote 'at': *septiņos, astoņos, deviņos*, etc.

Half hours are expressed in much the same way, with the same opposition between the nominative and the locative. The prefix *pus-* (from *puse* 'half') combines with the hour next to come, and not the hour just passed as in English. Thus

<i>pusdivi</i>	half past one
<i>pusdeviņi</i>	half past eight
<i>pustrijos</i>	at half past two
<i>pusvienpadsmitos</i>	at half past ten

These expressions can be governed by prepositions, the dative plural then being found:

<i>pēc puspieciem</i>	after half past four
<i>pirms pusastoņiem</i>	before half past seven

Note that in all the above combinations, the prefix *pus-* is unstressed. Where *pus-* is combined with *četri*, the final *-s* of *pus-* is often pronounced as *-š*, cf. **puščetri*, **puščetriem*, **puščetros*, but never so written.

Quarter hours are expressed with the word *ceturksnis* 'a quarter hour', or simply with *piecpadsmit minūtes* 'fifteen minutes'.

The distinction between the nominative and the locative here gives way to a distinction between the nominative and the accusative, the latter being used to translate phrases including the word *at*.

'A quarter past' is either *ceturksnis pēc* or *ceturksnis pāri*:

<i>ceturksnis pēc trim</i>	a quarter past three
<i>ceturksnis pāri trim</i>	a quarter past three
<i>ceturksnis pēc diviem</i>	a quarter past two
<i>ceturksnis pāri sešiem</i>	a quarter past six

'At a quarter past' goes into the accusative:

<i>ceturksni pēc trijiem</i>	at a quarter past three
<i>ceturksni pāri septiņiem</i>	at a quarter past seven
<i>ceturksni pēc divpadsmitiem</i>	at a quarter past twelve
<i>ceturksni pāri pieciem</i>	at a quarter past five

Similarly, with the substitution of *piecpadsmit minūtes* for *ceturksnis*:

<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pēc četriem</i>	a quarter past four
<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pēc pieciem</i>	a quarter past five
<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pāri sešiem</i>	a quarter past six
<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pāri septiņiem</i>	a quarter past seven

The accusative of *piecpadsmit minūtes* is not differentiated from the nominative, and so all the above may mean equally well 'at a quarter past'.

These expressions are not normally governed by prepositions.

The normal expression for 'a quarter to three' is *bez ceturkšņa trīs*, lit. 'three lacking a quarter'.

<i>bez ceturkšņa divi</i>	a quarter to two
<i>bez ceturkšņa vienpadsmit</i>	a quarter to eleven

One may, however, also use *pirms*:

<i>ceturksnis pirms diviem</i>	a quarter to two
<i>ceturksnis pirms vienpadsmitiem</i>	a quarter to eleven

As above, *piecpadsmit minūtes* may be substituted for *ceturksnis*:

<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pirms diviem</i>	a quarter to two
<i>bez piecpadsmit minūtēm vienpadsmit</i>	a quarter to eleven

The expressions for 'at a quarter to' are as follows:

<i>bez ceturkšņa divos</i>	at a quarter to two
<i>bez piecpadsmit minūtēm trijos</i>	at a quarter to three
<i>ceturksni pirms četriem</i>	at a quarter to four
<i>piecpadsmit minūtes pirms pieciem</i>	at a quarter to five

The expressions with *bez ceturkšņa* cannot be governed by a preposition.

The other minutes to and past the hour are dealt with like the *piecpadsmit minūtes* forms already dealt with in our discussion of the quarter hours.

<i>bez desmit minūtēm divi</i>	ten to two
<i>bez desmit minūtēm divos</i>	at ten to two
<i>divdesmit divas minūtes pēc (pāri) diviem</i>	twenty-two minutes past two
<i>divdesmit divas minūtes pēc (pāri) diviem</i>	at twenty-two minutes past two

The word *minūtes* is very often omitted:

<i>bez desmit trīs</i>	ten to three
<i>bez desmit trījos</i>	at ten to three, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>pulkstēnis</i>	clock, watch	<i>pieturēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to stop (intr.)
<i>ceturksnis</i>	a quarter hour	<i>pietura</i>	(bus, etc.) stop
<i>ceturtdaļa</i>	a quarter	<i>šoferis</i>	(bus, etc.) driver
<i>vakariņas (pl.)</i>	evening meal, dinner	<i>modinātājs</i>	alarm-clock
<i>pusdienas (pl.)</i>	midday meal, lunch	<i>zvanīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to ring
<i>launags</i>	mid-afternoon snack	<i>piezvanīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to telephone
<i>autobuss</i>	bus	<i>šonakt</i>	tonight
<i>šovakar</i>	this evening	<i>uz laukiem</i>	in the country

NOTES: As a pure substantive, *pulkstenis* cannot be reduced to *pulkstens*.

Ceturtdaļa, like *daudz*, *ducis*, etc., is followed by the genitive, cf.

ceturtdaļa mārciņas sāls $\frac{1}{4}$ lb. salt

Šonakt refers to a time somewhat later than that often expressed in English by 'tonight'. For times up to, say, 11 p. m. or midnight, *šovakar* is more usual.

Piezvanīt requires the dative of the person:

Es tev piezvanīšu. I shall ring you.

Modinātājs, strictly speaking, refers not only to an alarm-clock, but also to any wakening force, be it person, animal (e.g., rooster) or thing.

'At the bus stop' is better translated by *pie pieturas* than by the locative case.

Autobuss and *šoferis* have foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 86a

Form diminutives from the following: *nams*; *trauks*; *puķe*; *Jānis*; *Kārlis*; *roka*; *liepa*.

Exercise 86b

Decline in the singular and plural: *balss*; *valsts*; *nakts*; *sacikste*; *acs*; *ūdens*; *auss*.

Exercise 86c

Translate into English: *pusdivos*; *pusčetros*; *pusvienpadsmitos*; *ceturksnis pēc četriem*; *ceturksni pēc vieniem*; *ceturksnis pirms desmitiem*; *ceturksni pirms diviem*; *desmit pēc trijiem*; *septiņas pēc vieniem*; *bez vienpadsmit pieci*; *bez desmit sešos*.

Exercise 86d

Translate into Latvian: 3:30; 4:35; 5:40; 6:45; 7:15; 8:20; 9:07; 11:53; 2:15; 1:45; at 10:30; at 6:35; at 2:15; at 9:45; at 11:03; at 4:58; at 8:01; at 3:15; at 6:45.

Exercise 86e

Count in Latvian in five minute intervals from 2 o'clock to 4 o'clock.

Exercise 86f

Translate into English:

1. Autobuss no šīs pieturas parasti atiet ceturksni pēc četriem.
2. Mans modinātājs šorīt atkal nezvanīja ceturksni pirms sešiem, **bet piecas** minūtes pirms sešiem. Es tomēr jau ceturksni pēc sešiem biju **pie autobusa** pieturas.
3. Ir tikai bez ceturkšņa deviņi, bet saule jau noriet.
4. Vai ir jau pusdivi? – Nē, vēl nav.
5. Skapī ir vēl ceturtdaļa tortes, tā mums labi garšos launagā.
6. Brokastis šīnī viesnīcā ir pusdeviņos, pusdienas ceturksni pirms **diviem**, launags ceturksni pēc pieciem un vakariņas pusastonos.
7. Uz laukiem pusdienas laiks parasti ir divpadsmitos.
8. Bērni pavadīs savu vasaras brīvlaiku uz laukiem.
9. Visi autobusi pietur pie šīs pieturas, kundze, jūs varat būt mierīga!
10. Kāpēc gan vilcienu pēkšņi apturēja meža dziļumos?
11. Šovakar tēvs laikam būs vēl vakariņās, bet viņš vēl piezvanīs pirms launaga.
12. Ko tu gaidi pie lielā pulksteņa? Laikam kādu draudzeni?
13. Šoferis maksā ceturtdaļu savas algas par dzīvokli.
14. Tas ir pavisam moderns modinātājs.
15. Vai Juris šonakt ies krusttēvam līdzi makšķerēt? – Jā, viņi makšķerēs no laivas.

16. Daudz skolnieku manā klasē vēl nemāk lasīt.
17. Mēs sēdējām pie vakariņu galda, kad pēkšņi zvanīja pie durvīm.
18. Gans staigāja pa aploku ar rīksti rokā.
19. Šovakar autobuss pieturēja mana nama priekšā.
20. Šoferiem un mašīnistiem ir labāka alga nekā konduktoriem.
21. Ziemsvētkos krustmāte dāvināja Ievai zelta rokas pulksteni. (*rckas pulkstenis = wrist watch*)
22. Uz laukiem modinātāju nevajaga, jo gaiši modina ļaudis.
23. Ja man šonakt celis atkal sāpēs, es piezvanīšu ārstam.
24. Šovakar mēs svinam tēva septiņdesmit piekto dzimšanas dienu.
25. Tikai ceturtdaļa Austrālijas ļaužu dzīvo uz laukiem.
26. Kārlis tev piezvanīs tūlī pēc sporta sacīkstēm.
27. Šovakar mēs ar Birutu iesim uz fakultātes balli.
28. Cerēsim, ka arī karavīriem frontē būs tik labas pusdienas kā mums šeit mājās!
29. Mēs lidojām no Rietumaustrālijas uz Sidneju.
30. Vai šis vilciens pietur Cēsīs?
31. Vai tu nedzirdēji, ka tālrunis nupat zvanīja?
32. Es šeit nekad nevarēšu gulēt: vienā dzīvoklī kāds spēlē klavieres, tuvajā krogū dzied un dejo, un drīz arī gaiši dziedās!
33. Šoferim ir ducis bērnu.
34. Vecais kungs bija vienmēr žēlīgs un laipns pret saviem ļaudīm, bet jaunais ir nežēlīgs un rupjš.
35. Šai vestei ir četras kabatas.
36. Šovakar bija auksts un stiprs vējš, un tāpēc es negāju maksķerēt.
37. Cik ilgi jūs sēdējāt pie vakariņu galda?
38. Šoferis nekad nesēž kopā ar inženiera ģimeni pie brokastu galda.
39. Visi gribēja redzēt kara floti ostā, tāpēc pilsētas viesnīcas bija pilnas, un mēs vairs nekur nevarējām dabūt pajumti.
40. Tai kastē ir mašīnu daļas no dzelzs un tērauda.
41. Vai bez pases var ceļot no vienas valsts uz otru?
42. Zosu spalvas ir līdzīgas pīļu spalvām.
43. Vai šī gāze var kaitēt cilvēkiem?
44. Pie debesīm tagad ir vairāk mākoņu nekā pirms stundas.
45. Jānis vienmēr izrauga šauras kakla saites.
46. Es būšu savā birojā otrdien, trešdien, ceturtdien un piektdien no desmitiem līdz četriem.
47. Austrālijas ziemeļos tikai maza daļa zemes ir auglīga.
48. Anna bija pateicīga par gredzenu, ko Jānis viņai dāvināja.
49. Ko es darišu ar šīm kurpēm? Tās man neder.

Exercise 86g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The alarm-clock did not ring this morning; therefore I am late.
2. On Sundays the evening meal will not be at 7:45, but at 8:15.
3. The driver will be on hand at ten minutes to seven.
4. Tonight there will be high waves; we will not be able to fish from the rocks.
5. Did you ring Mrs. Ozols? – Yes, but she was not in her office.
6. After the sports competition, the midday meal will taste very good indeed.
7. Look, the bus did not stop at this stop after all!
8. In a modern bus one can travel as comfortably as in a train.
9. After the mid-afternoon meal the farm-workers worked almost until dinner.
10. In winter a quarter of the pupils in my class were ill.
11. Water will not harm this modern watch.
12. The mid-afternoon meal will be at 3:15.
13. The bus-driver is a courteous man; he waited for us at the bus stop when he spotted us in the distance.
14. Life in the country is more peaceful than in the city.
15. The pharmacist rang the police at 2:45.
16. If I had a quarter of the shop-keeper's money, I would be happy.
17. That clock is slow; it is already 8:15. – You have better eyes than me, if you can see the clock from this distance.
18. In the theatre this evening there were students from all faculties.
19. The bus stopped a hundred metres from the usual bus stop this evening.
20. At the mid-afternoon meal we got a piece of raspberry tart and a cup of tea.
21. Somebody is ringing at the door.
22. It is 7:15 already; every second is important now.
23. There will be rain tonight.
24. After the midday-meal the farm-workers no longer worked so diligently.
25. Just now the doctor rang me – he will be here at 7:45.
26. In the country we always had breakfast at 6:30 in winter, but at 5:30 in summer.
27. The express (*ātrvilciens*) does not stop at Ķemeri.
28. The alarm-clock rang at six fifty.
29. Tonight the police arrested two thieves in the palace; both will be questioned tomorrow.
30. Water is leaking through the ceiling.
31. After lunch he went back to his office.
32. In the country people are not so up-to-date as in the city; they still wear waistcoats.

33. In front of the bridge the policeman examined the driver's passport, but he was quite polite towards us.
34. At 7:30 the whole family was sitting at the supper table.
35. This evening the heavens are bright, but I can see only about a dozen stars.
36. Geese do not need shelter against the rain.
37. When will we get our lunch?
38. The beggar's coat was muddy and full of lice.
39. Do you cook with gas?
40. Our nation has a very modern Air Force.
41. Do the people speak Latvian well in Cēsis?
42. From iron, steel can be made.
43. Your ears are dirty, my child!
44. That large box is full of bricks.
45. Can you see the train time-table from the carriage-window?
46. Aija had a cough, but now she is well again.
47. Don't waste time; continue cleaning the spoons!
48. Does the student (f.) speak English and Russian?
49. Little John drew a large house on a sheet of brown paper.
50. Does lightning frighten all animals?
51. Father always smokes a pipe.

LESSON 87

DEBITIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

In Latvian, the English 'I must go' and similar constructions may be translated either with the help of an auxiliary verb (*vajadzēt*) or by the use of the debitive mood of the verb. The debitive mood is the mood of necessity or obligation.

The debitive mood is very simply formed: to the third person of the present indicative we prefix the particle *jā-*, and this basic form is then construed with the appropriate tense of the verb 'to be', and the dative of the appropriate noun or pronoun.

Hence the present tense of the debitive mood of *dziedāt* is as follows:

<i>man ir jādzied</i>	I must sing, I have to sing, etc.
<i>tev ir jādzied</i>	you must sing, you have to sing, etc.
<i>viņam ir jādzied</i>	he must sing, he has to sing, etc.
<i>viņai ir jādzied</i>	she must sing, she has to sing, etc.
<i>mums ir jādzied</i>	we must sing, we have to sing, etc.
<i>jums ir jādzied</i>	you must sing, you have to sing, etc.
<i>viņiem ir jādzied</i>	they must sing, they have to sing, etc.
<i>viņām ir jādzied</i>	they must sing, they have to sing, etc.

In the present tense, except when special emphasis is required, the *ir* is normally omitted, as in the following examples:

<i>man jādzied</i>	I must sing, etc.
<i>tev jārunā</i>	you must speak, etc.
<i>viņam jāprasa</i>	he must ask, etc.
<i>viņai jāatbild</i>	she must answer, etc.
<i>mums jāubago</i>	we must beg, etc.
<i>jums jāsaka</i>	you must say, etc.
<i>viņiem jāatkārto</i>	they must repeat, etc.
<i>viņām jāsolā</i>	they must promise, etc.
<i>tēvam jāgaida</i>	father must wait
<i>mātei jātic</i>	mother must believe
<i>zēniem jāstrādā</i>	the boys must work

The verb *būt* 'to be' is irregular in that the prefix *jā-* is attached not to the **third** person of the present indicative, but to the infinitive, cf.:

<i>man jābūt</i>	I must be
<i>tev jābūt</i>	you must be, etc.

The negative is obtained by negating the auxiliary. The negative auxiliary **can** never be omitted.

<i>man nav jādzied</i>	I do not have to sing, etc.
<i>tev nav jārunā</i>	you do not have to speak, etc.
<i>viņam nav jāprasa</i>	he does not have to ask, etc.
<i>viņai nav jāatbild</i>	she does not have to answer, etc.
<i>mums nav jāubago</i>	we do not have to beg, etc.
<i>jums nav jāsaka</i>	you do not have to say, etc.
<i>viņiem nav jāatkārto</i>	they do not have to repeat, etc.
<i>viņām nav jāsolā</i>	they do not have to promise, etc.

The logical object of a verb in the debitive mood is in Latvian put **into the** nominative, although it is not to be regarded as the subject:

<i>Man jādzied dziesma.</i>	I must sing a song.
<i>Tev jāmeklē nauda.</i>	You must look for the money.
<i>Jums jāraksta vēstule.</i>	You must write a letter.

If the dative of the person is omitted, the expression becomes impersonal, and often too the nominative will precede the verb:

<i>Mašīna jānomazgā.</i>	One has to wash the car.
<i>Šis dzejolis jālasa.</i>	OR The car must be washed.
	OR This poem must be read.

The rule of nominative for the logical object does not, however, apply to personal pronouns of the first and second persons, viz., *es, tu, mēs, jūs*. Here the accusative is found.

Viņai mani jādzird. She must hear me.
Man jūs jāredz. I must see you.

When the debitive verb is followed by an infinitive plus object, then the nominative may still be found, although the accusative is more common:

Tev jāpalīdz būvēt namu (occ. nams).
 You must help to build the house.

Jums jāmēģina rakstīt vēstuli (occ. vēstule).
 You must try to write a letter.

Similarly, the nominative cannot be used in those instances where the verb requires another case:

Man jāpiezvana ārstam. I must ring the doctor.
Mums jāpalīdz Kārlim. We have to help Charles.

The dative of the noun or pronoun (replacing the English subject) is paradoxically regarded in Latvian as the subject of the sentence for the purpose of a following possessive adjective:

Mums jābaro savi zirgi. We have to feed our horses.
Man jāizlasa sava grāmata. I must read my book.

Hence the use of *savs* in the above examples instead of *mūsu* or *mans*.

Vocabulary

<i>dēlis</i>	plank, board	<i>naglot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to nail
<i>zāģis</i>	saw	<i>sanaglot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to nail (together)
<i>zāģēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to saw	<i>gluds</i>	smooth
<i>sazāģēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to saw up, through	<i>krietns</i>	righteous, solid, good
<i>ēvele</i>	plane	<i>taisns</i>	straight; just
<i>ēvelēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to plane	<i>podš</i>	pot
<i>āmurs</i>	hammer	<i>gludināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to iron, press
<i>nagla</i>	nail	<i>gludēklis</i>	iron

NOTE: *Zāģēt* and *sazāģēt* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 87a

Translate into English:

- man jāaiziet; man ir jāaiziet; man nav jāaiziet; tev jāmaksā; tev ir jāmaksā; tev nav jāmaksā; viņam jāsola; viņam ir jāsola; viņam nav jāsola; viņai jāguļ; viņai ir jāguļ; viņai nav jāguļ; mums jāsaka; mums ir jāsaka; mums nav jāsaka; jums jātīra; jums ir jātīra; jums nav jātīra; viņiem jāatdod; viņiem ir jāatdod; viņiem nav jāatdod; viņām jāstrādā; viņām ir jāstrādā; viņām nav jāstrādā.*
- Saimniekam jāraksta vēstule. Man tevi jāgaida. Annai jāmaksā dziedāt dziesmu. Man šodien nav jāmaksā visa nauda.*

Exercise 87b

Translate into Latvian:

- I must answer; you (s.) must paint; he must whistle; she must speak; we must iron; you (pl.) must hope; they (m.) must threaten; they (f.) must obey.
- John must ring the doctor. Eve must visit Mrs Ozols. The police must try to arrest the thieves. Must you torment me? We do not have to answer all the questions.

Exercise 87c

Write in Latvian, in full: 3:00; 4:05; 5:10; 6:15; 7:20; 8:25; 9:30; 10:35; 11:40; 12:45; 1:50; 2:55.

Exercise 87d

Rewrite Ex. 87c, adding the word 'at' to the times there given.

Exercise 87e

Form diminutives from the following: *bērns; cilvēks; dēls; sēta; brālēns*.

Exercise 87f

Translate into English:

1. Šis dēlis ir vēl drusku jāēvelē, tad tas būs pavisam gluds.
2. Pēc vakariņām man vēl jāgludina daži palagi.
3. Vai tev šovakar jāpiezvana ārstam? – Jā, ceturksni pirms astoņiem.
4. Viņam jāiet līdz autobusa pieturai pa šo taisno ceļu.
5. Šonakt modinātājam jāzvana, jo man jābūt agri darbā.
6. Viņai jādejo šī tautas deja.
7. Mums līdz launagam vēl jā sazāģē šie dēļi.
8. Viņiem jāzāģē ar šo garo zāģi.
9. Pirms pusdienām viņam jāgludina daži krekli un svārki.
10. Jums šie dēļi labi jāsanaglo.
11. Ar kurām naglām tu naglosi grīdu?
12. Tev jāēvelē ar to ēveli, tā ir garāka.
13. Bērniem jāpavada brīvlaiks uz laukiem kopā ar mātes brāļa ģimeni.
14. Mūsu autobusa šoferis ir krietns vīrs.
15. Tagad gludeklis ir atkal karsts.
16. Kurpniekam jāstrādā ar āmuru.
17. Balles zāles grīda ir pavisam gluda.
18. Mums šim krietnajam vīram jāparāda sava pateicība.
19. Jums jāzāģē ar lielo zāģi, draugi; ar šo mazo zāģīti jūs to lielo koku nesazāģēsīt!
20. Mums ir jāmāk dziedāt šo tautas dziesmu.
21. Tev jāsolā, ka tu man rakstīsi vēstuli.
22. Ja es te stāvēšu, viņai mani jāredz.
23. Vilcienam jāpietur visās stacijās no Rīgas līdz Cēsīm.
24. Tikai ceturtdaļa grīdas dēļu vēl jāēvelē, bet mums tas nav jādara, to darīs amatnieki.
25. Ar šo moderno gludekli mēs varam gludināt daudz ērtāk un ātrāk.
26. Krietnam saimniekam jāmāk arī krāsot savu māju.
27. Man viņa jāgaida pie lielā pulksteņa ceturksni pēc septiņiem.
28. Šī vecā ēvele vairs neder.
29. Pusastoņos bērniem jābūt gultā; kāpēc jūs man neklausāt?
30. Tanī kastē ir ēvele, āmurs un naglas.
31. Amatnieki zāģēja un nagloja visu dienu.
32. Kaste ir pilna, tagad tā ir tikai jāsanaglo.
33. Es sazāģēju garos zarus mazos gabaliņos, lai iekurinātu krāsni.
34. Man jāmāk strādāt ar ēveli un ar āmuru.
35. Ar šīm īsajām naglām mēs šos dēļus nesānaglosim.
36. Tev jātur gludeklis taisni.
37. Man jāpaziņo galvenajam inženierim, ka upē ir stipra straume.

38. Viņam jātīra savas kurpes.
39. Mums jāiet ciemos pie kaimiņiem.
40. Svētdien mācītājam jāiesvētī trīspadsmit bērni.
41. Naktī mums bieži jāmedī žurkas.
42. Vai mums jākristī savi bērni?
43. Man šī lielā zivs ir jādabū.
44. Mums jādzīvo kopā ar citiem.
45. Jums jāiet gar upmalu.
46. Jums vēl jāizmazgā zeķes.
47. Es to zvaigzni neredzu. – Tev tā jāredz, jo tavas acis nav tik vājas kā manas.
48. Lūdzu, piedodiet, kungs, bet man jāpārbauda jūsu pase!
49. Jums nekas nav jāsaka, mēs visu zinām.
50. Kam jātīra istaba?
51. Kam šī dziesma jādzied?
52. Kam jāgana lopi?
53. Kam tagad jālasa?
54. Kam šīs lietas jākārt?
55. Puķu pods ir uz loga.
56. Ēvelēsim tos dēļus grāmatu plauktiem!
57. Friziere arvien ir laipna pret veciem ļaudīm: tāpēc visi viņu ieredz.
58. Vai durvis tagad ir vaļā vai ciet?
59. Pie debesīm ir mākoņi: laikam drīz būs lietus.
60. Latvijā Jāņi ir lieli svētki.
61. Kāpēc ēdamistabā ir tik daudz dūmu?
62. Mūsu uzņēmums pastāv jau piecdesmit gadus.
63. Āfrikā dažās vietās vēl dzīvo mežoņu ciltis.
64. Man jābūvē jauna vannas istaba.
65. Ja viena valsts ir naidīga pret otru, tad var sagaidīt karu.
66. Vai bērni jau māk būvēt smilšu pilis?
67. Turi zīmuli tā, šinī rokā, un uzraksti savu vārdu!
68. Dažās sekundēs klase bija tukša.
69. Dārzā strūklakas priekšā ir koši rožu krūmi.
70. Bāreņa drēbes bija pilnas ar utīm.
71. Gans šodien ir slims, kas viņa vietā ganīs lopus?
72. Kāds tautietis man prasīja naudu, bet es viņam to nedeju.

Exercise 87g

Translate into Latvian:

1. You must nail together two straight boards.
2. Before the midday meal we have to saw up six trees.
3. He has to plane the edges of the table with a small plane.
4. We must be at the station at 7:45.
5. You needn't hold the hammer with both hands.
6. She must iron her husband's shirts and her daughter's blouses.
7. A righteous man fears nobody.
8. The potatoes must be cooked in that pot.
9. This cloth must be pressed with a hot iron.
10. Just a moment, I have to pay for dinner!
11. How long have you to wait under the clock?
12. He must saw with the long saw.
13. The soldiers have to sleep on the floor.
14. The bus must stop at that corner.
15. After the mid-afternoon meal we have to saw up all those branches.
16. Where are the plane, the hammer and the nails? - They must be in that box.
17. This board is smooth enough, it doesn't need to be planed.
18. The saw must be here somewhere.
19. I don't need to know how to nail and plane boards; I am not a tradesman.
20. You must work with this plane; it is better.
21. This nail is four inches long.
22. The driver must be punished.
23. Charles has only to nail together a few boards.
24. You must wash your hands before lunch.
25. I have to pay for the furniture before Friday.
26. You must read this story!
27. We have to work with this bad saw.
28. You cannot nail boards with such a small hammer.
29. She must use the good, modern iron.
30. Everyone respects that upright man.
31. He has to nail together two straight wooden boards.
32. At 7:30 I have to ring the tailor.
33. I must look for a new flat: in the flat adjacent to my bedroom somebody is scraping (*zāģēt*) the violin all day.
34. We have to spend a few days in the country.
35. With this saw one can saw stones.
36. This puppy has such smooth fur!
37. Do you have to press those trousers this evening?
38. They must work tonight.

39. The farmer has to sell a quarter of the farm animals.
40. At 7:15 the parson will visit us.
41. At 3:45 we have to be at the bus stop.
42. You must promise to visit us again.
43. The farmer's wife has many pots of jam.
44. Why do women always have to talk so long on the telephone?
45. The iron is not hot any longer.
46. Why do women need to wear expensive fur coats?
47. We have to feed our dogs.
48. We have to visit our friends.
49. I have to write a letter.
50. Who has to pay for the beer?
51. Who has to sweep the floor?
52. After breakfast there will be sporting competitions.
53. Do you like strawberry tart?
54. I could not believe my eyes when I saw the beautiful old castle.
55. Let us ask an architect's advice, all the same.
56. We have been looking for accommodation since 10:30.
57. I have a few cents in my waistcoat pocket.
58. How much does a dozen eggs cost?
59. The architectural style of this period is very interesting.
60. Why do Latvian poets write so much poetry about wagtails and night-
ingales, about birch groves and berry-alder?
61. A thousand tiny flowers are now blooming on the fallow-ground.
62. I could not believe my ears when they told me that the fleet was in our
harbour.
63. After the rain all the geese had muddy feathers.
64. In this poem the poet praises the beauty of the autumn.

LESSON 88

DEBITIVE MOOD: IMPERFECT TENSE

The structure of the debitive imperfect is basically the same as that of the debitive present: the dative of the person, the appropriate tense (here imperfect) of the verb *būt* and the debitive element (*jā*- plus the third person of the present indicative of the verb). Thus

man bija jārunā
tev bija jādzied

I had to speak, etc.
you had to sing, etc.

<i>viņam bija jāstrādā</i>	he had to work, etc.
<i>viņai bija jālasa</i>	she had to read, etc.
<i>mums bija jāgaida</i>	we had to wait, etc.
<i>jums bija jāguļ</i>	you had to sleep, etc.
<i>viņiem bija jātic</i>	they had to believe, etc.
<i>viņām bija jālieto</i>	they had to use, etc.

The negative is obtained by using *nebija* instead of *bija*:

Man nebija jārunā. I did not have to speak, etc.

Note particularly that the *bija* cannot be omitted. The omission of the tense marker is possible only in the present, and even then, not when the verb is negative.

Vocabulary

<i>miza</i>	bark; skin (of fruit, etc.)
<i>mizot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to peel, to skin
<i>nomizot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to peel, to skin
<i>audzināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to raise, breed; bring up, educate
<i>mainīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to change, exchange, swap
<i>grozīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to alter, re-arrange
<i>gatavs</i>	ready, prepared; ripe
<i>sagatavot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to prepare
<i>skalot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to rinse, wash
<i>izskalot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to rinse out; to wash away
<i>noskalot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to rinse over; to wash off
<i>apskalot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to lap (of sea, waves, etc.)
<i>sapnis</i>	dream
<i>sapņot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to dream
<i>šķēres (pl.)</i>	scissors

NOTES: In the masculine nominative singular only, *gatavs* is pronounced **gataus*.

Mizot and *nomizot* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 88a

Give the first person plural, debitive present and debitive imperfect, of the following: *makšķerēt*; *redzēt*; *medīt*; *sodīt*; *sagatavot*; *dabūt*; *runāt*; *dziedāt*; *audzināt*; *zināt*; *noslaucīt*; *locīt*; *mācēt*; *gulēt*; *sēdēt*; *aiziet*; *pārdot*; *būt*.

Exercise 88b

Write in Latvian, in full: 7:25; 8:30; 10:40; 11:45; 12:50; 1:55; 2:00; 3:05; 4:10; 5:15; 6:20; at 8:08; before 9:00; after 7:30; at 5:23; at 11:15; at 10:37; at 1:45; at 2:56; at 7:20.

Exercise 88c

What are the two series of endings used in the present tense of Mixed Conjugation Verbs, and how can one determine which set of endings is required by a given verb?

Exercise 88d

Give the imperative forms (2nd. person singular and plural, 1st. person plural and 3rd. person) of the verbs listed in Ex. 88a.

Exercise 88e

Translate into English:

1. Annai bija jānomizo kartupeļi un jāizskalo lielais pods.
2. Pēc vīra nāves viņai bija jāstrādā un jāaudzina pieci bērni.
3. Viņam bija jāmaina dzīvoklis.
4. Ogas vēl nav gatavas.
5. Viļņi apskalo krastu.
6. Man bija tikai jānoskalo ziepes no rokām.
7. Mums bija jāsapatavo ciemiņiem vakariņas.
8. Man vēstulē bija jāgroza daži vārdi.
9. Šinī stāstā rakstniekam nekas nebija jāgroza.
10. Šinī skolā audzina un māca tikai bagāto ļaužu bērnus.
11. Āboliem ir gluda miza.
12. Kāpēc tev bija jāgludina ar veco gludekli?
13. Lietus noskaloja putekļus no ielām.
14. Vai tev šovakar nebija jāsapatavo skolas uzdevumi?
15. Es sapņi redzēju drēbnieku ar lielām šķērēm rokā.
16. Ārsts man prasīja, vai es bieži sapņoju un ko es parasti sapņi redzu.
17. Vai tu palagus krietni izskaloji? – Nē, es nezināju, ka tie bija jāskalo.
18. Ko gan mūsu sievas virtuvē dara?
19. Āboli nebija jāmizo, es tos vārīju ar visām mizām.

20. Ja karavīri frontē nemazgātu savas drēbes, tad viņiem drīz būtu utis.
21. Jūra šeit apskaloja klintis.
22. Ar šīm zālēm tev bija jāskalo acis.
23. Ar šķērēm te nekā nevar darīt, iedod man zāģi!
24. Kurā mēnesī vīnogas būs gatavas?
25. Ievai bija jāmizo kartupeļi un jāvāra pusdienas.
26. Pirmajā gadā skolotājam bija jāaudzina pirmās un otrās klases skolnieki.
27. Pēc pirmā cēliena mums bija jāmaina dekorācijas.
28. Lūdzu, pie vakariņu galda! – Tūlīn, mēs tikai noskalosim rokas.
29. Kad Juris gāja ganos, viņš vienmēr sapņoja par pilīm un par bagātiem ļaudīm, bet tagad viņš sapņo par mierīgu dzīvi uz laukiem.
30. Šis dēlis tev nebija jā sazāģē.
31. Kam bija jāzāģē un kam jāēvelē? (*Bija* is understood before the second debitive: this is not a case of omission of the tense marker, as the context clearly allows the ellipsis.)
32. Kuram no mums bija jānaglo?
33. Kura kaste bija jāsanaglo?
34. Kam bija jānaglo ar lielo āmuru?
35. Šim amatniekam bija jākrāso grīda.
36. Šai meitai bija jāmazgā trauki.
37. Jums jāiet pa šo taisno ceļu.
38. Tik daudz naudas redz tikai sapnī.
39. Vītola kungam pieder naglu fabrika.
40. Kalniņa kungam bija jādirīģē koris un jaunu mūziķu orķestris.
41. Vai jums ir tik daudz laika, ka varat gleznot?
42. Visapkārt fotografam bija dāmas, kas valkāja smalkus mēteļus.
43. No trijiem līdz četriem es diktēju vēstules.
44. Dažās minūtēs mēs būsīm lidlaukā.
45. Četršimt piecdesmit sestajā lapas pusē ir jauks dzejolis par ganiem un govīm.
46. Es kurinu uguni pagalmā.
47. Šā dzejoļa trešajā pantā mēs lasām par naidīgo ļaužu pūli Parīzes ielās.
48. Kāpēc sāls ir tik lēta?

Exercise 88f

Translate into Latvian:

1. We had to prepare beds for the visitors.
2. What did you dream about?
3. Man cannot alter the weather.
4. We had to bring up our children so that they would be righteous people.

5. The bark is fairly hard; this knife is useless, give me that plane.
6. I had to peel and rinse the potatoes in order to prepare the lunch.
7. She had to rinse her hair.
8. Why do women always dream of furs and precious stones?
9. Isn't breakfast ready yet?
10. He often changes flats.
11. Who had to use the scissors?
12. The ocean washes the coast.
13. It was only a dream.
14. We had to alter the time-table. – Why do you alter it so often?
15. Let's swap caps!
16. We had to rinse the crockery (*trauki*, pl.).
17. They had to prepare a new play every month.
18. I had to look for a straight plank.
19. In seven months the bridge will be ready.
20. Did you have to peel all those apples?
21. Potato-skins presumably taste good to pigs.
22. It is not easy to bring up seven children.
23. Teachers educate other people's children.
24. We change the sheets every week.
25. We didn't earn much on (*uz + acc.*) each pound of sugar, tomatoes or tea.
26. Did she have to ask his advice?
27. Those tiny nails are useless.
28. He had to nail together two more boards; then the table was **completed** (*gatavs*).
29. This table had to be planed quite a lot.
30. She had to prepare the apples, berries and lemon-peel for the jam.
31. The potatoes were new; they did not need peeling.
32. I had to work all day with these bad scissors.
33. In my dream I was walking along a muddy road.
34. You don't have to rinse the old pot.
35. The rain is washing the roofs.
36. The housewife had still to prepare the evening meal.
37. What do you dream about?
38. Rinse the dishes before you wipe them.
39. You didn't have to nail the floor with such long nails.
40. Do you believe in dreams?
41. The water was washing the rocks.
42. You must wear a cotton blouse.
43. She had to iron the curtains.
44. Did they have to build the chimney of bricks?
45. The conductor had to check the tickets.

46. We had to sit in row twenty-eight at the sports competitions.
 47. You had to ring the architect at 6:45.
 48. You did not have to applaud!
 49. When the bus stopped at the bus stop, the driver informed us that there were only three free seats. (*vieta*)
 50. Who had to prepare the mid-afternoon meal?
 51. Tonight I shall read a quarter of the book.
 52. I dreamt that my husband gave me a gold watch.

LESSON 89

DEBITIVE MOOD: FUTURE TENSE

The only formal distinction between the various tenses of the Debitive mood is the tense of the auxiliary *būt*, cf.

<i>man (ir) jāstrādā</i>	I must work
<i>man bija jāstrādā</i>	I had to work
<i>man būs jāstrādā</i>	I shall have to work.

Thus the future of the Debitive is quite regular:

<i>man būs jālasa</i>	I shall have to read
<i>tev būs jāmēģina</i>	you will have to try
<i>viņam būs jāguļ</i>	he will have to sleep
<i>viņai būs jātīra</i>	she will have to clean
<i>mums būs jādzied</i>	we shall have to sing
<i>jums būs jāklausa</i>	you will have to obey
<i>viņiem būs jātic</i>	they will have to believe
<i>viņām būs jāizrauga</i>	they will have to choose.

The negative is formed simply with *nebūs*:

<i>man nebūs jāstrādā</i>	I shall not have to work
<i>tev nebūs jāguļ</i>	you will not have to sleep.

Vocabulary

<i>novele</i>	short story, novelle	<i>daba</i>	nature
<i>romāns</i>	novel	<i>dabīgs</i>	natural
<i>laikraksts</i>	newspaper, periodical	<i>tēlot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to portray; to describe; to pretend
<i>mūzejs</i>	museum	<i>spārns</i>	wing
<i>večāki (pl.)</i>	parents	<i>pastmarka</i>	postage stamp
<i>gaitenis</i>	corridor	<i>aploksne</i>	envelope
<i>plecs</i>	shoulder	<i>pastnieks</i>	postman
<i>mugura</i>	back		

NOTES: *Novēle* and *romāns* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Mugurā is often used adverbially in the sense of 'on' with respect to clothes.

Viņai bija moderni kažoks mugurā.

She had on a fashionable fur.

Exercise 89a

Form the debitive present, imperfect and future (third person plural, feminine) of the following verbs: *raudāt*; *domāt*; *zināt*; *sēdēt*; *peldēt*; *aplauzēt*; *iespēt*; *solīt*; *svilpot*; *iedot*; *iet*; *būt*; *izraudzīt*.

Exercise 89b

Count in seven minute intervals from 3:01 to 5:00.

Exercise 89c

Translate into English:

1. Uz aploksnes ir reta pastmarka, tā man būs jādabū.
2. Jaunajam aktierim šinī lugā būs jātēlo vecs pastnieks.
3. Šis romāns būs jālasa visai klasei.
4. Vai tu lasīji Blaumaņa slavēno romānu "Nāves ēnā"? (Rūdolfs Blaumanis, 1863-1908, writer of plays and short stories.)
5. Agrāk drūbi krāsāja ar dabīgām krāsām no koku mizām.

6. Viņš nav slimš, viņš tikai tēlo!
7. Daba ir nežēlīga.
8. Rītu mums būs jāiet uz mūzeju kopā ar vecākiem.
9. Pirms Ziemsvētkiem pastniekiem būs jāstrādā garas stundas.
10. Šim cilvēkam ir nejauka daba.
11. Kam būs jāmizo sīpoli?
12. Mēs ar Vītola kungu vienmēr mainām pastmarkas savā starpā.
13. Peles kundzei bija moderns kažociņš mugurā un skaista cepurīte galvā.
14. Naktī kāds staigāja pa gaiteni, varbūt tas bija kāds zaglis!
15. Ērgļiem ir gari spārni.
16. Šinī laikrakstā vienmēr ir kāda novele.
17. Dabu nevar grozīt.
18. Jānītis sēdēja uz tēva platajiem pleciem.
19. Šinī mūzeja spārnā jūs redzēsīt akmens laikmeta māla traukus.
20. Ja tu negribēsi klausīt, man būs jārunā ar taviem vecākiem.
21. Varbūt šī ir reta un dārga pastmarka.
22. Šai meitenei ir dabīgs skaistums, viņai vēl ilgi nebūs jākrāso ne seja, ne mati.
23. Mums būs jāiet klusāk pa gaiteni, jo vecāki jau guļ.
24. Uz aplokšnes ir interesantas pastmarkas no tālās Austrālijas.
25. Šinī romānā rakstnieks tēlo kara briesmas.
26. Zēnam nebūs jāiet uz veikalu, man vēl ir aplokšņu diezgan.
27. Vai pastnieks vēl nav klāt?
28. Ja mugura un plecs vēl sāpēs, man būs jāiet rītu pie ārsta.
29. Es nekad nelasu laikrakstus.
30. Šī mašīna jums būs jāpārdod mūzejam!
31. Vai tu tici tik muļķīgiem sapņiem?
32. Varbūt galvenais inženieris zina, kāpēc ūdens šinī vietā izskalo smiltis un mālus.
33. Viņam bija tumši svārki mugurā un gaišas bikses kājās.
34. Ūdens jau apskalo galveno ceļu.
35. Šis pods būs jāizskalo.
36. Ak, bērnam ir šķēres rokā! Vai tu to neredzi? Kā tu savus bērnus audzini!
37. Jums būs jāsež ēnā, draugs, jūsu mugura ir jau pavisam sarkana.
38. Lidmašīnas spārni mirdz kā sudrabs saules gaismā.
39. Kas par platiem pleciem!
40. Vai tu izlasīji visu grāmatu? – Gandrīz, man vēl jāizlasa tikai viena novele.
41. Ja Anna lasīs šo bēdīgo romānu, viņai atkal būs jāraud.
42. Gaiteni ir dūmi.
43. Šis ir mednieku laikraksts.
44. Vai jūs bieži sapņojat par fronti un par karu?
45. Pastnieka dārzā tomāti jau ir gatavi.
46. Kam būs jādzied?

47. Kam būs jāmaksā?
48. Kuram kalpam būs jābaro zirgi?
49. Kurai meitai būs jātaisa zīļu vaiņadziņš?
50. Kam būs jāgaida ceļmalā?
51. Mūsu tautai par lakstīgalu un cielavu ir daudz tautas dziesmu, kuras tautieši dzied jau kopš veciem laikiem.
52. Meklēsim klusumu meža dziļumos!
53. Mūsu pilsētas galvenajā ielā būs strūklaku.
54. Cik bieži autobusi pietur pie šīs pieturas? – To es nezinu, jums būs jāprasa šoferim.
55. Man šovakar būs jāpiezvana draugam Cēsīs.
56. Ja modinātājs nezvanīs, tad es gan nebūšu laikā pie brokastu galda. – Jū, un tu laikam arī vēl gulēsi, kad citi jau būs pie pusdienu galda!
57. Vai jūs vēl arvien meklējat sev pajumti šinī pilsētā?
58. Cik kuģu ir mūsu valsts kara flotē?

Exercise 89d

Translate into Latvian:

1. The principal actress is ill; Miss Ozols will have to play Ophelia. (*Ophēlija*)
2. In this wing of the library, there are only scientific periodicals.
3. You will have to go along this corridor.
4. Some parents bring their children up badly.
5. We do not use natural flowers on stage.
6. In summer they will have to alter the time-tables.
7. This is his best novel.
8. Was there any money in the envelope?
9. How many stamps will I have to give you?
10. The maids will soon have to prepare the mid-afternoon meal.
11. This novel loses its beauty in translation.
12. The big dog frightened the postman.
13. You will have to read this short story as well.
14. On Sunday the parents will have to go to the museum with their children.
15. Just a moment, a bee is sitting on your shoulder.
16. Above the corridor is the main hall.
17. What did Anne have on at the ball?
- 18. Some birds have such short wings that they cannot fly.
19. The rain washed all the leaves from the streets.
20. He will have to look for another flat if he continues to sing and whistle in the corridor when other people want to sleep.

21. You will have to rinse your cup, or perhaps you think that your mother will do it!
22. He writes short stories.
23. Why has such a beautiful girl such an unpleasant nature?
24. This singer is not an artist; he just has a natural voice.
25. Baiba will only have to peel the potatoes.
26. Some animals no longer exist in their natural state (*brīvā dabā*).
27. Is the water deep where you are standing? – It is deeper than you think, for my friend is standing below, and I am standing on his shoulders!
28. If this medicine does not help your sore (*slims*) shoulder and back, you will have to use different medicine.
29. Let's swap stamps!
30. Will I have to use that old iron?
31. There is not one good short story in this periodical.
32. Which student will have to speak about this novel?
33. There is a rose-garden in front of the museum.
34. You will have to write your name on the envelope.
35. Fast, modern planes have fairly short wings.
36. The postman is already standing by the fence.
37. Those stamps are very rare.
38. At Christmas we shall have to give the postman a bottle of wine in appreciation for (*pateiclbā par*) his difficult job.
39. Will he again have to play a savage in the new play?
40. Maybe the envelope is not wide enough.
41. I would like to know whether that is the natural colour of her face.
42. Is the new wing of the museum ready yet?
43. Our firm advertises expensive cars in several periodicals.
44. Our parents used to have a house in the country.
45. Who will have to prepare the hall for the concert?
46. The water is lapping the long branches of the willows.
47. She is still dreaming of that lovely ball.
48. You can light the oven with dry bark.
49. Anne lives in a world of dreams.
50. You will have to saw and plane those boards before you nail them together.
– But I can't saw with this old saw, and I have no hammer and no nails.
51. I do not need a plane; this board is already smooth.
52. This is a fairly straight road.
53. The industrious woman was ironing her husband's shirts.
54. Is that a genuine gold watch?
55. Supper will be at 11:45.
56. My passport was in my waistcoat pocket, after all!
57. Against the blue sky I could see the castle clearly.

58. Geese's ears cannot be seen.
59. A few seconds later, the waves were lapping the edge of the road.
60. What are the students now studying in the faculty of architecture?
61. Do you cook with gas?
62. Why do you have to go through the water, when you can go by the bridge?

LESSON 90

DEBITIVE MOOD: CONDITIONAL

The conditional forms of the debitive mood are very simply formed in accordance with the principles set forth in the three preceding lessons. Thus:

<i>man būtu jāstrādā</i>	I would have to work; I ought to work
<i>tev būtu jāredz</i>	you would have to see; you ought to see
<i>viņam būtu jāsolā</i>	he would have to promise; he ought to promise
<i>viņai būtu jāmēģina</i>	she would have to try; she ought to try
<i>mums būtu jāgaida</i>	we would have to wait; we ought to wait
<i>jums būtu jārunā</i>	you would have to speak; you ought to speak
<i>viņiem būtu jāpalīdz</i>	they would have to help; they ought to help
<i>viņām būtu jāklausa</i>	they would have to obey; they ought to obey

Pay particular attention to the two quite different meanings of debitive conditionals:

(a) I would have to . . .

(b) I ought to . . .

The negative is formed, as one would expect, with *nebūtu*:

Saimniekam nebūtu jāpārdod zirgs.

The farmer would not have to sell the horse.

The farmer ought not (should not, etc.) sell the horse.

Remember too that in clauses beginning with *ja: if*, the verb must be in the conditional if the verb of the main clause is in the conditional. This remark applies equally well to debitive forms:

Ja tu man klausītu, man nebūtu tevi jāsoģa.

If you obeyed me, I would not have to punish you.

Es būtu dusmīģs, ja man tas būtu jāģara.

I would be angry if I had to do that.

Vocabulary

<i>teļgramma</i>	telegram	<i>tramvajs</i>	tram, tramway
<i>adrese</i>	address	<i>ietne</i>	footpath
<i>uzvārds</i>	surname	<i>notēka</i>	gutter, drain
<i>sevišķs</i>	special	<i>apgabals</i>	district, province
<i>sēns</i> (occ. <i>sēns</i>)	ancient	<i>Vidzeme</i>	} the four provinces of Latvia
<i>savāds</i>	strange, peculiar	<i>Latgale</i>	
<i>varonis</i>	hero	<i>Kurzeme</i>	
<i>dzelzceļš</i>	railway	<i>Zemgale</i>	

NOTE: Some speakers prefer the form *ietve* to *ietne*.

Exercise 90a

Give the second person singular debitive (present, imperfect, future and conditional) of: *apdrošināt*; *dabūt*; *dejoj*; *smēķēt*.

Exercise 90b

Put the answers obtained in Ex. 90a into the negative.

Exercise 90c

What are the rules governing the use of the nominative and accusative with verbs in the debitive mood?

Exercise 90d

Translate into English:

1. Ja kāds zirgs stāvētu ielas vidū, tad tramvajam būtu jāpietur.
2. Šī romāna varonis ir savāds cilvēks; viņam ir nemierīga daba, un tomēr viņš ir jauks un laipns.
3. Senos laikos Vidzemē bija daudz skaistu piļu.
4. Ūdens noteka pie ielas būtu jāizskalo, jo tā ir pilna ar papīriem, cigarešu un sērkokļu kastītēm, ābolu mizām un koku lapām.

5. Sappos es bieži ceļoju pa Vidzemes kalniem un ielejām, pa Latgales birzēm, Zemgales auglīgajiem laukiem un Kurzemes tumšajiem mežiem.
6. Šinī aploksnē ir telegramma.
7. Uzvārds ir pareizs, bet adrese nepareiza.
8. Ja šeit mājas priekšā nebūtu ietnes, mums būtu jāstaigā pa dubļiem.
9. Kurā Latvijas apgabalā jūs dzīvojāt? – Vidzemē.
10. Pie mūzeja ir tramvaja pietura.
11. Lietus noskaloja putekļus un smiltis no ietnes, un tagad pa notekām tek ūdens straumītes.
12. Ja mācītājs mūs pēkšņi apciemotu, tad sievai būtu jāsatavojas kaut kas sevišķs vakariņām.
13. Juris Kociņš strādā ilgu gadu uz dzelzceļa.
14. Vai šī jums ir kāda sevišķa diena?
15. Jaunais dzelzceļš caur kalniem drīz būs gatavs.
16. Ja man nebūtu mašīnas, man būtu jāiet uz tramvaju.
17. Ja viņam nebūtu tālruna, man tagad būtu jāsūta viņam telegramma.
18. Ja jūs mainītu savu adresi, tad jums tas būtu jāpaziņo pastam.
19. Ja krustmāte būtu šeit, mums atkal būtu jādzird viņas senie stāsti.
20. Vai uzvārds un adrese uz aploksnis ir pareizi?
21. Kurš aktieris tēlo galveno varoni šinī lugā? – Šinī lugā īsta varoņa nav.
22. Tā gan ir savāda pastmarka.
23. Ja mūzejā kāds gribētu pīpēt, viņam būtu jāiet gaitenī.
24. Viņam ir sens latviešu uzvārds.
25. Dzelzceļa stacijās parasti pārdod laikrakstus un arī lētus romāņus.
26. Vecāki tevi brīdināja, bet tu viņiem neklausīji.
27. Pastnieks iet pa ietni ar smagu maisu uz pleca.
28. Notekā peld bērnu papīra laiviņas.
29. Sidnejai ir dabīga osta.
30. Mēs gaidām svarīgu telegrammu no kāda uzņēmuma Kurzemē.
31. Katram Latvijas apgabalam ir savs sevišķs skaistums. (Note the indefinite adjective: *a special beauty of its own*.)
32. Ja tu klausītu, man tevi nekad nebūtu jāsoda.
33. Vai Zvaigznes kundzei vakar bija moderns kažoks mugurā?
34. Latgale ir bagāta ar ezeriem.
35. Kurzemē ziemā nekad nav tik auksts laiks kā Latgalē un Zemgales austrumu daļā.
36. Mēs pavadījām savu vasaras brīvlaiku krusttēva mājās Zemgalē.
37. Varbūt mums būtu jāgaida pie citas pieturas.
38. Ja tu pazaudētu šīs āķeres, tev būtu jādabū citas.
39. Cilvēki parasti nevar grozīt savu dabu.
40. Viļņi skalo jūrmalas smiltis.

Exercise 90e

Translate into Latvian:

1. To obtain Charles's address, you would only have to ring his cousin.
2. "If you lost your tram ticket, I would have to sell you another one, sir," said the conductor.
3. This house has indeed a peculiar roof.
4. You are not allowed to walk along the railway-line.
5. The footpaths and gutters were full of snow and ice.
6. The hero of this short story is a postman.
7. You ought to write your name and address on this envelope.
8. We are expecting an important telegram from a businessman in Zemgale.
9. The fur coat she had on was nothing special.
10. This is a novel about olden times in Kurzeme and Vidzeme.
11. In which province of Latvia is Cēsis? – Cēsis is in Vidzeme.
12. A new railway-line is being built in Western Australia.
13. There is nothing special in this museum.
14. If there were just one stamp in this box, I would not have to go to the post-office.
15. Riga is not only the capital city of Latvia, but also the capital of Vidzeme.
(*capital city = galvas pilsēta*)
16. The tram-stop is in front of our house.
17. If you all wiped your muddy shoes more often, I would not have to clean the corridor so often.
18. This ancient folk-song describes the death of a hero.
19. Which province in Latvia has the most lakes? – Latgale.
20. There are now gutters along the foot-paths.
21. This man has indeed a strange nature.
22. Our parents have visitors from Latgale.
23. Did I give you the dentist's address?
24. She gathered those strawberries in the vicinity of the railway-line.
25. If no danger threatened us on the roads, we would not have to walk along foot-paths.
26. In olden times people did not have surnames.
27. How many words does my telegram contain, and how much must I pay for each word?
28. Ought I to send her a telegram on her wedding-day, just because she works in my office?
29. That is an authentic German surname.
30. What an odd light there is in the western sky!
31. Trams are not as fast as buses.

SLAVISTIC PRINTINGS AND REPRINTINGS

edited by

C. H. VAN SCHOONEVELD

Indiana University

304

TREVOR G. FENNELL
HENRY GELSEN

A GRAMMAR OF
MODERN LATVIAN

VOLUME II

MOUTON PUBLISHERS
THE HAGUE · PARIS · NEW YORK

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

Preface	XIII
Acknowledgements	XV
Abbreviations	XVII
Introduction	XIX
Lesson 1. The present tense of <i>būt</i> ; nominative singular and plural of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	1
Lesson 2. Singular declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	4
Lesson 3. Plural declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	8
Lesson 4. Dative of possession	11
Lesson 5. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i> : Present tense	15
Lesson 6. Dative case of the personal pronouns	18
Lesson 7. Negation of verbs, excluding possessive expressions	22
Lesson 8. Negation of possessive expressions	26
Lesson 9. Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	30
Lesson 10. Imperfect tense of mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	33
Lesson 11. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-īt</i> : present and imperfect; imperfect tense of <i>būt</i>	38
Lesson 12. Conjugation of the irregular verbs <i>iet</i> and <i>dot</i>	42
Lesson 13. Possessive adjectives	46
Lesson 14. The indefinite declension of adjectives	51
Lesson 15. Full declension of the personal pronouns	56
Lesson 16. The preposition <i>pie</i>	61
Lesson 17. Nouns and adjectives ending in <i>-š</i>	65
Lesson 18. Conjugation of <i>zināt</i> , <i>dziedāt</i> and <i>raudāt</i>	70
Lesson 19. More prepositions with the genitive	75
Lesson 20. Long conjugation verbs with infinitive in <i>-ot</i>	81
Lesson 21. Long conjugation verbs in <i>-āt</i>	87
Lesson 22. Revision and classification of verbs. Verbs with the indefinite subject	92
Lesson 23. Revision of adverbs	98
Lesson 24. Declension of feminine nouns ending in <i>-e</i>	104
Lesson 25. Revision of adjectives	108
Lesson 26. The definite declension of adjectives, masculine singular ..	113
Lesson 27. The definite declension of adjectives, feminine singular	118
Lesson 28. Revision of the definite declension of adjectives-singular ..	123

ISBN 90 279 7936 7

© Copyright 1980 by Mouton Publishers, The Hague. All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form — by photoprint, microfilm, or any other means — nor transmitted nor translated into a machine language without written permission from the publisher Typesetting, printing, and binding: Kultura, Budapest
Printed in Hungary

Lesson 29.	Definite declension of adjectives, masculine plural	127
Lesson 30.	Definite declension of adjectives, feminine plural	132
Lesson 31.	Further uses of the definite adjective	136
Lesson 32.	Verbs with palatalized consonant in the present tense. Some third person verbs. The prepositions <i>uz</i> and <i>no</i>	142
Lesson 33.	Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs. Three prepositions with the accusative	147
Lesson 34.	The Future tense	153
Lesson 35.	The numerals 1 to 10	159
Lesson 36.	Imperatives	166
Lesson 37.	Numerals from 11 to 20	172
Lesson 38.	The Accusative of duration of time	177
Lesson 39.	Formation of adverbs	182
Lesson 40.	The Conditional	188
Lesson 41.	The prepositions <i>līdz</i> and <i>uz</i>	192
Lesson 42.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	197
Lesson 43.	The relative pronoun and interrogative adjective <i>kurš</i>	202
Lesson 44.	Days of the week; time of day	209
Lesson 45.	Verbs with depalatalized present stems	214
Lesson 46.	Further negations with <i>ne-</i>	221
Lesson 47.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	225
Lesson 48.	Numerals from 20 to 59	230
Lesson 49.	Comparative degree of adjectives	235
Lesson 50.	Comparison structures	240
Lesson 51.	Some examples of compound verbs: Introduction to the notion of aspect	247
Lesson 52.	Superlative degree of the adjective	253
Lesson 53.	Feminine form of nouns in <i>-ājs</i> and <i>-nieks</i>	258
Lesson 54.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-līt</i> and <i>-ūt</i>	262
Lesson 55.	The English infinitive	266
Lesson 56.	Numerals from 60 to 100	271
Lesson 57.	The English infinitive used adjectivally	275
Lesson 58.	Conjugation of verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	279
Lesson 59.	Verb summary	284
Lesson 60.	Declension of <i>kas</i>	291
Lesson 61.	Postpositions	297
Lesson 62.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i>	302
Lesson 63.	Numerals from 100 to 1000	307
Lesson 64.	Further remarks on numerals: Conflicting case requirements	311
Lesson 65.	Declension and use of <i>tas</i>	317
Lesson 66.	Some invariable adjectives	322

Lesson 67.	<i>Neviens</i> and <i>kāds</i> as adjectives	327
Lesson 68.	The declension of certain masculine nouns in <i>-ens</i>	333
Lesson 69.	Accusative of extent of distance	337
Lesson 70.	Declension of <i>suns</i> 'dog'	343
Lesson 71.	The adjective and pronoun <i>abi</i> 'both'	347
Lesson 72.	Declension and use of <i>šis</i> 'this'	352
Lesson 73.	Ordinal numbers from 1st to 10th	357
Lesson 74.	Negations with <i>ne... ne</i> and <i>vairs</i>	361
Lesson 75.	Ordinal numbers from 11th to 20th	366
Lesson 76.	Latvian names and forms of address	371
Lesson 77.	Ordinal numbers from 21st to 100th	377
Lesson 78.	Ordinal numbers from 101st to 1000th	381
Lesson 79.	Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-s</i> ; the masculine noun <i>laudis</i>	385
Lesson 80.	Comparative degree of adverbs	390
Lesson 81.	Superlative degree of adverbs	395
Lesson 82.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	400
Lesson 83.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-e</i>	406
Lesson 84.	The genitive plural: irregular forms of feminine nouns in <i>-e</i> and <i>-s</i>	412
Lesson 85.	Summary of noun declensions	417
Lesson 86.	Time by the clock	422
Lesson 87.	Debitive mood: present tense	428
Lesson 88.	Debitive mood: imperfect tense	435
Lesson 89.	Debitive mood: future tense	440
Lesson 90.	Debitive mood: conditional	445

VOLUME II

Lesson 91.	Cardinal and ordinal numbers above 1000	449
Lesson 92.	Months and dates	454
Lesson 93.	The noun <i>reize</i> and its compounds	460
Lesson 94.	Declension and use of <i>pats</i>	464
Lesson 95.	Verbs of perception followed by a participle	470
Lesson 96.	Adverbs in <i>-up</i>	475
Lesson 97.	Masculine nouns in <i>-a</i> and <i>-e</i>	479
Lesson 98.	The preposition <i>pa</i> used distributively	483
Lesson 99.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i> and <i>-ns</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-s</i>	487

Lesson 100.	The vocative case	492
Lesson 101.	The past participle active; the present perfect tense	497
Lesson 102.	The past perfect tense	503
Lesson 103.	The future perfect tense	508
Lesson 104.	The conditional perfect	512
Lesson 105.	Adverbs in <i>-am</i> and <i>-ām</i>	516
Lesson 106.	More invariable adjectives	519
Lesson 107.	The verb <i>sargāt</i>	523
Lesson 108.	Verb summary	527
Lesson 109.	Open <i>ɛ</i> and closed <i>ɛ</i>	535
Lesson 110.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses	542
Lesson 111.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses. Verbs containing <i>e</i> in the stem	548
Lesson 112.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: compound tenses	552
Lesson 113.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>nākt</i>	556
Lesson 114.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>lēkt</i>	561
Lesson 115.	Agreement of adjectives with the debitive of <i>būt</i>	565
Lesson 116.	More adverbs of time	569
Lesson 117.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type	572
Lesson 118.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type, stems in <i>-st</i> , <i>-zt</i> ; alternation of <i>e</i>	577
Lesson 119.	The short conjugation: future tense of verbs in <i>-st</i> and <i>-zt</i>	582
Lesson 120.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: short vowel in the present tense	586
Lesson 121.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: long vowel in the imperfect only	591
Lesson 122.	Adjectives in <i>-ējs</i>	595
Lesson 123.	Adjectives modified by 'too'	600
Lesson 124.	The short conjugation: unchanged type	605
Lesson 125.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the imperfect	610
Lesson 126.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the present	616
Lesson 127.	The short conjugation: unchanged type, long vowel in the present (irregular)	621
Lesson 128.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: short vowel in the present	625
Lesson 129.	Adverbial nouns of place	629
Lesson 130.	<i>Kaut</i>	633

Lesson 131.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced)	637
Lesson 132.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced): long vowel in the present	641
Lesson 133.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced)	645
Lesson 134.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced): long vowel in the present	648
Lesson 135.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced and unvoiced): irregular long vowel in the present	652
Lesson 136.	Imperfective and perfective verbs	656
Lesson 137.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	660
Lesson 138.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	665
Lesson 139.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type	669
Lesson 140.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type, with dental (voiced and unvoiced)	674
Lesson 141.	<i>Šāds</i> and <i>tāds</i> : adjectives and pronouns	679
Lesson 142.	Irregular masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	682
Lesson 143.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type	686
Lesson 144.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, long vowel in the present	690
Lesson 145.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, with unvoiced dental, with and without long vowel in the present	694
Lesson 146.	Questions with <i>lai</i>	697
Lesson 147.	Avoidance of the possessive adjective	701
Lesson 148.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type	706
Lesson 149.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, short vowel in present and imperfect	710
Lesson 150.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-iet</i>	714
Lesson 151.	Omission of the verb <i>ir</i>	718
Lesson 152.	Omission of <i>ar</i>	722
Lesson 153.	The short conjugation: nasal type	726
Lesson 154.	The short conjugation: nasal type, with alternation <i>i-e-i</i>	730
Lesson 155.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i>	733
Lesson 156.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i> with an imperative	739
Lesson 157.	The short conjugation: nasal type (<i>-iet</i>) with anomalous imperfect	743
Lesson 158.	Countries, inhabitants and languages	747
Lesson 159.	Adjectives with the prefix <i>pa-</i>	752
Lesson 160.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, in <i>-ūt</i>	754
Lesson 161.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, infinitives in <i>-aut</i>	758
Lesson 162.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>aut</i>	762
Lesson 163.	The present participle active in <i>-ošs</i>	765

Lesson 164.	The present participle active in <i>-ot</i>	772
Lesson 165.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (unvoiced) type	777
Lesson 166.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (voiced) type	781
Lesson 167.	The dative absolute	787
Lesson 168.	The debitive of <i>būt</i> with a following noun	792
Lesson 169.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type	797
Lesson 170.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, alternation of <i>e</i>	802
Lesson 171.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-st</i>	806
Lesson 172.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, long vowel in the present	811
Lesson 173.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, irregular long vowel in the present	815
Lesson 174.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, some anomalous spellings	820
Lesson 175.	Alternative formation of the comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs	824
Lesson 176.	Prepositions and nouns cognate with postpositions and adverbs	828
Lesson 177.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (unvoiced) mixed type	833
Lesson 178.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (voiced) mixed type	837
Lesson 179.	The present participle passive	841
Lesson 180.	The present participle passive (cont.)	847
Lesson 181.	The present participle passive (cont.)	851
Lesson 182.	The present participle passive (cont.)	856
Lesson 183.	The present participle passive (cont.)	860
Lesson 184.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-j-</i>	865
Lesson 185.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-n-</i>	869
Lesson 186.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-v-</i>	873
Lesson 187.	The past participle passive	877
Lesson 188.	The passive voice	883
Lesson 189.	Avoidance of the passive voice	890
Lesson 190.	The short conjugation: the verbs <i>brist</i> and <i>list</i>	895
Lesson 191.	The anomalous verb <i>virt</i>	899
Lesson 192.	Declension of <i>māness</i> and <i>biedrs</i>	903
Lesson 193.	Summary of the short conjugation	906
Lesson 194.	The possessive pronouns	915

VOLUME III

Lesson 195.	Reflexive verbs: present tense	919
Lesson 196.	Reflexive verbs: imperfect tense	926
Lesson 197.	Reflexive verbs: future tense	930
Lesson 198.	Reflexive verbs: conditional	934
Lesson 199.	Reflexive verbs: imperatives	938
Lesson 200.	Reflexive verbs: past participle and perfect tenses	943
Lesson 201.	Reflexive verbs: the debitive mood	948
Lesson 202.	The past participle (active and reflexive) in participial phrases	952
Lesson 203.	The past participle (active and reflexive) used adjectivally	957
Lesson 204.	Reflexive verbs: other participial forms	962
Lesson 205.	Reflexive verbs: revision	967
Lesson 206.	Diminutive adjectives and adverbs	971
Lesson 207.	Indeclinable nouns	976
Lesson 208.	Partitive genitive and accusative of exclamation	980
Lesson 209.	Further remarks on the syntax of participles	986
Lesson 210.	Future imperatives	991
Lesson 211.	The verbal prefix <i>aiz-</i>	995
Lesson 212.	The verbal prefix <i>ap-</i>	1000
Lesson 213.	The verbal prefix <i>at-</i>	1005
Lesson 214.	The verbal prefix <i>ie-</i>	1010
Lesson 215.	The verbal prefix <i>iz-</i>	1015
Lesson 216.	The verbal prefix <i>no-</i>	1021
Lesson 217.	The verbal prefix <i>pa-</i>	1027
Lesson 218.	The verbal prefix <i>pār-</i>	1031
Lesson 219.	The verbal prefix <i>pie-</i>	1037
Lesson 220.	The verbal prefix <i>sa-</i>	1043
Lesson 221.	The verbal prefix <i>uz-</i>	1049
Lesson 222.	Interjections	1054
Lesson 223.	Verbal nouns in <i>-šana</i>	1060
Lesson 224.	Reflexive verbal nouns in <i>-šanās</i>	1065
Lesson 225.	Other reflexive nouns	1070
Lesson 226.	Further numerals	1076
Lesson 227.	Conjunctive mood: present tense	1084
Lesson 228.	Conjunctive mood: future tense	1090
Lesson 229.	Conjunctive mood: perfect tenses	1095
Lesson 230.	Conjunctive mood: debitive forms	1100
Lesson 231.	Conjunctive passive	1105
Lesson 232.	The adjectival suffix <i>-ains</i>	1110

Lesson 233. The adjectival suffix <i>-isks</i>	1115
Lesson 234. The adjectival suffix <i>-igs</i>	1119
Lesson 235. The noun suffix <i>-ums</i>	1124
Lesson 236. The noun suffix <i>-iens</i>	1129
Lesson 237. The noun suffix <i>-nieks</i> (fem. <i>-niece</i>)	1134
Lesson 238. The noun suffix <i>-iba</i>	1140
Lesson 239. The noun suffixes <i>-eklis</i> and <i>-ēklis</i>	1146
Lesson 240. The noun suffixes <i>-ava</i> and <i>-uve</i>	1153
Lesson 241. Factitive verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	1158
Lesson 242. Further numerals	1164
Lesson 243. Cognate adverbs	1170
Lesson 244. The impersonal passive	1176
Latvian-English Vocabulary	1182
English-Latvian Vocabulary	1273
Select Bibliography	1361
Grammatical Index	1363
Index of Authors and Reading Passages	1369

32. If I gave you a good drama or comedy to read, you would not have to read that silly periodical any longer.
33. Vidzeme is Latvia's largest province.
34. Last night there was a strong frost.
35. In Kurzeme and Zemgale the berry-alders are now blooming.
36. During our summer holidays we shall travel through the forests of Kurzeme and the rich, fertile fields of Zemgale.
37. My shoulder doesn't hurt any more.
38. If she possessed natural beauty, she would not have to colour her face and hair.
39. Do all vegetables have to be peeled?
40. Please give me back my dishes, so that I can prepare lunch.
41. John had to go to the shop, because his mother needed flour, butter and cabbages.
42. I dreamt that you were sick.

LESSON 91

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS ABOVE 1000

There is no problem in the formation of the higher cardinals and ordinals, as will be seen from the following table.

Cardinal

1000	<i>tūkstoš</i>
2000	<i>divi tūkstoši</i> or <i>divtūkstoš</i>
3000	<i>trīs tūkstoši</i> or <i>trīstūkstoš</i>
4000	<i>četri tūkstoši</i> or <i>četrītūkstoš</i>
5000	<i>pieci tūkstoši</i> or <i>piectūkstoš</i>

and so on.

Ordinal

<i>tūkstošais, tūkstotais</i>
<i>divi tūkstošais</i> (or <i>-tais</i>) or <i>divtūkstošais</i> (<i>-tais</i>)
<i>trīs tūkstošais</i> (or <i>-tais</i>) or <i>trīstūkstošais</i> (<i>-tais</i>)
<i>četri tūkstošais</i> (or <i>-tais</i>) or <i>četrītūkstošais</i> (<i>-tais</i>)
<i>pieci tūkstošais</i> (or <i>-tais</i>) or <i>piectūkstošais</i> (<i>-tais</i>)

and so on.

Remember that the ordinal differs from the cardinal only in the final element:

642,917 *sešsimt četrdesmit divi tūkstoši deviņsimt septiņpadsmit*
 642,917th *sešsimt četrdesmit divi tūkstoši deviņsimt septiņpadsmitais*

The cardinal 'million' *miljons* has no corresponding ordinal.

Remember that round tens, hundreds, thousands and millions require the genitive of the following noun.

The word *miljons* is a noun, whereas the others are numerals. Hence, the normal rules for precedence of other cases over the genitive (cf. *ar desmit vīriem*) do not apply, *miljons* being *always* followed by the genitive.

ar miljonu vīru with a million men

Vocabulary

<i>miljons</i>	million
<i>ap</i> (+ acc.)	around, about
<i>pildīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to fill
<i>piepildīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to fill, to fill up
<i>spainis</i>	bucket
<i>katls</i>	kettle; cooking-pot; (ship's) boiler
<i>iedzīvotājs</i>	inhabitant
<i>spodrināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to polish
<i>spožs</i>	shiny, bright
<i>restorāns</i>	restaurant
<i>maltīte</i>	meal
<i>pasūtīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to order (a meal, etc.)
<i>viesmīlis</i>	waiter
<i>sākums</i>	beginning
<i>beigas</i> (-u)	end
<i>galdaclūka</i>	table-cloth
<i>apmeklēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to visit, patronize, attend

NOTES! *Restorāns* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.
 The forms *ap cikiem* 'at about what time', *līdz cikiem* 'until what time', etc.,
 depend like *cikos* 'at what time' upon a hypothetical nominative form **ciki*.
 Alongside *pasūtīt* there is a less common form *pasūtīnāt*.

Exercise 91a

Translate into English: *divi tūkstoši astoņsimt septiņdesmit trešais*; *deviņpadsmit tūkstoši četrsimt astoņpadsmitais*; *simt divi tūkstoši simt deviņdesmit deviņtais*; *astoņsimt trīsdesmit seši tūkstoši deviņsimt piecdesmit ceturtais*.

Exercise 91b

Translate into Latvian: 1234th, 2345th, 3456th, 4567th, 56,789th, 67,890th, 78,901st, 89,012th, 901,234th, 123,456th, 987,654th, 666,666th.

Exercise 91c

Give the first person singular of the four deictive tenses of: *noslaucīt*; *kaitināt*; *atdot*; *piezvanīt*; *pasūtīt*.

Exercise 91d

Translate into English:

- Šinī pilsētā ir apmēram miljons iedzīvotāju.
- Šinī fabrikas nodaļā pilda tintes pudeles.
- Tev spainis jāpiepilda līdz malām.
- Viesmīlim atkal un atkal bija jāpiepilda glāzes.
- Jūs esat desmit tūkstotais cilvēks, kas apmeklē mūsu restorānu; tāpēc jūs varat pasūtīt visu, ko jūs gribat, un jums par to nebūs jāmaksā.
- Mana sieva smēķē tikai pēc maltītēm.
- Katlus un podus var spodrināt ar jūras smiltīm.
- Jau gada sākumā saimniece pasūtīja jaunus aizkarus kādā pilsētas veikalā, bet mēs tos tomēr vēl gaidām.
- Šie galdauti būtu jāmazgā ar karstu ūdeni un ziepēm.
- Bankas aizdevums man jānomaksā līdz gada beigām.
- Šinī tālruņa grāmatā ir apmēram tūkstoš adrešu.
- Zirga spalva ir spoža.
- Šinī apgabalā ir apmēram sešsimt piecdesmit tūkstoši iedzīvotāju.
- Apmeklējiet Latgales dziesmu svētkus!
- Katrs sākums ir grūts. (Proverb)
- Mēneša beigās viesmīlim bija tikai apmēram desmit latu kabatā.
- Pirmais cēliens jau iet uz beigām.
- Sudraba trauki bieži jāspodrina.
- Bērnam ir karsta galva un spožas acis: viņš laikam ir slim.
- Jūs sakāt, ka jums sāp galva tikai pēc maltītēm?

21. Nabadzīgās zemēs tikai katram tūkstošajam iedzīvotājam pieder mašīna, un varbūt katram divi tūkstošajam ir tālrunis.
22. Ar ko Fords nopelnīja savus miljonus?
23. Ievārījumu vāra sevišķos katlos.
24. Šis spainis ir jāizskalo, pirms to lieto.
25. Nedēļas sākumā restorānā nekad nav tik daudz ļaužu kā sestdienās.
26. Es tūlīprasišu viesmīlim, vai viņam tās zivis, ko mēs pirms stundas pasūtījām, varbūt būs jāmakšķerē!
27. Kāpostu lapas parasti pilda ar gaļu un rīsiem.
28. Piepildiet glāzes, draugi!
29. Tanī restorānā bija neparasti galdauti.
30. Vasaras brīvlaikā mēs apmeklēsim savus draugus Kurzemē un Zemgalē.
31. Šī fabrika ražo spaiņus un katlus.
32. Ādas mēbeles bieži jāspodrīna.
33. Ar šīm spožajām korpēm tev gan nevajadzētu staigāt pa dubļaino ietni.
34. Cikos šīnī viesnīcā ir galvenās maltītes?
35. Tas ir lēts kokvilnas galdauds.
36. Ap cikiem man būtu tevi jāgaida pie tramvaja pieturas? – Starp astoņiem un ceturksni pēc astoņiem.
37. Juris Vilks dabūja deviņi tūkstoši sešsimt astoņdesmit sešas balsis un Kārlis Ozoliņš deviņi tūkstoši četršimt septiņdesmit deviņas balsis, bet apmēram deviņi tūkstoši balsu vēl jāskaita.
38. Līdz cikiem šis restorāns ir vajā?
39. Ap kuru laiku viņš dabūja telegrammu no Cēsīm?
40. Tam cilvēkam gan ir savāds uzvārds.
41. Piepildīsim mucu ar rupjām smiltīm!
42. Attālums no zemes līdz saulei ir apmēram simt piecdesmit miljonu kilometru.
43. Mēs staigājām gar dzelzceļu.
44. Šos senos varoņu stāstus tagad neviens vairs nelasa.
45. Notekas šeit ir apmēram divas pēdas platas.
46. Ap Jāņiem šīnī apgabalā vēl var sagaidīt nakts salnu.
47. Vidzemes augstākie kalni ir tikai apmēram tūkstoš pēdas augsti.
48. Kurā gadā Blaumanis uzrakstīja savu drāmu "Uguni"?
49. Mani vecāki lasa tikai vecas noveles un neinteresantus laikrakstus.
50. Vai tev arvien vēl sāp pleci un mugura?
51. Pastnieki redz daudz retu un skaistu pastmarku uz aploksnēm.
52. "Labrīt! Vai jūs šeit pārdodat segas un spilvenus?" – "Nē, šīnī nodaļā pārdod tikai brilles, gredzenus un saktas."
53. Šeit nekur nav miera.
54. Pirms dažām minūtēm vannas istabā bija daži dvieļi, bet kur tie ir tagad?
55. Lūdzu, nediktējiet tik ātri – es jums nevaru sekot!

Exercise 91e

Translate into Latvian:

1. At about what time did the doctor visit him?
2. You must polish the kettle with very fine sand.
3. The restaurant is already closed.
4. Can salt water be used in ships' boilers?
5. You should read this novel from beginning to end.
6. You could fill a dozen glasses from this bottle.
7. The stars are very bright tonight.
8. Shall we go fishing at the week-end?
9. Anne has to iron all these table-cloths.
10. There is milk in those two buckets.
11. This bridge was built for one million dollars.
12. Ask the waiter what they stuff (*pildīti*) these chickens with.
13. In Europe a town with more than a hundred thousand inhabitants is a city.
14. Only 850,000 votes were counted.
15. He is working as a waiter in the railway restaurant.
16. You should clean your teeth after every meal.
17. Fill up the bucket to the brim (*malā*).
18. The meals in the restaurant do not taste good any longer: I shall have to look for a wife.
19. Each autumn our father ordered a large box of apples from a farmer in Kurzeme.
20. At the end of the summer, all the pupils will have to go back to school.
21. Visit beautiful Vidzeme at the beginning of summer!
22. A million tiny flowers are blooming on the fallow-ground.
23. Before we order anything, let us ask the waiter's advice.
24. The table-cloth was as white as snow.
25. Telegrams are usually very brief, because each word costs money.
26. A glass of beer tastes best before meals.
27. May I fill up your glass, sir?
28. The children were filling up their buckets with yellow sand.
29. In Latvia around St. John's Day one can usually swim in the sea.
30. Leather must be polished with a woollen cloth.
31. The kettle was as shiny as gold.
32. At about what time ought I to light the stove? – Around seven o'clock. It is not particularly cold tonight.
33. At the beginning of autumn, the squirrels were filling their nests with acorns.
34. Only one in a thousand of the inhabitants (*katrs tūkstotais iedzīvotājs*) visits the museum.

35. Ancient stories tell us about the heroes of our nation.
36. The address and surname must be written in (*ar*) ink.
37. What odd sheets! – Those are not sheets, they are table-cloths.
38. That is only an old iron bucket. We don't have to polish that.
39. The gentlemen at table number eight have ordered a goose and a bottle of wine.
40. Our farmer had the best horses and the shiniest cart.
41. Now the merchant is in Zemgale, and he will be in Latgale around Whitsun (*Vasaras svētki*).
42. The tram must stop at the corner of the street.
43. In some cities there are drains in the middle of the streets.
44. The foot-path is about three metres wide.
45. Tonight there will be fog in the whole region (*apgabals*).
46. Out of 650,000 inhabitants, only 8,000 are attending a university.
47. The yard and the fountain can be seen from the window in the corridor.
48. You should paint in natural sun-light.
49. Many ancient states no longer exist.
50. At about what time was that castle built?
51. Around what place did you prospect for (*meklēt*) precious stones?
52. Lightning was flashing at about nine o'clock.
53. Did you order a bottle of wine?
54. Good night! I shall have to leave at once.
55. Whom did you invite? We must calculate how many guests **there will be**.
56. Good day, sir! Do you wish to insure your house?
57. Do not greet young ladies in the street when you are with me.
58. Good evening, dear friends! How are you all?

LESSON 92

MONTHS AND DATES

The twelve months of the year are:

<i>janvāris</i>	<i>jūlijs</i>
<i>februāris</i>	<i>augusts</i>
<i>marts</i>	<i>septembris</i>
<i>aprīlis</i>	<i>oktobris</i>
<i>maijs</i>	<i>novembris</i>
<i>jūnijs</i>	<i>decembris</i>

It will be observed that some of the months belong to the *-s* declension, while the others belong to the *-is* declension. All are masculine. *Oktobris* and *novembris* have foreign monophthongal *o*.

You will recall that Latvian does not allow the juxtaposition of a noun and a cardinal numeral, as in the English 'platform five', 'page ten'.

Similarly, one cannot say 'the year 1968' in Latvian, but must use the ordinal, i.e., 'the 1968th year'.

(the year) 1968	<i>tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit astotais gads</i>
in (the year) 1939	<i>tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit deviņtajā gadā</i>
before (the year) 1850	<i>pirms tūkstoš astoņsimt piecdesmitā gada</i>
until (the year) 1919	<i>līdz tūkstoš deviņsimt deviņpadsmitajam gadam</i>

or abbreviated,

1968. g.; 1939. g.; pirms 1850. g.; līdz 1919. g.

If the date is further specified, either with the precise day, or simply with the name of the month, then the ordinal expression of the year is put into the genitive, and precedes the further precisions:

in March, 1736	<i>tūkstoš septiņsimt trīsdesmit sestā gada martā</i>
the 14th of April, 1827	<i>tūkstoš astoņsimt divdesmit septītajā gada četrpadsmitais aprīlis</i>

Two important things need to be observed in the above examples:

- (1) the noun *gads* may not be omitted; and
- (2) no genitive is involved in translating the '14th of April' and corresponding date forms. The ordinal number and the name of the month are always in the same case:

the tenth of March	<i>desmitais marts</i>
after the tenth of March	<i>pēc desmitā marta</i>
until the tenth of March	<i>līdz desmitajam martam</i>
on the tenth of March	<i>desmitajā martā</i>
about the tenth of March	<i>ap desmito martu</i>
Cf. on the 28th of February, 1628	<i>tūkstoš sešsimt divdesmit astotā gada divdesmit astotajā februārī</i>

When the day of the week is required as well, it is prefixed to the rest of the expression:

Friday, the 12th of May, 1967

piektdiena, tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit septītā gada divpadsmitais maijs

on Friday, the 12th of May, 1967

piektdien (or piektdienā), tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit septītā gada divpadsmitajā maijā

The shortened (or adverbial) form of the name of the day is somewhat more common than the full locative; cf. above *piektdien*, rather than *piektdienā*.

Vocabulary

Learn the names of the twelve months.

Exercise 92a

Translate into English:

- (1) *tūkstoš astoņsimt deviņdesmit septītais gads;*
- (2) *tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit astotais gads;*
- (3) *tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit deviņtajā gadā;*
- (4) *tūkstoš septiņsimt astoņdesmit deviņtajā gadā;*
- (5) *pirms tūkstoš astoņsimt piecdesmitā gada;*
- (6) *pēc tūkstoš četršimt deviņdesmit otrā gada;*
- (7) *līdz tūkstoš divsimt piecpadsmitajam gadam;*
- (8) *ap tūkstoš sešsimt četrdesmito gadu;*
- (9) *tūkstoš deviņsimt pirmā gada pirmajā janvārī;*
- (10) *tūkstoš astoņsimt astoņdesmit astotā gada divdesmit piektajā decembrī;*
- (11) *pirms tūkstoš trīsšimt piecdesmitā gada deviņpadsmitā augusta;*
- (12) *pēc tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit deviņtajā gada vienpadsmitā maija;*
- (13) *ap tūkstoš piešimt astoņdesmit trešā gada divdesmit pirmo jūliju.*

Exercise 92b

Write in full in Latvian: 1968; 1939; 1919; 1875; in 1917; in 1215; before 1588; after 1776; until 1629; around 1450; the 7th of April, 1926; on the 11th of October, 1631; before the 3rd of November, 1536; until the 12th of June, 1744; the 29th of February, 1892; on the 30th of March, 1843; after the 14th of July, 1789; around the 31st of August, 1359.

Exercise 92c

Give the first person singular of the four deictive tenses of: *sacīt; gulēt; aiziet; būt; atdot*.

Exercise 92d

Translate into English:

1. No jūlija sākuma līdz augusta beigām mūsu ģimene dzīvoja uz laukiem.
2. Tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit sestajā gadā Lieldienas bija aprīļa sākumā.
3. Namu, kurā tagad ir restorāns, uzbūvēja tūkstoš astoņsimt astoņdesmit sestajā gadā.
4. Septiņpadsmitajā janvārī mēs ar sievu apmeklējām operu.
5. Atbildiet! Kur jūs bijāt divdesmit astotā septembra vakarā? – Es jums jau sacīju, ka es biju kopā ar draugiem! – Ap cikiem jūs pie viņiem aizgājāt? – Ap septiņiem.
6. Tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit otrā gada divdesmit pirmajā februārī mūsu vecāki svinēja sudraba kāzas. (*sudraba kāzas = silver wedding anniversary*)
7. Latvijā ap marta vidu dažas puķītes jau zied.
8. Dienvidaustrālijā jūnijs bieži ir visslapjākais mēnesis gadā.
9. Kur jūs dzīvojāt līdz tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit deviņtajam gadam?
10. Pēc tūkstoš astoņsimt divpadsmitā gada Napoleonam vairs nebija laimes karā.
11. Tūkstoš deviņsimt septiņdesmit pirmā gada sešpadsmitajā maijā man vajadzēs jaunu pasi.
12. Pirms tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmitā gada Kārlis vēl nebija karavīrs.
13. Sestdien, divdesmit otrajā oktobrī Sidnejas latviešu namā būs liela balle.
14. Man celis sāp jau kopš decembra, bet tagad sāp arī abi pleci.
15. Vai tu vari izlasīt gada skaitli uz šā vecā katla? – Ar šīm brillēm laikam gan ne. Acumirkli, tas ir tūkstoš sešsimt sešpadsmitais gads, vai varbūt tūkstoš sešsimt astoņpadsmitais gads.
16. Astotajā novembrī Birutai ir dzimšanas diena, būtu jāpasūta puķes.
17. Kurš bija Anglijas spožākais laikmets?
18. Cik iedzīvotāju bija Ņujorkā ap tūkstoš deviņsimto gadu?
19. Vīnam jāstāv ilgu gadu mucās, tikai tad to var pildīt pudelēs. (Note: *pildīt* here means *to pour into*.)
20. Apmeklējiet skaisto Kurzemi maijā, kad ievas koši zied!
21. Jūlijā mēs katru dienu dārzā salasījām vienu spaini zemeņu.
22. Augustā lakstīgalas aizceļo uz dienvidiem.
23. Piepildiet glāzes, draugi! Četrpadsmitais jūlijs ir klāt! Svinēsim Francijas valsts svētkus!

24. Kāpēc tu atkal smēķē pirms maltītes?
25. Oktobrī var jau sagaidīt stipru salu.
26. Novembrī Latvijā ir visnejaukālais laiks.
27. Janvārī un februārī mēs parasti medijam lapsas un vāveres, jo tanī laikā ādas vislabāk der kažokiem.
28. Aprīļa beigās šeit būs lielas sporta sacīkstes.
29. Oktobrim ir trīsdesmit viena diena.
30. Šorīt laikrakstā atkal sludina gludekļus.
31. Pastnieka brālis ir krietns vīrs.
32. Lūdzu, stāstiet no sākuma līdz beigām, kā jūs apcietinājāt zagli!
33. Šie dēļi vēl nav gludi, tie jāēvelē.
34. Nomazgā traukus, tie nav tīri!
35. Daudz miljonu gadu pirms pasaulē bija cilvēks, vilņi jau apskaloja seno jūras krastu smiltis.

Exercise 92e

Translate into Latvian:

1. February is usually the hottest month of the year in South Australia.
2. November is usually a wet and foggy month in Latvia.
3. Can you read the figure (*gada skaitlis*) above the door? – Yes, it is 1553, probably the year in which this house was built.
4. This church was consecrated in 1224.
5. In March we shall have to polish all the kettles, buckets and silver dishes, for it will soon be Easter.
6. Monday the 11th of January is an important day for our firm (dative).
7. On Saturday the 9th of April we shall visit the theatre.
8. This restaurant will be closed from the beginning of May until the end of June.
9. Where did you spend the night from the 14th to (*uz + acc.*) the 15th of October?
10. On the 22nd of July, 1966, there was a ball in the Melbourne Town Hall.
11. The merciful old lord lived in this castle until his death on the 19th of September, 1875.
12. You must answer this letter before the 21st of December.
13. The day before yesterday was the 28th of February.
14. St. John's Day is in June, but do you know on which day?
15. The chief engineer would be grateful if you could report to him about your work around the 20th of August.
16. In July the bank lent about one million dollars.

17. The age of Victoria (*Viktorija*) was perhaps the brightest age of England. And perhaps not.
18. The meals in those two restaurants cannot be compared.
19. A strong rain would fill this bucket in two hours.
20. May I fill your glasses, ladies?
21. Before 1870 the greater part of the German population (*iedzīvotāji*) lived in the country.
22. My wife ordered some table-cloths in your department on the 12th of February. Today is the 28th of March, and we are still waiting!
23. Our daughter will be confirmed on Sunday, April the 26th; we would be happy if you could visit us on that day.
24. I see you have a new waiter here. – Yes, he has been working here only since October.
25. After the first of November, you are not allowed to light fires outside in Australia.
26. In Europe the 21st of December is the shortest day of the year.
27. He wrote those autumn poems in September, 1912.
28. There are only thirty days in September.
29. The four provinces of Latvia are Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Latgale and Zemgale.
30. I would send him a telegram if I knew his address.
31. In this street there are neither foot-paths nor gutters.
32. The tram always stops at this stop.
33. The surname must be written clearly.
34. These old paintings will be in a special new wing of the museum.
35. The tradesmen are sawing, planing and nailing in the kitchen.
36. The world's longest straight railway-line is in Australia – about four hundred and eighty kilometres long.
37. In olden times people believed in dreams much more than in our times.
38. Afternoon tea is at 3:45, and dinner at 7:30.
39. The driver gives three quarters of his salary to his wife.
40. The boards, saws, planes, hammers and nails are all on the floor.
41. You must prepare the envelope like this, with the stamp in the corner.
42. Perhaps tonight I shall again dream about a gold watch.
43. At what time will the alarm ring?
44. Why on earth are you trying to peel potatoes with scissors?
45. In this novel we read about a young woman who had to bring up six small children.

LESSON 93

THE NOUN *REIZE* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

The noun *reize* means 'time' in the sense of 'occasion' or 'repeated occasion'.

Konduktors pārbaudīja biļetes divas reizes.

The conductor examined the tickets twice.

Es viņam rakstīju sešas reizes.

I wrote to him six times.

In these sentences the phrases *divas reizes* and *sešas reizes* are in the accusative. There also exist compound forms, meaning 'three times', 'twenty times', etc.

<i>vienreiz</i>	once
<i>divreiz</i>	twice
<i>trīsreiz</i>	three times
<i>sešreiz</i>	six times
<i>desmitreiz</i>	ten times
<i>simtreiz</i>	a hundred times

Vocabulary

<i>reize</i>	a time
<i>šoreiz</i>	this time
<i>toreiz</i>	that time, on that occasion
<i>kādreiz</i>	once (upon a time); ever
<i>reizēm</i>	sometimes, at times
<i>pa reizei</i>	sometimes, at times
<i>kā kuru reizi</i>	sometimes one way, sometimes another; it all depends on the circumstances
<i>reizē (ar)</i>	at the same time (as); together (with)
<i>reizināt (-u, -āju) (ar)</i>	to multiply (by)
<i>briesmīgs</i>	horrible, dreadful
<i>troksnis</i>	noise
<i>paklājs</i>	carpet
<i>aita</i>	sheep
<i>zirņklis</i>	spider
<i>tlklis</i>	net; web
<i>zvejot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to fish
<i>zvejnieks</i>	fisherman

NOTES: *Zvejot* means 'to fish with a net', as opposed to *makšķerēt* 'to fish with a line'.

Numerals remain uninflected after *reizināt*:

Reiziniet pieci ar septiņi!

Multiply five by seven.

Exercise 93a

Translate into Latvian: the year 1644; the year 1758; in 1836; in 1883; before 1899; after 1910; around 1913.

Exercise 93b

Give the second person singular of the four debitive tenses of: *reizināt*; *zvejot*; *pildīt*; *spodrināt*; *pasūtīt*; *apmeklēt*.

Exercise 93c

Decline in the singular and plural: *es*; *tu*; *viņš*; *viņa*.

Exercise 93d

Give the Latvian names of the days of the week and the months of the year.

Exercise 93e

Translate into Latvian:

- (1) on Wednesday, the 30th of March, 1933;
- (2) on Thursday, the 4th of October, 1957;
- (3) before Sunday, the 17th of July, 1969;
- (4) around Tuesday, the 9th of August, 1966.

Exercise 93f

Translate into English:

1. Kad Jānis pirmo reizi skūpstīja meiteni, viņš vēl gāja ganos.
2. Vai novembrī var zvejot jūrā? – Kā kuru reizi, dažreiz laiks ir labs, bet reizēm tik briesmīgs, ka jāšēž krastā.
3. Šis paklājs laikam maksās apmēram divi simti dolaru. – Labāk reiziniet šo skaitli ar pieci, tad būs pareizāk!
4. Karš ir briesmīgs, bet miers pa reizei var būt vēl briesmīgāks.
5. Ja man kādreiz nav nekā ko darīt, es eju uz muzeju.
6. Šoreiz zvejniekiem gan bija laimīga diena!
7. Korim jādzied reizē ar orķestri!
8. Tālrunis zvana simtreiz dienā.
9. Zvejnieku tīkli ir ļoti gari un smagi.
10. Reizēm Ievai bija tīkliņš ap matiem.
11. Abi vilcieni atiet reizē.
12. Skolnieki jau māk reizināt.
13. Pa reizei man briesmīgi sāp ceļi un pleci.
14. Vai tu nesolīji mūs kādreiz apciemot? – Jā, tad es dzīvoju jūsu tuvumā, bet tagad man būtu jāceļo četras stundas un ar trijiem autobusiem.
15. Šodien Aivars jau otro reizi bija līdz zvejniekiem.
16. Toreiz man nebija naudas, bet šoreiz man ir.
17. Istabas stūri ir zirnekļa tīkls.
18. Šoreiz tev nav jāreizina, bet jāsaskaita.
19. Lielpilsētu ielās reizēm ir lieli trokšņi.
20. Mēs zvejojām visu nakti.
21. Zirneklis ir astoņas kājas.
22. Austrālijā ir apmēram simt piecdesmit miljonu aitu.
23. Paklājs pa reizei ir jātīra.
24. Es jau trešo reizi pasūtu glāzi alus, bet viesmīlis katru reizi tikai saka: "Tūlīt, kungs!"
25. Vai martā jau var stādīt kartupeļus? – Kā kuru reizi!
26. Artūrs aizgāja no teātra reizē ar mums, bet viņa vēl nav mājās.
27. Šīm aītām ir pavisam smalka vilna; par to jūs dabūsit krietnu naudu.
28. Viņa jau piekto reizi mēģina piezvanīt ārstam, bet tur neviens neatbild.
29. Šoreiz viņš izraudzīja skaistu kakla saiti.
30. Vai tu toreiz biji kopā ar mums jūrā, kad mēs zvejojām briesmīgajā vējā apmēram divus kilometrus no krasta?
31. Reizēm fabrikā ir tik briesmīgs troksnis, ka sāp ausis.
32. Ak, pa paklāju staigā liels zirneklis!
33. Vai jūnijā zemenes un avenes jau ir gatavas? – Kā kuru reizi, dažreiz agrāk, dažreiz vēlāk.

34. Aitas ādas kažoki ir silti, bet ļoti smagi.
35. Cik reizu nedēļā tev jāiet pie ārsta?
36. Kas tā par pateicību?
37. Kad mēs strādājām miežu laukā, mēs dzirdējām cielavas dziesmu no mežmalas.
38. Frontē karavīriem nav pajumtes.
39. Pēc brokastīm mēs iesim uz ostu, lai redzētu floti.
40. Vai aptiekāram ir labas zāles pret utīm?
41. Kura ir vissmagākā gāze?
42. Desmit sekundēs klasē nebija vairs neviena skolnieka.
43. Toreiz es pasūtīju lielu torti.
44. Visi arhitektūras fakultātes studenti toreiz valkāja dzeltenas vestes.
45. Kāpēc tu mani nebrīdināji jau toreiz?
46. Nerunā ar pilnu muti!

Exercise 93g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The thieves were working without any noise.
2. On occasions he wandered restlessly along the streets, on occasions he used to sit at home like a spider in its web.
3. Please, Miss Ozols, sing in time (*reizē*) with the choir!
4. The carpet is very dusty.
5. This figure must be multiplied by seven.
6. You once told me about the fishermen in your country.
7. At times, a good carpet can be obtained cheaply.
8. Is it always so hot in New York in July? – It all depends.
9. This time he knows his home-work, but that time his answers were very weak.
10. Let us go fishing behind those rocks. – No, we cannot fish there, the water is very shallow.
11. What a horrible spider!
12. The teacher will forgive you this time.
13. Who would think that this is little Biruta; at that time she was still wearing a short skirt and children's shoes, but now she is a refined young lady.
14. Do all those sheep belong to that farmer?
15. At times the noise in the railway-station is horrible.
16. If a man earns one dollar and twenty cents an hour, and if he works eight hours a day, you would have to multiply that figure by eight in order to calculate how much he earns per day.

17. How many times a year do you go to church?
18. How often must the carpet be cleaned? – It all depends on the circumstances.
19. He went away at the same time as us.
20. In which sports are nets used?
21. Sheep have very short tails.
22. We have a rehearsal three times a week.
23. I shall be in Ķemeri from the beginning of January till the end of February.
24. This restaurant will be closed from the 15th of April until the 20th of May.
25. In Australia people usually do not cook hot meals in December.
26. In the Middle Ages the inhabitants of cities had to fill their buckets at wells.
27. Fill up my glass again!
28. All the kettles will have to be polished again in October.
29. Paul proposed to Māra one night in September when the stars were shining brightly.
30. In France many people have holidays in August.
31. This large table-cloth cost only nine roubles fifty copecks.
32. There is a ten centime piece on the dining-room table.
33. Are Latvian folk dances similar to the dances of other nations?
34. You ought to entrust that job to a tradesman!
35. This poet writes in a very unusual style.
36. The shepherd-boy used to live in an orphanage.
37. Let us seek quietness in the depths of the forest.
38. Three students were living in one tiny room.
39. All the girls are now making garlands.

LESSON 94

DECLENSION AND USE OF PATS

The pronoun *pats* has no direct English equivalent, although it may be compared with the ‘-self’ element of ‘myself, yourself’, etc., in their emphatic use (‘I myself did it’), although not as reflexives, which you will remember require *sevi*.

Pats (fem. *pati*) is declined throughout (with the exception of these two nominative singular forms) as if the nominatives were **pašs*, **paša*. Indeed, these nominative forms actually occur in the related adjective *īpašs* ‘special’.

	MASCULINE		FEMININE	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>pats</i>	<i>paši</i>	<i>pati</i>	<i>pašas</i>
Acc.	<i>pašu</i>	<i>pašus</i>	<i>pašu</i>	<i>pašas</i>
Gen.	<i>paša</i>	<i>pašu</i>	<i>pašas</i>	<i>pašu</i>
Dat.	<i>pašam</i>	<i>pašiem</i>	<i>pašai</i>	<i>pašām</i>
Loc.	<i>pašā</i>	<i>pašos</i>	<i>pašā</i>	<i>pašās</i>

Its use will be clear from the following examples:

Es to darīju pats.

I did that myself.

Viņa pati iekurināja krāsni.

She lit the stove herself.

Mēs paši to nezinājām.

We ourselves did not know that.

Saimnieks pats atbildēja manai vēstulei.

The farmer answered my letter himself.

Vai tu runāji ar pašu saimnieku?

Did you speak to the farmer himself?

Mēs runājām ar dziedātājām pašām.

We spoke to the singers themselves.

Sometimes the English ‘very’ is used in this emphatic way, and in such circumstances can be translated by *pats*, *pati*.

We sold our house that very day.

Mēs pārdevām savu māju tai pašā dienā.

He was standing under that very tree.

Viņš stāvēja zem tā paša koka.

They were standing under those very trees.

Viņi stāvēja zem tiem pašiem kokiem.

Note that *šis pats* and *tas pats* are often equivalent to the English ‘the same’:

Es domāju, ka viņš ir labs vīrs, un visi domā to pašu.

I think he is a good man, and everybody thinks the same.

Pats may precede or follow a noun; it may never precede a pronoun.

The genitive of *pats* is often used to strengthen a possessive:

my own book

mana paša grāmata

her own garden

viņas pašas dārzs

our own children

mūsu pašu bērni

with our own hands

ar mūsu pašu rokām.

This construction in no way replaces the possessive adjective *savus*:

My own children are in the garden.

Mani paša bērni ir dārzā.

BUT: I saw my own children.

Es redzēju savus bērnus.

or, more emphatically, as above:

Es redzēju savus paša bērnus.

Vocabulary

<i>pats</i> (fem. <i>pati</i>)	oneself (emphatic)
<i>patmīlīgs</i>	selfish
<i>īpašs</i>	special
<i>īpašnieks</i>	owner, proprietor
<i>īpašums</i>	possession, property
<i>īpatns</i>	strange, unusual
<i>pašlaik</i>	at the present time, now
<i>pašreiz</i>	at this instant, right now
<i>jūdze</i>	mile
<i>zieds</i>	blossom
<i>gadu simtenis</i>	century
<i>problēma</i>	problem
<i>atrisināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to solve
<i>sala</i>	island
<i>it kā</i> (+ conditional)	as if
<i>slīknauda</i>	small change

NOTE: *Pašlaik* is accented on the second syllable, as often is *pašreiz*.

Exercise 94a

Translate into English: *es pats; viņa pati; jūs paši; viņas pašas; pats saimnieks; pati skolniece; paši bērni; pašas dejotājas; ar mani pašu; viņu pašu priekšā; pašam skolotājam līdz; aiz šiem pašiem krūmiem; viņas pašas nauda; mūsu pašu māja; mans paša dārzs; bērnu pašu draugi.*

Exercise 94b

Translate into Latvian: you yourself; Eve herself; we ourselves; these very cliffs; behind the very trees; before your very eyes; my own horses; their own wine; in her own bed; the baker's own shop; in the pastor's own church.

Exercise 94c

Give the Latvian for: once, twice, three times, etc., up to ten times.
Give the Latvian for: twenty times, a hundred times.

Exercise 94d

Translate into Latvian: the 3rd of January, 1905; the 7th of March, 1921; on the 11th of May, 1937; after the 15th of July, 1953; the 5th of February, 1913; the 9th of April, 1929; before the 13th of June, 1945; around the 17th of August, 1961.

Exercise 94e

Translate into English:

- Šoreiz saimnieks pats baros lopus.
- Mēs ražojam labas tērauda dakšīpas un karotes savā pašu fabrikā.
- Zirneklis sēž tīklā! – Kur? Es neredzu! – Pašā vidū!
- Es tev nekā nevaru aizdot, jo man pašam nav naudas.
- Pašreiz laiks ir tik briesmīgs, ka nevar zvejot.
- Vai jūs par šo problēmu runājat ar pašu galveno architektu? Varbūt viņš to var atrisināt.
- Tā ir maza saliņa, divas jūdzes gara un apmēram vienu jūdzi plata; tur neviens nedzīvo, tikai pa reizei to apmeklē kāds zvejnieks.
- Tu neieredzi patmīlīgus cilvēkus – bet saki man godīgi: vai tu pats neesi patmīlīgs?
- Lai krāsotu paklājus, jālieto īpašas krāsas.
- Vai miesnieki lieto īpašus nažus? – Kā kuru reizi.
- Viņš tā runā, it kā viņš jau pats būtu šis pils īpašnieks.
- Mēs nomaksājām aizdevumus, un tagad šis nams ir mūsu īpašums.
- Es runāju par tām pašām dziedātājām un par tiem pašiem dejotājiem, kurus tu pats kādreiz slavēji.
- Toreiz mēs agri aizgājām no balles, bet šoreiz mēs dejojām līdz pašām beigām.

15. Vai man jālasa no paša sākuma?
16. Sīknauda ir tanī kastītē, pašā apakšā.
17. Šis īpašums pieder mūsu ģimenei no astoņpadsmitā gadu simteņa.
18. Uz salas bija īpatni stādi ar īpatniem ziediem.
19. Devīnpadsmitais gadu simtenis bija Anglijas ziedu laiks.
20. Reizēm pati saimniece gludina galdautus un palagus.
21. Tā nav problēma: ja tu mācēsi reizināt, tu atrisināsi šo uzdevumu.
22. Aitām ir bail no lidmašīnu trokšņa.
23. Policija meklē mašīnas īpašnieku.
24. Tanī salā dzīvo naidīgas un nežēlīgas mežoņu ciltis, kuras pašlaik svin kādus svētkus.
25. Nama īpašnieks dzīvo pašā augšā.
26. Man nav vairs sīknaudas kabatā.
27. Ir īpašas skolas, kur kabatas zagļiem (*pickpockets*) māca viņu grūto amatu.
28. Mēs karā zaudējām visu savu īpašumu.
29. Tu pašreiz runā tā, it kā tu varētu atrisināt visas pasaules problēmas.
30. Viņa domā, ka visi citi ir patmīļīgi: it kā viņa pati nebūtu patmīļīga!
31. Iedod meitenei sīknaudu par ziediem!
32. Kurā gadu simtenī dzīvoja Jānis Briesmīgais? (*Ivan the Terrible*)
33. Sešdesmit piecas jūdzes no Sidnejas maniem vecākiem ir mazs īpašums.
34. To tu man stāsti jau trešo reizi!
35. Tas ir mans paša uzvalks.
36. Viņa lopi ir viņa paša rudzos.
37. "Mani pašas bērni mani neapciemo," sacīja vecā māte.
38. Perons ir tik netīrs, ka būs atkal jānoslauka.
39. Kurš no jums māk runāt latviski un krieviski?
40. Ceturtdien pulksten četros mūsu draugs bija ciemos pie mums.
41. Vai tu māki locīt vārdu 'suns'?
42. Saule norietēja jau pusseptiņos.
43. Puisis rādīja policistam mēli.
44. Kāpēc viņš ir tik skābs?
45. Nomazgāsim galdus un krēslus!

Exercise 94f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did you fill up the bucket right to the brim?
2. He has solved a strange problem.
3. I did not believe him from the very beginning.
4. The kettle is as shiny as gold.
5. The waiter is now a restaurant owner himself.

6. What an unusual table cloth!
7. Her own estate is not large.
8. The small change was in this very pocket.
9. At this moment the blossoms are very lovely.
10. She ordered special curtains for the dining-room, as if these curtains were not good enough.
11. This problem is not clear to the teacher himself; how shall I solve it?
12. Six miles from the coast there is a small island.
13. Our own son is at present studying in America.
14. I myself have no small change.
15. She has to brush her shoes herself.
16. A quarter of the country's inhabitants live on this island.
17. The owner sold his property for a million dollars.
18. You need special spectacles for your work (dative).
19. This is an eighteenth century painting.
20. A selfish person will always fill his own pockets.
21. Where can these blossoms be obtained?
22. A glass of wine would be good (*derēt*) before the actual meal.
23. A century ago there were only sand-hills in this very place where there is now a city.
24. He was selfish until the very end.
25. The river is about eight hundred miles long.
26. He walks around in the snow of January as if it were July and the sun were shining.
27. Now and then in February the sun shines.
28. The train-driver told me that the ticket office was on platform eighteen.
29. We can see the signals from the carriage window.
30. When I saw him in London on Tuesday the 2nd of March, he was quite well.
31. I should like to be able to speak French and German.
32. I lent my dictionary to a girl student on Wednesday.
33. Oh dear, there are so many floors to sweep in this house!
34. We often used to spend spring in the north of Germany.
35. Cats are terribly afraid of snakes.
36. Please dictate more slowly, I can't follow you.
37. What fine plumage the rooster has!
38. In which months do bears sleep?
39. All the glass plates are in the cupboard.
40. In our country there are many linden trees, willows, oaks, apple trees and berry alders.
41. Michael was picking berries when we caught sight of him not far from the river bank.

42. Your pipe is on that low shelf, near the ashtray.
 43. I know how to draw, but I can't draw people very well.
 44. It is not easy to live in a foreign land.
 45. Little Anne was dancing for joy.
 46. Thirty days hath September, April, June and November. February has twenty-eight, and January, March, May, July, August, October and December have thirty-one.

LESSON 95

VERBS OF PERCEPTION FOLLOWED BY A PARTICIPLE

In the English sentence 'I heard the girl singing' the verb is a verb of perception, which is followed by an object noun, to which in turn is attached a participle ('singing'). Similar English sentences in which a verb of perception is construed with a following participle are:

We saw father working.
 I spotted John reading.
 I heard the girl crying.

Such sentences can be translated literally into Latvian, using a special indeclinable participle.

The corresponding Latvian participle is identical in form with the first person plural of the present tense: the pronoun is omitted. Thus the following verbs form the participle as indicated:

Infinitive	Participle
<i>dziedāt</i>	<i>dziedam</i>
<i>solīt</i>	<i>solām</i>
<i>tecēt</i>	<i>tekam</i>
<i>sēdēt</i>	<i>sēžam</i>
<i>iekurināt</i>	<i>iekurinām.</i>

The sentence 'I heard the girl singing' becomes in Latvian

Es dzirdēju meitu dziedam.

Similarly,

We saw father working.
Mēs redzējām tēvu strādājam.

I spotted John reading.
Es ieraudzīju Jāni lasām.

I heard the girl crying.
Es dzirdēju meitu raudam.

The construction can be extended to include an object (direct or indirect) to the participle:

I heard the girl singing the song.
Es dzirdēju meitu dziedam dziesmu.

I saw the man threatening his son.
Es redzēju vīru draudam savam dēlam.

Sometimes the English sentence is phrased 'I heard the girl sing', and the remarks above apply equally well to this formulation as to the formulation with the -ing participle.

Although strictly speaking the construction must depend on a verb of perception, it may occasionally be found with *gaidīt*:

Jānis vēl arvien gaida vilcienu atejam.
 John is still waiting for the train to depart.

Vocabulary

<i>pavēlēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to order, command
<i>spēks</i>	power, strength
<i>spēcīgs</i>	powerful
<i>spēkstacija</i>	power-station
<i>elektrība</i>	electricity
<i>bētons</i>	concrete
<i>rūpniecība</i>	industry
<i>ražojums</i>	production, product
<i>pilnīgs</i>	entire, total, complete
<i>veidot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to form, shape
<i>novietot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to place; to park; to accommodate
<i>tonna</i>	ton
<i>strādnieks</i>	labourer, worker
<i>plāns</i>	plan
<i>plānot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to plan
<i>priekšnieks</i>	director, chief, boss
<i>nemaz</i>	not at all
<i>valdība</i>	government

NOTES: *Pavēlēt* requires a dative of the person:

Priekšnieks pavēlēja vīriem strādāt.

Pavēlēt has the same alternation of open and closed *e* as *redzēt*.

Betons is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Tonna is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Nemaz is accented upon the second syllable, and requires a negative verb.

Es nemaz nezināju, ka priekšnieks stāvēja aiz koka.

I had no idea that the director was standing behind the tree.

Exercise 95a

Translate into English:

1. *Es redzēju vilcienu atejam.*
2. *Es dzirdēju putnus dziedam.*
3. *Artūrs ieraudzīja Ievu lasām ogas.*
4. *Mēs visi gaidām viņu aizejam.*

Exercise 95b

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am waiting for the alarm to ring.
2. Did you hear some one speak?
3. When did you see Paul kissing Māra?
4. I caught sight of them walking along the street.

Exercise 95c

Translate into Latvian: I myself; you (s.) yourself; he himself; she herself; we ourselves; you (pl.) yourselves; they (m.) themselves; they (f.) themselves; the very walls; the very words; the farmer's own cart; my own business; the very house; our own onions; the very tree; her own puppy; their (f.) own books.

Exercise 95d

Translate into English:

1. Priekšnieks ieraudzīja dažus strādniekus guļam spēkstacijas pagalmā.
2. Valdība plāno lielu spēkstaciju, kas dos elektrību visam apgabalam.
3. Bērni vairs nedzīvo pie vecākiem, viņi paši veido katrs savu dzīvi.
4. Katra valsts grib pārdot savas rūpniecības ražojumus pasaules tirgū.
5. Šim tiltam vajadzēs divdesmit četri tūkstoši tonnu betona.
6. Priekšnieks pavēlēja saviem strādniekiem novietot ķieģelus aiz inženiera biroja.
7. Vai jūs redzējāt šo vīru staigājam pa gaiteni?
8. Priekšnieks grib pilnīgāku plānu.
9. Viņš tagad ir pašos spēka gados.
10. Rūpniecība bez elektrības nevar pastāvēt.
11. Es nemaz nezināju, ka mūsu ražojumus pārdod trīsdesmit sešas zemēs.
12. Mēs gaidījām autobusu pieturam ielas stūrī.
13. Spēkstacijas katli stāv uz betona grīdas.
14. No tilta var redzēt zivis peldam sekļajā ūdenī.
15. Zēns sēž uz krusttēva spēcīgajiem pleciem.
16. Mežā bija pilnīgs klusums; nedzirdēja ne putnu dziedam, ne ganīpu svilpojām.
17. Ar šo plānu mēs tomēr neatrisināsim visu problēmu.
18. Ko nodaļas priekšnieks plāno?
19. Divi spēcīgi strādnieki palīdzēja amatniekam novietot dēļus.
20. No betona veido notekas un ietnes.
21. Nama īpašnieks nav nemaz patmīlīgs.
22. Nost no mana īpašuma!
23. Vai tev nemaz nav spēka?
24. Valdība rūpniecībai nekā nevar pavēlēt.
25. Cik tonnu sāls var novietot šinī pagrabā?
26. Šinī fabrikā ir īpaša nodaļa, kur plāno jaunus ražojumus.
27. Pilsēta bija astoņas stundas bez elektrības.
28. Tonna tērauda maksā astoņdesmit sešus dolarus.
29. Ievām un ābelēm ir skaisti ziedi.
30. Es pašreiz redzu nama īpašnieku aizejam.
31. Laikam nevienā gadu simtenī pasaulē nebūs pilnīga miera.
32. Šīs salas iedzīvotāji ir spēcīgi vīri.
33. Ja skolotājs pavēl, skolniekiem jāklausa.
34. Saimniecei pašai nav sīknaudas.
35. Viņš pašlaik runā tā, it kā viņš būtu pats priekšnieks.
36. Tuvākais krogus ir no mums sešas jūdzes.
37. Inženieri plāno jauno spēkstaciju.

38. Apmeklējiet skaisto Latgali maijā vai jūnijā!
39. Jūlijs un augusts Eiropā ir vasaras viskarstākie mēneši.
40. Ap pirmo janvāri parasti visur Ziemeļeiropā ir sniegs.
41. Kas viņai toreiz bija mugurā?
42. Cik dienu ir septembrī un decembrī? – Septembrī ir trīsdesmit, bet decembrī ir trīsdesmit viena.

Exercise 95e

Translate into Latvian:

1. How many people can be accommodated in this hotel?
2. Industry is at present looking for labour (*darba spēks*).
3. The government is planning new roads along the coast to the power station.
4. This plan is useless.
5. There is a horrible noise in the power-station.
6. Electricity is fairly cheap.
7. Concrete is harder than clay bricks.
8. Did you hear the boss talking with the workers?
9. Electricity has great power.
10. The fishermen had about a ton of fish in their net.
11. Spiders have strong legs.
12. I did not hear the alarm-clock ring at all.
13. The city architect is laying out (*veidot*) a new garden in front of the library.
14. This carpet is not a genuine Asian product.
15. There was complete silence in class.
16. Were you there that time when the boss ordered us not to smoke in the cellar?
17. This time the current will be stronger.
18. Do you always read in bed? – It all depends on the circumstances.
19. At times it is possible to fish near that island.
20. I saw three workers place a heavy box on the floor of the railway-carriage.
21. I had no idea that we were both at the university at the same time.
22. We require a more complete plan.
23. He knows how to fashion beautiful vessels out of clay.
24. I heard the boss giving orders to the workers.
25. You will not get one cent from the government.
26. We spotted the sheep walking along the edge of the forest.
27. How much does a ton of concrete cost?
28. One can earn good wages in industry now.
29. How often did you see her making garlands?
30. Didn't he once plan to travel to America?
31. Multiply 12,516 by 6,748.

32. One can ask good money for good products.
33. This is a very powerful car.
34. The current is very powerful at that spot.
35. In Australia, April can at times be as hot as November.
36. There are often short stories in this periodical.
37. The postman told me that the stamp on this envelope is very rare.
38. In his new novel the writer writes about places in Vidzeme and Zemgale, although he himself lives in Kurzeme.
39. I would send him a telegram if I knew his address.
40. These old trams are extraordinarily uncomfortable.
41. The whole address, especially the surname, must be clearly written.
42. An eagle's wings are very strong.
43. January, February and March are the first three months of the year; November is the eleventh month.

LESSON 96

ADVERBS IN *-UP*

A few adverbs in Latvian have the ending *-up*, and to these may be added those ending in the related *-p* or *-pu*. This suffix corresponds to the English '-wards', as in 'homewards', 'upwards', 'downwards', etc., and indicates motion towards a place.

Vocabulary

<i>augšup</i>	upwards	<i>apskatīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to inspect, look over
<i>lejup</i>	downwards,		
	downhill	<i>knābis</i>	beak, bill
<i>mājup</i>	homewards	<i>skraidīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to run about
<i>kalnup</i>	uphill, up the hill	<i>agrs</i>	early
<i>šurp, šurpu</i>	hither	<i>soma</i>	hand-bag, satchel
<i>turp, turpu</i>	thither	<i>rēsns</i>	fat, stout
<i>kurp, kurpu</i>	whither	<i>tievs</i>	thin, lean
<i>drošs (no)</i>	safe (from); brave		

NOTES: Observe the difference between the adverbs in *-up* and other adverbs from the same root:

Kur jūs dzīvojat?

Where do you live?

Kurp jūs ejat?

Where are you going?

The first sentence contains no idea of motion; the *kur* is equivalent to 'in what place', whereas in the second sentence motion is clearly implied, the *kurp* being equivalent to 'to what place'. A similar distinction is to be made between the following pairs of sentences:

<i>Mēs dzīvojam augšā.</i>	We live upstairs.
<i>Mēs ejam augšup.</i>	We are going upwards.
<i>Viņa ir mājā.</i>	She is at home.
<i>Viņa iet mājup.</i>	She is going home.
<i>Kalnā nav māju.</i>	There are no houses on the hill.
<i>Ceļš iet kalnup.</i>	The road goes uphill.

Exercise 96a

Translate into Latvian: the dancers themselves; the very walls; under this very roof; her own children; Anne herself; our own money.

Exercise 96b

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did you hear John speaking on the telephone?
2. I did not see him threaten his son.
3. We are still waiting for them to visit us.
4. Paul caught sight of Aivars swimming in the lake.

Exercise 96c

Translate into English:

1. Dūmi no skurstēņa iet augšup, jo šodien nav vēja.
2. Es redzēju viņu ejam kalnup.
3. Zosij ir spēcīgs knābis.
4. Tilts nav pilnīgi drošs.
5. Kā tu zināji, ka spēkstacijas plāni bija tanī somā?
6. Ir grūtāk iet lejup nekā kalnup.
7. Kurp jūs ejat? – Mēs nupat apskatījām lielo kara kuģi ostā, un tagad mēs ejam mājup.
8. Vistas visu dienu skraida šurp un turp pa pagalmu.
9. Priekšnieks domā, ka viņš ir gudrs vīrs.
10. Agrie tomāti jau ir gatavi.
11. Šeit jūs varat apskatīt mūsu jaunākos rūpniecības ražojumus.
12. Tai meitenei gan ir resnas kājas!

13. Šeit jūs varat novietot mēteļus, kažokus un somiņas, manas dāmas!
14. Bārenītei bija tievas rociņas un kājiņas.
15. Ak, ērglim ir čūska knābī!
16. Ar agro vilcienu jūs būsiet Cēsīs ceturksni pirms deviņiem.
17. Lidmašīna arvien vēl lido augšup.
18. Ūdens vienmēr tek lejup.
19. Saule jau riet, ir laiks iet mājup.
20. "Šurp pie manis!" priekšnieks pavēlēja saviem strādniekiem.
21. Cielavai ir taisns knābis.
22. Kino zvaigznei bija apmēram simts ceļa somu. (*ceļa soma = travelling-bag, case*)
23. Ceļš šeit iet kalnup.
24. Dzīve atkal iet augšup. (here metaphorically, *to improve, pick up*)
25. Vai tu redzi zaļo birzi tulumā? Turp tev jāiet!
26. Naktī es dzirdēju suni skraidām šurp un turp pa pagalmu.
27. Tagad mūsu uzņēmums ir drošs, jo mēs dabūjām lielu bankas aizdevumu.
28. Resni cilvēki parasti labi peld.
29. Kad Baiba ieraudzīja uguni gaitenī, viņa bailēs skraidīja pa istabu.
30. Tīrgū drīz pārdos agros dārzājus.
31. Kurp jūs iesit pēc balles? – Mājup, kur gan citur? Krogi un restorāni jau ir ciet.
32. Gada tīrgū (*annual market, fair*) ļaudis par divdesmit santīmiem var apskatīt pasaules resnāko vīru.
33. Katrs var plānot un veidot savu paša dzīvi, kā viņš grib.
34. Cik tā meitene ir tieva! – It kā tu pati nebūtu tieva!
35. Elektrībai ir liels spēks.
36. Lielos modernos namus būvē no tērauda un betona.
37. Ko tu pašreiz gribi darīt?
38. Kas par īpatņiem cilvēkiem!
39. Vai jūs šeit gaidāt kādu īpašu autobusu?
40. Pašlaik bērni nedrīkst iet ārā dziļā sniega un stiprā vēja dēļ.
41. Karavīriem frontē nav pajumtes: viņiem bieži jādzīvo dubļainos laukos.
42. Bez acīm nevar redzēt, bez ausīm nevar dzirdēt.
43. Cik utij ir kāju?
44. Vai tev garšo zemeņu un aveņu tortes?
45. Ko jūs gaidāt pie lielā pulksteņa?
46. Ar šķērēm tev būs grūti nomizot ābolus. Es tev iedošu nazi.
47. Vilciens aties pēc dažām sekundēm.
48. Izskalo acis ar šīm zālēm!
49. Pret vakaru ielejās parasti ir migla.
50. Bērni skraida pa visu māju.
51. Šinī fakultātē studē divi simti studentu un studenšu.

Exercise 96d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Charles is a brave boy.
2. The new owner is inspecting his estate.
3. At airports they sell special travelling-bags.
4. Not every soldier is brave at the front.
5. The bees are flying hither and thither from bloom to bloom.
6. Where are you going, dear friends? – Up the hill.
7. Young birds have yellow beaks.
8. I saw him going up, not (*ne*) down. – But he does not live on the hill!
– I did not say that he was going homewards.
9. Stand here! Don't run about hither and thither!
10. If I were not so fat and heavy, it would be easier to walk uphill.
11. In the museum we inspected some strange rocks.
12. Three more miles (use *vēl*) and the road will go downhill.
13. Where are they going tomorrow? – Tomorrow they will continue their journey upwards into the mountains.
14. We do not know who lives on those small islands.
15. Right now he is thinking whether to go home or to the inn.
16. There is no small change in this bag.
17. The pupils are running about the school-yard.
18. This time we can expect an early winter.
19. One cannot say that her arms and legs are thin!
20. Is the nightingale's beak open when it sings?
21. Fat men often have thin legs.
22. Let us go to the harbour to inspect the fleet.
23. John and Māra went up the hill together.
24. Mice were running about everywhere.
25. In this hotel, breakfast is at 8:30, lunch at 12:15, afternoon tea at 3:40 and dinner at 7:45.
26. Does the bus always stop at this stop?
27. My passport is in my waistcoat pocket.
28. This evening there will be a sports competition in our city.
29. The tradesmen are working with saws, planes, hammers and nails.
30. This wood is so hard that it cannot be nailed.
31. We need a dozen new clay pots.
32. The ocean waves wash the white shore.
33. Schoolboys are not allowed to dream in class.
34. Do the skins of vegetables contain much iron?
35. There is no school near our house in the country.

36. Get the iron ready; the sheets will soon have to be pressed!
37. I can't do any sawing with this useless old saw!
38. We cannot alter the time-table.
39. This young puppy has very smooth black fur.

LESSON 97

MASCULINE NOUNS IN -A AND -E

There are in Latvian a number of nouns, which while being declined according to patterns of feminine declension, are masculine. We have already studied the noun *laudis* which is one of these. Most nouns of this type end in *-a*.

The declension of masculine nouns in *-a* follows that of feminine nouns in *-a*, except that in the dative singular *-am* replaces *-ai*:

	<i>puika</i> (m.) 'a boy'	
	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>puika</i>	<i>puikas</i>
Acc.	<i>puiku</i>	<i>puikas</i>
Gen.	<i>puikas</i>	<i>puiku</i>
Dat.	<i>puikam</i>	<i>puikām</i>
Loc.	<i>puikā</i>	<i>puikās</i>

Some Latvian words ending in *-a* are masculine or feminine according to sense in each context, cf. *nelga* 'a fool', which is masculine when referring to a male person, and feminine when referring to a female. Words of this type have the declension of *puika*, except that the ending *-ai* returns in the dative singular when the word is feminine. When the word is masculine, the form *-am* remains. Thus *nelga* (f.) is declined exactly like *roka*, whereas *nelga* (m.) is declined exactly like *puika*.

Masculines in *-e* are rarer than masculines in *-a*: there is only the noun *bende* 'executioner', plus a few surnames such as *Priede*, *Egle*, etc.

	<i>bende</i> 'executioner'	
	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>bende</i>	<i>bendes</i>
Acc.	<i>bendi</i>	<i>bendes</i>
Gen.	<i>bendes</i>	<i>benžu</i>
Dat.	<i>bendem</i>	<i>bendēm</i>
Loc.	<i>bendē</i>	<i>bendēs</i>

Occasionally, *bende* may refer to a woman, and have dative singular *-ei*. Its declension therefore corresponds to those given for masculine nouns in *-a*.

Surnames in *-e* are masculine or feminine as context demands, and therefore have alternate datives singular in *-em* (masc.) and *-ei* (fem.). Thus

<i>Jānim Priedem</i>	to John Priede
<i>Mārai Priedei</i>	to Māra Priede

Vocabulary

<i>puika</i> (m.)	boy
<i>lauva</i> (m.)	lion
<i>Janka</i> (m.)	dim. of John, Jack
<i>pilsētas galva</i> (m.)	mayor
<i>auša</i> (m. or f.)	chatterbox, windbag
<i>plēsoņa</i> (m. or f.)	beast or bird of prey
<i>nepraša</i> (m. or f.)	ignoramus
<i>plāpa</i> (m. or f.)	babblers, tattler, gossip
<i>nelga</i> (m. or f.)	fool
<i>bende</i> (m. or f.)	executioner, hangman
<i>dzērājs</i>	drunkard, tippler, drinker
<i>plāpāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to chatter, gossip, talk nonsense
<i>nelietis</i>	scoundrel, ruffian
<i>kauns</i>	shame, shyness
<i>apvainot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to abuse, offend

NOTES: The diminutive of *puika* is *puikiņš*.

Plāpāt is often construed with the accusative:

Ko tu plāpā? What rubbish are you talking?

Exercise 97a

Decline in the singular and plural: *puika*; *lauva*; *bende*; *auša*; *plēsoņa*.

Exercise 97b

Translate into Latvian: John Lācis; Māra Lācis; with Paul Pele; at Mr. Pele's place; near Arthur Bite.

Exercise 97c

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did you hear her singing in the bathroom?
2. We are still waiting for them to answer.
3. I saw a man going up the hill.

Exercise 97d

Give the full declension, masculine and feminine, singular and plural, of: *tas*; *šis*; *pats*.

Exercise 97e

Translate into English:

1. Kopš dažiem mēnešiem Janka vairs neiet krogū, un viņa dzīve iet augšup.
2. Ko viņa plāpā, ka viņas vīrs ir dzērājs un nelietis!
3. Tā vecā plāpa apvaino mūsu rātno puiku.
4. Lauvam ir gari, stipri zobī, tas ir briesmīgs plēsoņa.
5. Kas šim nelgam dos pajumti?
6. Vai tev nemaz nav kauna sēdēt krogū kopā ar aušām, neprašām un neliešiem?
7. Ūdens vienmēr tek lejup.
8. Šis nelietis mani apvainoja.
9. Es redzēju mūsu abu sievas plāpājam pie žoga, Kraujas kungs.
10. Mazi puikas parasti valkā īsas bikses.
11. Vai šis nelga tevi apvainoja?
12. Puikas skraidīja šurp un turp pa ietni.
13. Tagad, dāmas un kungi, mēs apskatīsim bendes namiņu; tas ir nams, kurā viduslaikos dzīvoja pilsētas bende.
14. Ērglim ir īsts plēsoņas knābis.
15. Katrs nelga un nelietis apvaino bārenīti.
16. Mēs nofotografējām dažus lauvus, kad ceļojām pa Dienvidāfriku.
17. Vai tu neredzi, ka ceļš iet kalnup, tu neprašā!
18. Es makšķerēju visu dienu, un tagad man ir kauns iet mājās bez zivīm.
19. Ko šis nelga tur atkal plāpā?
20. Man nav bail no šiem vīriem, viņi ir tikai aušas un plāpas!
21. Bendem ir briesmīgs amats.
22. Vai visiem zvēriem bail no lauvām?
23. Kā šis neprašā var plāpāt par zinātniskām grāmatām?

24. Vai tu dzirdēji, ka Peles kungs apvainoja Liepas kungu?
25. Mēs visi aiz kauna klusējām. (Cf. *aiz bailēm*)
26. Cik jūs šim nelietim samaksājāt?
27. Tam dzērājam nevar ticēt; viņš vienmēr tikai pļāpā.
28. Klasē nedrīkst pļāpāt.
29. Pilsētas galvam ir grūts amats.
30. Biruta strādā pilsētas galvas birojā.
31. Šis puika ir lielākais auša mūsu klasē.
32. Kāpēc tu domā, ka Janka ir dzērājs?
33. Lauvas ir spēcīgi un briesmīgi plēsoņas.
34. Pilsētas galvam bija jāpiezvana policijas priekšniekam.
35. Šinī ainā mēs redzēsim skaisto, jauno aktrisi, par kuru es tev stāstīju.
36. Pilsētas galva bieži apmeklē baletu.
37. Šī sērkociņu kastīte ir piecus centimetrus gara.
38. Kā tu vari staigāt pa tik akmeņainu ceļu bez kurpēm?

Exercise 97f

Translate into Latvian:

1. When I was going home, this ruffian followed me.
2. How can you order a drunkard not to go to the tavern?
3. Drunkards cannot work as bus drivers.
4. No chatterbox and scoundrel can abuse an honest workman.
5. Nobody knows the executioner's name.
6. The lion has a yellow coat.
7. If that boy were not such a tattler, I would believe him.
8. Only ruffians go to that dark old tavern.
9. The government has been promising us a new power-station for a long time, but the engineers are only chattering away and are not planning anything. – What nonsense are you talking? The plans are now ready.
10. In a free country every ignoramus can shape his life as he pleases.
11. He did not talk to the mayor out of shyness.
12. Don't gossip! Work!
13. The keys have to be placed on the concrete floor.
14. Whatever would we do without electricity?
15. Did that scoundrel abuse this lady?
16. Will ten tons of sand be sufficient?
17. That gossip (m.) has no shame, to talk so unpleasantly about the mayor of our town.
18. Lions have a predatory nature.
19. **These products are extremely cheap.**

20. The hangman has horrible eyes.
21. Which ignoramus planned this plank?
22. What answer did she give that scoundrel, when he asked her for her telephone number? – She told it to him.
23. Your cousin Jack is a real ear-basher!

LESSON 98

THE PREPOSITION *PA* USED DISTRIBUTIVELY

The preposition *pa* has two quite distinct uses. We have already studied it as a preposition governing the accusative case, as in

<i>staigāt pa ielu</i>	to walk along the street
<i>lidot pa gaisu</i>	to fly in the air.

However, *pa* can also govern the dative case, and in this use it expresses equal distribution. There is no literal correspondence in English. Cf. the following examples:

<i>Viņš mums katram iedeva pa ābolam.</i>	He gave us each an apple.
<i>Viņš mums katram iedeva pa diviem dolariem.</i>	He gave us each two dollars.
<i>Katrā mašīnā bija pa trim cilvēkiem.</i>	There were three people in each car.

In each sentence, the thing or things equally distributed are in the dative case, governed by *pa*.

In the plural, where *all* prepositions govern the dative, the formal distinction between the two meanings of *pa* is lost, and care should be taken in ascertaining which meaning is intended.

Vocabulary

<i>pa</i> (+ dat.)	preposition of equal distribution
<i>plūdi</i> (pl.)	flood
<i>negaiss</i>	thunderstorm
<i>pērkons</i>	thunder
<i>sniegpūtenis</i>	blizzard
<i>ugunsgrēks</i>	fire (causing damage)

<i>trīcēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to shake (intrans.), to tremble
<i>zemesstrīce</i>	earthquake
<i>vētra</i>	storm
<i>iznīcināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to destroy
<i>aizputināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to cover, block (with snow, etc.)
<i>bangot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to rage (of sea, etc.)
<i>drupas (pl.)</i>	ruins
<i>(aiz-)iet bojā</i>	to perish
<i>ievainot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to injure, wound
<i>applūdināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to flood, inundate

NOTE: *Aiziet bojā* is the perfective form of *iet bojā*.

Exercise 98a

Translate into English:

1. *Katrā namiņā ir pa četrām istabām.*
2. *Es jums katram iedošu pa pieciem centiem.*
3. *Skolotājs mums katram iedeva pa zīmuliem.*
4. *Mēs katrs lasīsim pa vienai lapas pusei.*
5. *Rakstīsim katrs pa trijām vai četrām rindām!*

Exercise 98b

Translate into Latvian:

1. Please give us twenty-five centimes each.
2. We shall write six verses each.
3. Give them each a cake.
4. In each carriage there are forty-eight places.
5. In each flat there is a new carpet.

Exercise 98c

Decline in the singular and plural: *nelga; plāpa; aita; neprašā; bende.*

Exercise 98d

Translate into English:

1. Māte iedeva katram puikam pa ābolam.
2. Janvārī sniegputeni bieži aizputina dzelzceļus.
3. Būs negaiss, tālumā jau zibeņo.
4. Mednieks lauvu tikai ievainoja.
5. Dzērājam tā (*to such an extent*) trīcēja roka, ka viņš nevarēja rakstīt.
6. Šis nelietis apvaino manu ģimeni.
7. Katrā vagonā sēdēja pa piecdesmit cilvēkiem.
8. Cik labi sēdēt drošā un siltā vietā, kad ārā ir briesmīga vētra un jūra bango.
9. Lielajos plūdus, kas sekoja zemestrīcei, daudz cilvēku aizgāja bojā.
10. Pēc kara visas Vācijas lielpilsētas bija drupas.
11. Jūs varat apdrošināt savu māju pret ugunsgrēku, plūdiem un vētrām, bet ne pret zemestrīcēm.
12. Ugunsgrēks iznīcināja slaveno bibliotēku, un daudz retu grāmatu aizgāja bojā.
13. Senos laikos cilvēki domāja, ka pērkonis ir dievu balss.
14. Pērkonis negaisam sekoja lieli plūdi, kas applūdināja laukus un ceļus.
15. Kas par negaisu, lai Dievs mums ir žēlīgs!
16. Krusttēvs iedeva katram bērnam pa latam.
17. Tā tev jātur zāģis, tu neprašā, citādi ievainosi savu roku.
18. Pērkonis tā sabiedēja suni, ka tas tagad sēž zem gultas un trīc.
19. Krievijas dienvidos nesen bija stipra zemestrīce.
20. Pilsētas galva iedeva katram ubagam pa kapeikai.
21. Sniegputenim sekoja stiprs sals.
22. Ja šo ieleju aizputinās, mēs nevarēsim turpināt ceļu augšup kalnā.
23. Kad zagli apcietināja, viņš plāpāja kaut ko par ugunsgrēku un par sērkočiem.
24. Lidmašīnas spārni trīcēja vētrā.
25. Sniegputenis ir tik briesmīgs, ka drīz mums aizputinās durvis un logus.
26. Tās drupas te stāv kopš divpadsmitā gadu simteņa.
27. Okeans bangoja visu nakti un applūdināja laukus un pļavas.
28. Neticiet tam neprašam, ko viņš tur plāpā par zemestrīci Ziemeļāfrikā!
29. Ja ūdens applūdinātu šos laukus, tad visi rudzi un mieži ietu bojā.
30. Kā šis plāpa zina, cik namu otrajā pasaules karā iznīcināja un cik cilvēku ievainoja?
31. Vai bendem ir kauns parādīt savu seju? – Nē, viņš to nerāda, lai neviens nezinātu, kas viņš ir.
32. Janka pavadījis savu brīvlaiku augustā uz laukiem kopā ar pilsētas galvas dēliem.
33. Šie plāni nav pilnīgi.

34. Betons ir cietāks par koku.
35. Vai šeit var novietot mašīnu?
36. Latvijā oktobrī dienas reizēm ir vēl diezgan siltas, bet ja kādreiz novembrī būtu siltas dienas, tad gan tas būtu neparasti.
37. Vai jums būs diezgan sīknaudas?
38. Mākslinieks veido no māliem skaistus traukus.
39. Man vajadzēs divas tonnas betona.
40. Mēs pasūtījām raibu paklāju.
41. Kas par spēcīgiem pleciem!
42. Krietnam zvejniekam jūrā nav bail, lai gan viņi bango.

Exercise 98e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The water is flowing downwards and will flood the whole cellar.
2. After the earthquake in February people were running hither and thither in the ruins.
3. The boss gave the workers each a cigarette.
4. During the night the blizzard covered several cars on the edge of the road.
5. Now Jack has to walk home in this horrible thunderstorm.
6. The storm destroyed many fishing-boats and some nets on the shore.
7. Do you hear how the sea is raging?
8. We cannot continue our journey up the hill during the blizzard.
9. The farmer lost six cows in the earthquake.
10. The whole town perished in the earthquake.
11. After the big fire many people are now homeless (without shelter): where will they go?
12. Why do savages fear thunder?
13. We lost two dollars each.
14. The parrot injured my finger with its beak.
15. Zemgale can expect floods in the spring.
16. Warm air goes upwards.
17. Perhaps there are gold and precious stones under the ruins.
18. The mayor will inspect the road which was covered by snowdrifts during the night.
19. At the beginning of July there was a horrible thunderstorm in Kurzeme, which destroyed many homes and flooded the fields.
20. Here we are safe from thunder and lightning.
21. The singer's (f.) voice was trembling.
22. The fire destroyed the paper factory.
23. There is so much glass on the beach; some one will injure his feet.

24. At what time does the early train leave?
25. The handbag belongs to that thin lady.
26. Give each little girl a rose.
27. Oh dear, I can see mice running about everywhere!
28. How many times must I tell you that selfish people are not liked?
29. I cannot solve the problem right now: I need special books.
30. Did you hear a peculiar noise?
31. The government is planning a new power-station.
32. I often go fishing on a small island three miles from the shore.
33. I shall sell my property in March.
34. Is there still snow in Germany in April? – It all depends.
35. May and June are the fifth and sixth months (use sing.) of the year.
36. Just now you had to multiply twenty-eight by sixty-four; this time you must multiply sixty-four by twenty-eight.
37. Please sing in time (*reizē*) with the choir, Miss Lācis.
38. In September I shall be the owner of a new car.
39. When a policeman orders you to stop the car, then indeed you must stop.
40. We sell many industrial products on the world market.
41. Oh dear, I saw a spider walking about the carpet!

LESSON 99

DIMINUTIVES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN *-US* AND *-NS*
AND FEMININE NOUNS IN *-S*

We have discussed the diminutive forms of masculine nouns in *-s* and *-is* and of feminine nouns in *-a* and *-e*. The remaining declensions form their diminutives as follows:

Feminine nouns in *-s*:

The ending *-s* is normally replaced by *-tiņa*:

<i>acs</i>	<i>actiņa</i>
<i>uguns</i>	<i>uguntiņa</i>
<i>zoss</i>	<i>zostiņa</i>

Some nouns ending in *-ds* or *-ts* lose both these consonants, and take the suffix *-sniņa*:

<i>nakts</i>	<i>naksniņa</i>
<i>strds</i>	<i>sirsniņa</i>

Normally however, the presence of a *-t-* before the ending simply means that the suffix *-iņa* instead of *-tiņa* is used:

<i>valsts</i>	<i>valstiņa</i> (not <i>*valsttiņa</i>)
<i>brokastis</i>	<i>brokastīņas</i> (not <i>*brokasttīņas</i>)

Note particularly the forms

<i>krāsns</i>	<i>krāsniņa</i>
<i>ļaudis</i>	<i>ļautiņi</i>

Other forms may be found on occasions, using the suffix *-ele*

<i>uts</i>	<i>utele</i>
<i>valsts</i>	<i>valstēle</i>

but these are comparatively rare, and pejorative.

It should be particularly noted that these nouns all transfer their declension in the diminutive form. The diminutives in *-iņš*, *-tiņš*, *-iņa*, *-tiņa* are declined in the masculine *-š* or feminine *-a* declension. Thus *ļautiņi* is declined like *kaimiņi*, and *actiņa* like *rociņa*.

Masculine nouns in *-us*:

The *-s* is normally dropped for the suffix *-tiņš*:

<i>alus</i>	<i>alutiņš</i>
<i>lietus</i>	<i>lietutiņš</i>
<i>ledus</i>	<i>ledutiņš</i>
<i>medus</i>	<i>medutiņš</i>

But note:

<i>tīrgus</i>	<i>tirdziņš</i>
<i>krogus</i>	<i>krodziņš</i> (occ. <i>kroģelis</i> : cf. <i>utele</i> above).

The latter type is reminiscent of the diminutives of the masculine *-s* declension, and such forms (with *-us* dropped for *-iņš*) may occasionally be found for words given above in *-tiņš*.

Masculine nouns in *-ns*:

It will be recalled that a small group of masculine nouns ending in *-ns* has a declension quite distinct from that of other masculine nouns in *-s*. These nouns regularly drop *-s* for *-tiņš*:

<i>ūdens</i>	<i>ūdentīņš</i>
<i>akmens</i>	<i>akmentīņš</i>
<i>rudens</i>	<i>rudentīņš</i>

By analogy with this type, those nouns of the primary masculine declension in *-s* that have *-n-* before this *-s* have the diminutive ending *-tiņš*, as if they were of the *akmens* declension:

<i>dēgus</i>	<i>dēguntiņš</i>
<i>grēdzens</i>	<i>grēdžentiņš</i>

The diminutive of *suns* is normally *sunītis*.

The student will occasionally meet forms other than those given above, but he should refrain from using them unless he meets them commonly.

Vocabulary

No new words are given; the student should familiarize himself with the diminutives explained in the grammar, particularly the exceptional forms.

Exercise 99a

Form diminutives from the following: *alus*; *medus*; *ūdens*; *akmens*; *sirds*; *acs*; *auss*; *uguns*; *krogus*; *suns*; *nakts*; *tīrgus*; *puika*.

Exercise 99b

Translate into Latvian:

1. I gave them four books each.
2. Let us each plant a bush in the garden.
3. Please give us each a glass of wine.
4. In each room there are three windows.
5. John and Eve sold three dozen eggs each.

Exercise 99c

Decline in the singular and plural: *auša*; *bende*; *nelga*; *puika*; *soma*.

Exercise 99d

Translate into English:

1. Sniegputenis aizputināja visus ceļus piekrastē.
2. Kad ārā ir vētra un jūra bango, tad ir jauki sēdēt krodziņā pie siltās krāsniņas.
3. Cik skaisti viņa glāzē mirdz ledutiņš!
4. Es neesmu dzērājs, bet alutiņš man garšo.
5. Kas tās par drupām? – Šeit ugunsgrēks tūkstoš devīsimt četrdesmit pirmajā gadā iznīcināja lielu baznīcu.
6. Bērnam actiņas jau ir ciet, viņam jāiet gulēt.
7. Mēs cerējam, ka būs mierīga naksniņa, bet tālumā jau zibeno: būs pērkona negaiss.
8. Krustmāte iedeva katram bērniņam pa karotītei medutiņa.
9. Ūdentiņš upītē ir tik skaidrs, ka var redzēt katru akmentiņu dziļumā.
10. Ko šī zostiņa (here: *silly girl!*) plāpā par plūdiem un citām briesmām?
11. Kas par siltu lietutiņu!
12. Šis sunītis pieder Annīgai.
13. Iekurini krāsniņā uguntiņu!
14. Visi ļautiņi iet uz Ziemsvētku tirdziņu (*Christmas Fair*).
15. Sals ir stiprs; puikam jāiet iekšā, jo viņam jau ir pavisam sarkanas austiņas. un deguns arī tek!
16. Žēlīgais Dievs, zemestrīcē aizgāja bojā tik daudz cilvēku!
17. Bārenītei aiz bailēm trīcēja rociņas.
18. Tā nedrīkst turēt nazīti, tu ievainosi rociņu.
19. Ūdentiņš tecēja no jumta lejup uz ietni.
20. Kad Janka aizceļos, Ievai sāpēs sirsniņa.
21. Vai tērauds ir līdzīgs dzelzij?
22. Kurai valstij tagad ir lielākā flote pasaulē?
23. Šinī kastē ir divi simti jaunu pasu.
24. Debesis ir skaidras, tad nebūs lietus.
25. Cik Cēsīs ir iedzīvotāju?
26. Šīs jaunās zāles iznīcina utis dažās sekundēs.
27. Uz slapjiem un dubļainiem ceļiem visām mašīnām draud briesmas.
28. Kura ir vissmagākā gāze, un kura visvieglākā?

Exercise 99e

Translate into Latvian, using diminutives to translate words marked with an asterisk (*).

1. *Honey is a good medicine for (*pret*) a cough.
2. The boy has blue *eyes.
3. Many beasts of prey are more horrible than the lion.
4. She has a kind *heart.
5. In the *tavern behind the *market, some drunkards, scoundrels and gossips were sitting.
6. If you do not like the taste of *beer, then you are an ignoramus!
7. Perhaps Baiba was quiet only out of shyness.
8. He has been a drunkard for many long years; therefore he now has a red nose.
9. There is some warm *water in the kettle on the *stove.
10. *Autumn is here; let's go gathering *berries.
11. After the rain tiny *flowers will bloom on the fallow-ground behind the birch grove.
12. Is there still some *ice in the cellar?
13. Why did you frighten the *dog?
14. John was fishing all night.
15. There is probably a *stone in my shoe.
16. That old woman is a terrible gossip.
17. The architectural styles of this period are very interesting.
18. I shall not ask the nation's opinion.
19. St. John's Day is in the middle of summer.
20. Everybody praises the beauty of our fountain.
21. Jack no longer wishes to tend the animals.
22. Latvian folk songs and dances are as old as the Latvian people itself.
23. My hairdresser was very rude to me this morning.
24. Why did you not inform me of that earlier?
25. The poet always writes his poetry in the bedroom, because it is quieter there.
26. How many envelopes can I get for ten copecks?

LESSON 100

THE VOCATIVE CASE

The vocative case must be used when a person or thing is addressed, i.e., when a noun is used interjectionally, as in:

John, come here! Rain, rain, go away! Yes, father!

In these sentences, 'John', 'rain' and 'father' are directly addressed, and must therefore be in the vocative case in Latvian. The vocative case of the various declensions is formed as follows:

Masculine nouns in *-s* and *-š*:

The vocative case is here formed by dropping the *-s* of the nominative, if the noun has a suffix before the ending:

Nom. <i>skolotājs</i>	Voc. <i>skolotāj!</i>
Nom. <i>kurpnieks</i>	Voc. <i>kurpniek!</i>
Nom. <i>putniņš</i>	Voc. <i>putniņ!</i>

So also of proper nouns:

Nom. <i>Artūrs</i>	Voc. <i>Artūr!</i>
Nom. <i>Pāvils</i>	Voc. <i>Pāvil!</i>

Other nouns of the *-s* declension normally retain the *-s*, or alternatively, are used in the diminutive, where the presence of a suffix allows the *-š* to be dropped:

Nom. <i>dēls</i>	Voc. <i>dēls!</i> or <i>dēliņ!</i>
Nom. <i>zīrgs</i>	Voc. <i>zīrgs!</i> or <i>zirdziņ!</i>
Nom. <i>draugs</i>	Voc. <i>draugs!</i> or <i>draudziņ!</i>

When addressing people professionally, the following is more usual:

Nom. <i>skolotājs</i>	Voc. <i>skolotāja kungs!</i>
Nom. <i>kārtībnieks</i>	Voc. <i>kārtībnieka kungs!</i>

These forms contrast with the more intimate *skolotāj!* and *kārtībniek!* given above.

Similarly, *ārsta kungs!* is formal, *ārsts!* less formal, and *ārstiņ!* very familiar.

Feminine nouns in *-a* and *-e*:

Here, as above, the vocative is formed by dropping the *-a* or *-e* from proper nouns, nouns with suffixes and, more commonly than above, with other nouns denoting people:

Nom. <i>Ieva</i>	Voc. <i>Iev!</i> (or <i>Ieva!</i>)
Nom. <i>skolotāja</i>	Voc. <i>skolotāj!</i> (or <i>skolotājas kundze!</i>)
Nom. <i>māte</i>	Voc. <i>māt!</i>

With other inanimates, the ending is usually retained, or else the diminutive is used without ending:

Nom. <i>ābele</i>	Voc. <i>ābele!</i> (or <i>ābellī!</i>)
Nom. <i>puķe</i>	Voc. <i>puķe!</i> (or <i>puķīt!</i>)
Nom. <i>jūra</i>	Voc. <i>jūra!</i> (or <i>jūriņ!</i>)

Masculine nouns in *-is*:

These normally lose the *-s* in the vocative:

Nom. <i>brālis</i>	Voc. <i>brālī!</i> (or <i>brāl!</i> See below)
Nom. <i>Kārlis</i>	Voc. <i>Kārli!</i> (or <i>Kār!</i> See below)

Alternatively, the diminutive form may often be used, normally without ending:

Nom. <i>brālis</i>	Voc. <i>brālīt!</i> (or as above)
Nom. <i>lācis</i>	Voc. <i>lācīt!</i> (or as above)

The forms with no ending at all may also be found for proper nouns:

Nom. <i>Miķelis</i>	Voc. <i>Miķeli!</i> or <i>Miķel!</i>
Nom. <i>Jānis</i>	Voc. <i>Jāni!</i> or <i>Jān!</i>

Masculine nouns in *-ns* (*akmens* type) and *-us*:

Here the vocative is usually the same as the nominative; alternatively, the diminutive without ending may be found:

Nom. <i>ūdens</i>	Voc. <i>ūdens!</i> or <i>ūdentīņ!</i>
Nom. <i>krogus</i>	Voc. <i>krogus!</i> or <i>krodziņ!</i>

For given names in *-us*, the vocative is usually in *-u*:

Nom. <i>Mikus</i>	Voc. <i>Miku!</i>
-------------------	-------------------

Feminines in *-s*:

These too have the vocative identical with the nominative, with the possibility of using the diminutive without ending:

Nom. <i>zoss</i>	Voc. <i>zoss!</i> or <i>zostiņ!</i>
Nom. <i>uguns</i>	Voc. <i>uguns!</i> or <i>uguntiņ!</i>

The vocative plural is always identical with the nominative plural, except that here too diminutive forms may be used, but the ending must be maintained:

Nom.	<i>zirgi</i>	Voc.	<i>zirgi!</i>	or	<i>zirdziņi!</i>
Nom.	<i>puķes</i>	Voc.	<i>puķes!</i>	or	<i>puķītes!</i>

Adjectives used with a noun in the vocative are always in the definite declension, and usually take the nominative ending:

Nom.	<i>mīlais draugs</i>	Voc.	<i>mīlais draugs!</i>
------	----------------------	------	-----------------------

However, if the vocative form of the noun differs from the nominative form, the adjective may be in the accusative:

Nom.	<i>mīlā māte</i>	Voc.	<i>mīlā māte!</i>	or
			<i>mīlā māt!</i>	or
			<i>mīlo māt!</i>	

Note the form *manu sirsniņ!* 'my darling'.

Two important diminutives should be learnt at this stage:

<i>tēvs:</i>	<i>tētis</i>	or	<i>tētiņš</i>
<i>māte:</i>	<i>māmiņa</i>	or	<i>māmuliņa</i>

Thus the vocative of *tēvs* and *māte* will often be *tētiņ!* or *tēt!* and *māmiņ!* or *māmuliņ!*

Exercise 100a

Give the vocative of: *māte*; *skolotājs*; *dejojāja*; *saimnieks*; *tēvs*; *krusttēvs*; *skolniece*; *zirgs*; *ārsts*; *dēls*; *Artūrs*; *Anna*; *Biruta*; *ligzda*; *mēle*; *karote*; *Jānis*; *kaķis*; *ūdens*; *lietus*; *zoss*; *rudens*; *sirds*; *krogus*.

Exercise 100b

Give the vocative of: *brāļi*; *māšas*; *māšīcas*; *krustmeitas*.

Exercise 100c

Translate into Latvian, in the vocative: dear daughter! old friend! beautiful bird!

Exercise 100d

Give the diminutive forms of: *zirgs*; *roka*; *tēvs*; *ērglis*; *vēstule*; *sirds*; *klints*; *laudis*; *ūdens*; *suns*; *tirgus*; *alus*; *krogus*; *akmens*; *gredzens*; *deguns*.

Exercise 100e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Let us each write two verses.
2. I gave the children each a new book.
3. These chairs each cost nine pounds.
4. Each flat has three large rooms.
5. These songs each have ten lines.

Exercise 100f

Translate into Latvian: the 14th of October, 1934; the 29th of February, 1948; the 31st of December, 1957; the 14th of August, 1966.

Exercise 100g

Translate into English:

1. Kārtībniek, kārtībniek! Šis nelietis man seko! – Cik ilgi viņš jums jau seko, jaunkundz? – Jau desmit minūtes. – Ej prom, tu nelieti, citādi es tevi apcietināšu!
2. Vai jūs arī lidojat uz Ņujorku, tautiet?
3. Cik skaisti tu dziedā, lakstīgala!
4. Vai tu neredzēji manu rokas somiņu, (= *hand-bag*) māt? – Nē, meit! Artūr! Pāvil! Palīdziet Ievai meklēt rokas somiņu!
5. Kā tev iet, veco zēn? – Labi, draudziņ, es tagad strādāju par architektu. – Tā, tad tu laikam nopelni labu naudu, architekt! – Tā ir, bet mazāk nekā tu, inženier!
6. Ardievu, Kurzemīt!
7. Lūdzu, pieturiet šeit, šofer!
8. Ar labu nakti, tēt! – Ar labu naksniņu, meitiņ!
9. Zirdziņ, zirdziņ, vai tev bail no manis? Es tev gribu dot cukura gabaliņu!
10. Labvakar, Jāni! – Labvakar, saimniec!
11. Miķel, Aivar, lūdzu pie brokastu galda!
12. Runā latviski, Baibiņ!
13. Konduktor, cikos mēs būsīm Cēsīs?
14. Kāpēc tu atkal bango, jūriņ? Tu gan varētu būt mierīga manā brīvlaikā!
15. Māt, kurā podā ir medutiņš?
16. Ko tu zini par ballēm, mazā zostiņ?
17. Vai es arī varu dabūt alutiņu, krustmāt? – Nē, manu sirsniņ, tu vēl esi maza.
18. Saimniek, mācītāja kungs ir ārā! – Tad aicini viņu iekšā, brāl!

19. Es tev dāvināšu skaistu gredzenu, manu zvaigznīt! (Term of endearment; cf. also *pelīte*, *sirsniņa*, *kaķītis*, *mušiņa*.) Un ja es būtu bagātāks, tevīs labad es darītu visu!
20. Krodziņ, kur tu esi? Es tevi nevaru miglā ieraudzīt.
21. Tagad gan tev jāiet gulēt, mīļo pelīt, tavas actiņas jau ir sarkanas.
22. Māmiņ, māmuliņ, atbildi! Kur tu esi?

Exercise 100h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Good-bye, beautiful Vidzeme!
2. You do talk nonsense, Michael!
3. What did you once promise me, my sweetheart?
4. I do not want to see you empty-handed tomorrow, postman.
5. Good day, artist! Did you sell any paintings yesterday? – No, friend.
6. You have to clean all the windows, girlie!
7. Where are you going to, my pretty maid? – To the pharmacy, daddy!
8. Thank you for the vegetables, neighbour!
9. Examine his bag, constable!
10. How beautifully you are blooming, apple tree!
11. Did that scoundrel threaten you, Charles?
12. Waiter, a bottle of beer, please! (Do not forget the influence of the understood verb.)
13. Go home, doggie!
14. You are a diligent girl, Eve.
15. Another glass, brother! (See No. 12 above.)
16. Speak English, John!
17. Eve! – Yes, mummy? – Will you be wearing your new yellow blouse tonight?
18. May I sit next to you, young lady? – Please do, countryman.
19. What do you say about our new fountain, poet? – May God forgive the architect!
20. Why aren't you shining, dear sun?
21. Won't the clay harm the roses, gardener? – Never! Roses require clayey soil!
22. Good morning, uncle! – Good morning, little Baiba!
23. What are you doing in the cellar, pussy-cat?
24. Many people perish each year in blizzards and fires and earthquakes.
25. The river is already flooding the lower meadows.
26. After the thunderstorm we had a small flood here.
27. The storm destroyed many fishing-boats.

28. This blizzard will soon cover the roads.
29. The old castle is now in ruins.
30. Father gave us each two dollars.
31. Hands off that knife: you will injure some one!
32. In great fear the dog was shaking under the table.
33. Can you hear the music from the twentieth row? – Yes, but you cannot see the musicians and the conductor.
34. Who will conduct the orchestra at this evening's concert?
35. The painter lives on the eighteenth floor.
36. There are three primary schools and one high school in this town.
37. The photographer is teaching his friend the tailor how to take photographs.
38. The word 'violin' is on page five hundred and thirty-six of this dictionary.
39. The tenth verse of the poem describes a great crowd of people.
40. All of a sudden I heard music in the distance.

LESSON 101

THE PAST PARTICIPLE ACTIVE; THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The masculine singular (nominative) of this participle is formed from the imperfect stem: we simply drop the ending *-u*, replacing it with the ending *-is*, as in the following examples:

Infinitive	Imperfect	Past Participle Active
<i>strādāt</i>	<i>strādāj-u</i>	<i>strādāj-is</i>
<i>dziedāt</i>	<i>dziedāj-u</i>	<i>dziedāj-is</i>
<i>meklēt</i>	<i>meklēj-u</i>	<i>meklēj-is</i>
<i>peldēt</i>	<i>peldēj-u</i>	<i>peldēj-is</i>
<i>mainīt</i>	<i>mainīj-u</i>	<i>mainīj-is</i>
<i>medīt</i>	<i>medīj-u</i>	<i>medīj-is</i>
<i>svilpot</i>	<i>svilpoj-u</i>	<i>svilpoj-is</i>
<i>dabūt</i>	<i>dabūj-u</i>	<i>dabūj-is</i>
<i>dot</i>	<i>dev-u</i>	<i>dev-is</i>
<i>ļēt</i>	<i>gāj-u</i>	<i>gāj-is</i>
<i>būt</i>	<i>bij-u</i>	<i>bij-is</i>

There are no exceptions to this rule.

The masculine plural has *-uši* instead of *-is*, and the feminine singular and plural *-usi* and *-ušas* respectively:

Infinitive	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
<i>runāt</i>	<i>runāj-is</i>	<i>runāj-uši</i>	<i>runāj-usi</i>	<i>runāj-ušas</i>
<i>svinēt</i>	<i>svinēj-is</i>	<i>svinēj-uši</i>	<i>svinēj-usi</i>	<i>svinēj-ušas</i>
<i>vārīt</i>	<i>vārlj-is</i>	<i>vārlj-uši</i>	<i>vārlj-usi</i>	<i>vārlj-ušas</i>
<i>krāsot</i>	<i>krāsoj-is</i>	<i>krāsoj-uši</i>	<i>krāsoj-usi</i>	<i>krāsoj-ušas</i>
<i>uzdot</i>	<i>uzdēv-is</i>	<i>uzdēv-uši</i>	<i>uzdēv-usi</i>	<i>uzdēv-ušas</i>
<i>aiziet</i>	<i>aizgāj-is</i>	<i>aizgāj-uši</i>	<i>aizgāj-usi</i>	<i>aizgāj-ušas</i>
<i>būt</i>	<i>bij-is</i>	<i>bij-uši</i>	<i>bij-usi</i>	<i>bij-ušas</i>

Again there are no exceptions.

Notice that the closed *ę* of the masculine singular is elsewhere open, unless a *-j-* intervenes.

These forms are the nominative forms only. The participle has a full adjectival declension, but we shall not concern ourselves with it at this stage.

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

In English the Present Perfect Tense is made up of the verb 'to have' and the past participle:

I have sung; he has repeated; we have replied.

In Latvian, this tense is made up of the verb 'to be' plus the Past Participle Active:

I have sung	<i>es esmu dziedājis</i>
he has repeated	<i>viņš ir atkārtojis</i>

The past participle active in the present perfect tense must agree with the subject, as is seen from the following:

John has sung.	<i>Jānis ir dziedājis.</i>
Eve has sung.	<i>Ieva ir dziedājusi.</i>
The boys have worked.	<i>Puiši ir strādājuši.</i>
The girls have worked.	<i>Meitas ir strādājušas.</i>
We (m.) have replied.	<i>Mēs esam atbildējuši.</i>
We (f.) have replied.	<i>Mēs esam atbildējušas.</i>

Note then the full conjugation of the present perfect tense, given here with the verb *prasīt*:

I (m.) have asked	<i>es esmu prasījis</i>
I (f.) have asked	<i>es esmu prasījusi</i>
you (m. s.) have asked	<i>tu esi prasījis</i>
you (f. s.) have asked	<i>tu esi prasījusi</i>
he has asked	<i>viņš ir prasījis</i>
she has asked	<i>viņa ir prasījusi</i>
we (m.) have asked	<i>mēs esam prasījuši</i>
we (f.) have asked	<i>mēs esam prasījušas</i>
you (m. s.) have asked	<i>jūs esat prasījis</i>
you (f. s.) have asked	<i>jūs esat prasījusi</i>
you (m. pl.) have asked	<i>jūs esat prasījuši</i>
you (f. pl.) have asked	<i>jūs esat prasījušas</i>
they (m.) have asked	<i>viņi ir prasījuši</i>
they (f.) have asked	<i>viņas ir prasījušas</i>

The negative is formed quite simply by negating the auxiliary:

<i>es neesmu prasījis, prasījusi</i>
<i>tu neesi prasījis, prasījusi</i>
<i>viņš nav prasījis</i>
<i>viņa nav prasījusi</i>
<i>mēs neesam prasījuši, prasījušas</i>
<i>jūs neesat prasījis, prasījusi, prasījuši, prasījušas</i>
<i>viņi nav prasījuši</i>
<i>viņas nav prasījušas</i>

The present perfect tense of the debitive mood is logically formed: remember that the element with *jā-* remains constant, the tense being shown by the auxiliary:

<i>man (ir) jāiet</i>	I have to go
<i>man bija jāiet</i>	I had to go
<i>man būs jāiet</i>	I shall have to go
<i>man būtu jāiet</i>	I would have to go, I ought to go
hence	
<i>man ir bijis jāiet</i>	I have had to go

The logical object of a verb in the debitive mood is in the nominative (except in the case of first or second person pronouns). The auxiliary verb in such constructions agrees with such a following nominative:

<i>Man ir bijis jāvalkā kreklus.</i>	I have had to wear a shirt.
<i>Man ir bijusi jāvalkā cepure.</i>	I have had to wear a hat.
<i>Man ir bijuši jāvalkā krekli.</i>	I have had to wear shirts.
<i>Man ir bijušas jāvalkā cepures.</i>	I have had to wear hats.

There is no agreement when the debitive is followed by an accusative or dative:

<i>Man ir bijis tevi jāgaida.</i>	I have had to wait for you (f.).
<i>Man ir bijis jāatbild vēstulei.</i>	I have had to answer the letter.

There is also no agreement when the debitive is followed by an infinitive and object:

<i>Man ir bijis jāsola rakstīt vēstuli.</i>	I have had to promise to write a letter.
<i>Mums ir bijis jāmēģina lasīt šo tulkojumu.</i>	We have had to try to read this translation.

Care must be taken too with the agreement of the past participle active in phrases involving the dative of possession. Where such phrases are positive, there is agreement of the participle with the logical object, which is in the nominative:

<i>Man ir bijis draugs.</i>	I have had a friend.
<i>Man ir bijuši draugi.</i>	I have had friends.
<i>Man ir bijusi draudzene.</i>	I have had a friend (f.).
<i>Man ir bijušas draudzenes.</i>	I have had friends (f.).

In the negative, however, the logical object goes into the genitive, and no agreement occurs:

<i>Man nav bijis drauga.</i>	I have not had a friend.
<i>Man nav bijis draugu.</i>	I have not had friends.
<i>Man nav bijis draudzenes.</i>	I have not had a friend (f.).
<i>Man nav bijis draudzeņu.</i>	I have not had friends (f.).

If the genitive occurs after words such as *daudz*, then no agreement is made:

<i>Man ir bijis daudz draugu.</i>	I have had many friends.
<i>Man ir bijis daudz draudzeņu.</i>	I have had many friends (f.).

It should be noted too that the construction without pronoun which translates verbs with an indefinite subject in English (e.g., *šeit pārdod biļetes* 'here one sells tickets') is not normally found in the present perfect tense.

Exercise 101a

Give the masculine singular of the past participle active of: *svinēt; raudāt; piepildīt; būt; aiziet; atdot; dabūt; ražot; medīt; uzzīmēt; pasūtīt; strādāt.*

Exercise 101b

Conjugate in the present perfect tense: *būt; atiet; dabūt; tēlot; apdrošināt; smēķēt; zināt.*

Exercise 101c

Give the second person singular, present perfect debitive, of the verbs listed in Ex. 101b.

Exercise 101d

Give the vocative case of: *kurpnieks; skolniece; kaimiņš; dakšiņa; tēvs; ūdens; tirgus; zoss; mācītājs.*

Exercise 101e

Give the diminutive forms of: *krogus; zoss; ābele; akmens; zirgs; lietus; sirds; roka; brokastis; ļaudis; gredzens; deguns.*

Exercise 101f

Translate into English:

1. Es esmu grozījis savus plānus.
2. Tu nekad neesi palīdzējusi savai ģimenei.
3. Tu nekad neesi domājis par citiem.
4. Es ceru, ka viņa man ir piedevusi.
5. Ko tu esi pārdevusi?
6. Mēs esam nomazgājuši logus, un meitenes ir izmazgājušas palagus, galdautus un dvieļus.
7. Vai jūs esat sludinājis avīzē, ka jūsu namā ir brīvs dzīvoklis?
8. Kāpēc jūs vēl neesat aizgājuši uz jūrmaļu? Meitenes jau ir aizgājušas.
9. Vai jūs neesat dzirdējušas, ka šeit nedrīkst peldēt?
10. Jūsu meitas visu dienu ir čakli strādājušas.
11. Ieva laikam ir raudājusi, tāpēc ka Kārlis viņu ir kaitinājis.
12. Mēs vēl neesam barojušas vistas un cūkas, bet mēs esam salasījušas olas no vistu ligzdām.
13. Mēs jūs esam bieži aicinājuši ciemos.
14. Kāpēc tu neesi aizgājusi ciemos pie Birutas? – Viņa nav mani aicinājusi! – Ko tu plāpā? Viņas vecāki ir tevi aicinājuši.

15. Karā tev bija jāpavēl, bet man bija jāklausa.
16. Jurim ir bijusi jāaptur mašīna.
17. Mums ir bijis jāgaida.
18. Jums ir bijis jādzied un jādejo.
19. Viņiem ir bijis jālasa un jāraksta.
20. Viņām ir bijis jāgludina.
21. Brālim nav bijis jārunā.
22. Tev nav bijis jāmaksā, tēt!
23. Tev nav bijis daudz jātēlo, jo tu esi dabīgs auša!
24. Ērgļi ir plēsoņas.
25. Kalnup, kalnup, draugi: upe jau ir applūdinājusi visu ieleju!
26. Pērkona negaisā nama sienas trīcēja.
27. Pēc plūdiem bija liels ugunsgrēks.
28. Ūdens netek augšup, tikai lejup.
29. Zirnekļi skraidīja šurp un turp pa paklājiem.
30. Agrais vilciens jau ir aizgājis.
31. Šī jaunā spēkstacija, ko būvē no betona un tērauda, dos visam apgabalam elektrību.
32. Viņš laikam nav varējis novietot savu mašīnu.
33. Vai bendem nav kauna no sava amata?
34. Šis uzņēmums ražo katru minūti vienu tonnu tērauda.
35. Vācija ir slavēta ar (*famous for*) saviem rūpniecības ražojumiem.
36. Vai visi var veidot savu dzīvi, kā viņi grib?
37. Pēc otrā pasaules kara neviena franču valdība nebija ilgi amatā.
38. Vai tev kādreiz ir bijusi draudzene? – Nē, man nekad nav bijis draudzenes.

Exercise 101g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I have loved her.
2. I (f.) have been standing on the eighteenth floor.
3. He has now planted that bush in the garden.
4. Has she returned the pencil? – No, she has not returned it.
5. We have forgiven our neighbours.
6. We (f.) have always used expensive soap.
7. Have you lived in Kēmeri?
8. You have been whistling in class again, you naughty boys!
9. Why haven't you (f.) fed the sheep?
10. They have translated many poems, novels and short stories.
11. Haven't they been begging in front of the bank?
12. They (f.) have sold their brooches and gems.

13. If they (f.) have not paid for their meals, the waiter should tell the manager.
14. The tailor has had to talk to the pastor about his daughter's wedding.
15. John had to wash his face. (*mazgāt muti*)
16. Biruta has had to teach her little niece.
17. I have often had to sleep in a cold room.
18. I have never had to sit in that uncomfortable chair.
19. You have had to smile.
20. We have had to wait.
21. We have had to kiss the old ladies' hands.
22. Have you had to count all the bottles on the shelf?
23. You still have not had to send a telegram.
24. At times they have had to work as farm-labourers.
25. They have had to fly to Paris.
26. They (f.) have had to examine each fountain pen.
27. They (f.) have never had to make clay vessels.
28. Has that ignoramus been gossiping again?
29. Some drunkard has been abusing Jack in the street.
30. The blizzard has covered all the roads.
31. Many people have already perished in this storm.
32. Earthquakes have destroyed many cities in this century.
33. The sea has been raging all night.
34. Are you sure that the workman has given the children each five cents?
35. Did you look at the old ruins in Latgale?
36. The hunter has only wounded the lion.
37. The bird is holding a fish in its beak.
38. Thin men sometimes have great strength.

LESSON 102

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

In English the past perfect tense is formed with 'had' and the past participle. In Latvian it is formed with the imperfect tense of *būt* and the past participle active. Only the tense of the auxiliary differentiates it from the present perfect tense.

es biju sacījis (sacījis)
tu biji lasījis (lasījis)
viņš bija devis

I had said
 you had read
 he had given

<i>viņa bija aizgājusi</i>	she had gone away
<i>mēs bijām gulējuši (gulējušas)</i>	we had slept
<i>jūs bijāt darījis (darījusi, darījuši, darījušas)</i>	you had done
<i>viņi bija atbildējuši</i>	they had answered
<i>viņas bija redzējušas</i>	they had seen

The past perfect tense of the debitive mood is regularly formed:

<i>man bija bijis jāaiziet</i>	I had had to go away
<i>viņai bija bijis jāubago</i>	she had had to beg
<i>tev bija bijusi jāaptur mašīna</i>	you had had to stop the car

Vocabulary

<i>izglītība</i>	education
<i>izglītots</i>	educated
<i>augstskola</i>	university
<i>pārzinis</i>	headmaster; manager; supervisor
<i>pārbaudījums</i>	examination
<i>izturēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to pass (exam); to bear, endure
<i>neizturēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to fail (exam); not to bear, not to endure
<i>mācības spēks</i>	member of staff (of school or university)
<i>baudīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to have the benefit of, to enjoy
<i>dāvana</i>	gift
<i>apdāvināts</i>	gifted
<i>lektors</i>	lecturer
<i>lekcija</i>	lecture
<i>profesors</i>	professor
<i>tāfele</i>	blackboard
<i>gādāt (par) (-āju, -āju)</i>	to see to, take care of
<i>vai ne?</i>	is it not so?

NOTES: *Vai ne* is used wherever English asks a question by inverting and negating the auxiliary verb of a preceding positive statement, or vice versa, cf.

<i>Tu dziedāji, vai ne?</i>	You were singing, weren't you?
<i>Viņš ir ārsts, vai ne?</i>	He is a doctor, isn't he?
<i>Viņi maksās, vai ne?</i>	They will pay, won't they?

gādāt par to, ka 'to see to it that, to see that. . .'

Lektors and *profesors* have foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 102a

Conjugate in the present perfect and past perfect: *baudīt; gādāt; izturēt; būt; iet; dot*.

Exercise 102b

Repeat the conjugations of Ex. 102a in the negative.

Exercise 102c

Give the second person plural debitive of the present perfect and past perfect tenses of the verbs listed in Ex. 102a.

Exercise 102d

Give the diminutive and vocative forms of: *ārsts; skolnieks; suns; māte; ūdens; lietus*.

Exercise 102e

Translate into English:

1. Vidusskolas izglītība Austrālijā ir brīva, bet augstskolās par lekcijām ir jāmaksā.
2. Veikala pārzinis bija aizgājis ap desmitiem.
3. Tikai divas studentes nebija izturējušas šo pārbaudījumu. Viņām bija jāiet vēl vienu gadu uz visām lekcijām.
4. Kā izglītots cilvēks var būt tik briesmīgi rupjš pret dāmām?
5. Profesors nedomā, ka Juris ir apdāvināts.
6. Kārlim ir dabīgas aktiera dāvanas, vai ne?
7. Ko viņa bija uzrakstījusi uz tāfeles?
8. Man nekad nebija bijis jāgādā par alu un vīnu.
9. Pie šā lektora es nekad neizturēju pārbaudījumu, jo viņš mani neieredz.
10. Artūrs bija baudījis labu izglītību, par to bija gādājis viņa tēvs.
11. Augstskola atkal meklē mācības spēkus un rūpniecība darba spēku.
12. Piepildiet glāzes, draugi! Baudīsim dzīvi!
13. Agrāk Kalniņa kungs bija vidusskolas pārzinis, bet kopš tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit deviņā gada viņš ir augstskolas lektors.
14. Aivaram bija bijis jāiet pie tāfeles.

15. "Jūs esat apdāvināts, Ergli," sacīja profesors, "bet jums būs čaklāk jāstrādā, draudzīņ, citādi jūs neizturēsīt pārbaudījumu."
16. Šoferim bija bijis pēkšņi jāaptur autobuss.
17. Tie zēni, kas nebija baudījuši augstāku izglītību, tomēr bija dabūjuši labu darbu.
18. Apdāvinātie skolnieki parasti nav sevišķi čakli.
19. Viņiem bija bijis jāiet pie skolas pārziņa.
20. Kalniņ, lūdzu pie tāfeles; parādi, ko tu māki!
21. Pāvilam bija bijis jāgādā par saviem vecākiem, kad viņš strādāja par lektoru augstskolā.
22. Šovakar tev lekciju nav, vai ne?
23. Profesori un citi mācības spēki laikam ir tanī istabā, vai ne?
24. Labākā dāvana izglītotam cilvēkam ir grāmata.
25. Pārziņa kungs, vai es izturēšu pārbaudījumu? – Tu esi apdāvināta meitene un tu esi arī daudz strādājusi, gan jau tu izturēsi!
26. Visi mācības spēki domāja, ka viņš neizturēs galveno pārbaudījumu.
27. Notekas parasti taisa no betona.
28. Janvāra beigās šim uzņēmumam būs jauns īpašnieks.
29. Vai mazais Juris jau māc reizināt?
30. Reizē ar pārkonu bija zibens.
31. Viņš lasa laikrakstu tā, it kā tas būtu romāns.
32. Februāris ir īsākais mēnesis, jo tam ir tikai divdesmit astoņas dienas.
33. Ko tu pašreiz gribi darīt?
34. Kas par īpatnu putnu!
35. Jūlijs ir gada septītais un augusts astotais mēnesis.

Exercise 102f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The lecturer had drawn the plan on the blackboard.
2. The educated man had had to work as a labourer.
3. Both sisters had enjoyed a good education.
4. Had you informed father that Charles had passed all his exams? – Yes, and I had to send him a telegram.
5. After my husband's death, I had had to look after the children's education.
6. That was an expensive gift, wasn't it?
7. Do university students have to attend every lecture?
8. I do not want to talk to (*ar*) the other staff members; I want to talk to the headmaster himself.
9. In that year we had not passed the examinations.
10. The manager of the section had rung me.

11. Your son is very gifted, isn't he? – Yes, but he is lazy.
12. What had the professor said? – University is no kindergarten (*bērnu dārzs*).
13. She is a gifted artist.
14. How can I show my gratitude, professor?
15. What had Anne drawn on the blackboard?
16. We (f.) had taken care of the flowers at Māra's wedding.
17. The lecturer had prepared an interesting lecture.
18. I have enjoyed life!
19. She had not worked, but she had nevertheless passed the exam.
20. You will not be able to endure the hot sun without a hat.
21. If he were not educated, he would not be able to work as a school-teacher, would he?
22. On her twenty-first birthday Anne got many presents.
23. What did Eve have on at the ball?
24. There is a strange stamp on this envelope.
25. How many days are there in February? – It all depends; sometimes twenty-eight, sometimes twenty-nine.
26. The address and surname had to be written in ink.
27. The tram conductor had no change.
28. How many blooms did you have to order?
29. Did you pass the examination on that occasion?
30. The fisherman goes fishing with his nets near a small island two miles from the coast.
31. There are many problems to be solved in our century.
32. In very cold countries people must fill buckets with snow in order to get water.
33. Thirty days hath September, April, June and November.
34. This time you will have to clean the carpet yourself.
35. The hero of this novel is a very selfish man.
36. The kettle will have to be polished two or three times before it is shiny enough.
37. Right now the blossoms are very beautiful.
38. Today is the 10th of March, 1958.
39. Christmas Day is on the 25th of December.
40. Both May and October have thirty-one days.

LESSON 103

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

This tense is formed with the future tense of the verb *būt* and the past participle active.

<i>es būšu atbildējis, atbildējusi</i>	I shall have replied
<i>tu būsi atkārtojis, atkārtojusi</i>	you will have repeated
<i>viņš būs pārdevis</i>	he will have sold
<i>viņa būs aizgājusi</i>	she will have gone away
<i>mēs būsim izturējuši, izturējušas</i>	we shall have passed
<i>jūs būsit pārbaudījis, pārbaudījusi,</i> <i>pārbaudījuši, pārbaudījušas</i>	you will have examined
<i>viņi būs salīdzinājuši</i>	they will have compared
<i>viņas būs atdevušas</i>	they will have given back

The tense sequence rules applicable to the simple future apply equally well to the future perfect:

Es tev rakstīšu, kad tu būsi man atbildējis.
I shall write to you when you have answered me.

It is often used also in speculative questions:

Ko viņa būs darījusi?
What has she done, I wonder?

The future perfect debitive is again regular:

Man būs bijis jāmaksā.
I shall have had to pay.
Viņām būs bijis jāgaida.
They will have had to wait.

Vocabulary

<i>cēna</i>	price
<i>pārdevējs (-ēja)</i>	salesman (-woman)
<i>lielttirgotājs</i>	wholesaler
<i>skirtirgotājs</i>	retailer
<i>eksportēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to export
<i>importēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to import

<i>eksports</i> (sing. only)	export(s)
<i>imports</i> (sing. only)	import(s)
<i>prece</i>	commodity; (in pl., merchandise)
<i>skatlogs</i>	display-window, shop-window
<i>čeks</i>	cheque
<i>peļņa</i>	profit
<i>zaudējums</i>	loss
<i>grams</i>	gramme
<i>kilograms</i>	kilogramme
<i>konservi</i> (pl.)	tinned food(s)

NOTES: *Eksportēt, importēt, eksports, imports, kilograms* and *konservi* are all pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

<i>par katru cenu</i>	'at any price'
<i>ar peļņu</i>	'at a profit'
<i>ar zaudējumu</i>	'at a loss'

Exercise 103a

Conjugate in the present perfect, past perfect and future perfect: *eksportēt; zaudēt; aiziet; trīcēt; brīdināt; būt; dabūt*.

Exercise 103b

Give the debitive (third person plural masculine) of the verbs listed in Ex. 103a, in the tenses required in Ex. 103a.

Exercise 103c

Give the diminutive and vocative of: *zoss; uguns; ūdens; akmens; alus; medus; kurpnieks; palags; pele; māte; Kārlis; soma; Anna*.

Exercise 103d

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 103a.

Exercise 103e

Decline in singular and plural: *lauva; bende; suns; klints; balss.*

Exercise 103f

Translate into English:

1. Lieltirgotāji pārdod preces sīktirgotājiem.
2. Mēs šos konservus bijām importējuši no Dienvidāfrikas.
3. Agrāk Austrālijai vilnas eksports bija pirmajā vietā, bet tagad tā eksportē daudz citu preču un arī rūpniecības ražojumus.
4. Es skatlogā redzēju skaistu kažoku, tā būtu labākā dāvana sievai viņas dzimšanas dienā.
5. Lieltirgotāja meitas bija baudījušas labu izglītību.
6. Šai maisiņā ir divi simti gramu kafijas.
7. Vasaras brīvlaikā Jānis strādāja par pārdevēju, lai nopelnītu naudu augstskolai.
8. Mēs eksportējam vairāk nekā mēs importējam.
9. Par šo cenu var dabūt labu uzvalku.
10. Pirmajā gadā sīktirgotājam bija bijuši zaudējumi.
11. Viss eksports un imports bija dažu lieltirgotāju rokās.
12. Dāma bija ieraudzījusi skaistu blūzi skatlogā.
13. Mēs par savām importa precēm vienmēr maksājam ar čekiem, nekad skaidrā naudā.
14. Kāpēc tik apdāvināts un izglītots cilvēks strādā par pārdevēju?
15. Austrālija importē koku un papīru no Krievijas.
16. Zaudējums bija diezgan liels.
17. Jaunais lektors par katru cenu grib drīz būt profesors.
18. Ja pārdevējs izturēs šo pārbaudījumu, viņš varēs strādāt par nodaļas pārzini.
19. Ja kilograms miltu maksā sešpadsmit centus, tad tev šis skaitlis būtu jāreizina ar pieci, lai izrēķinātu piecu kilogramu cenu.
20. Septembra mēnesī mēs būsim eksportējuši vairāk nekā augustā.
21. Viņam būs bijis jāgādā par importu.
22. Viņš vēl nebūs izrēķinājis peļņu.
23. Varbūt viņš būs čeku pazaudējis.
24. Lūdzu, kur šeit ir eksporta nodaļa?
25. Viņš laikam nebūs izturējis pārbaudījumu.
26. Alu pārdod pudelēs un arī mucās.
27. Viņa būs pazaudējusi savu čeku grāmatīņu.
28. Cik maksā viens grams sudraba?

29. Visi mācības spēki ieredzēja šo apdāvināto studentu.
30. Kara zaudējumi bija smagi.
31. Miesnieki parasti uzraksta cenas uz tāfeles skatlogā.
32. Pirms gada beigām mēs zināsim, cik liela peļņa mums būs bijusi uz konserviem.
33. Cik gramu ir vienā kilogramā?
34. Amerikāņu nama mātes lieto daudz vairāk konservu nekā saimnieces citās zemēs, vai ne?

Exercise 103g

Translate into Latvian:

1. His profit will be small, because he will have had to import all his merchandise.
2. The salesgirl is arranging merchandise in the shop-window.
3. Why does that scoundrel ask such a high price?
4. Was there a cheque in the envelope?
5. The wholesaler is richer than the retailer.
6. The wholesaler probably thought only of a good profit when he imported all these tinned foods.
7. The retailer will have worked out his losses before evening.
8. Our exports were greater than our imports.
9. What commodities does America export to Russia?
10. She has probably obtained only two kilogrammes of flour.
11. He will have had to send a cheque.
12. They will have had large losses on their imports.
13. He has probably had to work as a salesman.
14. Lazy people live out of (no) cans (*konservi*).
15. He can export what he likes.
16. She has probably been standing in front of the shop-window for a long time. – Yes, and her husband has also had to stand and wait there.
17. Why are exports so important?
18. The children already know how to count in grammes and kilogrammes.
19. On the face of the earth there are many drunkards, prattlers, fools and ignoramuses.
20. For whose sake is that fool now working so hard?
21. I asked Jack a question, but he did not know the answer.

LESSON 104

THE CONDITIONAL PERFECT

This is formed with the conditional of *būt* and the past participle active.

<i>es būtu atbildējis, atbildējusi</i>	I would have answered
<i>tu būtu aizgājis, aizgājusi</i>	you would have gone away
<i>viņš būtu prasījis</i>	he would have asked
<i>mēs būtu runājuši, runājušas</i>	we would have spoken
<i>jūs būtu smaidījis, smaidījusi,</i> <i>smaidījuši, smaidījušas</i>	you would have smiled
<i>viņi būtu gājuši bojā</i>	they would have perished

The tense sequence rules applicable to the simple conditional must also be applied to the conditional perfect:

Ja es būtu aizgājis, jūs mani nebūtu redzējis.

If I had gone away, you would not have seen me.

The conditional perfect debitive is formed in the usual way. Like the simple conditional debitive, it has two distinct meanings:

- (1) I would have had to . . .
- (2) I ought to have, I should have . . .

<i>Man būtu bijis jāatbild.</i>	I would have had to answer.
OR	I ought to have answered.
<i>Tas viņai nebūtu bijis jāsaka.</i>	She would not have had to say that.
OR	She ought not to have said that.

Vocabulary

<i>prečēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to marry (transitive of partner)
<i>apprečēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to marry (transitive of partner)
<i>salaulāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to marry (transitive of celebrant)
<i>atraidīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to reject
<i>līgava</i>	bride
<i>līgavainis</i>	bridegroom
<i>ielūgums</i>	invitation
<i>kāzu ceļojums</i>	honeymoon (trip)
<i>pūrs</i>	dowry
<i>mīļestība</i>	love

<i>novēlēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to wish; to bequeath
<i>novēlējumi (pl.)</i>	wishes
<i>laulība</i>	marriage
<i>Zviedrija</i>	Sweden
<i>Spānija</i>	Spain
<i>Itālija</i>	Italy
<i>precinieks</i>	suitor

NOTES: *Precēt* and *apprecēt* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Novēlēt requires a dative of the person, and has the same alternation of open and closed *e* as *redzēt*.

Exercise 104a

Conjugate the following verbs in the four perfect tenses: *atraidīt*; *apprecēt*; *būt*; *iedot*; *gludināt*; *grozīt*.

Exercise 104b

Give the four debitive perfect tenses (in the third person singular feminine) of the verbs listed in Ex. 104a.

Exercise 104c

Translate into Latvian: the tenth of August, 1876; on the twenty-seventh of May, 1916; before the nineteenth of September, 1935; until the 3rd of January, 1960.

Exercise 104d

Give the imperative forms of: *sacīt*; *mācēt*; *slaucīt*; *tecēt*; *sēdēt*; *gulēt*.

Exercise 104e

Translate into Latvian: at 3:15; at 4:20; at 9:10; at 2:45; at 9:30; at 11:25.

Exercise 104f

Translate into English:

1. Cik laimīgs gan es tagad būtu, ja tu toreiz būtu mani atraidījusi! – Kāds nelietis gan tu esi, Jāni, es tevis dēļ atraidīju dažus izglītotus un bagātus preciniekus! Varbūt mūsu laulība būtu bijusi laimīgāka, ja man būtu bijis lielāks pūrs!
2. Kārlis apprecēja bagāta lieltirgotāja meitu ar lielu pūru.
3. Viņš to meiteni grib precēt par katru cenu.
4. Viņš viņu neapprecēja aiz mīlestības, bet tikai viņas pūra dēļ.
5. Mācītājs Ozols viņus salaulāja tūkstoš deviņsimt divpadsmitā gada septiņpadsmitajā maijā.
6. Visi novēlēja līgavai un līgavainim daudz laimes jaunajā dzīvē.
7. Pārdevēju es nekad neprecētu, bet sīktirgotāju gan.
8. Tev tūlīt būtu bijis jāatbild viņu telegrammai.
9. Savā kāzu ceļojumā viņi bija apmeklējuši Spāniju un Itāliju.
10. Vai jūs dabūjāt ielūgumu?
11. Mēs jums novēlam daudz laimes jaunajā gadā.
12. Zviedrija eksportē kokus uz Itāliju, bet importē vīnu no Itālijas un Spānijas.
13. Līgavainim būtu bijis jāgādā par ielūgumiem.
14. Vai Zviedrijas eksports ir lielāks par tās importu?
15. Kāpēc šis vecais auša sūta mums savus novēlējumus? Viņam būtu bijis jāsūta čeks!
16. Vai līgavainis ir jau pasūtījis laulības gredzenus?
17. Mēs būtu pavadījuši vēl vienu nedēļu kāzu ceļojumā, ja mums būtu bijis vairāk naudas.
18. Ja Annai ir bijis tik daudz precinieku, kāpēc neviens viņu tomēr nav apprecējis?
19. Mūs salaulāja kara laikā.
20. Mana līgava bija ļoti priecīga par jūsu laipnajiem novēlējumiem.
21. Mūs ar tēvu salaulāja vecajā baznīcā.
22. Šī zostīpa laikam domā, ka precinieki stāvēs garā rindā viņas durvju priekšā, vai ne?
23. Itālijai nebija tik lielu kara zaudējumu kā Vācijai.
24. Viņai būtu bijis jāsakārto skatlogs.
25. Zviedrijā ir daudz mazāk iedzīvotāju nekā Spānijā.

Exercise 104g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I think that she would have had many suitors, had she been rich.
2. Enjoy your honeymoon, dear children!
3. The bridegroom is a university lecturer, and the bride also has probably enjoyed a higher education.
4. This is a gift from the bride's uncle in Sweden.
5. Here is a strange invitation from Michael's friend in Spain.
6. All the staff members wished their professor a happy new year.
7. The young teacher (f.) would have married the headmaster, had he been a little younger.
8. The pastor married them on the 10th of November, 1962.
9. I would marry that girl without a dowry.
10. The pupils had written good wishes on the blackboard.
11. The bridegroom should have taken care of the wedding-rings.
12. Whatever would Juris have done if Baiba had rejected him?
13. Which pastor will marry them?
14. If she had not loved him, she could not have endured life with him.
15. Let us send Aivars our best wishes, for he has passed the examination.
16. They chose Italy for their honeymoon.
17. How can one marry a person without love?
18. She would not have married an uneducated man.
19. I do not believe that her first suitor was a clever and gifted person.
20. The invitations are ready.
21. We send you our best wishes.
22. Mother had given us much love.
23. In Spain and Italy the dowry is still an important matter.
24. Sweden has given the world many famous film-stars.
25. Why did Biruta reject Charles?
26. The merchandise is still not here.
27. On the day of our marriage there was an earthquake.
28. The blizzard will soon have covered the roads and the railway.
29. During the great storm the sea was raging.
30. The theatre was destroyed in a fire, and now there are only ruins there.
31. After the storm there was a great flood.
32. Five people perished when the river flooded the valley.
33. Did the lion injure the boy?
34. Give them five cents each!

LESSON 105

ADVERBS IN *-AM* AND *-ĀM*

Most Latvian adverbs end in *-i*, although we have already met a small number in *-u*. *-Am* and *-ām* are two other adverbial suffixes, each of which is used in a limited number of words. Great care should be taken to distinguish the ending *-am* from the ending *-ām*. In many cases the *-ām* adverbs are interchangeable with adverbs in *-i*.

Vocabulary

<i>mūžam</i>	eternally, for ever
<i>nemūžam</i>	never, not once in a lifetime
<i>papilnam</i>	abundantly, profusely
<i>piemēram</i>	for example
<i>vietām</i>	in places, in some places
<i>kājām</i>	on foot
<i>lēnām</i> or <i>palēnām</i>	slowly
<i>klusām</i> or <i>paklusām</i>	quietly
<i>garām</i>	past
<i>tīšām</i> or <i>tīši</i>	on purpose
<i>netīšām</i> or <i>netīši</i>	accidentally
<i>pagaidām</i>	for the present, for the time being
<i>gaužām</i> or <i>gauži</i>	very
<i>tiešām</i> or <i>patiešām</i>	really, indeed
<i>paskaidrot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to explain
<i>izskaidrot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to explain
<i> piedāvāt</i> (<i>-āju, -āju</i>)	to offer

NOTES: The verbs *paskaidrot*, *izskaidrot* and *piedāvāt* require a dative of the person.

Vai tu vari man to paskaidrot? Can you explain that to me?
Piedāvā dāmai krēslu! Offer the lady a chair.

Garām (older *garām*) and *papilnam* may be used as postpositions, *garām* with the dative, and *papilnam* with the genitive:

Viņa gāja namam garām. She went past the building.
Mežā ir ogu papildnam. In the forest there are berries in abundance.

The following are accented on the second syllable: *nemūžam*, *papilnam*, *patiešām*.

Exercise 105a

Give the four perfect tenses, indicative and debitive, third person plural feminine only, of: *būt*; *piedot*; *aiziet*; *sacīt*; *tecēt*; *svilpot*; *ražot*; *aicināt*.

Exercise 105b

Decline in the singular and plural: *auss*; *māte*; *mute*; *valsts*; *pase*; *rikste*; *suns*; *torte*; *balss*; *krāsns*.

Exercise 105c

Translate into English:

- Lēnām pa tiltu, apakšā ūdens. (Proverb)
- Kad Biruta atraidīja Kārlī, viņš klusām aizgāja.
- Viņš mani mūžam kaitināja par maniem preciniekiem.
- Tu redzēsi – viņš ies mums garām, un tīšām nesveicinās!
- Pagaidām mēs vēl neesam dabūjuši ielūgumu.
- Vai tu viņam tici, ka viņš netīšām bija bijis svešā guļamistabā?
- Vai viņa tiešām aizgāja kājām uz staciju?
- Vietām vēl bija sniegs, bet vietām jau bija sīku puķīšu papildnam.
- Nemūžam laikam neviens neizskaidros, kas ir mīlestība.
- Mums šeit laikam tīšām nepiedāvā krēslus.
- Vai tu, piemēram, būtu precējusi šo nelgu?
- Pagaidām mums te tiešām iet gaužām labi.
- Lūdzu, paskaidrojiet, kāpēc jūsu zvejnieki bija zvejojuši Zviedrijas ūdeņos! – To viņi būs darījuši netīšām.
- Vietām upe ir dziļa.
- Rudenī šeit būs ogu papildnam.
- Līgava līgavainim klusām kaut ko sacīja.
- Lieli ledus gabali peldēja lēnām laivai garām.
- Dzērājs nekad neies krogum garām.
- Pagaidām viņa neprecēs nevienu.
- Paldies par jūsu laipnājiem novēlējumiem!
- Spānijā, piemēram, ir gauži labs vīns.
- Es palēnām aiziešu līdz strūklakai.
- Annai tiešām ir bagāts pūrs.
- To es jums novēlu no visas sirds.
- Vai jūs man varētu piedāvāt uguni? (here: a match, a light)
- Mēs gaužām labi varam aiziet līdz stacijai kājām.
- Tīšām vai netīšām, viņš viņu tomēr apvainoja.

28. Kāzu ceļojumā Itālijā mēs apmeklējām slavenus muzejus.
29. Es nemūžam nebūtu domājis, ka viņu laulība nav laimīga.
30. Ieva klusām raudāja, kad Juris viņai bija visu izskaidrojis.
31. Kurš mācītājs jūs salaulās?
32. Līdz lidlaukam nav tālu, mēs varam aiziet kājām.
33. Valdība viņam bija piedāvājusi labu darbu.
34. Mežā ir ogu papildnam.
35. Krievijas mežos dzīvo daudz plēsoņu, kā piemēram vilki un lāči.
36. Turi zāģi taisni: tā tev būs vieglāk zāģēt!
37. Koks būtu bijis jāszāģē ar visu mizu.
38. Gludekļus, ēveles un arī šķēres tagad taisa no tērauda.
39. Noskalosim un nomizosim dārzājus!
40. Šinī pils spārnā ir gari gaiteni.
41. Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Latgale un Zemgale ir Latvijas apgabali.
42. Vai tavā ielā jau ir ietnes un notekas?
43. Viņam ir plata mugura un spēcīgi pleci.
44. Šinī laikrakstā parasti ir kāda jauna novele.
45. Cik maksā tramvaja biļete?
46. Senos laikos cilvēki nekā nezināja par elektrību.
47. Artūrs ir ļoti spēcīgs zēns: viņš vienmēr ir mūsu sporta sacīkšu varonis.
48. Viss, un sevišķi uzvārds, jāuzraksta skaidri.

Exercise 105d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I would have had to go on foot.
2. I ought to have gone on foot.
3. We can go slowly.
4. In the display-windows there is an abundance of merchandise.
5. We export many products, for example, iron, steel and glass, and we also import a great deal, for example, sugar, butter, leather and meat.
6. In some places there really is some snow still.
7. The wholesale merchant knows quite well that he cannot offer those old tins of food to the retailers.
8. Just now a beggar went past the door.
9. The salesgirl deliberately gave me a few grammes more.
10. Please explain where you obtained this cheque.
11. The policeman went quietly upstairs.
12. Never in my life would I have thought that our exports would be greater than our imports!

13. For the time being one kilogramme will be enough.
14. I shall explain to you how you can sell your merchandise at a greater profit! – Indeed! I am happy if I don't sell at a loss.
15. At the moment furniture prices are not high.
16. In the lake there is an abundance of fish. – Probably only little fish! (*ziviņa*) – No indeed, fairly big ones!
17. I shall be eternally grateful.
18. I do not believe that he did it accidentally. – Whether on purpose or accidentally, he is still a scoundrel.
19. In some places the road is so bad that we can go only on foot.
20. He passed us quietly.
21. Can you explain why in the north the sun sets fairly late in summer?
22. What may (*drikstēt*) I offer you?
23. The alarm will ring at a quarter to six.
24. What a fashionable waistcoat!
25. Between lunch and afternoon tea, there will be sporting competitions between the faculties.
26. I shall need a good hammer and a dozen nails to nail those shelves.
27. What do soldiers at the front dream about?
28. The actors and actresses wanted to alter the play.
29. At some bus stops there is a large clock.
30. Perhaps I shall see you in my dreams tonight.
31. Who will play the part of the postman?
32. Let's swap stamps!
33. Can glass be nailed? – Only with special nails.
34. I shall help you rinse out the wineglasses!

LESSON 106

MORE INVARIABLE ADJECTIVES

A number of genitives have become invariable adjectives. This is a common enough occurrence in the plural, cf. *latviešu valoda*, etc., and we have also met cases of the singular, e.g., *māla trauks*, *koka galds*. In these examples, the genitive meaning is not entirely lost; in a number of other examples however, it is not possible to speak of anything but invariable adjectives.

Vocabulary

<i>nelaiķa</i> (inv. adj.)	late, recently deceased
<i>lāga</i> (inv. adj.)	good, fine, nice
<i>nelāga</i> (inv. adj.)	bad, unpleasant, nasty
<i>nabaga</i> (inv. adj.)	poor, unfortunate
<i>pagāna</i> (inv. adj.)	confounded (pej.), rotten (colloquial)
<i>muļķa</i> (inv. adj.)	stupid
<i>godā</i> (inv. adj.)	honourable
<i>puse</i>	half; side; district, area; direction
<i>labs</i>	right
<i>kreiss</i>	left
<i>pa labi</i>	on the right, to the right
<i>pa kreisi</i>	on the left, to the left
<i>šai pusē</i> (prep. + gen.)	on this side of
<i>viņpusē</i> (prep. + gen.)	on the other side of

Exercise 106a

Give the second person plural of the four perfect tenses, indicative and debitive, of: *salaulāt; novēlēt; atraidīt.*

Exercise 106b

Translate into English: *nelaiķa tēvs; nabaga nelga; nelāga laiks; pagāna puika; muļķa meita.*

Exercise 106c

Translate into Latvian: your late uncle; the poor labourers; that confounded dog; a nasty man.

Exercise 106d

Translate into English:

1. Tu nemūžam nebūtu ieraudzījis mazo laiviņu jūdzes attālumā.
2. Vai šis muļķa cilvēks jūs tīšām apvainoja?
3. Šis pagāna zirgs ir tik ātrs, ka es to nevaru apturēt.

4. Šim lāga vīram var ticēt.
5. Vietām upe ir divus kilometrus plata.
6. Nelaiķa aptiekārs bija goda vīrs.
7. Šis nabaga sunītis skraida šurp un turp: tas laikam būs pazaudējis savu kungu.
8. Pagaidām es varētu maksāt pusi.
9. Tas negodīgais veikalnieks gaužām labi zina, ka viņš ir pārdevis sliktu preci.
10. Kurā ielas pusē jūs stāvējāt? – Labajā. – Nē, tas nevar būt, jo tad es nebūtu aizgājis jums garām.
11. Šai pusē ir mežs, bet viņpus pļavas un lauki.
12. Vai pils, kas ir viņpus upes, arī piederēja jūsu nelaiķa krusttēvam?
13. Mums šim lāga vīram tiešām būtu bijis jāpalīdz.
14. Labajā pusē ceļš ir dubļains, bet kreisajā tas jau ir sauss.
15. Es nemāku rakstīt ar kreiso roku.
16. Es neticu, ka tas muļķa zēns būs izturējis pārbaudījumu.
17. Tās pagāna govīs atkal ir miežos, laikam tas muļķa gans atkal guļ!
18. Veikali ir tikai šai pusē ielas, bet viņpus ielas ir banka, bibliotēka un muzejs.
19. Mums nav jāiet pa kreisi, bet pa labi. – Būs tomēr jāiet pa kreisi, jo labajā pusē ir sēta.
20. Es tam nelietim paskaidroju, ka viņam šai pusē žoga nav nekā ko meklēt.
21. Nabaga skolnieciņam jāiet kājām uz skolu tik briesmīgā sniegunī.
22. Es nedomāju, ka tas nelietis šo goda vīru apvainoja netīšām, viņš to būs darījis tīšām!
23. Kas ir muzeja kreisajā spārnā?
24. Nelaiķa drēbniekam bija nelāga daba.
25. Nelāga ļaunū šeit ir papildnam, bet īstu goda vīru nav daudz.
26. Par diviem dolariem var dabūt labu grāmatu, piemēram, šo vārdnīcu.
27. Vecais kalps mums klusām stāstīja par savu nelāga dēlu, ko nesen apcietināja.
28. Es dzirdēju nabaga meiteni raudam.
29. Kā šis lāga saimnieks varēja apprecēt šo muļķa sievieti?
30. Veikala labajā stūrī pārdevējs piedāvā skaistus, lētus dvieļus.
31. Vai mums nebūtu bijis jāiet pa labi?
32. Kas par nelāga ļaudīm!
33. No kuras puses tu esi? – No Kurzemes.
34. Man nav daudz sīknaudas.
35. Vai jums ir īpašas zāles pret klepu?
36. Māksliniece veido traukus no sarkaniem māliem.
37. Kuriem mēnešiem ir trīsdesmit viena diena? Janvārim, martam, maijam, jūlijam, augustam, oktobrim un decembrim.
38. Aprīlis ir gada ceturtais un jūnijs sestais mēnesis.

Exercise 106e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The late doctor would have married her.
2. How could he marry that stupid little goose?
3. Italy is on this side of the Mediterranean (*Vidusjūra*); on the other side of the Mediterranean is North Africa.
4. In two hours we shall be in Cēsis.
5. The bridegroom will be standing on the left, and the bride on the right.
6. Where is that confounded shepherd-boy?
7. It is a matter of honour (*goda lieta*) to get an invitation from that fine man.
8. The late pastor Ērglis had married them before the First World War.
9. There are chairs on both sides of the hall.
10. That poor girl has no dowry.
11. She rejected a good tradesman, and married that dishonest retailer. – Yes indeed, he is a nasty person!
12. We spent five weeks on our honeymoon trip.
13. The left leg is fatter than the right.
14. What do you see on the right?
15. Half of the pupils can not yet multiply.
16. What nonsense is that windbag babbling?
17. The right hand is usually a little stronger than the left.
18. Don't go to the left; go to the right!
19. I shall wait on this side of the road, and you on the other side of the road.
20. I do not wish to hear about your foolish suitors.
21. Nobody wants to speak to that dishonest man.
22. What a wretched day!
23. That confounded horse has frightened the poor child.
24. Spain has more inhabitants than Sweden.
25. I would have thought that their marriage was happy.
26. He left all his money to his stupid son.
27. There was a great spider on the table-cloth.
28. The plans of the power-station will be ready at the beginning of February.
29. Our factory produces about one million buckets a year.
30. What are the principal problems of the twentieth century?
31. On occasions the first blooms may be seen in March.
32. What is the chief planning right now?
33. I never in my life thought that my own children would make so much noise!
34. Are carpets cheap? – It all depends.
35. Waiter, fill the glasses!
36. This restaurant will be closed from the 15th of August until the 15th of September.

37. Did you fill the kettle?
38. The whole island belongs to that selfish landowner.
39. Water flows downwards, never upwards.
40. Who is the thin girl with the black hand-bag?
41. Where are you going? – Home!
42. Jack and his sister went up the hill to fetch a pail of water.
43. Polish the knives and forks; they are still not bright.
44. The sheep perished along (*reizē*) with the cows.
45. Have you ever enjoyed a better meal, sir?
46. In this department fishing-nets are sold.
47. How many times have you tried to solve this problem?
48. At times I have had to park my car in very unusual places.

LESSON 107

THE VERB *SARGĀT*

The verb *sargāt* was originally conjugated in the Mixed Conjugation, and according to the pattern of *zināt*. More recently, however, it has shown a tendency to go over to the Long Conjugation, and be conjugated like *strādāt*. It therefore has two present tense paradigms, although in all the other tenses the change is not morphologically perceptible.

While this transference of conjugation is not yet complete, the student is advised to use the newer long forms, which are quite firmly established. A few other verbs are in a similar state of flux, mainly *-īt* verbs moving from the Long to the Mixed Conjugation, e.g., *pelnīt*, *tīrīt*. Here, however, the change can be regarded as complete, and consequently we give them only with their newer forms.

The alternative forms of *sargāt* 'to guard' are set out below, the first mentioned form being more common.

Present		Imperative	
<i>es sargāju</i>	or <i>sargu</i>	<i>sargā!</i>	or <i>sargi!</i>
<i>tu sargā</i>	or <i>sargi</i>	<i>lai sargā!</i>	or <i>lai sargal!</i>
<i>viņš sargā</i>	or <i>sarga</i>	<i>sargāsim!</i>	
<i>mēs sargājam</i>	or <i>sargām</i>	<i>sargājiet!</i>	or <i>sargiet!</i>
<i>jūs sargājat</i>	or <i>sargāt</i>	<i>lai sargā!</i>	or <i>lai sargal!</i>
<i>viņi sargā</i>	or <i>sarga</i>		

32. Šinī auglīgajā zemē var audzēt visus dārzājus.
33. Pilsētas galva izsacīja savas dusmas par valdības plāniem.
34. Vai jūsu vedekla katru vasaru audzē cāļus?
35. Nabaga bārenītei jāsargā māja, kad visi citi aiziet uz operu.
36. Vai laulība būs tiešām laimīga tikai tāpēc, ka viņai ir liels pūrs?
37. Kur jūs dzīvosit pēc kāzu ceļojuma?
38. Kaut gan tu nedabūji ielūgumu uz kāzām, tev tomēr būtu jāsūta laimes novēlējumi.
39. Mēs tev novēlam prieku un laimi.
40. Kāpēc Ieva apprecēja to veco nelgu?
41. Bende gan ir nelaimīgs vīrs: visas meitenes viņu atraida viņa amata dēļ.
42. Mācītājs viņus salaulāja tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit astotā gada piecpadsmītajā martā.

Exercise 107e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Be careful! The piano is heavy.
2. The guards went past just now.
3. Did you really grow those rare plants yourself?
4. For the time being my head is not itching.
5. May God protect the fishermen in this horrible storm!
6. One forest ranger can never guard such an enormous forest.
7. Two guards guard him day and night.
8. You cannot protect your children for ever.
9. How can I express my gratitude for their hospitality in a few short words?
10. We are guarding the power station.
11. My son-in-law has probably done this on purpose.
12. Guard this man well!
13. My daughter-in-law has not been lying after all!
14. Did you hear the conversation of the guards?
15. The retailer offered us an enormous goose.
16. The people here are indeed hospitable.
17. We shall raise fish in that lake.
18. Don't lie, scoundrel!
19. Can you explain why she is suddenly so hospitable?
20. We have an abundance of strawberries in our own garden.
21. I heard their conversation unintentionally.
22. Everybody praises their hospitality.
23. We can walk slowly; the train leaves in an hour.
24. What, for instance, do you know about architecture?

25. Can we go there on foot?
26. What a stupid conversation!
27. Today the professor and two lecturers will each be preparing a lecture.
28. The head of this section has to take care of all our imports and exports, doesn't he?
29. The bride and bridegroom are both gifted and educated people; both have enjoyed a university education.
30. The prices are often written on a blackboard in the shop-window.
31. Australia still has to import cars.
32. A cheque is often the best gift.
33. Do these wholesalers export canned foods?
34. The salesgirl sold me 500 grammes of cheese.
35. Do you sell your merchandise at a profit or at a loss?
36. There are a thousand kilogrammes in a ton.
37. Do you think that girls really marry rich men for love?
38. Her beauty is famous throughout the wide world; she has had suitors from Sweden, Italy, France and Spain.

LESSON 108

VERB SUMMARY

1. *Mixed Conjugation*

There are two sets of endings in the present tense:

- (a) *-u; -i; -; -am; -at; -*
 (b) *-u; -i; -a; -ām; -āt; -a*

The type (a) endings are used for all Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-ēt* (except *vajadzēt*) and for the verbs *dziedāt* and *raudāt*.

The type (b) endings are used for all Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-īt*, all those in *-ināt*, and the verbs *zināt* and *vajadzēt*. It is possible too to use them for *sargāt*, although this is a little old-fashioned.

There are no Mixed verbs in *-ot* and *-ūt*, and a very limited number in *-āt*, all of which are given above. Verbs in *-ināt* are not considered as *-āt* verbs.

Within type (a) there are three verbs which palatalize the stem consonant in the present (except in the second person singular, and the imperatives of the second persons singular and plural). They are *gulēt*, *sēdēt* and the defective

kaitēt. Non-palatalized forms are found quite often for *kaitēt*, occasionally for *sēdēt*, but not for *gulēt*.

In contrast there are also the verbs *tecēt* and *mācēt*, which undergo depalatalization throughout the present tense, except that *tecēt* alone retains the palatal *c* in the second person singular, and in the imperatives of the second persons singular and plural.

Within type (b) there are no verbs which palatalize the stem consonant, but there are numerous verbs in *-cīt* and *-dzīt* which undergo depalatalization, e.g., *slaucīt*, *locīt*, *ieraudzīt*, *izraudzīt*, *sacīt*, etc. To this list can be added the defective verb *vajadzēt*.

In fact, verbs in *-cīt* and *-dzīt* regularly undergo this depalatalization. There are very few exceptions, of which *mācīt* is one. The verb *mocīt* has alternative forms, the palatal and depalatalized both being found.

In the first and second persons plural, one is quite likely to find a type (a) ending replacing the required type (b) ending. This should not be imitated.

2. The Long Conjugation

All verbs of the Long conjugation, whether in *-āt*, *-ēt*, *-īt*, *-ot* or *-ūt*, have parallel conjugations, consisting of the vowel of the infinitive ending plus the terminations

-ju; *-*; *-*; *-jam*; *-jat*; *-*

Thus we have:

<i>-āju</i> ;	<i>-ā</i> ;	<i>-ā</i> ;	<i>-ājam</i> ;	<i>-ājat</i> ;	<i>-ā</i>
<i>-ēju</i> ;	<i>-ē</i> ;	<i>-ē</i> ;	<i>-ējam</i> ;	<i>-ējat</i> ;	<i>-ē</i>
<i>-īju</i> ;	<i>-ī</i> ;	<i>-ī</i> ;	<i>-ījam</i> ;	<i>-ījat</i> ;	<i>-ī</i>
<i>-oju</i> ;	<i>-o</i> ;	<i>-o</i> ;	<i>-ojam</i> ;	<i>-ojat</i> ;	<i>-o</i>
<i>-ūju</i> ;	<i>-ū</i> ;	<i>-ū</i> ;	<i>-ūjam</i> ;	<i>-ūjat</i> ;	<i>-ū</i>

The present tense is the only one in which the Long and Mixed conjugations are distinguished. Both these conjugations elsewhere share identical forms.

The imperfects are in *-āju*, *-ēju*, *-īju*, *-oju* and *-ūju*; the futures in *-āšu*, *-ēšu*, *-īšu*, *-ošu*, *-ūšu*; the conditionals in *-ātu*, *-ētu*, *-ītu*, *-otu*, *-ūtu*.

Since the imperfects are common, so are the past participles active: *-ājis*, *-ējis*, *-ījis*, *-ojis*, *-ūjis*.

Imperatives

In both conjugations, the second person singular indicative is used for the second person singular imperative, the third person indicative with *lai* for the third person imperative, the first person plural future indicative for the first person plural imperative, and the second person plural present indicative, with the change of *-at* or *-āt* to *-iet*, for the second person plural imperative. In the

speech and writing of many Latvians the indicative endings *-at* and *-āt* are completely interchangeable with the imperative ending *-iet*. This practice should not be imitated.

A number of Mixed verbs in *-īt* may, in the second person plural imperative, be found with the ending *-ait* instead of the otherwise universal *-iet*, e.g., *lasait*, *rakstait*, *sakait*.

These forms are in no way obligatory, and the *-iet* forms are far more common.

Depalatalizing Mixed conjugation verbs retain the depalatalized consonant throughout those forms of the imperative that are derived from the present tense, except for *tecēt*, *q.v.*

Palatalizing verbs lose the palatalization in the second person singular indicative and imperative, and the second person plural imperative.

Three Irregular Verbs

The verbs *būt*, *iet* and *dot* are irregular, and their conjugations should be revised. See Lessons 1, 11 and 12.

Notice in particular that the debitive of *būt* is an additional irregularity: *man jābūt*.

Vocabulary

<i>sildīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to warm, to heat
<i>apšaubīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to doubt
<i>dibināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to found, to establish
<i>vingrināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to exercise
<i>vilcināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to delay (trans.); to hinder; to prolong
<i>vadīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to conduct, lead; to drive (car, etc.)
<i>izlaupīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to rob (premises, etc.)
<i>nolaupīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to steal; to kidnap
<i>ritēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to roll; to flow (of tears)
<i>atzritēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to pass (of time)
<i>skanēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to sound
<i>manīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to notice, to perceive
<i>pamanīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to notice, to perceive
<i>slīdēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to slide, slip
<i>atbalstīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to support; to help out (with money, etc.)
<i>steidzināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to urge on, to hurry up (trans.)
<i>salsināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to shorten

NOTE: Both *manīt* and *pamanīt* may be construed with the *-am/-ām* participle.

Exercise 108a

Translate into English:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| (1) <i>es pamanu</i> | (2) <i>es esmu importējis</i> |
| (3) <i>tu saisini</i> | (4) <i>mēs esam eksportējuši</i> |
| (5) <i>viņa steidzina</i> | (6) <i>tu biji par to gādājusi</i> |
| (7) <i>mēs atbalstām</i> | (8) <i>viņas to bija baudījušas</i> |
| (9) <i>jūs slīdat</i> | (10) <i>vai es būšu izturējis?</i> |
| (11) <i>viņi mana</i> | (12) <i>ūdens būs applūdinājis laukus</i> |
| (13) <i>es nolauplju</i> | (14) <i>jūs laikam būsit viņu ievainojuši</i> |
| (15) <i>tu izlauplji</i> | (16) <i>mēs būtu gājuši bojā</i> |
| (17) <i>kas skanēja?</i> | (18) <i>it kā jūra būtu bangojusi</i> |
| (19) <i>lai ir!</i> | (20) <i>man ir bijis jātrīc</i> |
| (21) <i>jūs vadījāt</i> | (22) <i>viņam nebija bijis jāplāpā</i> |
| (23) <i>zirņi ritēja</i> | (24) <i>mēs būsīm rakstījušas</i> |
| (25) <i>es vilcināšu</i> | (26) <i>vai jums būtu bijis jāapvaino?</i> |
| (27) <i>tu vingrināsi</i> | (28) <i>es plāpāju</i> |
| (29) <i>viņa dibinās</i> | (30) <i>tu iznīcīni</i> |
| (31) <i>mēs neapšaubīsim</i> | (32) <i>sniegputenis aizputina ceļus</i> |
| (33) <i>jūs audzēsīt</i> | (34) <i>mēs skraidām</i> |
| (35) <i>viņas izsacīs</i> | (36) <i>jūs apskatāt</i> |
| (37) <i>es nemelotu</i> | (38) <i>viņi plāno</i> |
| (39) <i>tu neapsargātu</i> | (40) <i>es novietoju</i> |
| (41) <i>vai uguns sildītu?</i> | (42) <i>tu veidoji</i> |
| (43) <i>mēs pasargātu</i> | (44) <i>viņš pavēlēja</i> |
| (45) <i>jūs sargātu</i> | (46) <i>mēs atrisinājām</i> |
| (47) <i>ja man niezētu pirksti</i> | (48) <i>jūs nezvejojāt</i> |
| (49) <i>pieāvā!</i> | (50) <i>viņi reizināja</i> |
| (51) <i>lai viņš paskaidro!</i> | (52) <i>es apmeklēšu</i> |
| (53) <i>novēlēsim!</i> | (54) <i>tu pasūtīsi</i> |
| (55) <i>atraidiet!</i> | (56) <i>viņa spodrinās</i> |
| (57) <i>mācītājam viņi jāsalaulā</i> | (58) <i>mēs piepildīsim glāzes</i> |
| (59) <i>jūs pildīsīt</i> | (60) <i>viņai viņš bija jāapprec</i> |
| (61) <i>viņi tēlos</i> | (62) <i>jums būs jāprec Jānis</i> |
| (63) <i>tu nebūtu bijusi</i> | (64) <i>lasait!</i> |
| (65) <i>es sapņotu</i> | (66) <i>es būtu fotografējuši</i> |
| (67) <i>tu neskalotu</i> | (68) <i>mēs būtu ražojusi</i> |
| (69) <i>viņa izskalotu</i> | (70) <i>jūs būtu staigājuši</i> |
| (71) <i>mēs skalotu</i> | (72) <i>viņa būtu gleznojusi</i> |
| (73) <i>jūs sagatavotu</i> | (74) <i>es nebūtu krāsojis</i> |
| (75) <i>jūs bijāt pelnījuši</i> | (76) <i>es esmu diriģējis</i> |
| (77) <i>grozīt!</i> | (78) <i>tu biji atkārtojis</i> |

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (79) <i>lai viņa maina!</i> | (80) <i>viņa bija sakārtojusi</i> |
| (81) <i>audzināsim!</i> | (82) <i>mēs būsīm kārtojušas</i> |
| (83) <i>nomizojiet!</i> | (84) <i>būs zibņojis</i> |
| (85) <i>man jāgludina</i> | (86) <i>kas būtu noslaucījis?</i> |
| (87) <i>tev jāsanaglo</i> | (88) <i>vīns satur cukuru</i> |
| (89) <i>mums jānaglo</i> | (90) <i>tev bija jāspēlē</i> |
| (91) <i>jums bija jāvēlē</i> | (92) <i>mums būs jāapdrošina</i> |
| (93) <i>man bija jāzāgē</i> | (94) <i>jums būtu jāapcietina</i> |
| (95) <i>tev būs jāzāgē</i> | (96) <i>jums nav bijis jākaitina</i> |
| (97) <i>mums būs jāpiezvana</i> | (98) <i>mums bija bijis jāpratina</i> |
| (99) <i>kam būtu jāzvana?</i> | (100) <i>man būs bijis jāzvēķina</i> |
| (101) <i>autobusam būtu jāpietur</i> | (102) <i>viņam būtu bijis jāsludina</i> |
| (103) <i>viņa ir turpinājusi</i> | (104) <i>man ir garšojušas šīs tortes</i> |
| (105) <i>es esmu vaicājuši</i> | (106) <i>viņa bija sveicinājuši</i> |
| (107) <i>vai tas eksistē?</i> | (108) <i>viņas būs salīdzinājušas</i> |
| (109) <i>mēs esam uzbūvējuši</i> | (110) <i>vai tu būtu mēģinājuši?</i> |
| (111) <i>kas ir būvējis?</i> | (112) <i>man ir bijis jābrīdina</i> |
| (113) <i>es biju paziņojis</i> | (114) <i>tev bija bijis jādāvina</i> |
| (115) <i>tu biji uzdevusi</i> | (116) <i>mums būs bijis jāmodina</i> |
| (117) <i>mēs bijām makšķerējuši</i> | (118) <i>man viņa būtu bijusi jābildina</i> |
| (119) <i>jūs bijāt iekurinājušas</i> | (120) <i>mēs nebūtu aicinājuši</i> |
| (121) <i>es būšu kurinājis</i> | (122) <i>sagaidi!</i> |
| (123) <i>mēs būsīm svinējušas</i> | (124) <i>lai seko!</i> |
| (125) <i>jūs būsīt apciemojusi</i> | (126) <i>nekristīsim!</i> |
| (127) <i>viņa būs nofotografējuši</i> | (128) <i>iesvētījiet!</i> |
| (129) <i>sakiet!</i> | (130) <i>nemedījiet!</i> |
| (131) <i>kam bija jāsvētī?</i> | (132) <i>tu būsi pīpējis</i> |
| (133) <i>dabūsīm!</i> | (134) <i>viņa būs meklējuši</i> |
| (135) <i>es pavaidīšu</i> | (136) <i>mēs būsīm aplaudējušas</i> |
| (137) <i>tu sabiedēji</i> | (138) <i>jūs būsīt klusējis</i> |
| (139) <i>viņa saskaitītu</i> | (140) <i>viņas būs taisījušas</i> |
| (141) <i>jūs parādāt</i> | (142) <i>puķes nebūtu ziedējušas</i> |
| (143) <i>saule ir norietējusi</i> | (144) <i>es būtu pārbaudījis</i> |
| (145) <i>viņš bija nopelnījis</i> | (146) <i>vilciens būtu atgājis</i> |
| (147) <i>mēs būsīm uzrakstījuši</i> | (148) <i>ko viņa būtu valkājusi?</i> |
| (149) <i>viņa būtu salasījusi</i> | (150) <i>mēs būtu lidojuši</i> |
| (151) <i>tu esi izlasījusi</i> | (152) <i>jūs būtu vārījusi olas</i> |
| (153) <i>mēs bijām nomaksājuši</i> | (154) <i>viņi būtu sūtījuši</i> |
| (155) <i>jūs būsīt samaksājušas</i> | (156) <i>es esmu solljusi</i> |
| (157) <i>es nebūtu izmazgājis</i> | (158) <i>tu esi sodījis</i> |
| (159) <i>nomazgājiet!</i> | (160) <i>viņa ir skaitījusi</i> |
| (161) <i>mani moka klepus</i> | (162) <i>mēs esam skūpstījuši</i> |

- (163) *kas tev bija bijis jāsaka?*
 (165) *man būs bijis jāizrauga*
 (167) *mums būtu bijis jāierauga*
 (169) *es esmu locījies*
 (171) *tu esi slaucījusi*
 (173) *viņam vajadzēja*
 (175) *mēs neesam mācējušas*
 (177) *upe nav tecējusi*
 (179) *es biju smēķējis*
 (181) *tu biji biedējusi*
 (183) *viņa bija uzzīmējusi*
 (185) *mēs būsīm zīmējuši*
 (187) *mēs bijām pazaudējuši*
 (189) *jūs bijāt kavējušas laiku*
 (191) *kur jūs studējāt?*
 (193) *es būšu slavējusi*
 (195) *man ir bijis jājautā*
 (197) *tev bija bijis jāstrādā*
 (199) *viņai būs bijis jāmazgā*
 (201) *kam būtu bijis jāmaksā?*
 (203) *tu neesi domājusi*
 (205) *viņa nekad nav runājusi*
 (207) *mums būtu bijis jāpārdod*
 (209) *viņam nebūtu bijis jāubago*
 (211) *vai tev bija jātulko?*
 (213) *kam būs jābaro lopi?*
 (215) *vai viņiem ir bijis jāaizceļo?*
 (217) *neceļosim!*
 (219) *lai dejo!*
 (221) *svilpojiet!*
 (223) *lieto!*
 (225) *dzīvosim!*
 (227) *tu esi aizdevusi*
 (229) *viņa bija raudājusi*
 (231) *mēs nezinām*
 (233) *viņa nebūtu atdevusi*
 (235) *dod!*
 (237) *neej!*
 (239) *tu neesi prasījusi*
- (164) *jūs esat gaidļjis*
 (166) *viņas ir smaidījušas*
 (168) *es biju rādļjusi*
 (170) *tu biji klausļjis*
 (172) *celis bija sāpējis*
 (174) *tas man nebija kaitējis*
 (176) *es esmu sēdējis*
 (178) *vai tu esi gulējis?*
 (180) *saule nav rietējusi*
 (182) *saule nebūtu spldējusi*
 (184) *viņa būs mācļjusi*
 (186) *es viņu neieredzu*
 (188) *tev nebūtu bijis jādreb*
 (190) *viņai nebūtu bijis jādraud*
 (192) *tas nebūtu derējis*
 (194) *vai mēs būtu apturējuši mašīnu?*
 (196) *kam tas būtu bijis jādara?*
 (198) *rakstait!*
 (200) *es nebūtu drlkstējusi*
 (202) *kam tas pieder?*
 (204) *lai cer!*
 (206) *nepalldzi!*
 (208) *viņas būtu tlrļjušas*
 (210) *lai mirdz!*
 (212) *mēs būtu aizstāvējuši*
 (214) *es neesmu peldējusi*
 (216) *netici!*
 (218) *vai jūs viņu dzirdējāt atbildam?*
 (220) *vai tu mani redzēji stāvam?*
 (222) *viņa turēs*
 (224) *mēs nekad nebūtu varējuši*
 (226) *lai mīll!*
 (228) *es to nebiju gribējis*
 (230) *mums nebūtu bijis jādzied*
 (232) *es neesmu iedevis*
 (234) *viņai bija jāpiedod*
 (236) *aizej!*
 (238) *mēs nebūsīm stādļjuši*
 (240) *vai tev nebūtu bijis jāstāsta?*

Exercise 108b

Translate into English:

- Šis ir tas vīrs, kas izlaupīja banku, apsargājiet viņu labi!
- Priekšnieks steidzināja savus strādniekus, jo viņš bija pamanījis, ka tie mēģina vilcināt darbu.
- Vingriniet kreisās rokas pirkstus!
- Rīgu dibināja tūkstoš divsimt pirmajā gadā.
- Vai tu vēl arvien apšaubi savas vedeklas viesmīlību?
- Cik labi mūsu orķestris skan, kad to vada šis diriģents!
- Šo saiti vajadzētu saīsināt.
- Mūsu znots atbalsta savus vecākus.
- Janvārī cenas slīdēja lejā.
- Šo drāmu varētu vietām saīsināt.
- Es ceru, ka sargi nekā nebūs pamanījuši.
- Ziemā saule gan spīd, bet nesilda.
- Jums kāja būtu jāvingrina.
- Zirņi ritēja pa grīdu.
- Nevilciniet sarunu!
- Senos laikos līgavas vajadzēja nolaupīt.
- Kas vadīja mašīnu?
- Kase ir jāapsargā, lai to neizlaupītu.
- Vai valdība atbalsta augstskolas?
- Naktī vilki nolaupīja četras aitas.
- Kas šo uzņēmumu dibināja?
- Akmeņi rit lejā pa kalnu.
- Mēs steidzināsim betona darbus.
- Vai tev slīd kājas uz ledus?
- Tagad es manu, ka āda drusku niez.
- Kas tur tik savādi skan?
- Šī mazā krāsniņa labi silda.
- Jūs apšaubāt manus vārdus! Vai jūs ar to (= thereby) gribat sacīt, ka es meloju?
- Laiks rit tik ātri.
- Vai šī krāsns silda visu māju?
- Vadiet savu mašīnu piesardzīgāk!
- Laikam kāds būs pamanījis, ka mēs izlaupījām banku.
- Šis stāsts būtu bijis jāsaīšina.
- Kāds nolaupīja cāļus, ko mežsarga sieva bija audzējusi.
- Dibināsim orķestri!
- Cik skaisti skan mūsu tautas dziesmas!

37. Kā šo darbu varētu steidzināt?
38. Mēs atbalstām veco ļaužu namu. (= *Old Folks' Home*)
39. Nevilcināsim šo sarunu!
40. Kāpēc jūs nevingrināt abas rokas?
41. Nekavēsīm laiku, jo mums tūlīt jābūt uz perona!
42. Kāpēc tu pīpē pīpi, kopš tu studē universitātē?
43. Mums būs ciemiņi svētdien, pirmdien un arī otrdien.
44. Cik pulkstens? – Pulkstens ir pieci.
45. Šo lugu spēlēs trešdien, ceturtdien, piektdien un sestdien.
46. Neaplaudēsīm, jo koncerts bija ļoti slikts!
47. Vai mazais Janka jau māc zīmēt?
48. Nekas mani nebiedē!
49. Ja viduslaikos apcietināja zagli, tad viņš drīz bija bendes rokās.
50. Rīkstes var viegli locīt ar rokām.
51. Ar ko man jāslauka putekļi ēdamistabā?

Exercise 108c

Translate into Latvian:

1. My late father established this factory in 1912.
2. On this side of the river, songs resounded.
3. I do not doubt that Mr. Ezeriņš is a man of honour and a good person.
4. This dishonest father does not support his poor children.
5. The wheels are rolling along the road.
6. You have been dragging this job out for three hours already!
7. The right hand does not notice what the left hand is doing.
8. Will that heavy box slide? – No, it won't slide.
9. Why don't you hurry up the workmen? – Because they are not slacking on the job.
10. I have been exercising my fingers.
11. That old beggar won't have noticed that we robbed the bank.
12. That stove does not heat the room.
13. Do you drive trucks too?
14. They kidnapped a rich man's child and then asked him for money.
15. This lead will have to be shortened.
16. Didn't you notice anything?
17. Who founded Riga?
18. The sun no longer gives any warmth.
19. Eagles do not carry off little children.
20. The minutes passed very slowly.

21. Why don't you support the church?
22. This piano sounds much better.
23. We are exercising our arms and legs.
24. Do not hurry the poor horses.
25. The manager himself robbed the cash-register.
26. Do you doubt that this tribe exists?
27. Half of this money belongs to my brother.
28. Go to the right, then straight, and then to the left.
29. He is a bad man.
30. Asian countries export tea and coffee.
31. Can the engine-driver see the signal on the platform?
32. I do not doubt that all the clothing which he has stolen is now in his house.
33. Nests are often made of small twigs.
34. Don't poke your tongue out, Jack!
35. Now and then you have to wait a long time for the bus.
36. That old woman thinks only of herself.
37. Why are you trembling with fear? That is only a small spider!
38. Is your brother still sick?
39. Is London air really so dirty?
40. We speak Russian, German and French.
41. Eve had to wear a light-coloured blouse today.

LESSON 109

OPEN *E* AND CLOSED *E*

The student will now be familiar with a sufficient number of words of various types for a few general remarks on the distribution of *ē* and *e* to be of use to him.

The most important single principle involved is the relationship of the *e* vowel with the vowel of the following syllable: in general, *e* will be closed if it is followed in the next syllable by a closed front vowel or diphthong, i.e., *i*, *ī*, *e*, *ē*, *ei*, or *ie*. This can be extended to include palatalized consonants, consonant groups including *j*, or simply *j* itself.

Exx. *ceļis*; *mēdīt*; *pēļe*; *spēlēt*; *zemei*; *ceļiem*; *drēbju*; *mēžs*; *vējš*; *tējš*.

Otherwise *e* is open:

tēlot; *tērauds*; *dēguns*; *rēdzat*.

From this point of view, compare

<i>es rēdzu</i>	<i>tu rēdzi</i>
<i>jūs rēdzat</i>	<i>rēdziet</i>
<i>bērns</i>	<i>bērniņš</i>

But this principle is a very approximate one: it must be supplemented with a number of further considerations.

- 1) Nouns of the masculine *-s* declension will have an open *ɛ* in the stem. (In older Latvian, the ending here was *-as*.)

tēvs; dēls; cilvēks; zvērs.

But not so of stems ending in a palatal:

mēžs; ceļš; vējš; tēļš; mūzejs.

It follows that all nouns of the *-š* declension will have a closed *ɛ* in the stem.

Once the vowel of the nominative singular is known, it retains its open or closed quality throughout the whole declension:

bērns; bērni; bērniem
ceļš; ceļu; ceļos.

The same is true of adjectives, i.e., they have an open *ɛ* in the stem of the masculine nominative singular, which is retained throughout, regardless of the following vowels:

dzeltnis; dzeltēni; dzeltēniem.
lēns; lēni; lēniem.

But adjectives with stems ending in a palatal will have closed *ɛ* throughout:

svēšs; svēšu; svēša; svēšām.

In the formation of adverbs, the vowel quality of the adjective is retained:

<i>rēts, rēti</i>	<i>lēns, lēni</i>
<i>lēts, lēti</i>	<i>svēšs, svēši</i>

In nouns however, *ɛ* passes to *ɛ̄* before the diminutive termination *-iņš*:

<i>bērns</i>	<i>bērniņš</i>
<i>cilvēks</i>	<i>cilvēciņš</i>

- 2) Feminine nouns in *-a* behave in the same way as masculine nouns in *-s*: thus a preceding *e* is open throughout the whole declension:

sēta; sētu; sētas; sētās
pēda; pēdu; pēdas; pēdās.

And so of feminine adjectives:

rēšna, etc. dzeltēna, etc.

Again a palatal will produce *ɛ̄* instead of *ɛ*:

sēšas; dzēja.

In all cases the *ɛ* or *ɛ̄* of the nominative is retained throughout.

As with the masculines, the diminutive suffix *-iņa* requires a preceding *ɛ̄*:

<i>sēta</i>	<i>sētīņa</i>
<i>pēda</i>	<i>pēdiņa</i>

- 3) Feminines in *e* (which *e*, with all the *e*'s occurring in the terminations, is closed) will in general have a closed *ɛ̄* in the stem, given the closed *ɛ̄* of the terminations:

peļe; zeme; zemeņe.

The only exceptions are in longer words, where another syllable intervenes between the *e* of the stem and the ending, provided that the intervening vowel is one that will induce an *ɛ̄*:

vēstule (although *vēstule* is very commonly heard)

- 4) Masculine nouns in *-is* behave as do feminines in *-e*:

ceļis; ērglis; but: ceturksnis.

- 5) Masculine nouns in *-us* have an open *ɛ* retained throughout:

lēdus; mēdus.

The diminutive suffix has no influence here, as the *-u-* syllable is retained:

lēdutiņš; mēdutiņš.

- 6) Masculines in *-ns* (which are declined as *akmens*) have a closed *ɛ̄* throughout:

rudens; ūdens; akmens.

- 7) Feminine nouns in *-s* usually have closed *ɛ̄* throughout:

dzelzs; Cēsis; dēbess.

However, those nouns of this declension which have an UNPALATALIZED genitive plural will here have *ɛ*, in contrast with all the other cases of their declension:

dzelzu; Cēsu; dēbesu.

One will frequently, however, hear a closed *ɛ̄* here.

- 8) Irrespective of the above points, foreign words almost always have a closed *e*, even in positions where normally one would expect an open *e*:

bibliotēka; problēma; arhitekts.

- 9) In verbs of the Long and Mixed conjugations, the quality of a stem *e* depends upon the vowel of the infinitive termination:

spēlēt; mēdīt; tēlot; mēlot.

Remember that the infinitive ending *-ēt* is always closed.

The quality of an *e* in the stem of the infinitive is generally retained throughout the conjugation of Long and Mixed verbs, except in the case of those verbs ending in *-ēt*:

- (a) Some Mixed conjugation verbs in *-ēt* have an alternation of *e* and *ē* in the present:

rēdzu, rēdzi, rēdz, rēdzam, rēdzat, rēdz.

This alternation is compulsory with *redzēt*, frequent with *vēlēt*, and it can also be made with *cerēt*, *drēbēt*, *peldēt*, *precēt*, *derēt* and a few others. Often the alternation is not made in these verbs.

- (b) The conditional ending *-ētu* always has an open *e* and therefore any *e* preceding it in the stem will be open too:

<i>mēklēt</i>	but	<i>mēklētu</i>
<i>rēdzēt</i>	but	<i>rēdzētu</i>
<i>cerēt</i>	but	<i>cerētu</i>

All *-ēt* verbs have *ē* in the terminations of the future and the imperfect, and closed *e*'s in the stem of these tenses.

- 10) In the declension of pronouns, *e* is always closed:

mēs; tevī; tev; tevīs; tevī; sevi; sev; sevīs; sevī; es.

Vocabulary

<i>šaubas</i> (pl.)	doubt
<i>neapšaubāmi</i>	undoubtedly
<i>nokavēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to miss (bus, train, etc.)
<i>aizkavēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to detain, delay, hold up
<i>noskaidrot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to clear up (a matter); to find out
<i>tēlevīzijas aparāts</i>	television set
<i>kabatas lakatiņš</i>	handkerchief

<i>priekšauts</i>	apron
<i>skaņa</i>	sound
<i>skaņu plate</i>	(gramophone) record
<i>māksla</i>	art
<i>galerija</i>	gallery
<i>bārda</i>	beard
<i>lielisks</i>	marvellous, great, splendid
<i>vanna</i>	bath tub

Exercise 109a

What are the principal ways of determining whether *e* is open or closed in (a) nouns and (b) verbs?

Exercise 109b

Conjugate in the Present, Future, Past Perfect, and Conditional Perfect Debitive: *sargāt; nokavēt; noskaidrot; pamanīt.*

Exercise 109c

Rewrite Ex. 108a, making the singular verbs plural, and the plural verbs singular.

Exercise 109d

Translate into English:

1. Televīzijas aparātā šovakar ir savāda skaņa.
2. Kāpēc tu nelieto kabatas lakatiņu, Jāni?
3. Akmeņi ritēja pa kalnu lejā.
4. Mākslinieki un studenti operā parasti sēž galerijā, jo tur ir vislētākās vietas.
5. Kāds pļāpa mani aizkavēja, un tagad es esmu nokavējis vilcienu.
6. Vai jūs noskaidrojāt, kāpēc televīzijas aparātam nav skaņas?
7. Tā neapšaubāmi ir viņas balss.
8. Kur jūs dabūjāt šo lielisko skaņu plati?
9. Neviens nemanīja, ka es aizgāju.
10. Ja jūs vingrināsīt savas kājas, man nav šaubu, ka jūs drīz atkal varēsīt staigāt.

11. Mūsu pilsētā drīz būs mākslas galerija.
12. Es šo priekšautu dāvināju mātei.
13. Man vannā vienmēr slīd kājas.
14. Modernā māksla ir lieliska.
15. Vai policija noskaidroja, kas vadīja mašīnu?
16. Galvenais arhitekts gribēja steidzināt sarunu, bet kāds inženieris to vilcināja ar sīkām problēmām un mūs visus aizkavēja.
17. Līdz ritam neviens nepamanīja, ka zagļi bija izlaupijuši stacijas kasi.
18. Kāds aizkavēja pārdevēju, un nav šaubu, ka tanī acumirkļī nolaupīja dārgo pulksteni no skatloga.
19. Ātrāk, draudzīn, citādi mēs nokavēsim koncerta sākumu!
20. Ir pilnīgi neapšaubāmi, ka valdība atbalstīs tērauda rūpniecību.
21. Kabatas lakatiņš bija priekšauta kabatā.
22. Vannai ir netīras malas.
23. Juris strādā par pārdevēju skaņu plašu veikālā.
24. Jūsu pilsētā gan ir lieliska mākslas galerija.
25. Es nemūžam nebūtu apšaubījis, ka Lauvas kungs ir goda vīrs.
26. Jā, vīriņ, tava balss neapšaubāmi skan lieliski, kad tu sēdi vannā un dzied!
27. Miesniekam ir ādas priekšauts.
28. Man ir šaubas, vai policija šo lietu noskaidros.
29. Tu nokavēsi tramvaju, meit, ja tu vēl ilgāk sēdēsi pie televīzijas aparāta.
30. Vecām skaņu platēm nav tīras skaņas.
31. Kas šo kabatas lakatiņu gludināja, māt?
32. Kas tam vīram par garu bārdu!
33. Šī krāsns nemaz nesilda.
34. Sunim ir netīra spalva: neej klāt!
35. Šis nelga laikam krāso savu bārdu.
36. Policijai nav šaubu par to, kas nolaupīja dārgās gleznas mākslas galerijā.

Exercise 109e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Some painter with a black beard visits the art gallery every day.
2. Be careful with the television set!
3. I have no doubt that my daughter-in-law is lying.
4. My son-in-law has a record shop.
5. Do not pester (*mocht*) father, children: you are hindering him in his work.
6. This piano undoubtedly has a beautiful sound.
7. You should have found out whether the art gallery is being guarded.
8. This is only a cheap cotton apron.

9. Why did you express doubt about their hospitality?
10. The old forest-ranger has a long beard.
11. May God protect us from fire and floods!
12. She would have missed the train.
13. The children are trying to raise fish in an old bathtub.
14. Only a tradesman can discover why the television set has no sound.
15. You must protect your eyes from the sun.
16. These are undoubtedly magnificent records.
17. If the plate is here, then the fork should be on the left.
18. Do you always sing when you sit in the bath?
19. Did you hear the guards' conversation clearly?
20. My wife paid two dollars for a dozen handkerchiefs.
21. I ought not to have ironed this apron.
22. Those hospitable people detained me, and I missed the bus.
23. There is an enormous hall in the old castle.
24. What do you know about English, French and German music?
25. Sydney has more inhabitants than Melbourne.
26. Does South-east Asia export much rice?
27. There are twelve inches in a foot, and a hundred centimetres in a **metre**.
28. I cannot work in this light.
29. In the western part of the harbour there are some American and **Australian** warships.
30. In a flash John was back again.
31. You can't plant a thing in that stony field.
32. Oh, what watery vegetables!
33. Why does Charles always seek Aija's company?
34. The Latvian language is not very difficult, is it?
35. Who will conduct the choir this evening?
36. The puppy has a red tongue and black snout.
37. This is a comedy in four acts and fifteen scenes.
38. All the scenery is now in its place on the stage behind the curtain.
39. Why was the playwright at the rehearsal of the Russian ballet?
40. We shall have to look elsewhere.
41. How can we see the most distant stars?
42. Although many artists live in the neighbourhood, I have never seen a single painter in the near-by pub.

LESSON 110

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SIMPLE PALATALIZED TYPE:
NON-COMPOUND TENSES

To the Short Conjugation belong *all* monosyllabic infinitive verbs, and their compounds. We have already met three irregular verbs of the Short Conjugation: *iet*, *dot* and *būt*.

The Long Conjugation is characterized by the use of a lengthening syllable (-āj-, -ēj-, -ļj-, -oj-, -ūj-) in the present and imperfect: the Mixed Conjugation is characterized by the use of similar lengthening syllables (-āj-, -ēj-, -ļj-) in the imperfect but not in the present: the Short Conjugation is characterized by the fact that it does not use a lengthening syllable in either tense, as in the case of *iet*, *dot* and *būt*.

The endings used for verbs in the Short Conjugation are those of the mixed -ēt type, with the exception that the -i of the second person singular, present and imperative, is usually lacking. Thus the present tense endings of Short Conjugation verbs are:

-u, -(i), -, -am, -at, -.

The imperfect endings are:

-u, -i, -a, -ām, -āt, -a.

Within the Short Conjugation there are a number of separate types, which will be looked at in turn in future lessons. One of the important types is the SIMPLE PALATALIZED TYPE.

All verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type have infinitives ending in -kt or -gt, but the converse is not true. For the *k* or *g* of the infinitive is substituted respectively *c* or *dz* throughout both the present and imperfect tenses. The corresponding voiceless and voiced paradigms are given below. As with verbs of the Long Conjugation, there is an identity of form between the first person singular of the present and imperfect tenses which does not extend to other persons.

braukt 'to drive'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es brauc-u</i>	<i>es brauc-u</i>	-
<i>tu brauc</i>	<i>tu brauc-i</i>	<i>brauc!</i>
<i>viņš brauc</i>	<i>viņš brauc-a</i>	<i>lai brauc!</i>
<i>mēs brauc-am</i>	<i>mēs brauc-ām</i>	<i>brauksim!</i>
<i>jūs brauc-at</i>	<i>jūs brauc-āt</i>	<i>brauciet!</i>
<i>viņi brauc</i>	<i>viņi brauc-a</i>	<i>lai brauc!</i>

Future: *es braukšu, tu brauksi, viņš brauks*, etc.

Conditional: *es brauktu, tu brauktu, viņš brauktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jābrauc, man bija jābrauc*, etc.

From the above it will be clear that the imperatives are formed in accordance with the general rules learnt earlier, as are the future, the conditional and the debitives.

kliegt 'to shout'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kliez-u</i>	<i>es kliez-u</i>	-
<i>tu kliez</i>	<i>tu kliez-i</i>	<i>kliez!</i>
<i>viņš kliez</i>	<i>viņš kliez-a</i>	<i>lai kliez!</i>
<i>mēs kliez-am</i>	<i>mēs kliez-ām</i>	<i>kliegsim!</i>
<i>jūs kliez-at</i>	<i>jūs kliez-āt</i>	<i>klieziet!</i>
<i>viņi kliez</i>	<i>viņi kliez-a</i>	<i>lai kliez!</i>

Future: *es kliegšu, tu kliegsi, viņš kliegs*, etc.

Conditional: *es kliegtu, tu kliegtu, viņš kliegtu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāk dzied, man bija jāk dzied*, etc.

The *i* of the second person singular present (and hence of the corresponding imperative) is missing in all verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type.

Note particularly that where the -g- of the stem is followed by a voiceless consonant (e.g., by *t* in *kliegt* and in *kliegtu*, by *s* in *kliegsi*, *kliegs*, *kliegsim*, etc., by *š* in *kliegšu*) it is devoiced, the actual pronunciation of the above forms being **kliekt*, **kliektu*, **klieksi*, **klieks*, **klieksim*, **kliekšu*.

We shall deal with the Past Participle Active and the compound tenses of these verbs in Lesson 112.

Note the regularly formed participle for use after verbs of perception: *braucam, kliezdam*.

Vocabulary

<i>braukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to drive (intrans.), to travel
<i>saukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to call
<i>plūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to pluck, pick
<i>teikt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to say, tell
<i>veikt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to accomplish, manage
<i>rūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to roar
<i>slaukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to milk
<i>slīkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to buzz, hum

<i>kliegt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to shout, scream
<i>lūgt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to beg, pray, ask
<i>beigt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to finish, stop (trans.)
<i>sniegt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to hand (to), to pass (to); to reach (trans.)
<i>aizliegt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to forbid, prohibit
<i>zviegt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to neigh
<i>iejūgt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to harness
<i>pasniegt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to hand (to), to pass (to); to present

NOTES: *Sniegt* and *pasniegt* are respectively imperfective and perfective. Both require a dative of the person. *Pasniegt* sometimes has the meaning 'to teach' (a subject).

Teikt requires a dative of the person:

Ko viņš man teiks? What will he tell me?

Teikt also means 'to praise', but rarely in tenses other than the present. In this meaning an accusative of the person is required.

Kā tevi sauc? lit. 'How does one call you?' i.e., 'What is your name?' The answer is in the form *Mani sauc par Jāni*, lit. 'They call me (for) John', i.e., 'My name is John'.

Lūgt normally has an accusative of the person, and can be construed with a following infinitive:

Saimnieks lūdza mūs viņu apciemot.
The farmer asked us to visit him.

Beigt can be construed with a following infinitive:

Beidz runāt! Stop talking!

Aizliegt requires a dative of the person:

Es jums aizliedzu runāt pie galda.
I forbid you to speak at the table.

The dative can, however, be omitted, and the person prohibited becomes thereby vaguer:

Es aizliedzu runāt pie galda.
I forbid speaking at the table.

OR: I forbid anyone to speak at the table.

'As far as the eye can see' is translated in Latvian by *cik tālu acis sniedz*, lit. 'as far as eyes reach'.

Exercise 110a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

1. *Es nekad nebraucu ātri.*
2. *Es saucu savus bērņus.*
3. *Es plūcu lauku puķes.*
4. *Es slaucu govīs.*

Exercise 110b

Conjugate in the future and conditional:

1. *Ko es teikšu?*
2. *Kad gan es veikšu šo darbu?*
3. *Es braukšu mājās.*
4. *Es iejūgšu zirgus.*

Exercise 110c

Conjugate the following in the present debitive, the imperfect debitive, the future debitive and conditional debitive, all persons: *kliegt*; *aizliegt*; *sniegt*; *teikt*.

Exercise 110d

Translate into English:

1. *Kas televīzijas aparātā tik savādi rūc?*
2. *Kā tevi sauc, puisīt? – Mani sauc par Kārli.*
3. *Vai tu dzirdi zirgu zviedzam?*
4. *Kāpēc jūs nebraucāt pa tuvāko ceļu?*
5. *Mazas meitenes ar vaiņadziņiem galvā pasniedza māksliniekiem puķes.*
6. *Lūdzu, noskaidro, kas tur ārā kliegz!*
7. *Tam nelietim es nesniedzu roku.*
8. *Bitītes sīca liepu zaros.*
9. *Govīs jāslauc divreiz dienā.*
10. *Tālumā rūca pērkons.*
11. *Mēs vienmēr braucam līdz pilsētas vidum.*
12. *Āzijā mēs redzējām sievas plūcam tējas lapas.*
13. *Cikos tu beidz darbu? – Kā kuru reizi.*
14. *Ko jūs teicāt?*
15. *Kucēns nevarēs veikt šo lielo gaļas gabalu.*

16. Saimnieks man aizliedza iejūgt zirgu ratos.
17. Vai jūs mani saucāt?
18. Ir neapšaubāmi, ka mēs šo darbu līdz pusdienām neveiksim, inženiera kungs. – Tā, kas jūs aizkavēja?
19. Kāpēc jūs aizliedzat bērniem apskatīt mākslas galeriju?
20. Kas tur tik savādi sīc?
21. Vai jūs slaucāt govīs? – Nē, šovakar tās slauca pati saimniece.
22. Es tevi lūdzu: beidz runāt par savām šaubām!
23. Govīs plūc zāli ar mēli.
24. Vai es neteicu, ka tu nokavēsi vilcienu?
25. Piedodiet, vai jūs mani nelūdzāt pasniegt šo skaņu plati?
26. Kam šīs durvis bija jāsarģā?
27. Tev nav jāklie dz, es dzirdu labi.
28. Iejūdz zirgus, Jāni, saimnieks tūlīn brauks uz staciju!
29. Kam jāveic šīs milzīgās darbs?
30. Anna nupat beidza gludināt kreklus, tagad viņai vēl jāgludina galdauti, priekšauti un kabatas lakatiņi.
31. Papagailis klie dz, bet mušas sīc.
32. Kā sauc šo kungu ar melno bārdu?
33. Televīzijas aparātā skaņa nav tīra.
34. Lūdzu, pasniedziet piparus!
35. Zirgi zviedza, kad tos iejūdz ratos.
36. Visapkārt ir ūdens, cik tālu acīs sniedz.
37. Tu plūksi matus aiz dūsmām, ka neklausīji manām padomām.
38. Vai tu tiešām nesniegsi man roku?
39. Ko viņš teica, kad saimniece viņam aizliedza smēķēt ēdamistabā?
40. Kāpēc lācis tik briesmīgi rūc?
41. Kurš skolotājs jums pasniedz angļu valodu?
42. Kas tevi lūdz braukt šurpu?
43. Kas par lāga vīru!
44. Itālijā ir vairāk iedzīvotāju nekā Spānijā un Zviedrijā.
45. Mums būtu bijuši jāsuā novēlējumi uz (=for) viņu kāzām.
46. Kurā pusē viņš tagad dzīvo?
47. Klusām, klusām, zēni, citādi mūs pamanīs tas pagāna suns, kurš apsargā māju!
48. Kurp jūs brauksit savā kāzu ceļojumā?
49. Mēs bijām ļoti nabadzīgi, kad mūs salaulāja: sievai nebija pūra, un man nebija naudas.
50. Jūsu draugi bija gaužām viesmīlīgi.
51. Pasaulē ir papilnam nelaimīgu laulību.
52. Vai tu dzirdēji sargu sarunu?
53. Saules brilles pasargā acīs no saules.

Exercise 110e

Translate into Latvian:

1. I did not notice that the train was already leaving.
2. The doctor forbade me to smoke.
3. As far as the eye can see, there are only sand-hills.
4. Why does the farmer's wife milk the cows herself?
5. What is the name of the firm that was recently established?
6. Can you hear the lions roaring?
7. How will you manage that gigantic task?
8. What did you say?
9. You cannot pick roses without leather gloves.
10. Stop shouting!
11. Who drove the car when you all drove to town?
12. The horse is neighing: he probably knows that he will be harnessed right now.
13. Tiny flies were buzzing all around.
14. We begged him to support his old parents.
15. I doubt that we will finish this job before six o'clock, because we are dragging it out.
16. This important job cannot be hurried.
17. We are handing bricks to the tradesmen.
18. How far can you reach?
19. Why didn't you call the police when you noticed that somebody had stolen all the hens?
20. The horses were neighing with fear when they heard the bear roaring.
21. You will never manage a mile under four minutes!
22. The minutes are passing quickly by.
23. The director forbids smoking in his office.
24. Your hands are still shaking: you must exercise them more often.
25. I shall ask mother to shorten my skirt.
26. I saw the snow slowly sliding off the roof.
27. Right now we are milking the cows.
28. These woollen socks will certainly (*gan*) warm your feet.
29. Cotton is now being picked in the cotton-fields of America.
30. Why are you humming, bee?
31. The farm-worker is harnessing the horse.
32. Please hand me the hammer and some nails.
33. Anne never wanted to marry Charles.
34. The bridegroom ought to take care of the invitations.
35. Eve has rejected seven suitors, because she does not wish to marry anybody.
36. My left hand is stronger than the right.

37. Please explain to us why your son-in-law was not more careful with those records.
38. He went past us on foot.
39. On this side of the river there are many old houses, but on that side of the river there are wide meadows.
40. That honourable man was a friend of my late father's.
41. In this small field we grow potatoes.
42. I believe he offered me an uncomfortable chair on purpose.
43. He was probably lying about his daughter-in-law.
44. Did you express our gratitude for their hospitality?
45. What was that stupid old windbag gossiping about?
46. Did you hear the conversation of the forest rangers?
47. My head is itching horribly.

LESSON 111

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SIMPLE PALATALIZED TYPE:
NON-COMPOUND TENSES. VERBS CONTAINING *E* IN THE STEM

Verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type which happen to have *e* as their stem vowel are conjugated no differently from other verbs of the same type. However, questions of the alternation of *ę* and *ɛ* arise, and must be considered here. The rules given here have quite general application to verbs of the Short Conjugation:

- 1) The infinitive and all forms of the imperfect have closed *ę*.
- 2) The present tense has open *ɛ* except for the second person singular, and the two imperatives of the second person.
- 3) The future has closed *ę*.
- 4) The conditional has open *ɛ*.

This will be apparent from the following paradigm. Note that the alternation is the same as that of *redzēt*.

apsęgt 'to cover'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es apsędzu</i>	<i>es apsędzu</i>	—
<i>tu apsędz</i>	<i>tu apsędzi</i>	<i>apsędz!</i>
<i>viņš apsędz</i>	<i>viņš apsędza</i>	<i>lai apsędz!</i>
<i>mēs apsędzam</i>	<i>mēs apsędzām</i>	<i>apsęgsim!</i>
<i>jūs apsędzat</i>	<i>jūs apsędzāt</i>	<i>apsędziet!</i>
<i>viņi apsędz</i>	<i>viņi apsędza</i>	<i>lai apsędz</i>

Future: *es apsęgšu, tu apsęgsi, viņš apsęgs*, etc.
Conditional: *es apsęgtu, tu apsęgtu, viņš apsęgtu*, etc.
Debitives: *man jāapsędz, man bija jāapsędz*, etc.

This alternation is the same for all verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type which contain an *e* as the stem vowel.

Remember that the *-i* of the second person singular present tense is lacking in all verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type.

Vocabulary

<i>apsęgt</i> (-sędzu, -sędzu)	to cover
<i>aizslęgt</i> (-slędzu, -slędzu)	to lock
<i>brękt</i> (bręcu, bręcu)	to scream, cry, bawl
<i>aiztrękt</i> (-tręncu, -tręncu)	to chase (away)
<i>iemęrkt</i> (-męrcu, -męrcu)	to soak, immerse
<i>jęgt</i> (jędzu, jędzu)	to have an idea, notion
* <i>męgt</i> (mędzu, mędzu)	to be accustomed, to be wont
<i>aplenkt</i> (-lęncu, -lęncu)	to encircle, surround
<i>šļākt</i> (-c, -ca)	to splash, spout
<i>krākt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to snore; (of sea) to roar
<i>šņākt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to hiss; (of sea, wind) to roar
<i>nomaukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to take off (footwear, rings, etc.)
<i>uzmaukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to put on (footwear, rings, etc.)
<i>sūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to suck, sip
<i>aiztriekt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to chase (away)
<i>kviękt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to squeak, squeal

NOTES: The infinitive **męgt* does not actually occur: it is given here for the sake of regularity.

Kviękt is used mainly of pigs.

Šņākt (= to hiss) is used mainly of cats, snakes, etc.

Exercise 111a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, future, conditional and the four parts of the imperative: *apsęgt*; *aizslęgt*; *brękt*; *aiztrękt*; *iemęrkt*; *jęgt*; *aplenkt*; *krākt*; *šņākt*; *uzmaukt*; *nomaukt*; *sūkt*; *aiztriekt*; *kviękt*; *braukt*; *klięgt*; *saukt*; *lūgt*; *plūkt*; *beigt*; *pasniegt*; *slaukt*; *iejūgt*; *teikt*; *sniegt*; *veikt*; *aizlięgt*; *rūkt*.

Exercise 111b

What are the rules governing the alternation of open and closed *e* in Short Conjugation Verbs of the Simple Palatalized Type?

Exercise 111c

Translate into English:

1. Viļņi bango, un jūra krāc.
2. Viņa nemēdz plūkt rozēs bez cimdiem.
3. Ja tu nekā nejēdz no arhitektūras, tad beidz pļāpāt par laikmetiem un stiliem!
4. Saimniece šovakar iemērca palagus, jo rītu viņa tos izmazgās.
5. Tu nekā nejēdz par mākslu.
6. Kalpi nemēdz slaukt govis, tas ir sieviešu darbs.
7. Policija aplenca visu namu.
8. Lietus šļāc pret logiem.
9. Nomauc slāpējās kurpes!
10. Kāpēc jūs aiztriecāt ubagu? – Es viņu aiztriecu, tāpēc ka viņš ir dzērājs un varbūt arī zaglis.
11. Suņi aiztrenca kādu meža zvēru no sētas.
12. Vai tu nupat nedzirdēji bērņus brēcam?
13. Aizslēdz mašīnas durvis!
14. Vai jūs apsedzāt kājas ar silto segu?
15. Ieva kliedza, kad šis nelietis mēģināja viņu skūpstīt.
16. Kaķis šņāc, kad ir dusmīgs.
17. Dienvidamerikā, Āzijā un Austrālijā ir putni, kas ar saviem garajiem un tievajiem knābjiem sūc medu no puķu ziediem.
18. Šī mazā cepurīte neapsedz visu galvu.
19. Nabaga bērņs iemērca savu rociņu karstā ūdenī.
20. Vai jūs aizslēdzāt durvis? – Jā, es tās aizslēdzu.
21. Parasti mēs mēdzam braukt pa galveno ceļu.
22. Čūska briesmīgi šņāca.
23. Ap desmitiem mēs visi jau krācām.
24. Alus no mucas šļāca līdz griestiem.
25. Kāpēc jūs sargam neuzmaucāt maisu galvā?
26. Suņi aplenc aitas.
27. Nomauc dubļainās kurpes un iedod man netīrās zeķes; es tās tūliņ iemērķšu ziepju ūdenī.
28. Es nekad vairs nepavadīšu brīvlaiku uz laukiem: tur zirgi zviedz, kalpu bērņi brēc, gaiļi dzied, cūkas kviec, istabā sīc mušas, mežā kliedz putni, un mans vīrs naktīs šņāc un krāc!

29. Mums bija jāaplenc visa pilsēta, bet mēs to neveicām.
30. Nesūc manu pirkstu, kucēn, citādi es tevi aiztriekšu.
31. Ūdens šļāc pret kājām.
32. Iejūdz zirgu, Jāni, un pagaidām apsedz tā muguru!
33. Kad mazā Aija ieraudzīja zirnekli uz paklāja, viņa kliedza un brēca.
34. Ko viņš teiks, ja neviens viņam nesniegs roku?
35. Es šo gredzenu pavisam viegli uzmaucu, bet tagad man ir grūti to nomaukt.
36. Gans aiztrieca lapsu.
37. Es jūs lūdzu man pasniegt glāzi alus.
38. Saimnieks sauc savus suņus.
39. Sieva viņam aizliedz audzēt bārdu.
40. Pēc negaisa bija lieli plūdi.
41. Vai peles un žurkas kviec? – Nē, kviec tikai cūkas.
42. Līgavainis uzmauca līgavai gredzenu pirkstā.

Exercise 111d

Translate into Latvian:

1. I immersed the aprons together with the handkerchiefs in this little tub.
2. If you continue whistling the guard will chase you out of the art gallery.
3. His beard is not so long that it covers his tie.
4. We are not in the habit of locking the doors, because there are only honest people in our town.
5. Sometimes the television set makes a hissing noise; sometimes it squeaks.
6. The water of the fountain is splashing against the concrete.
7. They have no idea of music.
8. That old blabber-mouth was in the habit of keeping me from my work.
9. This medicine must be sipped slowly.
10. He took off his wet shoes, and put on clean dry shoes.
11. The thieves undoubtedly know that we shall encircle them.
12. The girls screamed and squealed when they put (*iemērkt*) their feet into the cold water.
13. Did you surround the entire hotel?
14. The sea was roaring and the waves were splashing against the rocks.
15. My husband does not snore.
16. The snake is hissing.
17. Why are you locking the door?
18. In autumn in Latvia roses must be covered with earth and dry leaves.
19. Put on your shoes quickly, otherwise you will miss the tram.
20. Bees suck honey from blossoms.

21. I must find out why the farmer dismissed (*aiztriekt*) his farm-hand.
22. Did you take off your glove when the old lady extended her hand to you?
- Yes, mother.
23. Why are you chasing the poor puppy away?
24. This violin has a magnificent sound.
25. The girls screamed with joy when they heard the latest (*jaunākais*) record.
26. Do you still have doubts about their hospitality?
27. Everyone was running to and fro looking for the cheque.
28. The earthquake destroyed the whole city: now there are only ruins.
29. We shall have to import more canned foods.
30. There are a thousand grammes in a kilogramme.
31. If our exports are greater than our imports, we shall have a profit; otherwise we shall have a loss.
32. Have you no shame?
33. He is gifted and has also enjoyed a good education.
34. The staff all hope that she will pass her examinations.
35. The river has flooded the fields, and the snowstorm has covered the roads.
36. Where was the lecturer going?
37. What is the best gift for an educated man?
38. Hot air always rises.
39. You should have gone home earlier.
40. Who is that fat lady with the black hand-bag?

LESSON 112

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SIMPLE PALATALIZED TYPE:
COMPOUND TENSES

The Past Participle Active is formed by adding *-is* to the stem of the imperfect tense:

Infinitive	Imperfect	Past Participle (Masc. sing.)
<i>braukt</i>	<i>braucu</i>	<i>braucis</i>
<i>kliedt</i>	<i>kliedzu</i>	<i>kliedzis</i>
<i>aiztrēkt</i>	<i>aiztrēncu</i>	<i>aiztrēncis</i>
<i>aizslēgt</i>	<i>aizslēdzu</i>	<i>aizslēdzis</i>

The student will already be familiar with this process, which is the same as for verbs of the Mixed and Long conjugations. With verbs of the Simple Palatalized

type, however, there is one complication: the *c* or *dz* of the masculine singular past participle reverts to *k* or *g* in the masculine plural, feminine singular and feminine plural forms:

Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
<i>braucis</i>	<i>braukuši</i>	<i>braukusi</i>	<i>braukušas</i>
<i>kliedzis</i>	<i>klieguši</i>	<i>kliegusi</i>	<i>kliegušas</i>
<i>aiztrēncis</i>	<i>aiztrēnkuši</i>	<i>aiztrēnkusi</i>	<i>aiztrēnkušas</i>
<i>aizslēdzis</i>	<i>aizslēguši</i>	<i>aizslēgusi</i>	<i>aizslēgušas</i>

Note also that under the influence of the following *u*, the *e* of the stem opens.

Hence the conjugation of the perfect tenses of *braukt* is as follows:

es esmu (biju, būšu, būtu) braucis (braukusi)
tu esi (biji, būsi, būtu) braucis (braukusi)
viņš ir (bija, būs, būtu) braucis
viņa ir (bija, būs, būtu) braukusi
mēs esam (bijām, būsim, būtu) braukuši (braukušas)
jūs esat (bijāt, būsit, būtu) braukuši (braukušas, braucis, braukusi)
viņi ir (bija, būs, būtu) braukuši
viņas ir (bija, būs, būtu) braukušas.

The Debitive Perfect forms present no difficulty:

<i>man ir bijis jābrauc</i>	I have had to drive
<i>man bija bijis jābrauc</i>	I had had to drive
<i>man būs bijis jābrauc</i>	I shall have had to drive
<i>man būtu bijis jābrauc</i>	I would have had to drive OR I ought to have driven

Vocabulary

<i>brauciens</i>	journey
<i>braucējs</i>	driver, coachman
<i>teikums</i>	sentence, clause
<i>teika</i>	(legendary) tale
<i>rūciens</i>	roar
<i>kliedziens</i>	shout, scream
<i>lūgums</i>	request
<i>heldzamais, -ā</i> (adj.)	the last
<i>beldzot</i>	finally, at last
<i>steldzams</i>	urgent
<i>steiga</i>	• haste

<i>steigšus</i>	in haste, hurriedly
<i>mērce</i>	sauce, gravy
<i>šalkt (-c, -ca)</i>	to rustle (in the wind)
<i>izteiciens</i>	expression

Exercise 112a

Give the four forms of the past participle active of: *šalkt*; *apsegt*; *aizslēgt*; *aiztrenkt*; *jēgt*; *šļākt*; *šņākt*; *krākt*; *nomaukt*; *braukt*.

Exercise 112b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *saukt*; *teikt*; *rūkt*; *slaukt*; *kliegt*; *lūgt*; *beigt*; *aizliegt*; *iejūgt*; *sīkt*.

Exercise 112c

Translate into English:

1. Beidzot tu esi iemērkusi šos netīros priekšautus un kabatas lakatiņus.
2. Pārbaudi, vai tu esi aizslēdzis durvis!
3. Tā būs beidzamā reize, ka es pats krāsošu istabu. Citā reizē es saukšu amatniekus.
4. Pirms brauciena šoferis mēdz uzmaukt rokās ādas cimodus.
5. Viņa pēkšņi dzirdēja rūcienu un tad briesmīgu kļiedzienu.
6. Priekšnieks bija atraidījis viņu lūgumus.
7. Kas par savādu izteicienu!
8. Tu atkal sūc pirkstu, nerātnais bērns!
9. Braucējam bija bijis jāapsedz zirgs.
10. Lietus šļāc pret guļamistabas logu.
11. Birojā mani gaida steigams darbs.
12. Sargs bija aiztriecis zagļus.
13. Pilsētas galva lielā steigā brauca uz staciju.
14. Tu būtu brēkusi aiz bailēm, ja tu būtu redzējusi to lielo čūsku.
15. Izlasi šo interesanto teikumu!
16. Beidzot tu šo nelieti esi aiztriecis!
17. Tu naktī atkal krāci, vīriņ! – It kā tu pati nekad nebūtu krākusi!
18. Es dzirdu cūkas kviecām aiz aploka žoga.
19. Mērcē ir daudz piparu.
20. Beidzot es esmu uzrakstījusi beidzamo teikumu!
21. Tā ir teika par senajiem varoņiem.
22. Braucējs pēc katra gara brauciena pārbauda savu mašīnu.

23. Tev laikam būs bijis jāraksta lielā steigā.
24. Steigšus darbu nevar veikt labi.
25. Zibenim sekoja pērkonu rūciens.
26. Vai man būtu bijis jāuzraksta sevišķs lūgums?
27. Ja čūska nebūtu šņākusi, mēs to nebūtu pamanījuši.
28. Kāpēc mērce ir tik ūdeņaina?
29. Es beidzamo reizi tevi brīdinu nelietot šo rupjo izteicienu!
30. Steigā nevar atrisināt tik svarīgu problēmu, tā prasa daudz laika.
31. Vai tā ir tik steigama lieta?
32. Kārtībnieks bija dzirdējis sievietes kļiedzienu otrajā stāvā.
33. Pirms brauciena uz Ķemeriem Vītola kungs vēl steigšus aizgāja uz banku.
34. Priekšniekam bija steigami jāizlasa daži lūgumi.
35. Lūdzu, piepildi šo blodiņu ar mērci!
36. Mūsu draudzes mācītājs parasti runā garos teikumus.
37. Ko šis cilvēks jēdz par vācu varoņu un dievu teikām?
38. Aiz stūra dzirdēja smagās mašīnas rūcienu un ļaužu pūļa kļiedzienu.
39. Rudzu lauks šalca siltajā vasaras vējā.
40. Izteiciens, ko es nupat lasīju šinī teikā, man ir svešs.
41. Šalciet, tēvu zemes meži! (*tēvu zeme = fatherland, homeland*)
42. Tava māšīca ir naidīga un nežēlīga.

Exercise 112d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Had I known that you were such a bad driver, I would never have driven with you.
2. At last you have accomplished this task!
3. The farm-hand had harnessed the horse in great haste.
4. We would have had to pick cotton.
5. We (f.) would never have requested money.
6. She has probably rejected your request.
7. They (f.) will not have milked the cows before six o'clock.
8. Their parents had forbidden them to use that expression.
9. The girls handed flowers to the conductor of the orchestra.
10. The horses whinnied with fear when they heard the clap of thunder.
11. The barley-field is rustling in the wind.
12. This gravy contains a lot of butter.
13. She would never have used that expression.
14. What had they (f.) said?
15. I wrote the last sentence just now.
16. That was a lovely journey!
17. I had to read those legends hurriedly.

18. Perhaps he has had to complete an urgent task.
19. Can you hear the shouts of the savages in the distance?
20. Let us accompany the old engine-driver on his last trip.
21. The chief shouted and bellowed when he had read that scoundrel's request.
22. I shall sit behind the driver, and you can sit next to him.
23. Finally you are at hand; urgent tasks await you!
24. She must have written those sentences in haste.
25. Ought I to have offered him my hand?
26. The farmer's wife had had to make the gravy in a hurry.
27. I just heard a horrible roar: perhaps there is a bear in the vicinity.
28. That is not a story; it is a legend.
29. I heard the bees buzzing, and then I heard the puppy yelping.
30. Your mother has been looking for you and calling you for a long time.
31. Did you hear the shouts of the children?
32. In our city there is neither a High school nor a university.
33. Miss Kalniņš, the young painter, is visiting Mrs Lācis, who today is celebrating her sixtieth birthday.
34. The fourth verse is on page three.
35. I must paint the bathroom.
36. The photographer was photographing the fine ladies in their new coats.
37. Hands off that expensive painting, children!
38. To paint is more difficult than to take photographs.
39. At Latvian Midsummer festivals great fires are lit on fallow-ground.
40. Are we allowed to fish from this bank?
41. Salt is not at all similar to pepper.
42. The bathroom window was open, and I could hear his magnificent voice.
43. You ought to have lit the stove earlier.
44. How many copecks are there in seventeen roubles?
45. Will you commission an architect to build your house?

LESSON 113

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: THE VERB *NĀKT*

The verb *nākt* 'to come' is conjugated in part like the verbs of the simple palatalized type, but is irregular in that the palatalization affects only the imperfect, the second person singular of the present, the second person singular imperative and the second person plural imperative. In other words, the palatalization is lacking in the present tense and its derivatives, except where

the following vowel is *-i*, or would have been if not omitted, as in the second person singular of the present. The conjugation is as follows:

nākt 'to come'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es nāk-u</i>	<i>es nāc-u</i>	—
<i>tu nāc</i>	<i>tu nāc-i</i>	<i>nāc!</i>
<i>viņš nāk</i>	<i>viņš nāc-a</i>	<i>lai nāk!</i>
<i>mēs nāk-am</i>	<i>mēs nāc-ām</i>	<i>nāksim!</i>
<i>jūs nāk-at</i>	<i>jūs nāc-āt</i>	<i>nāc-iet!</i>
<i>viņi nāk</i>	<i>viņi nāc-a</i>	<i>lai nāk!</i>

Future: *es nākšu, tu nāksi, viņš nāks, etc.*

Conditional: *es nāktu, tu nāktu, viņš nāktu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jānāk, man bija jānāk, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *nācis, nākuši; nākusi, nākušas.*

Remember that verbs of the simple palatalized type do not take an *-i* in the second person singular of the present, and that the *-c-* of the masculine singular past participle active reverts to *-k-* in the masculine plural, the feminine singular and the feminine plural. Cf. in this respect all other verbs of the simple palatalized type.

Nākt, except for its compounds, is the only verb to exhibit the peculiarities of conjugation outlined above. The other verbs of the vocabulary of this lesson are regularly conjugated like *braukt* or *kliegt*.

Vocabulary

<i>nākt</i> (-ku, -cu)	to come
<i>pārnākt</i> (-ku, -cu)	to come home, arrive home
<i>panākt</i> (-ku, -cu)	to achieve; to catch up with, overtake
<i>panākumi</i> (pl.)	success
<i>plenākums</i>	duty, obligation
<i>atzbraukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to drive off; leave (on a journey)
<i>noplūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to pluck, to pick
<i>pateikt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to tell, say
<i>pabeigt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to finish, complete
<i>atbraukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to arrive
<i>pieveikt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to conquer, defeat, subdue
<i>sasnēgt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to achieve; to reach, attain
<i>sasnēgums</i>	achievement

<i>sajēgt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to realize, grasp, comprehend
<i>jēga</i>	sense, idea, meaning
<i>mērķis</i>	target, goal, destination
<i>ienaidnieks</i>	enemy, foe
<i>pretinieks</i>	opponent, adversary

NOTES: *Noplūkt*, *pateikt* and *pabeigt* serve as perfectives to the simple verbs *plūkt*, *teikt* and *beigt*.

Man nav (ne) mazākās jēgas (par)...

I have not the slightest idea (about)...

Kāda tur jēga? What sense does that make?
Where's the sense in that?

Bez jēgas is used postpositionally with a preceding genitive to denote abundance:

ogu bez jēgas berries galore

This usage is somewhat colloquial.

Exercise 113a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *nākt*; *pateikt*; *pārnākt*; *atbraukt*; *panākt*; *sasniegt*; *sajēgt*; *noplūkt*; *kviekt*.

Exercise 113b

Give the four forms of the past participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 113a.

Exercise 113c

Translate into English:

1. Nāc, iesim! – Es jau nāku!
2. Cikos jūs pārnācāt mājās no balles? – Pulksten piecos. – Tas gan ir sasniegums!
3. Jānis sporta sacīkstēs sasniedza mērķi piecas sekundes pirms tuvākā pretinieka.
4. Cik kilometru ir no Rīgas līdz Cēsīm? – Man nav ne mazākās jēgas.
5. Vai krusttēvs ir jau atbraucis? – Nē, viņš brauks ar beidzamo vilcienu.

6. Mūsu kara flote ir pieveikusi ienaidnieku.
7. Beidzot tu esi pārnācis!
8. Mūsu braucējs viņus panāca pie tilta.
9. Mūsu dēls ir pabeidzis augstskolu, bet viņš pats nemaz nesajēdz, kas tas ir par sasniegumu.
10. Vai jūs man varat pateikt, cikos ārsts aizbrauca? – Viņš vēl nav nekur aizbraucis.
11. Juri, nāc vakariņās! – Tūlīt, māt, es tikai pabeigšu rakstīt šo teikumu.
12. Viņam pienākums vienmēr bija pirmajā vietā.
13. Ar steigu tu nekā nepanāksi.
14. Mēs esam noplūkušas visas puķes dārzā.
15. Mēs tev novēlam panākumus vidusskolā!
16. Kāda tur jēga sēdēt visu dienu upes krastā un makšķerēt?
17. Mans lūgums bija bez panākumiem.
18. Mūsu uzdevums bija aplenkt ienaidnieku, un mēs to arī veicām.
19. Viņam bija bijis steidzami jāaizbrauc.
20. Viņa bija steigšus noplūkusī dažus ziedus.
21. Arhitekts pārnāca mājās no darba.
22. Mežā ir ogu bez jēgas.
23. Vai jums mērce garšoja?
24. Vai tev ir kāda jēga par architektūru?
25. Galvas pilsēta ir ienaidnieka rokās.
26. Kādā sportā Austrālija ir bieži pieveikusi Ameriku?
27. Suņi lapsu tomēr nepanāca.
28. Mums ir bijuši labi panākumi eksportā.
29. Vai jūs man varētu pateikt, kas tur tālumā rūc?
30. Cikos jūs sasniedzāt mērķi?
31. Ja Rietumvācija pieveiktu Ameriku sporta sacīkstēs, tas gan būtu liels sasniegums.
32. Es nemaz nezināju, ka tas bija lāča rūciens.
33. Kāpēc jūs nenākat iekšā? – Mēs jau nākam.
34. Kad priekšnieks atbrauks, mēs būsīm pabeiguši betona darbus.
35. Es bibliotēkā lasīju tautas teikas, kad es pēkšņi dzirdēju kļiedzienu uz ielas.
36. Ja tu aizvakar nebūtu noplūcis ziedus, naktī salna būtu tos iznīcinājusi.
37. Es nemanīju, ka tu biji aizgājis uz vannas istabu, bet tad es pēkšņi dzirdēju tur tavu balsi.
38. Kā mēs varēsīm pasargāt šo milzīgo spēkstaciju no ienaidnieka?
39. Sargā māju, sunīt!
40. Kam jāsaģēģē tilts?
41. Mēģināsim atkal šo ainu, tad mēs būsīm veikuši visu cēlienu.
42. Steidziniet tos slinkos strādniekus!
43. Skolotāja pienākums ir mācīt bērnus.

Exercise 113d

Translate into Latvian:

1. He used to come home before the evening meal.
2. I have no idea whether my wife has put the table-cloth into hot or cold water.
3. You will not achieve anything if you keep on shouting!
4. Come daughter, please cover my feet with the warm blanket. – I am coming, mother.
5. Had my opponent been a man of honour, I would have remained silent.
6. A small nation can defeat a large nation in sport.
7. What goal have you reached in life?
8. At what time did you arrive?
9. If you had picked three hundred kilogrammes of grapes in one day, that would have been a great achievement.
10. I have the sad obligation to tell you that your son has not passed the examination.
11. I have not yet finished this book.
12. He has gone to Sweden.
13. We shall drive the enemy from the city.
14. For the first moment I did not realize where I was.
15. What sense does it make to chase away the rats? They will only come again!
16. He is studying with great success.
17. Have you completed your home-work?
18. I hear father coming home.
19. Whose duty was it to lock the doors and gates?
20. Come inside!
21. That old car will never catch us!
22. Has he already left? (*aizbraukt*) – No, he is still snoring.
23. When Juris comes home, he must take off his wet shoes, and put on dry shoes. – Good, I shall tell him.
24. She probably does not realize what she is doing.
25. That is a magnificent achievement!
26. The doctor tried everything, but without success.
27. The gardener forbids us to pick those flowers.
28. Where the bee sucks, there suck I.
29. Stop spitting, (*šņākt*) pussy-cat!
30. We shall undoubtedly see many artists with beards at the art gallery.
31. I asked my son-in-law to be very careful with the records.
32. He said that he did not wish to prolong (*vilcināt*) the conversation.
33. Stop shouting, and harness the horse!

34. I heard the horses neighing when I milked the cows.
35. Dark clouds are rolling (*slīdēt*) across the sky as far as the eye can see.
36. You may found a new theatre if you wish, but who will support it?
37. That confounded boy delayed me, and I missed the bus.
38. Do you really intend to rob these hospitable people?
39. When can we go picking grapes? – The car is waiting outside: let's go!
40. I have no doubt that your foot is itching, because you didn't change your socks.
41. The headmaster expressed the opinion that the lessons (*stundas*) should be shortened.
42. Although the sun shines in April, tomatoes still cannot be grown.
43. Should I have offered my hand to the teacher?

LESSON 114

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: THE VERB *LĒKT*

The verb *lēkt* 'to jump' is conjugated like any other verb of the simple palatalized type, except that in the present tense, and in forms derived from the present, the vowel is short.

lēkt 'to jump'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es lēcu</i>	<i>es lēcu</i>	–
<i>tu lēc</i>	<i>tu lēci</i>	<i>lēc!</i>
<i>viņš lēc</i>	<i>viņš lēca</i>	<i>lai lēc!</i>
<i>mēs lēcām</i>	<i>mēs lēcām</i>	<i>lēksim!</i>
<i>jūs lēcat</i>	<i>jūs lēcāt</i>	<i>lēciet!</i>
<i>viņi lēc</i>	<i>viņi lēca</i>	<i>lai lēc!</i>

Future: *es lēkšu, tu lēksi, viņš lēks*, etc.

Conditional: *es lēktu, tu lēktu, viņš lēktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jālēc, man bija jālēc*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *lēcis, lēkuši; lēkusi, lēkušas*.

Observe the regular alternation of open and closed *e*, and the absence of the *-i* from the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>lēkt</i> (<i>lēcu, lēcu</i>)	to jump, hop; to rise (of sun)
<i>uzlēkt</i> (<i>-lēcu, -lēcu</i>)	to jump on, hop on; to rise (of sun)
<i>nolēkt</i> (<i>-lēcu, -lēcu</i>)	to jump down, off; to hop down, off
<i>saules lēkts</i>	sunrise
<i>palīdzība</i>	assistance, aid, help
<i>muļķis</i>	simpleton, fool, silly person (m.)
<i>muļķe</i>	simpleton, fool, silly person (f.)
<i>slīņķis</i>	loafer, lazy person (m.)
<i>slīņķe</i>	loafer, lazy person (f.)
<i>biezs</i>	thick
<i>plāns</i>	thin
<i>vēlns</i>	devil
<i>darba rīks</i>	tool
<i>ierocis</i>	weapon; (pl.) arms
<i>ass</i>	sharp
<i>ierēdnis</i>	official, public servant

NOTES: *Vēlns* is also used as an interjection, although the corresponding English expression apostrophizes not so much the character himself as his traditional habitat.

The infinitive *lēkt* may occasionally be found with a short vowel: *lekt*.

Exercise 114a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *lēkt*; *nākt*; *uzlēkt*; *braukt*; *nolēkt*; *kliegt*; *pabeigt*; *apsegt*; *krākt*; *kviekt*.

Exercise 114b

Give the four forms of the past participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 114a.

Exercise 114c

Translate into English:

1. Bez jūsu palīdzības mēs ienaidnieku nekad nebūtu pieveikuši.
2. Akmens laikmetā ieročus un darba rīkus taisīja no akmens.
3. Kā šis muļķis var strādāt par ierēdni?

4. Es lēkšu līdz griestiem, ja es izturēšu šo pārbaudījumu.
5. Kaķis uzlēca uz skapja.
6. Kāpēc jūs nolēcāt no klints jūrā?
7. Saule ir jau sen uzlēkusi, bet šī slīņķe vēl krāc.
8. Mēs pārnācām mājās pēc saules lēkta.
9. Tam muļķim nav ne mazākās jēgas par saviem vīra pienākumiem.
10. Kad saimnieks atbrauks mājās, viņš šo slīņķi aiztrieks pie velna.
11. Žurkām ir asi zobi.
12. Vietām ledus ir jau biezs, bet vietām vēl pavisam plāns.
13. Kāpēc viņš to slīņķi apprecēja?
14. Tu laikam nesajēdz, ka tas ir ierocis, ne darba rīks.
15. Viņš nolēca no klints un ievainoja kāju.
16. Ar šiem neasajiem darba rīkiem tu nekā nepanāksi.
17. Mūsu laiva sasniedza mērķi drīz pēc saules lēkta.
18. Zvejnieki bija jūrā jau pirms saules lēkta.
19. Cigarešu papīrs ir ļoti plāns.
20. Vai tu jau esi beidzis augstskolu?
21. Caur plānajām sienām mēs dzirdējām priekšnieku kliežam.
22. Juris nupat aizbrauca, bet jūs viņu vēl panāksit ar savu ātro mašīnu.
23. Šī muļķe tiešām bija noplūkusi visus ziedus.
24. Ierēdņu algas nav lielas.
25. Arī muļķiem dažreiz ir panākumi dzīvē.
26. Kāds tur klusām nāk pa gaiteni.
27. Ja šai muļķei pateiks "lec!", viņa lēks!
28. Pieveikt stipru pretinieku sportā ir liels sasniegums.
29. Istam varonim nav bail no paša velna.
30. Šim slīņķim gan ir bieža āda.
31. No kuras puses jūs nākat?
32. Šinīs biežajos mežos nevajadzētu staigāt bez ieroča.
33. Ej pie velna!
34. Šai vecajai slīņķei ir asa mēle.
35. Aivars ar šo slīņķi nestrādās kopā.
36. Cerēsim, ka palīdzība nāks!
37. Kāpēc gan sievietes uzlec uz krēsla, ja viņas ierauga pelīti?
38. Vāverīte nolēca no zara.
39. Ko tā vecā skolotāja zina par mīlestību?
40. Mēs uz kāzām dabūjām novēlējumu papildnam, bet neviena čeka.
41. Pasniedz labo roku, ne kreiso, Miķelīt!
42. Pa labi jūs redzēsiet bendes namu un pa kreisi mūsu pilsētas visvecāko krogu.
43. Es samaksāju par pieci simti gramiem sviesta, bet tas negodīgais pārdevējs man iedeva tikai četri simti gramu.

44. Pagaidām es neviena neprecēšu.
45. Viņš aizgāja mums garām.
46. Mēs dzīvojam šaipus upes, bet mūsu vecāki viņpus upes.
47. Vai tas muļķa zēns tevi tišām apvainoja?

Exercise 114d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Why didn't you jump?
2. The cat jumped on to the dog's back.
3. At last the idle fellow has finished reading that thin book.
4. Any simpleton can be a public servant.
5. What did Faust (*Fausts*) achieve with the assistance of the devil?
6. In this thick book there are legends and stories from the Middle Ages.
7. With a horrible roar the lion leapt off the rock.
8. Why is the gravy so thick?
9. My daughter-in-law is a lazy person.
10. Please do not use such sharp expressions.
11. Where are my tools? I have an urgent job to do.
12. I heard the shouts of the crowd, and saw a young woman jump from the roof.
13. We now have the most modern weapons.
14. He jumped on to the last carriage.
15. Go to the devil, you fool!
16. In summer we wear lightweight (*plāns*) clothes.
17. Why doesn't that lazy girl write the request herself?
18. Let's jump into the water!
19. The driver went hurriedly to the telephone to ask for help.
20. Before sunrise the executioner had completed his horrible duty.
21. Why are the tools not sharp, you lazy fellow?
22. Do you believe that foolish woman?
23. The painter is trying to paint the sunrise.
24. What did the official report to his chief?
25. Can you hear the forest rustling?
26. Why did the hunter come home without his weapons?
27. How much did the trip to Sydney cost?
28. Good day, my friend! Why in such great haste?
29. Although he had enjoyed a higher education, he was not very gifted.
30. Should I offer the gift to the bride or the bridegroom?
31. Have we a profit or a loss on (*uz*) our imports?
32. The salesman did not know the price of the tinned food in the window.

33. Did they go to Italy for their honeymoon or to Spain?
34. All her suitors were professors or lecturers.
35. All members of the staff of this high school are very well educated.
36. Many countries have to import more than they can export.
37. In modern times dowries are less common than earlier.
38. The professor often writes on the blackboard in lectures.
39. Will you take care of the invitations?
40. The late pastor married them many years ago.
41. That wicked man's marriage is probably not very happy.

LESSON 115

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES WITH THE DEBITIVE OF *BŪT*

We have seen how the logical subject of a verb in the debitive mood must be put into the dative:

<i>man jāredz</i>	I must see
<i>mums jābrauc</i>	we must drive

Where the verb *būt* is in the debitive, particular attention must be paid to the agreement of a following adjective, which too will have to be in the dative, agreeing with the logical subject:

<i>Man jābūt stipram.</i>	I must be strong.
<i>Ievai būs jābūt rātnai.</i>	Eve will have to be well-behaved.
<i>Akām bija jābūt dziļām.</i>	The wells had to be deep.
<i>Mums būtu bijis jābūt gudrākiem.</i>	We ought to have been cleverer.

Vocabulary

<i>pēcpusdiena</i>	afternoon
<i>skaļš</i>	loud
<i>nodarbināts</i>	busy, occupied; employed
<i>gals</i>	end
<i>ielet (ieņju, iegāju)</i>	to go in, enter
<i>aplet (apeju, apgāju)</i>	to go around, avoid
<i>izlet (izeju, izgāju)</i>	to go out
<i>malka</i>	fire-wood

<i>karalis</i>	king
<i>karaliene</i>	queen
<i>karalisks</i>	royal
<i>tuksnešis</i>	desert
<i>oaze</i>	oasis
<i>avots</i>	spring; source
<i>barība</i>	fodder, food (generally for animals)
<i>pilēt (-, -ēja)</i>	to trickle, drip

NOTES: *Apiet* meaning 'to go around' is construed with *ap* or *apkārt*, while in the meaning 'to avoid' it takes a direct accusative. The accusative is also found with the first meaning.

Oaze has foreign monophthongal *o*, and is also found with the spelling *oāze*.

Exercise 115a

Translate into Latvian:

1. Your shoes must be clean.
2. Why must I be hard-working?
3. We had to be ready.
4. The saw will have to be sharper.
5. The second verse ought to be longer.
6. The walls must be white.
7. The answer did not have to be so long.
8. The bridges ought to have been wider.
9. Teachers must be well-educated.
10. Do film-stars have to be beautiful?

Exercise 115b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *uzlēkt; pārnākt; aizliegt; saukt; iziet*.

Exercise 115c

Give the four forms of the past participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 115b.

Exercise 115d

Translate into English:

1. Vai mēs varam iet pa šīm durvīm?
2. Vecais vīrs bija nodarbināts tikai pēcpusdienās.
3. Karaļa tuvumā neviens nedrīkstēja runāt skaļā balsī.
4. Atkal kāds muļķis sludina pasaules galu.
5. Tik svarīgu jautājumu nevar apiet.
6. Tūkstoš deviņsimt piecdesmit ceturtajā gadā karaliene Elizabete pirmo reizi apciemoja Austrāliju.
7. Cik malkas tu sazāģēji?
8. Ziemeļāfrikas tuksnešos ir daudz auglīgu oāžu ar avotiem.
9. Pirms saules lēkta mēs bijām apgājuši ienaidniekam apkārt.
10. Es esmu karalisks ierēdnis.
11. Ak, ūdens pil no griestiem!
12. Cik ilgi tu izturēsi (here = *to hold out, survive*) tuksnesī bez ūdens?
13. Ko tā sliņķe ir darījusi visu pēcpusdienu?
14. Karalis ar karalieni tagad ieiet baznīcā.
15. Mans vīrs nesen izgāja no mājas ar visiem saviem darba rīkiem, tad jau viņš būs nodarbināts visu pēcpusdienu.
16. Es nevaru iekurināt krāsni ar tik slapju malku.
17. Karalim bija plāni mati, bet bieza melna bārda.
18. No manas pildspalvas atkal pil tinte.
19. No oazes dzirdēja skaļus kļiedzienus.
20. Šai galā ezeram nevar apiet apkārt, jo krasts ir dubļains.
21. Pašlaik karavīri tīra savus ieročus, un viņi būs nodarbināti līdz vakaripāam.
22. Oazē mums sniegs palīdzību.
23. Ja no avotiem tecētu alus un vīns, tad dzērājiem gan būtu laba dzīve.
24. Tuksnesī ūdens ir svarīgāks nekā nauda.
25. Mazā muļķīte bija uzlēkusi uz galda, bet viņai bija bailes nolēkt.
26. Mežoņu ciltis domā, ka visi avoti ir viņu īpašums.
27. Vakar mēs bijām iegājušas karaliskajā mākslas galerijā.
28. Es izgāju laukā no zāles, jo mūzika bija ļoti skaļa.
29. Pēc vecā karaļa nāves jaunā karaliene aiztrieca visus sliņķus un neliešus.
30. Tā bija karaliska maltīte.
31. Vasarā ūdens no strūklakas vairs nešļāc, tikai pil.
32. Rudenī vāverēm jāmeklē barība ziemai.
33. Malka ir ļoti cieta. Vai te nav kāds asāks zāģis?
34. Zivīm ir diezgan barības jūras dziļumos.
35. Kāpēc jūs neiegājāt iekšā?
36. Malkai jābūt sausai.
37. Karalim nav jābūt gudram.

38. Tuksnesī laikam gan ir briesmīgi karsts, vai ne?
39. Amatnieki zāgēs, ēvelēs un naglos līdz septiņiem.
40. Bez pases jūs nedabūsit pajumti šīnī viesnīcā.
41. Katrai tautai ir savas tautas dejas.

Exercise 115e

Translate into Latvian:

1. How many people are employed in the royal castle?
2. The king contrived (*panākt*) that all his adversaries were destroyed.
3. The police caught up with them at the first oasis in the desert.
4. The queen is coming.
5. Today we are celebrating the king's birthday.
6. He will come home in the afternoon.
7. I have not the slightest idea what food parrots require.
8. Honey is trickling out of the keg.
9. Can you tell me whether that is a hot spring?
10. The royal fleet had defeated the enemy.
11. I do not understand how that can be.
12. We shall arrive at the oasis in the afternoon.
13. It would be a great achievement to grow grapes in the desert.
14. The queen has many duties.
15. There is no more fire-wood in the kitchen.
16. Our aim is to avoid those questions.
17. We must hold the net at both ends.
18. The doctor will be busy all afternoon.
19. At what time did you finish sawing the fire-wood?
20. Go outside and pick a few apples from the first apple-tree on the left-hand side.
21. The wagtail was sitting on the very end of the branch.
22. The water in this spring is as cold as ice.
23. When he arrived he went into the hotel at once.
24. At what time did you leave (*iziet*) your flat on Wednesday evening?
25. The old blabber-mouth has finally left! – Yes, I too am happy that I do not have to hear her loud voice any longer!
26. My chickens are still small.
27. With this special fodder you will have magnificent results.
28. The wine was trickling on to the floor.
29. A doctor's hands must be clean.
30. You must be well-behaved.
31. He must be strong.

32. They (f.) must be diligent.
33. They (m.) must be diligent.
34. Jack often had to tend animals on the fallow-ground beyond the birch grove.
35. With what can the beauty of the berry-alder be compared?
36. Does the bus always stop at this stop?
37. Which is the lightest gas?
38. Is that a short story or a novel you are reading?
39. Man has two ears but only one mouth, that he may hear more and speak less.
40. In this newspaper I read how to bring up children.
41. He is not educated, and therefore cannot obtain a good job.
42. How can one describe the stillness of the desert?
43. What broad shoulders you have!
44. The waves are lapping the sand on the sea-shore.
45. You must rinse the dishes before you use them again.

LESSON 116

MORE ADVERBS OF TIME

In this lesson we introduce a number of new adverbs of time, many of which will be seen to be formed with the prefix *šo-*.

Vocabulary

<i>šogad</i>	this year
<i>šais (šīnīs, šajos) laikos</i>	nowadays
<i>šonedēļ</i>	this week
<i>šopavasār</i>	this spring
<i>šoruden</i>	this autumn
<i>šovasar</i>	this summer
<i>šoziem</i>	this winter
<i>tais (tanīs, tajos) laikos</i>	in those days
<i>pērn</i>	last year
<i>parīt</i>	the day after tomorrow
<i>turpmāk</i>	henceforth, from now on
<i>līdz šim</i>	hitherto, up until now

Exercise 116a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *uzlēkt; atbraukt; sasniegt; pārnākt; krākt; iejūgt; slaucīt; slaukt.*

Exercise 116b

Give the four forms of the past participle active of: *saukt; kliegt; aplenkt; panākt; nolēkt; brēkt; iemērkst; sajēgt; nomaukt; aiztrenkt.*

Exercise 116c

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 116a.

Exercise 116d

Give the first person plural debitive present and debitive future of the verbs listed in Ex. 116b.

Exercise 116e

Translate into English:

1. Turpmāk mēs pēcpusdienās būsim nodarbināti ilgākas stundas nekā līdz šim, jo mums tagad ir vairāk govju ko slaukt.
2. "Tagad karalis laikam iziet pa pils vārtiem," teica vecais ierēdnis.
3. Vai mums šoziem būs malkas diezgan? – Man nav ne mazākās jēgas!
4. Parīt es noskaidrošu, vai viņš šogad ir apdrošinājis savas mēbeles.
5. Ja mēs toreiz būtu zinājuši, ka zeme ir tik akmeņaina, mēs nebūtu samaksājuši tik augstu cenu.
6. Tanī vakarā viņš steigšus bija iegājis krogū.
7. Šoziem karaliene pavadīs Ziemsvētkus cītur nekā pērn.
8. Tanīs laikos karaliskie ierēdņi bija lieli vīri.
9. Šopavasār ievas zied agrāk nekā pērn.
10. Pērn mums bija vairāk kartupeļu nekā šoruden.
11. Pašlaik vilciens šinī galā vēl ir tukšs.
12. Šonedēļ mēs brauksim uz tirgu.
13. Ja Aivars toreiz būtu mani bildinājis, es viņu nebūtu atraidījusi.
14. Cerēsim, ka turpmāk televīzijas aparāta skaņa būs labāka nekā līdz šim!
15. Tanī vakarā lieltirgotājs mēģināja apiet šo jautājumu.
16. Šoruden būs vairāk ābolu nekā pērn.
17. Cerēsim, ka turpmāk Jurītis nebūs tik nerātns kā šodien!
18. Šovasar mums jābūt čakliem.

19. Parīt tev jābūt pavisam rātnam, Miķelīt!
20. Šoziem sals nav tik stiprs kā pērn.
21. Līdz šim šopavasār ir bijis jau ļoti silts, un šovasar var sagaidīt briesmīgi karstu laiku.
22. Šogad mēs varēsim pārdot savus dārzājus par augstāku cenu.
23. Šoruden Pāvilam būs viens pārbaudījums, un šoziem vēl divi.
24. Ja šopavasār ābeles koši ziedēs, mums šogad būs daudz ābolu.
25. Šais laikos vairs nevalkā vestes.
26. Šonedēļ korim būs trīs mēģinājumi.
27. Mēs mēģinājam aplenkt ienaidnieku, bet bez panākumiem.
28. Kā tu tā vari krākt! Pirms kāzām tu tā nekrāci!
29. Man jāaizbrauc, jo jāveic steidzami pienākumi.
30. Cilvēkiem, par kuriem es šai teikā lasīju, bija bail no pērkona rūciena.
31. Tu nekā nepadāsi, bērniņ, ja tu turpināsi tā brēkt!
32. Pērkons ruc: iejūdz zirgus, brauksim ātri mājās!
33. Kas tur kliez? – Tas ir tavs pretinieks.
34. Es tev aizliedzu atbildēt viņas lūgumam.
35. Kāpēc cūkas tik skaļi kvieč?
36. Rozes nevar plūkt bez cimdziem.
37. Kāpēc jūs tik ātri pārnācāt mājās?
38. Ja mācītājs tagad nāktu, ko mēs viņam teiktu?
39. Zirgs zviedza visu brauciena laiku.
40. Mēs gandrīz nokavējām vilcienu.
41. Būtu liels sasniegums, ja varētu pieveikt visus pretiniekus.

Exercise 116f

Translate into Latvian:

1. In those days all tools and weapons were of stone.
2. In future that lazy woman will have to work a little more than hitherto.
3. At that time she should have sent that fool to the devil.
4. At present I am richer than at that time.
5. Last year the weather was better than this summer.
6. The ice on the lake is thicker this winter.
7. This autumn my hair is thinner than this spring.
8. The day after tomorrow we shall go fishing before sunrise.
9. That day Aivars jumped higher than Arthur.
10. The sun is rising a few minutes earlier this week.
11. That evening he had jumped off the fence and had injured his leg.
12. At present the dancer wouldn't be able to jump on to the table, for she is wearing a very tight skirt.

13. Nowadays even (*arī*) lazy fellows earn good money.
14. This year she must be more diligent.
15. In those days people had to build their houses without the assistance of banks.
16. Henceforth public servants will be working shorter hours than hitherto.
17. This lazy woman had not soaked the sheets and aprons.
18. This year there will be more grapes than last year.
19. Nowadays all Primary school pupils can multiply.
20. Father will be arriving this week.
21. We shall have to leave the day after tomorrow.
22. We can expect great frost this winter.
23. The pastor had married them only this spring.
24. Don't pick that rose!
25. The bees were buzzing about the flowers all day.
26. Little Jack still sucks his finger.
27. If the snake had not hissed, we probably would not have seen it.
28. There is not enough pepper in this sauce.
29. Cover your feet with a warm blanket.
30. Can you help me translate this long sentence?

LESSON 117

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SEMIPALATALIZED TYPE

Another important group of verbs in the Short Conjugation is the semipalatalized group. Verbs of this type have an additional *-j-* after the final stem consonant in the present tense only, except in the second person singular, where the *-j-* is lacking. It is also lacking in the second person singular and second person plural imperatives, as will be seen from the following paradigm:

glābt 'to save'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es glāb-j-u</i>	<i>es glāb-u</i>	—
<i>tu glāb</i>	<i>tu glāb-i</i>	<i>glāb!</i>
<i>viņš glāb-j</i>	<i>viņš glāb-a</i>	<i>lai glābj!</i>
<i>mēs glāb-j-am</i>	<i>mēs glāb-ām</i>	<i>glābsim!</i>
<i>jūs glāb-j-at</i>	<i>jūs glāb-āt</i>	<i>glābīet!</i>
<i>viņi glāb-j</i>	<i>viņi glāb-a</i>	<i>lai glābj!</i>

Future: *es glābšu, tu glābsi, viņš glābs*, etc.
 Conditional: *es glābtu, tu glābtu, viņš glābtu*, etc.
 Debitives: *man jāglābj, man bija jāglābj*, etc.
 Past Participle Active: *glābis, glābuši; glābusi, glābušas*.

Note that the *-i* of the second person singular present and imperative is lacking. This is so for all verbs of the semipalatalized type.

For verbs ending in *-lt* the palatalization takes the form *-ļ*, and not the form **-lj*: cf. *malt*: *es maļu, tu mal, viņš maļ*.

The verbs in the following vocabulary are all of the semipalatalized type.

Vocabulary

<i>glābt</i> (- <i>bju</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to save, rescue
<i>kopt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to cultivate, till; to tend
<i>apkopt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to nurse, tend; to tidy
<i>kāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to climb
<i>izkāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to alight, disembark
<i>uzkāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to climb on, embark
<i>nokāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to climb down, alight
<i>iekāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to climb in, board
<i>krāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to deceive, cheat
<i>piekrāpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to deceive, cheat
<i>grābt</i> (- <i>bju</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to grasp, snatch, grab
<i>sagrābt</i> (- <i>bju</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to grasp, snatch, grab
<i>iekniebt</i> (- <i>bju</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to pinch
<i>nokniebt</i> (- <i>bju</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to pinch off, to pluck off
<i>svilpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to whistle, to give a whistle
<i>stiept</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to pull, drag, stretch
<i>malt</i> (<i>maļu</i> , <i>malu</i>)	to grind
<i>kalt</i> (<i>kaļu</i> , <i>kalu</i>)	to hammer, forge

NOTES: *Iekniebt* usually has a dative of the person, and a locative to denote the place, cf.

Viņa man ieknieba. She pinched me.
Viņa man ieknieba rokā. She pinched my arm.
 or: She pinched me in the arm.

kāpt zirgā 'to mount a horse'
kāpt no zirga 'to dismount from a horse'

Krāpt and *piekrāpt*, *grābt* and *sagrābt* are corresponding imperfectives and perfectives.

Exercise 117a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *glābt; malt; kopt; piekrāpt; kalt; lēkt; sagrābt; panākt; kliegt; sajēgt.*

Exercise 117b

Give the past participle active forms of: *iekniebt; izkāpt; apkopt; stiept; svilpt; uzlēkt; iekāpt; pārnākt; saukt; krākt.*

Exercise 117c

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 117a.

Exercise 117d

Give the second person singular conditional perfect debitive of the verbs listed in Ex. 117b.

Exercise 117e

Translate into English:

1. Es zinu, ka šis tirgotājs krāpj, bet mani viņš nepiekrāps.
2. Kurp jūs stiepjat tos smagos maisus?
3. Parīt mēs nokāpsim no kuģa.
4. Pērn saimnieks šo zemes gabalu nekopa, bet šovasar viņš to kops.
5. Tālrunis zvanīja, un viņai bija jāizkāpj no vannas.
6. Pašlaik laukos vēl nemaļ rudzus.
7. Kāpēc tu kal aukstu dzelzi?
8. Vai tu šodien nokniebi rozēm vecos ziedus? – Nē, dārznieks jau bija tos nokniebis.
9. Viņa izkāpa no mašīnas un iekāpa laivā.
10. Jurītis bija uzkāpis kokā un nevarēja pats nokāpt.
11. Papagailis ieknieba man pirkstā.
12. Bērni bija nokniebuši puķēm skaistos ziedus.
13. Kas apkopj veco vīru? – Neviens, viņš pats sevi apkopj.
14. Parīt mēs malsim rudzus.
15. Ja tu vēl kāpsi kalnos, neviens tevi turpmāk vairs neglābs.

16. Tagad vairs nemaļ tā kā vecos laikos.
17. Tanī vakarā es redzēju viņu stiepjam garu dēli pa pagalmu.
18. Ja viņš līdz šim nebūs krāpis, tad laikam arī turpmāk nevienu nekrāps.
19. Kāpēc tas putns tik skaļi svilpj? – Tas nekad nav svilpis klusāk.
20. Iedod velnam pirkstu, un viņš sagrābs visu roku.
21. Šovasar mēs vairs nekopsim svešus (i.e., *belonging to others*) laukus.
22. Kā šī pļāpa zina, ka mežsargs krāpj valdību? Viņa to nebūs grābusi no gaisa! (= *out of thin air, out of the blue*)
23. Zagļi ātri sagrāba no skatloga dārgos kažokus.
24. Tur kāds kāpj pa logu iekšā.
25. Mēs kaļam akmeņus, bet viņi kaļ tēraudu.
26. Ātri, grābiet tīklu un stiepiet to laivā!
27. Kur šis nelietis jums ieknieba, jaunkundz? – Man ir kauns to teikt, kārtībniek!
28. Tur nedrīkst kāpt.
29. Kurā stacijā jūs izkāpāt no vilciena?
30. Jūs mūs krāpjat.
31. Konduktors jau svilpj, mums jāiekāpj!
32. Šonedēļ Annai jāapkopj slimais kaimiņš.
33. Briesmās katram jāglābj sava āda.
34. Viņš man ieknieba rokā.
35. Kad viņa izkāpa no vagona, kāds sagrāba viņas rokas somiņu.
36. Viņš laikam būs mūs piekrāpis.
37. Šoruden jūs vairs neuzkāpsit augstajā kalnā, jums jāgaida līdz pavasarim.
38. Šoziem mums būs daudz malkas.
39. Kalnā uzkāpa divi vīri, bet es redzu tikai vienu nokāpjam! – Varbūt otrs ir nokāpis jau agrāk.
40. Kas gan toreiz būtu domājis glābt mēbeles?
41. Tev jāiekāpj, vilciens jau atiet! – Labāk nekāp: tev draud briesmas!

Exercise 117f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Must this piece of iron be hammered at both ends?
2. If we grind two tons of barley, we shall be busy all afternoon.
3. When the queen alighted from the car, the people shouted and whistled.
4. Snip (*nokniebt*) the head off that nail.
5. Arthur grabbed Biruta by (*aiz*) the hand.
6. In the desert the ground can not be tilled.
7. Who cultivates the royal gardens?
8. The tradesmen climbed down into the cellar.

9. Quickly, climb up on to the roof. – I am already climbing.
10. The king disembarked from the ship and climbed into the car.
11. When I pinched myself in the arm, I knew I was not dreaming.
12. My husband is deceiving me.
13. Are you nursing the old lady?
14. The big snake seized the rat.
15. You have saved us from danger.
16. He has deceived us.
17. We shall not be embarking at a quarter to seven, but at a quarter past seven.
18. Do not walk on the grass.
19. You are treading on (*kāpt*) my feet again; you are a very bad dancer.
20. The thief entered the shop and snatched several wrist-watches.
21. I am grinding coffee.
22. We are hammering steel.
23. Who is whistling here?
24. Why did you snip those tiny leaves off the branches?
25. An American war-ship had rescued the German fisherman in the North Sea (*Ziemeļu jūra*).
26. She had always deceived people and told lies.
27. We grabbed what we could.
28. Who is getting off the train there?
29. There are bees in that tree.
30. Why have you cheated the young lady who nursed you when you were sick?
31. The squirrels' nest is full of food.
32. Let's go mountain climbing.
33. How many times did the teacher have to save that foolish school-boy who couldn't swim?
34. In places the snow is still deep.
35. Did you offer her that uncomfortable chair on purpose?
36. My late uncle was eternally talking about the handkerchiefs and aprons which he used to sell.
37. Your son-in-law may be an honourable man, but he is not very hospitable.
38. My foot is itching horribly.
39. Time flies by so quickly!
40. He expressed his gratitude for our hospitality.
41. We do not support the parish (*draudze*) school.
42. Her knees are not beautiful: she should not shorten her skirts.
43. He has been raising chickens for fifty years.
44. A new theatre will soon be founded in our city.
45. A large dog guards the house, but he never notices anything.

LESSON 118

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SEMIPALATALIZED TYPE:
STEMS IN *-st*, *-zt*; ALTERNATION OF *E*

Verbs of the semipalatalized type with stems in *-st* and *-zt* will have *-š-* and *-ž-* respectively in those present tense forms that have palatalization. Cf. the *-j-* of *malt*, *kalt*.

griezt 'to turn'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es griežu</i>	<i>es griezu</i>	–
<i>tu griez</i>	<i>tu griezi</i>	<i>griez!</i>
<i>viņš griež</i>	<i>viņš grieza</i>	<i>lai griež!</i>
<i>mēs griežam</i>	<i>mēs griežām</i>	(see below)
<i>jūs griežat</i>	<i>jūs griežāt</i>	<i>grieziet!</i>
<i>viņi griež</i>	<i>viņi grieza</i>	<i>lai griež</i>

Future: see below.

Conditional: *es grieztu*, *tu grieztu*, *viņš grieztu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāgriež*, *man bija jāgriež*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *griezis*, *griezuši*; *griezusi*, *griezušas*.

Note the lack of palatalization in the second person singular present and imperative and in the second person plural imperative. Note too the absence of *-i-* in the second person singular present and imperative.

The future tense of verbs with infinitives in *-st* and *-zt* is not formed in the usual way, and hence the first person plural imperative will also be irregularly formed. These forms will be studied in the next lesson.

All verbs of the semipalatalized type with an *e* in the stem follow the alternation pattern given below. The presence of the palatalized consonant closes the *e*, and the pattern differs from that given for *redzēt* and *brēkt* in this respect only.

plēst 'to tear'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es plēšu</i>	<i>es plēsu</i>	–
<i>tu plēš</i>	<i>tu plēsi</i>	<i>plēš!</i>
<i>viņš plēš</i>	<i>viņš plēsa</i>	<i>lai plēš!</i>
<i>mēs plēšam</i>	<i>mēs plēšām</i>	(see above)
<i>vūs plēšat</i>	<i>jūs plēšāt</i>	<i>plēšiet!</i>
<i>jiņi plēš</i>	<i>viņi plēsa</i>	<i>lai plēš!</i>

Future: see above

Conditional: *es plēstu, tu plēstu, viņš plēstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāplēš, man bija jāplēš, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *plēsis, plēsuši; plēsusi, plēsušas.*

slēpt 'to conceal'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es slēpj</i>	<i>es slēpu</i>	—
<i>tu slēp</i>	<i>tu slēpi</i>	<i>slēp!</i>
<i>viņš slēpj</i>	<i>viņš slēpa</i>	<i>lai slēpj!</i>
<i>mēs slēpjam</i>	<i>mēs slēpām</i>	<i>slēpsim!</i>
<i>jūs slēpjat</i>	<i>jūs slēpāt</i>	<i>slēpiet!</i>
<i>viņi slēpj</i>	<i>viņi slēpa</i>	<i>lai slēpj!</i>

Future: *es slēpšu, tu slēpsi, viņš slēps, etc.*

Conditional: *es slēptu, tu slēptu, viņš slēptu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāslēpj, man bija jāslēpj, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *slēpis, slēpuši; slēpusi, slēpušas.*

Vocabulary

<i>slēpt (slēpju, slēpu)</i>	to conceal, to hide (trans.)
<i>grēbt (grēbju, grēbu)</i>	to scrape; to carve (wood, etc.)
<i>vērt (vērpju, vērpu)</i>	to spin (thread, etc.)
<i>ģērbt (ģērbju, ģērbu)</i>	to clothe (trans.)
<i>uzģērbt (-ģērbju, -ģērbu)</i>	to put on (clothes)
<i>noģērbt (-ģērbju, -ģērbu)</i>	to take off (clothes)
<i>plēst (plēšu, plēsu)</i>	to tear, to break (trans.)
<i>saplēst (-plēšu, -plēsu)</i>	to tear apart, smash up
<i>lauzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to break (trans.)
<i>salauzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to break (trans.)
<i>griezt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to turn, twist (trans.)
<i>dzēst (dzēšu, dzēsu)</i>	to extinguish; to pay off (a debt)
<i>grauzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to gnaw, nibble
<i>gāzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to overturn (tr.); to pour (of rain)
<i>apgāzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to overturn (tr.)
<i>bāzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to shove, thrust
<i>uzpost (-šu, -su)</i>	to tidy
<i>parāds</i>	debt

NOTES: The present tense of *dzēst*, normally *dzēšu*, is sometimes found short: *dzešu*.

Plēst and *saplēst*, *lauzt* and *salauzt*, *gāzt* and *apgāzt* are corresponding imperfectives and perfectives.

ģērbt mugurā

'to put on'

ģērbt nost

'to take off'

Exercise 118a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *slēpt; griezt; dzēst; uzpost; lauzt; stiept; nākt; svilpt; kliegt; malt; nolēkt; aiztriekt; *mēgt; brēkt; slaukt.*

Exercise 118b

Give the past participle active forms of: *grauzt; saplēst; ģērbt; grebt; bāzt; saukt; gāzt; panākt; vērt; lēkt.*

Exercise 118c

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 118a, omitting the first person plural form of verbs in *-st* and *-zt*.

Exercise 118d

Give the third person plural masculine of the present perfect debitive of the verbs listed in Ex. 118b.

Exercise 118e

Translate into English:

1. Ja tu būtu nolēcis no tās klints, tu būtu lauzis kaklu.
2. Mākslinieks slēpj fotogrāfijām savu seju.
3. Tā ir beidzamā reize, ka es maksāju tavus parādus, turpmāk es tevi vairs neglābšu.

4. Viņš lauž sirdis visām meitenēm, bet viņš viņas nekrāpj.
5. Tas pagāna kucēns saplēsa segu un apgāza grāmatu plauktu.
6. Saimniece noģērba mēteļi, uzģērba darba drēbes un tad uzposa dzīvokli.
7. Mēs tagad šinī fabrikā vērpjam tikai vilnu, bet agrāk mēs vērpām arī kokvilnu.
8. Mēs vienmēr uzpošam savu dzīvokli!
9. Kad mēs nokāpām no kuģa un iekāpām vilcienā, lietus gāza kā ar spaiņiem.
10. Lejā Aija bija noģērbusi mēteļi, bet kad mēs bijām uzkāpuši kalnā, viņa to atkal uzģērba.
11. Tagad viņš plēš matus, tāpēc ka viņam jādzēš vecs parāds.
12. Rati, ko zirgs bija apgāzis, viņiem bija jāstiepj līdz ceļmalai.
13. Žurkas grauž grīdas dēļus.
14. Vecā valdība bija laba, bet to tomēr gāza.
15. Ziemā nevar ģērbt mugurā tās pašas drēbes, ko ģērbj rudenī.
16. Skolnieks bāza rokas kabatā un svilpa, kad skolotājs ar viņu runāja.
17. Kas grauž tavu sirdi, vīriņ?
18. Zaglis ātri sagrāba pulksteņus, saktas un gredzenus, uzģērba labu kažoku un izkāpa pa veikala logu.
19. Ko tu greb? – Es grebju koka karoti.
20. Bērns atkal bāž pirkstus mutē.
21. Vai jūs visu dienu lauzāt un kalāt akmeņus?
22. Senos laikos meitenes sēdēja mājās, vērpa un gaidīja preciniekus.
23. Kāpēc tu no manis slēp, ka tev vēl jādzēš parādi?
24. Ko viņš tur bāž kabatā?
25. Mēs graužām sausu maizi.
26. Velns, kā lietus gāž!
27. Māte katru rītu apkopj un uzpoš māju.
28. Katru uguni nevar dzēst ar ūdeni.
29. Ūdens griež lielos akmeņus, kas maļ rudzus.
30. Kāpēc jūs šo skaisto meiteni no mums slēpāt?
31. Pūlis apgāza mašīnas un salauza žogus.
32. Krusttēvs Miķelis grebj skaistu koka šķīvi.
33. Ko ģērbsim mugurā tik karstā laikā?
34. Viņas būs mūs piekrāpušas!
35. Kaķis piesardzīgi apskatīja zirnekli.
36. Šī mašīna (= *machine*) veido tērauda kastes.
37. Automašīnas īpašniekam nebija sīknaudas kabatā.
38. Katram gadu simtenim ir savas īpašas problēmas.
39. Patmīlīgs cilvēks meklē tikai savu paša laimi.
40. Kas par īpatnu vecu namu!
41. Jūlijs, augusts, septembris, oktobris, novembris un decembris ir gada otrajā pusē.

Exercise 118f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The mob is tearing and breaking everything.
2. He was standing in front of the king, and turning his cap in his hands.
3. In those days women used to spin.
4. Where does he hide his gold?
5. What is she shoving into her hand-bag?
6. Henceforth I shall not put on that old coat!
7. Look how she clothes her children!
8. Hitherto he has paid his debts, but this time it will be difficult for him.
9. This autumn the rain is not pouring as (it did) last year.
10. What are the squirrels nibbling?
11. This week she must tidy her flat.
12. How did you overturn the car?
13. She had not taken off her fur coat.
14. One can see that a great artist has carved this silver plate.
15. Who broke this record?
16. She had broken a chair and torn the newspaper apart.
17. How shall we clothe the children this winter?
18. They are concealing something from us.
19. Don't break your neck!
20. Why do you naughty children tear and break everything?
21. What are you hiding?
22. Why aren't you putting on your new coat? – I shall wear it the day after tomorrow.
23. The rats have probably been gnawing the box.
24. Before St. John's Day we must tidy up the house.
25. The drunkards have upset the beer keg.
26. I would have paid the debt this year.
27. This summer the shepherd has had to carve many wooden spoons and plates.
28. They have spun a lot of wool this winter.
29. He took off his shirt.
30. Why do you thrust your hands into your pockets? Is it really that cold?
31. He would have overthrown the government.
32. These days it is easy to send a telegram.
33. It is difficult to order a meal in this restaurant, because there are not enough waiters.
34. The children were running hither and thither about the small island.

35. I shall be in Germany from the 10th of February until the 13th of May, and my brother will be in France from the 9th of March until the 21st of June.
36. There were once fewer than a million people in England.
37. I know his surname, but I do not know his address.
38. The four provinces of Latvia are Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Latgale and Zemgale.
39. In our street there are still no foot-paths and gutters.
40. In the Middle Ages the inhabitants of the cities had to fill their buckets at the city well.
41. It is hard for fat men to walk uphill.
42. I finished High school at the same time as my cousin (f.).

LESSON 119

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: FUTURE TENSE OF VERBS
IN *-ST* AND *-ZT*

Any verb whose infinitive stem ends in *-s* or *-z* will clearly have some difficulty in forming a future in the normal way, i.e., the suffixation of *-šu*, *-si*, *-s*, etc. to the stem.

All verbs in *-st* and *-zt* have recourse to a different future formation, although the endings remain identical with those of other verbs.

The basis of this irregular future is the imperfect: to the stem of the imperfect, we add the long vowel *-ī-* and then the endings as we know them: *-šu*, *-si*, *-s*, etc. How this works can be seen from the examples:

Infinitive	Imperfect	Future
<i>griezt</i>	<i>griez-u</i>	<i>griez-ī-šu</i> , etc.
<i>lauzt</i>	<i>lauz-u</i>	<i>lauz-ī-šu</i> , etc.
<i>plēst</i>	<i>plēs-u</i>	<i>plēs-ī-šu</i> , etc.

Thus the first person plural imperative will also be of this irregular form:

<i>griezīsim!</i>	let us turn
<i>lauzīsim!</i>	let us break
<i>plēsīsim!</i>	let us tear

The only verbs we have as yet met in *-st* and *-zt* are of the semipalatalized type, but the remarks above will apply to *-st* and *-zt* verbs of any type.

Vocabulary

<i>griezt</i> (<i>-žu</i> , <i>-zu</i>)	to cut
<i>nogriezt</i> (<i>-žu</i> , <i>-zu</i>)	to cut off
<i>berzt</i> (<i>beržu</i> , <i>berzu</i>)	to rub, rub clean, scour
<i>vērst</i> (<i>vēršu</i> , <i>vērsu</i>)	to direct, to turn (trans.)
<i>pievērst</i> (<i>-vēršu</i> , <i>-vērsu</i>)	to direct, to turn (trans.)
<i>novērst</i> (<i>-vēršu</i> , <i>-vērsu</i>)	to divert, avert, turn away
<i>meļst</i> (<i>meļšu</i> , <i>meļsu</i>)	to gossip, talk nonsense
<i>sērst</i> (<i>sēršu</i> , <i>sērsu</i>)	to be on a visit, to stay (with, at)
<i>iebāzt</i> (<i>-žu</i> , <i>-zu</i>)	to shove in, thrust in
<i>apgriezt</i> (<i>-žu</i> , <i>-zu</i>)	to turn around (trans.)
<i>izdzēst</i> (<i>-dzēšu</i> , <i>-dzēsu</i>)	to extinguish; to erase; to switch off (light, electricity, etc.)
<i>ugunsdzēsējs</i>	fireman; (pl.) fire-brigade
<i>uzmanība</i>	attention
<i>kamēr</i>	while; until (conj.)
<i>dūre</i>	fist

NOTES: There are two distinct verbs *griezt*, one meaning 'to turn', the other meaning 'to cut'. They are identical in conjugation, both being regularly inflected in the semipalatalized type. However, there is a significant difference in pronunciation. *Griezt* 'to cut' is pronounced with broken tone, whereas *griezt* 'to turn' is not. (Cf. Phonetics)

vērst uzmanību uz (+ acc.) 'to pay attention, turn one's attention (to)'
pievērst uzmanību (+ dat.) 'to pay attention, turn one's attention (to)'
griezt zobus 'to gnash one's teeth'

Exercise 119a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *vērst*; *izdzēst*; *sērst*; *meļst*; *uzpost*; *lauzt*; *griezt* ('cut'); *malt*; *kopt*; *stiept*; *uzlēkt*; *atbraukt*; *nākt*; *brēkt*.

Exercise 119b

Conjugate in the future and conditional the verbs listed in Ex. 119a.

Exercise 119c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 119a.

Exercise 119d

Give the imperative parts of: *nogriezt; iebāzt; berzt; saplēst; rūkt; sūkt; sikt; lēkt; kalt; iekniebt.*

Exercise 119e

Translate into English:

1. Jānis nevienu minūti nebija novērsis acis no skaistās meitenes.
2. Kamēr mēs visi pievērsām savu uzmanību ugunsdzēsējiem, Miķelis bija apgriezis mašīnu un aizbraucis.
3. Viņš man draudēja ar dūri.
4. Ugunsdzēsēji mēģināja dzēst uguni, bet viņi to tomēr neizdzēsa.
5. Mēs nogriezīsim zivīm galvas un astes.
6. Ko viņš melš!
7. Pie mums maizi negriež, to lauž.
8. Lopi berž ādu pret kokiem, ja tā niez.
9. Viņi pie mums sērsīs trīs dienas.
10. Bērns berza acis ar abām dūrītēm.
11. Uzmanību, uzmanību! Vilciens uz Melburnu tūlī aties.
12. Bērni bija mājā visu salauzuši, saplēsuši un apgāzuši arī mēbeles.
13. Kabatas zaļji parasti novērš uzmanību no sevis, un tad viņi ātri iebāz roku citu kabatās.
14. Kamēr jūs vērsit, es grebšu karoti.
15. Vai jums sāp, ja jūs griežat galvu uz labo pusi?
16. Viņa apgrieza kažoku uz otru pusi.
17. Sargs vērsa ieroci pret mums.
18. Vai tu gērbsi mugurā silto kažoku? – Es nezinu, vai gērbt vai negērbt.
19. Rīt frizieris man nogriezīs matus.
20. Viņš aiz dusmām griež zobus.
21. Mēs tūlī izdzēsīsim elektrību.
22. Cik ilgi viņš te jau sērš?
23. Viņš atkal melsīs par saviem parādiem!
24. Berzīsim katlus ar smiltīm!
25. Kamēr tu uzposīsi dzīvokli, es nogriezišu krūmiem garos zarus.
26. Viņa bija iebāzusi cimdus rokas somiņā.
27. Kāpēc tu neizdzēsi elektrību vannas istabā?
28. Tas mani grauž (= *it annoys me*), ka dēls man vienmēr kaut ko slēpj.
29. Kā mēs varēsim novērst šīs briesmas?
30. Neviens nepievērsīs uzmanību tik parastai sejai.
31. Man nav bail no tavām dūrēm.

32. Manas jaunās kurpes berž kājas.
33. Viņas grieza sīpolus.
34. Pūlis apgāza ugunsdzēsēju mašīnu.
35. Lietus laikam gāzīs visu dienu.
36. Nebāz savu degunu, kur nevajaga!
37. Bez avotiem tuksnešos nebūtu oāžu.
38. Šogad mēs laikam eksportā nesasnēsim savu mērķi.
39. Tu vairs nevarēsi panākt savu pretinieku.
40. Lopiem nebija diezgan barības.
41. Viņš bija iegājis krogū pulksten divos un izgājis no krogus tikai desmitos.
42. Es domāju, ka mēs nevarēsim apiet ienaidnieku.
43. Šis nazis ir ļoti plāns un ļoti ass.
44. Šovasar mēs ejam darbā katru rītu, kad saule lec.
45. Bez darba nav ne panākumu, ne sasniegumu.
46. Mēs esam pieveikuši ienaidnieku.
47. Bērni aiz prieka lēks līdz pašiem griestiem, kad viņi dzirdēs, ka šopavasār mēs pavadīsim brīvlaiku jūrmaļā.
48. Pēc lietus ūdens pil no jumta un koku zariem.
49. Ko tu biji darījusi, ka skolotājs tevi sodīja?

Exercise 119f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The fire-brigade could not save the house.
2. These leaves need not be cut off, they can be snipped off.
3. Turn the fish over on to the other side.
4. He grabbed the ring and shoved it in his pocket.
5. Let her not talk nonsense: I did not pinch her!
6. While her husband was away, the wife was deceiving him.
7. The driver must not take (*novērst*) his eyes off the road.
8. Attention: the conductor is already whistling. Let's climb into the carriage.
9. I shall take care of our parents while you are away.
10. The rain will extinguish the fire.
11. Pay attention to the teacher!
12. How long will you stay?
13. We have to drag the piano to the first floor.
14. Hairdressers cut hair.
15. This danger can be averted.
16. The shoemaker hopes that these shoes will not rub your feet.
17. One fireman had climbed on to the roof.

18. With which knife will you cut the leather?
19. They are in London on a visit to some friends.
20. I shall climb out while you are turning the truck around.
21. Why did you cut off all the branches?
22. She is grinding coffee.
23. I saw him hammering a silver brooch.
24. They are paying attention to the lecturer.
25. The garden must be cultivated the whole year.
26. Climb down!
27. Will you rub my back?
28. At what time will you put the fire out?
29. I haven't the faintest idea when he will stop talking nonsense.
30. I was so busy that I did not come home until sunrise.
31. He will arrive this week, perhaps the day after tomorrow.
32. This autumn and winter the afternoons have been quite warm.
33. Last year we didn't have enough fire-wood.
34. These days kings and queens have fewer duties than in earlier centuries.
35. Henceforth the royal officials will have to work more than hitherto.

LESSON 120

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SEMIPALATALIZED TYPE:
SHORT VOWEL IN THE PRESENT TENSE

A few verbs of the semipalatalized type which have a long vowel in the infinitive and in the imperfect contrast this with a shortened vowel in the present tense. Cf. *lēkt* in the Simple Palatalized type. These verbs all have *e* as their root vowel, and the open/closed alternation is as previously given for *plēst*.

aplēst 'to calculate'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es aplēšu</i>	<i>es aplēsu</i>	—
<i>tu aplēš</i>	<i>tu aplēsi</i>	<i>aplēš!</i>
<i>viņš aplēš</i>	<i>viņš aplēsa</i>	<i>lai aplēš!</i>
<i>mēs aplēšam</i>	<i>mēs aplēšām</i>	<i>aplēšsim!</i>
<i>jūs aplēšat</i>	<i>jūs aplēšāt</i>	<i>aplēšiet!</i>
<i>viņi aplēš</i>	<i>viņi aplēsa</i>	<i>lai aplēš!</i>

Future: *es aplēslšu, tu aplēšisi, viņš aplēšīs, etc.*
 Conditional: *es aplēstu, tu aplēstu, viņš aplēstu, etc.*
 Debitives: *man jāaplēš, man bija jāaplēš, etc.*
 Past Participle Active: *aplēsis, aplēsuši; aplēsusi, aplēsušas.*

The verbs of the following vocabulary are of the Shortened Present sub-type.

Vocabulary

<i>strēbt (strēbju, strēbu)</i>	to drink (soup, etc., often noisily)
<i>iestrēbt (-strēbju, -strēbu)</i>	to drink (soup, etc., often noisily)
<i>notētst (-tēšu, -tēsu)</i>	to trim, to square
<i>aplēst (-lēšu, -lēsu)</i>	to calculate, estimate
<i>aplēsums or aplēse</i>	calculation, estimate
<i>vēšma</i>	breeze
<i>dzīvība</i>	life
<i>kauls</i>	bone
<i>vēldze</i>	refreshment, relief
<i>drosme</i>	courage
<i>drosmīgs</i>	courageous
<i>(dzīvības) apdrošināšana</i>	(life) insurance
<i>svaigs</i>	fresh
<i>tauki (pl.)</i>	fat, tallow
<i>zupa</i>	soup

NOTES: The verb *dzēst* is normally conjugated regularly in the semipalatalized type, but may be found with the shortened present like *aplēst*.

Strēbt and *iestrēbt* are corresponding imperfective and perfective forms.

Zupa is condemned by many purists as a foreign word, to which they prefer *vīra*. *Zupa* is nonetheless the form most commonly heard.

Exercise 120a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *iestrēbt; aplēst; notētst; melst; vērst; dzēst; plēst; slēpt; svīpt; grābt; piekrāpt; uzlēkt; nākt; beigst; pieveikt.*

Exercise 120b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 120a.

Exercise 120c

Conjugate in the future the verbs listed in Ex. 120a.

Exercise 120d

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 120a.

Exercise 120e

Translate into English:

1. Tu stiprā saule, tu dzīvības trauks,
Dod veldzi mums, drosmi un spēku!
(Rainis)
2. Pēc karstās dienas mēs ar prieku baudām svaigo vakara vēsmiņu. – Jā, tā gan ir veldze.
3. Šim teļam ir tikai kauli un āda.
4. Ubags nenovērš acis no zupas katla.
5. Es apgriezu visas kabatas, bet tur nebija neviena centa, kaut gan es aplēsu, ka vēl būtu bijis jābūt dolaram.
6. Dēļiem bija jānoteš abi gali, bet jūs notēsāt tikai vienu galu.
7. Pēc mūsu aplēsuma par dzīvības apdrošināšanu jūs savā sešdesmitajā dzimšanas dienā dabūtu pieci tūkstoši dolaru.
8. Viņš gulēja it kā bez dzīvības.
9. Iestrebiet zupu! – Mēs jau strebjam, saimniec!
10. Tēvs tevi sodīs, ja tu atkal bāzīsi pirkstus taukus.
11. Saule dod visai labai dzīvību.
12. Kamēr vīrs bija slims, sieva jau sīki aplēsa, cik naudas viņai dos vīra dzīvības apdrošināšana pēc viņa nāves.
13. Nemels tik daudz, nāc un parādi savu drosmi!
14. Drosmīgie ugunsdzēsēji mēģināja glābt mūsu meitas dzīvību.
15. Miesnieks zāgē kaulus un griež gaļu.
16. Olas ir pavisam svaigas, kundzīt!
17. Kāpēc tu nogriez gaļai taukus?

18. Tā ir mana dzīvības apdrošināšanas aplēse.
19. Es notēsīšu koku.
20. Kāpēc jūs nepievēršat savu uzmanību skolotājam?
21. Mazi bērni bieži iebāž mutē visu dūri.
22. Tuksnesī nav ne mazākās vēsmas.
23. Drosmīgajam karavīram nebija drosmes bildināt meiteni.
24. Vakarā mēs meklējām veldzi pie avota oazē.
25. Viņi sērš kaimiņos.
26. Vecos laikos kalpi un meitas strēba zupu no vienas bļodas.
27. Viņa steigšus iestrēba nedaudz zupas.
28. Kā tu vari strēbt pienu ar šo mazo karoti?
29. Kas par svaigu vēsmu!
30. Ar ko jūs beržat savu vannu?
31. Viņai nebija drosmes izdzēst uguni.
32. Biroja darbs kaulus nelauž.
33. Drosmīgais gans aiztrieca vilku.
34. Es negribu dzirdēt savās mājās tik rupjus izteicienus.
35. Nogērb savas slapjās drēbes un uzgērb kaut ko siltu un sausu!
36. Mūsu pilsētā drīz dibinās bibliotēku.
37. Laiks tik ātri aizritēja, ka es to nemaz nemanīju.
38. Vai angļu tautai ir daudz vecu teiku?
39. Šis teikums ir nepareizs.
40. Bērns vēl brēc: apsedz viņu ar siltu segu!

Exercise 120f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am looking for a quiet job which doesn't break any bones.
2. He lapped up a bit of soup in great haste, put on his coat, and drove off.
3. There is no breeze that would give any relief.
4. You must square up the plank which you broke.
5. The dog is gnawing a bone.
6. The rain is pelting down: what a relief after a hot day!
7. Now she is tearing her hair and gnashing her teeth that her late husband had no life insurance.
8. I tore up the old calculation.
9. I must calculate how great a debt I have to pay.
10. The courageous postman took off his coat and shirt and jumped down from the bridge in order to save the child's life.
11. He is concealing something: perhaps he has not the courage to speak.

12. At last there is a fresh breeze: now I shall clean the house.
13. That upsets my whole calculation!
14. Let him not thrust his nose into other people's letters!
15. The fat is hot at last!
16. What is turning those big stones? – Electricity.
17. Stop carving those plates; come and have your soup while it is hot!
18. Now a fresh breeze would be welcome! (*derēt*)
19. Did you cut off the bark?
20. I would not have the courage to put on such a modern blouse.
21. He is a courageous soldier.
22. Soap is made from fat.
23. Did people spin in the Stone Age?
24. What are you calculating?
25. Have you cleared up who stole the television set from the art gallery?
26. Wipe the records with a clean handkerchief before you play them.
27. That ignoramus delayed us so long that we had to cut short our journey.
28. Why do horses neigh when the thunder roars? – Because they are afraid of thunderclaps.
29. The girls always wear aprons while they milk cows.
30. The wind is rustling in the trees.
31. The pig squealed when the butcher grabbed it.
32. He has not asked me to support his daughter-in-law.
33. The farmer forbade the labourer to harness the horses.
34. As far as the eye could see, black clouds were sliding across (*pie*) the sky.
35. You must exercise your fingers every day.
36. The water was splashing against the rocks.
37. He undoubtedly drives his car very slowly, but I doubt whether he is a good driver.
38. In which month can roses usually be picked? – It all depends.
39. Don't suck your finger, Jacky!
40. My husband snores and the cat hisses: the two sounds are quite similar.
41. I had no doubt that he would miss the train.
42. Why do you always hinder me in my work?
43. Don't put (*mērkt*) your fingers in the gravy!

LESSON 121

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: SEMIPALATALIZED TYPE:
LONG VOWEL IN THE IMPERFECT ONLY

A number of verbs of the semipalatalized type have a short vowel in the infinitive and in the present which contrasts with a long vowel in the imperfect. Cf. *stumt* below.

stumt 'to push'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es stumju</i>	<i>es stūmu</i>	–
<i>tu stum</i>	<i>tu stūmi</i>	<i>stum!</i>
<i>viņš stumj</i>	<i>viņš stūma</i>	<i>lai stumj!</i>
<i>mēs stumjam</i>	<i>mēs stūmām</i>	<i>stumsim!</i>
<i>jūs stumjat</i>	<i>jūs stūmāt</i>	<i>stumiet!</i>
<i>viņi stumj</i>	<i>viņi stūma</i>	<i>lai stumj!</i>

Future: *es stumšu, tu stumsi, viņš stums, etc.*

Conditional: *es stumtu, tu stumtu, viņš stumtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāstumj, man bija jāstumj, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *stūmis, stūmuši; stūmusi, stūmušas.*

Vocabulary

<i>kult (kuļu, kūlu)</i>	to thrash; to thresh (grain); to churn (butter)
<i>šķilt (šķiļu, šķīlu)</i>	to strike (fire)
<i>vilt (viļu, vīlu)</i>	to deceive; to disappoint
<i>stumt (stumju, stūmu)</i>	to push
<i>jumt (jumju, jūmu)</i>	to thatch; to roof
<i>vēlt (vēļu, vēlu)</i>	to roll (trans.)
<i>cēlt (cēļu, cēlu)</i>	to lift, raise; to build
<i>zēlt (zēļu, zēlu)</i>	to become green; to flourish
<i>dzēlt (dzēļu, dzēlu)</i>	to sting, prick, bite
<i>smēlt (smēļu, smēlu)</i>	to scoop, ladle
<i>lezvēlt (-zvēļu, -zvēlu)</i>	to hit, strike, whack
<i>nopeļt (-peļu, -peļu)</i>	to criticize, censure
<i>šķēlt (šķēļu, šķēlu)</i>	to split, cleave (trans.)

<i>vemt</i> (<i>vēmju, vēmu</i>)	to vomit
<i>lemt</i> (<i>lēmju, lēmu</i>)	to decide
<i>nolemt</i> (<i>-lēmju, -lēmu</i>)	to decide
<i>galotne</i>	tip, extremity; top, summit; ending (grammatical)

NOTES: *Dzelt* and *iezvelt* both require a dative. *Lemt* and *nolemt* are corresponding imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 121a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *vemt*; *iezvelt*; *jumt*; *kult*; *vilt*; *strēbt*; *aplēst*; *vērst*; *nogriezt*; *slēpt*; *uzpost*; *iekniebt*; *malt*; *panākt*; *uzlēkt*; *brēkt*; *sūkt*.

Exercise 121b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 121a.

Exercise 121c

Conjugate in the future and conditional: *velt*; *nolemt*; *stumt*; *apgriezt*; *notēst*; *salauzt*; *uzpost*; *plēst*; *braukt*.

Exercise 121d

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 121c.

Exercise 121e

Translate into English:

- Lec, saulīte, rītā agri,
Sīldi meža galotnītes!
(Tautas dziesma)
- Kāpēc jūs nopeļat manu darbu?
- Bites dzēla lācim degunā.
- Kuģis šķeļ viņus.
- Es mēģināšu koku šķēlt, kad būšu to notēsis.
- Mēs smeļam ūdeni no dziļās akas.
- Viņš kala tik stipri, ka dzelzs šķīla uguni.

- Valdība bija nolēmusi celt jaunu dzelzceļa staciju.
- Līdz šai vietai mums akmens jāveļ, un tad mēs to celsim smagajā mašīnā.
- Lauki un birzes jau zeļ.
- Zilās debesis tikai viļ, ka būs jauks laiks, jo no jūras nāk auksta vēsma.
- Ko jūs kuļat? – Mēs kuļam rudzus.
- Pagaidām mēs vēl ceļam nama sienas, bet drīz mēs jumsim jumtu.
- Neviens neapšaubā un nenopeļ jūsu aplēsumu.
- Ja jums būs jāvemj, ārsts dos jums citas zāles.
- Upe veļ savus pelēkos ūdeņus uz jūru.
- Ienaidnieks bija nolēmis iznīcināt abas pilsētas.
- Vai mūsu acis ir mūs vīlušas?
- Mēs redzējām skaistas meitenes smeļam ūdeni no avota.
- Viņam nebūtu bijis drosmes nolēkt no klints.
- Māte stumj bērnu ratiņus (= *pram*).
- Lai mūsu augstskola arī turpmāk zeļ un zied!
- Vakarā vēsma dod cilvēkiem un lopiem veldzi pēc karstas dienas.
- Pašlaik amatnieki jumj galveno jumtu, bet parīt viņi jums jumtus nama abiem spārniem.
- Kāpēc ar šiem akmeņiem nevar šķīlt uguni?
- Vai jūs tiešām mani neviļat?
- Kāpēc jūs neveļat mucu pagrabā?
- Šie lauki zeļ jau kopš maija mēneša. (Notice this simple way of saying *the month of May*.)
- Vai strādniekiem šie akmeņi būs jāšķeļ?
- Vai valdība kaut ko lems par skolām?
- Ārsts jautāja, vai bērns ir vēmis.
- Cielava sēž pašā koka galotnē.
- Mūsu mājās tikai pati saimniece kuļ sviestu.
- Kāpēc tu prasi man padomu, ja tu to vēlāk nopeļ?
- Pēc negaisa mums mašīna bija jāstumj pa dubļiem.
- Uzmanību, bite tev tūlīt dzels!
- Vai tev ir bailes, ka svaigs gaiss tev kaitēs?
- Tā pārdevēja laikam domā, ka kilogramā ir tikai deviņi simti gramu!
- Ziemeļos sniegputenis ir aizputinājis visus ceļus, bet dienvidos upes ir applūdinājušas zemās pļavas.
- Vai visi gādā, lai bērniem būtu izglītība?
- Viņš novēlēja visu savu naudu augstskolai.
- Viņi mums sūtīja ielūgumu: mums jāšūta viņiem novēlējumi.
- Man ir četri precinieki.
- Jūra bangoja visu nakti: laikam daudz zvejnieku būs gājuši bojā.
- Dod mums katrai pa gabalam tortes!
- Kārlis bija ievainojis kāju.

Exercise 121f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The others were all vomiting on the ship.
2. Why did you cut off the tips of the plants?
3. Today we are threshing barley, but the day after tomorrow we shall be threshing rye.
4. Please do not push!
5. My eyes do not deceive me – I saw how she shoved the rings into her handbag!
6. Today the roof will be thatched.
7. The ocean is rolling its waves against the shore.
8. Don't lift the keg, roll it!
9. The fields all around are flourishing.
10. Turn the sick man over on to his back, but don't lift him.
11. Dreams often deceive.
12. These weapons will split the heads of our enemies.
13. Why are they scooping water with their hands?
14. In olden times fire was struck with stones.
15. He turned his eyes in that direction (= *uz to pusi*).
16. In autumn the fields flourish no longer.
17. I am not criticizing the works of the poet. – Yes, indeed you criticized them.
18. She is pushing a pram (= *bērnu ratiņi*).
19. The tradesmen have not yet thatched the roof.
20. Did you put out the light in the cellar?
21. They have been on a visit in the city.
22. We are scooping water from the spring with buckets.
23. A bird is sitting in the top of the tree.
24. Let us see what they have decided!
25. He is not a gifted man: he is a fool and a prattler.
26. After the blizzard, the storm, the flood and the earthquake, the town was in ruins.
27. He is a bad salesman, for he offends everybody.
28. We have four members of staff: one professor and three lecturers.
29. Our Lord Mayor is always carrying on about education.
30. Don't gossip in lecture time!
31. The bride and bridegroom were both shaking.
32. We must try and export more than we import, for our exports give us a profit, but with our imports we have a loss.
33. After the wedding the bride and groom will spend three weeks on their honeymoon trip in Spain and Italy.

34. Retailers often write their prices on small blackboards in the shop-window.
35. Although she had a large dowry, I still believe that he married her for (*aiz*) love.
36. A big cheque is a very good gift.
37. Are canned foods cheaper in Sweden than in France?

LESSON 122

ADJECTIVES IN *-EJS*

Adjectives in *-ējs* are declined like any other adjectives in *-s*, as far as their indefinite declension is concerned. However, in the definite declension, the dative and locative lack the lengthening syllable *-aj-*. Thus the dative and locative definite are identical with the dative and locative indefinite. This is so of both the singular and the plural. The definite declension of *vakarējs* 'yesterday's' is given below.

vakarējs 'yesterday's'

MASCULINE

	Singular	Plural
N.	<i>vakarējais vējš</i>	<i>vakarējie vēji</i>
A.	<i>vakarējo vēju</i>	<i>vakarējos vējus</i>
G.	<i>vakarējā vēja</i>	<i>vakarējo vēju</i>
D.	<i>vakarējam vējam</i>	<i>vakarējiem vējiem</i>
L.	<i>vakarējā vējā</i>	<i>vakarējos vējos</i>

FEMININE

	Singular	Plural
N.	<i>vakarējā salna</i>	<i>vakarējās salnas</i>
A.	<i>vakarējo salnu</i>	<i>vakarējās salnas</i>
G.	<i>vakarējās salnas</i>	<i>vakarējo salnu</i>
D.	<i>vakarējai salnai</i>	<i>vakarējām salnām</i>
L.	<i>vakarējā salnā</i>	<i>vakarējās salnās</i>

This contraction, the phonetic reasons for which are obvious from the above paradigm – **vakarējajā vējā* is something of a mouthful! – also occurs frequently, if not regularly, in certain other types of adjective.

This is particularly true of ordinal numerals: cf. the following pairs, both of which are current:

līdz ceturtajai dienai or *līdz ceturtai dienai*
septītajā rindā or *septītā rindā*
tūkstoš deviņsimt sešdesmit sestajā (or *sestā*) *gadā*

The contraction is also possible (and often practised) with longish adjectives, cf. *visinteresantākajās grāmatās* which is usually shortened to *visinteresantākās grāmatās*.

In poetry the contraction is very often practised for metrical reasons, and any adjective may be so affected.

Vocabulary

<i>vakarējs</i> (usually def.)	yesterday's, of yesterday
<i>vietējs</i> (usually def.)	local
<i>pēdējs</i> (usually def.)	last
<i>pēdējā laikā</i>	lately
<i>vaļējs</i>	open; loose
<i>īpatnējs</i>	peculiar; original
<i>vienreizējs</i>	unique
<i>pašreizējs</i> (usually def.)	present
<i>tagadējs</i> (usually def.)	present
<i>tuvējs</i> (usually def.)	near-by
<i>vidējs</i> (usually def.)	middle
<i>apakšējs</i> (usually def.)	lower
<i>augšējs</i> (usually def.)	upper
<i>līdzšinējs</i> (usually def.)	previous
<i>viduvējs</i>	mediocre
<i>iepriekšējs</i> (usually def.)	former, preceding

NOTES: A number of the above adjectives are designated as being usually found in the definite form. Their use in the indefinite is not entirely unknown, but students should avoid so using them except in specific instances for which they have met a precedent.

vīrs vidējos gados: a middle-aged man

Exercise 122a

Give the definite declension, singular and plural, of: *vaļējā mašīna*; *tuvējais kalns*; *vienreizējā balss*; *viduvējais alus*.

Exercise 122b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *celt*; *strēbt*; *novērst*; *apgāzt*; *kalt*; *kult*; *uzlēkt*; *nākt*; *krākt*; *šķelt*; *aplēst*; *dzēst*.

Exercise 122c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 122b.

Exercise 122d

Conjugate in the future and conditional: *jumt*; *iezvelt*; *notēst*; *vērst*; *melst*; *grauzt*; *piekrāpt*; *nopelt*; *izdzēst*; *aiztrenkt*.

Exercise 122e

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 122d.

Exercise 122f

Give the second person singular debitive (imperfect and conditional perfect) of the verbs listed in Ex. 122d.

Exercise 122g

Translate into English:

1. Teic dziesmiņas, māmuliņa!
Tu dziesmiņu daudz zināji.

(Tautas dziesma)

2. "Vai jūs pēdējā laikā atkal esat vēmis?" ārsts jautāja.
3. Vai jums nebūtu bijis jāizkāpj iepriekšējā stacijā?
4. Vakārējā koncertā kāds vīrs vidējos gados ar īpatnēju apģērbu sēdēja pēdējā rindā.
5. Tuvējie lauki jau zeļ.
6. Karaliene brauca vaļējā mašīnā.
7. Vietējie ļaudis ļaudis smeļ ūdeni ar īpatnējiem traukiem, un viņi šķīļ uguni ar akmeņiem.

8. Viņa gudrie vārdi būs tevi vīluši, viņš ir tikai viduvējs skolnieks.
9. Pašreizējais skolas pārzinis ir iepriekšējā pārzīņa znots.
10. Es nenopeļu vecā rakstnieka un dzejnieka līdzšinējos darbus, tikai pēdējo dzejoli.
11. Kāpēc viņš ceļ smago mucu? Tā ir jāveļ! Viņš gan ir vienreizējs muļķis!
12. Ja piens stāvēs vaļējā traukā, tas drīz būs skābs.
13. Vidējais vagonis bija tukšāks par pēdējo.
14. Vietējās preces nav sliktākas par tām, ko mēs importējam.
15. Viņš pēdējā laikā ir bijis tik nerātns, ka tēvs jau gribēja viņu kult.
16. Šorīt mēs jumsim jumta augšējo daļu.
17. No viduvēja gleznotāja nevar sagaidīt lielisku gleznu.
18. Kāpēc šis aktieris bija nokavējis vakarējo mēģinājumu?
19. Tuvējās mājās jau kuļ rudzus. (In the country, *mājas* often means *farm*.)
20. Pašreizējais priekšnieks lems par tagadējām darba stundām.
21. Es to laikam lasīju iepriekšējās lapas puses augšējās rindās.
22. Vakārējā vētra bija ļoti stipra.
23. Vai tu pēdējā laikā esi redzējusi Annu stumjam bērnu ratiņus?
24. Šis vilcienu saraksts nav tik skaidrs kā līdzšinējie.
25. Vai tagadējie laiki ir mierīgāki par iepriekšējiem?
26. Bez vidusskolas izglītības tagadējos laikos nevar strādāt par valsts ierēdni.
27. Ielūgumus parasti sūta vaļējās aploksnēs.
28. Pašreizējais mākslas galerijas pārzinis ir vienreizējs mākslinieks, un viņa gleznām ir īpatnējs stils.
29. Arī viduvējiem studentiem ir panākumi.
30. Tuvējā birzē jau zied puķes.
31. Pastnieks jau ir apakšējā stāvā, drīz viņš uzkāps augšējā.
32. Tagad tikai apakšējās kalnu pļavās var ganīt lopus, jo augšējās vēl ir sniegs.
33. Ak, zirgs ir apgāzis ratus, un nabaga pilsētas galva tagad sēž ceļa vidū!
34. Nemelsiet tik daudz: jūs nebijāt izdzēsis uguni, kad ugunsdzēsēji atbrauca.
35. Es nogrieztu šo skaisto zariņu, ja man būtu ass nazis ar ko griezt.
36. Pēc ugunsgrēka mums nebija drēbju ko uzģērbt.
37. Žurkas jau sen grauž mūsu grīdas dēļus.
38. Ko viņa iebāza savā rokas somiņā?

Exercise 122h

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am eating yesterday's soup.
2. The plank must be squared on the upper part only.
3. It was indeed a relief to drive in an open car in the fresh breeze.
4. I shall answer the preceding question.

5. Show me the last estimate.
6. The previous government achieved more than the present one.
7. We are calculating yesterday's losses.
8. At the present time life insurance companies are not lending money.
9. Who would have expected such singular courage from a mediocre soldier?
10. The local policeman heard a peculiar sound from the lower floor of the near-by pharmacy.
11. We recently saw her together with a middle-aged man.
12. Fat should not be kept in open dishes.
13. There is a fresh wind from the near-by mountains.
14. A courageous student had saved the life of the former headmaster.
15. How can one blame the present government?
16. Lately you have been drinking your soup terribly fast, although the doctor has forbidden you to do so.
17. The middle finger is the longest.
18. The film-star's present husband is richer than all the seven previous ones.
19. The fire destroyed the upper floor completely, but the fire brigade saved the lower floor.
20. She is only a mediocre ballet dancer.
21. We have many debts to settle this week.
22. This winter Eve will be spinning wool.
23. This year there is a lot of barley to be ground.
24. The old tradesman carves beautiful plates out of wood.
25. I think he was hiding something from us that evening.
26. A good driver never takes his eyes off the road.
27. "Please direct your attention to the blackboard," said the lecturer.
28. Turn the car around quickly.
29. That really upsets my calculations.
30. You must help me tidy up the flat.
31. Who will look after your old mother while you are on a visit to **Germany** this spring?
32. At that moment somebody whistled.
33. He has deceived her and broken her heart.
34. I wanted to put on my new blouse, but the puppy had torn it apart.
35. In those days people had to draw water from wells.
36. We got off the train and boarded a bus.
37. Last year we tilled only six fields.
38. John and I will be going climbing in the mountains this summer.
39. Why did he take his coat off? – Because it was rubbing his neck.
40. He wants to get his hands on (*sagrābt*) everybody's money.
41. At this moment he is probably tearing his hair in anger.

LESSON 123

ADJECTIVES MODIFIED BY 'TOO'

In English the word 'too' functions as an adverbial modifier in such phrases as 'too big', 'too heavy', 'too long', etc. In Latvian the usage is more prepositional. 'Too' is expressed in Latvian by *par*, and the adjective so qualified stands in the accusative if singular or in the dative if plural.

<i>Viņa stāsts ir par muļķīgu.</i>	His story is too stupid.
<i>Viņa ir par skaistu.</i>	She is too beautiful.
<i>Viņi ir par nabadzīgiem.</i>	They (m.) are too poor.
<i>Viņas ir par viesmīlīgām.</i>	They (f.) are too hospitable.

This construction may in English be followed by an infinitive:

We are too old to work.

Latvian here uses *lai* with the conditional, with the subject of the conditional verb often not formally expressed:

Mēs esam par veciem, lai strādātu.

Too is also used in English with adverbs, 'too early', 'too late', 'too well', etc. Latvian again uses *par* here, but note that the ending *-u* normally appears on the adverb:

<i>agri</i>	early	<i>par agru</i>	too early
<i>vēlu</i>	late	<i>par vēlu</i>	too late
<i>labi</i>	well	<i>par labu</i>	too well

Notice also *par daudz* 'too much' and *par maz* (occ. *par mazu*) 'too little'.

Vocabulary

<i>par</i> (see above)	too
<i>pievilt</i> (-viļu, -vīlu)	to deceive
<i>iedzelt</i> (-dzēļu, -dzēlu)	to sting
<i>riteņis</i>	wheel
<i>zinātnieks</i>	scientist
<i>izrāde</i>	performance (theatrical, etc.)
<i>auglis</i>	fruit
<i>motors</i>	motor
<i>vēders</i>	abdomen, stomach, belly

<i>turbīna</i>	turbine
<i>veselība</i>	health
<i>slimība</i>	illness; disease
<i>slimnīca</i>	hospital
<i>slimnieks</i> (f. -ce)	patient
<i>špabis</i>	any clear spirit, e.g., vodka

NOTES: *Motors* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o* sounds.

Pievilt and *iedzelt* are perfectives corresponding to the imperfectives *vilt* and *dzelt*.

Iedzelt, like *dzelt*, requires the dative of the object.

Exercise 123a

Translate into English:

1. *Tilts ir par šauru.*
2. *Tu esi par resnu.*
3. *Olas ir par dārgām.*
4. *Autobusi ir par pilniem.*
5. *Ceļi ir par šauriem.*
6. *Jūs dziedat par skaļu.*
7. *Viņš atbrauca par agru.*
8. *Upē straume bija par stipru, lai varētu peldēt.*
9. *Man ir par daudz ienaidnieku.*
10. *Mums ir par maz draugu.*

Exercise 123b

Translate into Latvian:

1. We have too little money to be able to pay for that car.
2. These curtains are too heavy.
3. Are you too lazy to help me?
4. The bathroom walls are too dark.
5. Your brother drives too quickly.
6. This year we have too many lemons.
7. These boys are too young to smoke.
8. The roof is too high.
9. Baiba and Māra are too young.
10. He visits us too often.

Exercise 123c

Decline in the singular and plural: *viduvējais skolotājs; vakarējā avīze.*

Exercise 123d

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *pievilt; iedzelt; nolemt; aplēst; strēbt; novērst; salauzt; stiept; lēkt; pārnākt; uzmaukt; sajēgt.*

Exercise 123e

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 123d.

Exercise 123f

Give the imperative forms of: *pievilt; iedzelt; nolemt; notēst; kopt; uzlēkt; nākt; beigt; iebāzt; būt; iet; dot.*

Exercise 123g

Conjugate in the future and conditional: *vilt; dzelt; grauzt; lauzt; bāzt; gāzt; atbraukt; nolēkt; uzpost; sērst.*

Exercise 123h

Give the third person plural (feminine) of the debitive (future and pluperfect) of the verbs listed in Ex. 123g.

Exercise 123i

Translate into English:

1. Tā laikam būs bijusi pēdējā izrāde šīnī mēnesī.
2. Šeit šņabis nav tik labs kā pie mums, tas ir tikai viduvējs.
3. Viņš ir par godīgu, lai pieviltu ļaudis.
4. Vietējie augļi ir par skābiem, lai no tiem taisītu vīnu.
5. Šis motors ir par vāju.
6. Ūdens griež spēkstacijas turbīnas.
7. Vakarejā avīzē es lasīju par jauno, moderno slimnīcu tuvējā lielpilsētā.

8. Savā pašreizējā darbā es nedrīkstu smēķēt.
9. Vai riteņi nebūs par lieliem?
10. Bite bija iedzēlusi viņam rokā.
11. Ir tūkstoš slimību pasaulē, bet veselība ir tikai viena.
12. Slimnieks vēl bija par vāju, lai uzrakstītu vēstuli.
13. Mēs redzējām vienreizēju izrādi.
14. Velns, kas par stipru šņabi!
15. Valdība bija nolēmusi mainīt līdzšinējo plānu.
16. Vai drīkstu arī dāmām piedāvāt pa glāzītei šņabja?
17. Mežonis ir laimīgs, kad viņam ir pilns vēders.
18. Vai turbīnas nebūs par mazām?
19. Ko tu sapņo ar vaļējām acīm?
20. Spēcīgais motors griež šos milzīgos riteņus.
21. Tagadējā slimnīca ir iepriekšējās pamatskolas namā.
22. Augļu kokiem šogad ir kāda slimība.
23. Artūrs pēdējā laikā ir mani smagi pievilis, un es esmu nolēmusi no viņa aiziet.
24. Man nav ne mazākās jēgas par motoriem un turbīnām.
25. Profesors ir vīrs vidējos gados ar mazu vēderiņu.
26. Čūska viņam iedzēla kājā.
27. Ārsti un zinātnieki gādā par tautas veselību.
28. Bite iedzēla aktierim rokā pašā izrādes laikā.
29. Apakšējie riteņi griež augšējos.
30. Lieltirgotājs bija nolēmis iznīcināt veselas piecpadsmit tonnas sliktu augļu. (*Vesels here = whole.*)
31. Viņa ir mani pievilusi.
32. Šo pienākumu jūs nevarat apiet.
33. Viņi steigšus iegāja mežā meklēt malku.
34. Braucējs beidzot sajēdza, ka nevarēs panākt savu pretinieku.
35. Sargi aizslēdza pils vārtus lielā steigā.
36. Šis slīpķis meklēja un meklēja savus darba rīkus, un ar to viņš bija nodarbināts visu pēcpusdienu.
37. Mežā vējš šalca koku lapās.
38. Man ir tikai vēl viens lūgums.
39. Kad es pārnāku mājās, es mēdzu lasīt avīzi.
40. Vecajam ierēdnim ir plāni mati.
41. Viņš nekad nekā nejēdz.
42. Ja mēs varētu aplenkt ienaidnieku pirms saules lēkta, tas būtu liels sasniegums.
43. Kā tu ceri veikt visus šos darbus?
44. Ūdens no strūklakas šļāca pret betonu un tecēja pa ietni.
45. Vai šņabja pudele ir skapī?

Exercise 123j

Translate into Latvian:

1. The iron wheels were striking fire from the stony road.
2. The patient has been vomiting again, doctor.
3. Many scientists have criticized this foolish book.
4. You are too weak to lift that heavy box.
5. Our firm had decided to import the motors and turbines from Germany.
6. He is too clever to be deceived.
7. The tradesmen are thatching the hospital roof.
8. Now everywhere in the country people are threshing rye and barley.
9. I thought my eyes were deceiving me, when I saw that man with the enormous stomach.
10. These fruits are too sweet to taste good to me.
11. What have the gentlemen decided?
12. Vodka will harm your health.
13. The motor was not working, and we had to push the car.
14. Because of illness he could not come to our performance.
15. In this section we produce gas turbines.
16. That wheel is too heavy to be lifted.
17. May God grant this gifted scientist good health.
18. The hospital is too far to be seen from this place.
19. The fields and meadows are already flourishing and the tops of the trees are green.
20. The patient has been deceiving us: that was no snake which bit (*iedzelt*) him.
21. That is a horrible disease.
22. The women are drawing water from the deep well with large buckets.
23. What a magnificent performance!
24. He dipped the bread in the gravy.
25. When did you finish university?
26. Quickly, jump up on to the chair.
27. Each evening he goes out at six to give the animals their food.
28. With loud shouts we finally drove the neighbour's dog out of the yard.
29. Many animals fear the lion's roar.
30. My husband is snoring again! – Cover his head with a heavy blanket!
31. This sentence is wrong.
32. During the journey I was reading a book of old tales.

LESSON 124

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: UNCHANGED TYPE

So far in our consideration of verbs of the Short Conjugation we have considered the Simple Palatalized Type and the Semipalatalized Type, together with their variants. In both of these types, the important factor was the transformation of the stem from its form in the infinitive to its form in the present, the imperfect and the past participle active. This factor of modification of the stem will continue to be important as we consider further types within the Short Conjugation.

There does however exist an Unchanged Type, one in which the present, imperfect and infinitive stems are identical apart from the alternation of the *e* vowel when it occurs. Verbs of the Unchanged Type with *e* as the stem vowel have an alternation like that of *redzēt* or *brēkt* as will be seen from the following paradigm:

ņest 'to carry'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es ņesu</i>	<i>es ņesu</i>	—
<i>tu ņes</i>	<i>tu ņesi</i>	<i>ņes!</i>
<i>viņš ņes</i>	<i>viņš ņesa</i>	<i>lai ņes!</i>
<i>mēs ņesam</i>	<i>mēs ņesām</i>	<i>ņesīsim!</i>
<i>jūs ņesat</i>	<i>jūs ņesāt</i>	<i>ņesiet!</i>
<i>viņi ņes</i>	<i>viņi ņesa</i>	<i>lai ņes!</i>

Future: *es ņesīšu, tu ņesīsi, viņš ņesīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es ņestu, tu ņestu, viņš ņestu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāņes, man bija jāņes*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *ņesis, ņesuši; ņesusi, ņesušas*.

Some verbs of the Unchanged Type have infinitives in *-kt* or *-gt*. In these verbs the *k* and *g* are palatalized to *c* and *dz* respectively in the second person singular present and imperative, the second person plural imperative and the masculine singular of the past participle active, cf. *sākt* below:

sākt 'to begin'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es sāku</i>	<i>es sāku</i>	—
<i>tu sāc</i>	<i>tu sāki</i>	<i>sāc!</i>
<i>viņš sāk</i>	<i>viņš sāka</i>	<i>lai sāk!</i>
<i>mēs sākam</i>	<i>mēs sākām</i>	<i>sāksim!</i>
<i>jūs sākat</i>	<i>jūs sākāt</i>	<i>sāciet!</i>
<i>viņi sāk</i>	<i>viņi sāka</i>	<i>lai sāk!</i>

Future: *es sākšu, tu sāksi, viņš sāks*, etc.

Conditional: *es sāktu, tu sāktu, viņš sāktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāsāk, man bija jāsāk*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *sācis, sākuši; sākusi, sākušas*.

Verbs which have consonants other than *k* and *g* at the end of the stem have no palatalization in any of the forms.

Note that regular verbs of the Unchanged Type have no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>augt</i> (-gu, -gu)	to grow (intrans.)
<i>sākt</i> (-ku, -ku)	to begin (trans.)
<i>iesākt</i> (-ku, -ku)	to begin (trans.); to do
<i>art</i> (-ru, -ru)	to plough
<i>bēgt</i> (<i>bēgu, bēgu</i>)	to flee
<i>aizbēgt</i> (- <i>bēgu, -bēgu</i>)	to flee, escape
<i>degt</i> (<i>dēgu, dēgu</i>)	to burn (intrans.)
<i>ņest</i> (<i>ņesu, ņesu</i>)	to carry
<i>atņest</i> (- <i>ņesu, -ņesu</i>)	to bring
<i>cept</i> (<i>čepu, čepu</i>)	to bake, fry, roast (trans.)
<i>iekšējs</i>	inner, internal
<i>ārējs</i>	outer, external
<i>karstums</i>	heat
<i>aukstums</i>	cold, coldness
<i>dedzināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to burn (trans.); to distil
<i>sadedzināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to burn, burn down (trans.)

NOTES: *Sākt* may be construed with a following infinitive:

Mežs sāka degt. The forest began to burn.

Art was earlier conjugated in the Semipalatalized Type: present *es aru*, imperfect *es aru*. With the disappearance of *r* however, it has moved over to the Unchanged Type.

Sākt and *iesākt* are corresponding imperfective and perfective forms; similarly with *bēgt* and *aizbēgt*, *dedzināt* and *sadedzināt*.

Remember that in the definite declension of *iekšējs* and *ārējs* the lengthening syllable *-aj-* will be lacking in the dative and locative.

<i>ar saules lēktu</i>	'at sunrise'
<i>karstuma vilnis</i>	'heat wave'

Exercise 124a

Translate into Latvian:

1. It is still too early to go to bed.
2. Arthur really is too fat.
3. Those leaves are too wet.
4. Do not criticize her too much.
5. All my shirts are too long.
6. It is too cold to go swimming today.

Exercise 124b

Decline in the singular and plural: *viduvēja grāmata; vietējais krogus; lldzšīnējā valdlba; vienreizējs darbs.*

Exercise 124c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *augt; smelt; sākt; celt; art; kult; bēgt; aplēst; nest; grebt; degt; malt; cept; nākt; lēkt.*

Exercise 124d

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 124c.

Exercise 124e

Conjugate in the future and conditional: *aizbēgt; melst; atnest; sērst; grauzt; iesākt; uzpost; notēst.*

Exercise 124f

Give the imperative forms, positive and negative, of the verbs listed in Ex. 124e.

Exercise 124g

Translate into English:

1. Nesāc raudāt, meit! Tu esi jau par lielu, lai raudātu tik sīku lietu dēļ.
2. Austrālijā ziemeļu vējš parasti atnes karstumu no tuksneša.
3. Ienaidnieks bēg! – Jā, bet viņš tālu neaizbēgs, jo mēs esam viņu aplenkusi.
4. Glābiet, māja deg!
5. Ko jūs tur nesat?
6. Ja tu kartupeļus cepsi vēl ilgāk, tu tos sadedzināsi!
7. Mēs šodien iesākām kult rudzus.
8. Valstīm ir iekšēji un ārēji ienaidnieki.
9. Dekorācijas sāka degt izrādes laikā.
10. Vācu dzejnieks Heine saka: “Zemē, kur sadedzina grāmatas, tur dedzinās arī cilvēkus.”
11. Kalpi ara no rīta līdz vakaram, un rīt viņi atkal sāks art ar saules lēktu.
12. Augļu koki, kurus audzē Vidusjūras piekrastē, Latvijā neaug, jo ziemas aukstums tos iznīcinātu. (*Vidusjūra = the Mediterranean Sea*)
13. Es esmu nolēmusi sadedzināt visus vecos laikrakstus.
14. Vai špabi taisa no rudziem?
15. Malka ir par slapju, lai degtu.
16. Man vienmēr sāp vēders, ārsta kungs, man laikam ir kāda iekšēja slimība.
17. Lidmašīnas turbīnās ir milzīgs karstums.
18. Kaste ir par smagu, lai to nestu.
19. Kāpēc jūs dedzināt sausās lapas?
20. Veliet miltu maisu no gaitēņa virtuvē, jo māte rītu ceps maizi!
21. Meža zvēri bēg no plūdiem.
22. Kāpēc tu bēdz, kaķīt? Nebēdz! Ak, tas tomēr bēg prom!
23. Iekšējie riteņi griež ārējos.
24. Lūdzu, atnesiet vēl vienu pudeli vīna, viesmīl!
25. Kas tev iedzēla rokā?
26. Laukos sāk jau art.
27. Rudzi aug.
28. Daži slimnieki domā, ka ārsti un zinātnieki viņus viņ.
29. Zēnam jau sāk augt bārda.
30. Ko mēs darīsim, ja viņš neatnesīs cigaretes, ko mēs pasūtījām?
31. Mēs nesam maisus pagrabā.
32. Cikos jūs sākat cept maizi?
33. Kas gan būtu gaidījis šo aukstumu pēc lielā karstuma viļņa?
34. Lielajā aukstumā gāja bojā daudz augļu koku.
35. Kurā mēnesī jūs iesākat art savus laukus?
36. Man vēl arvien ir klepus: būs jālieto stiprākas zāles.
37. Zemes virsū tagad ir mazāk slimību nekā pirms dažiem gadu simteņiem.

38. Lidmašīnu nevar redzēt, tāpēc ka tā lido virs mākoņiem.
39. Tikai tevis labad es šeit nācu, un tagad tu mani atraidi!
40. Uzraksti šos skaitļus uz papīra!
41. Kas par biezu miglu: es nekā neredzu!
42. Savā atbildē manai vēstulei viņa raksta, ka svārki Londonā tagad maksā sešas mārciņas.
43. Vai jums ir kastīte sērkokociņu?
44. Ardievu, draugi! Man tagad jābrauc!

Exercise 124h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Many chickens perished in yesterday's heat.
2. We cannot travel in an open car in this cold.
3. On one of the inside pages of the local newspaper, there is a strange story about the last queen of Spain.
4. She began to yell.
5. The thieves fled to the near-by mountains.
6. The baker usually bakes bread at night.
7. When the fire broke out (= *Kad sāka degt*) on the upper floor, the people fled from the lower floor as well.
8. You are not allowed to carry arms here.
9. Our room is behind the middle window.
10. Did you burn your finger?
11. The outer walls are already burning.
12. Just recently black smoke has been coming from the neighbour's yard. What on earth are they burning there?
13. Don't carry the puppy inside.
14. Let us see what the present government will do with the debts of the former government.
15. The plant had grown three centimetres in a week.
16. Why are you not ploughing up as far as the fence?
17. I shall bring the medicine from the pharmacy.
18. Why did you flee?
19. Why does that fool wear a coat in this heat?
20. Where had we begun to read? – On the previous page, teacher.
21. How can flowers grow in the present cold?
22. I ordered the very best wine, and you brought me mediocre wine!
23. The tarts you bake are unique.
24. The farmer is ploughing his field.

25. What shall I do with those old papers? I shall burn them.
 26. Such soft pillows are sold nowhere else.
 27. The weather here is often foggy when the wind is from the south.
 28. The police were questioning the thief in the middle of the market.
 29. Is it too late for me to come along?

LESSON 125

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: UNCHANGED TYPE:
 LONG VOWEL IN THE IMPERFECT

Some verbs of the Unchanged Type, while conserving the consonantal element of the stem intact, lengthen the short vowel of the infinitive and present when it comes to the imperfect.

skart 'to touch'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es skaru</i>	<i>es skāru</i>	—
<i>tu skar</i>	<i>tu skāri</i>	<i>skar!</i>
<i>viņš skar</i>	<i>viņš skāra</i>	<i>lai skar!</i>
<i>mēs skaram</i>	<i>mēs skārām</i>	<i>skarsim!</i>
<i>jūs skarat</i>	<i>jūs skārāt</i>	<i>skariet!</i>
<i>viņi skar</i>	<i>viņi skāra</i>	<i>lai skar!</i>

Future: *es skaršu, tu skarsi, viņš skars, etc.*

Conditional: *es skartu, tu skartu, viņš skartu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāskar, man bija jāskar, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *skāris, skāruši; skārusi, skārušas.*

Note again the absence of the *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Verbs of the Unchanged Type in *-rt* (cf. *art*) were all previously conjugated according to the pattern of the Semipalatalized Type. Thus one will still often find *es skaŗu, tu skaŗu, viņš skaŗu*.

Verbs in *-ert* (cf. *dzert*), while moving like the others from the Semipalatalized Type to the Unchanged Type, retain the *e* alternation of the Semipalatalized Type.

dzert 'to drink'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es dzēru</i>	<i>es dzēru</i>	—
<i>tu dzēr</i>	<i>tu dzēri</i>	<i>dzēr!</i>
<i>viņš dzēr</i>	<i>viņš dzēra</i>	<i>lai dzēr!</i>
<i>mēs dzēram</i>	<i>mēs dzērām</i>	<i>dzērsim!</i>
<i>jūs dzērat</i>	<i>jūs dzērāt</i>	<i>dzēriet!</i>
<i>viņi dzēr</i>	<i>viņi dzēra</i>	<i>lai dzēr!</i>

Future: *es dzēršu, tu dzērsi, viņš dzērs, etc.*

Conditional: *es dzērtu, tu dzērtu, viņš dzērtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jādzēr, man bija jādzēr, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *dzēris, dzēruši; dzērusi, dzērušas.*

The *e* alternation in verbs whose stems end in consonants other than *r* is the same as for *redzēt* or *brēkt*; cf. *nemt*:

nemt 'to take'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es ņēmu</i>	<i>es ņēmu</i>	—
<i>tu ņēm</i>	<i>tu ņēmi</i>	<i>ņem!</i>
<i>viņš ņēm</i>	<i>viņš ņēma</i>	<i>lai ņēm!</i>
<i>mēs ņēmam</i>	<i>mēs ņēmām</i>	<i>ņēmsim!</i>
<i>jūs ņēmat</i>	<i>jūs ņēmāt</i>	<i>ņēmiet!</i>
<i>viņi ņēm</i>	<i>viņi ņēma</i>	<i>lai ņēm!</i>

Future: *es ņemšu, tu ņēmsi, viņš ņēms, etc.*

Conditional: *es ņemtu, tu ņemtu, viņš ņemtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāņem, man bija jāņem, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *ņēmis, ņēmuši; ņēmusi, ņēmušas.*

Vocabulary

<i>ņemt</i> (<i>ņēmu, ņēmu</i>)	to take
<i>saņemt</i> (<i>-ņēmu, -ņēmu</i>)	to receive
<i>ķert</i> (<i>ķēru, ķēru</i>)	to catch, seize
<i>sakert</i> (<i>-ķēru, -ķēru</i>)	to catch, seize
<i>noķert</i> (<i>-ķēru, -ķēru</i>)	to catch (fish, etc.); to catch (in the act)
<i>dzert</i> (<i>dzēru, dzēru</i>)	to drink

<i>tvert</i> (<i>tveru</i> , <i>tvēru</i>)	to grasp, seize
<i>spert</i> (<i>speru</i> , <i>spēru</i>)	to kick, tread
<i>burt</i> (<i>buru</i> , <i>būru</i>)	to conjure, practise magic
<i>apburt</i> (<i>-buru</i> , <i>-būru</i>)	to bewitch, enchant
<i>durt</i> (<i>duru</i> , <i>dūru</i>)	to stab, prick
<i>kurt</i> (<i>kuru</i> , <i>kūru</i>)	to make fire, to light
<i>šķirt</i> (<i>šķiru</i> , <i>šķīru</i>)	to separate, divide (trans.); to dissolve (marriage)
<i>irt</i> (<i>iru</i> , <i>īru</i>)	to row
<i>skart</i> (<i>skaru</i> , <i>skāru</i>)	to touch
<i>ragana</i>	witch
<i>sārts</i>	pyre, stake; bonfire

NOTES: An older verb *jemt*, conjugated in every respect like *ņemt*, is sometimes used in place of *ņemt*. The student should recognize this verb, but should not use it.

Verbs of seizing, like *ķert*, *saķert* and *tvert*, are often followed by *aiz* to denote the place of seizure:

Es viņu saķēru aiz rokas. I caught him by the arm.

Pie is also common: *Es viņu saķēru pie rokas.*

uz sārta 'at the stake'

Spert requires its object in the dative:

Viņš man spēra. He kicked me.

Note however *spert kāju* 'to set foot (in a place)'.
Noķert may be followed by the participle in *-am/-ām*:

Es viņu noķēru smēķējam. I caught him smoking.

The verb *irt* is now obsolescent, being usually replaced by *airēt* (*-ēju*, *-ēju*).

Exercise 125a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect:

- (a) *ņemt*; *ķert*; *burt*; *šķirt*; *skart*;
 (b) *iesākt*; *degt*; *aizbēgt*; *art*; *augt*;
 (c) *smelt*; *nopelt*; *kult*; *iezvelt*; *jumt*;
 (d) *strēbt*; *notēst*; *aplēst*;

- (e) *vērst*; *melst*; *lauzt*; *apgāzt*; *slēpt*;
 (f) *malt*; *stiept*; *apkopt*; *iekniebt*; *glābt*;
 (g) *lēkt*;
 (h) *nākt*;
 (i) *sasnēgt*; *pabeigt*; *aplēkt*; *zviegt*; *slaukt*.

Exercise 125b

Conjugate in the future the verbs listed in Ex. 125a, sections (d) and (e).

Exercise 125c

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 125a, sections (b), (d), (e) and (f).

Exercise 125d

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 125a, sections (b), (g), (h) and (i).

Exercise 125e

Distinguish between the conjugational patterns represented by sections (a) to (i) of Ex. 125a.

Exercise 125f

Translate into English:

1. Uzmaniību, šis zirgs sper!
2. Laiks un attālums tomēr nešķirs mūsu sirdis.
3. Kā jūs abi šo smago laivu irāt?
4. Ko jūs pēmat līdzī, kad jūs bēgāt?
5. Laulību šķīra, tāpēc ka vīrs bija aizbēdzis.
6. Tavi rupjie vārdi mani neskāra.
7. Cielava ķer mušas.
8. Ja es dzeru šnabi, man dedzina vēderā, ārsta kungs. – Tad nedzeriet!
9. Bende jau kūra sārta, lai sadedzinātu raganu, kura bija apbūrusi jaunā karaļa sirdi.
10. Viņa ir par jaunu, lai mācētu burt.

11. Draudze ar lielu uzmanību tvēra katru mācītāja vārdu.
12. Šo jautājumu mēs līdz šim vēl neesam skāruši.
13. Dzeriet, draugi! Es tūliņ atnesīšu vēl vienu pudeli.
14. Sargi tūlīt tvēra ieročus.
15. Vai jūs saņēmt manu vēstuli?
16. Cepsim gaļu uz vaļējas uguns!
17. Ko mēs darīsim ar visām tām zivīm, ko mēs noķērām?
18. Itāliju no Francijas šķir augsti kalni.
19. Govs nedod pienu – laikam kāda ragana to būs apbūrusi.
20. Neviens neir laivu tik ātri kā Jānis.
21. Šis ierēdnis kārtu iekšējās lietas, un otrs kārtu ārējās.
22. Šie zari briesmīgi dur, ja tie skar roku.
23. Cik raganu viduslaikos gan nesadedzināja uz sārta?
24. Neej laukā, kamēr pērkons tik briesmīgi rūc un zibeni sper!
25. Es mēģinu kurt sārtu.
26. Nesiet virtuvē visas zivis, ko jūs noķērāt!
27. Tveriet zagli!
28. Viņa bur velna vārdā.
29. Kāpēc jūs dūrāt ar nazi?
30. Mēs šo sievieti noķērām buram.
31. Suns mani tvēra aiz svārkiem.
32. Vai mežsargs saņem lielu algu?
33. Mēs drīz sāksim art.
34. Kāpēc jūs neņēmt asāko ēveli?
35. Zvejnieki ir laivu.
36. Vai tu tiešām kursi uguni šinī karstumā?
37. Viņas skaistums visus apbūra.
38. Negodīgais aptiekārs laikam ņer muļķus ar savām slavenajām zālēm.
39. Mēs saņemām ielūgumu uz kāzām.
40. Labāk ģērbiet šinī aukstumā silto mēteli!
41. Mati aug lēnām.
42. Es savu kāju tur vairs nesperšu.
43. Vakarejā svaigā vēsma atnesa veldzi pēc pēdējā karstuma viļņa.
44. Kad mēs pēdējā laikā sērsām uz laukiem, mēs tur redzējām kalpus kuļam un maļam.
45. Ugunsdzēsēji parādīja vienreizēju drosmi.
46. Godīgs cilvēks neviļ citus ļaudis.
47. Augšējo stāvu no apakšējā šķir biezi griesti.
48. Es nogriezišu šo zariņu.
49. Šovasar atkal jājumj jumts.
50. Dzelzs riteņi šķīla uguni uz akmeņainā ceļa.
51. Tuvējā krogū vīri smēla alu no mucām un dzēra.

52. Bērniem nav jāstrebj zupa.
53. Viduvējais rakstnieks arvien nopēla lielos drāmatikus.
54. Visi mūsu līdzšinējie aplēsumi ir nederīgi.
55. Cilvēkiem vidējos gados dzīvības apdrošināšana ir dārgāka.
56. Nav grūti aplēst, ka mums būs vienreizēja peļņa.
57. Mums būtu bijis jāizkāpj iepriekšējā stacijā.
58. Stum kasti, necel to!
59. Nenovērs uzmanību no ceļa!
60. Rožu krūmu galotnes bieži jānogriež.
61. Bitīte iedzēla karalim, kad viņš brauca vaļējā mašīnā.
62. Visi dēji jānoteš.
63. Šis krekls man berž kaklu.
64. Kas jums par īpatnēju dzīvi!

Exercise 125g

Translate into Latvian:

1. It is too warm to light the stove today.
2. The patient is drinking hot milk.
3. A high fence separates the hospital from the street.
4. I would not take a woman who drinks and practises magic.
5. We shall live together until death.
6. The cat is catching mice.
7. This sharp grass pricks my feet.
8. The police dog seized the thief by the right arm.
9. The witch must be burnt at the stake.
10. You know how to work magic, perhaps – the turbine is working (*strādāt*) again!
11. The high mountain touches the clouds.
12. Row faster, friends.
13. The wheels of the aircraft will soon touch the ground.
14. It is not difficult for a beautiful woman (dat.) to enchant rich men.
15. In Australia one is not permitted to light fires in summer.
16. We decided not to take the children with us.
17. Something in my stomach is pricking me.
18. We shall drink to your health. (Use *uz* and the acc.)
19. We are catching fish with a net.
20. Do these scientists receive aid from the government?
21. The performance completely enchanted the children.
22. Why did the horse kick? – Because that naughty boy seized it by the tail!
23. The executioner ordered the witch to climb on to the stake.

24. Why are we rowing so slowly?
25. Did you catch many big fish?
26. We insure people against illness, and while you are ill, you receive thirty dollars a week.
27. You will never catch the man who deceived you.
28. This fruit does not grow in our country.
29. The government cannot decide what to do.
30. At the present time the garden is thriving.
31. If you turn the car around quickly, we shall not lose much time.
32. Direct your attention to the teacher!

LESSON 126

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: UNCHANGED TYPE:
LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

In the previous lesson we studied verbs which presented the contrast of a long vowel in the imperfect against short vowels in the present and infinitive. In this lesson we shall consider verbs which contrast short vowels in the infinitive and imperfect with a long vowel in the present.

klupt 'to stumble'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es klūpu</i>	<i>es klupu</i>	—
<i>tu klūpi</i>	<i>tu klupi</i>	<i>klūpi!</i>
<i>viņš klūp</i>	<i>viņš klupa</i>	<i>lai klūp!</i>
<i>mēs klūpam</i>	<i>mēs klupām</i>	<i>klupsim!</i>
<i>jūs klūpat</i>	<i>jūs klupāt</i>	<i>klūpiet!</i>
<i>viņi klūp</i>	<i>viņi klupa</i>	<i>lai klūp!</i>

Future: *es klupšu, tu klupsi, viņš klups*, etc.

Conditional: *es kluptu, tu kluptu, viņš kluptu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāklūp, man bija jāklūp*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *klupis, klupuši; klupusi, klupušas*.

It will be observed that these verbs have the *-i* ending for the second person singular present and imperative. However, if the stem of the verb ends in *k* or *g*, then the *-i* is not found, and palatalization will be found in the second person

singular present and imperative, the second person plural imperative, and the past participle active masculine singular. Cf.

patikt 'to please'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es patīku</i>	<i>es patiku</i>	—
<i>tu patīc</i>	<i>tu patiki</i>	<i>patīc!</i>
<i>viņš patīk</i>	<i>viņš patika</i>	<i>lai patīk!</i>
<i>mēs patīkam</i>	<i>mēs patikām</i>	<i>patīksim!</i>
<i>jūs patīkat</i>	<i>jūs patikāt</i>	<i>patīciet!</i>
<i>viņi patīk</i>	<i>viņi patika</i>	<i>lai patīk!</i>

Future: *es patīkšu, tu patīksi, viņš patīks*, etc.

Conditional: *es patīktu, tu patīktu, viņš patīktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāpatīk, man bija jāpatīk*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *paticis, patikuši; patikusi, patikušas*.

Verbs which present a contrastive long vowel in the present tense, and have stems ending in other than *k* and *g*, will have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>patikt</i> (-tīku, -tiku)	to please
<i>apnikt</i> (-nlku, -niku)	to become tedious
<i>lipt</i> (līpu, lipu)	to stick (intrans.)
<i>plukt</i> (plūk, pluka)	to fade (of cloth, etc.)
<i>sarukt</i> (-rūku, -ruku)	to shrink, diminish, shrivel up
<i>drupt</i> (drūpu, drupu)	to crumble
<i>klupt</i> (klūpu, klupu)	to stumble, trip up (intrans.)
<i>mukt</i> (mūku, muku)	to flee
<i>izsprukt</i> (-sprūku, -spruku)	to get away, to get free
<i>brukt</i> (brūku, bruku)	to fall down; to fade (of paint, etc.)
<i>sabrukt</i> (-brūku, -bruku)	to collapse
<i>uzbrukt</i> (-brūku, -bruku)	to attack
<i>jukt</i> (jūk, juka)	to become confused
<i>šjukt</i> (šjūku, šjuku)	to slip, glide, slide

NOTES: *Patikt* is very often used with the dative to translate the English 'to like':

Man patīk rozēs.

I like roses.

Tas man apnicis.

I am sick and tired of it.

Lipt is normally construed with *pie* 'to stick to'.

Izsprukt normally has a dative of the person escaped from:

Viņš man izspruka. He got away from me.

Jukt is used only in the third person, with the dative of the person confused, and the nominative of the thing or things confused:

Man bieži jūk skaitļi. I often get figures confused.

durt zivis 'to spear fish'

brukt virsū (with dative) 'to fall upon, to attack'

brukt kopā 'to collapse, cave in'

brukt zemē 'to fall down' (of clothing, etc.)

klupt virsū (with dative) 'to fall on'

Exercise 126a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *patīkt*; *mukt*; *uzbrukt*; *ņemt*; *apburt*; *šķirt*; *iesākt*; *art*; *cept*; *notēst*; *nākt*; *lēkt*; *saukt*.

Exercise 126b

Give the past participle active and imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 126a.

Exercise 126c

Translate into English:

1. Vai tev nav apnicis katru dienu dzert šņabi?
2. Vai jūs šīs zivis noķērāt ar tīklu? – Nē, mēs tās dūrām.
3. Medus līp pie pirkstiem.
4. Zirgiem klupa kājas uz ledus.
5. Vai viņš ir jucis, ka viņš man sper?
6. Muksim, lauva tūliņ bruks mums virsū!
7. Sniegs saruka un šļuka lejā pa jumtu.
8. Drēbe ir stipri plukusi. — Tas nevar būt, šī drēbe neplūk!
9. Augļi karstajā saulē ir sarukuši.
10. Tu viņai patīc. – Tas var būt, bet viņa man nepatīk.
11. Zaglis mēģināja mukt, bet policists klupa viņam virsū.
12. Šoreiz šis nelietis mums neizspruks.

13. Zinātniekam no visām pusēm bruka virsū ar jautājumiem.
14. Kad viņš tvēra smago āmuru, tas viņam šļuka no rokas laukā.
15. Mūc prom! Ja tu nemuksi, tevi apcietinās. – Nē, man jau apnicis mūžam mukt no policijas.
16. Kāpēc jūs lietojāt šo nejauko izteicienu? – Piedodiet, tas man tā izspruka.
17. Viņš īra laivu tik ātri, ka tuvu pie mērķa viņš sabruka.
18. Kāpēc mēs neuzbrukām ienaidniekam naktī?
19. Man jūsu dzimšanas dienas vienmēr jūk.
20. Ātri, ķeriet viņu, viņš mūk!
21. Māli lipa mums pie kājām.
22. Viņai seja ir sarukusi kā vecs ābols.
23. Zirgs bija izsprucis no aploka.
24. Vācija sabruka tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit piektajā gadā.
25. Kad ragana kāpa uz sārta, viņa klupa.
26. Siltajā pavasara saulē sniegs ātri saruka.
27. Kāpēc šī pastmarka nelīp pie aploksnēs?
28. Kad Juris uzbruka Aivaram, Miķelis viņus šķīra.
29. Viņai patīk apburt zēnus.
30. Ienaidniekiem bailēs šļuka ieroči no rokām, kad mēs viņiem uzbrukām.
31. Veci nami brūk.
32. Kino zvaigznei neapnik saņemt mīlestības vēstules no pilnīgi svešiem cilvēkiem.
33. Ņem sausu malku, ja tu gribi kurt uguni!
34. Māja drīz sabruks.
35. Pārdevējam šodien juka cenas.
36. Viņa bur, un tāpēc viņa ir ragana.
37. Tur lēni mana dzīve drūp. (Rainis)
38. Lielās dusmās puisis saplēsa grāmatu.
39. Lai ienaidnieki dreb, jo viņi mums neizspruks!
40. Jautā viņa sievai, kur viņš slēpj visu savu naudu!
41. "Lai dzīvo mani gudrie krustdēli un krustmeitas!" teica vecā krustmāte.
42. Saule lec austrumos un noriet rietumos.
43. Kad mēs vakar gājām gar upmalu, mēs tur dzirdējām kādu svilpojam.
44. Nogriez drusku maizes!
45. Šur un tur ceļmalā auga lauku puķes.
46. Sausa maize drūp.
47. Piedāvāriet viņiem vēl glāzi vīna!
48. Vai tev nav apnicis rakstīt visu tulkojumu ar spalvu un tinti?
49. Vai kāda draudzene tevi ir pievilusi?
50. Vai šī blūze pluks, ja to mazgās?
51. Cieti akmeņi nedrūp.

Exercise 126d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did he slip away from you? – Yes, he fled.
2. The old fence has collapsed.
3. I am tired of burning these old papers.
4. The teacher was still confusing our names.
5. The shirt is sticking to his back.
6. The cloth has faded and shrunk.
7. I like ploughing.
8. I had hold of a big fish, but it slipped out of my hands.
9. What would the guards do if he escaped?
10. The old man stumbled, and then he collapsed. Let's carry him inside.
11. How did he get away from you?
12. Woollen socks shrink in hot water.
13. The enemy attacked before sunrise.
14. You will trip and break your neck!
15. Don't you get fed up with baking bread all night? – No, I like this work.
16. Have you gone mad? Do you really intend to swim in this horrible cold?
17. This cloth will not fade.
18. The knife is slipping from his fingers.
19. Thunder is beginning to roar in the distance, and people are already deserting (*mukt*) the beach.
20. You must have slipped away when the enemy attacked, you great hero!
– No, I did not flee!
21. The paint sticks to your hands.
22. If these bushes don't grow, the gardener will burn them.
23. How ever did you get away from school so early?
24. Where are the carrots that the merchant brought from town?
25. The town is burning on all sides.
26. Do you like pork and lettuce?
27. The hospital is five hundred metres from the cross-roads.
28. I can't pay in cash: I shall send you a cheque.
29. These trousers are too expensive: please show me some others.

LESSON 127

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: UNCHANGED TYPE:
LONG VOWEL IN PRESENT (IRREGULAR)

Some verbs, while behaving in general like *patikt* and *kļūpt* of the previous lesson, lengthen *i* to *ie* rather than to *l*: these are verbs with irregular present lengthening. Such verbs do not have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative, and, because of the *k* or *g* of the stem there will be palatalization in the second person singular present and imperative, the second person plural imperative and in the masculine singular form of the past participle active. Cf.

likt 'to put'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es lieku</i>	<i>es liku</i>	–
<i>tu liec</i>	<i>tu liki</i>	<i>liec!</i>
<i>viņš liek</i>	<i>viņš lika</i>	<i>lai liek!</i>
<i>mēs liekam</i>	<i>mēs likām</i>	<i>liksim!</i>
<i>jūs liekat</i>	<i>jūs likāt</i>	<i>lieciet!</i>
<i>viņi liek</i>	<i>viņi lika</i>	<i>lai liek!</i>

Future: *es likšu, tu liksi, viņš tiks, etc.*

Conditional: *es liktu, tu liktu, viņš liktu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāliek, man bija jāliek, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *licis, likuši; likusi, likušas.*

Vocabulary

<i>likt</i> (<i>lieku, liku</i>)	to put; to order, tell
<i>tikt</i> (<i>tieku, tiku</i>)	to get (intrans.)
<i>iemigt</i> (<i>iemiegu, iemigu</i>)	to fall asleep
<i>stigt</i> (<i>stiegu, stigu</i>)	to sink in (intrans.)
<i>iestigt</i> (<i>-stiegu, -stigu</i>)	to sink in (intrans.)
<i>snigt</i> (<i>snieg, sniga</i>)	to snow
<i>palikt</i> (<i>-lieku, -liku</i>)	to remain; (<i>occ.</i> to become + adj.)
<i>notikt</i> (<i>-tiek, -tika</i>)	to happen

NOTES: *Likt* meaning 'to order, to tell' has a dative of the person:

Es liku viņam strādāt.

I told him to work.

Stigt and *iestigt* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 127a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *likt; iemigt; notikt; tikt; mukt; klupt; dzert; ņemt; atnest; augt; pievilt; stumt; aplēst; novērst; strēbt; uzpost; kalt; lēkt; nākt; kliegt; sūkt.*

Exercise 127b

Conjugate the verbs listed in Ex. 127a in the conditional perfect.

Exercise 127c

Translate into Latvian: at 4:30; at 7:15; at 10:25; at 3:58; on the 3rd of March, 1928; on the 14th of February, 1935; on the 29th of August, 1837; after the 14th of July, 1789.

Exercise 127d

Translate into English:

1. Naktī sāka snigt.
2. Viņš netiks tālu, jo viņam kājas stieg dubļos.
3. Mēs bijām iestiguši tuksneša smiltīs līdz ceļiem.
4. Ja naktī būtu snidzis, mēs nebūtu tikuši ar mašīnu tālāk.
5. Neliec šo drēbi karstā ūdenī, tā pluks un saruks!
6. Es vakaros ātri iemiegu.
7. Ārā pašlaik snieg.
8. Kad mēs mukām, mēs klupām pa akmeņiem, un sniegs mums lipa pie kurpēm.
9. Kad mēs braucām pa dubļiem, mašīnas riteņi iestiga zemē.
10. Sniegputenis bija aizputinājis ceļu, un mēs netikām tālāk.
11. Ko tu liec man uz šķīvja, meit?
12. Kad sargi būs iemiguši, mēs izspruksim, vai ne?
13. Zemestrīces laikā skursteņi sabruka, bet nami tomēr nesabruka.
14. Slimnieks iemiga ap desmitiem.
15. Viņš iestiga dziļāk un dziļāk parādos.
16. Ja kājas nestigtu mālos, būtu vieglāk art.
17. Lieciet pudeli galdā, viesmīl!
18. Cik tālu tu tiksi ar simt dolariem kabatā?
19. Man nepatīk, ka tu cilvēkiem vienmēr uzbrūc ar asiem vārdiem.

20. Zirgs iestiga sniegā līdz vēderam.
21. Man ir apnicis skaitīt, skaitīji jau jūk.
22. Skolotājs lika zēnam rakstīt simt reižu: "Es nedrīkstu plāpāt."
23. Kāpēc tu liec bērnam melot?
24. Priekšnieks lika mums strādāt tanī nodaļā.
25. Vai tu tiešām gribi palikt ubags?
26. Es nemaz nezīnu, kas šeit ir noticis.
27. Man ir apnicis dzīvot uz laukiem, tur nekad nekas svarīgs nenotiek.
28. Cik ilgi sargiem jāpaliek pie durvīm?
29. Ja es pēkšņi paliktu bagāts, es ceļotu pa visām zemēm Eiropā un Āzijā.
30. Šonedēļ Cēsis būs lielas sporta sacīkstes.
31. Negludini manu jauno vesti ar veco gludekli!
32. Lai gan mēs pārdodam daudz noveļu un romānu, mums tomēr ir tikai maza peļņa.
33. Starp launagu un vakariņām mēs mēdzām strādāt dārzā.
34. Šinī viesnīcā dod pusdienas ceturksni pirms vieniem.
35. Kāpēc autobuss šovakar nepieturēja pie šīs pieturas?
36. Vecajā mūzejā ir daudz garu un tumšu gaiteņu.
37. Kāpēc modinātājs ir guļamistabā uz grīdas?
38. Pēc brokastīm Annai bija jābaro zosis.
39. Viņi varbūt ir krietni cilvēki, bet viņiem nav ne mazākās jēgas, kā jāaudzina bērni.
40. Man viss šlūk no rokām ārā.
41. Ienaidnieks iznīcināja ceturtdaļu mūsu flotes.
42. Tas sliņķis arvien tēlo muļķi visas klases priekšā.
43. Telegrammu no Kurzemes, Vidzemes vai Latgales var saņemt dažās sekundēs.
44. Cik ilgi jūs jau studējat arhitektūras fakultātē? – Divdesmit trīs gadus!

Exercise 127e

Translate into Latvian:

1. If somebody told you to jump from the tenth storey, would you jump? – No! – But because your fool of a friend told you to drink, you drink!
2. Let us row faster, otherwise we shall not get to (*līdz*) the island.
3. Who told you to stick a knife into the sugar-bag?
4. The executioner is already lighting the stake; this witch will never again practise magic!
5. Soon the children will have fallen asleep.
6. How long has it been snowing?

7. The farm animals jumped and kicked, but their legs sank deeper and deeper into the mud.
8. Good Lord, how my feet are sinking into the snow!
9. Let everyone put a dollar on the table.
10. Why don't you take a cigarette if one is offered you?
11. They did not get far; the guards caught them after ten kilometres.
12. They (f.) had already fallen asleep.
13. The letter she received touched her deeply.
14. In Italy marriages are not dissolved.
15. Is she still trying to catch a husband? – Yes, she is reading that famous book "How to enchant people!"
16. Do you want to sink deeper into debt? (Use the plural)
17. I believe in that which I can grasp with my hands.
18. She remained three days in the forest without shelter.
19. I don't know what happened while Michael was nailing the bookshelf, but I know that he is now in hospital.
20. This wood becomes smooth only if you plane it for a long time.
21. When the bus driver saw what had happened, he immediately stopped the bus and telephoned the police.
22. The schoolboy had to prepare his home-work.
23. He hasn't lost his passport; he is lying from beginning to end.
24. This city has more than a million inhabitants.
25. The address and surname must be written clearly in ink.
26. The meals in this restaurant are especially good.
27. How can I peel this lemon without a knife? – Use your fingers!
28. Fill up the glasses, waiter!
29. There are no trams in this city, only buses.
30. You fill my life with joy.
31. Polish the kettle until it is shiny.
32. What is natural is not always good.
33. Many diseases threaten soldiers at the front.
34. Don't break these expensive clay pots!
35. If we could alter nature, we would perhaps be happier.

LESSON 128

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: UNCHANGED TYPE:
SHORT VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

Some verbs of the Unchanged Type present a short vowel in the present tense which contrasts with long vowels in the infinitive and imperfect. These verbs all have stems in *-rt* and were formerly conjugated in the Semipalatalized Type.

Those with *e* as a root vowel retain the alternation pattern of the Semipalatalized Type, as do verbs like *dzert*. Cf. the following paradigms.

bārt 'to scold'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es baru</i>	<i>es bāru</i>	–
<i>tu bar</i>	<i>tu bāri</i>	<i>bar!</i>
<i>viņš bar</i>	<i>viņš bāra</i>	<i>lai bar!</i>
<i>mēs baram</i>	<i>mēs bārām</i>	<i>bārsim!</i>
<i>jūs barat</i>	<i>jūs bārāt</i>	<i>bariet!</i>
<i>viņi bar</i>	<i>viņi bāra</i>	<i>lai bar!</i>

Future: *es bāršu, tu bārsi, viņš bārs, etc.*

Conditional: *es bārtu, tu bārtu, viņš bārtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jābar, man bija jābar, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *bāris, bāruši; bārusi, bārušas.*

Formerly the present tense was conjugated: *baŗu, bar, baŗ, baŗam, baŗat, baŗ*, and these forms will still be found in older texts.

atvērt 'to open'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es atvēru</i>	<i>es atvēru</i>	–
<i>tu atvēr</i>	<i>tu atvēri</i>	<i>atvēr!</i>
<i>viņš atvēr</i>	<i>viņš atvēra</i>	<i>lai atvēr!</i>
<i>mēs atvēram</i>	<i>mēs atvērām</i>	<i>atvērsim!</i>
<i>jūs atvērat</i>	<i>jūs atvērāt</i>	<i>atvēriet!</i>
<i>viņi atvēr</i>	<i>viņi atvēra</i>	<i>lai atvēr!</i>

Future: *es atvēršu, tu atvērsi, viņš atvērs, etc.*

Conditional: *es atvērtu, tu atvērtu, viņš atvērtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāatver, man bija jāatver, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *atvēris, atvēruši; atvērusi, atvērušas.*

The former conjugation *atveru, atver, atver, etc.* will still be found.

There is no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>bērt (bēru, bēru)</i>	to scatter, strew, pour (in)
<i>svērt (svēru, svēru)</i>	to weigh
<i>pērt (pēru, pēru)</i>	to whip, spank, beat
<i>atvērt (-vēru, -vēru)</i>	to open (trans.)
<i>aizvērt (-vēru, -vēru)</i>	to shut, close (trans.)
<i>uzkārt (-karu, -kāru)</i>	to hang up (trans.)
<i>bārt (baru, būru)</i>	to scold, growl at
<i>svars</i>	weight; importance
<i>svari (pl.)</i>	scales

NOTE: *no svara* 'of importance'

Exercise 128a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *uzkārt; atvērt; svērt; bērt; palikt; iestigt; izsprukt; sabrukt; spert; cept; iesākt; šķelt; jumt; notēst; melst; apkopt; nolēkt; pārnākt; aizbraukt.*

Exercise 128b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 128a.

Exercise 128c

Give in Latvian the names of the days and the months.

Exercise 128d

Decline in the masculine and feminine, singular and plural: *šis; tas.*

Exercise 128e

Translate into English:

- Liec zivis uz svariem, tad mēs redzēsīm, cik tās sver!
- Tas nav no svara!
- Pērn es vēl svēru septiņdesmit astoņus kilogramus, bet tagad es sveru tikai septiņdesmit divus kilogramus.
- Ja es tevi nebūtu pēris, kad tu biji mazs zēns, tu tagad būtu nekrietns cilvēks.
- Manai sievai ir bail kāpt uz svariem.
- Vai skolotājs tevi bāra?
- Viņš stieg dziļāk dubļos.
- Kad kafijas cenas pasaules tirgū bija par zemām, lai kaut ko nopelnītu, Dienvidamerikā bēra kafiju jūrā.
- Kāpēc tu neuzkar savas bikses un svārkus?
- Cikos šeit atver veikalus?
- Aizver actiņas un smaidi!
- Šogad maijā vēl sniga.
- Tēvs mūs reti pēra, bet viņš mūs bieži bāra.
- Uz šiem svariem var svērt tikai līdz pieciem kilogramiem.
- Mēs beram cukuru maisos.
- Kurā vietā tu uzkāri gleznu?
- Viņš aizvēra acis un tūlīņ iemīga.
- Kas tev lika aizvērt durvis?
- Kāpēc tu ber miltus mērcē?
- Anna atvēra acis un smaidīja.
- Man būtu jāaizver durvis.
- Betona tiltam ir milzīgs svars.
- Saimnieks noķēra kalpu peram ganu.
- Uzkārsim jaunos aizkarus!
- Kāpēc tu bar nabaga bārenīti?
- Paliec šeit, kaut kas var notikt!
- Dzīvokļu cenas mūsu pilsētā bija tik augstas, ka mēs nolēmām iet dzīvot citur.
- Mūsu vietējie mākslinieki ir tikai viduvēji.
- Ārsts man aizliedz pipēt un dzert.
- Mežs deg, ko mēs darīsim? – Bēgsim prom!
- Pēc izrādes aktieri un aktrises saņēma daudz skaistu ziedu.
- Bēgsim no plūdiem!
- Viņu dārzā aug īpatnēji stādi.
- Runā, ko gribi, tas mani neskar!
- Ārējās sienas ir biežākas par iekšējām.

36. Pēdējā laikā es vairs nedzeru šņabi.
37. Maiznieks cepa rudzu maizi katru dienu.
38. Tagad tikai viena problēma mūs šķir no mērķa.
39. Mums būs jāimportē turbīnas.
40. Es pēdējā laikā esmu zaudējis svaru.

Exercise 128f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am tired of scolding you.
2. Does one word which slipped out really matter? (*no svara*)
3. You have lost weight.
4. Mummy, Jack is throwing sand in my eyes! – Stop it, Jack, or I shall beat you!
5. The merchant cheats people with short (*nepilnīgs*) weight.
6. Put the box on the scales.
7. I cannot open my eyes.
8. The farm-labourers are pouring rye into bags.
9. Which weighs more, a pound of gold or a pound of feathers?
10. Don't dip the blouses in the hot water; the material will shrink and the dye will fade.
11. You will not escape, puppy, for I have closed all the doors.
12. Why don't you scold the naughty children?
13. Mother was beating the naughty child.
14. Why don't you hang the picture where you please?
15. When the retailer was closing the door, two men attacked him.
16. Our feet sank into the mud.
17. What are you weighing on the scales?
18. The mayor had not gone mad; he opened the town gate to the enemy on purpose.
19. This sharp grass pricks your feet.
20. The former chief had accomplished nothing.
21. All the previous governments had tried without success to solve the problem.
22. Can you hear the drunkards singing in the near-by tavern?
23. Take what you like!

LESSON 129

ADVERBIAL NOUNS OF PLACE

In English we often use compound adverbs made up of a preposition and an adverb, as for example, 'from there', 'to here', 'from somewhere else', 'from afar', etc.

Such combinations of preposition and adverb of place are not permitted in Latvian, which substitutes for the adverb a cognate noun, capable of the inflection demanded by the preposition. These adverbial nouns of place end in *-iene*: cf. **kuriene*, **tāliene*, **šejiene*, etc. The asterisk (*) denotes that these words are not actually found in the nominative, but exist only in the oblique cases, governed by prepositions. We give them here in the nominative purely for convenience.

Note carefully the use of these adverbial nouns of place:

No kurienes *viņa nāk*?

From where does she come? or:

Where does she come *from*?

Līdz šejienei *var braukt ar mašīnu*.

Up to here you can travel by car.

No tālienes *mēs jau dzirdējām jūsu balsis*.

We heard your voices *from afar*.

Vocabulary

<i>*kuriene</i>	where
<i>*turiene</i>	there
<i>*tāliene</i>	afar
<i>*šejiene</i>	here
<i>*cituriene</i>	somewhere else
<i>*visuriene</i> (rare)	everywhere
<i>jēb</i>	or
<i>trēpes</i> (pl.)	stairs
<i>kāpnes</i> (pl.)	stairs, ladder
<i>nopietns</i>	serious

NOTES: *Jeb* stands between two synonymous nouns:

trepes jeb kāpnes

whereas *vai* stands between two non-synonymous nouns:

Francija vai Vācija.

Exercise 129a

Translate into English: *uz kurieni; no turienes; līdz šejieni; uz tālieni; no citurienes; no visurienes.*

Exercise 129b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *bārt; aizvērt; pērt; notikt; iemigt; uzbrukt; patikt; tvert; sākt; augt; iezvelt; nolemt; iestrēbt; grebt; piekrāpt; panākt; uzlēkt; krākt.*

Exercise 129c

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 129b.

Exercise 129d

Decline in the singular and plural: *mūzejs; dzejolis; akmens; tirgus; gov; galotne; sala.*

Exercise 129e

Translate into English:

1. Pārdevēj, kā no šejienes var tikt uz mēbeļu nodaļu? – Jūs tiksit uz turieni pa šīm kāpnēm.
2. Vai viņš tiešām brauc uz turieni, vai uz citurieni, to viņš neteica.
3. Mēs jau no tālienes dzirdējām saimnieci barām meitas.
4. Kad šeit bija sporta sacikstes, ļaudis atbrauca no visām malām uz šejieni.
5. Šīs kāpnes ir par vieglām tavam svaram.
6. No kurienes šos modernos svarus importē? – No Zviedrijas.

7. Līdz kurienei iet šis vilciens?
8. Lielais jeb Klusais okeans ir starp Ameriku un Austrāliju. (*Lielais okeans* and *Klusais okeans* are synonyms for the *Pacific Ocean*.)
9. No šejienes var redzēt kalnus.
10. Var sacīt: "piecpadsmit pirms sešiem" jeb "bez piecpadsmit seši".
11. Tās ir trepes jeb kāpnes.
12. No kurienes tu esi? – Es esmu no Zemgales. – Cik jauki! Es arī esmu no turienes.
13. Viņam vienmēr ir nopietna seja; viņš nekad nesmaida.
14. Ja tu bērsi sāli vannā, māte tevī pērs.
15. Jau no tālienes viņš mūs laipni sveicināja.
16. Šis vilciens brauc uz citurieni.
17. Es nelasu nopietnus romānus.
18. Jau no tālienes mēs redzējām tīklus, ko zvejnieki bija uzkāruši jūrmalā.
19. Studenti sēdēja uz platajām universitātes trepēm.
20. Ienaidnieks uzbruka no visām pusēm.
21. Cik kilogramu jūs sverat?
22. Viņš nav no Ķemeriem, viņam jābūt no citurienes.
23. Viņš nesen aizgāja ar darba rīkiem: viņš laikam būs nodarbināts visu pēcpusdienu.
24. Nenovērsiet uzmanību no profesora!
25. Tai vakarā bija svaiga vēsma, kas atnesa veldzi pēc karstuma viņa.
26. Šopavasār oazē zeļ zāle.
27. Bites un čūskas dzeļ, tāpēc no tām jāmūk.
28. Vasarā mēdz gērbt plānas drēbes.
29. Šoruden mēs arsim tikai astoņus laukus.
30. Mēs kalām tik stipri, ka dzelzs šķīla uguni.
31. Cikos jūs izdzēsīsīt uguni?
32. Šoruden mēs nekulsim rudzus, tikai miežus.
33. Vai tu visas meitenes tā vil kā Baibu?
34. Viņš pats nekad nekā nevar aplēst, bet nopeļ visu citu aplēsumus.
35. Ar šo nazi es nevaru griezt, iedod man asāku nazi!
36. Ja mēs šeit izkāptu, kā mēs varētu tikt tālāk?
37. Viņš grebj traukus no koka.
38. Ūdens pil caur griestiem: mums būs atkal jājumj jumts.
39. Kucēns ir saplēsis jauno avīzi.

Exercise 129f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The drunkard had fallen asleep on the stairs.
2. How can we get from here to there? – Only by bus.
3. The ladder is too narrow.
4. How far does this train go?
5. Where do you export your products to?
6. That is a serious problem.
7. We couldn't stay here, we had to go somewhere else.
8. From far away the firemen's ladder could already be seen.
9. After the earthquake and the flood, people came here from everywhere seeking shelter.
10. Finally he became serious when I told him of his mother's illness.
11. What happened when the stairs collapsed?
12. The castle can be seen from afar.
13. The wheels are sinking into the sand. – How deep have they already sunk?
14. Where shall I put all that firewood?
15. How long has it been snowing?
16. Who told you to go up there?
17. One can say *vienmēr* or *arvien*.
18. Let's drive somewhere else.
19. From now on you must tidy the flat more often.
20. The fishermen were scooping water from the boat in buckets.
21. The day after tomorrow we have to spin some cotton.
22. If you upset the bookshelf, I shall spank you.
23. Don't lift the keg, roll it!
24. You must square the ends of the plank.
25. If you direct your attention to the spring, you will see that the water is quite clear.
26. This shirt rubs against my neck.
27. You will not be respected if you deceive people.
28. I am ashamed to tell you where he pinched me.
29. Rats have been gnawing the floor-boards.
30. It is so cold; I shall not take my coat off.
31. You cannot dress your son in such dirty clothes.
32. Be careful, the fat is hot!
33. He grabs everything he sees.
34. At that moment the thunder suddenly roared.
35. In those days there were no banks to rob.
36. I don't know where she is at this moment.

LESSON 130

KAUT

The word *kaut* is equivalent to the word 'some' in the English expressions 'somewhere', 'someone', 'some time', 'somehow', 'something', etc. That is to say that it is often used with adverbs, adjectives or pronouns to form indefinites. Cf.

<i>kur</i>	where	<i>kaut kur</i>	somewhere, anywhere
<i>kad</i>	when	<i>kaut kad</i>	at some time, at any time
<i>kas</i>	what	<i>kaut kas</i>	something, anything
<i>kā</i>	how	<i>kaut kā</i>	somehow, anyhow
<i>kāds</i>	some (or other)	<i>kaut kāds</i>	some (or other)
<i>kurš</i>	who	<i>kaut kurš</i>	anybody (pejorative)

Kaut is also used as a conjunction introducing clauses of desire, and is equivalent to the English 'would that', 'oh that', or 'if only'.

Kaut es būtu bagāts!

Oh, that I were rich!
Would that I were rich!
If only I were rich!
Oh, to be rich!
I wish I were rich!

Kaut viņa man to būtu pateikusi!

Oh, that she had told me!
Would that she had told me!
If only she had told me!
I wish she had told me!

Notice particularly that *kaut* as a conjunction is construed with a following conditional or conditional perfect.

Vocabulary

Learn the *kaut* combinations given above, as well as the meaning and use of the conjunction *kaut*.

<i>kaut drusku</i>	even a little
<i>kaut cik</i>	even a little
<i>kaut *kuriene</i>	somewhere, anywhere

NOTES: *Kaut *kuriene* is the adverbial noun of place corresponding to the adverb *kaut kur*.

Exercise 130a

Translate into English:

1. *Kaut es tevi būtu redzējusi!*
2. *Kaut Baiba mani mīlētu!*
3. *Kaut kāpnes būtu bijušas stiprākas!*
4. *Kaut tā bagātā sieviete būtu arī skaista!*
5. *Kaut alus un vīns būtu tik lēti kā ūdens!*

Exercise 130b

Translate into Latvian:

1. If only I didn't have to work!
2. I wish you had come earlier!
3. Would that money grew on trees!
4. If only you had not put the soap on the floor!
5. Oh, that spring were here!
6. Oh, to be in England!

Exercise 130c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *uzkārt; lipt; art; slēpt; iezvelt; ņemt; tikt; melst; degt; durt; patikt; svērt; aplēst; jūmt; iemigt; nākt; grebt; lēkt; strēbt; palikt; apsegt.*

Exercise 130d

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 130c.

Exercise 130e

Classify the verbs given in Ex. 130c into their conjugational types.

Exercise 130f

Decline in the singular and plural: *suns; kuģis; puķe; oaze; aste; mute; balss; zoss; krāsns.*

Decline in the plural only: *ļaudis; Cēsts.*

Exercise 130g

Translate into English:

1. No kaut kurienes nāk dūmi.
2. Kaut man būtu spārni! Tad es lidotu uz turieni, kur mūžam ir pavasaris.
3. Kaspijas jūra jeb ezers (= *Caspian Sea*) ir pasaules lielākais ezers.
4. Ja viņš kaut drusku gādātu par savu ģimeni, es nekā neteiktu. – Kaut cik jau viņš to atbalsta!
5. Augļu kokiem ir kaut kāda nopietna slimība, jo augļi šoruden ir sarukuši.
6. Kaut kur man bija tramvaja biļete.
7. Kaut gan Artūrs nebija bijis čakls, viņš tomēr pārbaudījumu kaut kā izturēja.
8. Šoreiz mēs brauksim uz citurieni.
9. Ja Aivars Baibu kaut drusku mīlētu, viņš nebūtu tik rupjš pret viņu.
10. Šeit kaut kad bija koka kāpnes.
11. Vai tu esi kaut kur redzējis manu cepuri?
12. Es zinu, ka viņš ir slīms, kaut gan es neesmu ārsts.
13. Vai tev ir kaut kāda jēga par motoriem un turbīnām?
14. Kaut es būtu tavs tēvs! Es tagad tevi pērtu.
15. Kaut kā jau mēs tās klavieres dabūsim augšā pa šīm trepēm.
16. Vai jums kaut kad ir bijis garais klepus?
17. Te kaut kurš māk dziedāt tā kā šie slavenie mākslinieki, kas tagad nopelna miljonus dolāru ar savām skaņu platēm.
18. Vai tu jau māki kaut cik runāt latviski?
19. Viņš aizbrauca uz kaut kurieni Vidzemē.
20. Divi veci kungi staigā pa ielu. Abiem ir apmēram astoņdesmit gadu. Viņi ierauga skaistu jaunu meiteni, un viens no viņiem saka: "Kaut es tagad būtu desmit gadus jaunāks!"
21. Vai starp jums ir kāds, kas kaut kad ir bijis Āfrikā?
22. Kaut kur deg.
23. No tālienes dzirdēja kļiedzienu.
24. Kaut gan jūs runājāt angļiski, es tūlīt zināju, no kurienes jūs esat.
25. Kaut kurš no mums māk kaut kā dejot.
26. Vilciens nāk no kaut kurienes, kur ir snidzis, jo uz vagonu jumtiem ir sniegs.
27. Aizdod man kaut drusku naudas!
28. Vai tu māki kaut cik zīmēt?
29. Briesmīgajā negaisā jūra bangoja, un zeme trīcēja.
30. Lauva ir plēsoņa, un tam ir briesmīgs spēks.
31. Mēs sāksim reizē irt: redzēsim, kurš pirmais sasniegs mērķi!
32. Kurp tu ej? – Mājup!

33. Ūdens tek lejup.
34. Resniem cilvēkiem ir grūti kāpt kalnup.
35. Lai apskatītu pasaules vistievāko vīru, jāmaksā tikai pieci centi par biļeti.
36. Sīktirgotājiem vajaga daudz sīknaudas.
37. Tā nav mūzika, tas ir tikai briesmīgs troksnis!

Exercise 130h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Although you weigh eighty-five kilogrammes, that is still not a great weight.
2. She hung the towel somewhere in the bathroom.
3. We shall pay off the debt somehow.
4. Have you ever been in Spain?
5. Any student knows that if you work just a little, you can pass examinations.
6. If only you had closed the door when that scoundrel came!
7. Oh that I had beaten you when you were young!
8. If at least he supported his parents a little, I would not say a word.
9. Any school-girl knows that witches do not exist; they were all burnt in the Middle Ages.
10. Have you ever thought about life insurance?
11. The thieves must somehow have opened the safe (= *naudas skapis*).
12. The headmaster is somewhere in the vicinity.
13. He drove off to some place in Latgale.
14. Although he is very old, he can still care for himself a bit.
15. If at least you had scolded your daughter a little when she came home so late from the ball!
16. The twelve months of the year are January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November and December.
17. Spiders were running about hither and thither on the carpet.
18. Some birds have long beaks and can injure people.
19. Henceforth workers in industry will receive higher wages.
20. We are waiting here for a special bus.
21. Multiply 2,365 by 8,091.
22. We cannot fish here; the waves are too high.
23. The government is planning a new power-station, not far from the old one.

LESSON 131

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: DENTAL TYPE: UNVOICED

A number of Short Conjugation verbs have a dental consonant (*t* or *d*) throughout the present and imperfect, where the infinitive has *-s-*. In this lesson we shall study those which have a *-t-* in the present and imperfect. The paradigm of *sist* 'to strike' will make the pattern clear.

sist 'to strike'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es situ</i>	<i>es situ</i>	—
<i>tu sit</i>	<i>tu siti</i>	<i>sit!</i>
<i>viņš sit</i>	<i>viņš sita</i>	<i>lai sit!</i>
<i>mēs sitam</i>	<i>mēs sitām</i>	<i>sitīsim!</i>
<i>jūs sitat</i>	<i>jūs sitāt</i>	<i>sitiet!</i>
<i>viņi sit</i>	<i>viņi sita</i>	<i>lai sit!</i>

Future: *es sitīšu, tu sitīsi, viņš sitīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es sistu, tu sistu, viņš sistu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāsit, man bija jāsit, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *sitis, situši; situsi, situšas.*

Where an *e* occurs in the stem, the alternation pattern is as for *redzēt* or *brēkt*, cf.

mest 'to throw'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es mētu</i>	<i>es mētu</i>	—
<i>tu mēt</i>	<i>tu mēti</i>	<i>mēt!</i>
<i>viņš mēt</i>	<i>viņš mēta</i>	<i>lai mēt!</i>
<i>mēs mētam</i>	<i>mēs mētām</i>	<i>mētīsim!</i>
<i>jūs mētat</i>	<i>jūs mētāt</i>	<i>mētiēt!</i>
<i>viņi mēt</i>	<i>viņi mēta</i>	<i>lai mēt!</i>

Future: *es mētīšu, tu mētīsi, viņš mētīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es mēstu, tu mēstu, viņš mēstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāmet, man bija jāmet, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *mētis, mētuši; mētusi, mētušas.*

There is no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative. As all of these verbs have infinitives in *-st*, they will all have the irregular future in *-īšu*, formed from the stem of the imperfect.

Vocabulary

<i>sist</i> (<i>situ, situ</i>)	to strike, hit
<i>iesist</i> (<i>-situ, -situ</i>)	to strike; to drive in (nails, etc.)
<i>nosist</i> (<i>-situ, -situ</i>)	to slay, beat to death, strike down
<i>mest</i> (<i>mētu, mētu</i>)	to throw
<i>iemest</i> (<i>-mētu, -mētu</i>)	to throw in; to imbibe
<i>nomest</i> (<i>-mētu, -mētu</i>)	to throw off, to throw down
<i>pār</i> (prep. + acc.)	over
<i>pāri</i> (adverb, preposition or postposition with dative)	over
<i>noziedznieks</i>	criminal
<i>noziegums</i>	crime
<i>laupītājs</i>	robber

NOTES: When *pār* introduces an adverbial phrase attached to the verb, then the verb will usually be compounded with the prefix *pār-*; thus

Es pārlecu pār žogu. I jump over the fence.

The verb *sist* normally has its object in the accusative, although the dative will also be found.

Iesist regularly takes the dative of a person, but the accusative in the meaning 'to drive in' (nails).

Nosist regularly takes the accusative.

Exercise 131a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *sist*; *mest*; *iesist*; *nomest*; *atvērt*; *bārt*; *palikt*; *iemigt*; *uzbrukt*; *klupt*; *šķirt*; *ņemt*; *iesākt*; *art*; *nolemt*; *pievilt*; *melst*; *salauzt*; *malt*; *iekniebt*.

Exercise 131b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 131a.

Exercise 131c

Conjugate in the future the verbs listed in Ex. 131a.

Exercise 131d

Translate into English:

- Mums kaut kā jātiek pāri šai dziļajai upei.
- Laupītāji bija nosituši kādu tirgotāju.
- Kas meta šo akmeni?
- Kāpēc jūs nemetāt malku pāri žogam?
- Pērn šeit notika kāds briesmīgs noziegums.
- Kaut viņi šo noziedznieku noķertu!
- Viņš viņai iesita pa galvu.
- Iemetisim vēl vienu glāzīti!
- Tas nerātnais kaimiņu zēns atkal ir iemetis akmeni logā.
- Šinī karstumā jūs drīz nometīsiet svārkus.
- Kāpēc tu sit zirgu?
- Ja es būtu kaut drusku iemetis, es nevadītu smago mašīnu.
- Ja tu kaut cik māki peldēt, peldi šai šaurajai upei droši pāri!
- Drosmīgais zēns nosita čūsku.
- Es tevī situ, tāpēc ka tu iemeti smiltis manas mašīnas motorā.
- Katru sekundi kaut kur pasaulē notiek kāds noziegums.
- Laupītājs nometa ieroci un aizbēga.
- Kaut gan policisti bija aplenkuši noziedznieku, viņš tomēr kaut kā izspruka.
- Akmens pārlidoja pār mūsu galvām.
- Juris iesita Miķelim pa degunu.
- Tuksnesī no kaut kurienes nāk savādas skaņas, it kā tur kāds sistu ar āmuru pa spaini.
- Nemetiet šīs biļetes prom! – Nē, mēs tās nemetam prom.
- Kaut kad šis noziegums nāks gaismā. (= will come to light, i.e., will be discovered)
- Putni lido pāri laukiem un pāri mežiem.
- Bērns nometa zemē glāzi.
- Kāpēc tu to žurku nenositi?
- Es pārkāpu pār sētu.
- Cik dziļi tu iesīti naglu dēlī? – Tikai līdz pusei.
- Tik lielu kasti nevar svērt uz šiem svāriem.
- Ratu riteņi iestīga smiltīs.
- Vai šie skaitļi tev nejūk?
- Kas tev lika spert kāju viņas mājā?

33. Ja tu skarsi šos mālus, tie lips pie tavām rokām.
34. Kursim uguni, lai vārītu cāļus!
35. Guli, nerātnais bērns, citādi es palikšu dusmīgs. Man jau ir apnicis tevi bārt!
36. Atver logus, ja tu gribi, bet aizver durvis!
37. Bērni bēra smiltis uz grīdas.
38. Ja tu iestigsi parādos par dziļu, tevi apcietinās.
39. Mūsu laikos neviens vairs nebur.
40. Kad saite šļuka meitenei no rokas, kucēns zibēnātrumā aizbēga.
41. Viņu laulību šķīra, jo cita sieviete bija viņu apbūrusi.
42. Šinī upē nav zivju ko ķert.
43. Jānis ieknieba Miķelim ausī.

Exercise 131e

Translate into Latvian:

1. You cannot travel there without arms, there are robbers in the forest.
2. The police report serious crimes from everywhere.
3. Is he a man of honour or is he a criminal?
4. A person who talks too much is called a gossip or prattler.
5. I threw the bag down the stairs.
6. If they drive the robbers away from there, they will go elsewhere.
7. How shall we get over the mountain in this blizzard?
8. The criminals threw the expensive painting into the lake.
9. I am not a drunkard, but I do imbibe now and then.
10. This ladder is not safe.
11. We always climb over this low fence.
12. Where is he from?
13. From a distance we saw the enemy trucks travelling over the bridge.
14. Did you read about that horrible crime?
15. Did he really throw that heavy stone over the house?
16. Did you hit him on the nose?
17. How many rats have you already killed?
18. Why are you hitting your cousin?
19. We threw off our coats and started working.
20. If this concrete ceiling were to collapse, it would kill us like flies.
21. Why are you throwing stones into the fountain?
22. She hit that scoundrel in the face.
23. I shall not beat you if you do not tell lies.
24. You can take this book if you like.
25. This sharp grass pricks my feet.

LESSON 132

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: DENTAL TYPE (UNVOICED): LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

Some verbs of the dental (unvoiced) type present a long vowel in the present tense, which contrasts with a short vowel in the infinitive and in the imperfect. Otherwise they present the same alternation of *-s-* in the infinitive, *-t-* in the present and *-t-* in the imperfect as *sist* and *mest*.

krist 'to fall'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es krītu</i>	<i>es kritu</i>	—
<i>tu krīti</i>	<i>tu kriti</i>	<i>krīti!</i>
<i>viņš krīt</i>	<i>viņš krita</i>	<i>lai krīt!</i>
<i>mēs krītam</i>	<i>mēs kritām</i>	<i>kritīsim!</i>
<i>jūs krītat</i>	<i>jūs kritāt</i>	<i>krītiet!</i>
<i>viņi krīt</i>	<i>viņi krita</i>	<i>lai krīt!</i>

Future: *es kritīšu, tu kritīsi, viņš kritīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es kristu, tu kristu, viņš kristu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jākrīt, man bija jākrīt*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *kritis, krituši; kritusi, kritušas*.

Remember that verbs with a contrastive long vowel in the present have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative, unless the final stem consonant is *c* or *dz* (from *k* or *g* in the infinitive).

Vocabulary

<i>krist</i> (<i>krītu, kritu</i>)	to fall
<i>mist</i> (<i>mītu, mitu</i>)	to dwell, live
<i>just</i> (<i>jūtu, jutu</i>)	to feel (trans.)
<i>sašust</i> (<i>-šūtu, -šutu</i>)	to get angry, to be upset
<i>nokrist</i> (<i>-krītu, -kritu</i>)	to fall down
<i>iekrīst</i> (<i>-krītu, -kritu</i>)	to fall into
<i>jūtas</i> (pl.)	feelings
<i>sods</i>	punishment
<i>cietums</i>	gaol, prison

<i>sutīgs</i>	sultry
<i>bumba</i>	ball; bomb
<i>atkritumi</i> (pl.)	rubbish, refuse
<i>nērvs</i>	nerve
<i>tikko</i>	(1) just now (adverb)
	(2) hardly, scarcely (adverb)
	(3) almost (adverb)
	(4) as soon as (conjunction)

NOTES: For *tikko* in meanings (2) and (3), one will often find the strengthened form *tik tikko*. When *tikko* is used in the meaning of 'almost', it requires a negative verb:

Amatnieks (tik) tikko nenokrita no kāpnēm.

The tradesman nearly fell off the ladder.

krist uz nerviem 'to get on one's nerves'

cietuma sods 'prison sentence'

naudas sods 'a fine'

nāves sods 'death penalty'

nokrist pa trepēm, etc. 'to fall down the stairs', etc.

Exercise 132a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *krist; sašust; just; mist; iemest; nosist; pērt; uzkārt; lipt; mukt; durt; apburt; nest; cept; vemt; kult; aplēst; kalt.*

Exercise 132b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 132a.

Exercise 132c

Give the future forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 132a.

Exercise 132d

Translate into English:

1. Nauda nekrit no debesīm.
2. Aivars iemeta bumbu tīklā.
3. Tik sutīgā dienā derētu iemest vienu glāzīti.
4. Mežsarga dēls krita pirmajā pasaules karā.
5. Šodien ir ļoti sutīgs.
6. Nemet bumbu tīklam pāri!
7. Par šo noziegumu draud smags cietuma sods.
8. Šinī pilī mīt pats karalis.
9. Atkritumi nama priekšā man krīt uz nerviem.
10. Cietuma pagalmā iekrita divas bumbas, kas nosita cietuma pārzini un sešus sargus, bet nevienu noziedznieku.
11. Zēns bija nokritis no koka.
12. Ko gan jūt cilvēks, kad viņš met no lidmašīnas bumbas uz svešu pilsētu?
13. Ļaudis ir sašutuši par šo divu laupītāju noziegumiem un prasa tiem nāves sodu.
14. Es tik tikko neiekrītu ūdenī.
15. Ādas nervi jūt karstumu un aukstumu.
16. Atkritumi jāsadedzina.
17. Tikko mēs bijām pārlidojuši pār kalniem, mēs ieraudzījām pilsētu.
18. Jūrmalā tik tikko varēja just sutīgo gaisu, bet šeit pilsētā tas ir briesmīgs.
19. Nemels par savām jūtām, bet gādā par savu ģimeni, citādi tevi iemetīs cietumā!
20. Ja jūs metīsiet atkritumus uz ietnes un notekā, jums draud naudas sods.
21. Māte bija sašutusi, kad viņas puika iesita otram zēnam pa ausi.
22. Es zinu, ka tu biji sašutis, bet tu tomēr slēpi savas jūtas.
23. Kad es maksķerēju, man cepure nokrita no galvas un iekrita ūdenī.
24. Kad es nokritu pa trepēm, pirmā acumirkļi es nejutu nekā.
25. Kur viņi tagad mīt?
26. Es nezinu, kāpēc viņš viņai iezvēla.
27. Kā var strēbt zupu ar šo mazo karoti?
28. Mūsu pašreizējā dzīve ir ļoti jauka.
29. Mēs smeļam ūdeni no akas.
30. Viņai iedzēla čūska.
31. Jaunajam aktierim bija tik lielas bailes, ka viņš aizbēga pirms izrādes.
32. Maiznieks cep maizi lielajā krāsnī.

Exercise 132e

Translate into Latvian:

1. We had just gone into the cellar when the bombs began to fall.
2. Some old lady was upset at (*par*) that expression!
3. That silly poet gets on my nerves.
4. Some bombs fell on the beach, but the others fell into the sea.
5. The tradesman nearly fell from the ladder.
6. Somehow he felt that he was not safe here.
7. The ball fell into the open box.
8. Although she was upset, she hid her feelings.
9. The dentist is trying to save the nerve of this tooth.
10. The rubbish must be coming from somewhere; it doesn't fall from heaven.
11. He thought his illness was a punishment from the gods.
12. At one time (*kaut kad*) people did live here.
13. As soon as the sun rises, the weather becomes sultry.
14. If only this dishonest person were thrown into prison!
15. If she had felt even a little love for Michael, she would not have rejected him.
16. If the government cared even a little for the health of the people, it would forbid the throwing of rubbish into the streets.
17. The robber runs the risk of a prison sentence.
18. Yesterday's fresh breeze brought great relief.
19. I calculated that we pay our butcher three quarters of the price just for bones and fat.
20. Some of the farm-workers were threshing barley, others thatching roofs, others squaring planks, and others burning rubbish.
21. Don't lift that heavy keg – roll it!
22. Even mediocre soldiers can show great courage at the front.
23. How many people were deceived by the former incorrect calculation?
24. Why do you criticize everything that the government decides?
25. The lower walls are thicker than the upper walls, and the outside ones are thicker than the inside ones.
26. Our present chief is on a visit to his father's place in the near-by town.
27. The iron wheels of the cart struck fire from the stony road.
28. Have you seen Anne pushing a pram lately? – Yes, she now has a son.
29. What happened in the last act?
30. The engineers decided to change their former plan.

LESSON 133

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: DENTAL TYPE (VOICED)

Some verbs of the Dental Type, instead of having the consonantal alternation of *s* in the infinitive against *t* in the present and imperfect, have an *s* in the infinitive alternating with *d* in the present and imperfect.

vest 'to carry'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es vēdu</i>	<i>es vēdu</i>	—
<i>tu vēd</i>	<i>tu vēdi</i>	<i>vēd!</i>
<i>viņš vēd</i>	<i>viņš vēda</i>	<i>lai vēd!</i>
<i>mēs vēdam</i>	<i>mēs vēdām</i>	<i>vēdīsim!</i>
<i>jūs vēdat</i>	<i>jūs vēdāt</i>	<i>vēdiet!</i>
<i>viņi vēd</i>	<i>viņi vēda</i>	<i>lai vēd!</i>

Future: *es vēdlīšu, tu vēdlīsi, viņš vēdlīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es vēstu, tu vēstu, viņš vēstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāvēd, man bija jāvēd, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *vēdis, vēduši; vēdusi, vēdušas.*

Note that there is no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>vest</i> (<i>vēdu, vēdu</i>)	to carry (in a vehicle); to lead
<i>atvēst</i> (<i>-vēdu, -vēdu</i>)	to bring
<i>ievēst</i> (<i>-vēdu, -vēdu</i>)	to lead in; to import
<i>ēst</i> (<i>ēdu, ēdu</i>)	to eat
<i>paēst</i> (<i>-ēdu, -ēdu</i>)	to eat
<i>grāmatvēdis</i>	book-keeper, accountant
<i>ēdiens</i>	food (in cooked state)
<i>ēdams</i>	edible
<i>indīgs</i>	poisonous
<i>inde</i>	poison
<i>sēne</i>	mushroom; fungus
<i>pavārs</i>	cook (m.)
<i>pavāre</i>	cook (f.)

NOTES: *vest pie rokas, saites* 'to lead by the hand, on a leash'

Ēst and *paēst* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 133a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *vest; atvest; ēst; paēst; nokrist; sašust; sist; mest; svērt; likt; izsprukt; ņemt; dzert; augt; nolemt; iestrēbt; apgāzt; iet; dot; būt.*

Exercise 133b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 133a.

Exercise 133c

Give the future forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 133a.

Exercise 133d

Translate into English:

1. Vai grāmatvedis ir jau paēdis? – Nē, viņš pašlaik vēl ēd.
2. Vai ēdiens tanī restorānā ir labs?
3. Kādus ražojumus mūsu valsts ieved?
4. Pavārs ieveda dāmas restorāna modernajā virtuvē.
5. Kaut gan šīs sēnes nav indīgas, tās tomēr nav ēdamas, jo ir tik cietas kā āda.
6. Sutīgā laikā sēnes aug ātri.
7. Šīs ogas satur briesmīgu indi.
8. Mēs bijām tikko paēduši, kad grāmatvedis piezvanīja.
9. Ko tu mums atvedi, tētiņ?
10. Māte ved bērnu pie rokas.
11. Ja saimnieks šodien būtu vedis cūkas tirgū, viņš būtu tās pārdevis par labu cenu.
12. Kas mūs vedīs caur tuksnesi?
13. Uz kurieni šis ceļš ved?
14. Kāpēc jūs neēdat sēnes? – Man sēnes negaršo.
15. Tanī dzīvoklī mīt grāmatvedis.
16. Sargi ieveda noziedznieku.
17. Pavārs bija sašutis, kad viņš redzēja, ka gaļa vairs nav ēdama.
18. Bumba, ko zēns meta, iekrita ēdiena katlā.
19. Aptiekārs tur indīgās zāles sevišķā skapī.
20. Pudele ar žurku indi nokrita no plaukta.
21. Vai jūs jau esat paēduši?
22. Man garšo labs ēdiens.

23. Zivis, ko jūs mums atvedāt, vairs nebija ēdamas.
24. Ko tev cietumā deva ēst?
25. Ko tu zini par sievietes jūtām?
26. Vai ar šo smago mašīnu atveda ķieģelus?
27. Varbūt viņš tiks vaļā bez soda.
28. Visus Austrālijas krastus nevar apsargāt dienu un nakti.
29. Iesim tuvāk, tad mēs dzirdēsim pretinieku sarunu!
30. Noziedznieks nosīta kādu vecu vīru tuvu pie mūsu mājas.
31. Kas aug šaipus upes, un kas aug viņpus upes?
32. Mans tēvs nekad nav varējis paskaidrot, kāpēc viņš ir apprecējis manu māti.
33. Es jau iemetu divas glāzītes šņabja!
34. Vai tu viņiem nenovēlēsi laimi?
35. Viņi trīsreiz gāja logiem garām.
36. Zaglis cietumā audzēja bārdu.
37. Kāpēc, piemēram, tu ceļoji kājām un ne ar mašīnu?

Exercise 133e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Before Anne married the accountant, she was working as a cook in a restaurant.
2. Bring in the criminal, constable.
3. In the forest there are edible and poisonous fungi galore.
4. The robbers had slain the accountant.
5. When Juris tried to kiss the cook, she hit him with a big wooden spoon.
6. The police will lead us to the scene of the crime.
7. If the food is ready, we can eat.
8. When I eat, I usually drink a few glasses of vodka.
9. The fish were no longer edible; we had to throw them away.
10. Have you brought the rat-poison from town?
11. If they are always eating these fungi, they cannot be poisonous.
12. This way leads over the hills.
13. We import steel from Sweden and Germany.
14. Can you hit the ball over the net?
15. Father has brought a puppy home.
16. This food tastes good.
17. Have you already eaten?
18. Is there poison in that bottle?
19. He threw off his coat and jumped off the bridge, in order to save the boy who had fallen into the water.

20. University staff have many lectures to prepare, but they receive high salaries.
21. These tinned foods weigh less than five hundred grammes.
22. The pastor who married them expressed his good wishes before they left on their honeymoon trip.
23. Would you marry a girl without a dowry?
24. On the right are our export figures, and on the left our import figures.
25. Have you still any doubts about their hospitality?
26. Two strong men guarded the shop while the gems were in the display-window.

LESSON 134

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: DENTAL TYPE (VOICED):
LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

Similar in type to the verb *krist* (*krītu, kritu*) is the verb *zust* (*zūdu, zudu*) 'to disappear'. The voiced consonant *d* appears in the present and imperfect, where *krist* has the voiceless consonant *t*.

zust 'to disappear'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es zūdu</i>	<i>es zūdu</i>	—
<i>tu zūdi</i>	<i>tu zūdi</i>	<i>zūdi!</i>
<i>viņš zūd</i>	<i>viņš zuda</i>	<i>lai zūd!</i>
<i>mēs zūdam</i>	<i>mēs zudām</i>	<i>zudīsim!</i>
<i>jūs zūdat</i>	<i>jūs zudāt</i>	<i>zūdiet!</i>
<i>viņi zūd</i>	<i>viņi zuda</i>	<i>lai zūd!</i>

Future: *es zudīšu, tu zudīsi, viņš zudīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es zustu, tu zustu, viņš zustu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāzūd, man bija jāzūd, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *zudis, zuduši; zudusi, zudušas.*

Verbs which in the present tense have a contrastive long vowel have the ending *-i* in the present and imperative second person singular, unless the final stem consonant is *c* or *dz*. Hence the *-i* appears in the above paradigm.

Vocabulary

<i>zust</i> (<i>zūdu, zudu</i>)	to disappear, to dwindle
<i>pazust</i> (<i>-zūdu, -zudu</i>)	to disappear
<i>ganības</i> (pl.)	pasture
<i>kvieši</i> (pl.)	wheat
<i>auzas</i> (pl.)	oats
<i>ražā</i>	harvest
<i>ņeražā</i>	bad harvest, crop failure
<i>mēšļi</i> (pl.)	manure
<i>arklis</i>	plough
<i>kumeļš</i>	foal; (in folk songs often) horse
<i>rīkot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to arrange
<i>sarīkot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to arrange
<i>klēts</i> (f.)	granary
<i>labība</i>	corn, grain
<i>glabāt</i> (<i>-āju, -āju</i>)	to keep
<i>uzglabāt</i> (<i>-āju, -āju</i>)	to store, put aside, keep

NOTES: *Zust*, *rīkot* and *glabāt* are imperfectives; *pazust*, *sarīkot* and *uzglabāt* are the corresponding perfectives.

Exercise 134a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *zust*; *pazust*; *paēst*; *atvest*; *mist*; *just*; *iesist*; *nomest*; *iestigt*; *uzkārt*; *uzbrukt*; *irt*; *ņemt*; *cept*; *iesākt*.

Exercise 134b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 134a.

Exercise 134c

Give the second person singular conditional perfect debitive of the verbs listed in Ex. 134a.

Exercise 134d

Translate into English:

1. Labību uzglabā klētī.
2. Kumeļš bija pazudis no ganībām.
3. No kurienes jūs ievedāt šo moderno arklu?
4. Dažās zemēs, kur nav malkas, krāsnis kurina ar sausiem govju mēsliem.
5. Ugunsdzēsēji riko balli.
6. Dažas sēnes aug tikai uz mēsliem.
7. Vācija ieved kviešus no Amerikas un Austrālijas.
8. Šoruden būs laba auzu raža.
9. Vasarā puiši guļ klētī.
10. Jūs sarīkojāt labu koncertu.
11. Lūdzu, uzglabā man ēdienu, sieviņ, jo es pārnākšu stundu vēlāk!
12. Kurā skapī aptiekārs uzglabā indes?
13. Ko tu vedi savos ratos, saimniek? – Labību! Ko gan citu?
14. Tu esi laimīgs cilvēks, jo tev ir kviešu un auzu papildnam, bet man šogad bija neraža; labi, ka kaut ko uzglabāju klētī, citādi nebūtu ko ēst.
15. Saimnieks ved zirgu uz aploku.
16. Grāmatvedis bija pazudis ar visu naudu.
17. Šis modernais arklis sver veselu tonnu.
18. Vēl viena neraža, un man būs jāpārdod savas mājas par lētu naudu!
19. Pazūdi no manām acīm, tu nelieti!
20. Slimniekam lēnām zūd spēki.
21. Cik tu samaksāji par šo kumeļu?
22. Uzmanību! Tur ir mēsli.
23. Kad šeit sarīkoja pēdējās sporta sacikstes?
24. Ganībās zied sīkas puķītes.
25. Ja jūnijā būs lietus, raža būs laba.
26. Valdība uzglabā labību neražas gadiem.
27. Blakus ganībām ir kviešu lauks un aiz tā auzu lauks.
28. Pērn mums bija vienreizēja raža.
29. Bērni ir jau paēduši.
30. Vai jūs atvedāt labību?
31. Kumeļam garšo cukurs.
32. Jūs gribējāt rīkot balli oktobrī, bet tomēr nesarīkojāt. Kāpēc?
33. Viņš bija laupītājs un noziedznieks.
34. Aizver durvis, man ir auksti!
35. Viduslaikos cilvēkus pēra par sīkiem noziegumiem.
36. Mums kaut kā jātiek uz turieni.
37. Vai tevi kāds bāra?
38. Viņa nav no Rīgas, bet no citurienes.

39. Vai uz šiem svāriem var svērt tik lielas kastes?
40. Cilvēki nāca uz šejieni no visām malām.
41. Kaut es varētu pārlidot kalniem pāri!
42. Šī glezna kaut kur jāuzkar.
43. Ja tu viņai tiešām iesiti, tad tā gan ir nopietna lieta.
44. Sportā nedrīkst sist pretiniekiem.
45. Strādnieki nometa darba rīkus.
46. Ja tu kaut cik domātu par savu ģimeni, tu pavadītu mājās daudz vairāk laika.
47. Vai tu gribētu šodien kaut kur aizbraukt?

Exercise 134e

Translate into Latvian:

1. That foal is getting on my nerves.
2. Throw the rubbish into the rubbish-box.
3. When the old farm-hand was ploughing with the heavy plough, he felt his strength dwindling.
4. She nearly fell into the manure.
5. The farmer went to the granary just now.
6. Oh dear, the foal is in the wheat!
7. The farm-hands sleep in the granary.
8. After the bad harvest, many people perished.
9. He quickly disappeared from here, for he was in danger of a prison sentence.
10. The bombs fell on to the pastures.
11. We stored the oats in that corner.
12. Aren't you going to arrange a ball?
13. The good harvest was followed by a bad harvest.
14. Do the ploughs in your country have wheels?
15. The sun disappeared behind dark clouds.
16. Who arranged that magnificent performance? – We arranged it ourselves.
17. When will you grind your wheat, farmer?
18. The pastures are flourishing.
19. Latvia exports oats to England.
20. Did you have a good potato harvest?
21. Where do you store your grain in winter?
22. Jam must be kept in glass containers.
23. I felt my strength dwindling.
24. Let's arrange a concert!
25. Scatter manure on the garden!

LESSON 135

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: DENTAL TYPE (VOICED AND UNVOICED): IRREGULAR LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

We have already examined regular lengthening of the stem vowel in both the voiced and unvoiced series of the Dental Type: cf. *krist* (*krltu*, *kritu*) and *zust* (*zūdu*, *zudu*).

However, there also exists a type in which a short *i* of the infinitive and imperfect corresponds to *ie* in the present. Cf. in this respect the irregularly lengthened presents found in the Unchanged Type, e.g., *likt* (*lieku*, *liku*).

Such verbs are not common: the voiced type is represented by the verb *gist*, and the unvoiced type by the verb *škist*.

gist 'to suspect'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es giedu</i>	<i>es gidu</i>	—
<i>tu gied</i>	<i>tu gidi</i>	<i>gied!</i>
<i>viņš gied</i>	<i>viņš gida</i>	<i>lai gied!</i>
<i>mēs giedam</i>	<i>mēs gidām</i>	<i>gidīsim!</i>
<i>jūs giedat</i>	<i>jūs gidāt</i>	<i>giediet!</i>
<i>viņi gied</i>	<i>viņi gida</i>	<i>lai gied!</i>

Future: *es gidīšu*, *tu gidīsi*, *viņš gidīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es gīstu*, *tu gīstu*, *viņš gīstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāgied*, *man bija jāgied*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *gidis*, *giduši*; *gidusi*, *gidušas*.

škist 'to seem'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es šķietu</i>	<i>es šķitu</i>	—
<i>tu šķiet</i>	<i>tu šķiti</i>	<i>šķiet!</i>
<i>viņš šķiet</i>	<i>viņš šķita</i>	<i>lai šķiet!</i>
<i>mēs šķietam</i>	<i>mēs šķitām</i>	<i>šķitīsim!</i>
<i>jūs šķietat</i>	<i>jūs šķitāt</i>	<i>šķietiet!</i>
<i>viņi šķiet</i>	<i>viņi šķita</i>	<i>lai šķiet!</i>

Future: *es šķitīšu*, *tu šķitīsi*, *viņš šķitīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es šķīstu*, *tu šķīstu*, *viņš šķīstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāšķiet*, *man bija jāšķiet*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *šķītis*, *šķituši*; *šķītusi*, *šķitušas*.

Šķist is most commonly used in the third person, i.e., impersonally.

Vocabulary

<i>gist</i> (<i>giedu</i> , <i>gidu</i>)	to suspect, to sense
<i>noģist</i> (<i>-giedu</i> , <i>-gidu</i>)	to suspect, to sense
<i>škist</i> (<i>šķietu</i> , <i>šķitu</i>)	to seem
<i>vēlreiz</i>	once more
<i>kārtīgs</i>	tidy, accurate; (colloq.) decent
<i>bīstams</i>	dangerous
<i>lietussargs</i>	umbrella
<i>saulesargs</i>	parasol
<i>atļauja</i>	permission, approval
<i>pirts</i> (f.)	bath-house
<i>lāpsta</i>	spade, shovel
<i>grābēklis</i>	rake
<i>gurķis</i>	cucumber
<i>zaķis</i>	hare
<i>zābaks</i>	boot
<i>purvs</i>	swamp
<i>dzirnavas</i> (pl.)	mill

NOTES: The verbs *gist* and *noģist* cannot govern a noun in the accusative. They introduce clauses beginning with *ka*.

Grābt and its perfective *sagrābt* also mean 'to rake'.

Ģist and *noģist* are respectively imperfective and perfective.

Exercise 135a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *gist*; *pazust*; *noģist*; *zust*; *atvest*; *krist*; *škist*; *sist*; *bārt*; *iestīgt*; *spert*; *degt*; *lemt*; *pārnākt*.

Exercise 135b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 135a.

Exercise 135c

Give the future forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 135a.

Exercise 135d

Translate into English:

1. Saimnieks noģida, ka šogad būs neraža.
2. Kā jūs noģidāt, ka šis cilvēks ir bīstams noziedznieks?
3. Glābiet! Kumeļš ir iestidzis purvā.
4. Es jums vēlreiz saku, ka Krūmiņš ir kārtīgs strādnieks.
5. Šovasar kāda bīstama slimība iznīcināja daudz kviešu un auzu, un šķiet, ka raža būs pavisam vāja.
6. Man šķiet, ka zaķiem garšo kāposti.
7. Aijai ir raibs saulesargs.
8. Mums garšo skābi gurķi.
9. Zaķus var medīt bez sevišķas atļaujas.
10. Dārznieks grābj ar grābekli sausās lapas.
11. Ar lāpstu te nekā nevar darīt! Kur ir vieglais arklis?
12. Vai tu tiešām iesi laukā bez lietussarga tik lielā negaisā?
13. Virtuvē dažreiz ir tik sutīgs kā pirtī.
14. Zvejniekiem vajaga garus zābakus, jo viņi bieži stāv ūdenī līdz ceļiem.
15. Klētī vairs nav labības ko vest uz dzirnavām.
16. Šie zābaki ir par dārgiem.
17. Kopš kura laika man vajaga atļaujas, lai makšķerētu šinī ezerā?
18. Rudenī dzirnavas ir nodarbinātas dienu un nakti.
19. Kas mūs vedīs caur šo bīstamo purvu?
20. Vai tu nomizoji gurķus?
21. Dārznieks nosita čūsku ar lāpstu.
22. Es jau noģidu, ka viņi drīz rīkos kāzas.
23. Skābus gurķus var uzglabāt veselu gadu.
24. Ziemā zaķi grauž augļu koku mizu.
25. Es jau noģidu, ka tu pazaudēsi jauno lietussargu.
26. Dzirnavās maļ labību.
27. Man šķiet, ka tavi zābaki ir par smagiem.
28. Vai man vēlreiz būs jāprasa atļauja?
29. Mans saulesargs ir pazudis.
30. Ej, atnes man lāpstu un grābekli, puisīt!
31. Pirtij ir biezas sienas.
32. Lietussargs un saulesargs pārdod otrā stāvā, kundze.
33. Iemetīsim kārtīgu šnabi! – Es jau noģidu, ka tu to teiksi, veco zēn!

34. Es noģidu, ka viņa ir par smalku, lai staigātu pa ganībām, kur visur ir govju mēsli.
35. Es jums prasu vēlreiz, kur mežsargs glabā savus ieročus.
36. Mēs sarīkojām kora koncertu.
37. Kāpēc pirtij nav kārtīga skursteņa?
38. Raganu, kura bija apbūrusi kaimiņos visus lopus, sadedzināja uz sārta: viņa turpmāk vairs neburs.
39. Palieciet, kur jūs esat, un netveriet ieročus!
40. Man šķiet, ka pirts sienas lēnām drūp.
41. Kad ārā bija auksts, māte kūra uguni krāsnī.
42. Neskariet motorus un turbīnas!
43. Slimnīcā man bija grūti iemigt, jo citi slimnieki skaļi krāca.
44. Vai tev neapnīk sēdēt visu dienu upmalā, ja tu nenokēr nevienu zivi?
45. Priekšnieks lika saviem vīriem uzbrukt ienaidniekam.
46. Šīs zeķes ir sarukušas.
47. Es purva malā klupu pāri akmeņiem.
48. Bēdziet, mūciet! Ienaidnieks nāk!
49. Man arvien jūk vārdi 'drupt' un 'šļukt'.
50. Maizniekam laikam patīk naktī cept maizi.
51. Zinātnieki nolēma sadedzināt savas grāmatas.

Exercise 135e

Translate into Latvian:

1. I suspected that these were poisonous fungi.
2. An accountant must be an honest person.
3. Parasols cannot be imported without government permission.
4. Do hares eat cucumbers?
5. It seems that this gas contains a dangerous poison.
6. We did not suspect that this road led through the dangerous swamp.
7. The farmer is carrying grain to the mill, and from there he will bring home flour.
8. Are you going to the bath-house? – No, I have just eaten, and it is not good to sit in the heat of the bath-house with a full stomach.
9. Do not nibble (*grauzt*) my boot, doggy; boots are not edible.
10. This rake is too heavy to rake all day (with).
11. The hare slipped away.
12. It seems that the spade needs to be sharper.
13. It seems to me that in London I saw more umbrellas in one day than here in a whole year.

14. Let's repeat this song once more.
15. We are looking for a good (*kārtīgs*) cook.
16. I shall photograph the old mill once more.
17. Why hasn't this soldier polished his boots?
18. I suspected that the examination would be difficult.
19. Waiter, is the food still not ready?
20. He suspected from the beginning that his daughter's marriage would not be happy.
21. It seems that you are not allowed to photograph the harbour without permission.
22. An umbrella is made of thicker material than a parasol.
23. Throw the shovel and the rake into the cart.
24. Cucumber plants require manure.
25. People believe that devils and witches dwell in that swamp.
26. Don't try to deceive me – when did the house start to burn?
27. The warm days of spring separate the cold of winter from the heat of summer.
28. Did you catch those fish with a net? – No, we speared them.
29. Did you receive my last letter?
30. Please take another piece of tart!

LESSON 136

IMPERFECTIVE AND PERFECTIVE VERBS

You will remember that for some time we have been dealing with pairs of verbs like *dot* and *iedot*, *skaitīt* and *saskaitīt*, *jēgt* and *sajēgt*, *plūkt* and *noplūkt*, *zāgēt* and *sazāgēt*. In each pair the first-mentioned verb is imperfective, the second perfective.

Imperfective verbs are used where the action described is not envisaged as being brought to a conclusion; perfective verbs, on the contrary, are used when the action described is envisaged as being brought to a conclusion. The distinction is one between incompleted action and completed action.

Imperfective aspect and perfective aspect are associated respectively with simple verbs and compound verbs, although there are certain exceptions to this.

A number of compound verbs, for instance, have meanings radically different from those of the corresponding simple verbs: cf. *piedot* and *dot*, *aizstāvēt* and *stāvēt*. In such cases the compound verb serves as both perfective and imperfective. In other cases, where a reduction to a simple form would involve

some loss of the meaning content, the simple verb plus an appropriate adverb corresponds as imperfective to the compound perfective: *aiziet* and *iet prom*, *atbraukt* and *braukt šurp*, etc.

It is often very difficult to decide in a given instance whether a perfective or an imperfective verb is required. The following notes, while not exhaustive, may be of some assistance.

In the present tense, habitual action may be expressed by either aspect, depending on the extent to which a limit is placed on the action, cf.

He is always reading.

Viņš vienmēr lasa.

He reads a book a day.

Viņš katru dienu izlasa pa grāmatai.

Similarly in other tenses, the habitual or often repeated action will be either perfective or imperfective, depending on whether some limiting information is given, or whether the action is unqualified by limitations.

The question of whether or not the actual terminal point of the action is expressed is of some importance in the imperative, cf.

Go outside.

Ej ārā!

Go outside to father.

Izej ārā pie tēva!

Some authorities maintain that the perfective imperative is often used when the attention of the listener must be directed to the object before the action can take place, whereas the imperfective is more likely if the listener's attention is already upon the object:

Open the door.

Ver durvis vaļā! (Said to somebody expecting the request, i.e., a door-keeper)

Open the door.

Atver durvis! (Said to somebody not expecting the request, a person sitting on the other side of the room from the door)

When positive and negative imperatives of the same verb are juxtaposed, the negative one will often be imperfective, the positive one often perfective:

Don't harness the white horse, harness the black one.

Nejūdz balto zirgu, iejūdz melno!

Certainty in the handling of Latvian perfective and imperfective verbs can be achieved only through extensive reading or conversation practice. It is a matter of assimilating idiomatic usage, not readily reducible to water-tight formulae.

In the following vocabulary, some perfective verbs, corresponding to imperfectives we have already met, are given.

Vocabulary

<i>nokārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to put in order
<i>sameklēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to look for, to seek; to find (after searching)
<i>pagaidīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to wait for, to await (a short while)
<i>podēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to be appropriate, to be of use
<i>ptnākt (-nāku, -nācu)</i>	to come, to arrive
<i>naveikt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to manage, to achieve
<i>aolikt (-lieku, -liku)</i>	to put; to put down; to leave
<i>paņest (-ņesu, -ņesu)</i>	to carry (a little); to bear, endure
<i>paņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu)</i>	to take
<i>pagriezt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to turn (trans.)

Exercise 136a

Give the perfective verbs corresponding to the following imperfectives: *lasīt* ('to read'); *lasīt* ('to pick'); *rakstīt*; *peļņt*; *rietēt*; *rādīt*; *skatīt*; *zaudēt*; *fotografēt*; *slaucīt*; *pildīt*; *zāģēt*; *kurināt*; *dot*; *precēt*; *plūkt*; *stigt*; *jēgt*; *vilt*; *ņemt*; *kert*; *krāpt*; *grābt*; *plēst*; *lauzt*; *dzelt*; *zust*.

Exercise 136b

Conjugate the following verbs in the present, imperfect and future, and give the imperative and past participle active forms: *noģist*; *pazust*; *atvest*; *nokrist*; *iesist*; *uzkārt*; *palikt*; *izsprukt*; *apburt*; *art*; *nolemt*; *aplēst*; *apgāzt*; *nokāpt*; *nolēkt*; *pārnākt*; *nomaukt*.

Exercise 136c

Translate into English:

1. Gurķu stādi nepanes aukstumu.
2. Kā tu paveici šo darbu bez lāpstas un bez grābekļa?
3. Es jau noģidu, ka viņa drīz atnāks.
4. Kāpēc tu pagriezi saulesargu uz otru pusi?
5. Tagad nodērētu skābs gurķis.
6. Es vairs nezinu, kur es noliku savu lietussargu.
7. Kā jūs tuksnesī panesāt lielo karstumu?
8. Viņa laikam noģied, ka mēs bijām paņēmuši viņas zābacīņus.
9. Pagaidi! Es tev tūlīp iešu līdzi uz pirti.

10. Galvenais inženieris pats nokārtos šo lietu.
11. Dziedātāji pievērs visu savu uzmanību kora diriģentam.
12. Beidzot tu esi atnākusi!
13. Noliec to bīstamo ieroci!
14. Tu redzi, tagad viņš pagriež galvu uz mūsu pusi.
15. Kārtīgam strādniekam pēc kārtīga darba noder kārtīga glāze alus, vai ne?
16. Zinātnieki šim purvam pievērs lielu uzmanību, jo tur aug reti stādi.
17. Vai jūs neatnāktu vēlāk, kad mans vīrs būs mājās?
18. Tu atkal paņēmi vijoli bez manas atļaujas.
19. Es šo lietu nokārtošu ar pašu īpašnieku.
20. Vai amatnieki atnāca pirmdien?
21. Jūsu padoms man tiešām noderēja.
22. Vai tu sameklēji visas grāmatas, ko profesors lika izlasīt?
23. Jūs paveicāt milzīgu darbu.
24. Kur tu liki modinātāju?
25. Tagad es atkal drusku panesīšu maisu. – Labi, panes!
26. Vai viņa paņēma cigareti? – Nē, viņa man pagrieza muguru un aizgāja.
27. Bez jūsu palīdzības mēs šo darbu nebūtu paveikuši.
28. Tu vari šeit pagaidīt, kamēr es izskalošu palagus.
29. Palīdzi man sameklēt gludekli!
30. Skolas pārzinis būs šo lietu jau sen nokārtojis.
31. Pašlaik valdība pievērs savu uzmanību kādai citai problēmai.
32. Naktī dzirnavu troksnis man krīt uz nerviem.
33. Man šķiet, ka šie ierēdņi ir muļķi un sliņķi.
34. Vai jūs jau noskaidrojāt, kas izlaupīja jūsu dzīvokli un paņēma televīzijas aparātu?
35. Slauksim govīs un tad iejūgsim zirgus!
36. Cik tālu acis sniedz, tumši mākoņi apsedz debesis.
37. Āfrikas mežos pirms saules lēkta var dzirdēt lauvu rūcienus.
38. Vai tas ir liels sasniegums pabeigt pamatskolu?
39. Mums neapšaubāmi brauciens būs jāsaīsina. Sliktais laiks mūs ir aizkavējis.
40. Vai māte tev nepateica, ka tev tagad jāgludina priekšauti un kabatas lakatiņi?
41. Pasniedz man puķes, ko tu noplūci dārzā!
42. Viņš lielā steigā noģērba darba svārkus un uzģērba savas vislabākās drēbes.
43. Cik augsti zaķis var lēkt?
44. Mazais Aivars iemērca maizi zupā.
45. Mēs visu dienu plūcām lauku puķes un nemanījām laiku aizritam.
46. Vai tu beidzot uzrakstīji visu teikumu pareizi?
47. Man ir tik daudz grāmatu, ka es varētu dibināt bibliotēku.
48. Ko gan priekšnieks lems, kad izlasīs šo lūgumu?
49. Kaste neslīdēs: tā ir par smagu.

Exercise 136d

Translate into Latvian:

1. The newspapers are bringing to people's notice the great floods and crop failure in the south.
2. Why couldn't you wait? When I arrived, you had disappeared!
3. Where did he leave the plough?
4. If my strength does not fail (*zūst*), I shall manage this task in two days.
5. A bit of manure would be useful here.
6. Where do you keep your wine?
7. Look for yesterday's paper.
8. Wheat cannot withstand strong frost.
9. Who has taken the empty bags from the granary?
10. The father has taken care of his son's debts for the last time.
11. Now don't turn your head: I shall photograph you!
12. Why do they want to arrange the concert?
13. Why didn't you search in the cellar, where they keep their tools and weapons?
14. Who is taking care of this urgent matter?
15. Turn your head to the left, then you will see the foal in the distance.
16. Why didn't you take your little brother along? – Because I cannot stand his foolish questions.
17. You have been carrying the bag for a long time: now I shall carry it.
18. When will they arrange the wedding?
19. The rain was indeed useful: now the harvest must be good.
20. Where did they put the bags of grain?
21. The doctor has not yet come. Can you wait a minute?
22. Tiny flowers are blooming on the meadows and pastures.

LESSON 137

IMPERFECTIVE AND PERFECTIVE VERBS (CONT.)

We have hitherto learnt a number of compound verbs, without their simple equivalents. Some of these simple verbs are given in the vocabulary of this lesson. It will be noticed that in some cases, the meaning of the simple verb is not the same as that of the related compound verb we have already met: this is because the compound in question has acquired a differing meaning through its prefix.

Vocabulary

<i>kniebt</i> (- <i>bjū</i> , - <i>bu</i>)	to pinch
<i>post</i> (- <i>šu</i> , - <i>su</i>)	to tidy
<i>tēst</i> (<i>tēšu</i> , <i>tēsu</i>)	to cut square, to trim
<i>zvēlt</i> (<i>zvēļu</i> , <i>zvēļu</i>)	to hit
<i>pelt</i> (<i>peļu</i> , <i>pēļu</i>)	to criticize
<i>rukt</i> (<i>rūku</i> , <i>ruku</i>)	to shrink
<i>sprukt</i> (<i>sprūku</i> , <i>spruku</i>)	to get free
<i>kārt</i> (<i>karu</i> , <i>kāru</i>)	to hang (trans.)
<i>segt</i> (<i>seždu</i> , <i>seždu</i>)	to cover
<i>slēgt</i> (<i>slēždu</i> , <i>slēždu</i>)	to lock, to close
<i>trēnkt</i> (<i>trēncu</i> , <i>trēncu</i>)	to chase, pursue
<i>mērkt</i> (<i>mērcu</i> , <i>mērcu</i>)	to dip, soak
<i>triekt</i> (- <i>cu</i> , - <i>cu</i>)	to chase, pursue
<i>maukt</i> (- <i>cu</i> , - <i>cu</i>)	to put on; to take off
<i>liegt</i> (- <i>dzu</i> , - <i>dzu</i>)	to forbid
<i>jūgt</i> (- <i>dzu</i> , - <i>dzu</i>)	to harness
<i>kavēt</i> (- <i>ēju</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to waste (time); to delay (trans.)
<i>skaidrot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to explain
<i>laupīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>lju</i>)	to rob, to steal
<i>balstīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>lju</i>)	to support
<i>īsināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to while away (time); to shorten
<i>dāvāt</i> (- <i>āju</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to present
<i>skatīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>lju</i>)	to look
<i>vainot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to blame
<i>plūdināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to flood (trans.)
<i>laulāt</i> (- <i>āju</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to marry (of celebrant)
<i>raidīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>lju</i>)	to send, transmit; to drive away
<i>vēlēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to wish (trans.); to elect
<i>mizot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to peel
<i>gatavot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to prepare
<i>ziņot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to report, inform
<i>līdzināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to smooth out, level off (trans.)
<i>rēķināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to calculate
<i>cietināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to starch; to stiffen (trans.)
<i>drošināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to encourage, comfort, reassure
<i>raudzīt</i> (<i>raugu</i> , <i>raudzīju</i>)	to try; to taste; to look
<i>līdzēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to help
<i>vērt</i> (<i>vēru</i> , <i>vēru</i>)	to open; to close

NOTES: The ambiguity implicit in the verbs *maukt* and *vērt* is resolved with the help of adverbs: *maukt virsū* and *maukt nost*; *vērt vaļā* and *vērt ciet*.

Līdzēt is most commonly used in the expression: *Ko tas līdz?* 'What's the use of that?'

Exercise 137a

List 25 imperfective verbs, together with their corresponding perfectives and any other compounds of them that you have learnt.

Exercise 137b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *vērt*; *jūgt*; *kārt*; *sprukt*; *pelt*; *tēst*; *post*; *kniebt*.

Exercise 137c

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of one verb from each of the following types:

- (a) Simple palatalized;
- (b) Semipalatalized;
- (c) Semipalatalized with contrastive short present;
- (d) Semipalatalized with contrastive long imperfect;
- (e) Unchanged;
- (f) Unchanged with contrastive long imperfect;
- (g) Unchanged with contrastive long present;
- (h) Unchanged with contrastive short present;
- (i) Dental (voiced);
- (j) Dental (unvoiced);
- (k) Dental (voiced) with contrastive long present.

State where applicable the alternation of *ę* and *ę* which obtains in each type.

Exercise 137d

Translate into English:

1. Cikos šeit slēdz krogus?
2. No Parīzes ziņo, ka cenas ir ļoti augstas, un valdība vaino lieltirgotājus.
3. Neskati vīru no cepures! (Proverb)
4. Mums vēl daudz jāskaidro un jārēķina, un tas kavē laiku.

5. Vai šeit mazgā un cietina priekšautus?
6. Ko tas līdz, ja putnus raida prom? Tie tomēr nāks atpakaļ.
7. Raugi, muca jau ir tukša!
8. Vai saimniece tev neliedza kārt blūzes un zeķes pagalmā?
9. Viņa vienmēr peļ, ko viņai dāvā.
10. Upe plūdina savus ūdeņus uz jūru.
11. Drēbe nerūk, ja to mērc aukstā ūdenī.
12. Kāpēc tu nemauci kājās jaunus zābakus?
13. Jūdz zirgu ratos, Jāni!
14. Bende jau gatavo raganai sārta.
15. Ja tu man vēlreiz kniebsi, es tev zvelšu pa ausi.
16. Šis dēlis jāteš.
17. Šī siena nemaz nebalsta griestus.
18. Mēs mizojam kartupeļus.
19. Cikos viņus laulās?
20. Senos laikos mēdza laupīt līgavas.
21. Es tev vēl daudz laimes dzimšanas dienā.
22. Paklājs nesedz visu grīdu.
23. Uzmanību, suns tūlī spruks laukā!
24. Ar ko cietumā var īsināt laiku?
25. Saimnieks parasti trenc ārā visus ubagus.
26. Mēs triecām ienaidnieku uz kalniem.
27. Kāpēc viņa nekad nepoš savu dzīvokli?
28. Kāpēc tu šo nelieti vēl drošini?
29. Viņi raida savādu signālu.
30. Saimniece bija sašutusi, kad viņa redzēja, ka labības klētī vairs nav ne auzu, ne kviešu: laupītāji bija visu nolaupījuši.
31. Ziemeļos bija lieliska raža, bet dienvidos neraža.
32. Vai šīs sēnes ir indīgas?
33. Šīs sēnes nesatur indi, bet tās tomēr nav ēdamas.
34. Vai tu mums kaut ko atvedīsi no pilsētas, tēt?
35. Būtu bīstami ēst tās ogas.
36. Kamēr es biju pirtī, kāds paņēma visas manas drēbes.
37. Arkls, lāpstas un grābekļi ir pazuduši.
38. Par noziegumiem var sagaidīt cietuma sodu.
39. Uzmanību, neiestiedz purvā!
40. Nemet atkritumus uz ietnes!
41. Kas mīt vecajās dzirnavās?
42. Šinī fabrikā ražo lietussargus un saulesargus.
43. Medniekam nebija laimes ar pīlēm: viņš tagad medī zaķus.
44. Man šķiet, ka tagad nodērētu kārtīga glāze alus.
45. Kas pārmeta akmeni pāri mājai?

46. Es nevaru panest tavus rupjos izteicienus.
47. Vai tu nejūti aukstumu?
48. Kalpa spēki sāka zust.
49. Nenokrīti pa trepēm! Ak, par vēlu!
50. Kā jūs to paveicāt, ka jūs sarīkojāt labu koncertu tik īsā laikā?
51. Straume griež spēkstacijas turbīnas.
52. Meklēsim klusumu meža dziļumā!
53. Vai viņi vēl glabā ieročus pagrabā?
54. Mēs šeit uzglabājam labību: nolieciet maisus tanī stūrī!
55. Kaut gan vārti ir lieli un smagi, tos tomēr var viegli vērt.
56. Pāri pilsētai debesīs ir tumši mākoņi: draud lietus.
57. Strādnieki līdzina zemi.

Exercise 137e

Translate into Latvian:

1. You did not have to encourage that man.
2. Please explain how you calculated that.
3. Take off your gloves.
4. The parrot is nipping my finger.
5. Who will harness the horse into the cart?
6. They are starching shirts at the moment.
7. Who is arranging the ball?
8. How are you looking at this problem?
9. What's the use of tidying the flat? As soon as the children come home from school, it is dirty again!
10. Why didn't you close the door?
11. She is peeling fruit, and dipping the pieces in hot water.
12. Punch him on the nose!
13. People under eighteen cannot be married without their parents' permission.
14. It is reported from London that high officials are criticizing the plan which the government is preparing.
15. The ship is sending a strange signal.
16. We wish you luck!
17. Why are the cucumbers shrivelling up?
18. Don't open the gate: the foal will slip out!
19. These boards need not be trimmed: that only wastes time.
20. I blame the dishonest men who stole the hearts of our daughters.
21. Where does one hang one's coat in this corridor?
22. Good books while away the time.
23. In spring the river floods the meadows and pastures.

24. Chase the dog away!
25. We chased the enemy for two days.
26. Snow now covers the fields.
27. Let us level the ground.
28. The child threw his food down on to the floor.
29. Wait! We still have not finished eating.
30. What did you hit the robber with?
31. The farmer will deal with this matter himself.
32. Am I not allowed to bring vodka into my own house?

LESSON 138

IMPERFECTIVE AND PERFECTIVE VERBS (CONT.)

In this lesson we tabulate some more important perfective forms, corresponding to imperfectives we have already met.

Vocabulary

<i>iestādīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to plant
<i>izstāstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to recount, relate
<i>pārtulkot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to translate
<i>nokrāsot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to paint (houses, etc.); to dye
<i>uzglēznot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to paint (pictures)
<i>nosvinēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to celebrate
<i>uzmodināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to wake (trans.)
<i>iedāvināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to give, present
<i>pasaukt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to call
<i>sasildīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to warm (trans.)
<i>nodibināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to found
<i>pielipt (-līpu, -līpu)</i>	to stick, adhere (intrans.)
<i>uzart (-aru, -aru)</i>	to plough
<i>savērpēt (-vērpu, -vērpu)</i>	to spin
<i>paslēpt (-slēpu, -slēpu)</i>	to conceal, hide (trans.)
<i>pastiept (-stiepu, -stiepu)</i>	to pull, to stretch (trans.)

Exercise 138a

Give the perfective verbs corresponding to the following imperfective verbs: *svinēt; sildīt; slēpt; gleznot; līpt; krāsot; art; modināt; stāstīt; vērpt; dibināt; saukt; dāvināt; tulkot; stiept; stādīt.*

Exercise 138b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *ģist; zust; paēst; just; mest; bārt; estigt; kļupt; spert; cept; pievilt; notēst; sērst; kalt; uzlēkt; šķist.*

Exercise 138c

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 138b.

Exercise 138d

Translate into English:

1. Vai tu vēl tulko šo grāmatu? – Jā, līdz šim es vēl neesmu pārtulkojis pusi.
2. Ja visu dienu vērpi, var savērt diezgan daudz.
3. Kāpēc jūs nestādāt kartupeļus? – Mēs tos iestādīsim, kad saimnieks atnāks.
4. Lai viņa stāsta par darbu un ģimeni, bet es nevaru panest, ka viņa katram izstāsta visu par savu laulību: tad es viņai nepievēršu uzmanību, pagriežu muguru un aizeju.
5. Kur slēpt šos ieročus? – Paslēp tos zem gultām!
6. Akmeņainu lauku ir grūti art, bet Miķelis to tomēr uzara.
7. Ko jūs dāvināsīt Birutai dzimšanas dienā? – Es domāju iedāvināt pildspalvu, tā viņai noderēs.
8. Nenoliec avīzi šeit, tā lips galdam klāt! Ak, tā jau ir pielipusi!
9. Tu solīji mani modināt septiņos, bet tu mani uzmodināji tikai ceturksni pēc septiņiem.
10. Vakar mēs nosvinējām Jura dzimšanas dienu, un parīt mēs svinēsim viņa vārda dienu.
11. Krustmāte līdz šim nebija krāsojusi matus, bet vakar viņa tos nokrāsoja.
12. Es saucu kalpus brokastīs, bet viņi nenāk. – Tad pasauc viņus vēlreiz!
13. Cik ilgi tu jau sildi savas rokas? Vai tad tu tās vēl neesi sasildījusi?
14. Pasauksim skaļāk, tad viņi mūs dzirdēs!
15. Ja es mācētu gleznot, es uzgleznotu saules lēktu jūrmalā.

16. Pērn šeit nodibināja jaunu bibliotēku un šogad dibinās mākslas galeriju.
17. Ja tu mani nebūtu uzmodinājusi agri no rīta, es nebūtu paveicis šo steidzamo darbu un nebūtu nokārtojis dažas svarīgas lietas.
18. Pagaidi, kamēr es nokrāsoju žogu!
19. Kāpēc jūs nepārtulkojāt šo teikumu?
20. Šī plāpa izstāstīja, ka mēs paņēmām mazo meiteni līdz uz Jāņu balli.
21. Ko tu šeit iestādīji?
22. Kur jūs paslēpāt zeltu? – Sameklējiet!
23. Cik kokvilnas var savērt vienā stundā?
24. Pastmarka nelīp pie aploksnes.
25. Viņš uzar zemi starp ābelēm.
26. Pirms viņš uzgleznoja pēdējo koku, viņš sasildīja rokas.
27. Vai jūs jauki nosvinējāt Lieldienas?
28. Redzi, ko krusttēvs man iedāvināja!
29. Kurā gadā šo uzņēmumu nodibināja?
30. Man drīz būs apnicis atvērt un aizvērt durvis katru reizi, kad kāds ieiet vai iziet.
31. No kurienes viņa ir? – No kaut kurienes Vācijā.
32. Vai jūs viņam likāt braukt uz šejieni vai uz citurieni?
33. Mums kaut kā jāglābj rati, kas ir iestiguši purvā.
34. Man nepatīktu palikt šeit kaut drusku ilgāk.
35. Drēbe ir drusku plukusi un sarukusi.
36. Kaut es no šejienes varētu izsprukt!
37. Kad ļaudis dzirdēja, kas bija noticis, tad viņi tūlīt brauca šurp no visām malām.
38. Tas ir kucēns jeb mazs suns.
39. Kaut kur laikam būs kāpnes: sameklēsim!
40. Ja zaķis muks, suņi to panāks.
41. Ja tu būtu kaut cik domājis par savu ģimeni, tu nebūtu iestidzis tik dziļi parādos.
42. Kārtībnieks bāra kādu zēnu.
43. Kad snieg, uz ietnēm jāber sāls.
44. Ja gans iemīgs, viņu pērs.
45. Tam muļķa karavīram jūk labā un kreisā kāja.

Exercise 138e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where could a bag of silver be hidden? – I suspect where the robbers have hidden it, but let's hope that they don't suspect that we know something.
2. He has translated two pages, and is now translating the final sentence.

3. You can't plant those trees with that small spade! – Indeed I can, I have already planted three trees and five bushes!
4. The mud is sticking to my boots. – Yes, and some wet leaves have stuck to my umbrella.
5. While you are heating the water in the bath-house, I shall warm my hands at the oven.
6. Don't tell this gossip anything: she will only tell the others.
7. What is he painting? – He is painting the old mill by the river.
8. Call the dog, I have seen a hare. – Call him yourself. If I call, he does not obey.
9. Can you plough up this small corner? – Yes, if I have been ploughing all day, I can plough up that corner as well!
10. How did you celebrate the wedding? – We have already been celebrating for three days, and we have not yet finished celebrating.
11. Did you fix that matter? – Without the chief's permission I cannot arrange anything: let him handle it himself!
12. If they spin all day, together they spin three hundred pounds of wool.
13. The gardener did not give us anything today, but not long ago he gave us two dozen cucumbers.
14. Why did you wake me, waiter? – Forgive me, sir, I wanted to wake the gentleman in the next room (*blakus istaba*), but now I see that I have woken you instead of him (*viņa vietā*).
15. The little boy is dragging that big rake around the yard. – Let him drag it; that way he is exercising his arms and legs.
16. Aren't they going to establish a new high school in this town? – No, that was established last year.
17. Where did you plant the bushes?
18. I shall once more tell you about my trip.
19. He translated the whole hymn-book.
20. We established this firm nineteen years ago.
21. He gave the picture he had painted to his daughter-in-law.
22. You have been hiding a dangerous criminal.
23. The fly was stuck to the honey pot.
24. Can you stretch the material of the parasol a little bit?
25. Let us light a decent fire, and then we shall warm our hands and feet.
26. I have already painted the bathroom; now I shall paint the bedroom.
27. Can we go around the swamp?
28. I wanted to weigh that fish, but it slipped from my hands before I could put it on the scales.
29. If I could get into the corridor, I could hang up my coat.
30. We ought to attack the enemy before sunrise.
31. The stars were not shining, and I stumbled in the dark.

LESSON 139

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: A-O-A TYPE

Verbs of this type have *a* as the stem vowel of the infinitive, *o* as the stem vowel of the present and *a* as the stem vowel of the imperfect. This conjugation in its pure form does not involve any change in consonants.

tapt 'to become'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es topu</i>	<i>es tapu</i>	–
<i>tu topi</i>	<i>tu tapi</i>	<i>topi!</i>
<i>viņš top</i>	<i>viņš tapa</i>	<i>lai top!</i>
<i>mēs topam</i>	<i>mēs tapām</i>	<i>tapsim!</i>
<i>jūs topat</i>	<i>jūs tapāt</i>	<i>topiet!</i>
<i>viņi top</i>	<i>viņi tapa</i>	<i>lai top!</i>

Future: *es tapšu, tu tapsi, viņš taps, etc.*

Conditional: *es taptu, tu taptu, viņš taptu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jātop, man bija jātop, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *tapis, tapuši; tapusi, tapušas.*

Verbs of the *a-o-a* type with infinitives in *-kt* or *-gt* palatalize this to *-c-* or *-dz-* respectively in the second person singular present and imperative, the second person plural imperative and the masculine singular of the past participle active.

zagt 'to steal'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es zogu</i>	<i>es zagu</i>	–
<i>tu zodz</i>	<i>tu zagi</i>	<i>zodz!</i>
<i>viņš zog</i>	<i>viņš zaga</i>	<i>lai zog!</i>
<i>mēs zogam</i>	<i>mēs zagām</i>	<i>zagsim!</i>
<i>jūs zogat</i>	<i>jūs zagāt</i>	<i>zodziet!</i>
<i>viņi zog</i>	<i>viņi zaga</i>	<i>lai zog!</i>

Future: *es zagšu, tu zagsi, viņš zags, etc.*

Conditional: *es zagtu, tu zagtu, viņš zagtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāzog, man bija jāzog, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *zadzis, zaguši; zagusi, zagusas.*

Verbs with the vowel alternation *a-o-a* have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative, except in those verbs which have *-c-* or *-dz-* in this position.

Vocabulary

<i>lakt (loku, laku)</i>	to lap up (milk, etc.)
<i>(sa-) plakt (plokū, plaku)</i>	to diminish, to decrease
<i>rakt (roku, raku)</i>	to dig
<i>(no-) smakt (smoku, smaku)</i>	to suffocate, choke; to languish
<i>(no-) zagt (zogu, zagu)</i>	to steal
<i>tapt (topu, tapu)</i>	to become
<i>sastapt (sastopu, sastapu)</i>	to meet (trans.)
<i>kaudze</i>	heap
<i>raktuve</i>	mine
<i>ogles (pl.)</i>	coal, coals
<i>bēdre</i>	hole, pit
<i>og raktuve</i>	coal-mine

NOTES: The prefix given in parenthesis before some of the verbs in this vocabulary indicates the perfective form:

(no-) zagt (zogu, zagu) is to be read:

<i>zagt (zogu, zagu)</i>	to steal (Imperfective)
<i>nozagt (nozogu, nozagu)</i>	to steal (Perfective)

Corresponding perfective forms will henceforth be indicated this way in the vocabularies.

Notice the phrase *Lai top!* 'Let it be (so)!'

Tapt also means *to take shape*:

Glezna top. The painting is taking shape.

When *tapt* is followed by a noun, this is introduced by *par*:

tapt par dziedātāju to become a singer

Exercise 139a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *lakt; rakt; nosmakt; zagt; tapt; sastapt; noģist; vest; pazust; ēst; krist; mest; svērt; iestigt; palikt; mukt; dzert; augt.*

Exercise 139b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 139a.

Exercise 139c

List 30 imperfective verbs with their corresponding perfective equivalents.

Exercise 139d

Decline in the singular and plural: *es; tu; viņš; viņa; tas; tā; šis; šī.*

Exercise 139e

Translate into English:

- Og|raktuvēs rok ogles dienu un nakti.
- Glezna lēnām top.
- Laupītāji bija paslēpuši naudu vecajā raktuvē.
- Lai top, kā karalis pavēl!
- Jūs laikam zogat mūsu ogles, jo ogļu kaudze ir stipri saplakusi. – **Kā** jūs drīkstat apvainot godīgu strādnieku! Pasauciet policiju, tad es izstāstīšu, kurš te zog!
- Mēs gandrīz nosmakām sutīgajā og|raktuvē.
- Viņš tagad smok cietumā, tāpēc ka viņš nozaga spēkstacijas plānu.
- Mēslu kaudze lēnām saplaka.
- Kāpēc tu roc tik dziļu bedri? – Es stādīšu lielu koku.
- Suns lok ūdeni.
- Rietuma Austrālijā ir slavenas zelta raktuves.
- Es pilsētā sastapu tavu draudzeni, ar kuru mēs kopā nosvinējām tavu vārda dienu.
- Iesim laukā, man šķiet, ka es te nosmakšu!
- Cik ātri nauda plok: kā sniegs pavasarī!
- Kāpēc viņš nozaga gleznu, ko pats uzgleznoja un iedāvināja mākslas galerijai?
- Tagad jau top mājas otrais stāvs.
- Kaķis laka pienu, ko Anna bija sasildījusi.
- Kas pārtulkoja šo grāmatu par og|raktuvēm?
- Kāpēc jūs nerokat dziļāku bedri?

20. Suns tā laka, it kā tas trīs dienas nebūtu dzēris.
21. Mēs iemetīsim atkritumus bedrē, un tad mēs uzarsim lauku.
22. Vai viņa vēl nebija nokrāsojusi matus?
23. Raktuvē bija tik karsts, ka kreklis man tūliņ pielīpa pie ādas.
24. Ja tu sastopi to muļķi, saki viņam, ka viņš mūs visus uzmodināja ar skaļo mūziku!
25. Cik vilnas jūs šodien savērpāt?
26. 'Tu krīti' jāraksta ar galotni *-i*, bet 'tu smel' bez galotnes.
27. Smagais āmurs šķīla uguni no akmeņiem.
28. Mēs mēdzām gulēt gandrīz visu pēcpusdienu.
29. Tai vakarā bija karaliska balle, bet mēs tur nebijām.
30. Šīs ielas galā ir slavens krogus.
31. Bez avotiem tuksnesī nebūtu oažu.
32. Šoziem upē ledus ir biezāks nekā parasti.
33. Es ieraudzīju ūdeni pilam no griestiem.
34. Es ar tevi nerunāju, tāpēc ka tu biji par daudz dzēris.
35. Es sastapu strādniekus pie ogļu kaudzes.

Exercise 139f

Translate into English:

1. Kop dārzu!
2. Nestrāpēt savus draugus!
3. Iekniebsim viņai!
4. Svīlp skaļāk!
5. Sagrābiet naudu!
6. Izkāpsim no vilciena!
7. Vai viņš kala visu nakti?
8. Uzkāpsim kalnā!
9. Piekāpsim veco tirgotāju!
10. Iekāp laivā!
11. Kas noknieba visus ziedus un lapas?
12. Ko tu greb?
13. Gērbiet bērņus kārtīgāk!
14. Ko tu plēs?
15. Valdību laikam gāzīs.
16. Uzposīsim dzīvokli!
17. Nesaplēsiet plāņus!
18. Kas apgāza karalienes vajējo mašīnu?
19. Lai lauž kaklu!
20. Nogērb svārkus!
21. Uzgērb bikses!

22. Ko tu bāzi somā?
23. Griez vairāk maizes!
24. Neberz acis!
25. Pievērsiet man uzmanību!
26. Nenovērs acis no ceļa!
27. Nebāz pirkstus mutē!
28. Apgriezīsim ratus!
29. Frizieris viņam tik tikko nenogrieza ausi.
30. Ko tā skolniece melš?
31. Izdzēs virtuvē uguni!
32. Iestrebiet zupu, zēni! – Mēs jau strobjam!
33. Kas par svaigu vēsmu!
34. Vai tu nopel manu dzīvības apdrošināšanas aplēsi? Tad aples to pats!
35. Nenotes šos dēļus!
36. Mēs kūlām auzas.
37. Vai tu vēl vil visas meitenes?
38. Stumiet ratus!
39. Jumts jājumj.
40. Kas par īpatnēju trauku!

Exercise 139g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I cannot stand the sticky air in this coal mine: I am choking.
2. Take the spade and dig!
3. As soon as the boss turns his back, or whenever he is not paying attention to the workers, they do not dig any longer.
4. The criminals are languishing in the deep cellar of the castle.
5. He took the ring and the brooch. – Is that so? (*Ak tā!*) In other words he stole them.
6. We went deeper into the mine and it became hotter.
7. I met Michael in the library, and we arranged all those matters we had been speaking about.
8. Our debts are not diminishing.
9. There are often poisonous gases in coal mines.
10. The beasts are lapping up the water.
11. Wait! Don't throw the coal into the stove: the firewood is not yet burning properly (*kārtīgi*).
12. Although we beg, we do not steal.
13. Let us look for your umbrella in all the rooms: I do not believe that anyone has stolen it.
14. This big heap of coal will be useful to us in winter.

15. How did you manage to hide the weapons in that small hole?
16. Did you meet them? – No, they had not arrived.
17. The cat was lapping up the milk.
18. The snow is melting away (*plakt*) rapidly.
19. We are languishing here like fish without water.
20. In that mine they dig for gold (*rakt zeltu*).
21. That rubbish must be thrown into the pit.
22. The fields will be flourishing after yesterday's rain.
23. There are flats on the upper floors, but there are only offices on the lower floors.
24. Where can we seek relief from this horrible heat?
25. Does a snake really bite with its tongue?
26. Don't lift the keg, it is too heavy. Roll it!
27. Where now is your former courage?
28. The courageous postman saved the local policeman's life.
29. Present-day prices are awfully high.
30. If you want to speak to my husband, seek him in the near-by tavern.
31. We planted three trees in our garden, but the middle one is not growing.
32. Punch him on the nose!
33. The present government never decides anything.

LESSON 140

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: A-O-A TYPE, WITH DENTAL
(VOICED AND UNVOICED)

A number of Short Conjugation verbs follow a conjugation that combines the characteristics of the *a-o-a* type and the Dental type, both voiced and unvoiced. That is to say that they exhibit a vowel alternation *a-o-a* and a consonant alternation *s-t-t* or *s-d-d*.

Unvoiced: *prast* 'to know how'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es protu</i>	<i>es pratu</i>	–
<i>tu proti</i>	<i>tu prati</i>	<i>proti!</i>
<i>viņš prot</i>	<i>viņš prata</i>	<i>lai prot!</i>
<i>mēs protam</i>	<i>mēs pratām</i>	<i>pratīsim!</i>
<i>jūs protat</i>	<i>jūs pratāt</i>	<i>protiet!</i>
<i>viņi prot</i>	<i>viņi prata</i>	<i>lai prot!</i>

Future: *es pratīšu, tu pratīsi, viņš pratīs*, etc.
 Conditional: *es prastu, tu prastu, viņš prastu*, etc.
 Debitives: *man jāprot, man bija jāprot*, etc.
 Past Participle Active: *pratis, pratuši; pratusi, pratušas*.

Voiced: *rast* 'to find'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es rodu</i>	<i>es radu</i>	–
<i>tu rodi</i>	<i>tu radi</i>	<i>rodi!</i>
<i>viņš rod</i>	<i>viņš rada</i>	<i>lai rod!</i>
<i>mēs rodam</i>	<i>mēs radām</i>	<i>radīsim!</i>
<i>jūs rodāt</i>	<i>jūs radāt</i>	<i>rodiet!</i>
<i>viņi rod</i>	<i>viņi rada</i>	<i>lai rod!</i>

Future: *es radīšu, tu radīsi, viņš radīs*, etc.
 Conditional: *es rastu, tu rastu, viņš rastu*, etc.
 Debitives: *man jārod, man bija jārod*, etc.
 Past Participle Active: *radis, raduši; radusi, radušas*.

Remember that all verbs of the *a-o-a* type, except those which palatalize *k* and *g* to *c* and *dz* have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>prast</i> (<i>protu, pratu</i>)	to know how (to), to be able (to)
<i>saprast</i> (<i>saprotu, sapratu</i>)	to understand
<i>rast</i> (<i>rodu, radu</i>)	to find; to be accustomed (usually in perfect tenses only)
<i>atrast</i> (<i>atrodu, atrađu</i>)	to find
<i>pierast</i> (<i>pirodu, pierađu</i>)	to become accustomed (to)
<i>paradums</i>	custom, habit
<i>kūts</i> (f.)	byre, cattle-barn
<i>siens</i>	hay
<i>vaina</i>	guilt; fault
<i>vainīgs</i>	guilty
<i>mākslīgs</i>	artificial, synthetic
<i>kārts</i> (f.)	(playing) card
<i>spēle</i>	game

NOTES: *Rast* serves as an imperfective to both *atrast* and *pierast*: hence its two meanings.

Pierast is normally construed with *pie*:

Mēs pieradām pie karstuma.

We got used to the heat.

Paradums is often construed with an infinitive:

Man ir paradums smēķēt pēc maltītēm.

I am in the habit of smoking after meals.

vainīgais 'the guilty one', hence 'the culprit'

Es neesmu vainīgs, ka es esmu slim.

It's not my fault that I am ill.

vārdu spēle 'play on words'

siena kaudze 'hay stack'

Exercise 140a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *atrast; saprast; pierast; prast; rast; nozagt; rakt; ģist; zust; ēst; krist; sist; atvērt; likt; ņemt; izsprukt; bēgt; panākt; lēkt.*

Exercise 140b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 140a.

Exercise 140c

What are the main factors determining whether *ç* or *ç* is to be pronounced in the case of (a) nouns, adjectives, adverbs; and (b) verbs?

Exercise 140d

Translate into English:

1. Vai tu proti spēlēt kārtis? – Jā, bet tikai vieglas kāršu spēles.
2. Mēs ātri pieradām pie Austrālijas karstuma.
3. Vasarā ubagi guļ siena kaudzēs.
4. Tā ir tava vaina, ka nevainīgs cilvēks tagad smok cietumā.
5. Viņš dzer, smēķē un spēlē kārtis, bet mana meita saka, ka viņam nav sliktu paradumu.

6. Latvijā un arī citās Eiropas zemēs lopi visu ziemu paliek kūti.
7. Kurš no jums pirmais atrada sēni?
8. Viņa tapa par operas dziedātāju.
9. Siena kaudze ātri plok, aizvakar tā bija daudz augstāka, bet tagad jau ir stipri saplakusi.
10. Šī fabrika ražo mākslīgus mēslus.
11. Vai jūs sapratāt šo vārdu spēli?
12. Viņš šeit draugus neradīs.
13. Sieva ir sen pieradusi pie viņa paradumiem.
14. Pirmajās dienās mēs gandrīz nosmakām, bet tagad mēs jau esam pieraduši pie sutīgā gaisa ogļraktuvē.
15. Šis cilvēks ir par godīgu, lai zagtu. Beidziet viņu pratināt, viņš nav vainīgs!
16. Mākslīgas puķes man nepatīk.
17. Tā ir tava vaina, ka es iekritu mēslu bedrē!
18. Kā viņi varēja nozagt veselu tonnu ogļu? To es nesaprotu!
19. Kara laikā mēs katru dienu saņēmām piecdesmit gramu mākslīgā medus.
20. Jānis cerēja sastapt skaisto Baibu kūti, bet tur bija tikai vecā Aija, kas viņu aiztrieca.
21. Viņš ir radis spēlēt kārtis uz (=for) lielu naudu.
22. Mēs atradām vainīgo.
23. Vai tā ir mana vaina, ka tev jāstrādā raktuvē?
24. Mazie kaķīši vēl neprot lakt pienu no bļodas.
25. Kas vedīs lopiem sienu uz kūti?
26. Vai tu vēl neesi atradis pretinieku šai spēlē? – Gan jau atradīšu!
27. Katram cilvēkam ir kāds slikts paradums.
28. Vai viņš pratīs rakt ar šo lāpstu?
29. Es nesaprotu, kāpēc kūtij ir tik mazi lodziņi.
30. Saimnieks būs dusmīgs, ja siens lietū paliks slapjš.
31. Ak, tukšās mucas ir pazudušas no klēts, kur mēs tās glabājām!
32. Pēc briesmīgās neražas visā zemē nebija kviešu.
33. Vai gani drīkst vest kumeļus uz aploku?
34. Mums bija tik laba raža, ka klēts bija par mazu, lai tur visu labību uzglabātu.
35. Mani spēki zūd: šis arklis ir par smagu.
36. Es noģidu, ka es atradīšu savu vīru pirtī guļam.
37. Vainīgos sodīs.
38. Aiz vecajām dzirnavām ir bīstams purvs.
39. Nomizo gurķus!
40. Kad mēs bijām gaidījuši piecas stundas, viņas beidzot atnāca.
41. Kā tu to panāci, ka dabūji vecāku atļauju iet uz balli?
42. Pārdevējs gribēja pievērst dāmas uzmanību dārgajiem jaunajiem saules-sargiem.

43. Vai zaķi ēd burkānus?
44. Mēs ar Jāni gribējām nokārtot daudz svarīgu lietu.
45. Es nevaru panest vasaras karstumu: tagad noderētu milzīga glāze alus.
46. Nepagriez man muguru, kad es ar tevi runāju!
47. Paņemiet visu, ko jūs gribat!
48. Vainīgajiem draud smags cietuma sods.

Exercise 140e

Translate into Latvian:

1. My wife has the foolish habit of hiding my vodka bottle.
2. The card stuck to the table.
3. It is my fault that you were not woken, sir.
4. He gave her only artificial gems.
5. Plays upon words often cannot be translated.
6. Will he know how to plant these rare flowers?
7. He will not tell where he found the gold.
8. You gentlemen have again been celebrating all night!
 - Oh, landlady, you will soon become accustomed to it!
 - No, I shall not become accustomed to it; if it happens once more, I shall throw you out!
9. Can you paint the cow-shed and the haystack?
10. She does not know how to dye her hair.
11. Would he have called the police if he himself were guilty?
12. I don't understand why this material cannot be stretched a little.
13. Man becomes accustomed to the heat and to the cold.
14. We shall soon find the ring.
15. We must find one more man; then we can play this card game.
16. That is artificial ice.
17. Do you understand why the soil between the fruit trees must be ploughed up?
18. He has the habit of warming his hands on (*pie*) the tea-cup.
19. It is your fault, Biruta, that we have spun so little today.
20. He is not used to working in a mine.
21. Is there still enough hay in the cow-shed?
22. They recently founded a new university in America.

LESSON 141

ŠĀDS AND TĀDS: ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

Šāds and *tāds* both serve as adjectives meaning 'such':

Es nelasu tādas grāmatas.

Es nelasu šādas grāmatas.

I do not read such books.

While both *šāds* and *tāds* can be translated by 'such', there is a distinction of meaning between them. *Šāds* means 'such' in the sense of 'this kind of', whereas *tāds* means 'such' in the sense of 'that kind of'. Both answer the question framed with *kāds* 'what kind of'.

Care should be taken not to confuse *šāds* and *tāds* with the adverbial *tik*:

Es nelasu tik muļķīgas grāmatas.

I do not read such stupid books.

One will however find usages such as:

Es nelasu tādas muļķīgas grāmatas.

Tas is sometimes strengthened with *tāds*:

Kas tas tāds ir?

Who is that?

The plural combination *šādi tādi* is used pronominally to mean *the plebs, hol polloi, riff-raff*, etc.

Mēs nerunājam ar šādiem tādiem.

We don't talk to just anybody.

Adjectivally, it is again pejorative, meaning 'any old sort of':

Es nelasu šādas tādas grāmatas.

I don't read just any old books.

Vocabulary

<i>šāds</i>	such, of this kind
<i>tāds</i>	such, of that kind
<i>šādi tādi</i>	(pron.) the plebs; (adj.) any old sort of
<i>joks</i>	joke
<i>jocīgs</i>	funny

<i>jokot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to joke
<i>traks</i>	mad
<i>trakot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to go berserk; to rage, to rave
<i>sabiedrība</i>	society, company
<i>brīnums</i>	marvel, wonder
<i>nags</i>	claw; (finger, toe) nail
<i>īkšķis</i>	thumb
<i>ķēpa</i>	paw
<i>vienkāršs</i>	simple
<i>brīnišķīgs</i>	wondrous, marvellous

Up until now, each lesson has included special sentences designed to revise the vocabulary and grammar of previous lessons. From now on, however, the revision is left rather more to the student. In each lesson a suggested revision assignment is included. The student is advised to treat these revision assignments conscientiously, paying particular attention to the vocabulary and grammar of the section proposed.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 129–138.

Exercise 141a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *lakt; zagt; smakt; sastapt; saprast; pierast; noģist; pazust; ievest; just; sist; bārt; tikt; pielipt; skart; noķert; art; stumt; iet; dot; būt.*

Exercise 141b

When is the ending *-i* required in the second person singular present and imperative?

Exercise 141c

Conjugate in the future: *atrast; prast; ģist; zust; ēst.*

What is unusual about the future of these verbs?

What difficulties would face a regular future formation in this type of verb?

Exercise 141d

Translate into English:

1. Tādā smalkā sabiedrībā nedrīkst stāstīt šādus rupjus jokus.
2. Viņš prot spēlēt tikai vienkāršas kāršu spēles.
3. Kas tas tāds par jocīgu cilvēku?
4. Dod ķepu, sunīt!
5. Man nav sliktu paradumu.
6. Kad es biju jauna, mūsu sabiedrības dāmas nekrāsoja nagus.
7. Tas gan būtu brīnums, ja tu izturētu pārbaudījumu.
8. Mēs savās ballēs neaicinām šādus tādus.
9. Es jau esmu pieradusi pie viņa lētajiem jokiem.
10. Šis nabaga cilvēks nav vainīgs, ka viņš ir traks.
11. Bite man iedzēla īkšķī.
12. Man nepatīk, ja šādi tādi liek man savas netīrās ķepas uz pleca.
13. Es nejokoju, šis cilvēks tiešām ir traks.
14. Jūra bango, un vētra trako.
15. Šādi nagi ir tikai lāčiem.
16. Mēs atradām brīnišķīgas puķes.
17. Tā nav mana vaina, ka tu ievainoji savu īkšķi.
18. Es nedzeru kopā ar šādiem tādiem.
19. Nesiet sienu kūti!
20. Zirgi sāka trakot, kad ieraudzīja vilcienu.
21. Es neesmu radis jokot par nopietnām lietām.
22. Vai tu tiešām nesaproti jokus?
23. Apdrošināšanas sabiedrība neapdrošina tādas vecas mājas.
24. Es neticu šādiem brīnumiem.
25. Viņa prot atrisināt tikai vienkāršus uzdevumus.
26. Nav brīnums, ka viņš palika traks.
27. Kaķim ir mīkstas ķepas, bet asi nagi.
28. Ja bērns turpinās bāzt īkšķi mutē, viņš būs jāved pie nervu ārsta.
29. Ārā ir brīnišķīgs laiks, bet mums jāsmok sūtīgajā birojā pie mākslīgas gaismas.
30. Stāsts ir brīnišķīgs, tāpēc ka tas ir tik vienkāršs.
31. Kas par jocīgu jautājumu!
32. Kad viņa sāk trakot, tad vairs nevar jokot.

Exercise 141e

Translate into Latvian:

1. In our society you will not meet the riff-raff.
2. The bear is eating honey from its paw.
3. The farmer will rage when we tell him that his best foal was stolen.
4. What a madman!
5. My thumb nail is going blue!
6. Outside the weather is marvellous, but we have to languish here in the coal-mine.
7. He steals his jokes from books.
8. It is a miracle (*brīnums*) that nobody suffocated in the mine.
9. I am not joking: I do not wish to see you in this kind of society.
10. What a funny expression!
11. The thumb is shorter than the middle finger.
12. No wonder the coal heap is going down!
13. I like that kind of folk song (= *such folk songs*).
14. Only such fools like your simple jokes.
15. The dog is digging a hole with its paws.
16. The lion has dangerous claws.
17. Anne is a wonderful girl.
18. The storm raged all night.
19. We like funny poems like that (= *such funny poems*).
20. The haystack is dwindling.

LESSON 142

IRREGULAR MASCULINE NOUNS IN -IS

A number of *-is* nouns are irregular in that they do not admit of the palatalization normally required in the genitive singular and all cases of the plural. We have already seen similar irregularities with nouns like *kuģis*, and also those with stems in *-r-* like *stūris*, where the palatalization does not normally occur in modern texts. There are also a number of special exceptions, the principal one being *viesis* 'a guest', the declension of which is given below.

viesis 'a guest'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>viesis</i>	<i>viesi</i>
Acc.	<i>viesi</i>	<i>viesus</i>
Gen.	<i>viesa</i>	<i>viesu</i>
Dat.	<i>viesim</i>	<i>viesiem</i>
Loc.	<i>viesī</i>	<i>viesos</i>

Similarly are declined *tālskatis*, *tumšmatis* and *gaišmatis*: see vocabulary.

Surnames ending in *-skis* (all of Slavic origin) do not admit of palatalization, cf. *Čaikovskis*, gen. *Čaikovska* ('Tchaikovsky').

In addition, a number of given names in *-is* (e.g., *Atis*, *Guntis*, *Frīdis*, *Rūdis*, *Ludis* and *Valdis*) are sometimes found unpalatalized in the genitive singular, although the palatalized forms are perhaps more common.

Vocabulary

<i>viesis</i> (gen. sing. <i>viesa</i> , plural <i>viesi</i>)	a guest
<i>tālskatis</i> (gen. sing. <i>-ta</i> , plural <i>-ti</i>)	telescope
<i>tumšmatis</i> (gen. sing. <i>-ta</i> , plural <i>-ti</i>)	dark-haired person
<i>gaišmatis</i> (gen. sing. <i>-ta</i> , plural <i>-ti</i>)	fair-haired person
<i>Atis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Aša</i> or <i>Ata</i>)	male name
<i>Guntis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Gunša</i> or <i>Gunta</i>)	male name
<i>Frīdis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Frīža</i> or <i>Frīda</i>)	male name
<i>Rūdis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Rūža</i> or <i>Rūda</i>)	male name
<i>Ludis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Luža</i> or <i>Luda</i>)	male name
<i>Valdis</i> (gen. sing. <i>Valža</i> or <i>Valda</i>)	male name
<i>prāts</i>	mind, intellect
<i>prātīgs</i>	sensible, prudent
<i>manuprāt</i>	in my opinion; as far as I am concerned
<i>asprātīgs</i>	sharp-witted; witty
<i>nu!</i>	now (then)!

NOTES: *Tumšmatis* and *gaišmatis* have corresponding feminines *tumšmate* and *gaišmate*. These two nouns do not have the normal palatalization of *e*-declension nouns in the genitive plural: the forms are *tumšmatu* and *gaišmatu*.

skaidrā prātā 'sober'

Kas tev nāk prātā? 'What has got into you?'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 46-55.

Exercise 142a

Decline in the singular and plural: *tālskatis; viesis; zoss; suns*.

Exercise 142b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *saprast; atrast; tapt; plakt; gist; pazust; paēst; nokrist; iemest; svērt; palikt; patikt; spert; nest; kult; aplēst; iebāzt; malt; nolēkt; pārnākt; iemērkt*.

Exercise 142c

Give rules governing the formation of the imperative forms.

Exercise 142d

Translate into Latvian: on the 14th of November, 1738; on the 21st of June, 1811; on the 29th of February, 1924; on the 1st of April, 1946; before the 31st of December, 1968.

Exercise 142e

Count in five minute intervals from 3 o'clock to 5 o'clock.

Exercise 142f

List the main declension patterns of nouns, and any departures made from them.

Exercise 142g

Translate into English:

1. Guntim, kā goda viesim, jāguļ viesu istabā.
2. Tumšmates ādas krāsa parasti arī ir tumšāka nekā gaišmatei.
3. Esi nu prātīgs, Ludi!
4. Frīdis tevi nedomāja apvainot, viņš tikai jokoja.
5. Kaut gan joks bija rupjš, tas tomēr bija asprātīgs.

6. Šādi tādi nu gan nenāk mūsu sabiedrībā.
7. Rūdi, kas tev nāk prātā? Vai tu esi traks?
8. Man nekad nenāktu prātā lietot Aša tālskati bez viņa atļaujas.
9. Viņš nebija skaidrā prātā, kad viņš trakoja.
10. Vai es drīkstu nokrāsot nagus, māmiņ? – Nē, manuprāt, tu vēl esi par jaunu.
11. Nu jau drīz kucēna ķepiņa būs atkal vesela.
12. Tādus viesus mēs nu gan negaidījām.
13. Bez tālskata otru krastu neredz.
14. Neesi nu jocīgs! Šādā brīnišķīgā dienā tu gribi spēlēt kārtis!
15. Anna vedīs Rūdi pie prāta, viņa ir prātīga meitene. (*vest pie prāta = to bring some one to his senses*)
16. Manuprāt brīnumiem nevar ticēt.
17. Uz kurieni nu, Ludi?
18. Brauc ar prātu, Frīdi! Netrako!
19. Ak, tā pastmarka ir pielipusi man pie īkšķa!
20. Gunša dēls ir asprātīgs zēns.
21. Ata tēvs Ludis bija gaišmatis, bet Atis pats ir tumšmatis.
22. Manuprāt Rūdis negrib apciemot Frīdi.
23. Ar šādu vienkāršu tālskati tu neredzēsi zvejnieku laivu.
24. Redzi nu, sieviņ, cik asprātīgus dzejoļus raksta mūsu dēls Guntis!
25. Nu, ko es teicu? Rūdis tiešām ir nokrāsojis matus, jo tagad viņš ir tumšmatis, bet pirms nedēļas viņš vēl bija gaišmatis.
26. Kāpēc Valdīm bija jāguļ vannas istabā?
27. Valža kurpes ir dārgākas par Gunta korpēm.
28. Valda lietussargs ir vecs: viņam jau sen vajaga jaunu.
29. Čaikovska mūziku spēlē visā pasaulē.

Exercise 142h

Translate into Latvian:

1. That is not a very sensible habit.
2. That was not Rūdis's fault.
3. The lens (*stikls*) of the telescope is dusty.
4. Guntis is not accustomed to Frīdis's witty jokes.
5. Ludis is not guilty.
6. Come on, Atis, be sensible!
7. Oh dear, there are still no curtains in the guest-room, and the guests will be here very soon. (= *tūlīn*)
8. It does not enter Ludis's mind to play cards with just anybody.
9. Finish the game, Atis.

10. With this telescope you can see the eye of a fly at a distance of ten kilometres.
11. As far as I am concerned, Guntis can go to the devil.
12. When Rūdis kissed that fat girl in the cattle-shed, he was not sober.
13. What a witty expression!
14. Well, Frīdis, have you brought the hay?
15. In my opinion, a dark person cannot wear such a suit.
16. Well, did you find the spectacles?
17. I do not understand why you do not like artificial flowers.
18. Well, does the name of that fair-haired man still not come to your mind?
19. Well, does little Baiba know how to spin already? – Why not, she is a clever girl.
20. Guntis and Valdis went hunting hares by the old mill.
21. Valdis's brother has still not arrived.
22. Do you like Tchaikovsky's music?

LESSON 143

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: *I-E-I* TYPE

The vowel alternation *i-e-i* works in much the same way as the vowel alternation *a-o-a*. The vowel *i* is found in the infinitive and in the imperfect, but in the present the vowel *e* appears.

vilkt 'to pull'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es vĕlku</i>	<i>es vilku</i>	—
<i>tu vĕlc</i>	<i>tu vilki</i>	<i>vĕlc!</i>
<i>viņš vĕlk</i>	<i>viņš vilka</i>	<i>lai vĕlk!</i>
<i>mēs vĕlcam</i>	<i>mēs vilkā</i>	<i>vilksim!</i>
<i>jūs vĕlkat</i>	<i>jūs vilkāt</i>	<i>vĕlciet!</i>
<i>viņi vĕlk</i>	<i>viņi vilka</i>	<i>lai vĕlk!</i>

Future: *es vilkšu, tu vilksi, viņš vilks*, etc.

Conditional: *es vilktu, tu vilktu, viņš vilktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāvĕlk, man bija jāvĕlk*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *vilcis, vilkuši; vilkusi, vilkušas*.

Note here the palatalization of the *k* of the stem to *c* in the second person singular present and imperative, the second person plural imperative and the masculine singular of the past participle active. This palatalization, like that of *g* to *dz*, is a common feature of Short Conjugation verbs other than those of the Simple Palatalized Type, which do the same thing on a much larger scale.

Note too that the *-i* of the second person singular present and imperative is lacking.

Vocabulary

<i>vilkt</i> (<i>vĕlku, vilku</i>)	to pull, to drag (trans.)
<i>pavilkt</i> (<i>-vĕlku, -vilku</i>)	to pull, drag (a little); also as perfective to <i>vilkt</i>
<i>novilkt</i> (<i>-vĕlku, -vilku</i>)	to pull off (trans.)
<i>izvilkt</i> (<i>-vĕlku, -vilku</i>)	to pull out (trans.)
<i>izvilkums</i>	excerpt, extract
<i>vilkšus</i>	by dragging
<i>bargs</i>	harsh
<i>bardzība</i>	harshness
<i>kautrīgs</i> or <i>kautrs</i>	shy, timid
<i>kautriba</i>	shyness, timidity
<i>sūrs</i>	bitter; (metaph.) painful
<i>sūrums</i>	bitterness (of taste)
<i>skudra</i>	ant
<i>sīkums</i>	a trifle
<i>Ķīna</i>	China
<i>Indija</i>	India

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 131–140.

Exercise 143a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *vilkt; izvilkt; saprast; rast; lakt; rakt; ģist; pazust; ēst; atvest; krist; mist; sašust; sist; iemest; pērt; likt; kļupt; ņemt; art; stumt; strēbt; uzpost*.

Exercise 143b

Give the past participle active forms of: *novilkt; pavilkt; atrast; prast; saplakt; nosmakt; noģist; zust; levest; paēst; iekrist; just; nosist; mest; aizvērt; sērst; tikt; izsprukt; tvert; nest; jumt; notēst*.

Exercise 143c

Give in Latvian the days of the week and the months of the year.

Exercise 143d

Translate into Latvian: at 3 o'clock; at ten past four; at twenty past five; at half past six; at twenty to eight; at ten to nine; before nine o'clock; at ten past ten; at twenty past eleven; at twelve thirty; at twenty to two; at ten to three.

Exercise 143e

Translate into English:

1. Viņš redzēja tālskatī Ķīnas krastu.
2. Bīrutai nepatīk Rūža kautrība.
3. Guntis neizvilka no upes nevienas zivs, tikai kādu vecu zābaku.
4. Kāpēc tu nevelc tīklu stiprāk?
5. Mācītājs runā par Dieva bardzību.
6. Man nepatīk alus sūrumš.
7. Skudrai tas ir sīkums pavilkt kociņu vai akmentiņu, kas ir desmitreiz smagāks par pašu skudru.
8. Neesi nu tik kautrīgs, Ludi!
9. Kad bērns iekrita ūdenī, drosmīgais Atis ātri novilka kurpes un svārkus, nolēca no tilta upē un viņu izvilka.
10. Es izlasīju tikai dažus izvilkumus no šīs grāmatas.
11. Ja Rūdis Aiju drīz nebildinās, viņa to vilkšus vilks pie mācītāja.
12. Mēs pelnām maizi sūrā darbā.
13. Kāpēc jūs velkat laivu krastā?
14. Varbūt, ja divi zirgi vilks ratus, tie izvilks tos no dubļiem.
15. Bargajai ziemei sekoja brīnišķīgs pavasaris.
16. Tas ir prātīgi, ka tu novele svārkus šinī karstumā.
17. Vai viesis no Indijas jau ir atbraucis?
18. Policijas priekšnieks ir bargs kungs.
19. Šī kaste ir par smagu, lai to panestu; to dabūs augšā pa trepēm tikai vilkšus. – Manuprāt tā nav jāvelk, nesīsim!
20. Sieram jābūt drusku sūram, bet šim sieram vairs nav dabīgā sūruma.
21. Vai šī tēja ir no Ķīnas vai no Indijas?
22. Skudrām nav daudz dabīgu ienaidnieku.
23. Ķīnā un Indijā varbūt tikai katrs tūkstošais ir gaišmatis, bet tumšmatu tur ir papildnam.
24. Bargais kungs savus ļaudis sita katra sīkuma dēļ.
25. Aiz savas ārējās bardzības viņš slēpj mīkstu sirdi.

26. Nu, kas jums kaiš, jaunkundz? Kad jūs beidzot novilksit blūzi? Kautrība ir laba lieta, bet ārsts tāda sīkuma dēļ nevar ilgāk gaidīt. – Es neesmu kautra, man tikai ir auksti!
27. Sūrais alus jums laikam negaršos.
28. Mēs šo kautro zēnu vilkšus atvedām uz balli.
29. Uzrakstiet tikai īsu izvilkumu!
30. Tava kautrība man krīt uz nerviem! – Un man tava bardzība!
31. Lūdzu, Valdī, izlasiet mums dažus izvilkumus no savas jaunās noveles!
32. Cik Stapislavska skolnieku ir tapuši par slaveniem aktieriem?

Exercise 143f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The fishermen pulled out an empty net.
2. One is pulling, the other is pushing.
3. China has even (*vēl*) more inhabitants than India.
4. No wonder he rages about every trifle!
5. She is too shy to sing in public (= *sabiedrībā*).
6. Only the plebs would take off their coats in a concert hall!
7. The horse is pulling the plough.
8. I'm not joking, the beer really is bitter!
9. Ants of this type live only in India and China.
10. The shy lady does not like such unsophisticated (= *vienkāršs*) jokes.
11. We shall not move (*pavilkt*) such a heavy log (*koks*) by dragging; we shall have to roll it.
12. How well the young actor plays the mad king, who in all his harshness nevertheless shows his love for his daughter.
13. This is a record of (*ar*) excerpts from various operas.
14. Only by dragging shall we get the boat into the water.
15. Here are some extracts from a witty book.
16. With your timidity, you will not get (*tikt*) far! – Come (*nu*), I shall get further with my timidity than you with your harshness.
17. In the north people are used to the rigours (*bardzība*) of nature.
18. Where did you obtain this marvellous old telescope?
19. Some animals in Australia and South America eat only ants.
20. Did you injure your thumb? – Yes, but that is only a trifle.
21. How can you drink such bitter beer?
22. Please pull the blanket to that side.
23. In such a fierce (*bargs*) wind you should not pull off your overcoat.
24. That is certainly a bear's paw, for only bears have such claws.
25. Stravinsky's modern music does not please everybody.
26. Children never like the bitterness of medicine.

LESSON 144

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: I-E-I TYPE, LONG VOWEL
IN THE PRESENT

This small group of verbs behaves just like *vilkt*, except that the *e* of the present tense is long.

cirpt 'to shear'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es cērp</i>	<i>es cirpu</i>	—
<i>tu cērp</i>	<i>tu cirpi</i>	<i>cērp!</i>
<i>viņš cērp</i>	<i>viņš cirpa</i>	<i>lai cērp!</i>
<i>mēs cērpam</i>	<i>mēs cirpām</i>	<i>cirpsim!</i>
<i>jūs cērpāt</i>	<i>jūs cirpāt</i>	<i>cērpiet!</i>
<i>viņi cērp</i>	<i>viņi cirpa</i>	<i>lai cērp!</i>

Future: *es cirpšu, tu cirpsi, viņš cirps*, etc.

Conditional: *es cirptu, tu cirptu, viņš cirptu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jācērp, man bija jācērp*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *cirpis, cirpuši; cirpusi, cirpušas*.

There is no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative, for although there is indeed a long vowel as opposed to the short vowels of the infinitive and imperfect, it is not contrastive in the same way as the long vowel of *krītu*. The contrast is established by the alternation of *i* and *e*.

Note that verbs of this type with infinitives in *-kt* (there are none in *-gt*) undergo the expected palatalization:

pirkt 'to buy'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es pērku</i>	<i>es pirku</i>	—
<i>tu pērc</i>	<i>tu pirki</i>	<i>pērc!</i>
<i>viņš pērk</i>	<i>viņš pirka</i>	<i>lai pērk!</i>
<i>mēs pērkam</i>	<i>mēs pirkām</i>	<i>pirksim!</i>
<i>jūs pērkāt</i>	<i>jūs pirkāt</i>	<i>pērciet!</i>
<i>viņi pērk</i>	<i>viņi pirka</i>	<i>lai pērk!</i>

Future: *es pirkšu, tu pirksi, viņš pirks*, etc.

Conditional: *es pirktu, tu pirktu, viņš pirktu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāpērk, man bija jāpērk*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *pircis, pirkuši; pirkusi, pirkušas*.

The alternation pattern of *ē* and *e* will no doubt by now be very familiar.

Vocabulary

<i>(no-)pirkt (pērku, pirku)</i>	to buy
<i>uzpirkt (-pērku, -pirku)</i>	to buy up; to bribe
<i>pircējs</i>	shopper, buyer
<i>iepirkums</i>	purchase; (pl.) shopping
<i>pirkums</i>	purchase
<i>(no-)cirpt (cērp, cirpu)</i>	to shear
<i>cirpējs</i>	shearer
<i>žagari</i> (pl.)	brushwood; whipping
<i>sirsniņš</i>	warm-hearted, affectionate, sincere
<i>sienāzis</i>	grass-hopper
<i>dēsa</i>	sausage, salami
<i>sakne</i>	root
<i>saknes</i> (pl.)	(root) vegetables
<i>grozs</i>	basket

NOTES: *izvilkt sakni* 'to extract the root' (math.)

iepirkumu grozs 'shopping basket'

dažs labs (adj.) 'quite a few'

labs pirkums 'bargain'

sirsniņš paldies (ka) 'thank you very much (for)'

Where the English continuation of the above is a verbal form in *-ing*, the Latvian will have a full clause. 'Thank you for', plus noun, as we saw earlier, is *paldies par*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 26–50.

Exercise 144a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *nopirkt; nocirpt; izvilkt; atrast; saprast; nozagt; sastapt; noģist; zust; ēst; just; nomest; uzkārt; lestim; patikt; šķirt; iesākt; nolemt; aplēst; nogriezt; slēpt; uzlēkt; nākt; aplenkt*.

Exercise 144b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 144a.

Exercise 144c

Name prepositions governing: (a) the accusative, (b) the genitive, and (c) the dative.

Exercise 144d

Give the principal rules for the formation of diminutives.

Exercise 144e

Translate into English:

1. Iepirkumu grozs bija tik smags, ka mazajai Aijai tas bija jāvelk vilkšus.
2. Mārciņa desas par divdesmit centiem nav slikts pirkums.
3. Vai jums skolā jau māca izvilkt sakni?
4. Zobārsts domā, ka zoba sakne vēl ir vesela.
5. Es uzpērku augļus un saknes.
6. Dažos Indijas apgabalos sienāži šogad atkal iznīcināja ražu.
7. Tu esi rupjš kā austrāliešu aitu cirpējs.
8. Šādus sīkumus es nepērku.
9. Ķīna uzpērk Austrālijas kviešus.
10. Šis pircējs nopirka tikai divas mārciņas desas.
11. Pārdevējiem jābūt laipniem pret visiem pircējiem.
12. Kurā gada laikā pie jums cērp aitas?
13. Pircējs aiz kautrības nezināja ko teikt.
14. Vai tu esi dzirdējis stāstu par sienāzi un skudru?
15. Žagariem jābūt sausiem.
16. Neesi nu tik kautrs, novelc kreklu!
17. Desiņas bija ļoti labas, bet sēnes bija sūras.
18. Iepirkumi ir taņi grozā.
19. Atnes man grozu žagaru!
20. Sirsnīgs paldies par izvilcumu, ko tu uzrakstīji.
21. Kā maza skudra var pavilkt tik lielu sienāzi? – Tas ir sīkums, skudras velk daudz smagākas lietas!
22. Kā šī sirsnīgā sieviete varēja apprecēt šo bargo ierēdni?

23. Cirpēji nocērp aitām vilnu.
24. Es šo māju nopirku par astoņtūkstoš dolariem; vai tas nav labs pirkums?
25. Vilnu, ko cirpēji nocirpa, iemeta lielos grozos.
26. Tu vēl nekā nezini par dzīves bardzību.
27. Tu dabūsi žagarus, ja tu nepārnāksi laikā ar iepirkumiem.
28. Kāpēc tu nepērc jaunū mašīnu?
29. Mēs vienmēr pērkam vecas grāmatas, bet mēs uzpērkam arī mēbeles, traukus un drēbes.
30. Es esmu priecīga par šo pirkumu.
31. Veikalnieka bardzības dēļ dažs labs pircējs vairs nenāks veikalā.
32. Laupītāji bija uzpirkuši sargu.
33. Paderevska sasniegumi mūzikas laukā bija lieli.

Exercise 144f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Where did Rūdis buy that telescope?
2. Guntis is always warm-hearted towards his guests.
3. Are you buying this house only because it is a good bargain?
4. A dark-haired man helped her carry the shopping basket. – Well then, that was Ludis, because Atis has fair hair.
5. The grasshopper jumped over the heap of brushwood.
6. The root sucks water from the depths of the earth.
7. Frīdis would be sensible if he bought a smaller house.
8. The criminals had bribed the officials.
9. In my opinion that is a bad buy.
10. The sheep shearer answered your silly question cleverly.
11. Whatever has got into the clients' minds? They say the sausages are too expensive!
12. How many pounds of wool did you shear today?
13. The grasshoppers have ruined many vegetable-gardens.
14. Thank you very much for helping me to carry the heavy basket with all the shopping.
15. He is buying up the wool we were shearing.
16. We usually shear our sheep in June.
17. This sausage contains a lot of pepper.
18. You will get a whipping.
19. These days clients no longer buy shoes like that.
20. Atis's car is behind Valdis's car.

LESSON 145

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: *I-E-I* TYPE, WITH UNVOICED
DENTAL, WITH AND WITHOUT LONG VOWEL
IN THE PRESENT

Some verbs of the *i-e-i* type present also an alternation of consonants *s-t-t* (although not *s-d-d*). A further variant is the lengthening of the present vowel. The following paradigms will make this clearer.

(a) primary type, without present lengthening:

krimst 'to gnaw'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es krēmtu</i>	<i>es krimtu</i>	—
<i>tu krēmt</i>	<i>tu krimti</i>	<i>krēmt!</i>
<i>viņš krēmt</i>	<i>viņš krimta</i>	<i>lai krēmt!</i>
<i>mēs krēmtam</i>	<i>mēs krimtām</i>	<i>krimtīsim!</i>
<i>jūs krēmtat</i>	<i>jūs krimtāt</i>	<i>krēmtiet!</i>
<i>viņi krēmt</i>	<i>viņi krimta</i>	<i>lai krēmt!</i>

Future: *es krimtīšu, tu krimtīsi, viņš krimtīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es krimstu, tu krimstu, viņš krimstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jākrēmt, man bija jākrēmt, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *krimtis, krimtuši; krimtusi, krimtušas.*

(b) secondary type, with present lengthening:

cirst 'to chop'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es cērtu</i>	<i>es cirtu</i>	—
<i>tu cērt</i>	<i>tu cirti</i>	<i>cērt!</i>
<i>viņš cērt</i>	<i>viņš cirta</i>	<i>lai cērt!</i>
<i>mēs cērtam</i>	<i>mēs cirtām</i>	<i>cirtīsim!</i>
<i>jūs cērtat</i>	<i>jūs cirtāt</i>	<i>cērtiet!</i>
<i>viņi cērt</i>	<i>viņi cirta</i>	<i>lai cērt!</i>

Future: *es cirtīšu, tu cirtīsi, viņš cirtīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es cirstu, tu cirstu, viņš cirstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jācērt, man bija jācērt, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *cirtis, cirtuši; cirtusi, cirtušas.*

The alternation of *ç* and *ç*, and the absence of the ending *-i* are as one would expect.

Vocabulary

<i>krimst</i> (<i>krēmtu, krimtu</i>)	to gnaw
(<i>no-</i>) <i>cirst</i> (<i>cērtu, cirtu</i>)	to chop (down), to hew
<i>cirtējs</i>	axeman, lumber-jack; chopper
<i>iecirst</i> (<i>-cērtu, -cirtu</i>)	to chop into, bite into
<i>cirtiens</i>	blow, chop
<i>izcirtums</i>	clearing
<i>cirvis</i>	axe
<i>zobēns</i>	sword
<i>laukums</i>	(city) square; any well-defined small area of land
<i>saules riets</i>	sunset
<i>Kanāda</i>	Canada
<i>Brazīlija</i> , often <i>Brazīlija</i>	Brazil

NOTES: *sporta laukums* 'sports ground'

tirgus laukums 'market-square, market-place'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 101–110.

Exercise 145a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *nocirst; krimst; cirpt; pirkt; vilkt; atrast; prast; lakt; ģist; pazust; ievest; mist; sist; svērt; tikt; kļūpt; bēgt; dzert; celt; strēbt; izdzēst; malt; nolēkt; panākt; slaukt; kliegt.*

Exercise 145b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 145a.

Exercise 145c

Give the principal rules for the formation of the vocative case.

Exercise 145d

How are the various tenses of the debitive mood formed?

Exercise 145e

Translate into English:

1. Labs cirtējs šādu kociņu nocērt ar vienu cirtienu.
2. Lūdzu, atved grozu žagaru no izcirtuma!
3. Noziedznieks tagad cietumā kremt sausu maizi.
4. Mežā dzirdēja cirtējus cērtam kokus.
5. Kāpēc tu iecērt cirvi pašā saknē?
6. Pircēji staigā pa tirgus laukumu ar iepirkumu grozu uz rokas.
7. Valdība nopirka veco sporta laukumu.
8. Kanādas mežu cirtēji un Austrālijas aitu cirpēji ir spēka vīri.
9. Šis tirgotājs uzpērk viduslaiku ieročus, bet šādus zobenus un cirvjus viņš nepērk.
10. Suns tūlīņ iecirta zobus desā.
11. Mēs cirpām aitas no saules lēkta līdz saules rietam, un vilnai, ko nocirpām, būs diezgan pircēju.
12. Pavasarī izcirtumā stādīs jaunus kociņus.
13. Brazīlija eksportē kafiju uz visām pasaules malām.
14. Ko tu nupat krimti?
15. Kāpēc jūs nocirtāt kokam galotni?
16. Kādas preces Brazīlija importē no Kanādas?
17. Suns krimta lielu kaulu.
18. Kas par asu cirvi! Tas tiešām bija labs pirkums!
19. Mēs cirtām kokus līdz saules rietam.
20. Tikai neiecērt sev kājā!
21. Ar spēcīgu zobena cirtienu bende nocirta laupītājam galvu.
22. Laukuma vidū ir strūklaka.
23. Sirsnīgs paldies, mežsarg, ka jūs mums parādījāt ceļu uz izcirtumu!
24. Mēs redzējām Kanādas krastu jau pirms saules rieta.
25. Kādu valodu runā Brazīlijā?
26. Miljoni un miljoni sienāžu pārlidoja pāri pilsētai.
27. Balta, balta ieva zied
Līdz pašai galotnei.

(Tautas dziesma)

Exercise 145f

Translate into Latvian:

1. We were moving (*vilkt*) the trees from the clearing to the road by dragging (them).
2. The snake sank its fangs (*zobi*) into the axeman's thumb.
3. The squirrel is gnawing an acorn.
4. He pulled out his sword, and chopped off his enemy's right hand with one sharp blow.
5. You have no idea of the rigours of nature in the north of Canada.
6. On the sportsground we shall take off our coats.
7. After sunset it gets dark very quickly in Brazil, in India and in Southern China, but not in Canada or in the north of China.
8. With each blow of the axe, the axeman chopped down a small tree.
9. There are dangerous ants in Brazil.
10. The old dog was gnawing a large bone.
11. We are chopping down trees.
12. All the lower branches of the tree must be chopped off.
13. The saw must be pulled straight.
14. He hit himself in the leg with the axe (*iecirst*).
15. After sunset the shy young man lost all his shyness.
16. Nobody will pull out his sword over such a trifle.
17. This is only a short extract.
18. Does this road lead to the clearing?
19. Beer has a pleasant bitterness.

LESSON 146

QUESTIONS WITH *LAI*

English questions of the type 'What am I to do?' 'What am I to reply?' are translated into Latvian with the help of the particle *lai*:

Ko lai es daru?

What am I to do?

Ko lai mēs atbildam?

What are we to reply?

Kurp lai es eju?

Where am I to go?

This construction normally occurs only in the present tense.

Vocabulary

<i>ķēka</i>	building, edifice	<i>ķemme</i>	comb
<i>ērgēles</i> (pl.)	organ	<i>fraka</i>	tail-coat
<i>ēzeļis</i>	ass, donkey	<i>īrnieks</i>	tenant
<i>faktisks</i>	real, factual	<i>ķengurs</i>	kangaroo
<i>fakts</i>	fact	<i>ķiploks</i>	garlic
<i>filma</i>	film	<i>smirdēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to smell, stink (intrans.)
<i>flauta</i>	flute	<i>stabule</i>	shepherd's flute, pipe

NOTES: Far more common than the adjective *faktisks* is the adverb *faktiski* 'in fact, actually'.

smirdēt pēc 'to smell of, reek of'

Ķiploks refers to a single piece of garlic.

Garlic generically is *ķiploki* (pl.)

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 134–143.

Exercise 146a

Translate into English:

1. *Ko lai es daru?*
2. *Ko lai viņa saka?*
3. *Ko lai mēs atbildam?*
4. *Ko lai viņi raksta?*
5. *Cikos lai Juris iejūdz zirgus?*
6. *Ko lai mēs darām?*
7. *Kas to lai zina?*
8. *Ko lai viņa atbild?*
9. *Ko lai mēs rakstām?*
10. *Kurp lai es eju?*

Exercise 146b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *nocirst; krimst; uzpirkt; nocirpt; izvilkt; atrast; sastapt; noģist; pazust; pāest; sašust; iemest; aizvērt; iemigt; pielipt; šķirt; cept; smelt; notēst; kalt; kult; nolēkt; pārnākt; brēkt; uzmaukt.*

Exercise 146c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 146b.

Exercise 146d

Give in Latvian the days of the week and the months of the year.

Exercise 146e

Decline in the singular and plural the personal pronouns *es, tu, viņš, viņa, pats, pati*, and the reflexive personal pronoun in the singular only.

Exercise 146f

Translate into Latvian:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. much money; | 2. with much money; |
| 3. many carts; | 4. with many carts; |
| 5. many men; | 6. with many men; |
| 7. much pepper; | 8. with much pepper. |

Comment upon any significant differences between the above examples.

Exercise 146g

Translate into English:

1. Laukuma vidū ir milzīga strūklaka.
2. Tā nav koncerta flauta, bet vienkārša gana stabule.
3. Ko lai es saku par šādu filmu?
4. Pie frakas vienmēr valkā baltu vesti un baltu kakla saiti.
5. Vai jums patīk ērģeļu mūzika?
6. Vai tas ir fakts, ka Sidnejas un Melburnas ielās redz ķengurus?
7. Īrnieka istaba atkal smird pēc ķiplokiem.
8. Tikai filmās redz tādus brīnumus, kad no katra zobena cirtiena krīt viens ienaidsnieks.
9. Ziemeļeiropā ēzeļus netur.
10. Kur lai es nopērku ķemmi?
11. Kad lai viņi nocērt koku aiz bankas ēkas?

12. Šai stabulītei ir skaistāka skaņa nekā tai dārgajai flautai.
13. Tu varētu aizdot man savu ķemmi.
14. Šinī desā nav ķiploku, kundze! – Vai tas ir fakts?
15. Mūsu jaunais īrnieks ir koku cirtējs no Kanādas.
16. Ezeļiem ir garas ausis.
17. Kā lai zina, kurš ir viesmīlis un kurš ir viesis? Visiem ir frakas mugurā!
– Ļoti vienkārši, jo viesmīļiem ir melnas kakla saites, bet kungiem ir baltas.
18. Es nevaru cirst ar šo smago cirvi.
19. Neapšaubāmi tas ir fakts, ka Brazīlija ražo vairāk kafijas nekā citas zemes.
20. Šo ērģeļu koncertu faktiski vajadzēja rīkot pēc saules rieta.
21. Šīs zivis jau smird.
22. No izcirtuma dzirdēja stabules skaņas.
23. Cik ēku zemestrīce iznīcināja?
24. Mēs medījam ķengurus.
25. Vilks iecirta savus zobus ēzeļa kaklā.
26. Ķenguram tas būtu sākums pārlēkt pāri šim žogam.
27. Ko lai es daru ar šo veco ķemmi?
28. Kur lai uzkar fraku?
29. Kā lai es rakstu un rēķinu, ja īrnieks spēlē flautu?
30. Kas par traku filmu!
31. Laukuma malās ir lielas ēkas.

Exercise 146h

Translate into Latvian:

1. I do not buy sausage that contains garlic.
2. We should actually have bought a larger building.
3. He is buying up kangaroo skins.
4. With those scissors it would probably be easier to shear the wool from a sheep than to cut paper.
5. I shall bribe the shepherd-boy with a small flute. – That is clever, for the boy has only a simple shepherd's pipe, and he would like a real flute.
6. Our tenant plays the organ in church.
7. Is it a fact that some shearers can shear three hundred sheep a day?
8. How is she to carry all her purchases in that small basket?
9. The gutter stinks.
10. Asses have longer ears than horses.
11. I paid only thirty dollars for this tail-coat. Isn't that a good buy?
12. Have you no sausage without garlic?
13. Is it a fact that grasshoppers have destroyed the whole vegetable-garden?

14. The shoppers are standing in a long queue (*rinda*) in front of the building.
15. The photographer is burning many old films. – Is that why it smells so in the yard?
16. There was a poisonous snake under that heap of brushwood.
17. That was an interesting film about the life of kangaroos.
18. I found the comb in the pocket of my tail-coat.
19. This firm has been building organs for four hundred years.
20. This scoundrel insulted me: he called me a silly ass!
21. The shepherd-boy is making a pipe from willow bark.

LESSON 147

AVOIDANCE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE

Consider the following pairs of sentences:

- (a) *Mana galva sāp.*
Man sāp galva.
- (b) *Es nespodrināšu tavas kurpes.*
Es nespodrināšu tev kurpes.
- (c) *Āmurs šļuka no manas rokas.*
Āmurs šļuka man no rokas.
- (d) *Manā kabatā nav naudas.*
Man nav naudas kabatā.
- (e) *Viņa bārda aug.*
Viņam aug bārda.
- (f) *Viņš skūpstīja viņas roku.*
Viņš skūpstīja viņai roku.
- (g) *Es jutu dubļus zem savām kājām.*
Es jutu dubļus sev zem kājām.
- (h) *Ko tu liec manā rokā?*
Ko tu liec man rokā?

In the first sentence of each set a possessive adjective is used. In the second sentence, this is replaced by the dative of the appropriate personal pronoun. In this way Latvian can avoid the use of the possessive adjective. It is often

desirable to avoid the possessive adjective when it qualifies a noun indicating a part of the body, or some intimate personal possession, such as clothing, etc. In many cases, where no ambiguity could arise, no sign of the person is needed at all:

Es turu olu savā rokā.

Es turu olu rokā.

Vocabulary

<i>ķirzaka</i>	lizard
<i>ķīvīte</i>	peewit
<i>ķēve</i>	mare
<i>zagšus</i>	furtively, stealthily
<i>zilonis</i>	elephant
<i>snuķis</i>	(elephant's) trunk, (insect's) proboscis
<i>zilopkauls</i>	ivory
<i>ēgle</i>	fir tree
<i>ēlkonis</i>	elbow
<i>ēlpa</i>	breath
<i>ēlsas (pl.)</i>	sobs
<i>eļļa</i>	oil
<i>etiķis</i>	vinegar
<i>Daugava</i>	the river Daugava
<i>Gauja</i>	the river Gauja
<i>Venta</i>	the river Venta

NOTE: *bez elpas* 'out of breath'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 124–133.

Exercise 147a

Translate into Latvian, avoiding the possessive adjective:

1. My foot hurts.
2. A bee stung my finger.
3. The dog's lead slipped out of my hand.
4. There is no money in my pocket.
5. Will you wash my socks?
6. Did he steal your gloves?

7. His beard is growing.
8. You may kiss my hand.
9. How do you earn your living? (Use *maize*)
10. Don't break his neck!

Exercise 147b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *aizslēgt; panākt; lēkt; malt; savērt; izdzēst; iestrēbt; pievilt; art; cept; ņemt; dzert; noķert; patikt; iestigt; bārt; nosist; nokrist; vest; zust; ģīst; rakt; pierast; saprast; izvilkt; uzpirkt; krimst; nocirst.*

Exercise 147c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 147b

Exercise 147d

Under what circumstances can the lengthening syllable *-aj-* be dropped from the dative and locative forms of the definite adjective declension? When is it obligatory to omit it?

Exercise 147e

When must adverbial nouns of place be used instead of simple adverbs of place?

Exercise 147f

Translate into English:

1. Pie šiem salātiem faktiski derētu eļļa un etiķis.
2. Venta ir Kurzemes lielākā upe.
3. Īrnieks zagšus iegāja savā istabā.
4. Indijā mākslinieki grebj brīnišķīgas lietas no zilopkaula.
5. Vai tas ir fakts, ka zilonis var nosist cilvēku ar snuķi?
6. Ēkas, ko jūs filmā redzat, ir Daugavas krastā, bet pašu Daugavu šeit neredz.
7. Ķīvīšu ligzdas parasti ir purvos.
8. Kad es kāpju pa trepēm, es esmu bez elpas.

9. Viņas elsas nav īstas, viņa tikai tēlo.
10. Viņš iebāza roku līdz elkonim netīrajā eļļā.
11. Man nav ķemmes frakas kabatā.
12. Es bieži sapņoju par egļu mežiem Gaujas krastos.
13. Vai tu iejūdzi ķēvi ratos?
14. Āfrikas zilopi ir lielāki un bīstamāki par Indijas zilopiem.
15. Saimnieks bija kārtīgi iemetis, un kad viņš nakts vidū mēģināja zagšus ieiet savā istabā, viņš gaiteni apgāza kādu plauktu un uzmodināja sievu; kas tad notika, man nav jums jāstāsta.
16. Man sāp elkoni.
17. Kaut gan man garšo ķiploki, es šo desu tomēr neēdīšu, jo citādi sieva mani trieks no guļamistabas ārā.
18. Ziemā mēs gājām pāri Daugavai pa ledu.
19. Zēni ķer ķirzakas Gaujas krastā starp akmeņiem.
20. Bite sūc medu no ziediem ar savu sīko snukīti.
21. Tirgotāji uzpērk zilonkaulu Āfrikas austrumu krastā.
22. Vīns ir skābs kā etiķis.
23. Šādas sēnes aug tikai zem eglēm.
24. Viņš būs tev pateicīgs līdz savas dzīves galam.
25. Eiropā egle ir Ziemsvētku koks.
26. Kalps zagšus ieveda ķēvīti aplokā.
27. Ķīvīte aizstāv savu ligzdu.
28. Man vairs nav elpas.
29. Kad ganiņš taisīja stabulīti, viņš pēkšņi dzirdēja bārenītes elsas pašā tuvumā.
30. Ķirzakām ir gara, šaura mēle, līdzīga čūsku mēlei.
31. Venta tek no dienvidiem uz ziemeļiem.
32. Galdā nav ne etiķa, ne eļļas.
33. Šogad pasaules tirgū zilonkaula cenas nav tik augstas kā pērn.
34. No ķirzaku ādas taisa kurpes.
35. Ķēve ēd man no rokas.
36. Mēslu kaudze smird.
37. Vai tu dzirdēji viņas elsas, kad ērģeles spēlēja?
38. Vai flautas taisa arī no zilonkaula?
39. Ezelis velk ratņus.
40. Ķenguram ir gara un spēcīga aste.
41. Vai jūs lasījāt par Ventas un Gaujas plūdiem?
42. Uz kuriem ķīvītes aizceļo rudenī?
43. Viņam kājas iestīga sniegā.
44. Kā jūs sev pelnāt maizi?

Exercise 147g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The mare is eating a piece of dry bread.
2. My elbow is painful – I can't go on chopping with this heavy axe.
3. The axemen have felled two hundred fir trees.
4. There are more peewits in the swamps of Canada than in northern Europe.
5. Is that an oil paint?
6. Don't tease the elephant: he will strike (*ieciirst*) you with his trunk, and you will fly over that fence like a feather.
7. The patient's breath is peaceful now.
8. How am I to know where you put the vinegar bottle?
9. One can hear from her sobs that she is unhappy.
10. That was a strong blow.
11. He left furtively immediately after sunset.
12. Many folk-songs praise the beauty of the Gauja.
13. The Daugava is rich in fish.
14. There are many beautiful and rare lizards in Brazil.
15. The peewit is holding a tiny lizard in its bill.
16. When he injured his elbow, the sword slipped from his hand.
17. Here they are building a new bridge across the Venta.
18. That is an ivory box.
19. The mare and her foal are eating grass in the clearing.
20. I can hear the child's sobs from the bathroom.
21. The oil should be thicker.
22. He went stealthily to the sports ground.
23. The elephant with his long trunk can reach high branches.
24. The Daugava is much wider than the Gauja.
25. Eagles build their nests in the tops of fir-trees.
26. Vinegar is made from sour fruits.
27. Africa exports a great deal of ivory.
28. We were married in a small church on the bank of the river Venta.
29. Some scoundrel has stolen my coat!

LESSON 148

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: POST-VOCALIC -J- TYPE

Some verbs of the Short Conjugation with stems ending in a vowel insert a suffix *-j-* between the stem vowel and the tense endings. The type is represented by verbs in *-āt* and *-ēt*.

klāt 'to cover, spread'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es klāju</i>	<i>es klāju</i>	—
<i>tu klāj</i>	<i>tu klāji</i>	<i>klāj!</i>
<i>viņš klāj</i>	<i>viņš klāja</i>	<i>lai klāj!</i>
<i>mēs klājam</i>	<i>mēs klājām</i>	<i>klāsim!</i>
<i>jūs klājat</i>	<i>jūs klājāt</i>	<i>klājiet!</i>
<i>viņi klāj</i>	<i>viņi klāja</i>	<i>lai klāj!</i>

Future: *es klāšu, tu klāsi, viņš klās*, etc.

Conditional: *es klātu, tu klātu, viņš klātu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāklāj, man bija jāklāj*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *klājis, klājuši; klājusi, klājušas*.

There is no *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Pay particular attention to the alternation of *ę* and *ē* in the conjugation of *-ēt* verbs of this type. Cf. *sēt*:

sēt 'to sow'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es sēju</i>	<i>es sēju</i>	—
<i>tu sēj</i>	<i>tu sēji</i>	<i>sēj!</i>
<i>viņš sēj</i>	<i>viņš sēja</i>	<i>lai sēj!</i>
<i>mēs sējam</i>	<i>mēs sējām</i>	<i>sēsim!</i>
<i>jūs sējat</i>	<i>jūs sējāt</i>	<i>sējiet!</i>
<i>viņi sēj</i>	<i>viņi sēja</i>	<i>lai sēj!</i>

Future: *es sēšu, tu sēsi, viņš sēs*, etc.

Conditional: *es sētu, tu sētu, viņš sētu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāsēj, man bija jāsēj*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *sējis, sējuši; sėjusi, sējušas*.

In general the alternation is that of the Semipalatalized Type, the principal feature of which is the closed vowel throughout the present, under the influence of the following palatal. There is an important difference, however, in the past participle active of *-j-* type verbs: the *e* is closed throughout, being followed always by *-j-*.

Vocabulary

<i>(uz-)klāt (klāju, klāju)</i>	to spread (trans.); to set (table); to cover (by spreading)
<i>jāt (jāju, jāju)</i>	to ride (horse, etc.)
<i>(ie-)krāt (krāju, krāju)</i>	to save, collect
<i>(pa-)māt (māju, māju)</i>	to nod, beckon, wave
<i>rāt (rāju, rāju)</i>	to chide, reprimand, scold
<i>atstāt (atstāju, atstāju)</i>	to leave, abandon
<i>atklāt (-klāju, -klāju)</i>	to discover; to reveal; to open (exhibition, etc.)
<i>blēt (blēju, blēju)</i>	to bleat
<i>dēt (dēju, dēju)</i>	to lay (eggs)
<i>(ie-)sēt (sēju, sēju)</i>	to sow
<i>spēt (spēju, spēju)</i>	to be able; to manage
<i>paspēt (-spēju, -spēju)</i>	to have time (to)
<i>spējīgs</i>	capable; able (to)
<i>noslēpums</i>	secret

NOTES: *Māt* is not transitive. 'He nodded his head' becomes in Latvian *Viņš māja ar galvu*. 'He nodded to me' can be translated literally: *Viņš man māja*.

atklāt uguni 'to open fire'

Spējīgs takes an infinitive where the English 'capable' requires the preposition 'of'.

Jāt is intransitive: 'to ride a horse' is *jāt uz zirga*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 111–117.

Exercise 148a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *uzklāt; atstāt; iesēt; cirst; nopirkt; pavilkt; atrast; prast; nozagt; noģist; zust; ēst; iekrist; nomest; bērt; tikt; patikt; tvert; nest; celt; aplēst; apģiezt; grauzt; svilpt; uzlākt; nākt; apsegt; sajēgt*.

Exercise 148b

Give the past participle active and imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 148a.

Exercise 148c

What are the principal uses of the definite adjective?

Exercise 148d

Translate into Latvian: at 3:15; at 5:20; at 6:35; at 7:40; at 8:45; at 9:50; at 10:55; at 11:05; at 12:30; at 1:15; at 2:45.

Exercise 148e

Give in Latvian the ordinal numbers from 1st to 30th.

Exercise 148f

Translate into English:

1. Cikos kuģis atstāj ostu?
2. Cerēsim, ka policija atklās šo noziegumu!
3. Ķīvītes dēj raibas olas.
4. Guntis jāja uz brūnās ķēves.
5. Viņš zagšus pamāja man ar roku.
6. Pie Ventas nesen atklāja eļļu.
7. Viesi jau nāk! Vai tu vēl paspēsi uzklāt galdu?
8. Sniegs klāj zemi.
9. Kad pērkons rūca, aitas blēja aiz bailēm.
10. Gurķus nevar sēt pirms jūnija, jo salna iznīcina jaunus stādīņus.
11. Tirgotājam nolauņīja visu zilonkaulu, ko viņš bija iekrājis.
12. Es nespēju viņam piedot.
13. Es tevi rāju, tāpēc ka tu atkal turi elkoņus uz galda.
14. Vai ķirzakas dēj olas?
15. Ienaidnieks atklāj uguni.
16. Kas atklāja Ameriku?
17. Kad parasti sēj kviešus?

18. Vai tu jāji uz ziloņa, kad tu biji Indijā?
19. Viņa man atklāja savu sirdi.
20. Vai jūs krājat pastmarkas?
21. Daugava savu noslēpumu neatklās.
22. Vai zilonis ir spējīgs nosist lauvu ar snuķi?
23. Kad vīrs dzirdēja viņas elsas, viņš tikai pamāja ar roku un atstāja istabu.
24. Es nespēju kāpt tālāk kalnā, man vairs nav elpas.
25. Kāpēc inženieris atstāja tik labu darba vietu?
26. Vai jūs uzklājāt viesiem tīrus palagus, Anna?
27. Viņa nepaspēja mūs citādi brīdināt, kā tikai pamāt ar galvu.
28. Mēs jau iesējām auzas.
29. Kad es māšu ar roku, sāciet irt!
30. Ja tu kāpsi eglē, tēvs tevi rās.
31. Sniegs jau klāj pļavas un ganības.
32. Beidzot es atklāju, kāpēc mūsu vistas nedēj.
33. Cik naudas tu iekrāji? – Man ir tik daudz parādu, ka es nekā nespēju iekrāt.
34. Jaunais lektors ir spējīgs vīrs.
35. Aitas blēj kūti.
36. Viesis rāja viesmīli, tāpēc ka galdā nebija ne etiķa, ne sāls.
37. Tikai Gauja zina mūsu mīlestības noslēpumu, un tā klusēs.
38. Šī sieviete nav spējīga audzināt bērnus!
39. Uz kurienu tu jāji?

Exercise 148g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I quickly left the kitchen, which smelt of garlic.
2. Would a kangaroo be able to jump over this high fence?
3. The tenant revealed his love to the landlady's daughter.
4. The criminals opened fire from the windows of the building.
5. During our holiday in Spain we often rode on donkeys.
6. Just now the hens are laying very well.
7. It is in fact no secret that the new power-station will be opened tomorrow.
8. Why did you reprimand that capable soldier?
9. We were unable to set the tables before the guests arrived.
10. Did you really save that much in one month?
11. Your cousin will scold you if you use her comb without permission.
12. The plane will leave the airport at a quarter to ten.
13. It is not a fact that sheep bleat only from fear.
14. The parish is saving money for a new organ (dative).

15. The children were waving to us from the windows of the bus.
16. Our neighbour is already sowing rye and oats.
17. When the conductor waved his left hand, the flutes began to play.
18. Atis is a capable pupil.
19. Will you set the table in the dining room or in the kitchen?
20. Where are you riding to?
21. I do not like such stupid films.
22. When did the gardener sow the peas? – That is his secret!
23. In winter the hens did not lay many eggs.
24. The sheep were bleating all night.
25. He saved enough money to buy a modern plough.
26. Who discovered Australia, and in what year?
27. She waved to me with her parasol.
28. The museum is collecting old shepherd's pipes.
29. When did they sow the potatoes? – Potatoes are not sown, son, they are planted.
30. Spread the cards out on the table.
31. When did you last (= for the last time) put clean sheets on the bed?
32. He nodded his head.

LESSON 149

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: POST-VOCALIC -J- TYPE,
SHORT VOWEL IN PRESENT AND IMPERFECT

Some verbs of the -j- type end in *-īt*. They are quite regular in taking the -j- in the present and imperfect, but differ from the *-āt* and *-ēt* verbs in that the long *i* of the infinitive is replaced in the present and imperfect (and derived forms) by a short *i*. Cf. *rīt*.

rīt 'to swallow, gulp down'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es riju</i>	<i>es riju</i>	–
<i>tu rij</i>	<i>tu riji</i>	<i>rij!</i>
<i>viņš rij</i>	<i>viņš rija</i>	<i>lai rij!</i>
<i>mēs rijām</i>	<i>mēs rijām</i>	<i>rīsim!</i>
<i>jūs rijāt</i>	<i>jūs rijāt</i>	<i>rijiet!</i>
<i>viņi rij</i>	<i>viņi rija</i>	<i>lai rij.</i>

Future: *es rīšu, tu rīsi, viņš rīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es rītu, tu rītu, viņš rītu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jārij, man bija jārij*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *rijis, rijuši; rijusi, rijušas*.

Vocabulary

<i>(no-)rīt (riju, riju)</i>	to swallow, gulp down
<i>(ap-)vīt (viju, viju)</i>	to twist, weave, wind
<i>(pār-)mīt (miju, miju)</i>	to change, exchange
<i>viļģs</i>	flexible, supple
<i>vija</i>	garland
<i>riļģs</i>	greedy
<i>augums</i>	figure, stature, build
<i>kustība</i>	movement
<i>bāls</i>	pale, wan, colourless
<i>benzīns</i>	petrol
<i>cīņa</i>	struggle, battle, contest
<i>Austrija</i>	Austria
<i>Baltijas jūra</i>	the Baltic Sea

NOTES: *Apvīt* can also be used transitively of the thing about which something is wound: hence it can mean 'to decorate' (by winding or plaiting):

apvīt krēslu to adorn a chair

The verb *mīt* is pronounced with broken tone. Cf. Phonetics.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 137–146.

Exercise 149a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *norīt; apvīt; pārmit; paspēt; atstāt; cirst; cirpt; vilkt; atrast; nozagt; ģist; pazust; paēst; mist; mest; pērt; palikt; uzbrukt; durt; bēgt; vemt; aplēst; izdzēst; saukt; nākt; lēkt; iet; dot; būt*.

Exercise 149b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 149a.

Exercise 149c

Under what circumstances do *k* or *c*, *g* or *dz* appear as the final stem consonant of past participle active forms?

Exercise 149d

How is the Debitive Mood formed? Are there any exceptions?

Exercise 149e

Is an alternation between ζ and ξ ever found within the declension of a single noun?

Exercise 149f

Translate into English:

1. Pirms cīņas abi pretinieki bija pārmijuši dusmīgus vārdus.
2. Baltijas jūra ir daudz seklāka par Vidusjūru.
3. Bālā meitene vij garu viju, ar ko viņa apvīs vārtus Jāņu vakarā.
4. Kam gan šis rijīgais tirgotājs atstās visu naudu, ko viņš ir iekrājis?
5. Baibai ir vijīgs augums, bet bāla sejas krāsa.
6. Ērglis norija ķirzaku.
7. Frīdis nenovērš acis no Aijas vijīgā auguma un viņas skaistajām roku kustībām, kad viņa klāj galdu.
8. Kāpēc tu rij tik ātri, tev ir laika diezgan!
9. Vai tas ir fakts, ka Austrijā benzīns ir dārgāks nekā Vācijā?
10. Mēs paspējām pārmit tikai dažus vārdus, pirms viņš jāja cīņā.
11. Čūska rij un rij lielo žurku, bet tomēr nav spējīga to norīt.
12. Kāpēc jūs apvijāt krēslus ar vijām?
13. Kas par rijīgu cilvēku! Viņš tikai krāj naudu, bet savus vecākus viņš neatbalsta.
14. Baiba ar saimnieci nepārmija neviena vārda, kad viņas abas klāja galdu.
15. Benzīna muca ir tukša.
16. Ludis mums pamāja ar vieglu galvas kustību.
17. Kad es māju ar roku, visi dejotāji pārmija savas vietas.
18. Es tevi rāšu, ja tu atklāsi mūsu noslēpumu, kur var dabūt lētu benzīnu.
19. Kuģu kustība Baltijas jūrā aug ar katru gadu.
20. Rijīgais vilks dzirdēja aitas blējam.

21. Austrijā dažos baznīcas svētkos uzpoš namus un apvij durvis ar ziedu vijām.
22. Viņa dzejoļi ir bāli.
23. Baltijas jūrā nav tādu bīstamu zivju kā šeit.
24. Kalps, kas sēja kviešus, bija vidēja auguma vīrs.
25. Vistas pašlaik lieliski dēj.
26. Kāpēc jūs šopavasār neiesējāt gurķus?
27. Pēc smagām cīņām visa Austrija krita Napoleona rokās.

Exercise 149g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The Daugava, the Gauja and the Venta all flow into the Baltic Sea.
2. Where can we obtain petrol and oil?
3. The elephant's trunk is very supple.
4. Rūdis injured his right elbow in the struggle.
5. Is the peewit a greedy bird?
6. On father's birthday we always wove a garland around his chair.
7. What a colourless expression!
8. The patient's breath became quieter.
9. This medicine is as sour as vinegar: I can't swallow it.
10. The movements of lizards are very fast.
11. Beautiful fir-trees grow in the mountains of Austria.
12. Did you hear her sobs as she was weaving the garland?
13. A man of medium build was riding on the mare.
14. We furtively exchanged a few words.
15. We caught the criminals exchanging gold for (= *pret*) ivory.
16. What a supple build this dancer has! – Yes, and her movements are soft and beautiful!
17. This car eats up (= *rit*) a lot of petrol.
18. Why did you swallow the medicine so quickly?
19. In the nineteenth century, fine ladies hid their faces from the sun, for they wanted to be pale.
20. The snake swallowed the mouse – skin and bones as well.
21. Which of you girls has woven this lovely wreath?
22. He is as greedy as a wolf.
23. We swallowed a lot of dust on the dusty road.
24. He is now living somewhere in Austria.
25. Do dangerous fish exist in the Baltic Sea?
26. The savage had lost an arm in a struggle with a lion.

LESSON 150

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: POST-VOCALIC -J- TYPE,
INFINITIVES IN -IET

Short Conjugation verbs in *-iet* belonging to the *-j-* type lose the *-ie-* completely in the present and imperfect, where it is replaced by *e* and *ē* respectively. The *-j-* occurs regularly, as for *sēt*, *atstāt* and *rīt*.

liet 'to pour'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es lēju</i>	<i>es lēju</i>	—
<i>tu lēj</i>	<i>tu lēji</i>	<i>lēj!</i>
<i>viņš lēj</i>	<i>viņš lēja</i>	<i>lai lēj!</i>
<i>mēs lejam</i>	<i>mēs lējām</i>	<i>liesim!</i>
<i>jūs lejat</i>	<i>jūs lējāt</i>	<i>lejšiet!</i>
<i>viņi lēj</i>	<i>viņi lēja</i>	<i>lai lēj!</i>

Future: *es liešu, tu liesi, viņš lies, etc.*

Conditional: *es lietu, tu lietu, viņš lietu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jālēj, man bija jālēj, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *lējis, lējuši; lėjusi, lējušas.*

The alternation of *ē* and *e* is as for *sēt*, except of course that with *liet* the *e* vowel does not occur in the infinitive, future or conditional.

Vocabulary

<i>(ie-)liet (lēju, lēju)</i>	to pour (in) (trans.)
<i>izliet (-lēju, -lēju)</i>	to pour out; to spill (trans.)
<i>smiet (smēju, smēju)</i>	to laugh
<i>riet (reju, rēju)</i>	to bark (of dog)
<i>izsmiet (-smēju, -smēju)</i>	to mock, deride, laugh at
<i>smiekli (pl.)</i>	laughter
<i>smiekla (invar. adj.)</i>	derisory, ridiculous, laughable
<i>rūķis</i>	dwarf
<i>darba rūķis</i>	tireless worker
<i>miegains</i>	sleepy

<i>milzis</i>	giant
<i>dzirnavnieks</i>	miller
<i>Beļģija</i>	Belgium
<i>Beļlīne</i>	Berlin

NOTES: *Man nāk (nāca) smieklī.* 'I have (had) to laugh'.

Izsmiet is construed with the accusative:

Rūķi izsmēja milzi. The dwarfs were laughing at the giant.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 81–90.

Exercise 150a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *liet; smiet; norīt; pārmlt; jā; iesēt; nocirst; nopirkt; pavilkt; atrast; sastapt; ģist; zust; vest; just; mest; svērt; iestigt; mukt; apburt; nest; velt; notēt; iebāzt; grebt; uzlēkt; pateikt; panākt.*

Exercise 150b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 150a.

Exercise 150c

Give the future and conditional forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 150a.

Exercise 150d

Class the following verbs into conjugational types: *gribēt; redzēt; pazaudēt; tecēt; vajadzēt; mācēt; gulēt; sargāt; zināt; raudāt; strādāt; bildināt; darīt; medīt; sacīt; sapņot; mācīt; dabūt.*

Exercise 150e

Which adjectives do not have a definite declension?

Exercise 150f

Translate into English:

1. Dzirnavnīeks ir īsts darba rūķis.
2. Vai tu jau ielēji benzīnu?
3. Es nemēdzu runāt par tādu smiekla lietu. – Bet tu tomēr pārmiji dažus vārdus ar dzirnavnīeku. – Jā gan, bet tā bija svarīga lieta.
4. Rūķīši beidzot smagā cīņā pieveica muļķa milzi.
5. Milzis palika bāls aiz dūsmām, kad viņš dzirdēja rūķu smieklus, jo viņš zināja, ka tie viņu izsmej.
6. Viņas apvija logus ar vijām.
7. Šis suns ir tik miegains, ka nereg.
8. Šādus tālskatus Beļģijā var pirkt par smiekla naudu, bet Austrijā tie ir dārgi.
9. Kāpēc tu izsmej viņas augumu? – Es neizsmēju viņas augumu, tikai viņas jocīgās kustības, kad viņa deju šo muļķīgo, moderno deju.
10. Šodien mēs liesim betonu.
11. Kaķis apgāza podu un izlēja pienu.
12. Meitenes dziedāja un smēja, kad viņas vija vaiņagus.
13. Austrālijas tuksnešos dzīvo kāda īpatnēja ķirzaka, kura rej kā suns.
14. Kaut gan Beļģija ir mazāka par Latviju, tai ir milzīga rūpniecība un lielas ogļraktuves.
15. Rijīgais milzis nozaga rūķīšu zeltu, par ko viņš vēlāk saņēma bargu sodu.
16. Kur tu atradīsi otru tādu darba rūķi kā Ati?
17. Berlīne nav tālu no Baltijas jūras.
18. Tikko slimnieks bija norijis šīs zāles, viņš palika miegains.
19. Berlīnes muzeji, mākslas galerijas un teātri ir slaveni visā pasaulē.
20. Suns tā rij, it kā tas nebūtu ēdis veselu nedēļu.
21. Dzirnavnīeka meita ielēja mums kafiju.
22. Kāpēc jūs viņus izsmejat?
23. Viņas muļķīgie smieklī man krīt uz nerviem.
24. Tālumā dzird supus rejam.
25. Slīņķi izsmej darba rūķi, bet viņš viņu smieklīem nepievērš uzmanību.
26. Kur jūs lejat netīro ūdeni? – Mēs to izlejām notekā!
27. Dejojāja ir vijīga kā čūska. – Jā, bet viņai ir miegains acis.
28. Es nopirku šo lietussargu Berlīnē par smiekla naudu.
29. Kādas valodas runā Beļģijā?
30. Man nāk smieklī, kad es domāju par mūsu kāzu ceļojumu.

Exercise 150g

Translate into Latvian:

1. He merely waved his hand over (*par*) that ridiculous matter.
2. They will laugh at you if you sow cucumbers that early!
3. What can you save if you get such a derisory wage?
4. When I have set the table, you can pour the tea.
5. We laughed and applauded all evening.
6. The dog barked when it heard the sheep bleating.
7. The clever dwarfs deceived the foolish giant.
8. Why are you pouring out the vinegar?
9. I had to laugh when I saw you riding that sleepy little donkey!
10. That tireless worker is capable of working day and night.
11. The old miller is still able to lift the heaviest bags of grain.
12. The plane leaves Berlin airport at half past nine.
13. When coal was discovered in Belgium, a steel industry was soon established there.
14. Don't laugh at me when I am setting the table.
15. When will the workers pour the concrete?
16. The dwarfs are collecting precious stones.
17. Do you know the German tale about a giant who was sowing carrots, and who later had to count all the carrots in the field? (= *uz lauka*)
18. I shall scold you naughty children if you keep on poking fun at the poor old forest-ranger.
19. When the miller waved his hand, the dog jumped over the fence.
20. The dog barks loudly when he spots a squirrel.
21. Parrots lay multi-coloured eggs.
22. Loud laughter was heard from the hall.
23. I am too sleepy to read.
24. The students had poured ink into the fountain.
25. It is no secret that the son of this tireless worker is a loafer.
26. I was pouring the dirty water out of the bucket.
27. This summer some Berlin orphans will spend their holidays at the seaside in Belgium.

LESSON 151

OMISSION OF THE VERB *IR*

You are already familiar with the forms

<i>viņš ir nācis</i>	<i>viņa ir nākusi</i>
<i>viņi ir nākuši</i>	<i>viņas ir nākušas</i>

These examples represent the Present Perfect Tense in its full form, but contracted forms without *ir* are also possible:

<i>viņš nācis</i>	<i>viņa nākusi</i>
<i>viņi nākuši</i>	<i>viņas nākušas</i>

This is not common in modern spoken Latvian, but is very common indeed in older folk tales, etc. The negative *nav*, for obvious reasons, cannot be omitted in the same way, although one will find forms such as

<i>viņš nenācis</i>	<i>viņa nenākusi</i>
<i>viņi nenākuši</i>	<i>viņas nenākušas</i>

in old traditional texts.

Other forms of the verb *būt* (*esmu, esi, esam, esat*) cannot so readily be omitted.

We have seen too that the *ir* of the Debitive Mood present tense is normally omitted, unless emphasis is required.

Compare:

<i>Man jāiet.</i>	I have to go.
-------------------	---------------

with

<i>Man ir jāiet.</i>	I have to go.
----------------------	---------------

The *ir* is quite often omitted after a dative of possession:

<i>Man ir bail.</i>	or	<i>Man bail.</i>
<i>Vai tev ir nauda kabatā?</i>	or	<i>Vai tev nauda kabatā?</i>
<i>Cik jums ir gadu?</i>	or	<i>Cik jums gadu?</i>
<i>Man ir labi dēli.</i>	or	<i>Man labi dēli.</i>

Cf. also:

<i>Kas jums par skaistu gredzenu!</i>	What a beautiful ring you have!
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------

We have already met examples of this construction.

Ir is also omitted sometimes between a subject and an adjectival predicate:

<i>Māsa ir skaista.</i>	or	<i>Māsa skaista.</i>
<i>Zirgi ir ļoti dārgi.</i>	or	<i>Zirgi ļoti dārgi.</i>

Similarly,

<i>Dārzā ir tik skaisti.</i>	or	<i>Dārzā tik skaisti.</i>
------------------------------	----	---------------------------

Examples of the last type tend to occur only when the adjective is modified by some other word, e.g., *ļoti, tik*.

Ir is not omitted between two nouns:

Jānis ir ārsts should not be contracted.

Vocabulary

<i>saldētājs</i>	refrigerator
<i>ļedusskapis</i>	refrigerator; ice-chest
<i>lāstekā</i>	icicle
<i>saldēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to freeze (trans.)
<i>apsaldēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to chill; to freeze (trans.)
<i>jērs</i>	lamb
<i>jūrnieks</i>	sailor, seaman
<i>dlķis</i>	pond
<i>būtne</i>	creature, being
<i>klātbūtne</i>	presence
<i>balķis</i>	beam, rafter; log
<i>Čikaga</i>	Chicago
<i>Dānija</i>	Denmark
<i>Donava</i>	Danube

NOTES: *Donava* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

'Lamb', meaning the meat rather than the animal, is *jēra gaļa*. Cf. in this respect *cūka* (the animal) and *cūkas gaļa* (the meat); *cālis* (the animal) and *cāļa gaļa* (the meat).

Apsaldēt is used with parts of the body as in the following:

<i>Jūs apsaldēsīt kājas.</i>	Your feet will be frost-bitten.
<i>Es apsaldēju kaklu.</i>	I caught a chill in my neck.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 118-125.

Exercise 151a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *izsmiet; izliet; rīt; paspēt; zust; vīt; noģist; paēst; apklāt; nocirst; art; sašust; mīt; patikt; nomest; jāt; bēgt; slaukt; pirkt; atvērt; vilkt; braukt; atrast; glābt; spert; slēpt; stumt; aplēst; nosmakt; palikt; degt; nākt; lēkt; kliegt.*

Exercise 151b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 151a.

Exercise 151c

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kāpēc skolotājs palika dusmīgs.*

Exercise 151d

What peculiarities of tense are there in verbs of *kad* and *ja* clauses?

Exercise 151e

What general rules are there for the distribution of *ē* and *ę*?

Exercise 151f

Translate into English:

1. Lāstekas pie jumta ir garas kā zobeni.
2. Donava tek caur piecām Eiropas valstīm.
3. Kāpēc jūs viņu izsmējāt dzirnavnieka klātbūtnē?
4. Kāpēc tu neliec jēra gaļu saldētājā?
5. Jūrnieki stāsta par retām būtnēm, kas mīt okeanos.
6. Prātīgs cilvēks tikai smeļ par šādiem jūrnieku stāstiem.
7. Vai viņa bijusi Čikagā?
8. Vai tu saldē zivis ledusskapī?
9. Ārā tik auksts, ka viegli var apsaldēt ausis un degunu.
10. Kāpēc tu salauzi skaisto, garo lāsteku?

11. Jūrnieks bijis Dānijā, Beļģijā, Zviedrijā, Spānijā un Itālijā.
12. Lopu tirgotājs uzpērk jērus no vietējiem saimniekiem.
13. Pīles un zosis peld dīķī.
14. Rūķīši dzirdēja milža smieklus meža dziļumos.
15. Vai viņš no Čikagas? – Nē, viņš ir no Berlīnes, bet kādreiz dzīvoja Čikagā.
16. Baļķis par smagu, lai to nestu; tas jāvel.
17. Vasarā dīķis smird.
18. Šinī fabrikā ražo saldētājus jeb ledusskapjus.
19. Gaļa kārtīgi jāsaldē ledusskapī.
20. Šinī fabrikas nodaļā mēs lejam tēraudu un dzelzi.
21. Vai saldētājā ir auksts piens?
22. Suns nemēdz riet sava kunga klātbūtnē.
23. Jūras dziļumos eksistē tādas būtnes, ko zinātnieki vēl nav atklājuši.
24. Šis jūrnieks laikam no Dānijas.
25. Kurš Anglijas karalis divpadsmitā gadu simtenī smaka kādas pils cietumā pie Donavas?
26. Man bail, ka tu apsaldēsi kāju pirkstus (= *toes*). – Nē, māmiņ, ja staigā, tad kājas nevar apsaldēt.
27. Čaklie darba rūķi jau notēsuši visus baļķus.
28. Nesūc auksto lāsteku, zēn, tu apsaldēsi kaklu!
29. Baltijas jūra ir tikai pīļu dīķis, ja to salīdzina ar Kluso okeanu.
30. Kā tu vari būt tik miegains dāmu klātbūtnē?
31. Kādas būtnes mīt Donavas ūdeņos?
32. Cik ilgi pavārs saldējis jēra gaļu?
33. Cik Dānijai iedzīvotāju?
34. Kāpēc tu izlej etiķi?

Exercise 151g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The lion has swallowed the lamb.
2. The Danube flows through Austria.
3. The struggle took place in our presence.
4. The Baltic Sea is full of greedy creatures.
5. The beer is in the refrigerator.
6. We have decorated the rafters with garlands.
7. All Chicago was without petrol for two days.
8. The girls are weaving garlands in the presence of the farmer's wife.
9. The sailor changed places with his girl-friend in the theatre, so that she could see better.

10. There are icicles in the refrigerator.
11. Your feet will get frost-bitten.
12. Did you freeze the lamb in the refrigerator?
13. Denmark imports refrigerators from Germany.
14. What are those pale creatures in the water?
15. Don't swallow the icicle!
16. Did you saw up the beam?
17. There is a song festival in Chicago.
18. Eggs must not be frozen.
19. In places the Danube is wide, in places narrow.
20. His eyes followed her movements.
21. She has been in Denmark.
22. The ice on the pond is quite thin.

LESSON 152

OMISSION OF *AR*

Compare the following sentences:

Maiss ir pilns ar āboliem.

Maiss pilns āboliem.

Baiba staigāja pa ielu ar grāmatām rokā.

Baiba staigāja pa ielu grāmatām rokā.

Vīri ar platiem pleciem parasti ir stipri.

Vīri platiem pleciem parasti ir stipri.

The preposition *ar* is often omitted in descriptive phrases. Note that the noun remains in the accusative singular or dative plural, even though *ar* is omitted. Cf.

<i>baltu bārdu</i>	with a white beard
<i>iet kājām</i>	to go on foot
<i>vaļējām acīm</i>	with open eyes
<i>tumšiem matiem</i>	with dark hair
<i>skaistu seju</i>	with a beautiful face
<i>garām biksēm</i>	with long trousers
<i>basām kājām</i>	with bare feet, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>temperātūra</i>	temperature
<i>termometrs</i>	thermometer
<i>tikums</i>	virtue
<i>tikumīgs</i>	virtuous
<i>grads</i>	degree
<i>grants (f.)</i>	gravel
<i>gliemežis</i>	snail
<i>nikns</i>	ferocious, fierce; enraged
<i>robeža</i>	border; limit
<i>pagalam (adv.)</i>	lost; finished; dead
<i>bass</i>	bare
<i>Ēģipte</i>	Egypt
<i>Griekija</i>	Greece
<i>Holande</i>	Holland

NOTES: *Termometrs* and *Holande* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Grads is used both for a university degree, and for a degree of heat. The spelling *grads* is recommended by Endzelīns, but *grāds* now appears more common.

Pagalam is stressed on the second syllable.

Bass normally refers only to human feet.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 140–149.

Exercise 152a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *smiet*; *ieliet*; *vīt*; *jāt*; *sēt*; *nocirst*; *uzpirkt*; *izvilkt*; *pierast*; *lakt*; *ģist*; *pazust*; *ēst*; *sašust*; *iesist*; *atvērt*; *palikt*; *patikt*; *ņemt*; *noķert*; *dzert*; *burt*; *augt*; *cept*; *nest*; *celt*; *iezvelt*; *strēbt*; *novērst*; *sērst*; *lauzt*; *kopt*; *uzlēkt*; *nākt*; *uzmākt*; **mēgt*.

Exercise 152b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 152a.

Exercise 152c

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Pie brokastu galda.*

Exercise 152d

Decline in full: *es; tu; pats; tas; šis; kas.*

Exercise 152e

Translate into Latvian: in 1917; before 1920; after 1925; until 1930; in 1934; in March 1938; in July 1941; in November 1946; on the 10th of January, 1950; on the 17th of May, 1955; on the 29th of September, 1961.

Exercise 152f

Translate into English:

1. Nu saldētājs ir pagalam!
2. Temperatūra krit.
3. Nav brīnums, ka tu apsaldēji kājas, ja tu staigāji basām kājām pa auksto zāli.
4. Kādai temperatūrai jābūt ledusskapī? – Apmēram četriem grādiem.
5. Katram jokam ir savas robežas! Kā tu vari lietot šādus izteicienus šīs tikumīgās dāmas klātbūtnē? – Dāmām, kuras tiešām ir tikumīgas, nevajaga visu slēpt aiz smalkiem vārdiem: lietas var saukt to īstajā vārdā.
6. Vai jums ir šaubas par manu tikumu?
7. Dīķis ir pilns gliemežiem.
8. Mans franču draugs restorānā pasūtīja duci gliemežu.
9. Strādnieki rok granti grants bedrē.
10. Termometrs jāuzkar ēnā.
11. Jēriem bail no niknā suņa.
12. Šīs būtnes līdzīgas gliemežiem.
13. Holandes robeža vairs nav tālu.
14. Šādā temperatūrā var saldēt gaļu un zivis.
15. Jaunais Grieķijas karalis apprecēja Dānijas karaļa jaunāko meitu.
16. Jums jātur termometrs mutē vienu minūti.

17. Šeit var dabūt Holandes sieru.
18. Arī jūrniekiem savi tikumi.
19. Izlejiet šo indi dārzā, un gliemeži būs pagalam!
20. Ko jūs zināt par senās Grieķijas dieviem un varoņiem?
21. Viņš pieradis staigāt basām kājām pa aso granti.
22. Kāpēc tu sazāgēji šo balķi? Nu tas ir pagalam! – Neesi nu tik nikns, mums vēl balķu diezgan!
23. Šī jaunkundze neapšaubāmi ir tikumīga.
24. Holande iaved augļus no Grieķijas un kokvilnu no Ēģiptes.
25. Termometrs laikam pagalam, jo tas rāda sešdesmit gradus, bet pie māju jumtiem un koku zariem ir garas lāstekas.
26. Ūdenim vannā nav jābūt siltākam par trīsdesmit grādiem.
27. Visi slavē viņas tikumu.
28. Ēģiptē tik niknas un bīstamas čūskas, ka es tur nestaigātu basām kājām.
29. Arī trakajā Čikagā daudz tikumīgu ļaužu.
30. Donava ir robeža starp divām valstīm. Kuras tās ir?
31. Ak, kaut mēs būtu palikuši pie Ēģiptes gaļas podiem!
32. Vai zaķi tiešām guļ vaļējām acīm?
33. Baiba staigāja pa ielu grāmatām rokā.
34. Es nocirtu koku dažiem spēcīgiem cirtieniem.
35. Mācītājs mūs sveicināja laipniem vārdiem.

Exercise 152g

Translate into Latvian:

1. In such a high temperature one becomes sleepy.
2. I have to laugh when I hear people speak of his virtues.
3. The ferocious dog is barking.
4. Do not laugh at the virtuous young worker.
5. Now the fierce giant is dead.
6. In Greece good wine can be bought for a ridiculously low price.
7. This tiny river is the border between Holland and Belgium.
8. The dwarf was riding on an enormous snail.
9. The tireless workers are now dragging heavy bags of gravel.
10. The thermometer shows a hundred degrees in the shade, and a hundred and thirty degrees in the sun.
11. The miller poured vodka for his visitors (dative).
12. As soon as they bring the gravel, we shall pour the concrete.
13. Greece and Egypt import industrial products from Holland.
14. One cannot walk barefoot on the hot sand of the Egyptian desert.

15. The virtuous old lady does not like loud laughter and modern music.
16. They fled over the border.
17. The temperature fell and fell during the night, and in the morning the young plants were dead.
18. Snails eat fungi.
19. Famous poets have praised her virtues.
20. A boy with fair hair and short trousers was walking barefooted along the beach.
21. In Berlin they produce good thermometers.
22. Who spilt the ink?

LESSON 153

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: NASAL TYPE

Some verbs insert an *n* between the stem and the ending of the present and imperfect, just as some insert *j*, as we have recently seen. The primary type consists only of verbs in *-īt*, and, as with the *j* type, the *ī* of the infinitive is short in the present and imperfect, and in forms derived from these.

tīt 'to wind'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es tinu</i>	<i>es tinu</i>	—
<i>tu tin</i>	<i>tu tini</i>	<i>tin!</i>
<i>viņš tin</i>	<i>viņš tina</i>	<i>lai tin!</i>
<i>mēs tinam</i>	<i>mēs tinām</i>	<i>tīsim!</i>
<i>jūs tinat</i>	<i>jūs tināt</i>	<i>tīniet!</i>
<i>viņi tin</i>	<i>viņi tina</i>	<i>lai tin!</i>

Future: *es tīšu, tu tīsi, viņš tīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es tītu, tu tītu, viņš tītu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jātin, man bija jātin*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *tinis, tinuši; tinusi, tinušas*.

Vocabulary

<i>tīt (tinu, tinu)</i>	to wind; to roll (cigarette)
<i>saiīt (-tinu, -tinu)</i>	to wind, wrap up
<i>ietīt (-tinu, -tinu)</i>	to wrap up, wrap in
<i>mīt (minu, minu)</i>	to tread, trample; to tan (leather)
<i>samīt (-minu, -minu)</i>	to trample down, crush underfoot
<i>pīt (pīnu, pīnu)</i>	to braid, plait, twist
<i>(uz-)trīt (trīnu, trīnu)</i>	to grind, whet, sharpen
<i>dzija</i>	yarn (woollen)
<i>kamols</i>	ball (of wool, string, etc.)
<i>tēcila</i>	grindstone, whetstone
<i>bize</i>	pigtail, plait
<i>vieglprātīgs</i>	thoughtless, scatterbrained
<i>ādmīnis</i>	tanner

NOTES: *mīt kājām* 'to trample underfoot', hence metaphorically 'to treat contemptuously', 'to pay scant heed to'.

Tecila may also be found written as *tecilla*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 91–100.

Exercise 153a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *uztrīt; ietīt; samīt; ieliet; izsmiet; norīt; apvīt; pamāt; iesēt; krimst; nocirst; nocirpt; rast; izvilkt; sastapt; ģist; pazust; ēst; krist; sist*.

Exercise 153b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 153a.

Exercise 153c

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Mana ģimene*.

Exercise 153d

What are the peculiarities of declension of masculine nouns in *-a* and *-e*?

Exercise 153e

Translate into English:

1. Neesi nu tik vieglprātīgs, kas šādā temperatūrā staigā basām kājām?
2. Ēģiptē mēs redzējām sievietes pinam grozus ielas malā.
3. Nīknaiss milzis jau trina garo nazi uz tecilas.
4. Viņa satin dziju kamolā.
5. Kāpēc tu pin viņai bizes? – Viņa pati neprot pīt.
6. Gliemeži nu ir pagalam, es tos saminu.
7. Tu manu mīlestību min kājām.
8. Pārdevēja ietin desu papīrā.
9. Vai tu uztrini zobenu? – Nē, Frīdis pašlaik trin nažus un šķēres. Tikko tecila būs brīva, es uztrīšu zobenu.
10. Kāpēc Aija nogrieza savas skaistās bizes?
11. Ziloņi samina jaunus kafijas stādījumus.
12. Mēs nepērkam cigaretes, mēs tās tinām pašī.
13. Es ietinu termometru kabatas lakatiņā.
14. Viņa ir tikumīga meitene, tikai drusku vieglprātīga.
15. Satīsim bērnu segā!
16. Dažus kilometrus aiz Holandes robežas strādnieki bēra granti uz ceļa.
17. Vai viņas tīn dziju? – Jā, viņas to satin kamolos.
18. Es pagriezīšu tecilu.
19. Cik maksā šāds dzijas kamols?
20. Griekijā mēs šur un tur redzējām sievietes garām bizēm.
21. Nemīniet citu ļaužu tikumus kājām!
22. Ūdens temperatūra ir tikai divpadsmit grādi, bet šī vieglprātīgā meitene iet peldēt!
23. Dzija nav jātin.
24. Lai pārdevējs ietin puķes papīrā!
25. Ātri, samīn šo indīgo zirnekli! Tas bīstams.
26. Ādminis min ādu.
27. Kad mednieks vedīs šīs ķenguru ādas pie ādmiņa?
28. Ādmiņa amats ir grūts un netīrs, bet peļņa laba.

Exercise 153f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Sailors often roll their own cigarettes.
2. Don't be so unthinking; wrap your feet in a warm blanket, otherwise they will get cold on the long journey.
3. When you sharpen knives the grindstone must be wet.
4. These icicles are as long as your pigtails, daughter.
5. When you have sharpened the knives and scissors, please wrap them up in thick paper.
6. We are plaiting baskets from willow branches, which are more pliable than other branches.
7. Why are you crushing the poor ants underfoot?
8. The tanner is sharpening his knives on the grindstone.
9. The yarn must be wound up into a ball.
10. This tanner tans only lamb-skins.
11. Is she winding the yarn into a ball?
12. I did not know that creatures like that lived in the Danube.
13. A beam is floating in the pond.
14. The refrigerator is full.
15. How could the bottle of vodka disappear? I put it into the refrigerator in your presence!
16. How fast the girl plaits her pigtails!
17. The chickens must be frozen.
18. Have you sharpened the scissors?
19. How much does such a ball of wool cost?
20. Why didn't she wrap up the flowers?
21. He crushed the head of the dangerous snake with his heavy boots.
22. Did you read about those horrible crimes in Chicago?
23. You naughty boy, why are you trampling the flowers?
24. Denmark is smaller than Latvia.
25. She is a very thoughtless person.

LESSON 154

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: NASAL TYPE, WITH
ALTERNATION I-E-I

Some verbs have both the nasal element and the alternation *i-e-i*. The vowels of the present and imperfect are short, in contrast with the infinitive vowel, which is long, just as was the case with the primary nasal type.

dzīt 'to drive'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es dzēnu</i>	<i>es dzīnu</i>	—
<i>tu dzēn</i>	<i>tu dzīni</i>	<i>dzēn!</i>
<i>viņš dzēn</i>	<i>viņš dzīna</i>	<i>lai dzēn!</i>
<i>mēs dzēnam</i>	<i>mēs dzīnām</i>	<i>dzīsim!</i>
<i>jūs dzēnat</i>	<i>jūs dzīnāt</i>	<i>dzēniet!</i>
<i>viņi dzēn</i>	<i>viņi dzīna</i>	<i>lai dzēn!</i>

Future: *es dzīšu, tu dzīsi, viņš dzīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es dzītu, tu dzītu, viņš dzītu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jādzēn, man bija jādzēn*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *dzinis, dzīnuši; dzinusi, dzīnušas*.

Vocabulary

<i>(aiz-)dzīt (dzēnu, dzīnu)</i>	to drive, chase (away)
<i>(no-)dzīt bārdu (dzēnu, dzīnu)</i>	to shave
<i>padzīt (-dzēnu, -dzīnu)</i>	to chase out, away; to banish
<i>darbnīca</i>	workshop
<i>kamanas (pl.)</i>	sledge, sleigh
<i>likums</i>	law, regulation, rule
<i>jaunība</i>	youth, adolescence
<i>paties</i>	true, proper
<i>notikums</i>	event, happening
<i>patiesība</i>	truth, reality
<i>ļepns</i>	proud; arrogant

<i>ļepnums</i>	pride
<i>ļepnība</i>	pride, haughtiness
<i>traucēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to hinder, disturb, bother

NOTES: *Lepnums* is an object of pride:

Mana bārda ir mans lepnums. My beard is my pride.

whereas *ļepnība* is the attribute or quality of pride:

Tava lepība man krīt uz nerviem. Your pride is getting on my nerves.

Lepns is normally construed with *uz* (+ acc.) to mean 'proud of', although *par* is also found.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 126–132.

Exercise 154a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *aizdzīt; nodzīt; satīt; samīt; smiet; pārmlt; jāt; iecirst; nopirkt; novilkt; saprast; saplakt; noģist; zust; vest; mist; mest*.

Exercise 154b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 154a.

Exercise 154c

When must the lengthening syllable *-aj-* be dropped from definite adjectives? When is its retention optional?

Exercise 154d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kā es gribētu pavadīt vasaras brīvlaiku.*

Exercise 154e

Translate into English:

1. Vai jūs savā jaunībā nekad nebijāt vieglprātīga? – Nē, un es esmu lepna uz to!
2. Gans dzen lopus ganībās.
3. Irnieki nedrīkst dzīt naglas sienās bez saimnieka atļaujas.
4. Ūdens dzen turbīnu.
5. Ādminis padzina bērnus no darbnīcas, jo bērni traucēja viņu darbā.
6. Vai tas ir patiens notikums vai tikai kāda teika?
7. Karalis dzīvoja lepnā pilī Donavas krastā.
8. Annas bizes ir viņas lepnums.
9. Frizieris savā darbnīcā pin bizes no īstiem un mākslīgiem matiem.
10. Kas tur brauc tanīs lepnajās kamanās?
11. Vai tev jādzen bārda divreiz dienā?
12. Viņš ilgi mina likumu kājām, bet likums tagad samīn viņu pašu.
13. Vai drēbnieks pats trin savas šķēres? – Jā, viņam ir darbnīcā maza tecila.
14. Zvejnieki satin savus tīklus.
15. Zirnekļi vērpj smalkus tīklus.
16. Aijas lepnība krīt man uz nerviem. – Ak tā? Mani gan viņas lepnība netraucē.
17. Ludis tūliņ iejūgs melno ķēvi kamanās.
18. Vējš bija aizdzinis laivu otrā krastā.
19. Vai jūs lasījāt avīzē par šo briesmīgo notikumu? – Jā gan, bet avīzes jau neraksta patiesību.
20. Viņam bail no pa tiesības.
21. Likuma priekšā šis cilvēks ir nevainīgs.
22. Kad Baiba apprecēja bagāto lieltirgotāju, viņa aiz lepnības vairs nerunāja ar vecajām draudzenēm.
23. Plūdi padzina cilvēkus no mājām.
24. Es uztrišu bārdas nazi (= razor), jo tas ir par neasu, lai nodzītu bārdu.
25. Pilsētas galva padzina negodīgo grāmatvedi.
26. Šodien lietus nebūs, jo vējš aizdzen mākoņus.
27. Garā bārda ir mežsarga lepnums, un viņš to nekad nenodzīs.
28. Tu tiešām esi patiens draugs.
29. Tevis labad es slēpu patiesību.
30. Vai tu ietini dzijas kamolu papīrā? – Vēl ne, es to pašlaik tinu.
31. Es jums izstāstīšu kādu patiesu notikumu no savas jaunības.
32. Šīs vecās kamanas manā jaunībā bija mans lepnums.
33. Netraucē tēvu, kad viņš dzen bārdu!

Exercise 154f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Pride also has its limits.
2. A barefooted shepherd-boy was driving the farm animals to the pasture.
3. Holland can be proud of its clean cities.
4. Our fierce dog drives all the cats away.
5. Sometimes reality is painful.
6. We have virtuous daughters and we are proud of their virtue.
7. The law of our church forbids the dissolution of marriages.
8. In such a cold temperature, the snails will soon be dead.
9. How did the men shave in ancient Egypt and Greece?
10. Thermometers are made in this workshop.
11. Why did he shave off his magnificent beard?
12. The sledge must be taken to the workshop.
13. Forgive me for (*ka es*) disturbing you.
14. Who told you about that sad event?
15. With his arrogance he has driven away his true friends.
16. Every language has its rules.
17. How deep has the nail to be driven?
18. As soon as I have shaved, I shall put on my coat.
19. The gravel is not too coarse, it is too fine.
20. Is he relating a true occurrence?
21. The truth is not always pleasant.
22. One can forgive her arrogance because of her youth.
23. Why does nobody drive the flies away from the food?
24. How many degrees is it in the shade?
25. Please wait a moment; right now my husband is shaving.
26. The fleet has always been the nation's pride.
27. Attention, please! Do not stand on the road and on the footpath: you are hindering the firemen!

LESSON 155

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE IN *-DAMS*

This purely verbal (i.e., non-adjectival) present participle is formed from the stem of the infinitive: the termination *-t* is dropped, and the termination *-dams* added. This participle corresponds to the English present participle in *-ing*. Consider the following examples:

Infinitive		-dams participle	
<i>redzēt</i>	to see	<i>redzē-dams</i>	seeing
<i>lasīt</i>	to read	<i>lasī-dams</i>	reading
<i>dziedāt</i>	to sing	<i>dziedā-dams</i>	singing
<i>dejot</i>	to dance	<i>dejo-dams</i>	dancing
<i>braukt</i>	to drive	<i>brauk-dams</i>	driving
<i>nākt</i>	to come	<i>nāk-dams</i>	coming
<i>klupt</i>	to stumble	<i>klup-dams</i>	stumbling
<i>jāt</i>	to ride	<i>jā-dams</i>	riding
<i>celt</i>	to lift	<i>ceļ-dams</i>	lifting
<i>dzert</i>	to drink	<i>dzēr-dams</i>	drinking
and so on.			

All verbs of the Short Conjugation with *e* in the stem have an open *ɛ* in the present participle in *-dams*, in spite of the fact that the infinitive has *ē*. Further, verbs of the Long and Mixed Conjugations in *-ēt* also have open *ɛ* in the *-dams* participle.

Note particularly that a voiceless consonant immediately preceding the *-d-* of *-dams* will be voiced, cf.

<i>klupdams</i>	pronounced	* <i>klubdams</i>
<i>nākdams</i>	pronounced	* <i>nāgdams</i> .

While the above holds good in all cases, the voicing of *-s-* to *-z-* is peculiar in that some verbs require the *-z-* actually to be written, whereas others do not. Cf.

<i>krist krizdams;</i>	<i>sist sizdams;</i>	<i>mēst mēzdams</i>
	as opposed to	
<i>ņēst ņēsdams;</i>	<i>post posdams;</i>	<i>aplēst aplēsdams.</i>

The key to the difference lies in the imperfect. If the imperfect has *s* as the final stem consonant, then *s* will be written in the *-dams* participle: cf. *nesu, posu, aplēsu*. If the imperfect has any other consonant as the final stem element, then *z* is written in the *-dams* participle: cf. *kritu, situ, metu*. Thus:

<i>prast</i>	<i>prazdams</i>	(imperfect <i>pratu</i>)
<i>ēst</i>	<i>ēzdams</i>	(imperfect <i>ēdu</i>)
<i>vērst</i>	<i>vērsdams</i>	(imperfect <i>vērsu</i>)
<i>plēst</i>	<i>plēsdams</i>	(imperfect <i>plēsu</i>)

But remember that even where *-s-* is written, *-z-* must be pronounced. There is no problem with infinitives in *-zt*: these verbs automatically have *-z-* in the *-dams* participle.

The present participle active in *-dams* exists only in the nominative. It has however masculine and feminine, singular and plural forms.

Infinitive	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
<i>būt</i>	<i>būdams</i>	<i>būdami</i>	<i>būdama</i>	<i>būdamas</i>
<i>nākt</i>	<i>nākdams</i>	<i>nākdami</i>	<i>nākdama</i>	<i>nākdamas</i>
<i>sist</i>	<i>sizdams</i>	<i>sizdami</i>	<i>sizdama</i>	<i>sizdamas</i>
<i>ņēst</i>	<i>ņēsdams</i>	<i>ņēsdami</i>	<i>ņēsdama</i>	<i>ņēsdamas</i>
<i>iet</i>	<i>iedams</i>	<i>iedami</i>	<i>iedama</i>	<i>iedamas</i>
<i>lasīt</i>	<i>lasīdams</i>	<i>lasīdami</i>	<i>lasīdama</i>	<i>lasīdamas</i>
<i>raudāt</i>	<i>raudādams</i>	<i>raudādami</i>	<i>raudādama</i>	<i>raudādamas</i>
<i>mēklēt</i>	<i>mēklēdams</i>	<i>mēklēdami</i>	<i>mēklēdama</i>	<i>mēklēdamas</i>

The present participle active in *-dams* is used verbally, not adjectivally. It can refer only to the subject of a sentence, with which it must agree.

Vīri sēdēja krogū dzerdami.

The men sat in the inn drinking.

Meitas stāv dārzā pļāpādamas.

The girls are standing in the garden talking.

Suns, skraidīdams pa sētu, taisīja lielu troksni.

The dog, running about the yard, kicked up a great din.

Saimniece, būdama virtuvē, skaidri dzirdēja kļiedzienu.

The farmer's wife, being in the kitchen, heard the shout clearly.

The agreement of the participle with the subject is clearly seen from the above examples.

The participle may govern an object or an object clause:

Maiznieks, dzerdams alu, stāstīja mums par savu braucienu.

The baker, drinking his beer, told us about his trip.

Skolotāja, atbildējama jautājumam, sacīja, ka Londona ir lielāka nekā Parīze.

The teacher, answering the question, said that London is bigger than Paris.

Nezinādami, ka laika vēl diezgan, mēs lielā steigā braucām uz staciju.

Not knowing that there would still be enough time, we drove to the station

in great haste.

Domādams, ka pagrabā vairs nav vīna, Baiba un Māra lūdza Aivaru aiziet uz veikalu.

Thinking that there was no more wine in the cellar, Baiba and Māra asked Aivars to go to the shop.

Vocabulary

<i>kukainis</i>	beetle, insect
<i>vabole</i>	beetle
<i>āzis</i>	buck, he-goat
<i>ods</i>	gnat, mosquito
<i>tauriņš</i>	butterfly
<i>kaza</i>	goat, she-goat
<i>tagadne</i>	present
<i>pagātne</i>	past
<i>nākotne</i>	future
<i>iemēsls</i>	reason, ground
<i>bēniņi</i> (pl.)	attic
<i>Jaunzēlande</i>	New Zealand
<i>Irīja</i>	Ireland
<i>Japāna</i>	Japan
<i>Igaunija</i>	Estonia

NOTES: *klūpdams krīzdams* 'stumbling and falling'
kliēgdams brēkdams 'shouting and screaming'

These participial expressions are capable of inflection in the same way as the ordinary participles.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 143-152.

Exercise 155a

Form the present participle active in *-dams* of the following verbs, giving the four forms: *aizdzīt; pīt; ieliet; norīt; blēt; nocirst; nopirkt; novilkt; saprast; nozagt; ģīst; pazust; vest; mist; sist; atvērt; likt; mukt; ņemt; augt; pievilt; notēst; iebāzt; grebt; malt; uzlēkt; panākt; šņākt; raudāt; zināt; sargāt; dziedāt; strādāt; dzirdēt; meklēt; sēdēt; gulēt; tecēt; mācēt; darīt; medīt; saclt; ubagot; dot; dabūt; aiziet; būt.*

Exercise 155b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *nodzīt; tīt; izsmiet; apvīt; atklāt; iecirst; nocirst; izvilkt; atrast; sastapt; noģist; zust; ēst; just; mest; aizvērt; tikt; klupt; dzert; sākt; iedzelt; aplēst; izdzēst; grauzt; kalt; nolēkt; pārnākt; brēkt.*

Exercise 155c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 155b.

Exercise 155d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Mūsu kaimiņi.*

Exercise 155e

What case is normally required with verbs in the debitive mood? State exceptions.

Exercise 155f

Translate into English:

1. Mēs savu jaunību pavadījām lepnās lauku mājās (= *farm house*) tuvu pie Igaunijas robežas.
2. Skaļi riedams, nīknais suns padzina āzi no izcirtuma.
3. Gans svilpodams dzen savas kazas ganībās.
4. Bez iemesla amatnieki tevi nebūs aizdzinuši no darbnīcas; tu laikam būsi viņus traucējis darbā.
5. Klūpdami krīzdami mēs beidzot sasniedzām kamanas.
6. Putni iznīcina daudz kukaiņu, vaboju un tauriņu, kas kaitē stādiem.
7. Grieķijas lepnums ir tās slavenā pagātne.
8. Stāvēdami bēniņos, mēs redzējām tālu pāri Igaunijas robežai.
9. Odi sīkdami lido pa istabu.
10. Cik vārdu jūs jau protat locīt tagadnē, pagātnē un nākotnē?
11. Mūsu vecākais brālis, būdams ģimenes galva (*head of the family*: in this sense *galva* is masculine), tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit otrajā gadā aizbrauca no Irījas uz Jaunzēlandi, un mēs viņam sekojām tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit ceturtajā gadā.
12. Galvenais iemesls, kāpēc es viņu neieredzu, ir viņa lepnība.
13. Biruta smaidīdama stāstīja par kādu pagātnes notikumu.
14. Japānai ir milzīga moderna rūpniecība.
15. Mans vīrs parasti kliegdams brēkdams dzen bārdu, bet tikko to nodzinis, viņš paliek mierīgs un laipns.
16. Mans vīrs dzīvo tikai tagadnē; viņš par nākotni nedomā un arī negādā.

17. Japāna ieved vilnu no Austrālijas un Jaunzēlandes.
18. Būdamš tavs patiess draugs, es tev arī nākotnē palīdzēšu. (The definite form of *patiess* is not required here, the meaning being *a true friend of yours*, which calls for an indefinite adjective.)
19. Šis āzis ir nikns, es jūs brīdinu! – Man nav bail no āžiem.
20. Šovasar ir daudz odu.
21. Tauriņš pavada savas dienas lidodams no puķes uz puķi.
22. Bēniņos ir kukaiņi un odi.
23. Jaunzēlandes likumi ir līdzīgi Anglijas likumiem.
24. Īrija ir sala.
25. Meitenes dziedādamas vija vaiņagus mājas bēniņos.
26. Frīdis krāj tauriņus un vaboles.
27. Kāda iemesla dēļ jūs šogad neapciemojāt savu krusttēvu Īrijā?
28. Šādus kukaiņus atrod tikai Japānā.
29. Kazu piens satur daudz tauku.
30. Kā sauc Igaunijas galvas pilsētu?
31. Tikko saule noriet, nakts tauriņi sāk lidot pa dārzu (*nakts tauriņš*=moth).
32. Necel āzi par dārznieku! (Proverbial: cf. Eng. *to set the fox to keep the geese*.)

Exercise 155g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The girl is plaiting her pigtails singing a song.
2. Walking on the road we crushed many insects and beetles.
3. Rolling a cigarette, the forest-ranger told us where he had seen the rare butterflies.
4. I shall leave you now, hoping that in future you will not be as thoughtless as in the past.
5. The tanner, calculating his profit, was tanning a magnificent bear-skin.
6. Gloves and sports shoes can be made from goat-skin.
7. Japan's industry has a great future.
8. Taking the bucks to market, the farmer overtook a neighbour on the road, and continuing their journey together, they spoke about the events of the present and the past, about the weather and the floods in Estonia.
9. Are there many mosquitoes in Ireland?
10. For what reason did you sharpen the knife? – I sharpened it only because it was blunt.
11. He is turning the grindstone, smoking.
12. The teacher showed us films about New Zealand and Japan.
13. The old scientist is writing a book about the butterflies of New Zealand.

14. I think you will find another ball of yarn in the attic.
15. The mother, crying, wrapped up the sick child in a warm blanket.
16. I have no reason to conceal the truth.
17. Goats like the mountains.
18. The snake, hissing loudly, attacked the farmer.
19. My husband was already snoring, but I could not go to sleep because the mosquitoes were disturbing me.
20. The dog is afraid of the buck.
21. The salesgirl wrapped up the flowers, smiling.
22. Insects and beetles can be destroyed with poisonous gases.
23. In summer the children keep their sledge in the attic.
24. Ireland is a poor country.
25. Estonia is on (= *pie*) the Baltic Sea.

LESSON 156

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE IN *-DAMS* WITH AN IMPERATIVE

Consider the following sentences:

Stāsti viņam ko stāstīdams, bet esi piesardzīgs!

Tell him whatever you please, but be careful.

Dari ko darīdams, nenāc pirms pieciem!

Whatever you do, don't come before five.

Ejiet kur iedami, es jūs atradīšu!

Wherever you go, I shall find you.

Lai nāk kas nākdams, es tevi aizstāvēšu!

Come what may, I shall defend you.

It will be seen that the present participle active in *-dams* can be used following an imperative form of the same verb, the English equivalent in each case containing words of the type 'whatever', 'whoever', 'wherever', etc. The idiom does not admit of direct translation. Note particularly that the participle agrees with the subject (normally unexpressed) of the imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>kafejnīca</i>	cafe, coffee-lounge
<i>kūka</i>	cake
<i>veļa</i>	washing, linen
<i>labprāt</i>	readily, willingly, with pleasure
<i>pacietība</i>	patience
<i>tirdzniecība</i>	trade, commerce
<i>pārstāvis</i>	representative
<i>klājs</i>	deck
<i>attiecība</i>	relation, connection
<i>starptautisks</i>	international
<i>attīstīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to develop
<i>ātrums</i>	speed; gear
<i>Lietuva</i>	Lithuania
<i>Norvēģija</i>	Norway
<i>Polija</i>	Poland
<i>Skotija</i>	Scotland

NOTES: *Norvēģija* and *Skotija* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

attiecībā uz (+ acc.) 'in connection with, with reference to'
uz klāja 'on board'
tirdzniecības flote 'Merchant Navy'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 126–135.

Exercise 156a

Give the present participle active in *-dams* (all forms) of: *attīstīt*; *traucēt*; *padzīt*; *uztrīt*; *saldēt*; *smiet*; *pārmīt*; *dēt*; *nocirst*; *pirkt*; *vilkēt*; *pierast*; *krist*; *nest*.

Exercise 156b

Translate into English:

1. *Sakiet ko sacīdami, es tomēr neticu jūsu vārdiem!*
2. *Brauc kur braukdama, bet pārnāc mājās pirms divpadsmitiem!*
3. *Lai notiek kas notikdams, es tevi neatstāšu!*
4. *Dari ko darīdams, domā par mani!*

5. *Tici kam ticēdama, bet nestāsti visu to man!*
6. *Lai nāk kas nākdams, man nav bail!*
7. *Runājiet ar ko runādams, kas man par daļu!*
8. *Pērc ko pirkdams, tā nav mana nauda!*

Exercise 156c

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *aizdzīt*; *satīt*; *izsmiet*; *rīt*; *iekrāt*; *krīst*; *pirkt*; *uzvilkt*; *atrast*; *nosmakt*; *ģīst*; *pazust*; *ievest*; *art*; *iekrīst*; *iemest*; *svērt*; *iestīgt*; *izsprukt*; *ieknībt*; *šķirt*; *stumt*; *strēbt*; *ieiet*; *lēkt*; *nākt*; *sīkt*.

Exercise 156d

Give the forms of the past participle active and the present participle active in *-dams* of the verbs listed in Ex. 156c.

Exercise 156e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Mūsu dārzs pavasarī*.

Exercise 156f

Translate into English:

1. Šonedēļ Norvēģijas tirdzniecības pārstāvji apmeklēs Japānu un Jaunzēlandi, kur notiks svarīgas sarunas.
2. Lietuvā latviešus sauc par brāļu tautu.
3. Norvēģijai ir liela tirdzniecības flote.
4. No kuģa klāja mēs redzējām sauli uzlecām virs Skotijas krasta.
5. Pēdējos gados Polijai ir bijuši lieliski panākumi starptautiskās sporta sacīkstēs.
6. Fotografs attīsta filmu.
7. Vai bēniņos drīkst kārt veļu?
8. Saki ko sacīdams, šinī kafejnīcā ir vislabākās kūkas!
9. Domā ko domādams, bet tev nebija iemesla zaudēt pacietību!
10. Pagātnē mums vienmēr ir bijušas labas attiecības ar Iriju un Skotiju, un mēs ceram, ka tās nākotnē būs vēl labākas.
11. Tādā ātrumā nedrīkst braukt pa pilsētu.

12. Lai notiek kas notikdams, tikai nezaudē pacietību!
13. Polija attīsta savu rūpniecību.
14. Irijaš pārstāvis jums labprāt paskaidros savas valdības problēmas attiecībā uz starptautisko tirdzniecību.
15. Ja Igaunija šodien pieveiks Lietuvu, tad tai parīt jāspēlē pret Norvēģiju.
16. Šī lidmašīna attīsta milzīgu ātrumu.
17. Tev steidzami jāiet pēc kūkām, jo kafejnīcu slēdz pēc desmit minūtēm. (*iet, braukt, etc. pēc = to go, etc. for*)
18. Viņi šļāca pār kuģa klāju.
19. Māra labprāt palīdzēs tev izmazgāt veļu.
20. Skotijas pārstāvis būs tikai jokojis, salīdzinādams ar āzi Anglijas pārstāvi, kurš zaudēja pacietību un atstāja zāli.
21. Tagadne nav nemaz tik gaiša.
22. Otrā ātrumā smagā mašīna velk daudz spēcīgāk nekā trešajā.
23. Kādas attiecības jums bija ar šo meiteni no kafejnīcas?
24. Vai Lietuva šovasar sūtīs savus pārstāvjus uz starptautiskajiem sporta svētkiem Polijā?
25. Es varu iet kur iedams, visur ir odi un kukaiņi.
26. Kuģim draud briesmas, visi uz klāja!
27. Veļai jābūt baltai.
28. Mūzejā var redzēt vaboles un tauriņus no visām pasaules malām.
29. Šīs kūkas ir man par saldām, es labprāt ēstu kaut ko citu.

Exercise 156g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Her great Merchant Navy is Norway's pride.
2. Whatever happens, nothing will disturb our good relations.
3. He spent his youth in Poland and Lithuania.
4. If your representative knows international commercial law (*use plural*), he will undoubtedly understand our problems.
5. The photographer will develop your film with pleasure.
6. Why was he expelled from Scotland?
7. Have you ordered the cakes from the cafe?
8. I haven't the patience to iron washing all day.
9. On this stony road, you can drive only in (*ar*) second gear.
10. The Polish representative told us of a true happening.
11. Whoever may come, I shall not shave off my beard.
12. Whatever happens I shall remain on board.
13. All Norway was proud of him.

14. Whatever you do, do not leave the workshop.
15. He shaves singing.
16. What speed does this motor develop?
17. Standing on the deck of the ship, we saw the coast of Scotland in **the** distance.
18. Say what you like; with his arrogance he is driving away many clients.
19. In winter in Lithuania, people travel in sledges.
20. We would willingly arrange an international sporting competition.
21. As a matter of fact our relations with them were very cordial.
22. Think whatever you like, we shall never know the truth of (*par*) **this matter**.
23. This trade requires great patience.
24. The shepherd is driving the animals to the pasture, whistling.
25. You probably lost your comb going to the coffee-lounge.
26. As soon as I have washed the linen, I shall bake the cake.

LESSON 157

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: NASAL TYPE (*-IET*)
WITH ANOMALOUS IMPERFECT

Some verbs with infinitives in *-iet* have their present tense with the nasal element (*-ienu*), but form their imperfect like *-iet* verbs of the *-j-* type in *-ēju*. Such verbs then have the principal parts *-ienu, -ēju, -iet*.

skriet 'to run'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es skrienu</i>	<i>es skrēju</i>	—
<i>tu skrien</i>	<i>tu skrēji</i>	<i>skrien!</i>
<i>viņš skrien</i>	<i>viņš skrēja</i>	<i>lai skrien!</i>
<i>mēs skrienam</i>	<i>mēs skrējām</i>	<i>skriesim!</i>
<i>jūs skrienat</i>	<i>jūs skrējāt</i>	<i>skrieniet!</i>
<i>viņi skrien</i>	<i>viņi skrēja</i>	<i>lai skrien!</i>

Future: *es skriešu, tu skriesi, viņš skries, etc.*

Conditional: *es skrietu, tu skrietu, viņš skrietu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāskrien, man bija jāskrien, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *skrējis, skrējuši; skrėjusi, skrējušas.*

Present Participle Active: *skriedams, etc.*

Vocabulary

(pa-) skriet (skrienu, skrēju)	to run
(sa-) siet (sienu, sēju)	to bind, bind up
(pie-)sliet (slienu, slēju)	to prop, lean against (trans.)
aizskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju)	to run away, off
atskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju)	to run hither, come running
skrējējs	runner
skrējiens	run, race
apsiet (-sienu, -sēju)	to bandage, bind around
apsējs	bandage
piesiet (-sienu, -sēju)	to tie (up) to
Somija	Finland
Šveice	Switzerland
Ungārija	Hungary
Vēlsa	Wales

NOTE: *Skriet* may occasionally be found with a present *es skreju*, like verbs of the *-j-* type.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 133–140.

Exercise 157a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *piesliet; siet; skriet; dzīt; pīt; smiet; norīt; pamāt; nocirst; uzpirkt; pavilkt; pierast; nozagt; noģist; pazust; atvest; sašust; nomest; bārt; palikt; patikt; ņemt; dzert; nest; velt; aplēst; sērst; lauzt; svilpt; nākt; lēkt; apsegt; teikt.*

Exercise 157b

Give the forms of the past participle active and of the present participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 157a.

Exercise 157c

Under what conditions is the definite adjective to be used?

Exercise 157d

In what types of verb is the ending *-i* required in the second person singular present and imperative?

Exercise 157e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Mūsu dārzs ziemā.*

Exercise 157f

Translate into English:

1. Ap cikiem ārsts mainīs apsēju?
2. Cik ātri skrējējs skrien?
3. Zēns labprāt aizskries uz kafejnīcu pēc kūkām, vai ne?
4. Polijas tirdzniecības pārstāvji apmeklējuši Angliju, Skotiju un Velsu.
5. Bende sasēja noziedzniekam rokas un kājas.
6. Anna atskrēja mājās raudādama.
7. Ārsts apsien skrējējam apsēju ap kreiso kāju.
8. Šinī skrējienā jūs redzēsiet slavenos Somijas un Ungārijas skrējējus.
9. Lai bērni paskrien gar jūrmalu!
10. Ugunsdzēsēji pieslien kāpnes pie sienas.
11. Kāpēc viņš piesien kumeļu pie balķa?
12. Vasarā bērni skrien basām kājām.
13. Tas bija garš skrējiens.
14. Viņš ir par resnu, lai paskrietu desmit metrus.
15. Vai tu sasēji labības maisam galu? – Nē, es pašlaik vēl sienu.
16. Vai šo balķi var sliet pret durvīm?
17. Man nav pacietības piesiet katru tomāta stādu.
18. Apsējs jau netīrs.
19. Uz kuriem viņš skrien tādā ātrumā?
20. Šveicei ir labas attiecības ar Norvēģiju.
21. Ir grūti apsiet celi vai kaklu.
22. Velsas ogļu rūpniecību attīstīja jau deviņpadsmitajā gadu simtenī.
23. Viņš aizskrēja pēc avīzes.
24. Pastnieks atskrēja ar telegrammu.
25. Kāpēc Lietuva pērn nerīkoja starptautiskas sporta sacīkstes?
26. Ap sešiem veļa bija sausa.
27. Vai tu vēl sapņo par brīvlaiku Šveices kalnos vai pie Somijas ezeriem?
28. Pirms skrējiena es nekad nedzeru ūdeni.
29. Donava tek caur Ungāriju.
30. Staigāsim pa kuģa klāju!

31. Ap kuru laiku jūs bijāt Šveicē un Ungārijā?
32. Kāpēc jūs piesējāt govi laukumā vidū pie baļķa?
33. Slimnieks tā trakoja, ka viņš bija jāpiesien pie gultas.
34. Ļaudis atskrien no visām malām.
35. Kad Somijai būs jāspēlē pret Velsu?

Exercise 157g

Translate into Latvian:

1. He has already been going about with a bandage around his head for about three weeks.
2. I can't run in such shoes!
3. This fierce buck must be tied up.
4. The runner collapsed after the long run.
5. Do you know how to tie this tie?
6. We were hunting mountain goats (*kalnu kaza*) in Switzerland.
7. Around Christmas our ship will be in Japan, and at Easter in New Zealand.
8. Finland can be proud of its runners.
9. Don't lean that heavy beam against the thin wall!
10. The roses must be tied to the fence.
11. The beetle is running about like mad (*kā traks*).
12. From where did you come running?
13. Why don't you lean the ladder against the roof?
14. Ants destroy many insects.
15. What has she tied about her neck?
16. The bandage must be changed every day.
17. The guard bound his hands.
18. How long did you work in the coal mines of Wales? – Only for six months. Then I left Wales and visited Ireland.
19. Let us hope that the future will be brighter than the past.
20. You ran away without any reason.
21. That was an interesting race.
22. We came running when he called.
23. In the Latvian language, the future (tense) is simpler than the present (tense).
24. I tied a handkerchief around my thumb, and ran off to the doctor's.
25. The cold will destroy all the moths and mosquitoes in the office.
26. Flying from the capital of Finland (*gabvas pilsēta*) to Sweden, we could clearly see the coast of Estonia in the south.
27. Hungary imports watches from Switzerland.
28. Nowhere had we drunk such strong wine as in Hungary.

LESSON 158

COUNTRIES, INHABITANTS AND LANGUAGES

In a number of preceding lessons we have learnt the names of various countries. We tabulate here the corresponding names of the languages and of the inhabitants, together with the adjective of nationality.

Country	Inhabitant	Adjective	Language (runāt)
<i>Latvija</i>	<i>latvietis, -e</i>	<i>latviešu</i>	<i>latviski</i>
<i>Anglija</i>	<i>anglis, -iete</i>	<i>angļu</i>	<i>angliski</i>
<i>Krievija</i>	<i>krievs, -iete</i>	<i>krievu</i>	<i>krieviski</i>
<i>Āfrika</i>	<i>āfrikānis, -iete</i>	<i>āfrikāņu</i>	–
<i>Austrālija</i>	<i>austrālietis, -e</i>	<i>austrāliešu</i>	–
<i>Amerika</i>	<i>amerikānis, -iete</i>	<i>amerikāņu</i>	–
<i>Āzija</i>	<i>āziāts, -e</i>	<i>āziātisks</i>	–
<i>Eiropa</i>	<i>eiropietis, -e</i>	<i>Eiropas, eiropisks</i>	–
<i>Francija</i>	<i>francūzis, -iete</i>	<i>franču</i>	<i>franciski</i>
<i>Vācija</i>	<i>vācietis, -e</i>	<i>vācu</i>	<i>vāciski</i>
<i>Vidzeme</i>	<i>vidzēnieks, -ce</i>	<i>vidzēnieku</i>	–
<i>Latgale</i>	<i>latgālietis, -e</i>	<i>latgāliešu</i>	–
<i>Kurzeme</i>	<i>kurzēnieks, -ce</i>	<i>kurzēnieku</i>	–
<i>Zemgale</i>	<i>zemgālietis, -e</i>	<i>zemgāliešu</i>	–
<i>Zviedrija</i>	<i>zviedrs, -iete</i>	<i>zviedru</i>	<i>zviedriski</i>
<i>Spānija</i>	<i>spānietis, -e</i>	<i>spāniešu, spāņu</i>	<i>spāniski</i>
<i>Itālija</i>	<i>italietis, -e</i>	<i>italiešu</i>	<i>italiski</i>
<i>Kanāda</i>	<i>kanādietis, -e</i>	<i>kanādiešu, Kanādas</i>	–
<i>Brazīlija</i>	<i>brazīlietis, -e</i>	<i>brazīliešu</i>	–
<i>Ķīna</i>	<i>ķīnietis, -e</i>	<i>ķīniešu</i>	<i>ķīniski</i>
<i>Indija</i>	<i>indietis, -e</i>	<i>indiešu</i>	–
<i>Austrija</i>	<i>austrietis, -e</i>	<i>austriešu</i>	–
<i>Beļģija</i>	<i>beļģietis, -e</i>	<i>beļģu</i>	–
<i>Dānija</i>	<i>dānis, -iete</i>	<i>dāņu</i>	<i>dāniski</i>
<i>Ēģipte</i>	<i>ēģiptietis, -e</i>	<i>Ēģiptes, ēģiptiešu</i>	–
<i>Grieķija</i>	<i>grieķis, -iete</i>	<i>grieķu</i>	<i>grieķiski</i>
<i>Holande</i>	<i>holandietis, -e</i>	<i>holandiešu, Holandes</i>	<i>holandiski</i>
<i>Jaunzēlande</i>	<i>jaunzēlandietis, -e</i>	<i>Jaunzēlandes</i>	–
<i>Irija</i>	<i>īrs, -iete</i>	<i>īru</i>	–
<i>Japāna</i>	<i>japānis, -iete</i>	<i>japāņu</i>	<i>japāniski</i>

12. Šeit var dabūt franču, spāņu, italiešu, beļģu, dāņu, poļu un ungāru skaņu plates.
13. Šinī baletā dejo vācietes, austrietes, dānietes, zviedrietes un arī dažas amerikānietes.
14. Kāpēc viņš neapprecēja latvieti?
15. Visa pasaule slavē franču un ķīniešu pavāru mākslu.
16. Sēdēdami japāņu restorānā, mēs ēdām Holandes un Šveices sieru, dzērām brazīliešu kafiju, grieķu vīnu un skotu viskiju.
17. Mums ir tirdzniecības pārstāvji Anglijā, Amerikā, Francijā, Zviedrijā, Brazīlijā, Irijā, Indijā, Austrijā, Beļģijā, Dānijā, Ēģiptē, Holandē, Jaunzēlandē, Japānā, Norvēģijā, Polijā, Somijā, Šveicē, Ungārijā un divdesmit četrās Āfrikas valstīs.
18. Profesors runā vāciski, krieviski, spāniski, itāliski, holandiski un arī drusku japāniski.
19. Lietuvā sastop daudz cilvēku, kas runā latviski.
20. Angļiem jāspēlē pret krieviem, francūžiem pret brazīliešiem un italiešiem pret spāniešiem.
21. Vai jūs apciemojāt Skotiju un Velsu?
22. Japāni ievēd ēģiptiešu kokvilnu, Īru alu un somu kokus.
23. Velsas ogles ir ļoti labas.
24. Igauniem ir skaistas tautas dziesmas.
25. Uz norvēģu kuģa strādāja ķīnieši, indieši, beļģieši, ēģiptieši, grieķi, holandieši, jaunzēlandieši, Īri, japāņi, skoti un velsieši.
26. Pirmais skrējējs pie mērķa bija somi, otrais ungārs, trešais poļi, ceturtais kanādietis, piektais norvēģis un sestais šveicietis.
27. Šis jūrnīeks runā somiski, zviedriski, dāniski un norvēģiski.
28. Eiropieši parasti nelasa āfrikāņu un indiešu avīzes.
29. Austrijas viesnīcās runā ungāriski, poļiski un grieķiski, bet es apšaubu, vai kāds viesmīlis tur runā igauņiski, leitiski vai ķīniski.
30. Igaunju tautas dejas ir līdzīgas vidzemnieku tautas dejām.
31. Mana māte bija zemgāliete un tēvs vidzemnieks.
32. Vai latgāliešu kamanas ir citādas nekā kurzemnieku un zemgāliešu kamanas?

Exercise 158g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Australia has trade relations with England, Russia, America, France, Germany, Sweden, Italy, Brazil, China, India, New Zealand and many other countries in Europe, Asia and Africa.

2. The wholesale merchant imports American, English, French, German, Swedish, Italian and Japanese cars, Australian and New Zealand wool, Canadian wheat, Chinese and Indian tea, Brazilian coffee, Danish butter, Dutch cheese, Swiss watches, Norwegian tinned fish, Scotch whisky, Russian and Finnish timber, Greek, Spanish and Hungarian wine and Polish sausages.
3. Latvia is a small country, but it is bigger than Belgium, Denmark, **Holland**, Estonia, Lithuania, Switzerland and Wales.
4. On Friday Finland has to play against Hungary, on Saturday Scotland against Ireland, and on Sunday Poland against Norway.
5. Our representative will visit Spain, Canada, Austria, Egypt, and **finally** Greece.
6. The Swiss speak German, French and Italian.
7. In Australia one can buy Latvian, Austrian, Estonian and Lithuanian newspapers.
8. The Chinese, Indians and Japanese are Asians.
9. Do you eat Asian food?
10. After the second World War many Europeans migrated to Australia: in the first place Italians, then Greeks, Dutch, Poles, Germans, Hungarians, Latvians, Lithuanians, Estonians, Spaniards, Finns, French, **Austrians**, Belgians, Russians, Swedes, Danes and Norwegians.
11. The English, Americans, Canadians, Australians, New Zealanders, **Scots**, Irish and Welsh all speak English.
12. What do you know about the ancient Egyptians?
13. She is a Brazilian.
14. In northern Europe people speak Norwegian, Danish, Swedish **and** Finnish; in the east, Russian, Polish, Hungarian, Latvian, Lithuanian **and** Estonian; in the west, French, German and Dutch; and in the **south**, Spanish, Italian and Greek.
15. Is this man speaking Chinese or Japanese?
16. Some Irish, Welsh and Belgian sailors sat drinking and singing in an Egyptian port restaurant.
17. Can you obtain European beer in African ports?
18. Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Zemgale and Latgale are the four provinces of Latvia.
19. This is not a folk-dance of Vidzeme; it is a Latgalian dance.
20. Can you buy apples from Kurzeme or vegetables from Zemgale at the enormous Riga market?

LESSON 159

ADJECTIVES WITH THE PREFIX *PA-*

Quite often the prefix *pa-* can be added to adjectives (or adverbs). The usual change in meaning is a restriction on the uncompounded meaning, thus:

<i>lēts</i>	cheap	<i>palēts</i>	fairly cheap, cheapish
<i>tumšs</i>	dark	<i>patumšs</i>	fairly dark, darkish

These *pa-* forms are quite often used with *diezgan*, which has the same kind of function as the *pa-* prefix:

<i>diezgan palēts</i>	fairly cheap, cheapish
<i>diezgan patumšs</i>	fairly dark, darkish

Vocabulary

<i>paagrs</i>	fairly early, earlyish
<i>paass</i>	fairly sharp, sharpish
<i>pabiezs</i>	fairly thick, thickish
<i>palēts</i>	fairly cheap, cheapish
<i>paliels</i>	fairly big, biggish
<i>pamazs</i>	fairly small, smallish
<i>parēsns</i>	fairly fat, stout
<i>parupjš</i>	fairly coarse, coarsish
<i>pasauss</i>	fairly dry, dryish
<i>pasmags</i>	fairly heavy, heavyish
<i>patālu</i>	a fair way off, a fair way away
<i>patievs</i>	fairly thin, on the thin side
<i>patumšs</i>	fairly dark, darkish

Words of similar formation will be introduced without special vocabulary listing.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 136-145.

Exercise 159a

Choose 20 countries, and give the corresponding names of inhabitants, languages and adjectives.

Exercise 159b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *skriet; siet; aizdzīt; uztrīt; izsmiet; apvīt; pamāt; krimst; cirpt; vilkt; atrast; zagt; nogāst; zust; ēst; sist; krist; uzkārt; iestigt; sākt; stumt; strēbt; grābt; lēkt; nākt; braukt.*

Exercise 159c

List as many verbs as possible which take their object in the dative case.

Exercise 159d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Brīvlaiks kalnos.*

Exercise 159e

Translate into English:

1. Ārsts apsēja skrējējam pirms skrējiena pabiezu apsēju ap celi.
2. Ap šo gada laiku zeme ir diezgan pasausa.
3. Ierēdnis, ar kuru es runāju, bija pamaza auguma kungs ar pairesnu vēderiņu.
4. Viņš nupat aizskrēja uz krogu, kas ir diezgan patālu.
5. Basām kājām es nevarēju paskriet pa parupjo granti.
6. Viņš piesēja ēzeli pie pairesna koka.
7. Tas ir parupjš izteiciens.
8. Kā šo kakla saiti sien?
9. Kāpēc jūs pieslienat smagās kāpnes pret paplāno sienu?
10. Šis mētelis ir diezgan palēts.
11. Viņa atskrēja pie ārsta diezgan paagrā stundā.
12. Grāmatvedim ir diezgan paasa daba.
13. Šie zābaki ir pasmagi.
14. Agrā rītā ir patumšs.
15. Sala ir diezgan patālu no krasta.
16. Kāds zēns iestrebj pabiezu zupu no palielas bļodas.
17. Nazis vēl nav jātrin, tas ir diezgan paass.
18. Vasara bija pasausa.
19. Suns, ko pazaudējām, ir pamazs ar patumšu spalvu.
20. Pēc šī smagā darba mēle ir sausa; derētu kārtīgs alutiņš, vai ne?
21. Cēsis ir diezgan patālu no Rīgas.

Exercise 159f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I haven't the patience to sit every evening in a dim cafe, and hear the waiters' rather cheap jokes.
2. On deck you should wear a fairly thick coat, for the wind is cold.
3. Why do you eat those cakes? You are somewhat fat already!
4. The washing can be put (*iemērt*) in that fairly large copper. (*katls*)
5. The ship is still a fair way from the harbour.
6. It is somewhat difficult for a fattish person to run at such a speed.
7. He spoke in a fairly rough voice.
8. This pot must be scrubbed with fairly coarse sand.
9. The trade representative is a fairly old man.
10. What relations has your daughter with those rather cheap girls?
11. The international song-festival will be arranged in a fairly large city.
12. If you have sharp scissors, you can cut fairly thick paper.
13. He lives some distance away.
14. The leaves and brushwood are fairly dry: they can be burnt.
15. She wears a darkish overcoat.

LESSON 160

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: J/V TYPE, IN -ŪT

This type of verb has the *-j-* element in the present, but replaces it with a *-v-* element in the imperfect. The present and imperfect vowels are short, the infinitive vowel is long.

šūt 'to sew'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es šuju</i>	<i>es šuvu</i>	—
<i>tu šuj</i>	<i>tu šuvi</i>	<i>šuj!</i>
<i>viņš šuj</i>	<i>viņš šuva</i>	<i>lai šuj!</i>
<i>mēs šujam</i>	<i>mēs šuvām</i>	<i>šūsīm!</i>
<i>jūs šujat</i>	<i>jūs šuvāt</i>	<i>šujiet!</i>
<i>viņi šuj</i>	<i>viņi šuva</i>	<i>lai šuj!</i>

Future: *es šūšu, tu šūsi, viņš šūs*, etc.

Conditional: *es šūtu, tu šūtu, viņš šūtu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāšuj, man bija jāšuj*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *šūvis, šuvuši; šuvusi, šuvušas*.

Present Participle Active: *šūdams*, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>(pa-)šūt (šuju, šuvu)</i>	to sew; to make (a dress, etc.)
<i>uzšūt (-šuju, -šuvu)</i>	to sew on
<i>piešūt (-šuju, -šuvu)</i>	to sew on
<i>sašūt (-šuju, -šuvu)</i>	to sew together
<i>(no-)skūt (skuju, skuvu) (bārdū)</i>	to shave
<i>adata</i>	needle
<i>poga</i>	button
<i>piedurkne</i>	sleeve
<i>caurums</i>	hole
<i>diegs</i>	thread
<i>šujmašīna</i>	sewing machine
<i>šuvēja</i>	seamstress, dressmaker
<i>krava</i>	load, cargo
<i>kauja</i>	battle
<i>šautēne</i>	rifle
<i>lielgabals</i>	cannon, field-piece
<i>lopkautuve</i>	slaughter-house, abattoirs

NOTES: *kaujas lauks* 'battle field'

Do not confuse *caurums* with *bedre*. *Bedre* is a hole in the ground, a pit, whereas *caurums* is a hole in the sense of an aperture, fissure, puncture in a surface, etc.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 149–158.

Exercise 160a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *sašūt; noskūt; piesliet; padzīt; ietīt; smiet; norīt; iesēt; iecirst; cirpt; novilkīt; atrast*.

Exercise 160b

Give the forms of the past participle active and the present participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 160a.

Exercise 160c

For each verb listed in Ex. 160a, give another identical in conjugation.

Exercise 160d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Dzīve uz laukiem.*

Exercise 160e

Which Mixed Conjugation verbs have a consonantal alternation *k/c* or *g/dz* in the stem?

Exercise 160f

Translate into English:

1. Tu nedrīksti šūt ar mātes jauno šujmašīnu.
2. Drēbnieks šuj man jaunu uzvalku.
3. Šuvēja bija bāla un tieva kā diegs.
4. Piedurknes ir drusku par garām.
5. Ar šādām šautenēm medī zīlopus.
6. Mans vīrs pašreiz skuj bārdu, bet tikko viņš būs to noskuvis, viņš nāks pie tālruņa.
7. Kur tu atradi šo pogu?
8. Karavīriem bija lielgabali, šautenes un citi ieroči.
9. Ar kādu adatu un ar kādu diegu tu piešuvi pogas?
10. Es piešūšu pogu, tu to neproti!
11. Garas piedurknes traucē, kad mazgā traukus.
12. Lūdzu, māt, uzšuj man lielu numuru uz sporta krekla!
13. Lopus ved uz lopkautuvi.
14. Karalis krita kaujā.
15. Krava jāpiesien, citādi tā nokritīs.
16. Šuvēja pašuva man jaunu blūzi.
17. Ienaidnieks bēgdams atstāja kaujas laukā daudz lielgabalu un šauteņu.
18. Vai tu ved govīs un teļus uz lopkautuvi?

19. Tanī zobā jums ir tikai mazs caurumiņš.
20. Neraudi, puisīt, ārsts tev nedurs ar adatu!
21. Kautrīgajai šuvējai ir bail runāt ar pilsētas galvas kundzi.
22. Kamēr mana sieva piešūs pogas pie mēteļa, es jau būšu noskuvis bārdu.
23. Ienaidniekam ir daudz lielgabalu.
24. Šūdama ar moderno šujmašīnu, es pašuvu blūzi daudz ātrāk.
25. Bērns bija norijis adatu.
26. Kāpēc tu sašuj caurumu ar sarkanu diegu?
27. Visa krava dega.
28. Jūs esat piešuvusi pogu par zemu.
29. Tu šodien vēl neesi noskuvis bārdu.
30. Ko viņa tur šuj?
31. Kuģa kravu nevarēja glābt.
32. Ko karalis teiks par mūsu kaujas plānu?
33. Māte sašuva aizkaru no diviem drēbes gabaliem.
34. Kurpē ir liels caurums.

Exercise 160g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The dress-maker is sewing with a fairly long needle.
2. That is a fairly heavy load.
3. This blouse has fairly wide sleeves.
4. There is a smallish hole in my trousers. I shall need some black thread.
5. She makes something new for every ball.
6. While you are shaving, I shall sew the button on to your coat.
7. Many guns and rifles fell into the hands of the enemy.
8. With what kind of needles did women sew in the Stone Age?
9. There is a big hole in the outer wall of the building.
10. The sewing machine is now completely useless.
11. He quickly shaved and departed.
12. An efficient (*kārtīgs*) dress-maker makes twenty blouses in one day.
13. He displayed great courage in battle.
14. The slaughter-house is a fairly old building.
15. Why did you sew on the black buttons with red thread?
16. The tailor will have made the suit by (*līdz*) Saturday.
17. There is a small hole in your left sleeve.
18. The enemy is fleeing from the battlefield.
19. Have you insured the whole cargo? – No, only the sewing machines and the rifles.
20. We are driving the sheep to the slaughter-house.
21. On the 11th of November, 1918, all guns were silent (*klusēt*).

LESSON 161

THE SHORT CONJUGATION J/V TYPE, INFINITIVES
IN -AUT

Most verbs in *-aut* are conjugated more or less like *šūt*, with a present in *-j-* and an imperfect in *-v-*. The diphthong *au* remains in the present stem, but the imperfect has *ā*. Cf. *kaut* below.

kaut 'to kill'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kauju</i>	<i>es kāvu</i>	—
<i>tu kauj</i>	<i>tu kāvi</i>	<i>kauj!</i>
<i>viņš kauj</i>	<i>viņš kāva</i>	<i>lai kauj!</i>
<i>mēs kaujam</i>	<i>mēs kāvām</i>	<i>kausim!</i>
<i>jūs kaujat</i>	<i>jūs kāvāt</i>	<i>kaujiet!</i>
<i>viņi kauj</i>	<i>viņi kāva</i>	<i>lai kauj!</i>

Future: *es kaušu, tu kausi, viņš kaus, etc.*

Conditional: *es kautu, tu kautu, viņš kautu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jākauj, man bija jākauj, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *kāvis, kāvuši; kāvusi, kāvušas.*

Present Participle Active: *kaudams, etc.*

Vocabulary

<i>(uz-)kraut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to heap, pile, load
<i>piekraut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to load (ship, cart, etc.)
<i>raut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to pull, tear, pluck
<i>izraut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to pull out, tear out, pluck out
<i>(no-)šaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to fire; to shoot
<i>(no-)kaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to kill, slaughter
<i>piekaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to beat, thrash
<i>spļaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to spit
<i>(at-) aut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to allow, permit
<i>bļaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to shout, bray, clamour
<i>(no-)pļaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to mow, reap
<i>(ie-)jaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to knead

<i>(ap-)skaut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to hug, embrace
<i>(sa-)graut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to destroy, demolish; to thunder
<i>maut (-auju, -āvu)</i>	to moo, to low
<i>mīkla</i>	dough, pastry, batter

NOTES: *Rauj viņu velns!* 'The devil take him!'

šaut uz (+ acc.) 'to fire on'

Nošaut has the extended meaning 'to shoot dead'.

Ļaut and *atļaut* take a dative of the person:

Viņa man atļāva braukt līdzi.

She let me come along.

This dative can be omitted when the permission is generalized (cf. *aizliegt*):

Kas ļāva piesliet dēļus pie sienas?

Who gave permission for the planks to be leant against the wall?

(Uz-)kraut takes the locative or *uz*:

Kraujiet maisus ratos!

Load the bags into the cart.

Uzkraujiet grāmatas uz galda!

Pile the books up on the table.

The dative is also found:

Ezelim var uzkraut diezgan smagus maisus.

One can load fairly heavy bags on to a donkey.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 66–80.

Exercise 161a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *spļaut; apskaut; izraut; piekraut; šūt; paskriet; tīt; nodzīt; ieliet; apvīt; paspēt; nocirst; uzpirkt; vilkt; saprast.*

Exercise 161b

Give the forms of the past participle active and the present participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 161a.

Exercise 161c

For each verb listed in Ex. 161a give another of identical conjugation.

Exercise 161d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Grāmatas, kuras es lasu.*

Exercise 161e

Translate into English:

1. Nekrauj tik daudz ķieģeļu ratos!
2. Ja maiznieks tevi noķers jaujam mīklu netīrām rokām, viņš tevi piekaus.
3. Zēni splāva ūdenī, stāvēdami uz tilta.
4. Kā pērkons grauj!
5. Vai saimnieks pats kauj cūkas?
6. Tev jārauj stiprāk, jo sakne ir diezgan pagara.
7. Govis mauj kūti.
8. Ļauj man tevi apskaut! – Nē, es to neatļauju.
9. Līdz vakaram ostas strādnieki būs piekrāvuši kuģi.
10. Maiznieks iejauj maizi padziļā bļodā.
11. Vai ap šo laiku nepļauj rudzus? – Mēs jau sen nopļāvām rudzus.
12. Mīlzis lielās dusmās izrāva koku ar visām saknēm, bet rūķīši viņu tikai izsmēja.
13. Ar ko ienaidnieks šauj?
14. Vētra sagrāva paveco pirti.
15. Ēzelim var uzkraut diezgan smagus maisus.
16. Bērns bļauj skaļā balsī.
17. Ludis ir par kautru, lai apskautu šo meiteni. – Gan jau viņš viņu apskaus!
18. Mēs kraujam kastes ratos.
19. Kāpēc jūs man uzkraujat šo pienākumu?
20. Kad brālēns tevi piekaus, tu bļausi pilnā kaklā (= *at the top of one's voice*).
21. Policija nošāva vienu laupītāju un ievainoja otru.
22. Kāds pavecs vīrs pļauj zāli sporta laukumā.
23. Nemauiet, gotiņas! Tūlīt jūs slauks! (*gotiņa*: dim. of *govs*)
24. Sieva piekaus Artūru un izraus viņam pēdējos matus, ja viņa noķers viņu apskaujam šo skaisto jaunkundzīti.
25. Ienaidnieks šauj no visām pusēm.
26. Vai tiešām kāds būtu splāvis uz grīdas?
27. Šis zobs ir jārauj laukā.
28. Pirms Ziemsvētkiem visur kauj cūkas, zosis un pīles; mēs arī nokāvām palielu zosi.

29. Rauj viņu velns!
30. Dzirnavniece bļāva, kad vējš sagrāva viņas dzirnavas.
31. Zobārsts man izrāva divus zobus.
32. Ļauj man iejaut mīklu maizei!
33. Viņi ātri piekrāva lielo kuģi.
34. Motors tik savādi splauj. – Nav brīnums, jūs uzkrāvāt uz smagās mašīnas veselu tonnu vairāk nekā parasti.
35. Govis māva visu nakti.

Exercise 161f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The current destroyed two fairly old bridges.
2. She ran off yelling.
3. The doctor does not allow the runner to run in long races.
4. Who allowed the heavy boards to be leant against the wall?
5. We bound the calf's feet before the butcher slaughtered it.
6. Around Christmas many farm animals are killed, and many hares shot.
7. The cow is tearing out the long grass with its tongue.
8. The dentist is pulling a tooth.
9. Cows moo when they are being tied to a tree.
10. The child cried when the doctor tied a bandage around its knee.
11. While John is mowing the grass, Anne is kneading the dough.
12. A fairly small boy gave that naughty youngster a beating.
13. Vodka destroys one's health.
14. Why are you loading such heavy bags on to the poor ass?
15. They are loading gravel.
16. They loaded the ship in forty-eight hours.
17. The soldiers fired while running.
18. I shall give him a beating if he embraces my girl-friend.
19. Some naughty child is spitting from the sixth floor.
20. When he fled the guards shot him dead.
21. When did she knead the dough?
22. He ran up and tore the weapon from the child's hands.
23. Why are you piling such a heap of potatoes on to the plate?
24. The cow is mooing as if out of its mind (*traks*).
25. The workers are demolishing the old building.
26. Did you mow down the grass?
27. Don't tear the book out of my hands!
28. Why don't you allow him to play the organ?
29. We are loading the ship.

LESSON 162

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: THE VERB *AUT*

The verb *aut* combines a *-v-* imperfect (cf. *kaut*) with an *-n-* in the present, instead of the *-j-* common to *-aut* verbs. Its conjugation is as follows:

aut 'to put on'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es aunu</i>	<i>es āvu</i>	—
<i>tu aun</i>	<i>tu āvi</i>	<i>aun!</i>
<i>viņš aun</i>	<i>viņš āva</i>	<i>lai aun!</i>
<i>mēs aunam</i>	<i>mēs āvām</i>	<i>ausim!</i>
<i>jūs aunat</i>	<i>jūs āvāt</i>	<i>auniet!</i>
<i>viņi aun</i>	<i>viņi āva</i>	<i>lai aun!</i>

Future: *es aušu, tu ausi, viņš aus, etc.*

Conditional: *es autu, tu autu, viņš autu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāaun, man bija jāaun, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *āvis, āvuši; āvusi, āvušas.*

Present Participle Active: *audams, etc.*

The root vowel *-ā-* of the imperfect corresponds with the same root vowel in the primary *-aut* type with *-j-* present and *-v-* imperfect.

Vocabulary

<i>(uz-)aut (aunu, āvu)</i>	to put on (of foot-wear only)
<i>apavi (pl.)</i>	foot-wear
<i>māceklis</i>	apprentice
<i>(sa-)lāpīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to repair, mend (clothing)
<i>ielāps</i>	patch (for mending)
<i>lode</i>	sphere; bullet
<i>ložmetējs</i>	machine-gun
<i>šāviens</i>	shot; round (of ammunition)
<i>izkaptis (f.)</i>	scythe
<i>sirpis</i>	sickle
<i>kalējs</i>	blacksmith

<i>labot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to correct; to repair
<i>salabot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to repair
<i>izlabot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to correct
<i>kļūda</i>	mistake, error

NOTES: *Salabot* and *izlabot* correspond as perfectives respectively to the meanings 'to repair' and 'to correct' of the imperfective *labot*.

Aut can also be used with *kājas*: sometimes *kājas* will have the proleptic meaning 'socks' (or something similar).

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 1–25.

Exercise 162a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *uzaut; piešūt; skūt; izraut; skriet; dzīt; pīt; liet; norīt; jāt; nocirst; pirkt; pavilkt; pierast.*

Exercise 162b

Give the forms of the past participle active and the present participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 162a.

Exercise 162c

For each verb listed in Ex. 162a give another identical in conjugation.

Exercise 162d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Dzīve lielpilsētā.*

Exercise 162e

Translate into English:

1. Drēbnieks iesita māceklim pa ausi, tāpēc ka viņš bija uzšūvis brūnu ielāpu uz melnām biksēm.
2. Kārtīgs kalējs māc salabot šujmašīnas, šautenes, arklus, izkaptis un sirpjus.
3. Tālumā dzird lielgabalu un ložmetēju šāvienus.

4. Kāpēc tu neizlaboji šīs kļūdas?
5. Visapkārt sāca ložmetēju lodes.
6. Pirmā gadā mācekļi piešuj tikai pogas, vēlāk viņi jau sašuj piedurknes un citas daļas un beidzot pašuj visu uzvalku.
7. Mūsu dienās fabrikas ražo apavus, bet kurpnieki tos tikai labo.
8. Viduslaikos šuvējas ar šādām adatām pašuva visus apģērbus.
9. Vai tik lielu caurumu var salāpīt?
10. Drēbnieku mācekļi šuj un lāpa.
11. Kalējs jau aun kājas, un tikko būs noskuvis bārdu, viņš sāks labot jūsu arklu.
12. Vesela krava ložmetēju krita ienaidnieka rokās.
13. Kamēr es skūšu bārdu, mans māceklis salabos jūsu pulksteni.
14. Ielāpam ir cita krāsa nekā pašam biksēm.
15. Viņš uzāva zeķes un zābakus, paņēma izkapti un aizgāja.
16. Izkaptis un sirpjī bieži jātrin.
17. Kalējs pašlaik labo dzirnavnieka ratus, bet viņš tūlī salabos jūsu sirpi.
18. Mēs jau aunam kājas.
19. Tā bija liela kļūda, ka Vītola kungs pārdeva savu apavu fabriku.
20. Viņa uzšuva biksēm ielāpu ar stipru diegu.
21. Šāviens būs sabiedējis kumeļu.
22. Lūdzu, izlabojiet savas kļūdas līdz trešdienai! – Labi, izlabosim!
23. Aiz lopkautuves dzirdēja šāvienu.
24. Kāpēc jūs aunat jaunās kurpes?
25. Apavu cenas krīt.
26. Āvu, āvu baltas kājas,
Lēcu dārziņā,
Lēcu, lēcu dārziņā,
Plūcu baltas rozes.

Plūcu, plūcu baltas rozes,
Pinu vainadziņu,
Pinu, pinu vainadziņu,
Liku galviņā.

(T. dz.)

Exercise 162f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The thunder is roaring more loudly than cannon-shots.
2. The machine-guns are spitting fire.
3. The soldier screamed when the doctor pulled the bullet out of his shoulder.
4. Are they mowing with scythes or with sickles?
5. The tailor's apprentice is mending coats and trousers.

6. The blacksmith gave a beating to the scoundrel who embraced the young salesgirl in the foot-wear shop.
7. I am ashamed to go to church with a patch on my trousers.
8. The baker allows his apprentice to knead the dough.
9. He mowed the grass with the scythe.
10. The enemy is firing with machine-guns.
11. These bullets tear big holes.
12. They are loading the ship with bricks and rafter-beams.
13. Why is the cow mooing? – It was probably frightened by the shot.
14. While the baker was kneading the dough, the smith was repairing the baker's cart.
15. Today she will put on her new shoes and stockings.
16. The hunter killed the bear with one shot.
17. The butcher's apprentice slaughters only calves and lambs.
18. Why did you mend my trousers with such a thick patch?
19. Have you corrected that mistake? – No, I shall correct it later.
20. They are loading footwear on to the truck. – How long have they been loading now? (= *jau*)
21. Did the girl allow John to embrace her?
22. The tradesmen have repaired the wall which the storm had destroyed.
23. The sickle must be repaired.
24. Who repaired the watch?
25. That is not a great mistake.

LESSON 163

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE IN -OŠS

The *-ošs* participle, often called the First Present Participle Active (as opposed to the Second Present Participle Active in *-dams*) is formed from the first person singular of the present tense. It is used purely as an adjective: cf. English 'flowing water', 'falling leaves', etc.

The ending *-ošs* is added to the stem of the first person singular, present tense:

Infinitive	Present	<i>-ošs</i> Participle	
<i>degt</i>	<i>es dēgu</i>	<i>dēgošs</i>	burning
<i>tecēt</i>	<i>es tēku</i>	<i>tēkošs</i>	flowing
<i>riet</i>	<i>es rēju</i>	<i>rējošs</i>	barking
<i>ziedēt</i>	<i>es ziedu</i>	<i>ziedošs</i>	blooming

Exceptions to this formation are:

- (a) The verb *būt*. The *-m-* of the stem is omitted, giving *esošs*.
 (b) All verbs of the Semipalatalized Type with infinitives in *-st* or *-zt*. Presumably because of some aesthetic objection to the combinations *-šošs* and *-žošs*, Latvians prefer forms in *-sošs* and *-zošs*, i.e., formed from the unpalatalized second person singular of the present tense. Some grammars inveigh against the use of *-sošs* and *-zošs* forms, saying that they are morphologically incorrect. They go on to say that the "correct" forms, *-šošs* and *-žošs*, are altogether too unpleasant to use, and suggest that the *-ošs* participle of verbs of the Semipalatalized Type in *-st* and *-zt* should just not be used at all. In the face of the considerable use of *-sošs* and *-zošs* forms, we suggest that the view of the purists is not really tenable.

A similar problem arises with the verbs *gulēt* and *sēdēt*. Here again the first person singular present tense of the verb is palatalized, whereas the second person singular is not.

Particularly with *sēdēt*, the form *sēdošs* is to be preferred, while with *gulēt* the issue is less clear-cut. Semipalatalized Type verbs in *-lt* do not use the second person singular present as a basis for the *-ošs* participle, nothing unpleasant being seen in the combination *-lošs* to make one want to prefer **-lošs*. While *gulošs* will be found as well as *guļošs* we suggest that the latter is sufficiently common for the student to prefer it.

An *e* preceding the ending *-ošs* is open, unless

- (a) The consonant *j* or any palatalized consonant intervenes;
 (b) The verb is one of the Unchanged Type in *-ert* which was originally of the Semipalatalized Type.

Note particularly that the *-ošs* participle is normally formed from *intransitive verbs only*.

As the use of this participle is purely adjectival, it is declinable just like an adjective, with both definite and indefinite forms. Cf. the paradigms given below.

INDEFINITE MASCULINE

tēkošs ūdens 'flowing water'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>tēkošs ūdens</i>	<i>tēkoši ūdeņi</i>
Acc.	<i>tēkošu ūdeni</i>	<i>tēkošus ūdeņus</i>
Gen.	<i>tēkoša ūdens</i>	<i>tēkošu ūdeņu</i>
Dat.	<i>tēkošam ūdenim</i>	<i>tēkošiem ūdeņiem</i>
Loc.	<i>tēkošā ūdenī</i>	<i>tēkošos ūdeņos</i>

INDEFINITE FEMININE

krītoša lapa 'a falling leaf'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>krītoša lapa</i>	<i>krītošas lapas</i>
Acc.	<i>krītošu lapu</i>	<i>krītošas lapas</i>
Gen.	<i>krītošas lapas</i>	<i>krītošu lapu</i>
Dat.	<i>krītošai lapai</i>	<i>krītošām lapām</i>
Loc.	<i>krītošā lapā</i>	<i>krītošās lapās</i>

DEFINITE MASCULINE

dēgošais nams 'the burning building'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>dēgošais nams</i>	<i>dēgošie nami</i>
Acc.	<i>dēgošo namu</i>	<i>dēgošos namus</i>
Gen.	<i>dēgošā nama</i>	<i>dēgošo namu</i>
Dat.	<i>dēgošajam namam</i>	<i>dēgošajiem namiem</i>
Loc.	<i>dēgošajā namā</i>	<i>dēgošajos namos</i>

DEFINITE FEMININE

plokošā kaudze 'the dwindling heap'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>plokošā kaudze</i>	<i>plokošās kaudzes</i>
Acc.	<i>plokošo kaudzi</i>	<i>plokošās kaudzes</i>
Gen.	<i>plokošās kaudzes</i>	<i>plokošo kaudžu</i>
Dat.	<i>plokošajai kaudzei</i>	<i>plokošajām kaudzēm</i>
Loc.	<i>plokošajā kaudzē</i>	<i>plokošajās kaudzēs</i>

The lengthening syllable *-aj-* is omitted in the dative and locative forms from verbs of the Long Conjugation.

Examples of the use of *-ošs* participles:

Mēs izmazgājām savus kreklus upes tekošajos ūdeņos.

We washed our shirts in the flowing waters of the river

Ak, krītošās lapas ir tik skaistas!

Oh, the falling leaves are so beautiful!

Manai sievai bail no rejošiem suniem.

My wife is afraid of barking dogs.

Kungs dzīvo tanī brūkošajā, vecajā pill.

The lord lives in that crumbling old castle.

From the *-ošs* participle, one may form adverbs in *-oši*:

tēkošs flowing, fluent *tēkoši* fluently

In the spoken language, both the participle (adjective) and the adverb have the usual forms for the degrees of comparison: *-ošāks*, *-ošāk*. These forms are regarded by some as "incorrect", but they are very common indeed, and the student should not necessarily feel obliged to avoid them.

Vocabulary

<i>gumija</i>	rubber
<i>burts</i>	letter (of the alphabet)
<i>burtnīca</i>	exercise book
<i>gars</i>	spirit; ghost; mind
<i>garīgs</i>	spiritual
<i>pūles</i> (pl.)	trouble, toil, pains
<i>rūpes</i> (pl.)	care, worry, anxiety
<i>meistars</i>	master-craftsman; champion
<i>virve</i>	rope
<i>vēss</i>	cool
<i>krūts</i> (f.) often <i>krūtis</i> (pl.)	chest, breast
<i>vēzums</i>	cart-load
<i>sēkla</i>	seed
<i>līdzeklis</i>	remedy, aid
<i>līdzekļi</i> (pl.)	funds, means
<i>lini</i> (pl.)	flax, linseed
<i>linu</i> (invar. adj.)	linen
<i>līnija</i>	line

NOTES: *līdzeklis pret* 'remedy for'
gara slimība 'mental illness'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 111-120.

Exercise 163a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *aut*; *šūt*; *skūt*; *raut*; *siet*; *nodzīt*; *ietīt*; *izsmiet*; *vīt*; *atklāt*; *cirpt*; *uzpirkt*; *cirst*; *izvilkt*; *saprast*; *nākt*.

Exercise 163b

Give the forms of the past participle active and the present participle active in *-dams* of the verbs listed in Ex. 163a.

Exercise 163c

Form the present participle active in *-ošs* of the following verbs: *tecēt*; *krist*; *riet*; *stāvēt*; *iet*; *degt*; *mukt*; *gulēt*; *šalkt*.

Exercise 163d

Translate into English:

1. *mīloša sirds*;
2. *sīcoša lode*;
3. *rūcošs pērkons*;
4. *lidojošas skudras*;
5. *mana sāpošā lkšļa dēļ*;
6. *bez spīdošiem panākumiem*;
7. *aiz guļošās vistas*;
8. *bangojošā jūra*;
9. *caur krītošo sniegu*;
10. *ziedošas puķes*.

Exercise 163e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Rietošā saule*.

Exercise 163f

Translate into English:

1. Ar lielām pūlēm mēs ieraudzījām zvejnieku laiviņu mirdzošajā ūdenī.
2. Ir grūti dzēst degošu gumiju.
3. Lūdzu, dodiet man burtnīcu ar līnijām!
4. Augoša m bērnam vajaga daudz miega.
5. Tagad ir moderni līdzekļi pret dažām gara slimībām.
6. Ienaidnieks šava ar ložmetēju uz braucošo vilcienu.
7. Kalēja māceklis salaboja divas izkaptis un vienu sirpi, bet pats meistars tagad labo smago arklu.
8. Tu šo vārdu neesi rakstījis ar lielo burtu, izlabo šo kļūdu!
9. Maiss sēklu nokrita no v ezuma.
10. Viņu atrada ar lodi krūtīs.
11. Piesien maujošo govī pie v ezuma ar virvi!
12. Dzērājs, nākdams no krogus, dziedāja no pilnas krūts. (= *at the top of his voice*)
13. Izdzēs (= *rub out*) šo līniju ar gumiju!
14. Lietuvā audzē vairāk linu nekā Latvijā.
15. Viduslaikos, kad Eiropā vēl nebija kokvilnas, ļaudis valkāja linu kreklus.
16. Mātes sirds bija rūpju pilna.
17. Pasaules meistars pieveica savus pretiniekus starptautiskajās sporta sacīkstēs bez lielām pūlēm.
18. Linu apģērbs ir ļoti vēss.
19. "Garīgās attiecības laulībā ir ļoti svarīgas," teica profesors, kam pašam nebija sievas.
20. Viņš iemeta virves galu tekošajā straumē, lai glābtu peldošo zēnu.
21. Dzelzceļa līniju pār brūkošo tiltu nelietos, kamēr tiltu nesalabos (i.e., *as long as the bridge remains unrepaired*).
22. Kāpēc tu aun kājās vieglās vasaras kurpes?
23. Kad mums pašiem būs savs apavu veikals, mēs dzīvosim bez rūpēm, sieviņ! – Tad mums būs vairāk rūpju nekā līdz šim!
24. Kukaiņi iznīcināja ražu.
25. Ostas smirdošajos ūdeņos neviens nepeld.
26. Mācītājs runā drebošā balsī.
27. Drēbnieks lāpīja bikses trīcošām rokām, bet viņš tās tomēr salāpīja.
28. Es arvien vēl garā redzu šo nabaga zēnu ar lieliem ielāpiem uz apģērba.
29. Kad mežsargs āva kājas, viņš dzirdēja šāvienu.
30. Burti jāraksta burtnīcā uz līnijām.
31. Sēklas maisi v ezumā jāapsien ar virvi.
32. Jaunais amata meistars nopirka darbnīcu ar paša līdzekļiem.

33. Šai vēsajā laikā var viegli apsaldēt krūtīs.
34. Tanī burtnīcā ir tikai garīgas dziesmas.
35. Man vēl viens burts jāizdzēs ar gumiju.
36. Es neticu gariem.
37. Topošas mātes nedrīkst smēķēt.

Exercise 163g

Translate into Latvian:

1. She had great difficulty in sewing up the big hole with her trembling hands.
2. Give me a needle and thread, and I shall sew those letters on to your sports-shirt.
3. The dress-maker is making linen shirts and sheets.
4. The master-craftsman himself sewed the buttons on to the sleeves.
5. He gave me a shining new sewing-machine.
6. On the way to the slaughter-house, they had to tie the feet of the raging cow with ropes.
7. The pharmacist has a good remedy for an aching chest.
8. With a telescope the battle-line can be seen.
9. The weather is still too cool to sow flax.
10. The whole load fell into the raging sea.
11. He is driving past with a cart-load of stinking manure again.
12. Don't you think that flying saucers (say *plates*) exist?
13. Their guns and rifles will not break our battle-spirit.
14. This poet wrote only spiritual songs.
15. Why are there no lines in this exercise book?
16. Doctors often wear rubber gloves.
17. He does not think of a loving mother's anxiety.
18. How can I express my anxiety?
19. With great difficulty he shaved off his beard.
20. The congregation built the church with its own funds.
21. The teacher hit the dreaming pupil on the shoulder with an exercise book.
22. The falling snow is slowly covering the seeds.
23. She still sews with her old trembling fingers.
24. The horses are pulling a heavy cart-load of sand.
25. You can't rub out ink with an ordinary rubber.
26. The master-craftsman is teaching his apprentices to make ropes.

LESSON 164

THE PARTICIPLE IN -OT

The Present Participle Active in *-ošs* has an indeclinable form, in which *-ot* is substituted for *-ošs*.

Infinitive	Present	<i>-ošs</i> form	<i>-ot</i> form
<i>nākt</i>	<i>es nāku</i>	<i>nākošs</i>	<i>nākot</i>
<i>klupt</i>	<i>es klūpu</i>	<i>klūpošs</i>	<i>klūpot</i>
<i>runāt</i>	<i>es runāju</i>	<i>runājošs</i>	<i>runājot</i>
<i>tēcēt</i>	<i>es tēku</i>	<i>tēkošs</i>	<i>tēkot</i>

The indeclinable participle in *-ot* may be formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs. It differs from the *-ošs* participle in this respect. Thus

dziedot exists, although **dziedošs* is a dubious form;
ēdot exists, although **ēdošs* is a dubious form;
dodot exists, although **dodošs* is a dubious form;
 and so on.

The indeclinable participle in *-ot* differs from the *-ošs* form in another important respect. Whereas verbs of the Semipalatalized Type in *-st* and *-zt*, together with *sēdēt* and perhaps *gulēt*, do not permit the formation of the *-ošs* participle from the first person singular of the present tense, preferring the unpalatalized second person singular, the *-ot* form of such verbs reverts back to the palatalized first person singular. Thus *sēdošs* but *sēžot*, *sērsošs* but *sēršot*, etc. It can only be assumed that the combination *-šot* does not offend Latvian ears as much as *-šošs*, nor *-žot* as much as *-žošs*.

In addition the *-ot* participle does not share the function of the *-ošs* participle. The *-ot* participle cannot be used adjectivally, only verbally. It is very much more like the *-dams* participle. It can always be substituted for the *-dams* participle, except in the *dari ko dari* construction, although as we shall see later the converse is by no means true.

Its use will be seen from the following examples.

Viņa ēdot izlasīja vēstuli.

She read the letter while eating.

Gulot daži cilvēki krāc.

Some people snore while sleeping.

Strādājot vakaros, Atis varēja studēt universitātē.

By working in the evenings, Atis was able to study at the university.

The participle may be extended with an object or other dependent words:

Baiba svilpoja, barojot cūkas.

Baiba was whistling as she fed the pigs.

Noģiedot, ka klētī ir zagļi, saimnieks piezvanīja policijai.

Suspecting that there were thieves in the barn, the farmer rang the police.

Notice particularly that the *-ot* participle is less rigidly tied to a nominative subject than the *-dams* participle.

Atstājot draugus, man sāpēja sirds.

When I left my friends, there was pain in my heart.

Vocabulary

<i>piekrist (-krītu, -kritu)</i>	to agree
<i>aizvēst (-vēdu, -vēdu)</i>	to take away, cart off; to deport
<i>pakārt (-karu, -kāru)</i>	to hang (trans.)
<i>pietikt (-tiek, -tika)</i>	to suffice, to be enough
<i>pielikt (-lieku, -liku)</i>	to add
<i>iztikt (-tiek, -tiku)</i>	to make do, manage
<i>dažāds</i>	various
<i>smarža</i>	odour, scent, smell
<i>smaržas (pl.)</i>	perfume
<i>zīds</i>	silk
<i>apaļš</i>	round (adj.)
<i>āķis</i>	hook; trick; catch
<i>badš</i>	hunger, starvation; famine
<i>baigs</i>	dreadful, terrible
<i>doma</i>	thought, idea; opinion
<i>bežgalīgs</i>	endless, unlimited
<i>bikls</i>	bashful, shy, timid
<i>brašs</i>	strapping, dashing
<i>bilde</i>	picture
<i>gulbis</i>	swan
<i>makšķere</i>	fishing-rod

NOTES: *Piekrist* takes the dative case to express the English 'with':

Es jums piekrītu.

I agree with you.

Pietikt usually has its subject in the genitive:

Miljona mums nepietiks.

A million will not be enough for us.

Alternatively, *pietikt* may be used impersonally, with the English subject being introduced in Latvian by the preposition *ar*:

Mums ar miljonu nepietiks.

pielikt pie 'to add to'

bezgalīgi (adv.) 'tremendously', 'unspeakably'

pielikt uguni 'to set fire'

uz bildes 'in a picture'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 152–161.

Exercise 164a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *uzaut*; *uzšūt*; *spļaut*; *skriet*; *aizdzīt*; *trīt*; *smiet*; *pārmīt*; *blēt*; *cirst*; *pirkt*; *vīlkt*; *saprast*.

Exercise 164b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 164a.

Exercise 164c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs* of the verbs listed in Ex. 164a.

Exercise 164d

Name as many nouns as you can which have some declensional irregularity, and state the nature of the irregularity.

Exercise 164e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Ubaga dzīve*.

Exercise 164f

Translate into English:

1. Ja universitāte neiztikts ar pašreizējiem līdzekļiem, tad valdība pieliks apaļu miljonu. – Bet ko tas līdz? Miljona mums nepietiks! – Es jums pilnīgi piekrītu, profesora kungs.
2. Tā mazā zvaigznīte ir bezgalīgi tālu no zemes.
3. Peldot pa dīķi, gulbis šad un tad iemērc galvu ūdenī.
4. Meistars tev parādīs, kā piesien makšķerei āķus.
5. Vai jūs lasījāt par šo baigo noziegumu? – Jā, un es ceru, ka noziedzniekus noķers un pakārs.
6. Valkājot zīda drēbes un lietojot dārgas franču smaržas, karaliene nedomāja par tautu, kas dzīvoja badā, viņa domāja tikai par savu pašas dzīvi.
7. Runājot par šo meiteni, es tev piekrītu, ka viņa ir bikla.
8. Ienaidnieks aizveda lopus un labību; nav brīnums, ka visur ir bads.
9. Pēc manām domām (= *in my opinion*) makšķeres āķis ir par mazu.
10. Laupītāji apsēja tirgotājam virvi ap krūtīm un rokām un aizveda viņu sev līdzi.
11. Biklā balsī viņa atbildēja lektora jautājumam.
12. Vai bumba ir no gumijas?
13. Vai tu pakāri mētelī uz āķa?
14. Mans brālis ir brašs karavīrs.
15. Brašais zēns bez lielām pūlēm pieveica spēcīgo pretinieku.
16. Man šķiet, ka ceļš ir bezgalīgs.
17. Baigajā badā daudz cilvēku gāja bojā.
18. Mums pietiks ar diviem vezumiem.
19. Man pietiek šo baigo kara bilžu.
20. Šai bildē tu redzi kādu meiteni barojam gulbjus un zēnu ar makšķeri rokā.
21. Ja tu līdz šim esi iztikusi bez zīda zeķēm un dārgām smaržām, tad tu arī turpmāk iztiksi bez tām.
22. To viņa pati nav rakstījusi burtnīcā, jo viņa raksta apaļākus burtus.
23. Mežoniem bailes no dažādiem gariem, kas pēc viņu domām (see No. 9 above) mīt kokos un akmeņos.
24. Vai linu ziediem ir stipra smarža?
25. Taisna līnija varētu būt bezgalīgi gara.
26. Vai šodien aizvedīs atkritumus?
27. Laiks ir par vēsu, lai valkātu paplāno zīda blūzīti.
28. Austrālieši ir lepni uz savas zemes melnajiem gulbjiem.
29. Es jums piekrītu, ka valdībai ir rūpju papilnam, bet es tomēr saku, ka tā varētu pievērst lielāku uzmanību tautas izglītībai.
30. Pieliec vēl karoti sāls pie zupas!
31. Būs lietus. Labāk pakārsim veļu bēniņos!

32. Staigājot pa pilsētu, mēs sastapām Miķeli un Frīdi.
33. Dzerot alu, mednieks stāstīja mums par savu dzīvi Āfrikas mežos.
34. Veikalnieks, domājot, ka pagrabā ir zaglis, steigšus piezvanīja policijai.
35. Sēžot vagonā, mēs runājām ar saviem draugiem.
36. Piekritot skolotājam, mācītājs teica, ka izglītība ir svarīgāka par naudu.
37. Šī meitene ir skaista kā bilde.
38. Juris ir brašākais zēns visā skolā.

Exercise 164g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I can manage until Friday with five dollars.
2. In this picture, you can see how the soldiers, standing behind a low wall, are firing upon the enemy.
3. The blacksmith added two lats to the apprentices' wages.
4. That shy girl works in a foot-wear factory.
5. A terrible famine followed the war.
6. Hanging his coat on a hook, he called the waiter.
7. Why did you mend the trousers with a round patch? – That is an indescribably silly question!
8. I agree that this is a good plan.
9. Girls presumably think that by using various expensive perfumes and wearing silk stockings they will catch a husband more quickly.
10. He killed the swan with the first shot.
11. The big fish pulled the fishing-rod from his hand.
12. While carting the logs (*baļķis*) from the clearing, old Atis noticed a fire in the distance.
13. Will this smallish bottle be enough for you?
14. I do not agree that, mowing with a scythe, one can mow more grass than mowing with a sickle.
15. Where did Arthur take that shy little girl?
16. In my opinion the watch cannot be repaired.
17. Add just one letter, and you will have corrected the mistake.
18. How many people perished in that terrible year of famine?
19. While putting on your silk stockings, you should have noticed that hole in the left stocking. – No, I noticed nothing, for I put them on in a great hurry.
20. Will you manage mending the sleeve with that short thread?
21. While standing in the tremendously long queue (*rinda*), I nearly fell asleep.
22. The policeman asked the scientist to compare the bullet on the table with the bullet in the picture.

23. We sell various fishing-rods, and various hooks.
24. Calculating the loss in round figures, I would say that it is not less (*mazāks*) than a hundred and fifty thousand pounds.
25. Dancing with handsome Arthur, Aija no longer thought of Ludis.
26. While feeding the swans, my wife fell into the water.
27. Let us hang the robbers on the nearest tree!

LESSON 165

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: PALATO-DENTAL (UNVOICED)
TYPE

A number of verbs of the Short Conjugation combine a present tense similar to that of the Semipalatalized Type with an imperfect tense like that of the Dental Type. It should be particularly noted that whereas in the Semipalatalized presents, -š- reverts to -s- in the second person singular present and imperative and the second person plural imperative, verbs of this *s-š-t* Type revert here to -t-.

pūst 'to blow'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es pūšu</i>	<i>es pūtu</i>	–
<i>tu pūt</i>	<i>tu pūti</i>	<i>pūt!</i>
<i>viņš pūš</i>	<i>viņš pūta</i>	<i>lai pūš!</i>
<i>mēs pūšam</i>	<i>mēs pūtām</i>	<i>pūtīsim!</i>
<i>jūs pūšat</i>	<i>jūs pūtāt</i>	<i>pūtiet!</i>
<i>viņi pūš</i>	<i>viņi pūta</i>	<i>lai pūš!</i>

Future: *es pūtīšu, tu pūtīsi, viņš pūtīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es pūstu, tu pūstu, viņš pūstu*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *pūtis, pūtuši; pūtusi, pūtušas*.

Debitives: *man jāpūš, man bija jāpūš*, etc.

Present Participles Active: *pūzdams; *pūtošs; pūšot*.

Compare *pūtošs* and *pūšot*. This is reminiscent of *sēdošs* and *sēžot*, etc. Verbs of the *s-š-t* type avoid the *-šošs* combination, preferring, in spite of the purists, the *-ošs* participle formed from the unpalatalized second person singular of the present tense. The *-ot* participle is, however, formed from the palatalized first person singular of the present.

Verbs with an *e* in the stem have the following alternation pattern of open and closed *e*.

plēst 'to spread, stretch out'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es plēšu</i>	<i>es plētu</i>	—
<i>tu plēt</i>	<i>tu plēti</i>	<i>plēt!</i>
<i>viņš plēš</i>	<i>viņš plēta</i>	<i>lai plēš!</i>
<i>mēs plēšam</i>	<i>mēs plētām</i>	<i>plētīsim!</i>
<i>jūs plēšat</i>	<i>jūs plētāt</i>	<i>plētiēt!</i>
<i>viņi plēš</i>	<i>viņi plēta</i>	<i>lai plēš!</i>

Future: *es plētīšu, tu plētīsi, viņš plētīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es plēstu, tu plēstu, viņš plēstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāplēš, man bija jāplēš*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *plētis, plētuši; plētusi, plētušas*.

Present Participles Active: *plēzdams; *plētošs; plēšot*.

Plēst is also found as *plēst*, with present *plēšu*, imperfect *plētu*, i.e., with a contrastive short vowel in the present.

Vocabulary

<i>pūst (pūšu, pūtu)</i>	to blow
<i>(no-)jaust (jaušu, jautu)</i>	to guess, to feel (intuitively)
<i>ciest (ciešu, cietu)</i>	to endure, tolerate, suffer
<i>riest (riešu, rietu)</i>	to shoot forth, put out (buds, etc.)
<i>(iz-)plēst (plēšu, plētu)</i>	to spread, stretch out (trans.)
<i>pumpurs</i>	bud
<i>izpletnis</i>	parachute
<i>pārprast (-protu, -pratu)</i>	to misunderstand
<i>izprast (-protu, -pratu)</i>	to appreciate; to comprehend
<i>izpratne</i>	appreciation
<i>apēst (-ēdu, -ēdu)</i>	to eat up
<i>dobe</i>	flower-bed, vegetable plot
<i>pasaka</i>	fairy tale
<i>čigāns (m.), čigāniete (f.)</i>	gipsy
<i>cēls</i>	noble, sublime
<i>cepetis</i>	a roast
<i>caurs</i>	hollow; full of holes; torn
<i>taure</i>	trumpet, horn, bugle
<i>taurētājs</i>	trumpeter, bugler

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–150.

Exercise 165a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *jaust; ciest; plēst; uzaut; piešūt; atļaut; piesliet; aizdzīt; ietīt; ieliet; norīt; paspēt; krimst; uzpirkt; izvilkt; pierast*.

Exercise 165b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 165a.

Exercise 165c

Give the participles in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 165a.

Exercise 165d

Under what circumstances do the dative and locative forms of definite declension adjectives and participles appear without the lengthening syllable *-aj-?*

Exercise 165e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Bagāta vīra dzīve*.

Exercise 165f

Translate into English:

1. Taurētājs pūta savu tauri.
2. Ābeles jau rieš pumpurus.
3. Izpletņus šuj no tīra zīda.
4. Kas būtu nojautis, ka šis biklais zēns ir spējīgs tādām baigām noziegumam?
5. Gulbis aizstāv savu ligzdu, plēšot spārnus un špācot.
6. Kara laikā ļaudis cieta badu.
7. Ar šo cepeti mēs iztiksim divas dienas.
8. Čigāniete staigāja pa ielu caurām zeķēm un kurpēm.
9. Kā cilvēkam ar mākslas izpratni var patikt šī bilde?
10. Es jums pilnīgi piekrītu, ka eiropieši nevar izprast āziātu mūziku. – Piedodiet, jūs mani laikam pārpratāt – es šādu domu nemaz neizsacīju!
11. Ievas jau rieš ziedu pumpurus.
12. Šo cēlo mūziku es neizprotu.
13. Brašais taurētājs pūš lielu tauri.
14. Sienāži apēda lapas un pumpurus.

15. Dārznieks veido apaļu dobi.
16. Pārprotot manu jautājumu, pārdevēja rādīja man dažādas smaržas.
17. Pēc manām domām čigāns, kuru pakāra, bija nevainīgs.
18. Šī pasaka ir bezgalīgi bēdīga.
19. Tu laikam nenojaut, kādu cepeti tu svētdien dabūsi pusdienās. – Tagad es nojaušu, ka tas būs ļoti labs cepetis, māmiņ!
20. Tauriņš, sēdēdams uz zieda, izpleta spārnus.
21. Ja tev būtu kaut drusku mūzikas izpratnes, tad tu vairs nedziedātu.
22. Vējš pūta no dienvidiem.
23. Es šo cēlo dāmu nevaru ciest.
24. Bez izpletņiem mēs būtu bijuši pagalam.
25. Zobārsts nolēma izraut šo cauro zobu, jo arī sakne jau bija caura.
26. Tu apēdi tikai vienu desiņu! Vai ar to tev tiešām jau pietiek?
27. Aprīlī augļu koki jau rieta pumpurus.
28. Šādi brīnumi notiek tikai pasakās.
29. Tanī dobē dārznieks iesēja burkānus.
30. Tas pagāna čigāns būs aizvedis kumeļu.
31. Izplešot kārtis uz galda, viņš lūdza mani izvilkēt vienu.
32. Visa daba cieš lielajā karstumā, un mēs arī ciešam.
33. Man laikam nav ne mazākās mākslas izpratnes, jo es neizprotu šīs trakās, modernās gleznas.
34. Kā tu varēji pārprast šā cēlā kunga domas?
35. Piesien makšķerei lielāku āķi!
36. Kurā pasakā vilks apēd kādu meiteni?
37. Izpletņi lidoja gaisā kā milzīgas baltas sēnes.
38. Kurš taurētājs pūš pirmo tauri?

Exercise 165g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Some seeds have natural parachutes.
2. If you appreciate the paintings of these old masters, you will also appreciate the spirit of the period.
3. Hearing the trumpet signal, the old horse ran away.
4. The conductor does not want the trumpeters to blow with full force, when they play. ('with full force' *no pilnas krūts*)
5. When the bushes and trees shoot forth buds, spring is here.
6. The old gipsy woman told us some fairy tales.
7. It is said that dogs sense (*jaust*) danger.
8. The rubber boots must have holes in, for water is coming in.
9. A good trumpeter blows the trumpet without great effort.

10. The pharmacist must have misunderstood you if he gave you a cough remedy.
11. I cannot stand that old man with his smelling loads of manure.
12. You have not the slightest idea of (*par*) your mother's anxiety.
13. While jumping with his parachute, the soldier spread out his arms and legs.
14. What is growing in that flower-bed?
15. He plays the violin, but without any appreciation of music.
16. I cannot take (*ciest*) hot roasts.
17. In which month does this fruit tree develop buds?
18. I had already guessed that the dog had eaten the roast.
19. If a swan spreads out its wings, it is angry.
20. No, daughter, you did not misunderstand me – I said that you can mend your holed stockings yourself!
21. To the left (*kreisajā pusē*) of the railway-line, flax is growing.
22. Such noble creatures exist only in fairy tales.
23. The goat would have eaten up the exercise book, had I not been there.
24. Walking through the forest, the gipsy heard a shot in his vicinity.
25. We found little Biruta writing beautiful big letters in the sand.
26. While Rūdis was cutting the thick rope, the knife slipped out of his hand.
27. A hard-working person must wear cool working-clothes.

LESSON 166

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: PALATO-DENTAL (VOICED)
TYPE

Alongside the type in *s-š-t* which we studied in Lesson 165, there is a corresponding group with voiced consonants, i.e., *z* in place of *š* and *d* in place of *t*. The voiced consonant *z* is *not* however written in the infinitive, which retains *s*.

kost 'to bite'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kožu</i>	<i>es kodu</i>	–
<i>tu kod</i>	<i>tu kodi</i>	<i>kod!</i>
<i>viņš kož</i>	<i>viņš koda</i>	<i>lai kož!</i>
<i>mēs kožam</i>	<i>mēs kodām</i>	<i>kod!st!</i>
<i>jūs kožat</i>	<i>jūs kodāt</i>	<i>kodiet!</i>
<i>viņi kož</i>	<i>viņi koda</i>	<i>lai kož!</i>

Future: *es kodīšu, tu kodīsi, viņš kodīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es kostu, tu kostu, viņš kostu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jākož, man bija jākož*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *kodis, koduši; kodusi, kodušas*.

Present Participles Active: *kozdamš; *kodošš; kožot*.

Verbs with an *e* in the stem have the same alternation as *plest*, cf. *šķērst*, below.

šķērst 'to cut open'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es šķērzū</i>	<i>es šķērdū</i>	—
<i>tu šķērd</i>	<i>tu šķērdi</i>	<i>šķērd!</i>
<i>viņš šķērz</i>	<i>viņš šķērda</i>	<i>lai šķērz!</i>
<i>mēs šķērzam</i>	<i>mēs šķērdām</i>	<i>šķērdīsim!</i>
<i>jūs šķērzat</i>	<i>jūs šķērdāt</i>	<i>šķērdiet!</i>
<i>viņi šķērz</i>	<i>viņi šķērda</i>	<i>lai šķērz!</i>

Future: *es šķērdīšu, tu šķērdīsi, viņš šķērdīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es šķērstu, tu šķērstu, viņš šķērstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāšķērz, man bija jāšķērz*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *šķērdis, šķērdusi; šķērdusi, šķērdušas*.

Present Participles Active: *šķērzdamš; *šķērdošš; šķērzot*.

Vocabulary

<i>(ie-)kost (kožu, kodu)</i>	to bite
<i>ost (ožu, odu)</i>	to smell (intrans.)
<i>(pa-)snaust (snaužu, snaudu)</i>	to slumber, snooze
<i>spraust (spraužu, spraudu)</i>	to fasten, pin, stick, fix; to set, determine
<i>nospraust (-spraužu, -spraudu)</i>	to set, determine
<i>(ap-)skaust (skaužu, skaudu)</i>	to envy
<i>aust (aužu, auđu)</i>	to weave
<i>glaušt (glaužu, glaudu)</i>	to stroke, caress; to smooth
<i>(iz-)paust (paužu, paudu)</i>	to make known, betray, spread (news)
<i>laist (laižu, laidu)</i>	to allow
<i>(pa-)grūst (grūžu, grūdu)</i>	to push, knock, jolt
<i>(pa-)spiest (spiežu, spiedu)</i>	to press, squeeze
<i>(pie-)spiest (spiežu, spiedu)</i>	to force, to oblige
<i>(pa-)sviest (sviežu, sviedu)</i>	to throw, fling
<i>(iz-)šķiest (šķiežu, šķiedu)</i>	to squander, waste

(no-)ziest (ziežu, ziedu)

to smear, cover (by smearing)

(pa-)zīst (zīžu, zīdu)

to suck

(uz-)šķērst (šķērzū, šķērdū)

to cut open, to dissect

līst (līžu, līdu)

to clear (ground), uproot (trees)

līdums

clearing, open ground

NOTES: Both *kost* and *iekost* are followed by the locative when the sense is plainly that of 'biting into', e.g.,

(ie-)kost ābolā

to bite into an apple

(ie-)kost maizē

to bite into bread

The dative case is found when an animate creature is bitten, e.g.,

(ie-)kost pastniekam

to bite the postman

(ie-)kost citam sunim

to bite another dog

The accusative is found for inanimates, e.g.,

kost nagus

to bite one's nails

kost zīmuli

to bite one's pencil

Iekost does not normally allow of this accusative construction.

The five perfective forms with *pa-* given above, i.e., *pasnaust*, *pagrūst*, *paspiest*, *pasviest* and *pazīst*, all indicate a short duration of the action, e.g., *pasnaust* 'to snooze a little', etc.

ost pēc 'to smell of'

spraust (sev) mērķi 'to set (oneself) a goal'

Laist may be followed by the infinitive, in which case the object is in the dative:

Laidiet man braukt līdzi!

Let me come along.

Otherwise *laist* has an accusative object:

Viņa mani nelaida.

She did not permit me.

An infinitive may be understood, but the object remains in the accusative:

Laidiet mani uz balli!

Let me go to the ball.

grūst lodi 'to put the shot'

(pa-)spiest roku (+ dat.) 'to shake hands (with)'

man spiež krūtīs 'I have a pain in my chest'

Līst is pronounced with broken tone. Cf. Phonetics.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 121–130.

Exercise 166a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *iekost; snaust; laist; sviest; noziest; pūst; ciest; uzaut; uzšūt; kaut; skriet; dzīt; tīt; izsmiet; apvīt; jāt; nocirst; nocirpt; pavilkt; rast.*

Exercise 166b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 166a.

Exercise 166c

Give the participles in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 166a.

Exercise 166d

Which types of verb require an *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative?

Exercise 166e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kārtlbnieka dzīve.*

Exercise 166f

Translate into English:

1. Neglaud suni, suns tev iekodīs! – Nē, šis suns nekož!
2. Te ož pēc laba cepeša.
3. Dārziņš nosprauda jaunajai dobei malas.
4. Kāpēc tu nespraud sev mērķi?
5. Tā neviens nemazgā mašīnu, zēni, jūs to tikai noziežat. – Nē, tēt, mēs nezīžam, mēs beržam un skalojam.
6. Es apskaužu cilvēkus ar mākslas izpratni. – Jums nav nekā ko skaust, jūs izprotat mākslu tīri (= *quite*) labi!
7. Čigāna seja pūda dusmas, kad puisis viņu pagrūda.
8. Cēlā dāma paspieda mums visiem roku.
9. "Un tad," krustmāte turpināja pasaku, "viņš uzšķērda vilkam vēderu."

10. Kaimiņš liž līdumu.
11. Bērns atkal ziž ikšķi! – Nekas (= *that doesn't matter*), lai paziž!
12. Vai jūs šeit aužat tikai vilnas drēbi? – Nē, šeit auž arī linu un zīda drēbi.
13. Viņš nemaz nenojauš, ka ļaudis viņu apskauž.
14. Kad es biju maza, es necietu, ka katrs glauda man galvu.
15. Kad taurētājs pūta tauri, visi aizskrēja uz tirgus laukumu.
16. Ližot līdumus, mēs atradām kara laika izpletņi meža dziļumos.
17. Tu laikam dzīvo lieliski, šķiežot tēva naudu, vai ne?
18. Ludis vakar grūda lodi sešpadsmit metrus un trīsdesmit astopus centimetrus.
19. Es nojaušu, ka pēc nedēļas koki jau rietīs pumpurus.
20. Ārsts lika slimniekam izplest pirkstus.
21. Šāviens sabiedēja snaudošo kalēju.
22. Viņš bija izšķiedis visu savu naudu.
23. Šī gāze neož.
24. Nav brīnums, ka tev spiež, jo tu apēdi lielu desu.
25. Kāpēc tu nelaid meiteni uz balli? – Tu mani pārproti, sieviņ, es viņu laižu.
26. Kāpēc tauriņš pleš spārnus, māt?
27. Lūdzu, laidiet mani garām!
28. Šis plāpa izpaudīs mūsu noslēpumu.
29. Zēni atkal sviež akmeņus upē. – Nekas, lai pasviež!
30. Kad zivij uzšķērda vēderu, atrada gredzenu.
31. Šo lauku mēs laižam šogad atmatā.
32. Kucēni ziž mātes pienu.
33. Tanī vietā, kur nīknais suns iekoda, bikses bija cauras.
34. Viļņi tevi neglaustu, ja tie zinātu, cik kautra un tikumīga tu esi.
35. Es drusku pasnaudīšu, kamēr jūs aužat.
36. Šis cilvēks šķiež laiku un naudu, paužot savas graužošās (= *destructive*) domas.
37. Robeža arvien vēl ir tur, kur to nosprauda septiņpadsmitā gadu simtenī.
38. Eļļa, ar kuru es ziežu muguru, nejauki ož.
39. Akmens ir par smagu, lai to pasviestu.
40. Neviens tevi nepiespiež šķērst smirdošām zivīm vēderus.
41. Jūs atkal ližat līdumus, bet es domāju, ka jums lauku un ganību diezgan.
42. Kas tevi piespieda braukt mums līdzi?

Exercise 166g

Translate into Latvian:

1. This man is propagating dangerous ideas! – Never mind (= *nekas*), nobody agrees with him.
2. They are weaving silk.
3. I shall not allow you to stroke the dirty dog.
4. We shall not let our children waste food, while other people live in hunger.
5. While slumbering on deck, I still heard the infinitely wide ocean roaring.
6. All the boys envy strong Atis, for he can throw a ball and put the shot further than the others.
7. Why did you smear the fence with mud?
8. Why does the gardener stick brushwood in the flower-beds?
9. Presumably the farmer's fields are not enough for him, because he is clearing ground again.
10. The fisherman hung the enormous fish on a hook and cut it open.
11. Bees suck honey from blossoms.
12. She made the horrible crime known to all the neighbours.
13. The patient will snooze after the meal.
14. It smells of smoke here.
15. The shy little girl who was feeding the swans was as beautiful as a picture.
16. While other people squander money, he has to manage with his low wages.
17. A dog that barks does not bite.
18. The professors and lecturers set the goal which the students must reach.
19. How do scientists dissect insects?
20. He shook hands with his friends before he was led away to prison.
21. New foot-wear always squeezes my feet.
22. We were already clearing the ground early in the morning.
23. No, this perfume does not smell as good as that one.
24. In your country, you presumably weave with more modern machines.
25. This round stone is too heavy to be thrown, but not too heavy to be pushed.
26. In my opinion, modern painters only daub (*ziest*).
27. The fierce postman bit the dog in the leg.
28. He envies every happy person.
29. We did not let the children near the puppies while they were sucking.
30. The old pastor patted the child's head.
31. To such sentences one can add various words.

LESSON 167

THE DATIVE ABSOLUTE

Subordinate adverbial clauses are often avoided in Latvian by the use of a construction known as the Dative Absolute. In this construction, the verb of the possible subordinate clause has only participial status.

The subject of the subordinate clause to be reduced to a participial phrase is put in the dative, the verb appears in the form of the indeclinable *-ot* participle, and the whole is set off from the main clause with commas.

This reduction is possible only where the main clause and the subordinate clause have different subjects.

Consider the following English sentences:

As the sun set, we drove home.

While the farmer slept, the thieves robbed the barn.

When Guntis is working in the garden, we are not allowed to go there.

We must be quiet when father is reading the paper.

Since father knew where we were, mother was not worried.

In all of the above, we have a subordinate adverbial clause, the subject of **which** is different from the subject of the main clause. Hence the Dative Absolute (subject in the dative, verb in the *-ot* form) may be used.

Saulei rietot, mēs braucām mājās.

Saimniekam guļot, zagļi izlauplja klēti.

Guntim strādājot dārzā, mēs tur nedrīkstam iet.

Tēvam lasot avīzi, mums jāklusē.

Tēvam zinot, kur mēs esam, māte bija mierīga.

From the above, it will be clear that the Dative Absolute may be enlarged to include an object of the participle, or other dependent words.

Vocabulary

<i>palaist</i> (- <i>laižu</i> , - <i>laidu</i>)	to release
<i>ielaišt</i> (- <i>laižu</i> , - <i>laidu</i>)	to release (into); to let (in)
<i>izlaišt</i> (- <i>laižu</i> , - <i>laidu</i>)	to release (out of); to let (out)
<i>pārkost</i> (- <i>kožu</i> , - <i>kođu</i>)	to bite through
<i>iespraust</i> (- <i>spraužu</i> , - <i>spraudu</i>)	to stick in, insert
<i>piespraust</i> (- <i>spraužu</i> , - <i>spraudu</i>)	to affix, pin, fasten (to)

<i>iespiest</i> (-spiežu, -spiedu)	to impress, imprint; to print
<i>nosviest</i> (-sviežu, -sviedu)	to throw down
<i>aizsviest</i> (-sviežu, -sviedu)	to throw away
<i>izrakt</i> (-roku, -raku)	to dig out
<i>ierakt</i> (-roku, -raku)	to dig in; to bury
<i>uzspļaut</i> (-spļauju, -spļāvu)	to spit on; to despise, scorn
<i>samalt</i> (-maļu, -malu)	to grind
<i>pārkāpt</i> (-kāpju, -kāpu)	to overstep, transgress, infringe; to climb over
<i>apcēlt</i> (-cēļu, -cēlu)	to tease, belittle, laugh at
<i>izsūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to suck out, to pump out
<i>rīkle</i>	throat
<i>spiestuve</i>	printing-house

NOTES: The meaning of the *laist* compounds given above is a simple extension of the meaning 'to allow' given last lesson. *Laist* on its own has no directional implications, the two corresponding perfectives *ielaišt* and *izlaišt* supplying this where necessary.

Piespraust is normally construed with *pie* 'to fasten, affix to'.

Uzspļaut, (a rather colloquial word), has its object in the dative:

Es uzspļauju jūsu plānam. I hold your plan in contempt.

Samalt corresponds as perfective to the imperfective *malt*.

Apcēlt is somewhat colloquial.

palaist garām 'to let past'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 155–164.

Exercise 167a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *ielaišt*; *izpaust*; *pazīst*; *uzšķērst*; *ciest*; *pūst*; *aut*; *kaut*; *sasiet*; *nodzīt*; *samīt*; *ieliet*; *pārmīt*; *paspēt*; *krīmt*; *nopīrkt*; *izvilkt*; *pierast*.

Exercise 167b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 167a.

Exercise 167c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 167a.

Exercise 167d

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Skolnieka (vai skolnieces) dzīve*.

Exercise 167e

How are the various tenses of the debitive mood formed?

Exercise 167f

Translate into English:

1. Saulei lecot, mēs jau līdām līdumu.
2. Saimniekam nezinot, kalps izlaida suni ārā.
3. Diviem laupītājiem ierokot zemē zelta naudu, trešais gaidīja mašīnā.
4. Skolotājam nemanot, mēs noziedām tāfelī ar cūku taukiem.
5. Saulei rietot, lopus ielaiž kūti.
6. Plēsoņas pārkoda lopiem rīkles.
7. Ugunsdzēsēji izsūca ūdeni no pagraba.
8. Iespraužot divus kociņus (here = *sticks*) zemē, mēs viegli nospraudīsim taisnu līniju.
9. Šajā akmenī var redzēt, kur pirms miljoniem gadu kāda milzīga ķirzaka iespiedusi kāju.
10. Šinī spiestuvē iespiež tikai zinātniskas grāmatas.
11. Viņa izšķiež naudu, vīram nezinot.
12. Nevienam nemanot, Aija bija piespraudusi jauno saktu pie blūzes.
13. Ja jūs atkal apcelsit veco snaudošo vīru, es pārkāpšu pār sētu un jūs sodīšu.
14. Pašam nezinot, es biju pārkāpis likumu. (In such cases as this, the different subject requirement does not hold.)
15. Šādus sīkus kaulus lauva pārkož kā sērkokciņus.
16. Ja mani laiž mierā (*If I am left alone*), es neviena neapceļu.
17. Palaidiet mani garām!
18. Neglaud netīro kucēnu – tas ož!
19. Viņš nosvieda smago maisu no pleca, izraka bedri un ieraka maisu zemē.
20. Kas izlaida kumeļu no aploka?
21. Ja tu palaid par mani valodas (*to spread gossip*), tad paud patiesību!
22. Studenti šķērž sionāžus.

23. Es uzspļauju valodām (See No. 21 above), ko šī plāpa pauž.
24. Izroc bedri un ieroc visus atkritumus!
25. Sargi pārbauda katru, ko viņi ielaiž un izlaiž.
26. Viņš mani pagrūda, un es iekritu ūdenī.
27. Šuvējas parasti pārkož diegus.
28. Smago lodi nesviež, to grūž.
29. Sviedzami bumbu, mēs to dažreiz aizsviedām līdz pašam žogam.
30. Kāpēc tu uzspļauj tai vietai, kur kukainis tev iekoda?
31. Viņas auž visu dienu: lai tagad drusku pasnauž!
32. Šīni spiestuvē iespieda mūsu ielūgumus.
33. Ko jūs tur iespraudāt zemē?
34. Es uzspļauju likumiem, ko es pārkāpju.
35. Zivīm tūliņ jāuzšķērš vēderi.
36. Suns ielaiž katru iekšā, bet neviena vairs nelaiž ārā.
37. Šī gāze nav indīga, bet kož acīs.
38. Acumirkli, es piespraudīšu tev saktu, jo tu nezini, kā to piesprauž!
39. Ja čūska iekož, inde tūlīt jāizsūc.
40. Kāpēc tu spraud kociņu maizē? – Iespraužot kociņu, es pārbaudu, vai tā jau gatava.
41. Viņš apskauž bagātus laudis, kas šķiež naudu pilnām rokām.
42. Viņam laikam ir kāda nopietna slimība rīklē.
43. Kāpēc jūs mani apskaužat?
44. Viņš neglezno, tikai ziež!
45. Kociņš jāizrok ar visu sakni.
46. Visiem spiestuves strādniekiem dzirdot, Kārlis apcēla biklo meiteni.
47. Vecākiem raudot aiz prieka, pats karalis spieda viņu drosmīgajam dēlam roku.
48. Kaut gan viņai sāpēja rīkle, viņa tomēr dziedāja.
49. Ierēdnis lielās dusmās nosvieda pildspalvu uz grīdas.
50. Divās stundās mēs būsīm samaluši visu labību miltos.
51. Vai tu aizsviedi tukšo kastīti? – Nē, es nedomāju, ka es to būšu aizsviedusi.
52. Ko viņi tur nosvieda no jumta?
53. Laidiet suni iekšā, ārā ir auksts!

Exercise 167g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The gardener dug a plant out of the middle flower-bed.
2. Manure has to be dug in.
3. You can't jump with a parachute while the wind is blowing so hard.
4. The naughty children are teasing the old gipsy again.

5. I felt that you would misunderstand me.
6. She threw away the stockings which were full of holes.
7. The sun is warming the ground and the trees are bringing forth buds.
8. I am probably too simple to appreciate those noble poems.
9. Mother cannot stand it if you throw rubbish on the floor.
10. Without his parents' knowledge, Ludis had released the dog.
11. Unseen by anybody, the thief had bitten through the rope which we had tied his hands with.
12. Seeing how you are attaching the garland to the wall, it seems to me that you have not the slightest appreciation of beauty. – Very well, and I hold your appreciation of beauty in contempt as well!
13. Without knowing it ourselves, we had infringed the law.
14. In which printing-house was this book of fairy tales printed?
15. The scientists have unearthed a silver trumpet from the early Iron Age.
16. The fox bit through the swan's throat.
17. While we were all sleeping, the cook had let in her fiancé. (= *Ilgavainis*)
18. Our family eats a roast like that in one meal.
19. The firemen released the water which they pumped out of the cellar directly into the gutter.
20. As he fell, the soldier spread his arms out.
21. The dog buried a stinking bone in the ground.
22. The trumpeter despises the gossip which that old blabber-mouth is spreading (*palaists*).
23. The butterfly is spreading its wings.
24. If you stick that twig into the ground, it will soon drop (*laist*) roots.
25. How far did she throw the ball?
26. We do not print books in this printing-house.
27. Who let this scoundrel into the restaurant?
28. Did you let the water out of the tub?
29. While her husband was still slumbering, she had already ground the coffee.
30. The robber was shot dead, climbing over the fence.
31. This new (*moderns*) tie can be fastened to the shirt.
32. The cat stuck its head into a narrow milk-pot and could not get it out.
33. This scoundrel grabbed me by (*aiz*) the throat, constable.
34. My husband does not throw matches on to the floor.
35. No wonder Baiba hit you if you were teasing her again!

LESSON 168

THE DEBITIVE OF *BŪT* WITH A FOLLOWING NOUN

The formal distinction between *es esmu* and *man ir* disappears in the debitive mood, where both become *man jābūt*. As any following noun will be in the dative in any case, difficulties arise in distinguishing sentences of the type

I had to be a farm-hand.
from: I had to have a farm-hand.

Man jābūt kalpam will be understood as 'I must be a farm-hand.' This type of construction cannot be used to mean 'I must have', which requires *man vajaga*. The following examples will make the distinction clearer.

<i>Man jābūt kalpam.</i>	I must be a farm-hand.
<i>Man vajaga kalpu.</i>	I must have a farm-hand.
<i>Mums jābūt karavīriem.</i>	We must be soldiers.
<i>Mums vajaga karavīrus.</i>	We must have soldiers.
<i>Jums jābūt labiem strādniekiem.</i>	You must be good workers.
<i>Jums vajaga labus strādniekus.</i>	You must have good workers.

Vocabulary

<i>daiļš</i>	beautiful, fair
<i>dēvīgs</i>	generous, liberal
<i>dīžs</i>	great, eminent
<i>dojš</i>	hollow, deep (of voice, sounds)
<i>drēgns</i>	damp, moist, humid
<i>drukns</i>	corpulent, stout
<i>drūms</i>	gloomy, sombre, bleak
<i>dullš</i>	silly, mad, crazy
<i>dumjš</i>	stupid
<i>dumpīgs</i>	rebellious
<i>dzeštrs</i>	cool, fresh; chilly
<i>dzidrs</i>	clear, limpid
<i>dzīvs</i>	alive; active, quick
<i>uznākt (-nāku, -nācu)</i>	to appear, turn up; to set in (of weather), to arise (storm, etc.); to come on (pains, etc.)
<i>pierunāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to persuade
<i>atrunāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to dissuade

<i>apsvērt (-sveru, -svēru)</i>	to consider
<i>nozīmēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to mean, imply
<i>laist (laižu, laidu)</i>	to drive; fell (trees); go fast
<i>pielaist (-laižu, -laidu)</i>	to allow
<i>nolaist (-laižu, -laidu)</i>	to fell (trees); to let down, lower

NOTES: *Laist*, besides meaning 'to allow', 'to release', has a further extended meaning, i.e., 'to drive' (animals, etc.). *Nolaist* is a perfective to *laist* in the releasing sense, meaning 'to release downwards, to lower', and by extension, 'to fell' (trees). In this sense, *laist* itself corresponds as an imperfective. *Pielaist* serves as a perfective to *laist* in its allowing meaning, particularly where one is to be allowed at something, or near something.

Laist meaning 'to go fast' is slightly colloquial.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 81-95.

Exercise 168a

Translate into English:

1. *Pēc manām domām tev vajadzētu būt ārstam vai zinātniekam.*
2. *Vai visiem vīriem vajadzēs būt karavīriem?*
3. *Mācītājiem vajadzētu būt godīgiem.*
4. *Kāpēc labiem ražojumiem jābūt tik dārgiem?*
5. *Tavam dēlam vajadzēs būt čaklākam skolniekam.*

Exercise 168b

Translate into Latvian:

1. You shouldn't have had so much money in your pocket.
2. We should have had more patience.
3. Charles ought to be a schoolteacher.
4. Would that wives did not also have to be mothers!
5. Bakers must always have clean hands.
6. All thieves ought to be in gaol.
7. Scientific works need not be dry.
8. Why did Arthur have to be a musician?
9. A hard-working labourer must have good food.
10. Why did father have to be a doctor?

Exercise 168c

Translate the following clauses into Latvian, using the dative absolute:

1. While nobody was looking;
2. without mother's knowledge;
3. while we were travelling in Africa;
4. while John was reading the newspaper;
5. while the children were asleep;
6. unnoticed by the teacher;
7. as we were eating;
8. while the enemy was still firing;
9. while the others were dancing;
10. while the professor was writing on the blackboard.

Exercise 168d

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *izšķiest; llist; pūst; aut; noskūt; uzspļaut; paskriet; padzīt; liet; rīt; māt; uztrīt; cirst; cirpt; pirkst; vilkt; rast.*

Exercise 168e

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 168d.

Exercise 168f

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 168d.

Exercise 168g

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kino zvaigznes dzīve.*

Exercise 168h

What types of irregularities are there in the Mixed Conjugation?

Exercise 168i

Translate into English:

1. Daiļā meitene bikli nolaida acis, kad karaliene piesprauda viņai zelta saktu.
2. Šinī drēgnajā gaisā var ātri apsaldēt rīkli.
3. Brīnums, ka profesors pielaiž šo dumjo meiteni pie pārbaudījuma.
4. Es gan nepielaištu, ka šinī zālē ielaiž ubagus.
5. Šoferis laiž mašīnu tik ātri, cik motors spēj.
6. Dumpīgie strādnieki staigāja pa ielām, dziedādami drūmas dziesmas.
7. Dižajam aktierim uznākot uz skatuves, mēs aplaudējām kā dulli.
8. Daiļā dāma dziedāja dzidrā balsī.
9. Apsverot katru vārdu, policists beidzot atrunāja dumpīgos ļaudis no ~~īa~~ mulķīgā plāna.
10. Tu mani nekad nepierunāsi, ja tu man laidīsi miglu acīs (= *to cloud the issue, befuddle someone*), jo es neesmu tik dumjš, kā tu domā.
11. Nav viegli atrunāt cilvēku, kas grib pārkāpt likumu.
12. Ceturtdien nolaidīs lielo, moderno kuģi ūdenī.
13. Man vajaga lielāku lāpstu, citādi es nevaru izrakt dziļu bedri.
14. Draudzei jābūt devīgai.
15. Ūdenim jābūt dzidram.
16. Mēģinājumos dižajam dirigentam bieži uznāca dusmas.
17. Mums vajaga būt drosmīgiem karavīriem.
18. Kāpēc tu šinī vārdā izlaidi (= *omit*) burtu?
19. Laba izglītība nozīmē ļoti daudz.
20. Nolecot no zirga, es gandrīz pārkodu mēli.
21. Valdība apsvēra, vai nošaut dumpīgos karavīrus.
22. Lācis izlaida dobjū rūcienu.
23. Viesmīlis ir priecīgs par devīgiem viesiem.
24. Tu mani nepierunāsi iet laukā šādā drēgnā vakarā.
25. Viņš mani izsūc kā citronu.
26. Dzestram vējiņam pūšot, mēs nesēdēsīm sutīgajā krogū.
27. Vai jūs apsvērāt spiestuves īpašnieka padomu? – Jā, bet tas **nenozīmē**, ka mēs viņam piekritam.
28. Tas dullais zēns aizsvieda labu pildspalvu.
29. Priekšnieks izraudzīja divus druknus vīrus, kam bija jāierok atkritumi.
30. Uz ielas nedrīkst nosviest papīrus un tukšas sērkokociņu kastītes.
31. Drukmais vīrs, kas staigāja pa ielu ar daijo Baibu, bija viņas brālēns Guntis.
32. Es nepielaidīšu, ka jūs, dumjie zēni, apceļat šo nabaga bārenīti.
33. Viņš grib iespiest savus drūmos dzejoļus. Kā lai es viņu atrunāju?
34. Drēgnā laikā gaisss nav dzidrs.
35. Cirtēji nolaiž kokus.
36. Pēkšņi uznāca dzestrs vējš.

37. Dejojāju kustībām jābūt vēl dzīvākām.
38. Kad dzirnavnieks bija samalis pēdējo maisu kviešu, kalps viņu pierunāja iet krogū.
39. Dzeštrajā ūdenī ir dažādas dzīvas būtnes.
40. Viņa iesprauda ķemmi matos.
41. Kāpēc taurei ir tāda dobja skaņa?

Exercise 168j

Translate into Latvian:

1. Does that mean that we shall have to clear ground tomorrow?
2. When I saw scientists dissecting live animals, I asked myself why the government allows them to be dissected.
3. That old gossip is spreading rumours about this righteous and beautiful girl. – What has she already spread abroad?
4. Clear water does not smell.
5. While the weather is still humid, we shall not drive the cows to the pasture, but as soon as a fresh wind springs up, we shall (drive them).
6. While the husband is working hard, his stupid wife squanders his money. – Has she squandered much? – Yes indeed! Nobody envies that poor fellow.
7. If you want to work as an axe-man, you must have a stout build.
8. The rich farmer's daughters envy the beautiful orphan-girl whom you see there weaving.
9. You must have a deeper voice in order to act the great old king.
10. The rebellious mob pushed the police from the square, and when the police chief called "Don't push!" he was nearly beaten to death.
11. A salesman must be patient even (= *arī*) with silly customers.
12. Do not stroke the slumbering dog: it will bite you! – No, it has never bitten me.
13. Do not wake the miller – let him slumber.
14. Are the fish fresh? – Don't be silly, they are still alive!
15. In determining the border, we have to consider many things.
16. He must indeed be a foolish student, if he was not admitted (*pielaist*) to the examination.
17. The waiters are praising the generous guest.
18. The shy boy lowered his eyes when the eminent conductor shook his hand.
19. If I had not dissuaded him, he would have smeared the whole wall with that thick paint.
20. Outside a fresh wind is blowing, but those men continue playing cards in this gloomy cellar. – Yes, my friend, but you will not persuade them to leave this gloomy place – they think that clear air is poison.

21. When the actors came on to the stage, people began throwing tomatoes and stinking eggs.
22. Oh dear, the child is sticking a pencil into his ear!
23. You are too stout to wear such a coat.
24. It is a good thing that you persuaded them not to go hunting in this damp weather.
25. The king was considering whether to hang all the rebellious sailors.
26. Although he now and then gives money to a beggar, that does not mean that he is a generous person.
27. You will not persuade me to throw that ball around all day.
28. The good harvest is forcing the merchants to lower flour and bread prices.

LESSON 169

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -*st*- TYPE

A large number of verbs belong to the *-st-* type. An element *-st-* occurs in the present, while the imperfect reverts to the infinitive stem. Thus the imperfect can be considered as being of the Unchanged Type.

Two points should be noted in particular:

- (1) the element *-st-* occurs in all persons of the present tense, and hence in all derived forms;
and
- (2) the ending *-i* is required in the second person singular present and imperative of all *-st-* type verbs.

mirt 'to die'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es mirstu</i>	<i>es miru</i>	–
<i>tu mirsti</i>	<i>tu miri</i>	<i>mirsti!</i>
<i>viņš mirst</i>	<i>viņš mira</i>	<i>lai mirst!</i>
<i>mēs mirstam</i>	<i>mēs mirām</i>	<i>mirstim!</i>
<i>jūs mirstat</i>	<i>jūs mirāt</i>	<i>mirstiet!</i>
<i>viņi mirst</i>	<i>viņi mira</i>	<i>lai mirst!</i>

Future: *es miršu, tu mirsi, viņš mirs, etc.*

Conditional: *es mirtu, tu mirtu, viņš mirtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāmirst, man bija jāmirst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *miris, miruši; mirusi, mirušas.*

Present Participles Active: *mirdams, mirstošs, mirstot.*

The great majority of *-st-* type verbs are intransitive.

Vocabulary

<i>(no-)mirt (mirstu, miru)</i>	to die
<i>(no-)birt (birst, bira)</i>	to fall (leaves, tears, etc.)
<i>(no-)salt (salstu, salu)</i>	to get cold
<i>aizsalt (-salstu, -salu)</i>	to freeze (over)
<i>(no-)dilt (dilstu, dilu)</i>	to wear out, wane, decrease
<i>(no-)rimt (rimstu, rimu)</i>	to calm down; to abate
<i>slāpt (slāpstu, slāpu)</i>	to thirst
<i>(no-)tirpt (tirpstu, tirpu)</i>	to become numb
<i>(uz-)pampt (pampstu, pampu)</i>	to swell (up)
<i>(no-)reibt (reibstu, reibu)</i>	to become giddy
<i>iereibt (-reibstu, -reibu)</i>	to get drunk
<i>(ap-)žilbt (žilbstu, žilbu)</i>	to be dazzled
<i>(no-)ģībt (ģībstu, ģību)</i>	to faint
<i>atspirgt (-spirgstu, -spirgu)</i>	to get well, recover, revive
<i>ilgt (ilgstu, ilgu)</i>	to last
<i>ieilgt (-ilgst, -ilga)</i>	to drag on (in time)
<i>slāpes (pl.)</i>	thirst
<i>sāpes (pl.)</i>	pain
<i>garlaicīgs</i>	boring, tedious, dull
<i>runa</i>	speech
<i>dzeramnauda</i>	tip, gratuity

NOTES: *(no-)mirt* no 'to die of'
man salst 'I am cold'
man salst kājas 'my feet are cold'
ārā stipri salst 'it is very cold outside'
man slāpst 'I am thirsty'
man reibst 'I feel giddy'

Man (ap-)žilbst acis no gaismas. 'My eyes are dazzled by the light.'

Noreibt sometimes has the meaning of *iereibt*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 131-140.

Exercise 169a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *noreibt; noģībt; atspirgt; mirt; ielaist; nolaist; iekost; ciest; uzaut; pašūt; izraut; paskriet; aizdzīt; pīt; izsmiet; norīt; jāt; krimst; pirkt; vilkt; atrast; saprast.*

Exercise 169b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 169a.

Exercise 169c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 169a.

Exercise 169d

Which types of verb have an irregular future, and how are irregular futures formed?

Exercise 169e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Zaģlis mājā.*

Exercise 169f

Translate into English:

1. Viesmīlis gandrīz noģība, kad kāds devīgs viesis iedeva viņam ļoti lielu dzeramnaudu.
2. Sāpes uznāk pēkšņi, tad lēnām rimst un, tikko tās norimušas, man salst.
3. Pilsētas galvas garlaicīgā runa ir ieilgusi.
4. Dzestrajā vējīnā mēs atkal atspirgām.
5. Bez mēteļa jūs nosalsit šai drēgnajā laikā.
6. Man noreiba galva un apžilba acis, ieraugot tik daudz dārgakmeņu.
7. Dižais dzejnieks Jānis Rainis nomira tūkstoš deviņsimt divdesmit deviņtā gadā.
8. Tu mani neatrunāsi iet krogū, jo man briesmīgi slāpst. – Es tomēr gribu tevi pierunāt neiet krogū, jo labākais līdzeklis pret slāpēm ir dzidrs ūdens, un to var dabūt visur.

9. Apavi ātri dilst.
10. Dziedātājs uz skatuves jau veselas desmit minūtes dzied: "Es mirstu," bet viņš vēl ir dzīvs!
11. Jurim, daiļo Māru ieraugot, apžilba acis.
12. Rokai pampstot, pirksti notirpa.
13. Luga bija padrūma, bet tas nenozīmē, ka tā bija garlaicīga.
14. Visas upes ir jau aizsalušas.
15. Ja šāds zirneklis iekož rokā, tā tūlīņ uzpampst.
16. Laidiet mūs iekšā, mēs te salstam, un rokas jau nosalušas zilas!
17. Pēc dažām stundām visi bija iereibuši.
18. Labi, ka naktī nebija salnas, citādi pumpuri būtu nosaluši.
19. Visiem kokiem jau birst lapas.
20. Tēvam mirstot, bērni vēl bija mazi.
21. Redzot birstošās lapas, es zīnu, ka rudens ir klāt.
22. Viņai laikam reibst galva – ak, viņa ģībst!
23. Jūs jau bijāt iereibis pēc pirmās glāzes un stāstījāt dumjus jokus. – Tiešām, es nezināju, ka es biju tik dulls!
24. Tas druknais kungs laikam teiks galveno runu. (*teikt runu = to make a speech*)
25. Lopiem slāpst.
26. Nesot smago somu, roka ātri tirpst.
27. Koncerts ilga divas stundas.
28. Garlaicīgajai operai ieilgstot, mēs gandrīz iemigām, un dažus cilvēkus jau dzirdēja krācam.
29. Upe un ezers aizsala, kad lapas vēl nebija nobirušas no kokiem.
30. Mašīnas pircējam jāapsver, cik ātri motora daļas dīls.
31. Viņa bija nogībusi, bet ātri atspirga.
32. Tuksnešī mūs mocīja briesmīgas slāpes.
33. Karstumam rimstot, visa daba atspirgst.
34. Govis mauj aiz slāpēm. (*Cf. aiz prieka, aiz bailēm, etc.*)
35. Vecais laulības gredzens bija stipri nodilis.
36. Tauriņi apžilba no gaismas.
37. Vai es tevi nemācīju bikli nolaist acis, ja viesis tev dod dzeramnaudu?
38. Ja cilvēkam stipri slāpst, viņam uzpampst mēle.

Exercise 169g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Potatoes must be buried, otherwise they freeze.
2. We are dying of thirst.
3. I despise your tip!
4. The dog is getting cold outside; I shall let it in.
5. In which printing-house was this boring book printed?
6. The debt is slowly decreasing.
7. I am terribly thirsty, my throat is completely dry. – You will quickly recover when you drink a glass of beer.
8. When the farm-animals are released from the stable in spring, their eyes are dazzled by the light of day.
9. This boring speech has already been going on for forty-five minutes.
10. When the boots have worn out, I shall throw them away.
11. We teased him about various expressions in his speech.
12. This ship must be launched (*ielaišt ūdenī*) before the harbour freezes over.
13. In great anger the chauffeur threw the tip to the ground.
14. He was dazzled by her beauty.
15. She fainted when the pain subsided.
16. My head became giddy as I was climbing over the fence.
17. We got drunk on (*no*) whisky and vodka.
18. If you bite through this fruit, the seeds fall out.
19. Didn't you get cold, waiting for the train on the open platform?
20. Oh dear, the second runner is fainting!
21. A good runner recovers quickly after a long run.
22. The concert lasted only one hour.
23. The fingers go numb when the hand swells.
24. Although the leg had swollen, the toes did not go numb.
25. In the opinion of the doctor he died four hours ago.
26. The leaves fell on to the foot-path.
27. He got cold while waiting for his girl-friend in front of the theatre.
28. That is a remedy for sharp pains.
29. She pricked her finger with a needle while sewing.
30. Aren't you cold?
31. Anne fastened the new silver brooch to her blouse.
32. Waiter! We are thirsty!
33. His eyes were dazzled when he unearthed a gold plate.
34. This big, heavy stone grinds wheat into flour.

LESSON 170

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE: ALTERNATION
OF E

The alternation pattern of -st- verbs with *e* as root vowel is as follows:

kvēpt 'to become black with smoke'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kvēpstu</i>	<i>es kvēpu</i>	—
<i>tu kvēpsti</i>	<i>tu kvēpi</i>	<i>kvēpst!</i>
<i>viņš kvēpst</i>	<i>viņš kvēpa</i>	<i>lai kvēpst!</i>
<i>mēs kvēpstam</i>	<i>mēs kvēpām</i>	<i>kvēpsim!</i>
<i>jūs kvēpstat</i>	<i>jūs kvēpāt</i>	<i>kvēpstiet!</i>
<i>viņi kvēpst</i>	<i>viņi kvēpa</i>	<i>lai kvēpst!</i>

Future: *es kvēpšu, tu kvēpsi, viņš kvēps*, etc.

Conditional: *es kvēptu, tu kvēptu, viņš kvēptu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jākvēpst, man bija jākvēpst*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *kvēpis, kvēpuši; kvēpusi, kvēpušas*.

Present Participles Active: *kvēpdams, kvēpstošs, kvēpstot*.

Vocabulary

<i>(no-)kvēpt (kvēpstu, kvēpu)</i>	to become black with smoke
<i>(no-)gurt (gurstu, guru)</i>	to tire, grow weak
<i>(pie-)dzimt (dzimstu, dzimu)</i>	to be born
<i>skumt (skumstu, skumu)</i>	to grieve, sorrow
<i>saslimt (-slimstu, -slimu)</i>	to fall sick, become ill
<i>apstulbt (-stulbstu, -stulbu)</i>	to be dazzled, to be stunned
<i>(sa-)skābt (skābstu, skābu)</i>	to turn sour
<i>(sa-)sprāgt (sprāgstu, sprāgu)</i>	to crack, burst (intrans.)
<i>nosprāgt (-sprāgstu, -sprāgu)</i>	to die (animals)
<i>(sa-)rūgt (rūgstu, rūgu)</i>	to ferment, turn sour
<i>trūkt (trūkstu, trūku)</i>	to be lacking, to be in short supply
<i>pietrūkt (-trūkst, -trūka)</i>	to run out (intrans.), to be insufficient
<i>(pār-)trūkt (trūkstu, trūku)</i>	to break, tear apart (intrans.)
<i>sapīkt (-plkstu, -plku)</i>	to get annoyed, morose, peeved
<i>asara</i>	tear

<i>vērtīgs</i>	valuable
<i>aprakstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to describe
<i>ieteikt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to suggest, propose, recommend
<i>izmirt (-mirstu, -miru)</i>	to die out
<i>lampa</i>	lamp

NOTES: *Daudz netrūkst (netrūka), ka...*

Cik tur trūkst (trūka), ka...

These expressions, followed by a verb in the conditional or conditional perfect, correspond to the English 'very nearly':

Daudz netrūka, ka viņš būtu iekritis ūdenī.

Cik tur trūka, ka viņš būtu iekritis ūdenī.

He very nearly fell into the water.

(lit.: Not much was lacking that he would have fallen into the water.)

(*Pie-*)*trūkt* has its subject in the genitive, which often comes after the verb; note too the dative of the person.

Mums pietrūka eļļas.

We lacked oil.

We were short of oil.

We ran out of oil.

Ieteikt requires a dative of the person.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 158–167.

Exercise 170a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *sapīkt; saslimt; skumt; nogurt; atspirgt; pielaist; pārkost; pūst; aut; skūt; atļaut; sasiēt; dzīt; līt; rīt; smiet; paspēt*.

Exercise 170b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 170a.

Exercise 170c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 170a.

Exercise 170d

List the prepositions and postpositions governing (a) the accusative; (b) the genitive; and (c) the dative.

Exercise 170e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vakars operā.*

Exercise 170f

Translate into English:

1. Šīs sāpes ir grūti aprakstīt, ārsta kungs!
2. Skrienot man kājas ātri gurst, un es par to sapīkstu.
3. Lampai trūkst eļļas, tāpēc tā tik stipri kvēpst.
4. Saimnieks skumst par skaisto zirgu, kas nesen nosprāga.
5. Ārā salst, tu saslimsi, staigādama tādās plānās drēbēs. – Nekas, es nenosalšu.
6. Viesim pietrūka naudas, un viņš neiedeva viesmīlim dzeramnaudu.
7. Ja eļļas trūkst, tad lampa kvēpst.
8. Sāpes tiešām rimst no šīm zālēm, kuras jūs man ieteicāt, un arī pirksti vairs netirpst.
9. Kārlis Ozols dzimis Cēsīs tūkstoš astoņsimt četrdesmit septītā gada trīsdesmitajā maijā un miris Rīgā tūkstoš deviņsimt divdesmit astotā gada divdesmit ceturtajā novembrī.
10. Kad Rainis, dižais latviešu dzejnieks, piedzima, nebija ne gāzes, ne elektrības, un, skolniecīgi būdams, viņš lasīja un rakstīja kvēpstošu un smirdošu lampu gaismā.
11. Piens būs drīz skābs, jo šīnī karstumā tas ātri saskābst.
12. Pavasarī ledus upēs sasprāgst.
13. Dažādi skaisti zvēri un putni ir izmiruši, bet kāpēc mušas, žurkas un odi neizmirst?
14. Vētra ilga trīs dienas, bet ceturtdienā tā lēnām norima.
15. Karš ilga gadus četrus.
16. Mēs visi bijām noguruši no viņa garlaicīgās runas.
17. Viņi apžilba un apstulba, it kā būtu sprāgusi bumba.
18. Nav brīnums, ka virve pārtrūka, jo vienā vietā tā bija stipri nodilusī.
19. Viņš laikam ir saslimis ar nopietnu slimību, jo abas rokas uzpampušas un pirksti notirpuši. – Vai viņam reibst galva?
20. Kad Anna noģība, Birutai bira asaras no acīm.

21. Tirgotājam žilba acis, ieraugot vērtīgos dārgakmeņus.
22. Ja kāja nepamps, slimnieks ātri atspirgs.
23. Gumija nedilst tik ātri kā āda, bet es tomēr tev ieteiktu valkāt ādas kurpes.
24. Ja alus sarūgst, tas vairs negaršo.
25. Kāpēc tu sapīksti par viņa jokiem?
26. Kad dārgā bļoda sasprāga karstajā ūdenī, pavāre apstulba un gandrīz noģība.
27. Neskumsti par viņas asarām, draudzīn! Ja sievietei ir dusmas, viņa raud.
28. Mežsargs mums ieteica labu līdzekli pret slāpēm.
29. Šīnī dzejolī dzejnieks apraksta, kā rudenī daba mirst, kā lapas nobirst, kā upes un ezeri aizsalst un kā beidzot sniegs klāj laukus un pļavas.
30. Lopi bija dūmos apstulbuši un noreibuši.
31. Cilvēkam, saslimstot ar šo slimību, gurst rokas un kājas, un viņam briesmīgi slāpst.
32. Es neskumstu par to, ka sieva sapīkst par katru sīkumu.
33. Man trūkst vārdu aprakstīt kara briesmas.
34. Vai piens tanī bļodā ir jau saskābis?
35. Teļš ar divām galvām, kas nesen piedzima kaimiņos, aizvakar nosprāga.
36. Saimniecei bija asaras acīs, stāstot par govi, kas nosprāga viņas pašas vainas dēļ.
37. Pārtrūka saruna un pārtrūka smiekli, kad vīri ieraudzīja kārtībnieku stāvam krogus durvīs.
38. Tās ciltis izmira deviņpadsmitajā gadu simtenī.
39. Daudz netrūka, ka viņš būtu nomiris.
40. Cik tur trūka, ka tilts būtu sabrucis.

Exercise 170g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Although the child was born alive, it died after a few hours.
2. In our youth we lived in a damp, bleak cellar, but we did not grieve about that.
3. On page 184 the writer describes how the rebellious mob considered setting fire to the forest, and how Juris Vītols dissuaded them from such a crime.
4. Why is the lamp going black?
5. Just now a great idea is being born in me.
6. As he was walking in the fresh wind, the old man's throat got cold and he fell sick.
7. As the beer was fermenting, the bottle burst into a thousand pieces.
8. The sailor was stunned, seeing the strong rope break.
9. Vodka must be clear.

10. With tears in her eyes, the beautiful girl tried to persuade her brother not to sell the valuable paintings.
11. Generous people are dying out these days.
12. If pigs fall sick with this horrible disease, they usually die.
13. If she got annoyed about such a joke, it shows that she is stupid.
14. The stout man was stunned when the doctor suggested to him drinking less beer.
15. It wouldn't have taken much for the milk to have gone sour. – Yes, in the heat of summer, everything ferments and goes sour so quickly.
16. The car was short of petrol.
17. If you keep on rowing so hard, your arms will quickly tire.
18. The world champion had not tired during the long run.
19. The government suggested to the wholesale merchants that they lower grain and seed prices.
20. If a person is sorrowful, he easily gets annoyed with people who are too cheerful.
21. The lamp was smoking so badly that we all had tears in our eyes.
22. Here the dramatist describes in what clothes the actors appear on the stage.
23. The beer has not yet fully fermented.
24. These creatures died out before the Ice Age.
25. Oh dear, my shoe-lace has broken.
26. The firemen did not manage to save the valuable furniture.

LESSON 171

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE,
INFINITIVES IN -ST

Some verbs ending in *-st* in the infinitive are of the *-st-* type, but as an *-s-* is already present in the stem, the *-st-* element appears simply as *-t-*.

aizmirst 'to forget'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es aizmirstu</i>	<i>es aizmirsu</i>	–
<i>tu aizmirsti</i>	<i>tu aizmirsi</i>	<i>aizmirsti!</i>
<i>viņš aizmirst</i>	<i>viņš aizmirsa</i>	<i>lai aizmirst!</i>
<i>mēs aizmirstam</i>	<i>mēs aizmirsām</i>	<i>aizmirsīsim!</i>
<i>jūs aizmirstat</i>	<i>jūs aizmirsāt</i>	<i>aizmirstiet!</i>
<i>viņi aizmirst</i>	<i>viņi aizmirsa</i>	<i>lai aizmirst!</i>

Future: *es aizmirsīšu, tu aizmirsīsi, viņš aizmirsīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es aizmirstu, tu aizmirstu, viņš aizmirstu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāaizmirst, man bija jāaizmirst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *aizmirsis, aizmirsuši; aizmirsusi, aizmirsušas.*

Present Participles Active: *aizmirsdams, *aizmirstošs, aizmirstot.*

Remember that all *-st-* verbs have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative.

Vocabulary

<i>aizmirst (aizmirstu, aizmirsu)</i>	to forget
<i>apklust (apklustu, apklusu)</i>	to grow calm, silent
<i>samulst (samulstu, samulsu)</i>	to become confused
<i>(sa-)tumst (tumst, tumsa)</i>	to grow dark
<i>aust (aust, ausa)</i>	to dawn
<i>(iz-)gaist (gaistu, gaisu)</i>	to vanish
<i>izmist (izmistu, izmisu)</i>	to lose heart, despair
<i>(sa-)kaist (kaistu, kaisu)</i>	to glow, burn, grow hot
<i>iekaist (-kaistu, -kaisu)</i>	to become inflamed; to grow fervent
<i>iekaisums</i>	inflammation
<i>(sa-)karst (karstu, karsu)</i>	to grow hot
<i>iekarst (-karstu, -karsu)</i>	to grow fervent
<i>(sa-)plīst (plīstu, plīsu)</i>	to tear, shatter (intrans.)
<i>(no-)grimt (grimstu, grimu)</i>	to sink
<i>iegrimt (-grimstu, -grimu)</i>	to sink in, be absorbed; to plunge in
<i>(uz-)plaukt (plaukstu, plauku)</i>	to blossom forth, flourish, prosper
<i>tvīkt (tvīkstu, tvīku)</i>	to languish, thirst, long for; to glow
<i>pāriet (-ēju, -gāju)</i>	to go over, pass over; to cease
<i>vaigs</i>	cheek
<i>kaite</i>	disease
<i>vairāki (pl. adj.)</i>	several, a number of

NOTES: *redzēt vaigā* 'to see in person, in the flesh'
tvīkt pēc 'to thirst for, long for'; also with gen. Cf.

tvīkt pēc mīlestības to long for love
or: *tvīkt mīlestības*

All the above verbs are intransitive except *aizmirst*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 96–110.

Exercise 171a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *aizmirst; izmist; tvīkt; izlaist; apskaut; pūst; aut; uzšūt; apskaut; skriet; padzīt; pīt; ieliet; apvīt; uzklāt.*

Exercise 171b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 171a.

Exercise 171c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 171a.

Exercise 171d

What are the principal rules for the formation of diminutives? List the main exceptions.

Exercise 171e

Write about 100 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vakars restorānā.*

Exercise 171f

Translate into English:

1. Filmai pārtrūkstot, zāle satumsa.
2. Pūlis samulsa un aplūsa, ieraugot karali.
3. Es nemūžam neaizmirsīšu, kā mācītājs toreiz iekarsa, aprakstot mežoniem laimīgo dzīvi pēc nāves, un kā viņi tvīkstošiem vaigiem un ar asarām acīs sekoja viņa vārdiem.
4. Saslimstot ar šo kaiti, cilvēkam parasti iekaisa auss.
5. Alum rūgstot, pudele sasprāga, un stikla gabaliņi ievainoja saimnieku vaigā un ausī.
6. Kad iekaisums pārgāja, temperatūra krita.
7. Tirdzniecība plaukst un zeļ.
8. Ieraugot slaveno dziedātāju pirmo reizi vaigā, meitenes apstulba, bet tad viņas aplaudēja, kļiedza un trakoja.

9. Sieva sapīkst, ja es aizmirstu viņas dzimšanas vai vārda dienu.
10. Žurkas bēg no grimstoša kuģa.
11. Gaismai austot, migla gaist.
12. Saimnieks izmisa, kad vērtīgā ķēve nosprāga no šīs briesmīgās kaites.
13. Daudz netrūka, ka pudele būtu saplūsusi.
14. Dzejnieks bija iegrimis dziļās domās un samulsa, kad **konduktors**, pārbaudot biļetes, viņam kaut ko prasīja.
15. Ejot pār purvu, es vairākas reizes iegrimu līdz vēderam.
16. Kad gaisma aust, zvaigznes izgaist.
17. Zeme tvīkst pēc lietus.
18. Lampa ir stipri sakarsusi. – Nekas, tā vienmēr karst, ja eļļas **pietrūkst**, bet tomēr neplīst.
19. Tanī laikmetā, kad šeit vēl auga meži, visas lielās ķirzakas jau **sen bija** izmirušas.
20. Motors ātri kaist.
21. Karstumā piens saskāba un alus sarūga.
22. Kalni vēl spīd saules gaismā, bet ielejā jau tumst.
23. Kuģis laikam būs nogrimis.
24. Mēs skumstam par saviem varoņiem, bet viņus neaizmirstam.
25. Es jums ieteikšu labu līdzekli pret rīkles iekaisumu. – **Paldies, bet man** rīkle nekad neiekaist.
26. Kad kuģis sāka grimt, mēs neizmisām.
27. Runādams ar pretinieku, viņš iekaisa vairāk un vairāk.
28. Katrs iekaisums var būt bīstams, tāpēc es tūlīt eju pie ārsta, ja man **iekais** kakls.
29. Kāpēc jūs samulsāt un apklusāt? – Tāpēc, ka es biju nogurusi. **Es pēdēja** laikā ātri gurstu.
30. Šīs zāles palīdz pret vairākām kaitēm.
31. Kad mūsu pirmais dēls piedzima, mēs pārgājām uz lielāku dzīvokli.
32. Šī pilsēta uzplauka pēc pirmā pasaules kara.
33. Tvīkstot pēc vieglas un ērtas dzīves, viņš drīz iegrima **parādos**.
34. Nav brīnums, ka piens neskāba, jo **pietrūka** siltuma.
35. Kad jūs esat dzimis?
36. Pavāre izmisa, kad, ielejot mērci, trauks **saplūsa**.
37. Gaismai austot, migla **palēnām** izgaist.
38. Kad zālē satumsa, ļaudis **aplūsa**.

Exercise 171g

Translate into Latvian:

1. His speech was so boring that several people fell asleep.
2. The skin was inflamed and swollen, and the fingers were beginning to go numb.
3. In battle he became so hot and grew so ardent that he forgot all danger.
4. No wonder the sleeve tore; it was worn out. – Yes, cotton sleeves wear out so quickly!
5. If the inflammation does not cease, the patient will die.
6. As the inflammation subsided (*pāriet*), the pain abated.
7. Sickening for this disease a person becomes thirsty, and his head is often giddy.
8. If the root of a tooth gets inflamed, the cheek swells.
9. We were dazzled and confused to behold prospering fields, where hitherto had been a desert.
10. The scientist had become so absorbed in deep thoughts, that he did not notice the sun rising.
11. The patient is losing heart, for the inflammation has lasted several months already.
12. We sank up to our knees in the snow.
13. If you long for the truth, read this book.
14. As the concert-hall grew dark, we fell silent.
15. The turbine grows hot quickly.
16. If the water freezes, the bottle will shatter.
17. Come inside, children. It is getting dark outside.
18. In the rain the plants recovered and flourished.
19. She fainted from thirst. – I don't believe that one faints from thirst.
20. When Rūdis gets drunk, his round cheeks glow like coals.
21. One could see that she had lost heart, for tears were dropping from her eyes and she did not notice us.
22. People are dying of hunger in India.
23. Come down, you will get cold on deck! – No, I am not cold.
24. What would you do if the ship sank?
25. When the sun rose, my eyes were dazzled by the light.
26. If the journey lasts several hours, your feet will grow numb.
27. The leaves fell from the tree.
28. The storm grew still.
29. She became confused when the high official spoke to her.
30. Where did you cross (*pāriet*) over the border?

LESSON 172

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -*ST*- TYPE:
LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

Verbs of this sub-type behave regularly, except that there is a contrastive **long** vowel in the present tense.

kust 'to thaw', 'melt', 'dissolve'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kūstu</i>	<i>es kusu</i>	–
<i>tu kūsti</i>	<i>tu kusi</i>	<i>kūsti!</i>
<i>viņš kūst</i>	<i>viņš kusa</i>	<i>lai kūst!</i>
<i>mēs kūstam</i>	<i>mēs kusām</i>	<i>kusīsim!</i>
<i>jūs kūstat</i>	<i>jūs kusāt</i>	<i>kūstiet!</i>
<i>viņi kūst</i>	<i>viņi kusa</i>	<i>lai kūst!</i>

Future: *es kusīšu, tu kusīsi, viņš kusīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es kustu, tu kustu, viņš kustu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jākūst, man bija jākūst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *kusis, kusuši; kususi, kusušas.*

Present Participles Active: *kusdams, kūstošs, kūstot.*

Remember that *-st-* type verbs require the ending *-i* in the second person singular of the present and imperative.

The first four verbs in the vocabulary are of this contrastively lengthened type, the remainder being simple *-st-* types as studied in previous lessons.

Vocabulary

izsikt (*izsīkstu, izsīku*)
(iz-)kust (*kūstu, kusu*)
nokust (*-kūst, -kusa*)
(at-)rist (*rīstu, risu*)
(iz-)irt (*irstu, iru*)
sairt (*-irstu, -iru*)
(ap-)svilt (*svilstu, svilu*)
saļimt (*saļimstu, saļimu*)
ietilpt (*ietilpstu, ietilpu*)

to dry up, become exhausted, run low
 to thaw, melt, dissolve
 to thaw, melt
 to become loose, come undone, untied
 to rip open, fall apart, come apart
 to fall apart, disintegrate
 to get scorched, burnt
 to collapse (of animates)
 to fit (in); to have a capacity of, to hold;
 to be included (in)

Exercise 171g

Translate into Latvian:

1. His speech was so boring that several people fell asleep.
2. The skin was inflamed and swollen, and the fingers were beginning to go numb.
3. In battle he became so hot and grew so ardent that he forgot all danger.
4. No wonder the sleeve tore; it was worn out. – Yes, cotton sleeves wear out so quickly!
5. If the inflammation does not cease, the patient will die.
6. As the inflammation subsided (*pāriet*), the pain abated.
7. Sickening for this disease a person becomes thirsty, and his head is often giddy.
8. If the root of a tooth gets inflamed, the cheek swells.
9. We were dazzled and confused to behold prospering fields, where hitherto had been a desert.
10. The scientist had become so absorbed in deep thoughts, that he did not notice the sun rising.
11. The patient is losing heart, for the inflammation has lasted several months already.
12. We sank up to our knees in the snow.
13. If you long for the truth, read this book.
14. As the concert-hall grew dark, we fell silent.
15. The turbine grows hot quickly.
16. If the water freezes, the bottle will shatter.
17. Come inside, children. It is getting dark outside.
18. In the rain the plants recovered and flourished.
19. She fainted from thirst. – I don't believe that one faints from thirst.
20. When Rūdis gets drunk, his round cheeks glow like coals.
21. One could see that she had lost heart, for tears were dropping from her eyes and she did not notice us.
22. People are dying of hunger in India.
23. Come down, you will get cold on deck! – No, I am not cold.
24. What would you do if the ship sank?
25. When the sun rose, my eyes were dazzled by the light.
26. If the journey lasts several hours, your feet will grow numb.
27. The leaves fell from the tree.
28. The storm grew still.
29. She became confused when the high official spoke to her.
30. Where did you cross (*pāriet*) over the border?

LESSON 172

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -*ST*- TYPE:
LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

Verbs of this sub-type behave regularly, except that there is a contrastive long vowel in the present tense.

kust 'to thaw', 'melt', 'dissolve'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kūstu</i>	<i>es kusu</i>	—
<i>tu kūsti</i>	<i>tu kusi</i>	<i>kūsti!</i>
<i>viņš kūst</i>	<i>viņš kusa</i>	<i>lai kūst!</i>
<i>mēs kūstam</i>	<i>mēs kusām</i>	<i>kusīsim!</i>
<i>jūs kūstat</i>	<i>jūs kusāt</i>	<i>kūstiet!</i>
<i>viņi kūst</i>	<i>viņi kusa</i>	<i>lai kūst!</i>

Future: *es kusīšu, tu kusīsi, viņš kusīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es kustu, tu kustu, viņš kustu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jākūst, man bija jākūst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *kusis, kusuši; kususi, kusušas.*

Present Participles Active: *kusdams, kūstošs, kūstot.*

Remember that -*st*- type verbs require the ending -*i* in the second person singular of the present and imperative.

The first four verbs in the vocabulary are of this contrastively lengthened type, the remainder being simple -*st*- types as studied in previous lessons.

Vocabulary

izsikt (*izsīkstu, izsīku*)
(*iz-*)*kust* (*kūstu, kusu*)
nokust (*-kūst, -kusa*)
(*at-*)*rist* (*rīstu, risu*)
(*iz-*)*irt* (*irstu, iru*)
sairt (*-irstu, -iru*)
(*ap-*)*svilt* (*svilstu, svilu*)
saļimt (*saļimstu, saļimu*)
ietilpt (*ietilpstu, ietilpu*)

to dry up, become exhausted, run low
to thaw, melt, dissolve
to thaw, melt
to become loose, come undone, untied
to rip open, fall apart, come apart
to fall apart, disintegrate
to get scorched, burnt
to collapse (of animates)
to fit (in); to have a capacity of, to hold;
to be included (in)

(ap-)skurbt (<i>skurbstu, skurbu</i>)	to become dizzy, intoxicated
(sa-)lġgt (<i>lġgtu, lġgu</i>)	to hire, engage, to sign on (trans. or intrans.)
alkt (<i>alkstu, alku</i>)	to long, thirst (for)
(uz-)tūkt (<i>tūktu, tūku</i>)	to swell
(no-)sarkt (<i>sarkstu, sarku</i>)	to redden; to blush
(sa-)stingt (<i>stingstu, stingu</i>)	to go numb, stiffen
atslābt (<i>atslābstu, atslābu</i>)	to slacken, to flag
atzinība	recognition
draudzība	friendship
cerība	hope
priekšmets	thing, object; (gram.) subject; subject (for study, etc.)

NOTES: The verb *izsikt* also appears with the present *siku, sic, sīk*, etc., in the Unchanged Type with contrastive present lengthening. A further alternative recommended by some is *sīkt (sīkstu, sīku)*, i.e., in the simple *-st-* type.

Ietilpt may be found with present *ietelpu, ietelp, ietelp*, etc., i.e., in the simple *i-e-i* type. Note the construction with *ietilpt*:

This pot holds one pound of honey. *Šinī podā ietilpst mārciņa medus.*

alkt pēc 'to long for, thirst for'; also with gen. Cf. *alkt pēc saules* or *alkt saules* 'to long for the sun'

Cerība can be construed with an infinitive, and then corresponds to the English 'hope of doing', etc.

lġgt mieru 'to contract peace, sign peace'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 51-65.

Exercise 172a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *izsikt; skurbt; nosarkt; aizmirst; apklust; noģībt; aizsviest; nojaust; uzaut; sašūt; šaut; piesliet; dzīt; plīt; izsmiet; pārmīt; iesēt.*

Exercise 172b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 172a.

Exercise 172c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 172a.

Exercise 172d

Under what circumstances are numerals such as *desmit* and adverbs of quantity such as *daudz* (a) followed by the genitive; (b) not followed by the genitive?

Exercise 172e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vakars ciemos.*

Exercise 172f

Translate into English:

1. Dzels ir jau sarkana, bet tā nav vēl tik stipri sakarsusi, lai kustu.
2. Ja laulība irst, tad izirst arī ģimenes dzīve.
3. Šie skaitļi neietilpst mūsu aplēsumā.
4. Students alkst un tvīkst pēc atzinības.
5. Manas kurpju saites ir atrisušas.
6. Biklā ganu meitene samulsa un nosarka, kad dižais, jaunais mežsargs ar viņu runāja.
7. Kamēr abas valstis līga mieru, lielgabali frontē apklusā.
8. Man viens cimds ir saplīsis, un otrs jau rīst.
9. Slimniekam karsa vaigi, bet iekaisums drīz pārgāja.
10. Kā lai tirdzniecība zeļ un plaukst, ja naudas līdzekļi izsīkst?
11. Man svilst ausis, dzirdot tavus muļķīgos jokus.
12. Kad skrējējs saļima apmēram desmit metrus no mērķa, mēs visi sastingām.
13. Dziedātāja izmisa, kad koncerta beigās viņas balss atslāba.
14. Kuģim grimstot, mūsu cerības izira.
15. Viņu draudzība atslāba un beidzot pilnīgi izira.
16. Viņš nesapēma atzinību par lielajām pūlēm.
17. Saulei lecot, sniegs lēnām sāka kust.
18. Mēs neatslēpsim cīņā pēc tautas atzinības.
19. Sunim bija apsvilusi spalva vairākās vietās.
20. Tikko sviests būs izkusis, tu varēsi pielikt mīklai cukuru, miltus un olas.
21. Zemei sakarstot, akas un avoti izsika.
22. Vai visi šie priekšmeti ietilps tanī mazajā kastē?
23. Man šķiet, ka dāmas jau skurbst no vīna.
24. Kad vīri apskurbuļi, viņi iekaist.

25. Šoferis bija apskurbis no benzīna un saļima.
26. Garās, mirdzošās lāstekas pie jumta ātri izkūst.
27. Man stingst rokas, un pirksti uztūkst no aukstuma.
28. Ja šī virve atrīst vai pārtrūkst, tad viss tīkls sairst.
29. Kad Ludis bija iegrimis parādos, viņš salīga par inženieri uz kāda kuģa.
30. Sniegs bija nokūsis, un visa daba alka pēc saules.
31. Man ir iekaisusi rīkle.
32. Man tagad jāsvilst saulē, jo es aizmirsu paņemt līdzi saulesargu.
33. Mākslīgie mēsli izkūst lietū.
34. Manas sievas rokās nauda izkūst kā sniegs pavasarī.
35. Mēs nealkstam pēc jūsu draudzības, tikai pēc jūsu atzinības.
36. Kurš vārds ir šī teikuma priekšmets?
37. Nu vairs nav ne mazākās cerības, ka sniegs nokūsis līdz Lieldienām.
38. Debesīm tumstot, istabā tā satumsa, ka bez lampas vairs nekā nevarēja redzēt.
39. Viņš aiz dusmām iekaisa un nosarka.
40. Žagaru grozs izirst no lielā svara.
41. Vai visas ogles ietilps tanī maisā?
42. Sniega vīrs (= *snowman*) izkūstot saplaka.
43. Saimniekam vairs nav cerību salīgt kārtīgu kalpu.
44. Mūsu draudzība uzplauka skolā pirmajā gadā.
45. Vasarā ūdens akās izsīkst.
46. Daudz staigājot, man tūkst kāja.

Exercise 172g

Translate into Latvian:

1. My wife no longer gets annoyed when I am inebriated; she is already accustomed to it.
2. As the oil dried up, the lamp began to smoke.
3. The sheep's stomach swelled up, and after two days, the sheep died.
4. If the rope broke, the whole net would come undone.
5. Do you always blush if a lovely lady talks to you?
6. A real poet does not long for recognition.
7. Scientists think that those creatures probably died out when the water in this region dried up.
8. The professor suggested to him that he study a different subject.
9. My cheeks are burning and swelling.
10. If you fall ill with this disease, your arms and legs tire and flag.
11. Their marriage fell apart (*sairt*) when the child was born.
12. He was born in that part of Germany which is now included in Poland.
13. The farmer hired two farm-labourers, but he is still one man short.

14. Our friendship has fallen apart; tears are of no avail (*nekā nelīdz*).
15. Do not despair; there is still hope of repairing the valuable sewing-machine.
16. The patient's foot grew numb.
17. Here the poet describes how the snow melts in spring.
18. After he collapsed in the desert, he lacked the strength to continue his journey (*ceļš*).
19. The ice cubes (*gabals*) are melting in the glass, and soon they will have melted completely.
20. Our hopes were dashed (*sairt*) when our best runner collapsed.
21. Let us make peace!
22. Our friendship must not fall apart.
23. In my youth I longed for recognition.
24. If your shoe-lace comes loose, you will stumble.
25. How many tons of wheat will this new ship hold?
26. The arms tire and flag.
27. Which word is the subject of this sentence?
28. The snow is thawing and the icicles are melting.
29. The beer has not yet fully fermented.
30. A bomb went off in our vicinity.
31. The ice on the lake broke and slowly melted.
32. The cabbages are already turning sour.

LESSON 173

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE: IRREGULAR LONG VOWEL IN THE PRESENT

The conjugation is as for *kust*, *izsīkt* or *rist*, with the exception that the infinitive and imperfect *-i-* is lengthened to *-ie-* in the present. Cf. *lieku*, *liku*, *likt* in the Unchanged Type.

dzist 'to go out', 'be extinguished'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es dziestu</i>	<i>es dzisu</i>	—
<i>tu dziesti</i>	<i>tu dzisi</i>	<i>dziesti!</i>
<i>viņš dziest</i>	<i>viņš dzisa</i>	<i>lai dziest!</i>
<i>mēs dziestam</i>	<i>mēs dzisām</i>	<i>dzisīsim!</i>
<i>jūs dziestat</i>	<i>jūs dzisāt</i>	<i>dziestiet!</i>
<i>viņi dziest</i>	<i>viņi dzisa</i>	<i>lai dziest!</i>

Future: *es dzisīšu, tu dzisīsi, viņš dzisīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es dzistu, tu dzistu, viņš dzistu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jādziest, man bija jādziest*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *dzisis, dzisuši; dzisusi, dzisušas*.

Present Participles Active: *dzisdams, dziestošs, dziestot*.

Vocabulary

<i>(iz-)dzist (dziestu, dzisu)</i>	to go out, be extinguished (fire, etc.)
<i>nodzist (-dziestu, -dzisu)</i>	to go out, to be extinguished
<i>atdzist (-dziestu, -dzisu)</i>	to cool down (intrans. of water, etc.)
<i>(ie-)nirt (nirstu, niru)</i>	to dive, plunge (in)
<i>iznirt (-nirstu, -niru)</i>	to emerge
<i>(sa-)silt (silstu, silu)</i>	to grow warm
<i>iesilt (-silstu, -silu)</i>	to grow warm, to warm up (intrans.); to become inebriated
<i>slīgt (slīgstu, slīgu)</i>	to sink
<i>(no-)slikt (sliktu, sliku)</i>	to drown (intrans.)
<i>(uz-)dīgt (dīgstu, dīgu)</i>	to germinate, sprout
<i>(no-)vārgt (vārgstu, vārgu)</i>	to be in bad health, to pine away, waste away
<i>saīgt (saīgstu, saīgu)</i>	to become sulky, grumpy
<i>sirgt (sirgstu, sirgu)</i>	to be indisposed, to ail
<i>salkt (salkstu, salku)</i>	to hunger (for), long (for)
<i>(sa-)līkt (līkstu, līku)</i>	to bend (intrans.)
<i>stars</i>	ray
<i>līks</i>	bent, crooked
<i>līkums</i>	bend, curve
<i>siltumnīca</i>	hot-house, green-house
<i>peldētājs</i>	swimmer

NOTES: The first three verbs of the vocabulary have the irregular present lengthening: the others are of the simple *-st-* type.

salkt pēc 'to long for, hunger for'; also with gen. Cf. *salkt pēc atzinības* or *salkt atzinības* 'to long for recognition'.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 161–170.

Exercise 173a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *dzist; izsikt; saļimt; izmist; saplīkt; laist; iekost; pūst; uzaut; noskūt; piekraut; skriet; nodzīt; trīt; liet; vīt; atstāt*.

Exercise 173b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 173a.

Exercise 173c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 173a.

Exercise 173d

What general rules govern the distribution of *ę* and *ę̄*?

Exercise 173e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kāpēc es gribu runāt (vai rakstīt, vai lasīt) latviski*.

Exercise 173f

Translate into English:

1. Dzērāji lēnām iesilst un apskurbst, un dažiem jau sarkst sejas.
2. Nirstot aukstajā ūdenī, peldētājs sastinga un gandrīz noslīka.
3. Tikko sniegs bija nokusis, zālīte jau dīga.
4. Februārī šur un tur sniegs sāk kust, un zeme jau drusku silst.
5. Dzērājs bija saļimis, un galva viņam slīga lejuļ.
6. Cik ilgi jūs sirgstat ar šo kaiti? – Es sirgstu jau vairākus gadus; sākumā man tikai tūka pirksti, bet tagad man arī kājas ir uztūkušas, mugura palikusi līka, un man jāguļ uz gultas.
7. Jaunais kārtlbnieks salkst atzinības un sava priekšnieka draudzības.
8. Koki līkst vētrā.
9. Smalkās pilsētas dāmiņas laukos vienmēr met lielu līkumu (lit. *throw a large curve, i.e., make a sizeable detour*) ap smirdošām mēslu kaudzēm.

LESSON 174

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE: SOME ANOMALOUS SPELLINGS

The verbs *lūzt* and *birzt* behave exactly like -st- type verbs, except that they substitute -z- for -s- everywhere but in the present tense and forms derived from the present. Hence the -z- of the infinitive.

lūzt 'to break'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es lūstu</i>	<i>es lūzu</i>	—
<i>tu lūsti</i>	<i>tu lūzi</i>	<i>lūsti!</i>
<i>viņš lūst</i>	<i>viņš lūza</i>	<i>lai lūst!</i>
<i>mēs lūstam</i>	<i>mēs lūzām</i>	<i>lūzīsim!</i>
<i>jūs lūstat</i>	<i>jūs lūzāt</i>	<i>lūstiet!</i>
<i>viņi lūst</i>	<i>viņi lūza</i>	<i>lai lūst!</i>

Future: *es lūzišu, tu lūzīsi, viņš lūzīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es lūztu, tu lūztu, viņš lūztu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jālūst, man bija jālūst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *lūzis, lūzuši; lūzusi, lūzušas.*

Present Participles Active: *lūzdams, lūstošs, lūstot.*

birzt 'to crumble'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es birstu</i>	<i>es birzu</i>	—
<i>tu birsti</i>	<i>tu birzi</i>	<i>birsti!</i>
<i>viņš birst</i>	<i>viņš birza</i>	<i>lai birst!</i>
<i>mēs birstam</i>	<i>mēs birzām</i>	<i>birzīsim!</i>
<i>jūs birstat</i>	<i>jūs birzāt</i>	<i>birstiet!</i>
<i>viņi birst</i>	<i>viņi birza</i>	<i>lai birst!</i>

Future: *es birzišu, tu birzīsi, viņš birzīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es birztu, tu birztu, viņš birztu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jābirst, man bija jābirst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *birzis, birzuši; birzusi, birzušas.*

Present Participles Active: *birzdams, birstošs, birstot.*

There is one other verb, *milzt*, which has the anomalous spellings of *lūzt* and *birzt*. We shall meet this verb later.

Vocabulary

<i>(sa-)lūzt (lūstu, lūzu)</i>	to break, fall to pieces
<i>nolūzt (-lūstu, -lūzu)</i>	to break off
<i>(sa-)birzt (birstu, birzu)</i>	to crumble, to crumble to pieces
<i>(sa-)mirkt (mirkstu, mirku)</i>	to be soaked
<i>(no-)nīkt (nīkstu, nīku)</i>	to pine away; to hang around waiting (in uncomfortable circumstances); to vegetate
<i>iznīkt (-nīkstu, -nīku)</i>	to die off (plants); to perish
<i>nīkulis</i>	weakling
<i>nieks</i>	trifle, trivial matter
<i>nieka (invar. adj.)</i>	trivial
<i>niecīgs</i>	trivial, unimportant

NOTES: *Nolūzt* is conjugated like *lūzt* and *birzt*. The other verbs are of the simple -st- type.

Lūzt, birzt and their compounds are intransitive.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–150.

Exercise 174a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *lūzt; birzt; dzist; izsīkt; aizmirst; nogurt; kost; aut; ciest; šūt; raut; skriet; dzīt; tīt; izsmiet; rīt; rāt.*

Exercise 174b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 174a.

Exercise 174c

Give the participial forms in -dams, -ot, and where appropriate -ošs, of the verbs listed in Ex. 174a.

Exercise 174d

Take 20 countries of your own choice, and give for each the corresponding language, national adjective and name of inhabitant.

Exercise 174e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Ja man būtu miljons dolaru.*

Exercise 174f

Translate into English:

1. Vai tu vari saprast, ka tādu niecīgu kukaiņu dēļ skaistais, dižais ozols iznīka?
2. Dārznieks ir saīdzis par to, ka stādi, kuri tik ātri uzdīga, tagad nīkst viņa siltumnīcā.
3. Zari gan līkst, bet tomēr nelūst.
4. Ja smagais zars būtu nolūzis, tas būtu nositis ganu zēnu.
5. Puķes ziedēja kādu laiciņu, bet beidzot iznīka.
6. Jaunībā Rūdis bija īsts nīkulis, bet tagad viņš ir drukns un spēcīgs vīrs.
7. Tas ir niecīgs dārgakmens, bet mirdz kā saules stars.
8. Mēs bijām novārguši un nonīkuši, gaidot tevi aiz ceļa līkuma tik ilgu laiku.
9. Īsts dzērājs alkst tikai pēc šnabja.
10. Nabaga bērni nīrst pēc katra nieka centa, kuru mēs iemetam ūdenī.
11. Ūdens silst lēnām un atdziest lēnām.
12. Zem šāda svara ogles sabirst putekļos.
13. Peldētājam, ienirstot ūdenī, samirka mati.
14. Ko lai es iesāku ar šo līko naglu?
15. Tu samirksi, staigādama bez lietussarga. – Nerunā niekus, šodien lietus nebūs!
16. Kurpnieks ir stipri salīcis, garus gadus labodams kurpes.
17. Šis nīkulis skrien pie ārsta katra nieka dēļ. – Jā, arī sirgstošs nīkulis grib dzīvot.
18. Kūka sabirza gabalos.
19. Kad zeme sasilst, zāle dīgst.
20. Motors iesilst.
21. Siena vezums slīgst uz vienu pusi.
22. Kā viņš varēja noslīkt šai nieka dīķīti?
23. Ķirzakām viegli nolūst aste.
24. Plūdos slīkst cilvēki un lopī.
25. Noskaidrosim, kāpēc virtuvē izdzisa gaisma!
26. Ja stādīpiem nolūst galotnes, tie iznīkst.
27. Kad maize paliek sausa, tā birst.
28. No šāda niecīga svara rati nesalūzīs.
29. Cik ilgi tu jau nīksti te uz aukstās, netīrās platformas?

30. Ja Atis būtu pagrūdis lodi nieka centimetru tālāk, viņš tagad būtu pasaules meistars.
31. Man līkst mugura, nesot smagos maisus, bet Ludim tas ir tikai nieks.
32. Jūrnieki stāsta par briesmīgām būtnēm, kas iznīrst no okeana dziļumiem.
33. Visā zālē pēkšņi nodzisa ugunis.
34. Lini mīrkst dīķī.

Exercise 174g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Whatever happens, our friendship will never break up.
2. My wife gets annoyed about every trifle.
3. This trifling subject is not included in the examination.
4. Why did the farmer engage this weakling? – He probably engaged **the best** man he could find.
5. When the water in the pond dried up, the fish died.
6. Why don't swans', geese's and ducks' feathers get soaked?
7. That weakling will collapse when he gets drunk. – No, he **does not get** drunk on a trifling bottle of beer.
8. Pining away in prison, the robber longed for his mountains.
9. How long have you been waiting for the bus? – Three hours. – **Then you** are indeed foolish, for there are no buses today.
10. My ears burn when you talk such nonsense.
11. When the horse collapsed, all hope was lost (*izirt*).
12. As soon as Frīdis received recognition from his teacher, he **slackened in** his work.
13. The icicles are breaking off and melting away.
14. The snow is thawing, but it has not yet melted in the valley.
15. When the tree died, all the leaves fell off.
16. The net is working loose and coming apart.
17. If this insignificant insect bit your hand, your fingers would swell and grow numb.
18. The grass had been scorched.
19. My beautiful dream is falling apart.
20. She does not blush over such trifling matters.
21. Your cheek is swelling up.

LESSON 175

ALTERNATIVE FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE
OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

We have seen that normally the comparative degree of adjectives is formed with the suffix *-āks*, and that of adverbs with *-āk*.

The comparative is occasionally found, however, in an analytical form, but this is rare outside of folk songs. *Vēl jo* is used with the forms of the positive degree. The *vēl jo* forms often correspond to the English 'even' plus comparative.

<i>balts</i>	white	<i>vēl jo balts</i>	whiter, even whiter
<i>liels</i>	large	<i>vēl jo liels</i>	larger, even larger
<i>reti</i>	rarely	<i>vēl jo reti</i>	more rarely, even more rarely
<i>skaisti</i>	beautifully	<i>vēl jo skaisti</i>	more beautifully, even more beautifully

English structures of the type 'the more . . . the more' are translated into Latvian using *jo* with the comparative form: note that in this construction the comparative form always has indefinite endings.

The higher the position, the greater the salary.

Jo augstāks amats, jo lielāka alga.

The bigger the better.

Jo lielāks, jo labāks.

The more one works, the more one earns.

Jo vairāk strādā, jo vairāk pelna.

The less you smoke, the healthier you will be.

Jo mazāk smēķēsi, jo veselāks būsi.

Note too expressions of the type:

<i>balts jo balts</i>	ever so white
<i>skaisti jo skaisti</i>	ever so beautifully

Vocabulary

<i>sērdienis, -e</i>	orphan
<i>gards</i>	tasty
<i>gauss</i>	slow, tardy
<i>glēzns</i>	delicate, fragile

<i>glums</i>	slippery, slimy
<i>glēvs</i>	cowardly, faint-hearted
<i>grēzns</i>	luxuriant, magnificent, decorative
<i>grods</i>	tightly twisted
<i>gurdeņs</i>	weary, tired
<i>īgns</i>	morose, peevish, surly, grumpy
<i>kāts</i>	handle; stalk
<i>klaips</i>	loaf
<i>kukulis</i>	loaf; bribe
<i>pallģs</i>	assistant
<i>mēldija</i> (or <i>mēlodija</i>)	melody
<i>zutis</i>	eel
<i>piekukuļot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to bribe
<i>piešķirt</i> (- <i>šķiru</i> , - <i>šķiru</i>)	to hand out, to award
<i>virsnieks</i>	officer (mil.)
<i>skops</i>	mean, stingy

NOTES: *pallģā!* 'help!'

saukt pallģā 'to call for help'

Piešķirt takes the dative of the person.

Melodija has foreign monophthongal *o*.

Glezns and *grods* are rare in everyday speech.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 151-160.

Exercise 175a

Translate into Latvian:

1. The more she sang, the louder we applauded.
2. The more he said, the less we believed him.
3. The older you are, the weaker you become.
4. The more you work, the more you earn.
5. The less I smoke, the more I eat.

Exercise 175b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *samirkt; lenirt; dzist; aizmirst; kost; ciest; aut; skūt; spļaut; skriet; nodzīt; pīt; izsmiet; pārmit; atstāt.*

Exercise 175c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 175b.

Exercise 175d

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 175b.

Exercise 175e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kafejnīcā*.

Exercise 175f

Translate into English:

- Balti ziedi ābelei,
Vēl jo balti ieviņai;
Balta bija mātes meita,
Vēl jo balta sērdienīte.
(T. dz.)
- Bērnu, kam nav vecāku, sauc par bārenīti jeb sērdienīti.
- Vai tu domā, ka mēs šo ierēdni viegli piekukuļosim? – Jā, bet viņa glumais palīgs arī jāpiekukuļo.
- Virsnieki neņem kukuļus.
- Sausa maize birst.
- Tu gan esi īsts nīkulis, ja tev kājas paliek gurdēnas, ejot tikai šādu niecīgu gabalu.
- Dārznieks palika īgns un aiztrieca šo glumo tirgotāju ar grābekļa kātu.
- Kādus līdzekļus valdība piešķir universitātēm?
- Jo biežāk es dzirdu šo nieka dziesmiņu, jo labāk man patīk meldija.
- Jo ilgāk es tur nīku, jo īgnāks paliku.
- Jo vairāk tu pieliksi sviesta, jo gardāka būs mērce.
- Cīrvja kāts salūza pēc pirmā cirtiena.
- Maizes klaips samirka ūdenī.
- Saimniece vērpa grodu dziju.
- Tu esi tik gauss kā gliemezis. – Tu gan esi pēdējais, kas to var sacīt, jo tu pats esi vēl jo gauss.
- Valdība piešķīrusi dižajam virsniekam zelta zobenu.

- Kur jūs noplūcāt šos glezno ziedus?
- Tagad sērdienīte dzīvo greznajā karaļa pilī.
- Es esmu gaužām gurdens.
- Tauriņiem ir glezni spārni.
- Šis cilvēks ir glums kā zutis, un viņš zina likumu kā savus piecus pirkstus.
- Šinī gada laikā zuši ir sevišķi gardi.
- Šovasar visas mūsu greznās rozes iznīka no lielā karstuma.
- Mans palīgs salabos jūsu izkapti un pieliks tai jaunu kātu.
- Ja tu man vēlreiz stāstīsi to veco joku par skopo skotu virsnieku, es palikšu īgns.
- Viņš nav par lepnu, bet par glēvu, lai ņemtu kukuļus.
- Katrs klaips sver vienu kilogramu.
- Viņa ir par jaunu, lai valkātu tik greznas drēbes.
- Nav brīnums, ka cilvēks paliek gurdens, ja viņš nonīkst visu dienu vilcienā.
- Vai pietiks ar vienu maizes kukuli?
- Palīga gausās kustības krīt meistaram uz nerviem.
- Par ko viņai piešķīra šo naudu?
- Viņai ir glezna sejas āda.
- Kādā meldijā (= *to what tune*) dzied šo dziesmu? – Šai dziesmai ir pašai sava meldija.
- Piekukuļot tik augstu ierēdni nav nieks. (Notice how the infinitive **can** occasionally be used as subject.)
- Ja sērdienītis būtu bijis glēvs, kā saimnieks saka, viņš nebūtu pasargājis saimnieka aitas pret nikno vilku.
- Ja sieviete mūk no peles, tas vēl nenozīmē, ka viņa ir glēva.
- Tas bija gards ēdiens, bet šis ir vēl jo gards.
- Jo vairāk viņš nopelna, jo skopāks viņš paliek.
- Mēs neķeram zušus ar tīkliem vai makšķerēm, mēs tos duram.

Exercise 175g

Translate into Latvian:

- He is too cowardly to dive into the river.
- At present there are some very decorative plants in the hot-house.
- The weary drunkard's head is sinking on to his chest.
- The more inebriated the officers become, the louder they sing, and in the end each one sings his own tune.
- How deep can you dive?
- The light went out just now: that was our signal.
- The grumpier the boss gets, the more slowly his assistants work. – I cannot blame them, for that mean old fool gets grumpy about every trifle.

8. I shall shave while the water in the tub is cooling.
9. What men did he bribe, that such a position was offered to him?
10. What a delicate flower!
11. A man held out a rake-handle to the drowning swimmer as he came up (= *iznirt*).
12. Don't pester father, children, he is weary and worn out.
13. They brought books to their ailing friend.
14. Eels are so slippery that one cannot take hold of them: now you know what the expression 'He is as slippery as an eel' means.
15. The lights are going out again: in a moment we shall see the main film.
16. Four officers and twenty-one sailors were drowned when the ship sank.
17. In the Middle Ages kings awarded land to the church.
18. He is mean and cowardly and he kow-tows (*viņam līkst mugura*) in front of men in high office. – That is good; then he will take a bribe.
19. That is a strange melody which the orphan-boy is playing on his shepherd's pipe.
20. Ludis killed the snake with a scythe handle.
21. The engine-driver stopped the train around (= *aiz*) the second bend.
22. How many loaves fit into the oven?
23. This fierce dog cannot be bribed with the tastiest bone.
24. The richer the husband, the more luxurious clothes the wife can wear.
25. The more slowly the plants germinate, the grumpier the gardener becomes.
26. Butterflies' wings are very delicate.
27. The older the man, the more bent his back.
28. My assistant will fix that matter.
29. The earlier we sow, the sooner we shall have vegetables.

LESSON 176

PREPOSITIONS AND NOUNS COGNATE WITH POSTPOSITIONS
AND ADVERBS

Some postpositions and adverbs are related to prepositions, cf.:

<i>priekšā</i> (postposition with gen.)	<i>priekš</i> (prep. + gen.)
<i>apakšā</i> (adverb)	<i>apakš</i> (prep. + gen.)
<i>starpā</i> (postposition with gen.)	<i>starp</i> (prep. + acc.)
<i>viršū</i> (adverb)	<i>virš</i> (prep. + gen.)
<i>iekšā</i> (adverb)	<i>iekš</i> (prep. + gen.)

Of these, *starp* and *virš* are the only two we have already studied, and they are the only two whose use is allowed by purists. *Priekš* will, however, be quite commonly found. *Apakš* will be found less commonly, and *iekš* should be avoided as an archaism.

In addition to the possibility of preposition formation, there is also the possibility of forming nouns, which are used mainly after prepositions (cf. adverbial nouns of place):

<i>iekšā</i>	the inside	<i>uz iekšu</i>	inwards	<i>no iekšas</i>	from within
<i>priekšā</i>	the front	<i>uz priekšu</i>	forwards	<i>no priekšas</i>	from in front
<i>augšā</i>	the top	<i>uz augšu</i>	upwards	<i>no augšas</i>	from above
<i>apakšā</i>	the bottom	<i>uz apakšu</i>	downwards	<i>no apakšas</i>	from below

Note too some formations with *-pus*:

iekšpus; lejpūs; augšpus; ārpus; apakšpus.

These words in *-pus* are all prepositions governing the genitive.

Vocabulary

<i>priekš</i> (prep. + gen.)	for
<i>apakš</i> (prep. + gen.)	below, under
<i>iekš</i> (prep. + gen.)	in, inside
<i>iekšpus</i> (prep. + gen.)	inside, on the inside of
<i>lejpūs</i> (prep. + gen.)	underneath, below, downstream from
<i>augšpus</i> (prep. + gen.)	above, upstream from
<i>apakšpus</i> (prep. + gen.)	below, beneath, downstream from
<i>ārpus</i> (prep. + gen.)	outside
<i>kārta</i>	order, genus, class; layer; (gram.) gender; turn
<i>ordēnis</i>	medal; order (religious, etc.)
<i>muižnieks</i>	nobleman
<i>muiža</i>	estate
<i>vecēvs</i>	grandfather
<i>vecāmāte</i>	grandmother
<i>vecmāte</i>	midwife
<i>vecmodlgs</i>	old-fashioned
<i>vecpūsis</i>	(confirmed) bachelor
<i>vecums</i>	age
<i>mazdēls</i>	grandson
<i>mazmēlta</i>	granddaughter

NOTES: *priekš kā* 'why'; 'on whose behalf'
pēc kārtas 'in turn'
ārpus kārtas 'out of turn'
manā vecumā 'at my age'

Both elements of the word *vecāmāte* are declined: acc. *vecomāti*, gen. *vecāmātes*, dat. *vecaimātei*, loc. *vecāmātē*.

Apakšpus is somewhat archaic.

Ordenis has foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 164–173.

Exercise 176a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *mirkt*; *iznirt*; *apklust*; *nospraust*; *pūst*; *uzaut*; *piešūt*; *uzkraut*; *sasiet*; *nodzīt*; *ietīt*; *ieliet*; *rīt*; *spēt*.

Exercise 176b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 176a.

Exercise 176c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 176a.

Exercise 176d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vīns, sievietes un dziesmas*.

Exercise 176e

Translate into English:

1. Cielaviņa, gudra sieva,
 Gudri bērņus audzināja:
 Apakš tilta, virs ūdens,
 Lai ganiņi nedabū.

(T. dz.)

(For *nedabū*, read *nedabūtu*.)

2. Vectēvs un vecāmāte vēl mēdza teikt: "iekš mucas ir alus," "ko tu dari iekš virtuves?" vai "es meklēju āmuru iekš šīs kastes un apakš skapja," bet mēs tagad teiktu: "mucā ir alus," "ko tu dari virtuvē?" un "es meklēju āmuru šīnī kastē un zem skapja."
3. Pēc kaujas drosmīgajam virsniekam piešķīra augstu ordeni.
4. Mana vecāmāte strādāja ilgus gadus par vecmāti.
5. Agrāk virsnieki bija tikai muižnieku kārtas.
6. Kad mūsu vectēvs vēl bija vecpūsis, viņš strādāja par kalēju kādā muižā pie Gaujas, lejpus Cēsīm.
7. Mūsu ģimenei bija muiža pie Gaujas lejpus Cēsīm.
8. Kaķis ir apakš krēsla.
9. Viņas vecumā es gan nevalkātu tik greznas drēbes.
10. Upē augšpus dzirnavām nav tik daudz zušu kā lejpus dzirnavām.
11. Lūdzu, runājiet pēc kārtas, bērni! Ārpus kārtas klasē nedrīkst runāt.
12. Vecumā cilvēks paliek gurdens, un viņa kustības gausas.
13. Priekš kā tev vajaga tik grodu dziju?
14. Šīs sīkās puķītes aug iekšpus un ārpus aploka.
15. Mūsu mazmeita šo melodiju zina tīri (= *diezgan*) labi, bet mazdēlam tā vēl jūk.
16. Vai tu domā, ka šis glumais vecpūsis ņem kukuļus? – Jā, mēs viņu viegli piekukuļosim.
17. Vai vecmāte dzīvo augšpus vai lejpus tilta?
18. Garas saknes atrod ūdeni dziļi apakš zemes.
19. Šo baznīcu ordeņa brāļi uzbūvēja trīspadsmitajā gadu simtenī.
20. Apakš smilšu kārtas ir bieza mālu kārta.
21. Vecāmāte māca mazmeitai cept gardas kūkas.
22. Sērdienīte valkāja vecmodīgas drēbītes.
23. Priekš kā tev vajaga tik garu kātu?
24. Augšpus Rīgas ledus Daugavā vēl nav sasprādzis.
25. Tautai nedrīkst izpaust, kas notiek iekšpus ordeņa pils sienām.
26. Mazdēls ir vectēva čaklākais palīgs darbnīcā.
27. Muižniekam ir vairākas mazmeitas, bet viņam nav neviena mazdēla.
28. Nu jau tas vecpūsis ir pāri tam vecumam, kad vēl varētu ņemt sievu.
29. Lejpus muižas upē ledus jau ir sasprādzis, bet augšpus muižas vēl var tikt pa ledu pāri.
30. Ap desmitiem vakarā muižnieks sūtīja kalpu pēc vecmātes.
31. Priekšnieks būs īgns, ja kāds izpaučs, ko mēs runājam iekšpus šīm četrām sienām.
32. Priekš kā maiznieks cep tik daudz maizes klaipu?
33. Viņi iet kaujā ar vecmodīgiem ieročiem, bet viņi nav glēvi.
34. Priekš manis tev nekad nav laika.

Exercise 176f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Inside the enclosure, the grass is dying away, but outside the enclosure it is flourishing.
2. The German noblemen and pastors in speaking Latvian used to say "the dog is *under the table," "*in what estate are you working?," "grandfather is *in the stable" and "grandmother is *in the kitchen." (Use the older forms for words marked *.)
3. When our grandson was born, he was very weak, but now he is a strapping boy.
4. Below the bridge the current is not as strong as upstream from the bridge. Indeed, below the bridge it is negligible.
5. Medals are not awarded for every trifle in some countries.
6. Guntis is only twenty-five years old: at that age one cannot call a man a confirmed bachelor.
7. This estate once belonged to the order.
8. Coal is mined (*rakt*) underground.
9. In which fairy tale does the wolf eat up the grandmother, and attempt to eat the granddaughter as well?
10. He is of the noble class.
11. There was not a single letter for you today; only a newspaper.
12. Smoking is allowed outside the hall only.
13. Here beneath the thick layer of concrete, there is a layer of sand.
14. The beam broke off above the nail.
15. Does the confirmed old bachelor still stagnate (*nīkt*) in his old-fashioned flat with all that old-fashioned furniture?
16. The poor midwife will have got soaked and suffered long discomfort (*nonīkt*) during the long trip (loc.) in the open cart.
17. Something broke inside the piano.
18. Grandmother was helping the midwife.
19. At your age, grandfather was living on the banks of the Venta, downstream from the old mill.
20. For whom is your grandmother sewing this blouse?
21. The cake crumbled in the grandson's hands.
22. My hair is getting wet.
23. The bridge will break like a match-stick.

LESSON 177

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- AND DENTAL
(UNVOICED) MIXED TYPE

A number of verbs with infinitives in *-st* have a present tense according to the *-st-* type, and an imperfect according to the dental type. The dental of the imperfect is voiceless (i.e., *t*) in some verbs, voiced (i.e., *d*) in others. Those with the voiceless stem consonant *t* in the imperfect are conjugated like *vīst*, given below.

vīst 'to fade, wither'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es vīstu</i>	<i>es vītu</i>	—
<i>tu vīsti</i>	<i>tu vīti</i>	<i>vīsti!</i>
<i>viņš vīst</i>	<i>viņš vīta</i>	<i>lai vīst!</i>
<i>mēs vīstam</i>	<i>mēs vītām</i>	<i>vītīsim!</i>
<i>jūs vīstat</i>	<i>jūs vītāt</i>	<i>vīstiet!</i>
<i>viņi vīst</i>	<i>viņi vītu</i>	<i>lai vīst!</i>

Future: *es vītīšu, tu vītīsi, viņš vītīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es vīstu, tu vīstu, viņš vīstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāvīst, man bija jāvīst*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *vītis, vītuši; vītusi, vītušas*.

Present Participles Active: *vīzdams, vīstošs, vīstot*.

Vocabulary

<i>(no-)vīst (vīstu, vītu)</i>	to fade, wither, wilt, droop
<i>(sa-)kalst (kalstu, kalstu)</i>	to dry up, wither
<i>izkalst (-kalstu, -kalstu)</i>	to dry out
<i>atskārst (atskārstu, atskārtu)</i>	to apprehend, conceive, realize
<i>izvirst (izvirstu, izvirtu)</i>	to fall into degeneracy, to degenerate
<i>jautrs</i>	cheerful, gay, merry
<i>jēls</i>	raw; sore
<i>jūtēllgs</i>	sensitive, touchy; (excessively) sentimental (of people)
<i>kails</i>	naked
<i>kairs</i>	seductive, suggestive

<i>kārs</i>	eager, greedy
<i>klajš</i>	open (of field, sky, etc.)
<i>klibš</i>	lame
<i>knašs</i>	nimble, quick
<i>kraujš</i>	steep
<i>krāšņs</i>	magnificent, splendid
<i>solis</i>	step
<i>ķermeņis</i>	body
<i>riebīgs</i>	ghastly; nauseating
<i>skats</i>	sight, scene, view

NOTES: *skats uz* 'a view of, a view over' (e.g., *skats uz upi*)
kārs uz 'eager for' (e.g., *kārs uz naudu*)

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–150.

Exercise 177a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *atskārst*; *vīst*; *mirkt*; *nonīkt*; *dzist*; *kust*; *aizmirst*; *pielaišt*; *ciest*; *uzaut*; *noskūt*; *atļaut*; *slīst*; *dzīt*; *tīt*; *rīt*; *izsmiet*; *sēt*.

Exercise 177b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 177a.

Exercise 177c

Give the third person plural (feminine) of the future perfect debitive of the verbs listed in Ex. 177a.

Exercise 177d

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 177a.

Exercise 177e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kaut es būtu bagāts (bagāta)!*

Exercise 177f

What difference is there in formation between the participle in *-ošs* and the participle in *-ot*?

Exercise 177g

Translate into English:

- Kad vecāmāte bija manā vecumā, viņa bija jūtīga meitene.
- Jo retāk tu lietosi izteicienus "iekš laivas" un "apakš tilta", jo **labāk**.
- Uz šīs kraujās klints mēs esam droši, jo klibais policists te **neuzkāpa**.
- Gādājiet par to, lai mūsu dēls lielpilsētā neizvirst!
- Jūrnieki kārām acīm sekoja dejotājas kairajām kustībām.
- Beidzot mana mazmeita atskārst, ka šis muižnieks ir riebīgs cilvēks.
- Ziedi bija novītuši, un lapas bija sakaltušas.
- Kaut gan vectēvs ir drusku paklibš, viņš vēl staigā knašām kājām.
- Jāņu naktī parasti dejo kādā klajā vietā zem klajām debesīm.
- Man kalst rīkle, viesmīl, atnesiet alu!
- Pirms koncerta dziedātājs iedzēra glāzīti šņabja ar jēlu olu.
- Vai astoņpadsmitā gadu simtenī muižnieku kārtā Francijā bija **pilnīgi** izvirtusi?
- Vai es varu šo katlu skart kailām rokām? – Nē, tas ir par karstu.
- Mūsu mazdēls ir kārs uz zemenēm un avenēm.
- Nu tu atskārsti, kas notiek iekšpus šī restorāna sienām? – Jā gan, es **tiešām** neticēju, ka šeit būs dejotājas, kas dejo tik kairas dejas; kas par **skatu!** Redzi, kā vecpuiši viņām aplaudē! – Ne tikai vecpuiši, es arī **aplaudēju!**
- Ķermenim vajaga sāls.
- Es nekad neaizmirsīšu šo riebīgo skatu.
- Šeit drīkst makšķerēt leļpus un augšpus tilta.
- Mežoni ēd jēlu gaļu.
- Šīs vīstošās puķes jāmet laukā.
- Saules stari dedzina kailo muguru, un viss ķermenis svīst.
- Kāpjot kraujajā kalnā, katrs solis ir grūts, bet augšā būs **krāšņs skats**.
- Karalis nav ārpus likuma.
- Saimnieks beidzot atskārta, ka šādi stādi klajā laukā izkalst.
- Vai tu pamanīji viņas kairās acis? – Jā, draudziņ, un arī tavas kairās acis.
- Šim klibajam ubagam kādreiz bija knašas kājas.
- Ordeņa brāji valkāja garus, baltus mēteļus.
- Vecmāte tūlīt būs klāt; viņas knašos soļus jau dzird pie vārtiem.
- No kraujās klints redz **krāšņu saules rietu**.
- Klibais vīrs ar vecmodīgajām brillēm ir muižas **grāmatvedis**.

31. "Jo vairāk tauta izvirtīs, jo ātrāk valsts sabruks," mēdz teikt.
32. Paldies par jautro vakaru!
33. Vai zaļi kartupeļi ir indīgi?
34. Kas par riebiņu zirnekli!

Exercise 177h

Translate into Latvian:

1. That lame man walks with slow, weary steps.
2. The orphan is blowing a gay tune on his shepherd's flute.
3. He is too cowardly to climb up (*uz*) the steep cliff. – Then let us enjoy the magnificent view without him.
4. Now my whole body is itching from that ghastly oil.
5. The loaf of bread will probably have dried out.
6. I saw his greedy eyes following the dancer's seductive movements.
7. He is as slippery as an eel; he will not take a bribe!
8. These delicate flowers wither quickly.
9. To one raw eggs are tasty; to another they are nauseating.
10. The painter paints magnificent and luxuriant landscapes (= *skats*).
11. Naked shoulders can also be seductive.
12. My assistant is eager for medals, and he is peeved that so far nobody has awarded him one.
13. What a sentimental poet!
14. Do you now realize that he is niggardly?
15. Without oil the skin dries out.
16. In the Middle Ages painters did not like painting the naked human body.
17. He is walking with brisk steps to the bus stop.
18. The blooms had withered and the stalks had dried up.
19. We cannot fish from this steep cliff.
20. The thread must be tight.
21. The postman walks with brisk steps.
22. When one's throat dries up, one must drink beer.
23. The old nobleman was a man of honour, but his grandsons have quite degenerated.

LESSON 178

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- AND DENTAL
(VOICED) MIXED TYPE

From what was said in Lesson 177, it will be clear that the voiced version of the mixed -st- and dental type will have a regular -st- present, with an imperfect in -d-.

svīst 'to perspire'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es svīstu</i>	<i>es svīdu</i>	—
<i>tu svīsti</i>	<i>tu svīdi</i>	<i>svīsti!</i>
<i>viņš svīst</i>	<i>viņš svīda</i>	<i>lai svīst!</i>
<i>mēs svīstam</i>	<i>mēs svīdām</i>	<i>svīdīsim!</i>
<i>jūs svīstat</i>	<i>jūs svīdāt</i>	<i>svīstiet!</i>
<i>viņi svīst</i>	<i>viņi svīda</i>	<i>lai svīst!</i>

Future: *es svīdīšu, tu svīdīsi, viņš svīdīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es svīstu, tu svīstu, viņš svīstu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāsvīst, man bija jāsvīst*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *svīdis, svīduši; svīdusi, svīdušas*.

Present Participles Active: *svīzdams, svīstošs, svīstot*.

Vocabulary

<i>svīst</i> (<i>svīstu, svīdu</i>)	to perspire
(iz-)plūst (<i>plūstu, plūdu</i>)	to flow, run; to grow fat
(ie-)bilst (<i>bilstu, bīldu</i>)	to say
atbilst (<i>atbilstu, atbīldu</i>)	to correspond, tally
(aiz-)klīst (<i>klīstu, klīdu</i>)	to wander, stroll
pakļīst (<i>-klīstu, -klīdu</i>)	to decline (morally), go to ruin
(no-)briest (<i>briestu, briedu</i>)	to swell, ripen
(sa-)šķīst (<i>šķīstu, šķīdu</i>)	to fall to pieces
(iz-)šķīst (<i>šķīstu, šķīdu</i>)	to dissolve
(ie-)nīst (<i>nīstu, nīdu</i>)	to hate, loathe, detest
(iz-)bīst (<i>bīlstu, bīldu</i>)	to swell up, grow fat
<i>smaka</i>	(unpleasant) odour, smell
<i>klaidonis</i>	vagrant
<i>kupls</i>	bushy, leafy

<i>kurls</i>	deaf
<i>kusls</i>	delicate, weak, tender
<i>kūtrs</i>	lazy, idle, indolent
<i>sviedri</i> (pl.)	perspiration, sweat
<i>iebildums</i>	objection
<i>caurule</i>	pipe (for water, gas, etc.)
<i>uzskats</i>	opinion

NOTES: *Iebilst* also means 'to object'. Note in this respect:

<i>iebilst pret</i>	to object to
<i>iebildums pret</i>	objection to

(*Iz-*)*blīst* may occasionally be found with the spelling (*iz-*)*blīzt*, but this is not common.

Atbilst requires the dative case:

Dzīve nekad neatbilst sapņiem. Life and dreams never correspond.

kurls pret 'deaf to'

pēc maniem uzskatiem 'in my opinion'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 151-160.

Exercise 178a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *iebilst*; *nīst*; *kīst*; *izvirst*; *izdzīst*; *iekarst*; *saslimt*; *sviest*; *jaust*; *uzaut*; *sašūt*; *plaut*; *skriet*; *aizdzīt*; *uztrīt*; *ieliet*; *apvīt*; *atstāt*.

Exercise 178b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 178a.

Exercise 178c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 178a.

Exercise 178d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Saules lēkts*.

Exercise 178e

Choose any 20 countries, and give the corresponding language, national adjective and the name of the inhabitants.

Exercise 178f

Translate into English:

1. Es beidzot atskārtu, no kurienes nāca nejaukā smaka: no šīs caurules bija izplūdusi gāze.
2. Vai tas kurlais un klibais klaidonis ar kuplo bārdu te arvien vēl klist apkārt?
3. Man plūda sviedri pār visu ķermeni, kāpjot kraujajā kalnā.
4. Augli briest un līdz augustam būs tik tālu nobrieduši, ka tos varēs noplūkt.
5. Pēc maniem uzskatiem tavi pleci šajā blūzē ir par kailiem. – Kāpēc tev vienmēr jāiebilst pret manu apģērbu? – Tāpēc, ka tas neatbilst tavam vecumam; tavs augums ir izblīdis, bet tu vēl domā, ka esi balles karaliene.
6. Klaidoņi guļ zem klajām debesīm.
7. Pēc maniem uzskatiem viņas kustības nav kairas, bet kūtras.
8. Klaidonis stāigāja gar dzelzceļa līniju knašiem soļiem.
9. Caurulei saplīstot, benzīns izplūda.
10. Ābeles ziedi sen nobiruši, un augļi jau briest.
11. Velns, kā man svīst rokas!
12. Es šo jūtēlīgo dzejnieci nīstu.
13. Dažām sievietēm augums izblīst pēc pirmā bērna, bet manai sievai gan neizblīda.
14. Skaistais, kuplais zars kalst.
15. Šīm darba drēbēm ir sviedru smaka.
16. Es esmu kurla pret taviem iebildumiem, jo tie neatbilst taviem uzskatiem.
17. Ola nokrita un sašķīda.
18. Mazā Aija glauž kucēnu ar savām kuslajām rociņām.
19. Vai tu tiešām ienīsti šo cilvēku viņa uzskatu dēļ?
20. Gaismai svīstot, mēs jau bijām lidlaukā.
21. Arī viskrāšņākās puķes vīst.
22. No viesnīcas otrā stāva bija lielisks skats uz kuplajām liepām.
23. No Jāņa nav ne smakas. (*smaka* here = *trace* : colloquial)
24. Šis uzdevums neatbilst skolnieka vecumam. – Vai tu domā, ka tas ir par grūtu?
25. Kāpēc jūs nekā neiebildāt, kad amatnieki strādāja tik kūtri?
26. Mūsu dēls nepaklīdis lielpilsētā.
27. Kā gan jaunai meitenei var būt tik kūtras kustības?
28. Strādnieki svīzdami ieraka smago betona cauruli.

29. Valdībai nebija iebildumu pret šo plānu.
30. Ja kartupeļus vāra, tie sašķīst.
31. Ja tu ienīsti tautu, par kuru tu nekā nezini, tad tu esi muļķis!
32. Kas gādās par šo kuslo nīkuli?
33. Kalstot zirņi paliek cieti.
34. Kāposti gan vīst, bet tie nesakalst.
35. Būtu jābūt kurlam, lai nedzirdētu briesmīgo troksni, kas nāk no apakšējā stāva.
36. Vectēvam ir vienmēr kaut kas ko iebilst.

Exercise 178g

Translate into Latvian:

1. If you are not yet sweating, you are a lazy worker. – How dare (*drīkstēt*) you call me a lazy worker; sweat is flowing along my back!
2. The chief engineer will object to these pipes, for they can be used only above or below the ceiling, but not outside the wall, where they will burst as the water freezes.
3. It is no wonder that grandmother has so many objections: she has such old-fashioned opinions, and she hates our modern clothes.
4. His deeds do not reflect his words.
5. The deaf grandfather did not hear his grandson crying inside the cellar.
6. Some bachelors hate women.
7. In two weeks the fruit will have ripened so much that it can be picked from the leafy tree.
8. Doesn't this bottle smell of petrol? – No, in my opinion it is a different smell.
9. What are we sweating for? Nobody is going to award us a medal, so let us work more slowly.
10. The poisonous gas was flowing from this pipe.
11. Will they object to your opinion? – They will not object.
12. Who is strolling there around those bushy trees?
13. The tiny granddaughter tried to lift the heavy loaf with her weak hands.
14. She still works as a midwife although she is almost deaf.
15. In the hot dance-hall, there was the smell of beer, vodka and sweat.
16. Does this story tally with the facts?
17. Has she really fallen so low that she sings in cheap pubs?
18. On the estate, apples are already ripening on the trees.
19. The ash-tray slipped from her weak hand and fell to pieces.
20. One's legs swell up if one has to work all day standing.

LESSON 179

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

The Present Participle Passive is formed by adding *-s* to the first person plural form of the present tense. It can therefore end in *-ams* or in *-āms* depending on the verb. The following examples will make the formation clear.

Infinitive	Present	Pres. Pass. Part.
<i>rēdzēt</i>	(<i>mēs</i>) <i>rēdzam</i>	<i>rēdzams</i>
<i>darīt</i>	<i>darām</i>	<i>darāms</i>
<i>slaukt</i>	<i>slaucam</i>	<i>slaucams</i>
<i>slaucīt</i>	<i>slaukām</i>	<i>slaukāms</i>
<i>šaut</i>	<i>šaujām</i>	<i>šaujams</i>
<i>aicināt</i>	<i>aicinām</i>	<i>aicināms</i>
<i>dzīt</i>	<i>dzeņam</i>	<i>dzeņams</i>
<i>šūt</i>	<i>šujām</i>	<i>šujams</i>

Observe that the quality of an *e* vowel of the first person plural of the present tense is retained in the present passive participle.

This participle has a number of uses, most of them adjectival, which we shall study in this and subsequent lessons.

The Latvian Present Participle Passive corresponds firstly to English adjectives formed from verbs with the suffixes *-able*, *-ible*, etc.

to drink: drinkable, i.e., which can be drunk

to see: visible, i.e., which can be seen.

Thus:

<i>redzams</i>	visible
<i>dzirdams</i>	audible
<i>ēdams</i>	edible
<i>dzerams</i>	drinkable
<i>ciešams</i>	bearable
<i>arams</i>	arable
<i>saprotams</i>	understandable
<i>jūtams</i>	perceptible
<i>šķīrams</i>	separable
<i>nesams</i>	portable
<i>neapīejams</i>	incalculable

<i>laužams</i>	breakable
<i>nemanāms</i>	unnoticeable
<i>saldzināms</i>	comparable
<i>neiznīcināms</i>	indestructible
<i>lasāms</i>	legible

and so on.

From the above, you will see that negative forms can be made by prefixing *ne-*.

Regarding the above as adjectives, we can also form adverbs by changing the *-s* to *-i*:

<i>nesaldzināmi</i>	incomparably	<i>nejūtami</i>	imperceptibly
<i>nelasāmi</i>	illegibly	<i>dzirdami</i>	audibly

The participle has a full adjectival declension, masculine and feminine, singular and plural, definite and indefinite, as follows:

INDEFINITE

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>redzams</i>	<i>redzami</i>	<i>redzama</i>	<i>redzamas</i>
Acc.	<i>redzamu</i>	<i>redzamus</i>	<i>redzamu</i>	<i>redzamas</i>
Gen.	<i>redzama</i>	<i>redzamu</i>	<i>redzamas</i>	<i>redzamu</i>
Dat.	<i>redzama</i>	<i>redzamiem</i>	<i>redzamai</i>	<i>redzamām</i>
Loc.	<i>redzamā</i>	<i>redzamos</i>	<i>redzamā</i>	<i>redzamās</i>

DEFINITE

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>redzamais</i>	<i>redzami</i>	<i>redzamā</i>	<i>redzamās</i>
Acc.	<i>redzamo</i>	<i>redzamos</i>	<i>redzamo</i>	<i>redzamās</i>
Gen.	<i>redzamā</i>	<i>redzamo</i>	<i>redzamās</i>	<i>redzamo</i>
Dat.	<i>redzamajam</i>	<i>redzamajiem</i>	<i>redzamajai</i>	<i>redzamaļām</i>
Loc.	<i>redzamaļā</i>	<i>redzamaļos</i>	<i>redzamaļā</i>	<i>redzamaļās</i>

The lengthening syllable in the dative and locative of the definite declension can be dropped, and must be omitted in participles formed from verbs of the Long Conjugation:

dabūjamā not **dabūjamajā*

Vocabulary

<i>ķilda</i>	quarrel
<i>laisks</i>	indolent, lazy
<i>lēzens</i>	shallow (of plates, etc.); gently sloping
<i>liegs</i>	gentle, tender
<i>lieks</i>	superfluous, excessive; spare; false, artificial
<i>liess</i>	lean; meagre
<i>apstākļi</i>	circumstance, condition
<i>iespējams</i>	possible
<i>patskanis</i>	vowel
<i>līdzskanis</i>	consonant
<i>divskanis</i>	diphthong
<i>divdabī</i>	participle
<i>dēklinācija</i>	declension
<i>konjugācija</i>	conjugation
<i>lietvārds</i>	noun
<i>īpašības vārds</i>	adjective
<i>darbības vārds</i>	verb
<i>laiks</i>	tense (gram.)
<i>liesma</i>	flame
<i>virziens</i>	direction

NOTES: *liekie zobi* 'false teeth'
darāmā kārtā 'the active voice'
ciešamā kārtā 'the passive voice'
vīriešu kārtā 'the masculine gender'
sieviešu kārtā 'the feminine gender'

Konjugācija is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Liegs is a somewhat rare, poetic word, and is pronounced with broken tone.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 167-176.

Exercise 179a

Form the present participle passive of: *lasīt; redzēt; dzirdēt; jāt; ūst; dzert; saprast; saldzināt; atkārtot; darīt; ticēt; ciest; atļaut; slaukt; teliet; plaut; art; Ņērt; uzrt; dabūt.*

Exercise 179b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *izbilst; svlst; atskārst; lūzt; vārgt; izmist; llist; izplest; aut; skūt; sagraut; piesliet; padzīt; plīt; riet; pārmit; rāt.*

Exercise 179c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 179b.

Exercise 179d

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 179b.

Exercise 179e

Translate into Latvian: unbreakable; incomparable; illegible; liftable; arable; inseparable; obtainable; edible; drinkable; inaudibly.

Exercise 179f

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Pie ārsta.*

Exercise 179g

Translate into English:

1. Tavi iebildumi ir lieki, es savus uzskatus nemainīšu.
2. Viņa kustības ir kūtras jeb laiskas.
3. Ugunsgrēkam jābūt tanī virzienā, bet liesmas nav redzamas.
4. Īpašības vārdu deklinācija atbilst lietvārdu deklinācijai.
5. Uz tā lēzenā šķīvja ir liesa gaļa.
6. Klaidonis aizgāja stacijas virzienā.
7. Ja es kaut ko iebilstu, viņa tūlīt sāk ķildas.
8. Pēc maniem uzskatiem viņas liegā dzeja der tikai jūtīgiem cilvēkiem.
9. Tagadējos apstākļos nav iespējams salabot šo cauruli.
10. Vai tas ir ciešamās kārtas divdabis?
11. Kā var ienīst cilvēku viņa nelokāmā prāta dēļ?
12. Lokāmos divdabjus tu atradīsi sešsimt piecpadsmitajā lapas pusē.
13. Šis trauks ir nesalaužams.

14. Karstums liesmu tuvumā bija neciešams, un mums plūda sviedri.
15. Šis divskanis nav salīdzināms ar citu valodu divskaniem.
16. Tu uzrakstīji vienu lieku līdzskani.
17. Ko tu zini par darbības vārdu konjugāciju? – Es zinu, ka eksistē četri vienkārši laiki.
18. Es nīstu vārdus, kuros ir daudz līdzskapu.
19. Šis patskanis stāv starp diviem līdzskaniem.
20. Guntis skūpstīja viņas liego rociņu.
21. Kas tur kļīst pa lēzeno krastu? – Laikam laiskais gleznotājs.
22. Līdz trešdienai mums jāzina visas darbības vārdu konjugācijas.
23. Vai lietvārda galotne vienmēr rāda, ka tas ir sieviešu kārtas lietvārds? – Kā kuru reizi.
24. Ciešamās kārtas divdabja deklinācija nav grūtāka par īpašības vārda deklināciju.
25. Dejojāji lēca caur liesmām.
26. Beidziet savas ķildas, bērni, un līgstiet mieru!
27. Sidneja ir tanī virzienā.
28. Vai viņai tiešām ir liekie zobi?
29. Vai es varu dabūt liesu cūkas gaļu? – Jā gan, kundze! Vai šī gaļa ir diezgan liesa?
30. Ak, kartupeļi ir sašķīduši!
31. Zars nolūza zem briestošo augļu svara.
32. Man nav iespējams dejoj ar šo cilvēku.
33. Vīns izplūda no mucas.
34. Vai mēs zinām, kāpēc šī sieviete ir tā paklīdusi? – Varbūt viņu spieda apstākļi!
35. Dejojājam ir liegas kustības.
36. Tu sāc ķildu par katru nieku. – Nē, viņš mani sauc par laisku strādnieku, un tas manās acīs nav nieks.
37. Iedod man kādu lēzenu bļodu!
38. Tas nav patskanis, bet divskanis.
39. Ja tu zināsi laikus, tad visa konjugācija tev būs skaidra.
40. Šo īpašības vārdu es redzu pirmo reizi.
41. Augļi vēl nav pilnīgi nobrieduši, bet ievārījumam tie der.
42. Viņš saka nesaprotamus vārdus.
43. Suņi dzird cilvēkam nedzirdamas skaņas.
44. Slaucamo govju cena ir daudz augstāka par teju cenu.
45. Skolotājs paskaidros šo grūti saprotamo izteicienu.
46. Vai ūdens, ko smeļ no tās akas, ir dzerams?
47. Vai šie lauki ir arami?
48. Viņš raksta grāmatu par ēdamām sēnēm.
49. Slaucamām govīm dod vislabāko barību.

Exercise 179h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Do you now realize that there are four simple tenses in the conjugation of Latvian verbs?
2. The dog is greedy for raw meat.
3. The flames were visible from the gently sloping river-bank.
4. With nimble steps he ran in the direction of the tavern.
5. There are quarrels even in the best marriages.
6. Does this noun belong to the fourth declension?
7. The bank of the river is not steep; it slopes gently.
8. Is that a passive (voice) participle?
9. From the low field the valley is not visible, but from the hills you have a magnificent view.
10. The lame trumpeter is a cheerful but lazy fellow.
11. That music may please sentimental people, but it does not please me.
12. She began a quarrel with the butcher because the meat was not lean enough.
13. His bare back is being burnt in the sun.
14. The Germans write all nouns with capital (= *liels*, def.) letters.
15. The declensions are not as difficult as the conjugations.
16. This passive participle can be declined like an adjective.
17. She has a gentle voice, and her movements are gentle.
18. Throw that hideous old cap into the flames.
19. False teeth are not comparable with real teeth.
20. Living under poor conditions, it is impossible for them to save money, for they have not one spare cent.
21. In this poor (= *liess*) soil, the plants are withering up.
22. What do you know about unbearable pain?
23. The flowers would have withered up without water. – No, these flowers do not wither up, they merely dry out.
24. Is that a vowel or a diphthong? – That is clearly a diphthong.
25. What happens to this consonant if a vowel follows it?
26. How many participles do we already know?
27. That is not a consonant.
28. How is this verb conjugated?
29. It is not easy to explain this diphthong to English or German students.
30. Do you all know how to decline feminine adjectives?
31. These berries are not edible.
32. Why do you always write so illegibly?
33. This dish is unbreakable.
34. There is now quite a perceptible breeze.
35. Cows that can be milked are more expensive than calves.

LESSON 180

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (CONT.)

Besides being used to correspond to English adjectives in -able, -ible, etc., denoting possibility, the Latvian present participle passive is also used to denote necessity. Thus it sometimes denotes possibility, sometimes obligation. Cf. here the English 'payable in advance', where the meaning is not 'able to be paid in advance', but rather 'requiring to be paid in advance'. Thus:

<i>uzrakstāms</i>	needing to be written out
<i>izmazgājams</i>	needing to be washed out
<i>ēdams</i>	needing to be eaten
<i>mēģināms</i>	needing to be rehearsed
<i>atkārtojams</i>	needing to be repeated
<i>plaujams</i>	needing to be reaped
<i>iesējams</i>	needing to be sown
<i>uztrinams</i>	needing to be sharpened

Šie naži ir uztrinami.

These knives need to be sharpened.

Cik tev vēl ir atkārtojamu uzdevumu?

How much revision have you still to do?

Vainīgais ir sodāms.

The culprit ought to be punished.

Vocabulary

<i>ļaus</i>	evil; angry
<i>maigs</i>	gentle, soft
<i>mērens</i>	temperate, moderate
<i>mikls</i>	damp, moist
<i>mitrs</i>	humid, moist
<i>modrs</i>	watchful, alert; lively
<i>možs</i>	awake, lively
<i>mukls</i>	marshy, swampy
<i>apstākļa vārds</i>	adverb
<i>prievārds</i>	preposition
<i>locījums</i>	case (gram.)
<i>nominātīvs</i>	nominative case
<i>vokātīvs</i>	vocative case

<i>akuzātīvs</i>	accusative case
<i>ģenitīvs</i>	genitive case
<i>datīvs</i>	dative case
<i>lokātīvs</i>	locative case
<i>noteikts</i>	definite, fixed, appointed; (gram.) definite
<i>zināms</i>	known, certain
<i>pārāk</i>	too (with adj. or adv.)

NOTES: *Nominātīvs*, *vokātīvs* and *lokātīvs* are all pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

ņemt ļaunā 'to take offence'

Pārāk does not affect the case or form of a following adjective or adverb:

Compare: *Viņš ir par resnu.*
Viņš ir pārāk resns.
Viņas ir par jaunām.
Viņas ir pārāk jaunas.

Mukls is a rare word.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 26–50.

Exercise 180a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *kļīst*; *ienīst*; *atskārst*; *izvirst*; *lūzt*; *dzīst*; *apklust*; *saļgt*; *izlaist*; *pūst*; *šķērst*; *nojaust*; *aut*; *šūt*; *raut*; *sasiet*; *dzīt*; *tīt*; *rlt*; *liet*; *atklāt*.

Exercise 180b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 180a.

Exercise 180c

Give the forms of the present participle passive, the participles in *-dams* and *-ot*, and where appropriate the participle in *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 180a.

Exercise 180d

When is a nominative case not used after a verb in the debitive?

Exercise 180e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Pārbaudījumā*.

Exercise 180f

Translate into English:

1. Vai gaļa nebūs pārāk liesa?
2. Braucot mērenā ātrumā, mēs sasniegsim galvas pilsētu ap launaga laiku.
3. Šis jaunais cilvēks nevar dzīvot bez ķildām.
4. Nepaliec pārāk ilgi pie kaimiņa!
5. Kalps var būt slinks jeb laisks, cimdi mitri jeb mikli, skolnieks modrs jeb možs, vējš maigs jeb liegs un zobī mākslīgie jeb liekie.
6. Tavas pūles ir liekas: šo ierēdni piekukuļot nav iespējams.
7. Pašreizējos apstākļos es tev nekā nevaru aizdot.
8. Tanī virzienā nevar iet, tur ir muklas pļavas.
9. Gāze deg ar zīlu liesmu.
10. Apstākļa vārdi nav lokāmi.
11. Vai profesora jaunā grāmata ir nopejama?
12. Mitrie cimdi uzkarami pie krāsns.
13. Maigās kaķu ķepiņas slēpj asus nagus.
14. Vai šis darbības vārds ietilpst tanī konjugācijā?
15. Šis prievārds prasa ģenitīvu, tas datīvu, bet tas akuzatīvu.
16. Redzi nu, divdabju deklinācija nav pārāk grūta!
17. Līdz piektdienai ir atkārtojami visi īpašības vārdi. – Vai tad lietvārdi mums nebūtu atkārtojami?
18. Kā var zināt, vai tas ir noteikts vai nenoteikts īpašības vārds? – To var redzēt galotnē.
19. Gaļu ēd no lēzeniem šķīvjiem.
20. Tas nav nominatīvs, bet vokātīvs.
21. Tev jābūt modram, staigājot pa muklajām ganībām.
22. Darbības vārdi ir lokāmi.
23. Šis prievārds prasa ģenitīvu, bet tas datīvu.
24. Vai šis līdzskanis ietilpst vārda saknē vai galotnē?
25. Vai jūsu valodā eksistē lokātīvs un vokātīvs? – Nē, mums nav ne lokātīva, ne vokātīva. Lokātīvu mēs izsakām ar prievārdu, un vokātīva mūsu valodā ir vienmēr līdzīgs nominatīvam.

26. Mežoniem bail no ļauniem gariem, kas pēc viņu domām mīt tanī muklajā ielejā.
27. Beidzot mums visi locījumi ir zināmi.
28. Tas var būt nominatīvs vai arī akuzatīvs.
29. Uzrakstiet visus locījumus pēc kārtas!
30. Kamēr pūš šie mērenie, maigie vēji, jūra netrakos.
31. Šim patskanim lokatīvā jābūt garam.
32. Vai tas ir apstākļa vārds? – Nē, mīļo puisīt, tas nav apstākļa vārds: tu šodien gan neesi možs!
33. Temperatūra ir mērena, bet gaiss ir mikls.
34. Sēkla ir iesējama, kamēr zeme vēl mitra.
35. Nē, īpašības vārdam jābūt noteiktam šinī teikumā; kā možs zēns to var aizmirst?
36. Frontes tuvumā mums jābūt modriem.
37. Divas ainas vēl mēģināmas, tad varam iet mājās.
38. Vainīgie ir sodāmi.
39. Šīs divas grāmatas izlasāmas līdz piektdienai.
40. Vai zvaigznes pie debesīm ir saskaitāmas?
41. Kur ir uztrinamie naži?
42. Vai šie ir labojamie rati?
43. Uzdevumi atkārtojami līdz trešdienai.
44. Zirgi barojami, ūdens no akas atnesams, govīs slaucamas, darba rīki sakārtojami un istaba tīrāma: tikai tad, kad to visu būsi veikusi, tu drīkstēsi iet pie draugiem.

Exercise 180g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Today we are perspiring so much that our shirts are wet with sweat.
2. I do not think that this vagrant is an evil man: he is not to be arrested.
3. After a certain time, the fruit will have matured, for each day the weather is temperate, and the nights are mild and humid.
4. The farmer has objections to our letting (= if we let) the cows into that marshy pasture.
5. Her figure has grown fat, but she still has a lovely gentle voice.
6. In the headmaster's opinion, Ludis is an alert pupil.
7. We must be watchful, otherwise the glass pipe will shatter.
8. It is not too difficult to decline a definite adjective.
9. At a certain time the officer will be at the appointed place.
10. What case does this preposition require?
11. Such an unpleasant smell comes from the marshy meadow at night that we have to shut all the windows.

12. This alert boy will not go to ruin like his brother in the company of evil sailors and drunkards.
13. That bachelor has been wandering about too long in the world; it is time for him to find a girl who would marry him.
14. The weather is too humid for the berries to ripen.
15. In that bushy tree there are several squirrels' nests.
16. She is not indolent, but her hands are too tender for such a hard job.
17. Are fish deaf?
18. He does not object to work in the damp coal-mine.
19. I loathe quarrels between brothers.
20. Why do you detest these simple adverbs?
21. Although temperate winds are blowing, the sailors have to be alert.
22. Which prepositions require the genitive and which the accusative?
23. Any child can see that this is a vocative, and not a nominative.
24. The nominative is the first case.
25. This word is to be written in the dative, not in the locative.
26. In this sentence the verb follows the adverb.
27. When is the vocative to be used?
28. There is no locative in our language.
29. This dative is followed by an indeclinable active participle.

LESSON 181

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (CONT.)

Consider the English expressions *drinking water, reading book, calculating machine, dwelling house, dining room, sewing machine*, and so on. In some cases, we have here a genuinely active participle, used attributively with a noun – the machine *does* calculate, and the machine *does* sew. On the other hand, the water *does not* drink, the book *does not* read, the house *does not* dwell, nor does the room dine.

The only way of making the above expressions more or less identical is to adopt the paraphrases *water for drinking, a book for reading, a machine for calculating, a house for dwelling in, a machine for sewing*, etc. Sometimes a preposition is needed to complete the sense, sometimes not.

In a limited number of cases, English expressions of the type NOUN *for . . . -ing* (*with, in*, etc.) are paralleled by Latvian constructions involving the present participle passive: *dzeramais ūdens; lasāmā grāmata; skaitāmā mašīna; dzīvojamā māja; ēdamistaba; šujammašīna*.

There is no way of predicting whether the participle will be definite or indefinite in many cases, nor whether fusion with shortening of the first part will have taken place. Such expressions have to be learnt individually, although new ones should be readily decipherable and translatable when met.

The following list will give the student some idea of the kinds of expressions he is likely to meet.

<i>vārāma gaļa</i>	meat for cooking
<i>dzēšamā gumija</i>	a rubber for erasing
<i>jājams zirgs</i>	a horse for riding
<i>šaujamlauks</i>	a shooting-range
<i>guļamistaba</i>	a room for sleeping in, bedroom
<i>šujamadata</i>	a needle for sewing
<i>lāpāmadata</i>	a needle for mending
<i>sakām vārds</i>	a word for saying, i.e., proverb
<i>rakstāmmašīna</i>	a machine for writing, i.e., typewriter
<i>dzeramnauda</i>	money for drinking, i.e., tip

Vocabulary

<i>naigs</i>	quick, sharp, brisk
<i>nasks</i>	agile, brisk, nimble
<i>nākamais, (f.) -ā</i>	(the) next
<i>ņiprs</i>	brisk, nimble, quick
<i>pāts</i>	fawn-coloured
<i>pikts</i>	angry, vexed
<i>prāvs</i>	considerable
<i>nodoms</i>	intention
<i>godkāre</i>	ambition
<i>gods</i>	honour
<i>ilgas (pl.)</i>	desire, longing
<i>kāre</i>	desire, greed
<i>sajūsma</i>	enthusiasm
<i>bežūtība</i>	heartlessness
<i>ņepatika</i>	displeasure
<i>apatija</i>	apathy
<i>simpatija</i>	liking; sympathy
<i>antipatija</i>	antipathy
<i>namdurvis (pl.)</i>	front door
<i>bērs (adj.)</i>	bay-coloured (of horse)
<i>skaitis</i>	number
<i>pliks</i>	bare; (head) bald; poor, broke

NOTES: *Pāts* is a rare word.

ilgas pēc 'longing for'

sajūsma par 'enthusiasm for'

The spellings *apātija*, *simpātija*, *antipātija* are also found. These words can all be construed with *pret*, corresponding to the English 'towards' in such cases. Similarly with *bežūtība* and *ņepatika*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 101-115.

Exercise 181a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *blīst*; *sakalst*; *salūzt*; *dzist*; *kust*; *samulst*; *skumt*; *grūst*; *izplest*; *aut*; *skūt*; *ļaut*; *sliet*; *nodzīt*; *plīt*; *izsmiet*; *rāt*; *rīt*.

Exercise 181b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 181a.

Exercise 181c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, *-ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 181a.

Exercise 181d

Summarize, with examples, the uses of the present participle passive which we have studied so far.

Exercise 181e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Braucot ar kuģi*.

Exercise 181f

Translate into English:

1. Trīs sidraba upes tek
Gar brālīša namdurvīm.
Vienā dzēra raibas govīs,
Otrā – bērī kumeliņi.
Trešajā upītē
Mazgā māsa vaiņadziņu.

(T. dz.)

(*Sidrabs* is a poetic variant of *sudrabs*.)

2. Šis ļaunais tirgotājs ir glums kā zutis; viņš nav ar pliku roku ņemams.
3. Pie mācītāja namdurvīm stāv prāvs skaits ļaužu.
4. Man nav pārāk lielu simpatiju pret šo cilvēku, bet nav arī antipatiju pret viņu.
5. Man nebija nodoma šo ļauno muižnieku nošaut, es atnācu ar nodomu viņu sabiedēt.
6. Mans jājamais zirgs ir pāts, bet braucamais zirgs bērs.
7. Nākamā lapas pusē tu atradīsi visus locījumus.
8. Pēc zināma laika sajūsma par šo dziedātāju norims un paliks tikai apatija.
9. Mums bija prāvs gabals ko iet pa muklajām pļavām.
10. Nākamā nedēļā mums būs jābūt modriem.
11. Možam skolniekam ir nepatika pret šādām garlaicīgām skolotāju runām.
12. Mans znots bija pliks kā baznīcas žurka (cf. Eng. *churchmouse*), kad mana meita viņu apprecēja, bet viņas godkāre un viņa kāre uz bagātu dzīvi viņiem palīdzēja tikt uz augšu.
13. Es esmu pikta par viņa bezjūtību, un mana antipatija aug ar katru dienu.
14. Ar ilgām Aija gaidīja Gunti pārnākam no frontes.
15. Pātais kumeļš bija nīprāks par bēro.
16. Tautas sajūsma bija diezgan mērena, bet valdība bija uzpirkusi prāvu skaitu cilvēku, kas aplaudētu valsts vīriem.
17. Kā lai es aprakstu savas ilgas pēc viņas maigajām rociņām?
18. Viņš izgāja pa namdurvīm naskiem soļiem.
19. Katrs cilvēks paliek pikts, ja skar viņa godu.
20. Dumpīgais students aizgāja uz pili ar noteiktu nodomu nošaut karali.
21. Manas simpatijas pieder tam kungam, kas aizstāvēja manas māsas godu.
22. Pie namdurvīm stāv kāds klaidonis ar pliku galvu.
23. Viņas nīprajām rokām ir naigas kustības.
24. Nejudz bēro zirgu kamanās, Jāni, judz pāto, tas ir naskāks!
25. Tas ir liels gods saņemt šo augsto ordeni.
26. Vai no īpašības vārdiem 'naigs', 'nasks' un 'nīprs' var veidot atbilstošus apstākļa vārdus? – Jā gan, 'naigi', 'naski' un 'nīpri.'

27. Es nejūtu ne simpatijas, ne antipatijas pret savu priekšnieku, bet viņa godkāre man krīt uz nerviem.
28. Mācītājs būs pikts, ja mēs neiesim uz baznīcu Lielā Lūdzamā dienā.
(Day of prayer and repentance in Lent)
29. Viņa lāpa zeķes ar lāpāmadatu.
30. Manī nekad nerims ilgas pēc šīs cēlās meitenes. – Jā, un kāre pēc viņas naudas arī ne.
31. Prievārdu skaits ir pamazs.
32. Sievietes raudāja aiz sajūsmas.
33. Kuri skaitļa vārdi (= *numerals*) prasa ģenitīvu?
34. Akuzatīvs šeit neder, der tikai datīvs.
35. Kāpēc tu lieto nominatīvu? Šeit lietojams vokatīvs.
36. Pilnīgi pareizi, zēn! Tas tiešām ir lokatīvs.
37. Nebrauciet tālu tuksnesī bez dzeramā ūdens!
38. Bērnu pirmās lasāmās grāmatas ir ļoti vienkāršas.
39. Man vajaga jaunu braucamo zirgu, un brālim vajaga jaunu rakstāmmašīnu.
40. Modernas skaitāmās mašīnas ir ļoti dārgas.

Exercise 181g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Although living conditions are bad in some Asian countries, the number of inhabitants is increasing quite rapidly.
2. I heard your quarrel at the front door.
3. She walks with light, brisk steps.
4. There is a large piece of lean meat on the flat plate.
5. Have you a spare rubber?
6. I have no sympathy for lazy workers.
7. The tribe of savages will think it a great honour if we give them this fawn riding-horse.
8. His ambition has no bounds, nor have his desire for money and his longing for recognition and medals.
9. Who knows whether his intentions are honest?
10. Some were singing with enthusiasm, others with displeasure and apathy.
11. Harness the quick bay horse. – Why, is it more brisk than the fawn riding-horse?
12. Next month the trees will be bare.
13. Did you notice the gipsy's desire for the bay foal?
14. Vodka burns with a blue flame.
15. It is no wonder that she is vexed at his heartlessness.
16. He had the intention of going in that direction.

17. We are now selling a considerable number of typewriters.
18. The front door is closed at eleven o'clock each evening.
19. We have no liking for people with ambition.
20. The nobleman was angry when his daughter wanted to marry a student who was as poor as a church mouse (*žurka*).
21. In the next verse the poet describes his longing for peace and his antipathy towards city life.
22. We all applauded the brisk and nimble dancers.
23. The people's enthusiasm quickly waned.
24. What does this scoundrel know about an officer's honour?
25. Can a participle be used here?
26. The declension of nouns and adjectives is now clear to me, but the conjugation of some verbs is still not completely clear.
27. This vowel is short.
28. This consonant is followed by a diphthong.
29. Arable land is expensive.
30. Do they use sewing machines?
31. Proverbs are often quite witty.
32. The shooting-range is near the estate.

LESSON 182

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (CONT.)

An extension of the use of the present participle passive studied in Lesson 181 is to omit the noun from the group, and to use the participle alone as a noun. In this case, the participle always appears in the masculine definite forms. Cf.:

<i>griežamais</i>	a thing for cutting with
<i>sitamais</i>	a thing for striking with
<i>ēdamais</i>	a thing for eating, i.e., food
<i>grebjamais</i>	a thing for scraping with, i.e., a scraper
<i>slēdzamais</i>	a thing for locking with, i.e., a lock
<i>slaukāmais</i>	a thing for wiping with

The above are best regarded as nouns, to be declined according to the masculine definite adjective pattern. The lengthening syllable *-aj-*, however, is usually lacking in the dative and locative.

Vocabulary

<i>raits</i>	speedy, lively
<i>rasa</i>	dew
<i>piliens</i> or <i>pile</i>	drop
<i>ražēns</i>	successful, fruitful, beneficial
<i>rāms</i>	quiet, calm; tame
<i>rūgts</i>	bitter
<i>(div-)riteņis</i>	bicycle
<i>motocikls</i>	motor-cycle
<i>uzlabot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to improve (trans.)
<i>ienākt</i> (-nāku, -nācu)	to come in, enter
<i>radi</i> (pl.)	relatives
<i>aplūkot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to look at, examine, inspect
<i>rikšot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to trot
<i>sūnas</i> (pl.)	moss
<i>skuja</i>	pine-needle, fir-needle
<i>korķis</i>	cork
<i>korķu veltkamais</i>	corkscrew
<i>vara</i>	power
<i>aulekšot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to gallop
<i>ziņkārīgs</i>	curious

NOTES: *nākt pie varas* 'to come to power'
ar varu 'by force'
skuju koks 'coniferous tree'
braukt ar (div-)riteņi 'to ride a bicycle'

Motocikls and *korķis* have foreign monophthongal *o* vowels.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 170-179.

Exercise 182a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *kļst*; *izvirst*; *salūzt*; *dzlst*; *kust*; *izmist*; *salt*; *sviest*; *ciest*; *aut*; *piešūt*; *apskaut*; *paskriet*; *pt*; *atdzlt*; *liet*; *rlt*; *iesēt*.

Exercise 182b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 182a.

Exercise 182c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 182a.

Exercise 182d

Translate into English: *korķu velkamais; ēdamais; slaukāmais; grebjamais; gāžamais; šaujамais; drēbju pakaramais; kāju slaukāmais; nažu trinamais; sitamais; griežamais; slēdzamais; metamais; duramais; smeļamais; dzeramais; kartupeļu mizojamais.*

Exercise 182e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Brauciens ar divriteni.*

Exercise 182f

Translate into English:

1. Ziņkārīgie radi ienāca istabā, lai aplūkotu Birutas pirmo dēlu.
2. Šai raitajai dejai vajaga nīpru kāju.
3. Man nav ne mazāko simpatiju pret varas kāriem cilvēkiem.
4. Ir bīstami iet šinī mežā bez šaujamā vai duramā.
5. Neesi nu tik ziņkārīgs!
6. Aija atstāja vīru viņa bezjūtības un godkāres dēļ.
7. Varbūt nākamā valdība uzlabos attiecības ar kaimiņiem.
8. Namdurvju priekšā stāvēja vairāki divriteņi un viens motocikls.
9. Kamēr pātais zirgs ir rāms un tikai rikšo, bērais ir daudz naskāks un labprāt aulekšo.
10. No dažām sūnām taisa zāles pret klepu.
11. Vācijā ražo prāvu skaitu motociklu un divriteņu.
12. Ja tev nav korķu velkamā, tad stum korķi pudelē iekšā ar kādu stumjamo!
13. Pudelē vairs nav ne piliena šņabja.
14. Skuju koku meža sausais gaiss var uzlabot slimnieces veselību.
15. Rasa mirdz kā dārgakmeņi.
16. Ja tu strādāsi ar nepatiku, tavs darbs nebūs ražens.
17. Kumeļi aulekšo un rikšo pa aploku.
18. Dažas sēnes aug tikai sūnās.
19. Šovakar jūra ir rāma.
20. Kā aprakstīt ilgas pēc skuju kokiem tālajos kalnos?

21. Guntis bija pikts, ka Rūdis bija paņēmis viņa riteni bez atļaujas.
22. Lūdzu, ienāc manā istabā!
23. Meistars tūlīt aplūkos jūsu motociklu.
24. Egļu skujas vēl ir mitras rīta rasā.
25. Kad Hitlers tūkstoš deviņsimt trīsdesmit trešā gadā nāca pie varas, vācu tautā bija liela sajūsma.
26. Aplūkosim šo slēdzamo! Varbūt to var dabūt vaļā ar kādu sitamo vai griežamo.
27. Miķelis raitiem soļiem ienāca zālē, kur viņu sagaidīja prāvs skaits radu un draugu.
28. Es nedzeršu ne piliena šo rūgto zāļu.
29. Lai Dievs dod raženu gadu!
30. Ar mākslīgiem mēsliem mēs uzlabosim ražu.
31. Es aizgāju ciemos ar nodomu kaitināt savus ziņkārīgos radus, bet sieva mani atrunāja, un es biju rāms kā jērs.
32. Mazajam korķītim šis korķu velkamais būs par lielu.
33. Taurētāji pūš raitu meldiju.
34. Katra pilīte rūgto zāļu ar varu jāielej slimā kucēna mutē.
35. Zirgs nedrīkst aulekšot, tam jārikšo.
36. Sūnas ir mitras.
37. Vai tev nav korķu velkamā pie rokas? (= *at hand, close handy*)
38. Tas nav manā varā.

Exercise 182g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I am curious (about) how you will pull the cork out without a corkscrew.
2. Your relatives will shed (*liet*) bitter tears when they hear about certain things.
3. One drop of this poison will destroy twenty-five mice.
4. Let us now examine the adverbs and prepositions.
5. The power was in the hands of evil men.
6. While a mild wind was blowing, the temperature was moderate and the sea was calm.
7. You cannot ride a motor-cycle there for the ground is marshy.
8. The moss is moist.
9. Canada has many more conifers than deciduous trees (= *lapu koks*).
10. In the morning the leaves are still moist with (*no*) dew.
11. Two successful months will improve the profit of the whole year.
12. This horse is too quiet to gallop.
13. I like lively tunes.

14. You must be alert when working with a sharp scraping tool.
15. The main conveyance (= *braucamais*) in Holland is the bicycle.
16. The class was not very alert when the headmaster entered.
17. Horses trot and gallop.
18. Nothing will improve my relations with your relatives.
19. Poor grandfather had to trot around the yard with his grandson on his shoulders.
20. Oh dear, the corkscrew has fallen into the water.
21. Ten dollars is not sufficient: that is only a drop in the ocean (= *kā piliens jūrā*).
22. The inquisitive boys were inspecting the big modern motor-cycle on the roadside.
23. The vagrant made a bed of moss and pine-needles in the forest.
24. Which countries export cork?
25. There is not a drop of ink in the fountain pen.
26. In which year did Hitler come to power?
27. That was a successful job.
28. After such a speedy ride on a bicycle, you also would be perspiring.
29. Do you like to walk barefoot across the dew?
30. Come in through this door, please.
31. The cheese is too bitter.
32. Use the correct case: not the dative, but the accusative!
33. You can see from the long ending in the locative that this is a definite adjective.
34. That is not the nominative, but the vocative.
35. Does this preposition take (= *prasīt*) the genitive?

LESSON 183

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (CONT.)

The present participle passive in *-ams/-āms* has a shortened indeclinable form. The flexional *-s* is lost, the shortened form ending in *-am/-ām*, and being therefore identical with the first person plural of the present tense. This indeclinable form is used after verbs of perception, and translates an English present participle in *-ing*.

We have already studied this form and its use: see Lesson 95.

Es redzēju māti slaucam govīs.

I saw mother milking the cows.

Kārtībnieks dzirdēja zagli skrienam.

The policeman heard the thief running.

In this construction, the shortened indeclinable present participle passive in *-am/-ām* can be replaced by the shortened indeclinable present participle active in *-ot*.

Es redzēju māti slaucot govīs.

Kārtībnieks dzirdēja zagli skrienot.

Of the verbs we have already studied, the following are likely to be found in the above constructions: *atrast*; *atstāt*; *dzirdēt*; *gaidīt*; *ieraudzīt*; *just*; *(pa-)manīt*; *redzēt*; *šķīst*; *noķert*.

Vocabulary

<i>no rīta</i>	in the morning
<i>sāļš</i>	salty, brackish
<i>sārts</i>	rosy, pink; red-faced
<i>sirms</i>	grey (of hair)
<i>sīkst</i>	tough; miserly
<i>sīvs</i>	harsh, bitter, biting
<i>skaņš</i>	loud, sonorous
<i>skaudrs</i>	sharp, biting; piercing (sound, voice, etc.)
<i>skāņš</i>	sourish, tart
<i>suga</i>	breed, species
<i>skārds</i>	sheet metal, tin(plate)
<i>stāvoklis</i>	condition, circumstance
<i>vīriētis</i>	man
<i>vēsture</i>	history
<i>vēsturisks</i>	historical
<i>aizvēsturisks</i>	prehistoric
<i>izrunāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to pronounce
<i>balsiens or zilbe</i>	syllable
<i>parks</i>	park
<i>skanradis or komponists</i>	composer

NOTES: *Komponists* has two foreign monophthongal *o* vowels.

Sirms sometimes has the extended meaning 'old'.

Exercise 183a

Translate into Latvian in two ways:

1. Did you hear the composer playing the piano?
2. He seemed to be reading.
3. I found him lying in the gutter.
4. We caught the vagrant stealing eggs.
5. She is still waiting for her husband to reply.
6. Did you feel the house shake?
7. I caught sight of John and Māra walking in the park.
8. When did you see him sharpening the knife?
9. We did not notice the time passing.
10. Did you hear him go out?

Exercise 183b

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *ienīst; atskārst; lūzt; dzist; kust; iekarst; noģībt; spiest; izplest; uzaut; sašūt; uzkraut; siet; aizdzīt; trīt; izsmiet; vīt; spēt.*

Exercise 183c

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 183b.

Exercise 183d

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 183b.

Exercise 183e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Ziema mūsu zemē.*

Exercise 183f

Translate into English:

1. No rītiņa zelta rasa
Mazgāj' manu kumeliņu.
(T. dz.)
2. Migla izgaisa jau no paša rīta.

3. Saimnieks nopirka dārgu sugas āzi.
4. Baltijas jūras ūdens nav pārāk sāļš.
5. Zirgs rikšo ātrāk nekā šis vīrietis spēj tikt uz priekšu ar savu aizvēsturisko motociklu. – Jā gan, katrs zēns var panākt viņu ar divriteni.
6. Kā šo balsienu izrunā?
7. Policija atrada klaidoni guļam parkā.
8. Tā ir raita un skaņa meldija.
9. Pēc sīvām cīņām stāvoklis frontē ir nopietns.
10. Parkā dārziņš grābj ar grābekli lapas un skuju.
11. Tas ir lielā skapraža Čaikovska pēdējais darbs.
12. Vecajam mežsargam ir sirmi mati un sārti vaigi.
13. Šī pilsēta eksistēja jau aizvēsturiskos laikos.
14. Ja slimnieks nebūtu tik sīksts, viņš jau būtu nomiris, bet ārsts domā, ka šīs zāles uzlabos viņa veselības stāvokli.
15. Es teicu, ka viņas balss ir skaudra, ne skaņa.
16. Mērcei jābūt skāņākai; vēl dažus pilienu etiķa, un tā būs diezgan skāņa.
17. Vai tu redzi šo interesanto suni? Es esmu ziņkārīga, kas tā par sugu.
18. Amatnieki jumj jumtu ar skārdu.
19. Daži vīrieši bija apskurbuši jau no paša rīta.
20. Aplūkosim dažus vēsturiskus faktus!
21. Kad zirgs sāka aulekšot, es pēkšņi jutu mugurā skaudras sāpes.
22. Sīvie dūmi kož man acīs.
23. Tas bija raženākais gads mūsu uzņēmuma vēsturē.
24. Zupa drīkst būt sāļa, bet ne skāņa.
25. Skārda jumts vairs nav labā stāvoklī.
26. Es redzēju viņu paslēpjot korķu velkamo parkā zem sūnām.
27. Vai jūs dzirdējāt šo vīrieti saucot pēc palīdzības? – Jā, viņš sauca skāņā balsī.
28. No rīta mēs aplūkojām aizvēsturiskās pils drupas.
29. Negrozīsim vēsturiskos faktus!
30. Šīs sīvas kaujas ir iegājušas vēsturē.
31. Ļaujiet man izrunāt visu, kas man sakāms!
32. Viņš ir par sīkstu, lai atbalstītu savus radus.
33. Es dzirdēju bērnu skaidri izrunājot katru zilbi.
34. Sīrmais kungs ar sārto seju ir kāds slavens komponists.
35. Sāļais ūdens kaitēs skārdam.
36. Neizpauž nevienu zilbi par mūsu plānu!
37. Korķis ir sīksts.
38. Sīrmais zirgs ir mūsu rāmākais braucamais zirgs.
39. Juris soppo par kādu meiteni zilām acīm un sārtiem vaigiem.
40. Lielais skapradis strādāja līdz sīrnam vecumam.
41. Man nepatīk šī modernā skapraža skaudrā mūzika.

Exercise 183g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The composer works only in the morning.
2. I do not want a tin fence in front of the front door.
3. My wife is antipathetic to this breed of dog, and would show great displeasure if I bought such a puppy. – No wonder, my wife and I would also be vexed.
4. I have no liking for this man.
5. With brisk steps he went to the park.
6. What do you know about the history of Latvia?
7. If this man had had honest intentions, he would not have invited you to the park.
8. There is a considerable number of prehistoric weapons in the museum.
9. We heard her yelling in her piercing voice.
10. One cannot alter history or historical facts.
11. Can you pronounce every syllable?
12. The miserly gipsy does not conceal his greed for money.
13. The fawn horse is a faster riding-horse than the bay.
14. It was the painter's intention to paint the hills in the morning, when the clouds are pink.
15. The milk is already sourish.
16. He has a sonorous voice.
17. The old man with the grey beard and bald head, whom you see in this picture, is a Latvian composer.
18. Waiter, the fish is too salty!
19. I cannot understand his enthusiasm for historical books.
20. After a short, bitter fight, we saw the enemy fleeing.
21. This gas has a biting, sourish smell.
22. The guard noticed a man stealing a prehistoric sword from the museum.
23. How do you pronounce this syllable?
24. This species of fish died out in prehistoric times.
25. The state of his health is very serious, but he is a tough old man.
26. His heartlessness and ambition frighten me.
27. I do not understand your longing for your father's house. Aren't you happy here?
28. The loud songs of the birds awakened the vagrant.
29. I feel a sharp pain in the chest.
30. When she fainted her cheeks were pale, but now they are rosy again.
31. I shall never have grey hair, for I have a bald head.
32. It is easier to swim in salt water.

LESSON 184

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -*st*- TYPE,
IMPERFECTS IN -*j*-

A few verbs ending in -*lt* have an -*st*- in the present tense, and a -*j*- in the imperfect. The imperfect of such verbs has the normal short *i* of -*j*- types in -*lt*.

dzīt 'to heal'

(used only in the third person)

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>dzīst</i>	<i>dzija</i>	<i>lai dzīst!</i>

Future: *dzīs*.

Conditional: *dzītu*.

Debitives: *jādzīst*, *bija jādzīst*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *dzījis*, *dzijuši*; *dzijusi*, *dzijušas*.

Present Participles Active: *dzīdams*, *dzīstošs*, *dzīstot*.

Present Participle Passive: **dzīstams*.

Vocabulary

(*sa-*)*dzīt* (*dzīst*, *dzija*)

(*no-*)*līt* (*līst*, *lija*)

uzlīt (-*līst*, -*lija*)

brūce

operācija

tornis

lūpa

piere

smuidrs

slāids

slāiks

slābans

slīdēns

slīps

smails

interese

to heal (intrans.)

to rain

to rain a little, splash, spill (**upon**)

wound

operation

tower, steeple

lip

forehead

pliant, flexible, supple

slender, slim

slender, slim

slack, flaccid; very tired (of limbs)

slippery

slanting, oblique

pointed, sharp

interest

<i>apnikums</i>	boredom; surfeit
<i>apkārtnē</i>	environment, vicinity
<i>iespaids</i>	effect, impression, influence
<i>rezultāts</i>	result
<i>iznākums</i>	result, outcome

NOTES: (*ne-*)*laimīgā kārtā* '(un-)fortunately'

Operācija has foreign monophthongal *o*.

atstāt iespaidu uz (+ acc.) 'to leave an impression on'

interese par 'interest in'

interese + infinitive 'interest in doing'

lietus līst 'it is raining'

iespaidā (with preceding gen.) 'under the effects, influence of'

Līst kā Jāņos 'It is raining cats and dogs' (i.e., as on a day when one hopes it won't).

Dzīt 'to heal' is pronounced with broken tone.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–150.

Exercise 184a

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *dzīt* (heal); *svīst*; *izvirst*; *salūzt*; *dzīst*; *apklust*; *žilbt*; *laist*; *ciest*; *uzaut*; *noskūt*; *splaut*; *skriet*; *dzīt* (drive); *pīt*; *izsmiet*; *pārmīt*; *pamāt*.

Exercise 184b

Give the past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 184a.

Exercise 184c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, *-ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 184a.

Exercise 184d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Kad es runāšu latviski...*

Exercise 184e

When is an *-i* required in the second person singular present and imperative of verbs of the Short Conjugation?

Exercise 184f

Translate into English:

1. Sīrmais skaņradis ar interesi aplūkoja vēsturiskās ērģeles.
2. Neviens vīrietis vēl nebija skūpstījis viņas sārtās lūpas.
3. Operācijas brūcei dzīstot, jūs drīkstēsīt staigāt pa parku, bet jūs vēl ilgi nedrīkstēsīt ēst sāļus un skāņus ēdienus.
4. Ganības bija bēdīgā stāvoklī, bet naktī laimīgā kārtā nolija ražens lietus.
5. Vai tev nav acu pierē (i.e., *in your head*), ka tu neredzi smailo televīzijas torni kalnā?
6. Operācijas brūce sadzija piecās nedēļās.
7. Mēs atkārtojām katru balsienu līdz apnikumam.
8. Lietus ūdens no skārda jumta līst uz ietnes.
9. Viņas slaidās kājas un smuīdrais augums atstāja uz Ludi lielu iespaidu.
10. Pēc operācijas brūces labi dzija.
11. Viņam nav ne mazākās intereses par aizvēsturiskiem ieročiem.
12. Jumtam jābūt slīpam, jo tikai no slīpa jumta, lietus līstot, ūdens tek lejā.
13. Vai tiešām visā plašajā apkārtnē nav neviena krogus?
14. Mēs ar lielu interesi lasījām pārbaudījuma rezultātus.
15. Sīvās cīņas iznākums bija bēdīgs.
16. Ja naktī līs, ceļi būs slideni, un pa slidenu ceļu jābrauc ļoti piesardzīgi.
17. Mācītājs izrunā katru zilbi skaņā balsī.
18. No šī augstā, smailā torņa redz katru māju desmit kilometru apkārtnē.
19. Slimnieks vēl ir operācijas iespaidā.
20. Zirgiem ir ļoti mīksts lūpas.
21. Es lasīju kādā grāmatā par šīs apkārtnes vēsturi.
22. Mēs dejojām līdz apnikumam, kamēr mūsu ķermeņi palika slābani.
23. Vai zīmulis ir smails diezgan?
24. Mēs šo vīru atradām ceļmalā ar brūci pierē. – Vai ceļš tanī vietā bija slidens? – Nē, bet ceļa mala bija slīpa.
25. Kādu iespaidu šī luga atstāja uz jums?
26. Velns, man uzlijusi eļļa uz biksēm!
27. Man nav ne mazāko šaubu par pārbaudījuma iznākumu.
28. Viņas slaidās un stiprās rokas pēc smagā darba bija pavisam slābanas.
29. No pils torņa dzirdēja lenaidnieku pūlot taures.

30. Ja cilvēks ir slaidis jeb slaiks, tas vēl nenozīmē, ka viņam jābūt nīpram.
31. No rīta uzlija lietus, un tagad laiks ir sutīgs.
32. Mums dega lūpas strebjot sāļo, karsto zivju zupu.
33. Es tevi apprecēju tava smuidrā auguma dēļ, bet nelaimīgā kārtā tu tagad esi izblīdusi.
34. Pie mājas aug smuidras egles.

Exercise 184g

Translate into Latvian:

1. If you multiply five by seven or seven by five, the result will always be thirty-five.
2. Why are you holding the rope so slackly?
3. The walls in the painter's studio (*darbnīca*) are slanting.
4. The operation has improved the state of his health, and he will soon be able to ride a motor-cycle again.
5. Oil from the motor has splashed on to the road, which is now slippery and dangerous.
6. The wound in his forehead is healing, and the doctor will examine it when it has healed completely.
7. On this slippery road one cannot gallop, but only trot.
8. This girl has apparently (*laikam*) made a great impression on you.
9. It is raining outside; why don't you come into the house?
10. There is not a single doctor within fifty kilometres.
11. I have not the slightest interest in these things, because I have already heard about them to the point of boredom.
12. If beneficial rain were to fall now, the harvest would be magnificent. – Yes, every drop of water is important at this time of year.
13. I am curious about the result. – I didn't know that you had an interest in sport: is that the effect of your new environment?
14. The moss is getting wet with dew.
15. We did not conceal our boredom when he made his tedious speech about the power of the church in the Middle Ages.
16. You will never pull the cork out with that corkscrew!
17. With a telescope you can see a pointed steeple on that distant island.
18. The bullet caught him in the forehead.
19. That is a very dangerous operation.
20. The tower collapsed after the twentieth shot of the cannon.
21. The wound was eight centimetres long.
22. The weather was quite calm although it was raining.

23. The spider's legs are as slender as pine-needles.
24. This slim young girl does not yet use lipstick. (Use the phrase *krāsot lūpas*.)
25. Who is the slender boy whom we saw riding the bicycle?
26. Beer must be a little bitter.
27. This dancer is as supple as a snake.

LESSON 185

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE, IMPERFECTS
IN -N-

The verbs *atzīt* and *pazīt* are conjugated like normal -st- types in the present, but switch to a nasal type imperfect, with the shortening to *i* which occurs with verbs of the pure nasal type.

atzīt 'to acknowledge'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es atzīstu</i>	<i>es atzinu</i>	–
<i>tu atzīsti</i>	<i>tu atzini</i>	<i>atzīsti!</i>
<i>viņš atzīst</i>	<i>viņš atzina</i>	<i>lai atzīst!</i>
<i>mēs atzīstam</i>	<i>mēs atzinām</i>	<i>atzīsim!</i>
<i>jūs atzīstat</i>	<i>jūs atzināt</i>	<i>atzīstiet!</i>
<i>viņi atzīst</i>	<i>viņi atzina</i>	<i>lai atzīst!</i>

Future: *es atzišu, tu atzīsi, viņš atzīs*, etc.

Conditional: *es atzītu, tu atzītu, viņš atzītu*, etc.

Debitives: *man jāatzīst, man bija jāatzīst*, etc.

Past Participle Active: *atzinis, atzinuši; atzinusi, atzinušas*.

Present Participles Active: *atzīdams; *atzīstošs; atzīstot*.

Present Participle Passive: *atzīstams*.

Vocabulary

<i>atzīt (atzīstu, atzinu)</i>	to acknowledge, to admit
<i>pazīt (pazīstu, pazīnu)</i>	to know, recognize (a person)
<i>pazīņa (m. or f.)</i>	an acquaintance
<i>piemērs</i>	example

<i>spuldze</i>	electric light globe
<i>pirmīt</i>	a while ago
<i>norakstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to copy; to bequeath
<i>spilgts</i>	bright, glaring
<i>spirgts</i>	lively, sprightly
<i>spļvs</i>	scornful, spiteful
<i>spraigs</i>	tense; intensive
<i>spulgs</i>	bright, brilliant, shining, sparkling
<i>staigns</i>	swampy
<i>stalts</i>	stately; well-built (of people)
<i>skumjas (pl.)</i>	sorrow
<i>bēda (often pl. bēdas)</i>	grief
<i>sēras (pl.)</i>	mourning
<i>bēres (pl.)</i>	funeral
<i>gājiens</i>	procession, walk, march
<i>paviršs</i>	superficial, rough, careless

NOTES: *spirgts un vesels* 'hale and hearty, safe and sound'
priekos un bēdās 'in happiness and grief'
sēru vītols 'weeping willow'
atzīt par 'to recognize as' (good, etc.)
pazīt pēc (balss, etc.) 'to recognize by' (voice, etc.)

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 173-182.

Exercise 185a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *pazīt; atzīt; iebūst; atskārst; salūzt; dzist; izmist; noģībt; izlaist; nojaust; aut; sūt; kraut; skriet; aizdzīt; tīt; smiet; norīt; jāt.*

Exercise 185b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 185a.

Exercise 185c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 185a.

Exercise 185d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Saruna pa tālrūni.*

Exercise 185e

Translate into English:

- Vai tu pazīsti šo slaido, stalto kungu, kas pirmīt ienāca zālē?
- Kāds labs paziņa nomiris, un man jāiet uz viņa bērēm.
- Krusttēvs tev norakstījis visu savu īpašumu.
- Pēc pavirša aplēsuma mūsu peļņa ir vienreizēja.
- Tas ir spilgts piemērs, ka cilvēka daba ir stiprāka par apkārtnes iespaidiem.
- Vai tu domā, ka viņi tiešām jūt dziļas sāras? Viņi tikai tēlo ļaužu priekšā.
- Esiet bez bēdām, operācijas brūce dzīst ļoti labi!
- Kas gan var aprakstīt vecāku skumjas un sāras?
- Brūce pierē sadzija, un viņš ir atkal spirgts un vesels.
- Bēru gājienā gāja prāvs skaits ļaužu.
- Vai viņa beidzot atzīst savu vainu?
- Sēru vītolam blakus aug smuidra egle.
- Tanī staignajā pļavā tu iestigi līdz ceļiem. – Vai tiešām upes krasts tai vietā ir tik staigns?
- Pašam meistaram jāatzīst, ka rezultāti ir labi.
- Pēc tik spraiga darba man nav intereses apciemot savus paziņas.
- Šī spuldze dod spilgtāku gaismu.
- Līdz tam smailajam tornim ir tikai stundas gājiens.
- Ja stipri uzlīs, ceļš būs slidens un ganības staignas.
- Šeit mēs redzam īstas draudzības piemēru.
- Pirmīt tikai drusku nolija, bet pašlaik līst kā Jāņos.
- Pēc ilgstošā spraigā darba rokas palika slābanas.
- Ieroči nedrīkst būt spulgi, jo ienaidnieks viegli ierauga katru spulgu priekšmetu.
- Ļauj man norakstīt šo jautro dzejoli!
- No rīta man jābūt spirtam, jo mani gaida spraigs darbs.
- Kāpēc tu pirmīt runāji tik spīvā balsī?
- Šo piemēru es neatzīstu par labu.
- Dumpiģie strādnieki rīkos gājienu pa pilsētu.
- Tavs paziņa laikam atkal dzer aiz bēdām, vai ne? – Ja tu pazītu skumjas, tu nerunātu tik spīvus vārdus!
- Skolnieks norakstīja aplēsuma iznākumu no sava drauga.
- Tev ir pavirša daba, tāpēc arī tavs darbs ir paviršs.

31. Es tevi tūlīt pazīnu pēc balss.
32. Pēc garā brauciena mēs vēl bijām spīrgti.
33. Šinī teātrī ir slīpa grīda.
34. Viņam ir stalts augums un slaikas rokas. – Pēc manām domām viņš nav stalts, bet resns.
35. Spuldžu spilgtā gaisma kaitē acīm, tāpēc spuldzes jāapsedz.
36. Šovakar visas manas skumjas nosliks špabī.
37. Ubagam ir tikai viens kārtīgs uzvalks, ko viņš glabā savām bērēm.

Exercise 185f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The second act could have been tenser.
2. Do you know this composer? – Just a moment, perhaps I shall recognize him by the music. Yes indeed, only Wagner (*Vāgners*) could have written such loud music!
3. The nobleman will bequeath this historic building and its spacious park to the university.
4. Why do people not admit their mistakes?
5. They were biting and scornful words.
6. In the morning the sunlight still is not glaring.
7. Was there a well-built gentleman with grey hair and a rosy face here a while ago?
8. This is only a rough calculation.
9. Give me an example from history.
10. Uncle Ludis is hale and hearty after the long march.
11. The officers have resplendent swords and buttons.
12. Peewits usually live in swamps and marshy meadows.
13. To whom shall I tell my sorrow and grief?
14. The whole nation was in deep mourning after the death of the king.
15. This water is not brackish, but it is sour.
16. Many people in the funeral procession fainted.
17. Our attic gets hot quickly, because the house has a tin roof.
18. The light globe gets hot in a few seconds.
19. My acquaintances in London have a dog of similar breed.
20. I do not appreciate such superficial work.
21. He paints in bright colours.
22. Has everyone copied the example from the blackboard?
23. My acquaintance is the head (*pārzinis*) of the local museum's prehistoric section.

24. A while ago you pronounced this syllable differently.
25. The harsh frost and biting wind have destroyed the rose bushes.
26. Grandfather is still tough and active.
27. The light globe shattered into a thousand pieces.
28. She spoke not one syllable after the funeral.
29. Only swans and other water birds live on that marshy island.
30. After the usual year of mourning, she married a merchant.
31. They come to the pastor with all their grief and sorrow.
32. His state of health does not permit hard (*spraigs*) work.

LESSON 186

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: -ST- TYPE, IMPERFECTS
IN -V-

A number of verbs in *-ūt* have a present tense in *-st-*, while the imperfect is in *-v-*, reminiscent of the *-j-* present and *-v-* imperfect type. As with this latter type, verbs of the type *-st-/v-* have a short vowel (in this case *-u-*) in the imperfect.

kļūt 'to become'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es kļūstu</i>	<i>es kļuvu</i>	–
<i>tu kļūsti</i>	<i>tu kļuvi</i>	<i>kļūsti!</i>
<i>viņš kļūst</i>	<i>viņš kļuva</i>	<i>lai kļūst!</i>
<i>mēs kļūstam</i>	<i>mēs kļuvām</i>	<i>kļūsim!</i>
<i>jūs kļūstat</i>	<i>jūs kļuvāt</i>	<i>kļūstiet!</i>
<i>viņi kļūst</i>	<i>viņi kļuva</i>	<i>lai kļūst!</i>

Future: *es kļūšu, tu kļūsi, viņš kļūs, etc.*

Conditional: *es kļūtu, tu kļūtu, viņš kļūtu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jākļūst, man bija jākļūst, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *kļuvis, kļuvuši; kļuvusi, kļuvušas.*

Present Participles Active: *kļūdams; kļūstošs; kļūstot.*

Present Participle Passive: **kļūstams.*

Vocabulary

<i>kļūt</i> (<i>kļūstu, kļuvu</i>)	to become
<i>nokļūt</i> (<i>-kļūstu, -kļuvu</i>)	to get (somewhere)
<i>(ie-)gūt</i> (<i>gūstu, guvu</i>)	to obtain, acquire
<i>atgūt</i> (<i>-gūstu, -guvu</i>)	to regain, win back
<i>(sa-)žūt</i> (<i>žūstu, žuvu</i>)	to become dry, dry out
<i>izžūt</i> (<i>-žūstu, -žuvu</i>)	to dry out (intrans.)
<i>nožūt</i> (<i>-žūstu, -žuvu</i>)	to dry off (intrans.)
<i>sagrūt</i> (<i>sagrūstu, sagruvu</i>)	to collapse, fall to ruins
<i>iegrūt</i> (<i>iegrūstu, iegruvu</i>)	to cave in
<i>(sa-)pūt</i> (<i>pūstu, puvu</i>)	to rot, putrefy
<i>pacietīgs</i>	patient (adj.)
<i>pamatīgs</i>	thorough, considerable
<i>pamats</i>	foundation; ground, reason
<i>padevīgs</i>	devoted; submissive
<i>izdevīgs</i>	favourable, advantageous, opportune
<i>stāvs</i>	steep
<i>stingrs</i>	strong; strict; tight
<i>stīvs</i>	stiff; formal
<i>straujš</i>	hasty, rash; swift (river, etc.)
<i>strups</i>	short, abrupt
<i>stulbs</i>	dull, obtuse
<i>gramatika</i>	grammar

NOTE: *uz kāda pamata?* 'for what reason, on what grounds?'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 116–130.

Exercise 186a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *iegūt; kļūt; atzīt; pazīt; izbīst; izvirst; lūzt; dzist; kust; samulst; atspirgt; izpaust; pūst; aut; skūt; siet; dzīt* (drive); *trīt; ieliet; pārmlt; atklāt; aplēst.*

Exercise 186b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 186a.

Exercise 186c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 186a.

Exercise 186d

What are the different uses of the *-ams/-āms* participle? Give examples.

Exercise 186e

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vētra*.

Exercise 186f

Translate into English:

1. Es atzīstu, ka esmu par stulbu, lai saprastu gramatikas likumus.
2. Kungs ir stingrs un nežēlīgs, bet viņam ir diezgan daudz padevīgu kalpu.
3. Es pirmīt nopirku divas spuldzes par piecdesmit centiem: vai tas nav izdevīgs pirkums?
4. Elkonis vēl ir drusku pastīvs, bet roka drīz atgūs agrāko spēku.
5. Kalns kļūst stāvāks, un manas kājas kļūst stīvākas ar katru soli augšup.
6. Ar kuru tramvaju es varu nokļūt tirgū? – Jūs tur varat nokļūt ar septiņpadsmito vai ar divdesmit pirmo; faktiski septiņpadsmitais jums būtu izdevīgāks, jo tas nepietur tik bieži kā divdesmit pirmais.
7. Ar šādu paviršu darbu tu nekad negūsi panākumus.
8. Skujas izžūst, bet nesapūst. – Staignā zemē tās pūst gan.
9. Šis straujais zirgs neder bērui gājienā; tas nav pacietīgs un sāks pūkēti aulekšot.
10. Vējā mati pamatīgi izžuva.
11. Jūsu paziņa nekad vairs neatgūs pilnīgu veselību.
12. Tagad derētu pamatīga maltīte.
13. Bumbām krītot, ēka drebēja pašos pamatos.
14. Kāpēc viņš tev norakstīja savu stulto pili?
15. Zemestrīcē sagruva daudz namu, un daudz ļaužu gāja bojā; visa valsts ir dziļās sērās.
16. Tikai muļķis tic, ka špabis aizdzen visas bēdas un skumjas.
17. Spīvajā vējā un spilgtajos saules staros letne ātri nožuva.
18. Es viņu tūlīt pazīnu pēc viņa strupā deguna.

19. Vidējos austrumos (= *The Middle East*) sievas ir klusas un padevīgas.
20. Nav brīnums, ka viesmīlis ir tik padevīgs un pacietīgs; es viņam iedevu pamatīgu dzeramnaudu.
21. Lielajā karstumā zāle izkalta, un dīķis izžuva.
22. Jumts iegruva, un arī sienas sagruva.
23. Tavs piemērs rāda, ka tu esi pamatīgi sapratis gramatikas likumu.
24. Ja mēs būsim pacietīgi, mēs atgūsim savu īpašumu.
25. Ja sēnes izkalst, tās nesapūst.
26. Ja tu no stāvā krasta iekristu straujajā upē, mēs nepaspētu tevi glābt.
27. Ko tava strupā atbilde panāca?
28. Āda nožūst ātri, bet mati žūst lēni.
29. Virve ir par slābanu, tā jāsasien stingrāk.
30. Pie debesīm mirdz spulga saule.
31. Spraiģā darbā pirksti kļūst stīvi.
32. Vai grīda jau nožuvusi?
33. Viņš raksta stāviem burtiem.
34. Es nevaru ciest viņa stulbo seju un strupo degunu.
35. Jūsu stulbais sargs mani nelaiž iekšā.
36. Mūsu mazdēls ir atkal spīrgts un vesels.
37. Es gribu iegūt daudz naudas.

Exercise 186g

Translate into Latvian:

1. We must be patient until (*kamēr*) a good rain falls.
2. What impression will their trade representative get if in fifty kilometres he does not see a single factory, hospital, high school or airfield? He will lose interest in our country, and to regain it will be difficult.
3. The pointed tower collapsed after the first cannon shot.
4. The planks have not dried out completely.
5. You can explain this matter to that stupid policeman until you are sick and tired of it (*līdz apnikumam*), but what will be the result?
6. The paint dries off quickly.
7. The road is steep and slippery, and the weather is not favourable for the journey.
8. The operation scar is healing well, and as soon as it has healed, we shall know whether your leg will remain stiff.
9. That young teacher is very strict.
10. The linen is drying in the attic.
11. You must be patient if you want to win the love of this girl.
12. The sheets will dry well in this wind.

13. It rained a little in the morning, but so little fell (*uzlīt*) upon the road that the foot-path will dry off in a few minutes.
14. The ceiling of the cellar is slowly caving in.
15. The Gauja is much swifter than the quiet rivers of Zemgale.
16. The leaves and stalks dry out, but the roots rot away.
17. Nobody can regain his youth.
18. Are the foundations strong enough?
19. On what grounds did you arrest this innocent man?
20. Oh dear, the dog is gnawing a rotting, stinking bone!
21. That was a thorough examination.
22. He has not the slightest idea of grammar.
23. The bay horse is very swift.
24. Her parents are so strict that they do not allow her to use lipstick (*krāsot lūpas*).
25. The photographer says that the light here is not favourable.
26. I did not expect such an abrupt answer.
27. In my youth my arms and legs were supple, but now they are becoming stiff.
28. That grammar book was printed in our local printing house.
29. Why are the stairs so steep in this old castle?

LESSON 187

THE PAST PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

The Past Participle Passive is the most easily formed of all Latvian participles. One simply takes the whole infinitive as stem, and adds *-s* to form the masculine nominative singular form.

Infinitive	Past Participle Passive	
<i>nomizot</i>	<i>nomizots</i>	peeled, having been peeled
<i>salaulāt</i>	<i>salaulāts</i>	married, having been married
<i>saņemt</i>	<i>saņemts</i>	received, having been received
<i>salauzt</i>	<i>salauzts</i>	broken, having been broken
<i>spēlēt</i>	<i>spēlēts</i>	played, having been played
<i>uzpost</i>	<i>uzposts</i>	tidied, having been tidied

The Past Participle Passive can normally be formed only from transitive verbs. Notice that the closed *ņ* of the infinitive becomes open in the Past Participle Passive.

The participle is used as an adjective, and has the full set of adjectival endings, both definite and indefinite.

INDEFINITE

pirkts 'having been bought'

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>pirkts</i>	<i>pirkti</i>	<i>pirkta</i>	<i>pirktas</i>
Acc.	<i>pirktu</i>	<i>pirktus</i>	<i>pirktu</i>	<i>pirktas</i>
Gen.	<i>pirkta</i>	<i>pirktu</i>	<i>pirktas</i>	<i>pirktu</i>
Dat.	<i>pirktam</i>	<i>pirktiem</i>	<i>pirktai</i>	<i>pirktām</i>
Loc.	<i>pirktā</i>	<i>pirktos</i>	<i>pirktā</i>	<i>pirktās</i>

DEFINITE

pirktais 'having been bought'

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>pirktais</i>	<i>pirktie</i>	<i>pirktā</i>	<i>pirktās</i>
Acc.	<i>pirkto</i>	<i>pirktos</i>	<i>pirkto</i>	<i>pirktās</i>
Gen.	<i>pirktā</i>	<i>pirkto</i>	<i>pirktās</i>	<i>pirkto</i>
Dat.	<i>pirktajam</i>	<i>pirktajiem</i>	<i>pirktajai</i>	<i>pirktajām</i>
Loc.	<i>pirktajā</i>	<i>pirktajos</i>	<i>pirktajā</i>	<i>pirktajās</i>

The following examples should make the adjectival use of the Past Participle Passive quite clear:

Vai tu esi redzējis nozagto mašīnu?

Have you seen the stolen car?

Ārsts domā, ka man ir trīs laužti kauli.

The doctor thinks I have three broken bones.

Vai nevārtu gaļu var ēst?

Can one eat uncooked meat?

Bērni sekoja ubagam pa neslaucītajām ielām.

The children followed the beggar through the unswept streets.

Often an English subordinate clause can be rendered in Latvian with the past participle passive:

The car which had been stolen...

Nozagtā mašīna...

The books which had been sold...

Pārdotās grāmatas...

Vocabulary

<i>šaubīgs</i>	doubtful; ill-reputed, suspicious
<i>šķidr</i>	runny, liquid
<i>šķībs</i>	slanting, oblique, crooked
<i>tautisks</i>	national
<i>teicams</i>	praiseworthy, commendable
<i>tipisks</i>	typical
<i>tizls</i>	lame; maimed, paralyzed
<i>tiešs</i>	direct
<i>tramīgs</i>	fearful; excitable
<i>trauksmains</i>	impetuous, turbulent
<i>trausls or trusls (rare)</i>	brittle, fragile
<i>trēkns</i>	fat
<i>truls</i>	blunt; dull, obtuse
<i>tukls</i>	corpulent, stout
<i>raksturs</i>	character
<i>izveicīgs</i>	adroit, clever
<i>izvēllīgs</i>	fastidious, particular, fussy
<i>trūcīgs</i>	insufficient, inadequate, poor
<i>tūļīgs</i>	slow, sluggish
<i>mainīgs</i>	variable, inconsistent; fickle, capricious

NOTES: *laulātais draugs* 'husband'

laulātā draudzene 'wife'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 151-160.

Exercise 187a

Translate into English:

1. *Nozagta mašīna;*
2. *nolaistie koki;*
3. *nogrieztā maize;*
4. *saplēstas grāmatas;*
5. *aizmirstā dzejoli;*
6. *nemazgātajās pudelēs;*
7. *viņas netzsacītās bailes;*
8. *darbā pavadītais laiks.*

Exercise 187b

Translate into Latvian:

1. *The books that were sold;*
2. *newly baked bread;*
3. *in front of the unpainted barn;*
4. *in the uncleaned bathroom;*
5. *rubbish that has been thrown away;*
6. *the rings that were bought;*
7. *uncooked meat;*
8. *because of all the unsolved problems;*
9. *the rejected suitor;*
10. *John's unshaven beard.*

Exercise 187c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *nokļūt; atzīt; pakļūt; atskārst; lūzt; atdzist; aizmirst; dzimt; glaust; jaust; uzaut; pašūt; kraut; skriet.*

Exercise 187d

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 187c.

Exercise 187e

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 187c.

Exercise 187f

Give, where appropriate, the past participle passive form of the verbs listed in Ex. 187c.

Exercise 187g

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Lauzts kauls.*

Exercise 187h

Translate into English:

1. Mans māceklis ir izveicīgs zēns, viņš salabos jūsu salauzto krēslu.
2. Nelaidiet šo tramīgo kucēnu istabā, tas apgāzīs traukus!
3. Šī ir tipiska astoņpadsmitā gadu simteņa glezna.
4. Aprīlī laiks ir tik mainīgs, ka mēs nezinām, ko gērbt mugurā.
5. Jo šķidrāka eļļa, jo straujāk tā tecēs pa cauruli.
6. Es neesmu izvēlīgs, jo savā jaunībā es dzīvoju trūcīgos apstākļos.
7. Skolotājam jābūt pacietīgam ar tūļīgiem un neizveicīgiem bērniem.
8. Braucot ar šo vilcienu, jūs tiešā ceļā nokļūsit Cēsīs.
9. Slimnieks nekad neatgūs veselību, jo kreisā kāja ir kļuvusi stīva un tizla.
10. Juris ir teicams taurētājs.
11. Šā baleta pamats ir kāda vienkārša tautas deja.
12. Kaut gan viņš ir tizls, viņš tomēr nav tūļīgs.
13. Par šo trekno zosi es samaksāju tikai divus rubļus; izdevīgs pirkums, vai ne? – Tā ir šaubīga lieta, varbūt tā bija zagta.
14. Viņa straujā, trauksmainā daba sabiedē tos, kas viņu tuvāk nepazīst.
15. Vīna glāzes kāts ir trausls kā lāstekas.
16. Lidmašīnas lido tiešā līnijā pār jūru.
17. Skolnieka klases darbs bija vājš, bet mājas darbs teicams.
18. Nama logi un durvis ir šķībi, un jumts drīz sagraus.
19. Kāpēc tu trulajam zēnam tik strupi atbildēji? – Tikai tāpēc, ka viņš ir tik neizveicīgs.
20. Tajā vecumā sievietes vairs nedrīkst būt tik izvēlīga, sevišķi tad, ja viņa jau ir patukla.
21. Pēc operācijas slimnieks dabūja tikai šķidru barību.
22. Izveicīgiem amatniekiem priekšnieks maksā pamatīgu algu.
23. Mans laulātais draugs ir tukls un tūļīgs, un viņam ir šķībs deguns, bet zelta raksturs.
24. Stāvas klintis ir tipiskas šīnī apkārtnē.
25. Pie durvīm stāv kāds šaubīgs vīrietis trūcīgā apģērbā.
26. Tas ir tipisks tautisks teiciens, kas neatbilst gramatikas likumiem.
27. Kaut gan uznāca trauksmaina vētra, grāmatvedis aizgāja tiešā ceļā uz staciju.
28. Temperātūra ir mainīga, bet veļa žūst labi un līdz saules rietam būs izžuvusi.
29. Veciem ļaudīm ir trausli kauli.
30. Es guvu iespaidu, ka Ludis grib iegūt šīs trauslās meitenes sirsniņu.
31. Jo šķidrāka krāsa, jo ātrāk tā nožūst.
32. Vai glezna pie sienas nav šķība?
33. Izmazgātie kreklī pagalmā žūstot kļūst putekļaini.
34. Ja siens paliek mitrs, tas pūst.

35. Puse pirkto augļu sapuva pēc dažām dienām.
36. Nomazgātai grīdai jānožūst.
37. Tizlais ubags sēž uz apgāztās mucas.
38. Mednieka suns neatrada nošauto pīli.
39. Noziedznieku iemeta cietumā sasietām rokām un kājām.
40. Sazāgētos baļķus pašlaik krauj kuģī.
41. Nopļautā labība jāved no lauka mājās.
42. No lielā karstuma augļi sažūst kokā.

Exercise 187i

Translate into Latvian:

1. He does not appreciate simple folk (*tautisks*) tunes.
2. This is a praiseworthy example.
3. Only a few of the soldiers were still fresh (*spirgts*) after the long march.
4. I did not expect such a commendable answer from that dull, fat school-girl.
5. That apprentice will break the fragile globes; only an adroit person can do (*veikt*) this job.
6. The royal family is in deep mourning.
7. The result is still doubtful.
8. We could not travel by the direct route, because the main road was snow-bound.
9. His wife is squandering his hard-earned money, and he is too weak to say a word.
10. At the beginning of the year, Aivars's class work was poor, but at the end of the year his parents were happy at (*par*) the praiseworthy result.
11. Do you know that lame man who went past just now?
12. I admit that I have a changeable character, but I am not fastidious.
13. The gravy must be thinner (*šķidr*).
14. Please give a direct answer.
15. The wounded soldiers were carried to hospital.
16. He is a typical representative of the noble class.
17. This eel is too fat.
18. In grandmother's youth, girls did not walk about the streets with painted lips and fingernails.
19. Your acquaintance is too hasty and impetuous. – That is no worry (*bēda*) of yours; the ladies like impetuous men. – Yes indeed, and then they marry some meek (*rāms*) public servant.
20. Some planks were crooked, master. – I know, boy; they must be crooked.
21. The honey will become runny when you warm it up a bit.

22. His mood (*gara stāvoklis*) is so capricious that we do not know to whom he will bequeath his property.
23. One can walk along this ill-reputed street only in bright daylight.
24. The forest-ranger's assistant will show you the safest way through the marshy pastures.
25. Did you really see a brilliant object flying through the air?
26. The portly old actor tried to conceal his sorrow after the funeral.
27. The maimed beggar was waiting in front of the closed door.
28. Bind the arrested criminals' hands!
29. He is a man of (*ar*) character.
30. These fine needles are made of fine, but brittle, steel.
31. Don't be so fussy! The meat is not too fat.
32. They disappeared with the stolen gems.
33. He was sitting on the tree that had been felled.
34. This slow workman will never regain the lost (*nokavēts*) time.

LESSON 188

THE PASSIVE VOICE

The passive voice in Latvian is formed with the verb *tikt* ('to become') and the past participle passive. Less commonly, *kļūt* is used instead of *tikt*, or very infrequently *tapt*. Thus the English 'I am being deceived' becomes in Latvian 'I become deceived'. The passive is not very common in Latvian, and many of the following forms are rare indeed, the more abstruse ones being little more than hypothetical. We give them here only for the sake of completeness. See Lesson 189.

Present Tense

<i>es tieku pievilts (pievilta)</i>	I am being deceived
<i>tu tiek pievilts (pievilta)</i>	you are being deceived
<i>viņš tiek pievilts</i>	he is being deceived
<i>viņa tiek pievilta</i>	she is being deceived
<i>mēs tiekam pievilti (pievilts)</i>	we are being deceived
<i>jūs tiek pievilts (pievilta, pievilti, pievilts)</i>	you are being deceived
<i>viņi tiek pievilti</i>	they are being deceived
<i>viņas tiek pievilts</i>	they are being deceived

Imperfect Tense

<i>es tiku traucēts (traucēta)</i>	I was being hindered
<i>tu tiki traucēts (traucēta)</i>	you were being hindered
<i>viņš tika traucēts</i>	he was being hindered
<i>viņa tika traucēta</i>	she was being hindered
<i>mēs tikām traucēti (traucētas)</i>	we were being hindered
<i>jūs tikāt traucēts (traucēta, traucēti, traucētas)</i>	you were being hindered
<i>viņi tika traucēti</i>	they were being hindered
<i>viņas tika traucētas</i>	they were being hindered

Future Tense

<i>es tikšu apcietināts (apcietināta)</i>	I shall be arrested
<i>tu tiks apcietināts (apcietināta)</i>	you will be arrested
<i>viņš tiks apcietināts</i>	he will be arrested
<i>viņa tiks apcietināta</i>	she will be arrested
<i>mēs tiksim apcietināti (apcietinātas)</i>	we shall be arrested
<i>jūs tiksiet apcietināts (apcietināta, apcietināti, apcietinātas)</i>	you will be arrested
<i>viņi tiks apcietināti</i>	they will be arrested
<i>viņas tiks apcietinātas</i>	they will be arrested

Conditional

<i>es tiktu nošauts (nošauta)</i>	I would be shot
<i>tu tiktu nošauts (nošauta)</i>	you would be shot
<i>viņš tiktu nošauts</i>	he would be shot
<i>viņa tiktu nošauta</i>	she would be shot
<i>mēs tiktu nošauti (nošautas)</i>	we would be shot
<i>jūs tiktu nošauts (nošauta, nošauti, nošautas)</i>	you would be shot
<i>viņi tiktu nošauti</i>	they would be shot
<i>viņas tiktu nošautas</i>	they would be shot

Imperative

<i>tiec slavēts (slavēta)!</i>	be praised
<i>lai tiek slavēts (slavēta)!</i>	let him (her) be praised
<i>tiksim slavēti (slavētas)!</i>	let us be praised
<i>ticiet slavēts (slavēta, slavēti, slavētas)!</i>	be praised
<i>lai tiek slavēti (slavētas)!</i>	let them be praised

Perfect Tenses

The perfect auxiliary (*ticis, tikusi*, etc.) is normally omitted from the perfect tense forms of the passive voice.

<i>es esmu (biju, būšu, būtu) ievainots (ievainota)</i>	I have (had, shall have, would have) been injured
<i>tu esi (biji, būsi, būtu) ievainots (ievainota)</i>	you have (had, will have, would have) been injured
<i>viņš (viņa) ir (bija, būs, būtu) ievainots (ievainota)</i>	he (she) has (had, will have, would have) been injured
<i>mēs esam (bijām, būsim, būtu) ievainoti (ievainotas)</i>	we have (had, shall have, would have) been injured
<i>jūs esat (bijāt, būsit, būtu) ievainots (ievainota, ievainoti, ievainotas)</i>	you have (had, will have, would have) been injured
<i>viņi (viņas) ir (bija, būs, būtu) ievainoti (ievainotas)</i>	they have (had, will have, would have) been injured

Debitives (somewhat hypothetical)

<i>man jātiek noķertam (noķertai)</i>	I must be caught
<i>tev bija jātiek noķertam (noķertai)</i>	you had to be caught
<i>viņam būs jātiek noķertam</i>	he will have to be caught
<i>viņai būtu jātiek noķertai</i>	she would have to be caught
<i>mums ir bijis jātiek noķertiem (noķertām)</i>	we have had to be caught
<i>jums bija bijis jātiek noķertam (noķertai, noķertiem, noķertām)</i>	you had had to be caught
<i>viņiem būs bijis jātiek noķertiem</i>	they will have had to be caught
<i>viņām būtu bijis jātiek noķertām</i>	they would have had to be caught

Note the agreement in the dative of the past participle passive with the dative subject.

Participles (extremely hypothetical)

(1) in *-dams*:

<i>tikdams celts</i>	being lifted
<i>tikdama celta</i>	being lifted
<i>tikdami celti</i>	being lifted
<i>tikdamas celtas</i>	being lifted

(2) in *-ošs*:

No passive is possible, since the *-ošs* participle is formed only from intransitive verbs.

(3) in *-ot*:*Tiekot sists, puika skaļi raudāja.*

Being beaten, the boy cried loudly.

or in the dative absolute construction:

Kuģim tiekot ielaistam ūdenī, orķestris iesāka spēlēt.

As the ship was being launched, the band began to play.

(4) in *-ams/-āms*:No passive is possible for the declinable *-ams/-āms* participle, although the shortened form in *-am/-ām* may have a passive:*Vai tu redzēji koku tiekam nocirstu?*

Did you see the tree being chopped down?

(5) the past participle active:

Tikušas ieraudzītas, meitenes mēģināja aizskriet.

Having been seen, the girls tried to run away.

An important distinction must be made between the purely passive constructions, and those in which the past participle passive is simply adjectival:

es esmu ievainots

I am wounded

es tieku ievainots

I am being wounded

The former describes a state, not an action, and it is therefore purely adjectival, not verbal, and for this reason it is construed with *būt*, not *tikt*. On the other hand, the second example describes an action, not a state: it is therefore verbal, and the passive with *tikt* (or occasionally *kļūt*, rarely *tapt*) is required.

The passive infinitive appears in two distinct forms, the past participle passive being in the nominative in the first type:

Es negribu tikt ievainots (ievainota).

I do not want to be injured.

Viņš var tikt apcietināts.

He can be arrested.

In these sentences, the passive infinitive is dependent upon some other word in the sentence: *negribu* in the first and *var* in the second. Under these circumstances, the past participle passive appears in the nominative, with agreement in number and gender with the subject. When the passive infinitive stands independently, however, e.g., when cited as in a dictionary entry, when used in elliptical sentences, or when used substantively as subject, the past participle

passive is in the dative, with number and gender agreement according to the sense:

"tikt ievainotam"

"to be injured"

"Tikt noķertai?" viņa prasīja.

"Get caught?" she asked.

Nav labi tikt ievainotam.

It is not good to be injured.

A passive verb should not be accompanied by an agent or instrument. English passives with an agent or instrument expressed should be rendered in Latvian by an active verb, with the agent or instrument as subject.

The house was built.

Māja tika uzbūvēta.

but:

The house was built by the workmen.

Strādnieki uzbūvēja māju.

The mill was destroyed.

Dzirnavas tika iznīcinātas.

but:

The mill was destroyed by the great wind.

*Lielais vējš iznīcināja dzirnavas.*The agent or instrument can be expressed, however, when the passive is not a finite verb, but simply participial. The agent is usually expressed by the genitive case without preposition, and the instrument by the preposition *ar*, which can frequently be omitted in the plural.*Brāļa pirktais gredzens ir ļoti dārgs.*

The ring bought by brother is very expensive.

Manu vistu dētās olas ir ļoti lielas.

The eggs laid by my hens are very large.

Vai tu redzēji tēva iestādīto jauno koku?

Did you see the new tree planted by father?

Vocabulary

No vocabulary is given in this lesson. The student should familiarize himself thoroughly with the grammar above.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 176-185.

Exercise 188a
(for completeness only)

Translate into English:

1. Es tieku nopelts.
2. Tu tiki nesta.
3. Jānis tiks sists.
4. Kaut Ieva tiktu bildināta!
5. Netiec noķerts!
6. Netieciet ievainoti!
7. Netiksim piekrāpti!
8. Lai viņa tiek dzirdēta!
9. Tikdamas sveicinātas, dāmas smaidīja.
10. Vai tu redzēji zirgus tiekam barotus?
11. Aitas, tiekot nozagtas, blēja.
12. Teikumam jātiek atkārtotam.
13. Kad rudziem būs jātiek iesētiem?
14. Neviens negrib tikt ievainots.
15. Ierēdnis bija uzpirkts.
16. Nav labi tikt piekrāptam.

Exercise 188b

Translate into Latvian:

1. The ring bought by father;
2. the houses destroyed by the fire;
3. the eel speared by the fisherman;
4. the picture painted by Charles;
5. the lion wounded by the weapon;
6. the music played by the orchestra;
7. The ring was bought by father.
8. The houses were destroyed by the fire.
9. The eel was speared by the fisherman.
10. The picture was painted by Charles.
11. The lion was wounded by the weapon.
12. The music was played by the orchestra.

Exercise 188c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect, active and passive: *aizmirst; paspiest; izsmiet; uzpirkt; pārprast; vest; sist; svērt; noķert; apburt; nest; pievilt; stumt; glābt; aplenk.*

Exercise 188d

Give the *-dams, -ot,* and *-ams/-āms* forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 188c, and of the following additional verbs: *kļūt; pazīt; ienīst; atskārst; mirt; ost; izplest; aut; iejaut; skriet.*

Exercise 188e

Give, where appropriate, the *-ošs* forms and the forms of the past participle passive of the verbs listed in Ex. 188c and Ex. 188d.

Exercise 188f

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Aizputināts ceļš.*

Exercise 188g

Translate into English:

1. Nav brīnums, ka nams sagruva, jo tas nebija celts uz stingriem pamatiem.
2. Veļa tiek uzkārtā bēniņos, jo tur tā ātri izžūst.
3. Tikt ievainotam kaujā kādreiz bija liels gods.
4. Kad pils krita dumpīgā pūļa rokās, karaļa padevīgie kalpi tika nošauti, bet kad karalis atguva savu zemi un īpašumu, visi dumpīgie virsnieki un ierēdņi tika pakārti.
5. Nevienai sievai nepatīk tikt piekrāptai un apcēlta.
6. Pūstošās zivis tika ieraktas dziļā bedrē, kur tās pilnīgi sapūs.
7. Zirgs pašlaik tiek iejūgts.
8. Laupītāji laikam būs noķerti.
9. Kāpēc gramatikas likumi šeit netiek paskaidroti? Kā lai tie skolniekiem kļūst saprotami?
10. Ciemiņi gūs labu iespaidu, kad viņiem parādīs mūsu pilsētas parku.
11. Šodien zvejniekiem nav izdevīga diena, tikai dažas zivis tika noķertas.
12. Viņa grāmatai jātiek atzītai. – Esi nu pacietīgs! Drīz visa pasaule to atzīs.
13. Āboli žūst jau dienas piecas; vai tie vēl nebūs sažuvuši?
14. Grīda nupat tika nomazgāta, neejiet iekšā, kamēr tā nav nožuvusi!
15. Kāja kļūs stīva, ja tā netiks vingrināta.
16. Krastam būs jātiek izskalotam (= *eroded away*), jo upe šeit ir tik strauja.
17. Vai viņam nav kauna tikt pieveiktam?
18. Šīs grāmatas ir iespiestas Rīgā.
19. Nesagatavotam studentam būs grūti izturēt pārbaudījumu.

Exercise 188h

Translate into Latvian:

1. The liquid fat is being poured into a big dish.
2. This praiseworthy novel has been recognized for a long time.
3. Typical folk-songs are sung only in this province.
4. The cows will be driven to the stable by the direct route.
5. The older he gets, the more particular he becomes with wine and women.
6. For a skilful tradesman, it is nothing new to be praised.
7. The bank was robbed.
8. That young nobleman was brought up on his father's estate. – No wonder he is so timid in the company of city people.
9. This maimed man was wounded in battle.
10. The poor homework had to be corrected.
11. She is not loved, because of her fickle character.
12. In the Middle Ages it was better to be killed in battle than to be injured.
13. Several crooked teeth were pulled out.
14. I had a turbulent youth, and I have often been cheated. – Yes, life has cheated us all.
15. He had to wait while his coat was being mended.
16. How many times has she been arrested?
17. They (f.) have not been chosen.
18. The gate was closed before sunset.
19. She is a beautiful girl: no wonder he has been enchanted.
20. The rubbish should have been buried.
21. The robber will be hanged by the executioner.
22. Jack had been enchanted by her beauty.

LESSON 189

AVOIDANCE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

The student may be glad to know that passive constructions are quite rare in Latvian, and that normally a paraphrase in the active voice is preferred, even when the passive is not expanded with an agent or instrument. Constructions with an impersonal subject become important in avoiding the passive.

Vai tu tiki traucēts?

Were you being hindered?

is better expressed

Vai tevi traucēja?

Was anyone hindering you?

and similarly with the following pairs, in which the second version is preferable to the first.

Es negribētu kļūt redzēts.

Es negribētu, ka mani redz.

I would not wish to be seen.

Vai šeit tiek pārdoti sīpoli?

Vai šeit pārdod sīpolus?

Are onions sold here?

Noziedznieks drīz tiks apcietināts.

Noziedznieku drīz apcietinās.

The criminal will soon be arrested.

Vocabulary

vialgs

moist, damp

valgans

dampish, moist

varēns

powerful, mighty

viārgs

ailing, infirm

vieikls

skilful, dexterous

vngrs

agile, springy

venaldzīgs

indifferent

vienalga

it makes no difference, it's all the same

vientuļš

lonely, solitary

ziņkāre

curiosity, inquisitiveness

z mīgs

significant

vⁱentiesīgs

simple, simple-minded, foolish

vⁱenpusīgs

one-sided

vⁱenmuļīgs

monotonous

ai zdomīgs

suspicious

greizsirdīgs

jealous

greizsirdība

jealousy

patstāvīgs

independent, self-supporting

patstāvība

independence

pārliecināt (-u, -āju)

to convince, to persuade

pārliecība

conviction

NOTES: *vienaldzīgs* pret 'indifferent to'

Vienalga is stressed upon the second syllable. It is mostly used with a dative of the person, e.g., *man vienalga, tev vienalga*. The verb *būt* serves as a tense marker: *man bija vienalga* 'I didn't care'.

greizsirdīgs uz (+ acc.) 'jealous of'

nākt pie pārliecības, ka 'to come to the conclusion that'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 161–170.

Exercise 189a

Translate into Latvian, using non-passive forms:

1. Why were you being scolded?
2. When will the representatives be chosen?
3. He is easily convinced.
4. He wants to be woken at seven.
5. I should have been warned.
6. Apples are no longer sold here.
7. If the bridge is destroyed by the raging current, we shall have to remain here.
8. Do not be deceived.
9. Were you recognized?

Exercise 189b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *atgūt; nokļūt; pazīt; atzīt; izblīst; iebīst; izvirst; lūzt; iekarst; alkt; aizsviest; nojaust; uzaut; noskūt; pļaut; skriet; dzīt (drive); ietīt; ieliet; norīt; spēt; krimst; cirst; cirpt; pirkt; vilkt; atrast; saprast; ierakt; noģist; pazust; ēst; nokrist; mest; atvērt; uzkārt; iemigt; mukt; skart; art; vemt; aplēst; iebāzt; malt; uzlēkt; pārnākt; apsegt; kliegt; iet; dot; būt; tecēt.*

Exercise 189c

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 189b.

Exercise 189d

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot,* and *-ams/-āms* of the verbs listed in Ex. 189b.

Exercise 189e

Give, where appropriate, the participial form in *-ošs* and the past participle passive of the verbs listed in Ex. 189b.

Exercise 189f

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Makšķerējot.*

Exercise 189g

Translate into English:

1. Tavi vārdi tā pārliecināja vientiesīgo kārtībnieku, ka viņš vairs nebija aizdomīgs.
2. Ir zīmīgs fakts, ka deviņpadsmitajā gadu simtenī Āfrikā bija maz patstāvīgu valstu, bet pēdējos divdesmit gados daudz valstu tur ieguvušas patstāvību.
3. Viņš tika nošauts savas pārlicības dēļ.
4. Vienalga, ko es daru un kurp es eju, mana sieva būs aizdomīga un greizsirdīga. Beidzot es esmu nācis pie pārlicības, ka viņas greizsirdība ir īsta slimība.
5. Kas viņam par varenu, kuplu bārdu!
6. Vai viņas ziņkāre tevi traucē? – Nē, viņas ziņkāre mani netraucē.
7. Jo vairāk tu spēlēsi klavieres, jo tavi pirksti kļūs veiklāki un vingrāki.
8. Lopi paliks slimi, ēdot valgano sienu.
9. Vecpuiši slavē savu brīvo dzīvi, bet vecumā, būdami vārgi, viņi ir vientuļi.
10. Mūsu dienu zinātnieki nav tik vienpusīgi, kā ļaudis domā.
11. Vientiesīgiem strādniekiem patīk vienmuļīgs darbs.
12. Kad noziedznieku apcietināja, viņš bija tik vienaldzīgs, ka teica: "Man vienalga, vai mani pakar vai nošauj!" – Nu, vai viņš tika pakārts? – Nē. – Vai viņš tika nošauts? – Arī nē. Viņš izspruka no cietuma.
13. Lidmašīnas motoriem vienmuļīgi rūcot, es drīz iemīgu.
14. Veiklā māsa (here = nursing sister) vingrām rokām apsēja slimniekam valgu apsēju ap pampstošo elkoni.
15. Varenais karalis vecumā bija vārgs un pilnīgi vienaldzīgs pret savu apkārtni.
16. Vai jūs esat patstāvīgs amatnieks? – Nē, ko tas līdz būt patstāvīgam? (Observe this dative after *būt*. This occurs under similar conditions to the dative in the passive infinitive. See Lesson 188.) – Tā varbūt ir ļoti zīmīga atbilde, bet es esmu pārāk vientiesīgs, lai to saprastu.
17. Kad vārgais ubags pēkšņi sāka skriet veikliem un vingriem soļiem, policists kļuva aizdomīgs.
18. Dzejnieks meklēja pilsētas parkā vientuļu vietu.
19. Ja mūsu bērnu izglītība būs vienpusīga, arī viņi paši būs vienpusīgi savā dzīvē; tā ir mana pārlicība.
20. Manai sievai nav iemesla būt greizsirdīgai uz Ozola jaunkundzi.
21. Šinī pantā dzejnieks apraksta ilgas pēc savas zemes patstāvības.

22. Tava ziņkāre ir lielāka par tavu greizsirdību.
23. Beidz svilpot šo vienmuļīgo meldīju!
24. Tavs vīrs nemaz nav tik vienaldzīgs, kā tu domā, viņš ir greizsirdīgs, bet prot slēpt savu greizsirdību.
25. Mūsu sabiedrības dāmas apciemo vientuļus slimniekus, kuriem nav ne radu, ne draugu.
26. Pagraba sienas ir valšanas.
27. No rīta tev jābūt darbā, vienalga, vai tu esi dzēris iepriekšējā vakarā, vai ne.

Exercise 189h

Translate into Latvian:

1. In which year did modern Greece gain its independence?
2. It doesn't matter to me why these young people are looking for a solitary spot in the park.
3. I am tortured neither by curiosity nor by jealousy.
4. Conversations with my wife are usually one-sided.
5. If you really believe that the police will not be suspicious, then you are indeed foolish.
6. My husband is so indifferent towards me!
7. You have performed (*veikt*) a tremendous task.
8. If you want to do weaving, you must have skilful hands and agile feet.
9. How will your children ever become independent if you give them a one-sided education?
10. The ailing cow will have to be slaughtered by the butcher.
11. His monotonous and boring speech was too long, and his empty words convinced nobody.
12. Even (*arī*) in a big city a person can be lonely.
13. In this hotel the sheets are damp and the food is monotonous.
14. The squirrel's curiosity is greater than its fear.
15. My husband is too simple to be jealous or suspicious. – That is a very significant remark, madam.
16. If your wife were indifferent to you, she would not be jealous.
17. Isn't it a matter of indifference where a person is born?
18. This factory belongs to an independent company.
19. My apprentice will be a skilful tradesman, for he has agile hands and a bright head.
20. Your jealousy is getting on my nerves.
21. The wounded soldier is too infirm to lie on that moist pile of hay.

LESSON 190

THE SHORT CONJUGATION: THE VERBS *BRIST* AND *LIST*

The verbs *brist* and *list* have a present tense in *-ienu*, and a dental imperfect in *-d-*, the vowel quantity in the imperfect being the same as that of the infinitive, i.e., short in the case of *brist* and long in the case of *list*.

brist 'to wade'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es brienu</i>	<i>es bridu</i>	–
<i>tu brien</i>	<i>tu bridi</i>	<i>brien!</i>
<i>viņš brien</i>	<i>viņš brida</i>	<i>lai brien!</i>
<i>mēs brienam</i>	<i>mēs bridām</i>	<i>bridīsim!</i>
<i>jūs brienat</i>	<i>jūs bridāt</i>	<i>brieniet!</i>
<i>viņi brien</i>	<i>viņi brida</i>	<i>lai brien!</i>

Future: *es bridīšu, tu bridīsi, viņš bridīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es bristu, tu bristu, viņš bristu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jābrien, man bija jābrien, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *bridis, briduši; bridusi, bridušas.*

Present Participles Active: *brīzdams; *brienošs; brienot.*

Present Participle Passive: *brienams.*

list 'to crawl'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>es lienu</i>	<i>es līdu</i>	–
<i>tu lien</i>	<i>tu līdi</i>	<i>lien!</i>
<i>viņš lien</i>	<i>viņš līda</i>	<i>lai lien!</i>
<i>mēs lienam</i>	<i>mēs līdām</i>	<i>līdīsim!</i>
<i>jūs lienat</i>	<i>jūs līdāt</i>	<i>lieniet!</i>
<i>viņi lien</i>	<i>viņi līda</i>	<i>lai lien!</i>

Future: *es līdīšu, tu līdīsi, viņš līdīs, etc.*

Conditional: *es listu, tu listu, viņš listu, etc.*

Debitives: *man jāllien, man bija jāllien, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *līdis, līduši; līdusi, līdušas.*

Present Participles Active: *līzdams; *llienošs; lienot.*

Present Participle Passive: *llienams.*

Vocabulary

<i>brist</i> (<i>brienu, bridu</i>)	to wade
<i>iebrist</i> (<i>-brienu, -bridu</i>)	to wade in
<i>līst</i> (<i>lienu, līdu</i>)	to crawl
<i>ielīst</i> (<i>-lienu, -līdu</i>)	to crawl in
<i>izlīst</i> (<i>-lienu, -līdu</i>)	to crawl out
<i>līdējs</i>	crawler
<i>ūdenslīdējs</i>	diver
<i>dzimtene</i>	hometown, native land
<i>maldi</i> (pl.) (occ. <i>malds</i>)	delusion; false, misguided notions
<i>aplam</i>	wrongly
<i>itīn</i>	quite, absolutely
<i>praktisks</i>	practical
<i>teorētisks</i>	theoretical
<i>attīstība</i>	development
<i>spogulis</i>	mirror
<i>atstarojums</i>	reflection
<i>atstarot</i> (<i>-oju, -oju</i>)	to reflect
<i>illūzija</i>	illusion
<i>īstenība</i>	reality
<i>attiecīgs</i>	appropriate
<i>ievads</i>	introduction
<i>lēmums</i>	conclusion, finding, verdict, decision
<i>slēdziens</i>	conclusion

NOTES: *Līst* and *līdējs*, besides having the literal meaning 'to crawl' and 'crawler', have also the pejorative transferred meanings of the corresponding English words, i.e., 'to ingratiate oneself', 'sycophant'.

Maldi is often used in the genitive as an invariable adjective meaning 'misguided' (of beliefs, thoughts, etc.)

Teorētisks is pronounced with monophthongal *o*.

ielīst zemē 'to sink into the ground' (for shame, etc.)

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 76–100.

Exercise 190a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *iebrist*; *izlīst*; *atgūt*; *pazīt*; *bīst*; *atskārst*; *lūzt*; *iekarst*; *slāpt*; *pārkost*; *pūst*; *aut*; *šūt*; *raut*; *skriet*.

Exercise 190b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 190a.

Exercise 190c

Give the participial forms in *-dams*, *-ot*, *-ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 190a.

Exercise 190d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Visinteresantākais romāns, ko esmu lasījis (-usi)*.

Exercise 190e

Translate into English:

1. Ja ūdenslīdējs nebūtu bijis tik veikls un vingrs, viņš neapšaubāmi būtu gājis bojā.
2. Teorētiski tavs plāns mani pārliecina, bet vai tas derēs īstenībā?
3. Bārenīte bēg no vienmuļīgās dzīves īstenības gaišās, raibās illūzijās; **tas** ir zīmīgs fakts.
4. Kur ir kāds varens vīrs, tur ir arī līdēji.
5. Valdība nav vienaldzīga pret rūpniecības attīstību, un man ir **pārliecība**, ka drīz būs attiecīgi lēmumi.
6. Vienaļa, kur cilvēks dzīvo, viņš tomēr neaizmirst savu dzimteni.
7. Izlasiet attiecīgo lapas pusi ievadā!
8. Es būtu varējis ielīst zemē aiz kauna, kad tu savā ziņkārē iegāji **īrnieka** virtuvē.
9. Es zinu itīn labi, ka tu esi greizsirdīgs.
10. Spogulis atstaro saules starus.
11. Vai kāds zvērs tur nelien krūmos?
12. Dzimtenē es nebūtu bijusi tik vientuļa kā šeit.
13. Putni brien pa seklo ūdeni, meklējami barību.
14. Ūdenī var skaidri redzēt zvaigžņu atstarojumu. – Jā, pašlaik ūdens ir kā spogulis, kas atstaro zvaigžņu gaismu.
15. Students atbildēja visiem teorētiskajiem jautājumiem, bet praktiskajos darbos viņš bija vājš.
16. Ja šo moderno gleznu pakārtu aplam, neviens to nepamanītu.
17. Mums itīn visiem ir savas illūzijas un maldi.

18. Kāds zvērs nupat izlīda no krūmiem un iebrida diķī.
19. Agrāk muižnieks bija vienaldzīgs pret līdēju stāstiem, bet pēdējā laikā viņš tiem tic, jo viņš ir kļuvis aizdomīgs, un viņu moka greisirdība.
20. Zinātnieks būtu vienpusīgs, ja viņam būtu interese tikai par teorētiskām problēmām.
21. Profesora slēdziens ir, ka karalis bija vientiesīgs un tāpēc ticēja līdēju padomiem.
22. Bērniem nepatīk, ja viņiem dzimšanas dienā dāvina praktiskas dāvanas.
23. Jau savā ievadā profesors nopeļ sava pretinieka slēdzienu, ka drīz visas Āfrikas tautas iegūs patstāvību, vienalga, kāda arī būtu to pašreizējā attīstība.
24. Māsa laikam būs apsējusi pavisam aplam šo valgano apsēju ap manu celi.
25. Vai ūdenslīdējs veic savus uzdevumus patstāvīgi?
26. Skolotājs seko bērnu garīgajai attīstībai ar itin lielu prieku.
27. Kukaiņi izlien no sūnām.
28. Tu pakāri spoguļi aplam, tā tas atstaro saules gaismu, un atstarojums krīt uz rakstāmgalda.
29. Ūdenslīdējiem jābūt izveicīgiem vīriem.
30. Mēs esam bijušas uz maldu ceļa.
31. Dzīves īstenība iznīcināja visas manas illūzijas.
32. Kāpēc jūs atkal brienat pa dubļiem, bērni?
33. Šādus maldus var piedot. (Notice the accusative here after *piedot*. This sentence is best regarded as a condensed statement of a fuller *Šādus maldus viņam var piedot*, with dative of the person and accusative of the thing. Hence in isolation, the accusative of the thing seen above.)
34. Mans slēdziens ir, ka skolas pārziņa lēmums bija tomēr pareizs. – Par kādu lēmumu tu runā?
35. Mednieks redzēja lāci izlienam no krūmiem.
36. Ievadā dzejnieks stāsta par savu dzimteni; es tev parādīšu attiecīgo vietu grāmatā.
37. Saules atstarojums sniegā ir ļoti spilgts.

Exercise 190f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Have you finally come to a conclusion? – Yes, and I shall announce my decision quite soon.
2. Suddenly a snake crawled out of the hay stack (= *kaudze*).
3. We were wading in the shallow water.
4. This is a theoretical problem.
5. Tomorrow there will be the theoretical examination, and the day after tomorrow the examination in practical work.

6. What do you know about the development of architecture in our homeland?
7. In reality we should have gone around the pond.
8. The diver crawled into the ship, which had sunk in the middle of the harbour.
9. The mirror reflects the sun's rays.
10. Errors can teach us to understand the realities and illusions of life.
11. In his introduction this sycophant praises the government and all its decisions.
12. The light you see is the reflection of the globes in the water.
13. You have tied your shoe-laces wrongly.
14. Absolutely all students have to do (*strādāt*) the practical work.
15. The professor's conclusion is that the development of industry in his homeland has been slower than in other countries during the relevant period (= *laiks*).
16. The desert sands reflect the bright sunlight like a mirror.
17. When planting rice, people have to wade into the mud up to their knees.
18. Speak without a long introduction.
19. Snakes crawl on their bellies.
20. Sooner or later all illusions fade away.
21. My eyes were dazzled by the sun's reflection on the icicles.
22. Do not believe the sweet words of this sycophant.
23. In the evening the beasts emerge from the forest to drink from the pond.
24. Man's life is full of mistakes.
25. Attention! The diver is signalling: he is in danger.
26. Your tedious introduction is not relevant to the problem.

LESSON 191

THE ANOMALOUS VERB *VIRT*

The verb *virt* 'to boil' follows none of the patterns outlined in previous lessons. Its conjugation is as follows:

virt 'to boil'

Present	Imperfect	Imperative
<i>verd</i>	<i>vira</i>	<i>lai verd!</i>
Future: <i>virš</i> .		
Conditional: <i>virtu</i> .		

Debitives: *jāverd, bija jāverd, etc.*

Past Participle Active: *viris, viruši; virusi, virušas.*

Present Participles Active: *viridams; verdošs; verdot.*

Present Participle Passive: *verdam.*

Vocabulary

<i>virt (verd, vira)</i>	to boil (intrans.)
<i>vira</i>	soup, broth
<i>vira</i>	hinge
<i>zināšanas (pl.)</i>	knowledge
<i>nozīme</i>	meaning; importance; badge
<i>īpašība</i>	attribute, property, peculiarity
<i>žēl (see note below)</i>	a pity
<i>viela</i>	substance, stuff, material
<i>iesniegt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to submit, hand in
<i>tiesa</i>	court

NOTES: *Nozīme* can be construed with a following infinitive, corresponding to the English 'the importance of' plus a participle.

Kāda tur praktiska nozīme zināt vēsturiskus faktus par kādām vecām drupām?

What is the practical importance of knowing historical facts about a few old ruins?

The noun *tiesa* is also used as an invariable adjective, meaning 'correct, true':

Vai tas tiesa? Is that true?

Žēl is used rather like *bail*.

Man viņas žēl. I pity her.

It can be inflected for tense with the appropriate tense of *būt*:

man (ir) žēl I am sorry
man bija žēl I was sorry, etc.

Man žēl, with a noun or pronoun in the genitive, corresponds to the English 'I pity' or 'I am sorry for'.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 171-180.

Exercise 191a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *brist; ielst; kļūt; atzīt; dzīt (drive); kļst; izvirst; salūzt; aizmirst; mirt; izpaust; ciest; uzaut; piešūt; kraut; siet.*

Exercise 191b

Give the forms of the imperative and the past participle active of the verbs listed in Ex. 191a.

Exercise 191c

Give the participial forms in *-dams, -ot, -ams/-āms*, and where appropriate *-ošs*, of the verbs listed in Ex. 191a.

Exercise 191d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Visinteresantākā glezna, ko esmu redzējis (-usi).*

Exercise 191e

Translate into English:

1. Visi ar nepacietību gaidīja tiesas lēmumu.
2. Jums ir labas teorētiskas zināšanas, žēl, ka jūs esat vājš attiecīgajos praktiskajos darbos.
3. Vai tas tiesa, ka ūdenslīdzīgi saņem lielāku algu nekā grāmatveži?
4. Viņam ir itin labas īpašības.
5. Vira vēl neverd.
6. Man nav ne mazākās intereses izlasīt šo garlaicīgo ievadu.
7. Jaunības illūzijas un maldi tomēr bija skaisti.
8. Man tiešām žēl nabaga bārenītes.
9. Viru sauc arī par zupu.
10. Šī viela jāber verdošā eļļā.
11. Žēl, ka vecāki neseko ar lielāku interesi bērnu garīgajai attīstībai!
12. Šim vārdam ir vairākas nozīmes.
13. Vai šķidrām vielām ir īpašība atstarot saules gaismu?
14. Žēl, ka tavas zināšanas par dzimtenes vēsturiskajām piļīm ir tik vājas.
 - Kāda tur praktiska nozīme zināt vēsturiskus faktus par kādām vecām drupām!

15. Tagad viņa pavadīs veselu stundu spoguļa priekšā.
16. Vai profesors jau izlasīja darbu, ko es aizvakar iesniedzu? – Vai jūs to iesniedzāt pašam profesoram?
17. Cilvēki ar tādām rakstura īpašībām eksistē tikai romānos, bet ne īstenībā. – Jā, tas tiesa; žēl, ka rakstnieki nemeklē vielu saviem romāniem pašā dzīvē.
18. Man apžilba acis, jo saules atstarojums loga stiklā bija pārāk spožs.
19. Virai vēl jāverd piecas minūtes, tad tā būs gatava.
20. Studentiem ir trūcīgas zināšanas šinī priekšmetā.
21. Šeit tikai līdēji tiek uz augšu.
22. Vāvere ielīda savā ligzdā.
23. Briēnot pa auksto ūdeni, jūs būsit apsaldējis kaklu. – Tas nevar būt, ārsta kungs, es iebrīdu tikai līdz ceļiem.
24. Mēs līdām uz vēdera, lai ienaidnieka sargi mūs neieraudzītu.
25. Meistars salabos durvju viras.
26. Vai šī nozīme ir tīra zelta?

Exercise 191f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Jealousy is a bad attribute, but in my opinion curiosity is good.
2. Before the court his words were not so convincing.
3. Is it true that your husband is jealous and suspicious?
4. The soup is boiling in the pot.
5. Although he has a sound knowledge in his subject, he is one-sided.
6. Were she indifferent, she would not show any interest in your work; my conviction is that she loves you.
7. Life is terribly monotonous on this lonely island.
8. It makes no difference when you hand in your papers, but you must submit them before the twenty-first of May.
9. Is Mr. Ozols an independent merchant, or does he work in a large firm?
10. The door-hinges require a little oil again.
11. This substance boils at a higher temperature than water.
12. It is a pity that you do not appreciate her attributes.
13. It is of great importance that you acknowledge the good attributes of your rivals.
14. Agile and skilful hands are no longer sufficient: in our times a craftsman must have a great deal of theoretical knowledge.
15. This substance is always moist.
16. It is a pity that you lost your badge.
17. The patient is no longer as weak as he was last night.

LESSON 192

THE DECLENSION OF *MĒNESS* AND *BIEDRS*

The masculine noun *mēness* 'moon' is declined in the *akmens* declension:

mēness 'moon'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>mēness</i>	<i>mēņēši</i>
Acc.	<i>mēņesi</i>	<i>mēņēšus</i>
Gen.	<i>mēness</i>	<i>mēņēšu</i>
Dat.	<i>mēņesim</i>	<i>mēņēšiem</i>
Loc.	<i>mēņesī</i>	<i>mēņēšos</i>

Beware of confusing this noun with *mēnesis* 'month'. The declension of these two nouns differs only in the Nominative and Genitive singular, cf.

<i>mēness</i>	moon	<i>mēnesis</i>	month
<i>mēness</i>	of the moon	<i>mēneša</i>	of the month.

The masculine noun *biedrs* 'comrade' is declined in the ordinary *-s* declension, just like *zirgs*, but it has a special form in the vocative singular.

biedrs 'comrade'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>biedrs</i>	<i>biedri</i>
Voc.	<i>biedri</i>	<i>biedri</i>
Acc.	<i>biedru</i>	<i>biedrus</i>
Gen.	<i>biedra</i>	<i>biedru</i>
Dat.	<i>biedram</i>	<i>biedriem</i>
Loc.	<i>biedrā</i>	<i>biedros</i>

Vocabulary

<i>mēness</i>	moon
<i>biedrs</i>	comrade, companion
<i>drīzāk</i>	sooner; rather
<i>fotografija</i> or <i>uzņēmums</i>	photograph
<i>biedrība</i>	association, society

<i>brīdis</i>	a moment, a (little) while
<i>sūdzība</i>	complaint, accusation
<i>gaita</i>	gait; pace; course; run

NOTES: The diminutive of *mēness* is regular: *mēnestiņš*. The diminutive of *brīdis* is irregular: *brītiņš*.

Fotografija has two foreign monophthongal *o* vowels.

Note the sequence of tenses in comparisons with *drīzāk*:

Viņš drīzāk mirtu, nekā strādātu.

He would sooner (rather) die than work.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–150.

Exercise 192a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *līst* (crawl); *brīst*; *atgūt*; *kļūt*; *atzīt*; *pazīt*; *ienīst*; *svīst*; *atskārst*; *lūzt*.

Exercise 192b

Give the imperative and all appropriate participial forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 192a.

Exercise 192c

Decline in the singular and plural: *biedrs*; *mēness*.

Exercise 192d

Write about 150 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vecas fotografijas*.

Exercise 192e

Translate into English:

1. Viņš ir savāds cilvēks. Viņš drīzāk cietīs badu, nekā iesniegs lūgumu pēc palīdzības.
2. Nu, vecais skolas biedri! Vai mēs šinī uzņēmumā neesam slaidi un braši zēni?

3. Sidnejas latviešu biedrība rīko Jāņu balli šī gada divdesmit ceturtajā jūnijā Sidnejas latviešu namā.
4. Nav nozīmes iesniegt sūdzību tiesā par tādu nieka lietu.
5. Šī fotografija parāda to mēness pusi, kuru mēs no zemes nekad neredzam.
6. Vira jau verd kādu brīdi.
7. Es tevi pazinu jau no tālienes pēc tavas gaitas.
8. Ārstiem ir plašas zināšanas par šīs slimības gaitu.
9. Bez iemesla viņš nebūtu uzrakstījis šo padevīgo lūgumu.
10. Kāpēc policijai ir tik liela interese par šiem uzņēmumiem?
11. Žēl, ka tu nepagaidīji vēl kādu brītiņu.
12. Savā dzīves gaitā vecais kārtībnieks izlasījis daudz lūgumu un sūdzību.
13. Es izsaku jums pateicību biedrības vārdā.
14. Jo drīzāk jūs iesniegsit biedrībai savu sūdzību, jo drīzāk sapemsit atbildi.
15. Šai vielai ir savādas īpašības.
16. Lai vecais virsnieks runā vēl kādu brīdi ar saviem vecajiem kara biedriem!
17. Ja cilvēks grib dzert šnabi, viņš vienmēr atradīs iemeslu.
18. Vai uz mēness ir arī jūras, upes un ezeri?
19. Man nav iemesla neticēt savam biedram.
20. Kad krusttēvs ir iesilis, viņš vienmēr dzied savu mīļāko dziesmiņu:
"Mēness spīd aiz kūts,
Nāc pie manas krūts!
Mēness spīd aiz pirts,
Nāc pie manas sirds!"

Exercise 192f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The moon reflects the light of the sun.
2. These photographs show the course of the development of our factory.
3. Write a short request without a long introduction.
4. After a short while the diver emerged.
5. These photographs are from my home-land.
6. I shall lodge a complaint about this association at the appropriate time.
7. In the water you can see the reflection of the moon.
8. In the course of my long life, I have come to the conclusion that no person can live without illusions and mistakes.
9. Your comrade would rather condemn the decision of the society than praise it: you know that quite well.
10. Let us not waste time with theoretical problems; let us begin the practical tasks!
11. From his walk one can see that he is a sycophant.

12. She is much lovelier in reality than in the photograph.
13. The bear could emerge from the bushes at any time: be alert!
14. Don't hold the mirror the wrong way!
15. He would sooner wade into the cold water himself than let his younger school-mate wade in.
16. People come to the pastor with many strange requests.
17. That is a serious accusation.
18. The beetles are crawling into the manure heap.
19. The teacher did not scold you without reason.
20. What was crawling under the bushes in the park?

LESSON 193

SUMMARY OF THE SHORT CONJUGATION

We have divided the verbs of the Short Conjugation into the following types and sub-types.

TYPE I: The Palatalized Type.

Exx. *braukt* (*braucu, braucu*)
kliedt (*kliedzu, kliežu*)

- Variants (a) *nākt* (*nāku, nācu*)
 – lacks palatalization in most of the present tense.
 (b) *lēkt* (*lecu, lēcu*)
 – has a contrastive short vowel in the present tense.

TYPE II: The Semipalatalized Type.

Exx. *glābt* (*gtābju, glābu*)
malt (*maļu, malu*)
lauzt (*laužu, lauzu*)

- Variants: (a) *aplēst* (*aplešu, aplēsu*)
 – has a contrastive short vowel in the present tense.
 (b) *stumt* (*stumju, stūmu*)
 – has a contrastive long vowel in the imperfect tense.

TYPE III: The Unchanged Type.

Exx. *sākt* (*sāku, sāku*)
nest (*nesu, nesu*)

- Variants: (a) *ņemt* (*ņemu, ņēmu*)
 – has a contrastive long vowel in the imperfect tense.
 (b) (i) *patikt* (*patīku, patīku*)
 – has a contrastive long vowel in the present tense.
 (b) (ii) *likt* (*lieku, liku*)
 – has an irregular contrastive long vowel in the present tense.
 (c) *vērt* (*veru, vēru*)
 – has a contrastive short vowel in the present tense.

TYPE IV: The Dental Type.

Exx. *sist* (*situ, situ*)
vest (*vedu, vedu*)

- Variants: (a) (i) *krist* (*krītu, kritu*)
zust (*zūdu, zudu*)
 – have a contrastive long vowel in the present tense.
 (a) (ii) *šķist* (*šķietu, šķitu*)
ģist (*ģiedu, ģidu*)
 – have an irregular contrastive long vowel in the present tense.

TYPE V: The *a-o-a* Type.

Exx. *tapt* (*topu, tapu*)
rakt (*roku, raku*)

- Variants: (a) *prast* (*protu, pratu*)
rast (*rodu, radu*)
 – have, in addition to the *a-o-a* vowel alternation proper to Type V, the consonantal pattern proper to Type IV.

TYPE VI: The *i-e-i* Type.

Ex. *vilkt* (*velku, vilku*)

- Variants: (a) *pirkt* (*pērku, pirku*)
 – has a long vowel in the present tense.
 (b) (i) *krimst* (*kremtu, krimtu*)
 – has in addition to the vowel alternation proper to Type VI the consonantal alternation proper to Type IV.

(b) (ii) *cirst* (*cērtu*, *cirtu*)

– has in addition to sub-type (b) (i) above a long vowel in the present tense.

TYPE VII: *j* Type.

Exx. *klāt* (*klāju*, *klāju*)

spēt (*spēju*, *spēju*)

Variants: (a) *rīt* (*riju*, *riju*)

– has short vowels in the present and imperfect tenses.

(b) *liet* (*leju*, *lēju*)

– anomalous vowel quality and quantity in the present and imperfect tenses.

TYPE VIII: The Nasal Type.

Exx. *tīt* (*tinu*, *tinu*)

mīt (*minu*, *minu*)

Variants: (a) *dzīt* (*dzenu*, *dzinu*)

– has in addition to the nasal consonant proper to Type VIII the vowel alternation proper to Type VI.

(b) *skriet* (*skrienu*, *skrēju*)

– has an anomalous imperfect tense form, comparable with that of Type VII, variant (b).

TYPE IX: *j* Present and *v* Imperfect Type.

Exx. *šūt* (*šuju*, *šuvu*)

skūt (*skuju*, *skuvu*)

Variants: (a) *kaut* (*kāju*, *kāvu*)

– has anomalous vowel quantity and quality.

(b) *aut* (*aumu*, *āvu*)

– has in addition to the peculiarities of sub-type (a) an anomalous present tense consonant, analogous with that of Type VIII.

TYPE X: Combined Semipalatalized and Dental Type.

Exx. *pūst* (*pūšu*, *pūtu*)

kost (*kožu*, *kodu*)

There are no variant forms.

TYPE XI: *st* Type.

Exx. *mirt* (*mirstu*, *miru*)

salt (*salstu*, *salu*)

Variants: (a) (i) *aizmirst* (*aizmirstu*, *aizmirsu*)

– the *st* element is reduced to *t*.

(a) (ii) *kust* (*kūstu*, *kusu*)

– as for (a) (i), but with a contrastive long vowel in the present tense.

(a) (iii) *dzist* (*dziest*, *dzisa*)

– as for (a) (ii), but with an irregular contrastive long vowel in the present tense.

(a) (iv) *lūzt* (*lūstu*, *lūzu*)

– as for (a) (i) but with anomalous spelling in the present tense.

(b) *vīst* (*vīstu*, *vītu*)

plūst (*plūstu*, *plūdu*)

– have an imperfect analogous to those of Type IV.

(c) *līt* (*līst*, *līja*)

– has an imperfect analogous to those of Type VII, Variant (a).

(d) *atzīt* (*atzīstu*, *atzīnu*)

– has an imperfect analogous to those of Type VIII.

(e) *kļūt* (*kļūstu*, *kļuvu*)

– has an imperfect analogous to those of Type IX.

TYPE XII: Anomalous Verbs.

(a) *būt* (*esmu*, *biju*)

(b) *iet* (*eju*, *gāju*)

(c) *dot* (*dodu*, *devu*)

(d) (i) *brist* (*brienu*, *bridu*)

(d)(ii) *līst* (*lienu*, *līdu*)

(e) *virt* (*verd*, *vira*)

GENERAL REMARKS

In addition to the patterns outlined above, the following points should be noted about verbs of the Short Conjugation.

1. Verbs of any type which have a present tense radical in *-k* or *-g* palatalize in the second person singular present and imperative, and the second person plural imperative only, giving *-c* and *-dz* respectively.

2. Verbs of any type which have an imperfect tense radical in *-k* or *-c*, or in *-g* or *-dz* have the following alternation in the past participle active:

Masculine Singular:	<i>-c</i> or <i>-dz</i>
Masculine Plural	<i>-k</i> or <i>-g</i>
Feminine Singular:	<i>-k</i> or <i>-g</i>
Feminine Plural:	<i>-k</i> or <i>-g</i> .

3. Verbs of Type II (including the variants) depalatalize the final stem consonant in the second person singular present and imperative and in the second person plural imperative.
4. Verbs of Type X, in the second person singular present and imperative and in the second person plural imperative, replace the *-š* or *-ž* of the present tense radical by the *-t* or *-d* of the imperfect radical. This is analogous to the depalatalization mentioned in (3) above.
5. Verbs of any type with infinitives in *-st* or *-zt* have an irregular future tense formation. The normal endings are added not to the infinitive stem, but to the imperfect stem plus *-l*. Hence the first person plural imperative is also affected.
6. In general, Short Conjugation verbs do not have the ending *-i* in the second person singular present and imperative. The ending is however to be used in the following cases:
in sub-types III(b) (i), IV(a) (i), Type V, Type V(a), Type XI, and the verb *būt*, with the restriction that it is never to be used after *-c* or *-dz*.

This can be summarized as follows:

The ending *-i* must be used with verbs of the *-st* type, verbs of the *a-o-a* type, and verbs which have a regular contrastive long vowel in the present (excluding the *i-e-i* type where length is not the only contrastive factor), except after *-c* and *-dz*. The verb *būt* also requires the ending.

7. In Types II and X, verbs with present radicals in *-š* and *-ž* present difficulties in the formation of the *-ošs* participle, but not the *-ot* participle. In spite of recommendations that the *-ošs* participle should not be formed at all from these verbs, usage is sufficiently well established for the formation of such participles from the second person singular form in *-s*, *-z*, *-t* or *-d*.
8. Verbs in *-st* also give rise to difficulties in the formation of the *-dams* participle, which appears as *-sdams* for some verbs and as *-zdams* for others. The *-s* of the infinitive is retained only when the imperfect stem ends in *-s*; otherwise *-z* is written.
For verbs in *-zt* no problem arises: the forms are always in *-zdams*.

There is no new vocabulary. The student should make sure that he knows the material given above.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 110–114; 117–121; 124–128; 131–135; 139–140; 143–145; 148–150; 153–157; 160–167; 169–174; 177–188; 190–191.

See also the irregular verbs *būt*, *iet* and *dot* in Lessons 1, 11 and 12.

Exercise 193a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *braukt; sākt; cirst; brist; zust; liet; vērst; sist; lūzt; tapt; dot; lēkt; tlt; pirkt; klāt; šķist; griezt; kost; aplēst; gīst; plūst; patikt; ņemt; kaut; vest; būt; stumt; līst (crawl); prast; rlt; mirt; skrīet; pūst; likt; dzlt (drive); vērt; kliegt; atzlt; krist; šūt; iet; kļūt; glābt; rāst; nākt; aut; vilkt; krimst.*

Exercise 193b

In the section GENERAL REMARKS given above, no examples have been given for any of the points made. Supply relevant examples.

Exercise 193c

Give the first person singular future of those verbs listed in Ex. 193a which have infinitives in *-st* or *-zt*.

Exercise 193d

Which classes of verbs take a present participle passive in (a) *-ams*; (b) *-āms*?

Exercise 193e

When is *k* palatalized to *c*, and *g* to *dz* in verbs of the Short Conjugation?

Exercise 193f

Which types or sub-types of Short Conjugation verbs require the ending *-i* in the second person singular of the present tense and the imperative?

Exercise 193g

Give, for each verb listed in Ex. 193a, another identical in conjugation.

Exercise 193h

What rules govern the distribution of open and closed *e* in the conjugation of Short Conjugation verbs?

Exercise 193i

What rules determine the use of *s* or *z* before the *-dams* participle of verbs in *-st* and *-zt*?

Exercise 193j

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 193a.

Exercise 193k

Write, in Latvian, as much as you feel is called for on the topic: *Latviešu valodas darbības vārdu konjugācija*.

Exercise 193l

Translate into English:

1. Jo drīzāk viņš atbrauks, jo drīzāk viņš dzirdēs mūsu sūdzību.
2. Kāpēc bērni skrien apkārt kliegdami?
3. Mans palīgs atnāks pēc īsa brīža.
4. Kāpēc tu nenodzini bārdu?
5. Miesnieks jau trin nazi, viņš tūlīt kaus teju.
6. Nebrauc bīstamajā līkumā pilnā gaitā!
7. Mūsu vecie kara biedri netiks aizmirsti.
8. Kāda iemesla dēļ jūs neatzīstat šā varenā vīra panākumus?
9. Līdz vakaram puķes vēl nebūs novītušas.
10. Šis koks netiks nocirsts.
11. Mēness bija pazudis aiz biežajiem mākoņiem.
12. Vai agrajā dzelzs laikmetā ļaudis jau prata rakstīt?

13. Ievediet noziedznieku tiesas zālē!
14. Neviens nenogida, ka valsts uzpirks gandrīz visu kviešu ražu.
15. Fotografis pašlaik apleš, cik uzņēmumi maksās.
16. Visām šīm fotografijām jātiek iznīcinātām.
17. Kāpēc jūs viņu stūmāt un sitāt?
18. Kāda ragana būs apbūrusi govīs, jo tās nedod pienu.
19. Viņš rakstīja lūgumu pēc lūguma, bet beidzot viņu tomēr pakāra.
20. Parādiet man apsiesto roku! Es gribu redzēt, vai pirksti nav **uzpampuši**.
21. Vasarā ganu zēns neaun kājas.
22. Vai tu atradi sporta biedrības tālruņa numuru?
23. Naktī uzlija ražens lietus.
24. Slavenais skaņradis nomira tanī gadā, kad tu piedzimi.
25. Ūdens plūda pa ietnēm.
26. Meistars paliks dusmīgs un padzīs tevi no darbnīcas.
27. Krēsls salūza zem resnā tirgotāja svara.
28. Sniegs vēl nebija pilnīgi nozudis, kad koki jau rieta pūpūrus.
29. Neskumstiet par biedriem, kas krituši cīņā!
30. Mani tas nekremt, ja mani sauc par vecpuisi.
31. Lūdzu, nelejiet mana vīra glāzē pārāk daudz, jo viņš nav pieradis **pie tik** stipra šņabja!
32. Gaismai austot, zvejnieki pārnāca mājās.
33. Ja tu man nebūtu patikusī, es tevi nebūtu nēmis.
34. Lapsa pārkoda zosij rīkli.
35. Es jums tomēr nepiekrītu: dumpīgi karavīri ir jānošauj!
36. Kārlis ir neciešams cilvēks.
37. Lai top, kā tiesa ir lēmusi!
38. Viņš drīzāk mirtu, nekā izpaustu ienaidniekam vienu lieku vārdu.
39. Tādas runas krīt man uz nerviem.

Exercise 193m

Translate into Latvian:

1. This paint contains a poisonous substance.
2. The student has sufficient knowledge.
3. It is a pity that the teacher did not order you to write this word out a hundred times.
4. The people were following the speech without interest.
5. Come here, boys!
6. Go away, girls!
7. Don't jump into the river!

8. Has the famous composer already left?
9. When we heard you clamouring, we thought that something had happened to you.
10. Why didn't you shave off your beard?
11. Throw the meat into the boiling oil.
12. The court is just now deciding about us.
13. Oh dear, I forgot to hand in my homework to the professor!
14. In an open pot soup cools quickly.
15. The wind was blowing.
16. I lost my badge.
17. Is it true that the Church does not recognize your marriage?
18. Do you really weigh eighty-five kilogrammes?
19. The cart sank into the sand and we had to push it.
20. Why didn't you close the door?
21. Start writing!
22. Let us flee!
23. When we finish eating, we shall continue playing cards.
24. Where do these creatures live?
25. They concealed the stolen gold under a large stone.
26. The seamstress is sewing with silk thread.
27. Why was he shot dead?
28. The wound is healing quickly.
29. While it is raining so heavily, we cannot gather berries in the forest.
30. This room smells of garlic.
31. Two men are rowing that heavy boat.
32. Have you received my letter?
33. The hunter heard the bear roaring.
34. Please pass me the sugar.
35. Why won't your father let you go to the ball?
36. The days are getting warmer.
37. Why didn't you bribe the guards?
38. The dog is gnawing a big bone.

LESSON 194

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The English possessive pronouns are 'mine', 'yours', 'his', 'hers', 'ours', 'yours' and 'theirs'.

To these correspond the Latvian forms *manējs, tavējs, viņējs, viņējs, mūsējs, jūsējs, viņējs* and the reflexive *savējs*. These are fully declined in the **masculine** and feminine, singular and plural, and occur rather more often in the **definite** form than in the indefinite.

Mana grāmata ir uz galda, bet kur ir tavējā?

My book is on the table, but where is yours?

Tava grāmata ir uz galda, bet kur ir manējā?

Your book is on the table, but where is mine?

Šīs grāmatas ir mūsējās.

These books are ours.

Šie zirgi ir jūsējie.

These horses are yours.

Jānis domā, ka šis zīmulis ir viņējs.

John thinks that this pencil is his.

Jānis bieži nopel citu cilvēku bērņus, bet reti savējos.

John often criticizes other people's children, but rarely his own.

Es ticu viņa stāstam, bet ne tavējam.

I believe his story, but not yours.

Confusion could often arise between the three *viņējs* forms: 'his', 'hers' and 'theirs'. To avoid this, the normal possessive adjectives *viņa, viņas* and *viņu* are often used as possessive pronouns. By extension, the other possessive adjectives, *mans, tavs, savs, mūsu* and *jūsu* are also found acting as possessive pronouns.

Vocabulary

<i>manējs</i>	mine
<i>tavējs</i>	yours (sing.)
<i>viņējs</i>	his
<i>viņējs</i>	hers
<i>mūsējs</i>	ours
<i>jūsējs</i>	yours (pl.)
<i>viņējs</i>	theirs
<i>savējs</i>	one's own

<i>fotoaparāts</i>	camera
<i>izeja</i>	exit, way out
<i>ieēja</i>	entrance
<i>ēkrāns</i>	(cinema) screen
<i>starpbrīdis</i>	interval, intermission
<i>brīžam</i>	occasionally
<i>apelsīns</i>	orange
<i>saldējums</i>	ice-cream
<i>kinoteātris</i>	cinema, picture-theatre
<i>aizkrāsne</i>	place behind the stove
<i>aizvējš</i>	area protected from wind; lee(-side)
<i>aizmugure</i>	the area behind, hinterland, background
<i>aizsaule</i>	the hereafter, life beyond

NOTES: *Fotoaparāts* and *kinoteātris* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal o.

Izeja is also used metaphorically to mean 'a way out' of a difficulty.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 151–160.

Exercise 194a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *brīst*; *līst* (crawl); *klūt*; *gūt*; *atzīt*; *iebilst*; *izvirst*; *iekarst*; *reibt*.

Exercise 194b

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 194a.

Exercise 194c

Give all the appropriate participial forms (omitting the past participle active) of the verbs listed in Ex. 194a.

Exercise 194d

Write sentences of your own embodying each of the possessive pronouns discussed above.

Exercise 194e

Write about 200 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vēsturiska vieta, ko es gribētu redzēt.*

Exercise 194f

Translate into English:

1. Anglijas kinoteātros drīkst smēķēt izrādes laikā, bet Eiropas un arī Austrālijas kinoteātros ir stingri aizliegts smēķēt izrādes laikā, tur smēķē tikai starpbrīžos.
2. Tavs vectēvs vēl ir stalts vīrs, bet manējais ir vārgs un tāpēc pavada savas dienas aizkrāsne. (This was the warmest place in old Latvian farm-houses.)
3. Tas nav mans fotoaparāts, tas ir jūsējais. – Tiešām, kā jūs to zināt? – Tam jābūt jūsējam, jo manējais ir vieglāks.
4. Ļaudis teātrī starpbrīžos smēķē vai ēd saldējumu.
5. Jo tālāk no ekrāna, jo labāk redz – tāpēc vietas aizmugurē ir visdārgākās.
6. Aizvējā saule jau silda pamatīgi.
7. Ienaidnieks uzbruka mūsējiem no aizmugures.
8. Latvija ievēd apelsīnus no Spānijas un Itālijas.
9. Brīžam mūsu vecāmāte aizmirst, ka vectēvs jau sen mīt aizsaule.
10. Vai šis dvieļis ir viņa? – Nē, tas ir viņas.
11. Cik maksā ieeja kinoteātrī?
12. Tā nav izeja uz gaiteni, šī izeja ved uz ielu.
13. Viņam bija jāpārdod fotoaparāts, jo nebija citas izejas.
14. Ar muti Rīgā, ar darbiem aizkrāsne. (Proverb) (The general meaning is *He talks a lot and does little.*)
15. Pirmais nams ir mūsējs, ceturtais ir viņējs.
16. Skapa nenāk no ekrāna, bet no aizmugures.
17. Mūsu zemē ir daudz apelsīnu, bet jūsējā tie laikam neaug. – Nē, neaug, jo mūsējā nav tik silta.
18. Nenes šo maisu, tas ir manējs! – Tu esi novārdzis, es panesīšu tavējo kādu brītiņu. – Nē, katrs nesīs savējo.
19. Viņš ir tik kārs uz saldējumu, viņam nepietika ar savējo, nē, viņš apēda arī tavējo un manējo.
20. Pie ieejas stāvēja vīri ar fotoaparātiem, gaidīdami kino zvaigzni.
21. Mani bērni stāv pie ieejas, bet tavējos es tur neredzu.
22. Kur mēs dabūsim vajadzīgās skapu plates? – Katrs zēns un katra meitene atnesīs savējās.
23. Tie nav mūsu apelsīni, tie ir viņējie.
24. Pēc starpbrīža iet vairs nevar dabūt saldējumu.
25. Aizkrāsne brīžam dzirdēja žurkas graukam grīdas dājus.

26. Nāc šeit aizvējā, tad tev nesals!
27. Kā tu zini, ka aizsaulē ir labāka dzīve nekā zemes virsū: no aizsaules neviens vēl nav sūtījis vēstuli vai telegrammu.
28. Ja šī grāmata nav viņa, tad tā būs viņas.
29. Bilde uz ekrāna brīžam kļūst migļaina.
30. Kur aizvējš, tur ūdens ir rāms.
31. Tie bērni nav viņu: viņi ir par jauniem, lai viņiem būtu tik lieli bērni.

Exercise 194g

Translate into Latvian:

1. If you can't photograph in this light with your camera, I'll give you mine.
– No, I shan't take yours.
2. This cinema is bigger than ours.
3. Your oranges are sweeter than mine.
4. His children believe that in the hereafter they will eat oranges and ice-cream every day.
5. It is only five minutes until the interval.
6. Our children are naughtier than theirs.
7. Travelling home we shall have the wind behind us (*aizmugurē*).
8. The rays are falling on to the screen.
9. Is this umbrella yours? – No, it's hers.
10. Her father is richer than his.
11. The girl who sells oranges and ice-cream during the intervals occasionally also checks tickets at the entrance.
12. An animal attacks only if there is no other way out.
13. This telescope is not mine; it must be yours.
14. The old officer hopes to meet all his old battle comrades in the life hereafter.
15. Don't sit at the hearth – let's go outside. – Is it warm already in the sheltered ground behind the wind-break?
16. Occasionally I feel sorry for him.
17. Don't offer him a cigarette: he smokes only his own.
18. Can you see the screen clearly from behind?
19. A cinema must have several exits.
20. Who will be standing at the entrance?
21. My son is older than yours, but yours is taller.
22. There is more furniture in our room than in theirs.
23. This camera is not his: it's hers.
24. Is there still some fire-wood behind the stove?
25. That is not our boat, it is theirs.
26. Why is it always so cold behind the wind-break?

SLAVISTIC PRINTINGS AND REPRINTINGS

edited by

C. H. VAN SCHOONEVELD

Indiana University

304

TREVOR G. FENNEL
HENRY GELSEN

A GRAMMAR OF
MODERN LATVIAN

VOLUME III

MOUTON PUBLISHERS
THE HAGUE · PARIS · NEW YORK

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

Preface	XIII
Acknowledgements	XV
Abbreviations	XVII
Introduction	XIX
Lesson 1. The present tense of <i>būt</i> ; nominative singular and plural of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	1
Lesson 2. Singular declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	4
Lesson 3. Plural declension of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i>	8
Lesson 4. Dative of possession	11
Lesson 5. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i> : Present tense	15
Lesson 6. Dative case of the personal pronouns	18
Lesson 7. Negation of verbs, excluding possessive expressions	22
Lesson 8. Negation of possessive expressions	26
Lesson 9. Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	30
Lesson 10. Imperfect tense of mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	33
Lesson 11. Mixed conjugation verbs in <i>-īt</i> : present and imperfect; imperfect tense of <i>būt</i>	38
Lesson 12. Conjugation of the irregular verbs <i>iet</i> and <i>dot</i>	42
Lesson 13. Possessive adjectives	46
Lesson 14. The indefinite declension of adjectives	51
Lesson 15. Full declension of the personal pronouns	56
Lesson 16. The preposition <i>pie</i>	61
Lesson 17. Nouns and adjectives ending in <i>-š</i>	65
Lesson 18. Conjugation of <i>zināt</i> , <i>dziedāt</i> and <i>raudāt</i>	70
Lesson 19. More prepositions with the genitive	75
Lesson 20. Long conjugation verbs with infinitive in <i>-ot</i>	81
Lesson 21. Long conjugation verbs in <i>-āt</i>	87
Lesson 22. Revision and classification of verbs. Verbs with the indefinite subject	92
Lesson 23. Revision of adverbs	98
Lesson 24. Declension of feminine nouns ending in <i>-e</i>	104
Lesson 25. Revision of adjectives	108
Lesson 26. The definite declension of adjectives, masculine singular ..	113
Lesson 27. The definite declension of adjectives, feminine singular	118
Lesson 28. Revision of the definite declension of adjectives-singular ..	123

ISBN 90 279 7936 7

© Copyright 1980 by Mouton Publishers, The Hague. All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form — by photoprint, microfilm, or any other means — nor transmitted nor translated into a machine language without written permission from the publisher Typesetting, printing, and binding: Kultura, Budapest
Printed in Hungary

Lesson 29.	Definite declension of adjectives, masculine plural	127
Lesson 30.	Definite declension of adjectives, feminine plural	132
Lesson 31.	Further uses of the definite adjective	136
Lesson 32.	Verbs with palatalized consonant in the present tense. Some third person verbs. The prepositions <i>uz</i> and <i>no</i>	142
Lesson 33.	Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs. Three prepositions with the accusative	147
Lesson 34.	The Future tense	153
Lesson 35.	The numerals 1 to 10	159
Lesson 36.	Imperatives	166
Lesson 37.	Numerals from 11 to 20	172
Lesson 38.	The Accusative of duration of time	177
Lesson 39.	Formation of adverbs	182
Lesson 40.	The Conditional	188
Lesson 41.	The prepositions <i>līdz</i> and <i>uz</i>	192
Lesson 42.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-ēt</i>	197
Lesson 43.	The relative pronoun and interrogative adjective <i>kurš</i>	202
Lesson 44.	Days of the week; time of day	209
Lesson 45.	Verbs with depalatalized present stems	214
Lesson 46.	Further negations with <i>ne-</i>	221
Lesson 47.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	225
Lesson 48.	Numerals from 20 to 59	230
Lesson 49.	Comparative degree of adjectives	235
Lesson 50.	Comparison structures	240
Lesson 51.	Some examples of compound verbs: Introduction to the notion of aspect	247
Lesson 52.	Superlative degree of the adjective	253
Lesson 53.	Feminine form of nouns in <i>-ājs</i> and <i>-nieks</i>	258
Lesson 54.	Long conjugation verbs in <i>-īt</i> and <i>-ūt</i>	262
Lesson 55.	The English infinitive	266
Lesson 56.	Numerals from 60 to 100	271
Lesson 57.	The English infinitive used adjectivally	275
Lesson 58.	Conjugation of verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	279
Lesson 59.	Verb summary	284
Lesson 60.	Declension of <i>kas</i>	291
Lesson 61.	Postpositions	297
Lesson 62.	Declension of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i>	302
Lesson 63.	Numerals from 100 to 1000	307
Lesson 64.	Further remarks on numerals: Conflicting case requirements	311
Lesson 65.	Declension and use of <i>tas</i>	317
Lesson 66.	Some invariable adjectives	322

Lesson 67.	<i>Neviens</i> and <i>kāds</i> as adjectives	327
Lesson 68.	The declension of certain masculine nouns in <i>-ens</i>	333
Lesson 69.	Accusative of extent of distance	337
Lesson 70.	Declension of <i>suns</i> 'dog'	343
Lesson 71.	The adjective and pronoun <i>abi</i> 'both'	347
Lesson 72.	Declension and use of <i>šis</i> 'this'	352
Lesson 73.	Ordinal numbers from 1st to 10th	357
Lesson 74.	Negations with <i>ne</i> . . . <i>ne</i> and <i>vairs</i>	361
Lesson 75.	Ordinal numbers from 11th to 20th	366
Lesson 76.	Latvian names and forms of address	371
Lesson 77.	Ordinal numbers from 21st to 100th	377
Lesson 78.	Ordinal numbers from 101st to 1000th	381
Lesson 79.	Declension of feminine nouns in <i>-s</i> ; the masculine noun <i>laudis</i>	385
Lesson 80.	Comparative degree of adverbs	390
Lesson 81.	Superlative degree of adverbs	395
Lesson 82.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-s</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-a</i>	400
Lesson 83.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-is</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-e</i>	406
Lesson 84.	The genitive plural: irregular forms of feminine nouns in <i>-e</i> and <i>-s</i>	412
Lesson 85.	Summary of noun declensions	417
Lesson 86.	Time by the clock	422
Lesson 87.	Debitive mood: present tense	428
Lesson 88.	Debitive mood: imperfect tense	435
Lesson 89.	Debitive mood: future tense	440
Lesson 90.	Debitive mood: conditional	445

VOLUME II

Lesson 91.	Cardinal and ordinal numbers above 1000	449
Lesson 92.	Months and dates	454
Lesson 93.	The noun <i>reize</i> and its compounds	460
Lesson 94.	Declension and use of <i>pats</i>	464
Lesson 95.	Verbs of perception followed by a participle	470
Lesson 96.	Adverbs in <i>-up</i>	475
Lesson 97.	Masculine nouns in <i>-a</i> and <i>-e</i>	479
Lesson 98.	The preposition <i>pa</i> used distributively	483
Lesson 99.	Diminutives of masculine nouns in <i>-us</i> and <i>-ns</i> and feminine nouns in <i>-s</i>	487

Lesson 100.	The vocative case	492
Lesson 101.	The past participle active; the present perfect tense	497
Lesson 102.	The past perfect tense	503
Lesson 103.	The future perfect tense	508
Lesson 104.	The conditional perfect	512
Lesson 105.	Adverbs in <i>-am</i> and <i>-ām</i>	516
Lesson 106.	More invariable adjectives	519
Lesson 107.	The verb <i>sargāt</i>	523
Lesson 108.	Verb summary	527
Lesson 109.	Open <i>ē</i> and closed <i>ē</i>	535
Lesson 110.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses	542
Lesson 111.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: non-compound tenses. Verbs containing <i>e</i> in the stem	548
Lesson 112.	The short conjugation: simple palatalized type: compound tenses	552
Lesson 113.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>nākt</i>	556
Lesson 114.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>lēkt</i>	561
Lesson 115.	Agreement of adjectives with the debitive of <i>būt</i>	565
Lesson 116.	More adverbs of time	569
Lesson 117.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type	572
Lesson 118.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type, stems in <i>-st</i> , <i>-zt</i> ; alternation of <i>e</i>	577
Lesson 119.	The short conjugation: future tense of verbs in <i>-st</i> and <i>-zt</i>	582
Lesson 120.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: short vowel in the present tense	586
Lesson 121.	The short conjugation: semipalatalized type: long vowel in the imperfect only	591
Lesson 122.	Adjectives in <i>-ējs</i>	595
Lesson 123.	Adjectives modified by 'too'	600
Lesson 124.	The short conjugation: unchanged type	605
Lesson 125.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the imperfect	610
Lesson 126.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: long vowel in the present	616
Lesson 127.	The short conjugation: unchanged type, long vowel in the present (irregular)	621
Lesson 128.	The short conjugation: unchanged type: short vowel in the present	625
Lesson 129.	Adverbial nouns of place	629
Lesson 130.	<i>Kaut</i>	633

Lesson 131.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced)	637
Lesson 132.	The short conjugation: dental type (unvoiced): long vowel in the present	641
Lesson 133.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced)	645
Lesson 134.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced): long vowel in the present	648
Lesson 135.	The short conjugation: dental type (voiced and unvoiced): irregular long vowel in the present	652
Lesson 136.	Imperfective and perfective verbs	656
Lesson 137.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	660
Lesson 138.	Imperfective and perfective verbs (cont.)	665
Lesson 139.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type	669
Lesson 140.	The short conjugation: <i>a-o-a</i> type, with dental (voiced and unvoiced)	674
Lesson 141.	<i>Šāds</i> and <i>tāds</i> : adjectives and pronouns	679
Lesson 142.	Irregular masculine nouns in <i>-is</i>	682
Lesson 143.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type	686
Lesson 144.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, long vowel in the present	690
Lesson 145.	The short conjugation: <i>i-e-i</i> type, with unvoiced dental, with and without long vowel in the present	694
Lesson 146.	Questions with <i>lai</i>	697
Lesson 147.	Avoidance of the possessive adjective	701
Lesson 148.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type	706
Lesson 149.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, short vowel in present and imperfect	710
Lesson 150.	The short conjugation: post-vocalic <i>-j-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-iet</i>	714
Lesson 151.	Omission of the verb <i>ir</i>	718
Lesson 152.	Omission of <i>ar</i>	722
Lesson 153.	The short conjugation: nasal type	726
Lesson 154.	The short conjugation: nasal type, with alternation <i>i-e-i</i>	730
Lesson 155.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i>	733
Lesson 156.	The present participle active in <i>-dams</i> with an imperative ..	739
Lesson 157.	The short conjugation: nasal type (<i>-iet</i>) with anomalous imperfect	743
Lesson 158.	Countries, inhabitants and languages	747
Lesson 159.	Adjectives with the prefix <i>pa-</i>	752
Lesson 160.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, in <i>-ūt</i>	754
Lesson 161.	The short conjugation: <i>j/v</i> type, infinitives in <i>-aut</i>	758
Lesson 162.	The short conjugation: the verb <i>aut</i>	762
Lesson 163.	The present participle active in <i>-ošs</i>	765

Lesson 164.	The present participle active in <i>-ot</i>	772
Lesson 165.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (unvoiced) type	777
Lesson 166.	The short conjugation: palato-dental (voiced) type	781
Lesson 167.	The dative absolute	787
Lesson 168.	The debitive of <i>būt</i> with a following noun	792
Lesson 169.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type	797
Lesson 170.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, alternation of <i>e</i>	802
Lesson 171.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, infinitives in <i>-st</i>	806
Lesson 172.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, long vowel in the present	811
Lesson 173.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, irregular long vowel in the present	815
Lesson 174.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, some anomalous spellings	820
Lesson 175.	Alternative formation of the comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs	824
Lesson 176.	Prepositions and nouns cognate with postpositions and adverbs	828
Lesson 177.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (unvoiced) mixed type	833
Lesson 178.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> and dental (voiced) mixed type	837
Lesson 179.	The present participle passive	841
Lesson 180.	The present participle passive (cont.)	847
Lesson 181.	The present participle passive (cont.)	851
Lesson 182.	The present participle passive (cont.)	856
Lesson 183.	The present participle passive (cont.)	860
Lesson 184.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-j-</i>	865
Lesson 185.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-n-</i>	869
Lesson 186.	The short conjugation: <i>-st-</i> type, imperfects in <i>-v-</i>	873
Lesson 187.	The past participle passive	877
Lesson 188.	The passive voice	883
Lesson 189.	Avoidance of the passive voice	890
Lesson 190.	The short conjugation: the verbs <i>brist</i> and <i>llst</i>	895
Lesson 191.	The anomalous verb <i>virt</i>	899
Lesson 192.	Declension of <i>mēness</i> and <i>biedrs</i>	903
Lesson 193.	Summary of the short conjugation	906
Lesson 194.	The possessive pronouns	915

VOLUME III

Lesson 195.	Reflexive verbs: present tense	919
Lesson 196.	Reflexive verbs: imperfect tense	926
Lesson 197.	Reflexive verbs: future tense	930
Lesson 198.	Reflexive verbs: conditional	934
Lesson 199.	Reflexive verbs: imperatives	938
Lesson 200.	Reflexive verbs: past participle and perfect tenses	943
Lesson 201.	Reflexive verbs: the debitive mood	948
Lesson 202.	The past participle (active and reflexive) in participial phrases	952
Lesson 203.	The past participle (active and reflexive) used adjectivally	957
Lesson 204.	Reflexive verbs: other participial forms	962
Lesson 205.	Reflexive verbs: revision	967
Lesson 206.	Diminutive adjectives and adverbs	971
Lesson 207.	Indeclinable nouns	976
Lesson 208.	Partitive genitive and accusative of exclamation	980
Lesson 209.	Further remarks on the syntax of participles	986
Lesson 210.	Future imperatives	991
Lesson 211.	The verbal prefix <i>aiz-</i>	995
Lesson 212.	The verbal prefix <i>ap-</i>	1000
Lesson 213.	The verbal prefix <i>at-</i>	1005
Lesson 214.	The verbal prefix <i>ie-</i>	1010
Lesson 215.	The verbal prefix <i>iz-</i>	1015
Lesson 216.	The verbal prefix <i>no-</i>	1021
Lesson 217.	The verbal prefix <i>pa-</i>	1027
Lesson 218.	The verbal prefix <i>pār-</i>	1031
Lesson 219.	The verbal prefix <i>pie-</i>	1037
Lesson 220.	The verbal prefix <i>sa-</i>	1043
Lesson 221.	The verbal prefix <i>uz-</i>	1049
Lesson 222.	Interjections	1054
Lesson 223.	Verbal nouns in <i>-šana</i>	1060
Lesson 224.	Reflexive verbal nouns in <i>-šanās</i>	1065
Lesson 225.	Other reflexive nouns	1070
Lesson 226.	Further numerals	1076
Lesson 227.	Conjunctive mood: present tense	1084
Lesson 228.	Conjunctive mood: future tense	1090
Lesson 229.	Conjunctive mood: perfect tenses	1095
Lesson 230.	Conjunctive mood: debitive forms	1100
Lesson 231.	Conjunctive passive	1105
Lesson 232.	The adjectival suffix <i>-ains</i>	1110

Lesson 233. The adjectival suffix <i>-isks</i>	1115
Lesson 234. The adjectival suffix <i>-īgs</i>	1119
Lesson 235. The noun suffix <i>-ums</i>	1124
Lesson 236. The noun suffix <i>-iens</i>	1129
Lesson 237. The noun suffix <i>-nieks</i> (fem. <i>-niece</i>)	1134
Lesson 238. The noun suffix <i>-lba</i>	1140
Lesson 239. The noun suffixes <i>-eklis</i> and <i>-ēklis</i>	1146
Lesson 240. The noun suffixes <i>-ava</i> and <i>-uve</i>	1153
Lesson 241. Factitive verbs in <i>-ināt</i>	1158
Lesson 242. Further numerals	1164
Lesson 243. Cognate adverbs	1170
Lesson 244. The impersonal passive	1176
Latvian-English Vocabulary	1182
English-Latvian Vocabulary	1273
Select Bibliography	1361
Grammatical Index	1363
Index of Authors and Reading Passages	1369

LESSON 195

REFLEXIVE VERBS: PRESENT TENSE

The present indicative endings in the active voice, it will be recalled, are of four types:

- (1) *-āju, -ā, -ā, -ājam, -ājat, -ā.*
For all verbs of the Long Conjugation. The vowels *ē, ī, o,* and *ū* have similar patterns.
- (2) *-u, -i, -a, -ām, -āt, -a.*
For Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-īt* and *-ināt*, including *zināt*.
- (3) *-u, -i, -, -am, -at, -.*
For Mixed Conjugation verbs in *-ēt* and *-āt*, excluding *zināt*. Also for some verbs of the Short Conjugation.
- (4) *-u, -, -, -am, -at, -.*
For those verbs of the Short Conjugation not requiring series 3 above.

Compare now the active endings with the reflexive endings.

Note that the reflexive infinitive is simply the active infinitive plus the reflexive ending *-ies*.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>mazgāt</i> 'to wash' | <i>mazgāties</i> 'to wash oneself' |
| <i>es mazgāju</i> | <i>es mazgājos</i> |
| <i>tu mazgā</i> | <i>tu mazgājies</i> |
| <i>viņš mazgā</i> | <i>viņš mazgājas</i> |
| <i>mēs mazgājam</i> | <i>mēs mazgājamies</i> |
| <i>jūs mazgājat</i> | <i>jūs mazgājaties</i> |
| <i>viņi mazgā</i> | <i>viņi mazgājas</i> |
| (2) <i>mācīt</i> 'to teach' | <i>mācīties</i> 'to learn, study' |
| <i>es mācu</i> | <i>es mācos</i> |
| <i>tu māci</i> | <i>tu mācies</i> |
| <i>viņš māca</i> | <i>viņš mācās</i> |
| <i>mēs mācām</i> | <i>mēs mācāmies</i> |
| <i>jūs mācāt</i> | <i>jūs mācāties</i> |
| <i>viņi māca</i> | <i>viņi mācās</i> |

(3) <i>aizstāvēt</i> 'to defend'	<i>aizstāvēties</i> 'to defend oneself'
<i>es aizstāvu</i>	<i>es aizstāvos</i>
<i>tu aizstāvi</i>	<i>tu aizstāvieš</i>
<i>viņš aizstāv</i>	<i>viņš aizstāvas</i>
<i>mēs aizstāvam</i>	<i>mēs aizstāvamies</i>
<i>jūs aizstāvat</i>	<i>jūs aizstāvaties</i>
<i>viņi aizstāv</i>	<i>viņi aizstāvas</i>
(4) <i>dot</i> 'to give'	<i>doties</i> 'to go, betake oneself'
<i>es došu</i>	<i>es dodos</i>
<i>tu dod</i>	<i>tu dodies</i>
<i>viņš dod</i>	<i>viņš dodas</i>
<i>mēs dodam</i>	<i>mēs dodamies</i>
<i>jūs dodat</i>	<i>jūs dodaties</i>
<i>viņi dod</i>	<i>viņi dodas</i>

The reflexive forms can be derived from the active forms by the application of the following rules:

(a) if the active form ending ends in a consonant, then the reflexive simply appends *-ies*: thus in all infinitives, cf. *mazgāt/mazgāties*, and the first and second persons plural, cf. *mācām/mācāties* and *dodat/dodaties*.

(b) if the active voice ending ends in a vowel, the reflexive adds *-s* and lengthens the vowel in question. Note however that *i* is lengthened to *ie*, and *u* to *o* – cf. the lengthening processes in the formation of definite adjectives. Exx. *aizstāvi/aizstāvieš*, *māca/mācās*, *mazgāju/mazgājās*.

The endings *-ā*, *-ē*, *-ī*, *-o* and *-ū* cannot be lengthened: for these we substitute the hypothetical analogical forms **-āji*, **-ēji*, **-īji*, **-oji* and **-ūji* in the second person singular, and **-āj*, **-ēj*, **-īj*, **-oj* and **-ūj* in the third person singular and plural, which then gives us, by application of rules (b) and (c), the reflexive endings *-ājies*, *-ējies*, *-ījies*, *-ojies* and *-ūjies* on the one hand, and *-ājas*, *-ējas*, *-ījas*, *-ojas* and *-ūjas* on the other. These analogical lengthening syllables are best considered as suffixes, not as part of the ending.

(c) Where there is no ending at all, the reflexive simply adds *-as*: cf. *aizstāv/aizstāvas*, (*viņš*) *dod/dodas*.

Those verbs of the Short Conjugation that lack the second person singular *-i* are assumed to have it for the purposes of forming the reflexive: cf. (*tu*) *dod/dodies*.

Alternatively, we can learn two sets of endings:

- (1) *-os*, *-ies*, *-as*, *-amies*, *-aties*, *-as*
- (2) *-os*, *-ies*, *-ās*, *-āmies*, *-āties*, *-ās*

The infinitive ending is always *-ies*.

Set (2) will be used for all verbs of the Mixed Conjugation in *-īt* and *-ināt* (including *zināt*).

Set (1) will be used for all other verbs, with the proviso that Long Conjugation verbs will have the appropriate *-āj*, *-ēj*, *-īj*, *-oj*, or *-ūj* before the reflexive ending throughout the present tense, including the second person singular, the third person singular and the third person plural, where in the active conjugation this lengthening syllable does not occur.

It should be noted particularly that all reflexive verbs share the same stem peculiarities as the corresponding active form, thus:

<i>es ceļu</i>	<i>es ceļos</i>	(palatalized stem consonant)
<i>tu cel</i>	<i>tu celies</i>	(non-palatalized stem consonant)

THE MEANING OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

(1) A number of reflexive verbs are purely reflexive, i.e., they can be said, from an English point of view, to contain a reflexive pronoun object:

<i>es mazgāju</i>	I wash
<i>es mazgājos</i>	I wash myself

(2) Reflexive verbs often correspond to English passives, and can also extend their meaning into a new active verb of similar meaning to the passive, but with the passive force lost:

<i>celt</i>	to lift
<i>celties</i>	to be lifted; hence: to rise
<i>mācīt</i>	to teach
<i>mācīties</i>	to be taught; hence: to learn, study

(3) Reflexive verbs often incorporate the idea of a reciprocal pronoun object rather than of a purely reflexive one:

<i>redzēt</i>	to see
<i>redzēties</i>	to see one another.

(4) Often the reflexive verb has a meaning quite different from that of the corresponding active verb:

<i>kaut</i>	to kill, slaughter
<i>kauties</i>	to fight
<i>dot</i>	to give
<i>doties</i>	to go, betake oneself.

- (5) Some reflexive verbs have the same meaning as the corresponding active forms, but are used in different constructions:

<i>Es gribu ēst.</i>	I want to eat.	or: I am hungry.
<i>Man gribas ēst.</i>	I want to eat.	or: I am hungry.

- (6) Some reflexive verbs exist independently of any active form. We shall meet some of these in later lessons.

Vocabulary

<i>gribēties (-as, -ējās)</i>	to want
<i>redzēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to see one another
<i>aizstāvēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to defend oneself
<i>(sa-)lasīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to assemble together, to congregate
<i>sarakstīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to write to one another, to correspond
<i>mocīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to torment oneself, to be plagued
<i>mācīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to learn, study
<i>klausīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to listen
<i>(pa-)rādīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to show up, to appear
<i>skūpstīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to kiss one another
<i>(sa-)runāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to converse
<i>mazgāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to wash oneself
<i>spēlēties (-ējos, -ējos)</i>	to play (intr.), to play games
<i>sakārtoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to prepare, arrange oneself
<i>veidoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to develop, take shape
<i>novietoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to be placed, accommodated; to take one's seat
<i>apvainoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to take offence
<i>doties (dodos, devos)</i>	to go, betake oneself
<i>cēties (cēļos, cēļos)</i>	to rise, to get up
<i>kauties (kaujos, kāvos)</i>	to fight
<i>uzdoties (-dodos, -devos)</i>	to pretend to be
<i>kavēties (-ējos, -ējos)</i>	to linger
<i>nokavēties (-ējos, -ējos)</i>	to be late
<i>saukties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to be called, named
<i>beigties (-dzos, -dzos)</i>	to finish, end (intrans.)
<i>lūgties (-dzos, -dzos)</i>	to beg, pray, ask (= <i>lūgt</i>)
<i>sniegties (-dzos, -dzos)</i>	to extend (intrans.)

Although we have not yet considered the imperfect forms of reflexive verbs, they are given in the above vocabulary for the sake of completeness, and will not be repeated in the lesson on the imperfect.

NOTES: *Gribēties* is an impersonal verb, and is used only in the third person without subject. The logical subject is in the dative, and, as with *gribēt*, an infinitive may follow.

sarakstīties ar 'to correspond with'

mocīties ar 'to be plagued with', 'to torment oneself with'

apvainoties par 'to take offence at'

uzdoties par 'to make oneself out to be'

Uzdoties is regarded by many as un-Latvian: its usage, however, is sufficiently widespread to command recognition.

Klausīties requires its object in the locative:

Es klausos stāstā. I am listening to the story.

The direct accusative, or accusative governed by *uz*, will also be found frequently.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 182-191.

Exercise 195a

Conjugate in the present tense: *aizstāvēties; mocīties; mācīties; klausīties; sarunāties; mazgāties; sakārtoties; apvainoties; doties; celties; kauties; saukties.*

Exercise 195b

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *līst; brīst; atgūt; pazīt.*

Exercise 195c

Give the imperative and past participle active forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 195b.

Exercise 195d

Give the appropriate participial forms (excluding the past participle active) of the verbs listed in Ex. 195b.

Exercise 195e

Write about 200 words in Latvian on the topic: *Vai jūs mācāties ātri un viegli?*

Exercise 195f

Translate into English:

1. Nabaga bērns jau ilgi mocās ar garo klepu.
2. Slavenā aktrise parādās uz ekrāna.
3. Kad aina beidzas, ļaudis dodas pēc apelsīniem un saldējuma.
4. Teātra starpbrīžos mēs parasti sarunājamies un smēķējam.
5. Brīžam tu nemaz neklausies, kad cits runā.
6. Kamēr sieva mazgājas un sakārtojas, es jau jūdzu zirgus.
7. Šie kalni sniedzas līdz mākoņiem.
8. Vai tavi bērni mācās labi? – Ne slīktāk par tavējiem.
9. Ļaudis salasās baznīcas priekšā.
10. Man šovakar negribas iet uz kinoteātri, bet bērni lūdzas, būs tomēr jāiet.
11. Kā šī filma saucas?
12. Viņš brīžam uzdodas par ārstu, bet ja ļaudis viņam netic, viņš apvainojas.
13. Bērni spēlējas aizvējā.
14. Vectēvs vakaros novietoja aizkrāsnē.
15. Vai jūs vēl sarakstāties ar jauno virsnieku?
16. Ja modinātājs no rīta nezvana, es parasti nokavējos. – Cikos tu parasti celies?
17. Glezna jau veidojas.
18. Mēs vairs tik bieži neredzamies.
19. Kāpēc tu neaizstāvi? – Es nekad nekaujos.
20. Juris dodas uz parku ar fotoaparātu rokā. Tur Aivars ar Birutu laikam atkal skūpstās, un viņš grib viņus nofotografēt.
21. Kamēr kārtībnieks stāv pie ieejas, tur es nevaru rādīties.
22. Tavs vīrs pašreiz kavējas krogū, viņš dzer tur kopā ar manējo.
23. Kad mācītājs runā par laimīgo dzīvi aizsaulē, es nemaz neklausos.
24. No kļūdām mācās, un tā veidojas raksturs.
25. Ļaudis sāk salasīties tiesas gaitēpos.
26. Kāpēc viņa apvainojas par šo izteicienu?
27. Mūsu bērni vēl spēlējas smilšu bedrē, bet jūšējos es tur vairs neredzu.
28. Kāpēc jūs sarunājaties tik skaļi?
29. Šinī viesnīcā var ērti novietoties simts viesu.
30. Vecāmāte mocās ar šo slimību jau vairākus gadus.
31. Vai viņa jau sakārtojas ballei?
32. Mēs reti redzamies.
33. Mēs jau ilgu laiku sarakstāmies.
34. Cikos tā luga beidzas?
35. Vai tas ir tas vīrs, kas uzdodas par pasta ierēdni un tad izlaupa dzīvokļus?
36. Noziedznieks ļoti veikli aizstāvas tiesas priekšā.
37. Viņa tagad saucas citādi.

38. Sunītis tik skaisti lūdzas, iedod nu kaulu!
39. Viņa vara sniedzas tālāk nekā tu domā.
40. Man negribas, ka tu celies, sieviņ; es pats tieku galā ar brokastīm. (*tikt galā ar* = to get to an end with, i.e., to manage successfully, to cope)
41. A: Kāpēc jūs tik bieži kaujaties un tik reti skūpstāties?
B: Tā nav mana vaina, bet viņas!
C: Nē, tā nav mana vaina, bet viņa!
D: Katrs redz tikai cita vainu, bet ne savējo.
A: Šī problēma nav ne tavējā, ne manējā, bet viņu pašu.
42. Mēs mēģinājām nokļūt ienaidnieka aizmugurē.
43. Kāpēc tu mani neklausies?

Exercise 195g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The farm-labourer rises at five o'clock, and before he washes, he feeds the horses.
2. How many people can be accommodated in this hotel?
3. A crowd is assembling at the railway station.
4. The water comes (*sniegties*) only up to the knees.
5. She is getting ready to go to the ball.
6. Don't you want to drink? – No, I am troubled by a cough, and I do not want to drink cold beer.
7. The dish is already taking shape in the hands of the master.
8. They are no longer talking; they are probably kissing now.
9. Where is she dallying so long? Does she want to miss the bus?
10. Why do you pretend to be an artist?
11. That old gossip always listens to us when we chat in the garden.
12. As soon as the performance finishes, every one goes home.
13. Do you still correspond with Juris?
14. Sometimes the children play peacefully, sometimes they fight.
15. He takes bribes, and yet still calls himself an honest official.
16. As soon as the great actor appears on stage, people applaud.
17. Is she studying well? – Yes, she learns easily, but she is troubled by the grammar.
18. We see each other more often now.
19. The enemy are defending themselves.
20. I do not listen to that horrible loud music.
21. When the king appears at the window, the people congregate in front of the castle.
22. Do you and Aija see each other often?
23. Why do you pretend to be a professor?

24. The film-star calls herself by another name (loc.) now.
25. The children usually beg so long that we let them play in the snow.
26. Act One finishes at nine o'clock.
27. The dog is begging with his eyes.
28. On stage they kiss each other, but in life, the one dislikes the other.
29. Why do you take offence at such trivial things?
30. Are they already washing and getting ready?
31. We always put up at this hotel.
32. How is his character developing?
33. How far does this marshy meadow extend?
34. At what time do they get up?
35. I am not fighting, dad, I am only defending myself.
36. They have been corresponding for a long time.

LESSON 196

REFLEXIVE VERBS: IMPERFECT TENSE

Whereas in the active conjugation there were four sets of endings for the present tense, there is only one set of endings for the imperfect. This considerably simplifies the formation of the Imperfect Reflexive.

By applying the rules given in Lesson 195, the endings of the imperfect are transformed into the reflexive voice as follows:

-u	becomes	-os
-i	becomes	-ies
-a	becomes	-ās
-ām	becomes	-āmieš
-āt	becomes	-āties
-a	becomes	-ās

Remember that verbs of both the Long and Mixed Conjugations will have lengthening syllables (-āj-, -ēj-, etc.) before the endings given above.

Thus the imperfect conjugation of the four verbs conjugated in Lesson 195 (*mazgāties*, *mācīties*, *aizstāvēties* and *doties*) is as follows:

<i>es mazgājos</i>	<i>es mācījos</i>	<i>es aizstāvējos</i>	<i>es devos</i>
<i>tu mazgājies</i>	<i>tu mācījies</i>	<i>tu aizstāvējies</i>	<i>tu devies</i>
<i>viņš mazgājās</i>	<i>viņš mācījās</i>	<i>viņš aizstāvējās</i>	<i>viņš devās</i>
<i>mēs mazgājāmieš</i>	<i>mēs mācījāmieš</i>	<i>mēs aizstāvējāmieš</i>	<i>mēs devāmieš</i>
<i>jūs mazgājāties</i>	<i>jūs mācījāties</i>	<i>jūs aizstāvējāties</i>	<i>jūs devāties</i>
<i>viņi mazgājās</i>	<i>viņi mācījās</i>	<i>viņi aizstāvējās</i>	<i>viņi devās</i>

The imperfect reflexive, then, is seen to be of one type only, with the rules for transformation applying in a much more direct and regular way than in the present.

Vocabulary

<i>skaitīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to be reputed, considered to be
<i>sodīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to grumble
<i>sollīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to give one's word, promise
<i>vārīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to be boiling, cooking (intrans.)
<i>taisīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to get ready, prepare (intrans.); to intend
<i>(no-)slaucīties</i> (-kos, -cļjos)	to wipe oneself
<i>locīties</i> (-kos, -cļjos)	to bend (intrans.); to wriggle
<i>sasveicināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to greet one another
<i>turēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to hold on (to); to stick (to)
<i>uzturēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to dwell, stay
<i>pieturēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to hold fast; to follow (rule, etc.)
<i>izturēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to behave
<i>mainīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to change, vary (intrans.)
<i>pildīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to be filled
<i>piepildīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to be filled; (of wish, etc.) to be fulfilled, realized
<i>apskatīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to look (around)
<i>skatīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to look at
<i>(ap-)precēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to get married
<i>(sa-)sildīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to warm oneself; to grow warm
<i>dibināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to be based (on)
<i>vilcināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to hesitate, linger, tarry
<i>vadīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to be guided; to follow (rule, etc.)
<i>kustēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to move, stir (intrans.)
<i>balstīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to lean against, on; to be based on
<i>atbalstīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to lean against
<i>salsināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to grow shorter
<i>šaubīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to doubt
<i>pakārtīties</i> (-karos, -kāros)	to hang oneself

NOTES: *skaitīties* *par* or simply with the nominative 'to pass for'
turēties *pie* 'to stick to'
vadīties *pēc* 'to be guided by, in accordance with'
šaubīties *par* 'to have doubts about'

Skatīties requires its object in the locative:

Skaties mani! Look at me.

It is also found with *uz* (+ acc.).

mainīties vietām 'to change places'
turēties uz kājām 'to keep on one's feet'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 161-170.

Exercise 196a

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *skaitīties; solīties; taisīties; apskatīties; izturēties; apprecēties; sildīties; vilcināties; doties; celties; kauties; saukties.*

Exercise 196b

State the 12 types of Short Conjugation verbs, together with the variant patterns, and give an example of each.

Exercise 196c

Write about 200 words in Latvian on the topic: *Slavenas ēkas, kuras es gribētu redzēt.*

Exercise 196d

Translate into English:

- Guntis solījās atnākt ap četriem; kur viņš kavējas?
- Es šaubos, vai viņi visu gadu uzturas Sidnejā.
- Mēs taisījāties iet uz kinoteātri, bet tad laiks mainījās, un mēs palikām mājās.
- Mēs apprecējāties tūkstoš deviņsimt četrdesmit sestajā gadā.
- Viņš skaitās pasaules slavenākais skaņradis.
- Tavi vārdi tomēr nepiepildījās; tavs dēls nemācījās par kalēju. (*Note the ellipsis.*)
- Vai jūs redzējāt, kā šis līdējs pirmīt locījās pilsētas galvas priekšā?
- Tur nupat kaut kas kustējās.
- Biruta dusmīgi skatījās uz mani.

- Tu izturējies pilnīgi pareizi, netraucējot viņus, kad viņi skūpstījās.
- Mēs vadījāties pēc šī plāna.
- Zaglis apskatījās visapkārt, vilcinājās kādu brītiņu un tad ielīda pa logu istabā.
- Piedod, ka es noslaucījos ar savu dvieļi!
- Kārlis vēl turējās uz kājām, bet Ludis bija tā iereibis, ka viņš abām rokām pieturējās pie žoga.
- Tauriņi sildījās pavasara saulītē.
- Pavārs sodījās, ka ūdens nevērijās.
- Mēs ilgu gadu sasveicinājāties uz ielas, bet mēs nekad nesarunājāties.
- Vai jūs virtuvē sasildījāties?
- Noziedznieks pakārās, pirms policija paspēja viņu apcietināt.
- Slimnieks atbalstījās ar muguru pret spilvenu.
- Valsts vara balstījās uz ierēdņiem un virsniekiem.
- Vai tu slaucījies ar šo netīro dvieļi?
- Mēs nekad nešaubījāties par savu drosmi.
- Mācītāja asie vārdi bija domāti tādiem, kas precas naudas dēļ.
- Vai jūs savā jaunībā neskaitījāties labākais skrējējs visā Latvijā?
- Muca pildījās ar lietus ūdeni.
- Mēs ar sievu mainījāties vietām teātrī, jo priekšā sēdēja liels, drukns vīrs, un viņa neredzēja skatuvi.

Exercise 196e

Translate into Latvian:

- When they were married, they went to Riga.
- When the hunter looked around, a bear appeared nearby (*tuvumā*).
- Were you getting ready to go to church?
- You behaved like a real officer.
- The train was already moving when I arrived at the station.
- The cook remained (*uzturējies*) for a while in her room, and did not notice that the soup was boiling.
- The witch hanged herself for fear of the stake.
- Were they offended when that drunkard began shouting?
- We no longer greet each other on the street.
- The sailor was looking through a telescope.
- Riga was once reputed to be the world's largest port for the export of timber.
- Did the doctor promise to come soon?
- The craftsman was holding fast to the rafter with one hand when the firemen saved him.

14. Why did you change places?
15. She did not doubt his love for a moment.
16. Why didn't the chauffeur stick to (*uz*) the main road?
17. Yesterday this finger was still flexible, but now it is quite stiff.
18. The gipsies' words were realized.
19. The barn was rapidly filling with corn.
20. The air was completely still, and not a branch was moving.
21. Why didn't the soldiers warm themselves in the stable? – Because they could warm themselves more easily in the kitchen.
22. Why did you wipe yourself with my towel? – I wiped myself with the towel which I found in the bathroom.
23. This calculation was based upon the facts.
24. The patient was leaning on our shoulders.

LESSON 197

REFLEXIVE VERBS: FUTURE TENSE

The endings of the future reflexive are obtained quite regularly by applying the rules given in Lesson 195. Thus:

-šu	becomes	-šos
-si	becomes	-sies
-s	becomes	-sies
-sim	becomes	-simies
-sit	becomes	-sities
-s	becomes	-sies

Hence the verbs *mazgāties* 'to wash oneself', and *celties* 'to rise' are conjugated in the future tense as follows:

<i>es mazgāšos</i>	<i>es celšos</i>
<i>tu mazgāsies</i>	<i>tu celsies</i>
<i>viņš mazgāsies</i>	<i>viņš celsies</i>
<i>mēs mazgāsimies</i>	<i>mēs celsimies</i>
<i>jūs mazgāsities</i>	<i>jūs celsities</i>
<i>viņi mazgāsies</i>	<i>viņi celsies</i>

Remember that the future tense of verbs in *-st* and *-zt* is formed from the imperfect stem with the endings *-lšu* (refl. *-lšos*), etc.

Vocabulary

<i>kālab</i>	= <i>kāpēc</i>
<i>šūpot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to swing, rock (trans.)
<i>šūpoties</i> (- <i>ojos</i> , - <i>ojos</i>)	to swing, rock (intrans.)
<i>tālab</i>	= <i>tāpēc</i>
<i>dancot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to dance
(<i>aiz-</i>) <i>zagties</i> (<i>zogos</i> , <i>zagos</i>)	to steal away, slip away
<i>nejaušs</i>	unexpected, fortuitous
<i>veranda</i>	verandah
<i>apklāt</i> (- <i>ju</i> , - <i>ju</i>)	to cover; here = to set (table)
<i>trīstēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	= <i>trīcēt</i>
<i>ņemšana</i>	a taking
<i>liegties</i> (- <i>dzos</i> , - <i>dzos</i>)	to refuse, decline; to protest, to protest innocence
<i>zvans</i>	bell
<i>zvani</i> (pl.)	chimes, peals
<i>uja!</i>	(an interjection)
<i>dzeršana</i>	a drinking
<i>no jauna</i>	again, over again, once more
<i>gluži</i>	completely, quite
<i>mudināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to incite, urge on
<i>priecāties</i> (- <i>ājos</i> , - <i>ājos</i>)	to be pleased, to rejoice
<i>pusgaišs</i>	dim, half-light
<i>smaržot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>) more often:	
<i>smaržot</i>	to smell sweet
<i>sajūta</i>	feeling

NOTES: *Kāpēc*, *tāpēc*, *trīcēt* and *smaržot* are more common than *kālab*, *tālab*, *trīstēt* and *smaržot*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 185–194.

Exercise 197a

Translate into English:

- Kālab*, meitip, raudi tu?
Raudi tu tik gauži?
Gauži raudi tu?

Citas meitas tirgū gāj',
Man tas bērniņš jāšūpo!
Tālab, tālab raudu,
Tālab raudu es!

Citas meitas dancot gāj',
Man tas bērniņš jāšūpo!
Tālab, tālab raudu,
Tālab raudu es!

Citas meitas puīši mīl,
Man' tie puīši vairs nemīl!
Tālab, tālab raudu,
Tālab raudu es!

Exercise 197b

Translate into English:

Es aizzogos no ļaudīm un eju gar dārzu un domāju kaut ko par viņu. Un nejauši viņa sauc mani dārzā no verandas:

– Jāni, nākat¹ šurp!

Es ieeju pa maziem vārtiņiem. Uz verandas deg lampa, un ir aplāts galds. Siers un medus un vīns un puķes un vainagi. Bet neviena cilvēka.

– Lūdzu, dzeriet vīnu uz jūsu² vārda dienu! Es arī – viņa saka. Viņa lej tumši sarkanu³ vīnu glāzēs un roka trīs.

– Dzeriet! – Un mēs dzeņam⁴ abi.

– Un nemiet sieru! Te ir siers.

Es paņemu gabaliņu un lieku mutē.

– Nē, kas tā par ņemšanu! Nemiet vairāk! Un vēl vīnu!

Viņa ielej vēl un es dzeņ⁴ un liedzos, ka nu būs diezgan. Bet sirds man zvana kā zvans.

¹ Strictly speaking, *-at* is an indicative ending, and *-iet* an imperative ending. Many Latvians, however, do not make this distinction, and either form may occur in either function.

² Note that *jūsu* is here used instead of the expected *savu*.

³ Compound adjectives of colour normally have the adverbial (or neuter) ending of the first element, the second only taking the required inflection.

⁴ In this as in subsequent texts, we retain the symbol *r* where used by the author. We do not, however, re-instate the symbol where a modern editor whose text we have followed has eliminated it.

– Uja! Kas tā par dzeršanu! Dzeriet vairāk! Šodien Jāņu diena un jūs esiet¹ Jānis.

Un viņa lej no jauna, un man ir jādzeņ.⁴ Mēs stāvam gluži tuvu viens pie otra un viņa nolaiž acis un smaida. Es nevaru teikt nekā.

– Alma! – sauc no istabas saimnieks, – atnes mums sieru!

Bet viņa nedzird.

– Dzeriet! dzeriet! – viņa mudina un lej sarkani-meļnu³ vīnu manā glāzē un sniedz ar garu,⁴ slaidu roku. Viņa priecājas, ka es neesmu ļauns vairs.

Verandā ir kluss un pusgaišs. Vainagi smaržo, un Alma stāv man⁵ priekšā un lej no jauna vīnu... Es zaudēju laika un vietas sajūtu...

Jānis Akuraters, from *Kalpa zēna vasara*.

Exercise 197c

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and future: *šūpoties*; *aizzagties*; *liegties*; *priecāties*; *doties*; *saukties*; *celties*.

Exercise 197d

Retell briefly in Latvian the content of the folk-song given in Ex. 197a.

Exercise 197e

Retell briefly in Latvian the events described in the passage given in Ex. 197b.

Exercise 197f

Translate into English:

1. Bērni šūposies tik ilgi, kamēr sāks reibt galva.
2. Ūdens tūlīt vārīsies.
3. Vecāki priecāsies par taviem panākumiem.
4. Koncerts ir garlaicīgs, tālab es starpbrīdī aizzagšos prom.
5. Man ir tāda sajūta, ka noziedznieks ilgi neliegsies, kad mēs viņu pratināsim.
6. Rītu es no jauna došos ceļā.
7. Cik ilgi tu vēl mocīsies ar šīm šaurajām, neērtajām kurpēm?
8. Jūs laikam apvainosities par to, ko es jums teikšu.

⁵ *Priekšā* may function as a postposition with the dative, particularly instead of the forms with the possessive adjective.

9. Cikos mēs rītā celsimies? – Ap septiņiem. – Nē, tas ir par vēlu, tad mēs nokavēsimies.
10. Dejojājas tūlīt parādīsies uz skatuves.
11. Ja suns nelūgsies, nedabūs kaulu.
12. Vai jūs precēsities šinī mēnesī?
13. Kamēr tu neizstāstīsi visu, es nekustēšos no vietas.
14. Līdz cikiem tu mācīsies? – Līdz vienpadsmitiem. – Uja! Tik ilgi!
15. Redzēsim, vai viņš turēsies pie patiesības!

Exercise 197g

Translate into Latvian:

1. I shall warm myself at the fire; then my hands will not shake any more.
2. We shall be pleased if your children play with ours.
3. Will you again pretend to be a composer?
4. The play will soon finish.
5. If you follow these figures, your estimate will undoubtedly be correct.
6. If you look down from this steep cliff, your head will become dizzy.
7. I shall not linger over (*ar*) a long introduction.
8. I shall listen to his speech for ten minutes, and then I shall slip away.
9. Will they wash themselves with cold water?
10. Let us hope that the weather will change by Saturday.
11. She will defend herself before the court.
12. If he fights in this hall once more, no girl will dance with him.
13. If the soldier refuses to go to the front, he will probably be shot.
14. Our dreams will come true.
15. The cellar will fill with water, and all the rats and mice will be drowned.

LESSON 198

REFLEXIVE VERBS: CONDITIONAL

The reflexive of the conditional is very simple indeed: the normal change of *u* to *os* takes place, and this is unchanged throughout the conjugation of the conditional.

es cēļtos I would get up, etc.
tu cēļtos

viņš cēļtos
mēs cēļtos
jūs cēļtos
viņi cēļtos

Vocabulary

<i>vizēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to glitter
<i>kvēlot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to glow
<i>uzvilkt (-vēlku, -vilku)</i>	to pull on, put on (clothes)
<i>vērste or vērstis (f.)</i>	verst
<i>sprēdītis</i>	sermon
<i>mūžīgs</i>	eternal, perpetual
<i>darbdiena</i>	working-day
<i>altāris</i>	altar
<i>dūkt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to hum, buzz, drone
<i>saldums</i>	sweetness
<i>skaidrība</i>	clarity, purity
<i>uzcēlt (-cēļu, -cēļu)</i>	to lift up
<i>uzcēļties (-cēļos, -cēļos)</i>	to get up
<i>nodomāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to intend
<i>pārsteigt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to surprise
<i>dzintars</i>	amber
<i>krēlles (pl.)</i>	beads
<i>viņ</i>	emphatic particle: see notes to text
<i>palaist (-žu, -du)</i>	here = to while away (time)
<i>(pie-)kravāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to pack, load
<i>studija</i>	study
<i>sagriezt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to cut up
<i>audeklis</i>	linen, (home-)woven cloth; here = canvas (for painting)
<i>lielums</i>	size
<i>piespraust (-žu, -du)</i>	to pin (to), to stick on
<i>svabads</i>	free, unrestrained, loose
<i>vakarvakarā</i>	= <i>vakar vakarā</i>
<i>ceļojums</i>	journey
<i>locēklis</i>	limb; member
<i>studiju dēlītis</i>	drawing-board

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 1–16.

Exercise 198a

Translate into English:

Šī svētdiena man ir brīva.

Diena viz un kvēlo un ir pilna saules spēka. Es uzvelku labākās drēbes un zābakus un eju uz baznīcu – verstes piecas.

Es nemīlu mācītāja sprediķus un neklausos viņos; tie ir tik cieti, sausi kā akmeņi un tūkstošreiz dzirdētus vārdus tur runā, kā mūžīgas darbdienu tie ir. Bet baznīcā ir gleznas virs altāra un ērģeles. Kad viņas sāk dūkt un dziedāt, es manu savādu saldumu caur locekļiem ritam. Un dažas dziesmas ir skaistas, tās – par lielo skaidrību un mieru.

Jānis Akuraters, from *Kalpa zēna vasara*.

Exercise 198b

Translate into English:

Kaut gan uzcēlos priekš saules, man tomēr nebija iespējams nekur aizskriet. Es biju nodomājis Veru Rozenbaumu pārsteigt ar tām visresnākajām dzintara krellēm, kādas vien¹ būs pie Alijeva dabūjamās, un tur es agrāk par astoņiem netiku iekšā. Šo laiku man vajadzēja kaut kā palaist. Es, ārēji pavisam mierīgs, piekrāvāju savu studiju kasti uz vairākām dienām. Es sagriezu audeklus vajadzīgā lielumā un piespraudu dažus pie studiju dēlīša, dažus svabadi iebāzu starpā. Jau vakarvakarā es savai sievai biju teicis, ka esmu nodomājis doties garākā² studiju ceļojumā, dziļāk kalnos.

Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, from *Vasara*.

Exercise 198c

Translate into English:

Trīs jaunas māšas
Sēž rožu dārzā,
Sēž rožu dārzā,
Vij vainadziņu.

¹ *visresnākajām*... vien 'the very biggest'

² The comparative form of the adjective sometimes has the meaning of 'rather': *garākā*... *ceļojumā* = 'on a rather long trip'.

Ņem, brālīt, vienu,
Es ņemšu otru.
Trešā vēl maza,
Lai paliek mājās!

Lai paliek mājās,
Lai dara¹ pūru!
Lai dara pūru,
Lai gaida tautas!²

Trīs jaunas māšas
Sēž rožu dārzā,
Sēž rožu dārzā,
Vij vainadziņu.

(T. dz.)

Exercise 198d

Conjugate in the present, imperfect, future and conditional: *uzcelties; šūpoties; aizzagties; liegties; priecāties; doties; saukties; mazgāties*.

Exercise 198e

Translate into English:

1. Es arī apvainotos par šādiem asiem vārdiem.
2. Tu arī skatītos, ja skaista meitene parādītos uz verandas! – Tā ir, es neliedzos.
3. Ja es strādātu un dzīvotu šeit, mēs redzētos katru dienu.
4. Kaut šī skaistā nakts nekad nebeigtos!
5. Kaut viņš vienreiz turētos pie vārda!
6. Ja man būtu jāiet darbā, es uzceltos agri.
7. Mēs tūlīt precētos, ja mums būtu māja.
8. Ja es būtu bagāts, es dotos pasaules ceļojumā.
9. Tu laikam gan priecātos, ja tu atrastu jūrmalā lielu dzintara gabalu.
10. Muižnieka bērni nekad nespēlētos ar kalpu bērniem.
11. Vai jūs neliegtos, ja jūs pratinātu?
12. Ja kuģis būtu lielāks, tas nešūpotos.

¹ *darīt* (here) = 'to work on'

² *tautas* (in folk songs) = 'suitors'

13. Ja mēs tikai varētu, mēs tūlī aizzagtos no baznīcas, jo sprediķis ir briesmīgi garlaicīgs.
14. Viņai gribētos stāvēt altāra priekšā ar staltu virsnienu.
15. Jūs arī šaubītos par šo cilvēku, ja viņš būtu jūs piekrāpis tik bieži kā mani.

Exercise 198f

Translate into Latvian:

- If the weather would only change, we could dance in the park.
- She would probably hang herself if Ludis left her.
- A sensible person would not put up with (*mocīties ar*) pain for that long; he would go to the doctor's.
- Would you hesitate as long as he?
- Certain people would be offended at such an expression.
- If they kissed in the street in our city, they would be arrested.
- We would not stay in the kitchen, if it were not so cold in the other rooms.
- I would never converse with the riff-raff.
- You would really surprise your relatives if you got married.
- If the snow reached the roof, we would not be able to get out of the house.
- I know that you would behave differently.
- You would not listen to her; you only wanted to read the newspaper.
- I would not go into the mountains where there is perpetual snow and ice.
- If you looked around and saw a lion, what would you do?
- If the king were intending to appear on the verandah, people would already be gathering in front of the palace (*pils*).

LESSON 199

REFLEXIVE VERBS: IMPERATIVES

The reflexive imperatives are formed from the active forms in accordance with the principles discussed in Lesson 195.

	Active	Reflexive
2nd person singular	<i>cel!</i> <i>māc!</i> <i>mazgā!</i>	<i>celies!</i> <i>mācies!</i> <i>mazgājies!</i>

	Active	Reflexive
2nd person plural:	<i>celiet!</i> <i>māciet!</i> <i>mazgājiet!</i>	<i>celieties!</i> <i>mācieties!</i> <i>mazgājieties!</i>
1st person plural:	<i>celsim!</i> <i>mācīsim!</i> <i>mazgāsim!</i>	<i>celsimies!</i> <i>mācīsimies!</i> <i>mazgāsimies!</i>
3rd person (singular and plural):	<i>lai ceļ!</i> <i>lai māca!</i> <i>lai mazgā!</i>	<i>lai ceļas!</i> <i>lai mācās!</i> <i>lai mazgājas!</i>

Vocabulary

<i>lazda</i>	hazel bush
<i>sagša</i>	wrap, plaid
<i>(no-)rakstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	here = to embroider
<i>svešinieks, -ce</i>	stranger
<i>apķerties (-ķēros, -ķēros)</i>	to bethink oneself
<i>pacelt (-ceļu, -cēlu)</i>	to lift
<i>uzlūkot (-oju, -oju) (+ acc.)</i>	to look at
<i>radinieks, -ce</i>	relative, kinsman
<i>plakstiņš</i>	eyelid
<i>tik</i>	= <i>tikai</i>
<i>liktenis</i>	fate, lot
<i>pat</i>	even
<i>saaugt (-gu, -gu)</i>	to grow, arise; to grow together
<i>izmēģināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to try out
<i>jaukties (-cos, -cos) (+ loc.)</i>	to meddle, interfere (in)
<i>darīšana</i> (often pl.)	doing, business, affair
<i>aiztikt (-tiek, -tiku)</i>	to touch
<i>vērgs</i>	slave
<i>brīdinājums</i>	warning
<i>apstāties (-stājos, -stājos)</i>	to stop (intrans.)
<i>(no-)lādēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to curse (trans.)
<i>kvēle</i>	glow; fire, ardour
<i>mokas</i> (pl.)	agony, torment
<i>žēlastība</i>	mercy, charity; grace (eccl.)

Exercise 199a

Translate into English:

Trīs putniņi daiļi dzied
Smalkā lazdu krūmiņā.

Trīs meitiņas sagšas raksta
Pie lodziņa sēdēdam's.

Viena bija mūs' māsiņa,
Otra brāļa līgaviņ'.

Trešā bija svešiniece,
Tā man krita prātiņā.¹

Tai es pirkšu brūnus svārkus
Līdz zemīti² norakstīt's.

Tai es došu savu roku,
Savu zelta gredzentiņ'.

(T. dz.)

¹ i.e., 'she pleased me, I took a fancy to her'.

² *Līdz* normally governs the dative, and the use of an apparent accusative is here quite exceptional. Latvian folk songs are of great antiquity, and often contain forms and constructions no longer used in the modern language. It is possible that the *-i* is an old dative ending.

Exercise 199b

Translate into English:

Brīdi mēs stāvam viens pret otru, un es nezinu, ko teikt. Es apķerjos un gribu iet, kad viņa saka:

– Vai jūs, Jāni, jau sen par puisī ejiet?

Tad es paceļu acis un uzlūkoju viņu skaidri un gaiši, un redzu visu viņas augumu un slaidās rokas un acis un gandrīz aizmirstu, ka man jāsaka kaut kas.

– Otro gadu... vienu gadu es strādāju pie radniekiem.

– Priekš jums¹ tas gan par grūtu, – viņa saka un nolaiž plakstiņus un skatās uz puķēm.

– Jums vajadzētu kaut ko citu darīt, – viņa saka tālāk.

– Kāpēc citu? Es jau varu arī tā.

– Nē, jums vajaga kaut ko citu darīt, – viņa saka jau drošāk un atkal skatās uz mani un nu pavisam droši, kā maza meitene, kā māsa. Un pat drusku smaida, un tad tik es dzirdu viņas pēdējos vārdus... Jums tāds savāds liktenis, tāpēc es tā teicu...

– Savāds liktenis! Ak tā! Tad pat viņa zina par manu likteni, es domāju, un mani saaug dusmas un lepnums. Nē, kas tad cilvēkiem daļas² par manu likteni! Es izmēģināju spēkus un tie bija par vājiem, un lūdzu nejaukties³ manās darišanās! Neaiztikt³ manus sapņus!

– Labi, es esmu kalps, vergs, es gribu tāds būt, es domāju. Un man tiek⁴ dusmas, un lepnums aug, un es gribu viņu ievainot par tiem vārdiem.

Jānis Akuraters, from *Kalpa zēna vasara*.

Exercise 199c

Translate into English:

Brīdinājums.

Ej gaļām un neapstājies,
Šī ir nolādēta vieta.
Ne ziedu, ne zāles,
Klints karsta un cieta.

Sauss tuksneša vējš
Savu kvēli tur dedzis
Un sārziem uguns
Putekļiem sedzis.

Ej gaļām, ej gaļām,
Zelta čūska tur lokās
Kā tava dvēsele
Mūžīgās mokās.

Veronika Strēlerte, from *Zēlastības gadi*.

¹ *Priekš* as a preposition meaning 'for' is not regarded by purists as correct. The more usual and more acceptable construction is the dative without preposition.

² Cf. *Kas tev par daļu?* (Lesson 67)

³ The infinitive is occasionally used as an imperative.

⁴ More usual would be *man uznāk dusmas*.

Exercise 199d

Give the imperative parts of: *apstāties; uzcelties; aizzagties; priecāties; doties; aizstāvēties; kauties.*

Exercise 199e

Translate into English:

1. Uzdodies par ārstu! Tad tevi laidīs iekšā bez sevišķas atļaujas.
2. Klausies, draudziņ, nejaucies citu cilvēku darīšanās!
3. Neskaties tanī virzienā, tur tu nekā neredzēsi!
4. Lūdzu, neapstājieties ietnes vidū! Dodieties tālāk, kustieties!
5. Nevilcinieties un dariet kaut ko!
6. Lūdzu, nejaucies manu radnieku laulībā!
7. Klausīsimies skaistajā mūzikā!
8. Mainīsimies vietām, sieviņ, jo tev priekšā sēž drukns vīrs, tu neredzēsi ekrānu.
9. Sasildīsimies brītiņu pie sārta kvēles!
10. Lai mācās vien!
11. Lai kaujas, kas grib, bet mēs gan nekausimies tāda nieka dēļ.
12. Neparādiēties vēl! Jūsu draugi, paziņas un radnieki pat nezina, ka jūs jau esat atbraucis.
13. Nespēlējieties dubļos, bērni! Es aizvakar ar mokām izmazgāju jūsu drēbes.
14. Ir jau rīts, celies!

Exercise 199f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Get ready more quickly! Otherwise we shall be late!
2. Don't linger so long! Must I always be urging you on?
3. Behave like a man!
4. Don't kiss on the street: you are not in Paris any longer!
5. Don't talk in such loud voices: the tenant is probably listening.
6. Rejoice, children, for auntie has brought you some ice-cream.
7. Let us stop for a few minutes.
8. Don't let's listen to his speech!
9. Don't let's interfere in other people's business
10. Let the water boil!

11. Let them get married, if they want to.
12. Let her wash and get ready.
13. Stay in the corridor until you are called.
14. Don't play with matches.
15. Wipe yourself with a dry towel.

LESSON 200

REFLEXIVE VERBS: PAST PARTICIPLE AND PERFECT TENSES

You will recall that the past participle active took the endings *-is, -uši, -usi, -ušas*. To these correspond the reflexive endings *-ies, -ušies, -usies, -ušās*. Thus the reflexive past participle appears as follows:

Infinitive	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
<i>mazgāties</i>	<i>mazgājies</i>	<i>mazgājušies</i>	<i>mazgājusies</i>	<i>mazgājušās</i>
<i>klausīties</i>	<i>klausījies</i>	<i>klausījušies</i>	<i>klausījusies</i>	<i>klausījušās</i>
<i>kauties</i>	<i>kāvijs</i>	<i>kāvušies</i>	<i>kāvusies</i>	<i>kāvušās</i>
<i>doties</i>	<i>dēvijs</i>	<i>dēvušies</i>	<i>dēvusies</i>	<i>dēvušās</i>

The perfect tenses are then formed in the normal way, with the auxiliary *būt*:

es esmu (biju, būšu, būtu) skatījies (-usies)
tu esi (bijī, būsi, būtu) skatījies (-usies)
viņš ir (bija, būs, būtu) skatījies
viņa ir (bija, būs, būtu) skatījies
mēs esam (bijām, būsim, būtu) skatījušies (-ušās)
jūs esat (bijāt, būsit, būtu) skatījies (-usies, -ušies, -ušās)
viņi ir (bija, būs, būtu) skatījušies
viņas ir (bija, būs, būtu) skatījušās

Vocabulary

<i>uzticēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to entrust
<i>uzticēties (-os, -ējos) (+ dat.)</i>	to rely upon, trust
<i>uzvilkt (-vēlku, -vilku)</i>	here = to wind (a watch, clock, etc.)
<i>ierasties (-rodos, -rados)</i>	to arrive, turn up

<i>ieloks</i>	tuck, fold
<i>kompass</i>	compass
<i>diendienā</i>	continually, incessantly, every day
<i>paugurs</i>	hill, knoll
<i>pārredzēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to see across, survey
<i>apvidus</i>	district, surroundings, locality
<i>lēkāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to jump, to jump about
<i>gultne</i>	(river-) bed
<i>strauts</i>	brook, stream
<i>čeka</i>	path, track
<i>sadoties (-dodos, -dēvos)</i>	here = to intersect, join (intrans.)
<i>šķirties (šķiros, šķīros)</i>	to separate (intrans.)
<i>pusstunda</i>	a half-hour
<i>nonākt (-ku, -cu)</i>	to come (finally), to arrive at
<i>sprauga</i>	gap, break, open space
<i>tāle</i>	distance
<i>likties (liekas, likās)</i>	to seem
<i>meijot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to adorn with birch boughs
<i>zaļgans</i>	greenish
<i>vēlties (vēļos, vēļos)</i>	to roll (intrans.)
<i>izvēlties (-vēļos, -vēļos)</i>	to roll out (intrans.)
<i>asins (f.) or asinis (f. pl.)</i>	blood
<i>kļāvēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to knock, beat
<i>aizkust (-kūstu, -kusu)</i>	to get tired, lose one's breath
<i>pacēlties (-cēļos, -cēļos)</i>	to rise up
<i>augstu</i>	high (adverb)
<i>padarīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to make, render (See note)
<i>vīties (vijos, vijos)</i>	to wind oneself around
<i>griezējs</i>	cutter, carver
<i>priekšpusdiena</i>	morning
<i>apspīdēt (-u, -ēju) (+ acc.)</i>	to shine on
<i>klintaine</i>	rock face, chain of cliffs
<i>rievains</i>	riffled, wrinkled, streaked
<i>kāpaļāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to climb about
<i>pakāpe</i>	step; degree, stage; rank
<i>vēlēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to wish, desire
<i>(pa-)glāudīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to caress, stroke
<i>garāmeļot</i>	= <i>garām ejot</i>
<i>citreiz</i>	at other times, sometimes
<i>aplams</i>	wrong, erroneous, absurd
<i>paraut (-rauju, -rāvu) (+ dat. + aiz)</i>	to pull (something) by
<i>vientullība</i>	solitude, loneliness

NOTES: *Kompass* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Note the construction with *padarīt*:

Klinšu sienas padarīja mani mazu.

The cliff walls made me (appear) small.

In the sense 'to make, to render', it requires a noun or pronoun in the accusative, and an adjective also in the accusative.

Sadoties normally occurs only in the phrase *sadoties rokās* 'to join hands.'

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 190–198.

Exercise 200a

Translate into English:

Mani gājieni nav aprakstāmi. Stundas es neskaitīju. Mans uzticamais Šveices pulkstenis gulēja neuzvilktis, kopš biju ieradies šai kalnu ielokā. Man tagad pilnīgi pietika ar kompasu. Bet arī tas daudz nebija vajadzīgs, jo saule spīdēja diendienā, un no kaut kuŗa kaila paugura es varēju pārredzēt jūdzēm plašus apvidus.

Drīz es biju upes vienā, drīz otrā krastā. Es gāju, jeb¹ labāk sakot – lēkāju no akmeņa² uz akmeni pa plašo strauta gultni. Tad es sāku kāpt kalnā. Tekas sadevās un šķīrās. Es gāju arvien pa to, kas veda augšup. Pēc pusstundas, pēc stundas es biju nonācis tādā vietā, kur pa zaru spraugām parādījās tāle. Es sevi jutu gaisā paceltu. Likās, ka tikai šie zari mani tura³ kā zaļi meijotā lidmašīnā – citādi es nokristu tur – zaļganajā dziļumā.

Atkal man izvēlās caur galvu smags asiņu vilnis. Sirds stipri klauvēja. Es biju ātri kāpis un aizkūsis.

Tad es nonācu pie kādas klints, pie klinšu sienas, kas pacēlās tik augstu, ka padarīja mani mazu, kā burtu i. Tur bija griezti vārdi, simtiem⁴ vārdu un burtu, kuŗi mīļi vijās kopā, kā paši jaunie burtu griezēji. Saule, gaiša priekšpusdienas saule apspīdēja visu milzīgo klintaini. Es studēju viegli rievaino sienu, kā gar to staigāja saules stari, kā kāpaļādami pa miljonu sīku pakāpju.

Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, from *Vasara*.

¹ *Vai* would here be more usual than *jeb*.

² An analogical genitive, not regarded as correct in the literary language.

³ Read *tur*.

⁴ See Lesson 226.

Exercise 200b

Translate into English:

Aplami sapni.

Dažreiz es vēlētos būt kaķis,
Ko katrs paglauda
Gažāmejojot.
Bet citreiz suns,
Kas guļ zem sava kunga loga
Dienu un nakti,
Lietū un salā.
Aplamie sapni!
Bērni parauj kaķim aiz astes
Gažāmejojot,
Un suns grauž savu kaulu
Vientulībā.

Veronika Strēlerte, from *Žēlastības gadi*.

Exercise 200c

Conjugate in the four perfect tenses: *vēlētis; apstāties; uzcelties; aizzagties; priecāties; taislīties; skatīties; šaublīties; kauties; doties.*

Exercise 200d

Give the imperative parts of the verbs listed in Ex. 200c.

Exercise 200e

Translate into English:

1. Mēs bijām šaubījušies par šī cilvēka viesmīlību.
2. Ja es nebūtu dzirdējis tavu brīdinājumu, es nebūtu apstājies.
3. Juris laikam ir nokavējies, tāpēc ka viņš būs kavējies drēbnieka darbnīcā ilgāk nekā viņš gribēja.
4. Pēc vīra nāves karaliene nebija parādījusies tautai vairākus gadus.
5. Mēs bijām solljušies palīdzēt saviem radniekiem.
6. Kad jumts iegruva, neviens vēl nebija apķēries, kādās briesmās mēs bijām.

7. Ja meitas nebūtu skatījušās uz šo pusi, viņas nebūtu ieraudzījušas šīs košās lazdas.
8. Mēs jau ilgi neesam sarakstījušies.
9. Ja svešiniece nebūtu izturējusies kā cēla sabiedrības dāma, mēs viņu nebūtu aicinājuši savā dzīvoklī, kārtībnieka kungs. – Es saprotu, vai viņa jums arī nebija uzdevusies par muižnieci? – Nē, bet mēs bijām vadījušies pēc viņas labā apģērba un smalkās valodas.
10. Ko, tu vēl neesi uzcēlies? Pulkstens jau desmit!
11. Vectēva vārdi bija piepildījušies.
12. Aija jau sen apprecējusies, tu nāc par vēlu.
13. Tu neesi pieturējies pie gramatikas likuma.
14. Vai jūs arvien vēl neesat sasildījušies?

Exercise 200f

Translate into Latvian:

1. If her mother had not always interfered in our marriage, we would not have separated.
2. How have these hills been formed?
3. He has probably gone to the clearing.
4. If she had not called herself by a different name, we would not have doubted that she was our relative.
5. She would not have hanged herself, had she known her son was not guilty.
6. Biruta has been offended by this rude expression.
7. Rūdis's character has changed quite a lot.
8. They have not greeted each other on the street for several months.
9. He has probably slipped away to the tavern.
10. You would not have protested innocence if they had questioned you more severely.
11. Your parents would have been happy if you had passed the examination.
12. If the ship had not rocked so violently (= *traki*), I would not have vomited.
13. The train has been delayed again.
14. They had been fighting in the yard of the inn.
15. Had the weather not been so beautiful, I would not have moved from the house, and would have been studying all day.

LESSON 201

REFLEXIVE VERBS: THE DEBITIVE MOOD

The debitive of reflexive verbs is formed in just the same way as the debitive of active verbs: *jā-* is prefixed to the 3rd person form of the present tense, and this form is then used with the appropriate tense of the auxiliary *būt*. Remember that the auxiliary is normally omitted in the present tense unless special emphasis is required.

The following summarizes the debitive forms in the reflexive:

Present:	<i>man jāklausās, etc.</i>
Imperfect:	<i>man bija jāklausās, etc.</i>
Future:	<i>man būs jāklausās, etc.</i>
Conditional:	<i>man būtu jāklausās, etc.</i>
Present Perfect:	<i>man ir bijis jāklausās, etc.</i>
Past Perfect:	<i>man bija bijis jāklausās, etc.</i>
Future Perfect:	<i>man būs bijis jāklausās, etc.</i>
Conditional Perfect:	<i>man būtu bijis jāklausās, etc.</i>

Revise the earlier lessons on the debitive, lessons 87-90.

Vocabulary

<i>izlaisties (-žos, -dos)</i>	to fly out
<i>ik</i>	every (See notes)
<i>atgriezties (-žos, -zos)</i>	to return
<i>saskaņa</i>	concord, agreement, harmony
<i>nevien... bet arī</i>	not only... but also
<i>taisnība</i>	justice, truth
<i>nemitīgs</i>	incessant
<i>tārps</i>	worm; hence: a gnawing problem
<i>sirdsapziņa</i>	conscience
<i>skaudība</i>	envy
<i>kollēga (m. or f.)</i>	colleague
<i>gadu no gada</i>	year by year
<i>solīti pa solītim</i>	step by step
<i>reiz</i>	here = at last
<i>(pa-)mosties (-mostos, -modos)</i>	to wake up (intrans.)
<i>(no-)stāties (-stājos, -stājos)</i>	to put oneself; to cease

<i>pašsajūta</i>	feeling, state of mind
<i>saulains</i>	sunny
<i>avs (f.)</i>	sheep
<i>pulks</i>	regiment; crowd; here = flock
<i>pārļaut (-žu, -du)</i>	to cast (one's eyes)
<i>karāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to be suspended
<i>gaišums</i>	brightness
<i>noskatīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to observe (closely)
<i>šalka (usually šalkas (pl.))</i>	rustle, murmur
<i>nopūta</i>	sigh, moan
<i>iešļakstīties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to splash (momentarily)
<i>steidzīgs</i>	hurrying, in a hurry (adj.)
<i>nodomāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	here = to consider, reflect
<i>klāties (klājos, klājos)</i>	to spread oneself; to fare, get on (See note)
<i>piepeši</i>	suddenly
<i>projām</i>	= <i>prom</i>
<i>ripa</i>	disc
<i>tumšsarkans</i>	dark red
<i>nodrēbēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to tremble, shiver

NOTES: *Ik* is indeclinable, and is usually used in conjunction with expressions of time: cf. *ik brīdi* 'every moment', *ik mēnesi* 'every month'.

Note the expressions *man ir taisnība* 'I am right' and *man nav taisnības* 'I am wrong'.

Kollēga is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Klāties, in its meaning 'to fare, get on', is impersonal, and is used with a dative of the person.

<i>Kā jums klājas?</i>	How are you getting on?
<i>Man klājas labi.</i>	I am getting on well.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 33-48.

Exercise 201a

Translate into English:

Kā bite ziedos es izlaidos ik rītā un ik vakarā atgriezos mājā, mierā ar panākumiem un vislabākā saskaņā ar sevi. Tās bija skaistas dienas nevien man, bet arī man tuviem cilvēkiem, sevišķi manai sievai, kuŗa priecājās par

katru manu jaunu¹ darbu kā bērns. “Kad tu vairs neglezno,” viņa bieži vien bij² agrāk sacījusi, “tad man liekas, it kā tu būtu miris.” – Tur viņai bija taisnība. Arī mani pašu nemitīgi grauza kāds tārps, – vai nu tā bija sirdsapziņa vai skaudība, kad redzēju daudz mazāk apdāvinātus kollēgas kāpjām arvien augstāk, gadu no gada, solīti pa solītim. – Bet nu reiz arī es biju kājās. Manī atkal bija pamodies mākslinieks, un laimīgā kārtā viņam stājās biedros laba pašsajūta, veselība un saulainas un atkal saulainas dienas.

Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, from *Vasara*.

¹ In spite of the rule demanding the definite form of the adjective after possessive adjectives, the indefinite is normal after *katrs*.

² The form *bij* is often found instead of the fuller *bija*.

Exercise 201b

Translate into English:

Vincents: Kā lai to saku? Vakar vakarā,
Kad avju pulkus aplūkojis biju,
Es savu durvju priekšā nostājos
Un acis pārļaidu pār debesīm.
Tās bija skaidras, zvaigznes mirdzēja,
Un pašā augšā mēness karājās.
Kā es tai gaišumā tā noskatos
Un savā prātā mīļo Dievu teicu,
Tā nāk no meža tāda klusa šalka
Kā nopūta, un upē iešlakstas
Viens, otrs¹ steidzīgs vilnis pēkšņi stīprāk.
Tie sarunājas, sevī nodomāju,
Un skatos atkal mēnesī, un redzu,
Ka tumši mākoņi tam priekšā klājas.
Un piepeši tie atkal bija projām,
Bet platā gredzenā ap gaišo ripu
Visapkārt gulēja kā asins jūra,
Tumšsarkana, kā sirds man nodrebēja!

Rūdolfs Blaumanis, *Genoveva*, I, 1, 16–33.

¹ Read *otrs*. The additional syllable is for metric purposes.

Exercise 201c

Conjugate each of the following verbs in a different tense of the Debitive Mood: *pamosties*; *noskatīties*; *izlaisties*; *atgriezties*; *uzcelties*; *priecāties*; *aizzagties*; *precēties*.

Exercise 201d

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 201c.

Exercise 201e

Conjugate the verbs listed in Ex. 201c in the four perfect tenses.

Exercise 201f

Translate into English:

1. Man jāklausās, par ko viņi tur sarunājas.
2. Tev vēl priekšpusdienā jāatgriežas, citādi krusttēvs būs jau aizbraucis.
3. Viņa vēlētos, ka viņai nebūtu jāklausās mācītāja garlaicīgajā sprediķī.
4. Mēs visi būtu priecājušies, ja velns būtu parāvis (here, *paraut* = *to grab*) šo glēvo līdēju.
5. Viņiem būtu bijis jāierodas pirms pusstundas.
6. Vai jums tiešām bija jāšķiras? Man vienmēr licies, ka jūsu laulība ir laimīga.
7. Mums bija jāstājas rindā un jāgaida sava kārtā.
8. Dāmām būtu bijis jāuzticas mežsargam, kurš viņas būtu aizvedis bez kompasa pār klintaini uz šo ieleju, jo viņš ir dzimis un audzis šinī apvidū.
9. Vai bērniem tiešām jānoskatās, ka miesnieks kauj cūku?
10. Kā jums klājas? – Paldies, man klājas labi; cilvēkam jāklājas labi, ja viņš nesen apprecējies, vai ne?
11. Pulkstenim kaut kuru brīdi jāapstājas.
12. Kāpēc viņaņiem jākarājas tik augstu?
13. Amatniekiem jāvadās pēc architekta plāna.
14. Man jānododas ceļā.

Exercise 201g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Did you really have to interfere in their business?
2. It seems that we shall have to proceed to the front by way of this dry river-bed.
3. You ought to have turned up (*ierasties*) at seven! Where did you tarry?
4. You should have stopped at the cross-roads.
5. Do you really have to roll down the sand-hill in your good clothes?
6. Shall I have to return to this place? – No, we shall wait for you at the old mill.
7. Soon the old man will have to take leave of this life.
8. This time you have had to stick to the truth, I see.
9. Guntis must have had to do some study, and therefore he has not yet turned up.
10. The patient should have woken up half an hour ago. – Yes, colleague, I know. But he is now in the world hereafter; perhaps there he will fare better than here.
11. The children had to play in the dusty backyard.
12. The plane would have had to climb higher for us to overlook the entire city and its surroundings.
13. We had to wash in the cold water of a brook.
14. Why did you have to pretend to be a scientist?
5. Why does such a beautiful play have to come to an end so soon?

LESSON 202

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (ACTIVE AND REFLEXIVE)
IN PARTICIPIAL PHRASES

Consider the following sentences:

Jānis, piezvanījis ārstam, aizgāja pie kaimiņiem.

John, having rung the doctor, went to his neighbours' place.

Kalpi, iejūguši zirgus un sazāgējuši malku, nāca pie brokastu galda.

The farm-labourers, having harnessed the horses and sawn up the fire-wood, came to breakfast.

Ienākusi no sētas virtuvē, saimniece iesāka slaucīt grīdu.

Having come into the kitchen from the yard, the farmer's wife began to sweep the floor.

Māra un Aija, ilgi sarunājušās koka ēnā, beidzot, saulei rietot, atgriezās mājās.

Māra and Aija, having chatted in the shade of the tree for a long time, finally returned home as the sun was setting.

Ilgi krogū sarunājušies, vīri beidzot šķīrās.

Having spoken together at length in the tavern, the men finally parted.

Uzcēlusies agri no rīta, Baiba jau septiņos ieradās krusttēva mājās.

Having risen early, Baiba arrived at her uncle's by seven o'clock.

Note that a perfective participle is normally demanded in such constructions.

In each of the above, a past participle, active or reflexive, agreeing with the subject of the sentence, introduces a participial phrase referring to the subject: this procedure often does away with the need for a full subordinate clause, which English normally prefers. The English of the above would in fact read better if the full subordinate clause were used, i.e.,

When John had rung the doctor, . . .

After the farm-labourers had fed the horses and sawn up the fire-wood, . . .

When the farmer's wife came in . . .

After they had chatted for a long time . . .

After they had spoken . . .

Baiba rose early, and . . .

Vocabulary

<i>mūžs</i>	lifetime
<i>apdomīgs</i>	cautious
<i>nogaršot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to taste
<i>ledzert</i> (-dzēru, -dzēru)	to drink
<i>malks</i>	a draught (of liquid)
<i>paskubināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to urge on
<i>sajust</i> (-jūtu, -jutu)	to feel, sense
<i>patīkams</i>	pleasant
<i>siltums</i>	warmth
<i>pārņemt</i> (-ņemu, -ņēmu) (+ acc.)	to take possession of
<i>miesa</i>	flesh; here = body
<i>piktums</i>	annoyance
<i>ņemiers</i>	unrest
<i>izlikties</i> (-liekas, -likās) (<i>par</i>)	to pretend to be; here = to seem
<i>pieiet</i> (-ēju, -gāju)	to go up (to), to approach
<i>mīlēt</i> (-oju, -oju)	to entertain, treat, feast
<i>dakstiņš</i>	tile

<i>atšķirties</i> (-šķiros, -šķīros)	to differ (from), stand out (from)
<i>zaļums</i>	greenness, verdure
<i>birzs</i> (f.)	birch-grove
<i>bērzs</i>	birch-tree
<i>līkumots</i> (more usually <i>līkumains</i>)	crooked, winding
<i>riktoties</i> (-ojos, -ojos)	to busy oneself (with); to act (in a certain manner)
<i>putēklis</i>	a speck of dust, speck of pollen
<i>justies</i> (<i>jūtos, jutos</i>)	to feel (intrans.)
<i>ziņas</i> (pl.)	information, news
<i>ziņa</i>	here = care
<i>ievērt</i> (-vēru, -vēru)	to thread
<i>rotaļa</i>	game
<i>atjāt</i> (-jāju, -jāju)	to come riding
<i>godība</i>	magnificence, splendour
<i>rakstīt</i> (-u, -īju)	here = to adorn with carvings
<i>bērnība</i>	childhood
<i>gājums</i>	course

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 49–64.

Exercise 202a

Translate into English:

Liene savā mūžā pirmo reizi labu vīnu lika pie mutes. Apdomīgi viņa nogaršoja un, atrazdama to gardu, iedzēra krietnu malku. Mālnieka¹ paskubināta, viņa iedzēra vēl pa malkam un sajuta, ka savāds, patīkams siltums pārņēma visu miesu. Viņas piktums pret Vanagu¹ norima, un sirds nemiers zuda – viņai vairs neizlikās nepareizi darīts, ko viņa bija darijusi. Pie loga piegājusi, pa kuŗu uz Mālniekiem¹ varēja noskatīties, viņa mieloja acis ar jauko ainu, kas tur lejā bija redzama. Kā tur sarkanie dzīvojamās ēkas un klēts dakstiņu jumti atšķīrās no kuplo koku zaļuma, kā birzi bērzu baltā miza spīdēja un līkumotā šaurā upīte vizēja! Lienes sirds pildījās ar lepnu prieku. Tur nu viņa varēs rīkoties pa savam prātam,² jo tas viss viņai piederēs. Ak tu tētīt, kas to būtu sapņojis!

Rūdolf Blaumanis, from *Salna pavasarī*.

¹ *Mālnieks* and *Vanags* are surnames; *Mālnieki* (pl.) is the property owned by *Mālnieks*.

² = 'as she pleases, as she likes', lit. 'according to her own mind'; also as *pēc sava prāta*.

Exercise 202b

Translate into English:

Ilgu zeme.

Tur miti tu tēva mājiņā
Kā puteklītis ziedīņā.

Tur juties tu māmiņas mīļā¹ ziņā
Kā diedziņš, ievērts adatiņā.

Kā biedrs tavās rotaļās
Mazs kaķīt's ar tevi spēlējās.

Un mīļākais ciemiņš, kas atjāja,
Bij sniedzīņš uz balta zirzīņa.

Bet viesi vislielākās godībās
Bij Ziemsvētki rakstītās kamanās.

Bij viss tavs dzīves gājumiņš
Kā pirkstā maucams gredzentiņš.

Nekur vairs zvaigznes nespīd tā,
Kā tavas bērniņas lodziņā.

Aspazija.

Exercise 202c

Conjugate in the present, the imperfect, the future, the conditional and the present perfect: *justies*; *riktoties*; *izlaisties*; *atgriezties*; *pamošties*; *nostāties*; *noskatīties*; *vēlētis*; *ierasties*; *šķirties*; *doties*; *pacelties*.

Exercise 202d

Give the imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 202c.

¹ The indefinite form of the adjective is here preferred to the definite form for metrical reasons.

Exercise 202e

Which types of Short Conjugation verbs require *-i* in the second person singular of the present and imperative?

Exercise 202f

Translate into English:

1. Atbraucis stacijā, es ātri pārbaudīju vilcienu sarakstu.
2. Juris, ilgus gadus pavadījis Amerikā, beidzot atgriezās dzimtenē.
3. Paskubinājusi meitas uz darbu, saimniece sāka rīkoties virtuvē.
4. Pamodies nakts vidū, es jutu, ka istabā ir dūmu smaka.
5. Meitenes, atgriezušās no teātra, vēl ilgi runāja par lielisko izrādi.
6. Aizvērusi logu, Baiba sāka rakstīt vēstuli.
7. Pārņēmis tēva muižu, jaunais muižnieks sāka rīkoties pēc sava prāta.
8. Iedzēris kārtīgu malku, meistars piedāvāja pudeli savam palīgam.
9. Ievērusi diegu, šuvēja sāka šūt.
10. Mēs ar Jāni, aizzagušies no koncerta zāles, iegājām tuvajā krogū.
11. Kādu brīdi noskatījies, kā kalpi plauj, savas draudzenes paskubināts, es arī mēģināju plaut.
12. Pavadījis ilgus gadus Ņujorkā, mūsu brālis beidzot atgriezās Rīgā.
13. Apprecējusi bagātu vīru, Biruta tagad bauda dzīvi pilniem malkiem.
14. Ubags, apstājies pie tiesas nama durvīm, sāka kliegt un raudāt.
15. Man liekas, ka alus muca ir jau tukša.
16. Vai tev neliekas, ka aktieri šodien spēlē labāk nekā vakar?

Exercise 202g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Having spent such a long time in solitude, I could not get used to life in the city again.
2. Ludis, having caught sight of the beautiful girl, behaved like a school-boy.
3. The keg, having rolled off the truck, burst, and the beer began to splash out.
4. The young officer, having just returned to the front, fell in battle.
5. The farm-worker, having sunk up to his knees in the manure-pit, was cursing the whole world.
6. Having kindled a fire on the hearth, the cook poured water into the kettle.
7. Paul, having always spoken the truth, will not suddenly begin telling lies.
8. The bashful girl, having lowered her eyes, answered the young hunter's friendly question.

9. The bird, having emerged from its nest, spotted the big worm.
10. Having joined hands, the children kept jumping about the yard.
11. The fishermen, having lost their compass, were following the sun and the stars.
12. Having warmed themselves at the fire for a short time, the women continued to rinse out the washing in the river.
13. The king, having appeared several times before the people, finally went inside.
14. Having felt a pleasant warmth when I entered the room, I finally noticed a great stove in the hall.

LESSON 203

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (ACTIVE AND REFLEXIVE)
USED ADJECTIVALLY

The past participle (active and reflexive) of intransitive verbs can be used adjectivally: cf. Eng. 'a faded flower', 'a tired worker', 'a frozen lake', to which correspond in Latvian *novīltusi puķe*, *noguris strādnieks*, *aizsalis ezers*.

Notice that the participle in this construction is normally perfective.

The past participle used adjectivally has a full adjectival declension, with both indefinite and definite forms, as follows:

noguris 'tired'

INDEFINITE

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>noguris</i>	<i>noguruši</i>	<i>nogurusi</i>	<i>nogurušas</i>
Acc.	<i>nogurušu</i>	<i>nogurušus</i>	<i>nogurušu</i>	<i>nogurušas</i>
Gen.	<i>noguruša</i>	<i>nogurušu</i>	<i>nogurušas</i>	<i>nogurušu</i>
Dat.	<i>nogurušam</i>	<i>nogurušiem</i>	<i>nogurušai</i>	<i>nogurušām</i>
Loc.	<i>nogurušā</i>	<i>nogurušos</i>	<i>nogurušā</i>	<i>nogurušās</i>

DEFINITE

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>nogurušais</i>	<i>nogurušie</i>	<i>nogurušā</i>	<i>nogurušās</i>
Acc.	<i>nogurušo</i>	<i>nogurušos</i>	<i>nogurušo</i>	<i>nogurušās</i>
Gen.	<i>nogurušā</i>	<i>nogurušo</i>	<i>nogurušās</i>	<i>nogurušo</i>
Dat.	<i>nogurušajam</i>	<i>nogurušajiem</i>	<i>nogurušajai</i>	<i>nogurušajām</i>
Loc.	<i>nogurušajā</i>	<i>nogurušajos</i>	<i>nogurušajā</i>	<i>nogurušajās</i>

This declension will be learnt more easily if hypothetical nominative singular indefinite forms **nogurušs*, **noguruša* are taken as a basis.

In those verbs where there is an alternation *c, k, k, k*, or *dz, g, g, g*, in the past participle, e.g., *nākt*: *nācis, nākuši, nākusi, nākušas*, the *k* or *g* replaces *c* or *dz* in all cases of the masculine singular except the nominative indefinite. The masculine singular declension of *nācis* is as follows:

	Indefinite	Definite
Nom.	<i>nācis</i>	<i>nākušais</i>
Acc.	<i>nākušu</i>	<i>nākušo</i>
Gen.	<i>nākuša</i>	<i>nākušā</i>
Dat.	<i>nākušam</i>	<i>nākušajam</i>
Loc.	<i>nākušā</i>	<i>nākušajā</i>

Alongside the feminine nominative singular definite *nogurušā*, the form *nogurusī* is very frequently found, based on the indefinite *nogurusi*. These forms in *-usī* seem to be displacing the forms in *-ušā*.

The adjectival construction is also used with the past participle of reflexive verbs:

<i>pamodies kalps</i>	a 'having-woken' labourer
<i>pamodušies kalpi</i>	'having-woken' labourers
<i>pamodusies meita</i>	a 'having-woken' girl
<i>pamodušās meitas</i>	'having-woken' girls.

The declension of these reflexive participles, which is defective, is as follows:

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	<i>pamodies</i>	<i>pamodušies</i>	<i>pamodusies</i>	<i>pamodušās</i>
Acc.	<i>pamodušos</i>	<i>pamodušos</i>	<i>pamodušos</i>	<i>pamodušās</i>
Gen.	<i>pamodušās</i>	<i>pamodušos</i>	<i>pamodušās</i>	<i>pamodušos</i>

The formal distinction between definite and indefinite declensions is here lost; the above forms, however, tend to be used as definite rather than as indefinite.

Dative forms of the above paradigm, in *-ušamies*, are not recognized as part of the literary language, but may be met on rare occasions.

Vocabulary

<i>bumbiere</i>	pear-tree
<i>visāds</i>	of all kinds (adj.)
<i>visādi</i>	in every respect
<i>izļodzīties (-ļogos, -ļodzījos)</i>	to become loose
<i>piekalne</i>	slope
<i>trēkns</i>	here = thick, lush
<i>mēžaroze</i> or <i>mēžroze</i>	wild rose, dog-rose
<i>pavadīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to accompany
<i>liekties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to bend (intrans.)
<i>vltne</i>	garland
<i>iesiet (-sienu, -sēju)</i>	to bind, tie up
<i>atvērties (-vēros, -vēros)</i>	to open (intrans.)
<i>zēltains</i>	gold-coloured
<i>noziedēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to cease blooming
<i>nesēns</i> (occ. <i>nesēns</i>)	recent
<i>tlksme</i>	delight, pleasure
<i>apgaismojums</i>	lighting
<i>dziļums</i>	here = background
<i>sakult (-kuļu, -kūlu)</i>	to churn
<i>putas</i> (pl.)	foam, lather
<i>sakult putās</i>	to whip up to a foam
<i>vēšums</i>	coolness, freshness
<i>stīties (sitos, sitos)</i>	to strike
<i>vērot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to observe, watch
<i>dažs</i>	some (or other), = <i>kāds</i>
<i>priekšgals</i>	fore-part, prow
<i>rotīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to swirl (trans.)
<i>mētāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to throw continually
<i>kūsāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to boil over; to overflow; here = to bubble
<i>ēlpot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to breathe
<i>nozust (-zūdu, -zūdu)</i>	to disappear
<i>šūpojiens</i>	swaying, rocking
<i>pusdiene</i> (more usually: <i>pusdiēna</i>)	midday
<i>tedomāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to imagine; here = to have an idea
<i>pāriet (-ēju, -gāju)</i>	to go over
<i>stēpe</i>	steppe
<i>kukuruza</i>	maize
<i>pārlaisties (-žos, -dos)</i>	to fly over
<i>ugunīgs</i>	fiery

<i>vanags</i>	falcon, hawk
<i>izcēlt (-cēļu, -cēļu)</i>	to lift out; here = to emphasize
<i>izšauties (-šaujos, -šāvos)</i>	to dart out; here = to flash through
<i>sagrīļoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to stagger, reel
<i>pāri</i>	over (advb.); at an end
<i>ievilkt (-vilk, -vilku)</i>	to draw in
<i>ēlpa</i>	breath
<i>zīle</i>	here = bead, bubble

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 193–201.

Exercise 203a

Translate into English:

Es gleznoju arī vecas bumbieres. Tās visādi izjodzījušās stāvēja pa piekalnēm, dziļi iegrimušas treknā zālē. Tur bija arī ābeles. Un pār visām lietām – mežarozes, baltas un sarkanās mežrozītes. Tās mani pavadīja ik uz soļa. Viņu zari liecās kā mākslīgi vītas vītnes, un ziedi bija kā iesieti, skaistās rindās. Pumpuri kvēloja kā sārti asiņu pilieni, atvērušies ziedi rādīja kvēlošai saulei savu zeltaino putekļu gredzenus, un noziedējušās vietas – arī tās vēl kvēloja aiz nesenās tīksmes. Es gleznoju šos ziedu zarus visādos dienas laikos, visādos apgaismojumos, pret dažādiem dziļumiem.

Es sēdēju pie putās sakultas kalnu upes, no kuņas patīkams vēsums sitās man sejā, un vēroju, kā ūdens spēcīgi liecās ap akmeņiem.

Dažs akmens slaidi šķēla ūdeni, kā kuģa priekšgals, dažs rotīja un mētāja ap sevi kūšājošas zīles, un vēl cits it kā smagi elpoja, brīžam pavisam nozudams ūdens skalojošos šūpojienos.

Dažreiz es pašā pusdienas karstumā iedomājos pāriet no vienas upes uz otru. Es gāju pa stepi, pa ziedošiem kukuruzas laukiem. Ceļš bija melns un tik karsts, ka es caur zābakiem jutu zemes kvēli. Visapkārt neviena cilvēka, nevienas dzīvas būtnes. Tikai reizēm pārlaidās pār galvu, ugunīgi mirdzēdams, dzeltenais stepju vanags, karstuma un klusuma sajūtu vēl vairāk izceldams. Es gāju un man kļuva baigi. Ja nu es šie piepeši kristu? Varbūt nedēļām pa šo ceļu negāja neviens cilvēks...

Caur galvu man izšāvās smags asiņu vilnis. Es sagrīļojos.

Bēt tad tas atkal bija pāri. Es ievilku dziļi elpu un gāju.

Vasara! Saule! Saule!

Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, from *Vasara*.

Exercise 203b

Give the full declension, masculine and feminine, singular and plural, definite and indefinite, of: *nomiris; aizsalis; noguris; novlitis; kritis; nācis; atspirdzis; pazudis*.

Exercise 203c

Give the full declension, masculine and feminine, singular and plural, of: *pamodies; atvēries; uzcēlies; sasildījies; aizzadzies; šķīries*.

Exercise 203d

Give the present, imperfect, future and conditional of the verbs listed in Exx. 203b and 203c.

Exercise 203e

Translate into English:

1. Cik tālu tu tiksi ar nogurušiem zirgiem?
2. Pār aizsalušo ezeru var droši braukt.
3. Mācītājs savā sprediķī runāja par pazudušo dēlu. (*pazudušais dēls = the Prodigal Son*)
4. Policija atrada izsprukušā noziedznieka cepuri.
5. Šī novītusi puķe jāmet laukā.
6. Šo saplakušo torti nevar likt galdā.
7. Zem sabrukušajām pils sienām varoņi guļ mūža miegā.
8. Ūdenslīdēji meklē zeltu nogrimušajā kuģī.
9. Vai tu apciemoji saslimušo draugu?
10. Vai jūs jau runājāt ar mājās atgriezušos kaimiņu?
11. Šo apstājušos pulksteni var viegli salabot.
12. Uzrakstiet visu neprecējušos sieviešu vārdus!
13. Neprecējusies meitene šeit vieglāk atrod darbu nekā precējusies sievietē.
14. Kā lai es aprakstu manī pamodušās bailes?
15. Šo izlaidušos bērnu rotaļas man krīt uz nerviem. (*izlaisties = lit. to let oneself out; izlaidies = having let oneself out, hence, having got out of control, naughty, wild*)

Exercise 203f

Translate into Latvian:

1. What am I to do with these shrunken socks?
2. John is a wild boy, and I can't stand wild boys. – Nonsense, wild boys often become upright and courageous men. – Perhaps, but many become criminals.
3. They found the lost (use a form of *pazust*) aircraft in the steppes.
4. Can I obtain the salary of my sick (use a form of *saslimt*) husband?
5. Who caught the escaped foal?
6. It is not easy to speak with a dry throat. (Use a form of *izkalst*)
7. Pluck only ripe (use a form of *nobriest*) fruit.
8. I would have shot this decadent (use a form of *izvirst*) nobleman dead.
9. He is a married man.
10. She is a married woman.
11. The face of the man who had hanged himself was quite blue.
12. Can you still see the aircraft which went up just now?
13. The number of men who turned up was small.
14. On the table there were only withered flowers.
15. The frozen river is dangerous.
16. They chased the unwashed beggars away.

LESSON 204

REFLEXIVE VERBS: OTHER PARTICIPIAL FORMS

Besides the past participle in *-is* (reflexive *-ies*), the Latvian verb has five other participles: four present participles ending in *-dams*, *-ošs*, *-ot* and *-ams/-āms*, and the past participle passive.

The present participle in *-ot* is totally indeclinable, and to it corresponds a totally indeclinable reflexive form in *-oties*:

cf. *skatoties*; *uzceļoties*; *aizzogoties*.

The present participle in *-dams* has only the four nominative forms, in *-s*, *-i*, *-a* and *-as*. To these correspond reflexive forms in *-ies*, *-ies*, *-ās* and *-ās*:

cf. *skatīdamies* (masculine singular and plural)
skatīdamās (feminine singular and plural)

uzceldamies (masculine singular and plural)
uzceldamās (feminine singular and plural)

aizzagdamies (masculine singular and plural)
aizzagdamās (feminine singular and plural)

The present participle passive in *-ams/-āms* has a reflexive counterpart only in its shortened form in *-am/-ām*, used after verbs of perception. It is invariable, in *-amies/-āmies*:

cf. *skatāmies*; *uzceļamies*; *aizzogamies*.

The reflexive counterpart of the participle in *-ošs* is defective in declension:

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.
Nom.	–	<i>mostošies</i>	–	<i>mostošās</i>
Acc.	<i>mostošos</i>	<i>mostošos</i>	<i>mostošos</i>	<i>mostošās</i>
Gen.	<i>mostošās</i>	<i>mostošos</i>	<i>mostošās</i>	<i>mostošos</i>

As with the past participle, the reflexive declension loses the formal distinction of definite and indefinite. The reflexive forms of the *-ošs* participle are quite rare.

The past participle passive has no corresponding reflexive form.

Vocabulary

<i>uzaugt</i> (-gu, -gu)	to grow up
<i>liecinieks</i>	witness
<i>svēts</i>	holy, sacred, saintly
<i>ziedot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to offer, sacrifice; to contribute
<i>uzvara</i>	conquest, victory
<i>kauss</i>	cup, goblet
<i>cisas</i> (pl.)	bed-straw; couch, bed
<i>labvēlība</i>	benevolence, favour
<i>aplaimot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to make happy
<i>tak</i> or <i>taču</i>	indeed
<i>no malu malām</i>	from everywhere, from distant places
<i>glābiņš</i>	rescue, deliverance
<i>šitais</i> (fem. <i>šitā</i>)	= <i>šis, šī</i>
<i>izdallītājs</i>	apportioner
<i>svētība</i>	blessing
<i>vāts</i> (f.)	wound, sore
<i>mierināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to calm, pacify

<i>stiprināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to strengthen
<i>mācība</i> (often plural)	instruction, teaching, doctrine
<i>rādītājs</i>	shower, pointer, indicator
<i>krēsla</i>	twilight
<i>maldīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to go wrong, to err, to wander
<i>izlūgties</i> (-dzos, -dzos)	to petition, beg for
<i>vaidēlaitis</i> (often also <i>vaidēlotis</i>)	(heathen) priest
<i>pienākties</i> (-kas, -cās)	to be due; here = to be fitting
<i>pazemība</i>	humility
<i>valdīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to govern, to control
<i>spodrs</i>	bright, shiny
<i>tumsa</i>	darkness
<i>taka</i>	path
<i>druva</i>	corn-field
<i>eņģelis</i>	angel

NOTES: *valdīt amatu* 'to pursue a calling' (not common). The word *šitais* is declined like any definite adjective, except that the lengthening syllable *-aj-* is not always used.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 65–80.

Exercise 204a

Translate into English:

Kalvis: Es uzaugu šo sirmo koku ēnās.
 Tie manu jautro dienu liecinieki.
 Lai redz tie arī turpmāk manu gaitu.
 Es piederu šai svētai miera vietai,
 Tai sevi ziedot ir mans pienākums.
 Un nedomā, ka es bez priekiem būšu.
 Es nezinu, kas ļaužu laime ir:
 Vaj¹ spožas uzvaras pār svešām tautām,
 Vaj¹ pilnas bļodas, kausi, mīkstas ciskas,
 Vaj¹ brīva dzīve, dievu labvēlība.
 Es zinu tik, ka laime augstākā
 Priekš manis tā, kad citus aplaimoju.
 Un to te varēšu. Tu redzi tak,
 Ka ļaudis šurpu nāk no malu malām
 Un dzīvā ūdenī pret ļaužu kaitēm

Sev glābiņu un palīdzību meklē.
 Es būšu šitā ūdens izdalītājs;
 No manām rokām pilēs svētība,
 Kā elpa pil uz sakaltušas vāts.
 Es mierināšu izmisušas sirdis,
 Es stiprināšu vājas cerības,
 Es došu tālāk visas mācības,
 Kas nākušas no Vītus² gudrās mutes.
 Tā būšu palīgs tiem, kas sāpes cieš.
 Tiem ceļa rādītājs, kas krēslā maldās.
 Un ja no dieviem man kas³ jāizlūdzas,
 Tad tikai tas, lai lepnis⁴ nekļūstu,
 Bet savu vaidelaiša amatu
 Kā pienākas ar pazemību valdu.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis, *Dzīvais ūdens*, I, 1, 74–102.

Exercise 204b

Translate into English:

Vakars.
 Veras debess spodrās acis,
 Tumsa klusi dziedāt sāk,
 Un pa taciņu caur druvu
 Pirmie sapņi bāli nāk.

Fricis Bārda.

Exercise 204c

Translate into English:

Aka.
 Pie tumšas dziļas akas
 Kluss eņģelis raudāja,
 Un viņa asara akā
 Kā zvaigznīte iekrita.

¹ Older orthographic variant for *vai*.

² Vītus is the custodian of the water.

³ Often found for the fuller *kaut kas*.

⁴ for *lepnis*.

Ir gājušas dienas un gadi,
Bet akā vēl zvaigznīte mirdz.
Ak, klusais eņģel, vai zini:
Tā aka bij mana sirds!

Fricis Bārda.

Exercise 204d

Give the form of the *-ot* participle of the following verbs: *aizzagties*; *uzcelties*; *skatīties*; *maldīties*; *sisties*; *sagrīļoties*; *atgriezties*.

Exercise 204e

Give the forms of the *-dams* participle of the verbs listed in Ex. 204d.

Exercise 204f

Give the form of the present participle passive (indeclinable) of the verbs listed in Ex. 204d.

Exercise 204g

Translate into English:

1. Vai pa šo taku var braukt ar motociklu? – Skatoties (= *depending on*), kāds ir laiks!
2. Vadoties pēc šī plāna, var iedomāties, cik liela un moderna būs jaunā slimnīca.
3. Liecinieku mocīja sirdsapziņa, atgriežoties no tiesas vakara krēslā.
4. Lidmašīna, paceļoties no lidlauka gaisā, viegli sagrīļojās.
5. Ierodoties dzimtenē pēc ilgiem gadiem, man viss likās svešs.
6. Juris, izlikdamies par svešinieku, pasūtīja krogū kausu alus, visu laiku vērodams ieeju.
7. Meitenes staigāja pa ielu, skaļi sarunādamās.
8. Kamēr jūs te mierīgi sēžat, klausīdamies profesora lekcijās, citiem zēniem jūsu vecumā smagi jāstrādā.
9. Sakārtodamās ceļojumam, Anna nemaz nepamanīja, ka viņa bija nokavējusi vilcienu.
10. Viņas dejo, locīdamās kā čūskas.
11. Vai tu redzēji viņu ceļamies? – Nē, kad es mazgājos, viņš vēl krāca.

12. Kurš no jums redzēja slimnieku izveļamies no gultas?
13. Nevieni nepamanīja meiteni aizzogamies no mājas.
14. Caur plānajām sienām var dzirdēt kaimiņus sarunājamies.
15. Krogos bieži var redzēt vīrus kaujamies.

Exercise 204h

Translate into Latvian:

1. When rising in the morning, I often hear birds singing in the garden.
2. Listening to the minister's monotonous sermon, grandmother fell asleep. Fortunately she did not snore.
3. Returning from London, she fell sick.
4. What do you want to achieve by behaving so?
5. He did not use a weapon in defending himself.
6. Hesitating a lot, she finally answered our questions.
7. Looking around, he spotted a big fire in the distance.
8. They (f.) went home doubting the new teaching.
9. She died, being reputed as the greatest poetess of her nation.
10. The small boy rode holding on to the horse's neck with both hands.
11. Did you see them join hands?
12. I often saw you interfering in other people's business.
13. Did you see the door opening?
14. I returned yesterday at about ten o'clock, dear! (= *sievīņ*) – Don't tell lies, I heard you returning; it was already dawning!

LESSON 205

REFLEXIVE VERBS: REVISION

The student should now carefully re-examine the reflexive conjugations and declensions given in Lessons 195–204. In this lesson, we introduce a number of new reflexive verbs, based upon active verbs which have occurred in earlier lessons.

Vocabulary

<i>sūkties (-cas, -cās)</i>	to trickle, leak
<i>iesūkties (-cas, -cās)</i>	to sink in, soak in
<i>pateikties (-cos, -cos) (+ dat.)</i>	to thank
<i>(iz-)glābties (-bjos, -bos)</i>	to save oneself, to escape

<i>atkāpties</i> (-pjos, -pos)	to retrace one's steps, retreat, to back down
<i>stiepties</i> (-pjos, -pos)	to stretch, extend (intrans.)
<i>slēpties</i> (-pjos, -pos)	to hide (intrans.)
(ap-) <i>ģērbties</i> (-bjos, -bos)	to get dressed
<i>plēsties</i> (-šos, -sos)	to fight; to toil
<i>saplēsties</i> (-šos, -sos)	to quarrel, break off relations, fall out
<i>griezties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to turn (around) (intrans.)
<i>lauzties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to wrestle, struggle
(uz-) <i>bāzties</i> (-žos, -zos) (+ dat.)	to intrude, meddle, pester
(sa-) <i>posties</i> (-šos, -sos)	to prepare (intrans.)
(uz-) <i>posties</i> (-šos, -sos)	to dress up (intrans.)
<i>apgāzties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to topple over
<i>vērsties</i> (-šos, -sos) (<i>pret</i>)	to turn to, against
<i>novērsties</i> (-šos, -sos) (<i>no</i>)	to turn away (intrans.)
<i>kulties</i> (<i>kuļos, kūlos</i>)	to struggle along
<i>vilties</i> (<i>viļos, vļos</i>)	to be mistaken; to be disappointed
<i>smēlties</i> (<i>smēļos, smēļos</i>)	to draw from
<i>šķēlties</i> (<i>šķēļos, šķēļos</i>)	to break up, split (intrans.)
<i>viest</i> (-šu, -su)	here = to shed (trans.)
<i>iz</i> (<i>prep.</i> + <i>gen.</i>)	out of
<i>ciešanas</i> (pl.)	suffering

NOTES: *pateicoties* + dat. 'thanks to'

Vilties takes a locative of the person:

Es esmu tevī vīlies. I am disappointed in you.

Iz is not regarded as correct by purists, who use *no* in its place.

Ūdens smeļas laivā. The boat is shipping water.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 81–96 and 195–204.

Exercise 205a

Translate into English:

Ir daudz pie debesīm zvaigžņu,
 Un katra savādi¹ mirdz;
 Ir daudz uz pasaules ļaužu,
 Un katram – savāda¹ sirds.
 Ir daudz pie debesīm zvaigžņu,

Un visas gaismu vieš;
 Ir daudz uz pasaules siržu,
 Un visas mīlē² un cieš. . .
 Kaut zvaigznes kopā lītu,
 Un saule taptu iz tām;
 Kaut sirdis kopā kustu
 Aiz sāpēm un ciešanām:
 Lai redzētu, cik daudz gaismas
 Ar' tumšā naktī mirdz;
 Lai justu reiz augstajie³ gari,
 Cik liela ir cilvēka sirds.

Jānis Poruks, from *Rudens dziesma*.

Exercise 205b

Translate into English:

Virš mirušām, vītušām rozēm
 Plaukst jauni, sārti ziedi;
 Virš manām klusām domām
 Tu, putniņ, zaros dziedī.

Par jauniem, sārtiem ziediem
 Es rakstu garu dzeju;
 Par mirušām, vītušām rozēm
 Es rokām aplāju seju. . .

Jānis Poruks, from *Rudens dziesma*.

Exercise 205c

Conjugate in the present and imperfect: *pateikties; atkāpties; lauzties; vilties; pārļauties; pamosties; ierasties; aizzagties; kauties; doties; celties*.

¹ *Savāds* normally means 'strange', but can also mean 'individual'. Cf. English 'peculiar', which has a similar pair of meanings.

² *Mīlēt* is normally conjugated in the Mixed Conjugation, but will occasionally be found as a Long Conjugation verb.

³ For *augstie*.

Exercise 205d

Give the past participle active and imperative forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 205c.

Exercise 205e

Give all the other appropriate participial forms of the verbs listed in Ex. 205c.

Exercise 205f

Decline the past participle of *pamosties* and its *-ošs* participle.

Exercise 205g

Translate into English:

1. Ienaidnieks atkāpās un novērsās no mums.
2. Kāpēc tu man uzbāzies? – Es nemaz neuzbāžos, es tik meklēju kādu, ar ko sarunāties.
3. Pateicoties karaļa žēlastībai, dumpīgie virsnieki netika nošauti.
4. Velns, tinte ir iesūkusies paklājā! – Nekas, lai sūcas vien; gan jau izmazgās!
5. Jums jāglābjas, jo ūdens jau smeļas laivā.
6. Mēs griezīsimies pie policijas un izlūgsimies palīdzību.
7. Vai jūs jau pošaties uz balli? – Jā, bet mēs vēl neesam uzposušās.
8. Kā vecais kurpnieks plēsās un kūlās, lai dotu dēlam augstāku izglītību, bet šis tēvam pat nepateicās. – Jā, un tagad viņi abi pilnīgi saplēsušies.
9. No kurienes jūs smeļaties spēku šim milzīgajam darbam?
10. Lūdzu, vērsieties uz mūsu pusi, ja jūs ar mums runājat!
11. Mašīnai apgāzoties, Aija tomēr izglābās.
12. Šad un tad mēs gan plēšamies savā starpā, bet ģimene nekad nešķelsies.
13. Slēpdamās no draugiem, meitenes bija ielīdušas sienā.
14. Atkāpjoties ienaidnieks iznīcināja visu pilsētu.
15. Es būšu smagi vīlies, ja tu neatnāksi laikā.
16. Jurim jālaužas ar stipru pretinieku.
17. Ziedošā rožu krūma zari stiepjas gar nama sienām.
18. Vai tu jau esi apģērbusies, meit? – Nē, māt, es pašlaik gērbjos.

Exercise 205h

Translate into Latvian:

1. He will petition for the king's mercy.
2. I saw her preparing to go.
3. Here one cannot escape the flies and gnats.
4. Baiba was very disappointed in you.
5. You both grew up together, and now you have fallen out. Why?
6. How slowly the paint soaks into the wood!
7. Thanks to the new government, we have not to toil so hard.
8. She would have turned to the court, if she had had enough money.
9. The sick man dragged himself up the stairs.
10. The policeman lost his watch struggling with a criminal.
11. That scoundrel is always pestering young ladies.
12. If that steeple were to collapse, many people would be killed (*nosist*).
13. By hiding in the forest, they saved themselves from great sufferings.
14. We shall not retreat one single step.
15. Everybody was well-dressed.
16. From where do you draw your strength in these difficult days?
17. The society is breaking up into two factions (*daļa*).
18. She was still not fully dressed when I rang her.

LESSON 206

DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Just as nouns can be given diminutive force by the addition of various suffixes, e.g., *-iņš*, *-tiņš*, *-ītis*, so some adjectives also admit of attenuation with a diminutive suffix. The diminutive suffix for adjectives is *-iņš* (for the masculine), *-iņa* (for the feminine).

Cf. <i>mazs</i> , <i>maza</i>	small
<i>maziņš</i> , <i>maziņa</i>	dear little

The declension of these diminutive adjectives is quite regular.

Diminutive adverbs are formed with the suffix *-ītiņām*:

<i>pamazītiņām</i>	little by little
<i>klusītiņām</i>	very softly, very quietly

The *-ī-* of this suffix is always stressed, so that *pamazlītiņām* is stressed on the third syllable, and *klusītiņām* on the second.

Diminutive adjectives are followed by diminutive nouns rather more often than by non-diminutive nouns; thus *maziņa rociņa* is more common than *maziņa roka*.

The student should beware of using forms which he has not actually met in Latvian texts, as the number of adjectives which can take the diminutive suffix is quite limited. The same applies to diminutive adverbs.

In particular, diminutive adjectives should not be formed from adjectives which already have a suffix, such as the numerous adjectives in *-īgs*, *-ains*, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>(ie-)sākties (-sākas, -sākās)</i>	to begin (intrans.)
<i>nēsties (nēsos, nēsos)</i>	to hurry
<i>ņēmties (ņēmos, ņēmos)</i>	to exert oneself; to begin, resolve, to do something; to scuffle
<i>saņēmties (-ņēmos, -ņēmos)</i>	to gather composure, to summon one's courage
<i>ķerties (ķēros, ķēros)</i>	to get started (with); (of fish) to be biting (intrans.)
<i>tvērties (tvēros, tvēros)</i>	to take refuge
<i>plūkties (plūcos, plūcos)</i>	to scuffle
<i>tīkties (tiekos, tikos) + ar</i>	to meet with
<i>aizvērties (-vēros, -vēros)</i>	to close (intrans.)
<i>vērties (vēros, vēros)</i>	to open, close (intr.)
<i>vižņi (pl.)</i>	drift-ice, ice-floes
<i>atbalsot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to echo (trans.)
<i>daile</i>	beauty
<i>apgarot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to inspire; here = to enliven
<i>varenība</i>	might, power
<i>vienmuļš</i>	= <i>vienmuļģs</i>
<i>svilpe</i>	whistle
<i>apmaldīties (-os, -ījos)</i>	to go astray, get lost
<i>dunēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to drone, to boom
<i>zalgs</i>	sparkling, shining
<i>pārdzimt (-dzimstu, -dzimu)</i>	to be reborn, born anew; here = to be transformed
<i>sirēna (occ. sirēne)</i>	siren, seductive sea-nymph
<i>nāra</i>	mermaid, water-nymph

<i>vilināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to allure, entice
<i>jaunavība</i>	virginity
<i>magone</i>	poppy
<i>urga</i>	rivulet, streamlet
<i>dvēsele (in poetry, occ. dvēšle)</i>	soul
<i>dusēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to sleep, rest
<i>atmiņa</i>	memory
<i>pārsla</i>	flake

NOTES: *viņam prāts nesas + inf.*: he is keen to . . .

Uz ko tev nesas prāts? Whatever are you thinking of?

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 196–204.

Exercise 206a

Translate into English:

Skaista ir jūra, kad nakts pār to un kad dziļums dobji atbalso braucošo kugu motorus. Tad jūra šķiet kā jaunas dailes apgarota, kas sevī cilvēka gara varenību nes. Bet tik tukša un vienmuļa tu atkal kļūtu, ja te neskanētu skaudrās miglas svilpes, ko apmaldījušies kuģi kliež, ja te nedunētu motori, kas dzelzu pasaules pār ūdeņiem nes, un ja tērauda krūtis nešķeltu tavus zalgos viļņus. Jūra, es jūtu, tu pārdzimsti. Nē, tu atkal no jauna piedzimsti. Tavas sirēnas tagad dzied daudz kairāk, un tavas nāras top daudz vilinošākas. Tu topi varena, un tavās acīs es vairs neredzu skumjas par pazaudēto jaunavību.

Pāvils Rozītis, from *Nāves vižņi*.

Exercise 206b

Translate into English:

Riets.

Kad saule tagad riet, tā visa nenoriet –
No viņas dārzā paliek bāla meitene,
Caur ābeļzariem tā pa puķu dobēm iet
Un pirkstos dreb tai asinssārta magone.

Kā pirmā urdziņa zem sniega viņa smeļ
Un kaut ko saldu, saldu sola dvēselei.
Kad zila nakts caur zariem slīd, tā pazudusi,
Bet sārta magone man dvēslē iekritusi.

Fricis Bārda.

Exercise 206c

Translate into English:

Reiz.

Uz krūtīm reiz sapnis man dusēja.
Rīts nāca. Un krūtīs man palika
Tik gaiša un mirdzoša atmiņa...

Uz krūtīm reiz meitene dusēja.
Rīts nāca. Uz krūtīm man palika
Tik pārslas no ziedu vaiņaga...

Uz krūtīm reiz līgava dusēja.
Rīts nāca. Uz krūtīm man palika
Tik viena degoša asara...

Tik viena degoša asara...

Fricis Bārda.

Exercise 206d

Form diminutive adjectives from the following: *tievs; silks; lss; smalks; mazz.*
(Remember the palatalization rule for diminutive nouns!)

Exercise 206e

Form diminutive adverbs (in *-līnām*) from the following: *kluss; lēns; viegls.*

Exercise 206f

Conjugate in the present, imperfect and imperative: *ņemties; tverties; apmaldīties; doties.*

Exercise 206g

Conjugate in the present perfect: *pateikties; apģērbties; aizzagties; priecāties.*

Exercise 206h

Translate into English:

1. Saņemies, meit! Tu vairs neesi tik maziņa, ka tev jāraud par tādu sīkumu.
2. Lūdzu, ieejiet klusītiņām zālē, izrāde jau sākusies!
3. Viņam vairs nav kur tverties, visas durvis viņa priekšā aizveras.
4. Kāpēc motors vēl nav salabots? – Es nezinu, meistars šorīt ņemās to labot.
5. Pēc manām domām modernie dzīvokļi nav labi, sienas ir plāniņas un istabas šauriņas.
6. Viņa priecājas par katru maziņu nieciņu, ko viņai dāvina.
7. Mums vēl jāveic liels darbs; te mums būs ilgi ko ņemties un plēsties, tāpēc ķersimies tūlīt pie darba!
8. Tavs āķis ir pārāk sīciņš; nav brīnums, ka tev neķeras lielākas zivis.
9. Esi, lūdzu, tik labiņš un aizver logu; tas pirmīt vējā atvērās! – Es nesaprotu, kā tas varēja atvērties, jo bija pavisam maziņš vējiņš.
10. Man šķiet, ka viņas kājas un rokas vairs nav tik tieviņas.
11. Kāpēc jūs atnācāt tik vēlu? – Mēs ceļā uz šejieni apmaldījāmies.
12. Vecā profesora atmiņa ir smagi cietusi.
13. Mani nevilina viņas ārējā daile, bet viņas dvēseles daile. – Nerunā niekus! Labāk atzīsti, ka viņas nauda tevi vilina visvairāk!
14. Es nemaz nezinažu, ka dzija var būt tik smalcīņa.
15. Sniega pārslas krīt vieglītiņām un lēnītiņām.
16. Bārenītes mētelītis bija plāniņš un īsiņš.
17. Man šķiet, ka maziņš grib gulēt.
18. Lielpilsētās bērniem ir bāliņas sejiņas, tāpēc ka pelēkajos pagalmos nespīd saulīte.
19. Šogad ziema iesākās ar lielu salnu.

Exercise 206i

Translate into Latvian, using a diminutive form for words marked with an asterisk (*):

1. Poppy seeds are very *fine.
2. Biruta's hair was very *short and *thin when she was born.
3. See how *lightly Baiba is dancing! – No wonder, she herself is so *thin and *light!
4. The king's mind is directed only towards power and money.
5. It seemed to me that the door was opening.
6. When spring begins, we shall have reason (*mums būs ko*) to exert ourselves and toil in the fields; even the children will have to apply themselves to the work.

7. Well, how are they biting? – The *little ones are biting well, but the big ones are taking refuge somewhere in the depths of the river.
8. I had to gather my composure very quickly in order not to disclose that Aija is meeting Guntis, otherwise her father's home would be closed to her.
9. The gate was slowly closing.
10. They had lost their way in the thick forest.
11. This wool is so *soft and *warm.
12. The orphan-girl was weeping *silently.
13. The puppy's tail is *short.
14. She was very *young when she got married.
15. At what time do the sports competitions begin?

LESSON 207

INDECLINABLE NOUNS

There are in Latvian a number of nouns, all of foreign origin, which are totally indeclinable: they have no case forms, and do not distinguish singular from plural.

Sometimes too a series of initials is fused into one word.

Examples of both types will be seen in the vocabulary.

As the function of these words in the sentence cannot be ascertained from the endings, context is the only guide.

Vocabulary

<i>radio</i> (indec.)	radio, wireless
<i>auto</i> (indec.)	motor car
<i>solo</i> (indec.)	solo
<i>Oslo</i> (indec.)	Oslo
<i>kino</i> (indec.)	cinema
<i>tango</i> (indec.)	tango
<i>čello</i> (indec.)	cello
<i>kakao</i> (indec.)	cocoa
<i>foto</i> (indec.)	photo
<i>ASV</i> (indec.)	the USA (see note)
<i>PSRS</i> (indec.)	the USSR (see note)
<i>Loreleja</i>	Lorelei

<i>izstaigāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to roam (trans.); here = to walk along (trans.)
<i>izdziedāt</i> (-u, -āju)	to sing (to an end)
<i>tēls</i>	image, figure, form, shape
<i>dzīle</i>	depth
<i>mīla</i>	love
<i>kāpne</i>	= <i>kāpnes</i>
<i>dinozaurs</i>	dinosaur
<i>pirmlaicīgs</i>	primaeval
<i>rāpulis</i>	reptile
<i>lodāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to crawl
<i>milzu</i> (invar. adj.)	gigantic
<i>dīvains</i>	strange
<i>maurs</i>	grass, lawn
<i>zaurs</i>	saurian
<i>gurdums</i> (or <i>gurdenums</i>)	weariness, fatigue
<i>sakļaut</i> (-kļauju, -kļāvu)	to fold (trans.)
<i>sēsties</i> (<i>sēžos</i> , <i>sēdos</i>)	to sit (down)
<i>šūpoles</i> (pl.)	swing
<i>piemiņa</i> (no)	souvenir, keepsake, reminder (of)
<i>zīme</i>	sign
<i>taksometrs</i>	taxi

NOTES: Foreign monophthongal *o* is pronounced in all the indeclinable nouns given above, as well as in *Loreleja*, *dinozaurs* and *taksometrs*.

All the indeclinable nouns ending in *o* are masculine.

ASV and PSRS are usually read in full, as *Amerikas Savienotās Valstis* and *Padomju Sociālistisko Republiku Savienība*, and cease to be indeclinable, the indeclinable forms being found only in writing.

Often indeclinable nouns have parallel declinable forms: *radio*/*radiofons*; *auto*/*automobilis*; *kino*/*kino teātris* or *ķinītis*; *čello*/*čells*; *foto*/*fotografija*.

Solo is pronounced as if it were **zolo*.

Note the expression *pa radio* 'on the radio'.

The difference between *sēsties* and *sēdēt* is that of the action (*sēsties*) as opposed to the state (*sēdēt*).

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 97–112.

Exercise 207a

Translate into English:

Loreleja.

Visi ceļi izstaigāti.
Visas dziesmas izdziedātas.
Visas zvaigznes, visi ziedi
Putekļiem un smiltīm klāti.

Dvēsle – baigi tumša upe,
Maldu tēli. Ēnu dejas...
Tikai dzīlē mīla svētā
Dzied kā klintī Loreleja.

Fricis Bārda.

Exercise 207b

Translate into English:

Londonas autobusā.

Kad uzkāpju otrā stāvā,
Kur augšup ved kāpne šaura,
Šķiet, nebraucu autobusā,
Bet jāju uz dinozaura

Pa pasauli pirmlaicīgu,
Kur milzu rūpuļi lodā,
Un dedzinošs saules medus
Vārās debesu podā,

Pa dīvainiem skursteņu mežiem,
Pa krāšņiem dārziem un mauriem -
Pa pasauli, kas reiz pazudīs
Kā pazuda tā, ar zauriem.

Veronika Strēlerte.

Exercise 207c

Translate into English:

Vakars.

Gurdums ir saklāvis spārnus,
Kurpu lai lidojam mēs?
Nāc, lai sēžamies¹ rāmās
Vakara šūpolēs!

Visi vārdi tik mazi.
Vējš tos pār ūdeņiem sviež.
Domas ar asu nazi
Pieminās zīmes griež.

Veronika Strēlerte.

Exercise 207d

Give the complete reflexive conjugation, using a different verb for each tense, mood or participle.

Exercise 207e

Translate into English:

1. Iesim dejot! Tas ir mans mīļākais tango.
2. Čello tūlīt spēlēs garu solo.
3. Vakārā mēs klausīsimies radio ziņas. (*Ziņas* here = *news*; the accusative is very often found instead of the locative after *klausīties*.)
4. Pa radio ziņo par lielu ugunsgrēku Oslo.
5. Krustdēls mums bieži sūta fotogrāfijas no ASV.
6. Vai tu dāvināsi man savu foto par piemiņu?
7. Atgriezoties no ASV, PSRS tirdzniecības pārstāvji pavadīs dažas dienas Oslo un Berlīnē.
8. Man pašam nav auto, es atbraucu ar taksometru.
9. Tu šovakar neiesi uz kino, jo tev jāmacās.
10. Vai jūs pasūtījāt kakao, kundze?
11. Mēs braucām taksometrā uz ķīni.
12. Dinozauri un citi pirmlaicīgi milzu rūpuļi ir sen izmiruši.

¹ *Lai* is normally used with the third person imperative. Here *sēdīsimies* is replaced by *lai* and the first person plural of the present.

13. Kāpēc jūs nesēžaties?
14. Kādas preces PSRS eksportē, un kādas tā importē?
15. Vai bibliotēkā ir grāmatas par ASV auto-rūpniecību?
16. Kora dziesmām sekos skaists čello solo.

Exercise 207f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The cello solo was terribly boring.
2. This photo is our only souvenir of our son, who was killed in the war.
3. At the cinema there is a film about the Holy Land.
4. The tango is an old-fashioned dance; we do not dance it very often in the USA.
5. I doubt whether this car can be repaired.
6. Does he often meet Miss Vītols at the cinema?
7. Could you give me some stamps of the USSR? They are quite valuable in my country.
8. The taxi is here, sir.
9. How many tons of cocoa does the USA import per year?
10. In the evening we often listen to the wireless.
11. In his youth he worked as a taxi driver in Oslo.
12. This famous American writer grew up in the south of the USA.
13. You are mistaken, child; Oslo is not the capital of the USSR, nor is it the capital of Sweden.
14. We are getting ready to go to the cinema. – You have plenty of time, for the main film begins only at nine o'clock.
15. His love does not belong to me, but to his car.

LESSON 208

PARTITIVE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION

Consider the following sentences:

Viņš aizgāja mežā malkas cirst.

He went off into the forest to chop some fire-wood.

Vai tu gribi maizes?

Do you want some bread?

Dodiet man siera!

Give me some cheese.

Es viņai piedāvāju vīna.

I offered her some wine.

In each instance, we find a genitive where normally one would have expected an accusative: *malkas* for *malku*, *maizes* for *maizi*, *siera* for *sieru*, *vīna* for *vīnu*. Notice too that in each instance the English translation of these nouns involves the word 'some' but not the word 'the'.

This genitive is known as the PARTITIVE GENITIVE, and corresponds to the English 'some + noun'. It is used only with those nouns denoting substances rather than objects, and occurs normally in place of the accusative of the direct object, although the construction must now be regarded as somewhat old-fashioned.

It may also be found in the plural, but somewhat less commonly:

Dodiet man rīsu!

Give me some rice.

Es vēlētos redzēt dārgakmeņu.

I should like to see some precious stones.

Notice the idiomatic phrase:

Ko laba teiksi? lit.: What of good will you say?

i.e., Have you any good news? or even:

How are things?

The accusative of exclamation is self-explanatory:

Ak, tavu lielu skaistumu!

Oh, what great beauty!

Ak, tavu bardzību!

Oh, what cruelty!

Ak, tavas aplamas illūzijas!

Oh, the deceptive illusions of people! or:

Oh, how deceptive are the illusions of people!

Such accusative exclamations normally contain the possessive adjective *tavs*, although not necessarily.

Ak, prieku! Ak, laimi!

Oh joy, oh fortune!

In any case, the *tavs* in such expressions is largely stripped of its second person connotations, and may be considered as impersonal.

When the possessive is used, it does not require the definite form of the following adjective:

tavu lielu skaistumu! rather than *tavu *lielo skaistumu!*

Vocabulary

<i>Vestminstera</i>	Westminster
<i>abeja</i>	abbey
<i>burtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to spell, spell out
<i>skanīgs</i>	sonorous, resounding
<i>marmors</i>	marble
<i>plāksne</i>	plate, plaque
<i>kaps</i>	grave, tomb
<i>patvaļa</i>	self-will; (poetic, etc.) licence
<i>drāzties (drāžos, drāžos)</i>	to rush forward
<i>barbarisks</i>	barbaric
<i>nīcība</i>	transience
<i>parkets</i>	inlaid floor
<i>vizmot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to glitter
<i>mirējs</i>	a dying person
<i>ieslēgt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to shut in, lock up
<i>priekštelpa</i>	ante-room
<i>atšķirt (-šķiru, -šķiru)</i>	to separate, distinguish (trans.)
<i>pieskāriens</i>	touch
<i>aizslīdēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to slide off, away (intrans.)
<i>atvadīties (-os, -ļos) (no)</i>	to bid farewell (to)
<i>dārgums</i>	dearness; expensiveness
<i>(ap-)taustīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to touch, feel
<i>zinātājs</i>	connoisseur, expert, initiate
<i>iekāre</i>	desire
<i>izmisums</i>	despair
<i>rūts (f.)</i>	window pane
<i>ātrvilciens</i>	express train
<i>piespiest (-žu, -du)</i>	to press against, to force
<i>atvadas (pl.)</i>	leave-taking
<i>sveiks (intimate) (interj.)</i>	hullo; good-bye
<i>sveiki (polite) (interj.)</i>	hullo; good-bye
<i>palicējs</i>	one who remains behind
<i>ēlsot (-oju, -oju) or ēlsāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to sob, gasp, pant
<i>dzirksts (f.)</i>	spark
<i>nosīsties (-sitos, -sitos)</i>	to be killed

<i>mēsties (mētos, mētos)</i>	to throw oneself, to rush; to become
<i>nomēsties (-mētos, -mētos)</i>	to settle down; to throw oneself down, to fall down
<i>kristies (krītos, kritos)</i>	to decrease (intrans.)
<i>nokristies (-krītos, -kritos)</i>	to lose weight; to depreciate
<i>vēsties (vēdas, vēdās)</i>	to succeed
<i>ēsties (ēdas, ēdās)</i>	to be upset, annoyed
<i>paēsties (-ēdos, -ēdos) (= paēst)</i>	to eat one's fill
<i>nokārtoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to settle accounts, to square up
<i>pagriezties (-žos, -zos)</i>	to turn (a little) (intrans.)

NOTES: The genitive plural of *dzirksts* is most commonly *dzirkšu*, less commonly *dzirkstu*, rarely *dzirkšķu*.

Notice the expressions with *mesties*:

<i>man metas auksti</i>	I am beginning to get cold
<i>mesties tumšs</i>	to get dark
<i>metas vakars</i>	it is growing dark

Vesties is impersonal and requires a dative of the person:

Darbs man šorīt nemaz nevedās.

My work did not go at all well this morning.

Similarly with *ēsties*:

Tagad man ēdas, ka es neredzēju Vestminsteras abeju.

I am cross with myself now that I didn't see Westminster Abbey.

Marmors is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Some speakers retain a formal distinction between singular and plural, masculine and feminine, using *sveiks*, *sveiki*, *sveika* or *sveikas* according to the person(s) addressed.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 113–128.

Exercise 208a

Translate into English:

Vestminsteras abeja.

Iet ļaudis, burtojot vārdus
Skanīgās marmora plāksnēs,
Pa kapiem, tālāk pa kapiem,

Dzīvības patvaļu baudot,
Drāžas barbarisks gājiens
Teātrī šajā, kur vizmo
Bālais nīcības parkets.

Veronika Strēlerte.

Exercise 208b

Translate into English:

Mirējs.

Man jāmirst, viņi teic, man jāmirst.
Es esmu ieslēgts nāves priekšelpā
Pie smagām durvīm, kuņas lēni vejas
Un atšķirs mani prom no visa un no visiem.
Vēl esmu šajā pusē, vēl man pieder daudz:
Uz lūpām ūdens vēsais pieskāriens,
Šis augstais logs ar bālu gaismas rozi,
Šīs rokas, vārdi, aizslīdošas sejas
Un gausā nakts un manas lēnās mokas.
Cik atvadoties viss ir brīnišķīgs
Un vienkāršs tapis apkārt man un manī!
Ik mirklis – dārgums, ko es aptaustu
Ar zinātāja pirkstiem, bērna tīro smaidu,
Kas mīl bez iekāres un skumst bez izmisuma.
It kā pie aizejoša ātrvilciena rūts
Es pieri piespiežu un māju atvadas:
Ardievu draugi, sveiki palicēji!
Līdz vilciens, elsodams un dzirkstis šķiezdams,
Jums acīm zudīs bezgalīgā tālē.

Veronika Strēlerte.

Exercise 208c

Indicate all the Partitive Genitives and Accusatives of Exclamation in the text of Ex. 208e.

Exercise 208d

Give the complete active and reflexive conjugations, using a different verb for each tense, mood and participle. Indicate in each case how the reflexive endings are related to the active endings.

Exercise 208e

Translate into English:

1. Aizdod man vēl drusku naudas, mēs rītā nokārtosimies.
2. Tagad man ēdas, ka, Anglijā būdams, es neredzēju Vestminsteras abeju.
3. Nedodiet zēniem vīna, viņi apskurbs!
4. Savā izmisumā viņš pat neatvadījās no saviem radiem.
5. Viņš būtu nosities, ja būtu meties ūdenī no šīs kraujās klints.
6. Temperātūrai kritoties, es priekšelpā aizvēru durvis.
7. Ak, tavu briesmīgu karstumu! Nometīsimies kādu brītiņu ēnā!
8. Es gaidīšu, kamēr cenas būs nokritušās, un tad uzpirkšu visu ražu.
9. Ja virsnieks nebūtu drusku pagriezies, lode būtu ķērusi viņu galvā.
10. Tev jau metas sirma galva, bet tu vēl arvien esi kārs uz jaunām meitenēm; vai tev tiešām nav kauna?
11. Kad es būšu paēdis, es tev palīdzēšu malkas cirst.
12. Kad krāsa izzūst, tā metas pavisam tumša.
13. Ak, tavu nelaimi!
14. Ak, tavu lielu ziņkāri!
15. Darbs man šorīt nemaz nevedās, bet tad es sevi piespiedu strādāt raženāk, un beidzot man vedās pavisam labi.
16. Kas nu es par zinātāju: es nevaru atšķirt indīgas sēnes no ēdamām.
17. Kāja bija tā uzpampusi, ka tā sāpēja pie mazākā pieskāriena.
18. Sveiks, veco zēn! Ko tu man laba teiksi?

Exercise 208f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Many kings of England rest in Westminster Abbey.
2. Alas, thy hard heart!
3. I shall not eat any of this soup.
4. Bring us some wine, waiter!
5. Again he has come home inebriated: oh, her great patience!
6. At that sacred spot, they all fell upon their knees (*ceļos*).
7. When will you two finally settle your accounts?
8. I am getting cold.
9. Prices are not yet falling.
10. He was killed while travelling to the cinema in his new car.
11. John is upset if Aija dances the tango with another boy.
12. No wonder you are not clearly visible in this photograph: you turned around!
13. The water has fallen considerably since the floods.
14. Let the workers eat their fill.
15. My brother and I bade each other farewell at our father's grave.

LESSON 209

FURTHER REMARKS ON THE SYNTAX OF PARTICIPLES

English participial phrases beginning with the word 'without' are often best translated into Latvian by a negative participle:

The boy went to school without having written a single page.

Zēns aizgāja uz skolu, neuzrakstījis nevienas lapas puses.

(i.e., not having written . . .)

Baiba fell asleep without having read the paper.

Baiba aizmiga, neizlasījusi avīzi.

(i.e., not having read . . .)

John drove to the station without having consulted the timetable.

Jānis aizbrauca uz staciju, neskatījies vilcienu sarakstā.

(i.e., not having consulted . . .)

Biruta's sisters went to bed without washing.

Birutas māšas gāja gulēt nenomazgājušās.

(i.e., not having washed . . .)

The past participle active (or reflexive) is used where the action of the 'without' phrase is anterior to that of the main clause, and is usually, although not always, perfective.

Where the two actions are simultaneous, the *-dams* participle is used, usually in the imperfective:

He spoke for fifteen minutes without saying anything important.

Viņš runāja piecpadsmit minūtes, nekā svarīga nepateikdams.

(i.e., not saying . . .)

They sang without looking at their books.

Viņas dziedāja, neskatīdamās dziesmu grāmatās.

(i.e., not looking . . .)

Some students hope to pass the exam without knowing anything.

Daži studenti cer izturēt pārbaudījumu, nekā nezinādami.

(i.e., not knowing . . .)

He will talk for a whole hour without stopping.

Viņš runās veselu stundu nenostādamies.

(i.e., not stopping . . .)

Where the participle of the 'without' phrase does not refer to the subject of the main clause, the dative absolute construction must be used.

I married a bride myself, without father and mother's knowing.

Pats precēju līgaviņu, tēvam, mātei nezinot.

He sat all day in the boat without the fish's biting.

Viņš visu dienu sēdēja laivā, zivīm tomēr neķeroties.

We have already studied the use of the shortened *-am/-ām* participle after verbs of perception:

Es redzēju tēvu nākam.

I saw father coming.

Es jutu zemi trīcam.

I felt the earth shake.

This construction has a past tense, in which the past participle active (or reflexive) is used, agreeing with the noun in the accusative. The participle is usually in the perfective aspect:

Es redzēju brāli iemetušu.

I saw my brother drunk.

Vocabulary

Mēlnsili (pl.)

name of a farm

Pēteris

Peter

atspiesties (-žos, -dos)

to lean (against) (intrans.)

stendere

door-post

košļāt (usually *košļāt*) (-āju, -āju)

to chew

ūsas (pl.)

moustache

nujā!

well then!

kuru reizi

for the umpteenth time

Guste

feminine name

noraidīt (-u, -lju)

to refuse (trans.); to reject

bildinājums

proposal (of marriage)

veselīgs

healthy

plūkāt (-āju, -āju)

to pluck

dadzis

thistle

turpat

right there

iestāties (-stājos, -stājos)

to set in; to enrol, join (+ loc.)

vienlīgs

sole

čirkstņšana

chirping, creaking

tādēļ

therefore

tādēļ ka

because

Erņests

Ernest

<i>pēdīgi</i>	finally, at last
<i>ievaicāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to ask suddenly
<i>uzdrošināties (-os, -ājos) + inf.</i>	to dare
<i>tiklab... kā (arī)</i>	not only... but (also)
<i>mājas (pl.)</i>	farm
<i>savukārt, savkārt</i>	for one's own part
<i>pagūt (-gūstu, -guvu) + inf.</i>	to manage, succeed
<i>plēncis</i>	drunkard, dissolute fellow
<i>solītais</i>	that which is promised
<i>uzskatīt (-u, -lju) + par</i>	to consider (as)
<i>ieskaidrot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to explain; to convince
<i>pastāstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to relate
<i>pārnovads</i>	a distant neighbourhood
<i>vispār</i>	generally
<i>aprunāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to slander
<i>turklāt</i>	besides, moreover
<i>nākties (nākas, nācās)</i>	to come – see notes
<i>sadabūt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to obtain, get; here = to gather
<i>izrunāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to pronounce, give voice to
<i>nopūsties (-šos, -tos)</i>	to sigh
<i>iznākt (-nāku, -nācu)</i>	to turn out, to eventuate
<i>postīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to destroy, devastate

NOTES: The expression *uzskatīt par* is considered un-Latvian by some.

Nākties is used impersonally with a dative of the person, an adverb, and often a following infinitive:

Man nākas grūti lasīt. I find it hard to read. or:
Reading comes hard to me.

Nujā, turpat, tiklab and *turklāt* are accented on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 199–207.

Exercise 209a

Translate into English:

Puisis, liels, varens un neveikls kā lācis, stāv, atspiedies pie klēts stenderes, un kožlā gaišo ūsu galus.

“Nujā, ko lai dara?” viņš atkārtu jau kuŗu reizi, – un tas nozīmē, ka vasaras meita Guste noraidījusi viņa bildinājumu.

Bet meita, krāšņa, veselīga sieviete, melniem matiem, apaļu seju, plūkā lielu dadža lapu, kas augusi turpat klēts priekšā, un pacietīgi gaida, kad beigsies neērtā saruna; kad puisis tomēr neiet prom, viņa atkārtu to pašu, ko teikusi pirms laba brīža:

“Es nevaru, Pēter.”

Pēc tam¹ iestājas dziļš klusums, kuŗā dzirdama vienīgi sienāža čirkstēšana klēts aizmugurē.

“Un tikai tādēļ, ka Ernests?”² puisis pēdīgi ievaicājas.

“Tas nemaz nav teikts,” meita ātri atbild, bet neuzdrošinās paceļt galvu; jo tiklab viņai, kā Pēterim ir skaidrs, ka tā precēsies ar otru māju puisi Ernestu, kas savukārt paguvjis meitu bildināt un iedāvinājis tai pat zelta gredzenu.

Bet Ernests, lai gan glītāks par Pēteri, citādi ir auša un plēncis, bieži aizmirst solīto un, pēc Pētera domām, Gusti nekad tik nopietni nemilēs kā viņš. Šo pēdējo apstākli Pēteris uzskata par sevišķi svarīgu un labprāt gribētu Gustei ieskaidrot; jā, viņš varētu pastāstīt arī to, ka Ernestam patiesībā ir vēl otra, vai pat trešā līgava, kas dzīvo pārnovadā, un ka vispār šim puisim nevar daudz uzticēties. Bet viņš negrib Ernestu aprunāt, turklāt viņam grūti nākas sadabūt kopā vajadzīgos vārdus, un tādēļ viņš izrunā pavisam citu.

“Bēdīgi jau ir,” viņš nopūšas smagi kā jūra: “bēdīgi jau ir, ka tā iznāca. Bet lai Dievs tev palīdz, Guste: es tavu laimi negribu postīt.”

Kārlis Zariņš, from *Melnsilu Pēteris*.

Exercise 209b

Under what circumstances is the ending *-i* required in the second person singular, present tense, of Short Conjugation verbs? How are reflexive verbs affected?

Exercise 209c

List the principal rules governing the distribution of *ę* and *ę* (a) in nouns, and (b) in verbs.

¹ *Pēc* normally requires the genitive case. However, in such expressions as *pēc tam* ‘afterwards’ and *bez tam* ‘in addition’ the dative is invariably found. These expressions should be treated as individual idioms.

² The phrase is elliptical. One could have said *Ernesta dēļ*.

Exercise 209d

Translate into English:

1. Tumsai metoties, Kārlis aizgāja, neatvadījies ne no viena.
2. Es viņu vēl nekad nebiju redzējusi iedzērušu.
3. Mēs peldējām jūrā, nemaz nedomādami par briesmīgajām būtnēm, kas mīt dziļumā.
4. Guste iestājās baznīcas korī, vecākiem nezinot.
5. Ernests aizgāja darbā, nepaēdis brokastis.
6. Gustei nenācās viegli noraidīt Pētera bildinājumu.
7. Klusumam iestājoties, neviens neuzdrošinājās runāt.
8. Vai jūs viņu redzējāt atspiedušos pret stenderi? – Nē, viņš bija atspiedies pret sienu.
9. Nevienam nemanot, viņi izlaupīja banku.
10. Mēs visu laiku tik jauki sarunājāmies, nemaz nepamanīdami, ka iestājās tumsa.
11. "Ernestam ūsas jau metas sirmas," Guste nopūtās.
12. Kaimiņa mājas sauc par Melnsiliem.
13. Pēteris paņēma Ernesta motociklu, neprasījis atļaujas.
14. "Nu, kā klājas slimniekam?" ārsts, istabā ienākdams, ievaicājās.

Exercise 209e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Will your son enrol at the university this year?
2. The cat has been sitting all the time in front of that hole, without a single mouse's showing up.
3. Ernest and Guste were dancing the tango, taking no notice of the people around them.
4. Peter is tinkering about (*ņemties*) with that old motor, without stopping.
5. We were driving quietly through the thick forest, unaware that there were robbers.
6. Without her husband's knowledge, Guste gave the farm-workers each a bottle of vodka.
7. We left last night without having thanked the hostess for a wonderful evening.
8. Grandmother sighed without saying a word.
9. Will the enemy dare turn towards our battle-line?
10. Peter returned to Oslo without visiting his relatives.
11. Only on stage can one kiss while everybody is looking.
12. Peter found it hard to propose to Guste.
13. When peace came, the soldiers returned to their home-land.
14. He did not manage to answer every letter.

LESSON 210

FUTURE IMPERATIVES

The dative of the person (normally only a second person pronoun), the third person future of the auxiliary *būt* and an infinitive constitute a future imperative:

Tev nebūs laullību pārkāpt!

Thou shalt not commit adultery.

Tev nebūs citus dievus turēt manā priekšā!

Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

Tev nebūs zagti!

Thou shalt not steal.

Tev nebūs nokaut!

Thou shalt not kill.

The construction is rare outside of Biblical texts.

Vocabulary

<i>villaine</i>	shawl
<i>pretim</i> or <i>pretī</i> (postposition with dat.)	against, towards; (adv.) opposite
<i>irbe</i>	partridge
<i>bāleliņš</i> (dim. of <i>bālis</i> , for <i>brālis</i>)	brother
<i>rotāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to adorn, attire
<i>rotāties</i> (-ājos, -ājos)	to adorn oneself, attire oneself
<i>lidināties</i> (-os, -ājos) or <i>lidināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to hover
<i>Biksti</i> (pl.)	a place name
<i>nabagmāja</i>	poor-house, alms-house
<i>jēl</i>	imperative particle – see notes
<i>piemlīgs</i>	sweet, fair, charming
<i>nojauta</i>	foreboding, presentiment
<i>īlmeklis</i>	spider's web; climbing plant, creeper
<i>šķīt</i> (<i>šķīnu</i> , <i>šķīnu</i>)	to pluck off
<i>apsēsties</i> (-žos, -dos)	to sit down
<i>matiola</i>	a species of stock
<i>tvanēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to exhale (perfume); to shimmer
<i>putra</i>	porridge, broth
<i>klēpis</i>	lap

<i>balot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to grow pale
<i>sādža</i>	village
<i>tāpat kā</i>	just like
<i>arvienu</i>	= <i>arvien</i>
<i>tīri</i> (advb.)	very, quite
<i>alksnis</i>	alder
<i>bikšēles</i> (pl.) dim. of <i>bikses</i>	trousers
(<i>sa-</i>) <i>jozties</i> (- <i>žos</i> , - <i>zos</i>)	to gird on
<i>josta</i>	belt, girdle
<i>puškot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to adorn, decorate
<i>sāni</i> (pl.)	side
<i>dzirkles</i> (pl.)	shears, clippers
<i>paslēpties</i> (- <i>pjos</i> , - <i>pos</i>)	to hide (intrans.)
(<i>ie-</i>) <i>rakties</i> (- <i>rokos</i> , - <i>rakos</i>)	to burrow, bury oneself
<i>sastapties</i> (- <i>stopos</i> , - <i>stapos</i>)	to come across, to meet
<i>saprasties</i> (- <i>protos</i> , - <i>pratos</i>)	to understand one another, to agree
<i>atrasties</i> (- <i>rodos</i> , - <i>rados</i>)	to be situated; (often) to be
<i>vilkties</i> (<i>veļkos</i> , <i>vilkos</i>)	(of time) to last; to drag oneself
<i>pavilkties</i> (- <i>veļkos</i> , - <i>vilkos</i>)	to drag oneself (a little)
<i>izvilkties</i> (- <i>veļkos</i> , - <i>vilkos</i>)	to drag oneself out; to eke out a living,
	to get along with difficulty
<i>sargāties</i> (- <i>ājos</i> , - <i>ājos</i>) (but see Lesson 107)	to take care of oneself; to beware (of)

NOTES: The particle *jel* is normally used in conjunction with a verb in the imperative, and adds emphasis to it:

Uz Bikstu nabagmāju jel mani aizvediet!

Carry me off to the poor-house at Biksti.

The form *pretīm* may occasionally be found.

Matiola is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 129–144.

Exercise 210a

Translate into English:

Vīņpus upes liepa auga,
Šaipus upes ozoliņš.¹

Ozolami² zīļu cimdī,
Liepai lapu villainīt'!

Sniedz, liepiņa, savu roku
Pretim zaļu ozoliņ'!³

Sniedz, meitiņa, savu roku
Pretim daiļu tēva dēl'!

Irbe, irbe, tā meitiņa,
Vanadzīpis¹ bāleliņš.

Māk irbīte rotātiesi,²
Vanadzīpis¹ lidināt.

(T. dz.)

¹ The normal diminutive ending *-iņš* appears here as *-iņis*.

² In Latvian folk-songs, words are frequently found with an additional syllable *-i* at the end.

³ *Pretim* is here used exceptionally with the accusative, and as a preposition.

Exercise 210b

Translate into English:

Bikstu nabagmāja.

Kad manu dienu saule
Pret vakaru sāks iet,
Uz Bikstu nabagmāju
Jel mani aizvediet!

Ak, vieta piemīlīgā!
Reiz gaŗām braucu tai
Un atgriezoz, kā¹ klausot
Sirds gaiŗai nojautai.

Tur rītus ieraudzīŗu
Aiz zelta tīmekļiem
Un dārzā zirņus ūķīŗu
Ar pirkstiem dreboŗiem.

Tad apsēdīŗoz ēnā,
Kur matiolas tvan,
Un putras bļoda klēpī
Kā debess baloz man.

Un smaidot sajutišu,
Ka izgaisusi ir
Tā robeža, kas skopi
No sarniem dzīvi šķir,

Un sēdēšu tik klusi,
Kā¹ dziesmā klausoties,
Kad mīlestības smarža
Man vēsmā gaļām ies.

Veronika Strēlerte.

¹ *Kā* here = *it kā*. This contraction is frequent.

Exercise 210c

Translate into English:

Toreiz mēs dzīvojam vēl sādžā, un man nebija vairāk kā astoņi gadi. Tāpat kā citi sādžas puikas, es skraidīju krekliņā, arvienu juzdamies tīri labi. Zilās, alkšņu mizās krāsotās bikšes māte man atļāva uzvilkt tikai svētdienās. Sajozies jostīpu, kuņas pušķotie gali karājās kreisajos sānos, es tad staigāju vīrā,¹ no augšas noskatīdamies savos ganu biedros, kuņus tikai pēc matiem, kas tiem bija nocirpti dzirklē, varēja atšķirt no meitenēm.

Alberts Sprūdžs, from *Koka sirds*.

Exercise 210d

List, with examples, the major types and various sub-types of Short Conjugation verbs.

Exercise 210e

Translate into English:

1. Tev nebūs laulību pārkāpt!
2. Tev nebūs citus dievus turēt manā priekšā!
3. Tev nebūs nokaut!
4. Tev nebūs zagt!
5. Tev būs to svēto dienu svētīt!
6. Šīs maziņas zivtiņas ierokas smiltīs un dubļos, paslēpdamās no ienaidniekiem.
7. Tev būs mīlēt savu tuvāko kā sevi pašu!

¹ = 'dressed as a man'.

8. Mēs ar sievu vienmēr sapratāties tīri labi.
9. Sargies no šī cilvēka, viņš nav godīgs!
10. Sarunas starp ASV un PSRS tirdzniecības pārstāvjiem vilksies vairākas dienas.
11. Viņai nebija viegli izvilkties ar pieciem maziem bērniem pēc vīra nāves.
12. Kur lai paslēpjami? Vislabāk paslēpsimies bēniņos!
13. Ak, tavu bezjūtību! Kā es savā laulībā esmu cietusi!
14. Nevelc šodien labās svētdienas bikses; uzvelc vien tās vecās bikšes.

Exercise 210f

Translate into Latvian:

1. The partridges all belong to the baron (= *muižnieks*).
2. A falcon was hovering over the sports ground.
3. Where shall we sit?
4. The nearest pharmacy is to be found in Biksti.
5. If you come across my cousin in the village, please tell him that he does not have to go to Riga this week.
6. How long has this conversation been going on?
7. Beware of charming women, my boy!
8. You must eat all the porridge.
9. Let's hide behind the alder-trees.
10. How quickly the worm burrows into the ground!
11. How are you getting along with your new work-mates? – Quite well! (*to get along = saprasties*)
12. The wounded officer dragged himself out of the front line. (*front line = uguns līnija*)
13. She cannot go without a shawl.
14. This belt is quite good; how much does it cost?
15. Sit down! Do sit down!

LESSON 211

THE VERBAL PREFIX *AIZ-*

The student will already have learned a number of verbs compounded with the prefix *aiz-*, such as *aizdzīt* 'to drive away'; *aizskriet* 'to run away'; *aizsviest* 'to throw away'; *aizvest* 'to carry off'; *aizbēgt* 'to flee away'; *aizbraukt* 'to drive off'; *aiziet* 'to go away'; *aizzagties* 'to steal away'; etc.

These examples illustrate the principal meaning of *aiz-* as a verbal prefix: it corresponds largely to the English adverb 'away'. Hence it will often be found with verbs implying motion, as indeed those given above.

The following formations, in accordance with this principle, should be easily recognizable:

<i>aizgrūst</i>	to push away
<i>aizlaisties</i>	to fly away, slip away
<i>aizlīst</i>	to crawl away
<i>aizmest</i>	to throw away
<i>aizmukt</i>	to flee, escape
<i>aiznest</i>	to carry away
<i>aizplūst</i>	to flow away
<i>aizpūst</i>	to blow away
<i>aizraidīt</i>	to drive away
<i>aizrakstīt</i>	to write off, away (to)
<i>aizsaukt</i>	to call away
<i>aizskalot</i>	to wash away
<i>aizslaucīt</i>	to sweep away
<i>aizsprukt</i>	to get away, escape
<i>aizsteigties</i>	to hasten away
<i>aizstumt</i>	to push away
<i>aizsūtīt</i>	to send away
<i>aiztecēt</i>	to flow away; (of time) to pass
<i>aizvilkt</i>	to drag away

Another important function of the prefix *aiz-* is to indicate blockage, obstruction or total coverage, as in *aizputināt* 'to cover with snow'; *aizslēgt* 'to lock'; *aizvērt* 'to close'; *aizsalt* 'to freeze over'. The student should have no difficulty in recognizing the following similar formations:

<i>aizaugt</i>	to become overgrown
<i>aizbāzt</i>	to cork up (a bottle)
<i>aizgriezt</i>	to close by turning, to shut off
<i>aizklāt</i>	to cover over, to veil
<i>aizņemt</i>	to take up, fill (space), occupy
<i>aizsegt</i>	to cover up
<i>aizsiet</i>	to bind up; to blindfold (of eyes)
<i>aizvilkt</i>	to draw (curtains)

Vocabulary

<i>Puna Vipulis</i>	a man's name: Vipulis Puns
<i>klajums</i>	plain
<i>pamazām</i>	slowly, gradually
<i>atklāties (-klājos, -klājos)</i>	to be discovered, become evident
<i>tīrums</i>	field
<i>mājoktis</i>	dwelling
<i>lielceļš</i>	highway
<i>sils</i>	(coniferous) forest
<i>līdzināties (-os, -ājos)</i>	to resemble; here = to run parallel
<i>šķērsot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to cross
<i>aizšķirties (-šķiros, -šķiros)</i>	to separate, move apart (intr.)
<i>gaitu biedrs</i>	(travelling) companion
<i>uzzibēt (-, -ēja)</i>	to flash (momentarily)
<i>pillādzis</i>	mountain-ash
<i>elksnis</i>	= <i>alksnis</i>
<i>pievārte</i>	gateway; outskirts, approaches
<i>lāčšara</i> (obscure: perhaps for <i>lāceņe</i> ,	'cloudberry')
<i>(pie-)bārstīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to scatter, strew
<i>grāvis</i>	ditch, moat
<i>sulļs</i>	juicy, succulent
<i>skoste</i> (usually <i>skosta</i>)	horse-tail, mare's-tail (bot.)
<i>riesties (-šas, -tās)</i>	to come into bloom, leaf
<i>gājējs</i>	walker, wanderer
<i>atvilkt (-velku, -vilku)</i>	to recover (breath)
<i>pateikšana</i>	thanks
<i>noteikt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to appoint, fix (time, etc.); here = to say
<i>paiet (-ēju, -gāju)</i>	to walk a while; (of time) to elapse
<i>ceļms</i>	tree-stump
<i>kareivis</i>	soldier, warrior
<i>vaadmala</i>	(woollen) cloth
<i>turēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to last, to hold out
<i>Istēns</i>	genuine, real
<i>brīvlaists</i> (usually <i>brīvlaistais</i>)	discharged (soldier)
<i>nobrūnēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to go brown

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 145-160.

Exercise 211a

Translate into English:

Rīta rāsa vēl apklāja ceļmalas zāli, bet jau pacēlās karsta un mudinoša saule. No Vilku meža ceļš metās klajumā. Pamazām atklājās tīrumi un cilvēku mājokļi.

Pasaules lielceļš vijās caur siliem un mežiem, tīrumiem un laukiem, un lejā tecēja Azandas upe.

Gan līdzinādamās, gan šķērsodama, gan aizšķirdamās prom no sava gaitu biedra, nerimstošā gājēja, šī upe uzzibēja klajākā krastā un atkal pazuda pīlādžu, ievu, vītoļu un elkšņu aizvējā.

Vilku mežu pievārtē, kuplās un tumšās sūnās ziedēja lāčsaru zilie ziedi. Sūna bija piebārstīta zilām zvaigznēm.

Grāvju malās auga treknas un sulīgas skostes. Kokiem riezās¹ pilni un smagi pumpuri.

Šinī agrā rīta stundā Vilku meža ielokā parādījās gājējs. Naski iedams, viņš ieraudzīja savā priekšā klajumu un priecīgs apstājās, atvilkdams elpu. "Dievam pateikšana", viņš skaļi pie sevis noteica, "nu būšu atnācis." Un vēl gabalu pagājis un iznācis pilnā saulē, viņš pārlēca pāri grāvim un apsēdās uz veca un sausa celma.

Ceļa vīra kareivja mētelis bija biezs un pajauns. Pelēkā, asās un garās vilnas vadmala vēl labi turējās.

Šis bija īstens kareivis. No brīvlaistiem. Šķita nācis² garu ceļu. Vaigs bija nobrūnējis ceļa vējā un saulē.

Aīda Niedra, from *Puna Vipulis*.

Exercise 211b

What is the meaning of the prefix *aiz-* in the following verbs: *aizskriet*; *aizvērt*; *aizlīst*; *aizsiet*; *aizputināt*; *aizmest*; *aiznest*; *aizaugt*; *aizbāzt*; *aizklāt*; *aizraidīt*; *aizsaukt*; *aizsteigties*; *aizzagties*; *aizņemt*; *aizvilkt*; *aizsegt*; *aiztecēt*; *aizslēgt*; *aiziet*; *aizsalt*.

Exercise 211c

List the uses of the Present Participle Passive in *-ams/-āms*.

¹ Read *rietās*.

² lit. 'he seemed having come', i.e., 'he seemed to have come'. Cf. lesson 209.

Exercise 211d

Translate into English:

1. Kad Guste lāpīja vīra mēteli, tad atklājās, ka vēstules, ko viņš bija solījis aiznest uz pastu, vēl bija kabatā.
2. Ūdens aizplūst pa šo grāvi.
3. Māte aizsūtīja Ernestu uz veikalu.
4. Grāvīm aizaugot, ūdens vairs nevarēja aiztecēt.
5. Es viņam aizrakstīšu, pirms braukšu uz Oslo.
6. Kāpēc šī glezna ir aizklāta?
7. Aizvelciet priekškaru!
8. Mežs aizsedz skatu uz tīrumiem un ganībām tanī klajumā.
9. Vējš pamazām aizpūtīs visus mākoņus.
10. Zaglis aizmeta zagto rokas somu un aizmuka.
11. Guste aizbāza ausis, kad Pēteris taisījās kaut gaili.
12. Piedodiet, vai šis galds ir aizņemts?
13. Kareivji aizsēja ienaidnieka virsniekam acis.
14. Lietus aizskaloja dubļus no lielceļa.
15. Ir jau pagājis gads, kopš tēvs viņu aizraidīja no mājas.
16. Mums bija jāaizstumj mašīna līdz pilsētas pievārtei.
17. Kāpēc tu aizsteidzies mums priekšā?

Exercise 211e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Why did you push him away?
2. You must keep to the right if you wish to drive on the highway.
3. The fox dragged the goose away.
4. The soldiers were called away from the capital city when the enemy crossed the border.
5. This scoundrel has occupied my seat!
6. In autumn nearly all birds fly away.
7. You forgot to cork up the wine bottle.
8. The wind blew away the leaves, carrying them away into the distance.
9. Mother wanted to send Peter off to the chemist's, but he had escaped.
10. I threw the cinema tickets away, thinking that they were old ones.
11. The snake crawled away before I could kill it.
12. Why do these women cover their faces?
13. Quite a long time has elapsed since I wrote off to her, but she still has not replied.
14. The beer will wash the dust from your throat!
15. At what time did he depart?

LESSON 212

THE VERBAL PREFIX *AP-*

The principal meaning of the verbal prefix *ap-* is 'around', cf. *apsiet* 'to bind' (something around something); *apiet* 'to go around'; *apvīt* 'to wind' (something around something), hence 'to adorn'; *aplenkt* 'to surround'.

The following will be recognized as being of the same type:

<i>apgriezt</i>	to turn around (trans.)
<i>apjāt</i>	to ride around
<i>apjozt</i>	to gird around
<i>apķert</i>	to seize around; hence, to comprehend
<i>apņemt</i>	to gather about (oneself); to embrace
<i>applīt</i>	to plait around
<i>apstaigāt</i>	to walk around
<i>apstāt</i>	to enclose; to surround
<i>aptaisīt</i>	to enclose, put around
<i>aptecēt</i>	to flow around, run around; hence, to wait on
<i>apvert</i>	to clasp, embrace; hence, to grasp, understand
<i>apvelt</i>	to roll around (trans.)

Ap- is also commonly used with verbs to denote momentary and/or incipient actions, e.g.,

apskurbt 'to be giddy'; *apžilbt* 'to be dazzled'.

Similarly,

<i>apdegt</i>	to get scorched
<i>apklust</i>	to become silent
<i>apmaldīties</i>	to get lost, lose one's way
<i>apreibt</i>	to become giddy
<i>aprimt</i>	to fall silent; (of wind) to abate
<i>apstulbt</i>	to be dazzled, stunned, taken aback
<i>apsvīlt</i>	to get singed, scorched
<i>aptumst</i>	to grow dark

In addition, *ap-* sometimes transforms intransitive verbs into transitive, or gives an extended meaning to an already transitive verb: *apsplīdēt* 'to shine on'; *aprunāt* 'to slander'.

Thus: <i>apdzīvot</i>	to inhabit
<i>apdziedāt</i>	to sing of
<i>apkalt</i>	to shoe (a horse)
<i>apmeklēt</i>	to attend (school, etc.), to visit
<i>aprakstīt</i>	to describe
<i>apraudāt</i>	to bewail, deplore
<i>apsmīet</i>	to deride, mock
<i>apsnigt</i>	to cover with snow
<i>apstrādāt</i>	to work (a material); to cultivate (soil); to hew (stone)
<i>apvīt</i>	to wreath (trans.)
<i>apzagt</i>	to plunder, rob

Vocabulary

<i>Lielie Vēvēri</i>	name of a property
<i>mēžains</i>	wooded
<i>ērķšķis</i>	thorn, prickle
<i>ērķšķu krūms</i>	thorn bush
<i>dzelonis</i>	prickle; sting (of bee)
<i>vismaz</i>	at least
<i>saēst (-ēdu, -ēdu)</i>	to gnaw, eat away
<i>paksis</i>	corner of a building
<i>liecināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to testify, bear witness
<i>mēļderis (= dzirnavnieks)</i>	miller
<i>(sa-)dēstīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to plant
<i>gados būdams</i>	being of mature age
<i>ciems</i>	village
<i>iegarēns</i>	longish, oblong
<i>apsviedlgs</i>	agile, active
<i>izraut (-rauju, -rāvu)</i>	to pluck out, to uproot, pull out
<i>raušus</i> (adv.)	by plucking out, by uprooting
<i>turpretī</i>	on the other hand
<i>jozt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to girdle
<i>nātre</i> (usually <i>nātra</i>)	nettle
<i>svēšums</i>	foreign land, foreign surroundings
<i>vāls</i>	swath
<i>žēls</i>	pitiful, woeful
<i>bars</i>	crowd, herd, flock, swarm
<i>ķirsis</i>	cherry

<i>atminēt (-u, -ēju)</i> , usually <i>atminēties</i> (-os, -ējos)	to remember
<i>blaku</i> (= <i>blakus</i>)	alongside
<i>izkravāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to unpack, to empty
<i>spēlīte</i>	here = toy
<i>noiet (-ēju, -gāju)</i>	here = to go

NOTES: *Vismaz* and *turpretī* are stressed on the second syllable.

For the construction with *raušus* and similar adverbs, see lesson 243.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 202–210.

Exercise 212a

Translate into English:

Turpat aiz ābelēm un mežainiem ērkšķu krūmiem, kas asiem dzeloņiem sargā dārzu vismaz no ceļa puses, redz kādas dzīvojamās ēkas stūri. Vareni, bet jau laika saēsti balķu pakši liecina, ka te kādreiz dzīvojuši cilvēki. Nebija jau tas neviens cits kā melderis Akots, kas sadēstīja šo ābeļu dārzu, apprecēdams, jau gados būdams, skaisto ciema bāreni Baibu, augušu bez tēva un mātes. Iegarenu seju, tādām pašām iegarenām, bet lielām acīm, paplatu muti, kuru apņēma sārtas pabiezas lūpas, dzīvu, apsviedīgu un savādāku kā citas ciema meitas, melderis to bija ieraudzījis un atvedis šurpu, izraudams raušus no ciema vidus. Kas turpretī bija cēlis dzirnavas no rupjiem un milzīgiem lauku akmeņiem, to neviens nezināja, bet neviens jau arī pēc tā nejautāja.

Jonāss Miesnieks, from *Lielie Vēveri*.

Exercise 212b

Translate into English:

Dzimtene.

Kā savu dzimteni lai tēloju?
 Tai augstu kalnu nav, ne straumju platu,
 Kas citas zemes sudrabjostās jož,
 Ne lielisku un krāšņu dabas skatu;
 Tai rožu maz, tik nātres asi kož. . .
 Un tomēr – svešumā aiz krastiem tāliem,
 Kur dienas it kā raudot aust un riet,

Caur smagiem pelēktumšiem miglas vāliem –
 Tā man kā gaiša laimes sala šķiet.
 Es garā redzu viņu mirdzošu,¹
 Kā apvītu ar staru vainagu.
 Sirds man tik pilna žēlām atmiņām: –
 Tur, dzimtenē, silst siltāk saules stari,
 Un maigāk lietutiņš tur zemē līst,
 Tur pavasarī dūcot bišu bari
 Pa baltiem ķiršu ziediem apkārt klīst.
 Es atminu vēl mežā šauro taku
 Un mīlo vietīņu zem ābeles,
 Es redzu zaļo mauru sētai blaku,
 Kur izkravāju bērna spēlītes.
 Pat tumšā naktī turp ja noietu,
 Es katru akmentiņu atrastu.

Aspazija.

Exercise 212c

What is the meaning of the prefix *ap-* in the following verbs: *apiet*; *apskurbt*; *apspldēt*; *apņemt*; *aprunāt*; *apjāt*; *apžilbt*; *apstulbt*; *apklust*; *apdziedāt*; *apvelt*; *apzagt*; *aptvert*; *apreibt*; *apkalt*; *apvīt*; *aprakstīt*; *apjozt*; *aprint*; *aptumst*; *apsmiet*; *apraudāt*; *aplenkt*; *apsnigt*.

Exercise 212d

Decline the past participle active, and give the corresponding reflexive forms, using verbs of your own choice.

Exercise 212e

Translate into English:

1. Melderis var liecināt, ka Ernests nebija apreibis, kad viņš aizbrauca uz ciemu.
2. Kad priekšnieks ienāca birojā, visi apklusā.
3. Es nevaru aptvert, kā mēs varējām apmaldīties, braukdami pa lielceļu.

¹ One would have expected a participial form in *-am* or *-ot*. This use of the form in *-ošs* is unusual.

4. Kādas tautas apdzīvo PSRS dienvidus?
5. Grāmatvedis bija apzadzis kasi.
6. Es apstaigāju visus veikalus, bet nekur neredzēju neviena tāda kažoka, kas man patiktu.
7. Neapgrieziet slimnieku uz muguras, kamēr neierodas ārsts!
8. Dzejnieki apdziedājuši viņas skaistumu.
9. Kino zālē jau lēnām aptumst, tūlīt sāksies filma.
10. Tanī fabrikā apstrādā ādu.
11. Nestāvi tik tuvu pie liesmām, tev apsvils drēbes!
12. Ja mēs nebūtu apvēluši šo akmeni, mēs nebūtu atraduši sava nelaiķa tēva zeltu.
13. Karalis jau apjož zobenu, mēs tūlīt dosimies ceļā.
14. Studenti apsmej veco, pakurlo profesoru.
15. Slimnieki apstāj šo ārstu (here, *to swamp, flock to*) dienu un nakti.
16. Māte aptecēja slimo bērnu dienu un nakti.

Exercise 212f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Aren't you the blacksmith who shod my horse about a year ago? – Yes, sir; you have a good memory.
2. Don't be shy, boys; put your arms around (*apķert*) the girls and dance.
3. As soon as the rain eases, we shall ride around the village.
4. Throughout the land people were bewailing the death of the queen.
5. A crowd surrounded the famous musician.
6. I am putting a new fence around the pasture.
7. We usually attend all the concerts.
8. Peter was quite taken aback when he met the miller on the path.
9. Who could describe our joy when the storm abated?
10. It is hard for some people to grasp that the earth is round.
11. The conversation fell silent.
12. Japanese poets sing of the beauty of cherry blossoms.
13. Why did you adorn his chair with a garland? – Because it is his birthday.
14. This is an uninhabited island.
15. The king girt on his sword and prepared for battle.

LESSON 213

THE VERBAL PREFIX *AT-*

The principal meaning of the verbal prefix *at-* is one of *repetition* or of *returning to a former state*. In either case there is a correspondence with the English 'again' or 'back'. Cf. *atkārtot* 'to repeat'; *atspirgt* 'to get well again'. Similarly with the following:

<i>atāgt</i>	to grow again
<i>atdabūt</i>	to get back
<i>atdzimt</i>	to be regenerated, to revive (intr.)
<i>atgriezt</i>	to turn back, reverse (trans.)
<i>atgūt</i>	to get back
<i>atkliegt</i>	to shout back
<i>atlaist</i>	to let go (again); to dismiss
<i>atmaksāt</i>	to repay, to take revenge
<i>atmosties</i>	to wake up (again)
<i>atņemt</i>	to take back
<i>atplūst</i>	to flow back
<i>atsaukt</i>	to call back, to recall
<i>atskatīties</i> (uz + acc.)	to look back (on)
<i>atslīgt</i>	to sink back; to relapse
<i>atsviest</i>	to throw back
<i>attēlot</i>	to describe (i.e., to bring back to someone's mind)

At- can also indicate motion towards the speaker, as in

<i>atbraukt</i>	to arrive
<i>atceļot</i>	to arrive
<i>atjāt</i>	to come riding
<i>atklīst</i>	to stroll up
<i>atlēkt</i>	to come jumping
<i>atlidot</i>	to arrive flying
<i>atllst</i>	to come crawling
<i>atnākt</i>	to arrive, come
<i>atrakstīt</i>	to write (to)
<i>atskriet</i>	to come running
<i>atstiept</i>	to drag hither
<i>atsviest</i>	to throw hither
<i>attecēt</i>	to come running

Sometimes, however, it has quite the opposite meaning, and signifies departure, or motion away:

<i>atiet</i>	to depart
<i>atlēkt</i>	to jump aside
<i>atlikt</i>	to put away, aside; to postpone
<i>atmet</i>	to throw aside; to give up (trans.)
<i>atņemt</i>	to take away
<i>atraidīt</i>	to send away, to reject
<i>atvadīties</i>	to bid farewell

On other occasions, the reversal process outlined in the first group above amounts to a total negation, and the *at-* is equivalent to the English *un-* or *dis-*.

<i>atburt</i>	to charm away, break a spell
<i>atcelt</i>	to abolish
<i>atjūgt</i>	to unharness
<i>atliekt</i>	to unbend
<i>atplīt</i>	to unplait, untwine
<i>atrunāt</i>	to dissuade
<i>atsegt</i>	to uncover, disclose
<i>atskurbt</i>	to become sober
<i>atslēgt</i>	to unlock
<i>attīt</i>	to unroll, unwrap
<i>atvainot</i>	to excuse, pardon

Vocabulary

<i>saglaust</i> (-žu, -du)	to smooth (hair)
<i>sapīt</i> (-pinu, -pinu)	to plait together
(<i>sa-</i>) <i>sukāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to brush, to comb
<i>izlakt</i> (-loku, -laku)	to lap up
<i>pamāte</i>	step-mother
(Hence also <i>pameita, patēvs, padēls</i>)	
<i>kakts</i>	corner (usually inside)
<i>šūpulis</i>	cradle
<i>izvārgt</i> (-gstu, -gu)	to be tired out, exhausted
<i>dienvidus</i> or <i>dienas vidus</i>	midday
<i>aizsnausties</i> (-žos, -dos)	to doze off
<i>izkrist</i> (-krītu, -kritu)	to fall out
<i>puns</i>	bump, lump
(<i>sa-</i>) <i>dauzīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to beat
<i>sadauzīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to smash; to injure

<i>izdzīt</i> (-dzēnu, -dzinu)	to drive out
(<i>sa-</i>) <i>plosīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to tear apart (trans.)
<i>aizdurve</i>	space behind the door
<i>bārties</i> (<i>baros, bāros</i>)	to quarrel, grumble, recriminate
<i>nodot</i> (-dodu, -dēvu)	to hand over, deliver; to betray
<i>dievbijīgs</i>	pious, devout
<i>kāpējs</i>	climber
<i>vientulīgs</i>	= <i>vientuļš</i>
<i>ceļotājs</i>	traveller
<i>rada</i> (invar. adj.)	related, kindred
<i>žņaugt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to squeeze, strangle
<i>klusums</i>	stillness, silence
<i>dusa</i>	rest, repose
<i>gāle</i>	(thin) sheet of ice
<i>lēdains</i>	icy
<i>vairogs</i>	shield

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 161–176.

Exercise 213a

Translate into English:

Kādam vīram nomira sieva. Pati aizgāja uz debesīm un atstāja šim mazu meitiņu. Nu nebija neviena, kas viņai saglauž galvu un sapin matus. Tā vīram bija žēl, jo meitiņai bija skaisti mati, un pat bites pievīlās, kad viņa pavasarī sēdēja pļavā un viņas bizes mirdzēja kā tekošs medus. Un vīrs precēja citu sievu, lai būtu kāds, kas bērnam sasukā galvu. Bet bizes nu bija meitiņas nelaime. Kad kaķis izlaka pienu, tad pamāte ņēma meitiņu aiz¹ bizēm; un kad gribēja to pērt, tad bija viegli noķert aiz¹ bizēm. Vasaru, kad bites dūca pļavā, pamāte piesēja viņu aiz¹ bizēm tumšā istabas kaktā, kur karājās šūpulis. Tur gulēja pamātes bērns, lielu galvu un stīvām acīm, un viņai tas bija jāšūpo dienu un nakti. Reiz meitiņa, nakti izvārgusi, bija dienvidū aizsnaudusies, bērns izkrita no šūpuļa un dabūja pierē punu. Pamāte par to meitiņu sadauzīja un izdzina mežā, lai vilki, lāči to saplosa. Bet tēvam viņas bija žēl, tas sauca viņu atpakaļ un, kamēr tā stāvēja aizdurvē, nedrīkstēdama acu pacelt, ilgi bārās ar pamāti. Tad viņi nodeva meitiņu pie kāda dievbijīga un skopa saimnieka, jo mācību viņai vajadzēja dabūt.

Kārlis Skalbe, from *Pasaka par zelta ābeli*.

¹ After verbs of seizing and the like, the preposition *atz* is normal to denote the place of seizure; cf. English 'by'.

Exercise 213b

Translate into English:

Tad kļūsi vientulīgāks gads pēc gada,
No tevis atšķirsies pēc drauga draugs;
Rets ceļotājs, kas būs tev dvēslē rada,
Un reta puķe, kas tev klintīs augs.

Tad zudīs arī tie, – un kalnu tālēs
Bez gala klusums sirdi tevīm¹ žņaus;
Tev nebūs dusas atrast ledus gālēs:

Visapkārt tevi ledains vairogs segs,
Bet visas zemes ilgas krūtīs degs.

Jānis Rainis, from *Kalnā kāpējs*.

Exercise 213c

What is the meaning of the prefix *at-* in the following verbs: *atlēkt*; *atsegt*; *atklst*; *atsviest*; *atdabūt*; *atbraukt*; *atvadlīties*; *atslēgt*; *atjūgt*; *atiet*; *atjāt*; *atmosties*; *atraidīt*; *atllst*; *atsaukt*; *atrunāt*; *attecēt*; *atgūt*; *atvainot*; *atlikt*; *atslgt*; *atskurbt*; *atņemt*; *atnākt*.

Exercise 213d

List, with examples, the principal meanings of the verbal prefixes *aiz-* and *ap-*.

Exercise 213e

What are the principal types of conjugation within the Long and Mixed conjugations?

¹ The forms *manim*, *tevim*, *sevim* are obsolescent. Read respectively *man*, *tev*, *sev*.

Exercise 213f

Translate into English:

1. Kāpēc valdība neatceļ šo veco likumu?
2. Pamāte mums atrakstīja, ka viņa pēc nedēļas būs mājās.
3. Viņu atlaida par to, ka viņš bija darbā aizsnaudies.
4. No kurienes gan šis svešais suns ir atklīdis?
5. Sirmais mežsargs atskatās uz četrdesmit raženā darbā pavadītiem gadiem.
6. Šo svarīgo darbu nevar atlikt uz citu dienu.
7. Es atnācu, lai atvadītos. Vilciens atiet pēc stundas.
8. Jūs šovakar atņēmat man visu naudu kāršu spēlē, bet rīt es to atgūšu.
9. Kad tava sieva atbrauks, viņa bārsies, ja redzēs tevi iedzērušu. – Nekas, līdz tam brīdim es būšu jau atskurbis.
10. Slimnieks atslīga spilvenos.
11. Ja ķirzakai nolūst aste, tā atkal ataug.
12. Ko karalis sola tam, kas atburs šo apburto pili?
13. Kalps atskrēja un atjūdza zirgu.
14. Attēlojiet mums, kā jūs atlēcāt atpakaļ, kad šis vīrs jums uzbruka!
15. Lielā zivs ar savu svaru atliekusi āķi.
16. Ja es skatos savā krustdēlā, man liekas, ka mans nelaiķa brālis atkal ir atdzimis.

Exercise 213g

Translate into Latvian:

1. When I woke up, there was silence all around.
2. Throw the ball back to him.
3. The chief rejected my advice.
4. That law was abolished in 1919.
5. I called you back in order to dissuade you from this trip.
6. After the serious operation, he regained his strength quite rapidly.
7. I shall take revenge on this scoundrel.
8. How did you drag the heavy bag here?
9. After three days a soldier arrived on horseback, without sword and shield, and completely exhausted.
10. The bank officer shouted "Are you mad?" but he shouted back "Unlock the safe (*naudas skapis*) or I shall shoot you dead!"
11. Please forgive me, but I do not recall your name.
12. The dog came crawling up to his master (*kungs*).
13. If you had not jumped back, the falling branch would have injured your foot.
14. Quickly, turn the cows back from the wheat-field!

LESSON 214

THE VERBAL PREFIX *IE-*

The verbal prefix *ie-* normally corresponds to the English 'in'; cf. *iegrimt* 'to sink in'; *iekost* 'to bite in, into'; *ienākt* 'to come in'; *ienirt* 'to dive in'.

The following verbs also illustrate this kind of formation:

<i>ieart</i>	to plough in
<i>ieaugt</i>	to grow into
<i>ieaust</i>	to weave in
<i>iebāzt</i>	to shove in
<i>iebērt</i>	to strew in, pour in
<i>iebirt</i>	to fall in, drop in
<i>iebraukt</i>	to drive in; to break in (horse)
<i>iebrist</i>	to wade in
<i>ieceļot</i>	to immigrate
<i>iecirst</i>	to cut into, to notch
<i>iedzert</i>	to imbibe; to take (medicine)
<i>iedzīt</i>	to drive in
<i>ieelpot</i>	to inhale
<i>iegrūst</i>	to push in (trans.)
<i>iejāt</i>	to ride in; to break in (horse)
<i>iekļūt</i>	to get in (intrans.)
<i>iekrist</i>	to fall in
<i>ielaišt</i>	to let in
<i>ielēkt</i>	to jump in
<i>ielikt</i>	to put in, insert
<i>ieļļst</i>	to crawl in, creep in
<i>iemaksāt</i>	to pay in, to deposit
<i>ienest</i>	to bring in, carry in
<i>ieņemt</i>	to take in, receive; to take (medicine)
<i>ieplūst</i>	to flow in
<i>iepūst</i>	to blow in
<i>ieskaitīt</i>	to count in, to include
<i>ieskriet</i>	to run in
<i>ieslēgt</i>	to lock in
<i>iestumt</i>	to push in
<i>iesūtīt</i>	to send in, submit
<i>iesviest</i>	to throw in
<i>tetecēt</i>	to flow in, run in

<i>ievelt</i>	to roll in (trans.)
<i>ievilkt</i>	to draw in
<i>iezagties</i>	to steal in

Often *ie-* marks the beginning of an action:

<i>iededzināt</i>	to kindle
<i>iedegt</i>	to light up
<i>iemigt</i>	to fall asleep
<i>iemīlēt</i>	to become fond of
<i>iemīlēties</i> (+ loc.)	to fall in love (with)
<i>ieplīpēt</i>	to light a pipe, cigarette, etc.
<i>iepūt</i>	to begin to rot

The prefix *ie-* with the reflexive of a usually non-reflexive verb often denotes a sudden action:

<i>iebļauties</i>	to cry out
<i>iebrēkties</i>	to scream out
<i>iedrebēties</i>	to shudder, to tremble
<i>iekliegties</i>	to shout out
<i>iemirdzēties</i>	to flash
<i>iepazīties</i> (+ ar)	to meet
<i>ierunāties</i>	to begin speaking
<i>iesāpēties</i>	to hurt suddenly (intrans.)
<i>ieskanēties</i>	to ring out
<i>iesmiēties</i>	to burst out laughing
<i>ievaicāties</i>	to ask suddenly

Vocabulary

<i>nobraucīt</i> (-ku, -cīju)	to strip off (trans.)
<i>cinis</i>	hillock, mound
<i>nora</i>	fallow land, pasture
<i>sniedze</i>	snow-bunting (a species of finch)
<i>knābāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to peck (continuously)
<i>sasalt</i> (-salstu, -salu)	to freeze (intrans.)
<i>sērmūksis</i>	mountain ash
<i>pūnis</i>	shed, barn
<i>rija</i>	kiln-house, drying-shed
<i>izkult</i> (-kuļu, -kūlu)	to thresh
<i>noglabāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to hide, conceal (trans.); to put away, store away

<i>grauds</i>	grain of corn
<i>ierakties (-rokos, -rakos)</i>	to bury oneself
<i>pinka</i>	tuft of hair; here metaphorically, <i>lāču pinkas</i> : darkness
<i>izgulēt (-guļu, -gulēju)</i>	to sleep away (trans.)
<i>grūtums</i>	difficulty; here = hard days
<i>smacēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to choke, suffocate (trans.)
<i>cīnīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to struggle, combat = <i>gurdens</i>
<i>gurds</i>	here = to stand, tolerate
<i>nomocīt (-cu -ku, -cīju)</i>	to toss about (intrans.)
<i>svaidīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	sleep
<i>miegs</i>	to amuse oneself during an evening, to have an evening party
<i>vakarēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	pine
<i>priede</i>	log; splinter
<i>šķila</i>	to crackle
<i>sprēgāt (-ā, -āja)</i>	to glow, blaze
<i>blāzmot (-oju, -oju)</i>	rope, cord
<i>valgs</i>	stories, rumours, gossip
<i>valodas (pl.)</i>	a full distaff
<i>kodeļa (usually kodaļa)</i>	spinning-wheel
<i>ratīšs</i>	a masculine name
<i>Brēncis</i>	messenger, herald
<i>vēstnešis</i>	devil; here as an interjection
<i>jods</i>	quicksilver, mercury
<i>dzīvsudrabs</i>	calendar, almanach
<i>kalendārs</i>	crane
<i>dzērve</i>	to enquire
<i>taujāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	palm (of hand)
<i>dēlna</i>	a pair; some, a few

NOTES: *Pāris* meaning 'a pair' is declined like any other masculine noun in *-is*; *pāris* meaning 'some, a few', on the other hand, is treated like an adverb of quantity, cf. *daudz*, *maz*, and is therefore indeclinable:

pēc pāris dienām after a few days

It takes the genitive under the same conditions as *daudz* and *maz*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 177-189.

Exercise 214a

Translate into English:

Bet tad nāca ziema un nobraucēja lapas no kokiem un ogas no ciņiem un pār laukiem un norām un lejām klāja baltu galdautu.

Mežā bija tikai sniegs. Sniedzītes knābāja sasalušās sērmūkšogas, tā bija vienīgā skaņa, ko varēja dzirdēt – tik kluss bija un tukšs. Putni atstāja mežus un lidoja ap pūņiem un rijām. Bet saimnieks bija pratis dzīt darbu. Labība bija izkulta un noglabāta klētī, un uz viņa tīri noslaucītiem celiņiem nevarēja atrast neviena grauda.

Nu nāca naktis kā melni lāči, kas grib tikai gulēt. Noguruši darba vīri līdz ausīm ierakās viņu tumšajās pinkās un gribēja izgulēt vasaras grūtumu. Bet jaunās sirdis smacēja gaŗās naktis un viņas cīnījās ar tām kā ar gurdiem milžiem. Jauni puīši un jaunas meitas nevarēja naktis nomocīt un svaidījās bez miega gultās. Viņi gāja vakarēt, meta platā maizes krāsnī sārtas priežu šķilas. Uguns sprēgāja un blāzmoja istabas krēslā. Puīši vija valgus un vija valodas. Meitas sēdēja pie bālām linu kodeļām, ratīpi dūca, un dūca dziesmiņas.

Kārlis Skalbe, from *Pasaka par zelta ābeli*.

Exercise 214b

Translate into English:

Brenča pavasara vēstneši.

Jods, kas tagad tās par galvām
Visiem mūsu jauniem ļaudīm!
Tiem pat grūti nākas noģist,
Vai jau atkal pavasaris.

Dzīvsudrabu, kalendārus,
Puķes un vēl citas lietas,
Dzērves, gulbjus viņi vaicā,¹
Vai jau atkal pavasaris.

Man tā taujāt nevajaga:
Man ir divi pāri cimdu,
Un kad abiem delnas cauras
Tad jau atkal pavasaris.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis.

¹ *Vaicāt* normally requires the dative of the person asked, but note the series of accusatives used here.

Exercise 214c

What is the meaning of the prefix *ie-* in the following verbs: *iekliegties; iemigt; ieskaitīt; ienest; iemaksāt; iemirdzēties; iellst; iemilēt; ielikīt; iekrist; iesmierties; ieelpot; iepūt; iebrist; iepļēpēt; ievaicāties; iesāpēties; ierunāties; iebērt; iebāzt; ieart; iebļauties; iestumt; iedegt.*

Exercise 214d

Which reflexive participles are declinable? Give their declension.

Exercise 214e

Translate into English:

1. Cik naudas jūs vēlaties iemaksāt, kungs? – Ieskaitot šo čekū, piecdesmit dolaru.
2. Kurā gadā jūs ieceļojāt ASV?
3. Brencis laikam būs iemilējies kādā meitenē, jo vakaros viņš aizzogas no mājas un rīta stundās atkal izzogas iekšā.
4. Vecais muižnieks iemilēja laipno māsiņu, kas viņu kopa pēdējos mūža gados, un viņš tai novēlēja daudz naudas.
5. Daugava, Gauja un Venta ietek Baltijas jūrā.
6. Ieelpojot man nupat tā iesāpējās krūtīs, ka varēju iekliegties.
7. Purvā ieskanējās dzērvju kliegzieni.
8. Ja tu iepazīsies ar šiem kungiem, tu iekļūsi vissmalkākajā sabiedrībā.
9. Viņš iedezināja savu pīpi un kāri ievilka dūmus.
10. "Kā tu varēji iemilēties šinī plencī, meit?" māte ievaicājās, un viņas balss iedrebējās.
11. Vēstnesis nupat iejājis pils pagalmā.
12. Iepūšot oglēs, varbūt tu vēl iedezināsi uguni krāsnī.
13. Kārtībnieki iestūma apcietināto vīru pagrabā, kur viņi to ieslēdza.
14. Cik naudas jūs ieņēmt Jāņu ballē?
15. Pēc pāris dienām kalps iears mēslus zemē.
16. "Jods, es iebridu dubļos!" Ernests iebļāvās.
17. Vai tu iedzēri zāles, vīriņ? – Jods ar visām šīm zālēm! Tās mani vēl iedzīs kapā, un ja ne, tad tu, mūžīgi bārdamās, mani tur iegrudīsi!

Exercise 214f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Have all the architects submitted their plans?
2. How much sugar must I pour in?
3. Why has she woven a red thread into the cloth?
4. Had the stone not flashed, I would have thrown it into the water.
5. The crowd burst out laughing when the fat miller fell into the icy river.
6. When she let the dog in, it crept quietly into its corner, where it soon fell asleep.
7. The apples have already begun to rot; don't put them into the bag.
8. Warm air is flowing in from the south.
9. The piano must be carried into this room.
10. The sand is dropping into my shoes.
11. Where have you put away your brooches and rings? – I put them in that box.
12. Never jump into water if you don't know its depth.
13. As soon as this globe lights up, inhale. – I understand, doctor.
14. We did not roll the keg into the inn.

LESSON 215

THE VERBAL PREFIX *IZ-*

The verbal prefix *iz-* is very largely the opposite of *ie-*. It means 'out, out of'; cf. *izliet* 'to pour out'; *izmirt* 'to die out'; *izraut* 'to pull out'; *iziet* 'to go out'.

Similarly with the following:

<i>izbāzt</i>	to poke out (trans.)
<i>izbērt</i>	to pour out
<i>izbirt</i>	to fall out
<i>izbraukt</i>	to go out driving, set out
<i>izcirst</i>	to hew out, cut out
<i>izdegt</i>	to burn out (intrans.)
<i>izdot</i>	to give out, spend; to publish (book)
<i>izdzīt</i>	to drive out, expel
<i>izelpot</i>	to exhale
<i>izgāzt</i>	to pour out
<i>izgrebt</i>	to gouge out, hollow out

<i>izkļūt</i>	to get out (intrans.)
<i>izkrist</i>	to fall out
<i>izkust</i>	to thaw out, melt
<i>izlēkt</i>	to jump out
<i>izlikt</i>	to put out, expose
<i>izlīst</i>	to crawl out
<i>izmēģināt</i>	to try out
<i>izmest</i>	to throw out
<i>izņemt</i>	to take out
(Note: <i>izņemot</i> 'excepting')	
<i>izpalīdzēt</i>	to help out
<i>izplūst</i>	to flow out, gush out
<i>izplāpāt</i>	to blab out
<i>izraidīt</i>	to turn out, banish
<i>izrakstīt</i>	to write out; to order, prescribe
<i>izrunāt</i>	to speak out, pronounce
<i>izsaukt</i>	to call out, exclaim
<i>izskriet</i>	to run out
<i>izslaucīt</i>	to sweep out, wipe out
<i>izslēgt</i>	to shut out, exclude
<i>izsmelt</i>	to bail out, ladle out
<i>izspiest</i>	to squeeze out, extort
<i>izstumt</i>	to push out
<i>izsukāt</i>	to comb out
<i>izsūtīt</i>	to send out
<i>izsviest</i>	to throw out
<i>izšļākties</i>	to squirt out, splash out (intrans.)
<i>iztecēt</i>	to flow out
<i>iztrenkt</i>	to drive out
<i>iztriekt</i>	to drive out
<i>izvelt</i>	to roll out (trans.)
<i>izziedēt</i>	to break out into flower

Whereas *ie-* is often used to denote the beginning of an action, *iz-* is commonly used to express the completion or full course of an action: cf. *izmirst* 'to despair'; *izmirt* 'to die out'.

<i>izdarīt</i>	to bring about, to accomplish, to do
<i>izēst</i>	to eat up (to the end)
<i>izkaut</i>	to slaughter, exterminate
<i>izlakt</i>	to lap up (to the end)
<i>izplpēt</i>	to smoke (to the end)
<i>izsapņot</i>	to dream (to an end)

<i>izsmēķēt</i>	to smoke (to the end)
<i>izstudēt</i>	to complete one's studies
<i>izziedēt</i>	to finish blooming

Vocabulary

<i>plosts</i>	raft; here = sheet of ice
<i>atsprāgt</i> (- <i>gstu</i> , - <i>gu</i>)	to fly open; here = to break off
<i>trīties</i> (<i>trinos</i> , <i>trinos</i>)	to rub (intrans.)
<i>plaisa</i>	crack, crevice, fissure
<i>plēsties</i> (- <i>šos</i> , - <i>tos</i>)	to extend, widen (intrans.)
<i>Cubuks</i> , <i>Stūris</i> , <i>Skapāns</i> , <i>Grīntāls</i>	surnames
<i>pārējais</i>	remaining
<i>atskanēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to resound
<i>mājiens</i>	waving, gesticulation
<i>uztraukt</i> (- <i>cu</i> , - <i>cu</i>)	to excite, make anxious
<i>tēkāt</i> (- <i>āju</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to run to and fro
<i>saturēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	here = to hold fast
<i>ciet</i>	here = tightly, fast
<i>pārpeļdēšana</i>	(the) swimming across
<i>kumoss</i>	bit, morsel, piece
<i>pārtika</i>	food, provisions
<i>virzīties</i> (- <i>os</i> , - <i>ļjos</i>)	to advance, proceed
<i>apstāties</i> (- <i>stājos</i> , - <i>stājos</i>)	to stop (intrans.)
<i>vērot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to observe, watch
<i>apvazāt</i> (- <i>āju</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to soil; to wear out (trans.)
<i>laisties</i> (- <i>žos</i> , - <i>dos</i>)	to fly
<i>rūkoņa</i>	roaring
<i>aprast</i> (- <i>rodu</i> , - <i>radu</i>)	to grow accustomed
<i>aprasts</i>	familiar
<i>sastingums</i>	numbness, stiffness; tension
<i>atlaisties</i> (- <i>žos</i> , - <i>dos</i>)	here = to ease
<i>pamest</i> (- <i>mētu</i> , - <i>mētu</i>)	to throw
<i>senatne</i> (often <i>senatne</i>)	antiquity, times of old
<i>burvīgs</i>	magical, enchanting
<i>zalgot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to glisten, glitter
<i>laistīties</i> (- <i>os</i> , - <i>ļjos</i>)	to glitter, to sparkle
<i>saisīties</i> (- <i>os</i> , - <i>ļjos</i>)	to enter into, engage in, associate with
<i>llgot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to sing special St. John's Day songs, to carol
<i>Jāņuguns</i> (f.)	St. John's Day bonfire

<i>spīgot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to shine, gleam, glow
<i>noslēpums</i>	secret, mystery
<i>mirgot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to glitter
<i>niedolis (rare)</i>	reeds
<i>saldsērīgs</i>	bitter-sweet
<i>mēnesnīca</i>	moonlight
<i>lauma</i>	fairly, enchantress
<i>bāris</i>	orphan
<i>viltus</i>	fraud, deceit
<i>bāliņš (diminutive of brālis)</i>	brother
<i>asiņains</i>	bloody
<i>pilskalns</i>	castle mound
<i>senšens (occ. sensens)</i>	ancient
<i>simtgadu (invar. adj.)</i>	centuries old
<i>tvaiks</i>	steam
<i>diet (deju, no imperfect)</i>	to dance
<i>trīskrāsains</i>	tri-coloured
<i>drīz... drīz... drīz...</i>	now... now... now...

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 205–213.

Exercise 215a

Translate into English:

Ledus plosts slīdēja tālāk, jūra šņāca un sāka tā malas postīt. Gabals pēc gabala atsprāga, peldēja līdzi un trinās gar lielā gabala malām. Piepeši starp zvejniekiem, kas divos pulkos bija stāvējuši, parādījās šaura, pelēki zaļgana plaīsa, plētās¹ un auga, un šķīra abus Cubukus, Stūri un Skapānu no pārējiem biedriem. No abām pusēm atskanēja kļiedzieni, roku mājieni – kā uztrauktas skudras cilvēki tekāja gar viena un otra ledus gabala malām. Vecais Cubuks laikam gribēja lēkt ūdenī, jo dēls ar to cīnījās un saturēja viņu ciet. Attālums starp abiem ledus gabaliem ātri auga, un beigās par pārpeldēšanu no viena uz otru nebija ko domāt.

– Tie nu ir beigti, – sacīja Grīntāls. – Bez kumosa pārtikas. Žēl tā Skapāna... Uz vidu! Vairāk uz vidu! Un paliksim visi kopā!

Klusēdams pulciņš virzījās uz priekšu. Apstājušies tie ilgāku laiku nemierīgām acīm vēroja mākoņus, kas kā apvazāti paļagi laidās pie debesīm, skatījās viņu nerimstošā gaitā un klausījās to aprastā rūkoņā. Pamazām šai vientulībā viņu sastingums atkal atlaidās, un viens uz otru pameta pa vārdam.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis, from *Nāves ēnā*.

¹ Read *pletās*. Cf. Lesson 165.

Exercise 215b

Translate into English:

Senatne.

Tur burvīgā gaismā viss zaigo un laistās,
 Ik skaņa tur dziesmās un saskaņās saistās;
 Pār pļāvām, pār mežiem tur meitenes līgo,
 No kalna uz kalnu jāņugunis spīgo,
 Visapkārt kā noslēpums drūmi guļ sils;
 Tur glāžu¹ kalns mirgo, tur ūdens pils.
 Iz niedoļa nāras saldsērīgi smejas,
 Un mēnesnīcā tur laumas vij dejas.
 Bez saulītes vakarā bāri tur dzied,
 Tie bargu kungu gaitās iet...
 Bet melna čūska maļ jūrā miltus,
 Tie jāēd būs tiem, kam vara un viltus.
 Tur kaļā jāļ bāliņš, – aust asiņains rīts,
 Pret ienaidniekiem ass zobens trīts.
 Tad augšā kāps pilskalns iz senseiem laikiem,
 Iz simtgadu miega caur dūmiem un tvaikiem.
 Dies saulīte atkal trīskrāsaina:
 Drīz zila, drīz zaļa, drīz sarkana.

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 215c

What is the meaning of the prefix *iz-* in the following verbs: *izcirst*; *izdzīt*; *izlakt*; *izkust*; *izstudēt*; *izsmelt*; *izraidīt*; *izsappot*; *izsaukt*; *izelpot*; *izkaut*; *izēst*; *izllst*; *izziedēt*.

Exercise 215d

Give examples of the principal meanings of the prefixes: *aiz-*; *ap-*; *at-*; *ie-*.

Exercise 215e

Translate into Latvian: at 1:05; at 1:55; at 2:10; at 2:50; at 3:15; at 3:45; at 4:20; at 4:40; at 5:25; at 6:35.

¹ Here = *stikla*, i.e., 'of glass'.

Exercise 215f

Translate into English:

1. Ko tu izdarīji? Tu izdevi visu nedēļas algu vienā naktī!
2. Nu gan Gustes sapnis par bagātu dzīvi ir izsapņots.
3. Kaķis izlācis visu pienu un izēdis šķīvi tukšu.
4. Izsauciet policiju, lai izraida šo vīru no krogus! – Man policijas nevajaga, viesmīl! Ja tas nelietis vēl daudz melsis un uzbāzīsies citiem, es pats viņu iztriekšu laukā.
5. Man bail, Ernest: tavs mazais brālītis izplāpās, ka mēs abi izpīpējām pa cigaretei.
6. Vai jūs esat šeit nodarbināta? – Nē, es tikai šad un tad izpalīdzu.
7. Nepērc šo vecmodīgo saulesargu, tā ir izsviesta nauda!
8. Pirms Ziemsvētkiem saimnieks izkāva visas zosis, pīles un vistas.
9. Kad es būšu izstudējusi, es izņemšu visu naudu no bankas un ceļošu kādu laiku pa pasauli.
10. Vai ārsts tev izrakstīja tās pašas zāles?
11. Zinātnieki var izrēķināt, kādā ātrumā zvaigznes virzās uz priekšu.
12. Kāpēc tu neizmēģini šīs ziepes? Tās ir ļoti maigas.
13. Tev nevajadzēja izlēkt no braucošā vilciena.
14. Tēt, vai drīkstu izbraukt Lieldienās uz laukiem? – Tas ir pilnīgi izslēgts, tu paliksi mājās un mācīsies!
15. Kurā gadā šī grāmata tika izdota, un kurā spiestuvē tā tika iespiesta?

Exercise 215g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The young soldiers will soon be sent to the front.
2. The nettles must be pulled out before they cease flowering, and before the seed falls out.
3. How did you finally get out of the dense forest in which you had got lost?
4. The little fairy poked her tongue out when the old giant appeared.
5. The squirrel crawled out of the nest.
6. The child could easily fall out of that bed.
7. As the snow melts, the first flowers break into bloom.
8. I shall finish smoking the cigarette, and then I shall put the empty milk-bottles out on to the verandah.
9. When Guste heard the child screaming, she ran outside.
10. Part of the provisions was rotten, and had to be thrown out.
11. The water need not be bailed out; it will flow out.
12. What had the officer done to be expelled from the regiment?
13. We were driven out like cattle.

LESSON 216

THE VERBAL PREFIX *NO-*

The verbal prefix *no-* frequently corresponds to the English 'down': cf. *nokāpt* 'to climb down'; *nokrist* 'to fall down'; *nosviest* 'to throw down'.

Similar are the following:

<i>nodedzināt</i>	to burn down (trans.)
<i>nodegt</i>	to burn down (intrans.)
<i>nogāzt</i>	to push down, over
<i>nogrimt</i>	to sink (down)
<i>nogrūst</i>	to push down
<i>noiet</i>	to go down, descend
<i>nokarāties</i>	to hang down (intrans.)
<i>nolēkt</i>	to jump down
<i>nolikt</i>	to set down, fix (time, etc.); to put down
<i>noņļaut</i>	to mow down
<i>noraut</i>	to pull down
<i>nosēsties</i>	to sit down
<i>nosist</i>	to strike down, to slay
<i>noslīdēt</i>	to slide down
<i>nospiest</i>	to press down, oppress, depress
<i>nosviest</i>	to throw down; to overthrow
<i>notecēt</i>	to flow down, run down; elapse (time)

No- often corresponds to the English 'off': cf. *nogriezt* 'to cut off'; *nocirst* 'to chop off'; *nocirpt* 'to shear off'.

Similarly,

<i>noaut</i>	to take off (shoes)
<i>noberzt</i>	to rub off (trans.)
<i>nobirt</i>	to fall off, drop off
<i>nodauzt</i>	to knock off, beat off
<i>nodrupt</i>	to crumble off
<i>nogriezt</i>	to turn off, ward off
<i>nokost</i>	to bite off
<i>nolauzt</i>	to break off (trans.)
<i>noļiet</i>	to pour off
<i>noļūzt</i>	to break off (intrans.)
<i>noraut</i>	to pull off, tear off
<i>novadīt</i>	to drain off (trans.)
<i>nozāģēt</i>	to saw off

In a number of other verbs, the prefix *no-* denotes that the action has been taken right through to its conclusion, or at least to some point where it has an effect: cf. *nomaksāt* 'to complete paying'. Such are:

<i>nobraukt</i>	to cover (a distance)
<i>nodarīt</i>	to cause, inflict
<i>nodīlīt</i>	to wear out (intrans.)
<i>nojāt</i>	to ride (a given distance); to tire (a horse)
<i>noklausīties</i>	to hear out, to the end; to hear, overhear
<i>nokliegties</i>	to scream oneself hoarse
<i>nolietot</i>	to wear out (trans.)
<i>nolūgties</i>	to apologize
<i>noriet</i>	to hound; to bite to death; to slander
<i>noskrieties</i>	to run oneself tired
<i>nosodīt</i>	to condemn, sentence
<i>nostaigāties</i>	to get tired walking
<i>nostrādāt</i>	to work (a given time)
<i>nostrādāties</i>	to grow tired working
<i>noteikt</i>	to ordain, appoint, fix
<i>novalkāt</i>	to wear out (clothes) (trans.)
<i>noziedēt</i>	to cease blooming

Vocabulary

<i>Tālava</i>	a place-name
<i>murgi</i> (pl.)	nightmares; phantoms
<i>Miervaldis</i>	a masculine name
<i>tulks</i>	interpreter
<i>nomods</i>	wakefulness
<i>būt nomodā</i>	to be awake
<i>spiegot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to spy
<i>slēpens</i>	secret, stealthy
<i>čabēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to rustle
<i>šķēps</i>	spear, lance; occ. sword
<i>(pa-)šķindēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to tinkle, jingle (intrans.)
<i>pakavs</i>	horse-shoe
<i>klabēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to rattle (intrans.)
<i>bulta</i>	arrow, bolt
<i>stumburs</i> (usually <i>stumbrs</i>)	(tree) trunk

<i>līst</i> (<i>lienu, līdu</i>)	here = to penetrate
<i>ciest</i> (-šu, -tu) <i>klusu</i>	to keep quiet
<i>algot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to reward, pay
<i>brīvība</i>	freedom, liberty
<i>šautīt</i> (-u, -līju) (rare)	to whip; here = to ravage
<i>peķle</i>	hell
<i>lāsts</i>	curse, imprecation
<i>spindzēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to buzz, hum, whir
<i>lāpa</i>	torch, taper
<i>brakšēt</i> (usually <i>brakšķēt</i>) (-, -ēja)	to crack
<i>gāzties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to collapse, give way, fall
<i>šķēpņēsis</i>	sword-bearer
<i>stiegnājs</i>	swamp
<i>uzvara</i>	victory, conquest
<i>gavīles</i> (pl.)	exultation, celebration
<i>auti</i> (pl.)	bandages; here = shroud
<i>pazares</i> (pl.)	the lower branches
<i>zītars</i>	= <i>dzintars</i>
<i>svaidīt</i> (-u, -līju)	to anoint
<i>jaunķelis</i>	youth, boy
<i>slava</i>	glory, fame

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 1-25.

Exercise 216a

Translate into English:

Tālavas taurētājs.

Uz Tālavas biežajiem siliem
Nakts pelēkus palagus klāj.
Pār klusiem koku galiem
Jodi un murgi jā.

Dus Miervaldis savā pilī,
Guļ viņa ļaužu pulks,
Guļ vaidelaiši un sargi
Un zīmju gudrais tulks.

Tik augstākās egles galā
Taurētājs nomodā,
Tas spiego pēc ienaidnieka
Tuvu un tālumā.

Te it kā pa sappiem tam liekas,
Ka slepeni soļi čab,
Ka šķēpi paškindētu,
Un zirgu pakavi klab.

Un troksnis ap egli ceļas,
Un bultas augšup skrien,
Un asu cirvju zobī
Egles stumburā lien.

“Šurp tauri!¹ Kāp zemē! Ciet klusu!
Tu glābsi sev dzīvību!
Mēs algosim tevi ar zeltu,
Ar godu, ar brīvību!”

– “Mans zelts ir mana tauta,
Mans gods ir viņas gods,
Kas postīdams viņu šauta,
Uz pekli lai rauj to jods!”

Un taurētājs pūš ar spēku,
Ka koku galotnes trīc,
Un lejā atskan lāsti,
Un bultas spindz un sīc.

Mirdz lāpu sarkanā uguns,
Sāk cirtiens uz cirtiena līt,
Dreb, šūpojas staltā egle
Un brakš un gāžas, un krīt.

Un taurētāja krūti
Šķēpi un cirvji šķeļ –
Bet taures skaņas pilī
No miega Miervaldi ceļ.

Un viņš un viņa pulki
Uz cīņu kājas aun,²
Un šķēpnešiem pretī dražas,
Dzen stiegnājā tos un kaun.³

Bet uzvarai gaviļu svētkos
Meitenes vainagus pin,
Un varoni sirmā mātē
Sniegbaltos autos tin.

Uz sārta vietu tam taisa
No ozola pazarēm,
Un līgava puķēm to kaisa
Un zītara gabaliem.

Un kamēr svaidītās liesmas
Pie dieviem jaunekli nes,
Dzied vīri tam slavas dziesmas,
Raud žēli meitenes.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis.

Exercise 216b

What is the meaning of the prefix *no-* in the following verbs: *nogrimt*; *noaut*; *nolietot*; *noiet*; *nolēkt*; *nobirt*; *nojāt*; *nolikt*; *nokost*; *nolauzt*; *nokliegties*; *noraut*; *nosodīt*; *nostaigāties*; *noslīdēt*; *novalkāt*; *noliet*.

Exercise 216c

Give examples of the principal meanings of the verbal prefixes: *aiz-*; *ap-*; *at-*; *ie-*; *iz-*.

Exercise 216d

Decline all the active and reflexive participles that admit of declension.

Exercise 216e

Translate into English:

1. Ja muša nosēstos uz sienas, es to nosistu.
2. Grīdas dēļi vēl nav nodiluši, tikai krāsa šur tur iet nost.
3. Kāpēc jūs šo zēnu nosodāt? Ko viņš jums ir nodarījis?
4. Kuģim nogrimstot, jūrnieki nolēca no klāja ūdenī.

¹ Elliptical. Read *Dod šurp tauri* (or with any other appropriate verb).

² Here in the more general sense of making ready.

³ Read *kauj*.

5. Nabaga Miervaldis ir tik nospiests, tāpēc ka jūs visi viņu norejat; viņš taču nav vainīgs, ka klēts nodega līdz pašiem pamatiem!
6. Cik kilometru tava mašīna jau ir nobraukusi?
7. Es pirmīt noklausījos, ka viņš nolūdzās savu sievu. – Vai tev nav kauna spiegot?
8. Es nezinu, kur es noliku savu rokas somu.
9. Šie vadmalas svārki ir stipri, tos tu tik ātri nenovalkāsi.
10. Nu, vai jūs kārtīgi nostaigājāties, bērni? Tagad jums vakariņas garšos sevišķi labi.
11. Puķes jau ir noziedējušas, un kokiem lapas nobirušas.
12. Vētra nolauza kokam vairākus zarus. – Jā, sausi zari viegli lūst.
13. Bērais kumeļš gandrīz nokoda man pirkstu, kad es tam devu cukuru.
14. Šis zēns ar savu motociklu drāzās man pretim kā traks un būtu iebraucis tieši manā mašīnā, ja es to nebūtu nogriezis pa kreisi.
15. Šķēpnēsis ar pirmo zobena cirtienu nogāza pretinieku no zirga, bet tad arī viņš pats nokrita, spindzošas bultas ķerts.
16. Kas metīs šķēpu septiņdesmit piecus metrus, tam uzvara droša.

Exercise 216f

Translate into Latvian:

1. It is not easy to rub the old paint off the boat, for it crumbles off in very small bits.
2. A good officer does not tire his horse.
3. Take off your muddy boots before you come into the room.
4. The bullet tore off his left ear.
5. Does this gutter drain off the dirty water?
6. We had to work long hours in the heat, but we mowed down all the grass.
7. The lower branches must be sawn off.
8. The horse has worn out all four shoes.
9. Quickly, John, ring the doctor! The child has swallowed a cent piece. – I am not going to spend three dollars just to recover one cent.
10. Keep quiet! I am speaking to the interpreter.
11. We got tired running around looking for a decent restaurant.
12. What did you throw down there?
13. Why doesn't he get married? – Perhaps he does not wish to lose his freedom.
14. The boss will determine what has to be done.
15. A whole month has elapsed, but our messenger has still not returned.

LESSON 217

THE VERBAL PREFIX *PA-*

The verbal prefix *pa-*, like the adjectival prefix *pa-*, often denotes some attenuation of the action, and corresponds to such English expressions as 'a little, a while'.

<i>pabārt</i>	to scold a little
<i>padejot</i>	to dance a while
<i>padziedāt</i>	to sing a little
<i>paglaudīt</i>	to caress a little
<i>pagulēt</i>	to sleep a while
<i>pagulēties</i>	to have a nap, to lie down
<i>paiet</i>	to walk a little; to elapse (time)
<i>paklibot</i>	to limp a little
<i>paplāpāt</i>	to gossip a little
<i>parunāties</i>	to chat a while
<i>pasapņot</i>	to dream a little
<i>pasmaidīt</i>	to smile a little, to give a smile
<i>pasmieties</i>	to laugh a little
<i>pavalkāt</i>	to wear a while
<i>pazvejot</i>	to fish a while

Vocabulary

<i>Straumēni</i> (pl.)	name of a property
<i>paēna</i>	shade, shadow, shelter
<i>vai nu... vai</i>	either... or
<i>tāpat</i>	thus; similarly; here = in any case
<i>prasīšana</i>	enquiry, asking
<i>žuburains</i>	forked
<i>ērceņģelis</i>	archangel
<i>kļava</i>	maple tree
<i>drūzmēties</i> (-ējos, -ējos)	to crowd, to throng
<i>birzs</i> (f.)	= <i>birze</i>
<i>stāvs</i>	figure, stature, form
<i>baltums</i>	whiteness
<i>atsevišķi</i>	separately
<i>saplūst</i> (-plūstu, -plūdu)	to flow together, crowd together

<i>puðuris</i>	thicket, clump
<i>kaļķis</i> , often <i>kaļķi</i> (pl.)	lime, whitewash
<i>apmest</i> (-mētu, -mētu)	here = to plaster
<i>cauri</i> (adv. or postposition with dative)	through
<i>ēze</i>	rut, furrow
<i>āboliņš</i>	clover
<i>savīt</i> (-viju, -viju)	to plait together, twist together
<i>vārpa</i>	ear (of corn)
<i>necik sen</i>	not so long ago
<i>sēķs</i>	green-feed
<i>biezums</i>	thickness, denseness
<i>asmens</i> (decl. like <i>akmens</i>)	blade
<i>sērīgs</i>	sad, melancholy
<i>žēlabas</i> (pl.)	grief, lamentation
<i>kūpēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to smoke, to steam (intrans.)
<i>vilkties</i> (<i>vēlkos</i> , <i>vilkos</i>)	here = to drag on
<i>slogs</i>	load, burden

NOTE: *Tāpat* and *necik* are stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 151–162.

Exercise 217a

Translate into English:

Jums vairs nav kam ceļu prasīt, jo šai stundā visi Zemgales ļaudis guļ vai nu klētīs, vai dārzu paēnās. Bet Straumēnus jau tāpat var pazīt bez prasīšanas. Augsts, žuburains ozols kā zaļš erceņģelis sarga šo māju, un kļavas un liepas drūzmējas tam apkārt. Liela bērzu birzs tur silda saulē savas slaidās galotnes, un tās stāvi mirdz jums pretī spilgtā baltumā. No tālienes visi šie koki nav atsevišķi redzami, tie saplūst kopā apaļos puduros, aizsegdami ēkas, un tikai kaļķiem apmestās rijas sienas spīd tiem cauri. Jūs esat vienīgais gājējs šai stundā zaļajā lauku ceļā, kam dziļās ēzes aizaugušas ar baltu āboliņu un kas ir tik šaurs, ka divi rudzu lauki savij tam pāri savas vārpas. Bet necik sen še kāds ir bijis, jo āboliņa laukā tikko plauts sēks un āboliņa biezumā nolikta izkaptis glabā uz sava asmens zaļās un vēl mitrās zāļu un ziedu lapas.

Edvarts Virza, from *Straumēni*.

Exercise 217b

Translate into English:

Fabrikas meitenes dziesma.

Ak, lakstīgala, nedziedi
Pie mana loga sērīgi,
Man rītu agri jāceļas,
Sirds kūst man vienās žēlabās,¹
Sirds tavām dziesmām līdzi kūst,
Kā viņas līst un rimst, un plūst.

Man rītu agri jāceļas,
Man saules nav tais istabās,
Tur putekļi, tur lampas kūp,
Tur lēni mana dzīve drūp,
Tur lēni, tā kā pulkstens² sit,
Man velkas stundas sešpadsmit.

Tu šūposies vēl saskaņās
Līdz rītam, kad man jāceļas,
Tev birzē ritēs³ rasas zelts,
Man vecais slogs būs plecos velts³ –
Ak, lakstīgala, nedziedi
Pie mana loga sērīgi!

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 217c

Give the principal meanings of the verbal prefixes: *aiz-*; *ap-*; *at-*; *ie-*; *iz-*; *no-*; *pa-*.

Exercise 217d

List, with examples, the principal groups of Short Conjugation verbs. Which of these verbs have special forms in the future tense?

¹ See lesson 242.

² For *pulkstenis*.

³ lit. 'rolled'. Here = 'placed'.

Exercise 217e

Translate into English:

1. Necik sen Brencis nevarēja paiet ne divus soļus, bet tagad pēc operācijas viņš var iet, lēkt un pat dejot.
2. Guste pasmaidīja un teica: "Padejosim vēl kādu brītiņu un papļāpāsim ar pārējiem viesiem!" Bet Ernests viņai teica: "Man nepatīk drūzmēties šai ļaužu pūlī, un šeit nav neviena prātīga cilvēka, ar ko parunāties; iesim mājā!"
3. Es pagulēšos kļavas paēnā.
4. Nepaies ne nedēja, un vārpas būs dzeltenas.
5. Mēs vēl kādu brīdi šeit pazvejosim.
6. Vecais Straumēnu saimnieks paklibodams aizgāja līdz rijai.
7. Vai nu viņš nesaprata manu jautājumu, vai to nedzirdēja, es nezinu, bet viņš tikai pasmējās, paglaudīja manai meitiņai galvu un aizgāja.
8. Nemodīniet meistarū, lai pagu! Es atnākšu pēc stundas un tad parunāšos ar viņu.
9. Lai zēns pavalkā manu virsniēka cepuri, ja tā viņam patīk! Viņš laikam sapņo par karu, par uzvarām un par slavu, bet tādi sapņi drīz būs izsapņoti.
10. Padziedāsim nu, bāliņi, visi vienā pulciņā. (T. dz.)
11. Šī siena jāapmet ar kaļķiem tāpat kā pārējās.
12. Tur, kur abas upes saplūst, senatnē stāvēja stalta pils.
13. Āboliņš jau noziedējis.
14. Asmens bieži jātrin, citādi tu nenodzīsi bārdu.
15. Baznīcas priekšā ir erceņģeļa Miķeļa tēls.

Exercise 217f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Everybody has to sing separately.
2. All the passers-by laughed a little when they saw the old-fashioned car and the driver's old-fashioned dress.
3. The king smiled a little, and stroked the child's head.
4. You will have to limp for a while, but you will soon be able to walk a little.
5. Ten minutes will pass, and the stove will no longer be smoking.
6. In hot weather you would not wear this coat, even for an hour.
7. Let the young people dance and chatter a little while we chat over (*pie*) a glass of wine.
8. He had not been sleeping for an hour when somebody knocked at the door.
9. Why don't you have a nap in the shade of the maple tree?
10. The forest-ranger scolded them because they had been fishing at a prohibited (*aizliegts*) spot.

11. Our daughter is always dreaming of great heroes, famous artists and bold officers! – That is quite common at her age; let her dream a little.
12. The apples fell into the flowering clover.
13. Why has the archangel Michael such a sad face?
14. Not so long ago the drying shed burnt down.
15. Saw off all the forked lower branches.

LESSON 218

THE VERBAL PREFIX *PĀR-*

The verbal prefix *pār-* can express the English 'over' in both its local sense (e.g., 'drive over') and its quantitative sense (e.g., 'overeat'). The following should be easily recognizable:

<i>pāraugt</i>	to overgrow; to outgrow
<i>pārbarot</i>	to overfeed
<i>pārbraukt</i>	to drive over
<i>pārdzerties</i>	to overdrink
<i>pārēsties</i>	to overeat
<i>pāriet</i>	to go over; to cease
<i>pārkārt</i>	to hang (something) over (something)
<i>pārklāt</i>	to cover over
<i>pārkraut</i>	to overload
<i>pārkurināt</i>	to overheat
<i>pārlasīt</i>	to read over
<i>pārlēkt</i>	to jump over
<i>pārlidot</i>	to fly over
<i>pārllt</i>	to overflow
<i>pārmaksāt</i>	to overpay
<i>pārpeldēt</i>	to swim over
<i>pārpildīt</i>	to overfill
<i>pārplūst</i>	to overflow
<i>pārrunāt</i>	to talk over
<i>pārskriet</i>	to run over; to boil over
<i>pārspēt</i>	to overcome; to surpass
<i>pārsteigties</i>	to hurry (excessively)
<i>pārstiepties</i>	to over-exert oneself
<i>pārstrādāties</i>	to overwork (intrans.)
<i>pārsūtīt</i>	to send over
<i>pārvarēt</i>	to overcome

Note particularly that with verbs of motion, the prefix *pār-* commonly occurs when the complement contains *pār* or *pāri*. Cf. lesson 131.

Pār- can also have the meaning of doing a thing again, perhaps differently. Cf. the following:

<i>pārt</i>	to plough again
<i>pāraut</i>	to change (one's shoes, socks, etc.)
<i>pārgērbties</i>	to change one's clothes
<i>pārjautāt</i>	to re-question
<i>pārijūgt</i>	to change horses
<i>pārkalt</i>	to re-shoe (horse)
<i>pārkārtot</i>	to rearrange
<i>pārkrāsot</i>	to repaint, re-dye
<i>pārkravāt</i>	to re-pack
<i>pārkrīstīt</i>	to re-christen, rename
<i>pārlikt</i>	to place somewhere else
<i>pārmalt</i>	to regrind
<i>pārrakstīt</i>	to rewrite, copy out
<i>pārrēķināt</i>	to recalculate
<i>pārsēsties</i>	to change seats; to change trains
<i>pārskaitīt</i>	to re-count
<i>pārstāstīt</i>	to retell
<i>pārsūtīt</i>	to send on (a letter, etc.)
<i>pārsvērt</i>	to weigh again
<i>pāršūt</i>	to alter (by sewing)
<i>pārtaisīt</i>	to remake, refit, renovate
<i>pārvaicāt</i>	to ask again
<i>pārveidot</i>	to re-form, reorganize

Hence it is often used with verbs denoting a transformation:

<i>pārakmeņoties</i>	to turn to stone (intrans.)
<i>pārgrozīt</i>	to change, modify
<i>pārlicināt</i>	to convince, persuade
<i>pārmainīt</i>	to alter, change
<i>pārtulkot</i>	to translate
<i>pārvērst</i> (+ loc. or <i>par</i> + acc.)	to change, transform (into) (trans.)
<i>pārvērsties</i> (+ loc. or <i>par</i> + acc.)	to change, turn (into) (intrans.)

Sometimes *pār-* may have the meaning of getting a thing wrong:

<i>pārklusīties</i>	to mis-hear
<i>pārprast</i>	to misunderstand
<i>pārrakstīties</i>	to make an error in writing

<i>pārrēķināties</i>	to miscalculate
<i>pārskaitīties</i>	to miscount
<i>pārskatīties</i>	to err, blunder
<i>pārteikties</i>	to make an error in speaking

Pār- is sometimes used with verbs indicating the extension of an activity over a period:

<i>pārdzīvot</i>	to live through, to experience
<i>pārgulēt</i>	to sleep the night
<i>pārnakšņot</i>	to spend the night
<i>pārziemot</i>	to hibernate; to winter

Often *pār-* is used to indicate direction homewards:

<i>pārbraukt</i>	to drive home
<i>pārdzīt</i>	to drive (animals) home
<i>pāriet</i>	to go home
<i>pārijāt</i>	to ride home
<i>pārnākt</i>	to come home
<i>pārskriet</i>	to run home
<i>pārvest</i>	to lead home, bring home
<i>pārvilkēt</i>	to drag home
<i>pārvilkties</i>	to drag oneself home

Vocabulary

<i>(pa-)steigties</i> (-dzos, -dzos)	to make haste
<i>gurns</i>	loin, hip
<i>nokratīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to shake off, throw off
<i>dzirnavas</i> (f. pl.)	= <i>dzirnavas</i>
<i>rūkšana</i>	roar, rumble
<i>ņekāds</i>	not a single
<i>paskatīties</i> (-os, -ljos) + loc. or uz + acc.	to look at
<i>vērīgs</i>	alert, attentive
<i>klēpis</i>	lap
<i>toveris</i>	tub
<i>krējums</i>	cream
<i>(no-)rist</i> (-rīst, -risa)	to come undone, get untied
<i>lakats</i>	neckerchief, scarf, shawl
<i>noliekt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to bend down (trans.)
<i>noliekties</i> (-cos, -cos)	to bend down (intrans.)

<i>laipnība</i>	kindness
<i>pēda</i>	here = trace, sign
<i>žēlsirdība</i>	compassion, mercy
<i>piedošana</i>	forgiveness, pardon
<i>izprašana</i>	= <i>izpratne</i>
<i>brīnišķs</i>	= <i>brīnišķīgs</i>
<i>saulainība</i>	sunniness
<i>kūlējs</i> (f. <i>kūlēja</i>)	thresher; churner
<i>izlauzties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to escape, break forth
<i>biezoknis</i>	thicket, dense patch (of growth)
<i>padarīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to make (+ adj.); to do
<i>aizmigt</i> (-miegu, -migu)	to fall asleep
<i>pusatvērts</i>	half-open
<i>vēsums</i>	coolness
<i>apdvēst</i> (-šu, -su)	to breathe upon, to fan
<i>sniegties</i> (-dzos, -dzos)	to extend, reach (intrans.)
<i>plāvējs</i>	mower, reaper
<i>apsviest</i> (-stu, -du)	to be covered (with moisture, steam), to fog, cloud over (of surface)
<i>acains</i>	porous (of bread)
<i>saiņe</i>	household, household work force
<i>teikt</i> (-cu, -cu)	here = to praise

NOTES: *Dzirnus* belongs to an obsolete feminine plural declension:

Nom.	<i>dzirnus</i>
Acc.	<i>dzirnus</i>
Gen.	<i>dzirnu</i>
Dat.	<i>dzirnūm</i>
Loc.	<i>dzirnūs</i>

This is simply the declension of *meitas*, with *u* substituted for *a*, and *ū* for *ā*.

Nekāds is stressed on the second syllable.

Apdvēst often appears as *apdvest*, with short *e* retained everywhere instead of long *ē*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 208–216.

Exercise 218a

Translate into English:

Celies!

Tumsa, – ne zvaigznes,
Kas vientuļi mirdz,
Krūtīs tev gaiša
Un degoša sirds.

Celies, kaut¹ visi
Tev apkārt vēl dus,
Nomet sald-sappus
Kā palagus!

Celies un pasteidzies
Gurnus sev jozt,
Visu veco dzīvi
Sev nokrati nost!

Jānis Rainis.

¹ For *kaut gan*.

Exercise 218b

Translate into English:

Tad piepeši jūs dzirdat kādu vienmuļīgu skaņu, kas ir daudz smalkāka nekā dzirnu rūkšana. Tā ir ātra un klusa un dzirdama tikai tāpēc, ka visapkārt nav manāms nekāds cits troksnis. Paskatoties vērīgāk, jūs ieraugāt pagraba priekšā zem lielas un tumšas kļavas uz soliņa sēdam¹ sievieti. Klēpī viņa nolikusi toverīti un ar karoti ātri kuļ sviestu. Krējuma pods viņai stāv blakus, un viņa ir dziļi nogrimusi darbā. Galva, no kuņas norisis lakatiņš, viņai noliekusies uz priekšu. Mati viņai ir melni, seja patumša, un dziļi iegrimušās acīs spīd debesu laipnība. Skaistums viņas sejā ir atstājis tik dziļas pēdas, ka to nav paspējis aiznest sev līdzī laiks. Tas tur tikai nometis žēlsirdību, piedošanu un visu lietu izprašanu, – šīs brīnišķās puķes, kas uzplaukst cilvēka gara rudenī, piepildot to ar klusu saulainību. Kaut gan sviesta kūlēja sēž ēnā, bet² kāds tievs stars, izlauzies cauri lapu biezoknim, krīt viņai uz galvas un padara to līdzīgu svētajām sievietēm, kas skatāmas gleznās. Mājā viss guļ, aizmidzis

¹ The verb *sēdēt* normally has a palatalized consonant in the present tense. There does, however, exist a parallel non-palatalized present, reflected in the participial form *sēdam* (*es sēdu*, etc.).

² Here as an adverb rather than as a conjunction, equivalent to *tomēr*.

liekas pat pusatvērtais logs, bet viņa viena dara savu darbu pusdienas karstumā zem kuplajiem zariem, vēsuma apdvēsta, kas nāk no pagraba. Kad lielā ozola ēna jau sniegsies līdz kūts mugurai, viņa aiznesīs āboliņa plāvējiem ar rasu apsvīdušu sviestu un labi nobriedušu un acainu rudzu maizi, un saime to ēdīs teikdama un slavēdama.

Edvarts Virza, from *Straumēni*.

Exercise 218c

What is the meaning of the prefix *pār-* in the following verbs: *pārlīt*; *pārgulēt*; *pārspēt*; *pārsvērt*; *pārprast*; *pāraugt*; *pārskriet*; *pārlicināt*; *pārgērbties*; *pārpeldēt*; *pārtulkot*; *pārziemot*; *pārrakstīties*; *pāršūt*; *pārdzerties*; *pārsteigties*; *pārvērsties*; *pārmalt*; *pārnākt*; *pārtart*.

Exercise 218d

Give the principal meanings of the following verbal prefixes: *aiz-*; *ap-*; *at-*; *ie-*; *iz-*; *no-*; *pa-*.

Exercise 218e

What relationship is there between the active and reflexive endings of finite verb forms?

Exercise 218f

Translate into English:

1. Kad saimn'eks pārbrauks, mēs pārrunāsim visus darbus, kas saimei nākošā nedēļā būs jāveic.
2. Vai es tevi beidzot pārlicināju, ka kauli zemē ilgā laikā pārkāpjas? – Jā, tagad saprotu, ka tie pārvēršas akmeņi.
3. Cikos mēs pārbrauksim pār Daugavu? – Ap deviņiem. – Lieliski, tad mēs pārnākšosim Rīgā un, pārsēdušies citā vilcienā, rītā dosimies tālāk.
4. Man sāp gurns, ārsta kungs, es laikam būšu pārstiepies.
5. Tikko istaba būs pārkrāsota, mēs pārkārtosim arī mēbeles.
6. Tas nevar būt, ka Guste pārpeldēja upei visplatākajā vietā. Tu būsi pārklausījies, Baiba!
7. Skaitot cājus pagalmā, var viegli pārskaitīties.
8. Grāmatvedis pārrēķinājās par vienu santīmu.
9. Ko mēs pārdzīvojam, kad ezers pārplūda, tas nav nemaz aprakstāms.

10. Ernests viesnīcā pārskatījās un iegāja tanī istabā, kur pārgulēja kāda slavēna kino zvaigzne. – Jā, jā, un tad?
11. Nav brīnums, ka jūs šo teikumu pārtulkojāt nepareizi, jo jūs pārpratāt dažus izteicienus.
12. Kāpēc jūs tik agri pārnācāt mājās?
13. Plāvēji ir noguruši, viņi nomazgāsies un pārgērbiesies.
14. Krustmāte vienmēr pārbaro bērnus, tie pārnāks mājās pārēdušies un pārdzērušies.
15. Viņa raksturu nekas nevar pārveidot.

Exercise 218g

Translate into Latvian:

1. Why did you overload your truck?
2. The German government bought this French ship and renamed it.
3. Some beetles hibernate in the ground, others under the bark of trees.
4. When the pastor made a slip in speaking, the whole congregation laughed.
5. I have become so fat that I must alter all my dresses.
6. This page must be rewritten.
7. The gardener has overheated his hot-house again.
8. If you can jump over this ditch, you will surpass all of us.
9. Where did you cross over the border?
10. Our runners will vanquish yours.
11. I paid too much for this overcoat, and now I have to alter it.
12. This coffee is too coarse; it must be reground.
13. The shepherd is already driving the animals home.
14. What did father bring home from the city?
15. Why have they changed the time-table?

LESSON 219

THE VERBAL PREFIX *PIE-*

The verbal prefix *pie-* often has the meaning of approaching or drawing nigh, as in the following:

<i>piebraukt</i>	to drive up (to)
<i>pieiet</i>	to go up (to)
<i>piejāt</i>	to ride up (to)

<i>piekļst</i>	to wander up (to); to stray in
<i>piekļūt</i>	to get to, reach
<i>pielst</i>	to creep up (to)
<i>pienākt</i>	to come up (to); to arrive
<i>pienest</i>	to fetch, bring
<i>pieņemt</i>	to accept; hence: to suppose, assume
<i>pieskriet</i>	to run up (to)
<i>pievilkt</i>	to pull (to); to attract
<i>piezagties</i>	to steal up (to)

Pie- can also denote putting together or adding:

<i>pieaugt</i>	to grow up, increase
<i>pieaust</i>	to weave (something on to something)
<i>piejaukt</i>	to mix in
<i>pielasīt</i>	to gather extra (trans.)
<i>pieliet</i>	to pour in extra
<i>pielikt</i>	to add; to affix
<i>pielipt</i>	to adhere; to stick to
<i>piemaksāt</i>	to pay extra
<i>pienaglot</i>	to nail (to)
<i>pieņemties</i>	to increase; to gain weight
<i>piepirkt</i>	to buy extra
<i>piespraust</i>	to pin to
<i>piešūt</i>	to sew on

Vocabulary

<i>kādreizējs</i>	former, bygone
<i>atliekas</i> (pl.)	remains
<i>līdumnieks</i>	forest clearer
<i>nākamais</i> (f. -ā)	next, future
<i>paaudze</i>	generation
<i>neatmaidība</i>	perseverance
<i>pierādījums</i>	proof, testimony
<i>pārmērība</i>	excess, extravagance
<i>smilgains</i>	grassy, covered in hair-grass
<i>viļņoties</i> (-o ^{jas} , -o ^{jās})	to billow, to sway (intrans.)
<i>izliekt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to bend out; here = to extend
<i>aiziet</i> (-ēju, -gāju)	to pass (of time)
<i>tāli</i>	= <i>tālu</i>
<i>zarot</i> (-o, -oja)	here = to grow

<i>izrakt</i> (-roku, -raku)	to dig out
<i>cits... cits... cits</i>	one... another... another
<i>sētsvidus</i>	courtyard
<i>Pērkons</i>	the old Latvian god of thunder
<i>tvaikains</i>	hazy, vaporous
<i>valdīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to rule, reign; here = to control
<i>viršotne</i>	summit, top
<i>pusdiēna</i>	midday
<i>nospert</i> (-spēru, -spēru)	to strike down with lightning
<i>sērs</i>	sulphur
<i>smaka</i>	smell
<i>dzesināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to cool (trans.)
<i>drausmas</i> (pl.)	fear, terror
<i>šausmas</i> (pl.)	horror, terror
<i>izbaudīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to undergo, experience; to enjoy
<i>slāpēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to choke, stifle (trans.)
<i>doma</i>	thought, idea, opinion
<i>dzirkste</i> or <i>dzirksts</i> (f.)	spark
<i>paglabāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to keep, save; to conceal
<i>dvašot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to breathe
<i>kratīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to shake
<i>vaidis</i>	moan
<i>locēklis</i>	limb; member
<i>rūsēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to grow rusty
<i>bēzdarbība</i>	idleness
<i>telpa</i>	space, room
<i>atņemties</i> (-ņemos, -ņemos)	here = to revive
<i>plauša</i>	lung
<i>staiplīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to stretch (repeatedly)
<i>dzīsla</i>	sinew, vein
<i>piespert</i> (-spēru, -spēru)	to stamp
<i>dārdēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to rumble, rattle
<i>norūkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to grumble, mutter
<i>gulētājs</i>	sleeping
<i>atplēst</i> (-šu, -tu)	here = to open
<i>slēģis</i>	shutter
<i>bālēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to grow pale; here = to glow palely

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 26-50.

Exercise 219a

Translate into English:

Straumēni ir ļoti vecas mājas, un to var redzēt no lielajiem kokiem, kas aug ap viņu ēkām. Tie nav kādreizējā meža atliekas, ko sens līdumnieks atstājis nākamām paaudzēm, kā savas neatlaidības un spēka pierādījumu. Meži te nekad nav auguši, un daba sava spēka pārmērību visā šai apgabālā ir gribējusi parādīt pļavu zālē. Pļavas savas smilgainās muguras kā ūdeni, kam Dievs nolēmis uz vietas palikt un viņņoties, izliec še divdesmit verstu platumā no vakariem¹ uz rītiem.² Varbūt tāli aizgājušos laikos šais vietās zarojuši vientuļi ozoli, kuŗu stāvus zili melnus šur tur izrok no zemes. Koki ap Straumēnu mājām ir stādīti, jo tie visi aug kārtīgi³ – cits ēku galā, cits pie durvīm, cits sētsvidū. Tie ir stādīti par godu Pērkonam, lai viņš, tvaikainās vasaras dienās ar zibeņiem pa gaisu braukdams, neiebrauktu māju jumtos. Un tiešām, Pērkons, savas dusmas nevarēdams valdīt, arvien ir spēris šo koku virsotnēs. Sētsvidus lielajam ozolam tāpēc ir strups gals, ka Pērkons vienā pusdienā bija nospēris tā galotni, atstādams visā pagalmā nejauku sēra smaku.

Edvarts Virza, from *Straumēni*.

¹ Here symbolically for 'the west'.

² Here symbolically for 'the east'.

³ Here = 'in an orderly fashion'.

Exercise 219b

Translate into English:

Rīta vēji.

Jūs, kas esat raudājuši,
Dzesinājat¹ karstās acis:
Diezgan spilvens asru² lacis,
Ceļaties, jau aust aiz mežiem!

Modri bijāt visu nakti,
Visas tumšā sloga drausmas,
Visas rupjās varas šausmas
Jūs visdziļāk izbaudījāt.

Slāpētas bij domu kvēles, –
Tomēr sirds jums neizmisa,
Tomēr dzirkstis neizdzisa,
Paglabāt tās jaunam rītam.

Vēsi dvašo rīta vēji,
Augšā galvu!³ Skaidri skatāt,
Nost no pleciem sāpes kratāt,
Izraujat no krūtīm vaidus!

Locekļiem, kas rūsējuši
Bezdarbībā, laužat telpas,⁴
Atņematies svaigas elpas
Pilnas izžuvušās plaušas;

Staipāt notirpušās dzīslas,
Piesperat ar stingrām kājām,
Lai jel dārd pa visām mājām,
Igni norūc gulētāji!

Atplešat tad logu slēģus:
Visur apkārt skaidrā tālē
Jauna, zaļa gaisma bālē,
Rīta rasa mirgo zālē.

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 219c

What is the meaning of the prefix *pie-* in the following verbs: *pieiet*; *piejāt*; *pieklīst*; *pieaugt*; *piekļūt*; *pielīst*; *piejaukt*; *pieliet*; *pienaglot*; *pieskriet*; *piepirkt*; *piespraust*; *pieņemties*; *pievilkt*; *pielikt*.

Exercise 219d

Give, with examples, the principal meanings of the following verbal prefixes: *aiz-*; *ap-*; *at-*; *ie-*; *iz-*; *no-*; *pa-*; *pār-*.

¹ Verbs in *-ināt*, like *dzesināt*, belong to the Mixed Conjugation, and do not have a lengthening syllable *-āj-* in the present or imperative. The form *dzesinājat* is an analogical reformation on the example of Long Conjugation verbs, cf. *mazgājat/mazgājiet*. The normal form would be *dzesiniet*. The use of the indicative termination *-at* (or *-āt*) for the imperative termination *-iet* was pointed out in note (1) to the Akuraters text in Lesson 197. See also Lesson 108.

² For *asaru*.

³ Elliptical. Read *Ceļiet augšā galvu!* or, as Rainis would have written, *Ceļat augšā galvu!*

⁴ lit. 'break space for your limbs', i.e., 'gain room in which to move'.

Exercise 219e

Translate into Latvian: on the 22nd January, 1962; on the 24th March, 1950; on the 31st May, 1944; on the 7th July, 1935; before the 13th September, 1928; after the 19th November, 1916.

Exercise 219f

Translate into English:

1. Pats karalis piesprauda man šo ordeni pie krūtīm.
2. Mūsu lielpilsētās iedzīvotāju skaits pieaug katru gadu.
3. Nepiejauc nekā, draudziņ! Es mēdzu dzert tīru špabi.
4. Gaisma pievelk tauriņus un kukaiņus.
5. Kā lai mēs piekļūstam pie lidmašīnas atliekām šai muklajā apvidū?
6. Beidzot Guste pieņēmusi Pētera bildinājumu. Tas ir pierādījums, ka neatlaidība ir laba īpašība.
7. Vējš pienes sēra smaku no sērskociņu fabrikas.
8. Es nestaigātu tumsā pa šo biezokni, ja arī man piemaksātu.
9. Meistars pienaglos dažus dēļus, un tad galds vairs nešūposies.
10. Pēc manām domām paklājs būs pārāk īss; vajadzētu vēl pieaust kādu gabalu.
11. Kad pārkons dārdēja, suns aiz bailēm pielīda man klāt.
12. Skaties! Tur kāds sētsvidū piezogas mašīnai.
13. Šeit ir daudz zemeņu, un kamēr jūs staigājat apkārt bezdarbībā, mēs pielasījām veselu grozu.
14. Piedošānu, es jums nepielēju krējumu. – Paldies, kundze, es vienmēr dzeru kafiju bez krējuma.
15. Vējš pieņēmās un kratīja koku galotnes.
16. Aiztriec šo pieklīdušo suni, piesper kāju!

Exercise 219g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The doctor has just driven up; run up to him and open the gate.
2. The boss has promised to add ten lats to my salary.
3. At what time does the train arrive?
4. Go up to the policeman, and ask him the way to the library.
5. His wife is so lazy that the poor man has to sew buttons on to his shirt himself.
6. The forest-clearers were sweating, and their shirts stuck to their backs.

7. The royal messenger has just ridden up to the castle.
8. The food in the hotel was so bad that we had to buy extra provisions.
9. If she sewed a button on to your shirt for you, that is no proof of her love.
10. This sentence must be altered.
11. Lung operations can be dangerous.
12. One describes the terror, another the moans of dying soldiers, another the burning room.
13. I suppose that he is fed up with her extravagances.
14. This is the only photograph of my late father.
15. We shall fight as long as there is one drop of blood in our veins. – It seems to me that that is a very silly expression.

LESSON 220

THE VERBAL PREFIX *SA-*

The principal meaning of the verbal prefix *sa-* is that of motion together, coalescence. Cf. the following:

<i>saaicināt</i>	to invite together
<i>saaugt</i>	to grow together, to coalesce
<i>sabraukt</i>	to drive together
<i>sadurties</i>	to collide; to come into opposition
<i>sagrūsties</i>	to collide; to huddle together
<i>saieties</i>	to associate, consort (<i>with</i>)
<i>sajaukt</i>	to mix together
<i>sakliegt</i>	to call together
<i>sakrāt</i>	to gather together, collect, save
<i>salaisties</i>	to flock together
<i>salasīties</i>	to assemble together (intrans.)
<i>sanākt</i>	to come together
<i>saplīt</i>	to plait together
<i>sasaukt</i>	to call together
<i>sasiet</i>	to bind together
<i>sasist</i>	to strike together
<i>saskriet</i>	to run together
<i>saspiest</i>	to squeeze together, squash
<i>savīt</i>	to plait together
<i>sazvanīt</i>	to call together (by ringing bells, etc.)

On the other hand, *sa-* often denotes 'breakage' or 'collapse' into a number of pieces:

<i>sabirzt</i>	to fall to pieces, crumble
<i>sacirst</i>	to cut to pieces
<i>sadauzīt</i>	to smash (to pieces)
<i>sadrūpt</i>	to crumble apart
<i>sagriezt</i>	to cut to pieces
<i>sagrūt</i>	to fall to pieces
<i>sairt</i>	to crumble, fall apart
<i>sakrist</i>	to fall apart
<i>saplēst</i>	to tear apart
<i>sazāģēt</i>	to saw to pieces

There are a few verbs in which *sa-* denotes spoiling or damage, e.g.,

<i>sallt</i>	to be drenched, soaked
<i>sasēdēt</i>	to crumple by sitting (on)
<i>savalkāt</i>	to dirty by wearing

Vocabulary

<i>tuvoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to approach
<i>pusmūžs</i>	middle age
<i>rūsgans</i>	reddish-brown, russet
<i>atsist (-situ, -situ)</i>	here = to throw open
<i>nosvīst (-stu, -dū)</i>	to sweat, perspire
<i>olnīca</i>	track, cattle-track
<i>uzprasīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to ask
<i>iznākt (-ku, -cu)</i>	to come out; to eventuate, turn out
<i>dzira</i>	drink; here = swill
<i>nēšas</i> (usually <i>nēši</i>) (pl.)	yoke (for carrying pails)
<i>vēcis</i>	old man; here = husband
<i>tēpat</i>	here
<i>sliexnis</i> (occ. <i>sliexnis</i>)	door-step; threshold
<i>plakans</i>	flat
<i>pakāpenis</i> (usually <i>pakāpiens</i>)	step, stair, rung
<i>pieklauvēt (-ēju, -ēju) + pie</i>	to knock (at)
<i>appūsts</i>	weather-beaten
<i>izskatīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to look, appear, seem
<i>sajukt (-jūku, -juku)</i>	to become confused, get into disorder

<i>rieva</i>	wrinkle, groove
<i>sastrādāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to work
<i>sastrādātas rokas</i>	rough, calloused hands
<i>izslieties (-slienos, -slējos)</i>	to rise, stand up
<i>aizgulēties (-guļos, -gulējos)</i>	to oversleep
<i>mandarīns</i>	mandarin
<i>Čangs</i>	Chang
<i>dzimumdiena</i>	= <i>dzimšanas diena</i>
<i>apakšnieks</i>	subordinate, underling
<i>izzināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to find out
<i>zvaigznājs</i> (often <i>zvaigznājs</i>)	constellation
<i>izliet (-leju, -lēju)</i>	to pour out; to mould
<i>lielums</i>	bigness; size
<i>visā lielumā</i>	life-size, full-size
<i>balva</i>	gift, present; prize
<i>piezīmēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to remark; to note
<i>vērsis</i>	ox, bull
<i>baidīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to be frightened
<i>sabaidīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to get frightened
<i>ilgoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to long, yearn
<i>viens</i> (adj.)	alone

NOTE: *Tepat* is stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 163–174.

Exercise 220a

Translate into English:

Pa šauru lauku ceļu, kas locījās ap tūrumiem un pļavu, steidzīgā gaitā tuvojās pusmūža vīrs, prāva auguma,¹ tuklu seju un kuplu rūsganu bārdu. Pelēkais mētēlis tam bija atsists vaļā, bet tomēr gājējs bija nosvīdis. Pa olnīcu viņš iegāja pagalmā un apskatījās visapkārt.

"Vai saimnieks mājā?" viņš uzprasīja sievai, kas pašlaik iznāca no virtuves ar kūpošām dziras nēšām.

"Mājā gan, kur tad citur. Vēl jau nav uz purvu gājis. Mans vecis tepat kūti baro zirgus; saimnieks vēl nav ārā nācis..." Bet ciemiņš viņā neklausījās. Pa zemajām durvīm, pie kuru sliexņa bija nolikts plakans akmens kā kāppu pakāpenis, viņš iegāja istabā. Netālu no lielās krāsns pie vidējās sienas bija durvis, kas veda otrā istabā. Ciemiņš pieklauvēja pie tām.

Durvis atvēra jauns cilvēks, kas bija vēl tikai kreklā. Viņa vēja appūstā seja izskatījās rīta krēslā ļoti nopietna, un sajukušie mati stāvēja ap galvu kā kupls vainags. Rokas bija cietas un rievām sastrādātas.

“Ā, kaimiņš. . . redz,² tu jau līdz šejieni ticis, un es tikko no gultas izslējies. Aizgulējos šorīt.” Viņš sāka steidzīgi gērbties.

Augusts Saulietis, from *Purvā*.

Exercise 220b

Translate into English:

Pele un vērsis.

Še tas nebij, tas bij Ķīnā.
Lielam mandarīnam Čangam
Bija dzimumdienas svētki.

Mandarīna apakšnieki
Izzināja to, ka priekšnieks
Peles zvaigžpājā bij dzimis:
Lika izliet zelta peli
Visā lielumā – kā balvu.

Mandarīns bij ļoti priecīgs,
Pateicās par dārgo balvu,
Beigās laipni piezīmēja:
– “Jā, vai zināt, manai sievai
Drīz būs arī dzimumdiena,
Viņas zvaigžpājs – lielais vērsis.”

Apakšnieki sabaidījās.

Jānis Rainis.

¹ Descriptive genitive, cf. English ‘of strong build’. This genitive expression should not be confused with the following accusatives, with which *ar* may be understood.

² For *redzi*. The ending is often lost when the imperative becomes merely an interjection.

Exercise 220c

Translate into English:

Kad nakts.

Visskaistāk lakstīgala dzied,
Kad nakts;
Vismīļāk laime laukā iet,¹
Kad nakts; –
Ja ilgojies, tad izej viens,
Kad nakts, –
Lai nezin to neviens, neviens,
Tik nakts.

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 220d

Give the meaning of the prefix *sa-* in the following verbs: *saaugt; sabirzt; saieties; sajaukt; sacirst; sallt; sakrāt; sadauzt; salaisties; sanākt; sadrup; sagriezt; sasēdēt; sasaukt; sagrūt; sasiēt; saskriet; sairt; sakrist; saspiest; sazvanīt; saplēst; sabraukt; sazāgēt; savīt.*

Exercise 220e

Give, with examples, the principal meanings of the following verbal prefixes: *aiz-; ap-; at-; ie-; iz-; no-; pa-; pār-; pie-*.

Exercise 220f

What types and sub-types need to be set up to classify verbs of the Mixed Conjugation?

¹ = ‘walks abroad’.

Exercise 220g

Translate into English:

1. Ienaidniekam tuvojoties, priekšnieks sasauca savus apakšniekus.
2. Mans vecis atkal saaicināja savus kara biedrus, un kad tie sanāca kopā un iedzēra, viņi sadūrās kāda nieka dēļ un gandrīz sāka kauties.
3. Muižnieka vārda dienā pilī parasti sabrauc daudz viesu.
4. Viņš bija tik sajucis, ka sajauc faktus.
5. Palīgā! Rija deg! Sasauc visu saimi! – Te vairs nav ko glābt, sienas jau sagraust.
6. Kamēr viesi salasās, es iešu un sagriezīšu cepeti.
7. Ar tām biksēm, kuras tu biroja sasedēji, tu taču neiesi uz teātri.
8. Nenes salijušo mēteli istabā!
9. Kas saplēsa šo jauno, skaisto tasi?
10. Vai tu visu malku sazāgēji un sacirti viens pats? – Jā, un arī ienesu to iekšā, baidīdamies, ka tā salīs.
11. Kamēr meitenes lēnām griežas uz vietas, zēni saskrien skatuves vidū un sasit rokas.
12. Cik pastmarku tu jau esi sakrājis?
13. Sasieniet viņam rokas, citādi viņš sadauzīs traukus un mēbeles!
14. Pēc ārsta domām kauls saaug mēneša laikā.
15. Cimds tūlīn jāsalāpa, citādi tas sairs.
16. Mēs ar šādiem tādiem nesaejamies.

Exercise 220h

Translate into Latvian:

1. Baiba must have overslept again, for it seems that she did not have time to plait her pigtails.
2. When a big moth collides with a spider's web, the web is torn apart.
3. The bulls collided with their broad foreheads.
4. How many people can be squeezed together in such a small bus?
5. Why didn't you plait those flowers together, girls? – The stalks are too short.
6. You can give my old, worn-out coat to the beggar.
7. Oh dear, the beautiful tart is falling to pieces!
8. In the evening the birds flock together and make a horrible noise.
9. The fastest runner will receive a prize.
10. Let us knock here at this door. – No, it appears that nobody lives here, for the door-step is very dusty, and the fence has fallen apart.
11. Mandarin Chang looks much younger in this photograph.

12. Damn! I hit my finger with the hammer!
13. The meat must be cut into small pieces.
14. With horror we saw the large building crumbling to pieces in the earthquake.
15. What size (*numurs*) do you wear, sir?

LESSON 221

THE VERBAL PREFIX *UZ-*

The verbal prefix *uz-* often corresponds to the English 'on', 'upon':

<i>uzbirt</i>	to fall on
<i>uzbrukt</i>	to fall upon, attack
<i>uzdedzināt</i>	to switch on (electricity)
<i>uzgāzt</i>	to heap upon, to pour upon
<i>uzgāzties</i>	to fall upon
<i>uzgriezt</i>	to switch on (electricity)
<i>uzģērbt</i>	to put on (clothes)
<i>uzlikt</i>	to put on, impose, inflict
<i>uzmīt</i>	to tread on
<i>uzpilēt</i>	to drop on
<i>uzsēsties</i>	to sit down on
<i>uzspļaut</i>	to spit on, scorn, despise
<i>uzziest</i>	to smear on

Uz- can also denote motion upwards, corresponding to the English 'upwards', 'up':

<i>uzaugt</i>	to grow up
<i>uzbraukt</i>	to drive up, ascend
<i>uzbriest</i>	to rise up (of dough, etc.)
<i>uzcelt</i>	to lift up
<i>uzcēlties</i>	to get up, rise
<i>uzkāpt</i>	to climb up
<i>uzkārt</i>	to hang up
<i>uzlaisties</i>	to fly up, to soar
<i>uzlēkt</i>	to jump up; (of sun) to rise
<i>uzlidot</i>	to fly up, to soar
<i>uzpampt</i>	to swell up
<i>uzrakt</i>	to dig up

Vocabulary

<i>reiz</i>	= <i>kādreiz</i> : once upon a time
<i>darīt (-u, -īju)</i>	here = to make, prepare
<i>Dievs palīdz!</i>	a conventional greeting, especially to someone at work
<i>zemnieks</i>	peasant, peasant farmer
<i>projām</i>	= <i>prom</i>
<i>patērēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to consume
<i>iegriesties (-šos, -zos)</i>	to call in, drop in (at)
<i>virsa</i> (occ. <i>virsus</i>)	surface, face
<i>skopulis</i>	miser, niggard
<i>sēkmes</i> (pl.)	success, progress
<i>sadusmoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to become angry
<i>likt mieru or mierā</i>	to leave in peace
<i>sabaidīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to frighten
<i>sataisīties (-os, -ījos)</i>	here = to disguise oneself
<i>apvilkt (-vēlku, -vilku)</i>	to put on (clothes)
<i>pallst (-lienu, -līdu)</i>	to crawl, creep under
<i>nabags</i>	poor man, beggar
<i>patilte</i>	space under a bridge
<i>plaukšķināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to clap one's hands
<i>radīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to create
<i>rasties (rodos, rados)</i>	to be created, to come about, to come into existence
<i>baisma</i>	terror, horror
<i>plaisma</i>	= <i>plaisa</i>
<i>žvīgot (-oju, -oju)</i> (obscure: perhaps for <i>zvilgot</i> (-oju, -oju))	to shimmer, sparkle
<i>važas</i> (pl.)	bonds, chains, fetters
<i>spīvs</i>	severe, defiant
<i>stīgot (-o, -oja)</i>	here = to radiate
<i>mīla</i>	love
<i>glaipe</i> , more usually <i>glaimi</i> (pl.)	caress; flattery, adulation
<i>cilvēce</i>	mankind, humanity
<i>līgot (-oju, -oju)</i>	here = to rejoice, sing

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 211–219.

Exercise 221a

Translate into English:

Par alu.

Reiz senajos laikos, kad Dievs staigāja vēl pa zemi, viens zemnieks darīja alu. Viņš bija tā aizņemts ar savu darbu, ka maz vēroja, kas notiek apkārt. Pie viņa piegāja Dievs un sacīja: "Dievs palīdz!" Bet zemnieks, būdams aizņemts, nekā neatbildēja. Dievs aizgāja projām. Pēc neilga laiciņa viņš atkal piegāja klāt un atkārtoja to pašu, bet arī šoreiz atbildes nedabūja. Piegāja Dievs arī trešo reizi un sacīja: "Dievs palīdz!" Šoreiz zemnieks tomēr atbildēja: "Paldies!"

Tad Dievs sacīja: "Par to, ka tu tik trešo reizi man atbildēji, tev būs jānes trīsreiz vairāk ūdens, nekā tur iznāks alus," un aizgāja projām.

Patiesi, tagad, alu darot, vajag patērēt apmēram trīsreiz vairāk ūdens, nekā iznāks alus.

Tautas teika.

Exercise 221b

Translate into English:

Kā lācis cēlies¹.

Kāds saimnieks bijis ļoti skops. Dieviņš staigājis pa zemes virsu kā ubags. Viņš iegriezies arī pie skopuļa lūgt maizīti, bet tas nedevis. Viņš gājis vēl otru un trešo dienu lūgt dāvanas, bet bez sekmēm. Saimnieks sadusmojies, ka ubags neliek miera, un nolēmis to sabaidīt. Viņš sataisījis par lāci, apgriezis kažokam kreiso pusi uz virsu, apvilcis mugurā un palīdis zem tilta.

Kā nabags ticis uz tilta, tā zemnieks no patiltes ārā un sācis ar rokām plaukšķināt. Nabags nebaidījies, bet teicis: "Lācis esi, lācis paliec!" Saimnieks palicis par² lāci un aizskrējis uz mežu.

Tā radies pirmais lācis.

Tautas teika.

Exercise 221c

Translate into English:

Gaismas pils.

Iz tumsas baismas,
Iz pekles plaismas
Pie dienas gaismas
Pils augšup žvīgo.

¹ Here metaphorically: 'arose, came into being'.

² Cf. the construction with *tapt*.

Iz važām šķeltā,¹
Pie saules celtā,¹
Mirdz skaidrā zeltā,
Pār tālēm spīgo.

Un stalti – spīvi,
Visapkārt brīvi,
Jaun-spirgtu dzīvi
Kā starus stīgo.

Kā mīlas glaime
Zied laime, laime,
Kā viena saime
Cilvēce līgo.

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 221d

What is the meaning of the prefix *uz-* in the following verbs: *uzrakt*; *uzbriest*; *uzģērbt*; *uzkārt*; *uzbirt*; *uzsēsties*; *uzmīt*; *uzlidot*; *uzziest*; *uzlēkt*.

Exercise 221e

What are the eleven verbal prefixes, and what are the principal meanings of each? Give examples.

Exercise 221f

Translate into English:

1. Kāpēc tu tik agri uzgriezi elektrību? Vai tu arī zini, cik daudz mēs patērējam?
2. Man sāp zobs, un, liekas, vaigs ir uzpampis.
3. Ar šo neizveicīgo, tūlīgo zēnu es vairs nedejošu, viņš man uzmina uz kājas.
4. Velns, tinte uzpilēja uz mana labā vēstuļu papīra!
5. Kāpēc Aija neliek Ernestu mierā?
6. Lai mēs varētu uzcelt smagos baļķus, smagajai mašīnai jāuzbrauc uz šīs platformas. (*uzcelt* here = 'to load on')

¹ Notice the use of the definite form here.

7. Lūdzu, uzdedzini uguni, lai es redzētu, kur man šī glezna jāuzkar! (*uguns* here = 'light')
8. Kad istabā parādījās maza pelīte, dāmas kliegdamas uzlēca uz krēsliem, un dažas pat uzkāpa uz galda.
9. Es esmu pārliecināts, ka mēs atrastu kasti ar zeltu un dārgakmeņiem, ja mēs uzraktu zemi tieši šai vietā.
10. Man reiba galva, kad es pirmo reizi uzcēlos pēc ilgas slimības.
11. Tikko pīles uzlido, tev jāšauj.
12. Mācītājs iesvētī bērnus, uzlikdams viņiem roku uz galvas.
13. Kāpēc meistars uzziež caurulei tik biezu eļļu?
14. Neviens ubags vairs neiegriežas šī skopuļa mājās, viņi drīzāk pārnakšņo kaut kur mežā vai patiltē.
15. Uzgāz dobēm mēslus lēnām, lai tie neuzgāžas puķēm!

Exercise 221g

Translate into Latvian:

1. The dough is already rising.
2. The eagle flew up to the top of the highest tree.
3. My father was a peasant farmer, and I grew up in the country.
4. Little Anne sat down on her grandfather's knee, and told him about **her** progress at school.
5. On such a cold day you should have put on a warmer overcoat.
6. In which year did Napoleon attack Russia?
7. The bag tore apart, and the peas fell on to the floor.
8. Why had the trumpeter of Tālava climbed to the very top of the **highest** fir tree?
9. We always drop in at this inn.
10. This cupboard will occupy too much space (= *vieta*).
11. Good Lord, how you frightened me! – Come, come, why are you **getting** so angry?
12. The dancers are clapping their hands.
13. She was standing on the stage, almost as God had created her.
14. How did this crack in the outer wall come about?
15. In fear of the thunder, the dog crept under the bed.

LESSON 222

INTERJECTIONS

We have already learnt a number of interjections, such as *ak!*, *nu!*, *uja!*, *nujā!*, *veīns!*, etc. In this lesson we consider a number of others.

Some Latvian interjections are contracted verbal forms:

<i>re!</i>	look!	contracted from	<i>ređzi!</i>
<i>klau!</i>	listen!	contracted from	<i>klausies!</i>
<i>pag!</i> or <i>paga!</i>	wait!	contracted from	<i>pagaidi!</i>
<i>vadzi!</i>	listen here!	contracted from	<i>vai dzirdi!</i>
<i>skat!</i>	look! well!	contracted from	<i>skaties!</i>
<i>lūk!</i>	look!	contracted from	<i>lūkojies!</i>
<i>rau!</i>	look! lo!	contracted from	<i>raugi!</i>
<i>nez!</i>	I wonder	contracted from	<i>nezinu</i>

Note that *vadzi* is stressed on the second syllable.

Other interjections are onomatopoeic:

<i>kuš!</i>	shush! shoo!
<i>plakš!</i>	splat! slap!
<i>plaukš!</i>	slap! crash!
<i>plunkš!</i>	splash!
<i>šļuks!</i>	oops!
<i>urrā!</i>	hurrah!

Others have no obvious relations to words or sounds: *ā!*; *ai!*; *ō!*; *vai!*; *brr!*; *ahā!*

Of these, only *vai* and *brr* have any tangible meaning, and the rest are no more than expressive noises. *Brr!* as in English is indicative of feeling cold, while *vai!* corresponds to the English 'alas!' as well as doing for 'oh!', 'ah!' etc.

Vocabulary

<i>Lāčplēsis</i>	Bear-Slayer (legendary hero)
<i>Baltijas zeme</i>	Baltic land; here = Latvia
<i>līcot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to twist, coil, wind
<i>liesmot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to flame, blaze
<i>Ķēgums</i>	rapids in the lower Daugava
<i>Rumba</i>	name of a small river

<i>izgrauzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to gnaw out
<i>grava</i>	ravine, gorge
<i>Lielvārde</i>	name of a castle
<i>Lielvārdis</i>	name of the lord of Lielvārde
<i>kunigs</i>	= <i>kungs</i>
<i>mantnieks</i> (more usually <i>mantinieks</i>)	heir
<i>dievlba</i>	deity, divinity
<i>viņš</i> (m.); <i>viņa</i> (f.)	can be used as a demonstrative adjective equivalent to <i>tas</i> , <i>tā</i>
<i>piekust (-kūstu, -kusu)</i>	to grow weary
<i>pēdīgs</i>	= <i>pēdējs</i>
<i>klātu</i>	= <i>klāt</i> (adv.)
<i>saķert (-ķēru, -ķēru)</i>	to seize
<i>žoklis</i>	jaw
<i>stiprums</i>	strength
<i>pārplēst (-šu, -su)</i>	to tear apart
<i>viducis</i>	middle; waist
<i>pušam</i> (usually <i>pušu</i>)	apart, to pieces
<i>kazlēns</i>	kid
<i>izređzēts</i>	elect, chosen
<i>papriekšu</i>	at first
<i>priekš</i>	here = <i>pirms</i>
<i>cienīt (-lju, -lju)</i>	to honour, venerate
<i>puisēns</i>	little boy
<i>vēstīt (-lju, -lju) (+ dat.)</i>	to inform
<i>prāts</i>	here = will, command
<i>lācēne</i>	she-bear
<i>pienīgs</i>	rich in milk
<i>cilvēku</i> (inv. adj.)	human
<i>bļties</i> (<i>bļstos</i> , <i>bļjos</i>)	to be afraid
<i>ļaudaris</i>	evil-doer
<i>mūžlba</i>	eternity
<i>vaidēlis</i>	= <i>vaidelotis</i>
<i>joprojām</i>	here = in future, from now on
<i>izglābt (-bju, -bu)</i>	to save, rescue
<i>nēlaime</i>	misfortune; disaster
<i>sēglot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to saddle
<i>ir</i>	and
<i>piesis</i>	spur
<i>cauna</i>	sable
<i>izrīkot (-oju, -oju)</i>	here = to equip
<i>šādi</i>	thus

<i>Burtnieki</i>	see notes to text
<i>guđrība</i>	prudence, wisdom, intelligence
<i>ziņas</i> (pl.)	here = knowledge
<i>laipnīgs</i> (rare)	kind
<i>uzņemt</i> (-ņemu, -ņēmu)	to pick up; to receive (people); to photograph
<i>izrādīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to show
<i>šķirsts</i>	chest, box; coffin
<i>glabāties</i> (-ājos, -ājos)	to be kept, stored
<i>ticība</i>	faith, religion, belief
<i>kautiņš</i>	battle, struggle; brawl
<i>naidnieks</i>	= <i>ienaidnieks</i>

NOTES: *Izredzēts*, used substantively in the definite form, means 'chosen one', i.e., 'fiancé(e)'.

Papriekš and *joprojām* are accented on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 51-75.

Exercise 222a

Translate into English:

Sensenos laikos Baltijas zemē,
Kur tek Daugava līcotiem krastiem,
Kur miežu līdumi liesmoti dega,
Dzīvoja laimīga latviešu tauta.
Daugavas malā, Ķeguma galā,
Kur Rumbas upīte, Daugavā krītot,
Caur klintīm izgauza dziļas gravas,
Stāvēja slaveno Lielvāržu pils.

Lielvārdes kunigs staigāja laukā
Ar dēlu abi šai jaukajā dienā.
Jau astoņpadsmitā vasara bija
Nākusi jaunajam mantniekam tagad.
Mācīja vecais jaunajam atzīt,
Cik tuvu dievība parādās dabā
Iekš viņiem varenim, brīnišķiem spēkiem,
Debešos,¹ ūdenī, mežā un laukā.

Runājot viņi nākuši bija
Pie tuvas mežmalas, ozolu ēnā;
Te vecais nosēdās, piekusis būdams,
Ozolu apakšā, zaļajā zālē.
Piepeši lācis izlec no meža
Un metas dusmīgi vecajam virsū;
Tam laika nebija turēties pretim,²
Pedīgo brīdi jau nākušu domā.

Ātrumā pieskrien jaunākais klātu
Un lāci saķer aiz vaļējiem žokļiem,
Ar lielu stiprumu zvēru tas pārplēš
Viduci pušam kā kazlēnu kādu.
Redzēdams tādu varenu spēku
Pie dēla, vecākais saka uz³ viņu:
"Tu tiešām izredzēts varonis būsi,
Kā jau ir sludināts tevim⁴ papriekšu.

Šodien priekš astoņpadsmitiem⁵ gadiem
Pienāca laiviņa Daugavas krastā.
No laivas izkāpa cienījams vecis,
Turēdams rokā tas puisēnu mazu;
Jaunekļa soļiem devās uz pili
Un manim⁴ vēstīja likteņa prātu:
Šo mazo puisīti pieņemt⁶ par dēlu,
Audzināt⁶ viņu par mantnieku savu.⁷

Cienījams vecis vaidelot's bija
Un teica atradis⁸ dziļajā mežā
Pie kādas lācenes pienīgām krūtīm
Zīžot šo dīvaino cilvēku bērnu,
Kuŗam, kā teica, nolemts no⁹ dieviem
Par tautas varoni vēlāki¹⁰ palikt,¹¹
Priekš kuŗa vārda vien bišoties¹² visi
Tautiešu ļaundari nākamā laikā!

Mūžībā pēc tam aizgāja gadi,
Es svēti pildīju Likteņa prātu.
Par staltu jaunekli pieauga puisēns, -
Vaideļa dāvināts, - tu pats tas esi!
Lāčplēsi sauksim tevi joprojām,
Lai paliek vārds šis par piemiņu šodien,
Ka tēvu izglābi nelaiimes brīdī,
Rādīdams pirmo varoņa darbu.

Kumeļu staltu, seglotu koši,
 Un smagu zobenu rītā tev došu,
 Ir šķēpu, vairogu, sudraba piešus,
 Pušķotu caunādas cepuri arī.
 Izriņķots šādi, ceļā tu dosies
 Uz mūsu slaveno Burtnieku¹⁸ pili,
 Pie mana agrākā jaunības drauga,
 Vecajā¹⁴ kuniga Burtnieku pilī.

Sveicini viņu, sacīdams viņam,
 Ka esi vecajā¹⁴ Lielvārža mantnieks,
 No⁹ tēva sūtīts še mācīties ziņas
 Slaveno Burtnieku gudrības skolā.
 Laipnīgi Burtnieks vecajā pilī
 Tad tevi uzņems un izrādīs arī,
 Kur šķirstos glabājas svētajie¹⁵ burti,
 Dodami ziņas par likteni tumšo.

Svētajie¹⁵ burti tikumus māca
 Un stāsta teikas par šejienes zemi
 Un apdzied latviešu varoņus dziesmās,
 Dievības, ticības dziļumus atklāj.
 Visas šās ziņas un vēl daudz citas,
 Tur būdams, mācīsies septiņos gados;
 Tur arī redzēsi, kaņi kā jāved,
 Kautiņos līdz iesi naidniekam pretim.”

Andrejs Pumpurs, from *Lāčplēsis*.

NOTE: This nineteenth century poem, written before any real standardization of the Latvian literary language, contains many syntactic and morphological oddities, which the student is strongly advised not to copy.

¹ A masculine form *debesis* exists alongside the feminine *debess*.

² i.e., ‘to resist’.

³ The preposition *uz* after *sacīt* is archaic; the dative without preposition is now used.

⁴ See note (1) to the Rainis text in Lesson 213.

⁵ Numerals in *-padsmīt* and *-desmīt* are not normally declined. The form *astonpadsmītiem gadiem* is quite unusual.

⁶ An elliptical construction. Translate: ‘he said that I was to take... and to bring up.’

⁷ Translate ‘my’. Although *es* does not appear in the preceding context as a subject, it is implicit.

Exercise 222b

Give rules for the formation of the participles in *-dams* and *-ošs*, and point out exceptions.

Exercise 222c

Translate into English:

- Šī ir pavisam vienkārša tautas deģa. Zēns apķer meiteni ap viduci, lūk, tā!
- Vadzi, Jāni! Ja tu man vēl ilgi uzbāzīsies, nebūs labi.
- Urrā! Ļaundaris iekrita ūdenī – plunkš!
- Re! Kāds tai varens caunu kažoks, nez, vai tā nebūs slavenā kino zvaigzne, kas vakar vakarā atbrauca no Ņujorkas?
- Paga, paga! Nu neskrien prom! Par tādu nieku tu taču neapvainosies!
- Ā, jūsu dēls nesen apprecējies? Nu, skat, skat, tad jau laikam drīz varēs sākt gaidīt mantinieku!
- Rau, viņa tam nelietim iezveļ pa vaigu – plakš! – un vēl reiz – plaukš!
- Kuš! Nerunā tik skaļi!
- Ō, tu uzdrošinies man turēties pretim? Nu, paga, puisēn!
- Ai, kas par jautru spēlīti!
- Bet kur tad Ernests šinī uzņēmumā? – Ahā, te jau viņš ir!
- Kļau, tur kāds nāk! Pasiļpsimies tepat aiz lielā šķirsta!
- Vai, kā salst rokas un kājas! Nez, vai labāk neiesim mājās?
- Brr, kas par aukstu vēju! Un šie trakie cilvēki iebrien ūdenī! Brr!
- Pag! Acumirkli! Es tūliņ nākšu.
- Nelaime! Nelaime! Vai, vai, ai!
- Vadzi, nāc tūlīt mājā!

⁸ An unusual use of the participle. Translate: ‘He said that he had found...’

⁹ In finite passive constructions, the agent is not usually expressed. The construction with *no* (= ‘by’) is not unknown, but widely held to be incorrect and undesirable, even in non-finite constructions.

¹⁰ Read *vēlāk*.

¹¹ Strictly, *palikt* is dependent on *nolemts*, but the construction is extremely awkward. Translate: ‘who it had been decided by the gods was to become...’

¹² A future conjunctive form. See lesson 228. Read more simply *bīšies* at this stage.

¹³ The name *Burtnieks* is also symbolic of learning and wisdom.

¹⁴ Read *vecā*, masc. gen. sing. def.

¹⁵ Read *svētie*.

Exercise 222d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Hurray, my rich uncle has died, and I am the only heir! – It would have been better if he had left you his intelligence and virtues!
2. Listen, I hear a dog barking in the distance. Ssh! Don't talk!
3. Oops! The iron slipped from my hand.
4. Oh, I see! This tribe does not fear the same deity, and has a different faith.
5. Can you hear something? – No, not the slightest sound.
6. Suddenly, splash, a stone fell into the water.
7. How can you get dressed in this cold room? Brrr!
8. You must hold the pen straight. Look, like this!
9. Just a moment, the water is not boiling yet!
10. Now listen here, your curiosity is getting on my nerves!
11. Look, a diver is emerging from the water.
12. Splash! Was that a fish? – No, I think somebody threw a stone into the water.
13. I wonder whether father would have given his permission.
14. Look! All the walls are of marble.

LESSON 223

VERBAL NOUNS IN -ŠANA

From any active infinitive can be formed a verbal noun in *-šana*. These nouns correspond to the English gerund forms in *-ing*. Cf.

<i>dziedāt</i>	to sing	<i>dziedāšana</i>	singing
<i>dzert</i>	to drink	<i>dzeršana</i>	drinking
<i>lūgt</i>	to pray, ask	<i>lūgšana</i>	praying, asking
<i>lasīt</i>	to read	<i>lasīšana</i>	reading
<i>peldēt</i>	to swim	<i>peldēšana</i>	swimming
<i>art</i>	to plough	<i>aršana</i>	ploughing
<i>dejot</i>	to dance	<i>dejošana</i>	dancing

Where the infinitive ends in *-st* or *-zt*, the *-s-* or *-z-* is not retained:

<i>ciest</i>	to suffer	<i>ciešanas</i> (pl.)	suffering(s)
<i>iemest</i>	to imbibe	<i>iemēšana</i>	imbibing
<i>atrast</i>	to find	<i>atrašana</i>	finding
<i>notūzt</i>	to break	<i>notūšana</i>	breaking

These nouns in *-šana* are declined exactly like feminine nouns in *-a*, e.g., *meita*.

While in general these nouns refer to a process and not to a product (e.g., *būvēšana*: 'the act or process of building', but not 'the edifice so built'), and might therefore be classed as pure gerunds, there are many cases in which the meaning has been extended: thus

<i>lūgšana</i>	the act of praying, <i>but also</i> a prayer
<i>ciešanas</i>	the act of suffering, <i>but also</i> suffering(s)

The student should refrain from using *-šana* nouns in such extended senses unless he has met examples of such a use in his reading.

Vocabulary

<i>cieši</i>	tightly; here = very, extremely
<i>pazīstams, pazīstamais</i> (participle used as a noun)	an acquaintance
<i>garoza</i>	crust
<i>(pa-)prasīties</i> (<i>-os, -ļjos</i>)	to request
<i>kaps</i>	grave
<i>kapi</i> (pl.)	cemetery
<i>vēzms</i> (for <i>vēzums</i>)	cart-load
<i>ir... ir... ir</i>	(both)... and... and
<i>dzēriens</i>	drink, beverage
<i>sagrūst</i> (<i>-žu, -du</i>)	to push, press (together); here = to pile in
<i>taisni</i>	here = precisely
<i>vērties</i> (<i>vēros, vēros</i>)	here = to observe
<i>saviļāt</i> (<i>-āju, -āju</i>)	to roll; here = to roll in the mud
<i>uzzināt</i> (<i>-u, -āju</i>)	to find out, discover
<i>papelnīt</i> (<i>-u, -ļju</i>)	to earn (a little)
<i>radījums</i>	creature
<i>savāds</i>	here = particular, special
<i>izskats</i>	appearance
<i>izrotāt</i> (<i>-āju, -āju</i>)	to adorn, decorate
<i>pazīme</i>	mark, sign
<i>paradīze</i>	paradise
<i>paradīzes putns</i>	bird of paradise
<i>pāvs</i>	peacock
<i>varavīksne</i> (often <i>varavīksna</i>)	rainbow
<i>mazums</i>	here = small part, share

<i>greznums</i>	splendour, magnificence
<i>vālodze</i>	golden oriole
<i>kanāriņš</i> (usually <i>kanārijputniņš</i>)	canary
<i>tērpt</i> (- <i>pju</i> , - <i>pu</i>)	to clothe, attire (trans.)
<i>žagata</i>	magpie
<i>dzenis</i>	woodpecker
<i>silis</i>	(European) jay
<i>vārna</i>	crow
<i>zaļā vārna</i>	roller
<i>krauklis</i>	raven
<i>balodis</i>	pigeon, dove
<i>strazds</i>	starling
<i>melnais strazds</i>	blackbird
<i>tītars</i>	turkey
<i>sēkste</i>	comb (zool.)
<i>čēkuls</i>	crest, tuft
<i>būt mierā ar</i>	to be happy with
<i>apmierināt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to soothe, quieten, satisfy
<i>apmierināts</i>	satisfied
<i>tērps</i>	dress, attire
<i>radītājs</i>	creator
<i>tā kā</i>	just as; since, because

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 175–186.

Exercise 223a

Translate into English:

Par bagāto skopuli.

Dzīvoja viens cieši bagāts, bet skops cilvēks. Viņš nekad nedeļa nekā ubagiem. Pienāca viņam nāve, un viņš nomira. Nomiris viņš redz tur daudz pazīstamos, kuri tāpat bija nomiruši, bet dzīvodami viņi bija daudz devuši ubadzīpiem. Tagad viņi, sēdēdami katrs pie sava galda, ēda un dzēra. Uz viņa galda nebija ne maizes garoziņas. Redz viņš, ka nekā tā nebūs, un paprasās Dievam atkal uz šo pasauli,¹ lai šo laistu nopelnīt sev maizes un citu ēdienu, ko paņemt mirstot līdz. Dievs viņu palaiž.

Atnācis atkal uz šo pasauli, viņš izrok kapos dziļu dobi.² Tad ved ar vezmiem un ber tai dobē ir maizi, ir dzērienus, ir visādus ēdienus. Tā sagrūž viņš trīs vezmi³ visādu ēdienu. Vedot ceturto vezmu, nokrīt viņam no vezma viens mazs kukulītis un iekrīt dubļos. Te viņš redz, ka iet taisni tad ubadzīpš. Viņš

pasauc viņu un atdod to kukulīti ubadzīpam. Pēc tam atkal viņš nomirst. Nu tagad tad būs, domā, viņam visa kā⁴ papilnam. Veras, ka uz viņa galda atkal nav nekā, tik viens tas dubļos saviļātais maizes kukulītis, kuru viņš iedevis bija ubadzīpam. Tagad viņš uzzināja, ko vajadzēja darīt, lai uz viņa galda būtu ēdieni un dzērieni. Prasās atkal Dievam, lai palaiž šo vēl virs zemes papelnīt, bet Dievs vairs nelaiž.

Tautas teika.

¹ An elliptical construction. Translate: 'he asked God to be allowed back . . .'

² Here = 'hole'.

³ See lesson 242, numerals used indeclinably.

⁴ *Viss* may be emphasized with *kas*. Both parts are then declined: Nom. *viss kas*; Acc. *visu ko*; etc. Here we have the genitive.

Exercise 223b

Translate into English:

Lakstīgala un citi putni.

Dievs bija radījis dažādus kokus, visādus zvērus un putnus. Katram radījumam viņš deva savādu izskatu un savādu apģērbu, lai vienu no otra varētu atšķirt. Arī putnus Dievs dažādi izrotāja un tiem piešķīra sevišķas pazīmes. No putniem visgreznāki bija paradīzes putns un pāvs. Paradīzes putna spalvas laistījās kā tīrā zeltā, pāva aste bija dažādās varavīksnes krāsās. Arī citi putni bija dabūjuši kādu mazumiņu no greznuma: vālodze un kanāriņš bija tērpti skaistā dzeltenā apģērbā, žagata un dzenis – raibā, silis – zilā, papagailis un zaļā vārna – zaļā, gulbis – baltā, krauklis – melnā, baloži un melnie strazdi – vizošās kakla spalvās, gailis un tītars – skaistām sarkanām sekstēm un ķīvītes un irbes – košiem cekuliem uz galvas. Tomēr gandrīz neviens putns nebija mierā ar savu apģērbu. Katrs vēlējas ko¹ labāku. Vienīgi lakstīgala bija gluži apmierināta ar savu tērpu. Viņa vēl priedējās, ka tai pelēkas spalvas. Tas radītajam ļoti patika, un viņš teica lakstīgalai: "Tā kā esi mierā ar savu vienkāršo uzvalku, tad dziedī skaistāk par visiem!"

Tautas teika.

Exercise 223c

What differences are there in the formation of the participial forms in *-ošs* and *-ot?*

¹ For *kaut ko*. The initial element of *kaut kas* is often omitted in this way, whether in the nominative or an oblique case.

Exercise 223d

What different alternation patterns of *ę* and *ę* are there in verbs of the Short Conjugation? What factors influence the alternation pattern?

Exercise 223e

Compile a list of the verbal nouns in *-šana* introduced as vocabulary items in previous lessons.

Exercise 223f

Translate into English:

1. Sniegs ir nokusis, un drīz sāksies aršana.
2. Iemešana bez dziedāšanas nav nekas.
3. Ja mans dēliņš būtu tik labs lasīšanā kā peldēšanā, es būtu laimīga.
4. Vai tu domā, ka bagātais tirgotājs nabaga skolnieciņam kaut ko iedeva par gredzena atrašanu? Viņš tam nekā neiedeva!
5. Šai lūgšanai sekos mācītāja sprediķis.
6. Pēc ilgām ciešanām viņa tagad dus kapā.
7. Policija brīdināja viņu par skaļu dziedāšanu uz ielas.
8. Es uzzināju, ka mūsu dziedāšanas skolotājs ir dzimis Lielvārdē.
9. Austrālijā bez policijas piešķirtas dzeršanas atļaujas ballēs nedrīkst dzert.
10. Netraucē mani lasīšanā!
11. Šis nelietis paņēma manu avīzi bez lūgšanas un sāka lasīt peldēšanas sacīkšu rezultātus.
12. Par aršanu viņam nav ne jēgas, bet iemešanā viņš ir meistars.
13. Ernestam bija labi panākumi ir skriešanā, ir lēkšanā, ir lodes grūšanā.
14. Kā lai es aprakstu savas ciešanas pirmajā dejošanas stundā? (= 'lesson')
15. Vadzi, pie brokastu galda nebūs ne lasīšanas, ne runāšanas!

Exercise 223g

Translate into Latvian:

1. In the Middle Ages people believed that the greater their sufferings were on earth, the sooner they would get to paradise.
2. Swimming is forbidden in this artificial lake, because the water is used for drinking.
3. Ploughing is difficult in rocky ground.
4. These days one need not be an artist to earn big money with singing.
5. During the vacation there will undoubtedly be swimming, dancing and singing.

6. The ship is beginning to rock: soon the vomiting will start!
7. At what time do the riding contests take place?
8. He now cannot live without drinking.
9. Our boy is quite good in reading and writing, but weak in arithmetic (= calculating).
10. As soon as ploughing finishes, sowing begins.
11. A teacher will achieve nothing by (*ar*) screaming: the children simply will not obey him.
12. Fraud (= deceiving) is a crime.
13. He was shot dead without any questioning.
14. Without counting I can tell you that there are less than two dozen eggs in this basket.
15. Weaving is a greater art than sewing or spinning.

LESSON 224

REFLEXIVE VERBAL NOUNS IN *-ŠANĀS*

Corresponding to the active verbal nouns in *-šana* is a reflexive counterpart in *-šanās*, the formation of which from reflexive infinitives may be seen below.

<i>sarunāties</i>	to converse	<i>sarunāšanās</i>	conversing
<i>aprēķēties</i>	to marry	<i>aprēķēšanās</i>	marrying
<i>vēlēties</i>	to wish	<i>vēlēšanās</i>	wishing
<i>doties</i>	to go	<i>došanās</i>	going
<i>apstāties</i>	to stop	<i>apstāšanās</i>	stopping

With infinitive in *-sties* or *-zties*:

<i>atgriezties</i>	to return	<i>atgriešanās</i>	returning
--------------------	-----------	--------------------	-----------

As with the nouns in *-šana* there is often an extended meaning, e.g., *vēlēšanās* 'wish, desire'; *atgriešanās* 'return'; *šķiršanās* 'divorce, separation'.

The nouns in *-šanās*, all feminine, are defective in declension, lacking both dative and locative forms:

vēlēšanās 'wish, desire'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>vēlēšanās</i>	<i>vēlēšanās</i>
Acc.	<i>vēlēšanos</i>	<i>vēlēšanās</i>
Gen.	<i>vēlēšanās</i>	<i>vēlēšanos</i>

Vocabulary

<i>Andriksons</i>	a surname
<i>aplaist</i> (-žu, -du) (<i>acis</i>)	to cast (one's eyes) around
<i>nolīkties</i> (-kstos, -kos)	to bend down (intrans.)
<i>uzraut</i> (-rauju, -rāvu)	to strike (a match)
<i>spička</i>	match
<i>uz reizi</i>	at the one time
<i>piegrūst</i> (-žu, -du)	to push up to
<i>plūkšēt</i> or <i>plūkšķēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to hiss, sizzle, fizz
<i>uzšauties</i> (-šaujos, -šāvos)	to shoot up (intrans.); to blaze up
<i>iebēgt</i> (-gu, -gu)	to run into, flee into
<i>magnētisks</i>	magnetic
<i>skats</i>	here = glance, look
<i>dzeltāns</i>	= <i>dzeltens</i>
<i>dzemdēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to give birth; here = to beget
<i>arvien vairāk</i>	more and more
<i>zilgans</i>	bluish
<i>aizvien</i> (+ comparative)	ever (+ comparative)
<i>arvien(u)</i> (+ comparative)	ever (+ comparative)
<i>sprakšķēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to crackle
<i>sacelt</i> (-ceļu, -cēlu)	to raise
<i>cirtums</i>	clearing
<i>puscirtuma</i>	= <i>puse cirtuma</i>
<i>ķērkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to squawk; to croak
<i>lēciens</i>	leap, bound
<i>drīzi</i>	= <i>drīz</i>
<i>platums</i>	width, breadth
<i>mudlīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to move quickly, hasten
<i>kūla</i>	dry grass
<i>pielaist</i> (-žu, -du) <i>uguni</i> + dat.	to set fire to
<i>pa lielākai daļai</i>	for the most part
<i>kvadrātversts</i> (f.)	a square verst
<i>dižens</i>	stately
<i>šausmīgs</i>	horrible, dreadful
<i>barons</i>	baron
<i>pabiedēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to frighten (a little)
<i>pamācīt</i> (-u, -ļu)	to teach (a lesson)
<i>neņtaisnība</i>	injustice
<i>saplakt</i> (-plokū, -plaku)	here = to lose courage
<i>sirps</i> (more usually <i>sirpis</i>)	sickle; here = crescent

Icis

<i>apdzist</i> (-dziest, -dzisa)	bay; here = concave curve (along which the lake and forest meet)
<i>apsisties</i> (-sitos, -sitos)	to go out, be extinguished
<i>izplēst</i> (-šu, -tu)	here = to go around
<i>aizdegties</i> (-degos, -degos)	to extend
<i>švirkstēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to catch fire
<i>ataudze</i>	to sizzle
<i>apkampt</i> (-pju, -pu)	saplings
<i>nāvīgs</i>	to embrace
<i>iztrūcināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	deadly
<i>slīties</i> (<i>slīenos, slījos</i>)	to take fright, be terrified
<i>stāvu</i> (adv.)	here = to stand up, rise
<i>izpostīt</i> (-u, -ļu)	upright
<i>šitā</i>	to destroy
<i>kādēļ</i>	thus
<i>ņegants</i>	why
<i>izplatīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	naughty; evil, wicked
	to spread (intrans.)

NOTES: *Andriksons* has its corresponding feminine form in *-e*, as do all surnames in *-sons*.

Spička is a Russian word, not often used in modern Latvian.

Aizvien and *arvien(u)* are stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 214–222.

Exercise 224a

Translate into English:

Andriksons aplaida vēlreiz acis visapkārt, nolīkās, uzrāva trīs spičkas uz reizi, piegrūda tās pie sausās zāles un aizsvieda tad spičkas tālu projām. Abās vietās liesmas plūkšēdamas uzšāvās gaisā, un Andriksons atkal pārskrēja pār ceļu un iebēga mežā. Viņš gribēja skriet tālāk, bet it kā¹ magnētisks spēks vilka viņa skatus uz izcirtumu. Viņam vajadzēja redzēt, kā dzeltānais velns dzemdēja arvien vairāk dzeltānu, sarkanu, zilganu velniņu, kuri ar lielu un aizvien lielāku ātrumu tālāk lēca, līda, lidoja. Taisni uz priekšu, uz labo, uz kreiso pusi viņi drāzās projām arvienu stiprāku rūkoņu un sprakšķēšanu saceldami. Nebij ne minūte pagājuse,² un puscirtuma jau stāvēja liesmās. Putni bēgdami pacēlās gaisā, daži apsvildami iekrita ugunī, vārnas ķērca, viens zaķis ar

lieliem lēcieniem pārskrēja pār ceļu... Drīzi izcirtums visā savā platumā kūpēja un dega. Gandrīz nemanāms vējš ugunij deva virzienu. Tā mudījās uz lielajiem kokiem aiz izcirtuma. Ja viss sils izdegtu!... To jau viņš bij gribējis! Ar to vēlēšanos viņš uguni kūlai bij pielaidis! Lai viss sils izdegtu! Vai viņš tiešām bij gribējis? Viss sils, – kas atradās pa lielākai daļai vēja pusē, piecpadsmi kvadrātverstu³ diženu egļu! Viss sils, viss! Šausmīgi, šausmīgi! Kas to varēja panest, visu silu redzēt degam! Nē, nē, to Andriksone nebija gribējis. Viņš tik baronu bij gribējis pabiedēt, viņu pamācīt, kā ir, kad sirds aiz svešas⁴ netaisnības saplok, bet visu silu – – paldies Dievam, tas jau arī nemaz nevarēja notikt. Jo tur aiz kokiem, taisni izcirtumam pretī, atradās sirpam līdzīgs ezers, tā līcī ugunij vajadzēja apdzist!

Bet ja liesmas apsitās ap ezera galiem! Viņas izplētās⁵ tik neticamā ātrumā! Nu jau tās bij līdz izcirtuma vidum, un aizdegās švirkstēdama jaunā egļu ataudze un nu – nu dzeltānais velns apkampa lielās egles. Nāvīga iztrūcināšanās kratīja Andriksona dvēseli. Viņam likās, ka viņa mati zem cepures slietos stāvu. Ko viņš bij darījis! Ko viņš bij darījis! Ko mežs viņam bij darījis, ka viņš viņu izpostīja! Skaistais, lielais mežs! Un barons! Vai tad viņš tiešām bij tik slikts, ka tas šitā bij jāsoda! Ak, kādēļ cilvēka roka tai acumirkli nesakalta, kad tā taisījās darīt negantu darbu!

Bet uguns izplatījās arvien tālāk.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis, from *Andriksons*.

Exercise 224b

Form verbal nouns from the following infinitives: *ciest*; *atgriezties*; *dzert*; *iemest*; *vēlēties*; *sarunāties*; *ņemt*; *doties*; *šķirties*.

Exercise 224c

Decline in the singular and plural: *aprecēšanās*; *šķiršanās*; *apstāšanās*.

¹ Translate: 'it was as if...'

² For *pagājusi*.

³ Numbers in *-padsmi* are occasionally followed by the genitive plural. The gen. pl. is either *verstu* or *verš(k)u*.

⁴ i.e., 'not of his own doing'

⁵ See lesson 165.

Exercise 224d

Under what circumstances is a genitive not found after adverbs of quantity and numerals such as *desmit*?

Exercise 224e

Translate into English:

1. Šī vecā plāpa gādās par ziņu izplatīšanos.
2. Vai jūs tiešām lekcijas laikā nevarat iztikt bez sarunāšanās?
3. Vai kungam būtu vēl kādas vēlēšanās? – Nē, viesmīl, pirms došanās ceļā man nekā nevajadzēs.
4. Agrā rītā notika sastapšanās ar ienaidnieku.
5. Uz redzēšanos (= *good-bye*), barona kungs!
6. Pirms ciemiņu ierašanās Aivars izrotāja verandu, un Baiba vēl ātri pārbaudīja savu jauno tērpu.
7. Viņš aizgāja bez atvaidīšanās.
8. Vecais bija dusmīgs par dēla apprecēšanos ar aktrisi.
9. Pēc atgriešanās no kara es ilgu laiku nevarēju panest troksni lielpilsētas ielās.
10. Pirms atkāpšanās ienaidnieks pielaida mežam uguni un izpostīja stacijas ēku.
11. Vai jūsu baznīca atzīst šķiršanos?
12. Visām sievietēm ir bail no pieņemšanās svarā.
13. Valdība nespēj apmierināt visu cilvēku vēlēšanās.
14. Šogad Dienvidaustrālijā lauki un ganības izkalst, bet Sidnejā līst bez apstāšanās.

Exercise 224f

Translate into Latvian:

1. We are waiting with longing for the spring.
2. Say good-bye to auntie, children, when she embraces you on the platform.
3. I am reading about Napoleon's retreat.
4. The people are waiting for the arrival of the king.
5. He said something about getting into (*iegriezties*) an inn. – Oh, indeed! Then I shall not wait for his return.
6. The headmaster cannot stand such behaviour (*izturēties*).
7. The first clashes (*sadurties*) with the enemy took place in the desert.
8. The doctor is happy about his patient's gaining weight.
9. Before marrying, she worked as a dress-maker.
10. Flies and rats were responsible for (*vainīgs ple*) the spreading of the disease.

11. He would like to marry that beautiful young actress, but his wife will not grant a divorce.
12. Some film-stars can probably no longer count up their divorces.
13. Before the leave-taking there will be great drinking.
14. She can talk all evening without stopping.

LESSON 225

OTHER REFLEXIVE NOUNS

In addition to the verbal nouns in *-šanās*, there are a few nouns (all derived from reflexive verbs) which have a reflexive declension. Masculine nouns of this type end in *-ies*; feminine nouns end in *-ās*. The defective declension is as follows:

klausītājiēs 'listener'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>klausītājiēs</i>	<i>klausītājiēs</i>
Acc.	<i>klausītājos</i>	<i>klausītājos</i>
Gen.	<i>klausītājās</i>	<i>klausītājās</i>

The rare nouns in *-umies* have an even more defective declension:

vēlējumies 'wish, desire'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>vēlējumies</i>	—
Acc.	<i>vēlējumos</i>	—

A nominative plural form (in *-ies*) is to be found, although grammars do not include it in paradigms. See note (8) to the Plūdonis text in Lesson 239.

The feminine nouns in *-ās* are declined like those in *-šanās*.

klausītājās 'listener'

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>klausītājās</i>	<i>klausītājās</i>
Acc.	<i>klausītājos</i>	<i>klausītājos</i>
Gen.	<i>klausītājās</i>	<i>klausītājos</i>

These reflexive nouns are not frequently met, being almost entirely replaced by corresponding non-reflexive nouns: *klausītājs* for *klausītājiēs*, *klausītāja* for *klausītājās*, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>klausītājiēs</i>	hearer, listener (m.)
<i>klausītājās</i>	hearer, listener (f.)
<i>smējējiēs</i>	laugher, person who laughs (m.)
<i>smējējās</i>	laugher, person who laughs (f.)
<i>vēlējumies</i>	wish
<i>pulkvedis</i>	colonel
<i>viens otrs</i>	several
<i>nodurt (-duru, -dūru) (acis)</i>	to cast down (one's eyes)
<i>komanda</i>	command, order; crew, team; military unit
<i>ribēt (-, -ēja)</i>	to rumble, roar, resound
<i>zalve</i>	salvo
<i>nobeigt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to end, conclude (trans.)
<i>trokšņains</i>	noisy
<i>triumfs</i>	triumph
<i>prospekts</i>	avenue, boulevard
<i>svinīgs</i>	solemn
<i>piecēlties (-ceļos, -cēļos)</i>	to rise up
<i>karogs</i>	flag, banner
<i>noņemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu)</i>	to take off, away
<i>apsēgs</i>	covering; blanket
<i>vadonis</i>	leader
<i>sajaukties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to mix (with) (intrans.); here = to be united with
<i>kāpa</i>	dune, sand-hill
<i>skatiens</i>	look, glance
<i>dvēst (-žu, -su)</i>	to breathe; to whisper
<i>naidis</i>	hatred
<i>lauzums</i>	breaking, breach, fracture
<i>cilāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to heave (intrans.)
<i>brāzt (-žu, -zu)</i>	here = to whip up
<i>banga</i>	wave, billow
<i>laimība</i>	bliss, happiness
<i>salts (adj.)</i>	cold, chill
<i>gillšs</i>	= <i>gillšs</i>
<i>zibēt (-, -ēja)</i>	to flash, to glitter

<i>spulgot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to shine, to glitter
<i>vizulis</i>	tinsel
<i>ķēms</i>	apparition, ghost
<i>mīlzt (milst, milza)</i>	to swell (intrans.)
<i>aizlidot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to fly away
<i>mēms</i>	dumb, mute
<i>tupēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to squat
<i>spārnots</i>	winged
<i>gaisa ubadziņš</i>	winged beggar, probably: sparrow
<i>dzīres (pl.)</i>	feast, banquet

NOTES: *Viens otrs*, although plural in meaning, is construed as a singular.

Komanda and *prospekts* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

The verb *dvēst* also appears as *dvest*, with a corresponding short vowel in all forms: cf. *apdvēst* in lesson 218.

Mīlzt is conjugated like *lūzt*: see lesson 174.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 76–100.

Exercise 225a

Translate into English:

Pulkveža atgriešanās.

Stāv ļaužu pulks atsegtām galvām, gods atdots no kareivjiem tiek.

Viens otrs pie nodurtām acīm sev roku trīcošu liek.

Un komanda atskan, rīb zalves, un spēlēt mūzika sāk,

Jo, nobeidzis uzvaras savas, uz mājām nu pulkvedis nāk.

Caur pilsētu trokšņainu, skaļu, kur ļaužu uz laukumiem daudz,

Viņš lēnajos triumfa ratos pa prospektu svinīgi brauc.

Raud, pulkvedi, kareivji tavi! Ak, neļauj¹ taurēm vairs pūst

Un piecelies, runā uz tautu, lai klusums par gavilēm kļūst!

Bet neatbild pulkvedis vairāk ne kareivjiem, tautai, nekam:

Sedz karogs sarkanbaltsarkans ir seju, ir augumu tam.

Jel noņemiet apsegu svēto, lai vadon's veļ acis un redz

Ir sauli uz kareivju pierēm, ir to, kuŗa noriet un lec.

Viņš klus.² Tik ar Latvijas zemi vēl sajaukties nesas tam prāts:

Šis karogs sarkanbaltsarkans pār kritušo pulkvedi klāts.

Edvarts Virza.

¹ Read *neļauj*.

² Read *klusē*.

Exercise 225b

Translate into English:

Lauztās priedes.

Vējš augstākās priedes nolauza,
Kas kāpās pie jūrmalas stāvēja, –
Pēc tālēm tās skatieniem gribēja sniegt,
Ne slēpties tās spēja, ne muguru liekt:

“Tu lauzi mūs, naidīgā pretvara, –
Vēl cīņa pret tevi nav nobeigta,
Vēl ilgās pēc tāles dveš¹ pēdējais vairs,
Ik zarā pret varu šņac nerimstošs naidis!...”

Un augstākās priedes pēc lauzuma
Par kuģiem iz ūdeņiem iznīra –
Pret vētru lepni cilājas krūts,
Pret vētru cīņa no jauna dūc:

“Brāz bangas, tu naidīgā pretvara –
Mēs tāles sniegsim, kur laimība!
Tu vari mūs šķelt, tu vari mūs lauzt –
Mēs sniegsim tāles, kur saule aust!”

Jānis Rainis.

¹ Cf. note to the vocabulary of this lesson.

Exercise 225c

Translate into English:

Ziema.

Autiem klāta baltu baltiem¹
Zeme maigu miegu snauž.
Ziemas saule stariem saltiem
Tumšās sila priedes glauž.

Ledus pārslas kokos glīši
Zib un spīd un spulgo tā,
Kā spīd raibie vizuļīši
Mātes mātes vainagā.

Tur aiz purva miglas ķēmi
Lēnām ceļas, lēnām milst.
Aizlido pār kalnu mēmi
Un aiz meža zūd un dilst.

Galvu slēpis, tup uz zara
Spārnots gaisa ubadzīņš;
Vai varbūt par pavasara
Dzīru dziesmām sapņo viņš.

Noriet saule sarkansārti,
Zelta liesmas logos spīd.
Vaļā veņas zvaigžņu vārti,
Klusām nakts uz zemi slīd.

Rūdolfs Blaumanis.

Exercise 225d

Decline the following in all existing forms: *smējējies; vēlējumies; klausītājās; klausītājijs; smējējās; šķiršanās.*

Exercise 225e

Name the eleven verbal prefixes, and give, with examples, the principal meanings of each.

Exercise 225f

Translate into English:

1. Diriģents zina klausītājos vēlēšanos.
2. Klasē nedrīkst plāpāt un smieties, es sodīšu katru smējējos.
3. Viesmīlis gaida jūsu vēlējumus.
4. Mīļie klausītājijs, šovakar mūsu vidū ir slavens rakstnieks.
5. Kāpēc Indijā klausītājijs tup uz zemes? – Viņi tā pieraduši.
6. Visu klausītājos sajūsma bija liela. Tie piecēlās kājās, kļiedza un aplaudēja, bet dižais meistars triumfa brīdī nodūra acis.

¹ This is a common emphasizing device.

7. Pašlaik zālē ir tikai četri klausītājijs un septiņas klausītājas. – Tiešām? Bet es redzu piecus klausītājos un deviņas klausītājas.
8. Kāds ir vadoņa vēlējumies?
9. Tās smējējās pēc dzīrēm vairs nesmesies, jo viņām būs jānomazgā visi trauki.
10. Viens otrs klausītājijs jau ir noguris, un man arī nāk miegs.
11. Klausītājijs bija pārāk trokšņaini, lai dzirdētu pulkveža vārdus.
12. Tagad viens otrs par mani smejas, bet pag, drīz smējējijs būs manā pusē.
13. Es dzirdēju tavu vēlējumos.
14. Nez, vai klausītājijs nenogurs no pārāk garās runas.
15. Klau! Es dzirdu klausītājos smejamies.

Exercise 225g

Translate into Latvian:

1. My wish is to depart without hatred.
2. The laugher was not a person, but a bird, which was sitting in the very top of a pine-tree.
3. The hat of one member of the audience in front of me was so huge, that I could hear the singer, but not see her.
4. The cough of one of the audience was getting on my nerves.
5. Well, didn't you hear the wish of the colonel?
6. Those silly gigglers will no longer laugh at our team when our boys (*mūsējie*) enjoy their moment of triumph.
7. The tickets of some of the audience were not examined.
8. I have seen this listener at several concerts; she seems to like solemn music.
9. The police arrested several noisy members of the audience.
10. These girls will lead the patrons (*klausītājijs*) to their seats.
11. Do you know those silly gigglers?
12. He merely laughed at her wish.
13. The seats of the audience must be comfortable.
14. His wish was to carry the flag in the march of triumph along the avenue.
15. He must have finished his speech; I can see the audience coming out from the exit. – I think that is rather more likely to mean that he has not finished!

LESSON 226

FURTHER NUMERALS

Alongside the series *viens, divi, trīs, . . .* there exists another set: *vienēji; divēji; treji; četrēji; piecēji*; etc.

These numerals are normally used only with nouns which occur only in the plural, cf.

<i>vienējas šķēres</i>	one pair of scissors
<i>divēji rati</i>	two carts
<i>trejas bikses</i>	three pairs of trousers
<i>četrējas durvis</i>	four doors
<i>piecēji svārki</i>	five skirts

These formations are possible only up to nine, the remainder being *sešēji, septiņēji, astoņēji, deviņēji*.

Note particularly the short *e* of *treji*, where the other forms have long *ē*.

Also possible, and a good deal more common, are the simple forms: *vienas šķēres; divi rati; trīs bikses; četras durvis; pieci svārki*.

A similar formation is *abēji*:

<i>abēji</i> (or <i>abi</i>) <i>rati</i>	both carts
<i>abējas</i> (or <i>abas</i>) <i>durvis</i>	both doors

All the above forms have normal declensions as plural adjectives.

From the stems of this second series of numerals is built up an adjectival series in *-āds*, the meaning of which is 'of so many kinds':

<i>divējāds</i>	of two kinds
<i>trejāds</i>	of three kinds
<i>četrējāds</i>	of four kinds
<i>piecējāds</i>	of five kinds

Formations from the numerals from six to nine are very rarely met.

Similarly, note *abējāds* 'of both kinds'.

Viens in this respect is irregular, the form being *vienāds*: 'of one kind, identical, uniform'.

Analogous are:

<i>visāds</i>	of all kinds
<i>dažāds</i>	of various kinds
<i>citāds</i>	of another kind

and ultimately, *kāds* 'of what kind'; *šāds* 'of this kind'; *tāds* 'of that kind'.

From adjectives in *-āds*, adverbs can be formed in the normal way:

<i>visādi</i>	in every (possible) way
<i>citādi</i>	in a different way; otherwise
<i>divējādi</i>	in two (different) ways
<i>abējādi</i>	in both ways

Note too the adjectival formations with *-kārs*, with corresponding adverbs in *-kārt*:

<i>vienkārs</i>	onefold, simple	<i>vienkārt</i>	once
<i>divkārs</i>	twofold	<i>divkārt</i>	twice
<i>trīskārs</i>	threefold	<i>trīskārt</i>	three times
<i>simtkārs</i>	a hundredfold	<i>simtkārt</i>	a hundred times

Note too *vairākkārt* 'repeatedly'.

Notice an idiomatic construction with round numbers:

Tūkstošiem puķu ziedēja.

Thousands of flowers were blooming.

The flowers were blooming in thousands, by the thousand.

Mēs saskaitījām simtiem skaistu putnu.

We counted hundreds of beautiful birds.

We counted beautiful birds in their hundreds, by the hundred.

The numeral here goes into a dative plural form (masculine), irrespective of its function in the sentence, and continues to govern a genitive, even though the numeral might well be regarded as adverbial.

Vocabulary

Learn the numeral forms given above.

<i>šķidrauts</i>	veil
<i>Guna</i>	a feminine name
<i>Targals</i>	a masculine name
<i>padoties</i> (- <i>dodos</i> , - <i>dēvos</i>)	to yield, surrender (intrans.)
<i>sēga</i>	here = carpet
<i>ziedoklis</i>	altar
<i>pielūgt</i> (- <i>dzu</i> , - <i>dzu</i>)	to worship, adore
<i>loks</i>	bow, arch; here = circle
<i>uz āru nākt</i> (- <i>ku</i> , - <i>cu</i>)	to come forward, emerge
<i>pastars</i>	final, last

<i>pastartiesa</i>	Day of Judgement
<i>cietējs</i> (f. -ēja)	sufferer
<i>sols</i>	bench
<i>moku sols</i>	rack
<i>kristalls</i>	crystal
<i>miesas</i> (pl.)	body
<i>caurspīdīgs</i>	transparent, clear
<i>augums</i>	growth, generation
<i>augu augumi</i>	generation after generation
<i>reiz</i>	here = one day
<i>rādīt</i> (-u, -īju)	here = to point
<i>posts</i>	disaster, bane; here = affliction
<i>cēlons</i> (more usually <i>cēlonis</i>)	cause
<i>likt</i> (<i>lieku, liku</i>)	here = to cause
<i>spožums</i>	shine, splendour, lustre
<i>satvert</i> (-tveru, -tvēru)	to grasp, seize
(ap-)traipīt (-u, -īju)	to spot, to stain
<i>pašapziņa</i>	self-confidence
<i>pīšļi</i> (pl.)	ashes, dust
<i>dziedēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to heal (trans.)
<i>tiesnešis</i>	judge, magistrate
<i>soģis</i>	judge, magistrate
<i>sērga</i>	plague, pestilence
<i>mākt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to oppress
<i>gadiem</i>	for years
<i>sajukums</i>	confusion, disorder
<i>tiesāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to try, to judge
<i>ārprāts</i>	madness, lunacy
<i>kāpnes</i> (pl.)	= <i>kāpnes</i>
<i>viltnieks</i>	deceiver, impostor
<i>pieturēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to hold
<i>apdomāties</i> (-ājos, -ājos)	to reflect, change one's mind
<i>ļaunums</i>	evil, mischief
<i>noburt</i> (-buru, -būru)	to bewitch, enchant
<i>negantība</i>	villainy, wickedness
<i>raidīt</i> (-u, -īju) <i>viršū</i> + dat.	to set (somebody) on (somebody)
<i>nodurt</i> (-duru, -dūru)	to stab to death
<i>pirms</i> (adv.)	first, beforehand
<i>ločties</i> (-kos, -cījos)	here = to writhe
<i>burve</i>	sorceress, witch
<i>uzsiet</i> (-sienu, -sēju)	to tie on, bind to
<i>maita</i>	carrion

<i>aplidot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to fly around; here = to fly upon, at
<i>savilkties</i> (-vēlkos, -vilkos)	here = to shrivel up
<i>sagrūzdēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to be scorched, burnt
<i>peļņi</i> (pl.)	ashes
<i>izkaisīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to scatter
<i>pa</i> (<i>gaisu</i>) <i>gaisiem</i>	to the (four) winds
<i>sadegt</i> (-dēgu, -dēgu)	to burn (intrans.)
<i>nomaitāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to kill, exterminate
<i>gana</i>	= <i>diezgan</i>
<i>izaugt</i> (-augu, -augu)	to grow up
<i>dzinums</i>	shoot, sprout
<i>krusta karš</i> or <i>krustkarš</i>	crusade, holy war
<i>Normunds</i>	masculine name
<i>doties</i> (<i>dodos, dēvos</i>) <i>palīgā</i> + dat.	to go to the aid of
<i>aizstāties</i> (-stājos, -stājos)	to place oneself

NOTE: *Normunds* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 187–198.

Exercise 226a

Translate into English:

(Tiek pūstas taures, sānu durvis atveras, un Guna parādās savā sidraba šķidrautā ar degošu lāpu rokā.)

Targals: Mēs tavu balsi gaidām, dievu meita,
Lai¹ tā mūs paceļ, lai¹ tā zemē triec.
Mēs drebot viņai visi padodamies.

Guna: (Iet lēnām pa segām uz ziedokli. Ļaudis, viņai garām ejot, nometas ceļos. Viņa iedezina ar lāpu uguni uz ziedokļa, tad paceļ rokas uz augšu pielūgdama.)

Tu mani aicināji, patiesība,
Iz manas vientulīgās mežu tumsas,
Lai pēkšņi stātos tavā gaismas lokā!
Kad stunda sit, tad visi tie,
Kas bija mazi, zemi, nepazīti,
Uz āru nāk^a un top^a par varoņiem.
Tu esi cēla it kā pastartiesa –
Un tavi vārdi iet kā skrejošs^b uguns.
Tu visu pasaul'ssāpju cietēja!

Tu esi degusi uz tūkstoš sārziem
 Un tūkstoš moku soliēm stāpīta.
 Ak, cik gan skaistai tevīm vajag būt,
 Kas tik daudz asinīs ir mazgājusies!
 Kā kalnu kristalls dzidras tavas miesas,
 Tev caurspīdīga katra dzīslīņa,
 Un tava krūts ir it kā zelta klints,
 Iz kuras žēlastības upe tek;
 No tavām lūpām miera vārdi plaukst
 Kā ziedu zari zilā pavasarī,
 Un augu augumi tev klēpī sildās.
 Tu visu māte, ir es iegriezīšos
 Pie tevis reiz – bet pirms tu mani raidi
 Un tava sāpju dzidrā roka rāda, –
 Ej liecini par mani!

Targals: Liecini

Un teic šim stulbam pūlim patiesību,
 Teic, kur ir ronams⁴ visa posta cēlons!

Guna: (pie sevis)

Ak, stāvi manim klāt, tu cēlais gars,
 Un liec man stīprai būt!

Targals: (Paņem karogu un sniedz to Gunai.)

Še, lai šis karogs

Iz tavas rokas nes mums uzvaru,
 Tu tērpsi viņu jaunā spožumā.
 Še saņem to!

Guna: (satver karogu)

Kāds⁵ saplēsts, aptraipīts!

Kā pati cilvēce, kas dubļos mīta,
 Pašapziņu un spēku zaudējusi.
 Ak, pacelies, tu pišļos mītais spēks!
 Liec atkal augsti kvēlot savai liesmai
 Un esi atkal lepnis,⁶ varens, cēls!
 Pats dziedē brūces, pats sev esi ārsts,
 Pats kāp kā tiesnesis uz soģa krēslu.
 (uz ļaudīm)

Man rādīt⁷ jums, kur jūsu sāpju sakne
 Un niknā sērga, kas jūs gadiem māca,
 Lūk, tur – – –!

(Rāda uz Targalu. Sajukums, troksnis.)

Targals: (Iekliedzas.)

Ko dzirdu? – Ha! Tu... tu!

Guna: Šurp! Nākat, skatāties un tiesājat!

Targals: Ak, ārprāts! Pekle!... tu – nolādētā!

(Gāžas Gunai virsū un norauj to
 no ziedokļa kāpenēm zemē.)

Tu negantā, no pašas pekles viņa
 Mums sūtīta!

Guna: Tu melo, viltniek,

Es esmu patiesības sūtīta.

Targals: Beidz savu dzīvību, tu negantā!

(Norauj viņu ceļos un, ar vienu roku pieturēdams, izrauj ar
 otru roku zobenu, kuru paceļ, lai durtu viņai krūtīs, bet tad
 apdomājas.)

Bet nē, tas vēl par maz – jūs redziet, ļaudis,

Šo pekles raganu, vai protat nu,

Caur ko viss zemes posts un ļaunums cēlies?

Un kara nelaime un zaudējumi?

Šis pekles gars kā ēna saulei priekšā,

Mūs pašus, mūsu zemi nobūrusi.

Tā savā negantībā iet tik tāli,

Ka tautu raida virsū karalim.

Par mazu soda tai – acumirkļa nāve,

Kad to ar šķēpu noduru, – tai būs

Pirms mokās locīties! Tai degt⁷ uz sārta!

Ļaudis: Tā ragana! Tā ļaunā burve! Nost!

Tā zemi, tā mūs visus nobūrusi!

Targals: Uz sārta viņu virsū uzsienat,

Lai maitu putni pirms to aplido

Un kraukļi nes pa gaisu viņas acis;

Lai viņas dzīslas liesmās savelkas

Un visi kauli sagruzd melnā oglē,

Tās pelnus izkaisāt pa gaisu gaisiem!

Guna: Liec manim sadegt – pašu patiesību

Nemūžam nespēsi tu nomaitāt!

Lai kraukļi nes pa gaisu manas acis,

Tās reiz ir spožo gaismu skatījušas,

Ar to man gana! Liec, lai izkaisa

Pa visiem gaisiem manus putekļus!

Kā sēkla viņi nokritīs uz zemi,

No kuras izaugs jauni dzinumī, –

Tie jozīs sev ap gurniem zobenu

Un ies priekš patiesības krusta karā –

Tie iegūs to, ko tu mums tagad ņemi,⁸

To acis skatīs izredzēto zemi! --

(Targals iesviež Gunu sargiem rokās.)

Ļaudis: Pie sārta! Prom pie sārta!

(Pēdējā acumirkļī ieskrien Normunds ar kausu rokā. Skatu ieraugot, kauss viņam izkrīt no rokām. Viņš grib doties Gunai palīgā, bet karalis pavēloši aizstājas ceļā.)

Priekšskars.

Aspazija, *Sidraba šķidrauts*, II, 9.

Exercise 226b

Decline: *vienējas šķēres; divēji rati; trejas bikses; četrējas durvis; piecēji svārki; abēji plūdi.*

Exercise 226c

Translate into English:

1. *Pie debesīm var redzēt tūkstošiem zvaigžņu.*
2. *Tūkstošiem klausītājos ieradās dziesmu svētkos.*
3. *Šai problēmai ir simtiem atbilžu.*
4. *Savā garajā dzīvē rakstnieks uzrakstīja simtiem vēstulju*

¹ 'whether... whether'.

² Third person plural imperatives, with *lai* suppressed.

³ *Uguns* is here exceptionally treated as a masculine noun.

⁴ For *rodams*. Alongside *rodu*, *radu*, *rast* one very occasionally finds *ronu*, *radu*, *rast*, whence *ronams*.

⁵ = *cik*.

⁶ The *-i-* is purely for metrical purposes. Read *lepns*.

⁷ Occasionally the infinitive replaces the debitive element (i.e., *jā-* with the third person singular of the present tense) without change of meaning. Cf. also in this respect the Future Imperative, lesson 210. Note, however, that the object is in the accusative when the infinitive form is used, as opposed to the nominative in the case of formal debitives.

⁸ Read *ņem*.

Exercise 226d

Translate into English:

1. Galdā bija trejādi cepeši un piecējādi salāti.
2. Vai šos aizkarus var pirkt dažādās krāsās? – Jā, bet tikai četrējādās.
3. Ernests māc gleznot ar abām rokām.
4. Trejām biksēm un divējiem svārkiem nepietiks vietas somā.
5. Krievi mēdza braukt trejiem zirgiem.
6. Vai šeit pārdod tikai zīda blūzes, vai arī kokvilnas? – Mums ir abējādas un visādās krāsās.
7. Uzģērb citu mēteli, Juri! Citādi tu nosalsi.
8. Sienas ir jākrāso divkārt.
9. "Viņa noziegums ir simtkārt ļaunāks nekā tavējais," teica tiesnesis.
10. Slimības cēlonis var būt simtkāršs.
11. Simtiem un tūkstošiem cilvēku gāja bojā smagajā zemestrīcē.
12. Tūkstošiem ēģiptiešu karavīru padevās bez cīņas.
13. Šo uzdevumu var izrēķināt divējādi, ir tā, ir tā.
14. Abi vīri ir vienādi gērbušies, un viņu augumi arī ir vienādi.
15. Es viņu vairākkārt brīdināju.

Exercise 226e

Translate into Latvian:

1. Why is the cinema hall being built with nine doors?
2. One can get all kinds of diseases by drinking this water.
3. This jam is made from four kinds of fruit.
4. The gardener uses natural manure as well as artificial manure, and both ways he obtains good results.
5. The diver saw thousands of multi-coloured fish.
6. I am a simple worker.
7. "I have a threefold reason for punishing you," said the headmaster.
8. Give me two apples of equal size.
9. No, no, wait! I'll show you how a torch can be kindled differently.
10. The audience will no doubt ask various questions after his speech.
11. "You have defrauded hundreds of people," said the judge.
12. I am thinking of different matters.
13. The train is now travelling at (*ar*) twice the speed.
14. One pair of scissors must be sharpened. Where is the whetstone?

LESSON 227

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

The present tense of the conjunctive mood is identical with the shortened indeclinable present participle active in *-ot*.

Infinitive	Present Conjunctive
<i>dziedāt</i>	<i>dziedot</i>
<i>kūpēt</i>	<i>kūpot</i>
<i>radīt</i>	<i>radot</i>
<i>plaukšķināt</i>	<i>plaukšķinot</i>
<i>taujāt</i>	<i>taujājot</i>
<i>smēķēt</i>	<i>smēķējot</i>
<i>medīt</i>	<i>medījot</i>
<i>pušķot</i>	<i>pušķojot</i>
<i>dabūt</i>	<i>dabūjot</i>
<i>iet</i>	<i>ejot</i>
<i>dot</i>	<i>dodot</i>
<i>nākt</i>	<i>nākot</i>
<i>braukt</i>	<i>braucot</i>
<i>mirt</i>	<i>mirstot</i>
<i>dzīt</i>	<i>dzenot</i>
<i>sist</i>	<i>sitot</i>
<i>būt</i>	<i>esot</i>

There are no personal endings (cf. the conditional), the one form in *-ot* serving for the whole conjugation:

es nākot
tu nākot
viņš nākot
mēs nākot
jūs nākot
viņi nākot

The reflexive forms simply add *-ies*, and end therefore in *-oties*, again identical with the reflexive *-ot* participle.

Infinitive	Present Conjunctive
<i>klausīties</i>	<i>klausoties</i>
<i>priecāties</i>	<i>priecājoties</i>
<i>doties</i>	<i>dodoties</i>
<i>beigties</i>	<i>beidzoties</i>
<i>kauties</i>	<i>kaujoties</i>
<i>ģērbties</i>	<i>ģērbjoties</i>

There is again no change of ending through the conjugation:

es kaujoties
tu kaujoties
viņš kaujoties
mēs kaujoties
jūs kaujoties
viņi kaujoties

The conjunctive mood is used to imply some doubt in the mind of the speaker or writer as to the truth of a statement. Its use does not imply that the speaker or writer actually *disbelieves* the statement, but simply that he does not necessarily believe it.

Viņš nākot.

He is coming, so it is said.

He is supposed to be coming.

Jānis esot slimš.

They say John is ill.

John is believed to be ill.

Jūs dziedot skaisti.

It is said you sing beautifully.

You are reputed to sing beautifully.

Viņa dodoties uz tirgu.

She is thought to be going to the market, etc.

These sentences contrast with similar sentences containing an indicative verb. In these latter, no doubt is expressed or implied.

Viņš nāk.

He is coming.

Jānis ir slimš.

John is ill.

Jūs dziedat skaisti.

You sing beautifully.

Viņa dodas uz tirgu.

She is going to the market.

Regardless of whether these statements are true or false, there is no doubt implicit in them. The speaker has chosen to be categorical, whereas he leaves himself a loop-hole by using the conjunctive.

Hence, the conjunctive mood is often found in subordinate clauses depending on a verb of *saying, reporting, informing, etc.*

Ernests saka, ka viņa brālis šodien aizbraucot.

According to Ernest, his brother is leaving today.

Kas tev stāstīja, ka viņa esot ragana?

Who told you the story about her being a witch?

Ubags saka, ka viņš tikai meklējis malku izcirtumā.

The beggar claims that he is only looking for fire-wood in the clearing.

Again, these sentences contrast with similar ones using the indicative, the latter expressing no doubt:

Ernests saka, ka viņa brālis šodien aizbrauc.

Ernest says that his brother is leaving today.

Kas tev stāstīja, ka viņa ir ragana?

Who told you that she is a witch?

Ubags saka, ka viņš tikai meklē malku izcirtumā.

The beggar says he is only looking for fire-wood in the clearing.

Note particularly that there is no imperfect tense of the conjunctive mood, this gap being filled by the present perfect.

Vocabulary

<i>apvēlties (-vēļos, -vēļos)</i>	to grow plump
<i>sula</i>	juice, sap
<i>Gotlībs</i>	Gottlieb
<i>Evelīna</i>	Eveline
<i>nopuņķoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to get mucus on oneself
<i>saraust (-šu, -su)</i>	to accumulate, amass (trans.)
<i>sainis</i>	parcel, bundle
<i>ievērot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to notice, observe
<i>stāvoklis</i>	here = standing
<i>emigrants</i>	emigrant
<i>īfirma</i>	company, firm
<i>sveiciens</i>	greeting(s)
<i>(prēt-)komūnists (noun)</i>	(anti-)communist
<i>sekretārs</i>	secretary
<i>mīļākais, (f.) -ā</i>	lover; mistress
<i>Ādams</i>	Adam
<i>dzejot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to write poetry
<i>noraust (-šu, -su)</i>	to wipe away
<i>duņķi (pl.)</i>	mucus
<i>simbols</i>	symbol

<i>stūrmanis</i>	helmsman; mate
<i>liet (lēju, lēju)</i>	here = to water
<i>hormons</i>	hormone
<i>vasks, also vaski (pl.)</i>	wax
<i>muļķība</i>	stupidity
<i>relikvija</i>	relic
<i>pat ne</i>	not even
<i>(ie-)kairināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to excite, tempt
<i>ēstgriba</i>	appetite
<i>pieskarties (-skaros, -skāros) (+ dat.)</i>	to touch
<i>peņijs</i>	penny
<i>aizsist (-situ, -situ)</i>	to slam closed (trans.)
<i>ķēpāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to mess around amateurishly
<i>iekārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to arrange, fit out
<i>ērtība</i>	comfort, convenience
<i>lēdusskapis</i>	ice-chest; refrigerator
<i>dievkociņš</i>	southernwood
<i>biškrēslis (or bišu krēslis)</i>	tansy
<i>rēzija (obscure: perhaps for rēzēda)</i>	mignonnette
<i>naktsvijole</i>	dame's violet
<i>oļains</i>	pebbly, gravelly
<i>pieliekties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to stoop
<i>pasmaržot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to smell (trans.)
<i>nobeigties (-dzos, -dzos)</i>	to end (intrans.)
<i>rasots</i>	dew-covered

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 217-225.

NOTES: *Gotlībs*, *komūnists*, *simbols* and *hormons* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 227a

Translate into English:

Ābola vairs nav.

Ābelē bija tikai viens ābols. Apvēlies un sarkans. Pilns sulas, saules gaismas un zemes spēka.

"Klausies," teica vecais Gotlībs savai vedeklai Evelīnai, "tas ir mans ābols, un tu nedrīksti to ēst!" Vecais Gotlībs bija nopuņķojies vecis, kas pēdējo desmit gadu laikā bija saraucis naudu ar sainīšu sūtīšanu uz Latviju un līdz ar to ieguvis ievērojamu stāvokli emigrantu starpā. Viņam piederēja firma

“Sveiciens dzimtenei”, četri nami Londonā, automašīna, latviešu pretkomunistu sekretāra gods un divas mīļākās, piederēja arī dēls Ādams, kas mācēja tikai dzejot, un vedekla Evelīna, kuņai garšoja augļi.

“Tas ābols,” teica Gotlībs, norausdams ar līko pirkstu no deguna puņķu lāsteku, “ir simbols manai ticībai! Pirms divdesmit gadiem es atvedu ābolu no Latvijas, tad, kad vēl braucu uz kuģiem par stūrmani, lēju ar hormoniem, sargāju un audzēju – tas tagad pirmais ābols: es nevēlos, ka to ēd kāds cits, es nevēlos, ka to ēstu! Es gribu to iemērkāt vārošā vaskā un glabāt visu savu mūžu...”

“Kādēļ?” Pārsteigta jautāja Evelīna.

“Muļķe!” Vecais Gotlībs bija sašutis par vedeklas muļķību. “Neviens neēd ticības relikvijas!”

“Pat ne tad, kad viņam gribas ēst?”¹

“No ābola neviens nav paēdis, tas tikai iekairina ēstgribu!” Vecais Gotlībs apgāja apkārt ābelei un ar pirksta galu pieskārs sarkanam ābolam, kas bija ne tikai sarkans, bet arī kairinoši zeltains.

“Ādams teica,” mēģināja iebilst Evelīna, “mēs visi trīs to ēdīsim – griezīsim trijās daļās... Mēs esam precējušies gadu, un viņš domāja: tu taisies pirkt piekto māju, mums tagad varētu būt bērni... Tad mēs varētu ēst ābolu!”

“Ādams,” gandrīz kļiedza Gotlībs, “nav nopelnījis ne penija! Kā gan viņš var tā domāt? Ābols ir mans! Es gribu, lai tas tiek mērķts vaskā – es gribu, lai tas paliek sveīgs, kamēr es dzīvoju!”

“Man ir vienalga,” Evelīna iegāja savā istabā un aizsita durvis, “vecais nelga,” viņa runāja pati sev, “viņš gribētu, kaut² Ādams ķēpātos ar māliem tāpat kā viņš...”

Evelīnas un Ādama istabas bija skaistas, nekā šeit netrūka. Divas lielas, moderni iekārtotas istabas. Neliela virtuve ar visām ērtībām un ledusskapi. Durvis uz dārzu bija plaši atvērtas. Evelīna izgāja dārzā. Smaržoja dievkociņi, biškrēslīņi, rēzijas un naktsvijoles. Lēnām viņa gāja pa oļaino ceļu, apstājās, pieliecās, pasmaržoja kādu ziedu un tad gāja tālāk. Atkal un atkal viņas gājieni nobeidzās pie ābeles ar vienīgo ābolu...

“Jums jābūt Evelīnai,” no dzīvībaskoka ēnas iznāca slaida sieviete. “Gotlībs man daudz ko³ stāstījis...” Viņas gaita vijās kā ūdens straume ar mēness gaismu uz rasotās zāles.

Guntis Zariņš.

¹ *Gribēties ēst* is a common expression for ‘to be hungry’.

² = *lai*.

³ *Daudz kas, daudz ko*, etc., are parallel to *viss kas, visu ko*, etc. See note (4) to the text *Par bagāto skopuli* in lesson 223.

Exercise 227b

Give the first person singular, present conjunctive, of the following verbs: *raudāt; sargāt; kairināt; nomaitāt; tupēt; piekļauvēt; kratīt; medīt; dzejot; dabūt; mākt; mīlzt; uzraut; sagrūst; izliet; diēt; izkrist; nodot; žņaupt; nospert; lauzt; pārplēst; panest; būt; pielūgt; virt; ķēpāties; pieliekties; pieskarties; padoties; blīties; ilgoties; pasteigties; aizsnausties; iepazīties; iezagties.*

Exercise 227c

Conjugate in the present conjunctive: *brist; iegūt; aizmirst; līst; atzīt; kost; šūt; kaut; skriet; norīt; pirkt; vilkt; saprast; noģist; zust; atvērt; patikt; iesākt; stumt; aplēst; lēkt; saukt; nākt; doties; locīties; uzcelties; apstāties; ierasties; šķirties; atgriezties; pamosties; sagrļoties; sēsties; ievaicāties; iebļauties; iesmieties; pārēsties.*

Exercise 227d

Translate into English:

1. Saimnieka neesot mājās, viņš esot pilsētā.
2. Ak, es gērbjoties vecmodīgi! Nu paga, es viņai parādīšu!
3. Juris teica, ka viņš nezīnot, cikos Guna pārnāks.
4. Vecais barons esot laipns cilvēks.
5. Mācītājs saka, ka viņš priedājoties par šīm ziņām.
6. Es dzirdu, ka tu skaisti zīmējot.
7. Man saka, ka jūs esot no tālās Austrālijas, vai tas tiesa?
8. Pilsētā ir lieli plūdi, un ūdens sniedzoties līdz namu apakšējā stāva logiem.
9. Normunds saka, ka Guna nekad neklausoties aiz durvīm.
10. Viņa uzņēmums pārdodot ledusskapjus vairākās zemēs un saņemot no tām eļļu, vaskus un medu.
11. Gotlībs stāsta, ka Ādams mīlot Evelīnu.
12. Sekretārs neatnāca, viņš esot slims, laikam kāda bīstama sērga.
13. Vecais teica, ka hormoni viņam palīdzot: kas par muļķībām!
14. Iesim zālē, izrāde jau sākoties!
15. Klau, šis vīrs saka, ka viņš esot stūrmanis un viņa kuģis dodoties uz Dienvidameriku.

Exercise 227e

Translate into Latvian:

1. He is said not to take bribes.
2. It is said you dance the tango beautifully.
3. Ernest said that he does not believe the emigrant's story.
4. This disease is said to spread rapidly.
5. According to the helmsman it is madness to stand on deck in such a storm.
6. Who said that I fight only with weaker opponents?
7. She says she is dressing, and that we can wait in the ante-room.
8. According to the secretary there is a large profit this year.
9. He is said to be delighted at (*par*) your kind invitation.
10. The hairdresser told me that I look like a film-star.
11. The enemy is said to be withdrawing.
12. It is said that criminals always return to the scene (*vieta*) of the crime.
13. The patient says that his eyes are very weak.
14. The farmer said that the harvest is very good in the north.
15. This wine is supposed to be very good.

LESSON 228

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD: FUTURE TENSE

The future tense of the conjunctive mood is formed from the first person singular of the future indicative, substituting the ending *-ot* in place of the indicative *-u*.

There are no exceptions.

As with the present conjunctive, the one ending is retained in all persons of the conjugation.

Infinitive	Future Indicative	Future Conjunctive
<i>būt</i>	<i>būšu</i>	<i>būšot</i>
<i>iet</i>	<i>iešu</i>	<i>iešot</i>
<i>dot</i>	<i>došu</i>	<i>došot</i>
<i>braukt</i>	<i>braukšu</i>	<i>braukšot</i>
<i>rakstīt</i>	<i>rakstīšu</i>	<i>rakstīšot</i>
<i>ticēt</i>	<i>ticēšu</i>	<i>ticēšot</i>
<i>sist</i>	<i>sitīšu</i>	<i>sitīšot</i>
<i>mēst</i>	<i>mētīšu</i>	<i>mētīšot</i>
<i>lauzt</i>	<i>lauzīšu</i>	<i>lauzīšot</i>

The reflexive has the ending *-oties*:

<i>sarunāties</i>	<i>sarunāšos</i>	<i>sarunāšoties</i>
<i>parādīties</i>	<i>parādīšos</i>	<i>parādīšoties</i>
<i>rasties</i>	<i>radīšos</i>	<i>radīšoties</i>
<i>bīties</i>	<i>bīšos</i>	<i>bīšoties</i>
<i>atgriezties</i>	<i>atgriezīšos</i>	<i>atgriezīšoties</i>

It would be as well to revise the future forms of verbs whose infinitives end in *-st* or *-zt*: Lesson 119.

The student will recall that the conditional indicative is not normally used in indirect speech, being replaced by the future indicative. It is perhaps not surprising that there is no conditional conjunctive, and that the future conjunctive does duty for it.

Ernests saka, ka viņa brālis rītu aizbraukšot.

According to Ernest, his brother will be leaving tomorrow.

Ernests sacīja, ka viņa brālis rītu aizbraukšot.

Ernest said that his brother would be leaving tomorrow.

Viņas atnākšot šovakar.

It is believed that they will arrive this evening.

Vecais vaidelotis teica, ka visi ļaundari bīšoties, dzirdot tavu vārdu.

The old priest said that all evil-doers would tremble at the sound of your name.

Vocabulary

<i>rūgtums</i>	bitterness
<i>iznīcība</i>	destruction, ruin
<i>apgriezties (-žos, -zos)</i>	to turn around (intrans.)
<i>kritiens</i>	fall
<i>raspodīņš</i>	sundew
<i>garāmģājējs</i>	passer-by
<i>atzīties (-zīstos, -zinos)</i>	to confess, admit
<i>uzticība</i>	confidence, trust
<i>piekāpties (-pjos, -pos)</i>	to yield, give in (intrans.)
<i>izsaukties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to exclaim
<i>brīnīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to marvel, be amazed
<i>protēstēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to protest
<i>sterīls</i>	sterile, barren, unproductive
<i>jaunatkālsme</i>	new discovery, new experience
<i>apmierinātība</i>	contentment; complacency

<i>garlaicība</i>	boredom, tedium, dullness
<i>satraukt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to arouse, excite; to startle
<i>augšāmcelšanās</i> (fem. refl.)	resurrection

NOTES: *Protestēt* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 101–125.

Exercise 228a

Translate into English:

Ābola vairs nav (cont.).

“Tad es varu iedomāties...” Evelīnas balsī bija rūgtums.

“Ādams jums esot par labu!”

“Tā viņš vienmēr saka!”

“Jūs viņu iznīcināšot!”

“No iznīcības dzimst dzīvība!”

“Jūs gribot dzīvot citos...”

Evelīna apgriezās un gāja uz mājas pusi, bet sieviete sekoja. Kā ēna viņa slīdēja ar mēness gaismu, un balss skanēja kā rasas pilienu kritieni no raspodiem, kad tiem pieskaņas garāmgājēju kājas:

“Es varētu būt bijusi¹ Ādama māte, bet Gotlībs gribēja viņu taisīt no māla²...”

“Es zinu!”

“Kāds Ādams ir tagad? Ko viņš dara?”

“Dzejo un guļ, guļ un dzejo!”

“Un tu!”

“Es laboju viņa dzejoļus...”

“Kādēļ?”

“Tiem trūkst spēka!” Evelīna bija sasniegusi sava dzīvokļa durvis.

“Kādēļ?” Atkal jautāja sieviete.

“Viņš dzīvo kā sapnī – viņa māte, ko viņš mīl, ir zeme! Vēl tikai vakarnakti, izskrējis dārzā, viņš nokrita zālē, skūpstīja zemi un likās, jā, man tā likās, mēģināja to mīlēt...” Evelīnai bija kauns atzities, bet svešā radīja uzticību, un viņai bija ar kādu jārūnā.

“Vecais Gotlībs gan tāds nav...” sieviete iesmējās. “Viņš tikai nevēlas nekā paliekama,³ kas nav viņa... Ādams ir viņa, tu esi viņa, bet tikai tādēļ, ka Ādams nepieķāpās, viņš prasīja pēc tevis!”

“Kas ir ar to ābolu?”⁴ Pēkšņi jautāja Evelīna.

“Oh, tas ābols!” Izsaucās sieviete. “Tas ābols ir vecā – ja kāds to ēstu, viņš kļūtu līdzīgs Gotlībam – viņš varētu radīt dzīvību! Vai tu brīnies, ka tev tas aizliegts?”

“Kas ir dzīvība?” Pārsteigta jautāja Evelīna.

“Dzīvība ir mūžīga dzīvība!”

“Bet man ir mūžīga dzīvība,” protestēja Evelīna, “mēs varam vienmēr dzīvot Gotlība dzīvoklī, mums visa kā būs diezgan, un Ādams varēs dzejojot un domāt...”

“Tava mūžīgā dzīvība ir sterila, tā nav jaunatklāsme, tajā nav sāpju un ciešanu – tikai apmierinātība un garlaicība...”

“Ko lai es daru?” Evelīna bija satraukta un ziņkārīga.

“Liec Ādamam kost ābolā!”

“Kādēļ?”

“Lai jūs dzīvotu!”

“Un tu? Vai tu negribi dzīvot mūžīgi?” Jautāja Evelīna.

“Ja vecais,” smaidot teica sieviete, “uzzinās, ka es tev ieteicu apēst ābolu – es miršu tūkstoš nāves, bet pēc katras nāves būs augšāmcelšanās.

Guntis Zariņš.

Exercise 228b

Give the first person singular, future conjunctive, of the verbs listed in Ex. 227b.

Exercise 228c

Conjugate in the future conjunctive the verbs listed in Ex. 227c.

Exercise 228d

Translate into English:

1. Pulkvedis nepieķāpšoties.
2. Tiesnesis draudēja, teikdams, ka burve miršot uz sārta, ja neatzīšoties.
3. Dzejnieks teica, ka kādreiz visa pasaule brīnīšoties par viņa jaunatklāsmi.

¹ Alternative form of *es būtu varējusi būt*.

² The singular is unusual; *no māliem* is much commoner.

³ lit. ‘he wants nothing remaining’, i.e., ‘he desires that there should be nothing permanent...’

⁴ lit. ‘What’s with that apple?’ i.e., ‘What is the situation regarding that apple?’

4. Septiņos mēs tur nevaram iet, jo viņš tad vēl nebūšot mājās.
5. Māra teica, ka Pēteris nekad neiegūšot viņas uzticību, tādēļ ka viņš piekrāpis viņas tēvu.
6. Aptiekārs teica, ka viņš man ieteikšot ļoti labas zāles pret klepu.
7. ASV pārstāvis saka, ka viņa valdība protestēšot.
8. Baiba saka, ka viņa krusttēva lauku mājās aiz garlaicības nomiršot, jo tur tuvumā neesot ne kino, ne teātra, un viņai trūkšot citu jaunu ļaužu sabiedrības.
9. Gulta esot par šauru, viņš teica amatniekam, tanī nevarēšot apgriezties.
10. Kaut gan viņam tai smagajā kritienā nebija laužts neviens kauls, viņu tomēr sūtišot uz slimnīcu.
11. Tikko atskanēs taures, Miervaldis došoties mums palīgā.
12. Targals Gunai draudēja, ka viņš likšot izkaisīt viņas pelnus pa gaisu gaisiem, ja viņa nepiekāpšoties.
13. Lūdzu, piezvani savam priekšniekam šovakar, jo rītu viņš braukšot uz Oslo.
14. Vēstures skolotājs teica, ka tas, kas nekā nezināšot par krusta kariem, neizturēšot pārbaudījumu.
15. Annai pašai būs jāiet uz tirgu, jo Māra neiešot.

Exercise 228e

Translate into Latvian:

1. She says that her husband will return tomorrow.
2. He promised me that he would no longer drink.
3. The retailer said that his display-window would be so beautiful that all the passers-by would be amazed.
4. The dancer said she would startle the audience with her seductive movements.
5. The judge said that he would punish those evil-doers harshly.
6. Let us go to the castle; the king is supposed to appear to the people soon.
7. The doctor said that the water of that famous spring would soon cure his illness.
8. We must eat heartily (*kārtīgi*) now, for the bus is not supposed to stop again until Sydney.
9. The forest-ranger said that the blackbirds would fly away in autumn, but that the magpies, ravens and pigeons would remain here.
10. The colonel said he would destroy the whole town if we did not surrender.
11. I was told that you would come much earlier.
12. They told the farmer that they would sleep until ten o'clock.

13. The king said that he would die, or return from the crusade in a march of triumph.
14. It is believed that they will cut down those old pines.
15. According to John, his team will play at two o'clock on Sunday.

LESSON 229

THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD: PERFECT TENSES

The conjunctive mood has two perfect tenses: the present perfect and the future perfect. Just as the future conjunctive does duty for the conditional forms, so the present perfect and future perfect respectively fulfil the additional functions of a past perfect and conditional perfect.

The perfect tenses of the conjunctive mood are quite simply formed: the indicative auxiliaries *esmu, esi, ir*, etc., are replaced by the corresponding *esot*, and *būšu, būsi, būs* by the corresponding *būšot*. Cf. the corresponding indicative and conjunctive paradigms given below:

Indicative

es esmu uzrakstījis
tu esi bijis
viņš ir miris
mēs esam mācījušies
jūs esat priecājušies
viņi ir aizbraukuši
 I have written (etc.)
es būšu atgriezies
tu būsi atraidījis
viņš būs atnācis
mēs būsim iedevuši
jūs būsit redzējuši
viņi būs dziedājuši
 I shall have returned (etc.)

Conjunctive

es esot uzrakstījis
tu esot bijis
viņš esot miris
mēs esot mācījušies
jūs esot priecājušies
viņi esot aizbraukuši
 They say I have written (etc.)
es būšot atgriezies
tu būšot atraidījis
viņš būšot atnācis
mēs būšot iedevuši
jūs būšot redzējuši
viņi būšot dziedājuši
 They say I shall have returned (etc.)

It is said that I have broken many hearts.

Es esot laužis daudz siržu.

They say that the policeman has arrested the thief.

Policists esot apcietinājis zagli.

Who said that the horses had escaped?

Kas teica, ka zirgi esot izsprukuši?

The farm-hand says that he will soon have finished the work.

Kalps saka, ka viņš drīz būšot nobeidzis darbu.

It was thought that the king would have returned to the capital by Friday.

Karalis piektdien jau būšot atgriezies savā galvas pilsētā.

Vocabulary

<i>aplīkt</i> (-lieku, -liku)	to place about
<i>pastaigāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to walk (a little)
<i>pagatavot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to prepare
<i>turku pipari</i> (pl.)	cayenne
<i>sēļerija</i>	celery
<i>garlaikot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to bore
<i>tīkt</i> (tīku, tiku)	= <i>patīkt</i>
<i>bez tam</i>	furthermore; anyway
(no-)skurināties (-os, -ājos)	to shudder, shiver
<i>iestāstīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to tell, convince
<i>Oidīps</i>	Oedipus
<i>komplekss</i>	complex
<i>paturēt</i> (-u, -ēju)	to keep, retain
<i>smaržīgs</i>	fragrant
<i>putekļi</i> (pl.)	here = pollen
<i>sēru vītols</i>	weeping willow
<i>iedoma</i>	idea, notion; whim
<i>nobīties</i> (-bīstos, -bijos)	to take fright, become frightened
<i>padzīt</i> (-dzenu, -dzinu)	to drive away
<i>pieķauties</i> (-kļaujos, -kļāvos)	to cling to, press against
<i>karsēt</i> (-ēju, -ēju)	to heat
<i>pastiepties</i> (-pjos, -pos)	to stretch out (intrans.)
<i>nemirstība</i>	immortality
<i>iekosties</i> (-žos, -dos)	to bite into
<i>noskūpstīt</i> (-u, -īju)	to kiss
<i>lāse</i>	drop
<i>uzņemt</i> (-ņemu, -ņēmu)	here = to receive
<i>grēkot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to sin
<i>nodoties</i> (-dodos, -dēvos)	to give oneself up to, indulge in
<i>grēks</i>	sin
<i>zaimot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to blaspheme, slander, calumniate
<i>kautrīgs</i>	shy, timid
<i>zalktis</i>	grass-snake

NOTES: *Komplekss* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

The first syllable of *Oidīps* is pronounced as the English *oi*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 199–210.

Exercise 229a

Translate into English:

Ābola vairs nav (cont.).

“Ādam,” Evelīna aplīka vīram rokas ap pleciem, “iesim pastaigāt?” Evelīna bija pagatavojusi vakariņas ar daudz turku pipariem, ķiplokiem, seleriju¹ un sīpoliem.

“Tu zini,” garlaikoti teica Ādams, “vecajam netīk, ja mēs klistam pa dārzu, kamēr viņš nav mājās... Un bez tam,” Ādams noskurinājās, “ir traki auksts...”

“Ādam,” pēkšņi jautāja Evelīna, “kas bija tava māte?”

“Tu labi zini!”

“Muļķības! Vecais mēģina iestāstīt tev visādas pasakas un radīt Oidīpa kompleksu pret zemi, jo viņš vēlas tevi paturēt uz visiem laikiem...”

“Man liekas...”

“Ādam...” Evelīnas rokas satvēra Ādama galvu, viņas lūpas smaržoja pēc visas pasaules skaistākiem augļiem.

“Kas es tev esmu?”

“Pasaules dzidrākais ābols, skaistākā straume, dziļākā jūra, smaržīgākais zieds...”

“Ābols bez sēklas, straume bez spēka, jūra bez zivīm, zieds bez putekļiem...”

“Tavs augums...”

“Ir sēru vītols, kas var augt bez sēklas iedomu mitrajā zemē!”

“Evelīn,” pārsteigts izsauca Ādams, “ko tu vēlies?”

“Iet dārzā, kur smaržo naktsvijoles un kuņģī ir nobriedis ābols!”

“Tu zini...”

“To nedrīkst! Es tev jautāju – vai tu vēlies?” Evelīna piecēlās un atvēra dārza durvis.

“Ja mēs tagad ejam dārzā,” nobijies teica Ādams, “Gotlībs mūs padzīs! Tu zini, cik viņš stingrs!”

Lai kādi bija vārdi,² ko sacīja Ādams, bet³ viņš piecēlās un sekoja Evelīnai. Viņi izgāja dārzā. Smaržoja naktsvijoles, rudens rozēs, rudens augļi un ābols.

“Vai tu mani mīli?” jautāja Evelīna, un viņas augums pieķāvās Ādamam kā straume akmenim, kuņģī karsēja saule.

“Kas tas par vārdu?”

“Vai tu mani jūti?”

“Es tevi jūtu... Bet...” Ādams nosvīda, viņam likās, ka no mēness gaismas izkāpa tūkstošiem Evelīnu, tūkstošiem sievu...

“Tad nāc!” Evelīnas roka pastiepās un noplūca ābolu. Kad Ādams meklēja viņas lūpas, viņš sajuta saules gaismu, kuŗa kā nemirstība silda visus cilvēkus. Viņš iekodās šajā gaismā...

“Evelīn...!”

“Ādam!”

Pirmo sievas nopūtu viņš noskūpstīja no viņas lūpām. Pirmās cilvēku asins lāses uzņēma zeme...

“Tu esi grēkojis,” teica Gotlībs, aizsīzdams parādu grāmatu, “tev jāatstāj mans dzīvoklis! Tu esi, pirms es tev atļāvu, nodevies miesas grēkam, tu esi...”

“Bijis laimīgs!” Ādams smaidīja.

“Tev vairs nav vietas...”

“Tavā namā!”

“Tava sieva...”

“Dzemdēs ar sāpēm... Un prieku, jo mēs abi to vēlamies! Sāpes un prieks iet roku rokā. Apmierinātība un prieks ir nāve pirms nāves!” Ādams piecēlās, lai ietu.

“Tu zaīmo! Lai tavi bērni...” Kļiedza Gotlībs.

“Mīl un cieš!”

“Lai...”

Ādams vairs neklausījās, viņš izgāja dārzā, paņēma savu sievu pie rokas un izgāja pasaulē, bet pie vārtiem viņus sagaidīja sieviete un kautrīgi teica:

“Kad jums reiz ir mājas – nolieciet zalktim trauciņu piena...”

Guntis Zariņš.

Exercise 229b

Conjugate in the four tenses of the conjunctive mood: *aplīkt; pastaigāt; pagatavot; noskurināties; satvert; nobīties; padzīt; piekļauties; nosvīst; izkāpt; pastiepties; iekosties; uzņemt; grēkot; nodoties; zaīmot.*

¹ One would have expected *ar daudz... selerijas*. However, the analogy of the three plural nouns, whose case is determined by the preposition *ar* and not the adverb of quantity *daudz*, has here countered the normally reverse situation expected in the case of a singular noun.

² Translate *whatever words*...

³ See note (2) to the Virza text in lesson 218.

Exercise 229c

Translate into English:

1. Krusttēvs negribēja, ka mēs nākam pirms astoņiem, jo tad viņš vēl nebūšot atgriezies no pilsētas.
2. Vai, vai, kas man jādzird! Mūsu Aija, šī kautrīgā meitene, tagad esot nodevusies visādiem grēkiem?
3. Ak tā? Es esot pārāk ilgi runājis un klausītājos garlaikojis?
4. Es dzirdu, ka Pēteris esot noskūpstījis Gunu, vai tas tiesa?
5. Māsīca ļoti priecājusies par skaisto dāvanu.
6. Ja viņš neatgriezīšoties pēc diviem gadiem, Guste jau būšot apprecējusi kādu citu.
7. Ieva lika paziņot, lai jūs nenākat pēc vakariņām, jo viņa tad jau būšot aizgājusi.
8. Mežsargs nupat stāstīja, ka barons nomiris.
9. Juris esot bijis ļoti slīms, vai tu to zināji? – Tur nav ko brīnīties, jo viņš, sakarsis un nosvīdis, esot ieniris aukstā ūdenī.
10. Ko, es esot viņam aplikusi rokas ap kaklu? Nē, tiesneša kungs, šis cilvēks melo!
11. Ernests sacīja, ka mēs viņu varot saukt par muļķi un nīkuli, ja viņš līdz balles beigām nebūšot noskūpstījis Birutu.
12. Klau, šeit esot bijuši ienaidnieka karavīri!
13. Jūs esot studējis Berlīnē, vai tas tiesa?
14. Ja viņš neatnāksot līdz septiņiem, viņš būšot nokavējis vilcienu.
15. Kaimiņš saka, ka viņa aizgājusi uz veikalu, bet drīz pārnāksot.

Exercise 229d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Next month, I hear, she will have been divorced for two years.
2. They say that the former king has died as a beggar.
3. He said that in fifty years he would be dead.
4. It is said that the police officer himself has kept the gems which he found in the thief's house.
5. He said that it was now too late to go to the theatre, for the play would have started long ago.
6. She is said to have become frightened when John seized her arm.
7. By that time she would have finished washing the laundry.
8. He is said to have been a great drunkard in his youth.
9. I heard that they had driven away their degenerate daughter.

10. The ancient Greeks are said to have believed in immortality.
11. He says that he has been stretching a lot, and that his back is aching.
12. According to the teacher, he had not been at school.
13. She says that she has not met Peter for a whole week.
14. They say that he has told the court everything.
15. It is said that you nearly failed the examination.

LESSON 230

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD: DEBITIVE FORMS

To transform an indicative debitive into a conjunctive debitive, we simply substitute *esot* for *ir* and *bija*, *būšot* for *būs* and *būtu*.

Compare the following indicative and conjunctive debitives:

Indicative Debitive

man (ir) jāgaida
man bija jāgaida
mums (ir) jāatbild
mums bija jāatbild

tev būs jādzied
tev būtu jādzied
jums būs jāiet
jums būtu jāiet

viņam ir bijis jāaizbrauc
viņam bija bijis jāaizbrauc
viņām būs bijis jāiet kājām
viņām būtu bijis jāiet kājām

Conjunctive Debitive

man esot jāgaida
man esot jāgaida
mums esot jāatbild
mums esot jāatbild

tev būšot jādzied
tev būšot jādzied
jums būšot jāiet
jums būšot jāiet

viņam esot bijis jāaizbrauc
viņam esot bijis jāaizbrauc
viņām būšot bijis jāiet kājām
viņām būšot bijis jāiet kājām

As an alternative to *mums esot jāatbild* and *man esot jāgaida*, one can say *mums jāatbildot* and *man jāgaidot*, i.e., with suppression of the auxiliary, the conjunctive mood sign being preserved by attaching it to the debitive element itself. In this respect, remember the irregular debitive of *būt*: in the conjunctive the alternative forms are *man esot jābūt* and *man jābūtot*.

Vocabulary

<i>vērdiņš</i>	farthing
<i>pirtnieks</i>	bath-house attendant
<i>Ansis</i>	masculine name
<i>suta</i>	vapour, steam
<i>skotēle</i>	large, heavy apron
<i>tupēle</i>	slipper
<i>koka tupēle</i>	clog
<i>uzcītīgs</i>	assiduous, industrious
<i>apīlt (-tinu, -tinu)</i>	to twine around; here = to cover
<i>godbijīgs</i>	respectful, reverent
<i>uzmanīgs</i>	attentive
<i>žēloties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to complain
<i>stundām</i>	for hours
<i>atcerēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to remember
<i>Laime</i>	happiness; here = good fairy
<i>noputēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to become dusty
<i>izdallt (-u, -lju)</i>	to distribute, share out
<i>varš</i>	copper
<i>kule</i>	pocket, bag
<i>ī!</i>	indeed!
<i>lukturis</i>	candlestick, lantern
<i>svēce</i>	candle, taper
<i>liellīties (-os, -ljos)</i>	to boast
<i>pārņest (-ņesu, -ņesu)</i>	to carry home
<i>maiznīca</i>	baker's shop
<i>kriņģēris</i>	cracknel
<i>patlaban</i>	right now; just then
<i>ceplis</i>	oven; kiln
<i>panna</i>	(frying) pan; here = tray
<i>atteikt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to answer, reply
<i>skrēdāt (-ā, -āja)</i>	to crackle
<i>knikšķēt (-, -ēja)</i>	to crackle
<i>tveice</i>	heat
<i>izsalkt (-kstu, -ku)</i>	to get hungry
<i>čukstēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to whisper
<i>rags</i>	horn; here = corner (of the cracknel)

NOTE: *Patlaban* is stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 220–228.

Exercise 230a

Translate into English:

Pirtnieks Ansis stāvēja sutā kails un ar roku slaucīja acis un pieri, no kuŗas pilēja lielas sviedru lāses. Ādas skotele viņam bija priekšā un kailās sarkanās kājas koka tupelēs. Visu dienu viņš bija uzcītīgi berzis un locījis, un neviens viņam nekā nebija devis.

“Šodien, mīļais, man priekš tevis nekā nav.”

“Paldies, līdz nākošai reizei.”

Tā šķīrās no viņa kungi, kuriem viņš, aptinis savus cietos pirkstus mīkstām baltām putām, visu dienu godbijīgi un uzmanīgi bija berzis muguru. Bet pirtnieks neželējās un gaidīja. Viņš zināja, ka šad un tad uz svētkiem, kad balts eņģelis stundām salst ārā un klauvē pie viscietākām sirdīm, lai viņu ielaiž, – arī viņu atcerēsies. Viņš bija pacietīgs un prata gaidīt, kad nesteigdamās atnāca viņa mazā Laime, kuŗa noputējušām kājām staigāja gar nabaga ļaužu durvīm, izdalīdama savas mazās dāvanīņas.

Ansis piegāja pie apsvīdušā spoguļa, lai paskatītos savās sarkanajās acīs, viņš piepeši ieraudzīja uz spoguļa malas zaļu vaŗa vērđīpu.

“Mana māte arvien teica: ‘Kas labāks par uti, to paņem līdz,’” pirtnieks nodomāja un iebāza vērđīpu kabatā.

“Lai¹ maza, bet laime,” pirtnieks, uz māju iedams, domāja un aptaustīja vērđīpu kulē.

“Bet ko es darītu, ja es atrastu zelta gabalu tik lielu kā tas mēness?” viņš runāja pats ar sevi, skatīdamies mēnesī, kas spoŗš un apaļš karājās pār tumšiem namu jumtiem.

“Muļķa Ansi,” mēness teica, “tu jau sen mani esi atradis. Vai es tev nespīdu kā tīrākais zelts?”

“I, tu spīdi gan, bet nesildi. Bet ja man būtu zelta gabals tik liels kā tu, es gan zinu, ko darītu. Es uzceltu savai mātei siltu priezu istabiņu ar sarkanu skursteni uz jumta. Tad pa vakariem viņai nebūtu jāsed² tumsā. Tur vaŗa lukturōs degtu augstas baltas sveces kā mācītāja mājā un nekad netrūktu sāls un maizes. . . Ko³ tu tur lielies ar savu zeltu? No vakara⁴ tu nāc vēlu augšā, un tad paskaties tikai pa augšas rūti un aizlien pie savām zvaigznēm. . . Bet ko es šovakar lai pārnesu mājā?”

Viņš apstājās pret maiznīcu ar lielu kliņģeri uz durvīm. “Tur arvien par vērđīpu var kaut ko dabūt.” Viņš iegāja maiznīcā.

Maiznieks patlaban kāpa augšā no cepļa pagraba ar brūnu kliņģerīšu pannu uz galvas.

“Cik maksā?” pirtnieks prasīja.

“Par vērđīpu divi,” maiznieks atteica un izlaida kliņģerīšus uz galda. Viņi vēl skrēdāja knikšķēdami, un pār viņiem vēl dvaŗoja krāsns tveice. Ansis paņēma divus un uzlika vērđīpu uz galda. Iedams viņš vienu sāka ēst – viņš

bija ļoti izsalcis. Bet kad viņš ar to bija galā, viņam vēl stiprāk sāka gribēties ēst, un otrs kliņģerītis tik silts gulēja kabatā un čukstēja:

“Apēd mani, apēd!”

“Nevaru. Es tevi nesu mātei.”

“Nu, nolauz tik radziņu, mātei jau vēl paliks.”

Kārlis Skalbe, from *Pasaka par vērđīpu*.

Exercise 230b

Translate into Latvian:

1. They say we must listen. (2 ways)
2. He had to leave, so he says.
3. She says she will have to get divorced.
4. The teacher said you ought to work harder.
5. According to her father, she has had to work seven days a week.
6. He said he had had to break the window.
7. He says he will have had to travel a thousand miles by Monday.
8. It is said that she ought to have married someone else.
9. They say that apprentices must work long hours. (2 ways)
10. They say they had to retreat.
11. They say that you will have to settle your debts.
12. It is said that you ought to shave more often.
13. The teacher says he has had to punish the whole class.
14. He said that he had had to beg in the streets.
15. He says that we shall have to sell the house before Christmas.
16. They say he ought not to have fought.
17. We are supposed to obey the colonel. (2 ways)
18. It is said they had to go on foot.
19. She thinks she will have to get married.
20. They say that we ought to be rejoicing.
21. According to Eve, Biruta will have had to wash all the plates.
22. John said he would have had to buy a new house.
23. They say that they have had to rehearse ten times this week.
24. They said that they had had to ask ten people.
25. He says that this scene must be shortened. (2 ways)

¹ = *lai gan*. For the following *bet* see note (2) to the Virza text in lesson 218.

² See note (1) to the Virza text in lesson 218.

³ = *kāpēc*.

⁴ cf. *no rīta*.

26. They say they had to write thousands of invitations.
27. He says that I shall have to drive the car.
28. Eve says she ought to get a higher salary.
29. They say they have had to be silent too often.
30. They said they had had to swim across the river.
31. Before evening, he says, the enemy will have had to retreat.
32. She says that he ought not to have kissed her.

Exercise 230c

Conjugate in the four tenses of the conjunctive mood: *žēloties; atcerēties; izdallt; liellties; atteikt; izsalkt; priecāties.*

Exercise 230d

Translate into English:

1. Ārsts teica, ka Ansim pēc operācijas kādu laiku būšot jāstaigā mīkstās tupelēs.
2. Kad viesi deviņos vēl nebija ieradušies, nama māte teica, ka viņiem laikam būšot bijis jānāk kājām no stacijas.
3. Mežsargs teica, ka mums mežā esot jābūt uzmanīgiem, jo tur esot izsalkuši vilki un lāči.
4. Skolotājam esot bijis jāžēlojas par tevi.
5. Viņai katra dziesma būšot jāatkārto, dziedātāja lielījās pirms koncerta.
6. Ko, man esot bijis jāiet uz maiznīcu pēc tortes un kļiņģeriem? Es par to nekā nezināju!
7. Zobārsts saka, ka jums būšot drusku jāpagaida.
8. Ja sargs viņam nebūtu iedevis lukturi un sveci, viņam būtu bijis stundām jāsež tumsā.
9. Tagad es atceros, ka mums būtu bijis jābrauc pa citu ceļu.
10. Es tagad nevaru saukt māsiņu (here = *nursing sister*) pie tālruņa, viņai patlaban jāizdalot slimniekiem brokastis.
11. Rītu mums jāstrādā stundu ilgāk, teica inženieris, bet par to mums labi samaksāšot.
12. Tēvam pārnākot mājās, bērniem esot jāčukst, jo viņš neciešot ne mazākā trokšņa.
13. Pēc profesora domām, tev būšot jāmacās vēl uzclītīgāk.
14. Viņam esot bijis ilgi jāmocās pirms nāves.
15. Biruta sacīja, ka Jānim nebūšot bijis drosmes viņu noskūpstīt.

Exercise 230e

Translate into Latvian:

1. The bath-house attendant is said to have to work in this vapour for hours.
2. They say that in his youth he had to save every farthing.
3. According to the baron, Ernest will have to walk the road with a beggar's bag on his shoulder if he does not work harder.
4. I remember that John said we would have had to go along the river.
5. They said that they had to wait.
6. Guste told us that Ansis had had to drive to the airport.
7. The boss said that we would not have to work in this heat.
8. Aha, I am supposed to carry the bag home then!
9. The conductor says you will have to sing more loudly in the big hall.
10. The pastor said that they would have to spend thousands of years in hell for their sins.
11. What? I was supposed to come at four o'clock?
12. She says she has no time now – she has to clean all the copper kettles.
13. The teacher said that we have to remember these important facts.
14. It is said that teachers have to be very patient.
15. He says that the enemy will have had to retreat before evening.

LESSON 231

CONJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

The conjunctive passive forms are very simply derived from the indicative passive: *tiekot* (*kļūstot, topot*) is used in place of *tieku, tiec, tiek, etc., and tiku, tiki, tika, etc.*, while *tikšot* is used in place of *tikšu, tiksi, tiks, etc., and tiktu*. Cf.

Es tieku apcietināts.

I am being arrested.

Es tiku apcietināts.

I was arrested.

Es tiekot apcietināts.

I am (was) being arrested, so they say.

Viņa tiks glābta.

She will be saved.

Viņa tiktu glābta.

She would be saved.

Viņa tikšot glābta.

She will (would) be saved, so they say.

Mēs esam (tikuši) brīdināti.

We have been warned.

Mēs bijām (tikuši) brīdināti.

We had been warned.

Mēs esot (tikuši) brīdināti.

We have (had) been warned, so they say.

<i>Viņi būs (tikuši) aizkavēti.</i>	They will have been delayed.
<i>Viņi būtu (tikuši) aizkavēti.</i>	They would have been delayed.
<i>Viņi būšot (tikuši) aizkavēti.</i>	They will (would) have been delayed, it is said.

Note that in the perfect tenses, the substitution is of the auxiliary, *esot* representing *esmu*, *esi*, *ir*, etc., and *biju*, *biji*, *bija*, etc., *būšot* representing *būšu*, *būsi*, *būs*, etc., and *būtu*.

Like the indicative passive, the conjunctive passive is not commonly used, active constructions being preferred. The above sentences would more commonly be rendered:

Mani apcietinot.
Viņu glābšot.
Viņi mūs esot brīdinājuši.
Kaut kas būšot viņus aizkavējis.

Vocabulary

<i>sānu ceļš</i> (more often <i>sānceļš</i>)	side-road
<i>nogriezties</i> (-žos, -zos)	to turn off (intrans.)
<i>nosnigt</i> (-snieg, -sniga)	to be snowed over
<i>cešs</i>	bush, shrub
<i>atraut</i> (-rauju, -rāvu)	to tear off, pull away
<i>uz leju</i>	= <i>leju</i>
<i>kustināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to move (trans.)
<i>vagulis</i> (more often <i>vagulis</i>)	beetle
<i>lodāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to crawl
<i>spieķis</i>	stick
<i>uzpūst</i> (-šu, -tu)	to blow
<i>lūkoties</i> (-ojos, -ojos) + loc. or uz + acc.	to look (at)
<i>raudzīties</i> (-gos, -dzļjos) + loc. or uz + acc.	to look (at)
<i>atspīdums</i>	reflection
<i>līmeņis</i>	horizontal plane, level; here = surface
<i>ievēties</i> (-vēļos, -vēļos)	to roll in (intrans.)
<i>dibens</i>	bottom
<i>mutulis</i>	bubble
<i>smieties</i> (<i>smējos</i> , <i>smējos</i>)	to laugh
<i>uz rēdzēšanos</i>	good-bye
<i>burbulis</i>	bubble

<i>mutuļot</i> (-o, -oja)	to bubble
<i>ēlle</i>	hell
<i>pakaļ</i> (postposition + dat. or as advb.)	after
<i>tukšums</i>	emptiness
<i>raust</i> (-šu, -su)	to amass
<i>devējs</i>	giver

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 126–150.

Exercise 231a

Translate into English:

Bagātais Ansis nogriezās pa sānu ceļu un nonāca skaistā gravā un atrada tur vientuļu avotu zem ziediem nosniguša ievas cera, kuŗš lēnā vējā nometa pa pārslai gaŗā zālē. Zili un dzeltenī tauriņi laidās no zieda uz ziedu, paši kā vēja atrauti ziedi. Visapkārt sīca un zibēja brūni, zili un zeltaini kukaiņi, zāli uz leju kustināja klusas, sīkas ūdens straumes kā mirdzoši sudraba vaguļi, kuŗi nemierīgi lodāja gar viņas saknēm.

Bagātais Ansis nolika cepuri un spieķi, un vējš uzpūta uz viņa pieres patīkamu miera sajūtu. "Nē, tiešām skaisti," viņš teica un noliecās lūkojās avotā. No skaidrā ūdens tam raudzījās pretī barga veča seja. Jā, tā bija viņa paša, Bagātā Anša, seja, tā viņam arvien bija labi patikusī. Un viņš izvilkā no kabatas laimīgo vērdu un smaidīdams rādīja to savai bildei ūdenī. Un atspīdums smaidīja viņam pretī un rādīja sarkanu vaŗa vērdu, kuŗš asi kvēloja uz avota mierīgā, zaļganā līmeņa.

Bagātais Ansis vēl nekad nebija bijis tik tuvu laimei kā šinī brīdī, bet taisnī šinī brīdī vērdu izkrita viņam no rokām un ievēlās ūdenī. Un avota dibenā uz baltā mutuļa, kas nerimstoši nāca no zemes augšā, šūpodamies pacēlās sarkans velniņš un smīdamies izplēta rokas.

"Uz redzēšanos, Ansi," viņš locīdamies smējās, un viņa vārdu nāca no avota dibena augšā kā sarkani burbuļi. "Nu es esmu tīrs un tu vari iet, man vairs tevī nevajaga. Viss, kas man bija virsū, nu ir pie tavām rokām. Redz,¹ kādu² tu mani esi noberzis sārdu! He, tu gan domāji, ka tu bijī kungs? He, he, he, kungs biju es, tu – mazgāji man muguru. Es zinu, Ansi, tu sapņoji reiz par lielu un laimīgu dzīvi, bet ko tu darīji? Ko tu darīji? Visu mūžu tu berzi nabaga velniņu. Tu gribēji būt kungs, bet bijī un paliki tikai pirtnieks, pirtnieks!..." avots mutuļoja un šņāca, un Ansis, bailēs drebēdams, atrāva seju.

Bet velniņš sārts un jauns atgriezās elles liesmās... Ansis izplēta rokas un gribēja skriet viņam pakaļ, bet viņam priekšā bija tikai sajaukts avots, no kuŗa nāca baŗa sēra smaka.

Kad Bagātais Ansis lēni vilkās uz māju, tam ausīs skanēja, it kā viņš būtu ar tukšu vidu.

Tā nobeidza viņš savu dzīvi ar tukšumu krūtīs. Viņa sirdi vairs neatrada jauna mīlestība, un pirkstus, kuņģi bija raduši tikai raust, vairs nespēja atlikt saldā devēja vara.

Kārlis Skalbe, from *Pasaka par vērdiņu*.

Exercise 231b

In lesson 230 you read the opening passage of Skalbe's *Pasaka par vērdiņu*, and in this lesson you read the concluding passage of the same story. Write in Latvian a synopsis of what might have happened in between.

Exercise 231c

Give the passive forms corresponding to:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Viņa sitot;</i> | 2. <i>mēs apcietināšot;</i> |
| 3. <i>viņas esot glābušas;</i> | 4. <i>jūs būšot apvainojuši;</i> |
| 5. <i>es piekrāpjot;</i> | 6. <i>tu slavēšot;</i> |
| 7. <i>jūs esot dzirdējušas;</i> | 8. <i>viņi būšot ievainojuši;</i> |
| 9. <i>jūs redzot;</i> | 10. <i>tu sodīšot.</i> |

Exercise 231d

Translate into English:

1. Ja ragana neatzišoties, teica tiesnesis, viņa tikšot sadedzināta.
2. Mēs braukšot pa sānceļu, pa kuru ļopi tiekot dzīti ganībās.
3. Ko, es esot ticis brīdināts? Tas nav tiesa!
4. Viņi laikam būšot aizkavēti, vai nogriezušies no galvenā ceļa, vai arī iestiguši muklajā gravā.
5. Mācītājs teica, ka tikai maza daļa ļaužu tikšot glābta, citi tikšot raidīti ellē.
6. Rītā, pulkvedis lielījās, ienaidnieks tikšot iztriekts no pilsētas.
7. Ko es dzirdu? Vairāki augsti virsnieki esot tikuši apcietināti?
8. Abi noziedznieki esot tikuši pakārti pils pagalmā.

¹ Here as an interjection, without *-i*.

² Translate 'how'. Cf. note (5) to the *Aspazija* text in lesson 226.

9. Bankas ierēdnis man stāstīja, ka katru gadu divi miljoni dolaru tiekot aizdoti uzņēmumiem.
10. Šīs vecās grāmatas tikšot sadedzinātas.
11. Guste tiekot kaitināta par to, ka viņa Ernestam skrienot pakaļ.
12. Rītā ap šo laiku visi baļķi būšot sazāģēti, un mēs varēšot sākt būvēt.
13. Katrs, kas nesmejojies par karaļa muļķīgajiem jokiem, tiekot apcietināts.
14. Liela kaste ar zeltu un dārgakmeņiem esot tikusi iemesta ezerā, un tagad ūdenslīdēji to meklējot ezera dibenā.
15. Viesnīcas pārzinis teica, ka viss tikšot darīts, lai viesiem būtu patīkama dzīve.

Exercise 231e

Rewrite (in Latvian) the sentences of Ex. 231d, substituting active constructions for all passive verbs.

Exercise 231f

Translate into Latvian:

1. Something is smelling terribly! What is it? – I heard that sulphur is being burnt near-by.
2. It is said that in the Middle Ages people were hanged for trifling crimes.
3. They say that in this school the children are beaten with sticks.
4. Next week the grass is supposed to be mown.
5. They have probably been swimming in the dangerous river again, although they are said to have been warned often.
6. The station-master (*stacijas priekšnieks*) says that the train has probably been delayed.
7. They say that only a few people were saved when the ship sank.
8. I heard that a fat ox will be slaughtered for the wedding.
9. Everybody who is on the street after sunset will be arrested, they say.
10. Only those who believe will be saved, the pastor said.
11. Aija said that she would no longer visit her relatives: she is only insulted there.
12. She told me that she no longer believes his sweet words: she has been deceived too often.
13. They say that a large new building is now being built in their street.
14. The police report that the stolen car has been found.
15. The tailor says that the buttons are sewn on with silk thread.

LESSON 232

THE ADJECTIVAL SUFFIX *-AINS*

In English adjectives can often be formed from nouns with the suffix *-y*, cf.:

stone/stony
mud/muddy
dust/dusty
water/watery
fog/foggy.

In Latvian this type of adjective is formed with the suffix *-ains*. We have already met the following:

<i>akmeņš</i>	stone	<i>akmeņains</i>	stony
<i>dubļi</i>	mud	<i>dubļains</i>	muddy
<i>putekļi</i>	dust	<i>putekļains</i>	dusty
<i>ūdeņš</i>	water	<i>ūdeņains</i>	watery
<i>migla</i>	fog	<i>miglains</i>	foggy

Notice the palatalized consonant in *akmeņains* and *ūdeņains*. Nouns which undergo palatalization of the final stem consonant at any place in their declension normally have the palatalized consonant also in the *-ains* adjective, if one can be formed. Alternatively, the *-ains* adjective can be regarded as being formed usually from the genitive plural of the noun, the ending *-u* being dropped. Once this principle has been established, the student should have no difficulty in recognizing *-ains* adjectives. A select list is given below.

<i>asins</i>	blood	<i>asiņains</i>	bloody
<i>caurums</i>	hole	<i>caurumains</i>	full of holes
<i>eļļa</i>	oil	<i>eļļains</i>	oily
<i>ēna</i>	shade	<i>ēnains</i>	shady
<i>kalns</i>	hill	<i>kalnains</i>	hilly
<i>kauls</i>	bone	<i>kaulains</i>	bony
<i>krēsla</i>	dusk	<i>krēslains</i>	dusky
<i>krūms</i>	bush	<i>krūmains</i>	bushy
<i>lapa</i>	leaf	<i>lapains</i>	leafy
<i>lēdus</i>	ice	<i>lēdains</i>	icy
<i>lietus</i>	rain	<i>lietains</i>	rainy
<i>mākonis</i>	cloud	<i>mākoņains</i>	cloudy
<i>miegš</i>	sleep	<i>miegains</i>	sleepy
<i>milti</i>	flour	<i>miltains</i>	floury

<i>paugurs</i>	hill	<i>paugurains</i>	hilly
<i>piens</i>	milk	<i>pienains</i>	milky
<i>puķe</i>	flower	<i>puķains</i>	flowery
<i>purvs</i>	swamp	<i>purvains</i>	swampy
<i>sapnis</i>	dream	<i>sapņains</i>	dreamy, dreamlike
<i>saule</i>	sun	<i>saulains</i>	sunny
<i>sudrabs</i>	silver	<i>sudrabains</i>	silvery
<i>sūna</i>	moss	<i>sūnains</i>	mossy
<i>troksnis</i>	noise	<i>trokšņains</i>	noisy
<i>vējš</i>	wind	<i>vējains</i>	windy
<i>vētra</i>	storm	<i>vētrainis</i>	stormy
<i>zāle</i>	grass	<i>zālains</i>	grassy
<i>ziepes</i>	soap	<i>ziepains</i>	soapy
<i>zvaigzne</i>	star	<i>zvaigžņains</i>	starry

Note that *saulains* and *zālains* are exceptions to the palatalization rule. While the form **sauļains* is not found, *zāļains* will be found on occasions. On the other hand, *ziepains* will occasionally be found for *ziepains*.

Vocabulary

<i>apvārsnis</i>	horizon
<i>kambaris</i>	room, chamber
<i>tikpat kā</i>	just as
<i>uzpēdām</i> (adv.)	for dessert
<i>iesēsties</i> (-žos, -dos)	to sit down (in)
<i>dobums</i>	cavity, hollow
<i>bēģele</i> (more often <i>bēģelis</i>)	window-sill
<i>Līza</i> (more often <i>Līze</i>)	feminine name
<i>ķēniņš</i>	king
<i>valdnieks</i>	ruler
<i>zēltot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to gild
<i>izrotājums</i>	adornment, decoration
<i>izjāt</i> (-jāju, -jāju)	to ride out, go riding
<i>kāpslis</i>	stirrup; carriage-step
<i>būris</i>	cage; here = howdah
<i>llksmlba</i>	joy, gaiety
<i>sulainis</i>	servant, footman
<i>apkalpot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to serve, wait upon
<i>rotaļa</i>	game
<i>rotaļu biedrs</i>	playmate

<i>izlasīt (-u, -īju)</i>	here = to choose, select
<i>smaids</i>	smile
<i>skarbs</i>	harsh, abrupt
<i>sāpīgs</i>	painful, distressing
<i>savilkt (-velku, -vilku)</i>	to contract, tighten (trans.)
<i>nabadzība</i>	poverty
<i>neņieka</i> (see notes)	nothing
<i>rotaļnieks</i>	playmate
<i>kavēšanās</i> (refl.)	delay
<i>attālināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to take away, remove to a distance
<i>pastaigāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to go for a walk
<i>nomaldīties (-os, -ījos)</i>	to get lost, lose one's way
<i>darbība</i>	activity, action
<i>vietā</i> (postposition + gen.)	instead of
<i>bars</i>	crowd; herd, flock
<i>izmeklēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to select, choose, pick out
<i>vēlti</i>	in vain
<i>ne arī</i>	not even; nor
<i>pavadonis</i>	attendant
<i>vaļa</i>	leisure, spare time; here = complete freedom
<i>mitēties (-ējos, -ējos)</i>	to cease, stop
<i>vis</i>	by no means, not at all
<i>galms</i>	court
<i>viens pats</i>	all alone
<i>cauri</i>	= <i>caur</i>
<i>ausma</i>	dawn, daybreak
<i>samiegoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to become sleepy, drowsy
<i>uzdrošināties (-os, -ājos)</i>	to dare
<i>pretoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i> (+ dat.)	to oppose, resist
<i>pavēle</i>	command, order
<i>atļaut (-u, -īju)</i>	to open
<i>slēdze</i>	lock
<i>aizšaut (-šauju, -šāvu)</i>	to bolt

NOTES: *Neņieka* is a genitive form, to which corresponds an accusative *neņieku*, but no nominative. It is stressed upon the second syllable, as is *tikpat*.

Vis requires a negative verb.

Exercise 232a

Translate into English:

Jaukā, bagātā diena pagājusi. Kad saule, tuvu apvārsnim, sarkana kvēlo mazā kambaļa logā, nāk vēl pats jaukākais brīdis, tikpat kā pēc gardas maltītes vēl uzēdām pats gardākais kumoss: grāmatas! Abas māsas iesēžas dziļajā loga dobumā, uz baltās bēģeles, un Līziņa lasa to brīnišķo teiku par Indijas ķēniņa dēlu.

"Tas bijis tālā, tālā Indijas zemē. Un tur bijis ķēniņš, varens un bagāts, pār plašām zemēm valdnieks. Tam ķēniņam bijis daudz bērnu, bet visi viņi miruši viens aiz otra kādā lielā sērgā, un palicis tikai viens, jaunākais dēls. Un ķēniņš nolēmis, ka šis dēls nekad nedrīkst redzēt ne vecumu, ne slimības, ne nāvi, un viņš līcis uzcelt varenu pili, baltu kā sniegs, debess ziliem, zeltotiem torņiem. Kā divpadsmit gredzenos pili ieslēguši divpadsmit dārzu¹ ar vārtiem viens pret otru stāvošiem un visādos dārgos izrotājumos mirdzošiem kā saules. Šie dārzi bijuši kā paradīzes dārzi, ar kokiem, kas savas galotnes līdz mākoņiem snieguši, ar puķēm, tik lielām kā cilvēka galvas, ar brīnišķiem putniem un tauriņiem, kuŗu spārni mirdzējuši visādās varavīksnes krāsās. Katru dienu ķēniņdēls izjājis uz balta ziloņa ar zelta kāpšļiem, sēdēdams zelta būrītī. Caur visiem vārtiem, vistālākajos dārzos tas drīkstējies jāt, tikai caur divpadsmitajiem vārtiem vairs ne. Pilī valdījusi mūžīga liksmība: no rīta līdz vakaram smieklī un dejas. Divpadsmit sulaiņi dienu un nakti apkalpojuši ķēniņdēlu, un divpadsmit rotaļu biedri arvien bijuši viņa tuvumā. Tie bijuši izlasīti visskaistākie un veselīgākie jaunekļi no visām lielā ķēniņa valstīm. Neviens ķēniņdēlam nedrīkstējies tuvoties citādi, kā tikai ar smaidiem sejā. Pilī nav dzirdēts neviens ļauns, saīdzis vai skarbs vārds, ne arī redzēts sāpīgi savilkts vaigs. Ka pasaulē ir arī nabadzība, slimība vai pat nāve, no tā² ķēniņdēls nezināja neņieka.

Bet kādā dienā piepeši saslīmis ķēniņdēla mīļākais rotaļnieks. Bez kavēšanās viņu attālināja no pils, un viņš tai pašā dienā nomiris. Bet ķēniņdēlam melojuši, ka tas izgājis pastaigāties divpadsmitajā dārzā un laikam tur nomaldījies.

Ķēniņdēls bez miega un darbības dienu un nakti gaidījis pārnākam savu rotaļnieku. Bet tā vietā viņam atveduši baru citu jaunekļu. Vēl apburošāku un skaistāku nekā zudušais, lai viņš sev izmeklētu jaunu biedru. Tomēr ķēniņdēls visus tos atraidījis. Mīļā biedra vietā viņš nevēlējies neviena cita. Jo ilgāk viņš velti gaidījis zudušo, jo karstākas kļuvušas viņa ilgas pēc tā, jo asākas viņa žēlabas. Ne deju, ne dziesmu, ne smieklu tas vairs gribējies dzirdēt, ne arī pats vairs smaidījis. Bez pavadoniem tas klīdis pa dārzjiem. Ķēniņš ļāvis tam vaļu, cerēdams, ka viņa sēras drīz mitēsies. Bet tas nebijis vis tā. Ķēniņa dēls tik palicis kluss un ne ar vienu vairs nerunājis. Un kādu nakti, kad visi sulaiņi un galma ļaudis bijuši iemīguši, ķēniņdēls viens pats piecēlies, izgājis cauri visiem sargiem, visiem dārzjiem un ar rīta ausmu iznācis pie divpadsmitajiem

vārtiem. Samiegojušies sargi neuzdrošinājušies pretoties ķēniņdēla pavēlei, kad tas tik pēkšņi parādījies viņu priekšā un licis attaisīt smagās slēdzes un aizšaujamās, un izlaist to caur vārtiem.

Anna Brigadere, from *Dievs, daba, darbs*.

Exercise 232b

Form *-ains* adjectives from: *ūdens; migla; zvaigzne; zāle; asins; lapa; ledus; putekļi; sapnis; saule; troksnis; ēna; purvs; eļļa; mākonis*.

Exercise 232c

Translate into English:

1. Šveices siers ir caurumains.
2. Pastaigājoties ēnainajā parkā, sapņainais dzejnieks esot atkal nomaldījies.
3. Šīnī paugurainajā apgabalā 1915. gadā esot bijušas sīvas, asiņainas ciņas.
4. Nu Jurīt, vai tev vēl nenāk miegs? Tavs rotaļu biedrs ir jau pavisam miegains.
5. Laiks tur esot vētrains un mākoņains, Līzīte raksta, un viņai esot ilgās pēc saulainās Austrālijas.
6. Lūdzu, neaiztiec miltaino maisu ar savām tīrajām rociņām, Līzīt!
7. Šī sēpu suga aug tikai sūnainās vietās, bet purvainās pļavās tu tās neatradīsi.
8. Eiropietis nevar izprast ķīniešu puķaino valodu.
9. Mana sieva, kura sver gandrīz simts kilogramu, esot bijusi kaulaina meitene, tieva kā diedziņš.
10. Galma kungs (= *courtier*) un viņa pavadonis velti mēģināja mierināt trokšņaino ļaužu baru, bet, tikko pats ķēniņš parādījās pie loga, ļaudis tūliņ apklusā.
11. Anglija nemaz neesot tik vējaina, miglaina un lietaina, kā austrālieši domā.
12. Ap šo krēslaino stundu troksnis visās darbnīcās mitējas, un visur valda miers.
13. Patlaban mēs tuvojamies krūmainajai ielejai, kur naktīs trakojot jodi un murgi.
14. Kā tu vari gulēt šai ledainajā kambarī?

¹ The numerals ending in *-padsmit*, i.e., from 11 to 19, may, like the round tens, be followed by the genitive plural, but this is becoming less and less common.

² = *par to*.

Exercise 232d

Translate into Latvian:

1. Līze is said to have marvellous, dreamy eyes.
2. In the Middle Ages, a certain ruler is said to have selected a spot in this mountainous area for (dat.) his castle.
3. As far as the very horizon one can see grassy pastures.
4. The water must be soapy.
5. The gaiety and singing continued under the starry sky.
6. Is that watery milk or milky water?
7. In the leafy oak tree many creatures find shelter. There are birds and squirrels, beetles and lizards, moths and thousands of ants.
8. In the cage there is a sleepy parrot.
9. Instead of the courtier, a bony old footman opened the door for the king.
10. I have no time to talk to this dreamy poet.
11. In the mountainous places the enemy is said to have resisted longer.
12. We do not go riding on rainy days.
13. In the noisy inn, gaiety and laughter reigned.
14. Let us get up and leave, for those sleepy waiters are serving far too slowly.

LESSON 233

THE ADJECTIVAL SUFFIX *-ISKS*

The Latvian adjectival suffix *-isks* often corresponds to the English suffixes *-ic, -ical*:

<i>vēsture</i>	history	<i>vēsturisks</i>	historical
<i>dzeja</i>	poetry	<i>dzejisks</i>	poetic

It is very often attached to words of foreign origin:

<i>akadēmisks</i>	academic
<i>alkoholisks</i>	alcoholic
<i>klasisks</i>	classical
<i>komisks</i>	comical
<i>lirisks</i>	lyrical
<i>loģisks</i>	logical
<i>magnētisks</i>	magnetic
<i>mētrisks</i>	metric

<i>poētisks</i>	poetic
<i>ritmisks</i>	rhythmic
<i>romantisks</i>	romantic
<i>skeptisks</i>	sceptical
<i>tehnisks</i>	technical
<i>tropisks</i>	tropical

In the foreign words listed above, every *o* is monophthongal.

At other times, however, *-isks* corresponds to the English suffixes *-al*, *-ual*, *-ial*:

<i>burts</i>	letter	<i>burtisks</i>	literal
<i>fakts</i>	fact	<i>faktisks</i>	factual
<i>karalis</i>	king	<i>karalisks</i>	royal
<i>lops</i>	beast	<i>lopisks</i>	bestial
<i>tiesa</i>	law court	<i>tiesisks</i>	lawful, legal
<i>zvērs</i>	beast	<i>zvērisks</i>	bestial

Vocabulary

<i>izsalkums</i>	hunger
<i>būda</i>	hut, hovel
<i>skranda</i>	rag, tatter
<i>ceļa jūtis</i> (f. pl.)	here = cross-roads
<i>bagātība</i>	riches, wealth
<i>mirklis</i>	= <i>acumirklis</i>
<i>pārtraukt</i> (- <i>cu</i> , - <i>cu</i>)	to interrupt
<i>vāšains</i>	covered in sores
<i>pēdīgais</i> (f. - <i>ā</i>)	here = the lowest
<i>būt ar mieru</i> (+ inf.)	to be agreeable to
<i>gāzt</i> (<i>gāž</i> , <i>gāza</i>)	(of rain) to pour
<i>šaudīties</i> (- <i>os</i> , - <i>ļjos</i>)	to dart; here = to flash
<i>kurēties</i> (- <i>as</i> , - <i>ējās</i>)	to be alight, ablaze
<i>vienās liesmās</i> (see note)	in one enormous sheet of flame
<i>aurot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to roar, howl
<i>plēšīgs zvērs</i>	beast of prey
<i>sarežzēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to distinguish, make out

NOTE: On *vienās liesmās* see lesson 242.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 223–231.

Exercise 233a

Translate into English:

Ķēniņdēls nu gājis, gājis. Aiz viņa nozudusi pils ar divpadsmit torņiem, divpadsmit dārziem un divpadsmit vārtiem, bet viņš vairs nedomājis¹ iet atpakaļ, tikai uz priekšu. Saule briesmīgi dedzinājusi, viņu mocījušas slāpes un izsalkums. Ceļa malā bijuši atstāti ciemi, nabadzīgas, pussagruvušas būdas, bet neviena cilvēka, – lielas sērgas un bads bija postījuši zemi un cilvēkus. Vēlu, pret vakaru, tas ieraudzījis sēžam ceļa malā vecu, vecu vīru, skrandās tērptu un vātīm apklātu. Ķēniņdēls, kas vēl nekad nebija redzējis nabadzību, vecumu un slimību, palicis vecā vīra priekšā stāvēt, šaubīdamies un brīnīdamies, vai tas ir cilvēks, vai tikai kāds cilvēkam līdzīgs radījums. Bet vecais vīrs teicis: “Esi sveicināts, ak ķēniņdēls! Es tevi jau gaidu kā no² rīta ausmas. Tu esi tagad pie ceļa jūtīm. Aiz tevis ir bagātība, laime, prieks, gods un slava. Griezies atpakaļ, un pēc Īsa brīža tu būsi atkal sava tēva pilī, un būs tā, it kā tu tikai būtu vienu mirkli nomaldījies un rītu tu to jau būsi aizmirsis. Arī savu rotaļu biedru tu būsi aizmirsis, it kā tu to nekad nebūtu redzējis. Nekādas sāpes un nekādas bēdas par viņu tevi vairs nemocīs, un tu dzīvoši kā līdz šim, nepārtrauktā mierā un laimē.” Tā runāja vecais, vāšainais vīrs ceļa malā. Bet ķēniņdēls negribēja vairs iet atpakaļ, tikai uz priekšu. Ko līdzējusi bagātība, prieks, laime un slava, kad tie nav vairs varējuši viņam atdot mīļo rotaļu biedru un neviens pilī nav zinājis pateikt, kurp viņš aizgājis. “Labi, – ja tu gribi nākt ar mani, tad tu mācīsies saprast un zināsi, kurp aizgājis tavs rotaļu biedrs,” teicis ubags. “Tikai tad tu vairs nebūsi ķēniņdēls, bet līdzīgs man, kas esmu pēdīgais ubags tava tēva valstī. Kurp mēs iesim, mums nāks pretī nabadzība, ciešanas un visas pasaules posts un ļaunums; ja tu esi ar mieru to visu saņemt, tad nāc!”

Lai ir kas būdams, man vajaga visu zināt, domājis ķēniņdēls un gājis ar veco ubagu. Uznākusi tumša nakts un briesmīgs negaiss. Viņi iegājuši dziļā mežā. Lietus gāzis, pērkonis grāvis, un zibepi šaudījušies tik bieži, it kā viss mežs kurētos vienās liesmās, bet viņi tik gājuši un gājuši. Visapkārt aurojuši plēšīgi zvēri – –”

Vai Līziņa tiešām to lasa no grāmatas, vai stāsta pati saviem vārdiem, nevar vairs labi zināt, jo nevar pat vairs saredzēt burtu rindas. Saule nogājusi, un gaisma lodziņā ātri dziest, bet uguns dedzamais laiks vakaros jau ir beidzies ar pavasara sākumu. Tai vietā stāstā, kur nāk “plēšīgie zvēri,” Līziņa aizsīt grāmatu un nolēc no loga.

Anna Brigadere, from *Dievs, daba, darbs*.

¹ Where the auxiliary is omitted in perfect tenses, the participle itself must carry the negation. Normally of course, the negation is attached to the auxiliary.

² Translate ‘ever since’ . . .

Exercise 233b

Translate into English:

1. Anglijā nelieto metriskos svarus.
2. Es šimī stāstā nesaredzu nekādu loģisku slēdzienu.
3. Ar zvēriskiem kļiedzieniem mežoni izskrēja no savām zaru būdām.
4. Inženieris bija diezgan skeptisks par manām tehniskajām zināšanām.
5. Mēs visi brīnījāties, ka cilvēkam, kas nav baudījis akadēmisku izglītību, ir tik plašas zināšanas klasiskajā dzejā.
6. Vai lirisks dzejolis var būt komisks?
7. Tropiskos mežos dzīvo plēsīgi zvēri jeb plēsoņas.
8. Mūsu pilsētā trīs nedēļas valdīja tropisks karstums.
9. Čūska ir kurla, tā nemaz nedzird stabuli; tā tikai seko ubaga ritmiskajām kustībām.
10. Viņa poētiskais gars redz visu pasauli un visus radījumus romantiskā gaismā.
11. Vai dzintaram ir magnētisks spēks?
12. Kāpēc ķēniņdēls atstāja karalisko pili?
13. Mūsu zemē cilvēku nevar apcietināt bez tiesiska iemesla.
14. Vai tu runā par faktisku notikumu?
15. Vai šim cilvēkam var piedot viņa lopisko izturēšanos?
16. Kādus alkoholiskus dzērienus šeit var dabūt?

Exercise 233c

Translate into Latvian:

1. Nowhere does classical ballet flourish as in Russia.
2. The play is not funny; it is serious.
3. I do not expect a literal translation, for lyrical poetry cannot be translated literally.
4. Women have no logical thoughts: they are romantic creatures! – Who taught you such nonsense? Haven't you heard of women with a high academic education?
5. A policeman may not enter your flat without a lawful reason.
6. Tropical plants are said to grow here only in hot-houses.
7. How will you convince the sceptical listeners that the bridge did not collapse because of a technical fault?
8. This is a simple rhythmic dance.
9. These people covered in sores have a serious tropical disease.
10. The doctor has forbidden you alcoholic drinks.

11. I am an officer of the Royal Navy.
12. We have no doubts about his technical knowledge, but we are looking for a younger man.
13. The boy was squatting in the apple-barrel, listening to the conversation of the robbers.
14. We loaded eight thousand metric tons of wheat, and the ship was still not fully loaded.

LESSON 234

THE ADJECTIVAL SUFFIX *-īgs*

It is quite impossible to relate the suffix *-īgs* to any single English suffix: the list of examples given here can do no more than provide a representative sample.

<i>acumirkklis</i>	moment	<i>acumirklīgs</i>	momentary
<i>atbilde</i>	answer	<i>atbildīgs</i>	answerable, responsible
<i>bailes</i>	fear	<i>bailīgs</i>	timorous, fearful
<i>brālis</i>	brother	<i>brālīgs</i>	brotherly, fraternal
<i>darbs</i>	work	<i>darbīgs</i>	active, busy
<i>doma</i>	thought	<i>domīgs</i>	thoughtful
<i>draugs</i>	friend	<i>draudzīgs</i>	friendly
<i>drosme</i>	courage	<i>drosmīgs</i>	courageous
<i>grēks</i>	sin	<i>grēcīgs</i>	sinful
<i>inde</i>	poison	<i>indīgs</i>	poisonous
<i>ķilda</i>	quarrel	<i>ķildīgs</i>	quarrelsome
<i>laiks</i>	time	<i>laicīgs</i>	temporal
<i>mežonis</i>	savage	<i>mežonīgs</i>	savage, ferocious
<i>mute</i>	mouth	<i>mutīgs</i>	talkative
<i>nauda</i>	money	<i>naudīgs</i>	rich, wealthy
<i>nāve</i>	death	<i>nāvīgs</i>	deadly
<i>raksturs</i>	character	<i>raksturīgs</i>	characteristic
<i>rūpes</i>	care, anxiety	<i>rūpīgs</i>	careful, provident
<i>sāpes</i>	pain	<i>sāpīgs</i>	painful
<i>sēras</i>	mourning	<i>sērīgs</i>	sad
<i>smieklī</i>	laughter	<i>smieklīgs</i>	ridiculous
<i>spēks</i>	power	<i>spēcīgs</i>	powerful
<i>steiga</i>	haste	<i>steidzīgs</i>	in a hurry

<i>uguns</i>	fire	<i>ugunīgs</i>	fiery
<i>valodas</i>	gossip	<i>valodīgs</i>	talkative
<i>varonis</i>	hero	<i>varonīgs</i>	heroic
<i>zaglis</i>	thief	<i>zaglīgs</i>	furtive, thievish

This suffix occurs frequently with compounded adjectives:

<i>augstprātīgs</i>	haughty
<i>augstsirdīgs</i>	magnanimous
<i>bēzdievīgs</i>	atheistic, godless
<i>bēzgalīgs</i>	endless
<i>caurspīdīgs</i>	transparent
<i>divpusīgs</i>	two-sided; ambiguous
<i>labdabīgs</i>	good-natured
<i>ļauņprātīgs</i>	malicious, malevolent
<i>maksātnešpējīgs</i>	insolvent
<i>pareizticīgs</i>	Orthodox
<i>pirmklasīgs</i>	first-class, excellent
<i>preļtikumīgs</i>	illegal, unlawful
<i>stūrgalvīgs</i>	stubborn, wilful, headstrong
<i>tālredzīgs</i>	far-sighted
<i>tamlīdzīgs</i>	similar
<i>vienbalsīgs</i>	unanimous
<i>žēlsirdīgs</i>	compassionate, merciful

Vocabulary

<i>tik . . . vien</i>	strengthened form of <i>tikai</i>
<i>apskaisties (-šos, -tos)</i>	to become angry
<i>kalts</i>	chisel
<i>iedurties (-duros, -dūros)</i>	to stick into (intrans.)
<i>Aloja</i>	a place name
<i>stabs</i>	post, pillar, column
<i>kauna stabs</i>	pillory
<i>dievkalpojums</i>	church service
<i>aube</i>	cap
<i>baznīcēns</i>	church-goer
<i>soģis</i>	here = executioner
<i>ala</i>	cave
<i>appušķot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to adorn, decorate
<i>nozibēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to flash

<i>aizvākt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to carry away
<i>izklīst (-stu, -du)</i>	to disperse (intrans.)
<i>notiesāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to condemn, sentence
<i>uzvest (-vēdu, -vēdu)</i>	to lead to (trans.)
<i>atjaunot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to renew, restore
<i>sataisīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to prepare
<i>salūgt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to invite
<i>satikt (-tieku, -tiku)</i>	to meet (trans.)
<i>viesos</i> (adv.)	out visiting

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 1–25.

Exercise 234a

Translate into English:

Gulbja dziesma.

Pasaules sākumā Dievs radījis putnus un katram piešķīris savu¹ balsi. Ar savām balsīm tie visi slavēja Dievu kā gudru radītāju, tik gulbis vien ne. **Tas** teicis, lai Dievs dodot² viņam tikpat jauku balsi kā lakstīgalai, tad gan viņš tam pateikšoties. Dievs par to apskaities un gulbim noņēmis visas dziesmas, tik atstādams vienu, ar kuru tas varētu apdziedāt savu nāvi pirms miršanas. Vēl tagad visu mūžu gulbis pavadot klusumā, bet īsi pirms miršanas dziedot savu nāves dziesmu.

Tautas teika.

Exercise 234b

Translate into English:

Kā kokiem zari radušies.

Dievam un Velnam bijušas lielas pļavas. Dievam bijis kaltiņš, bet Velnam bijusi izkaptis. Dievam bijusi jāpļauj zāle. Dievs paņēmis Velna izkapti un nopļāvis savu zāli. Velns brīnījies: kā Dievs ar kaltiņu varējis nopļaut zāli. Velns paņēmis Dieva kaltiņu un sviedis pa zāli. Kaltiņš iedūries kokā. Toreiz koki bijuši bez zariem. Tā no tā laika kokiem zari radušies.

Tautas teika.

¹ Does not here refer back to the subject. Translate 'a voice of his own'.

² The conjunctive is not uncommon after *lai*, particularly where this is dependent on a verb of saying, etc.

Exercise 234c

Translate into English:

Sodu vietas.

Vecos laikos, kā jau daudz vietās, arī pie Alojās baznīcas bija kauna stabs. Še tika pērti nosodītie iedzīvotāji. Pie kauna staba dažus arī kāra. Pirms kāršanas nosodītam zemniekam bija jāsed¹ trīs svētdienas pa dievkalpojuma laiku kauna krēslā ar sarkanu aubi galvā. Trešajā svētdienā viņš tika pakārtis visu baznīcēnu acu priekšā.

Dažus, kuri bija sodīti ar nāvi, veda pie Soģa kalna. Soģa kalns nav tālu no baznīcas. Te noteiktā dienā no Rīgas atbrauca soģis. Viņš novietojās kalna alā. Nolikta dienā alu appuškoja zaļumiem. Kad noziedznieks bij atvests alas priekšā, nozibēja zobens un viņš zaudēja galvu. Ļaudis paša soģa nekad neredzēja, tikai viņa sarkano mēteli. Soģis palika alā tik ilgi, kamēr beigto aizvāca un ļaudis izklīda. Tad pats savos ratos viņš aizbrauca.

Kādu reizi bijis notiesāts pakāršanai kāds nabadzīgs noziedznieks. Nolikta dienā pēc dievkalpojuma viņu uzveduši no baznīcas pie kauna staba. Viņš, būdams dievbijīgs, lūdzis atļauju Dievu pielūgt. To viņam arī atļāvuši. Pa viņa lūgšanas laiku uznākuši negaisa mākoņi un bijis pērkonā lietus. Stabs ticis nosperts. Nosodīto atlaiduši brīvībā. No tā laika vairs stabu neatjaunoja, un arī ļaudis vairs tā netika sodīti.

Tautas teika.

¹ See note (1) to the Virza text of lesson 218.

Exercise 234d

Translate into English:

Kādēļ gliemezis nes savu māju uz muguras.

Reiz zvēru ķēniņš sataisīja dzīres un salūdza visus zvērus. Visi sanāca, tikai gliemezis nebija.

Otrā¹ dienā ķēniņš satika gliemezi un prasīja, kādēļ viņš nebijis² dzīrēs. Gliemezis sacījis, ka mājās esot labāk nekā viesos. Zvēru ķēniņš palika dusmīgs un sacīja, lai gliemezis vienmēr nes savu māju sev uz muguras. No tā laika gliemezis nes savu māju uz muguras.

Tautas teika.

¹ i.e., the following day.

² See note (1) to the Brigadere text in lesson 233.

Exercise 234e

Translate into English:

1. Neesi nu tik bailīgs, ēd droši! Sēnes nav indīgas.
2. Jums jādzīvo brālīgi ar saviem kaimiņiem.
3. Mūsu baznīcēni nosoda laicīgas dziesmas dievkalpojumā, jo pēc viņu domām tās esot grēcīgas.
4. Naudīgi ļaudis parasti esot augstprātīgi.
5. Kā Juris varēja apprecēt tik ļaunprātīgu sievieti?
6. Ledus bija caurspīdīgs kā stikls.
7. Lai zibens nosper šo stūrgalvīgo vīru, kas tautai nesis bezgalīgu postu!
8. Meistars ir atbildīgs par pirmklasīgu, rūpīgu darbu.
9. Vēl deviņpadsmitajā gadu simtenī ķildīgas un mutīgas sievietes mēdza likt pie kauna staba.
10. Mežsargs ir labdabīgs, bet stūrgalvīgs vecis.
11. Dzirdot šo veco dziesmu, man radās sāpīgas un sērīgas atmiņas.
12. Pret nāvīgām gāzēm nelīdz ne drosmīga izturēšanās, ne arī varonīgs gars.
13. Jūsu jautājums ir divpusīgs, un es jums došu divpusīgu atbildi.
14. Guste mātās par žēlsirdīgo māsu (= *nursing sister*).
15. Kādas ir šīs sērgas raksturīgās pazīmes, ārsta kungs?

Exercise 234f

Translate into Latvian:

1. I was far-sighted enough not to expect a unanimous decision.
2. How can people live in this ferocious heat?
3. This motor is reputed to be more powerful than that one.
4. She is so talkative that people flee from her.
5. That was a fiery speech!
6. The shops have their busiest time before Christmas.
7. Don't disturb me now: I have to finish an urgent job.
8. You said the question was ridiculous, but now you have become quite thoughtful: it is not as easy as you thought, is it?
9. Don't worry about being insolvent: the shop-keeper is a magnanimous man – he will wait.
10. I know old Mr. Vītols – he would never do unlawful things.
11. Gypsies are said to be furtive.
12. While the chief is out visiting the pharmacist, I am responsible for the whole factory.
13. Did you have friendly relations with the late professor?
14. Slowly, slowly! If the chisel sticks too deeply into the wood, it will break.
15. After the church service, the congregation dispersed quickly.

LESSON 235

THE NOUN SUFFIX *-UMS*

A great many nouns are formed from the imperfect stem of verbs with the suffix *-ums*. Cf.

<i>aizdēvums</i>	loan (from <i>aizdot</i>)
<i>likums</i>	law (from <i>likt</i>)
<i>mēģinājums</i>	rehearsal (from <i>mēģināt</i>)

The following are also of this type:

<i>aicināt</i>	to invite	<i>aicinājums</i>	invitation
<i>art</i>	to plough	<i>arums</i>	ploughed field
<i>atkārtot</i>	to repeat	<i>atkārtojums</i>	repetition
<i>atklāt</i>	to discover	<i>atklājums</i>	discovery
<i>atrast</i>	to find	<i>atradums</i>	finding, discovery
<i>atrisināt</i>	to solve	<i>atrisinājums</i>	solution
<i>bildināt</i>	to propose	<i>bildinājums</i>	proposal (of marriage)
<i>brīdināt</i>	to warn	<i>brīdinājums</i>	warning
<i>briest</i>	to ripen	<i>briedums</i>	ripeness
<i>iegūt</i>	to acquire	<i>ieguvums</i>	acquisition
<i>krāt</i>	to collect	<i>krājums</i>	collection
<i>notikt</i>	to happen	<i>notikums</i>	event
<i>paskaidrot</i>	to explain	<i>paskaidrojums</i>	explanation
<i>sludināt</i>	to advertise	<i>sludinājums</i>	advertisement
<i>sollt</i>	to promise	<i>solljums</i>	promise
<i>turpināt</i>	to continue	<i>turpinājums</i>	continuation
<i>uzbrukt</i>	to attack	<i>uzbrukums</i>	attack, aggression
<i>vingrināt</i>	to exercise	<i>vingrinājums</i>	exercise
<i>zīmēt</i>	to draw	<i>zīmējums</i>	drawing, design

In the case of verbs of the Palatalized Type, *k* or *g* is substituted for the *c* or *dz* of the imperfect:

<i>aizliegt</i>	to forbid	<i>aizliegums</i>	prohibition, interdiction
<i>aplēnkt</i>	to surround, besiege	<i>aplēnkums</i>	siege
<i>sēgt</i>	to cover	<i>sēgums</i>	covering
<i>teikt</i>	to say	<i>teikums</i>	sentence

Often too nouns can be formed by adding *-ums* to the stem of adjectives: cf. *skaistums*, *klusums*, *dziļums*.

<i>ass</i>	sharp	<i>asums</i>	sharpness
<i>ātrs</i>	fast	<i>ātrums</i>	speed
<i>augsts</i>	high	<i>augstums</i>	height, altitude
<i>auksts</i>	cold	<i>aukstums</i>	coldness
<i>balts</i>	white	<i>baltums</i>	whiteness
<i>bāls</i>	pale	<i>bālums</i>	paleness
<i>bargs</i>	harsh	<i>bargums</i>	harshness
<i>daiļš</i>	beautiful	<i>daiļums</i>	beauty
<i>garš</i>	long, tall	<i>garums</i>	length, tallness
<i>grūts</i>	difficult	<i>grūtums</i>	difficulty
<i>kurlš</i>	deaf	<i>kurlums</i>	deafness
<i>liels</i>	big	<i>lielums</i>	size
<i>mēlns</i>	black	<i>mēlnums</i>	blackness
<i>skaļš</i>	loud	<i>skaļums</i>	loudness
<i>slinks</i>	lazy	<i>slinkums</i>	laziness
<i>smags</i>	heavy	<i>smagums</i>	weight
<i>svarīgs</i>	important	<i>svarīgums</i>	importance
<i>traks</i>	mad	<i>trakums</i>	madness
<i>viss</i>	all	<i>visums</i>	universe

and so on.

Vocabulary

<i>Mirdza</i>	feminine name
<i>smilšains</i>	sandy
<i>lielceļš</i>	highway
<i>kadiķis</i>	juniper
<i>samēst (-mētu, -mētu)</i>	to throw together
<i>uz labu laimi</i>	here = trust to luck
<i>pats pēdējais laiks</i>	not a moment too soon
<i>ievēlties (-vēļos, -vēļos)</i>	here = to appear, come into view
<i>jātnieks</i>	rider
<i>guļus (adv.)</i>	lying flat
<i>Lielauris</i>	a surname
<i>vēlēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.)</i>	here = to order
<i>Vairogs</i>	here = name of a horse
<i>sacelt (-cēļu, -cēļu)</i>	to lift; here = to prick up
<i>pakavs</i>	horse-shoe
<i>dipoņa</i>	stamping, trampling
<i>klusu</i>	= <i>klusām</i>

<i>bēris</i>	bay horse
<i>iezviegties (-dzos, -dzos)</i>	to neigh suddenly
<i>atčukstēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to answer in a whisper
<i>ķeša</i>	pocket
<i>rieciens</i>	slice
<i>labināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to wheedle, coax
<i>sadrupināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to crumble (trans.)
<i>iemaukti (pl.)</i>	bridle
<i>ošņāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to sniff
<i>bubināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to murmur; to neigh softly
<i>nomeklēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to search for
<i>azote, or azots (f.)</i>	breast, bosom; see note
<i>pēdīgi</i>	finally
<i>ieradums</i>	habit
<i>aizrauties (-raujos, -rāvos)</i>	to become fascinated, engrossed
<i>katrreiz</i>	each time, every time
<i>saost (-ožu, -odu)</i>	to smell, scent
<i>salēkties (-lēcos, -lēcos)</i>	to rear up
<i>mīnāties (-ājos, -ājos)</i>	to paw the ground
<i>komandēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to command, order
<i>ieurbties (-bjos, -bos)</i>	to bore a way into
<i>ilks (f.)</i>	shaft (of wagon, carriage, etc.)
<i>apklusināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to quieten, pacify, soothe, calm
<i>spalgs</i>	shrill, harsh
<i>iekrākties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to snort
<i>atdalīties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	to separate out, move apart (intr.)
<i>auļot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to gallop
<i>aizdīmt (-mst, -ma)</i>	(of noise) to recede into the distance
<i>kazaks</i>	Cossack
<i>ēk (interj.)</i>	look! look here!
<i>riskēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to risk
<i>sagriezt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to turn
<i>aizjājējs</i>	departing rider
<i>skriet cik vien jauda</i>	to run for all one is worth
<i>četurtdaļstunda</i>	quarter of an hour

NOTES: *Azote* or *azots* (f.) has *azotu* (unpalatalized) as genitive plural. It strictly speaking refers to the space inside a coat or shirt where one can easily place one's hand or other object.

Komandēt has foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 101–120.

Exercise 235a

Translate into English:

Lauks bija kails. Smilšainā, sausā zemē pat grāvju nebija. Tikai vienā vietā, netālu lielceļam,¹ puduris kadiķu krūmu, pie tiem samesta akmeņu kaudze.
– Turp, uz labu laimi!

Bija pats pēdējais laiks. Lielceļa līkumā ievēlās kā mākonis jātnieku pulks.

“Guļus, Mirdziņ, guļus!” Lielaurs vēlēja bērnam, pats izkāpa, saglauda Vairoga galvu, spieda to pie vaiga. Vairogs sacēla ausis. Pakavu dipona!

“Klusu, Vairog, klusu, manu bērīt!”

Kā tagad pasargāt, lai zirgs neiezviedzas un tos nenodod! Tas bija vissvarīgākais.

“Kad nu būtu maize,” Lielaurs klusu teica.

“Tēt, man ir maize,” priecīgi atčukstēja Mirdziņa. Viņa atcerējās, ka mētelīša ķešā tai riecieni, ko pirmīt iedevusi māte labināt lopus, ja tie negribētu klausīt.

Lielaurs paņēma maizi, sadrupināja to pa sava mēteļa un arī uzvalka ķešām, tad noņēma zirgam iemauktus, un nu tas sāka ošņādams un bubinādams ar savām mīkstajām lūpām nomeklēt saimnieka rokas un apgērību, gan aiz kakla, gan azotē un pēdīgi ķešās bāzdams savu mīksto purnu. Šī rotaļa bija vēl ieradums no maza kumeļa dienām, un Vairogs varēja ar to tā aizrauties katrreiz, ka ne redzēja ko vairs, ne dzirdēja.

Jātnieki tagad bija taisnā līnijā uz lielceļa. Viņu zirgi kaut ko saoda. Salēcās pēkšņi, mīnājās, griezās dancodami. Zviedza.

Jātnieki apstājās.

“Kas tur?” sauca no ceļa latviešu valodā. Un vēlreiz: “Kas tur?”

Lielaurs pazina šo balsi. Tā bija no muižas. Viņš visu saprata.

“Klusu, manu bērīt, klusu!”

“Šaujiet!” tā pati balss komandēja krievu valodā.

Vairāki šāvieni krita. Dažas lodes svilpa pāri, dažas nokrita netālu. Viena, spindzēdama kā bite, ieurbās kamanu ilksis.

Vairogs salēcās. Nebija vairs apklusināms. Spalgi iekrācās satrauktās šausmās.

“Šaujiet!” atkal pavēloši sauca no ceļa.

Lielaurs gaidīja. Kas bija nenovēršams, lai nāk.

Bet piepeši seši jātnieki atdalījās un auļoja prom. Pakavi aizdima. Tie bija kazaki. Viņi diezgan bija laupījuši un dzēruši, šonakt tie vairs negribēja.

Palika vēl divi uz ceļa.

“Ek, šo velnu dēļ es tak neiešu riskēt savu ādu,” viens no tiem teica vācu valodā... Tad abi sagrieza zirgus un laida citiem aizjājējiem pakaļ.

Palaidis zirgu, cik vien jauda skriet, Lielauris ceturtdaļstundu vēlāk iebrāuca savu māju pagalmā. Staltā dzīvojamā ēka dega pilnās liesmās, un tur nekas vairs nebija glābjams.

Anna Brigadere, from *Meitene Mirdza*.

Exercise 235b

Translate into English:

1. Mirdza atraidīja Jāņa bildinājumu ar lielu asumu un bargumu.
2. Sekojiet valdības aicinājumam un gādājiet par pārtikas krājumiem!
3. Uzbrukuma smagums vērsās pret mūsu pulku, bet uz lielceļa jau dzird pakavu dipoņu. Jātņieku pulks nāk mums palīgā.
4. Kāda lieluma kurpes jūs valkājat?
5. Kalnu augstumos aukstums ir daudz bargāks nekā ielejās.
6. Es negribu dzirdēt tavus paskaidrojumus! Tu esi lauzis savu solījumu, un ar to man pietiek.
7. Man ir interese par pasaules notikumiem un par atklājumiem zinātnes laukā, bet sludinājumus es nelasu.
8. Šo lielisko astoppadsmītā gadu simteņa zīmējumu kāds nabaga skolotājs esot atradis kaut kur bēniņos. – Tiešām? Kas par atradumu! Salīdziniet mākoņu baltumu ar arumu melnumu! Ievērojiet līniju asumu, tad jums šī atraduma svarīgums būs skaidrs. – Jā gan, mākslas galerija var būt lepna par šo ieguvumu.
9. Daiļuma dēļ sievietes mocās ar visādiem trakumiem.
10. Tas ir pēdējais brīdinājums. Ja jūs vēlreiz brauksit tādā ātrumā, jums draud cietuma sods.
11. Tagad mēteļa garums ir labs, pirmīt bija par īsu.
12. Augļi ir pašā briedumā.
13. Slimnieka sejas bālums mani sabiedēja.
14. Desmitos vakarā jūs varēsīt dzirdēt koncerta atkārtojumu pa radio.

Exercise 235c

Translate into Latvian:

1. You will find the continuation of this story on page 17.
2. He was dismissed for his laziness.
3. The loudness of the music is getting on my nerves.

¹ More often *netālu no lielceļa*.

4. Which famous composer ended his days (= *dzīve*) in total deafness?
5. Is the speed of lightning as fast as the speed of light?
6. What event are you talking about?
7. I shall keep my promise.
8. On which page did you see that advertisement?
9. In our country we are accustomed to the harshness of nature.
10. The universe is said to be limitless.
11. The first exercises were the most difficult.
12. At what altitude were the enemy planes flying when you attacked?
13. This is the most beautiful drawing in the whole collection.
14. The scientist had no idea of the importance of his discovery.
15. You ought to have sought an easier solution.

LESSON 236

THE NOUN SUFFIX *-IENS*

Nouns can often be formed from verbs by adding the noun suffix *-iens* to the imperfect stem. Cf.

<i>iet</i>		gājiens (procession)
<i>kliegt</i>		kliedziens (shout)
<i>māt</i>		mājiens (waving, gesticulation)
<i>lēkt</i>		lēciens (jump, bound)

The following are similarly formed:

<i>bārt</i>	to scold	<i>bāriens</i>	scolding
<i>durt</i>	to stab, prick	<i>dūriens</i>	stab, prick
<i>grābt</i>	to grasp, grab	<i>grābiens</i>	grasp, grab
<i>grūst</i>	to push, jolt	<i>grūdiens</i>	shove, push
<i>jāt</i>	to ride	<i>jājiens</i>	ride
<i>jēgt</i>	to comprehend	<i>jēdziens</i>	conception, idea, notion
<i>kniebt</i>	to pinch	<i>kniebiens</i>	pinch
<i>kost</i>	to bite	<i>kodiens</i>	bite
<i>krākt</i>	to snore	<i>krāciens</i>	snore
<i>krist</i>	to fall	<i>krittiens</i>	fall
<i>ķērkt</i>	to shriek, caw	<i>ķērcliens</i>	shriek, cawing
<i>maut</i>	to moo, bellow	<i>māviens</i>	mooing, bellowing

<i>pērt</i>	to whip	<i>pēriens</i>	whipping
<i>rīt</i>	to swallow, gulp	<i>rijiens</i>	gulp
<i>rūkt</i>	to roar, rumble	<i>rūciens</i>	roar, rumble
<i>saukt</i>	to call	<i>sauciens</i>	call, shout
<i>sist</i>	to strike	<i>sitiens</i>	blow
<i>skriet</i>	to run	<i>skrējiens</i>	run; race
<i>snaust</i>	to snooze	<i>snaudiens</i>	snooze, nap
<i>spert</i>	to kick	<i>spēriens</i>	kick; (thunder) clap
<i>spiest</i>	to press, squeeze	<i>spiediens</i>	squeeze; pressure
<i>sviest</i>	to throw	<i>sviediens</i>	throw
<i>svilpt</i>	to whistle	<i>svilpiens</i>	whistle
<i>šaut</i>	to shoot	<i>šāviens</i>	shot
<i>šņākt</i>	to hiss	<i>šņāciens</i>	hiss

A *-k-* or *-g-* in the imperfect is palatalized to *-c-* or *-dz-*:

<i>vilkt</i>	to pull	<i>vilciens</i>	a pull; that which pulls, i.e., a train
<i>sprāgt</i>	to burst, explode	<i>sprādziens</i>	explosion

Vocabulary

<i>saistība</i>	obligation, commitment; here = bond
<i>iezaļgans</i>	greenish
<i>Zalde</i>	surname (here masculine)
<i>Žēna</i>	feminine name
<i>parodēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to parody
<i>izdomāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to work out, devise
<i>iniciātīva</i>	initiative
<i>piepūst (-šu, -tu)</i>	to blow
<i>dvaša</i>	breath
<i>uz pirkstgaliem</i>	on tiptoe
<i>tūvināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to bring near
<i>strāva</i>	current (electrical, etc.)
<i>ū!</i>	ah! oh! oooh!
<i>ķīķināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to giggle
<i>atbīdīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to push off, push aside
<i>samierināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to pacify; to reconcile
<i>aizbildināties (-os, -ājos)</i>	to excuse oneself
<i>apsievojties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to take a wife
<i>gatavoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to get ready, prepare (intrans.)
<i>pavadone</i>	companion (f.)

<i>Mēta</i>	feminine name
<i>situācija</i>	situation
<i>amizants</i>	amusing, enjoyable
<i>līķis</i>	corpse
<i>līķu mūzika</i>	funereal music, dirges
<i>nebēda</i>	carefreeness
<i>dējot (-oju, -oju) uz nebēdu</i>	to dance on and on
<i>slēpties (-pjos, -pos)</i>	here = to be secretive
<i>ai!</i>	oh!
<i>sadot (-dodu, -dēvu)</i>	to give; to heap upon; to beat
<i>sadot (-dodu, -dēvu) pa ragiem</i>	to berate soundly, to beat soundly
<i>iepazīstināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to introduce
<i>nekādā ziņā</i>	under no circumstances
<i>untums</i>	caprice, whim
<i>atmest (-mētu, -mētu) galvu</i>	to toss one's head
<i>spītīgs</i>	obstinate; spiteful
<i>Mozus</i>	Moses
<i>pravietis</i>	prophet
<i>mironis</i>	corpse
<i>sprēdīkot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to preach
<i>ķeizars</i>	emperor
<i>formāls</i>	formal
<i>apmākties (-cos, -cos)</i>	to cloud over (intrans.)
<i>bulvāris</i>	boulevard
<i>nokaisīt (-u, -īju)</i>	to strew, to cover (trans.)
<i>iemlīt (-minu, -minu)</i>	to tread in
<i>uzvarēt (-u, -ēju)</i>	to conquer, win a victory

NOTE: The words *parodēt* and *formāls* are pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 226–234.

Exercise 236a

Translate into English:

Mēness jau sen bija nogājis. Pār jumtiem vizmoja iezalģana gaisma. Zvaigznes spalgi mirdzēja.

“Uz kuru pusi mums jāiet?” Zalde jautāja. “Jo man tak būs jūs jāpavada mājās?”

“Negribas mājā. Pavisam negribas,” teica Žēna, ielikdama Zaldes elkonī savu roku ar visu savu siltā auguma tuvumu.

“Jā, ko citu lai darām?”

“Darām, darām!” Žēna parodēja. “Ja jūs to nevarat izdomāt! Jūsu pusē ir iniciatīva.”

“Jūs aizmirstat, ka man ir sieva.”

Klusi smiedamās, Žēna noliecās uz viņa elkoņa un piepūta to pilnu ar siltu dvasi.

“Paskatieties uz mani!” viņa nu sauca pavēloši.

To viņš darīja.

Uz pirkstgaliem pacēlusies, viņa tuvināja savu seju Zaldes acīm, it kā atrastos kādas magnētiskas strāvas varā. “Ū! Labs bērniņš esmu es! Labs bērniņš!” Viņa ķīkināja un smējās tam gluži acīs.

Zalde saprata gan. Labais bērniņš gribēja pateikties par vīnu un torti.

“Nevar, Žēna, nekā nevar,” viņš izlikās stingrs.

“Nevar, nevar!” viņa nikni izrāva savu roku tam no elkoņa. Bet viņš paņēma atkal to pašu roku, atbīdīja cimdu, noskūpstīja delnu un ielika no jauna savā elkonī. Tas Žēnu samierināja.

“Pats jūs esat vainīgs,” viņa aizbildinājās. “Ar jums vienmēr aizmirst, ka esat apsievījies.”

Ja pirms šī īsā skatiņa Zalde bija gatavojies teikt savai pavadonei: “Žēna, Žēna, vai pie Mētas kundzes ir īstā vieta, kur vakaros aiziet jaunas meitenes?” – tad tagad, pēc noskaidrotas situācijas, viņš teica: “Pie Mētas kundzes ir ļoti amizanti, vai ne?”

“O jā! Tas ir: ne arvien. Bet dažreiz ļoti. Kad Mēta neliek spēlēt šo līķu mūziku. Tad pūš citām stabulēm,¹ un mēs dejojām uz nebēdu. Tad ir jauki.”

“Vai jūs bieži tur aizejat?”

Nu viņa slēpās.

“Kā iznāk. Ja ir patīkama sabiedrība, aizeju.”

“Tā kā šovakar tie virsnieki?”

“Ai nē, tiem es labi sadevu pa ragiem. Lai neiedomājas! Bez tam viņi man pilnīgi sveši. Tikko Mēta iepazīstināja.”

Zalde bija nolēmis nekādā ziņā nesekot jaunās dāmas untumiem. Bet tomēr beidzot pateica, kas tam visu laiku bijis uz mēles: “Vai zināt, Žēna, pie tās Mētas gan labāk neejiet.”

Viņa atmeta spītīgi galvu.

“Kādēļ? Jūs visi domājat tikai sliktu. Bet Mēta nemaz tāda nav.”

“Un kad runātu Mozus un pravieši, un, kad celtos miroņi no kapiem un viņai sprediķotu, viņa tomēr ies turp, kur viņai jāiet,” Zalde domāja, bet nesacīja vairs nekā.

Pie mazas koka mājas aiz Ķeizara dārza Žēna formāli atvadījās. Pateicās. Viņš pacēla cepuri. Un jau nākošā acumirkļī to bija aizmirsis.

Debess bija nemanot apmākusies. Kad viņš nonāca līdz bulvāriem, sāka snigt lielām, vieglām pārslām. Nokaisīja ceļu, izdzēsa visas pēdas, arī tās, kas nupat bija iemītas viņa soļiem.

Anna Brigadere, from *Irstošas saistības*.

Exercise 236b

Translate into English:

1. Ar ko gan Pēteris Zalde šoreiz aizbildināsies, ka viņš neuzvarēja simts metru skrējienā?
2. Papagailis māc parodēt vārnas ķērcienu, tējas katla svilpienu, teļa māvienu un pat veča krācienu.
3. Ļaudis aplaudēja, kad ķeizars izkāpa no vilciena.
4. Lapsa nokoda vistai galvu ar vienu kodienu.
5. Par šo kniebienu puika dabūs kārtīgu pērienu.
6. Zaglis ar vienu grābienu satvēra vairākus dārgakmeņus no skatloga un drāzās prom.
7. No frontes puses jau dzird ložmetēju šāvienus un lielgabalu rūcienus.
8. Kalniņš jau ar otro sviEDIENU aizsvieda šķēpu septiņdesmit piecus metrus.
9. Vecākiem tas bija briesmīgs sitiens, kad dēlu apcietināja par nopietnu noziegumu.
10. Vai jūs pēc kritiena sajūtāt dūrienus krūtīs?
11. Pēc garā jājienu tu nekādā ziņā nedrīksti dot zirgam aukstu ūdeni, citādi saimnieks tev sados pa ragiem.
12. Kurš jēdziens tev vēl nav skaidrs?
13. Atkal tu esi spītīga, Mirdza! Laikam tev nepietika ar bārienu! Pag, gan tētis tev sados, kad pārnāks mājās!
14. Augšējos dzīvokļos ūdens spiediens ir pavisam vājš.
15. Ja es nebūtu dzirdējis čūskas šņācienu, es būtu tai uzminis.

Exercise 236c

Translate into Latvian:

1. After a short nap, we shall set out on the long ride to the emperor's court.
2. That push in my side presumably means that you want me to introduce you to my cousin Mēta!
3. Was that the rumble of a gun, or a thunderclap?

¹ lit. 'one blows with other pipes', i.e., 'it's a different story'.

4. Loud shouts were heard from the boulevard.
5. A horse can kill a man with one kick.
6. Why are good poems so often parodied?
7. Follow the call of the great prophet!
8. My companion just tossed her head when she heard the whistles of those scoundrels.
9. The emperor died from a stab in the heart.
10. In Australia there are spiders, the bites of which can be fatal.
11. This notion is completely new to me.
12. Our horse will be running in the fourth race.
13. Such a hold is forbidden!
14. You will get a whipping if you do not obey me.
15. How is the huntsman after the fall from his horse?

LESSON 237

THE NOUN SUFFIX *-NIEKS* (FEM. *-NIECE*)

The suffix *-nieks* often serves to mark the person concerned with something:

<i>kurpe</i>	shoe	<i>kurpnieks</i>	shoemaker
<i>maize</i>	bread	<i>maiznieks</i>	baker
<i>dārzs</i>	garden	<i>dārznieks</i>	gardener

Similarly with the following:

<i>cietums</i>	prison	<i>cietumnieks</i>	prisoner
<i>ērģeles</i>	organ	<i>ērģelnieks</i>	organist
<i>galds</i>	table	<i>galdnieks</i>	joiner, cabinet-maker
<i>grāmata</i>	book	<i>grāmatnieks</i>	bibliophile
<i>jūra</i>	sea	<i>jūrnies</i>	seaman
<i>sēta</i>	yard	<i>sētnieks</i>	caretaker
<i>tēls</i>	image, figure, form	<i>tēlnieks</i>	sculptor
<i>valoda</i>	language	<i>valodnieks</i>	linguist
<i>vijole</i>	violin	<i>vijolnieks</i>	violinist
<i>zeme</i>	land	<i>zēmnies</i>	peasant

The suffix often appears as *-inieks*:

<i>bēres</i>	funeral	<i>bērinieks</i>	mourner
<i>ceļš</i>	road, journey	<i>ceļinieks</i>	traveller, wanderer
<i>darbs</i>	work	<i>darbinieks</i>	employee
<i>dziesma</i>	song	<i>dziesminieks</i>	poet
<i>grēks</i>	sin	<i>grēcinieks</i>	sinner
<i>krogus</i>	inn	<i>krodzinieks</i>	inn-keeper
<i>kuģis</i>	ship	<i>kuģinieks</i>	sailor
<i>laiva</i>	boat	<i>laivinieks</i>	boatman
<i>lauks</i>	field	<i>laucinieks</i>	country dweller
<i>māksla</i>	art	<i>mākslinieks</i>	artist
<i>mēžs</i>	forest	<i>mēžinieks</i>	wood-cutter, woodman
<i>muca</i>	barrel	<i>mucinieks</i>	cooper
<i>sādža</i>	village	<i>sādžinieks</i>	villager
<i>sala</i>	island	<i>salinieks</i>	islander
<i>stikls</i>	glass	<i>stiklinieks</i>	glazier

Sometimes an adjective may serve as the stem:

<i>drošs</i>	brave, secure	<i>drošinieks</i>	brave man
<i>gudrs</i>	wise	<i>gudrinieks</i>	wiseacre
<i>slims</i>	ill	<i>slimnieks</i>	patient
<i>stiprs</i>	strong	<i>stiprinieks</i>	strong man
<i>tukšs</i>	empty	<i>tukšinieks</i>	needy person
<i>vājš</i>	weak	<i>vājinieks</i>	invalid, patient; weakling

Vocabulary

<i>atraitnis</i> (fem. <i>-ne</i>)	widower (widow)
<i>nosist</i> (<i>-sit, -sita</i>)	here = to strike (of hours)
<i>auties</i> (<i>aunos, āvos</i>)	to put on one's shoes; to get ready
<i>izaust</i> (<i>-aust, -ausa</i>)	to dawn
<i>traukt</i> (<i>-cu, -cu</i>) more often <i>traukties</i> (<i>-cos, -cos</i>)	to hasten
<i>laisties</i> (<i>-žos, -dos</i>)	to fly
<i>trūkums</i>	privation, poverty; lack
<i>perināt</i> (<i>-u, -āju</i>)	to hatch, to brood
<i>paspārne</i>	shelter, refuge; here = place under the roof

<i>paciesties</i> (-šos, -tos)	to be patient
<i>ziedonis</i>	spring
<i>atlikt</i> (-lieku, -liku)	to put aside; to delay; here = to remain
<i>kapsēta</i>	cemetery
<i>samts</i>	velvet
<i>ietērpt</i> (-pju, -pu)	to clothe
<i>godgalds</i>	table of honour
<i>nosēdināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to seat
<i>kam</i>	here = why
<i>čaukstēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to rustle
<i>aizkust</i> (-kūstu, -kusu)	to grow weary
<i>sūrot</i> (-oju, -oju) more often <i>sūroties</i> (-ojos, -ojos)	to sigh, moan, complain
<i>skumdināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to be sad
<i>neba</i> (negative conjunction)	yet not, for . . . not
<i>vīstiņš</i>	bundle, parcel
<i>apglabāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to bury (of dead)
<i>rumaks</i>	stallion, charger
<i>sprauslāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to sniff, snort
<i>klauzēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to rumble
<i>klandīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to swing, rock, pitch back and forth
<i>tacis</i>	fish-garth
<i>tērpties</i> (-pjos, -pos)	to clothe oneself, be clad
<i>skrandā</i>	rag, tatter
<i>virķne</i>	row, file, series
<i>valnis</i>	wall, dam, bank
<i>ripu ripām</i>	rolling, tumbling
<i>rats</i>	wheel
<i>it</i>	quite, absolutely
<i>raudzīt</i> (-gu, -dzļju)	here = to see
<i>pagurt</i> (-rstu, -ru)	to get tired
<i>paspīdēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to flash
<i>ar</i> (also <i>ar'</i>)	= <i>arī</i>
<i>atlantisks</i>	Atlas-like, Herculean
<i>šķērslis</i>	obstacle, hindrance
<i>atoms</i>	atom
<i>spars</i>	energy, force, strength
<i>pūķis</i>	dragon; kite
<i>brāzt</i> (-žu, -zu)	to roar, rage; to rush
<i>kaukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to howl, yell
<i>stirna</i>	doe
<i>satrūkties</i> (-kstos, -kos)	to take fright, to start

<i>ausīties</i> (-os, -ļjos)	to prick up one's ears
<i>šmaukt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to cheat, deceive; to slip away
<i>rēkt</i> (-cu, -cu)	to howl, cry, roar
<i>sprauslas</i> (pl.)	nostrils
<i>gāzties</i> (-žos, -zos)	here = to pour forth, to stream
<i>stāt</i> (<i>stāju, stāju</i>)	= <i>stāties</i>
<i>palma</i>	palm tree

NOTE: *Atoms* has a foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 26–50.

Exercise 237a

Translate into English:

“Māmuliņ, dzirdi: jau nosita trīs!

Laiks nu ir celties un auties, un posties;

Māmuliņ, dzirdi: jau nosita trīs,

Tāļajā ceļā man jādodas drīz.” –

“Pagaidi, dēļiņ, kad izausīs rīts:

Nakts ir tik tumša . . . Kur tumsā tu trauksi?

Pagaidi, dēļiņ, kad izausīs rīts,

Gan jau, gan pienāks drīz šķiršanās brīd's.” –

“Esmu tik laimīgs! Tik viegls man prāts!

Spārni ja būtu man, spārnos es laistos;

Esmu tik laimīgs! Tik viegls man prāts, –

Māmiņ, es redzu: tu raudāt sēc.” –

“Viena, dēls, viena nu palikšu te,

Kaktiņā šaurā, starp melnajām sienām;

Viena, dēls, viena nu palikšu te,

Trūkums kur perinās paspārnē.” –

“Pacieties, māmiņ! Drīz aiztecēs laiks –

Neganto postu uz purvu tad trenksim;

Pacieties, māmiņ! Drīz aiztecēs laiks –

Laime mūs apkāms kā ziedonis maigs.” –

“Ziedoņa sapņi, dēls, smiltis man dus,

Atlicis vienlgi sapnis par tevi;

Ziedoņa sapņi, dēls, smiltis man dus,

Sirdī kā kapsētā viss nu ir kluss.” –

“Māmiņ! Tas sapnis zeltziedos nu plauks,
 Kuŗu kā palmu daudz gadu mēs kopām;
 Māmiņ! Tas sapnis zeltziedos nu plauks,
 Dzīve ar mūs reiz uz dzīrēm sauks.” –

“Dzīvē uz dzīrēm, dēls, biju jau es,
 Un tie tur ēda un dzēra, un smēja...
 Dzīvē uz dzīrēm, dēls, biju jau es,
 Man bija jāsalgst no tālienes.” –

“Zīdā un samtā tev’ ietērpšu, māt!
 Gurdeno roku zem rokas sev ņemšu;
 Zīdā un samtā tev’ ietērpšu, māt,
 Godgaldā vedīšu nosēdināt.” –

“Kam nu vairs samti, kam čaukstošais zīds,
 Vakars sirdsdurvīs kad aizkūsis klauvē?
 Kam nu vairs samti, kam čaukstošais zīds,
 Mirstamais vainags kad nāvei jau vīts?” –

“Nesūro, māmuliņ! Neskumdinies!
 Pasaule taps tev vēl diža un plaša;
 Nesūro, māmuliņ! Neskumdinies!
 Neba uz mūžu jau šķīramies.” –

“Brauc, manu dēliņ! Lai Dievs stāv tev klāt!
 Še, ... ņem šo vīstiņu! ... būs tev uz ceļa...
 Brauc, manu dēliņ! Lai Dievs stāv tev klāt!
 Nāc tik, kad miršu, man’ apglabāt.”

Dzelzs rumaks¹ sprauslā, zviedz; dzelzs rati klauzot klandās;
 Un tā kā sapnis nozib ceļmalā
 Tilts, tacis, rejošs suns, gans, tērpies tēva skrandās,
 Un virkne sievu linu gabalā.²
 Kā čūska milzīga pa valni vilciens lokās,
 Un ripu ripām rit aiz rata rats;
 Bēg koki, mājas, sargs ar karodziņu rokās
 Un viss, it viss, ko logā rauga acs,
 Bez paguršanas viņš uz priekšu šņākdams steidzas;
 Tam līdzti tikt var tikai viņa balss;
 Te logā paspīd sils, te sils jau atkal beidzas,
 Un skriet, tik skriet, kaut zemei būt’ ar gals!
 Ai atlantiskais spēks! Ai dižā milzu vara,
 Kas visus šķēršļus drupu drupās³ triec,

Tik vienu atomu no tava uguns spara,
 Lai nepagurstu, manās dzišlās liec!...
 Aiz bailēm koki dreb un mēmi mežā klausās,
 Kad uguns pūķis, cauri brāzdams, kauc;
 Un stirna satrūkstas, un zaķis bailīgs ausās
 Un dziļi, dziļi tumšos krūmos šmauc.
 Bet suta⁴ rumaks rēc un tālāk, tālāk drāžas.
 No jauna gūdams jaunu sparū klāt;
 Zem kājām dzirkstis šķīst, no sprauslām dūmi gāžas;
 Neviens, neviens tam nedrīkst ceļā stāt!

Vilis Plūdonis, from *Atraitnes dēls*.

Exercise 237b

Translate into English:

1. Kurpnieki, maiznieki un galdnieki ir amatnieki, bet ērgelnieki, vijolnieki un tēlnieki ir mākslinieki.
2. Pūlis rēca, kad grēcinieki tika aizvesti pie kauna staba.
3. Salinieki jau gaida kuģinieku, jo tas viņiem atved svaigus augļus un dārzājus.
4. Bērinieki bija tērušies tumšās drēbēs.
5. Biroja darbinieki satrūkās, kad sētnieks sauca pēc palīdzības.
6. Šis gudrinieks man mēģināja iestāstīt, ka valodnieki neesot zinātnieki, bet mākslinieki.
7. Ja starp jums, sādžiniekiem, ir kāds stiprinieks, kas var pacelt šo svaru, es tam samaksāšu simt latu!
8. Mežinieki parādīja ceļiniekam ceļu uz dzirnavām.
9. Kur ir tas drošinieks, kas nosita pūķi?
10. Draudze ņems visus tukšiniekus un vājīniekus savā paspārnē.
11. Krodzinieks jau priecājas, jo tur tuvojas vesels bars naudīgu jūrnieku.
12. Ērgelnieku mēs nosēdināsim blakus slavenā dziesminieka atraitnei, vai ne?
13. Šo augsto valni esot cēluši cietumnieki.
14. Ieracies savās grāmatās, grāmatnieks nepamanīja ne ziedoņa skaistumu, ne vasaras karstumu, ne rudens raibumu, ne arī ziemas bargumu.
15. Slimniekam vēl pāris dienas jāpaciešas, tad viņš atkal drīkstēs pļpēt.
16. Par ko laucinieki sūrojās?

¹ i.e., ‘train’.

² Here = ‘field’.

³ Emphatic reduplication.

⁴ Read *sutas*.

Exercise 237c

Translate into Latvian:

1. Couldn't the cooper delay this job for a few days? Our firm has a very important and urgent job.
2. Do you sell glaziers' and cabinet-makers' tools?
3. "Clothe a peasant in silk and velvet, and he will still remain a peasant," said the wealthy nobleman.
4. The boatmen do not tire quickly; they are used to rowing for hours.
5. Ask that know-all! Perhaps he can explain how an atom is split.
6. Who would have imagined that our caretaker was such a brave man?
7. If you want to know where the cooper's workshop is to be found, ask the inn-keeper; he knows every villager.
8. The islanders were walking about in rags.
9. This large cemetery employs several sculptors.
10. How is the patient feeling this morning?
11. This traveller is supposed to have seen the escaped prisoner in the forest.
12. The wood-cutter saw a wolf dragging off a doe.
13. The photographer was photographing the mourners.
14. Which one of the sailors tried to embrace the inn-keeper's daughter? - None of my men, constable, but some local boatman.
15. Mr. Zalde needs two more first-class workmen.

LESSON 238

THE NOUN SUFFIX *-ĪBA*

This suffix is often attached to adjectives:

<i>vešēls</i>	healthy	<i>vešēlība</i>	health
<i>ērts</i>	comfortable	<i>ērtība</i>	comfort
<i>jauns</i>	young	<i>jaunība</i>	youth

Similarly:

<i>bagāts</i>	wealthy	<i>bagātība</i>	wealth
<i>bargs</i>	harsh	<i>bardzība</i>	harshness
<i>bīstams</i>	dangerous	<i>bīstamība</i>	perilousness
<i>brīvs</i>	free	<i>brīvība</i>	freedom
<i>grūts</i>	difficult	<i>grūtība</i>	difficulty

<i>gudrs</i>	wise	<i>gudrība</i>	wisdom
<i>jautrs</i>	gay	<i>jautrība</i>	gaiety
<i>miegains</i>	sleepy	<i>miegainība</i>	sleepiness
<i>pilns</i>	full	<i>pilnība</i>	fullness, abundance, completeness
<i>skaidrs</i>	clear	<i>skaidrība</i>	clarity
<i>slims</i>	ill	<i>slimība</i>	illness, disease
<i>spodrs</i>	bright, shiny	<i>spodrība</i>	brightness, lustre
<i>vājš</i>	weak	<i>vājība</i>	weakness, feebleness
<i>varēns</i>	powerful, mighty	<i>varēnība</i>	power, might

Notice the palatalization of *-k-* and *-g-* to *-c-* and *-dz-* before the *-ība* suffix. *-ība* is also often attached to nouns:

<i>atbilde</i>	answer	<i>atbildība</i>	responsibility
<i>bērns</i>	child	<i>bērņība</i>	childhood
<i>brālis</i>	brother	<i>brālība</i>	brotherhood
<i>darbs</i>	work	<i>darbība</i>	action, activity
<i>draugs</i>	friend	<i>draudzība</i>	friendship
<i>skopulis</i>	niggard	<i>skopulība</i>	niggardliness
<i>tauta</i>	nation	<i>tautība</i>	nationality
<i>varonis</i>	hero	<i>varonība</i>	heroism
<i>viesis</i>	guest	<i>viesības</i> (pl.)	party

In particular, the suffix *-ība* is often attached to *-nieks* nouns:

<i>galdnieks</i>	joiner	<i>galdniecība</i>	joinery
<i>jūrnieks</i>	seaman	<i>jūrniecība</i>	navigation; seamanship
<i>valodnieks</i>	linguist	<i>valodniecība</i>	linguistics
<i>dārznieks</i>	gardener	<i>dārzniecība</i>	horticulture; market-garden
<i>mēdnieks</i>	hunter	<i>mēdniecība</i>	huntsmanship
<i>rakstnieks</i>	writer	<i>rakstniecība</i>	literature
<i>tēlnieks</i>	sculptor	<i>tēlniecība</i>	sculpture
<i>zvejnieks</i>	fisherman	<i>zvejniecība</i>	fishing

It is also frequently attached to verbs:

<i>aizmirst</i>	to forget	<i>aizmirstība</i>	oblivion
<i>atšķirt</i>	to distinguish	<i>atšķirtība</i>	difference, distinction
<i>attīstīt</i>	to develop	<i>attīstība</i>	development

<i>barot</i>	to feed	<i>barība</i>	food
<i>cerēt</i>	to hope	<i>cerība</i>	hope
<i>dzimt</i>	to be born	<i>dzimstība</i>	birth-rate
<i>klausīt</i>	to obey	<i>klausība</i>	military service
<i>prasīt</i>	to ask, require	<i>prasība</i>	requirement
<i>svinēt</i>	to celebrate	<i>svinības</i> (pl.)	celebration
<i>ticēt</i>	to believe	<i>ticība</i>	faith, belief

Vocabulary

<i>granīts</i>	granite
<i>zinātne</i>	science; here = learning
<i>teiksmains</i>	legendary, mythical
<i>krēslība</i>	twilight, half-light
<i>atvars</i>	whirlpool, eddy
<i>veltīgs</i>	vain, futile, fruitless
<i>svēšnieks</i>	= <i>svēšnieks</i>
<i>burvis</i>	wizard, magician
<i>viesulis</i>	whirlwind, tornado
<i>auka</i>	storm, tempest, gale
<i>izsamist</i> (- <i>stu</i> , - <i>su</i>) (usually <i>izmist</i>)	to despair
<i>atbalss</i> (f.)	echo
<i>apdomāt</i> (- <i>āju</i> , - <i>āju</i>)	to consider, ponder
<i>gulēt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ju</i>)	to put to bed
<i>gulēt smiltājā</i>	to bury
<i>ziemeļis</i>	north wind
<i>smiltājs</i>	sandy ground
<i>raizes</i> (pl.)	sorrow, care, trouble
<i>rūpesti</i> (pl.)	= <i>rūpes</i>
<i>kūma</i> (m. or f.)	god-parent
<i>iegrauzt</i> (- <i>žu</i> , - <i>zu</i>)	here = to ingrain
<i>grumba</i>	wrinkle; crease
<i>grumbu pa grumbiņai</i>	wrinkle after wrinkle
<i>žāvēt</i> (- <i>ēju</i> , - <i>ēju</i>)	to dry (trans.); to smoke (food)
<i>dūša</i>	courage
<i>aizsniegt</i> (- <i>dzu</i> , - <i>dzu</i>)	to reach, attain
<i>zinība</i>	knowledge, learning
<i>žvingstēt</i> (-, - <i>ēja</i>)	to whiz, hum
<i>apmulst</i> (- <i>stu</i> , - <i>su</i>)	to become confused
<i>vērā likt</i> (<i>lieku</i> , <i>liku</i>)	to consider, take into account; here = to take care

<i>dūņas</i> (pl.)	slime, mud
<i>putenis</i>	blizzard, snow-storm
<i>plosīties</i> (- <i>os</i> , - <i>ijos</i>)	to rage
<i>ēlst</i> (- <i>šu</i> , - <i>su</i>)	to puff, pant, wheeze
<i>pētīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ju</i> , or older - <i>iju</i> , - <i>iju</i>)	to explore, investigate
<i>vandīt</i> (- <i>u</i> , - <i>ju</i>)	to rummage
<i>pērle</i>	pearl
<i>margot</i> (- <i>o</i> , - <i>oja</i>)	to glisten, glitter
<i>starot</i> (- <i>oju</i> , - <i>oju</i>)	to radiate, shine
<i>dimants</i>	diamond
<i>kaut</i>	here = <i>kaut gan</i>
<i>migt</i> (<i>miegu</i> , <i>migu</i>)	to fall asleep

NOTE: The genitive plural of *atbalss* is *atbalsu*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: LESSONS 121-140.

Exercise 238a

Translate into English:

Uz granīta sirmsūnu¹ pamatiem
 Stāv pils no sīksīkiem² akmeņiem:
 Tā dailes un zinātnes diženā pils;
 Tai sienas no zelta, jumts dzidri zils.
 Pie griestiem, ko teiksmaina krēslība sedz,
 Simts mirdzošu sauļu uzlecam redz;
 Tās kristalla grīdās spulgo un kūst,
 Kas spodri kā ezera līmenis plūst.
 Un zilajā debesu atvarā
 Grimst torņi viņai kā pasakā;
 Tāltāli² pār zemi tie laistās un spīd;
 Daiļburvīga gaisma visapkārt slīd.
 Un augstāk un augstāk tie vienmēr aug;
 Acs virsotnes ieraudzīt vēltīgi raug':
 Ne gaisa, ne gaismas – viss tukšs un baigs;
 Tur nezin, kas telpa, tur nezin, kas laiks.³
 "Ko, svešniek, gribi? Kas esi tu tāds,⁴
 Pie burvju pils vārtiem ka klauvēt nāc?"
 Un jauneklīs atbild, un acis tam zib:
 "Es esmu, kas visu panākt grib!

Sirds kvēlo man krūtīs un karsti man jūt –
 Šai pilī, šai pilī gribu es kļūt!” –
 “Vai sāpes un šaubas pazīsti tu?
 Vai redzējis esi trūkumu?
 Vai zini, ko nozīmē – purvu⁵ brist
 Un viesuļos, aukās neizsamist?
 Vai esi tu cietis un strādājis?
 Kur karājās tevim šūpulis?”
 “Kur karājās tevim šūpulis?”
 Sauc pilī visapkārt daudz atbalsis;⁶
 Un jūra sāk trakot, un vēji kauc,
 Un, skriedams pār galvu, melns putns sauc:
 “Ai jaunekli, jaunekli, apdomā:
 Daudz sapņu būs jāguļda smiltājā!” –
 “Auksts ziemelis mani ir saldējis,
 Par tēvu bargs bijis man liktenis,
 Un trūkums, un raizes, un rūpesti
 Par kūmām pie šūpuļa stāvēj’ši.
 Zemā būdīnā esmu es uzauzdzis,
 Mātes asaras sūrās skaitījis,
 Un raudzījies esmu, kā vaigā tai
 Rūpes iegrauza grumbu pa grumbīnai.
 Tai rūpes no pleciem gribu es veļt
 Un asaras žāvēt, to saulītē ceļt;
 Ar laimi tā mani pārnākam gaid’ –
 Šai pilī, šai pilī man’ iekšā laid!”
 “Vai, jaunekli, spēks tev un dūša būs
 Aizsniegt zinības kalnu augstumus,
 Kur galva reibst, kur ausīs žvingst,
 Kur prāti apmulst, gars ledū stingst,
 Kur taku neviens vēl nav atradis,
 Kur staigā vissaltākais ziemelis?” . . .
 “Kur staigā vissaltākais ziemelis,”
 Sauc pilī visapkārt daudz atbalsis;⁶
 Un jūra sāk trakot, un vēji kauc,
 Un, skriedams pār galvu, melns putns sauc:
 “Ai jaunekli, jaunekli, vērā liec,
 Ka sniegā vai dūņās tu neiestiedz!”
 “Es kāpt gribu kalnā visaugstākā,
 Ne spēka man pietrūks, ne bail man no kā;⁷
 Lai putenis plosās, lai ziemelis elš. –
 Uz augšu, uz augšu tik ies manim ceļš!

Es laidīšos jūras dziļumos
 Un meklēšu, pētišu, vandīšu tos,
 Līdz pērli būšu tur atradis,
 Par visām skaistāk kas margo un viz.
 Es tīrišu viņu un spodrināšu,
 Līdz staros tā spulgāk par dimantu, –
 Kaut nāves miegā man vaj’dzētu migt,
 Šai pilī, šai pilī gribu es tikt! . . .”

Vilis Plūdonis, from *Atraitnes dēls*

Exercise 238b

Translate into English:

1. Mums vēl arvien nav skaidrības par šī svešnieka tautību un ticību.
2. Vai tā ir grāmata par valodniecību? – Nē, par rakstniecību.
3. Cik ilgi suns var iztikt bez barības?
4. Mirdzai ir pārāk augstas prasības.
5. Lai mūsu svinībās valda jautrība un līksmība!
6. Pēteris savā bērnībā slimības dēļ nedrīkstēja peldēt.
7. Mūsu draudzība izira viņa skopulības dēļ.
8. Viesībās es aizmirstu visas raizes un dzīves bardzību. – Saki labāk, ka dzeršanas dēļ tu aizmirsti pienākumus pret savu ģimeni!
9. Augstā dzimstība ir mūsu tautas vienīgā bagātība.
10. Šo ordeni virsniekam piešķīra par varonību.
11. Apdomā burvja gudrību un varenību, mans ķēniņ! – Jā, mans draugs, es tavu brīdinājumu saprotu visā pilnībā.
12. Mums ir cerības dabūt dzīvokli ar visām ērtībām.
13. Cik siltumņicu ir jūsu dārzniecībā?
14. Man nav skaidrības par kara klausības likumu. (*kara klausības likums* = ‘military service law’, or ‘general mobilization law’)

¹ *Sirms* here metaphorically for ‘old’, rather than literally ‘grey’.

² Emphatic reduplication.

³ Translate freely: ‘one has there no idea of time and place’.

⁴ See lesson 141.

⁵ Cf. *purvā brist* ‘to wade about in a swamp’ and *purvu brist* ‘to wade right through a swamp’.

⁶ Note the nominative. Cf. lesson 64.

⁷ ‘nor am I afraid of anything’. *Kā* for *nekā*; here *ne no kā*.

Exercise 238c

Translate into Latvian:

1. How many people in this district are engaged in navigation, and how many in fishing?
2. In his youth he was always dreaming of sculpture.
3. We are investigating the development of Riga's historical brotherhoods.
4. These savages live by hunting and fishing.
5. If a person lives in wealth, his demands increase.
6. The movement of ships in the port of Sydney is very lively.
7. Many people have not the slightest idea of the danger of this disease.
8. How can a person live without faith? – More easily than without money!
9. How many of you are employed in joinery?
10. Navigation occupies a prominent place in English literature.
11. Everybody began to wonder about the wisdom of the priest (= *vaidelis*).
12. Did you have whooping-cough in your childhood?
13. When will the celebrations begin?
14. They ought not to have doubted his wisdom.

LESSON 239

THE NOUN SUFFIXES *-EKLIS* AND *-ĒKLIS*

In a limited number of cases, *-eklis* may be suffixed to an adjective to form a noun:

<i>gluds</i>	smooth	<i>gludeklis</i>	iron
<i>jauns</i>	young	<i>jauneklis</i>	youth, young man

More often it is added to verbs, usually to the imperfect stem:

<i>aust</i>	to dawn	<i>auseklis</i>	morning-star
<i>grābt</i>	to grasp, rake	<i>grābeklis</i>	rake
<i>jukt</i>	to become confused	<i>juceklis</i>	confusion, havoc
<i>līdzēt</i>	to help	<i>līdzeklis</i>	remedy; (in pl.) funds
<i>locīt</i>	to bend	<i>loceklis</i>	limb; member
<i>mācīt</i>	to teach	<i>māceklis</i>	apprentice
<i>mist</i>	to dwell	<i>mitēklis</i>	dwelling; hostel

<i>mocīt</i>	to torture	<i>moceklis</i>	martyr
<i>putēt</i>	to be dusty	<i>puteklis</i>	speck of dust
<i>sēdēt</i>	to sit	<i>sēdeklis</i>	seat
<i>spīdēt</i>	to shine	<i>spīdeklis</i>	shining object
<i>šūt</i>	to sew	<i>šuveklis</i>	sewing, needlework

When attached to *-ēt* verbs of the Long Conjugation, the suffix appears as *-ēklis*:

<i>biedēt</i>	to frighten	<i>putnu biedēklis</i>	scarecrow
<i>kavēt</i>	to delay	<i>kavēklis</i>	hindrance, obstacle
<i>traucēt</i>	to disturb	<i>traucēklis</i>	hindrance, obstacle

Notice also *laika kavēklis* pastime.

Vocabulary

<i>rekvīēms</i>	requiem
<i>līkrati</i> (pl.)	hearse
<i>tricināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to shake, rock (trans.)
<i>aizvzināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to drive away, carry away
<i>ardievas</i> (pl.)	parting words; valediction
<i>sveiks</i>	safe, sound, healthy
<i>smilga</i>	hair-grass
<i>marona</i>	see note to text
<i>rotaļāt</i> (-āju, -āju) more often	
<i>rotaļāties</i> (-ājos, -ājos)	to play
<i>maigums</i>	gentleness, softness
<i>sirdēsti</i> (pl.)	heart-break, grief
<i>mājot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to dwell, reside
<i>tikties</i> (<i>tiekos, tikos</i>)	to meet (intrans.)
<i>notikt</i> (-tieku, -tiku)	to get (to), come (to)
<i>steigt</i> (-dzu, -dzu)	to hurry, hasten
<i>atdusa</i>	repose, rest, slumber
<i>mīnāt</i> (-āju, -āju)	to tread, trample
<i>ņēvis</i> (usually with <i>bet</i>)	not... but
<i>pokāls</i>	goblet
<i>dūmains</i>	smoky
<i>sapņojums</i>	dream, dreaming
<i>sērs</i>	mournful, sad
<i>mīļots</i>	beloved
<i>ilgojumies</i> (refl.)	yearning, longing

<i>žēlot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to pity
<i>savienot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to unite, combine (trans.)
<i>mūris</i>	wall
<i>čupa</i>	heap, pile
<i>čupu čupām</i>	in heaps
<i>vēlēna</i>	turf; clod
<i>atpūsties (-šos, -tos)</i>	to repose, rest
<i>mētra</i>	bilberry bush
<i>izpušķot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to decorate, adorn
<i>mierosts</i>	= <i>miera osta</i>
<i>dragāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to damage, smash
<i>cīņiņš</i>	struggle, combat
<i>trūdi (pl.)</i>	humus; here = remains
<i>sprīdis</i>	a span of time or distance
<i>mitrums</i>	humidity, moisture
<i>šeitan</i>	= <i>šeit</i>
<i>noslēgties (-dzas, -dzās)</i>	to close, to end (intrans.)
<i>piegāze</i>	(sheltered) slope
<i>ideja</i>	idea
<i>cēnsonis</i>	striver, zealous man
<i>zārks</i>	coffin

NOTES: *Nevis* is stressed on the second syllable.

Pokāls is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 229–237.

Exercise 239a

Translate into English:

Rekviēms.

Pamazām brauciet un klusu!

Līkratus netriciniet!

Mani uz pēdējo dusu

Smiltājā aizviziniet. . .

Vējš, kam¹ tā elsodams pūt tu?

Mežs, kam¹ tik smagi tu dves?–

Šķiršanās sāpes vai jūt' tu?

Un manim ardievas nes?

Jautrais strauts, tu, kas trauc
 Birzī tur, kur puķu daudz,
 Paliec sveiks! . . . Pie tavas malas
 Ziedonī, kad lakstīgalas
 Jaunus ļaudis sapnot sauks,
 Smilgas man uz kapa augs.

Pamazām, palēnām
 Pār pa norām, maronām,²
 Kur kā bērns es rotaļājis,
 Kur man dzīves maigums mājis,
 Tur līdz smilšu kalniņam
 Pamazām, palēnām.

Šķitu,³ ka lietutiņš līstot
 Karsti pār vaigiem man skrej:⁴
 Māmiņas sirds, pušu plīstot,
 Degošas asaras lej.
 Solīju laimi un prieku
 Vecuma dienās tai sniegt,
 Laimības vietā nu lieku
 Sirdēstiem muguru liekt.

Pacieties! . . . Stundas skries, –
 Kaps tev, māt, ar' atvērsies! . . .
 Tur, kur mājo debess klusa,
 Tur, kur dvēselēm ir dusa,
 Tur mēs atkal tiksimies –
 Māmulīņ, tik pacieties! . . .

Pamazām, palēnām,
 Gan jau galā notiksam. . .⁵
 Dzīvs arvien es traucu, steidzu,
 Steigdams dzīves gaitu beidzu, –
 Nu uz mūža atdusām,
 Pamazām, palēnām.

Nevis kur parketu mīņā,
 Zelta kur pokāli skan, –
 Dūmainā tumšistabiņā
 Karājās šūpulis man.
 Bēdas no griestiem tur lija,
 Pilns stāvēj' asaru trauks;
 Raizes man – mīļākās bija,
 Trūkums – vistuvākais draugs.

Šādam mirt, tādam mirt –
Nemīlēj¹šam grūti mirt;
Mīlestības cēlā vara –
Tā tik dzīvi dzīvu dara,²
Visiem jāizsapņo mums
Maldu Mildas³ sapņojums.

Pamazām, palēnām
Pāri klusām ielejām...
Sēri skan jau kapu zvani...
Turiet!... Celiet, nesiet mani
Tur līdz līķu kambarim –
Pamazām, palēnām.

Kas tur bez dzīvības bāli
Stāv it kā marmora stabs? –
Brāli! Sirdsmīļoto brāli!...
Biji tu manim tik labs!...
Neiet mums kopā vairs taku...
Beigti sirdsilgojumies...⁴
Nāc, lai tev ardievas saku:
Šeit mums vairs neredzēties.

Nežēlo daudz par to,
Ko ar zemi savieno:
Ja uz grauto mūru drupām
Bargā nāve čupu čupām
Kaņabiedru liķus krauj, –
Dzīvais tak vēl cērt un šauj.

Pamazām, palēnām,
Tur līdz kapu velēnām:
Netraucējiet miera dusu
Aizgājušiem, kas šeit klusu
Atpūšas no grūtībām...
Pamazām, palēnām.

Smaržīgām skujām un mētrām
Jauki man izpušķots kaps:
Mierosts pēc aukām un vētrām
Dragātam kuģim tas taps.
Kapā rimst cīņiņi grūti,
Smaidi un vaidi tur dus, –
Laimīgais! Vai tu ar' jūti,
Kapā ka jālien tev būs?

Cilvēks dīgst, cilvēks nīkst,
Cilvēks nāves naktī slīgst...
Un uz viņa trūdiem rodas
Cits, kas dzīvē dzīvi dodas,
Lielas lietas domā grābt, –
Laiks, un vaj' dzīgs kapā kāpt.

Pamazām, palēnām
Tur līdz dobes dibenam;
Vēl šo mazo ceļa sprīdi
Jānoiet. Par īsu brīdi
Tad zem mitrām velēnām –
Pamazām, palēnām.

Mīļie! Mans ceļš nu ir galā;
Mitrums visapkārt jau pūš;
Šeitān, šai tumšajā alā,
Noslēdzas vaidpilnais mūžs.

Klusi šē smiltājā baltā
Sairs kā piegāzēs⁵ sniegs
Ideju pasaule staltā –
Censoņa vienīgais prieks.

Saule, šķiet manim, riet:
Kapa vārti vežas ciet;
Dārdot grants uz zārka veļas,
Smilšu kalns pār mani ceļas...

¹ = 'why'.

² *Marona*, or *marone* is a small yellow flower which blooms in great numbers on unploughed fields in spring: the reference here is to a field in which these flowers are growing. Translate perhaps as 'meadow'.

³ For *man šķita*.

⁴ For *skrien*. *Skriet* has an alternative present tense *es skreju*, etc., but this is far less common than *es skrienu*.

⁵ In the future tense, the first and second person plural forms occasionally appear with *-am*, *-at* instead of *-im*, *-it*.

⁶ here = 'to make, render'.

⁷ A conventionalized figure.

⁸ The plural form seen here is not cited in the standard grammars.

⁹ This passage is quoted in the *Latviešu valodas vārdnīca* of K. Mühlenbach and J. Endzellns with *piegāzies* (thrust aside) for *piegāzēs*.

Klusi, klusi dziesma skan . . .

Tāli, tāli pulksten's zvan' –

Pamazām, – palēnām –

Pamazām – palēnām . . .

Vilis Plūdonis.

Exercise 239b

Translate into English:

1. Šovakar tiksimies ar Mirdzu studentu mitekļi!
2. Mocekļu atdusas vietā koris dziedāja rekviēmu.
3. Zēns ar grābekli rokā ir dārznieka māceklis.
4. Vai Kalniņa kungs ir jūsu biedrības loceklis?
5. Sēdeklis teātrī bija tik neērts, ka man tagad sāp visi locekļi.
6. Auseklis un mēness ir gaišākie spīdekļi pie nakts debesīm.
7. Lielajā juceklī, kas sekoja ugunsgrēkam, ļaudis mēģināja izlaupīt veikalus.
8. Augstais mūris mūsu karavīriem nebija nekāds kavēklis.
9. Lielākais traucēklis mūsu uzņēmuma attīstībā ir līdzekļu trūkums.
10. Papem nu savu šuvekli, meitip, un sāc šūt!
11. Profesora istabā ir grāmatu čupu čupām.
12. Vai tad tu neredzi, sieviņ, ka ar šo jauno cepuri tu izskaties kā putnu biedēklis?
13. Kāršu spēle ir mans mīļākais laika kavēklis, jo, spēlējot kārtis, es vislabāk atpūšos.
14. Es esmu amata meistars, nevis māceklis.
15. Svētais Pāvils mira mocekļa nāvē.

Exercise 239c

Translate into Latvian:

1. The dampness of the flat is very bad for my limbs.
2. After a short space of time, the iron will be hot.
3. The slender youth in this photograph is none other than my husband, who now weighs over 100 kilogrammes.
4. The doctor has recommended a good remedy for pain of the limbs.
5. The great German poet Goethe (*Ģēte*) wrote a famous poem about a sorcerer's apprentice. Do you know it?
6. Where is the emperor to obtain funds for the war?
7. Again there is dust on the bus seats.

8. The peasants attacked them with pitch-forks, rakes and sickles.
9. In a modern war, walls, ditches and even rivers are no obstacle.
10. Saint Peter died as a martyr.
11. Would you call all people martyrs who die for an idea?
12. Only society members live in that dwelling.
13. In the great confusion the money was thought to have been stolen.
14. Some of those radiant bodies which we can hardly see are larger than our sun.
15. If cars and aircraft do not frighten the birds, how could old-fashioned scarecrows drive them off?

LESSON 240

THE NOUN SUFFIXES *-AVA* AND *-UVE*

These suffixes are added directly to the infinitive, and are usually described as *-tava* and *-tuve* respectively. However, as the *-t* is always present in the infinitive it is simpler to regard the suffixes merely as *-ava* and *-uve*. These two suffixes normally form nouns denoting the place where the action is carried out. Cf.:

kaut to kill (*lopu*) *kautuve* slaughter-house

The lists given here can do no more than provide a representative selection.

Nouns in *-ava*:

<i>nolikt</i>	to put, place	<i>noliktava</i>	storehouse, warehouse
<i>klausīties</i>	to listen	<i>klausītava</i>	auditorium
<i>lasīt</i>	to read	<i>lasītava</i>	reading room
<i>locīt</i>	to bend	<i>locītava</i>	joint
<i>mazgāt</i>	to wash	<i>mazgātava</i>	laundry
<i>peldēt</i>	to swim	<i>peldētava</i>	swimming-bath
<i>zāģēt</i>	to saw	<i>zāģētava</i>	saw-mill

Nouns in *-uve*:

<i>lauzt</i>	to break	<i>akmeņlauztuve</i>	stone quarry
<i>braukt</i>	to drive	<i>caurbrauktuve</i>	thoroughfare, passage-way
<i>celt</i>	to lift	<i>celtuve</i>	ferry
<i>dzert</i>	to drink	<i>dzertuve</i>	tavern

<i>ģērbties</i>	to dress	<i>ģērbtuve</i>	dressing-room, cloak-room
<i>iebraukt</i>	to drive in	<i>iebrauktuve</i>	vehicle entrance
<i>kalt</i>	to hammer, forge	<i>kaltuve</i>	forge
<i>krāt</i>	to save, collect	<i>krātuve</i>	depository
<i>liet</i>	to pour	<i>lietuve</i>	foundry
<i>rakt</i>	to dig	<i>raktuve</i>	mine
<i>slēpt</i>	to hide	<i>slēptuve</i>	hiding-place
<i>iespiest</i>	to print	<i>spiestuve</i>	printery
<i>šaut</i>	to shoot	<i>šautuve</i>	shooting gallery, rifle range
<i>vērpt</i>	to spin	<i>vērptuve</i>	spinning-mill
<i>virt</i>	to boil	<i>virtuve</i>	kitchen

Vocabulary

<i>ietīties (-tinās, -tinās)</i>	to muffle oneself up
<i>rēgoties (-ojās, -ojās)</i>	to loom; to protrude
<i>pūlēties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to take pains, to toil
<i>soļot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to walk; to march
<i>muskulis</i>	muscle
<i>augums</i>	here = body
<i>apmācība</i>	drill, training, practice
<i>gulties (guļos, gūlos)</i>	to lie down
<i>pātaga</i>	whip
<i>triekties (-cos, -cos)</i>	here = to flail
<i>mašīnšautene</i>	automatic rifle
<i>lapsene</i>	wasp
<i>kosties (-žos, -dos)</i>	to bite
<i>pakrūte</i>	pit of the stomach
<i>rieksts</i>	nut
<i>aizkost (-žu, -du)</i>	to bite at
<i>metalls</i>	metal
<i>šķēle</i>	slice
<i>uzdriksētīties (-os, -ējos)</i>	to dare
<i>kariete</i>	carriage, coach
<i>stāties (stājos, stājos)</i>	here = to stand
<i>limuzīns</i>	limousine
<i>droši vien</i>	most probably
<i>lietāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	= <i>lietot</i>
<i>izzust (-zūdu, -zūdu)</i>	to disappear, vanish

<i>pārdzīvojums</i>	experience
<i>redzējums</i>	sight, vision
<i>aizsmēķēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to light (a cigarette)
<i>nāsis (pl.)</i>	nostrils
<i>nikotīns</i>	nicotine
<i>atsperē</i>	spring
<i>atsperu nazis</i>	flick-knife
<i>pārgriezt (-žu, -zu)</i>	to cut, sever
<i>naba</i>	navel
<i>nabas saite</i>	umbilical cord
<i>dalīt (-u, -ļu)</i>	to divide, part (trans.)

NOTE: *Nikotīns* has foreign monophthongal *o*.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 51–75.

Exercise 240a

Translate into English:

Kā no tumsas, kā no sen aizgājušiem laikiem, ietinušies miglas palagos, **baltie** nami rēgojās abās ielas pusēs. Augstie logi, aizklāti bieziem priekšskariem,¹ slāpēja gaismu, un ielu spuldzes kā dzērves garšiem, izliektiem kakliem **veltīgi** pūlējās rādīt ceļu, pa kuŗu iet. . .

Viens, divi, trīs! Viens, divi, trīs!

Kā kareivis viņš soļoja uz priekšu. Viņš zināja sava gājiena mērķi. **Viņš** zināja savu uzdevumu. . .

Viens, divi, trīs! Viens, divi, trīs!

Šos pašus vārdus viņš bija atkārtojis pirms ilgiem gadiem. Toreiz, kad **viņa** acis sāpēja no spilgtas gaismas. Kad katrs muskulis augumā paziņoja – **es** dzīvoju, un dzīvība ir sāpes. Toreiz, kad viņam uz galda priekšā bija **glāze** ūdens, bet viņš to nevarēja dzert.

Viens, divi, trīs! Viens, divi, trīs!

Tā bija skanējušas komandas apmācību laukumā. Celties.² Skriet. Gulties. Balss, kas deva komandu, bija izlikusies kā pātaga, kas triecās pret putekļaino apmācību laukumu.

Viens, divi, trīs!

Viņi visi bija skrējuši pāri laukam. Pretim elsoja ienaidnieks. Pretim rēja mašīnšautenes, un lodes kā lapsenes skrēja garām. Jau sen viņš bija aizmirsis liekties. Lapsenes viņu nebiedēja.

Viens, divi, trīs.

Tā viņus skaitīja smilšainā laukumā, kur slāpa un kur bads kā ass dadzis kodās pakrūtē. Bailes kā vāveres iekoda domu riekstu, pameta aizkostu – lai pūst. . . Žogi pilni metalla dadžiem,³ smiekli un ļaunums. Domas puva un puva. . . Rokas trīcēja, turot plāno maizes šķēli, mute neuzdrīkstējās tajā kost. Vajadzēja paēst ar acīm.

Baltie nami. Tie šajā ielā bija stāvējuši jau kādus simt gadus. Nekas jau nebija mainījies. Cilvēki bija miruši. Piedzimuši. Lepno zirgu kariešu vietā stājās smagi limuzīni vai slaidas sporta mašīnas. Cilvēki vēl vienmēr dzīvoja šajā ielā. Tie droši vien nedomāja par pagātņi.

Pagātne. . . Ja kāds cilvēks lietāja šo vārdu, tad viņš ar to domāja kaut ko pagājušu, izzudušu citu pārdzīvojumu un redzējumu acumirkli. Pirmais solis pēc otra jau bija pagātne. . .

Gājējs apstājās zem ielas spuldzes un aizsmēķēja cigareti. Lēnām viņš ievilka dūmus un tad tos izlaida caur nāsīm, izbaudīdams nikotīna patīkamo smaržu.

Vairs tikai pāris simt metru, un viņš būs pie sava mērķa. Tad viņa uzdevums būs paveikts. Lēnām viņš ielaida roku kabatā un aptaustīja cieta atsperu nazi. Tas bija gluds un auksts. Nekas liels jau nebija jādara, bija tikai jāpārgriež nabas saite, kas neatļāva pagātņi dalīt no tagadnes.

Guntis Zariņš, from *Neskaties atpakaļ!*

Exercise 240b

Translate into English:

1. Vai smagā mašīna tiks iekšā pa šo iebrauktuvi? – Jā, tā ir plata diezgan.
2. Vai bibliotēkas lasītavā drīkst ienest somas?
3. Nav brīnums, ka tev šodien sāp locītavas, tu būsi tās apsaldējis peldētavā.
4. Cietumnieki strādā visu dienu akmeņlauztuvēs un raktuvēs.
5. Es esmu pārāk veca, lai pati pūlētos ar veļu, es to aizsūtu uz mazgātavu.
6. Aktrise, ietinusies kažokā, ātriem soļiem devās no ģērbtuves uz karieti, kas gaidīja teātra iebrauktuvi.
7. Karavīri soļo dziedādami pa smilšaino ceļu uz šautuvi.
8. Kaltuve atrodas aiz lietuves.
9. Celtuve esot apgāzusies, un ļaudis iekrituši ūdenī.
10. Zāgētava atrodas pašā upes krastā.

¹ Not always of theatre curtains.

² The infinitive is occasionally used with imperative force, particularly in military commands.

³ i.e., 'barbed wire'.

11. Klausītava bija patukša, kad mēs tur ieradāmies.
12. Ja kāds no jums jaunajiem karavīriem uzdrīkstēsies aiziet uz dzertuvi pirmajās sešās apmācības nedēļās, tas tiks bargi sodīts; to jums būs vērā likt!
13. Ugunsgrēks, kas iznīcināja vairākus namus, esot sācies zāgētavā.
14. Policija apcietināja kādu nelieti, kas bija uzkāpis kokā un ar tālskati vēroja dāmu peldētavu. – Tā? Vai policijai nav svarīgāku uzdevumu?
15. Vai virtuvē vēl ir kāda šķēlīte gaļas, sieviņ?

Exercise 240c

Translate into Latvian:

1. The professor said that libraries were not just depositories of books.
2. Do not leave your hiding-place during the day.
3. More than four thousand workers are employed at the spinning-mill.
4. What metals do you cast (*liet*) in the foundry? – Only steel.
5. Our printing works is the most modern in the whole city.
6. How could the wasps have got into the auditorium? – Some silly student must have brought them in.
7. The reading room will be closed at ten o'clock.
8. The revolting (*rieblīgs*) smell of nicotine has still not vanished from the kitchen.
9. After work the foundry workers usually go to the tavern.
10. The first printeries were established in Germany in the 15th century, and they spread quickly all over Europe.
11. The squirrel is carrying nuts and acorns to its hiding-place.
12. The slaughter-house was situated about five kilometres from the city.
13. The old stone quarry would be a good place for our rifle range.
14. The dressing-rooms are situated below the stage.
15. How many pine boards and oak rafters did you order from the saw-mill?

LESSON 241

FACTITIVE VERBS IN *-INĀT*

Consider the following pairs of verbs:

<i>augt</i>	to grow (intrans.)	<i>audzināt</i>	to bring up, grow (trans.)
<i>dēgt</i>	to burn (intrans.)	<i>dēdzināt</i>	to burn (trans.)
<i>mosties</i>	to wake (intrans.)	<i>modināt</i>	to wake (trans.)
<i>steigt</i>	to hasten	<i>steidzināt</i>	to urge on

In each case, the verb in the column on the right can be seen as a factitive of the verb on the left, i.e., *audzināt* 'to make grow'; *dedzināt* 'to make burn'; *modināt* 'to cause to wake'; *steidzināt* 'to make hurry'.

The verbal suffix *-ināt* often serves to derive factitives from other verbs, such as the following:

<i>drēbēt</i>	to shake (intr.)	<i>drēbināt</i>	to cause to shake, i.e., to shake (trans.)
<i>drūpt</i>	to crumble (intr.)	<i>drūpināt</i>	to cause to crumble, i.e., to crumble (tr.)
<i>prēcēt</i>	to marry	<i>(iz-)prēcināt</i>	to marry off (tr.)
<i>(pie-)rast</i>	to become accustomed	<i>(pie-)radināt</i>	to accustom
<i>raudāt</i>	to cry	<i>raudināt</i>	to make cry
<i>reibt</i>	to be dizzy	<i>reibināt</i>	to make dizzy
<i>sāpēt</i>	to hurt (intr.)	<i>sāpināt</i>	to hurt (tr.)
<i>sēkot</i>	to follow	<i>sēcināt</i>	to deduce
<i>strādāt</i>	to work	<i>strādināt</i>	to make work

The suffix *-ināt* is also frequently added to adjectives, and less commonly to nouns, to produce verbs similar to the factitives shown above, cf. the following:

<i>īss</i>	short	<i>īsināt</i>	to shorten
<i>gluds</i>	smooth	<i>gludināt</i>	to smooth, to iron
<i>spodrs</i>	shiny	<i>spodrināt</i>	to make shiny

which we have already met, and the following, which we have not:

<i>ass</i>	sharp	<i>asināt</i>	to sharpen
<i>mazs</i>	small	<i>mazināt</i>	to reduce (trans.)
<i>miers</i>	peace	<i>mierināt</i>	to comfort, calm

<i>kauns</i>	shame	<i>kaunināt</i>	to shame
<i>kluss</i>	quiet	<i>klusināt</i>	to calm
<i>mīksts</i>	soft	<i>mīkstināt</i>	to soften
<i>slapjš</i>	wet	<i>(sa-)slapināt</i>	to wet
<i>stiprs</i>	strong	<i>stiprināt</i>	to strengthen
<i>traks</i>	mad	<i>(sa-)tracināt</i>	to madden, anger
<i>vājš</i>	weak	<i>vājināt</i>	to weaken (tr.)
<i>maldi</i> (pl.)	delusions	<i>maldināt</i>	to deceive, mislead
<i>prieks</i>	joy	<i>(ie-)priecināt</i>	to gladden

The student who absorbs these simple principles should have little difficulty in assigning meanings to a good number of *-ināt* verbs which he has not actually met.

Vocabulary

<i>bestsellers</i>	a best-selling book
<i>Piksija</i>	Pixie
<i>otreiz</i>	a second time
<i>dēdzīgs</i>	ardent, eager, fervent
<i>iedziļināties</i> (-os, -ājos)	to delve (into), be absorbed (in)
<i>raksti</i> (pl.)	works
<i>izdaiļojums</i>	embellishment, decoration
<i>mīklains</i>	puzzling, enigmatic
<i>izjūta</i>	sensation, feeling
<i>cilvēciņš</i>	humane, kind; here = mortal, human
<i>izdarība</i>	activity, behaviour
<i>piepūle</i>	strain, exertion
<i>pārsprāgt</i> (-gstu, -gu)	to burst (intrans.)
<i>galējs</i>	extreme, utmost
<i>pagurums</i>	tiredness, fatigue
<i>neķēriba</i>	hopelessness, despair
<i>uz spēles</i>	at stake
<i>ne par vēlti</i>	not for nothing
<i>izsmalcināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to refine
<i>intellektuālists</i>	an intellectual
<i>nicināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to despise
<i>sajūsmināt</i> (-u, -āju)	to inspire; to delight
<i>izrēdze</i>	prospect, chance
<i>rūdlīt</i> (-u, -lju)	to harden (trans.)
<i>pārdabīgs</i>	supernatural, superhuman
<i>atšķirt</i> (-šķiru, -šķiru)	here = to open (a page, book, etc.)

<i>punkts</i>	point; full stop
<i>pieturas punkts</i>	clue
<i>mulsums</i>	bewilderment
<i>neziņa</i>	perplexity, ignorance
<i>nomākt (-cu, -cu)</i>	to oppress, depress
<i>astrofizikis</i>	astrophysicist
<i>atziņa</i>	perception, knowledge
<i>sarauties (-raujos, -rāvos)</i>	to start, shudder
<i>pēkšņs</i>	sudden
<i>emocionāls</i>	emotional
<i>konvulsija</i>	convulsion
<i>purpurs</i>	purple
<i>mantija</i>	cloak, mantle, gown
<i>nolaisties pār (-žos, -dos)</i>	here = to envelop, flow over
<i>flagellants</i>	flagellant
<i>pašmociģs</i>	self-torturing
<i>nežēlība</i>	mercilessness, ruthlessness, cruelty
<i>solī pa solīm</i>	step by step
<i>mēģinājums</i>	here = attempt
<i>noslīcināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to drown (trans.)
<i>šampanietis</i>	champagne
<i>pārrasties (-rodos, -rados)</i>	to return home, come home
<i>izprieca</i>	pleasure, amusement
<i>atdarināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to copy, imitate
<i>gaume</i>	taste (in art, etc.)
<i>lukss (also luksuss)</i>	luxury
<i>iekārtot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to arrange, fit up
<i>proti</i>	namely; here = indeed
<i>Veņēcija (also Veņecija)</i>	Venice
<i>lustra</i>	chandelier
<i>pavēnis</i>	shade, shelter
<i>tieši</i>	precisely, exactly
<i>marmorpaneļots</i>	marbled
<i>vestibils</i>	vestibule, hall-way
<i>greznot (-oju, -oju)</i>	to adorn
<i>gadsimts</i>	= <i>gadu simtenis</i>
<i>Mantuja</i>	Mantua
<i>bruņinieks</i>	knight
<i>vērtība</i>	value, worth
<i>liktēnlģs</i>	fateful
<i>atvairīt (-u, -lģu)</i>	to repulse, resist
<i>uzbangojums</i>	a surging up

<i>sažņaugt (-dzu, -dzu)</i>	to squeeze
<i>ļopards</i>	leopard
<i>ķētna</i>	paw
<i>šķīsts</i>	clean, pure, chaste
<i>nebūt</i>	not at all
<i>sievīšķīģs</i>	feminine
<i>būte</i>	being, creature
<i>varmācīģs</i>	aggressive
<i>pārmocīt (-cu/-ku, -cģju)</i>	to torment; to strain, tax heavily
<i>smadzeģes (pl.)</i>	brain
<i>dzirkstēģe</i>	spark, sparkle
<i>noticēt (-u, -ēģu)</i>	to believe
<i>atslēģa</i>	key
<i>it īpaģi</i>	especially
<i>pavēdiens</i>	thread, train of thought
<i>uzklabināt (-u, -āģu)</i>	here = to type
<i>ģsums</i>	shortness, brevity
<i>fiziģis</i>	physicist
<i>Maiks</i>	Latvianization of Mike
<i>oma</i>	disposition, temper
<i>spiest (-ģģu, -ģģu)</i>	to be painful
<i>paģiras (pl.)</i>	hang-over
<i>nokaunēģies (-os, -ēģos)</i>	to be ashamed
<i>atlaisties (-ģģos, -ģģos)</i>	here = to lie back
<i>aptēksģe</i>	maid-servant
<i>apģirt (-rstu, -ru)</i>	here = to form
<i>ģurtot (-oģģu, -oģģu)</i>	here = to decipher
<i>rokrakģsts</i>	hand-writing; manuscript
<i>ģieklabināt (-u, -āģģu)</i>	to knock; here = to type
<i>kodolģģs</i>	pithy

NOTES: The following words have foreign monophthongal *o*: *astrofizikģģs*, *emocionģģģls*, *konvulsģģģja*, *marmorpaneģģģots* (first *o* only), *ļopards*.

The adverb *nebūt* requires a negative verb, and is stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 141–160.

Exercise 241a

Translate into English:

Piksija pārslasīja lapaspusi¹ vienreiz, otrreiz un trešo reizi. Nekad viņa vēl nebija tik dedzīgi iedziļinājusies vīra rakstos kā šoreiz. Viņa nojauta, ka zem greznā izdaiļojuma un mīklainajām izjūtām vajaga slēpties kādai pavisam vienkāršai, cilvēcīgai izdarībai, bet, kaut gan nabaga atraitnei galva no piepūles kļuva karsta un draudēja pārsprāgt, viņa tomēr nespēja nekā atskārst. Sen jau viņa būtu galējā pagurumā un necerībā atkāpusies no šī sākuma, bet šoreiz uz spēles bija skaidra nauda. Dumjā Piksija bija vienkārša dvēsele, ne par velti izsmalcinātie intelektuālisti viņu nicināja. Māksla vien viņu nespēja sajūsmināt, bet ja māksla bija savienota ar izredzēm drusku nopelnīt, tad tas piešķīra dzīvē rūdītajai atraitnei gandrīz pārdabīgus spēkus. Viņa atšķīra nākamo lapaspusi¹ cerībā, ka atradīs kādu pieturas punktu.

Tiešām: "Mulsuma, baiļu un neziņas nomākto astrofiziķi drīz vien ķer atziņas zibens: viņš viss saraujas pēkšņā spēcīgā emocionālā konvulsijā, kauns kā karsta un smaga purpura mantija nolaižas pār viņu un, ieracies spilvenos, viņš ar flagellanta pašmocīgo nežēlību, soli pa solim atceras visu to, kas noticis vakar vakarā, kad tas, pēc veltīga mēģinājuma noslēcināt šampanietī pasaules sāpes, pārrodas no pilsētas dārgākās izpriecu vietas savā ar neatdarināmu gaumi un luksu iekārtotajā namā. Proti: Venēcijas lustras pavēnī, tieši tajā marmor-paneļotajā vestibila stūrī, ko grezno lielisks 14. gadsimta Mantujas bruņnieka tērps² ar lielu mūzeja vērtību, liktenīga un neatvairāma asinsuzbangojuma mudināts, astrofiziķis St. Baieaux bija satvēris un saņņaudzis savās spēcīgajās jauna leoparda ķetnās kādu šķīstu, kuslu, nevainīgu un nebūt nepretojošos³ sievišķīgu būti, baltā priekšautiņā un – varmācīgi noskūpstījis viņas vēso, bet pilnīgu muti."

Un raugi⁴ – piepeši arī Piksijas pārmocītajās smadzenēs uzzibēja atziņas dzirkstele! Viņa nespēja tam noticēt, bet – viņai likās, ka tā saprot! – Pilsētas dārgākā izpriecu vieta – lūk, kur slēpās atslēga! Piksija pazina dzīvi, it īpaši viesnīcās. Lai nepazaudētu pavedienu, viņa steigšus uzklabināja īsumā un pašas zināšanai:

"Fiziķis Maiks pamodās sliktā omā: sāpēja galva un spieda pakrūtē. Viņu mocīja pagīras. Nokaunējies viņš atkal atslēgās gultā, jo atcerējās, ka pagājušajā naktī, atgriezies no kroga,⁵ bija noskūpstījis savu apteksnī."

¹ More often written as two words, or as *lappuse*.

² i.e., 'a suit of armour'.

³ i.e., 'she is *not* resisting'. The *ne* of the participle is required by the adverb *nebūt*.

⁴ The fuller form of *raugi*. See lesson 222.

⁵ *Krogus* has a parallel form *krogs*, declined like *zirgs*.

Piksijai apbira sviedri no skaidra lepnuma: viņa nemaz nebija tik dumja, viņa tomēr spēja saprast sava lielā vīra darbu! Viņa burtoja rokrakstu ar pieaugušu sajūsma un steidzīgi pieklabināja visu saprasto īsi un kodolīgi.

Anšlavs Eglītis, from *Bestsellers*.

Exercise 241b

Translate into English:

1. Pēteris tevi nicina tāpēc, ka tu viņu vienmēr kaunināji visu ļaužu priekšā.
2. Lietus pamatīgi saslapinājis ceļinieka drēbes.
3. No rokraksta var secināt, ka šī dāma ir ļoti sievišķīga un emocionāla.
4. Ja pokālam nebūtu nekādu izdaiļojumu, tas tomēr nemazinātu tā vērtību.
5. Guste ar savu greizsirdību atkal satracinājusi Ernestu, kurš viņu savās dusmās sāpinājis un raudinājis; man tagad abi divi jāklusina un jāmierina.
6. Kaut es vakar nebūtu dzērusi tik daudz šampanieša; tagad man pagīrās jāgludina veļa un jāspodrina vestibila lustra.
7. Varmācīgais bruņnieks sabiedēja un raudināja nabaga bārenīti.
8. Jaunībā romantiski raksti mani sajūsmināja un pat reibināja, bet tagad man jāsmejas par savu jaunekļa gaumi.
9. Es soli pa solim tieku pieradināts pie šīs izsmalcinātās dzīves.
10. Fakts, ka jūs rīkojāties likumu nezinādams, tomēr nemīkstinās sodu.
11. Kāpēc tu tik bieži asini zīmuli?
12. "Lukss un izpriecas tikai vājina tautas spēku," tā mūsu vecais skolotājs mēdza sprediķot.
13. Bruņnieka jaunākā meita bija slinka un nelaipna, un tas mazināja tēva izredzes to izprecināt.

Exercise 241c

Translate into Latvian:

1. Stupid Pixie, the widow of the late writer, tried to understand her famous husband's last work.
2. Nicotine is a poison which shortens life.
3. We were brought up to regard amusement and luxury as sins.
4. There are many spelling errors in the letter: from that we can deduce that Guste probably wrote it in great haste.
5. Rain, wind, frost and heat will slowly crumble the highest mountain.
6. Why did the mother shame her daughter by not giving her the key?
7. Ernest is said to have hurt Pixie often, but that seemingly has not lessened her love for him.

8. The wind was so gentle that it did not even cause the leaves to quiver.
9. The judge said: "Describe briefly how the shop-keeper cheated you."
10. "Perhaps champagne does make a refined intellectual dizzy," said the old sailor, "but as far as I am concerned, I shall stick to good old vodka."
11. At what time is the maid-servant to awaken you, madam?
12. It is easy to accustom a horse to new surroundings.
13. Do leopards sharpen their claws just as cats do?

LESSON 242

FURTHER NUMERALS

The ordinal adverbs (*firstly, secondly, etc.*) are formed from the stem of the ordinal numerals with the suffix *-kārt*:

<i>pirmkārt</i>	firstly
<i>otrkārt</i>	secondly
<i>treškārt</i>	thirdly, and so on.

Note the adverbs formed from the stem of cardinals with the suffix *-atā*:

<i>vienatā</i>	alone
<i>divatā</i>	in a group of two
<i>trijātā</i>	in a group of three
<i>četrātā</i>	in a group of four
<i>piecatā</i>	in a group of five

Note some extended meanings of *viens*:

Viņš ir vienos gados ar mani.

He is the same age as I am.

Mēs gājām vienā skolā.

We went to (one and) the same school.

Viņa dzīvoja vienās raizēs.

She lived in never-ending anxiety.

Mežs kvēloja vienās liesmās.

The forest was completely ablaze.

Viņš staigāja pa ielu vienās biksēs.

He walked down the street in nothing but his trousers.

The numerals *divi* and *trīs* are still occasionally used indeclinably:

Viņš atnāks pēc divi dienām (or *pēc divām dienām*).

He will arrive in two days.

Viņš aizgāja ar trīs draugiem (or *ar trijiem draugiem*).

He went off with three friends.

manas divi meitas (or *divas meitas*)

my two daughters

pēc trīs dienām (or *trijām dienām*)

after three days

Rarely, the noun too is given the ending *-i* after *divi* or *trīs* used indeclinably: cf. in the text *Par bagāto skopuli*, lesson 223:

Tā sagrūž viņš (tai dobē) trīs vezmi visādu ēdienu.

Thus he piles three cart-loads of all sorts of food (into the pit).

Halves are expressed with *pus-* in combination with the following ordinal. In these combinations, the stress falls on the second syllable.

<i>pusotras stundas</i>	one and a half hours, lit.: half of a second hour
<i>pustreša kilometra</i>	two and a half kilometres, lit.: half of a third kilometre

Note particularly the indefinite endings in the above examples. Although the ordinals on their own normally require definite endings, in these combinations the indefinite is used. The examples above appear to be in the genitive: this is explained by the rather anomalous declension of *pus-* numbers.

	Masculine	Feminine
Nom.	<i>pusotra kilometra</i>	<i>pusotras stundas</i>
Acc.	<i>pusotra kilometra</i>	<i>pusotras stundas</i>
Gen.	<i>pusotra kilometra</i>	<i>pusotras stundas</i>
Dat.	<i>pusotriem kilometriem</i>	<i>pusotrām stundām</i>
Loc.	<i>pusotros kilometros</i>	<i>pusotrās stundās</i>

The other fractions are more regular, formed with the ordinal and *daļa*: part.

<i>viena trešdaļa</i>	one third
<i>divas trešdaļas</i>	two thirds
<i>viena ceturtdaļa</i>	one quarter
<i>prīs ceturtdaļas</i>	three quarters
<i>tiecas sestdaļas</i>	five sixths

The forms in *-daļa* are declined like any feminine noun in *-a*. They are followed by the genitive case:

<i>divas trešdaļas naudas</i>	two thirds of the money
<i>trīs piektdaļas karavīru</i>	three fifths of the soldiers

The combination of the ordinal and *daļa* may be written as two words, in which case the ordinal takes its full set of definite endings. This normally occurs only when the numerator is *one*.

<i>(viena) trešā daļa</i>	one third
<i>(viena) ceturtdaļa</i>	one quarter, etc.

Vocabulary

<i>pārlietu</i>	extremely, excessively
<i>apbēdināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to grieve, sadden (trans.)
<i>labsirdīgs</i>	kind-hearted, good-natured
<i>nelietīgs</i>	mean, base, villainous
<i>tuvinieks</i>	relative, kinsman
<i>vajāt (-āju, -āju)</i>	to pursue, hound, persecute
<i>tirdīt (-u, -īju)</i>	here = to harass
<i>radioaktīvizēts</i>	radio-activized
<i>savienoties (-ojos, -ojos)</i>	to be united
<i>Donavāns</i>	Latvianization of Donovan
<i>ubadze</i>	beggar woman
<i>piedevām</i>	in addition, into the bargain
<i>nogalināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to kill
<i>tiesība, usually tiesības (pl.)</i>	right
<i>līdzrunāt (= runāt līdz)</i>	here = to have one's say
<i>saņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) dūšu</i>	to summon one's courage
<i>pieņemt (-u, -īju)</i>	to write, write down
<i>brūte</i>	bride; here = old flame
<i>pasūtīt (-u, -īju)</i>	here = to send
<i>apjukt (-jūku, -juku)</i>	to become perplexed, muddled
<i>neizšķirīgs</i>	here = irresolute
<i>kritika</i>	criticism
<i>sarežģīt (-īju, -īju)</i>	to complicate
<i>polichromija</i>	polychromy
<i>pievērsties (-šos, -sos)</i>	to turn (to) (intrans.)
<i>melodika</i>	melodiousness
<i>pamest (-mētu, -mētu)</i>	here = to forsake

<i>virtuozs</i>	virtuoso (adj.)
<i>akts</i>	act
<i>tāpatība</i>	identity; here = union, fusion
<i>šķitums</i>	appearance
<i>būtība</i>	essence
<i>individuāls</i>	individual (adj.)
<i>totāls</i>	total (adj.)
<i>singulārs</i>	singular (adj.)
<i>plūvērāls</i>	plural (adj.)
<i>pēsimisms</i>	pessimism
<i>nihilisms</i>	nihilism
<i>apgūt (-gūstu, -gūvu)</i>	to acquire, to master
<i>ideāls</i>	an ideal
<i>visnotaļ</i>	particularly
<i>plastisks</i>	here = concrete, clear
<i>iezīmēt (-ēju, -ēju)</i>	to indicate
<i>himnisks</i>	here = sublime
<i>kritiķis</i>	critic
<i>neatlaidīgs</i>	persevering, persistent
<i>cildināt (-u, -āju)</i>	to praise, extol
<i>zūdzties (-os, -ļjos)</i>	here = to bewail
<i>izpatikt (-tīku, -tīku) (+ dat.)</i>	to please, pander
<i>ģēnijs</i>	genius
<i>vaimanas (pl.)</i>	lamentation
<i>vispārējs</i>	general
<i>koris</i>	here = chorus

NOTES: The following words have foreign monophthongal *o*: *radioaktīvizēts, Donavāns, polichromija, melodika, virtuozs, totāls*.

Pārlietu and *visnotaļ* are stressed on the second syllable.

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 232–240.

Exercise 242a

Translate into English:

Romāna beigas pārlietu apbēdināja labsirdīgo Piksiju: nelietīgo tuvnieku vajāti, apsmieti un tirdīti, fiziķis un apteksne nolemj, ka šinī pasaulē dzīves tiem nebūs, dodas gulēt spēcīgi radioaktīvizētā gultā, kur sadeg zilās ugunis,

savienodamies nāvē un mūžībā. Tik briesmīgu un nepelnītu galu krietnajai apteksnei Piksija nespēja novēlēt. Pietika jau, ka Donavāns bija to attēlojis kā pilnīgu ubadzi, piedevām viņu vēl necilvēcīgi nogalināt tiešām bija par daudz. Juzdama, ka šīnī lietā arī viņai tiesība līdzrunāt, Piksija saņēma dūšu un pierakstīja pati savas beigas: lika apteksnei nejaukos draugus un astrofiziķa vecās brūtes vienkārši pasūtīt pie velna, apprecēt apjukušo un neizšķirīgo Maiku un dzīvot laimīgi.

...Grāmatas panākumi visus pārsteidza. Kritika vienā balsī atzina, ka sarežģītais un mīklainais Donavāns mūža beigās, savā pēdējā darbā, atmetis smago polichromiju, pievērsies raitai melodikai, pametis virtuozo stilu un atgriezies pie dabīgās un vienkāršās tautas valodas. Vēl vairāk – meistars savā beidzamajā sevis piepildīšanas aktā sasniedzis pilnīgu tāpatību starp šķitumu un būtību, starp individuālo un totālo, starp singulāro un plūrālo, jo izgājis cauri pesimisma un nihilisma ellēm, beidzot apguvis gaišās laimes ideālu – kā to visnotaļ plastiski iezīmējot pēdējā romāna himniski laimīgās beigās.

Tikai viens vienīgs kritiķis, tas, kas visu mūžu bija neatlaidīgi cildinājis seno, tumšo Donavānu, rūgti zūdījās, ka vecumā, izpatīkdams pūlim, lielais ģenijs nodevis savus jaunības ideālus, bet šīs vaimanas pazuda vispārējo slavas dziesmu priecīgajā korī.

Anšlavs Eglītis, from *Bestsellers*.

Exercise 242b

Translate into English:

1. Tēt, vai es arī nevarētu spēlēt kārtis? – Nē, dēls, pirmkārt šo spēli spēlē četratā un nevis piecatā, otrkārt tu vēl esi par jaunu, un treškārt tev jau pirms pusotras stundas vajadzēja būt gultā.
2. Ko Donavāns izsacīja garos, sarežģītos teikumos, to Piksija pateica divi vārdos.
3. Pusotras stundas laikā šīs divi radioaktīvizētās vielas savienosies.
4. Jau divi stundas es tevi meklēju, lai runātu ar tevi divatā.
5. Mēs ar Ernesta veco brūti gājām vienā skolā, jo esam vienos gados.
6. Aija domāja, ka, apprecējusi bagāto tirgotāju, viņa dzīvos vienos priekos. Bet viņš ir nelietīgs un izvirtis vīrs, kas savu sievu bieži vien apbēdina un raudina, un nu viņa dzīvo vienās bailēs un bēdās.
7. Divas trešdaļas skolnieku jau lasa diezgan tekoši, bet viena trešdaļa vēl burto.
8. Mēs spēlējām kārtis trijatā.
9. Es izkļuvi ārā no degošās mājas vienā kreklinā, un tad es redzēju, ka visa iela deg vienās liesmās.

10. Pusotrās stundās būsīm Cēsīs pie saviem radiem un tuviniekiem.
11. Pirms pustreša gadsimta zemnieki visā Eiropā bija darba rūķi bez tiesībām.
12. Savā kritikā kritiķis raksta par divi lietām, proti: pesimismu un nihilismu.
13. Pēc divi, trīs gadiem Pēterim ir izredzes tapt par virsnieku.
14. Viena trešā daļa karavīru mūsu pulkā krita pirmajos trīs kara mēnešos.

Exercise 242c

Translate into Latvian:

1. After three years the radio-active substance is still just as dangerous as on the first day.
2. Three quarters of the apples were rotten.
3. Both trains leave at the same time.
4. After two and a half miles the motor became so heated that I had to stop the car.
5. This beggar woman lives in utter poverty.
6. Within two days we shall have finished a quarter of the job.
7. Why do you not like Donovan's writings? – Firstly, I do not like **novels**, secondly, I don't like his complicated style, and thirdly, I don't like **him** because he has an Irish name: after all, I am a Scot.
8. Wolves are said to have killed a sixth of the sheep in this district.
9. The horse was covered in sweat.
10. We have been waiting an hour and a half for you to return. – **You are** indeed persistent, my friends.
11. Two and a half centuries ago a kind-hearted old baron lived in that **castle**; now there is a museum there.
12. We were born in the same year.
13. I know my rights.
14. The critic lamented that Donovan, in his old age, had betrayed the **ideals** of his youth.

LESSON 243

COGNATE ADVERBS

From a number of verbs there can be formed cognate adverbs which, used in conjunction with the verb, lend additional emphasis to the action described. These cognate adverbs commonly end in *-in* or *-šus*. A selection is given below. These adverbs are not commonly found outside of folk songs.

Infinitive	Cognate adverb
<i>bārt</i>	<i>bārtin</i>
<i>bēgt</i>	<i>bēgtin</i>
<i>braukt</i>	<i>brauktin</i>
<i>cirst</i>	<i>cirtin, cirstin</i>
<i>durt</i>	<i>durtin</i>
<i>dzert</i>	<i>dzeršus</i>
<i>dzīt</i>	<i>dzītin, dzišus</i>
<i>grūst</i>	<i>grūstin</i>
<i>jāt</i>	<i>jātin, jāšus</i>
<i>kampt</i>	<i>kampšus</i>
<i>kaut</i>	<i>kautin</i>
<i>lauzt</i>	<i>lauztin</i>
<i>lēkt</i>	<i>lēkšus</i>
<i>līt</i>	<i>lītin</i>
<i>lūgt</i>	<i>lūgtin</i>
<i>lūzt</i>	<i>lūztin</i>
<i>mest</i>	<i>mētin</i>
<i>rāt</i>	<i>rātin</i>
<i>sist</i>	<i>sistin</i>
<i>skriet</i>	<i>skriešus</i>
<i>steigt(-ies)</i>	<i>steigtin</i>
<i>tečēt</i>	<i>tečtin</i>
<i>tikt (to please)</i>	<i>tiktin</i>
<i>zagt</i>	<i>zagtin, zagšus</i>
<i>zviegt</i>	<i>zviegtin</i>

This by no means exhausts the list, but may serve as a representative selection. Note the use of the cognate adverb to emphasize the verb, which it normally precedes:

Meitas no manis bēgtin bēga.

The girls did flee from me.

Viņš viņu dzītin dzen pie darba.

He drives him vigorously off to work.

Vīriņš mani rātin rāja, ka es slinka sieva biju.

My husband scolded me soundly for being a lazy wife.

Uz mājām steigtin steidzāties.

We went home in great haste.

Zviegtin zviedza kumeliņš.

The horse neighed for a long time.

The great majority of these cognate adverbs are formed from verbs of the Short Conjugation, formations from the Mixed and Long Conjugations being rare. In the Mixed and Long Conjugations, the same effect is achieved by the use of the infinitive:

Solīt solīja, bet nedeva.

She promised indeed, but did not give.

Bērns raudāt raudāja.

The child cried for a long time.

Es dziedāt nedziedāšu.

I most certainly will not sing.

Some of the more common adjectives can also be strengthened with cognate forms, usually in *-in* or *-um*.

<i>baltin (or baltum) balts</i>	exceedingly white
<i>bālin bāls</i>	exceedingly pale
<i>biezin biezs</i>	exceedingly thick
<i>grūtin grūts</i>	exceedingly difficult
<i>karstin karsts</i>	exceedingly hot
<i>lielum liels</i>	exceedingly large
<i>mēlnum mēlns</i>	exceedingly black
<i>pilnum pilns</i>	exceedingly full
<i>raibum raibs</i>	exceedingly colourful
<i>sičin siķs</i>	exceedingly tiny
<i>skaistin skaists</i>	exceedingly beautiful
<i>tālin tāls</i>	exceedingly distant

Some combinations are usually written as one word.

<i>sārtinsārts</i>	exceedingly rosy
<i>vecumvecs</i>	exceedingly old

Cognate forms also exist for a few adverbs.

<i>caurim caur(i)</i>	through and through
<i>daudzum daudz</i>	very many
<i>pārum pāri</i>	right over

Dārzi no ziediem baltin baltī.

The gardens are exceedingly white with blossoms.

Grūtin grūts tavs mūžiņš.

Exceedingly difficult is your life.

Mežs te stāvēja biezīn biezī ar alkšņiem.

Here the forest was exceedingly thick with alders.

Vocabulary

<i>allažīn</i> (more often <i>allaž</i>)	usually; always
<i>tiklīdz</i>	as soon as
<i>saulgozis</i>	bright sunshine
<i>buča</i>	kiss
<i>trimdnieks</i>	an exile
<i>pieasts</i>	accustomed, customary, usual
<i>forma</i>	form
<i>dzelītlapains</i>	yellow-leaved
<i>antoloģija</i>	anthology
<i>paaugties</i> (-augos, -augos)	to grow up (a bit)
<i>mazliet</i>	a little
<i>spriest</i> (-žu, -du)	to judge
<i>paurs</i>	skull
<i>īgnums</i>	annoyance, peevishness
<i>raukties</i> (-cas, -cās)	to form into a frown (intrans.)
<i>blāvs</i>	pale, dim
<i>sanēt</i> (-, -ēja)	to buzz, to hum
<i>būt draugos ar</i>	to be on friendly terms with
<i>kodīgs</i>	biting, sharp
<i>todien</i>	on that day
<i>dungot</i> (-oju, -oju) (also <i>dungāt</i> , -āju, -āju)	to hum
<i>sērot</i> (-oju, -oju)	to mourn, grieve
<i>daudzi</i> (f. <i>daudzas</i>)	many

NOTES: *Forma* and *antoloģija* have foreign monophthongal *o*.

Tiklīdz and *mazliet* are stressed upon the second syllable.

Daudzi is a plural adjective, identical in meaning with the adverb *daudz*. Where the latter however requires the genitive, the former, like any other adjective, simply agrees with the noun:

<i>daudzi vīri</i>	many men
<i>daudzas puķes</i>	many flowers
<i>ar daudziem draugiem</i>	with many friends
<i>daudzās zemēs</i>	in many countries

REVISION ASSIGNMENT: Lessons 76—100.

Exercise 243a

Translate into English:

Ilgošanās.

Klau, cik rāmi strautiņš laistās,
Mēnesstari viņā mirdz;
Koki it kā sapņos saistās, –
Nāc, jel nāc pie manas sirds!
Nāc pie manas sirds tik klusi,
Kā nāk puķēm pavasar's,
Nāc pie manas sirds un dusi
Tur kā strautā mēnesstars.

Nāc, kā allažīn jau nāci,
Tiklīdz dienas gaisma dziest,
Nāc un atkal mani māci
Lūpas tev uz lūpām spiest,
Kas tik koši sārti smaids,
Tā kā rozēs, kuņas zied
Saulgozī un kāri gaida,
Bitīte lai ziedos iet.

Vēl ir karsti mani vaigi,
Tie vēl tavas bučas jūt,
It kā kalnu gali maigi
Ilgi kaist, kad saule zūd...
Klau, cik rāmi strautiņš laistās,
Mēnesstari viņā mirdz.
Koki it kā sapņos saistās –
Nāc, jel nāc pie manas sirds!

Esenbergu¹ Jānis.

¹ Formerly it was the custom for the surname to stand first in the genitive plural.

Exercise 243b

Translate into English:

Mums, trimdniekiem...

Mums, trimdniekiem,
nav praviešu un mācītāju trūkums;
tie vārdus svarīgi kā laukakmeņus veļ:
Tev, puika, dzejot būs par lietām pierastām un formās
atzītās, lūk, tādās
kā rodam dzeltlapainās antoloģijās – tās patīk mums!
To zinām mēs it labi,
jo gadi
ir mācījuši mūs;
bet tev, kā rādās,
tev jāpaaugas vēl –
nu, gadus divdesmit vai trīsdesmit
vēl jānobriest;
tad, varbūt, būsi guvis mazliet saprašanas
un varēsi mums līdzī spriest;
būs sirmi mati arī tev (vai pauris spožs un gluds),
tāpat kā mums.

Ignuma rievās manīju raucamies pierē,
bet pēkšņi, šie vārdi tik jocīgi šķita,
ka pasmaidīju, atkal mierīgs,
un izdzēsu gaismu.

Aizmiegot likās, ka dzirdēju
smejam arī manus gadus jaunus.

Kārlis Ābele.

Exercise 243c

Translate into English:

Vientulība.

Melni putni lidoja pāros pret caurspīdīgi pelēkām debesīm,
un blāvi pelēkas sēras sanēja dzidri dvēselē,
jo biju draugos tai rītā ar likteni savu.
Domāju par meiteni ar brūnām acīm.
Tā nebija mīlestība.
Nav svarīgi.

Mans liktenis,
kas pazina mani jau ilgi pirms pirmoreiz¹ iedzēla acīs
šīs pasaules kodīgā gaisma,
sēdēja todien man blakus, dungojot dīvainu dziesmu,
sērojot līdz ar mani,
jo nav mans liktenis ļauns,
un pazīst skumjas, ko sajauc ar saules spulgajām,
raibajām krāsām;
pazīst vientulību,
un zin² arī to,
ko daudzi nezin² pat mirstot –
vientulība ir visu mūsu līgava un māsa, kaut bieži
nemanāma, kamēr spējām un mīlam
skaitīt gadus, dienas un stundas.

Kārlis Ābele.

Exercise 243d (for completeness only)

Translate into English:

1. Tēvs tevi bārtin bārs, meit, ja pārnāksi mājās vēlāk par vienpadsmitiem.
2. Tiklīdz diena aust, saimnieks mūs jau dzišus dzen uz darbu karstin karstajā saulē.
3. Zālē ir daudzum daudz skudru. Tu lēksus lēksi, kad tās tev uzbruks!
4. Man tiktin tik viņas biezin biezās, melnum melnās bizes.
5. Mēs kautin kāvām odus un nosītām tos simtiem un tūkstošiem.
6. Šai dzeltlapinajai grāmatai gan jābūt vecumvecai.
7. Māte mūs allaž rātin rāj, kad ienākam ar dubļainām kurpēm tīrajā virtuvē.
8. Tev būs jātin jā, lai laikā sasniegtu celtuvi.
9. "Kaut gan jūs mani sistin sistu, es tomēr nenodošu savu biedru slēptuvi," teica laupītājs.
10. Tauta sērot sēroja par savu mirušo karalieni, daudzi raudāt raudāja.
11. Pēc grūtīn grūtā darba mugura lūztin lūza.
12. Rainis kā trimdnieks radījis skaistin skaistus dzejoļus.
13. Zvejnieku laiva bija pilnum pilna ar zivīm.
14. Man krūtīs durtin dur, ārsta kungs.
15. Jāpu naktī alutiņš tecēja no pilnum pilnajām mucām, un visi dzeršus dzēra.

¹ Contracted form of *pirmo reizi*.

² The verb *zināt* has, parallel to its present conjugation *zinu, zini, zina, zinām, zināt, zina*, a less frequent set of endings *zinu, zini, zin, zinām, zināt, zin*, i.e., it can be conjugated like *dziedāt* instead of like *lasīt*.

Exercise 243e (for completeness only)

Translate into Latvian:

1. The milk is boiling right over the edge of the pot.
2. If you ask your father, perhaps he will buy you that exceedingly colourful skirt you like so much.
3. When this calf grows up it will be an exceedingly large ox.
4. It has been raining heavily for several days.
5. Juris embraced Guste and asked for a kiss.
6. As soon as the shops close, all the sales assistants hurry home.
7. He is a scoundrel through and through.
8. The pale orphan-girl was crying a lot.
9. The children ran about until their cheeks became exceedingly rosy.
10. Full of anger, the knight attacked his enemy, and struck him with his sword until he fled.
11. Now the sheets are nice and white again.
12. These knights with their songs have surely broken the heart of many a maiden.
13. How can you be on friendly terms with such a person? It is said that he steals!
14. If a book has yellow leaves, one can judge that it is very old.
15. The sea is full of very tiny creatures.

LESSON 244

THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

A general action, one for which no subject is stated, or which has a vague generalized subject, such as 'people', 'they', etc., and which has no object, e.g.,

People were dancing in the street.
There was singing all night.

can be expressed in Latvian in the passive, e.g.,

*It was danced in the street.
*It was sung all night.

This passive is known as the Impersonal Passive. The sentences given above run as follows in Latvian:

Ielā tika dejots.
Visu nakti tika dziedāts.

Although there is no subject, the agreement is always masculine singular. Similar examples of the impersonal passive are:

Pie durvīm tika klauvēts.

There was a knock at the door.

Stacijā tika ilgi gaidīts.

There was much waiting at the station.

Piecas dienas tika svinēts.

The celebration lasted five days.

Tika ilgi un daudz dzerts.

The drinking was long and copious.

Visu dienu tika skraidīts no mājas uz slimnīcu un atpakaļ.

The whole day was spent running from the house to the hospital and back again.

Vientulībā ir jau diezgan ilgi būts.

Solitude has prevailed long enough.

In general, the Impersonal Passive should not be used if there is a way of using the active voice, although numerous examples of it will be found in texts.

Vocabulary

<i>siamietis</i> , (f. -e)	a Siamese, Thai
<i>plaiksnīties</i> (-ās, -ļjās)	to flash, blink
<i>ņeons</i>	neon (noun)
<i>rēklāma</i>	advertisement
<i>laterna</i>	lantern
<i>kavēties</i> (-ējos, -ējos)	here = to be spent (of time)
<i>mija</i>	change, variation; here = succession
<i>riets</i>	sunset
<i>palma</i>	palm tree
<i>izpūris</i> (also <i>izspūris</i>) (past participle active used adjectivally)	dishevelled, tousled
<i>banana</i> (often <i>banāns</i>)	banana
<i>tvaikot</i> (-oju, -oju)	here = to moisten, dampen
<i>airis</i>	oar
<i>glāsts</i>	caress

<i>krusts</i>	cross
<i>lāsa</i>	= <i>lāse</i>
<i>kaisīt (-u, -lju)</i>	to scatter, to strew
<i>ceļnieks</i>	= <i>ceļinieks</i>

NOTE: *Neons* is pronounced with foreign monophthongal *o*.

Exercise 244a

Translate into English:

Siamietei.

Izirusi varavīksna
 plaiksnijās neona liesmu reklāmās,
 ziedēja ķīniešu laternu pasaku puķēs.
 Manas stundas
 kavējās Tavās mazajās delnās.
 Tavu acu atvaros
 grimst manas domas,
 maldās apjukušas,
 mulsumā meklējot pazīstamas straumes –
 neatrodot.
 Tavus vārdus saprotu
 – kaut mūsu valoda ne Tava ir, ne mana –
 un Tavam smaidam seko lūpas manas;
 bet – viens otram zudām mēs
 pirms gadu tūkstošiem,¹
 un daudzu paaudžu mijā
 kļuvām arvien svešāki.
 Varbūt – pēc gadsimtiem vēl nedzimušiem
 kopā saplūdīs asinis mūsu, mūsu domas,
 bet – ne šonakt.

Šonakt

tikai manas stundas
 kavējas Tavās mazajās delnās.

Kārlis Ābele.

¹ Here substantively, with full declension.

Exercise 244b

Translate into English:

Melnas zvaigznes.

Saulei lēni dziedot rietā
 un sārtu krāsojot ūdeni,
 slīd laiva
 zem palmu izpūrušiem cekuliem,
 zem banankoku platām lapām.

Klusumu tvaiko ūdens.

Miers līst līdz ar katru lāsi
 no airu delnām.
 Brūna meitene
 ļauj ūdens glāstiem savus matus:
 melnus, melnus,
 tik melnus –
 ka zvaigznes dzimst meitenes matos
 (kā var būt nakts bez zvaigznēm?);
 dzirksteļu skudras skraida melnajos matos,
 dzirkstis līst pār kailajiem pleciem un rokām –
 līst ūdenī,
 nedziest.

Skatās meitene:

dīvas melnas zvaigznes
 zied manās acīs;
 zvaigznēs melnas naktis
 bez zvaigznēm.

Kārlis Ābele.

Exercise 244c

Translate into English:

Mans kaps.

Man akmeni uz kapa
 Un krustu nelieci,
 Tik mazās, vieglās puķēs
 Tur virsū uzstādi.

Jo visu mūžu nesu
Es grūtu krustu gan:
Lai mazākais pēc nāves
Tad viegli būtu man.

Esenbergu Jānis.

Exercise 244d

Translate into English:

Rasa un ogas.

Mirdz lielas sarkanas un baltas lāsas
Pie rudenskaļiem ceļa krūmiņiem;
Ar as'rām tās un as'nīm vienas krāsas,
– Vai tās še kaisītas no¹ ceļniekiem?

Ak nē, – tā rasa vien un sārtas ogas,
Ko rudens izbēris priekš putniņiem;
Ko² žēlas piemiņas tev sirdī zogas?

Ļauj savai sirdij dabas rokās dzīt,
Lai dus, kas vakar bij, – skat, kas būs rīt!

Jānis Rainis.

Exercise 244e

Translate into English:

- Šonakt (here = *last night*) tikpat kā nemaz nav gulēts, jo visu nakti tika dzerts un dziedāts.
- Ir diezgan būs, kur aug palmas un bananu koki, laiks atgriezties pie bērziem un ozoliem.
- Tiek runāts, ka krusts baznīcas tornī esot tīra sudraba.
- Pašlaik skolas pārziņa istabā tiek spriests par mūsu pārbaudījumu darbiem.
- Pārāk ilgi ir klusēts, nu laiks runāt!
- Dzīres sākas pēc saules rieta, un uz rīta pusi vēl tika dejots un trakots.

¹ The use of *no* to denote the agent of a passive verb is considered by many to be a barbarism. Normally, agents are not used with passive verbs, the corresponding active construction being preferred.

² Here = *kāpēc*.

- Tanī krogū es nespēlēšu kārtis, jo tur tiekot krāpts.
- Gadiem jau ir staigāts pa šo paklāju, bet tas tomēr vēl nav nodilis.
- Kurā mēnesī šeit parasti tiek arts un sēts?
- Nu jau ir diezgan ilgi sēdēts, laiks iet atkal pie darba.
- Kur tiek krāpts un melots, tur laikam arī tiek zagts.
- Brīvlaikā ir būs teātros, ballēs, operā un koncertos; būšu tīri laimīgs atgriezties savā klusajā birojā.
- Šeit netiek svinēts, bet strādāts!
- Atkal netiek darīts, kā es pavēlēju!
- Jau gadiem tiek būvēts, bet nezinām, kad Sidnejai būs savs operas nams.

Exercise 244f

Translate into Latvian:

- When it is reaping-time in southern and western Europe, in Latvia they are only sowing.
- They got only five hours' sleep: that is not sufficient.
- Enough has been done today; we shall continue the work tomorrow.
- There was dancing and celebrating all night.
- At present a lot of building is being done in our city.
- I think enough has already been said.
- No, thank you, I do not wish to sit down; I have been sitting all day.
- One has travelled on various roads, but these are undoubtedly the best.
- In war-time there is much looting and burning.
- Why was no information given about the enemy's movements?
- Until now there has been no mention of my niece's progress at school.
- Long enough has been spent in foreign lands; I want to return to England.
- During the war people slept on the floor, in the forest and even in the snow.
- Will there be a performance here this evening?
- If things are not done as the old professor likes, he becomes grumpy.

LATVIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This alphabetical vocabulary contains only the words and expressions introduced in the body of the work, and further, provides only those translations appropriate to the contexts in which they have occurred.

Hence it cannot be taken as a substitute for a complete dictionary, for which the student should consult the Bibliography.

For verbs, the principal parts are given in parenthesis; nouns ending in *-s*, *-is*, *-ns*, *-us* are masculine, unless marked (f.) or (pl.): masculine nouns declined like *akmens* are denoted by the parenthesis (gen.-ns). Verbs are noted as (trans.) or (intrans.) only where this cannot be obviously ascertained from the meanings given.

ā! (interj.) <i>ah!</i>	adrese <i>address</i>
abeja <i>abbey</i>	Āfrika <i>Africa</i>
abējādi (adv.) <i>in both ways</i>	āfrikānis, (f.) -iete <i>an African;</i>
abējāds <i>of both kinds</i>	āfrikāņu (invar. adj.) <i>African</i>
abēji <i>both</i>	agri (adv.) <i>early; agri no rīta</i>
ābele <i>apple tree</i>	<i>early in the morning</i>
abi (adj. & pron.) <i>both; abi divi</i>	agrs (adj.) <i>early</i>
(adj. & pron.) <i>both</i>	ahā! (interj.) <i>aha!</i>
āboliņš <i>clover</i>	ai! (interj.) <i>ah! oh!</i>
ābols <i>apple</i>	aicinājums <i>invitation</i>
acains <i>porous [of bread]</i>	aicināt (-u, -āju) <i>to invite; aicināt</i>
acs (f.) <i>eye; manās acīs in my</i>	uz (+ acc.) <i>to invite to</i>
<i>opinion; laist kādam miglu acīs</i>	Aija <i>Aija</i>
<i>to cloud the issue, befuddle some-</i>	aina <i>scene [of play]</i>
<i>body; cik tālu acis sniedz as far as</i>	airēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to row</i>
<i>the eye can see</i>	airis <i>oar</i>
acumirkliġs <i>momentary</i>	aita <i>sheep</i>
acumirkliis <i>moment; acumirkli!</i>	Aivars <i>Aivars</i>
<i>just a moment!; acumirkli at</i>	aiz (prep. + gen.) <i>behind, beyond</i>
<i>the moment</i>	aizaugt (-gu, -gu) <i>to become</i>
āda <i>skin; leather</i>	<i>overgrown</i>
Ādams <i>Adam</i>	aizbāzt (-žu, -zu) <i>to cork up [a</i>
adata <i>needle</i>	<i>bottle]</i>
āadminis <i>tanner</i>	aizbēgt (-gu, -gu) <i>to flee, escape</i>

aizbūdināties (-os, -ājos) <i>to excuse oneself</i>	aizmirst (-stu, -su) <i>to forget</i>
aizbraukt (-cu, -cu) <i>to drive off; to leave [on a journey]</i>	aizmirstība <i>oblivion</i>
aizceļot (-oju, -oju) <i>to travel away, abroad; to depart</i>	aizmugure <i>the area behind, hinterland, background</i>
aizdegties (-gos, -gos) <i>to catch fire</i>	aizmukt (-mūku, -muku) <i>to flee, escape</i>
aizdevums <i>loan</i>	aiznest (-su, -su) <i>to carry away</i>
aizdimt (-mst, -ma) <i>to recede into the distance [of noise]</i>	aizņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) <i>to take up, fill [space], occupy</i>
aizdomīgs <i>suspicious</i>	aizplūst (-stu, -du) <i>to flow away</i>
aizdot (-dodu, -devu) <i>to lend</i>	aizpūst (-šu, -tu) (trans.) <i>to blow away</i>
aizdurve <i>space behind the door</i>	aizputināt (-u, -āju) <i>to cover, block [with snow, etc.]</i>
aizdzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu) <i>to drive away, chase away</i>	aizraidīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) <i>to drive away</i>
aizgriezt (-žu, -zu) <i>to close [by turning], to shut off</i>	aizrakstīt (-u, -īju) <i>to write off, away [to]</i>
aizgrūst (-žu, -du) <i>to push away</i>	aizrauties (-raujos, -rāvjos) <i>to become fascinated, engrossed</i>
aizgulēties (-ļos, -lējos) <i>to oversleep</i>	aizritēt (-, -ēja) <i>to pass [of time]</i>
aiziet (-ēju, -gāju) <i>to go away; to pass [of time]; aiziet bojā</i>	aizsalt (-lstu, -lu) <i>to freeze [over]</i>
<i>to perish</i>	aizsaukt (-cu, -cu) <i>to call away</i>
aizjājējs <i>departing rider</i>	aizsaule <i>the hereafter, life beyond</i>
aizkars <i>curtain</i>	aizsegt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) <i>to cover up</i>
aizkavēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to detain, delay, hold up</i>	aizsiet (-sienu, -sēju) <i>to bind up; to blindfold [of eyes]</i>
aizklāt (-ju, -ju) <i>to cover up, veil</i>	aizsist (-tu, -tu) (trans.) <i>to slam closed</i>
aizklīst (-stu, -du) <i>to wander, stroll</i>	aizskalot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) <i>to wash away</i>
aizkost (-žu, -du) <i>to bite at</i>	aizskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) <i>to run away, off</i>
aizkrāsne <i>place behind the stove</i>	aizslaucīt (-ku, -cīju) <i>to sweep away</i>
aizkust (-kūstu, -kusu) <i>to get tired, lose one's breath</i>	aizslēgt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) <i>to lock</i>
aizlaisties (-žos, -dos) <i>to fly away, slip away</i>	aizslīdēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) <i>to slide off, away</i>
aizlidot (-oju, -oju) <i>to fly away</i>	aizsmēķēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to light [cigarette]</i>
aizliegt (-dzu, -dzu) <i>to forbid, prohibit</i>	aizsnausties (-žos, -dos) <i>to doze off</i>
aizliegums <i>prohibition, interdiction</i>	
aizlīst (-lienu, -līdu) <i>to crawl away</i>	
aizmest (-tu, -tu) <i>to throw away</i>	
aizmigt (-miegu, -migu) <i>to fall asleep</i>	

aizsniegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to reach, attain*
 aizsprukt (-sprūku, -spruku) *to get away, escape*
 aizstāties (-jos, -jos) *to place oneself*
 aizstāvēt (-u, -ēju) *to defend*
 aizstāvēties (-os, -ējos) *to defend oneself*
 aizsteigties (-dzos, -dzos) *to hasten away*
 aizstumt (-stumju, -stūmu) *to push away*
 aizsūtīt (-u, -īju) *to send away*
 aizsviest (-žu, -du) *to throw away*
 aizšaut (-šauju, -šāvu) (trans.) *to bolt*
 aizšķirties (-šķiros, -šķīros) (intrans.) *to separate, move apart*
 aiztecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to flow away; to pass [of time]*
 aiztikt (-tieku, -tiku) *to touch*
 aiztrenkt (-cu, -cu) *to chase [away]*
 aiztriekt (-cu, -cu) *to chase [away]*
 aizvakar (adv.) *the day before yesterday*
 aizvākt (-cu, -cu) *to carry away*
 aizvējš *area protected from wind; lee [-side]*
 aizvērt (-veru, -vēru) (trans.) *to shut, close*
 aizvērties (-veros, -vēros) (intrans.) *to shut, close*
 aizvest (-du, -du) *to take away, cart off; to deport*
 aizvēsturisks *prehistoric*
 aizvien (+ comp.) *ever (+ comp.)*
 aizvilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to drag away; to draw [of curtains]*
 aizvizināt (-u, -āju) *to drag away, carry away*
 aizzagties (-zogos, -zagos) (intrans.) *to steal away, slip away*
 ak! (interj.) *oh!; oh dear!; ak tā! is that so!*
 aka (noun) *well*
 akadēmisks (adj.) *academic*
 akmens (gen.-ns) *stone; akmens laikmets Stone Age*
 akmepains *stony*
 akmeplauztuve *stone quarry*
 aktieris *actor*
 aktrise *actress*
 akts *act*
 akuzātīvs (noun) *accusative case*
 āķis *hook; catch*
 ala *cave*
 alga *salary, wages*
 algot (-oju, -oju) *to reward, pay*
 alkoholisks (adj.) *alcoholic*
 alksnis *alder*
 alkt (-kstu, -ku) (+ gen.) or pēc (+ gen.) *to long, thirst [for]*
 allaž (occ. allažin) *usually; always*
 altāris *altar*
 alus *beer*
 amatnieks *tradesman*
 amats *trade; position; office; būt augstā amatā to hold a high position*
 Amerika *America; Amerikas Savienotās Valstis United States of America*
 amerikānis, (f.) -iete *an American; amerikāņu (invar. adj.) American*
 amizants *amusing, enjoyable*
 āmurs *hammer*
 Anglija *England*
 anglis, (f.) -iete *an Englishman, -woman; angļu (invar. adj.) English*
 angļiski (adv.) *English*
 Anna *Anne*
 Ansis *Ansis, Hans*

antipatija *antipathy; antipatija pret (+ acc.) antipathy towards*
 antoloģija *anthology*
 ap (prep. + acc.) *around, about*
 apakš (prep. + gen.) *below, under*
 apakšā (adv.) *down below, downstairs*
 apakšējs (usually def.) *lower*
 apakšnieks *subordinate, underling*
 apakšpus (prep. + gen.) *below, beneath, downstream from*
 apaļš (adj.) *round*
 aparāts: televīzijas aparāts *television set*
 apatija *apathy; apatija pret (+ acc.) apathy towards*
 apavi (pl.) *footwear*
 apbēdināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to grieve, sadden*
 apbirt (-rst, -ra) (in text 241a) *to form*
 apburt (-buru, -būru) *to bewitch, enchant*
 apcelt (-ceļu, -cēlu) *to tease, belittle, laugh at*
 apciemot (-oju, -oju) *to visit*
 apcietināt (-u, -āju) *to arrest*
 apdāvināts *gifted*
 apdegt (-gu, -gu) *to get scorched*
 apdomāt (-āju, -āju) *to consider, ponder*
 apdomāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to reflect, change one's mind*
 apdomīgs *cautious*
 apdrošināšana *insurance; dzīvības apdrošināšana life insurance*
 apdrošināt (-u, -āju) *to insure*
 apdvēst (or apdvest) (-žu, -su) *to breathe upon, to fan*
 apdziedāt (-u, -āju) *to sing of*
 apdzist (-dziest, -dzisa) *to go out, be extinguished*
 apdzīvot (-oju, -oju) *to inhabit*
 apelsīns (noun) *orange*
 apēst (-du, -du) *to eat up*
 apgabals *district, province, region*
 apgaismojums *lighting*
 apgarot (-oju, -oju) *to inspire; to enliven*
 apgāzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to overturn*
 apgāzties (-žos, -zos) *to topple over*
 apglabāt (-āju, -āju) *to bury [of dead]*
 apgriezēt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn around*
 apgriezties (-žos, -zos) (intrans.) *to turn around*
 apgūt (-gūstu, -gūvu) *to acquire, master*
 apģērbs *clothing*
 apģērbties (-bjos, -bos) *to get dressed*
 apiet (-eju, -gāju) *to go around, avoid*
 apjāt (-jāju, -jāju) *to ride around*
 apjozt (-žu, -zu) *to gird around*
 apjukt (-jūku, -juku) *to become perplexed, muddled*
 apkalpot (-oju, -oju) *to serve, wait upon*
 apkalt (-ļu, -lu) *to shoe [a horse]*
 apkampt (-pju, -pu) *to embrace*
 apkārt (prep. or postp. + dat.); (or adv.) *around*
 apkārtnē *environment, vicinity*
 aplāt (-ju, -ju) *to cover, set [table]*
 aplusināt (-u, -āju) *to quieten, pacify, soothe, calm*
 apklust (-stu, -su) *to grow calm, silent*
 apkopt (-pju, -pu) *to nurse, tend; to tidy*

- apķert (-ķeru, -ķēru) *to seize around; to comprehend*
 apķerties (-ķeros, -ķēros) *to bethink oneself*
 aplaimot (-oju, -oju) *to make happy*
 aplaist (-žu, -du) (acis) *to cast [one's eyes] around*
 aplam *wrongly*
 aplams *wrong, erroneous, absurd*
 aplaudēt (-ēju, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to applaud*
 aplenkt (-cu, -cu) *to surround, encircle*
 aplenkums *siege*
 aplēse *calculation, estimate*
 aplēst (-lēšu, -lēsu) *to calculate, estimate*
 aplēsums *calculation, estimate*
 aplidot (-oju, -oju) *to fly around*
 aplīkt (-lieku, -liku) *to place about*
 aploks *enclosure, enclosed pasture*
 aploksne *envelope*
 aplūkot (-oju, -oju) *to look at, examine, inspect*
 apmācība *drill, training, practice*
 apmākties (-cas, -cās) (intrans.) *to cloud over*
 apmaldīties (-os, -ļjos) *to go astray, get lost*
 apmeklēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to visit, patronize, attend*
 apmēram *approximately*
 apmet (-tu, -tu) (in text 217a) *to plaster*
 apmierināt (-u, -āju) *to soothe, quieten, satisfy*
 apmierinātība *contentment; complacency*
 apmierināts *satisfied*
 apmulst (-stu, -su) *to become confused*
- apnikt (-nīku, -niku) (+ dat.) *to become tedious; tas man apnicis I am sick and tired of it*
 apnikums *boredom, surfeit; līdz apnikumam to the point of boredom, ad nauseam*
 apņemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to gather about [oneself]; to embrace*
 appīt (-pinu, -pinu) *to plait around*
 applūdināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to flood, inundate*
 apprecēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) *to marry*
 apprecēties (-os, -ējos) (intrans.) *to get married*
 appūsts *weather-beaten*
 appušķot (-oju, -oju) *to adorn, decorate*
 aprakstīt (-u, -iju) *to describe*
 aprast (-rodu, -radu) *to grow accustomed*
 aprasts *familiar*
 apraudāt (-u, -āju) *to bewail, deplore*
 apreibt (-bstu, -bu) *to become giddy*
 aprīlis *April*
 aprimt (-mstu, -mu) *to fall silent; to abate [of wind]*
 aprunāt (-āju, -āju) *to slander*
 apsaldēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to chill, freeze*
 apsargāt (-āju, -āju or -u, -āju) *to guard*
 apsegs *covering; blanket*
 apsegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to cover*
 apsējs *bandage*
 apsēties (-žos, -dos) *to sit down*
 apsiet (-sienu, -sēju) *to bandage, to bind around*
 apsievoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to take a wife*
 apsisties (-tos, -tos) (in text 224a) *to go around*

- apskaisties (-šos, -tos) *to become angry*
 apskalo (-o, -oja) *to lap [of sea, waves, etc.]*
 apskatīt (-u, -iju) *to inspect, look over*
 apskatīties (-os, -ļjos) *to look around*
 apskaust (-žu, -du) *to envy*
 apskaut (-auju, -āvu) *to hug, embrace*
 apskurbt (-bstu, -bu) *to become dizzy, intoxicated*
 apsmiet (-smeju, -smēju) *to deride, mock*
 apsnigt (-snieg, -sniga) *to cover with snow*
 apspīdēt (-, -ēja) *to shine on*
 apstaigāt (-āju, -āju) *to walk around*
 apstākļi *circumstance, condition; apstākļa vārds adverb*
 apstāt (-ju, -ju) (trans.) *to enclose, surround; to flock to*
 apstāties (-jos, -jos) (intrans.) *to stop*
 apstrādāt (-āju, -āju) *to work [a material]; to cultivate [soil]; to hew [stone]*
 apstulbt (-bstu, -bu) *to be dazzled, stunned, taken aback*
 apsvērt (-sveru, -svēru) *to consider*
 apsviedīgs *agile, active*
 apsvilt (-lstu, -lu) *to get scorched, singed*
 apsvīst (-stu, -du) *to be covered [with moisture, steam]; to fog, cloud over [of surface]*
 apšaubīt (-u, -iju) *to doubt*
 aptaisīt (-u, -iju) *to enclose, put around*
 aptaustīt (-u, -iju) *to touch, feel*
- aptecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to flow around, run around; to wait on*
 apteksne *maidservant*
 aptieka *pharmacy*
 aptiekārs *pharmacist*
 aptīt (-tinu, -tinu) *to twine around; (in text 230a) to cover*
 aptraipīt (-u, -iju) *to spot, stain*
 aptumst (-mst, -ma) *to grow dark*
 apturēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) *to stop*
 aptvert (-tveru, -tvēru) *to clasp, embrace; to grasp, understand*
 apvainot (-oju, -oju) *to abuse, offend*
 apvainoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to take offence; apvainoties par (+ acc.) to take offence at*
 apvārsnis *horizon*
 apvazāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to soil; to wear out*
 apvelt (-veļu, -vēļu) (trans.) *to roll around*
 apvelties (-veļos, -vēļos) *to grow plump*
 apvidus *district, surroundings, locality*
 apvilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to put on [clothes]*
 apvīt (-viju, -viju) *to twist, weave, wind, wreath; apvīt krēslu, etc. to adorn a chair, etc.*
 apzagt (-zogu, -zagu) *to plunder, rob*
 apžilbt (-bstu, -bu) *to be dazzled; man apžilbst acis my eyes are dazzled*
 ar (prep. + acc.) *with; ar labu nakti good-night; ar to thereby ar or ar' = arī also*
 ārā *the outside; uz ārū nākt to come forward, emerge*
 ārā *outside*

arhitekts *architect*
 arhitektūra *architecture*
 ardievas (pl.) *parting words;*
valediction
 ardievu *goodbye*
 ārējs *outer, external*
 arī *also; ne arī not even, nor;*
ja arī even if
 arkls *plough*
 ārprāts *madness, lunacy*
 ārpus (prep. + gen.) *outside; ārpus*
kārtas out of turn
 ārsts *doctor*
 art (-ru, -ru) *to plough*
 Artūrs *Arthur*
 arums *ploughed field*
 arvien(u) *always; vēl arvien still;*
arvien (+ comp.) ever
(+ comp.); arvien vairāk more
and more
 asara *tear; liet asaras to shed*
tears
 asināt (-u, -āju) *to sharpen*
 asinis (f. pl.) *blood*
 asins (f.) *blood*
 asiņains *bloody*
 asmens (gen. -ns) *blade*
 asprātīgs *sharp-witted; witty*
ass sharp
 aste *tail*
 astoņdesmit *eighty*
 astoņdesmitais *eightieth*
 astoņēji *eight*
 astoņi *eight*
 astoņpadsmit *eighteen*
 astoņpadsmitais *eighteenth*
 astoņsimt *eight hundred*
 astoņsimtais *eight hundredth*
 astotais *eighth*
 astrofiziķis *astrophysicist*
 asums *sharpness*
 ASV (f. pl.) *the USA*

ataudze *saplings*
 ataugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow again*
 atbalsot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to echo*
 atbalss (f.) *echo*
 atbalstīt (-u, -īju) *to support; to*
help out [with money, etc.]
 atbalstīties (-os, -ījos) *to lean*
[against]
 atbīdīt (-u, -īju) *to push off, aside*
 atbilde *answer*
 atbildēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to*
answer
 atbildība *responsibility*
 atbildīgs *answerable, responsible*
 atbilst (-st, -da) (+ dat.) *to*
correspond, tally
 atbraukt (-cu, -cu) *to arrive*
 atburt (-buru, -būru) *to charm*
away, break a spell
 atcelt (-ceļu, -cēlu) *to abolish*
 atceļot (-oju, -oju) *to arrive*
 atcerēties (-os, -ējos) *to remember*
 atčukstēt (-u, -ēju) *to answer in*
a whisper
 atdabūt (-ūju, -ūju) (trans.) *to get*
back
 atdalīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.)
to separate out, move apart
 atdarināt (-u, -āju) *to copy,*
imitate
 atdot (-dodu, -devu) *to give away,*
give back
 atdusa *repose, rest, slumber*
 atdzimt (-mstu, -mu) (intrans.)
to be regenerated, revive
 atdzist (-dziestu, -dzisu) (intrans.)
to cool down [of water, etc.]
 atgriezt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn*
back, reverse
 atgriezties (-žos, -zos) (intrans.)
to return

atgūt (-gūstu, -guvu) *to regain, win*
back
 atiet (-ēju, -gāju) *to depart*
 Atis *Atis*
 atjāt (-jāju, -jāju) *to come riding*
 atjaunot (-oju, -oju) *to renew,*
restore
 atjūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to unharness*
 atkal *again*
 atkāpties (-pjos, -pos) *to retrace*
one's steps, retreat, back down
 atkātojums *repetition*
 atkārtot (-oju, -oju) *to repeat*
 atklājums *discovery*
 atklāt (-ju, -ju) *to discover; to*
reveal; to open [exhibition, etc.];
atklāt uguni to open fire
 atklāties (-jos, -jos) *to be discovered;*
to become evident
 atkliegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to shout back*
 atklīst (-stu, -du) *to stroll up*
 atkritumi (pl.) *rubbish, refuse*
 atlaist (-žu, -du) (trans.) *to let go*
[again]; to dismiss
 atlaisties (-žos, -dos) (intrans.) *to*
lie back; to ease
 atlantisks *Atlas-like, Herculean*
 atlēkt (-lecu, -lēcu) *to come jumping;*
to jump aside
 atlidot (-oju, -oju) *to arrive flying*
 atliekas (pl.) *remains*
 atliekt (-cu, -cu) (trans.) *to unbend*
 atlikt (-lieku, -liku) *to put away,*
aside; to postpone, delay; (occ.)
to remain
 atlīst (-lienu, -līdu) *to come*
crawling
 atļauja *permission, approval*
 atļaut (-ļauju, -ļāvu) *to allow,*
permit
 atmaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to repay; to*
take revenge

atmata *fallow ground*
 atmest (-tu, -tu) (trans.) *to throw*
aside; to give up; atmest galvu
to toss one's head
 atminēt (-u, -ēju) *to remember*
 atminēties (-os, -ējos) *to remember*
 atmiņa *memory*
 atmosties (-stos, -dos) (intrans.)
to wake up [again]
 atnākt (-ku, -cu) *to come, arrive*
 atnest (-su, -su) *to bring*
 atņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) *to take*
back, take away
 atņemties (-ņemos, -ņemos) (in text
 219b) *to revive*
 atoms *atom*
 atpakaļ (adv.) *back*
 atpīt (-pinu, -pinu) *to unplait,*
untwine
 atplest (-šu, -su) (trans.) (in text
 219b) *to open*
 atplūst (-stu, -du) *to flow back*
 atpūsties (-šos, -tos) (intrans.)
to repose, rest
 atradums *finding, discovery*
 atraidīt (-u, -īju) *to reject, send*
away
 atraitrine *widow*
 atraitis *widower*
 atrakstīt (-u, -īju) *to write [to]*
 atrast (-rodu, -radu) *to find*
 atrasties (-rodos, -rados) *to be*
situated
 atraut (-rauju, -rāvu) (trans.) *to*
tear off, pull away
 atrisinājums *solution*
 atrisināt (-u, -āju) *to solve*
 atrist (-rīst, -rīsa) *to come undone,*
untied, loose
 ātrs *quick, fast*
 ātrums *speed; gear*
 atrunāt (-āju, -āju) *to dissuade*

- ātrvilciens *express train*
 atsaukt (-cu, -cu) *to call back, recall*
 atsegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to uncover, disclose*
 atsevišķi *separately*
 atsist (-tu, -tu) (in text 220a) *to throw open*
 atskanēt (-, -ēja) *to resound*
 atskārst (-stu, -tu) *to apprehend, conceive, realize*
 atskatīties (-os, -ījos) uz (+ acc.) *to look back on*
 atskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run hither, come running*
 atskurbt (-bstu, -bu) *to become sober*
 atslābt (-bstu, -bu) *to slacken, flag*
 atslēga *key*
 atslēgt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to unlock*
 atslīgt (-gstu, -gu) *to sink back, relapse*
 atspere *spring; atspere nazis flick knife*
 atspīdums *reflection*
 atspiesties (-žos, -dos) (intrans.) *to lean [against]*
 atspirgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to get well, recover, revive*
 atsprāgt (-gst, -ga) (intrans.) *to fly open; (in text 215a) to break off*
 atstarojums *reflection*
 atstarot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to reflect*
 atstāt (-ju, -ju) (trans.) *to leave, abandon; atstāt iespaidu uz (+ acc.) to leave an impression on*
 atstiept (-pju, -pu) *to drag hither*
 atsviest (-žu, -du) *to throw back*
 atšķirība *difference, distinction*
 atšķirt (-šķiru, -šķīru) (trans.) *to*

- separate, distinguish; to open [page, book, etc.]*
 atšķirties (-šķiros, -šķīros) *to differ, stand out [from]*
 attaisīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to open*
 attālināt (-u, -āju) *to take away, remove to a distance*
 attālums *distance*
 attecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to come running*
 atteikt (-cu, -cu) *to answer, reply*
 attēlot (-oju, -oju) *to describe*
 attiecība *relation, connection*
 attiecīgs *appropriate*
 attīstība *development*
 attīstīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to develop*
 attīt (-tinu, -tinu) (trans.) *to unroll, unwrap*
 atvadas (pl.) *leave-taking*
 atvadīties (-os, -ījos) no (+ gen.) *to bid farewell [to]*
 atvainot (-oju, -oju) *to excuse, pardon*
 atvairīt (-u, -īju) *to repulse, resist*
 atvars *whirlpool, eddy*
 atvērt (-veru, -vēru) (trans.) *to open*
 atvērties (-veras, -vērās) (intrans.) *to open*
 atvest (-du, -du) *to bring*
 atvilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to recover [breath]*
 atzinība *recognition*
 atziņa *perception, knowledge*
 atzīt (-zīstu, -zinu) *to acknowledge, admit; atzīt par (+ acc.) to recognize as [good, etc.]*
 atzīties (-zīstos, -zinos) (intrans.) *to confess, admit*
 aube *cap*
 audekls *linen; [home-] woven cloth; canvas [for painting]*

- audzēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to raise, grow*
 audzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to raise, breed; to bring up, educate*
 auglīgs *fertile, fruitful*
 auglis *fruit*
 augstprātīgs *haughty*
 augsts *high; būt augstā amatā to hold a high position*
 augstsirdīgs *magnanimous*
 augstskola *university*
 augstu (adv.) *high*
 augstums *height, altitude*
 augšā (adv.) *high up*
 augšamcelšanās (refl.) *resurrection*
 augšējs (usually def.) *upper*
 augšpus (prep. + gen.) *above, upstream from*
 augšup *upwards; iet augšup (intrans.) to improve, pick up*
 augt (-gu, -gu) (intrans.) *to grow*
 augums *figure, stature, build, (occ.) body; growth, generation; augu augumi generation after generation*
 augusts *August*
 auka *storm, tempest, gale*
 auksts (adj.) *cold; man ir auksti I am cold; man metas auksti I am beginning to get cold*
 aukstums *cold, coldness*
 aulekšot (-oju, -oju) *to gallop*
 auļot (-oju, -oju) *to gallop*
 aurot (-oju, -oju) *to roar, howl*
 auseklis *morning star*
 ausīties (-os, -ījos) *to prick up one's ears*
 ausma *dawn, daybreak*
 auss (f.) *ear*
 aust (aust, ausa) *to dawn*
 aust (-žu, -du) *to weave*
 austrālietis, (f.) -e *an Australian; austrāliešu (invar. adj.) Australian*
- Austrālija *Australia*
 austrietis, (f.) -e *an Austrian; austriešu (invar. adj.) Austrian*
 Austrija *Austria*
 austrumi (pl.) *the east; austrumos in the east; Tālie austrumi The Far East; Vidējie austrumi The Middle East; austrumu (invar. adj.) east, eastern*
 auša (m. or f.) *chatterbox, windbag*
 aut (aunu, āvu) *to put on [of footwear]; aut kājas to put on shoes, socks*
 auti (pl.) *bandages; (in text 216a) shroud*
 auties (aunos, āvos) *to put on one's shoes; to get ready*
 auto (m. indec.) *motor car*
 autobuss *bus*
 automašīna *car*
 automobilis *motor car*
 auzas (pl.) *oats*
 avene *raspberry*
 avīze *newspaper*
 avots *spring, source*
 avs (f.) *sheep*
 āziātisks *Asiatic, Asian*
 āziāts, (f.) -e *an Asian*
 Āzija *Asia*
 āzis *buck, he-goat*
 azote or azots (f.) *breast, bosom (see Lesson 235)*
- badis *hunger, starvation, famine*
 bagātība *riches, wealth*
 bagāts *rich; bagāts ar (+ acc.) rich in*
 Baiba *Baiba*
 baidīties (-os, -ījos) *to be frightened*
 baigs *dreadful, terrible*
 bail *see bailes*

- bailes (pl.) *fear*; man ir bailes, man bail *I am afraid*; drebēt aiz bailēm *to shake with fear*
 bailīgs *timorous, fearful*
 baisma *terror, horror*
 bāleliņš *brother*
 bālēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to grow pale*; (in text 219b) *to glow palely*
 balets *ballet*
 bālin cog. adv. to *bāls*
 bāliņš *brother*
 balle *ball, dance*; balles zāle *ball-room*
 balodis *pigeon, dove*
 balot (-oju, -oju) *to grow pale*
 bāls *pale, wan, colourless*
 balsiens *syllable*
 balss (f.) *voice; vote*
 balstīt (-u, -īju) *to support*
 balstīties (-os, -ījos) *to lean against, on; to be based on*
 Baltijas jūra *Baltic Sea*; Baltijas zeme (in text 222a) *Latvia*
 baltin cog. adv. to *balts*
 balts *white*
 baltum cog. adv. to *balts*
 baltums *whiteness*
 bālums *paleness*
 balva *gift, present; prize*
 baļķis *beam, rafter; log*
 banana (often banāns) *banana*
 banga *wave, billow*
 bangot (-o, -oja) *to rage [of sea, etc.]*
 banka *bank*
 barbarisks *barbaric*
 bārda *beard*; dzīt bārdu *to shave*; (no-)skūt bārdu *to shave*; bārdas nazis *razor*
 bardzība *harshness*
 bārenis, (f.)-e *orphan*; bāreņu nams *orphanage*
 bargs *harsh*
 bargums *harshness*
 barība *fodder, food*
 bāriens *scolding*
 bāris *orphan*
 barons *baron*
 barot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to feed [animals]*
 bars *crowd, herd, flock, swarm*
 bārstīt (-u, -īju) *to scatter, strew*
 bārt (baru, bāru) *to scold, growl at*
 bārties (baros, bāros) *to quarrel, grumble, recriminate*
 bārtin cog. adv. to *bārt*
 bass *bare [of feet, legs]*
 baudīt (-u, -īju) *to have the benefit of, to enjoy*
 baznīca *church*; plīks kā baznīcas žurka *as poor as a churchmouse*
 baznīcēns *church-goer*
 bāzt (-žu, -zu) *to shove, thrust*
 bāzties (-žos, -zos) (+ dat.) *to intrude, meddle, pester*
 bēda (often bēdas) (pl.) *grief*; priekos un bēdās *in happiness and grief*
 bēdīgs *sad*
 bedre *hole, pit*
 bēgt (-gu, -gu) *to flee*
 bēgtin cog. adv. to *bēgt*
 bēģelis (occ. bēģele) *window-sill*
 beidzmais *the last*
 beidzot *finally, at last*
 beigas (pl.) *end*
 beigot (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to finish, stop*
 beigties (-dzos, -dzos) (intrans.) *to finish, end*
 beļģietis, (f.)-e *a Belgian*
 Beļģija *Belgium*
 beļģu (invar. adj.) *Belgian*
 bende (m.) *executioner, hangman*
 bēniņi (pl.) *attic*
 benzīns *petrol*

- bēres (pl.) *funeral*
 bērinieks *mourner*
 bēris *bay horse*
 Berlīne *Berlin*
 bērniņa *childhood*
 bērns *child*; bērnu dārzs *kindergarten*; bērnu ratiņi (pl.) *pram*
 bērš (adj.) *bay*
 bērt (beru, bēru) *to scatter, strew, pour in*
 bērzs *birch tree*
 berzt (-žu, -zu) *to rub, rub clean, scour*
 bestsellers *a best-selling book*
 bet *but*
 betons *concrete*
 bez (prep. + gen.) *without*; bez jēgas (postp. + gen.) *galore*; bez manis *not counting me*; bez tam *furthermore; anyway*
 bezdarbība *idleness*
 bezdievīgs *atheistic, godless*
 bezgalīgi *tremendously, unspeakably*
 bezgalīgs *endless, unlimited*
 bezjūtība *heartlessness*; bezjūtība pret (+ acc.) *heartlessness towards*
 bibliotēka *library*
 biedēklis *see putnu biedēklis*
 biedēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to frighten*
 biedrība *association, society*
 biedrs *comrade, companion*; gaitu biedrs *[travelling-] companion*; rotaļu biedrs *playmate*
 biezin cog. adv. to *biezs*
 biezoknis *thicket, dense patch of growth*
 biezs *thick*
 biežums *thickness, denseness*
 bieži *often*
 bikls *bashful, shy, timid*
 bikses (pl.) *trousers*
 Biksti (pl.) *Biksti*
 bikšeles (pl.) *trousers*
 bilde *picture*; uz bildes *in a picture*
 bildinājums *proposal [of marriage]*
 bildināt (-u, -āju) *to propose to*
 bilst (-stu, -du) *to say*
 biļete *ticket*
 birojs *office*
 birt (-rst, -ra) *to fall [of tears, leaves, etc.]*
 Biruta *Biruta*
 birze *birch grove*
 birzs (f.) *birch grove*
 birzt (-rst, -rza) (intrans.) *to crumble [to pieces]*
 bīstamība *perilousness*
 bīstams *dangerous*
 bišķrēslīņš or bišu krēslīņš *tansy*
 bite *bee*; bišu krēslīņš *tansy*
 bīties (bīstos, bijos) *to be afraid*
 bize *pigtail, plait*
 blakus (occ. blaku) (adv.) *alongside*, (prep. or postp. + dat.) *beside*; blakus istaba *the next room*
 blāvs *pale, dim*
 blāzmot (-o, -oja) *to glow, blaze*
 blēt (-ju, -ju) *to bleat*
 blīst (occ. blīzi) (-stu, -du) *to swell up, grow fat*
 blūze *blouse*
 blaut (blāju, blāvu) *to shout, bray, clamour*
 bļoda *dish*
 bojā *see iet bojā, aiziet bojā*
 brakš(ķ)ēt (-, -ēja) (intrans.) *to crack*
 brālēns *cousin*
 brālība *brotherhood*
 brālīgs *brotherly, fraternal*
 brālis *brother*; brāļa dēls *nephew*; brāļa meita *niece*
 brašs *strapping, dashing*

braucamais conveyance
 braucējs driver, coachman
 brauciens journey
 braukt (-cu, -cu) (intrans.) to drive, travel; braukt ar (+ acc.) to travel by
 brauktin cog. adv. to braukt
 brazīlietis, (f.) -e a Brazilian;
 brazīliešu (invar. adj.) Brazilian
 Brazīlija (often Brazīlija) Brazil
 brāzt (-žu, -zu) to roar, rage, rush; (in text 225b) to whip up
 brēkt (-cu, -cu) to scream, cry, bawl; kliegdamš brēkdams shouting and screaming
 Brencis Brencis
 brīdinājums warning
 brīdināt (-u, -āju) to warn; brīdināt no (+ gen.) to warn of
 brīdis moment; ik brīdi every moment
 briedums ripeness
 briesmas (pl.) danger, peril
 briesmīgs horrible, dreadful; Jānis Briesmīgais Ivan the Terrible
 briest (-stu, -du) to swell, ripen
 brilles (pl.) spectacles; briļļu čūska cobra
 brīnišķīgs wondrous, marvellous
 brīnišķs wondrous, marvellous
 brīnīties (-os, -ījos) to marvel, be amazed
 brīnums marvel, wonder, miracle
 brist (brienu, bridu) to wade
 brītiņš dim. of brīdis
 brīvība freedom, liberty
 brīvlaiks vacation
 brīvlaistais discharged [soldier]
 brīvs free [not imprisoned, not oppressed]; free [not taken up, still available]; brīvā dabā in a natural state

brīžam occasionally
 brokastis (f. pl.) breakfast
 brr! (interj.) brr!
 brūce wound
 brukt (brūku, bruku) to fall down; to fade [of paint, etc.]; brukt kopā to collapse, cave in; brukt virsū (+ dat.) to fall upon, attack; brukt zemē to fall down [of clothing, etc.]
 brūns brown
 bruņinieks knight
 brūte bride; (in text 242a) old flame
 bubināt (-u, -āju) to murmur; to neigh softly
 buča kiss
 būda hut, hovel
 bulta arrow, bolt
 bulvāris boulevard
 bumba ball; bomb
 bumiere pear-tree
 burbulis bubble
 būris cage; (in text 232a) howdah
 burkāns carrot
 burt (buru, būru) to conjure, practise magic
 burtisks literal
 burtnīca exercise book
 Burtnieki (pl.) a proper name, sometimes symbolic of wisdom and learning
 burtot (-oju, -oju) to spell, spell out; to decipher
 burts letter [of alphabet]; lielais burts capital letter; mazais burts lower case letter
 burve sorceress, witch
 burvīgs magical, enchanting
 burvis wizard, magician
 būt (esmu, biju) to be
 būte being, creature
 būtība essence

būtne creature, being
 būvēt (-ēju, -ēju) to build, construct
 cālis chicken; cāļa gaļa chicken [for eating]
 cauna sable
 caur (prep. + acc.) through
 caurbrauktuve thoroughfare, passage-way
 cauri (adv. or postp. + dat.) through
 caurim cog. adv. to caur(i)
 caurs hollow; full of holes; torn
 caurspīdīgs transparent, clear
 caurule pipe
 caurumains full of holes
 caurums hole
 cekuls crest, tuft
 cēliens act [of play]
 celis knee
 celms tree stump
 cēlonis (occ. cēlons) cause
 cēls noble, sublime
 celt (ceļu, cēlu) to lift, raise; to build
 celties (ceļos, cēlos) to rise, get up
 celtuve ferry
 ceļinieks (occ. ceļnieks) traveller, wanderer
 ceļmala roadside
 ceļojums journey; kāzu ceļojums honeymoon [trip]
 ceļot (-oju, -oju) to travel
 ceļotājs traveller
 ceļš road; journey, trip; route, way; ceļā uz (+ acc.) on the way to; laimīgu ceļu! have a happy trip!; sānceļš (occ. sānu ceļš) side road; ceļa jūtis (f. pl.) (in text 233a) cross-roads; ceļa soma travelling bag, case
 cena price; par katru cenu at any price
 censonis striver, zealous man
 centimetrs centimetre
 cents cent
 cepetis a roast
 ceplis oven; kiln
 cept (cepu, cepu) (trans.) to bake, fry, roast
 cepure hat, cap
 cerēt (-u, -ēju) to hope; nav ko cerēt there's no hoping
 cerība hope
 cers bush, shrub
 Cēsis (f. pl.) Cēsis
 ceturksnis a quarter hour
 ceturtais fourth
 ceturtdaļa a quarter
 ceturtdaļstunda a quarter hour
 ceturtdien on Thursday
 ceturtdiena Thursday
 cielava wagtail
 ciemiņš visitor, guest
 ciemos (adv.) on a visit
 ciems village
 cienīt (-īju, -īju) to honour, venerate
 ciest (-šu, -tu) to endure, tolerate, suffer; ciest klusu to keep quiet; ciešamā kārtā passive voice
 ciešanas (pl.) suffering
 cieši tightly; (in text 223a) very, extremely
 ciet (adv.) tightly, fast
 ciet(i) (adv.) closed [of doors, etc.]; vērt ciet (trans.) to close
 cietējs sufferer
 cietināt (-u, -āju) to starch; to stiffen
 ciets hard
 cietumnieks prisoner
 cietums prison, gaol; cietuma sods prison sentence
 cigarete cigarette
 cik how much; how many; (+ adv.) how; cik pulksten(i)s? what time is

- it?*; kaut cik *even a little*; skriet cik vien jauda *to run for all one is worth*
- *ciki: cikos? *at what time?*; ap cikiem? *at about what time?*; līdz cikiem? *until what time?*
- cilāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to heave* (intrans.)
- cildināt (-u, -āju) *to praise, extol*
- cilts (f.) *tribe*
- cilvēce *mankind, humanity*
- cilvēcis *humane, kind*; (in text 241a) *mortal, human*
- cilvēks *person*; cilvēku (invar. adj.) *human*
- cimds *glove*
- cīnīpš *struggle, combat*
- cinis *hillock, mound*
- cīnīties (-os, -ījos) *to struggle, combat*
- cīņa *struggle, battle, contest*
- cirpējs *shearer*
- cirpt (cērpū, cirpu) *to shear*
- cirst (cērtu, cirtu) *to chop [down], to hew*
- cirstin cog. adv. *to cirst*
- cirtējs *axeman, lumberjack*
- cirtiens *blow, chop*
- cirtin cog. adv. *to cirst*
- cirtums *clearing*
- cirvis *axe*
- cisas (pl.) *bed-straw; couch, bed*
- citādi *otherwise*
- citāds *different*; citāds nekā *different from*
- citreiz *at other times; sometimes*
- citrons *lemon*
- cits *other*; cits... cits... cits... *one... another... another*; citi... citi... *some... others*
- citur *elsewhere*
- *citurieni *somewhere else*
- colla *inch*
- cūka *pig*; meža cūka *wild pig*;
cūkas gaļa *pork*; cūkas kājas *pig's trotters*
- cūkgaļa *pork*
- cukurs *sugar*
- čabēt (-, -ēja) *to rustle*
- čakls *industrious, keen*
- Čangs *Chang*
- čaukstēt (-, -ēja) *to rustle*
- čeks *cheque*
- čello (m. indec.) or čells *cello*
- četratā *in a group of four*
- četrdesmit *forty*
- četrdesmitais *fortieth*
- četrējāds *of four kinds*
- četrēji *four*
- četri *four*
- četrpadsmit *fourteen*
- četrpadsmitais *fourteenth*
- četrsimt *four hundred*
- četrsimtais *four hundredth*
- čigāns, (f.) -iete *gipsy*
- Čikaga *Chicago*
- čirkstēšana *chirping, creaking*
- čukstēt (-u, -ēju) *to whisper*
- čupa *heap, pile*; čupu čupām *in heaps*
- čūska *snake*; briļļu čūska *cobra*
- daba *nature*; brīvā dabā *in a natural state*
- dabīgs *natural*
- dabūt (-ūju, -ūju) *to obtain, get*
- dadzis *thistle*
- daile *beauty*
- daiļš *beautiful, fair*
- daiļums *beauty*
- dakstiņš *tile*
- dakša *pitchfork*
- dakšīņa *[table] fork*
- dallt (-u, -lju) (trans.) *to divide, part*

- daļa *part, section, area*; pa lielākai daļai *for the most part*; kas tev par daļu? *what business is it of yours?*
- dāma *lady*
- dancot (-oju, -oju) *to dance*
- Dānija *Denmark*
- dānis, (f.) -iete *a Dane*; dāņu (invar. adj.) *Danish*
- dāniski (adv.) *Danish*
- darbdiena *a working-day*
- darbība *activity, action*; darbības vārds *verb*
- darbīgs *active, busy*
- darbnieks *employee*
- darbnīca *workshop, studio*
- darbs *work*; strādāt darbu *to work at a job*; darba galds *work-table*; darba rīks *tool*; darba rūķis *tireless worker*; darba spēks *work-force*; darba stundas *working-hours*
- dārdēt (-, -ēja) *to rumble, rattle*
- dārgakmens (gen. -ns) *gem, precious stone*
- dārgs *expensive, dear; dear, beloved*
- dārgums *dearness, expensiveness*
- darišana *doing, business, affair*
- darīt (-u, -lju) *to do*; (occ.) *to make, prepare*; darāmā kārtā *active voice*
- dārzāji (pl.) *vegetables*
- dārzniecība *horticulture; market-garden*
- dārznieks *gardener*
- dārzs *garden*; bērnu dārzs *kinder-garten*; zvēru dārzs *zoo*
- datīvs *dative case*
- daudz (adv. + gen.) *much, many*
- daudzi (pl. adj.) *many*
- daudzum cog. adv. *to daudz*
- Daugava *the river Daugava*
- dauzlt (-u, -lju) *to beat*
- dāvana *gift*
- dāvāt (-āju, -āju) *to present*
- dāvināt (-u, -āju) *to present, give*
- dažāds *various*
- daži *some*
- dažreiz *sometimes*
- dažs *some [or other]*; dažs labs *quite a few*
- debesis (f.) *sky, heaven*; debesis (pl.) *heaven*
- decembris *December*
- dedzīgs *ardent, eager, fervent*
- dedzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to burn, distil*
- degt (-gu, -gu) (intrans.) *to burn*
- deguns *nose*
- deja *dance*; tautas deja *folk-dance*
- dejot (-oju, -oju) *to dance*; dejot uz nebēdu *to dance on and on*
- dejojotājs *dancer*
- deklinācija *declension*
- dekorācijas (pl.) *scenery [in theatre]*
- dēlis *board, plank*
- dēlītis: studiju dēlītis *drawing-board*
- delna *palm [of hand]*
- dēls *son*; brāļa dēls *nephew*; māšas dēls *nephew*; pazudušais dēls *Prodigal Son*; tautu dēls *[in folk-songs] young man*
- dēļ (postp. + gen.) *for the sake of; because of*; manis dēļ *as far as I am concerned*
- derēt (-, -ēja) *to be suitable, useful, fitting*; tas neder *that's no good*; kam tas der? *what's the good of that?*; jūsu cimdi man neder *your gloves do not fit me*; derēt kopā ar (+ acc.) *to match*
- derīgs *suitable, useful; valid*
- desa *sausage, salami*
- desmit *ten*
- desmitais *tenth*
- dēstīt (-u, -lju) *to plant*

dēt (-ju, -ju) *to lay [eggs]*
 devējs *giver*
 devīgs *generous, liberal*
 deviņdesmit *ninety*
 deviņdesmitais *ninetieth*
 deviņēji *nine*
 deviņi *nine*
 devīpadsmit *nineteen*
 devīpadsmitais *nineteenth*
 deviņsimt *nine hundred*
 deviņsimtais *nine hundredth*
 devītais *ninth*
 dibens *bottom*
 dibināt (-u, -āju) *to found, establish*
 dibināties (-os, -ājos) *to be based [on]*
 diegs *thread*
 diena *day; dienu un nakti day and night; dzimšanas diena birthday; kāzu diena wedding day, anniversary; vārda diena Name Day; dienas vidus or dienvīdus midday*
 diendienā *continually, incessantly, every day*
 dienvidi (pl.) *the south; dienvidu (invar. adj.) south, southern*
 dienvīdus *see dienas vidus*
 diet (deju, -) *to dance*
 dievbijīgs *pious, devout*
 dievība *deity, divinity*
 dievkalpojums *church service*
 dievkociņš *southernwood*
 dievs, Dievs *a god, God; Dievs palīdz (see lesson 221); Želīgais Dievs! (interj.) Good Lord!*
 diezgan *enough*
 dīgt (-gstu, -gu) *to germinate, sprout*
 diktēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to dictate*
 dīķis *pond*
 dilt (-lstu, -lu) (intrans.) *to wear out, wane, decrease*

dimants *diamond*
 dinozaurs *dinosaur*
 dipona *stamping, trampling*
 diriģents *conductor [of orchestra]*
 diriģēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to conduct [orchestra]*
 dīvains *strange*
 divatā *in a group of two*
 divdabis *participle*
 divdesmit *twenty*
 divdesmitais *twentieth*
 divējāds *of two kinds*
 divēji *two*
 divi *two; abi divi (adj. & pron.) both*
 divkārsšs *twofold*
 divkārt *twice*
 divpadsmit *twelve*
 divpadsmitais *twelfth*
 divpusīgs *two-sided, ambiguous*
 divritenis *bicycle*
 divsimt *two hundred*
 divsimtais *two hundredth*
 divskanis *diphthong*
 dižens *stately*
 dižs *great, eminent*
 dobe *flower-bed, vegetable plot*
 dobjš *hollow, deep [of voice, sounds]*
 dobums *cavity, hollow*
 dolars *dollar*
 doma *thought, idea; opinion; pēc manām domām in my opinion*
 domāt (-āju, -āju) *to think; to intend*
 domīgs *thoughtful*
 Donava *Danube*
 dot (dodu, devu) *to give*
 doties (dodos, devos) *to go, betake oneself; doties palīgā (+ dat.) to go to the aid of*
 dragāt (-āju, -āju) *to damage, smash*
 drāma *drama*
 drāmatīķis *dramatist, playwright*

draudēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to threaten*
 draudze *congregation, parish; draudzes nams parish hall*
 draudzene *girl-friend; laulātā draudzene wife*
 draudzība *friendship*
 draudzīgs *friendly*
 draugs *friend; būt draugos ar (+ acc.) to be on friendly terms with; laulātais draugs husband*
 drausmas (pl.) *fear, terror*
 drāzties (-žos, -zos) *to rush forward*
 drēbe *cloth; material; drēbes (pl.) clothes*
 drebēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to tremble, shiver, shake; drebēt aiz bailēm to shake with fear*
 drebināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to shake*
 drēbnieks *tailor*
 drēgns *damp, moist, humid*
 drīkstēt (-u, -ēju) *to be allowed; to dare*
 drīz *soon; jau drīz soon; drīz... drīz... drīz... now... now... now...*
 drīzāk *sooner, rather*
 drīzi *see drīz*
 drosme *courage*
 drosmīgs *courageous*
 droši vien *most probably*
 drošināt (-u, -āju) *to encourage, comfort, reassure*
 drošinieks *brave man*
 drošs *safe; brave*
 drukns *corpulent, stout*
 drūms *gloomy, sombre, bleak*
 drupas (pl.) *ruins*
 drupināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to crumble*
 drupt (drūp, drupa) (intrans.) *to crumble*

drusciņ *dim. of drusku*
 drusku (+ gen.) *a little; kaut drusku even a little*
 druva *cornfield*
 drūzmēties (-ējos, -ējos) (intrans.) *to crowd, throng*
 dubļains *muddy*
 dubļi (pl.) *mud*
 ducis (+ gen.) *dozen*
 dūkt (-cu, -cu) *to hum, buzz, drone*
 dulls *silly, mad, crazy*
 dūmais *smoky*
 dūmi (pl.) *smoke*
 dumjš *stupid*
 dumpīgs *rebellious*
 dunēt (-, -ēja) *to drone, boom*
 dungāt (-āju, -āju) *to hum*
 dungot (-oju, -oju) *to hum*
 dūņas (pl.) *slime, mud*
 dūre *fist*
 dūriens *stab, prick*
 durt (duru, dūru) *to stab, prick; durt zivis to spear fish*
 durtin *cog. adv. to dart*
 durvis (f. pl.) *door*
 dusa *rest, repose*
 dusēt (-u, -ēju) *to sleep, rest*
 dusmas (pl.) *anger; aiz dusmām in anger, out of anger*
 dusmīgs *angry*
 dūša *courage; saņemt dūšu to summon one's courage*
 dvaša *breath*
 dvašot (-oju, -oju) *to breathe*
 dvēsele (occ. dvēsle) *soul*
 dvēst or dvest (-šu, -su) *to breathe; to whisper*
 dvielis *towel*
 dzeja *poetry*
 dzejisks *poetic*
 dzejnieks *poet*
 dzejolis *poem*

dzejot (-oju, -oju) *to write poetry*
 dzelonis *prickle; sting [of bee]*
 dzelt (dzeļu, dzēlu) (+ dat.) *to sting, prick, bite*
 dzeltāns *yellow*
 dzeltens *yellow*
 dzeltlapains *yellow-leaved*
 dzelzceļš *railway*
 dzelzs (f.) *iron; dzelzs laikmets the Iron Age; dzelzis (pl.) pieces of iron*
 dzemdēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to give birth; (in text 224a) to beget*
 dzenis *woodpecker*
 dzērājs *drunkard, tippler, drinker*
 dzeramnauda *tip, gratuity*
 dzēriens *drink*
 dzeršana *drinking*
 dzeršus cog. adv. *to dzert*
 dzert (dzeru, dzēru) *to drink*
 dzertuve *tavern*
 dzērve *crane*
 dzesināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to cool*
 dzēst (dzēšu, occ. dzešu, dzēsu) *to extinguish; to pay off [debt]*
 dzestrs *cool, fresh, chilly*
 dzidrs *clear, limpid*
 dziedāt (-u, -āju) *to sing; [of cock] to crow*
 dziedātājs *singer*
 dziedēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to heal*
 dziesma *song; tautas dziesma folk-song; dziesmu grāmata hymn-book*
 dziesminieks *poet*
 dzija *yarn [woollen]*
 dziļe *depth*
 dziļš *deep*
 dziļums *depth; (in text 203a) background [of painting]*
 dzimstība *birth-rate*
 dzimšanas diena *birthday*
 dzimt (-mstu, -mu) *to be born*

dzimtene *homeland, native land*
 dzimumdiena *birthday*
 dzintars *amber*
 dzinums *shoot, sprout*
 dzira *drink; (in text 220a) swill*
 dzirdēt (-u, -ēju) *to hear*
 dzīres (pl.) *feast, banquet*
 dzirkles (pl.) *shears, clippers*
 dzirkste *spark*
 dzirkstele *spark, sparkle*
 dzirksts (f.) *spark*
 dzirnavas (pl.) *mill*
 dzirnavnieks *müller*
 dzirnis (f. pl.) *müll*
 dzīsla *sinew, vein*
 dzist (dziest, dzisa) *to go out, be extinguished [of fire]*
 dzīšus cog. adv. *to dzīt (dzenu, dzinu)*
 dzīt (dzenu, dzinu) (trans.) *to drive, chase [away]; dzīt bārdū to shave*
 dzīt (dzīst, dzija) (intrans.) *to heal*
 dzītin cog. adv. *to dzīt (dzenu, dzinu)*
 dzīve *life*
 dzīvība *life; dzīvības apdrošināšana life insurance*
 dzīvoklis *flat*
 dzīvot (-oju, -oju) *to live; lai dzīvo...! long live...!*
 dzīvs *alive; active, quick*
 dzīvsudrabs *quicksilver, mercury*

ēdamistaba *dining room*
 ēdams *edible*
 ēdiens *food [cooked]*
 egle *fir tree*
 Ēģipte *Egypt; Ēģiptes (invar. adj.) Egyptian*
 ēģiptietis, (f.) -e *an Egyptian;*
 ēģiptiešu (invar. adj.) *Egyptian*
 Eiropa *Europe; Eiropas (invar. adj.) European*
 eiropietis, (f.) -e *a European*

eiropisks *European*
 ek! (interj.) *look!, look here!*
 ēka *building*
 ekrāns *screen [cinema]*
 eksistēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to exist, subsist*
 eksportēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to export*
 eksports *export(s)*
 elektrība *electricity*
 elkons *elbow*
 elksnis *alder*
 elle *hell*
 elpa *breath; bez elpas out of breath*
 elpot (-oju, -oju) *to breathe*
 elsas (pl.) *sobs*
 elsāt (-āju, -āju) *to sob, gasp, pant*
 elsot (-oju, -oju) *to sob, gasp, pant*
 elst (-šu, -su) *to puff, pant, wheeze*
 eļļa *oil*
 eļļains *oily*
 emigrants *emigrant*
 emocionāls *emotional*
 ēna *shade, shadow*
 ēnains *shady*
 eņģelis *angel*
 erceņģelis *archangel*
 ērglis *eagle*
 ērģeles (pl.) *organ*
 ērģelnieks *organist*
 ērkšķis *thorn, prickle; ērkšķu krūms thorn-bush*
 Ernests *Ernest*
 ērtība *comfort, convenience*
 ērts *comfortable*
 es (pron.) *I*
 ēst (-du, -du) *to eat*
 ēstgriba *appetite*
 ēsties (-das, -dās) *to be upset, annoyed; man ēdas I am upset*
 etiķis *vinegar*
 ēvele *plane*
 ēvelēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to plane*
 Evellna *Eveline*

ēze *rut, furrow*
 ēzelis *ass, donkey*
 ezers *lake; Kaspijas ezers Caspian Sea*

fabrika *factory*
 faktiskis *real, factual; faktiski (adv.) in fact, actually*
 fakts *fact*
 fakultāte *faculty*
 februāris *February*
 filma *film*
 firma *company, firm*
 fiziķis *physicist*
 flagellants *flagellant*
 flauta *flute*
 flote *fleet, navy; gaisa flote Air Force; tirdzniecības flote Merchant Navy*
 forma *form*
 formāls *formal*
 foto (m. indec.) *photo*
 fotoaparāts *camera*
 fotografēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to photograph*
 fotografija *photograph*
 fotogrāfs *photographer*
 fraka *tail-coat*
 Francija *France*
 franciski (adv.) *French*
 francūzis, (f.) -iete *a Frenchman, -woman*
 franču (invar. adj.) *French*
 Frīdis *Frīdis*
 frizieris, (f.) -e *hairdresser*
 fronte *front [in battle]*

gabals *piece*
 gādāt (-āju, -āju) par (+ acc.) *to see to, take care of; gādāt par to, ka... to see to it that..., to see that...*
 gads *year; gadiem for years; gados būdams being of mature age; gadu*

no gada *year by year*; vīrs vidējos gados *a middle-aged man*; gaismas gads *light year*; gada laiks *season*; gadu simtenis *century*; gada tirgus *annual market, fair*
 gadsimts *century*
 gaidīt (-u, -īju) *to wait; to expect*
 gailis *rooster*
 gaisma *light*; nākt gaismā *to come to light*; gaismas gads *light year*
 gaiss *air*; no gaisa *out of thin air, out of the blue*; pa (gaisu) gaisiem *to the [four] winds*; lidot pa gaisu *to fly in the air*; gaisa flote *Air Force*; gaisa ubadziņš *winged beggar, prob. sparrow*
 gaist (-stu, -su) *to vanish*
 gaišmatis, (f.) -e *a fair-haired person*
 gaišs (adj.) *light, bright [of colour]*; gaiša galva *clear head, alert mind*
 gaišums *brightness*
 gaita *gait; pace; course; run*; gaitu biedrs [*travelling*] *companion*
 gaitenis *corridor*
 gājējs *walker, wanderer*
 gājiens *procession, walk, march*
 gājums *course*
 galdauts *table-cloth*
 galdniecība *joinery*
 galdnieks *joiner, cabinet-maker*
 galds *table*; darba galds *work-table*
 gāle [*thin*] *sheet of ice*
 galējs *extreme, utmost*
 galerija *gallery*
 galms *court*
 galotne *tip, extremity; top, summit; ending [gram.]*
 gals *end*; tikt galā ar (+ acc.) *to cope with*
 galva *head*; atmet galvu *to toss one's head*; gaiša galva *clear head,*

alert mind; ģimenes galva (m.) *head of the family*; pilsētas galva (m.) *mayor*; galvas pilsēta *capital city*
 galvenais *chief, main*
 gaļa *meat*; cāļa gaļa *chicken*; cūkas gaļa *pork*; jēra gaļa *lamb*
 gan (adv.) *indeed*; gan jau *jolly well, one of these days, sometime or other, sooner or later*; kā gan? *how on earth?*; kas gan? *who on earth, what on earth?*; kaut gan (conj.) *although*; ko gan? *whom on earth, what on earth?*; kur gan? *where on earth?*; lai gan (conj.) *although*
 gana *see diezgan*
 gandrīz *almost, nearly*
 ganības (pl.) *pasture*
 ganīt (-u, -īju) *to tend [animals]*
 gans *shepherd, shepherd-boy*; iet ganos *to go and tend animals*
 gar (prep. + acc.) *along*
 garām (adv. or postp. + dat.) *past*
 garāmejojot (adv.) *going past*
 garāmgājējs *passer-by*
 gards *tasty*
 garīgs *spiritual*
 garlaicība *boredom, tedium, dullness*
 garlaicīgs *boring, tedious, dull*
 garlaikot (-oju, -oju) *to bore*
 garoza *crust*
 gars *spirit; ghost; mind*; gara slimība *mental illness*; gara stāvoklis *mood*
 garš *long; tall*; garais klepus *whooping-cough*
 garšot (-o, -oja) *to taste, to taste good*
 garums *length, tallness*
 gatavot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to prepare*

gatavoties (-ojos, -ojos) (intrans.) *to get ready, prepare*
 gatavs *ready, prepared; ripe*
 Gauja *the river Gauja*
 gaume *taste [in art, etc.]*
 gauss *slow, tardy*
 gaužām or gauži *very*
 gaviles (pl.) *exultation, celebration*
 gāze *gas; gauze*
 gāzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to overturn*; (intrans.) *to pour [of rain]*
 gāzties (-žos, -zos) *to collapse, give way, fall*; (in text 237a) *to pour forth, to stream*
 glabāt (-āju, -āju) *to keep*
 glabāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to be kept, stored*
 glābiņš *rescue, deliverance*
 glābt (-bju, -bu) *to save, rescue*
 glābties (-bjos, -bos) *to save oneself, escape*
 glaimi (pl.), (occ. glaime) *flattery, adulation; caress*
 glāsts *caress*
 glaudīt (-u, -īju) *to caress, stroke*
 glaust (-žu, -du) *to stroke, caress; to smooth*
 glāze *glass*; vīna glāze *wineglass*; glāze vīna *glass of wine*
 glezna *painting*
 gleznot (-oju, -oju) *to paint [picture]*
 gleznotājs *painter*
 gleznas *delicate, fragile*
 gliemezis *snail*
 glīšs *see glīts*
 glīts *handsome, pretty*
 gludeklis *iron*
 gludināt (-u, -āju) *to iron, press*
 gluds *smooth*
 glums *slippery, slimy*
 gluži (adv.) *completely, quite*

glēvs *cowardly, fainthearted*
 godbijīgs *respectful, reverent*
 godgalds *table of honour*
 godība *magnificence, splendour*
 godīgs *honest*
 godkāre *ambition*
 gods *honour*; goda (invar. adj.) *honourable*; goda lieta *a matter of honour*
 gotiņa dim. of govns
 Gotlībs *Gottlieb*
 govns (f.) *cow*
 grābeklis *rake*
 grābiens *grasp, grab*
 grābt (-bju, -bu) *to grasp, snatch, grab*
 grāds (often grāds) *degree [of heat]; degree [= diploma]*
 grāmata *book*; dziesmu grāmata *hymn-book*
 gramatika *grammar*
 grāmatnieks *bibliophile*
 grāmatvedis *book-keeper, accountant*
 grams *gramme*
 granīts *granite*
 grants (f.) *gravel*
 grauds *grain [of corn]*
 graut (grauju, grāvu) (trans.) *to destroy, demolish*; (intrans.) *to thunder*
 graužt (-žu, -zu) *to gnaw, nibble*; mani grauž *it annoys me*
 grava *ravine, gorge*
 grāvis *ditch, moat*
 grebt (-bju, -bu) *to scrape; to carve [wood, etc.]*
 grēcīgs *sinful*
 grēcinieks *sinner*
 gredzens *ring*
 greizsirdība *jealousy*
 greizsirdīgs *jealous*; greizsirdīgs uz (+ acc.) *jealous of*

grēkot (-oju, -oju) *to sin*
 grēks *sin*
 greznot (-oju, -oju) *to adorn*
 grezns *luxuriant, magnificent, decorative*
 greznums *splendour, magnificence*
 gribēt (-u, -ēju) *to want, wish*
 gribēties (-as, -ējās) (impers.) *to want; man gribas I want*
 grīda *floor*
 Grieķija *Greece*
 grieķis, (f.) -iete *a Greek; grieķu* (invar. adj.) *Greek*
 grieķiski (adv.) *Greek*
 griesti (pl.) *ceiling*
 griezējs *cutter, carver*
 griezt (-žu, -zu) *to cut; griezt zobus to gnash one's teeth*
 griezt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn, twist*
 griezties (-žos, -zos) (intrans.) *to turn [around]*
 grimt (-mstu, -mu) (intrans.) *to sink*
 grods *tightly twisted*
 grozīt (-u, -īju) *to alter, re-arrange*
 grozs *basket; iepirkumu grozs shopping basket*
 grūdiens *shove, push*
 grumba *wrinkle, crease; grumbu pa grumbīnai wrinkle after wrinkle*
 grūst (-žu, -du) *to push, knock, jolt; grūst lodi to put the shot*
 grūstin cog. adv. *to grūst*
 grūtība *difficulty*
 grūtin cog. adv. *to grūts*
 grūts *difficult*
 grūtums *difficulty; hard days*
 gudrība *prudence, wisdom, intelligence*
 gudrinieks *wisacre*
 gudrs *clever, wise*
 gulbis *swan*

guldīt (-u, -īju) *to put to bed; guldīt smiltājā to bury*
 gulēt (guļu, gulēju) *to sleep; iet gulēt to go to bed*
 gulētājs *sleepers*
 gulta *bed*
 gulties (guļos, gūļos) *to lie down*
 gultne [river] *bed*
 guļamistaba *bedroom*
 guļus (adv.) *lying flat*
 gumija *rubber*
 Guna *Guna*
 Guntis *Guntis*
 gurdens *weary, tired*
 gurdenums *weariness, fatigue*
 gurdus *weary, tired*
 gurdums *weariness, fatigue*
 gurķis *cucumber*
 gurns *loin, hip*
 gurt (gurstu, guru) (intrans.) *to tire, grow weak*
 Guste *Guste*
 gūt (gūstu, guvu) *to obtain, acquire*
 ģenijs *genius*
 ģenitīvs *genitive case*
 ģērbt (-bju, -bu) (trans.) *to clothe; ģērbt mugurā to put on; ģērbt nost to take off*
 ģērbties (-bjos, -bos) *to get dressed*
 ģērbtuve *dressng-room, cloak-room*
 Ģēte *Goethe*
 ģībt (-bstu, -bu) *to faint*
 ģimene *family; ģimenes galva (m.) head of the family*
 ģist (ģiedu, ģidu) *to suspect, sense*
 himnisks (in text 242a) *sublime*
 Holande *Holland; Holandes (invar. adj.) Dutch*

holandietis, (f.) -e *a Dutchman, -woman; holandiešu (invar. adj.) Dutch*
 holandiski (adv.) *Dutch*
 hormons *hormone*
 i! (interj.) *indeed!*
 ideāls (noun & adj.) *ideal*
 ideja *idea*
 ieart (-ru, -ru) *to plough in*
 ieaugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow into*
 ieaust (-žu, -du) *to weave in*
 iebāzt (-žu, -zu) *to shove in, thrust in*
 iebēgt (-gu, -gu) *to run into, flee into*
 iebērt (-beru, -bēru) *to strew in, pour in*
 iebildums *objection; iebildums pret (+ acc.) objection to*
 iebilst (-stu, -du) *to say; iebilst pret (+ acc.) to object to*
 iebirt (-birstu, -biru) *to fall in, drop in*
 iebļauties (-bļaujos, -bļāvos) *to cry out*
 iebraukt (-cu, -cu) *to drive in; to break in [horse]*
 iebrauktuve *vehicle entrance*
 iebrēkties (-cos, -cos) *to scream out*
 iebrist (-brienu, -bridu) *to wade in*
 ieceļot (-oju, -oju) *to immigrate*
 iecirst (-cērtu, -cirtu) *to chop into, bite into, notch*
 iedāvināt (-u, -āju) *to give, present*
 iededzināt (-u, -āju) *to kindle*
 iedegt (-gu, -gu) (intrans.) *to light up*
 iedoma *idea, notion; whim*
 iedomāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to imagine; (in text 203a) to have an idea*
 iedot (-dodu, -devu) *to give*
 iedrebēties (-os, -ējos) *to shudder, tremble*

iedurties (-duros, -dūros) (intrans.) *to stick into*
 iedzelt (-dzeļu, -dzēļu) (+ dat.) *to sting*
 iedzert (-dzeru, -dzēru) *to drink, imbibe; to take [medicine]*
 iedziļināties (-os, -ājos) *to delve [into], be absorbed [in]*
 iedzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu) (trans.) *to drive in*
 iedzīvotājs *inhabitant; iedzīvotāji (pl.) population*
 ieeja *entrance*
 ieelpot (-oju, -oju) *to inhale*
 iegarens *longish, oblong*
 iegrauzt (-žu, -zu) (in text 238a) *to ingrain*
 iegriezties (-žos, -zos) (intrans.) *to call in [at], drop in [at]*
 iegrimt (-mstu, -mu) (intrans.) *to sink in, to plunge in; to be absorbed*
 iegrūst (-žu, -du) (trans.) *to push in*
 iegrūt (-grūstu, -gruvu) *to cave in*
 iegūt (-gūstu, -guvu) *to obtain, acquire*
 ieguvums *acquisition*
 ieiet (-ēju, -gāju) *to go in, enter*
 ieilgt (-gst, -ga) (intrans.) *to drag on [in time]*
 iejāt (-jāju, -jāju) *to ride in; to break in [horse]*
 iejaut (-jauju, -jāvu) *to knead*
 iejūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to harness*
iekairināt (-u, -āju) *to excite, tempt*
iekaist (-stu, -su) *to become inflamed, grow fervent*
iekaisums *inflammation*
iekāpt (-pju, -pu) *to climb in, board*
iekāre *desire*
iekarst (-stu, -su) *to grow fervent*
iekārtot (-oju, -oju) *to arrange, fit out*

iekliegties (-dzos, -dzos) *to shout out*
 iekļūt (-kļūstu, -kļuvu) (intrans.) *to get in*
 iekniebt (-bju, -bu) (+ dat.) *to pinch*
 iekost (-žu, -du) (+ dat. or loc.) *to bite*
 iekosties (-žos, -dos) *to bite into*
 iekrākties (-cos, -cos) *to snort*
 iekrāt (-āju, -āju) *to save, collect*
 iekrist (-kritu, -kritu) *to fall in*
 iekš (prep. + gen.) *in, inside*
 iekšā (adv.) *inside*
 iekšējs *inner, internal*
 iekšpus (prep. + gen.) *inside, on the inside of*
 iekurināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to light [fire, etc.]*
 iela *street*
 ielaist (-žu, -du) *to let in, to release [into]; ielaist kuģi ūdenī to launch a ship*
 ielāps *patch [for mending]*
 ieleja *valley*
 ielēkt (-lecu, -lēcu) *to jump in*
 ieliet (-leju, -lēju) (trans.) *to pour in*
 ielikt (-lieku, -liku) *to put in, insert*
 ielīst (-lienu, -līdu) *to crawl in, creep in; ielīst zemē to sink into the ground [for shame, etc.]*
 ieloks *tuck, fold*
 ielūgums *invitation*
 iemaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to pay in, to deposit*
 iemaukti (pl.) *bridle*
 iemērkts (-cu, -cu) *to soak, immerse*
 iemesls *reason, ground*
 iemest (-tu, -tu) *to throw in; to imbibe*
 iemigt (-miegu, -migu) *to fall asleep*
 iemīlēt (-u, -ēju) *to become fond of*
 iemīlēties (-os, -ējos) (+ loc.) *to fall in love [with]*

iemirdzēties (-as, -ējās) *to flash*
 iemīt (-minu, -minu) *to tread in*
 ienaidnieks *enemy, foe*
 ienākt (-ku, -cu) *to come in, enter*
 ienest (-su, -su) *to bring in, carry in*
 ienirt (-rstu, -ru) *to dive, plunge [in]*
 ienīst (-stu, -du) *to hate, loathe, detest*
 ieņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) *to take in, receive; to take [medicine]*
 iepazīstināt (-u, -āju) *to introduce*
 iepazīties (-zīstos, -zīnos) ar (+ acc.) *to meet, become acquainted with*
 iepīpēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to light [pipe, cigarette, etc.]*
 iepirkums *purchase; iepirkumi (pl.) shopping; iepirkumu grozs shopping basket*
 ieplūst (-stu, -du) *to flow in*
 iepriecināt (-u, -āju) *to gladden*
 iepriekšējs (usually def.) *former, preceding*
 iepūst (-šu, -tu) *to blow in*
 iepūt (-pūstu, -pūvu) *to begin to rot*
 ieradums *habit*
 ierakt (-roku, -raku) *to dig in, to bury*
 ierakties (-rokos, -rakos) *to burrow, bury oneself*
 ierasties (-rodos, -rados) *to arrive, turn up*
 ieraudzīt (-gu, -dzīju) *to catch sight of*
 ierēdnis *official, public servant*
 ieredzēt (-u, -ēju) *to esteem, respect; es viņu neieredzu I don't like him*
 iereiht (-bstu, -bu) *to get drunk*
 ierocis *weapon; ieroči (pl.) arms*
 ierunāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to begin speaking*
 iesākt (-ku, -ku) (trans.) *to begin; to do*

iesākties (-kas, -kās) (intrans.) *to begin*
 iesāpēties (-as, -ējās) (intrans.) *to hurt suddenly*
 iesēsties (-žos, -dos) *to sit down [in]*
 iesēt (-ju, -ju) *to sow*
 iesiet (-sienu, -sēju) *to bind, tie up*
 iesilt (-lstu, -lu) (intrans.) *to grow warm, warm up; to become inebriated*
 iesist (-tu, -tu) *to strike; to drive in [nails]*
 ieskaidrot (-oju, -oju) *to explain, convince*
 ieskaitīt (-u, -īju) *to count in, include*
 ieskanēties (-as, -ējās) *to ring out*
 ieskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run in*
 ieslēgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to shut in, lock up*
 iesmieties (-smejos, -smējos) *to burst out laughing*
 iesniegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to submit, hand in*
 iespaids *effect, impression, influence; atstāt iespaidu uz (+ acc.) to leave an impression on; iespaidā (postp. + gen.) under the effects of, under the influence of*
 iespējams *possible*
 iespiest (-žu, -du) *to impress, imprint; to print*
 iespraust (-žu, -du) *to stick in, insert*
 iestādīt (-u, -īju) *to plant*
 iestāstīt (-u, -īju) *to tell, convince*
 iestāties (-jos, -jos) *to set in; (+ loc.) to enrol [in], to join*
 iestigt (-stiegu, -stigu) (intrans.) *to sink in*
 iestrēbt (-strebju, -strēbu) *to drink [soup, etc., often noisily]*
 iestumt (-stumju, -stūmu) *to push in*
 iesūkties (-cas, -cās) *to sink in, soak in*
 iesūtīt (-u, -īju) *to send in, submit*

iesvētīt (-īju, -īju) *to confirm, consecrate*
 iesviest (-žu, -du) *to throw in*
 iešļakstēties (-as, -ējās) *to splash momentarily*
 iet (ēju, gāju) *to go [usually on foot]; kā jums iet? how are you?; iet augšup (intrans.) to improve, pick up; iet bojā to perish; iet ganos to go and tend animals; iet gulēt to go to bed; iet nost to come off [of paint, etc.]*
 ietecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to flow in, run in*
 ieteikt (-cu, -cu) *to suggest, propose, recommend*
 ietērt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to clothe*
 ietilpt (-pstu, -pu) *to fit in; to have a capacity of, to hold; to be included [in]*
 ietīt (-tinu, -tinu) *to wrap up, wrap in*
 ietīties (-tinus, -tinus) *to muffle oneself up*
 ietne *footpath*
 ietve *footpath*
 ieurbties (-bjas, -bās) *to bore one's way into*
 ieva *berry alder*
 Ieva *Eve*
 ievads *introduction*
 ievaicāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to ask suddenly*
 ievainot (-oju, -oju) *to injure, wound*
 ievārijums *jam*
 ievēlēt (-veļu, -vēļu) (trans.) *to roll in*
 ievēlēties (-veļos, -vēļos) (intrans.) *to roll in; (in text 235a) to appear, come into view*
 ievērot (-oju, -oju) *to notice, observe*
 ievērt (-veru, -vēru) *to thread*
 ievest (-du, -du) *to lead in; to import*
 ievilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to draw in*

iezagties (-zogos, -zagos) *to steal in*
 iezalgans *greenish*
 iezīmēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to indicate*
 iezvelt (-zveļu, -zvēlu) (+ dat.) *to hit, strike, whack*
 iezvieties (-dzos, -dzos) *to neigh suddenly*
 Igaunija *Estonia*
 igaunis, (f.) -iete *an Estonian; igauņu*
 (invar. adj.) *Estonian*
 igauniski (adv.) *Estonian*
 īgns *morose, peevish, surly, grumpy*
 īgnums *annoyance, peevishness*
 ik (indec.) *every; ik brīdi every moment; ik mēnesi every month*
 ikšķis *thumb*
 ilgās (pl.) *desire, longing; ilgās pēc*
 (+ gen.) *longing for*
 ilgi *for a long time; jau ilgi already for a long time*
 ilgojumies (refl.) *yearning, longing*
 ilgoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to long, yearn*
 ilgš *long [of time]*
 ilgt (-gst, -ga) *to last*
 ilkss (f.) *shaft [of wagon, carriage, etc.]*
 illūzija *illusion*
 importēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to import*
 imports *import(s)*
 inde *poison*
 indietis, (f.) -e *an Indian; indiešu*
 (invar. adj.) *Indian*
 indīgs *poisonous*
 Indija *India*
 individuāls (adj.) *individual*
 iniciatīva *initiative*
 intelektuālists *an intellectual*
 interesants *interesting*
 interese *interest; interese par* (+ acc.) *interest in*
 inženieris *engineer*

īpašība *attribute, property, peculiarity; īpašības vārds adjective*
 īpašnieks *owner, proprietor*
 īpašs *special; it īpaši especially*
 īpašums *possession, property*
 īpatnējs *peculiar; original*
 īpatns *strange, unusual*
 ir *and; ir... ir... (ir...) both... and... (and...)*
 irbe *partridge*
 Irija *Ireland*
 īrnieks *tenant*
 īrs, (f.) -iete *an Irishman, -woman; īru* (invar. adj.) *Irish*
 irt (iru, īru) *to row*
 irt (irst, ira) (intrans.) *to rip open, fall apart, come apart*
 īsināt (-u, -āju) *to shorten; to while away [time]*
 īss *short*
 istaba *room; blakus istaba the next room; vannas istaba bathroom*
 īstenība *reality*
 īstens *genuine, real*
 īsts *genuine, authentic, real*
 īsums *shortness, brevity*
 it (adv.) *quite, absolutely; it īpaši especially; it kā as if*
 itālietis, (f.) -iete *an Italian; itāliešu* (invar. adj.) *Italian*
 Itālija *Italy*
 itālistiski (adv.) *Italian*
 itin *quite, absolutely*
 iz (prep. + gen.) *out of*
 izaugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow up*
 izaust (-aust, -ausa) *to dawn*
 izbaudīt (-u, -īju) *to undergo, experience, enjoy*
 izbāzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to poke out*
 izbērt (-beru, -bēru) (trans.) *to pour out*

izbirt (-rstu, -ru) *to fall out*
 izblīst (-stu, -du) *to swell up, grow fat*
 izbraukt (-cu, -cu) *to go out driving, set out*
 izcelt (-ceļu, -cēlu) *to lift out; to emphasize*
 izcirst (-cērtu, -cirtu) *to hew out, cut out*
 izcirtums *clearing*
 izdaiļojums *embellishment, decoration*
 izdalīt (-u, -īju) *to distribute, share out*
 izdalītājs *apportioner*
 izdarība *activity, behaviour*
 izdarīt (-u, -īju) *to bring about, accomplish, do*
 izdegt (-deg, -dega) (intrans.) *to burn out*
 izdevīgs *favourable, advantageous, opportune*
 izdomāt (-āju, -āju) *to work out, devise*
 izdot (-dodu, -devu) *to give out, spend; to publish [book]*
 izdzēst (-šu, -su) *to extinguish; to erase; to switch off [light, electricity, etc.]*
 izdziedāt (-u, -āju) *to sing [to an end]*
 izdzist (-dziest, -dzisa) *to go out, be extinguished [of fire, etc.]*
 izdzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu) (trans.) *to drive out, expel*
 izeja *exit, way out; way out [of difficulty]*
 izelpot (-oju, -oju) *to exhale*
 izēst (-du, -du) *to eat up [to the end]*
 izgaist (-stu, -su) *to vanish*
 izgāzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to pour out*
 izglābt (-bju, -bu) *to save, rescue*
 izglābties (-bjos, -bos) *to save oneself, escape*
 izglītība *education*
 izglītots *educated*
 izgrauzt (-žu, -zu) *to gnaw out*
 izgrebt (-bju, -bu) *to gouge out, hollow out*
 izgulēt (-guļu, -gulēju) (trans.) *to sleep away*
 iziet (-ēju, -gāju) *to go out*
 izirt (-irst, -ira) (intrans.) *to rip open, fall apart, come apart*
 izjāt (-ju, -ju) *to ride out, go riding*
 izjūta *sensation, feeling*
 izkaisīt (-u, -īju) *to scatter*
 izkalst (-stu, -tu) (intrans.) *to dry out*
 izkāpt (-pju, -pu) *to alight, disembark*
 izkaps (f.) *scythe*
 izkaut (-kauju, -kāvu) *to slaughter, exterminate*
 izklāst (-stu, -du) (intrans.) *to disperse*
 izklūt (-kļūstu, -kļuvu) (intrans.) *to get out*
 izkravāt (-āju, -āju) *to unpack, empty*
 izkrist (-krītu, -kritu) *to fall out*
 izkult (-kuļu, -kūlu) *to thresh*
 izkust (-kūst, -kusa) (intrans.) *to thaw, melt, dissolve*
 izlabot (-oju, -oju) *to correct*
 izlaist (-žu, -du) *to release [out of], to let out; to omit*
 izlaisties (-žos, -dos) *to fly out; izlaidies uncontrolled, naughty, wild*
 izlakt (-loku, -laku) *to lap up*
 izlasīt (-u, -īju) *to read [through]; to choose, select*
 izlaupīt (-u, -īju) *to rob [premises, etc.]*

- izlauzties (-žos, -zos) *to escape, break forth*
- izlēkt (-lecu, -lēcu) *to jump out*
- izliekt (-cu, -cu) *to bend out; (in text 219a) to extend*
- izliet (-leju, -lēju) (trans.) *to pour out, spill; to mould*
- izlikt (-lieku, -liku) *to put out, expose*
- izlikties (-liekos, -likos) *to pretend to be; to seem*
- izlīst (-lienu, -līdu) *to crawl out*
- izlūgties (-dzos, -dzos) *to petition, beg for*
- izlozdzīties (-gos, -dzījos) *to become loose*
- izmazgāt (-āju, -āju) *to wash*
- izmēģināt (-u, -āju) *to try out*
- izmeklēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to select, choose, pick out*
- izmest (-tu, -tu) *to throw out*
- izmirt (-rstu, -ru) *to die out*
- izmist (-stu, -su) *to lose heart, despair*
- izmisums *despair*
- iznākt (-k, -ca) *to turn out, eventuate*
- iznākums *result, outcome*
- iznīcība *destruction, ruin*
- iznīcināt (-u, -āju) *to destroy*
- iznīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to die off [of plants]; to perish*
- iznirt (-rstu, -ru) *to emerge*
- izņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) *to take out; izņemot excepting*
- izpalīdzēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to help out*
- izpatikt (-tīku, -tiku) (+ dat.) *to please, pander to*
- izpaust (-žu, -du) *to make known, betray, spread [news]*
- izpīpēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to smoke [to the end]*
- izplatīties (-ās, -ījās) (intrans.) *to spread*
- izplest (-šu, -tu) (trans.) *to spread, stretch out, extend*
- izpletņis *parachute*
- izplūst (-stu, -du) *to flow, run; to flow out, gush out; to grow fat*
- izplāpāt (-āju, -āju) *to blab out*
- izpostīt (-u, -īju) *to destroy*
- izprast (-protu, -pratu) *to appreciate, comprehend*
- izprašana *appreciation*
- izpratne *appreciation*
- izprecināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to marry off*
- izprieca *pleasure, amusement*
- izpūris (past part. active) *dishevelled, tousled*
- izpušķot (-oju, -oju) *to decorate, adorn*
- izrāde *performance*
- izrādīt (-u, -īju) *to show*
- izraidīt (-u, -īju) *to turn out, banish*
- izrakstīt (-u, -īju) *to write out, order, prescribe*
- izrakt (-roku, -raku) *to dig out*
- izraudzīt (-gu, -dzīju) *to choose*
- izraut (-rauju, -rāvu) *to pull out, tear out, pluck out, uproot*
- izredze *prospect, chance*
- izredzēts (adj.) *elect, chosen; izredzētais, (f.) -ā fiancé(e)*
- izrēķināt (-u, -āju) *to work out, calculate*
- izrīkot (-oju, -oju) *to equip (rare)*
- izrotājums *adornment, decoration*
- izrotāt (-āju, -āju) *to adorn, decorate*
- izrunāt (-āju, -āju) *to pronounce; to speak out; to give voice to*
- izsacīt (-ku, -cīju) *to express*
- izsalkt (-kstu, -ku) *to get hungry*
- izsalkums *hunger*

- izsamist (-stu, -su) *to despair*
- izsapnot (-oju, -oju) *to dream [to an end]*
- izsaukt (-cu, -cu) *to call out, exclaim*
- izsaukties (-cos, -cos) *to exclaim*
- izsīkt (-sīkstu, -sīku) *to dry up, become exhausted, run low*
- izskaidrot (-oju, -oju) *to explain*
- izskalot (-oju, -oju) *to rinse out, wash away*
- izskatīties (-os, -ījos) *to look, appear, seem*
- izskats *appearance*
- izskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run out*
- izslaucīt (-ku, -cīju) *to sweep out, wipe out*
- izslēgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to shut out, exclude*
- izslieties (-slienots, -slējos) *to rise, stand up*
- izsmalcināt (-u, -āju) *to refine*
- izsmēķēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to smoke [to the end]*
- izsmelt (-smeļu, -smēlu) *to bail out, ladle out*
- izsmiet (-smeju, -smēju) *to mock, deride, laugh at*
- izspiest (-žu, -du) *to squeeze out, extort*
- izsprukt (-sprūku, -spruku) *to get away, get free*
- izstaigāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to roam*
- izstāstīt (-u, -īju) *to recount, relate*
- izstudēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to complete one's studies*
- izstumt (-stumju, -stūmu) *to push out*
- izsukāt (-āju, -āju) *to comb out*
- izsūkt (-cu, -cu) *to suck out, pump out*
- izsūtīt (-u, -īju) *to send out*
- izsviest (-žu, -du) *to throw out*
- izšauties (-šaujas, -šāvās) *to dart out; (in text 203a) to flash through*
- izšķiest (-žu, -du) *to squander, waste*
- izšķīst (-st, -da) (intrans.) *to dissolve*
- izšļākties (-cas, -cās) (intrans.) *to squirt out, splash out*
- iztecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to flow out*
- izteiciens *expression*
- iztīkt (-tieku, -tiku) *to make do, manage*
- iztrenkt (-cu, -cu) (trans.) *to drive out*
- iztriekt (-cu, -cu) (trans.) *to drive out*
- iztrūcināties (-os, -ājos) *to take fright, be terrified*
- izturēt (-u, -ēju) *to bear, endure; to pass [exam]; to hold out, survive*
- izturēties (-os, -ējos) *to behave*
- izvārgt (-gstu, -gu) *to be tired out, exhausted*
- izveicīgs *adroit, clever*
- izvēlīgs *fastidious, particular, fussy*
- izvelt (-veļu, -vēlu) (trans.) *to roll out*
- izvelties (-veļos, -vēlos) (intrans.) *to roll out*
- izvilkt (-velku, -vilku) (trans.) *to pull out; izvilkt sakni to extract the root (math.)*
- izvilkties (-velkos, -vilkos) *to drag oneself out; to eke out [a living], to get along with difficulty*
- izvilkums *excerpt, extract*
- izvirst (-stu, -tu) *to fall into degeneracy, to degenerate*
- izziedēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to break out into flower; to finish blooming*
- izzināt (-u, -āju) *to find out*
- izzust (-zūdu, -zudu) *to disappear, vanish*
- izžūt (-žūstu, -žuvu) (intrans.) *to dry out*

ja *if*; ja arī *even if*
 jā *yes*
 jājiens *ride*
 Jānis *Jānis, John*; Jānis Briesmīgais
Ivan the Terrible
 Janka (m.) *Jack*
 janvāris *January*
 Jāņi (pl.) *St. John's Day, Midsummer's Day*; līst kā Jāņos *it's raining cats and dogs*
 jāņuguns (f.) *St. John's Day bonfire*
 Japāna *Japan*
 japānietis, (f.) -e *a Japanese*
 japāniski (adv.) *Japanese*
 japāņu (invar. adj.) *Japanese*
 jāšus *cog. adv. to jāt*
 jāt (-ju, -ju) (intrans.) *to ride [horse, etc.]; jāt uz zirga to ride a horse*
 jātin *cog. adv. to jāt*
 jātnieks *rider*
 jau *already*; (also as emphatic particle: see lesson 17); jau drīz *soon*;
 jau ilgi *already for a long time*;
 jau sen *ages ago*; gan jau *jolly well, one of these days, sometime or other, sooner or later*
 jauda *physical ability*; skriet cik vien
 jauda *to run for all one is worth*
 jauks *fine, pleasant*
 jaukties (-cos, -cos) *to meddle, interfere [in]*
 jaunatklāsme *new discovery, new experience*
 jaunavība *virginity*
 jauneklis *youth, boy*
 jaunība *youth, adolescence*
 jaunkundze *Miss; young lady*
 jauns *young; new*; jaunākais *the newest, the latest*; no jauna *[over] again, once more*
 Jaunzēlande *New Zealand*; Jaunzēlandes (invar. adj.) *New Zealand*

jaunzēlandietis, (f.) -e *a New Zealander*
 jaust (-šu, -tu) *to guess, feel intuitively*
 jaut (jauju, jāvu) *to knead*
 jautājums *question*
 jautāt (-āju, -āju) *to ask, enquire*
 jautrība *gaiety*
 jautrs *cheerful, gay, merry*
 jeb *or*
 jēdziens *conception, idea, notion*
 jēga *sense, idea, meaning*; man nav (ne) mazākās jēgas par (+ acc.) *I haven't the slightest idea about*;
 kāda tur jēga? *where's the sense in that?*; bez jēgas (postp. + gen.) *galore*
 jēgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to have an idea, notion*
 jel (imperative particle: see lesson 210)
 jēls *raw; sore*
 jemt (jemu, jēmu) *see ņemt*
 jērs *lamb*; jēra gaļa *lamb [for eating]*
 jo (conj.) *for*; jo... jo... *the more... the more...; balts, etc.*
 jo balts, etc. *ever so white, etc.*
 jocīgs *funny*
 jods *devil*; (often as interjection)
 jokot (-oju, -oju) *to joke*
 joks *joke*
 joprojām (in text 222a) *in future, from now on*
 josta *belt, girdle*
 jozt (-žu, -zu) *to girdle*
 jozties (-žos, -zos) *to gird on*
 juceklis *confusion, havoc*
 jūdze *mile*
 jūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to harness*
 jukt (jūk, juka) *to become confused*;

man bieži jūk skaitļi *I often get figures confused*
 jūlijs *July*
 jumt (jumju, jūmu) *to thatch, roof*
 jumts *roof*
 jūnijs *June*
 jūra *sea*; kā piliens jūrā *a drop in the ocean*; Baltijas jūra *Baltic Sea*; Kaspijas jūra *Caspian Sea*;
 Ziemeļu jūra *North Sea*
 Juris *Juris, George*
 jūrmala *seaside*
 jūrniecība *navigation, seamanship*
 jūrnieks *sailor, seaman*
 jūs (pron.) *you*
 jūsējs (poss. pron.) *yours*
 just (jūtu, jutu) (trans.) *to feel*
 justies (jūtos, jutos) (intrans.) *to feel*
 jūsu (poss. adj.) *your*
 jūtas (pl.) *feelings*
 jūtelīgs *sensitive, touchy*;
 [excessively] *sentimental [of people]*
 jūtis (f. pl.): ceļa jūtis (in text 233a)
at the cross-roads
 ka (conj.) *that*
 kā (conj.) *how; as, like; than; kā jums iet? how are you?; kā gan? how on earth?; kā kuru reizi it all depends; it kā as if*
 kabata *pocket*; kabatas lakatiņš *handkerchief*; kabatas zaglis *pickpocket*
 kad (conj.) *when*
 kādēļ *why*
 kadiķis *juniper*
 kādreiz *once [upon a time], ever*
 kādreizējs *former, bygone*
 kāds (pron.) *some one*; (adj.) *some [or other]; which, what kind of*
 kafejnīca *cafe, coffee-lounge*
 kafija *coffee*
 kails *naked*
 kaimiņš *neighbour*; kaimiņos *next door, in the neighbourhood*
 kairināt (-u, -āju) *to excite, tempt*
 kairs *seductive, suggestive*
 kaisīt (-u, -īju) *to scatter, strew*
 kaist (-stu, -su) *to glow, burn, grow hot*
 kaite *disease*
 kaitēt (kaiš/kait, kaitēja) *to be amiss*;
 kas jums kaiš? *what's the matter with you?*
 kaitēt (-ēju, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to harm*
 kaitināt (-u, -āju) *to annoy, tease*
 kāja *foot; leg*; aut kājas *to put on shoes, socks*; spert kāju *to set foot*; mīt kājām *to trample underfoot, to treat contemptuously, to pay scant heed to*; turēties uz kājām *to keep on one's feet*; kājām *on foot*; cūkas kājas *pig's trotters*;
 kāju pirksts *toe*
 kakao (m. indec.) *cocoa*
 kakls *neck*; pilnā kaklā *at the top of one's voice*; kakla saite *necktie*
 kakts *corner [usually inside]*
 kaķis *cat*
 kālab *why*
 kalējs *blacksmith*
 kalendārs *calendar, almanach*
 kalnains *hilly*
 kalns *hill, mountain*; ledus kalns *ice-berg*; smilšu kalns *sand-hill*;
 kalnu kaza *mountain goat*
 kalnup *uphill, up the hill*
 kalps *farm-worker, servant*
 kalst (-stu, -tu) (intrans.) *to dry up, wither*
 kalt (kaļu, kalu) *to hammer, forge*
 kalts *chisel*
 kaltuve *forge*

kalķis, or kalķi (pl.) *lime, whitewash*
kam *to whom; (occ.) why*
kamanas (pl.) *sledge, sleigh*
kambaris *room, chamber*
kamēr (conj.) *while, until*
kamols *ball (of wool, string, etc.)*
kampšus cog. adv. to (*ap-*)*kampt*
Kanāda *Canada; Kanādas (invar. adj.) Canadian*
kanādietis, (f.) -e *a Canadian;*
kanādiešu (invar. adj.) *Canadian*
kanāriņš *canary*
kāpa *dune, sand-hill*
kāpaļāt (-āju, -āju) *to climb about*
kāpēc *why; kāpēc ne? why not?*
kapeika *copeck*
kāpējs *climber*
kāpenes (pl.) *stairs, ladder*
kāpne or kāpnes (pl.) *stairs, ladder*
kāposti (pl.) *cabbage; skābi kāposti sauerkraut*
kaps *grave, tomb; kapi (pl.) cemetery*
kapsēta *cemetery*
kāplis *stirrup, carriage step*
kāpt (-pju, -pu) *to climb; kāpt zirgā to mount a horse; kāpt no zirga to dismount from a horse*
karaliene *queen*
karalis *king*
karalisks *royal*
karāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to be suspended*
karavīrs *soldier*
kāre *desire, greed*
kareivis *soldier, warrior*
kariete *carriage, coach*
Kārlis *Charles*
karogs *flag, banner*
karote *spoon*
kārs *eager, greedy; kārs uz (+ acc.) eager for*

karsēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to heat*
karst (-stu, -su) *to grow hot*
karstin cog. adv. to *karsts*
karsts *hot; man ir karsti I am hot*
karstums *heat; karstuma vilnis heat-wave*
karš *war; krusta karš crusade, holy war; pasaules karš world war; kara klausības likums military service law, general mobilization law; kara osta naval base*
kārt (karu, kāru) (trans.) *to hang*
kārtā *order, genus, class; layer; gender (gram.); turn; ārpus kārtas out of turn; ciešamā kārtā passive voice; darāmā kārtā active voice; (ne-)laimīgā kārtā (un-)fortunate-ly; pēc kārtas in turn; sieviešu kārtā feminine gender; vīriešu kārtā masculine gender*
kārtībnieks *policeman*
kārtīgs *tidy, accurate; decent (colloq.)*
kārtot (-oju, -oju) *to put in order; to transact*
kārts (f.) [*playing*] *card*
kartupelis *potato*
kas (int. & rel. pron.) *who, what, which; kas gan? who, what on earth?; ko gan? whom on earth? what on earth?; kas par...! what a...!; kas par...? what sort of...?*
kase *ticket-window; cash-register*
Kaspīja: Kaspijas ezers, Kaspijas jūra *Caspian Sea*
kaste *box*
kastīte [*small*] *box*
katls *kettle; cooking-pot; copper; [ship's] boiler*
katrreiz *each time, every time*
katrs *each, every; par katru cenu at any price*

kāts *handle; stalk*
kaudze *heap; siena kaudze hay stack*
kauja *battle; kaujas lauks battle-field*
kaukt (-cu, -cu) *to howl, yell*
kaulains *bony*
kauls *bone*
kaunināt (-u, -āju) *to shame*
kauns *shame, shyness; kauna stabs pillory*
kauss *cup, goblet*
kaut (indef. particle): *kaut cik, kaut drusku even a little; kaut kā somehow, anyhow; kaut kad at some time, at any time; kaut kāds some [or other]; kaut kas something, anything; kaut kas jauns, etc. something new, etc.; kaut kur somewhere, anywhere; kaut *kuriene (after prep.) somewhere, anywhere; kaut kurš (pej.) anybody*
kaut (conj.) *would that...! if only...!; kaut (gan) although*
kaut (kauju, kāvu) *to kill, slaughter*
kauties (kaujos, kāvos) *to fight*
kautin cog. adv. to *kaut*
kautiņš *battle, struggle; brawl*
kautrība *shyness, timidity*
kautrīgs *shy, timid*
kautrs *shy, timid*
kautuve: lopu kautuve *slaughter-house, abattoirs*
kavēklis *hindrance, obstacle; laika kavēklis pastime*
kavēšanās (refl.) *delay*
kavēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to delay; to waste [time]; kavēt laiku to waste time, kill time*
kavēties (-ējos, -ējos) *to linger; to be spent [of time]*

kaza *goat; she-goat; kalnu kaza mountain goat*
kazaks *Cossack*
kāzas (pl.) *wedding; sudraba kāzas silver wedding anniversary; kāzu ceļojums honeymoon [trip]; kāzu diena wedding-day, anniversary*
kazlēns *kid*
kažoks *fur coat*
kilograms *kilogramme*
kilometrs *kilometre*
kino (m. indec.) *cinema; kino zvaigzne film-star*
kinoteātris *cinema, picture theatre*
klabēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to rattle*
klaidonis *vagrant*
klaips *loaf*
klājs *deck; uz klāja on deck*
klājš *open [of field, sky, etc.]*
klajums *a plain*
klandīties (-os, -ļjos) *to swing, rock, pitch back and forth*
klase *class*
klasisks *classical*
klāt (adv.) *present, at hand; (postp. + dat.) up to, near*
klāt (-ju, -ju) (trans.) *to spread; to cover [by spreading]; to set [table]*
klātbūtne *presence*
klāties (-jos, -jos) *to spread oneself; to fare, get on; kā jums klājas? how are you getting on?*
klātu (adv.) *present, at hand*
klau! (interj.) *listen!*
klaudzēt (-, -ēja) *to rumble*
klausība *military service; kara klausības likums military service law, general mobilization law*
klausīt (-u, -ļju) (usually + dat.) *to obey*
klausītājs (f. refl.) *hearer, listener*

- klausītājijs (m. refl.) *hearer, listener*
 klausītava *auditorium*
 klausīties (-os, -ļos) (+ loc. or acc. or uz + acc.) *to listen [to]*
 klauvēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to knock, beat*
 klavieres (pl.) *piano*
 klēpis *lap*
 klepus *cough; garais klepus whooping-cough*
 klēts (f.) *granary*
 klībs *lame*
 kļiedziens *shout, scream*
 kliegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to shout, scream; kliegdamas brēkdams shouting and screaming*
 klintaine *rock face, chain of cliffs*
 klints (f.) *cliff*
 kļiņģeris *cracknel*
 kļīst (-stu, -du) *to wander, stroll*
 kļūpt (klūpu, klupu) (intrans.) *to stumble, trip up; klupdamas krizdamas stumbling and falling; kļūpt virsū (+ dat.) to fall on*
 klusām *quietly*
 klusēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to be quiet*
 klusināt (-u, -āju) *to calm*
 kluss *quiet; Klusais okeans Pacific Ocean*
 klusu (adv.) *quietly; ciest klusu to keep quiet*
 klusums *stillness, silence, quietness*
 kļava *maple-tree*
 kļūda *mistake, error*
 kļūt (kļūstu, kļuvu) *to become*
 knābāt (-āju, -āju) *to peck [continuously]*
 knābis *beak, bill*
 knašs *nimble, quick*
 kniebiens *pinch*
 kniebt (-bju, -bu) *to pinch*
 kniķķēt (-, -ēja) *to crackle*
 kociņš *stick*
 kodaļa, kodeļa *a full distaff*
 kodiens *a bite*
 kodīgs *biting, sharp*
 kodolīgs *pithy*
 koks *tree; wood; log; lapu koks deciduous tree; skuju koks coniferous tree; koka (invar. adj.) wooden*
 kokvilna *cotton*
 kollēga (m. or f.) *colleague*
 komanda *command, order; crew, team; military unit*
 komandēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to command, order*
 komēdija *comedy; spēlēt komēdiju to put on an act*
 komisks *comical*
 kompass *compass*
 komplekss *complex; Oidipa komplekss Oedipus complex*
 komponists *composer*
 komūnists *a Communist*
 koncerts *concert*
 konduktors [*railway, etc.*] *conductor*
 konjugācija *conjugation*
 konservi (pl.) *tinned food(s)*
 konvulsija *convulsion*
 kopā *together; kopā ar (+ acc.) together with; brukt kopā to collapse, cave in; derēt kopā ar (+ acc.) to match*
 kopš (conj. or prep. + gen.) *since; kopš kura laika? since when?*
 kopt (-pju, -pu) *to cultivate, till; to tend*
 koris *choir, chorus; vīru koris male choir*
 korķis *cork; korķu velkamais corkscrew*
 kost (-žu, -du) *to bite*
 kosties (-žos, -dos) *to bite*
 košļāt (-āju, -āju) *to chew*
 košs *bright, pretty*
 kožļāt (-āju, -āju) *to chew*
 krāciens *a snore*
 krājums *collection*
 krākt (-cu, -cu) *to snore; to roar [of sea]*
 krāpt (-pju, -pu) *to deceive, cheat*
 krāsa *colour; paint, dye; ūdens krāsas water colours*
 krāsns (f.) *stove*
 krāsot (-oju, -oju) *to paint [house, etc.]; krāsot lūpas to use lipstick, to put lipstick on*
 krasts *coast, bank*
 krāšņs *magnificent, splendid*
 krāt (-ju, -ju) *to save, collect*
 kratīt (-u, -ļu) (trans.) *to shake*
 krātuve *depository*
 kraujš *steep*
 krauklis *raven*
 kraut (krauju, krāvu) *to heap, pile, load*
 krava *load, cargo*
 kravāt (-āju, -āju) *to pack, load*
 kreiss (adj.) *left; pa kreisi on the left, to the left*
 krējums *cream*
 krekls *shirt; vienos kreklos in shirt-sleeves*
 krelles (pl.) *beads*
 krēsla *twilight*
 krēslains *dusky*
 krēslība *twilight, half-light*
 krēslīņš: bišu krēslīņš *tansy*
 krēsls *chair*
 krietns *righteous, good, solid*
 Krievija *Russia*
 krieviski (adv.) *Russian*
 krievs, (f.) *-iete a Russian; krievu (invar. adj.) Russian*
 krimst (kremtu, krimtu) *to gnaw*
 krist (krītu, kritu) *to fall; klupdamas krizdamas stumbling and falling; krist uz nerviem to get on one's nerves*
 kristalls or kristāls *crystal*
 kristies (krītos, kritos) (intrans.) *to decrease*
 kristīt (-ļu, -ļu) *to baptize*
 kritiens *fall*
 kritika *criticism*
 kritiķis *critic*
 krodznieks *inn-keeper*
 krogus *tavern, inn, pub*
 krūmains *bushy*
 krūms *bush; ērkšķu krūms thorn-bush*
 krustceļš *cross-roads; krustceļos at the cross-roads*
 krustdēls *godson*
 krustkarš *crusade, holy war*
 krustmāte *aunt, godmother*
 krustmeita *god-daughter*
 krusts *cross; krusta karš crusade, holy war*
 krusttēvs *uncle, godfather*
 krūts (f.) or krūtis (f. pl.) *chest, breast; no pilnas krūts at the top of one's voice*
 kucēns *puppy*
 kuģinieks *sailor*
 kuģis *ship; ielaist kuģi ūdenī to launch a ship*
 kūka *cake*
 kukainis *beetle, insect*
 kukulis *loaf; bribe*
 kukuruza *maize*
 kūla *dry grass*
 kule *pocket, bag*
 kūlējs *thresher; churner*
 kult (kuļu, kūlu) *to thrash; to thresh [grain]; to churn [butter]*

kulties (kuļos, kūlos) <i>to struggle along</i>	kuš! (interj.) <i>shush!, shoo!</i>
kūma (m. or f.) <i>godparent</i>	kūtrs <i>lazy, idle, indolent</i>
kumeļš <i>foal, horse</i>	kūts (f.) <i>byre, cattle-barn</i>
kumoss <i>bit, morsel, piece</i>	kvadrātversts (f.) <i>a square verst</i>
kundze <i>Mrs; lady; wife</i>	kvēle <i>glow, fire, ardour</i>
kungs <i>Mr; gentleman; (occ.) lord</i>	kvēlot (-oju, -oju) <i>to glow</i>
kunigs (in text 222a) <i>lord</i>	kvēpt (kvēpstu, kvēpu) <i>to become black with smoke</i>
kūpēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) <i>to smoke, steam</i>	kviēkt (-cu, -cu) <i>to squeak, squeal</i>
kupls <i>bushy, leafy</i>	kvieši (pl.) <i>wheat</i>
kur <i>where; kur gan? where on earth?</i>	Ķegums <i>name of rapids in the lower Daugava</i>
kurēties (-as, -ējās) <i>to be alight, ablaze</i>	ķeizars <i>emperor</i>
*kuriene (after prep.) <i>where</i>	Ķemeri (pl.) <i>Ķemeri, a Latvian spa town</i>
kurināt (-u, -āju) <i>to light [fire, etc.]</i>	ķemme <i>comb</i>
kurls <i>deaf</i>	ķēms <i>apparition, ghost</i>
kurlums <i>deafness</i>	ķengurs <i>kangaroo</i>
kurp, kurpu <i>where to, whither</i>	ķēniņš <i>king</i>
kurpe <i>shoe; kurpju saite shoe-lace</i>	ķepa <i>paw</i>
kurpnieks <i>boot-maker, cobbler</i>	ķēpāties (-ājos, -ājos) <i>to mess around amateurishly</i>
kurš (rel. pron. & int. adj.) <i>who; which; kopš kura laika? since when?; kuru reizi (in text 209a) for the umpteenth time</i>	ķērciens <i>shriek, cawing</i>
kurt (kuru, kūru) <i>to make a fire, to light</i>	ķērkt (-cu, -cu) <i>to squawk, croak</i>
Kurzeme <i>Kurzeme, a province of Latvia</i>	ķermenis <i>body</i>
kurzemnieks, (f.) -ce <i>a native of Kurzeme; kurzemnieku (invar. adj.) of Kurzeme</i>	ķert (ķeru, ķēru) <i>to catch, seize; ķert aiz rokas to seize by the arm</i>
kūsāt (-ā, -āja) <i>to boil over, overflow; (in text 203a) to bubble</i>	ķerties (ķeros, ķēros) <i>to get started with; to be biting [of fish]</i>
kusls <i>delicate, weak, tender</i>	ķeša <i>pocket</i>
kust (kūstu, kusu) <i>to thaw, melt, dissolve</i>	ķetna <i>paw</i>
kustēties (-os, -ējos) (intrans.) <i>to move, stir</i>	ķēve <i>mare</i>
kustība <i>movement</i>	ķieģelis <i>brick</i>
kustināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) <i>to move</i>	ķiķināt (-u, -āju) <i>to giggle</i>

ķilda *quarrel*
 ķildīgs *quarrelsome*
 Ķīna *China*
 ķīnietis, (f.) -e *a Chinese; ķīniešu (invar. adj.) Chinese*
 ķīniski (adv.) *Chinese*
 ķinītis *cinema*

ķiploks <i>a clove of garlic; (pl.) garlic</i>	laicīgs <i>temporal</i>
ķirsis <i>cherry</i>	laikam <i>presumably, probably</i>
ķirzaka <i>lizard</i>	laikmets <i>period; akmens laikmets the Stone Age; dzelzs laikmets the Iron Age</i>
ķīvīte <i>peewit</i>	laikraksts <i>newspaper, periodical</i>
labad (postp. + gen.) <i>for the sake of, on behalf of</i>	laiks <i>time; weather; tense (gram.); gada laiks season; kavēt laiku to waste time, kill time; kopš kura laika? since when?; pats pēdējais laiks not a moment too soon; pēdējā laikā lately; šais (šimīš, šajos) laikos nowadays; tais (tamīš, tajos) laikos in those days; laika kavēklis pastime; laikā (with preceding gen.) during</i>
labdabīgs <i>good-natured</i>	laime <i>happiness, good fortune, luck; uz labu laimi! trust to luck!; Laime (in text 230a) good fairy</i>
labdien! <i>good day!</i>	laimība <i>bliss, happiness</i>
labi (adv.) <i>well; (interj.) very well!</i>	laimīgs <i>fortunate, happy; laimīgu ceļu! have a happy trip!; laimīgā kārtā fortunately</i>
labība <i>corn, grain</i>	laipnība <i>kindness</i>
labināt (-u, -āju) <i>to wheedle, coax</i>	laipnīgs (rare) <i>kind</i>
labot (-oju, -oju) <i>to correct; to repair</i>	laipns <i>kind, friendly</i>
labprāt <i>readily, willingly, with pleasure</i>	laisks <i>indolent, lazy</i>
labrīt! <i>good morning!</i>	laist (-žu, -du) <i>to allow, let; to drive; to fell [trees]; to go fast; laist kādam miglu acīs to cloud the issue, befuddle somebody</i>
labs (adj.) <i>good; uz labu laimi! trust to luck!; ar labu nakti good-night; labs pirkums bargain; dažs labs (sing.) quite a few; labs (adj.) right; pa labi on the right, to the right</i>	laisties (-žos, -dos) <i>to fly</i>
labsirdīgs <i>kind-hearted, good-natured</i>	laistīties (-os, -ļjos) <i>to glitter, sparkle</i>
labvakar! <i>good evening!</i>	laiva [<i>small</i>] <i>boat</i>
labvēlība <i>benevolence, favour</i>	laivinieks <i>boatman</i>
lācene <i>she-bear</i>	lakats <i>neckerchief, scarf, shawl; kabatas lakatiņš handkerchief</i>
lācis <i>bear; ledus lācis polar bear</i>	lakstīgala <i>nightingale</i>
lāčšara <i>a flower, (perhaps) the cloudberry</i>	lakt (loku, laku) <i>to lap up [milk, etc.]</i>
Lāčplēšis <i>Bear-Slayer [legendary hero]</i>	lampa <i>lamp</i>
lādēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) <i>to curse</i>	
lāga (invar. adj.) <i>good, fine, nice</i>	
lai (conj.) <i>in order that; (also as imperative particle) lai dzīvo...! long live...!; lai nāk! let him come!; (also as interrogative particle) kas to lai zina? who's to know?; lai gan although</i>	

- lapa *leaf; sheet of paper; lapu koks deciduous tree; lapas puse page*
 lāpa *torch, taper*
 lapains *leafy*
 lāpīt (-u, -īju) *to repair, mend [clothing]*
 lappuse *page*
 lapsa *fox*
 lapsene *wasp*
 lāpsta *spade, shovel*
 lāsa *drop*
 lāse *drop*
 lasīt (-u, -īju) *to read; to pick, gather, collect*
 lasītava *reading room*
 lasīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.) *to assemble together, congregate*
 lāsteka *icicle*
 lāsts *curse, imprecation*
 laterna *lantern*
 Latgale *Latgale, a province of Latvia*
 latgalietis, (f.) -e *a Latgalian; latgaliešu (invar. adj.) Latgalian*
 lats *a lat, unit of Latvia's former currency*
 latvietis, (f.) -e *a Latvian; latviešu (invar. adj.) Latvian*
 Latvija *Latvia*
 latviski (adv.) *Latvian*
 laucinieks *country dweller*
 laukā (adv.) *outside*
 lauks *field; kaujas lauks battle-field; uz laukiem in the country; lauku (invar. adj.) country; lauku mājas (pl.) farm-house; lauku pele field-mouse; lauku puķe wild-flower*
 laukums [*city*] *square; any well-defined small area of land; sporta laukums sports ground; tirgus laukums market-place, market square*
 laulāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to marry [of celebrant]; laulātā draudzene wife; laulātais draugs husband*
 laulība *marriage*
 lauma *fairy*
 launags *mid-afternoon snack*
 ļaupīt (-u, -īju) *to rob, steal*
 ļaupītājs *robber*
 lauva (m.) *lion*
 lauzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to break*
 lauzties (-žos, -zos) *to wrestle, struggle*
 lauztin cog. adv. *to lauzt*
 ļauzums *breaking, breach, fracture*
 lazda *hazel-bush*
 lēciens *leap, bound*
 ledains *icy*
 ledus *ice; ledus kalns ice-berg; ledus lācis polar bear; ledus skapis, ledusskapis refrigerator, ice-chest*
 leišu (invar. adj.) *Lithuanian*
 leitiski (adv.) *Lithuanian*
 leja *valley*
 lejā (adv.) *down, downwards; uz leju downwards*
 lejpus (prep. + gen.) *underneath, below, downstream from*
 lejup (adv.) *downwards, downhill*
 lēkāt (-āju, -āju) *to jump [about]*
 lekcija *lecture*
 lēkšus cog. adv. *to lēkt*
 lēkt (lecu, lēcu) *to jump, hop; to rise [of sun]*
 lektors *lecturer*
 lēkts *sunrise; ar saules lēktu at sunrise*
 lemt (lemju, lēmu) *to decide*
 lēmums *conclusion, finding, verdict, decision*

- lēnām *slowly*
 lēns *slow*
 leopardi *leopard*
 lepība *pride, haughtiness*
 lepns *proud; arrogant; lepns uz (+ acc.) or par (+ acc.) proud of*
 lepnums *pride, object of pride*
 lēts *cheap*
 lēzens *shallow [of plates, etc.]; gently sloping*
 līcis *bay*
 līcot (-oju, -oju) *to twist, coil, wind*
 līdējs *crawler*
 lidināt (-u, -āju) *to hover*
 lidināties (-os, -ājos) *to hover*
 lidlauks *airport*
 lidmašīna *aeroplane*
 lidot (-oju, -oju) *to fly; lidot pa gaisu to fly in the air*
 līdumnieks *forest-clearer*
 līdums *clearing, open ground*
 līdz (conj. or prep. + dat.) *as far as; until; līdz cikiem? until what time?; līdz šim hitherto; līdz pirmdienai by Monday*
 līdz(i) (postp. with dat.) *along with; peldēt straumei līdz(i) to follow the crowd*
 līdzeklis *remedy, aid; līdzeklis pret (+ acc.) remedy for; līdzekļi (pl.) funds, means*
 līdzēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to help; ko tas līdz? what's the use of that?*
 līdzīgs (+ dat.) *similar [to]*
 līdzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to smooth out, level off*
 līdzināties (-os, -ājos) *to resemble; (in text 211a) to run parallel*
 līdzrunāt (-āju, -āju) *to have one's say*
 līdzskanis *consonant*
 līdzšinējs *previous*
 liecināt (-u, -āju) *to testify, bear witness*
 liecinieks *witness*
 liegs *gentle, tender*
 liegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to forbid*
 liegties (-dzos, -dzos) *to refuse, decline; to protest, protest innocence*
 lieks *superfluous, excessive; spare; false, artificial; liekie zobi false teeth*
 liekties (-cos, -cos) (intrans.) *to bend*
 lielceļš *highway*
 Lieldienas (pl.) *Easter*
 lielgabals *cannon, field-piece*
 lielisks *marvellous, great, splendid*
 lielīties (-os, -ījos) *to boast*
 lielpilsēta *large city, metropolis*
 liels *big; great; lielais burts capital letter; pa lielākai daļai for the most part; liela nauda large sum; uz lielu naudu for high stakes; Lielais okeans Pacific Ocean*
 lieltirgotājs *wholesaler*
 lielum cog. adv. *to liels*
 lielums *size; visā lielumā life-size, full-size*
 liepa *linden tree*
 liesma *flame; vienās liesmās in one enormous sheet of flame*
 liesmot (-oju, -oju) *to flame, blaze*
 liesn *lean; meagre*
 liet (leju, lēju) (trans.) *to pour; (in text 227a) to water; liet asaras to shed tears*
 lieta *thing, matter, affair; goda lieta a matter of honour*
 lietains *rainy*
 lietāt (-āju, -āju) *to use*
 lietot (-oju, -oju) *to use*
 lietus *rain; lietus līst it is raining; lietus mētēlis raincoat*

lietussargs *umbrella*
 Lietuva *Lithuania*
 lietuve *foundry*
 lietuvietis, (f.) -e *a Lithuanian;*
 lietuviešu (invar. adj.) *Lithuanian*
 lietuviski (adv.) *Lithuanian*
 lietvārds *noun*
 līgava *bride*
 līgavainis *bridegroom*
 līgot (-oju, -oju) *to sing special*
St. John's Day songs, to carol; to
rejoice
 līgt (-gstu, -gu) (trans. or intrans.)
to sign on; to hire, engage; līgt
mieru to contract peace, sign
peace
 ligzda *nest*
 līks *bent, crooked*
 līksmība *joy, gaiety*
 likt (lieku, liku) *to put; to order,*
tell; (in text 226a) to cause; vērā
likt to consider, take into account;
likt miera, likt mieru, likt mierā
to leave in peace
 līkt (-kstu, -ku) (intrans.) *to bend;*
viņam līkst mugura he kow-tows
 liktenīgs *fateful*
 liktenis *fate, lot*
 likties (liekas, likās) *to seem*
 līkumains *crooked, winding*
 līkumots *crooked, winding*
 likums *law, regulation, rule; kara*
klausības likums military service
law, general mobilization law
 līkums *bend, curve; mest līkumu ap*
(+ acc.) to make a detour about
 līķis *corpse; līķu mūzika funereal*
music, dirges
 līķrati (pl.) *hearse*
 līmenis *horizontal plane, level; (in*
text 231a) surface
 limužins *limousine*

lini (pl.) *flax, linseed; linu (invar.*
adj.) linen
 līnija *line; uguns līnija front line*
 lipt (līpu, lipu) (intrans.) *to stick;*
 lipt pie (+ gen.) *to stick, adhere,*
to
 lirisks *lyrical*
 līst (lienu, līdu) *to crawl; (in text*
216a) to penetrate
 līst (-žu, -du) *to clear [ground]*
 līt (līst, lija) *to rain; lietus līt it is*
raining; līt kā Jāņos it is raining
cats and dogs
 lītīn cog. adv. *to līt*
 Līze, Liza *Eliza*
 loceklis *limb; member*
 locījums *case (gram.)*
 locīt (-ku, -cīju) *to bend, fold; to*
conjugate, decline
 locītava *joint*
 locīties (-kos, -cījos) (intrans.) *to*
bend; to wriggle; (in text 226a) to
writhe
 lodāt (-āju, -āju) *to crawl*
 lode *sphere; bullet; grūst lodi to*
put the shot
 logs *window; logu stikls window-*
pane
 loģisks *logical*
 lokātīvs *locative case*
 loks *bow, arch; (in text 226a)*
circle
 Londona *London*
 lopisks *bestial*
 lops [*farm*] *animal; lopu kautuve,*
lopkautuve slaughter-house, abat-
toirs; lopu tirgotājs cattle-dealer
 Loreleja *Lorelei*
 ložmetējs *machine gun*
 Ludis *Ludis*
 lūdzu *please; please do!*
 luga *play*

lūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to beg, pray, ask*
 lūgties (-dzos, -dzos) *to beg, pray,*
ask
 lūgtin cog. adv. *to lūgt*
 lūgums *request*
 lūk! (interj.) *look!*
 lūkoties (-ojos, -ojos) (+ loc.) *or*
uz (+ acc.) to look at
 lukss, luksuss *luxury*
 lukturis *candlestick, lantern*
 lūpa *lip; krāsot lūpas to use*
lipstick, to put lipstick on
 lustra *chandelier*
 lūzt (lūstu, lūzu) (intrans.) *to break,*
fall to pieces
 lūztin cog. adv. *to lūzt*
 ļaudis (m. pl.) *people; veco ļaužu*
nams Old Folks' Home
 ļaundaris *evil-doer*
 ļaunprātīgs *malicious, malevolent*
 ļauns *evil; angry; ņemt ļaunā to*
take offence
 ļaunums *evil; mischief*
 ļaut (ļauju, ļāvu) *to allow, permit*
 ļoti (adv.) *very*
 mācekļis *apprentice*
 mācēt (-ku, -cēju) *to know how to*
 mācība *instruction, teaching,*
doctrine; mācības spēks member
of teaching staff
 mācīt (-cu, -cīju) *to teach*
 mācītājs *pastor, minister [of religion]*
 mācīties (-cos, -cījos) *to learn, study*
 magnētisks *magnetic*
 magone *poppy*
 maigs *gentle, soft*
 maigums *gentleness, softness*
 maijs *May*
 mainīgs *variable, inconsistent;*
fickle, capricious

mainīt (-u, -īju) *to change,*
exchange, swap
 mainīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.) *to*
change, vary; mainīties vietām to
change places
 maiss *bag, sack*
 maita *carrion*
 maize *bread; pelnīt sev maizi to*
earn one's living
 maiznīca *baker's shop*
 maiznieks *baker*
 māja *house; mājā, mājās at home,*
homewards; (lauku) mājas (pl.)
farm
 mājiens *waving, gesticulation*
 mājoklis *dwelling*
 mājot (-oju, -oju) *to dwell, reside*
 mājup *homewards*
 mākonis *cloud*
 mākoņains *cloudy*
 maksāt (-āju, -āju) *to pay; to cost*
 maksātnespējīgs *insolvent*
 māksla *art*
 mākslīgs *artificial, synthetic*
 mākslinieks *artist*
 makšķere *fishing-rod*
 makšķerēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to fish*
[with a line]
 mākt (-cu, -cu) *to oppress*
 mala *edge, brim; pasaules mala the*
end(s) of the earth; no malu
malām from everywhere, from
distant places
 maldi (pl.) *delusions; false, misguided*
notions; maldu (invar. adj.)
misguided, wrong; maldu Milda
(see note 7 to text 239a)
 maldināt (-u, -āju) *to deceive,*
mislead
 maldīties (-os, -ļjos) *to go wrong, to*
err, to wander
 malka *firewood*

malks *a draught [of liquid]*
 māls or māli (pl.) *clay*; māla (invar. adj.) *clay*
 malt (maļu, malu) *to grind*
 maltīte *meal*
 mandarīns *mandarin*
 manējs (poss. pron.) *mine*
 manīt (-u, -īju) *to notice, perceive*
 mans (poss. adj.) *my*
 mantija *cloak, mantle, gown*
 mantinieks, mantnieks *heir*
 Mantuja *Mantua*
 manuprāt *in my opinion, as far as I am concerned*
 Māra *Māra*
 mārciņa *pound*
 margot (-o, -oja) *to glisten, glitter*
 marmorpaneļots *marbled*
 marmors *marble*
 marona (see note 2 to text 239a)
 marts *March*
 māsa *sister*; žēlsirdīgā māsa *nursing sister, sister of mercy*;
 māsas dēls *nephew*; māsas meita *niece*
 māšīca *cousin (f.)*
 mašīna *machine; car; engine*;
 smagā mašīna *truck*
 mašīnists *engine-driver*
 mašīnšautene *automatic rifle*
 māt (māju, māju) *to nod, beckon, wave*
 māte *mother*; nama māte *housewife, hostess*
 mati (pl.) *hair*
 matiola *a species of stock*
 maut (-cu, -cu) : maut nost *to take off*; maut virsū *to put on*
 maurs *grass, lawn*
 maut (mauju, māvū) *to moo, low*
 māviens *mooring, bellowing*

maz (adv. + gen.) *little, few*
 mazāk (adv. + gen.) *less, fewer*
 mazdēls *grandson*
 mazgāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to wash*;
 mazgāt muti *to wash one's face*
 mazgātava *laundry*
 mazgāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to wash oneself*
 mazināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to reduce*
 mazliet *a little*
 mazmeita *granddaughter*
 mazs *small*; mazais burts *lower case letter*
 mazums (in text 223b) *small part, share*
 mēbele *an item of furniture*;
 mēbeles (pl.) *furniture*
 medīt (-īju, -īju) *to hunt*
 medniecība *huntsmanship*
 mednieks *hunter*
 medus *honey*
 *mēgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to be accustomed, to be wont*
 mēģinājums *rehearsal; attempt*
 mēģināt (-u, -āju) *to try; to rehearse*
 mejot (-oju, -oju) *to adorn with birch boughs*
 meistars *master craftsman; champion*
 meita *daughter; farm-girl, servant-girl*; brāļa meita *niece*; māsas meita *niece*
 meitene *girl*
 meklēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to seek, look for*
 Melburna *Melbourne*
 melderis *miller*
 meldija *melody*
 mēle *tongue*; rādīt kādam mēli *to poke one's tongue out at somebody*
 melns *black*; melnais strazds *blackbird*
 melnum cog. adv. *to melns*

melnums *blackness*
 melodija *melody*
 melodika *melodiousness*
 melot (-oju, -oju) *to tell lies*
 melst (-šu, -su) *to gossip, talk nonsense*
 mēms *dumb, mute*
 mēnesis *month*; ik mēnesi *every month*; maija mēnesis *the month of May*
 mēnesnīca *moonlight*
 mēness (gen. mēness) *moon*
 mērce *sauce, gravy*
 mērens *temperate, moderate*
 mērkt (-cu, -cu) *to dip, soak*
 mērķis *target, goal, destination*;
 spraut (sev) mērķi *to set [oneself] a goal*
 mēs (pron.) *we*; mēs ar Jāni *John and I*
 mēsli (pl.) *manure*
 mest (-tu, -tu) *to throw*; mest līkumu ap (+ acc.) *to make a detour about*
 mesties (-tos, -tos) *to throw oneself; to rush; to become*; man metas auksti *I am beginning to get cold*;
 metas tumšs *it is getting dark*;
 metas vakars *it is growing dark*
 Mēta *Mēta*
 metalls *metal*; metalla dadzis (in text 240a) *barbed wire*
 mētāt (-āju, -āju) *to throw continually*
 mētēlis *overcoat*; lietus mētēlis *raincoat*
 metin cog. adv. *to mest*
 mētra *bilberry bush*
 metrisks *metric*
 metrs *metre*
 mežains *wooded*
 mežinieks *wood-cutter, woodman*

mežmala *forest's edge*
 mežonīgs *savage, ferocious*
 mežonis *savage*
 mežs *forest, wood*; meža cūka *wild pig*; meža pīle *wild duck*;
 meža puķe *wild-flower*; meža roze *wild-rose, dog-rose*
 mežsargs *forest ranger*
 miegainība *sleepiness*
 miegains *sleepy*
 miegs *sleep*
 mielot (-oju, -oju) *to entertain, treat, feast*
 mierīgs *peaceful, calm*
 mierināt (-u, -āju) *to calm, pacify, comfort*
 mierosts *haven of peace*
 miers *peace*; līgt mieru *to contract peace, sign peace*; likt miera, likt mierā, likt mieru *to leave in peace*;
 būt mierā ar (+ acc.) *to be happy with*; būt ar mieru (+ inf.) *to be agreeable to*
 Miervaldis *Miervaldis*
 miesa *flesh*; (in text 202a) *body*;
 miesas (pl.) (in text 226a) *body*
 miesnieks *butcher*
 mieži (pl.) *barley*
 migla *fog*; laist kādam miglu acīs *to cloud the issue, befuddle somebody*
 miglains *foggy*
 migt (miegu, migu) *to fall asleep*
 mija *change, variation*; (in text 244a) *succession*
 mīkla *dough, pastry, batter*
 mīklains *puzzling, enigmatic*
 mikls *damp, moist*
 mīkstināt (-u, -āju) *to soften*
 mīksts *soft*
 Miķelis *Michael*
 mīla *love*
 mīlestība *love*

mīlēt (-u, -ēju) *to love*
 miljons *million*
 miltains *floury*
 milti (pl.) *flour*
 milzīgs *enormous, gigantic*
 milzis *giant*
 milzt (milst, milza) (intrans.) *to swell*
 milzu (invar. adj.) *gigantic*
 mīļākais, (f.) -ā *lover; mistress*
 mīļots *beloved*
 mīļš *dear, beloved*
 minūte *minute*
 miņāt (-āju, -āju) *to tread, trample*
 miņāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to paw the ground*
 Mirdza *Mirdza*
 mirdzēt (-, -ēja) *to glitter, twinkle, shine*
 mirējs *a dying person*
 mirgot (-o, -oja) *to glitter, twinkle*
 mirklis *moment*
 mirkt (-kstu, -ku) *to be soaked*
 mironis *corpse*
 mirt (-rstu, -ru) *to die; mirt no (+ gen.) to die of*
 mist (mītu, mitu) *to dwell, live*
 mīt (miju, miju) *to change, exchange*
 mīt (minu, minu) *to tread, trample; to tan [leather]; mīt kājām to trample underfoot, to treat contemptuously, to pay scant heed to*
 miteklis *dwelling; hostel*
 mitēties (-ējos, -ējos) *to cease, stop*
 mitrs *humid, moist*
 mitrums *humidity, moisture*
 miza *bark; skin [of fruit, etc.]*
 mizot (-oju, -oju) *to peel, skin*
 mocekļis *martyr*
 mocīt (-cu/-ku, -cīju) *to torment; to worry*
 mocīties (-cos/-kos, -cījos) *to torment oneself; to be plagued*
 moderns *modern*
 modināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to wake*
 modinātājs *alarm-clock*
 modrs *watchful, alert, lively*
 mokas (pl.) *agony, torment; moku sols rack*
 mosties (-stos, -dos) (intrans.) *to wake up*
 motocikls *motor-cycle*
 motors *motor*
 Mozus *Moses*
 možs *awake, lively*
 muca *keg*
 mucinieks *cooper*
 mudināt (-u, -āju) *to incite, urge on*
 mudīties (-os, -ļjos) *to move quickly, hasten*
 mugura *back; viņam likst mugura he kow-tows; mugurā on [of clothing]; ģērbt mugurā to put on [clothing]*
 muiža *estate*
 muižnieks *nobleman*
 mukls *marshy, swampy*
 mukt (mūku, muku) *to flee*
 mulsums *bewilderment*
 muļķe *simpleton, fool (f.)*
 muļķība *stupidity*
 muļķīgs *foolish, stupid*
 muļķis *simpleton, fool (m.); muļķa (invar. adj.) stupid*
 murgi (pl.) *nightmares; phantoms*
 mūris *wall*
 mūsējs (poss. pron.) *ours*
 muskulis *muscle*
 mūsu (poss. adj.) *our*
 muša *fly*
 mute *mouth; mazgāt muti to wash one's face; ar pilnu muti with one's mouth full*
 mutīgs *talkative*
 mutulis *bubble*

mutuļot (-o, -oja) *to bubble*
 mūzejs *museum*
 mūzika *music; liķu mūzika funereal music, dirges*
 mūziķis *musician*
 mūžam *eternally, for ever*
 mūžība *eternity*
 mūžīgs *eternal, perpetual*
 mūžs *lifetime*
 naba *navel; nabas saite umbilical cord*
 nabadzība *poverty*
 nabadzīgs *poor*
 nabagmāja *poor-house, alms-house*
 nabags *poor man, beggar; nabaga (invar. adj.) poor, unfortunate*
 nagla *nail*
 naglot (-oju, -oju) *to nail*
 nags *claw; [finger, toe] nail*
 naidīgs *hostile*
 naidnieks *enemy*
 naidis *hatred*
 naigs *quick, sharp, brisk*
 nākams *next, future*
 nākotne *future*
 nākt (-ku, -cu) *to come; uz āru nākt to come forward, emerge; nākt gaismā to come to light; nākt pie pārliecības, ka... to come to the conclusion that...; kas tev nāk prātā? what has got into you?; man nāk/nāca smieklī I have/had to laugh; nākt pie varas to come to power*
 nākties (-kas, -cās): *man nākas grūti, etc. (+ inf.) I find it hard, etc. to (+ inf.)*
 nakts (f.) *night; dienu un nakti day and night; ar labu nakti good night; nakts tauriņš moth*
 naktsvijole *dame's violet*
 namdurvis (pl.) *front door*
 nams *city house; building; bāreņu nams orphanage; draudzes nams parish hall; pilsētas nams Town Hall; veco ļaužu nams Old Folks' Home; nama māte housewife, hostess*
 nāra *mermaid, water-nymph*
 nāsis (pl.) *nostrils*
 nasks *agile, brisk, nimble*
 nātra, nātre *nettle*
 nauda *money; liela nauda big sum; uz lielu naudu for high stakes; skaidra nauda cash; skaidrā naudā in cash; naudas skapis safe; naudas sods fine*
 naudīgs *rich, wealthy*
 nāve *death; nāves sods death penalty*
 nāvīgs *deadly*
 nazis *knife; atsperu nazis flick-knife; bārdas nazis razor*
 ne (neg. part.) *not; vai ne? is it not so?; ne arī not even, nor; ne... ne... neither... nor...*
 nē *no*
 neapšaubāmi *undoubtedly*
 neatlaidība *perseverance*
 neatlaidīgs *persevering, persistent*
 neba *yet not, for... not*
 nebēda *carefreeness; dejot uz nebēdu to dance on and on*
 nebūt (adv.) *not at all*
 necerība *hopelessness, despair*
 necik sen *not so long ago*
 nedaudz (+ gen.) *a little*
 nedēļa *week*
 neērts *uncomfortable*
 negaiss *thunderstorm*
 negantība *villainy, wickedness*
 negants *naughty; evil, wicked*
 negodīgs *dishonest*

neizšķirīgs *irresolute*
 neizturēt (-u, -ēju) *to fail [exam]; not to bear, not to endure*
 nejaušs *unexpected, fortuitous*
 nekā *than*
 nekad *never; nekad vairs never again*
 nekāds (adj.) *not a single*
 nekas *nothing; (interj.) that doesn't matter!, never mind!*
 nekur *nowhere*
 nelāga (invar. adj.) *bad, unpleasant, nasty*
 nelaiķa (invar. adj.) *late, recently deceased*
 nelaime *misfortune; disaster*
 nelaimīgs *unfortunate, unhappy; nelaimīgā kārtā unfortunately*
 nelaipns *unkind, unfriendly*
 nelga (m. or f.) *fool*
 nelietīgs *mean, base, villainous*
 nelietis *scoundrel, ruffian*
 nemaz (adv.) *not at all*
 nemiers *unrest*
 nemirstība *immortality*
 nemītīgs *incessant*
 nemūžam *never, not once in a lifetime*
 nenieka (gen.) *nothing*
 neons *neon*
 nepatika *displeasure*
 neprāša (m. or f.) *ignoramus*
 neraža *bad harvest, crop failure*
 nervs *nerve; krist uz nerviem to get on one's nerves*
 nesēn *recently, not long ago, lately*
 nesens *recent*
 nest (-su, -su) *to carry*
 nesties (-sos, -sos) *to hurry; viņam prāts nesas (+ inf.) he is keen to...; uz ko tev nesas prāts? whatever are you thinking of?*

nēši (pl.), nēšas (pl.) *yoke [for carrying pails]*
 netaisnība *injustice*
 netīrs *dirty, unclean*
 netīšām, netīši *accidentally*
 nevien *not only; nevien... bet arī not only... but also*
 neviens (pron.) *nobody; (adj.) not a single*
 nevis *not at all; nevis... bet not... but*
 nez *I wonder*
 nezāles (pl.) *weeds*
 nezīpa *perplexity, ignorance*
 nežēlība *mercilessness, ruthlessness, cruelty*
 nežēlīgs *merciless, cruel*
 nīcība *transience*
 nicināt (-u, -āju) *to despise*
 niecīgs *trivial, unimportant*
 niedolis *reeds*
 nieks *trifle, trivial matter; nieka (invar. adj.) trivial*
 niezēt (-, -ēja) *to itch*
 nihilisms *nihilism*
 nikns *ferocious, fierce; enraged*
 nikotīns *nicotine*
 nīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to pine away; to hang around waiting [in uncomfortable circumstances]*
 nīkulis *weakling*
 nirt (-rstu, -ru) *to dive, plunge*
 nīst (-stu, -du) *to hate, loathe, detest*
 no (prep. + gen.) *from; made of; no jauna again, once more; no rīta in the morning*
 noaut (-aunu, -āvu) *to take off [shoes]*
 nobeigt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to end, conclude*

nobeigties (-dzos, -dzos) (intrans.) *to end*
 nobert (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to rub off*
 nobirt (-birst, -bira) *to fall off, drop off; to flow [of tears]*
 nobīties (-bīstos, -bijos) *to take fright, become frightened*
 nobraucīt (-ku, -cīju) (trans.) *to strip off*
 nobraukt (-cu, -cu) *to cover [a distance]*
 nobriest (-stu, -du) (intrans.) *to swell, ripen*
 nobrūnēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to go brown*
 noburt (-buru, -būru) *to bewitch, enchant*
 nocirpt (-cērpū, -cirpū) *to shear*
 nocirst (-cērtu, -cirtu) *to chop down, hew down*
 nodaļa *section; chapter*
 nodarbināts *busy, occupied, employed*
 nodarīt (-u, -īju) *to cause, inflict*
 nodauzīt (-u, -īju) *to knock off, beat off*
 nodedzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to burn down*
 nodegt (-deg, -dega) (intrans.) *to burn down*
 noderēt (-u, -ēju) *to be appropriate, to be of use*
 nodibināt (-u, -āju) *to found*
 nodīlt (-lst, -la) (intrans.) *to wear out, wane, decrease*
 nodomāt (-āju, -āju) *to intend; to consider, reflect*
 nodoms *intention*
 nodot (-dodu, -devu) *to hand over, deliver, betray*
 nodoties (-dodos, -devos) *to give oneself up to, indulge in*
 nodrebēt (-u, -ēju) *to tremble, shiver*
 nodrupt (-drūp, -drupa) (intrans.) *to crumble off*
 nodurt (-duru, -dūru) *to stab to death; to cast down [eyes]*
 nodzist (-dziest, -dzisa) *to go out, be extinguished*
 nodzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu): *nodzīt bārdu to shave*
 nofotografēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to photograph*
 nogalināt (-u, -āju) *to kill*
 nogaršot (-oju, -oju) *to taste*
 nogāzt (-žu, -zu) *to push down, over*
 noglabāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to hide, conceal; to put away, store away*
 nogriezt (-žu, -zu) *to cut off*
 nogriezt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn off, ward off*
 nogriezties (-žos, -zos) (intrans.) *to turn off*
 nogrimt (-mstu, -mu) *to sink down*
 nogrūst (-žu, -du) *to push down*
 nogurt (-rstu, -ru) *to tire, grow weak*
 nogērbt (-bju, -bu) *to take off [clothes]*
 noģībt (-bstu, -bu) *to faint*
 noģīst (-ģiedu, -ģīdu) *to suspect, to sense*
 noiet (-ēju, -gāju) *to go down, descend; to go*
 nojāt (-jāju, -jāju) *to ride [a given distance]; to tire [a horse]*
 nojaust (-šu, -tu) *to guess, feel [intuitively]*
 nojauta *foreboding, presentiment*
 nokaisīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to strew, cover*
 nokāpt (-pju, -pu) *to climb down, alight*
 nokarāties (-ājos, -ājos) (intrans.) *to hang down*
 nokārtot (-oju, -oju) *to put in order*

- nokārtoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to settle accounts, square up*
 nokaunēties (-os, -ējos) *to be ashamed*
 nokaut (-kauju, -kāvu) *to kill, slaughter*
 nokavēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to miss [bus, train, etc.]*
 nokavēties (-ējos, -ējos) *to be late*
 noklausīties (-os, -ījos) *to hear out; to overhear, hear*
 nokliegties (-dzos, -dzos) *to scream oneself hoarse*
 nokļūt (-kļūstu, -kļuvu) *to get [somewhere]*
 nokniebt (-bju, -bu) *to pinch off, pluck off*
 nokost (-žu, -du) *to bite off*
 nokrāsot (-oju, -oju) *to paint, to dye*
 nokratīt (-u, -īju) *to shake off, throw off*
 nokrist (-krītu, -kritu) *to fall down*
 nokristies (-krītos, -kritos) *to lose [weight]; to depreciate*
 nokust (-kūst, -kusa) (intrans.) *to thaw, melt*
 nokvēpt (-pstu, -pu) *to become black with smoke*
 noķert (-ķeru, -ķēru) *to catch [fish, etc.]; to catch [in the act]*
 nolādēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) *to curse*
 nolaist (-žu, -du) *to let down, lower; to fell [trees]*
 nolaisties (-žas, -dās) (in text 241a) *to envelop, flow over*
 nolaupīt (-u, -īju) *to steal; to kidnap*
 nolauzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to break off*
 nolēkt (-lecu, -lēcu) *to jump down; to jump off*
 nolemt (-lemju, -lēmu) *to decide*
 noliekt (-cu, -cu) (trans.) *to bend down*
 noliekties (-cos, -cos) (intrans.) *to bend down*
 noliet (-leju, -lēju) *to pour off*
 nolietot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to wear out*
 nolikt (-lieku, -liku) *to put down; to set down, fix [time, etc.]; to leave [behind]*
 noliktava *storehouse, warehouse*
 nolīkties (-kstos, -kos) (intrans.) *to bend down*
 nolīt (-līst, -lija) *to rain*
 nolūgties (-dzos, -dzos) *to apologize*
 nolūzt (-st, -za) (intrans.) *to break off*
 nomaitāt (-āju, -āju) *to kill, exterminate*
 nomaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to pay off, finish paying for*
 nomākt (-cu, -cu) *to oppress, depress*
 nomaldīties (-os, -ījos) *to get lost, lose one's way*
 nomaukt (-cu, -cu) *to take off [footwear, rings, etc.]*
 nomazgāt (-āju, -āju) *to wash, wash over*
 nomeklēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to search for*
 nomest (-tu, -tu) *to throw off, throw down*
 nomesties (-tos, -tos) *to settle down; to throw oneself down, to fall down*
 nominātīvs *nominative case*
 nomirt (-rstu, -ru) *to die*
 nomizot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to peel, skin*
 nomocīt (-cu/-ku, -cīju) (in text 214a) *to stand, tolerate*
 nomods *wakefulness; būt nomodā to be awake*
 nonākt (-ku, -cu) *to come [finally]; to arrive [at]*

- nonīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to pine, waste away; to hang around waiting [in uncomfortable circumstances]*
 nopemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to take off, take away*
 nopelnīt (-u, -īju) *to earn*
 nopelt (-peļu, -pēlu) *to criticize, censure*
 nopietns *serious*
 nopirkt (-pērku, -pirku) *to buy*
 noplūkt (-cu, -cu) *to pluck, pick*
 nopļaut (-pļauju, -pļāvu) *to mow [down], to reap*
 nopuņķoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to get mucus on oneself*
 nopūsties (-šos, -tos) *to sigh*
 nopūta *sigh, moan*
 noputēt (-u, -ēju) *to become dusty*
 nora *fallow land, pasture*
 noraidīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to refuse, reject*
 norakstīt (-u, -īju) *to copy; to bequeath; to embroider*
 noraust (-šu, -su) *to wipe away*
 noraut (-rauju, -rāvu) *to pull down; to pull off, tear off*
 noreibt (-bstu, -bu) *to become giddy; (occ.) to get drunk*
 noriet (-reju, -rēju) *to hound; to bite to death; to slander*
 norietēt (-, -ēja) *to set [of sun]*
 norimt (-mstu, -mu) (intrans.) *to calm down, abate*
 norist (-rīst, -risa) *to come undone, get untied*
 norīt (-riju, -riju) *to swallow, gulp down*
 Normunds *Normunds*
 norūkt (-cu, -cu) *to grumble, mutter*
 Norvēģija *Norway*
 norvēģis, (f.) *-iete a Norwegian; norvēģu (invar. adj.) Norwegian*
 norvēģiski (adv.) *Norwegian*
 nosalt (-lstu, -lu) *to get cold*
 nosarkt (-kstu, -ku) *to redden; to blush*
 nosēdināt (-u, -āju) *to seat*
 nosēsties (-žos, -dos) *to sit down*
 nosist (-tu, -tu) *to strike down, to slay, beat to death; to strike [of hours]*
 nosisties (-tos, -tos) *to be killed*
 noskaidrot (-oju, -oju) *to clear up [a matter], to find out*
 noskalot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to rinse over, wash off*
 noskatīties (-os, -ījos) *to observe [closely]*
 noskrieties (-skrienos, -skrējos) *to run oneself tired*
 noskūpstīt (-u, -īju) *to kiss*
 noskurināties (-os, -ājos) *to shudder, shiver*
 noskūt (-skuju, -skuvu): *noskūt bārdū to shave*
 noslaucīt (-ku, -cīju) *to wipe off*
 noslaucīties (-kos, -cījos) *to wipe oneself*
 noslēgties (-dzas, -dzās) (intrans.) *to close, to end*
 noslēpums *secret, mystery*
 noslīcināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to drown*
 noslīdēt (-u, -ēju) *to slide down*
 noslīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to be drowned*
 nosmakt (-smoku, -smaku) (intrans.) *to suffocate, choke; to languish*
 nosnigt (-snieg, -sniga) *to be snowed over*
 nosodīt (-u, -īju) *to condemn, sentence*
 nospert (-speru, -spēru) *to strike down [with lightning]*
 nospiest (-žu, -du) *to press down, oppress, depress*

- nosprāgt (-gstu, -gu) *to die [of animals]*
 nospraust (-žu, -du) *to set, determine*
 nost (adv.) *off, away; ģērbt nost to take off [clothes]; iet nost to come off [of paint, etc.]; maukt nost to take off [clothes]; rokas nost! hands off!*
 nostaigāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to get tired walking*
 nostāties (-jos, -jos) *to put oneself; to cease*
 nostrādāt (-āju, -āju) *to work [a given time]*
 nostrādāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to grow tired working*
 nosviest (-žu, -du) *to throw down; to overthrow*
 nosvinēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) *to celebrate*
 nosvīst (-stu, -du) *to sweat, perspire*
 nošaut (-šauju, -šāvu) *to fire; to shoot*
 notecēt (-teku, -tecēju) *to flow down; to run down; to elapse [of time]*
 noteikt (-cu, -cu) *to ordain, appoint, fix; to say*
 noteikts *definite, fixed, appointed [time, place, etc.]; definite (gram.)*
 noteka *gutter, drain*
 notēst (-tešu, -tēsu) *to trim, to square*
 noticēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to believe*
 notiesāt (-āju, -āju) *to condemn, sentence*
 notikt (-tiek, -tiku) *to get [to], come [to]; to happen*
 notikums *event, happening*
 notirpt (-pstu, -pu) *to become numb*
 novadīt (-a, -lja) (trans.) *to drain off*
 novalkāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to wear out [clothes]*
 novārgt (-gstu, -gu) *to be in bad health, to pine away, waste away*
 novele *short story, nouvelle*
 novēlējumi (pl.) *wishes*
 novēlēt (-u, -ēju) *to wish; to bequeath*
 novembris *November*
 novērst (-šu, -su) *to divert, avert, turn away*
 novērsties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to turn away*
 novietot (-oju, -oju) *to place; to park; to accommodate*
 novietoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to be placed, accommodated; to take one's seat*
 novilkēt (-velku, -vilku) (trans.) *to pull off*
 novīst (-stu, -tu) *to fade, wither, wilt, droop*
 nozagt (-zogu, -zagu) *to steal*
 nozāģēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to saw off*
 nozibēt (-, -ēja) *to flash*
 noziedēt (-, -ēja) *to cease blooming*
 noziedznieks *criminal*
 noziegums *crime*
 noziest (-žu, -du) *to smear, to cover [by smearing]*
 nozīme *meaning; importance; badge*
 nozīmēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to mean, imply*
 nozūst (-zūdu, -zūdu) *to disappear*
 nožūt (-žūstu, -žūvu) (intrans.) *to dry off*
 nu! (interj.) *now then!*
 nujā! (interj.) *well then!*
 numurs *number*
 nupat *just now*
 ņemšana *a taking*
 ņemt (ņemu, ņemu) *to take; ņemt ļaunā to take offence*

- ņemties (ņemos, ņemos) *to exert oneself; to begin, resolve [to do something]; to scuffle*
 ņiprs *brisk, nimble, quick*
 Ņujorka *New York*
 ō! (interj.) *oh! ah!*
 oaze *oasis*
 ods *gnat, mosquito*
 oga *berry*
 ogle *coal; ogles (pl.) coal(s)*
 ogļrakte *coal mine*
 Oidips *Oedipus; Oidipa kompleks*
 Oedipus complex
 okeans *ocean; Klusais okeans Pacific Ocean; Lielais okeans Pacific Ocean*
 oktobris *October*
 ola *egg*
 olnīca *track, cattle-track*
 oļains *pebbly, gravelly*
 oma *disposition, temper*
 opera *opera*
 operācija *operation*
 ordenis *medal; order [religious, etc.]*
 orķestris *orchestra, band*
 Oslo (m. indec.) *Oslo*
 ost (-žu, -du) (intrans.) *to smell; ost pēc (+ gen.) to smell of*
 osta *harbour; kara osta naval base*
 ošņāt (-āju, -āju) *to sniff*
 otrdien *on Tuesday*
 otrdiena *Tuesday*
 otrkārt *secondly*
 otrreiz *for a second time*
 otrs *other [of two]; viens otrs several, a few; viens..., otrs... one..., the other...; otrsais second*
 ozols *oak tree; ozola zīle acorn*
 pa (prep. + acc.) *along, through; pa kreisi on the left, to the left; pa labi on the right, to the right; (prep. + dat. signifies equal distribution: see lesson 98); pa reizei sometimes, at times*
 paagrš *fairly early, earlyish*
 paass *fairly sharp, sharpish*
 paaudze *generation*
 paaugties (-gos, -gos) *to grow up [a little]*
 pabārt (-baru, -bāru) *to scold [a little]*
 pabeigt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to finish, complete*
 pabiedēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to frighten [a little]*
 pabiezš *fairly thick, thickish*
 pacelt (-ceļu, -cēlu) *to lift*
 pacelties (-ceļos, -cēlos) *to rise up*
 paciesties (-šos, -tos) *to be patient*
 pacietība *patience*
 pacietīgs *patient*
 padarīt (-u, -lju) *to do; (+ adj.) to make, render*
 padejot (-oju, -oju) *to dance [a while]*
 padēls *step-son*
 padevīgs *devoted, submissive*
 padoms *advice, suggestion; wisdom*
 padoties (-dodos, -devos) (intrans.) *to yield, surrender*
 padziedāt (-u, -āju) *to sing [a little]*
 padzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu) *to chase out, chase away, banish*
 paēna *shade, shadow, shelter*
 paēst (-du, -du) *to eat*
 paēsties (-dos, -dos) *to eat one's fill*
 pag! paga! (interj.) *wait!*
 pagaidām *for the present, for the time being*
 pagaidīt (-u, -lju) *to wait for, await [a short while]*
 pagalam (adv.) *lost, finished, dead*

- pagalms *yard*
 pagāna (invar. adj.) *confounded, rotten*
 pagatavot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to prepare*
 pagātne *the past*
 paglabāt (-āju, -āju) *to keep, save; to conceal*
 paglaudīt (-u, -īju) *to caress, stroke [a little]*
 pagrabs *cellar*
 pagriezt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn*
 pagriezies (-žos, -zos) (intrans.) *to turn*
 pagrūst (-žu, -du) *to push, knock, jolt*
 pagulēt (-guļu, -gulēju) *to sleep [a while]*
 pagulēties (-guļos, -gulējos) *to lie down, have a nap*
 pagurt (-rstu, -ru) *to get tired*
 pagurums *tiredness, fatigue*
 pagūt (-gūstu, -guvu) (+ inf.) *to manage, succeed*
 pagīras (pl.) *hangover*
 paiet (-eju, -gāju) *to walk [a while]; to elapse [of time]*
 pajumte *shelter, refuge; accommodation*
 pakaļ (adv., postp. + dat.) *after*
 pakāpe *step; degree; stage; rank*
 pakāpenis *see pakāpiens*
 pakāpiens *step, stair, rung*
 pakārt (-karu, -kāru) (trans.) *to hang*
 pakārties (-karos, -kāros) *to hang oneself*
 pakavs *horse-shoe*
 paklājs *carpet*
 paklibot (-oju, -oju) *to limp [a little]*
 pakļst (-stu, -du) *to decline [morally], go to ruin*
 paklusām *quietly*
 pakrūte *pit of the stomach*
 paksis *corner of a building*
 palags *sheet*
 palaist (-žu, -du) *to release; to while away [time]; palaist valodas to spread gossip*
 paldies *thank you*
 palēnām *slowly*
 palēts *fairly cheap, cheapish*
 palicējs *one who remains behind*
 palīdzēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to help; Dievs palīdz! (see lesson 221)*
 palīdzība *assistance, aid, help*
 paliels *fairly big, biggish*
 palīgs *assistant; doties palīgā (+ dat.) to go to the aid of; saukt palīgā to call for help; palīgā! (interj.) help!*
 palikt (-lieku, -liku) *to remain; to become (+ adj.)*
 palīst (-lienu, -līdu) *to crawl, creep under*
 palma *palm-tree*
 pamācīt (-cu, -cīju) *to teach [a lesson]*
 pamanīt (-u, -īju) *to notice, perceive*
 pamāt (-ju, -ju) *to nod, beckon, wave*
 pamāte *step-mother*
 pamatīgs *thorough, considerable*
 pamats *foundation; ground, reason; uz kāda pamata? on what grounds?*
 pamatskola *primary school*
 pamazām *slowly, gradually*
 pamazs *fairly small, smallish*
 pameita *step-daughter*
 pamest (-tu, -tu) *to throw; to forsake, cast aside*
 pamosties (-stos, -dos) (intrans.) *to wake up*
 pampt (-pstu, -pu) *to swell up*
 panākt (-ku, -cu) *to achieve; to contrive; to overtake, catch up with*

- panākumi (pl.) *success*
 panest (-su, -su) *to carry [a little]; to bear, endure*
 panna [*frying-*] *pan, tray*
 pants *verse, stanza, paragraph*
 papemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to take*
 papagailis *parrot*
 papelnīt (-u, -īju) *to earn [a little]*
 papilnam (adv.) *abundantly, profusely; (postp. + gen.) in abundance, galore*
 papīrs *paper*
 paplāpāt (-āju, -āju) *to gossip [a little]*
 paprašties (-os, -ījos) *to request*
 papriekšu *at first*
 par (+ acc.) *about, concerning; (with adj. or adv.) too; par un pret for and against*
 pār (+ acc.) *over*
 parādīt (-u, -īju) *to show*
 parādīties (-os, -ījos) *to show up, to appear*
 paradīze *paradise; paradīzes putns bird of paradise*
 parāds *debt*
 paradums *custom, habit*
 pārāk (with adj. or adv.) *too*
 pārakmeņoties (-ojos, -ojos) (intrans.) *to turn to stone*
 pārart (-aru, -aru) *to plough again*
 parasts *usual, common*
 pāraugt (-gu, -gu) *to overgrow, outgrow*
 paraut (-rauju, -rāvu) (+ dat. + aiz) *to pull [something, someone] by*
 pāraut (-aunu, -āvu) *to change [shoes, socks, etc.]*
 pārbarot (-oju, -oju) *to overfeed*
 pārbaudījums *examination*
 pārbaudīt (-u, -īju) *to examine*
 pārbraukt (-cu, -cu) *to drive over; to drive home*
 pārdabīgs *supernatural, superhuman*
 pārdevējs, (f.) -a *salesman, -woman*
 pārdot (-dodu, -devu) *to sell*
 pārdzerties (-dzeros, -dzēros) *to overdrink*
 pārdzimt (-mstu, -mu) *to be reborn, born anew; to be transformed*
 pārdzīt (-dzenu, -dzinu) (trans.) *to drive [animals] home*
 pārdzīvojums *experience*
 pārdzīvot (-oju, -oju) *to live through, to experience*
 pareizs *correct, exact*
 pareizticīgs *Orthodox*
 pārējs *remaining*
 paresns *fairly fat, stout*
 pārēsties (-dos, -dos) *to overeat*
 pārgriezt (-žu, -zu) *to cut, sever*
 pārgrozīt (-u, -īju) *to change, modify*
 pārgulēt (-guļu, -gulēju) *to sleep the night*
 pārgērbties (-bjos, -bos) *to change one's clothes*
 pāri (adv., prep. + dat., postp. + dat.) *over*
 pāriet (-eju, -gāju) *to go over, pass over; to cease; to go home*
 pāris *a pair; (indec. + gen.) some, a few*
 parīt *the day after tomorrow*
 Parīze *Paris*
 pārijāt (-ju, -ju) *to ride home*
 pārajautāt (-āju, -āju) *to re-question*
 pārijūt (-dzu, -dzu) *to change horses*
 pārkalts (-kaļu, -kalu) *to re-shoe [horse]*
 pārkāpt (-pju, -pu) *to climb over; to overstep, transgress, infringe*

pārkārt (-karu, -kāru) *to hang [something] over [something]*
 pārkārtot (-oju, -oju) *to re-arrange*
 parkets *inlaid floor*
 pārklāt (-ju, -ju) *to cover over*
 pārklusīties (-os, -ījos) *to mis-hear*
 pārkost (-žu, -du) *to bite through*
 pārkrāsot (-oju, -oju) *to repaint, re-dye*
 pārkraut (-krauju, -krāvu) *to overload*
 pārkravāt (-āju, -āju) *to repack*
 pārkrīstīt (-īju, -īju) *to rechristen, rename*
 parks *park*
 pārkurināt (-u, -āju) *to overheat*
 pārļaut (-žu, -du) *to cast [one's eyes] over*
 pārļauties (-žos, -dos) *to fly over*
 pārļautīt (-u, -īju) *to read over*
 pārļēkt (-lēcu, -lēcu) *to jump over*
 pārļidot (-oju, -oju) *to fly over*
 pārļiecība *conviction; nākt pie pārļiecības, ka... to come to the conclusion that...*
 pārļiecināt (-u, -āju) *to convince, persuade*
 pārļieku *extremely, excessively*
 pārļikt (-lieku, -liku) *to place somewhere else*
 pārļīt (-ļīst, -ļija) *to overflow*
 pārļainīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to alter, change*
 pārļaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to overpay*
 pārļalt (-maļu, -malu) *to regrind*
 pārļērība *excess, extravagance*
 pārļmīt (-miju, -miju) *to change, exchange*
 pārļmocīt (-ku/-cu, -cīju) *to torment, strain, tax heavily*
 pārļnakšņot (-oju, -oju) *to spend the night*

pārļnākt (-ku, -cu) *to come home, arrive home*
 pārļnest (-su, -su) *to carry home*
 pārļnovads *a distant neighbourhood*
 pārļņemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to take possession of*
 pārļodēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to parody*
 pārļpeldēšana *swimming across*
 pārļpeldēt (-u, -ēju) *to swim over*
 pārļpildīt (-u, -īju) *to overflow*
 pārļplēst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to tear apart*
 pārļplūst (-stu, -du) *to overflow*
 pārļprast (-protu, -pratu) *to misunderstand*
 pārļrakstīt (-u, -īju) *to rewrite, copy out*
 pārļrakstīties (-os, -ījos) *to make an error in writing*
 pārļrasties (-rodos, -rados) *to return home, come home*
 pārļredzēt (-u, -ēju) *to see across, to survey*
 pārļrēķināt (-u, -āju) *to recalculate*
 pārļrēķināties (-os, -ājos) *to miscalculate*
 pārļrunāt (-āju, -āju) *to talk over*
 pārļsēsties (-žos, -dos) *to change seats; to change trains*
 pārļskaitīt (-u, -īju) *to re-count*
 pārļskaitīties (-os, -ījos) *to miscount*
 pārļskatīties (-os, -ījos) *to err*
 pārļskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run over, to boil over; to run home*
 pārļsla *flake*
 pārļspēt (-ju, -ju) *to overcome, to surpass*
 pārļsprāgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to burst*
 pārļstāstīt (-u, -īju) *to retell*
 pārļstāvis *representative*
 pārļsteigt (-dzu, -dzu) *to surprise*

pārļsteigties (-dzos, -dzos) *to hurry [excessively]*
 pārļstiepties (-pjos, -pos) *to overexert oneself*
 pārļstrādāties (-ājos, -ājos) (intrans.) *to overwork*
 pārļsūtīt (-u, -īju) *to send over; to send on [letters, etc.]*
 pārļsvērt (-sveru, -svēru) *to re-weigh*
 pārļšūt (-šuju, -šuvu) *to alter [by sewing]*
 pārļtaisīt (-u, -īju) *to remake, refit, renovate*
 pārļteikties (-cos, -cos) *to make an error in speaking*
 pārļtika *food, provisions*
 pārļtraukt (-cu, -cu) *to interrupt*
 pārļtrūkt (-kst, -ka) (intrans.) *to break, tear apart*
 pārļtulkot (-oju, -oju) *to translate*
 pārļrum cog. adv. *to pārļi*
 pārļrunāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to chat [a while]*
 pārļrupjš *fairly coarse, coarsish*
 pārļvaicāt (-āju, -āju) *to ask again*
 pārļvarēt (-u, -ēju) *to overcome*
 pārļveidot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to re-form, re-organize*
 pārļvērst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to change, transform [into]*
 pārļvērsties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to change, turn [into]*
 pārļvest (-du, -du) *to lead home, bring home*
 pārļvilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to drag home*
 pārļvilkties (-velkos, -vilkos) *to drag oneself home*
 pārļziemot (-oju, -oju) *to hibernate, to winter*
 pārļzinis *headmaster; manager; supervisor*
 pārļsaka *fairly tale*
 pārļsapņot (-oju, -oju) *to dream [a little]*
 pārļsargāt (-āju, -āju) or (-u, -āju) *to protect*
 pārļsaukt (-cu, -cu) *to call*
 pārļsaule *world; plašā pasaule the wide world; pasaules karš world war; pasaules mala the end(s) of the earth*
 pārļsausss *fairly dry, dryish*
 pārļsase *passport*
 pārļskaidrojums *explanation*
 pārļskaidrot (-oju, -oju) *to explain*
 pārļskatīties (-os, -ījos) *to look at*
 pārļskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run*
 pārļskubināt (-u, -āju) *to urge on*
 pārļslēpt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to hide, conceal*
 pārļslēpties (-pjos, -pos) (intrans.) *to hide*
 pārļsmags *fairly heavy, heavyish*
 pārļsmaidīt (-u, -īju) *to smile [a little], to give a smile*
 pārļsmažot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to smell*
 pārļsmieties (-smejos, -smējos) *to laugh [a little]*
 pārļsnaust (-žu, -du) *to slumber, snooze*
 pārļsniegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to hand [to], pass [to]; to present [to]; to teach*
 pārļspārne *shelter, refuge; place under the roof*
 pārļspēt (-ju, -ju) *to have time [to]*
 pārļspīdēt (-, -ēja) *to flash*
 pārļspiest (-žu, -du) *to press, squeeze; paspiest roku (+ dat.) to shake hands with*
 pārļpastaigāt (-āju, -āju) *to walk [a little]*
 pārļpastaigāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to go for a walk*

pastars *final, last*
 pastartiesā *Day of Judgement*
 pastāstīt (-u, -īju) *to relate*
 pastāvēt (-u, -ēju) *to exist*
 pasteigties (-dzos, -dzos) *to make haste*
 pastiept (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to pull, stretch*
 pastiepties (-pjos, -pos) (intrans.) *to stretch out*
 pastmarka *postage stamp*
 pastnieks *postman*
 pasts *post office*
 pasūtīnāt (-u, -āju) *see pasūtīt*
 pasūtīt (-u, -īju) *to order [meal, etc.]*
 pasviest (-žu, -du) *to throw, fling*
 pašapziņa *self-confidence*
 pašķindēt (-, -ēja) (intrans.) *to jingle*
 pašlaik *now, at the present time*
 pašmocīgs *self-torturing*
 pašreiz *right now, at this instant*
 pašreizējs (adj.) *present*
 pašsajūta *feeling, state of mind*
 pašūt (-šuju, -šuvu) *to sew; to make [dress, etc.]*
 pat *even; pat ne not even*
 pātaga *whip*
 patālu *a fair way off, a fair way away*
 pateicība *gratitude*
 pateicīgs *grateful*
 pateikšana *thanks*
 pateikt (-cu, -cu) *to say, tell*
 pateikties (-cos, -cos) (+ dat.) *to thank; pateicoties (+ dat.) thanks to*
 patērēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to consume*
 patēvs *step-father*
 patiesība *truth, reality*
 patiesš *true, proper*
 patiešām *really, indeed*
 patievs *fairly thin, on the thin side*

patīkams *pleasant*
 patikt (-tīku, -tiku) *to please*
 patilte *space under a bridge*
 patlaban *right now; just then*
 patmīlīgs *selfish*
 pats, (f.) pati *oneself (emphatic); viens pats all alone; pats pēdējais laiks not a moment too soon*
 pāts *fawn-coloured*
 patskanis *vowel*
 patstāvība *independence*
 patstāvīgs *independent, self-supporting*
 patumšs *fairly dark, darkish*
 paturēt (-u, -ēju) *to keep, retain*
 patvaļa *self-will; (poetic, etc.) licence*
 paugurains *hilly*
 paugurs *hill, knoll*
 pauris *skull*
 paust (-žu, -du) *to make known, betray, spread [news, etc.]*
 pavadīt (-u, -īju) *to accompany; pavadīt (laiku) to spend [time]*
 pavadonis, (f.) pavadone *attendant; companion*
 pavalkāt (-āju, -āju) *to wear [a while]*
 pavārs, (f.) pavāre *cook*
 pavasaris *spring*
 pavediens *thread, train of thought*
 paveikt (-cu, -cu) *to manage, achieve*
 pavēle *command, order*
 pavēlēt (-u, -ēju) *to order, command*
 pavēnis *shade, shelter*
 pavilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to pull, drag; to pull, drag [a little]*
 pavilkties (-velkos, -vilkos) *to drag oneself [a little]*
 Pāvils *Paul*
 pavisšs *superficial, rough, careless*
 pavisam *quite*

pāvs *peacock*
 pazares (pl.) *the lower branches [of a tree]*
 pazaudēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to lose*
 pazemība *humility*
 pazīme *mark, sign*
 paziņa (m. or f.) *an acquaintance*
 paziņot (-oju, -oju) *to inform, report*
 pazīst (-žu, -du) *to suck*
 pazīstams, pazīstamais *an acquaintance*
 pazīt (-zīstu, -zīnu) *to know, recognize [a person]*
 pazust (-zūdu, -zūdu) *to disappear; pazudušais dēls Prodigal Son*
 pazvejot (-oju, -oju) *to fish [a while]*
 pēc (prep. + gen.) *after; pēc tam afterwards*
 pēcpusdiena *afternoon*
 pēda *foot; trace, sign*
 pēdējais *last; pats pēdējais laiks not a moment too soon; pēdējā laikā recently*
 pēdīgi *finally, at last*
 pēdīgs *last; lowest*
 pekļe *hell*
 pēkšņi *suddenly*
 pēkšņš *sudden*
 peldēt (-u, -ēju) *to swim; to float; to sail; peldēt pa upi to swim in the river; peldēt straumei līdz to follow the crowd*
 peldētājs *swimmer*
 peldētava *swimming-bath*
 pele *mouse; lauku pele field-mouse*
 pelēks *grey*
 pelni (pl.) *ashes; pelnu trauks ash-tray*
 pelnīt (-u, -īju) *to earn; pelnīt sev maizi to earn one's living*
 pelt (peļu, pēlu) *to criticize*
 peļņa *profit; ar peļņu at a profit*

penijs *penny*
 pēriens *whipping*
 perināt (-u, -āju) *to hatch, to brood*
 pērkons *thunder; Pērkons the old Latvian god of thunder*
 pērle *pearl*
 pērn *last year*
 perons [railway] *platform*
 pērt (peru, pēru) *to whip, spank, beat*
 pesimisms *pessimism*
 Pēteris *Peter*
 pētīt (-u, -īju or -īju, -īju) *to explore, investigate*
 pie (prep. + gen.) *at, near; to, at the house of*
 pieaugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow up; to increase*
 pieaust (-žu, -du) *to weave [something on to something]*
 piebārstīt (-u, -īju) *to scatter, strew*
 piebraukt (-cu, -cu) *to drive up [to]*
 piecātā *in a group of five*
 piecdesmit *fifty*
 piecdesmitais *fiftieth*
 piecējāds *of five kinds*
 piecēji *five*
 piecelties (-ceļos, -cēļos) *to rise up*
 pieci *five*
 piecpadsmit *fifteen*
 piecpadsmitais *fifteenth*
 piecsimt *five hundred*
 piecsimtais *five hundredth*
 piedāvāt (-āju, -āju) *to offer*
 piederēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to belong [to]*
 piedevām *in addition, into the bargain*
 piedod(iet)! (interj.) *excuse me!*
 piedošana *forgiveness, pardon*
 piedot (-dodu, -devu) *to forgive*
 piedurkne *sleeve*
 piedzimt (-mstu, -mu) *to be born*

piegāze [*sheltered*] *slope*
 piegrūst (-žu, -du) (trans.) *to push [something] up to [something]*
 pieiet (-eju, -gāju) *to go up [to], to approach*
 piejāt (-ju, -ju) *to ride up [to]*
 piejaukt (-cu, -cu) *to mix in*
 piekalne *slope*
 piekāpties (-pjos, -pos) (intrans.) *to yield, to give in*
 piekaut (-kauju, -kāvu) *to beat, thrash*
 pieklabināt (-u, -āju) *to knock; to type*
 pieklauvēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to knock [at]*
 pieklīst (-stu, -du) *to wander up [to]; to stray in*
 piekļauties (-aujos, -āvos) *to cling to, press against*
 pieklūt (-kļūstu, -kļuvu) *to get to, reach*
 piekrāpt (-pju, -pu) *to deceive, cheat*
 piekraste *littoral, hinterland [of lake, sea, river, etc.]*
 piekraut (-krauju, -krāvu) *to load*
 piekravāt (-āju, -āju) *to pack, load*
 piekrist (-krītu, -kritu) *to agree*
 piektais *fifth*
 piektdien *on Friday*
 piektdiena *Friday*
 piekukuļot (-oju, -oju) *to bribe*
 piekust (-kūstu, -kusu) *to grow weary*
 pielaist (-žu, -du) *to allow; pielaist uguni (+ dat.) to set fire to*
 pielasīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to gather extra*
 pieliekties (-cos, -cos) *to stoop*
 pieliet (-leju, -lēju) *to pour in extra*
 pielikt (-lieku, -liku) *to add; to affix; pielikt uguni (+ dat.) to set fire to*

pielipt (-līpu, -lipu) (intrans.) *to stick, adhere [to]*
 pielīst (-lienu, -līdu) *to creep up [to]*
 pielūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to worship, adore*
 piemaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to pay extra*
 piemēram *for example*
 piemērs *example*
 piemīlīgs *sweet, fair, charming*
 piemīpa *souvenir, keepsake, reminder*
 pienaglot (-oju, -oju) *to nail [to]*
 pienains *milky*
 pienākt (-ku, -cu) *to come up [to]; to arrive*
 pienākties (-kas, -cās) *to be due, fitting*
 pienākums *duty, obligation*
 pienest (-su, -su) *to fetch, bring*
 pienīgs (rare) *rich in milk*
 piens *milk*
 pieņemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to accept; to suppose, assume*
 pieņemties (-ņemos, -ņēmos) *to increase; to gain [in weight]*
 piepeši *suddenly*
 piepildīt (-u, -īju) *to fill [up]*
 piepildīties (-ās, -ījās) *to be filled; to be fulfilled, realized*
 piepirkt (-pērku, -pirku) *to buy extra*
 piepūle *strain, exertion*
 piepūst (-šu, -tu) *to blow*
 pierādījums *proof, testimony*
 pieradināt (-u, -āju) *to accustom*
 pierakstīt (-u, -īju) *to write, write down*
 pierast (-rodu, -radu) *to become accustomed [to]*
 pierasts *accustomed, customary, usual*
 piere *forehead*

pierunāt (-āju, -āju) *to persuade*
 piesardzīgs *careful, cautious, wary*
 piesiet (-sienu, -sēju) *to tie [up] to*
 piesis *spur*
 pieskāriens *touch*
 pieskarties (-skaros, -skāros) (+ dat.) *to touch*
 pieskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run up [to]*
 piesliet (-slienu, -slēju) (trans.) *to prop against, lean against*
 piespert (-speru, -spēru) *kāju to stamp*
 piespiest (-žu, -du) *to press against; to force, oblige*
 piespraust (-žu, -du) *to affix, pin, fasten [to]*
 piešķirt (-šķiru, -šķiru) *to hand out, award*
 piešūt (-šuju, -šuvu) *to sew on*
 pietikt (-tiek, -tika) *to suffice, to be enough*
 pietrūkt (-kst, -ka) (intrans.) *to run out, to be insufficient*
 pietura [*bus, etc.*] *stop; pieturas punkts (in text 241a) clue*
 pieturēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to stop; (trans.) to hold*
 pieturēties (-os, -ējos) *to hold fast; to follow [rule, etc.]*
 pievārte *gateway; outskirts, approaches*
 pieveikt (-cu, -cu) *to conquer, defeat, subdue*
 pievērst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to direct, turn; pievērst uzmanību (+ dat.) to pay attention to, to turn one's attention to*
 pievērsties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to turn [to]*
 pievilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to pull [to]; to attract*

pievilt (-viļu, -vīlu) *to deceive*
 piezagties (-zogos, -zagos) *to steal up [to]*
 piezīmēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to remark, to note*
 piezvanīt (-u, -īju) (+ dat.) *to telephone*
 Piksija *Pixie*
 pikts *angry, vexed*
 piktums *annoyance*
 pilādzis *mountain ash*
 pildīt (-u, -īju) *to fill; to stuff [poultry, etc.]*
 pildīties (-ās, -ījās) *to be filled*
 pildspalva *fountain pen*
 pile *drop*
 pile *duck; meža pile wild duck*
 pilēt (-, -ēja) *to trickle, drip*
 piliens *drop; kā piliens jūrā a drop in the ocean*
 pilnība *fullness, abundance, completeness*
 pilnīgs *entire, total, complete*
 pilns *full; pilnā kaklā at the top of one's voice; no pilnas krūts at the top of one's voice; ar pilnu muti with one's mouth full*
 pilnum *cog, adv. to pilns*
 pils (f.) *castle*
 pilsēta *city; galvas pilsēta capital city; pilsētas galva (m.) mayor; pilsētas nams Town Hall*
 pilskalns *castle mound*
 pinka *tuft of hair*
 pipari (pl.) *pepper; turku pipari (pl.) cayenne*
 pīpe *pipe*
 pīpēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to smoke*
 pircējs *shopper, buyer*
 pirkstgals: uz pirkstgaliem *on tiptoe*
 pirksts *finger; toe; kāju pirksts toe*

pirkt (pērku, pirkū) *to buy*
 pirkums *purchase; lab's purchase*
 bargain
 pirmais *first*
 pirmdien *on Monday*
 pirmdiena *Monday*
 pirmīt *a while ago*
 pirmkārt *firstly*
 pirmklasīgs *first-class, excellent*
 pirmlaicīgs *primal*
 pirms (prep. + gen.) *before; ago;*
 (conj.) *before; (adv.) first,*
beforehand
 pirtnieks *bath-house attendant*
 pirts (f.) *bath-house*
 pišņi (pl.) *ashes, dust*
 pīt (pinu, pinu) *to braid, plait, twist*
 plaiksnīties (-ās, -ļjās) *to flash, blink*
 plaissa *crack, crevice, fissure*
 plaisma *see plaissa*
 plakans *flat*
 plāksne *plate, plaque*
 plakstiņš *eyelid*
 plakš! (interj.) *splat!, slap!*
 plakt (plokū, plaku) *to diminish, to*
decrease
 plānot (-oju, -oju) *to plan*
 plāns *plan*
 plāns *thin*
 plastisks (in text 242a) *concrete,*
clear
 plašs *wide, extensive, spacious;*
 plašā pasaule *the wide world*
 platforma [railway] *platform*
 plats *wide*
 platums *width, breadth*
 plaukš! (interj.) *slap!, crash!*
 plaukšķināt (-u, -āju) *to clap one's*
hands
 plaukt (-kst, -ka) *to blossom forth,*
flourish, prosper
 plaukts *shelf*

plauša *lung*
 plecs *shoulder*
 plencis *drunkard, dissolute fellow*
 plēšīgs: plēšīgs zvērs *beast of prey*
 plēšona (m. or f.) *beast of prey, bird*
of prey
 plest (-šu, -tu) (trans.) *to spread,*
stretch out
 plēst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to tear, to*
break
 plesties (-šos, -tos) (intrans.) *to*
extend, widen
 plēsties (-šos, -sos) *to fight; to*
toil
 plīks *bare; bald; poor, broke; plīks*
 kā baznīcas žurka *as poor as a*
churchmouse
 plīst (-st, -sa) (intrans.) *to tear,*
shatter
 plosīt (-u, -ļju) (trans.) *to tear apart*
 plosīties (-os, -ļjos) *to rage*
 plosts *raft; (in text 215a) sheet of*
ice
 plūdi (pl.) *flood*
 plūdināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to flood*
 plūkāt (-āju, -āju) *to pluck*
 plūkš(k)ēt (-, -ēja) *to hiss, sizzle,*
fizz
 plukt (plūk, pluka) *to fade [of cloth,*
etc.]
 plūkt (-cu, -cu) *to pluck, pick*
 plūkties (-cos, -cos) *to scuffle*
 plunkš! (interj.) *splash!*
 plūrāls (adj.) *plural*
 plūst (-stu, -du) *to flow, run*
 plāpa (m. or f.) *babblers, tattler,*
gossiper
 plāpāt (-āju, -āju) *to chatter, gossip,*
talk nonsense
 plaut (-auju, -āvu) *to mow, reap*
 plava *meadow*
 plāvējs *mower, reaper*

podš *pot*
 poētisks *poetic*
 poga *button*
 pokāls *goblet*
 polichromija *polychromy*
 policija *police*
 policists *policeman*
 Polija *Poland*
 polis, (f.) -iete *a Pole; poļu (invar.*
adj.) Polish
 poliski (adv.) *Polish*
 post (-šu, -su) *to tidy*
 posties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to*
prepare; to dress up
 postīt (-u, -ļju) *to destroy,*
devastate
 posts *disaster, bane; (in text 226a)*
affliction
 praktisks *practical*
 prasība *requirement*
 prasīšana *asking, enquiry*
 prasīt (-u, -ļju) *to ask*
 prasīties (-os, -ļjos) *to request*
 prast (protu, pratu) *to know how*
[to], to be able [to]
 prātīgs *sensible, prudent*
 pratināt (-u, -āju) *to question,*
interrogate
 prāts *mind, intellect; (in text 222a)*
will, command; skaidrā prātā so-
ber; kas tev nāk prātā? what has
got into you?; viņam prāts nesas
(+ inf.) he is keen to (+ inf.); uz
ko tev nesas prāts? whatever are
you thinking of?; vest pie prāta to
bring [somebody] to his senses
 pravietis *prophet*
 prāvs *considerable*
 prece *commodity; preces (pl.)*
merchandise
 precēt (-u, -ēju) (trans.) *to marry*
 precēties (-os, -ējos) *to get married*

precināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to marry*
off
 precinieks *suitor*
 pret (prep. + acc.) *against, towards;*
 par un pret *for and against*
 pretī, pretim (adv. or postp. + dat.)
against, towards
 pretinieks *opponent, adversary*
 pretkomūnists *an anti-communist*
 pretlikumīgs *illegal, unlawful*
 pretoties (-ojos, -ojos) (+ dat.) *to*
oppose, resist
 priecāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to be pleased,*
to rejoice
 priecīgs *happy, glad*
 precināt (-u, -āju) *to gladden*
 priede *pine-tree*
 prieks *joy; aiz prieka with joy, for*
joy; priekos un bēdās in happiness
and grief
 priekš (prep. + gen.) *for; before;*
 priekš kā? *why?; on whose behalf?*
 priekšā (postp. + gen.) *in front of*
 priekšauts *apron*
 priekšgals *fore-part, prow*
 priekškars [theatre] *curtain*
 priekšmets *thing, object; (gram.)*
subject; subject [for study, etc.]
 priekšnieks *director, chief, boss;*
 stacijas priekšnieks *station-master*
 priekšpusdiena *morning, forenoon*
 priekštelpa *ante-room*
 prievārds *preposition*
 problēma *problem*
 profesors *professor*
 projām *see prom*
 prom (adv.) *away, gone*
 prospekts *avenue, boulevard*
 protestēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to protest*
 proti *namely; (in text 241a) indeed*
 PSRS (f.) *the USSR*
 pudele *bottle*

puðuris *thicket, clump*
 puika (m.) *boy*
 puisēns *little boy*
 puisis *fellow, lad; farm-hand*
 puķains *flowery*
 puķe *flower; lauku puķe wild-flower; meža puķe wild-flower*
 pūķis *dragon; kite*
 pūles (pl.) *trouble, toil, pains*
 pūlēties (-os, -ējos) *to take pains, to toil*
 pūlis *crowd, mob*
 pulks *regiment, crowd; (in text 201b) flock*
 pulksten(s), pulkstenis *o'clock (see lesson 44); cik pulksten(i)s? what time is it?*
 pulkstenis *clock, watch; rokas pulkstenis wristwatch*
 pulkvedis *colonel*
 pumpurs *bud*
 pūnis *shed, barn*
 punkts *point; full stop; pieturas punkts (in text 241a) clue*
 puns *bump, lump*
 puņķi (pl.) *mucus*
 purns *muzzle, snout*
 purpurs *purple*
 pūrs *dowry*
 purvains *swampy*
 purvs *swamp*
 pusatvērts *half-open*
 puscirtuma = puse cirtuma
 pusdiena (occ. pusdiene) *midday; pusdienas (pl.) midday meal, lunch*
 puse *half; side; district, area; direction; lapas puse page*
 pusgaišs *dim, half-light*
 pusmūžs *middle age; pusmūža (invar. adj.) middle-aged*
 pusstunda *a half hour*

pūst (-šu, -tu) *to blow*
 pušam *see pušu*
 pušķot (-oju, -oju) *to adorn, decorate*
 pušu (adv.) *apart, to pieces*
 pūt (pūstu, puvu) *to rot, putrefy*
 putas (pl.) *foam, lather; sakult putās to whip up to a foam*
 puteklis *speck of dust, speck of pollen; putekļi (pl.) dust, pollen*
 puteklains *dusty*
 putenis *blizzard, snow-storm*
 putns *bird; paradīzes putns bird of paradise; putnu biedēklis scarecrow*
 putra *porridge, broth*
 rada (invar. adj.) *related, kindred*
 radi (pl.) *relatives*
 radījums *creature*
 radināt (-u, -āju) *to accustom*
 radnieks *relative, kinsman*
 radio (m. indec.) *radio, wireless*
 radioaktīvizēts *radio-activated*
 radiofons *radio, wireless*
 radīt (-u, -īju) *to create*
 rādīt (-u, -īju) *to show; (in text 226a) to point; rādīt kādam mēli to poke one's tongue out at somebody; es tev rādīšu! I'll show you!*
 radītājs *creator*
 rādītājs *pointer, indicator*
 rādīties (-os, -ījos) *to show up, to appear*
 ragana *witch*
 rags *horn; sadot pa rāgiem to berate soundly, to beat soundly*
 raibs *many-coloured, colourful*
 raibum cog. adv. *to raibs*
 raidīt (-u, -īju) *to send, transmit; to drive away; raidīt virsū (+ dat.) to set [somebody] on [somebody]*
 raits *speedy, lively*

raizes (pl.) *sorrow, care, trouble*
 raksti (pl.) *[literary] works*
 rakstīt (-u, -īju) *to write; to decorate [with embroidery, carvings, etc.]*
 rakstniecība *literature*
 rakstnieks *writer*
 raksturīgs *characteristic*
 raksturs *character*
 rakt (roku, raku) *to dig; rakt zeltu to dig for gold, to mine gold*
 rakties (rokos, rākos) *to burrow, to bury oneself*
 raktuve *mine*
 rāms *quiet, calm; tame*
 rāpulis *reptile*
 rasa *dew*
 rasots *dew-covered*
 raspodīņš *sundew*
 rast (rodu, radu) *to find; to become accustomed*
 rasties (rodos, rados) *to be created, to come about, to come into existence*
 rāt (-ju, -ju) *to chide, reprimand, scold*
 rātin cog. adv. *to rāt*
 ratiņš *spinning-wheel; bērnu ratiņi (pl.) pram*
 rātns *well-behaved*
 rats *wheel; rati (pl.) cart*
 rau! (interj.) *look! lo!*
 raudāt (-u, -āju) *to weep, cry*
 raudināt (-u, -āju) *to make cry*
 raudulīgs *tearful, snivelling*
 raudzīt (-gu, -dzīju) *to try; to taste; to look; (in text 237a) to see*
 raudzīties (-gos, -dzījos) *to look [at]*
 raukties (-cas, -cās) (intrans.) *to form into a frown*
 raust (-šu, -su) *to amass*
 raušus cog. adv. *to raut*
 raut (rauju, rāvu) *to pull, tear, pluck; raut viņu velns! the devil take him!*

ražā *harvest*
 ražens *successful, fruitful, beneficial*
 ražojums *production, product*
 ražot (-oju, -oju) *to manufacture, produce*
 re! (interj.) *look!*
 redzējums *sight, vision*
 redzēšanās: uz redzēšanos *good-bye*
 redzēt (-u, -ēju) *to see; redzēt vaigā to see in person, in the flesh*
 redzēties (-os, -ējos) *to see one another*
 rēgoties (-ojas, -ojās) *to loom, protrude*
 reibināt (-u, -āju) *to make dizzy*
 reibt (-bstu, -bu) *to become giddy; man reibst I feel giddy*
 reiz *once [upon a time]; (in text 226a) one day; (in text 201a) at last*
 reize *time; reizē (ar + acc.) at the same time [as], together [with]; reizēm sometimes, at times; kā kuru reizi it all depends on the circumstances; kuru reizi (in text 209a) for the umpteenth time; pa reizei sometimes, at times; uz reizi at the one time*
 reizināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to multiply*
 reklāma *advertisement*
 rēkt (-cu, -cu) *to howl, cry, roar*
 rekviēms *requiem*
 rēķināt (-u, -āju) *to calculate*
 relikvija *relic*
 resns *fat, stout*
 restorāns *restaurant*
 reti *rarely; (+ adj. or adv.) exceptionally, uncommonly, unusually*
 rets *rare*
 rēzija [*obscure: perhaps for*] rezēda *mignonnette*

rezultāts *result*
 rībēt (-, -ēja) *to rumble, roar, resound*
 riebiģs *ghastly; nauseating*
 rieciens *slice*
 rieksts *nut*
 riest (-š, -ta) *to shoot forth, put out [buds, etc.]*
 riesties (-šas, -tās) *to come into bloom, leaf*
 riet (reju, rēju) *to bark*
 rietēt (-, -ēja) *to set [of sun]*
 riets *sunset; saules riets sunset*
 rietumi (pl.) *the west; rietumu (invar. adj.) west, western*
 rieva *wrinkle, groove*
 rievains *riffled, wrinkled, streaked*
 Rīga *Riga*
 rija *kiln-house, drying-shed*
 rijiens *gulp*
 rijģgs *greedy*
 rīkle *throat*
 rīkot (-oju, -oju) *to arrange*
 rīkoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to busy oneself [with]; to act, behave*
 rīks: darba rīks *tool*
 rīkste *goad, switch*
 rīkšot (-oju, -oju) *to trot*
 rīmt (-mstu, -mu) (intrans.) *to calm down, abate*
 rinda *row, line, queue*
 ripa *disc; ripu ripām (adv.) rolling, tumbling*
 rīsi (pl.) *rice*
 riskēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to risk*
 rist (rist, rīsa) *to come loose, come undone, untied*
 rīt (riju, riju) *to swallow, gulp down*
 rīt *see rītu*
 ritenis *wheel; bicycle*
 ritēt (-, -ēja) *to roll; [of tears] to flow*

ritmisks *rhythmic*
 rīts *morning; (agri) no rīta [early] in the morning; rīta zvaigzne morning-star*
 rītu *tomorrow*
 robeža *border, limit*
 roka *hand; arm; pie rokas at hand, close handy; tukšām rokām empty-handed; rokas nost! hands off!; sadoties rokās to join hands; (pa-)spiest roku (+ dat.) to shake hands with; vest pie rokas to lead by the hand; rokas pulkstenis wrist-watch; rokas soma hand-bag*
 rokraksts *handwriting; manuscript*
 romāns *novel*
 romantisks *romantic*
 rotaļa *game; rotaļu biedrs playmate*
 rotaļāt (-āju, -āju) *to play*
 rotaļāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to play*
 rotaļnieks *playmate*
 rotāt (-āju, -āju) *to adorn, attire*
 rotāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to adorn oneself, attire oneself*
 rotīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to swirl*
 roze *rose; meža roze wild-rose, dog-rose*
 rublis *rouble*
 rūciens *roar, rumble*
 rudens (gen. -ns) *autumn*
 Rūdis *Rūdis*
 rūdīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to harden*
 rudzi (pl.) *rye*
 rūgt (-gst, -ga) *to ferment, turn sour*
 rūgts *bitter*
 rūgtums *bitterness*
 rūkopa *roaring*
 rūkšana *roar, rumble*
 rukt (rūku, ruku) (intrans.) *to shrink*

rūkt (-cu, -cu) *to roar*
 rūķis *dwarf; darba rūķis tireless worker*
 rumaks *stallion, charger*
 Rumba *the river Rumba*
 runa *speech; teikt runu to make a speech*
 runāt (-āju, -āju) *to speak*
 runāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to converse*
 rūpes (pl.) *care, worry, anxiety*
 rūpesti (pl.) *care, worry, anxiety*
 rūpģgs *careful, provident*
 rupģš *coarse, rough, rude*
 rūpniecība *industry*
 rūsēt (-ē, -ēja) *to grow rusty*
 rūsgans *reddish-brown, russet*
 rūts (f.) *window-pane*
 saaicināt (-u, -āju) *to invite together*
 saaugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow, arise; to grow together, coalesce*
 sabaidīt (-u, -īju) *to frighten*
 sabaidģties (-os, -ģjos) *to get frightened*
 sabiedēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to frighten*
 sabiedrība *society, company; sabiedrģbā in public*
 sabirzt (-rst, -rza) (intrans.) *to crumble (to pieces)*
 sabraukt (-cu, -cu) (intrans.) *to drive together*
 sabrukt (-brģku, -bruku) *to collapse*
 sacelt (-ceļu, -cģlu) *to raise; to prick up [of ears]*
 sacģkste *contest, match, race; zirgu sacģkstes horse-races*
 sacirst (-cģrtu, -cģrtu) *to cut [to pieces]*
 sacģt (-ku, -cģju) *to say*
 sadabģt (-ģju, -ģju) *to obtain, get*
 sadauzģt (-u, -ģju) *to beat; to smash; to injure*

sadedzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to burn, burn down*
 sadegt (-gu, -gu) (intrans.) *to burn*
 sadģstģt (-u, -ģju) *to plant*
 sadot (-dodu, -devu) *to give; to heap upon; to beat; sadot pa rģgiem to berate soundly, to beat soundly*
 sadoties (-dodos, -devos) (intrans.) *to intersect, join; sadoties rokās to join hands*
 sadrupināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to crumble*
 sadrupt (-drģp, -drupa) (intrans.) *to crumble [apart]*
 sadurties (-duros, -dģros) *to collide; to come into opposition*
 sadusmoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to become angry*
 sadzģt (-dzģst, -dzģja) (intrans.) *to heal*
 sādģža *village*
 sādģzģnieks *villager*
 saģst (-du, -du) *to gnaw, eat away*
 sagaidģt (-u, -ģju) *to expect; to wait for, to meet [from train, etc.]*
 sagatavot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to prepare*
 saglaust (-ģu, -du) *to smooth [hair]*
 sagrābt (-bju, -bu) *to grasp, snatch, grab*
 sagraut (-auju, -ģvu) *to destroy, demolish; to thunder*
 sagriezt (-ģu, -zu) *to cut up*
 sagriezt (-ģu, -zu) (trans.) *to turn*
 sagrģļotģties (-ojos, -ojos) *to stagger, reel*
 sagrģst (-ģu, -du) *to push together, press together*
 sagrģstģties (-ģos, -dos) *to collide; to huddle together*
 sagrģt (-grģst, -gruva) *to collapse, fall to ruins, fall to pieces*

sagruzdēt (-u, -ēju) *to be scorched, burnt*
 sagša *wrap, plaid*
 saieties (-ejos, -gājos) ar (+ acc.) *to associate with, consort with*
 saīgt (-gstu, -gu) *to become sulky, grumpy*
 saime *household; household work force*
 saimnieks *farmer; landlord*
 sainis *parcel, bundle*
 sairt (-rst, -ra) *to fall apart, disintegrate*
 saīsināt (-u, -āju) *to shorten*
 saīsināties (-ās, -ājās) *to grow shorter*
 saistība *obligation, commitment; (in text 236a) bond*
 saistīties (-os, -ījos) *to enter into, engage in, associate with*
 saite *lace, cord, string; turēt pie saites, turēt saitē to hold on a lead; kakla saite neck-tie; kurpju saite shoe-lace; nabas saite umbilical cord*
 sajaukt (-cu, -cu) (trans.) *to mix together*
 sajaukties (-cos, -cos) (intrans.) *to mix [with]; (in text 225a) to be united [with]*
 sajēgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to realize, grasp, comprehend*
 sajozties (-žos, -zos) *to gird on*
 sajukt (-jūku, -juku) *to become confused; to get into disorder*
 sajukums *confusion, disorder*
 sajūsma *enthusiasm*
 sajūsmināt (-u, -āju) *to inspire; to delight*
 sajust (-jūtu, -jutu) (trans.) *to feel, to sense*
 sajūta *feeling*

sakaist (-stu, -su) *to glow, burn, grow hot*
 sakalst (-lst, -lta) (intrans.) *to dry up, wither*
 sakarst (-stu, -su) *to grow hot*
 sakārtot (-oju, -oju) *to put in order*
 sakārtoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to prepare oneself, arrange oneself*
 sakliegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to call together*
 sakļaut (-auju, -āvu) (trans.) *to fold*
 sakne *root; izvilkt sakni to extract the root (math.); saknes (pl.) [root] vegetables*
 sakrāt (-ju, -ju) (trans.) *to gather together; to collect, save*
 sakrist (-krīt, -krita) *to fall apart*
 sākt (-ku, -ku) (trans.) *to begin*
 sakta [*folk*] *brooch*
 sākties (-kas, -kās) (intrans.) *to start*
 sakult (-kuļu, -kūlu) *to churn; sakult putās to whip up to a foam*
 sākums *beginning*
 saķert (-ķeru, -ķēru) *to catch, seize*
 sala *island*
 salabot (-oju, -oju) *to repair*
 salaisties (-žos, -dos) *to flock together*
 salāpīt (-u, -īju) *to repair, mend [clothing]*
 salasīt (-u, -īju) *to pick*
 salasīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.) *to assemble together, congregate*
 salāti (pl.) *lettuce, salad*
 salaulāt (-āju, -āju) (trans.) *to marry*
 salauzt (-žu, -zu) (trans.) *to break*
 saldējums *ice-cream*
 saldēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to freeze*
 saldētājs *refrigerator*
 saldšs *sweet*
 saldserīgs *bitter-sweet*
 saldums *sweetness*
 salēkties (-lecos, -lēcos) *to rear up*
 salīdzināt (-u, -āju) *to compare*

salīgt (-gstu, -gu) (trans. or intrans.) *to sign on; to hire, engage*
 salīkt (-kstu, -ku) (intrans.) *to bend*
 salinieks *islander*
 salīt (-līst, -lija) *to be drenched, soaked*
 salkt (-kstu, -ku) *to hunger [for], long [for]*
 salna [*hoar-*] *frost*
 sals *frost*
 sāls (f.) *salt; sāls ūdens salt water*
 salt (-lstu, -lu) *to get cold; ārā (stipri) salst it is [very] cold outside; man salst I am cold; man salst kājas my feet are cold*
 salts (adj.) *cold, chill*
 salūgt (-dzu, -dzu) *to invite*
 salūzt (-st, -za) (intrans.) *to break, to fall to pieces*
 salīmt (-mstu, -mu) *to collapse [of animates]*
 sāļš *salty, brackish*
 samaksāt (-āju, -āju) *to pay*
 samalt (-maļu, -maļu) *to grind*
 sameklēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to look for, to seek; to find [after searching]*
 samest (-tu, -tu) *to throw together*
 samiegoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to become sleepy, drowsy*
 samierināt (-u, -āju) *to pacify; to reconcile*
 samirkt (-kstu, -ku) *to be soaked*
 samīt (-minu, -minu) *to trample down, crush underfoot*
 samts *velvet*
 samulst (-stu, -su) *to become confused*
 sanaglot (-oju, -oju) *to nail [together]*
 sanākt (-ku, -cu) *to come together*
 sānceļš *side road*

sanēt (-, -ēja) (intrans.) *to buzz, to hum*
 sāni (pl.) *side; sānu ceļš side road*
 santīms *centime*
 saņemt (-ņemu, -ņēmu) *to receive; saņemt dūšu to summon one's courage*
 saņemties (-ņemos, -ņēmos) *to gather one's composure, to summon one's courage*
 saost (-žu, -du) *to smell, scent*
 sāpes (pl.) *pain*
 sāpēt (-, -ēja) (intrans.) *to hurt, to be painful*
 sāpīgs *painful, distressing*
 sapīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to get annoyed, morose, peeved*
 sāpināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to hurt*
 sapīt (-pinu, -pinu) *to plait together*
 saplakt (-plokū, -plaku) *to diminish, decrease; (in text 224a) to lose courage*
 saplēst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to tear apart, smash up*
 saplēsties (-šos, -sos) *to quarrel, break off relations, to fall out [with]*
 saplīst (-st, -sa) (intrans.) *to tear, shatter*
 saplosīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to tear apart*
 saplūst (-stu, -du) *to flow together, to crowd together*
 sapnis *dream*
 sapņains *dreamy, dreamlike*
 sapņojums *dream, dreaming*
 sapņot (-oju, -oju) *to dream*
 saposties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to prepare*
 saprast (-protu, -pratu) *to understand*
 saprasties (-protos, -pratos) *to understand one another, to agree*
 sapūt (-pūstu, -pūvu) *to rot, putrefy*

- sarakstīties (-os, -ījos) *to write to one another, to correspond*
 saraksts: vilcienu saraksts *train time-table*
 saraust (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to accumulate, amass*
 sarauties (-raujos, -rāvjos) *to start, shudder*
 saredzēt (-u, -ēju) *to distinguish, to make out*
 sarežģīt (-īju, -īju) *to complicate*
 sargāt (-āju, -āju) or (-u, -āju) *to guard*
 sargāties (-ājos, -ājos) or (-os, -ājos) *to take care of oneself, to beware [of]*
 sargs *guard, watchman*
 sarīkot (-oju, -oju) *to arrange*
 sarkans *red*
 sarkt (-kstu, -ku) *to redden; to blush*
 sārtinsārts *exceedingly rosy*
 sārts *pyre, stake; bonfire; uz sārta at the stake*
 sārts *rosy, pink; red-faced*
 sarūgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to ferment, turn sour*
 sarukt (-rūku, -ruku) (intrans.) *to shrink, diminish, shrivel up*
 saruna *conversation*
 sarunāties (-ājos, -ājos) *to converse*
 sasalt (-lstu, -lu) (intrans.) *to freeze*
 sasaukt (-cu, -cu) *to call together*
 sasēdēt (-žu, -dēju) (trans.) *to crumple [by sitting on]*
 sasiet (-sienu, -sēju) *to bind together, bind up*
 sasildīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to warm*
 sasildīties (-os, -ījos) *to warm oneself, to grow warm*
 sasilt (-lstu, -lu) *to grow warm*
 sasist (-tu, -tu) *to strike together*
 saskābt (-bstu, -bu) (intrans.) *to turn sour*
 saskaitīt (-u, -īju) *to count [up]*
 saskaņa *concord, agreement, harmony*
 saskriet (-skrienu, -skrēju) *to run together*
 saslapināt (-u, -āju) *to wet*
 saslimt (-mstu, -mu) *to fall sick, become ill*
 sasniegt (-dzu, -dzu) *to achieve; to reach, attain*
 sasniegums *achievement*
 saspīest (-žu, -du) (trans.) *to squeeze together, squash*
 sasprāgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to crack, burst*
 sastapt (-stopu, -stapu) (trans.) *to meet*
 sastapties (-stopos, -stapos) *to come across, to meet [with]*
 sastingt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to go numb, stiffen*
 sastingums *numbness, stiffness; tension*
 sastrādāt (-āju, -āju) *to work; sastrādātas rokas rough, calloused hands*
 sasukāt (-āju, -āju) *to brush, to comb*
 sasveicināties (-os, -ājos) *to greet one another*
 sašķīst (-st, -da) *to fall to pieces*
 sašust (-šūtu, -šutu) *to get angry, to be upset*
 sašūt (-šuju, -šuvu) *to sew together*
 sataisīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to prepare*
 sataisīties (-os, -ījos) (in text 221b) *to disguise oneself*
 satikt (-tiek, -tiku) (trans.) *to meet*
 satīt (-tinu, -tinu) *to wind; to wrap up*
 satracināt (-u, -āju) *to madden, anger*

- satraukt (-cu, -cu) *to arouse, excite; to startle*
 satrūkties (-kstos, -kos) *to take fright, to start*
 satumst (-st, -sa) *to grow dark*
 saturēt (-u, -ēju) *to hold fast; to contain*
 satvert (-tveru, -tvēru) *to grasp, seize*
 sauciens *call, shout*
 saukt (-cu, -cu) *to call; kā tevi sauc? what's your name?; saukt palīgā to call for help*
 saukties (-cos, -cos) *to be called, named*
 saulainība *suniness*
 saulains *sunny*
 saule *sun; saules lēkts sunrise; ar saules lēktu at sunrise; saules riets sunset*
 saulessargs *parasol*
 saulgozis *bright sunshine*
 sauss *dry*
 savāds *strange, peculiar (in text 223b) particular, special*
 savalkāt (-āju, -āju) *to dirty [by wearing]*
 savējs *one's own*
 savērpt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to spin*
 savienot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to unite, combine*
 savienoties (-ojos, -ojos) *to be united*
 savilkēt (-velku, -vilku) (trans.) *to contract, tighten*
 savilkēties (-velkas, -vilkās) *to shrivel up*
 saviļāt (-āju, -āju) *to roll*
 savīt (-viju, -viju) *to twist together*
 savkārt *for one's own part*
 savs *one's own*
 savukārt *for one's own part*
 sazāgēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to saw up, saw through*
 sazvanīt (-u, -īju) *to call together [by ringing bells, etc.]*
 sažņaupt (-dzu, -dzu) *to squeeze*
 sažūt (-žūstu, -žuvu) *to become dry, dry out*
 secināt (-u, -āju) *to deduce*
 sēdekļis *seat*
 sēdēt (-žu, -dēju) *to be seated; to cool one's heels in gaol*
 sega *blanket; (in text 226a) carpet*
 seglot (-oju, -oju) *to saddle*
 segt (-dzu, -dzu) *to cover*
 segums *covering*
 seja *face*
 sēkla *seed*
 sekls *shallow*
 sekmes (pl.) *success, progress*
 sekot (-oju, -oju) (+ dat.) *to follow*
 sekretārs *secretary*
 sēks *green-feed*
 sekste *comb (zool.)*
 sekunde *second*
 selerija *celery*
 sen *a long time ago; for a long time; jau sen ages ago; necik sen not so long ago*
 senatne *antiquity, times of old*
 sēne *mushroom; fungus*
 sens *ancient*
 sensens *ancient*
 septembris *September*
 septiņdesmit *seventy*
 septiņdesmitais *seventieth*
 septiņēji *seven*
 septiņi *seven*
 septiņpadsmit *seventeen*
 septiņpadsmitais *seventeenth*
 septiņsimt *seven hundred*
 septiņsimtais *seven hundredth*

septītais *seventh*
 sēras (pl.) *mourning; sēru vītols*
weeping willow
 sērdienis, (f.) -e *orphan*
 sērga *plague, pestilence*
 sērīgs *sad, melancholy*
 sērkociņš *match*
 sērmūksis *mountain-ash*
 sērot (-oju, -oju) *to mourn, grieve*
 sērs *sulphur*
 sērs *mournful, sad*
 sērst (-šu, -su) *to be on a visit, to be*
staying [with, at]
 sestais *sixth*
 sestdaļa *a sixth*
 sestdien *on Saturday*
 sestdiena *Saturday*
 sēsties (-žos, -dos) *to sit [down]*
 sešatā *in a group of six*
 sešdesmit *sixty*
 sešdesmitais *sixtieth*
 sešēji *six*
 seši *six*
 sešpadsmit *sixteen*
 sešpadsmitais *sixteenth*
 sešsimt *six hundred*
 sešsimtais *six hundredth*
 sēt (-ju, -ju) *to sow*
 sēta *yard; fence*
 sētnieks *caretaker*
 sētvidus *courtyard*
 sev, sevi, sevī, sevis (refl. pron.): see
 lesson 15
 sevišķs *special*
 siamietis, (f.) -e *a Siamese, a Thai*
 sīcin cog. adv. *to siks*
 Sidneja *Sydney*
 sidrabs *see sudrabs*
 siena *wall*
 sienāzis *grasshopper*
 siens *hay; siena kaudze haystack*
 siers *cheese*

siet (sienu, sēju) *to bind [up]*
 sieva *wife*
 sieviete *woman; sieviešu kārtā*
 (gram.) *feminine gender*
 sievišķīgs *feminine*
 signāls *signal*
 sīknauda *small change*
 sīks *tiny*
 sīkstis *tough, miserly*
 sīkt (-cu, -cu) *to buzz, hum*
 sīktirgotājs *retailer*
 sīkums *trifle*
 sildīt (-u, -iju) *to warm, heat*
 sildīties (-os, -ijos) *to warm oneself,*
to grow warm
 sīlis [*European*] *jay*
 sils [*coniferous*] *forest*
 silt (-listu, -lu) *to grow warm*
 silts *warm*
 siltumnīca *hot-house, greenhouse*
 siltums *warmth*
 simbols *symbol*
 simpatija *liking; sympathy*
 simt *a hundred*
 simtais *hundredth*
 simtenis: gadu simtenis *century*
 simtgadu (invar. adj.) *centuries old*
 simtkāršs *a hundredfold*
 simtkārt *a hundred times*
 simts *a hundred; simtiem putnu etc.*
birds etc. by the hundred
 singulārs (adj.) *singular*
 sīpols *onion*
 sirdēsti (pl.) *heart-break, grief*
 sirds (f.) *heart*
 sirdsapziņa *conscience*
 sirēna, sirēne *siren, seductive water-*
nymph
 sirgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to be*
indisposed, to ail
 sirms *grey [of hair]; old*
 sirpis *sickle*

sirps *see sirpis*
 sirsnīgs *warm-hearted, affectionate,*
sincere
 sist (-tu, -tu) *to strike, hit*
 sisties (-tos, -tos) *to strike*
 sistin cog. adv. *to sist*
 sitiens *blow*
 situācija *situation*
 sīvs *harsh, bitter, biting*
 skābs *sour; skābi kāposti (pl.)*
sauerkraut
 skābt (-bst, -ba) *to turn sour*
 skaidriība *clarity, purity*
 skaidrot (-oju, -oju) *to explain*
 skaidrs *clear; skaidra nauda cash;*
skaidrā naudā in cash; skaidrā
prātā sober
 skaistin cog. adv. *to skaists*
 skaists *beautiful*
 skaistums *beauty*
 skaitīt (-u, -iju) (trans.) *to count*
 skaitīties (-os, -ijos) *to be reputed,*
considered
 skaitlis *figure, number; skaitļa vārds*
numeral
 skaits *number*
 skalot (-oju, -oju) *to rinse, wash*
 skaļš *loud*
 skaļums *loudness*
 skanēt (-, -ēja) *to sound*
 skanīgs *sonorous, resounding*
 skaņa *sound; skaņu plate*
 [gramophone] *record*
 skaņradis *composer*
 skaņš *loud, sonorous*
 skāņš *sourish, tart*
 skapis *cupboard; ledus skapis*
refrigerator, ice-chest; naudas
skapis safe
 skarbs *harsh, abrupt*
 skārds *sheet-metal; tin[plate]*
 skart (-skarū, -skāru) *to touch*

skat! (interj.) *look!*
 skatiens *look, glance*
 skatīt (-u, -iju) *to look*
 skatīties (-os, -ijos) *to look [at]*
 skatlogs *display-window, shop-*
window
 skats *sight, scene, view; glance, look*
 skatuve *stage*
 skaudība *envy*
 skaudrs *sharp, biting; piercing*
 [sound, etc.]
 skaut (-žu, -du) *to envy*
 skaut (-auju, -āvu) *to hug, embrace*
 skeptisks *sceptical*
 skola *school*
 skolnieks *school-boy*
 skolotājs *school-teacher*
 skops *mean, stingy*
 skopulība *niggardliness*
 skopulis *miser, niggard*
 skosta, skoste *horse-tail, mare's-tail*
 (bot.)
 skotele *large, heavy apron*
 Skotija *Scotland*
 skots, (f.) -iete *a Scot; skotu (invar.*
adj.) Scottish
 skraidīt (-u, -iju) *to run about*
 skranda *rag, tatter*
 skrēdāt (-ā, -āja) *to crackle*
 skrējējs *runner*
 skrējiens *run, race*
 skriešus cog. adv. *to skriet*
 skriet (-skrienu, skrēju) *to run;*
skriet cik vien jauda to run for
all one is worth
 skudra *ant*
 skuja *pine-needle, fir-needle;*
 skuju koks *coniferous tree*
 skumdināties (-os, -ājos) *to be sad*
 skumjas (pl.) *sorrow*
 skumt (-mstu, -mu) *to grieve,*
sorrow

skūpstīt (-u, -īju) *to kiss*
 skūpstīties (-os, -ījos) *to kiss one another*
 skurbt (-bstu, -bu) *to become dizzy, intoxicated*
 skurināties (-os, -ājos) *to shudder, shiver*
 skurstenis *chimney*
 skūt (skuju, skuvu) *to shave*
 slābans *slack, flaccid; very tired [of limbs]*
 slaidis *slender, slim*
 slaiks *slender, slim*
 slāpes (pl.) *thirst*
 slāpēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to choke, stifle*
 slapināt (-u, -āju) *to wet*
 slapjš *wet*
 slāpt (-pstu, -pu) *to thirst; man slāpst I am thirsty*
 slaucīt (-ku, -cīju) *to wipe, sweep*
 slaucīties (-kos, -cījos) *to wipe oneself*
 slaukt (-cu, -cu) *to milk*
 slava *glory, fame*
 slavens *famous*
 slavēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to praise*
 slēdze *lock*
 slēdziens *conclusion*
 slēgt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to lock; to close*
 slēģis *shutter*
 slepens *secret, stealthy*
 slēpt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to hide, conceal*
 slēpties (-pjos, -pos) (intrans.) *to hide; (in text 236a) to be secretive*
 slēptuve *hiding-place*
 slidens *slippery*
 slīdēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to slide, slip*
 sliexnis, sliexnis *door-step, threshold*

slīet (slienu, slēju) (trans.) *to prop, lean [against]*
 slīeties (slienos, slējos) (in text 224a) *to stand up, rise*
 slīgt (-gstu, -gu) (intrans.) *to sink*
 slīkt (-kstu, -ku) (intrans.) *to drown*
 slikti *badly*
 sliktis *bad*
 slimība *illness, disease; gara slimība mental illness*
 slimnīca *hospital*
 slimnieks *patient*
 slims *ill*
 slinks *lazy*
 slinkums *laziness*
 sliņķis, (f.) -e *loafer, lazy person*
 slīps *slanting, oblique*
 slogs *load, burden*
 sludinājums *advertisement*
 sludināt (-u, -āju) *to advertise*
 smacēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to choke, suffocate*
 smadzenes (pl.) *brain*
 smags *heavy; smagā mašīna truck*
 smagums *weight*
 smaidīt (-u, -īju) *to smile*
 smaids *smile*
 smails *pointed, sharp*
 smaka [*unpleasant*] *odour, smell*
 smakt (smoku, smaku) (intrans.) *to suffocate, choke; to languish*
 smalks *fine; elegant*
 smaršot (-oju, -oju) *see smaržot*
 smarža *odour, scent, smell; smaržas (pl.) perfume*
 smaržīgs *fragrant*
 smaržot (-oju, -oju) *to smell sweet*
 smējējās (refl.) *one who laughs (f.)*
 smējējies (refl.) *one who laughs (m.)*
 smēķēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to smoke*
 smelt (smeļu, smēlu) *to scoop, ladle*

smelties (smeļos, smēlos) *to draw from*
 smiekli (pl.) *laughter; man nāk/nāca smieklī I have/had to laugh;*
 smiekla (invar. adj.) *derisory, ridiculous, laughable*
 smieklīgs *ridiculous*
 smiet (smeju, smēju) *to laugh*
 smieties (smejās, smējās) *to laugh*
 smilga *hair-grass*
 smilgains *grassy, covered in hair-grass*
 smilšains *sandy*
 smiltājs *sandy ground; guldīt smiltājā to bury*
 smiltis (pl.) *sand; smilšu kalns sand-hill*
 smirdēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to smell, stink*
 smudrs *pliant, flexible, supple*
 snaudīens *snooze, nap*
 snaust (-žu, -du) *to slumber, snooze*
 sniedze *snow-bunting*
 sniegputenis *blizzard*
 sniegs *snow; sniega vīrs snow-man*
 sniegt (-dzu, -dzu) (trans.) *to hand [to], pass [to]; to reach; cik tālu acis sniedz as far as the eye can see*
 sniegties (-dzas, -dzās) (intrans.) *to extend*
 snigt (snieg, snīga) *to snow*
 snukis [*elephant's*] *trunk*
 sodīt (-u, -īju) *to punish*
 sodīties (-os, -ījos) *to grumble*
 sods *punishment; cietuma sods prison sentence; naudas sods fine; nāves sods death penalty*
 soģis *judge, magistrate; executioner (rare)*
 solljums *promise*
 solis *step; soli pa solim step by step; solīti pa solītim step by step*
 solīt (-u, -īju) *to promise*
 solītais *that which is promised*
 solīties (-os, -ījos) *to give one's word, promise*
 solo (m. indec.) *solo*
 sols *bench; moku sols rack*
 soļot (-oju, -oju) *to walk, march*
 soma *handbag, satchel; ceļa soma travelling-bag, case; rokas soma hand-bag*
 Somija *Finland*
 somiski (adv.) *Finnish*
 soms, (f.) -iete *a Finn; somu (invar. adj.) Finnish*
 spainis *bucket*
 spalgs *shrill, harsh*
 spalva *feather; pen; [animal's] coat, fur*
 spānietis, (f.) -e *a Spaniard;*
 spāniešu (invar. adj.) *Spanish*
 Spānija *Spain*
 spāniski (adv.) *Spanish*
 spāņu (invar. adj.) *Spanish*
 spārnots *winged*
 spārns *wing*
 spars *energy, force, strength*
 spēcīgs *powerful*
 spējīgs *capable, able*
 spēks *power, strength; darba spēks work force; mācības spēks member of [teaching] staff*
 spēkstacija *power-station*
 spēle *game; vārdu spēle play on words; uz spēles at stake*
 spēlēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) *to play; spēlēt komēdiju to put on an act*
 spēlēties (-ējos, -ējos) (intrans.) *to play; to play games*
 spēlīte (in text 212b) *toy*
 spēriens *kick; [thunder] clap*

spert (speru, spēru) *to kick, tread*;
 spert kāju *to set foot*
 spēt (-ju, -ju) *to be able, to manage*
 spičķa *match*
 spīdeklis *shining object*
 spīdēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to shine*
 spiediēns *squeeze; pressure*
 spiegot (-oju, -oju) *to spy*
 spiekis *stick*
 spiest (-žu, -du) *to press, squeeze; to be painful*; spiest roku (+ dat.) *to shake hands with*; man spiež krūtīs *I have a pain in my chest*
 spiestuve *printing-house*
 spīgot (-o, -oja) (intrans.) *to shine, gleam, glow*
 spilgts *bright, glaring*
 spilvens *pillow*
 spindzēt (-, -ēja) *to buzz, hum, whir*
 spirgts *lively, sprightly*; spirgts un vesēls *hale and hearty, safe and sound*
 spītīgs *obstinate; spiteful*
 spīvs *scornful, spiteful, severe, defiant*
 splaut (-auju, -āvu) *to spit*
 spodriķa *brightness, lustre*
 spodrināt (-u, -āju) *to polish*
 spodrs *bright, shiny*
 spogulis *mirror*
 sports *sport*; sporta laukums *sports ground*
 spožs *shiny, bright*
 spožums *shine, splendour, lustre*
 sprādziēns *explosion*
 sprāgt (-gst, -ga) (intrans.) *to crack, burst*
 spraigs *tense; intensive*
 sprakšķēt (-, -ēja) *to crackle*
 sprauga *gap, break, open space*
 sprauslas (pl.) *nostrils*
 sprauslāt (-āju, -āju) *to sniff, snort*

spraust (-žu, -du) *to fasten, pin, stick, fix; to set, determine*; spraust (sev) mērķi *to set [oneself] a goal*
 sprediķis *sermon*
 sprediķot (-oju, -oju) *to preach*
 sprēgāt (-ā, -āja) *to crackle*
 sprīdis *a span of time or distance*
 spriest (-žu, -du) *to judge*
 sprukt (sprūku, spruku) *to get free*
 spuldze *electric light globe*
 spulgot (-o, -oja) *to shine, glitter*
 spulgs *bright, brilliant, shining, sparkling*
 stabs *post, pillar, column*; kauna stabs *pillory*
 stabule *shepherd's flute, pipe*
 stacija *station*; stacijas priekšnieks *station-master*
 stādīt (-u, -īju) *to plant; to place*
 stāds *plant*
 staigāt (-āju, -āju) *to walk*; staigāt pa (+ acc.) *to walk along*
 staigns *swampy*
 staipt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to stretch [repeatedly]*
 stalts *stately*; [of people] *well-built*
 starot (-oju, -oju) *to radiate, shine*
 starp (prep. + acc.) *between, among*
 starpā (postp. + gen.) *between*
 starpbrīdis *interval, intermission*
 starptautisks *international*
 stars *ray*
 stāstīt (-u, -īju) *to recount, to tell*
 stāsts *story*
 stāt (-ju, -ju) *to stand*
 stāties (-jos, -jos) *to put oneself; to cease; to stand*
 stāvēt (-u, -ēju) *to stand*
 stāvoklis *condition, circumstance; standing*; gara stāvoklis *mood*
 stāvs *storey*
 stāvs *figure, stature, form*

stāvs *steep*
 stāvu (adv.) *upright*
 steidzams *urgent*
 steidzīgs (adj.) *hurrying, in a hurry*
 steidzināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to hurry up, urge on*
 steiga *haste*
 steigšus cog. adv. *to steigt*
 steigt (-dzu, -dzu) *to hurry, hasten*
 steigties (-dzos, -dzos) *to make haste*
 steigtin cog. adv. *to steigt*
 stendere *door-post*
 stepe *steppe*
 sterils *sterile, barren, unproductive*
 stiegnājs *swamp*
 stiept (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to pull, drag, stretch*
 stiepties (-pjos, -pos) (intrans.) *to stretch, extend*
 stīgot (-o, -oja) (in text 221c) *to radiate*
 stigt (stiegu, stigu) (intrans.) *to sink in*
 stiklinieks *glazier*
 stikls *glass; lens*; logu stikls *window-pane*
 stils *style*
 stingrs *strong, strict, tight*
 stingt (-gstu, -gu) *to go numb, stiffen*
 stiprināt (-u, -āju) *to strengthen*
 stiprinieks *strong man*
 stiprs *strong*
 stiprums *strength*
 stirna *doe*
 stīvs *stiff; formal*
 strādāt (-āju, -āju) *to work*; strādāt par (+ acc.) *to work as a...;* strādāt darbu *to work at a job*
 strādīgs *hard-working*
 strādīnāt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to make [some one] work*

strādnieks *labourer, worker*
 straujš *hasty, rash; swift [of river, etc.]*
 straume *stream, current*; peldēt straumei līdz *to follow the crowd*
 strauts *brook, stream*
 strāva [electrical, etc.] *current*
 strazds *starling*; melnais strazds *blackbird*
 strēbt (strebju, strēbu) *to drink [soup, etc., often noisily]*
 strūklaka *fountain*
 strups *short, abrupt*
 students, (f.) -e *student*
 studēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to study [at university]*
 studija *study*; studiju dēlītis *drawing-board*
 stulbs *dull, obtuse*
 stumbrs [tree] *trunk*
 stumburs *see stumbrs*
 stumt (stumju, stūmu) (trans.) *to push*
 stunda *hour; lesson*; stundām *for hours*; darba stundas *working hours*
 stūrgalvīgs *stubborn, wilful, headstrong*
 stūris *corner*; aiz stūra *around the corner*
 stūrmanis *helmsman, mate*
 sudrabains *silvery*
 sudrabs *silver*; sudraba kāzas (pl.) *silver wedding anniversary*
 sūdzība *complaint, accusation*
 suga *breed, species*
 sukāt (-āju, -āju) *to brush, comb*
 sūkt (-cu, -cu) *to suck, sip*
 sūkties (-cas, -cās) *to trickle, leak*
 sula *juice, sap*
 sulainis *servant, footman*
 sulīgs *juicy, succulent*

sūnains *mossy*
 sūnas (pl.) *moss*
 suns (irreg. dec.: see lesson 70) *dog*
 sūrot (-oju, -oju) *to sigh, moan, complain*
 sūroties (-ojos, -ojos) *to sigh, moan, complain*
 sūrs *bitter*
 sūrumš *bitterness [of taste]*
 suta *vapour, steam*
 sutīgs *sultry*
 sūtīt (-u, -īju) *to send*
 svabads *free, unrestrained, loose*
 svaīdīt (-u, -īju) *to anoint*
 svaīdīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.) *to toss about*
 svaīgs *fresh*
 svarīgs *important*
 svarīgums *importance*
 svārki (pl.) *coat; skirt*
 svars *weight; importance; no svara of importance; svāri (pl.) scales*
 svece *candle, taper*
 sveiciens *greeting(s)*
 sveicināt (-u, -āju) *to greet*
 sveiks, sveiki *hullo; good-bye*
 sveiks *safe, sound, healthy*
 svērt (sveru, svēru) *to weigh*
 svešinieks, svešnieks *stranger*
 svešs *foreign; strange, unfamiliar; belonging to somebody else*
 svešums *foreign land, foreign surroundings*
 svētdien *on Sunday*
 svētdiena *Sunday*
 svētība *blessing*
 svētīt (-īju, -īju) *to bless*
 svētki (pl.) *feast-day; festival; valsts svētki national holiday; Vasaras svētki Whitsun*
 svēts *holy, sacred, saintly*
 sviediens *throw*

sviedri (pl.) *perspiration, sweat*
 sviest (-žu, -du) *to throw, fling*
 sviests *butter*
 svilpe *whistle*
 svilpiens *whistle*
 svilpot (-oju, -oju) *to whistle*
 svilpt (-pju, -pu) *to whistle, give a whistle*
 svīlt (-lstu, -lu) *to get scorched, burnt*
 svinēt (-u, -ēju) *to celebrate*
 svinības (pl.) *celebration*
 svinīgs *solemn*
 svīst (-stu, -du) *to perspire*
 šad: šad un tad *now and then*
 šādi (adv.) *thus*
 šāds *such, of this kind; šādi tādi (pron.) the plebs; (adj.) any old sort of*
 šaipus (prep. + gen.) *on this side of*
 šalka, šalkas (pl.) *rustle, murmur*
 šalkt (-c, -ca) *to rustle [in the wind]*
 šampanietis *champagne*
 šaubas (pl.) *doubt*
 šaubīgs *doubtful; ill-reputed, suspicious*
 šaubīties (-os, -ījos) *to doubt*
 šaudīties (-os, -ījos) *to dart, to flash*
 šaurs *narrow; [of clothing] tight*
 šausmas (pl.) *horror, terror*
 šausmīgs *horrible, dreadful*
 šaut (-auju, -āvu) *to fire, to shoot*
 šautene *rifle*
 šautīt (-u, -īju) *to whip; (in text 216a) to ravage*
 šautuve *shooting gallery, rifle range*
 šāviens *shot; round [of ammunition]*
 še *here*
 šeit *here*
 šeitān *here*

*šejiene *here*
 šis, (f.) šī *this; šinīs laikos, šais laikos, šajos laikos nowadays*
 šitā (adv.) *thus*
 šitais, (f.) šitā *this*
 šķēle *slice*
 šķelt (šķeļu, šķēlu) (trans.) *to split, cleave*
 šķelties (šķeļas, šķēlās) (intrans.) *to break up, split*
 šķēpnesis *sword-bearer*
 šķēps *spear, lance; (occ.) sword*
 šķēres (pl.) *scissors*
 šķērslis *obstacle, hindrance*
 šķērsot (-oju, -oju) *to cross*
 šķērst (-žu, -du) *to cut open, dissect*
 šķībs *slanting, oblique, crooked*
 šķidrauts *veil*
 šķidrš *runny, liquid*
 šķiest (-žu, -du) *to squander, waste*
 šķila *log; splinter*
 šķilt (šķīlu, šķīlu) *to strike [fire]*
 šķindēt (-, -ēja) (intrans.) *to tinkle, jingle*
 šķirsts *chest, box; coffin*
 šķirt (šķīru, šķīru) (trans.) *to separate, divide; to dissolve [marriage]*
 šķirties (šķīros, šķīros) (intrans.) *to separate*
 šķist (šķietu, šķītu) *to seem*
 šķīst (-stu, -du) (intrans.) *to fall to pieces; to dissolve*
 šķīsts *clean, pure, chaste*
 šķīt (-inu, -inu) *to pluck off*
 šķitums *appearance*
 šķīvis *plate*
 šļākt (-c, -ca) *to splash, spout*
 šļuks! (interj.) *oops!*
 šļukt (šļūku, šļuku) (intrans.) *to slip, glide, slide*
 šmaukt (-cu, -cu) *to cheat, deceive; to slip away*
 šnabis *any clear spirit, (often) vodka*
 šņāciens *hiss*
 šņākt (-cu, -cu) *to hiss; [of sea, wind] to roar*
 šodien *today*
 šoferis *driver*
 šogad *this year*
 šonakt *tonight*
 šonedēļ *this week*
 šopavasār *this spring*
 šoreiz *this time*
 šorīt *this morning*
 šoruden *this autumn*
 šovakar *this evening*
 šovasar *this summer*
 šoziem *this winter*
 šujammašīna *see šujmašīna*
 šujmašīna *sewing-machine*
 šūpalas (pl.) *see šūpoles*
 šūpojiens *swaying, rocking*
 šūpoles (pl.) *swing*
 šūpot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to swing, rock*
 šūpoties (-ojos, -ojos) (intrans.) *to swing, rock*
 šūpulis *cradle*
 šur: šur (un) tur *here and there*
 šurp(u) *hither*
 šūt (šuju, šuvu) *to sew; to make [dress, etc.]*
 šuvēja *seamstress, dress-maker*
 šuveklis *sewing, needlework*
 Šveice *Switzerland; Šveices (invar. adj.) Swiss*
 šveicietis, (f.) -e *a Swiss*
 švirkstēt (-, -ēja) *to sizzle*
 tā (adv.) *thus; ak tā! is that so!; tā kā just as; since, because*
 tacis *fish-garh*

- taču *indeed*
 tad *then; šad un tad now and then*
 tādēļ *therefore; tādēļ ka because*
 tāds *such, of that kind; šādi tādi*
 (pron.) *the plebs; (adj.) any old*
sort of
 tāfele *blackboard*
 tagad *now*
 tagadējs (adj.) *present*
 tagadne *the present; (gram.) the*
present tense
 taisīt (-u, -īju) *to prepare, make*
 taisīties (-os, -ījos) (intrans.) *to get*
ready, prepare; to intend
 taisni (in text 223a) *precisely*
 taisnība *justice, truth; man ir*
 taisnība *I am right; man nav*
 taisnības *I am wrong*
 taisns *straight; just*
 tak *indeed*
 taka *path*
 taksometrs *taxi*
 tālab *therefore*
 Tālava *a place name, Tālava*
 tāle *distance*
 tāli *see tālu*
 *tāliene *afar*
 tālin cog. adv. *to tāls*
 tālredzīgs *far-sighted*
 tālrunis *telephone; pa tālruni by*
telephone, over the phone
 tāls *distant; Tālie austrumi the*
Far East
 tālskatis *telescope*
 tālu (adv.) *far; cik tālu acis sniedz*
as far as the eye can see
 tālums *distance*
 tāļš *see tāls*
 tamlīdzīgs *similar*
 tango (m. indec.) *tango*
 tāpat *thus; similarly; (in text 217a)*
in any case; tāpat kā just as, just like

- tāpatība *identity; (in text 242a)*
union, fusion
 tāpēc *therefore; tāpēc ka because*
 tapt (topu, tapu) *to become; to take*
shape; lai top! let it be so!
 Targals *Targals*
 tārps *worm; gnawing problem*
 tas, (f.) tā *that; ar to thereby; bez*
 tam *furthermore, anyway; pēc tam*
afterwards; tanīs laikos, tais laikos,
 tajos laikos *in those days*
 tase *cup*
 taujāt (-āju, -āju) *to enquire*
 tauki (pl.) *fat, tallow*
 taure *trumpet, horn, bugle*
 taurētājs *trumpeter, bugler*
 tauriņš *butterfly; nakts tauriņš*
moth
 taustīt (-u, -īju) *to touch, feel*
 tauta *the Folk, nation; tautas deja*
folk-dance; tautas dēls [in folk-
songs] young man; tautas dziesma
folk-song
 tautība *nationality*
 tautietis *countryman; [in folk-songs]*
 (often) *man*
 tautisks *national*
 tavējs *yours*
 tavs *your*
 te *here*
 teātris *theatre; kino teātris cinema*
 tecēt (teku, tecēju) *to flow, to leak;*
to run
 tehnisks *technical*
 tecila *grindstone, whetstone*
 tecin cog. adv. *to tecēt*
 teicams *praiseworthy, commendable*
 teika *[legendary] tale*
 teiksmains *legendary, mythical*
 teikt (-cu, -cu) *to say, tell; to praise;*
 teikt runu *to make a speech*
 teikums *sentence, clause*

- tēja *tea*
 teka *path, track*
 tekāt (-āju, -āju) *to run to and fro*
 telegramma *telegram*
 televīzija: televīzijas aparāts
television set
 tēlniecība *sculpture*
 tēlnieks *sculptor*
 tēlot (-oju, -oju) *to portray; to*
describe; to pretend
 telpa *space, room*
 tēls *image, figure, form, shape*
 teļš *calf*
 temperatūra *temperature*
 teorētisks *theoretical*
 tepat *here*
 tērauds *steel*
 termometrs *thermometer*
 tērps *dress, attire*
 tērpt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to clothe,*
attire
 tērpties (-pjos, -pos) *to clothe*
oneself, to be clad
 tēst (tešu, tēsu) *to cut square, to trim*
 tēvs *father; tēvu zeme fatherland,*
homeland
 ticēt (-u, -ēju) (+ dat.) *to believe*
 ticība *faith, religion, belief*
 tiesa *court; vai tas tiesa? is that*
true?
 tiesāt (-āju, -āju) *to try, to judge*
 tiesība *right; tiesības (pl.) right,*
rights
 tiesisks *lawful, legal*
 tiesnesis *judge, magistrate*
 tiešām *really, indeed*
 tieši *precisely, exactly*
 tiešs *direct*
 tievs *thin, lean*
 tik *so (+ adj., adv.); tik daudz*
 (+ gen.) *so much, so many*
 tik *only; tik... vien only*

- tikai *only*
 tikko (adv.) *just now; almost;*
scarcely, hardly; (conj.) as soon
as; tik tikko (adv.) hardly,
scarcely; almost
 tiklab... kā (arī) *not only... but*
 [also]
 tiklīdz *as soon as*
 tīkls *net; web*
 tikpat kā *just as*
 tīksme *delight, pleasure*
 tikt (tieku, tiku) (intrans.) *to get;*
 tikt galā ar (+ acc.) *to cope with*
 tikt (tīku, tiku) (+ dat.) *to please*
 tikties (tiekos, tikos) *to meet*
 tiktin cog. adv. *to tikt (tīku, tiku)*
 tikumīgs *virtuous*
 tikums *virtue*
 tilts *bridge*
 tīmeklis *spider's web; climbing*
plant, creeper
 tinte *ink*
 tipisks *typical*
 tirdīt (-u, -īju) (in text 242a) *to*
harass
 tirdzniecība *trade, commerce;*
 tirdzniecības flote *Merchant Navy*
 tirgotājs *merchant, shop-keeper; lopu*
 tirgotājs *cattle-dealer*
 tirgus *market; gada tirgus annual*
market, fair; tirgus laukums
market square, market place
 tīri (adv.) *very, quite*
 tīrīt (-u, -īju) *to clean*
 tīrpt (-pstu, -pu) *to become numb*
 tīrs *clean; pure*
 tīrums *field*
 tīšām, tīši *on purpose*
 tīt (tinu, tinu) *to wind; to roll*
 [cigarette]
 tītars *turkey*
 tizls *lame; maimed, paralyzed*

todien *on that day*
 tomāts *tomato*
 tomēr *however, still, for all that*
 tonna *ton*
 toreiz *that time, on that occasion*
 tornis *tower; steeple*
 torte [*layer*] *cake, tart*
 totāls (adj.) *total*
 toveris *tub*
 tracināt (-u, -āju) *to madden, anger*
 traipīt (-u, -īju) *to spot, to stain*
 trakot (-oju, -oju) *to go berserk; to rage, to rave*
 traks *mad*
 trakums *madness*
 tramīgs *fearful, excitable*
 tramvajs *tram, tramway*
 traucēklis *hindrance, obstacle*
 traucēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to hinder, disturb, bother*
 trauks *dish, vessel; pelnu trauks ash-tray; trauki (pl.) crockery*
 trauksmais *impetuous, turbulent*
 traukt (-cu, -cu) *to hasten*
 traukties (-cos, -cos) *to hasten*
 trausls *brittle, fragile*
 trejāds *of three kinds*
 treji *three*
 trekns *fat; thick, lush*
 trenkt (-cu, -cu) *to chase, pursue*
 trepes (pl.) *stairs*
 trešais *third*
 trešdaļa *a third*
 trešdien *on Wednesday*
 trešdiena *Wednesday*
 treškārt *thirdly*
 trīcēt (-u, -ēju) (intrans.) *to shake, tremble*
 tricināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to shake, rock*
 triekt (-cu, -cu) *to chase, pursue*
 triekties (-cas, -cās) *to flail*

trijātā *in a group of three*
 trimdinieks *an exile*
 trīs *three*
 trīsdesmit *thirty*
 trīsdesmitais *thirtieth*
 trīsēt (-u, -ēju) *see trīcēt*
 trīskāršs *three-fold*
 trīskārt *three times*
 trīskrāsains *tri-coloured*
 trīspadmit *thirteen*
 trīspadmitais *thirteenth*
 trīssimt *three hundred*
 trīssimtais *three hundredth*
 trīt (trinu, trinu) *to grind, whet, sharpen*
 trīties (trinos, trinos) (intrans.) *to rub*
 triumfs *triumph*
 troksnis *noise*
 trokšņains *noisy*
 tropisks *tropical*
 trūcīgs *insufficient, inadequate, poor*
 trūdi (pl.) *humus; [decaying] remains*
 trūkt (-kst, -ka) (intrans.) *to be lacking, to be in short supply; to break, tear apart; cik tur trūka, ka mēs... we very nearly...; daudz netrūka, ka mēs... we very nearly...*
 trūkums *privation, poverty; lack*
 truls *blunt; dull, obtuse*
 trusls *brittle, fragile*
 tu *you (sing.)*
 tukls *corpulent, stout*
 tukšnesis *desert*
 tūkstoš *thousand; tūkstošiem puķu etc. flowers etc. in their thousands*
 tūkstošais, tūkstotais *thousandth*
 tukšinieks *needy person*
 tukšs *empty; tukšām rokām empty-handed*

tukšums *emptiness*
 tūkt (-kstu, -ku) *to swell*
 tūlīn, tūlīt *immediately*
 tulkojums *translation*
 tulkot (-oju, -oju) *to translate*
 tulks *interpreter*
 tūlīgs *slow, sluggish*
 tumsa *darkness*
 tumst (-st, -sa) *to grow dark*
 tumšmatis *dark-haired person*
 tumšs *dark; metas tumšs it is getting dark*
 tumšsarkans *dark red*
 tupele *slipper; koka tupele clog*
 tupēt (-u, -ēju) *to squat*
 tur *there; šur (un) tur here and there*
 turbīna *turbine*
 turēt (-u, -ēju) *to hold; to keep; turēt saitē, turēt pie saites to hold on a leash*
 turēties (-os, -ējos) *to hold on [to]; to stick [to]; to last, to hold out; turēties uz kājām to keep on one's feet*
 *turiene *there*
 turklāt *besides, moreover*
 turku: turku pipari (pl.) *cayenne*
 turp(u) *thither*
 turpat *right there*
 turpinājums *continuation*
 turpināt (-u, -āju) *to continue*
 turpmāk *henceforth, from now on*
 turpretī *on the other hand*
 tuvējs (adj.) *near-by*
 tuvināt (-u, -āju) *to bring near*
 tuvinieks *relative, kinsman*
 tuvoties (-ojos, -ojos) (intrans.) *to approach*
 tuvs (adj.) *near-by, close*
 tuvu (adv.) *near*
 tuvums *proximity, neighbourhood; company*

tvaikains *hazy, vaporous*
 tvaikot (-oju, -oju) (in text 244b) *to moisten, dampen*
 tvaiks *steam*
 tvanēt (-, -ēja) *to exhale [perfume]; (in text 210b) to shimmer*
 tveice *heat*
 tvert (tveru, tvēru) *to grasp, seize*
 tverties (tveros, tvēros) *to take refuge*
 tvīkt (-kstu, -ku) *to languish, thirst, long for; to glow*
 ū! (interj.) *ah!, oh!, oooh!*
 ubadze *beggar-woman*
 ubadziņš: gaisa ubadziņš *winged beggar (probably) sparrow*
 ubagot (-oju, -oju) *to beg*
 ubags *beggar*
 ūdens (gen. -ns) *water; ielaist kuģi ūdenī to launch a ship; sāls ūdens salt water; ūdens krāsas water-colours*
 ūdenslīdējs *diver*
 ūdepains *watery*
 ugunīgs *fiery*
 uguns (f.) *fire; atklāt uguni to open fire; pielaišt uguni (+ dat.) to set fire to; pielikt uguni (+ dat.) to set fire to; uguns līnija front line; ugunis (pl.) lights*
 ugunsdzēsējs *fireman; ugunsdzēsēji (pl.) fire-brigade*
 ugunsgrēks *fire [causing damage]*
 uja! (interj.) *oh!*
 un *and*
 Ungārija *Hungary*
 ungāriski (adv.) *Hungarian*
 ungārs, (f.) *-iete a Hungarian; ungāru (invar. adj.) Hungarian*
 universitāte *university*
 untums *caprice, whim*
 upe *river*

upmala *river-bank*
 urga *rivulet, streamlet*
 urrā! (interj.) *hurrah!*
 ūsas (pl.) *moustache*
 uts (f.) *louse*
 uz (prep. + gen.) *on, on to; (prep. + acc.) towards, to*
 uzart (-aru, -aru) *to plough*
 uzaugt (-gu, -gu) *to grow up*
 uzaut (-aunu, -āvu) *to put on [footwear]*
 uzbangojums *a surging up*
 uzbāzties (-žos, -zos) *to intrude, meddle, pester*
 uzbirt (-rst, -ra) *to fall on*
 uzbraukt (-cu, -cu) (intrans.) *to drive up, ascend*
 uzbriest (-st, -da) *to rise up [of dough, etc.]*
 uzbrukt (-brūku, -bruku) *to attack, fall upon*
 uzbrukums *attack, aggression*
 uzbūvēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to build, construct*
 uzcelt (-ceļu, -cēlu) *to lift up*
 uzcelties (-ceļos, -cēļos) *to get up, rise*
 uzcītīgs *assiduous, industrious*
 uzdedzināt (-u, -āju) *to switch on [electricity]*
 uzdevums *task, duty, written exercise; uzdevumi (pl.) homework*
 uzdīgt (-gst, -ga) *to germinate, sprout*
 uzdot (-dodu, -devu) *to charge, commission [someone to do something]*
 uzdoties (-dodos, -devos) *to pretend to be*
 uzdrīkstēties (-os, -ējos) *to dare*
 uzdrošināties (-os, -ājos) *to dare*

uzēdām (adv.) *for dessert*
 uzgāzt (-žu, -zu) *to heap upon, pour on*
 uzgāzties (-žos, -zos) *to fall upon*
 uzglabāt (-āju, -āju) *to store, put aside, keep*
 uzgleznot (-oju, -oju) *to paint [pictures]*
 uzgriezt (-žu, -zu) *to switch on [electricity]*
 uzģērbt (-bju, -bu) *to put on [clothes]*
 uzkāpt (-pju, -pu) *to climb up, to climb on; to embark*
 uzkārt (-karu, -kāru) (trans.) *to hang up*
 uzklabināt (-u, -āju) (in text 241a) *to type*
 uzklāt (-ju, -ju) (trans.) *to spread, to cover [by spreading]; to set [table]*
 uzkraut (-auju, -āvu) *to heap, pile, load*
 uzlabot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to improve*
 uzlaisties (-žos, -dos) *to fly up, to soar*
 uzlēkt (-lecu, -lēcu) *to jump up, jump on; [of sun] to rise*
 uzlidot (-oju, -oju) *to fly up, to soar*
 uzlikt (-lieku, -liku) *to put on, impose, inflict*
 uzlīt (-līst, -lija) *to rain [a little]; to splash, spill [upon]*
 uzlūkot (-oju, -oju) *to look at*
 uzmanība *attention; pievērst uzmanību (+ dat.), vērst uzmanību uz (+ acc.) to pay attention to, turn one's attention to*
 uzmanīgs *attentive*
 uzmaukt (-cu, -cu) *to put on [footwear, rings, etc.]*

uzmīt (-minu, -minu) *to tread on*
 uzmodināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to wake*
 uznākt (-ku, -cu) *to appear, turn up; [of weather] to set in; [of storm, etc.] to arise; [of pains, etc.] to come on*
 uzņemt (-ņemu, -ņemu) *to pick up; to receive [people]; to photograph*
 uzņēmums *firm, company, enterprise; photograph*
 uzpampt (-pstu, -pu) *to swell up*
 uzpilēt (-, -ēja) *to drop on*
 uzpirkt (-pērku, -pirku) *to buy up; to bribe*
 uzplaukt (-kst, -ka) *to blossom forth, flourish, prosper*
 uzpost (-šu, -su) *to tidy*
 uzposties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to dress up*
 uzprasīt (-u, -iju) *to ask*
 uzpūst (-šu, -tu) *to blow*
 uzrakstīt (-u, -iju) *to write down, write out*
 uzrakt (-roku, -raku) *to dig up*
 uzraut (-rauju, -rāvu) *to strike [a match]*
 uzreiz *suddenly, immediately*
 uzsēsties (-žos, -dos) *to sit down [on]*
 uzsiet (-sienu, -sēju) *to tie on, bind to*
 uzskatīt (-u, -iju) par (+ acc.) *to consider as*
 uzskats *opinion; pēc maniem uzskatiem in my opinion*
 uzspļaut (-auju, -āvu) (+ dat.) *to spit on, despise, scorn*
 uzšauties (-aujos, -āvos) (intrans.) *to shoot up; to blaze up*
 uzšķērst (-žu, -du) *to cut open, dissect*
 uzšūt (-šuju, -šuvu) *to sew [on]*
 uzticēt (-u, -ēju) *to entrust*

uzticēties (-os, -ējos) (+ dat.) *to rely upon, trust*
 uzticība *confidence, trust*
 uztraukt (-cu, -cu) *to excite, make anxious*
 uztrīt (-trinu, -trinu) *to grind, sharpen, whet*
 uztūkt (-kstu, -ku) *to swell*
 uzturēties (-os, -ējos) *to dwell, stay*
 uzvalks *suit*
 uzvara *conquest, victory*
 uzvārds *surname*
 uzvarēt (-u, -ēju) *to conquer, win a victory*
 uzvest (-du, -du) (trans.) *to lead [to]*
 uzvilkt (-velku, -vilku) *to pull on, put on [clothes]; to wind [watch, clock, etc.]*
 uzvīvēt (-, -ēja) *to flash [momentarily]*
 uzziest (-žu, -du) *to smear on*
 uzžīmēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to draw*
 uzzināt (-u, -āju) *to find out, discover*
 vabole *beetle*
 vācietis, (f.) -e *a German*
 Vācija *Germany*
 vāciski (adv.) *German*
 vācu (invar. adj.) *German*
 vadīt (-u, -iju) *to conduct, lead; to drive [car, etc.]*
 vadīties (-os, -ījos) *to be guided, to follow [rule, etc.]*
 vadmala *[woollen] cloth*
 vadonis *leader*
 vadzi! (interj.) *listen here!*
 vagonš *[railway] carriage*
 vagulis (occ. vaguls) *beetle*
 vai (conj.) *or; whether; (also as interrogative particle); vai ne? is it not so?; vai nu... vai either... or*

vai! (interj.) *oh!, ah!, alas!*
 vaicāt (-āju, -āju) *to ask, enquire*
 vaidelaitis, vaidelotis [*heathen*]
 priest
 vaidelis [*heathen*] priest
 vaids *moan*
 vaigs *cheek; redzēt vaigā to see in person, in the flesh*
 vaimanas (pl.) *lamentation*
 vaina *guilt; fault*
 vainags *see vainags*
 vainīgs *guilty; vainīgais culprit*
 vainot (-oju, -oju) *to blame*
 vainags *garland, wreath; zīļu vainags cloth head-dress adorned with beads*
 vairāk (adv.) *more; arvien vairāk more and more*
 vairāki (pl. adj.) *several, a number of*
 vairākkārt *repeatedly*
 vairogs *shield*
 vairs *no more, no longer; nekad vairs never again*
 vajadzēt (-g or -ga, -dzēja) *to be necessary*
 vajadzīgs *necessary*
 vajāt (-āju, -āju) *to pursue, hound, persecute*
 vājība *weakness, feebleness*
 vājināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to weaken*
 vājnieks *invalid, patient; weakling*
 vājš *weak*
 vakar *yesterday*
 vakarējs (adj.) *yesterday's; of yesterday*
 vakarēt (-ēju, -ēju) *to amuse oneself during an evening, to have an evening party*
 vakariņas (pl.) *evening meal, dinner*
 vakars *evening; metas vakars it is growing dark; vakara zvaigzne evening star*

vakarvakarā *yesterday evening*
 valdība *government*
 Valdis *Valdis*
 valdīt (-u, -īju) *to govern, to rule, to control*
 valdnieks *ruler*
 valgans *dampish, moist*
 valgs *rope, cord*
 valgs *moist, damp*
 valkāt (-āju, -āju) *to wear*
 valnis *wall, bank, dam*
 valoda *language; valodas (pl.) stories, rumours, gossip; palaist valodas to spread gossip*
 valodīgs *talkative*
 valodniecība *linguistics*
 valodnieks *linguist*
 vālodze *golden oriole*
 vāls *swath*
 valsts (f.) *state, realm, nation; valsts svētki (pl.) national holiday*
 vaļa *leisure, spare time; (in text 232a) complete freedom*
 vaļā (adv.) *open; vērt vaļā (trans.) to open*
 vaļējs (adj.) *open; loose*
 vanags *falcon, hawk*
 vandīt (-u, -īju) *to rummage*
 vanna *bathtub; vannas istaba bathroom*
 vara *power; ar varu by force; nākt pie varas to come to power*
 varavīksna, varavīksne *rainbow*
 varbūt *perhaps*
 vārdnīca *dictionary*
 vārds *word; name; vārdā by name; apstākļa vārds adverb; darbības vārds verb; īpašības vārds adjective; skaitļa vārds numeral; vārda diena Name Day; vārdu spēle play on words*
 varenība *might, power*

varens *powerful, mighty*
 varēt (-u, -ēju) *to be able*
 vārgs *ailing, infirm*
 vārgt (-gstu, -gu) *to be in bad health, to pine away, waste away*
 vārīt (-u, -īju) (trans.) *to cook, boil*
 vārīties (-ās, -ījās) (intrans.) *to be boiling, cooking*
 varmācīgs *aggressive*
 vārna *crow; zaļā vārna roller*
 varonība *heroism*
 varonīgs *heroic*
 varonis *hero*
 vārpa *ear [of corn]*
 varš *copper*
 vārti (pl.) *gate*
 vasara *summer; Vasaras svētki (pl.) Whitsun*
 vasks, vaski (pl.) *wax*
 vāšains *covered in sores*
 vāts (f.) *wound, sore*
 vāvere *squirrel*
 važas (pl.) *bonds, chains, fetters*
 vecāki (pl.) *parents*
 vecāmāte *grandmother*
 vecis *old man; (in text 220a) husband*
 vecmāte *midwife*
 vecmodīgs *old-fashioned*
 vecpūsis [*confirmed*] *bachelor*
 vecs *old; veco ļaužu nams Old Folks' Home*
 vectēvs *grandfather*
 vecums *age*
 vecumvecs *exceedingly old*
 vedekla *daughter-in-law*
 vēders *abdomen, stomach, belly*
 veidot (-oju, -oju) (trans.) *to form, shape*
 veidoties (-ojos, -ojos) (intrans.) *to develop, take shape*
 veikalnīeks *businessman*

veikals *shop*
 veikls *skilful, dexterous*
 veikts (-cu, -cu) *to accomplish, manage*
 vējains *windy*
 vējš *wind*
 vēl (adv.) *still; vēl arvien, arvien vēl (adv.) still (emphatic)*
 veldze *refreshment, relief*
 vēlējumies (refl.) *wish*
 velēna *turf; clod*
 vēlēti (-u, -ēju) *to wish; to elect; (+ dat.) to order*
 vēlēties (-os, -ējos) *to wish, desire*
 velns *devil; (interj.) hell! rauj viņu velns! the devil take him!*
 vēlreiz *once more*
 Velsa *Wales; Velsas (invar. adj.) Welsh*
 velsietis, (f.) -e *a Welshman; velsiešu (invar. adj.) Welsh*
 velt (veļu, vēlu) (trans.) *to roll*
 velti *in vain; ne par velti not for nothing*
 velties (veļos, vēlos) (intrans.) *to roll*
 veltīgs *vain, futile, fruitless*
 vēlu (adv.) *late*
 veļa *washing, linen*
 vemt (vemju, vēmu) *to vomit*
 Venēcija *Venice*
 Venta *the river Venta*
 vērā: vērā likt *to consider, take into account; (in text 238a) to take care*
 veranda *verandah*
 vērdiņš *farthing*
 vergs *slave*
 vēriņš *alert, attentive*
 vērot (-oju, -oju) *to observe, watch*
 vērpt (-pju, -pu) (trans.) *to spin [thread, etc.]*
 vērpstuve *spinning-mill*
 vērsis *ox, bull*

vērst (-šu, -su) (trans.) *to direct, turn; vērst uzmanību uz (+ acc.) to pay attention to, turn one's attention to*
 verste, versts (f.) *verst*
 vērsties (-šos, -sos) (intrans.) *to turn*
 vērt (veru, vēru) (trans.) *to open; to close; vērt ciet (trans.) to close; vērt vaļā (trans.) to open*
 vērtība *value, worth*
 vērties (veros, vēros) (intrans.) *to open; to close; (in text 223a) to observe*
 vērtīgs *valuable*
 veselība *health*
 veselīgs *healthy*
 vesels (adj.) *well, healthy; whole; spirts un vesels hale and hearty, safe and sound*
 vēsma *breeze*
 vēss *cool*
 vest (-du, -du) *to carry [in a vehicle]; to lead; vest pie prāta to bring [somebody] to his senses; vest pie rokas to lead by the hand*
 veste *waistcoat*
 vestibils *vestibule, hallway*
 vesties (-das, -dās) *to succeed*
 vēstīt (-īju, -īju) (+ dat.) *to inform*
 Vestminstera *Westminster*
 vēstnesis *messenger, herald*
 vēstule *letter*
 vēsture *history*
 vēsturisks *historical*
 vēsums *coolness, freshness*
 vētra *storm*
 vētrains *stormy*
 vezms *see vezums*
 vezums *cart-load*
 vidējs (adj.) *middle; Vidējie austrumi Middle East; vīrs vidējos gados a middle-aged man*

vidū (postp. + gen.) *in the middle of, among, amid*
 viducis *middle; waist*
 vidus *middle, centre; dienas vidus, dienvidus midday*
 Vidusjūra *Mediterranean Sea*
 viduslaiki (pl.) *the Middle Ages; viduslaiku (invar. adj.) mediaeval*
 vidusskola *High school*
 viduvējs *mediocre*
 Vidzeme *a province of Latvia*
 vidzemnieks, (f.) -ce *a native of Vidzeme; vidzemnieku (invar. adj.) of Vidzeme*
 vieglprātīgs *thoughtless, scatter-brained*
 viegls *light; easy*
 viela *substance, stuff, material*
 vien (emphatic particle: see lesson 198); tik... vien *only*
 vienāds *of one kind, identical, uniform*
 vienaldzīgs *indifferent*
 vienalga *it makes no difference, it's all the same*
 vienatā (adv.) *alone*
 vienbalsīgs *unanimous*
 vienēji *one*
 vienīgs *sole*
 vienkāršs *simple, onefold*
 vienkārt *once*
 vienmēr *always*
 vienmuļīgs *monotonous*
 vienmuļš *see vienmuļīgs*
 vienpadsmit *eleven*
 vienpadsmitais *eleventh*
 vienpusīgs *one-sided*
 vienreizējs *unique*
 viens *one; one and the same; (adj.) alone; vienos kreklos in shirt-sleeves; vienās liesmās in one enormous sheet of flame; viens otrs*

several, a few; viens... otrs one... the other; viens pats all alone
 vientiesīgs *simple, simple-minded, foolish*
 vientulība *solitude, loneliness*
 vientuļīgs *lonely, solitary*
 vientuļš *lonely, solitary*
 viesības (pl.) *party*
 viesis *guest; viesos (adv.) out visiting*
 viesmīlība *hospitality*
 viesmīlīgs *hospitable*
 viesmīlis *waiter*
 viesnīca *hotel*
 viest (-šu, -su) (trans.) (in text 205a) *to shed*
 viesulis *whirlwind, tornado*
 vieta *place; site; room, space; position, job; seat [in theatre, on bus, etc.]; mainīties vietām to change places; vietā (postp. + gen.) instead of; vietām (adv.) in [some] places*
 vietējs *local*
 vija *garland*
 vijīgs *flexible, supple*
 vijole *violin*
 vijolnieks *violinist*
 vilciens *train; vilcienu saraksts train time-table*
 vilcināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to delay, hinder; to prolong*
 vilcināties (-os, -ājos) *to hesitate, linger, tarry*
 vilināt (-u, -āju) *to allure, entice*
 vilks *wolf*
 vilkšus *cog. adv. to vilkt*
 vilkt (velku, vilku) (trans.) *to pull, drag*
 vilkties (velkos, vilkos) *to drag oneself; to last, drag on [of time]*
 villaine *shawl*
 vilna *wool*
 vilnis *wave; karstuma vilnis heat wave*
 vilt (viļu, vīlu) *to deceive; to disappoint*
 vilties (viļos, vīlos) *to be mistaken; to be disappointed*
 viltnieks *deceiver, impostor*
 viltus *fraud, deceit*
 viļņoties (-ojas, -ojās) (intrans.) *to billow, to sway*
 vingrinājums *exercise*
 vingrināt (-u, -āju) (trans.) *to exercise*
 vingrs *agile, springy*
 vīnoga *grape*
 vīns *wine; glāze vīna a glass of wine; vīna glāze a wineglass*
 viņa (pron.) *she*
 viņa (indec. poss. adj.) *his*
 viņas (pl. pron.) *they (f.)*
 viņas (indec. poss. adj.) *her*
 viņējs (poss. pron.) *his; hers; theirs*
 viņi (pl. pron.) *they (m.)*
 viņpus (prep. + gen.) *on the other side of*
 viņš (pron.) *he*
 viņš (dem. adj.) *that*
 viņu (indec. poss. adj.) *their*
 vira *soup, broth*
 vira *hinge*
 vīrietis *man; vīriešu kārtā masculine gender*
 virkne *row, file, series*
 virs (prep. + gen.) *above*
 vīrs *man; husband; sniega vīrs snow-man; vīru koris male choir*
 virsa *surface, face*
 virsnieks [*military*] *officer*
 virsotne *summit, top*
 virsū (adv.) *on top; brukt virsū (+ dat.) to fall upon, attack;*

kļūpt virsū (+ dat.) <i>to fall on;</i>	zābaks <i>boot</i>
maukt virsū <i>to put on [clothes];</i>	zaglīgs <i>furtive, thievish</i>
raidīt virsū (+ dat.) <i>to set</i>	zaglis <i>thief; kabatas zaglis</i>
<i>[somebody] on [somebody];</i>	<i>pickpocket</i>
zemes virsū <i>on the face of the earth</i>	zagšus cog. adv. <i>to zagt;</i>
virsus <i>surface, face</i>	<i>furtively, stealthily</i>
virt (verd, vira) (intrans.) <i>to boil</i>	zagt (zogu, zagu) <i>to steal</i>
virtuozs (adj.) <i>virtuoso</i>	zagties (zogos, zagos) <i>to steal away,</i>
virtuve <i>kitchen</i>	<i>slip away</i>
virve <i>rope</i>	zagtin cog. adv. <i>to zagt</i>
virziens <i>direction</i>	zāgēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to saw</i>
virzīties (-os, -ījos) <i>to advance, to</i>	zāgētava <i>saw-mill</i>
<i>proceed</i>	zāģis <i>saw</i>
vis (adv.) <i>by no means, not at all</i>	zaigot (-o, -oja) <i>to glisten, glitter</i>
visādi (adv.) <i>in every respect</i>	zaimot (-oju, -oju) <i>to blaspheme,</i>
visāds (adj.) <i>of all kinds</i>	<i>slander, calumniate</i>
visapkārt (adv., prep. + dat., postp.	zaķis <i>hare</i>
+ dat.) <i>all around</i>	zālainis <i>grassy</i>
viskijs <i>whisky</i>	zāle <i>grass; zāles (pl.) medicine</i>
vismaz <i>at least</i>	zāle <i>hall; balles zāle ball-room</i>
visnotaļ <i>particularly</i>	zalgs <i>sparkling, shining</i>
vispār <i>generally</i>	zalktis <i>grass-snake</i>
vispārējs (adj.) <i>general</i>	zalve <i>salvo</i>
viss <i>all; whole; visi (pl.) everybody</i>	zaļgans <i>greenish</i>
vīst (-stu, -tu) <i>to fade, wither, wilt,</i>	zaļš <i>green; raw; zaļā vārna roller</i>
<i>droop</i>	zaļums <i>greenness, verdure</i>
vista <i>hen</i>	zārks <i>coffin</i>
vīstiņš <i>bundle, parcel</i>	zarot (-o, -oja) (in text 219a) <i>to</i>
visums <i>universe</i>	<i>grow</i>
visur <i>everywhere</i>	zars <i>branch, twig</i>
*visurieni <i>everywhere</i>	zaudējums <i>loss; ar zaudējumu at a</i>
vīt (viju, viju) <i>to twist, weave, wind</i>	<i>loss</i>
vītīties (vijos, vijos) <i>to wind oneself</i>	zaudēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to lose</i>
<i>around</i>	zaurs <i>a saurian</i>
vītne <i>garland</i>	zeķe <i>sock, stocking</i>
vītols <i>willow; sēru vītols weeping</i>	zelt (zeļ, zēla) <i>to become green; to</i>
<i>willow</i>	<i>flourish</i>
vizēt (-, -ēja) <i>to glitter</i>	zeltains <i>gold-coloured</i>
vizmot (-o, -oja) <i>to glitter</i>	zeltot (-oju, -oju) <i>to gild</i>
vizulis <i>tinsel</i>	zelts <i>gold; rakt zeltu to dig for</i>
vižņi (pl.) <i>drift-ice, ice-floes</i>	<i>gold, to mine gold</i>
vokātīvs <i>vocative case</i>	zem (prep. + gen.) <i>under</i>

zeme <i>earth; land; country; brukt</i>	zilgans <i>bluish</i>
zemē <i>to fall down [of clothing,</i>	zilonis <i>elephant</i>
<i>etc.]; ielīst zemē to sink into the</i>	zilonkauls <i>ivory</i>
<i>ground [for shame, etc.]; tēvu</i>	zils <i>blue</i>
<i>zeme fatherland, homeland; zemes</i>	zīme <i>sign</i>
<i>virsū on the face of the earth</i>	zīmējums <i>drawing, design</i>
zemene <i>strawberry</i>	zīmēt (-ēju, -ēju) <i>to draw</i>
zemestrīce <i>earthquake</i>	zīmīgs <i>significant</i>
Zemgale <i>a province of Latvia</i>	zīmulis <i>pencil</i>
zemgalietis, (f.) -e <i>a native of</i>	zināms <i>known, certain</i>
<i>Zemgale; zemgaliešu (invar. adj.)</i>	zināšanas (pl.) <i>knowledge</i>
<i>of Zemgale</i>	zināt (-u, -āju) <i>to know</i>
zemnieks <i>peasant, peasant-farmer</i>	zinātājs <i>connoisseur, expert,</i>
zems <i>low</i>	<i>initiate</i>
zēns <i>boy</i>	zinātne <i>science; (in text 238a)</i>
zibens (gen. -ns) <i>a flash of lightning;</i>	<i>learning</i>
<i>lightning; zibeņi (pl.) lightning</i>	zinātnieks <i>scientist</i>
zibeņātrumā <i>as quick as lightning</i>	zinātnisks <i>scientific</i>
zibeņot (-o, -oja) <i>to flash [of</i>	zinība <i>knowledge, learning</i>
<i>lightning]</i>	ziņa (in text 202b) <i>care; nekādā ziņā</i>
zibēt (-, -ēja) <i>to flash, glitter</i>	<i>under no circumstances; ziņas (pl.)</i>
zīds <i>silk</i>	<i>information, news; (in text 222a)</i>
ziedēt (-u, -ēju) <i>to bloom</i>	<i>knowledge</i>
ziedoklis <i>altar</i>	ziņkāre <i>curiosity, inquisitiveness</i>
ziedonis <i>spring</i>	ziņkāriģis <i>curious</i>
ziedot (-oju, -oju) <i>to offer,</i>	ziņot (-oju, -oju) <i>to report, to inform</i>
<i>sacrifice; to contribute</i>	zirgs <i>horse; jāt uz zirga to ride a</i>
zieds <i>blossom</i>	<i>horse; kāpt zirgā to mount a horse;</i>
ziema <i>winter</i>	<i>kāpt no zirga to dismount from</i>
ziemelis <i>north wind; ziemeļi (pl.)</i>	<i>a horse; zirgu sacīkstes horse-</i>
<i>the north; ziemeļu (invar. adj.)</i>	<i>races</i>
<i>north, northern; Ziemeļu jūra</i>	zirneklis <i>spider</i>
<i>North Sea</i>	zirnīs <i>pea</i>
Ziemsvētki (pl.) <i>Christmas</i>	zīst (-žu, -du) <i>to suck</i>
ziepes (pl.) <i>soap</i>	zītaris <i>amber</i>
ziepjains <i>soapy</i>	zivs (f.) <i>fish; durt zivis to spear</i>
ziest (-žu, -du) <i>to smear, to cover</i>	<i>fish</i>
<i>[by smearing]</i>	znots <i>son-in-law</i>
zilbe <i>syllable</i>	zobārsts <i>dentist</i>
zīle <i>acorn; bead; ozola zīle acorn;</i>	zobens <i>sword</i>
zīļu vaipags <i>cloth head-dress</i>	zobs <i>tooth; griezt zobus to gnash</i>
<i>adorned with beads</i>	<i>one's teeth; zobi (pl.) fangs</i>

zoss (f.) <i>goose</i>	žagari (pl.) <i>brushwood; whipping</i>
zūdīties (-os, -ījos) (in text 242a) <i>to bewail</i>	žagata <i>magpie</i>
zupa <i>soup</i>	žāvēt (-ēju, -ēju) (trans.) <i>to dry; to smoke [food]</i>
zust (zūdu, zudu) <i>to disappear, to dwindle; [of strength] to fail</i>	žēl (particle) <i>a pity; man žēl I am sorry; man viņas žēl I am sorry for her</i>
zutis <i>eel</i>	žēlabas (pl.) <i>grief, lamentation</i>
zvaigznājs <i>constellation</i>	žēlastība <i>mercy, charity; (eccl.) grace</i>
zvaigzne <i>star; celebrity; kino zvaigzne film-star; rīta zvaigzne morning star; vakara zvaigzne evening star</i>	žēlīgs <i>merciful; Žēlīgais Dievs! (interj.) Good Lord!</i>
zvaigžņains <i>starry</i>	žēlot (-oju, -oju) <i>to pity</i>
zvaigžņājs <i>constellation</i>	žēloties (-ojos, -ojos) <i>to complain</i>
zvanīt (-u, -īju) <i>to ring</i>	žēls <i>pitiful, woeful</i>
zvans <i>bell; zvani (pl.) chimes, peals</i>	žēlsirdība <i>compassion, mercy</i>
zvejniecība <i>fishing industry</i>	žēlsirdīgs <i>compassionate, merciful;</i>
zvejnieks <i>fisherman</i>	žēlsirdīgā māsa <i>nursing sister, sister of mercy</i>
zvejot (-oju, -oju) <i>to fish [with net]</i>	Žēna <i>Žēna</i>
zvelt (zveļu, zvēlu) <i>to hit</i>	žilbt (-bstu, -bu) <i>to be dazzled</i>
zvērīks <i>bestial</i>	žņaupt (-dzu, -dzu) <i>to squeeze; to strangle</i>
zvērs [wild] <i>animal; plēsīgs zvērs beast of prey; zvēru dārzs zoo</i>	žogs <i>fence</i>
Zviedrija <i>Sweden</i>	žoklis <i>jaw</i>
zviedriski (adv.) <i>Swedish</i>	žuburains <i>forked</i>
zviedrs, (f.) -iete <i>a Swede; zviedru (invar. adj.) Swedish</i>	žurka <i>rat; plīks kā baznīcas žurka as poor as a church mouse</i>
zviegt (-dzu, -dzu) <i>to neigh</i>	žūt (žūstu, žuvu) <i>to become dry, to dry out</i>
zviegtin cog. adv. <i>to zviegt</i>	žvīgot (-o, -oja) (<i>obscure</i>) [<i>perhaps for zvīguļot, q. v.</i>]
zvīguļot (-o, -oja) <i>to shimmer, sparkle</i>	žvingstēt (-, -ēja) <i>to whiz, hum</i>

ENGLISH-LATVIAN VOCABULARY

This alphabetical vocabulary contains only the words and expressions needed for the material introduced in the body of the work, and further, provides only those translations appropriate to the contexts in which they have occurred.

Hence it cannot be taken as a substitute for a complete dictionary, for which the student should consult the Bibliography.

For reasons of space, principal parts of Latvian verbs are not listed here; the student is referred to the appropriate entry in the Latvian-English vocabulary. Nouns ending in *-s, -is, -ns, -us* are masculine, unless marked (f.) or (pl.): masculine nouns declined like *akmens* are denoted by the parenthesis (gen. *-ns*). Verbs are noted as (trans.) or (intrans.) only where this cannot be obviously ascertained from the meaning.

Parentheses about a verbal prefix, e.g., (*uz-*)*būvēt*, indicate that the imperfective verb *būvēt* has, as corresponding perfective, the prefixed form *uzbūvēt*

aback: to be taken aback <i>apstulbt</i>	absorbed: to be absorbed in <i>iedziļināties; iegrimt</i>
abandon <i>atstāt</i>	absurd <i>aplams</i>
abate [of wind, noise, etc.] (<i>no-</i>) <i>rimt, aprimt</i>	abundance <i>pilnība; in abundance papilnam</i> (postp. + gen.)
abattoirs <i>lopu kautuve, lopkautuve</i>	abundantly <i>papilnam</i>
abbey <i>abeja</i>	academic <i>akadēmisks</i>
abdomen <i>vēders</i>	accept <i>pieņemt</i>
ablaze: to be ablaze <i>kurēties</i>	accidentally <i>netišām, netīši</i>
able <i>spējīgs; to be able varēt; prast</i>	accommodate <i>novietot</i>
abolish <i>atcelt</i>	accommodated: to be accommodated <i>novietoties</i>
about (prep.) [= concerning] <i>par + acc.; [= around] ap + acc.; (adv.) [= approximately] apmēram; [= around] apkārt; at about what time? ap cikiem?</i>	accommodation <i>pajumte</i>
above (prep.) <i>virš + gen.; augšpus + gen.</i>	accompany <i>pavadīt</i>
abroad: travel abroad <i>aizceļot</i>	accomplish (<i>pa-</i>) <i>veikt, izdarīt</i>
abrupt <i>strups</i>	account: take into account <i>vērā likt; settle accounts nokārtoties</i>
absolutely <i>it, itin</i>	accountant <i>grāmatvedis</i>
	accumulate (trans.) <i>saraust</i>
	accusation <i>sūdzība</i>
	accusative case <i>akuzatīvs</i>

accustom (*pie-*)*radināt*
 accustomed *pierasts*; to be
 accustomed **mēgt*; to become,
 grow accustomed (*pie-*)*rast*,
aprast
 achieve *panākt, paveikt, sasniegt*
 achievement *sasniegums*
 acknowledge *atzīt*
 acorn *zīle, ozola zīle*
 acquaintance *paziņa* (m. or f.)
 acquire (*ie-*)*gūt, apgūt*
 acquisition *ieguvums*
 act [= ceremony] *akts*; [of play]
cēliens; to put on an act *spēlēt*
komēdiju
 act [= behave] *riekties*; [a role]
spēlēt
 action *darbība*
 active *darbīgs*; *dzīvs*; active voice
darāmā kārtā
 activity *darbība, izdarība*
 actor *aktieris*
 actress *aktrise*
 actually *faktiski*
 Adam *Ādams*
 add *pielikt*
 addition: in addition *piedevām*
 address *adrese*
 adhere [to] (*pie-*)*lipt* (*pie* + gen.)
 adjective *īpašības vārds*
 admit *atzīt; atzīties*
 adolescence *jaunība*
 adore [as divine] *pielūgt*
 adorn (*ap-*)*pušķot, izpušķot; greznot*,
(iz-)rotāt; [by entwining] *apvīt*;
 [with birch-boughs] *meijot*;
 adorn oneself *rotāties*
 adornment *izrotājums*
 adroit *izveicīgs*
 adulation *glāimi* (pl.)
 advance (intrans.) *virzīties*
 advantageous *izdevīgs*

adverb *apstākļa vārds*
 adversary *pretinieks*
 advertisement *sludinājums, reklāma*
 advertize *sludināt*
 advice *padoms*
 aeroplane *lidmašīna*
 afar (after prep.) **tāliene*
 affair *lieta, darīšana*
 affectionate *sirsnīgs*
 affix *pielikt, piespraust*
 afraid: to be afraid *bīties*; I am
 afraid *man bail, man bailes*
 Africa *Āfrika*
 African *āfrikāņu* (invar. adj.); an
 African *āfrikānis*, (f.) *-iete*
 after (prep.) (temporal) *pēc* + gen.;
 (local) *pakaļ* (adv. or postp. +
 dat.)
 afternoon *pēcpusdiena*; mid-
 afternoon snack *launags*
 afterwards *pēc tam*
 again *atkal*; never again *nekad*
vairs; once again, over again *no*
jauna
 against (prep.) *pret* + acc.; *pretī*,
pretīm (adv. or postp. + dat.);
 for and against *par un pret*
 age *vecums*; Iron Age *dzelzs*
laikmets; being of mature age
gados būdams; middle age
pusmūžs; middle-aged *pusmūža*
 (invar. adj.); middle-aged man
vīrs vidējos gados; Middle Ages
viduslaiki (pl.); Stone Age *akmens*
laikmets; ages ago (*jau*) *sen*
 aggression *uzbrukums*
 aggressive *varmācīgs*
 agile *vingrs, nasks, apsviedīgs*
 ago *pirms* (prep. + gen.); ages ago,
 long ago (*jau*) *sen*; not long ago
nesen; not so long ago *necik sen*;
 a while ago *pirmīt*

agony *mokas* (pl.)
 agree [= concur] *piekrist*; [= get
 along together] *saprausties*
 agreeable: to be agreeable to *būt ar*
mieru + inf.
 agreement *saskaņa*
 ah! (interj.) *ā!, ai!, o!, ū!, vai!*
 aha! (interj.) *ahā!*
 aid *palīdzība; līdzeklis*; to go to the
 aid of *doties palīgā* + dat.
 Aija *Aija*
 ail (intrans.) *sirgt*
 ailing *vārgs*
 air *gaisis*; to fly in the air *lidot pa*
gaisu; out of thin air *no gaisa*;
 Air Force *gaisa flote*
 airport *lidlauks*
 Aivars *Aivars*
 alarm-clock *modinātājs*
 alas! (interj.) *vai!*
 alcoholic (adj.) *alkoholisks*
 alder *alksnis, elksnis*; berry alder
ieva
 alert *modrs, vērigs*; alert mind
gaiša galva
 alight *izkāpt, nokāpt*
 alight: to be alight *kurēties*
 alive *dzīvs*
 all *viss*; all alone *viens pats*; all
 around *visapkārt* (adv., prep. +
 dat., postp. + dat.); not at all
nebūt, nemaz, nevis, vis; for all that
tomēr; of all kinds *visāds*; it all
 depends *kā kuru reizi*
 allow (*at-*)*ļaut*, (*pie-*)*ļaut*
 allowed: to be allowed *drīkstēt*
 allure *vilināt*
 almanach *kalendārs*
 almost *gandrīz, tikko, tik tikko*
 alms-house *nabagmāja*
 alone (adj.) *viens*; (adv.) *vienatā*;
 all alone (adj.) *viens pats*

along (prep.) *gar* + acc., *pa* + acc.;
 along (adv.), along with *līdz(i)*
 (postp. + dat. or adv.); to get
 along with difficulty *izvilkties*
 alongside *blakus* (adv., prep. + dat.,
 postp. + dat.)
 already *jau (drīz)*; already for a long
 time *jau ilgi*
 also *arī, ar'* (occ. *ar*); not only...
 but also *nevien... bet arī*
 altar *altāris, ziedoklis*
 alter (trans.) *grozīt, pārmainīt*;
 [by sewing] *pāršūt*
 although *lai gan, kaut gan* (occ.
kaut)
 altitude *augstums*
 always *vienmēr, arvien(u), allaž*,
 (occ. *allažin*)
 amass (trans.) (*sa-*)*raust*
 amateurishly: to mess around
 amateurishly *kļēpāties*
 amazed: to be amazed *brīnīties*
 amber *dzintars, zītars*
 ambiguous *divpusīgs*
 ambition *godkāre*
 America *Amerika*; United States of
 America *Amerikas Savienotās*
Valstis
 American *amerikāņu* (invar. adj.);
 an American *amerikānis*, (f.)
-iete
 amid *vidū* (postp. + gen.)
 amiss: to be amiss *kaitēt*
 among *starp* (prep. + acc.), *vidū*
 (postp. + gen.)
 amuse [oneself during an evening]
vakarēt
 amusement *izprieca*
 amusing *amizants*
 ancient *sens, sensens*
 and *un, ir*; both... and... *ir... ir...*
 angel *eņģelis*

anger *dusmas* (pl.); out of anger
aiz dusmām
anger (trans.) (*sa-*)*tracināt*
angry *dusmīgs, pikts*; to become
angry *sadusmoties, apskaisties,*
sašust
animal: farm-animal *lops*; wild
animal *zvērs*; to go and tend
animals *iet ganos*
Anne *Anna*
anniversary: wedding anniversary
kāzu diena; silver wedding
anniversary *sudraba kāzas* (pl.)
annoy *kaitirāt*; it annoys me *mani*
grauž
annoyance *īgnums, piktums*
annoyed: to be annoyed *ēsties*; to
get annoyed *sapīkt*
annual: annual market *gada tirgus*
anoint *svaidīt*
Ansis *Ansis*
answer *atbilde*
answer *atbildēt* + dat., *atteikt*;
answer in a whisper *atčukstēt*
answerable *atbildīgs*
ant *skudra*
ante-room *priekštelpa*
anthology *antoloģija*
anti-communist (noun)
pretkomūnists
antipathy [towards] *antipatija*
(*pret* + acc.)
antiquity *senatne*
anxiety *rūpes* (pl.), *rūpesti* (pl.)
anxious: to make anxious *uztraukt*
any: any old sort of *šādi tādi*; at any
price *par katru cenu*; at any time
kaut kad
anybody (pej.) *kaut kurš*
anyhow *kaut kā*
anything *kaut kas*
anyway *bez tam*
anywhere *kaut kur*; (after prep.)
*kaut *kuriene*
apart (adv.) *pušu, pušam*; come
apart (*sa-*)*irt*; fall apart (*sa-*)
irt; tear apart (intrans.) (*pār-*)
trūkt; tear apart (trans.) (*sa-*)
plosīt, pārplēst
apathy [towards] *apatija* (*pret*+acc.)
apologize *noļūgties*
apparition *ķēms*
appear *izskatīties*; (*pa-*)*rādīties,*
uznākt
appearance *izskats*; *šķitums*
appetite *ēstgriba*
applaud *aplauđēt* + dat.
apple *ābols*; apple-tree *ābele*
appoint [time, place, etc.] *noteikt*
appointed [time, place, etc.] *noteikts*
apportioner *izdalītājs*
appreciate *izprast*
appreciation *izpratne, izprašana*
apprehend *atskārst*
apprentice *mācekļis*
approach (intrans.) *tuvoties, pieiet*
approaches *pievārte*
appropriate *attiecīgs*; to be
appropriate *noderēt*
approval *atļauja*
approximately *apmēram*
April *aprīlis*
apron *priekšauts*; [large, heavy]
skotele
arch *loks*
arch-angel *erceņģelis*
architect *architekts*
architecture *architektūra*
ardent *dedzīgs*
ardour *kvēle*
area [= district] *puse*
arise [of storm, etc.] *uznākt*
arm *roka*
arms [= weapons] *ieroči* (pl.)

around, all around (prep.) *ap* +
acc., (*vis-*)*apkārt* (prep. or postp.
+ dat.); (adv.) (*vis-*)*apkārt*
arouse *satraukt*
arrange (*sa-*)*rīkot, iekārtot*; arrange
oneself *sakārtoties*
arrest *apcietināt*
arrive *atbraukt, atceļot, atnākt,*
ierasties, pienākt, nonākt; [by
plane] *atlidot*; [home] *pārnākt*
arrogant *lepns*
arrow *bulta*
art *māksla*
Arthur *Artūrs*
artificial *mākslīgs, lieks*
artist *mākslinieks*
as (conj.) *kā*; as... as... *tik...*
kā...; just as *tā kā, tāpat kā,*
tikpat kā; as if *it kā*; as soon as
tikko, tiklīdz
ash: mountain-ash *plūdāzis,*
sērmūksis
ashamed: to be ashamed
nokaunēties
ashes *pelni* (pl.); *pīšļi* (pl.); ash-tray
pelnu trauks
ash-tray *pelnu trauks*
Asia *Āzija*
Asian *āziātisks*; an Asian *āziāts,*
(f.) *-e*
Asiatic *āziātisks*
ask *prasīt, jautāt, vaicāt*; ask again
pārvaicāt; ask suddenly *ievaicāties*
asking *prasīšana*
asleep: to fall asleep (*ie-*)*migt,*
aizmigt
ass *ēzelis*
assemble together (intrans.)
(*sa-*)*lasīties*
assiduous *uzcītīgs*
assistance *palīdzība*
assistant *palīgs*
associate with *saieties ar* + acc.
associated: to be associated with
saisīties ar + acc.
association *biedriba*
assume *pieņemt*
astray: go astray *apmaldīties*
astrophysicist *astrofiziķis*
at (prep.) *pie* + gen.; at the house of
pie + gen.; at what time? *cikos?*;
at about what time? *ap cikiem?*
atheistic *bezdievīgs*
Atis *Atis*
Atlas-like *atlantisks*
atom *atoms*
attack *uzbrukums*
attack *brukt virsū* + dat., *uzbrukt*
+ dat.
attain *aizsniegt, sasniegt*
attempt *mēģinājums*
attend (trans.) *apmeklēt*
attendant *pavadonis*, (f.) *-e*; bath-
house attendant *pirtnieks*
attention *uzmanība*; pay attention
to, turn one's attention to *vērst*
uzmanību uz + acc., *pievērst*
uzmanību + dat.
attentive *uzmanīgs, vērlīgs*
attic *bēniņi* (pl.)
attire *tērps*
attire *tērpt, rotāt*; attire oneself
tērpties, rotāties
attract *pievilkt*
attribute *īpašība*
auditorium *klausītava*
August *augusts*
aunt *krustmāte*
Australia *Austrālija*
Australian *austrāliešu* (invar. adj.);
an Australian *austrāletis*, (f.) *-e*
Austria *Austrija*
Austrian *austriešu* (invar. adj.); an
Austrian *austrietis*, (f.) *-e*

authentic *īsts*
 automatic: automatic rifle
 mašīnšautene
 autumn *rudens* (gen. -ns); this
 autumn (adv.) *šoruden*
 avenue *prospekts*
 avert *novērst*
 avoid *apiet*
 await [a short while] *pagaidīt*
 awake *možs*; to be awake *būt*
 nomodā
 award *piešķirt*
 away (adv.) *prom, projām; nost*; to
 get away, slip away *izsprukt*
 axe *cirvis*
 axeman *cirtējs*

babbler *plāpa* (m. or f.)
 bachelor [confirmed] *vecpūsis*
 back (noun) *mugura*
 back (adv.) *atpakaļ*
 back down *atkāpties*
 background *aizmugure*
 bad *slikts, nelāga* (invar. adj.); bad
 harvest *neraža*; to be in bad
 health *(no-)vārgt*
 badge *nozīme*
 badly *slikti*
 bag *maiss, kule*; hand-bag *rokas*
 soma; travelling-bag *ceļa soma*
 Baiba *Baiba*
 bail out (trans.) *izsmelt*
 bake (trans.) *cept*
 baker *maiznieks*; baker's shop
 maiznīca
 bald *plīks*
 ball [for games, etc.] *bumba*; [of
 wool, string, etc.] *kamols*;
 [= dance] *balle*; ball-room
 balles zāle
 ballet *balets*
 Baltic: Baltic Sea *Baltijas jūra*

banana *banana* (often *banāns*)
 band *orķestris*
 bandage *apsējs*; bandages *auti* (pl.)
 bandage (trans.) *apsiet*
 bane *posts*
 banish *izraidīt, padzīt*
 bank [of river, etc.] *krasts*; river-
 bank *upmala*; [of earth] *valnis*;
 [financial] *banka*
 banner *karogs*
 banquet *dzīres* (pl.)
 baptize *kristīt*
 barbaric *barbarisks*
 bare *plīks*; [of feet, legs] *bass*
 bargain *labs pirkums*; into the
 bargain (adv.) *piedevām*
 bark *mīza*
 bark (intrans.) *riet*
 barley *mieži* (pl.)
 barn *pūnis*; [for cattle] *kūts* (f.)
 baron *barons*
 barren *sterils*
 base: naval base *kara osta*
 base (adj.) *nelietīgs*
 based: to be based on *balstīties*,
 dibināties
 bashful *bikls*
 basket *grozs*; shopping-basket
 iepirkumu grozs
 bath *vanna*; swimming-bath
 peldētava; bath-house *pirts* (f.);
 bath-house attendant *pirtnieks*;
 bathroom *vannas istaba*; bathtub
 vanna
 batter *mikla*
 battle *kauja, cīņa, kautiņš*; battle-
 field *kaujas lauks*
 bawl *brēkt*
 bay (geog.) *līcis*
 bay (adj.) *bērs*; bay horse *bēris*
 be *būt*; to pretend to be *uzdoties*;
 to be able *spēt*

bead *zīle*; beads *krelles* (pl.); cloth
 head-dress adorned with beads
 zīļu vainags
 beak *knābis*
 beam *baļķis*
 bear *lācis*; polar bear *ledus lācis*;
 she-bear *lācene*
 bear *izturēt, panest*; bear witness
 liecināt
 beard *bārda*
 beast *zvērs*; beast of prey *plēšīgs*
 zvērs, plēsoņa (m. or f.)
 beat *pērt*; *piekaut*; *sadot* + dat.;
 (sa-)dauzīt; beat to death *nosist*;
 beat off *nodauzīt*; beat soundly
 sadot + dat. *pa ragiem*
 beautiful *skaists, daiļš*
 beauty *skaistums, daile, daiļums*
 because (conj.) *tāpēc ka, tādēļ ka*;
 because of *dēļ* (postp. + gen.)
 beckon *(pa-)māt*
 become *kļūt, tapt, palikt, mesties*;
 become accustomed *pierast*;
 become confused *jukt*
 bed [for sleeping] *gulta*; to go to bed
 iet gulēt; to put to bed *guldīt*;
 flower-bed *puķu dobe*; river-bed
 gultne; bed-straw *cisas* (pl.)
 bedroom *guļamistaba*
 bee *bite*
 beer *alus*
 beetle *vabole, kukainis, vagulis*
 before (prep.) *pirms* + gen., *priekš*
 + gen.; (conj.) *pirms*
 beforehand (adv.) *pirms*
 befuddle: to befuddle somebody *laist*
 kādam miglu acīs
 beg [of mendicant] *ubagot*; [of
 supplicant] *lūgt, lūgties*; beg for
 izlūgties
 beggar *ubags*; beggar-woman
 ubadze

begin (trans.) *(ie-)sākt*; (intrans.)
 (ie-)sākties; begin to rot *lepūt*;
 begin to speak *ierunāties*
 beginning *sākums*
 behalf: on behalf of *labad* (postp. +
 gen.); on whose behalf? *priekš kā?*
 behave *izturēties, rīkoties*
 behaved: well-behaved *rātns*
 behaviour *izdarība*
 behind: area behind *aizmugure*
 behind (prep.) *aiz* + gen.
 being *būte*; *būtne*
 Belgian *beļģu* (invar. adj.); a **Belgian**
 beļģietis, (f.) -e
 Belgium *Beļģija*
 belief *ticība*
 believe *(no-)ticēt* + dat.
 belittle *apcelt*
 bell *zvans*
 bellowing *māviens*
 belly *vēders*
 belong *piederēt* + dat.; belonging to
 somebody else *svešs*
 beloved (adj.) *mīļš, dārgs, mīļots*
 below (prep.) *leļpus* + gen.,
 apakšpus + gen., *apakš* + gen.;
 (adv.) *apakšā*; down below (adv.)
 apakšā
 belt *josta*
 bench *sols*
 bend *līkums*
 bend (trans.) *locīt*; (intrans.)
 (sa-)līkt, locīties, liekties; bend
 down (trans.) *noliekt*; (intrans.)
 noliekties, nollīkties; bend out
 (trans.) *izliekt*
 beneath (prep.) *apakšpus* + gen.,
 zem + gen., *apakš* + gen.
 beneficial *ražens*
 benefit: to have the benefit of *baudīt*
 benevolence *labvēllība*
 bent (adj.) *līks*

bequeath <i>norakstīt, novēlēt</i>	bird <i>putns</i> ; bird of paradise <i>parādes putns</i> ; bird of prey <i>plēsoņa</i> (m. or f.)
berate <i>sadot</i> + dat.; berate soundly <i>sadot</i> + dat. <i>pa ragiem</i>	birth: to give birth <i>dzemdēt</i>
Berlin <i>Berlīne</i>	birthday <i>dzimšanas diena</i>
berry <i>oga</i> ; berry alder <i>ieva</i>	birthrate <i>dzimstība</i>
berserk <i>traks</i> ; to go berserk <i>trakot</i>	Biruta <i>Biruta</i>
beside (prep.) <i>blakus</i> (occ. <i>blaku</i>) (prep. or postp. + dat.)	bit <i>kumoss</i>
besides (adv.) <i>turklāt</i>	bite <i>kodiens</i>
best: bestseller, best-selling book <i>bestsellers</i>	bite <i>kost</i> ; <i>iekost</i> + dat. or loc.; <i>kosties</i> ; <i>dzelt</i> + dat.; [of fish] <i>ķerties</i> ; bite at <i>aizkost</i> ; bite into <i>iekosties</i> ; bite off <i>nokost</i> ; bite through <i>pārkost</i>
bestial <i>lopisks, zvērisks</i>	biting <i>skaudrs, kodlgs; slvs</i>
betake: betake oneself <i>doties</i>	bitter <i>rūgts, sūrs; slvs</i>
bethink: bethink oneself <i>apķerties</i>	bitterness <i>rūgtums</i> ; [of taste] <i>sūrum</i>
betray <i>nodot</i> ; [of news, etc.] <i>(iz-)paust</i>	bitter-sweet <i>saldsērīgs</i>
between (prep.) <i>starp</i> + acc., <i>starpā</i> (postp. + gen.)	blab out <i>izplāpāt</i>
bewail <i>apraudāt</i>	black <i>melns</i> ; to become black with smoke <i>(no-)kvēpt</i>
beware <i>sargāties</i>	blackbird <i>melnais strazds</i>
bewilderment <i>mulsums</i>	blackboard <i>tāfele</i>
bewitch <i>apburt, noburt</i>	blackness <i>melnum</i>
beyond (prep.) <i>aiz</i> + gen.; life beyond <i>aizsaule</i>	blacksmith <i>kalējs</i>
bibliophile <i>grāmatnieks</i>	blade <i>asmens</i> (gen. -ns)
bicycle <i>(div-)ritenis</i>	blame <i>vainot</i>
bid: bid farewell to <i>atvadīties no</i> + gen.	blanket <i>sega, apsegs</i>
big <i>liels</i> ; fairly big <i>paliels</i> ; big sum <i>liela nauda</i>	blaspheme <i>zaimot</i>
biggish <i>paliels</i>	blaze <i>liesmot, blāzmot</i> ; blaze up <i>uzšauties</i>
Biksti <i>Biksti</i> (pl.)	bleak <i>drūms</i>
bilberry-bush <i>mētra</i>	bleat <i>blēt</i>
bill <i>knābis</i>	bless <i>svētīt</i>
billow (noun) <i>bangā</i>	blessing <i>svētība</i>
billow (intrans.) <i>viļņoties</i>	blindfold [eyes] <i>aizsiet (acis)</i>
bind <i>(sa-)siet, iesiet</i> ; bind around <i>apsiet</i> ; bind to <i>uzsiet</i> ; bind together <i>sasiet</i> ; bind up <i>(sa-)siet, aizsiet</i>	blink <i>plaiksnīties</i>
birch <i>bērzs</i> ; birch-grove <i>birze, birzs</i> (f.)	bliss <i>laimība</i>
	blizzard <i>putenis, sniegputenis</i>
	block [with snow, etc.] <i>aizputināt</i>
	blood <i>asins</i> (f.), <i>asinis</i> (pl.)

bloody <i>asinains</i>	border <i>robeža</i>
bloom: come into bloom <i>riesties</i>	bore [= drill] <i>urbt</i> ; bore one's way into <i>ieurbties</i> + loc.; [= weary] <i>garlaikot</i>
bloom <i>ziedēt</i> ; to finish blooming <i>noziedēt, izziedēt</i>	boredom <i>apnikums, garlaicība</i> ; to the point of boredom <i>līdz apnikumam</i>
blossom <i>zieds</i>	boring <i>garlaicīgs</i>
blossom forth <i>(uz-)plaukt</i>	born: to be born <i>(pie-)dzimt</i> ; to be born anew, re-born <i>pārdzimt</i>
blouse <i>blūze</i>	bosom <i>azote, azots</i> (f.) (see lesson 235)
blow <i>sitiens, cirtiens</i>	boss <i>priekšnieks</i>
blow <i>pūst</i> ; blow away <i>aizpūst</i> ; blow in <i>iepūst</i>	both (adj. & pron.) <i>abi, abēji, abi divi</i> ; both... and... <i>ir... ir...</i> ; of both kinds <i>abējāds</i> ; in both ways <i>abējādi</i>
blue <i>zils</i> ; out of the blue <i>no gaisa</i>	bother <i>traucēt</i>
bluish <i>zilgans</i>	bottle <i>pudele</i>
blunt <i>truls</i>	bottom <i>dibens</i>
blush <i>(no-)sarkt</i>	boulevard <i>bulvāris, prospekts</i>
board <i>dēlis</i> ; blackboard <i>tāfele</i> ; drawing-board <i>studiju dēlītis</i>	bound <i>lēciens</i>
board <i>iekāpt</i>	bow <i>loks</i>
boast <i>liellties</i>	box <i>kaste, šķirsts</i> ; small box <i>kastīte</i>
boat: small boat <i>laiva</i>	boy <i>zēns, puika</i> (m.), <i>jauneklis</i> ; little boy <i>puisēns</i> ; school-boy <i>skolnieks</i> ; shepherd-boy <i>gans</i>
boatman <i>laivinieks</i>	brackish <i>sāļš</i>
body <i>ķermenis</i>	braid <i>pīt</i>
boil (trans.) <i>vārt</i> ; (intrans.) <i>virt</i> ; boil over <i>kūsāt</i>	brain <i>smadzenes</i> (pl.)
boiler [of ship] <i>katls</i>	branch <i>zars</i> ; lower branches <i>pazares</i> (pl.)
boiling: to be boiling (intrans.) <i>vārties</i>	brave <i>drošs</i> ; brave man <i>drošinieks</i>
bolt <i>bulta</i>	brawl <i>kautiņš</i>
bolt (trans.) <i>aizšaut</i>	bray <i>bjaut</i>
bomb <i>bumba</i>	Brazil <i>Brazīlija</i> (often <i>Brazīlija</i>)
bonds <i>važas</i> (pl.)	Brazilian <i>brazīliešu</i> (invar. adj.); a Brazilian <i>brazīlietis</i> , (f.) -e
bone <i>kauls</i>	breach <i>lauzums</i>
bonfire <i>sārts</i> ; St. John's Day bonfire <i>jāņuguns</i> (f.)	bread <i>maize</i>
bony <i>kaulains</i>	breadth <i>platums</i>
book <i>grāmata</i> ; best-selling book <i>bestsellers</i> ; exercise-book <i>burtnīca</i> ; hymn-book <i>dziesmu grāmata</i>	
book-keeper <i>grāmatvedis</i>	
boom <i>dunēt</i>	
boot <i>zābaks</i>	
bootmaker <i>kurpnieks</i>	

break *sprauga*
 break (trans.) (*sa-*)*lauzt, plēst*;
 (intrans.) (*sa-*)*lūzt, (pār-)trūkt*;
 break forth *izlauzties*; break in
 [of horse] *iejāt, iebraukt*; break
 off (trans.) *nolauzt*; break off
 relations *saplēsties*; break off
 (intrans.) *nolūzt*; break out into
 flower *izziedēt*; break a spell
atburt; break up (intrans.)
šķelties
 breakfast *brokastis* (pl.)
 breaking *lauzums*
 breast *krūts* (f.), *krūtis* (pl.); *azote*,
azots (f.); (see lesson 235)
 breath *elpa, dvaša*; lose one's
 breath *aizkust*; out of breath
bez elpas
 breathe *elpot, dvašot, dvēst, dvest*;
 breathe upon *apdvēst, apdvest*
 breed *suga*
 breed (trans.) *audzināt*
 breeze *vēsma*
 Brencis *Brencis*
 brevity *īsums*
 bribe *kukulis*
 bribe *uzpirkt, piekukuļot*
 brick *ķieģelis*
 bride *līgava, brūte*
 bridegroom *līgavainis*
 bridge *tilts*; space under a bridge
patilte
 bridle *iemaukti* (pl.)
 brigade: fire brigade *ugunsdzēsēji*
 (pl.)
 bright *spodr, spožs, spilgts, spulgs*;
košs, gaišs; bright sunshine
saulgozis
 brightness *spodriba, gaišums*
 brilliant *spulgs*
 brim *mala*

bring *atnest, atvest, pienest*; bring
 about *izdarīt*; bring home
pārvest; bring in *ienest*; bring near
tuvināt; bring [somebody] to his
 senses *vest pie prāta*; bring up
audzināt
 brisk *naigs, nasks, nīprs*
 brittle *trausls, trusls*
 brooch *sakta*
 brood *perināt*
 brook *strauts*
 broth *vira*
 brother *brālis*
 brotherhood *brālība*
 brotherly *brālīgs*
 brown *brūns*; to go brown
nobrūnēt; reddish-brown *rūsgans*
 brr! (interj.) *brr!*
 brush (*sa-*)*sukāt*
 brushwood *žagari* (pl.)
 bubble *burbulis, mutulis*
 bubble *mutuļot*
 buck *āzis*
 bucket *spainis*
 bud *pumpurs*
 bugle *taure*
 bugler *taurētājs*
 build *augums*
 build (*uz-*)*būvēt, celt*
 building *ēka, nams*; corner of a
 building *paksis*
 built: well built [of people] *stalts*
 bull *vērsis*
 bullet *lode*
 bump *puns*
 bundle *sainis, vīstiņš*
 burden *slogs*
 burn (trans.) (*sa-*)*dedzināt*;
 (intrans.) (*sa-*)*degt*; (*sa-*)*kaist*;
 burn down (trans.) *sadedzināt*,
nodedzināt; (intrans.) *nodegt*; burn
 out (intrans.) *izdegt*

burnt: to be burnt *svilt, sagruzdēt*
 burrow (*ie-*)*rakties*
 burst (intrans.) (*sa-*)*sprāgt*,
pārsprāgt; burst out laughing
iesmieties
 bury *ierakt*; [of dead] *apglabāt*;
 bury oneself (*ie-*)*rakties*
 bus *autobuss*
 bush *krūms, cers*; bilberry-bush
mētra; hazel-bush *lazda*; thorn-
 bush *ērķšķu krūms*
 bushy [= thick-tufted] *kupls*;
 [= bush-like] *krūmains*
 business *darīšana*; what business is it
 of yours? *kas tev par daļu?*
 businessman *veikalnieks*
 busy *nodarbināts, darbīgs*
 busy: to busy oneself [with] *rikoties*
 (*ar* + acc.)
 but *bet*; not... but... *nevis...*
bet...; not only... but (also)...
tiklab... kā (ar)...
 butcher *miesnieks*
 butter *sviests*
 butterfly *tauriņš*
 button *poga*
 buy (*no-*)*pirkt*; buy extra *piepirkt*;
 buy up *uzpirkt*
 buyer *pircējs*
 buzz *slkt, dūkt, spindzēt, sanēt*
 by (introducing agent of passive) *no*
 + gen. (but best avoided); (denoting
 place of seizure) *aiz* + gen.; by
 Tuesday *līdz otrdienai*
 by-gone *kādreizējs*
 byre *kūts* (f.)

cabbage *kāposti* (pl.)
 cabinet-maker *galdnieks*
 cafe *kafejnīca*
 cage *būris*

cake *kūka*; layer cake *torte*
 calculate (*iz-*)*rēķināt, aplēst*
 calculation *aplēse, aplēsums*
 calendar *kalendārs*
 calf *teļš*
 call *sauciens*
 call (*pa-*)*saukt*; call away
aizsaukt; call back *atsaukt*; call
 for help *saukt palīgā*; call in
 (intrans.) *iegriezties*; call out
izsaukt; call together *sasaukt*,
sakliegt, sazvanīt
 called: to be called *saukties*
 calm (adj.) *mierīgs, rāms*
 calm (trans.) (*ap-*)*klusināt, mierināt*;
 calm down (intrans.) (*no-*)*rimt*;
apklust
 calumniate *zaimot*
 camera *fotoaparāts*
 Canada *Kanāda*
 Canadian *Kanādas, kanādiešu*
 (invar. adj.); a Canadian
kanādietis, (f.) *-e*
 canary *kanārijputniņš*
 candle *svece*
 candlestick *lukturis*
 cannon *lielgabals*
 canvas [for painting] *audeklis*
 cap *cepure; aube*
 capable *spējīgs*
 capacity: to have a capacity of (see
 lesson 172), *ietilpt*
 capital: capital city *galvas pilsēta*;
 capital letter *lielais burts*
 caprice *untums*
 capricious *mainīgs*
 car *mašīna, automašīna, automobilis*,
auto (m. indec.)
 card [playing] *kārts* (f.)
 care *rūpes* (pl.), *rūpesti* (pl.), *raizes*
 (pl.); take care of *gādāt par* +
 acc.; take care of oneself *sargāties*

carefreeness *nebēda*
 careful *piesardzīgs, rūpīgs*
 careless *paviršs*
 caress *glāsts*
 caress (*pa-*) *glaudīt, glaust*
 caretaker *sētnieks*
 cargo *krava*
 carol *lļgot*
 carpet *paklājs*
 carriage *vagoni; kariete; carriage*
 step *kāpslis*
 carrion *maita*
 carrot *burkāns*
 carry (*pa-*) *nest; [in a vehicle] vest;*
 carry away *aiznest, aizvākt,*
aizvizināt; carry home pārnest;
 carry in *ienest*
 cart *rati (pl.); cart-load vezums*
 cart: cart off *aizvest*
 cart-load *vezums*
 carve [wood, etc.] *grebt*
 carver *griezējs*
 case: travelling-case *ceļa soma;*
 (gram.) *locījums; lower case*
 letter *mazais burts; upper case*
 letter *lielais burts*
 cash *skaidra nauda; in cash*
skaidrā naudā
 cash-register *kase*
 Caspian Sea *Kaspijas ezers, Kaspijas*
jūra
 cast: cast aside *pamest; cast one's*
 eyes around *aplaist acis; cast one's*
 eyes down *nodurt acis; cast one's*
 eyes over *pārļaist acis*
 castle *pils (f.); castle mound*
pilskalns
 cat *kaķis; it is raining cats and dogs*
lļst kā Jāņos
 catch *āķis*
 catch (*sa-*) *ķert; [of fish] noķert;*
 [in the act] *noķert; catch fire*

aizdegties; catch sight of ieraudzīt;
 catch up with *panākt*
 cattle *lopi (pl.); cattle-barn kūts*
 (f.); cattle-dealer *lopu tirgotājs;*
 cattle-track *olnca*
 cause *cēlonis*
 cause *nodarīt*
 cautious *apdomīgs, piesardzīgs*
 cave *ala*
 cave: cave in *brukt kopā, iegrūt*
 cavity *dobums*
 cawing *ķērciens*
 cayenne *turku pipari (pl.)*
 cease (intrans.) *mitēties, (no-)stāties,*
pāriet; cease blooming noziedēt
 ceiling *griesti (pl.)*
 celebrate (trans.) (*no-*) *svinēt*
 celebration *svinības (pl.), gavīles*
 (pl.)
 celebrity *zvaigzne*
 celery *selerija*
 cellar *pagrabs*
 cello *čello (m. indec.), čells*
 cemetery *kapi (pl.); kapsēta*
 censure *nopelt*
 cent *cents*
 centime *santīms*
 centimetre *centimetrs*
 centre *vidus*
 century *gadu simtenis, gadsimts;*
 centuries old *simtgadu (invar.*
 adj.)
 certain *zināms*
 Cēsis *Cēsis (f. pl.)*
 chain: chain of cliffs *klintaine;*
 chains *važas (pl.)*
 chair *krēsls*
 chamber *kambaris*
 champagne *šampanietis*
 champion *meistars*
 chance *izredze*
 chandelier *lustra*

change *mija; small change sīknauda*
 change (trans.) (*pār-*) *mainīt, (pār-*
grozīt, (pār-)mīt; (intrans.)
mainīties; change clothes
pārgērbties; change horses
pārjūgt; change into (trans.)
pārvērst; (intrans.) pārvērsties;
 change one's mind *apdomāties;*
 change places *mainīties vietām,*
pārsēsties; change seats mainīties
vietām, pārsēsties; change shoes,
 socks, etc. *pāraut; change trains*
pārsēsties
 chapter *nodaļa*
 character *raksturs*
 characteristic *raksturīgs*
 charger *rumaks*
 charity *žēlastība*
 Charles *Kārlis*
 charm: charm away *atburt*
 chase *dzīt, trenkt, triekt; chase away*
aizdzīt, aiztrenkt, aiztriekt; chase
 out *padzīt*
 chaste *šķīstis*
 chat *parunāties*
 chatter *plāpāt*
 chatterbox *auša (m. or f.)*
 cheap *lēts; fairly cheap palēts*
 cheapish *palēts*
 cheat (trans.) (*pie-*) *krāpt, šmāukt*
 cheek *vaigs*
 cheerful *jautrs*
 cheese *siers*
 cheque *čeks*
 cherry *ķirsis*
 chest (anat.) *krūts (f.), krūtis (f.*
 pl.); [= box] *šķirstis; ice-chest*
ledus skapis, ledusskapis
 chew *košļāt, kožļāt*
 Chicago *Čikaga*
 chicken *cālis; chicken [for eating]*
cāļa gaļa
 chide *rāt*
 chief (noun) *priekšnieks*
 chief (adj.) *galvenais*
 child *bērns*
 childhood *bērība*
 chill (adj.) *salts*
 chill (trans.) *apsaldēt*
 chilly *dzestrš*
 chimes *zvani (pl.)*
 chimney *skurstenis*
 China *Ķīna*
 Chinese *ķīniešu (invar. adj.); (adv.)*
ķīniski; a Chinese ķīnietis, (f.) -e
 chirping *čirkstēšana*
 chisel *kalts*
 choir *koris; male choir vīru koris*
 choke (trans.) *slāpēt, smacēt;*
 (intrans.) (*no-*) *smakt*
 choose *izraudzīt, izlasīt, izmeklēt*
 chop [= blow] *cirtiens*
 chop *cirst; chop down nocirst;*
 chop into *iecirst*
 chorus *koris*
 chosen *izredzēts*
 Christmas *Ziemsvētki (pl.)*
 church *baznīca; church-goer*
baznīcēns; churchmouse: as poor
 as a churchmouse *plikš kā*
baznīcas žurka; church service
dievkalpojums
 churn (*sa-*) *kult*
 churner *kūlējs*
 cigarette *cigarete*
 cinema *kino teātris, ķinītis, kino*
 (m. indec.)
 circumstance *apstākļi, stāvokļi;*
 under no circumstances *nekādā*
ziņā
 city *pilsēta; capital city galvas*
pilsēta; large city lielāpilsēta
 clad: to be clad *tērpties*
 clamour *blājs*

- clap [of thunder] *spēriens*
 clap: clap one's hands *plaukšķināt*
 clarity *skaidrība*
 clasp *aptvert*
 class *klase*; [= species] *kārta*
 classical *klasisks*
 clause *teikums*
 claw *nags*
 clay *māls* or *māli* (pl.); (adj.) *māla*
 (invar.)
 clean *tīrs, šķīstis*
 clean *tīrīt*
 clear *skaidrs, dzidrs; caurspīdīgs*;
 clear head *gaiša galva*
 clear: clear ground *līst līdumu*;
 clear up [a matter] *noskaidrot*
 clearer: forest-clearer *līdumnieks*
 clearing *izcirtums, cirtums, līdums*
 cleave *šķēlt*
 clever *gudrs, izveicīgs*
 cliff *klints* (f.); chain of cliffs
klintaine
 climb *kāpt*; climb about *kāpaļāt*;
 climb down *nokāpt*; climb in
iekāpt; climb on *uzkāpt*; climb
 over *pārkāpt*; climb up *uzkāpt*
 climber *kāpējs*
 cling: cling to *piekļauties*
 clippers *dzirkles* (pl.)
 cloak *mantija*; cloak-room
ģērbtuve
 clock *pulkstenis*; alarm-clock
modinātājs
 clod [of turf] *velēna*
 clog *koka tupele*
 close (adj.) *tuvs*; close by *pie rokas*
 close (trans.) *(aiz-)vērt, vērt ciet,*
(no-)slēgt; [by turning] *aizgriezt*;
 (intrans.) *(aiz-)vērties, vērties ciet,*
(no-)slēgties
 closed [of doors, etc.] *ciet(i)*
 (adv.)
- cloth *drēbe*; [home-woven]
audeklis; [woollen] *vadmala*; table-
 cloth *galdauds*
 clothe (trans.) *ģērbt, (ie-)tērpt*; to
 clothe oneself *tērpties*
 clothes *drēbes* (pl.); change one's
 clothes *pārgērbties*; to put on
 [of clothes] *ģērbt mugurā*; to take
 off [of clothes] *ģērbt nost*
 clothing *apģērbs*
 cloud *mākonis*
 cloud: to cloud the issue *laist kādam*
mīglu acīs; cloud over (intrans.)
apmākties; [of surface] *apsviest*
 cloudy *mākoņains*
 clove: clove of garlic *ķiploks*
 clover *āboliņš*
 clump *puduris*
 coach *kariete*
 coachman *braucējs*
 coal *ogle, ogles* (pl.); coal-mine
ogļraktuve; coals *ogles* (pl.)
 coalesce *saaugt*
 coarse *rupjš*; fairly coarse *parupjš*
 coarsish *parupjš*
 coast *krasts*
 coat *svārki* (pl.), *mētelis*; [of animal]
spalva; fur coat *kažoks*; rain-coat
lietus mētelis; tail-coat *fraka*;
 waistcoat *veste*
 coax *labināt*
 cobbler *kurpnieks*
 cobra *brīļu čūska*
 cocoa *kakao* (m. indec.)
 coffee *kafija*; coffee-lounge
kafejnīca
 coffin *zārks, šķirsts*
 cold (noun) *aukstums*
 cold (adj.) *auksts, salts*; I am cold
man ir auksti, man salst; my feet are
 cold *man salst kājas*; it is (very)
 cold outside *ārā (stipri) salst*; to
- get cold *nosalt*; I am getting cold
man metas auksti
 coldness *aukstums*
 collapse [of animates] *saļimt; brukt*
kopā, sabrukt, sagrūt, gāzties
 colleague *kollēga* (m. or f.)
 collect (trans.) *(sa-)krāt, iekrāt,*
lasīt
 collection *krājums*
 collide *sagrūsties, sadurties*
 colonel *pulkvedis*
 colour *krāsa*; water-colours *ūdens*
krāsas
 coloured: fawn-coloured *pāts*; gold-
 coloured *zeltains*; many-coloured
raibs; tri-coloured *trīskrāsains*
 colourful *raibs*
 colourless *bāls*
 column *stabs*
 comb *ķemme*; (zool.) *sekste*
 comb *(sa-)sukāt*; comb out
izsukāt
 combat *cīņiņš*
 combat *cīnīties*
 combine (trans.) *savienot*
 come *(at-)nākt*; [finally] *nonākt*;
 reading comes hard to me *man*
nākas grūti lasīt; come about
rasties; come across *sastapties ar*
 + acc.; come apart *(iz-)irt*;
 come crawling *atlikt*; come
 forward *uz āru nākt*; come home
pārnākt, pārrasties; come in
ienākt; come into bloom *riesties*;
 come into existence *rasties*; come
 into opposition *sadurties*; come
 jumping *atlēkt*; come loose
(at-)rist; come off [of paint, etc.]
iet nost; come on [of pains, etc.]
uznākt; come riding *atjāt*; come
 running *atskriet, attecēt*; come to
 [a place] *notikt*; come to the
- conclusion that... *nākt pie*
pārliecības, ka...; come together
sanākt; come to light *nākt*
gaismā; come to power *nākt pie*
varas; come undone *(at-)rist,*
norist; come untied *(at-)rist*;
 come up to *pienākt*
 comedy *komēdija*
 comfort *ērtība*
 comfort *mierināt, drošināt*
 comfortable *ērts*
 comical *komisks*
 command *pavēle, komanda*
 command *pavēlēt, komandēt*
 commendable *teicams*
 commerce *tirdzniecība*
 commission [someone to do some-
 thing] *uzdot + dat. + inf.*
 commitment *saistība*
 commodity *prece*
 common *parasts*
 Communist *komūnists*
 companion *biedrs; pavadonis, (f.) -e*;
 travelling companion *gaitu biedrs*
 company *sabiedrība, uzņēmums,*
firma; tuvums
 compare *salīdzināt*
 compass *kompas*
 compassion *žēlsirdība*
 compassionate *žēlsirdīgs*
 complacency *apmierinātība*
 complain *žēloties, sūrot, sūroties*
 complaint *sūdzība*
 complete (adj.) *pilnīgs*
 complete *pabeigt*; complete one's
 studies *izstudēt*
 completely (adv.) *gluži*
 completeness *pilnība*
 complex *komplekss*; Oedipus
 complex *Oidipa kompleks*
 complicate *sarežģīt*
 composer *skaņradis, komponists*

composure: to gather one's
 composure *saņemties*
 comprehend *izprast, sajēgt,*
apķert
 comrade *biedrs*
 conceal (*pa-*)*slēpt, paglabāt,*
noglabāt
 conception *jēdziens*
 concerned: as far as I am concerned
manis dēļ, manuprāt
 concerning *par + acc.*
 concert *koncerts*
 conclude (trans.) *nobeigt;* (intrans.)
nobeigties
 conclusion *slēdziens, lēmums;* come
 to the conclusion that... *nākt*
pie pārliecības, ka...
 concord *saskaņa*
 concrete *betons*
 condemn *nosodīt, notiesāt*
 condition *stāvoklis, apstākļi*
 conduct *vadīt;* [of orchestra, etc.]
diriģēt
 conductor [orchestral] *diriģents;*
 [railway] *konduktors*
 confess *atzīties*
 confidence *uzticība;* self-confidence
pašapziņa
 confirm (eccl.) *iesvētīt*
 confounded *pagāna* (invar. adj.)
 confused: become confused (*sa-*)
jukt, apmulst, samulst; I often get
 figures confused *man bieži jūk*
skaitļi
 confusion *sajukums, juceklis*
 congregate (*sa-*)*lasīties*
 congregation *draudze*
 coniferous: coniferous forest *sils;*
 coniferous tree *skuju koks*
 conjugate *locīt*
 conjugation *konjugācija*
 conjure *burt*

connection *attiecība*
 connoisseur *zinātājs*
 conquer *uzvarēt, pieveikt*
 conquest *uzvara*
 conscience *sirdsapziņa*
 consecrate *iesvētīt*
 consider *apsvērt, apdomāt, nodomāt,*
vērā likt; consider as *uzskatīt par*
 + acc.
 considerable *prāvs, pamatīgs*
 considered: to be considered
skaitīties
 consonant *līdzskanis*
 consort: consort with *saieties ar +*
 acc.
 constellation *zvaigznājs, zvaigznājs*
 construct (*uz-*)*būvēt*
 consume *patērēt*
 contain *saturēt*
 contemptuously: to treat con-
 temptuously *mīt kājām*
 contentment *apmierinātība*
 contest *sacīkste; cīņa*
 continually *diendienā*
 continuation *turpinājums*
 continue *turpināt*
 contract (trans.) *savilkt;* contract
 peace *līgts mieru*
 contribute *ziedot*
 contrive *panākt*
 control *valdīt*
 convenience *ērtība*
 conversation *saruna*
 converse (*sa-*)*runāties*
 conveyance *braucamais*
 conviction *pārliecība*
 convince *pārliecināt, ieskaidrot,*
iestāstīt
 convulsion *konvulsija*
 cook *pavārs, (f.) -e*
 cook (trans.) *vārīt;* (intrans.)
vārīties

cooking: to be cooking (intrans.)
vārīties; cooking pot *katls*
 cool (adj.) *vēss, dzestrs*
 cool (trans.) *dzesināt;* cool one's
 heels in gaol *sēdēt (cietumā);*
 (intrans.) [of water, etc.] *atdzist*
 coolness *vēsums*
 cooper *mucinieks*
 cope: cope with *tikt galā ar + acc.*
 copeck *kapeika*
 copper [metal] *varš;* [container]
katls
 copy *atdarināt; norakstīt;* copy out
pārrakstīt
 cord *saite, valgs;* umbilical cord
nabas saite
 cork *korķis;* corkscrew *korķu*
velkamais
 cork: cork up [bottle, etc.] *aizbāzt*
 corn *labība;* ear of corn *vārpa;*
 corn-field *druva*
 corner *stūris; kaktis;* [of building]
paksis; around the corner *aiz*
stūra
 corn-field *druva*
 corpse *līķis, mironis*
 corpulent *drukns, tukls*
 correct (adj.) *pareizs*
 correct (*iz-*)*labot*
 correspond *sarakstīties;* correspond
 to *atbilst + dat.*
 corridor *gaitenis*
 Cossack *kazaks*
 cost *maksāt*
 cotton *kokvilna*
 cough *klepus;* whooping-cough
garais klepus
 count (trans.) (*sa-*)*skaitīt;* count in
ieskaitīt; count up *saskaitīt*
 counting: not counting me *bez*
manis
 country [= countryside] *lauki (pl.);*

in the country *uz laukiem;*
 [= nation] *zeme*
 country (adj.) *lauku* (invar.);
 country-dweller *laucinieks;*
 country-house *lauku mājas (pl.)*
 countryman *tautietis*
 courage *drosme, dūša;* summon
 one's courage *saņemt dūšu,*
saņemties
 courageous *drosmīgs*
 course *gaita, gājums*
 court [of law] *tiesa; galms*
 courtyard *sētšvidus*
 cousin *brālēns (m.), māšļa (f.)*
 cover (trans.) (*ap-*)*segt;* [by smear-
 ing] (*no-*)*ziest;* [with snow]
apsnigt; [with snow, etc.] *aizputināt;*
 [by spreading] (*uz-*)*klāt, apklāt;*
 [by strewing] *nokaisīt;* cover over
pārklāt; cover up *aizsegt, aizklāt;*
 cover [distance] *nobraukt*
 covered: to be covered [with moisture,
 steam, etc.] *apsvīst;* covered in
 sores *vāšains*
 covering *segums, apsegs*
 cow *govs (f.)*
 cowardly *gļēvs*
 crack *plaisa, plaisma*
 crack (intrans.) (*sa-*)*sprāgt;*
brakš(ķ)ēt
 crackle *sprakšķēt, skrēdāt, sprēgāt,*
knikšķēt
 cracknel *kliņģeris*
 cradle *šūpulis*
 craftsman: master craftsman
meistars
 crane *dzērve*
 crash! (interj.) *plaukš!*
 crawl *līst, lodāt;* come crawling
atīst; crawl away *aizlīst;* crawl
 in *ielīst;* crawl out *izlīst;* crawl
 under *pallst*

crawler <i>līdējs</i>	crush: crush underfoot <i>samīt</i>
crazy <i>dulls</i>	crust <i>garoza</i>
creaking <i>čirkstēšana</i>	cry <i>raudāt; brēkt, rēkt; cry out</i>
cream <i>krējums</i>	<i>ieļļauties; to make cry raudināt</i>
crease <i>grumba</i>	crystal <i>kristalls, kristāls</i>
create <i>radīt</i>	cucumber <i>gurķis</i>
created: to be created <i>rasties</i>	culprit <i>vainīgais</i>
creator <i>radītājs</i>	cultivate [soil] <i>apstrādāt, kopt</i>
creature <i>radījums; būte, būtne</i>	cup <i>tase; kauss</i>
creep: creep in <i>ielst; creep under</i>	cupboard <i>skapis</i>
<i>palst; creep up to piellst</i>	curiosity <i>ziņkāre</i>
crest <i>cekuls</i>	curious <i>ziņkārlīgs</i>
crevice <i>plaisa, plaisma</i>	current <i>straume; [electrical, etc.]</i>
crew <i>komanda</i>	<i>strāva</i>
crime <i>noziedzums</i>	curse <i>lāsts</i>
criminal <i>noziedznieks</i>	curse (trans.) <i>(no-)lādēt</i>
critic <i>kritiķis</i>	curtain <i>aizkars; [theatre]</i>
criticism <i>kritika</i>	<i>priekšgars</i>
criticize <i>(no-)pelt</i>	curve <i>līkums</i>
croak <i>ķērkt</i>	custom <i>paradums</i>
crockery <i>trauki (pl.)</i>	customary <i>pierasts</i>
crooked <i>šķībs, līks, līkumains,</i>	cut <i>griezt; cut off nogriezt; cut</i>
<i>līkumots</i>	<i>open (uz-)šķērst; cut to pieces</i>
crop: crop failure <i>neraža</i>	<i>sacirst; cut square (no-)tēst; cut</i>
cross <i>krusts; cross-roads krustceļš;</i>	<i>through pārgriezt; cut up</i>
<i>at the cross-roads krustceļos</i>	<i>sagriezt</i>
cross (trans.) <i>šķērsot</i>	cutter <i>griezējs; wood-cutter</i>
crow <i>vārna</i>	<i>mežinieks</i>
crow [of cock] <i>dziedāt</i>	cycle <i>divritenis, ritenis; motor-cycle</i>
crowd <i>pūlis, pulks, bars; follow the</i>	<i>motocikls</i>
<i>crowd peldēt straumei līdz(i)</i>	dam [= bank] <i>valnis</i>
crowd (intrans.) <i>drūzmēties; crowd</i>	damage <i>dragāt</i>
<i>together saplūst</i>	dame: dame's violet <i>naktsvijole</i>
cruel <i>nežēlīgs</i>	damp <i>mikls, drēgns</i>
cruelty <i>nežēlība</i>	dampish <i>valgans, valgs</i>
crumble (trans.) <i>(sa-)drupināt;</i>	dance <i>deja; [= ball] balle; folk-dance</i>
<i>(intrans.) drupt; crumble apart</i>	<i>tautas deja</i>
<i>sadrūpt; crumble off nodrūpt;</i>	dance <i>dejojot, dancot, diet; dance on</i>
crumble to pieces <i>(sa-)birzt</i>	<i>and on dejojot uz nebēdu; dance a</i>
crumple [by sitting on] (trans.)	<i>while padejojot</i>
<i>sasēdēt</i>	dancer <i>dejojotājs, (f.) -a</i>
crusade <i>krusta karš, krustkarš</i>	

Dane <i>dānis, (f.) -iete</i>	<i>apstulbt; my eyes are dazzled</i>
danger <i>briesmas (pl.)</i>	<i>man apžilbt acis</i>
dangerous <i>blstams</i>	dead <i>pagalam (adv.)</i>
Danish <i>dāņu (invar. adj.); dāniski</i>	deadly <i>nāvīgs</i>
<i>(adv.)</i>	deaf <i>kurls</i>
Danube <i>Donava</i>	deafness <i>kurlums</i>
dare <i>uzdrīkstēties, drīkstēt,</i>	dealer: cattle-dealer <i>Iopu tirgotājs</i>
<i>uzdrošināties</i>	dear [= expensive] <i>dārgs; [= beloved]</i>
dark <i>tumšs; fairly dark patumšs;</i>	<i>ed] dārgs, miļš</i>
<i>grow dark (sa-)tumst, aptumst;</i>	deariness <i>dārgums</i>
<i>it is growing dark metas tumšs,</i>	death <i>nāve; beat to death nosist;</i>
<i>metas vakars; dark-haired person</i>	<i>death penalty nāves sods</i>
<i>tumšmatis, (f.) -e; dark red</i>	debt <i>parāds</i>
<i>tumšsarkans</i>	deceased: recently deceased <i>nelaiķa</i>
darkish <i>patumšs</i>	<i>(invar. adj.)</i>
darkness <i>tumsa</i>	deceit <i>viltus</i>
dart <i>šaudīties; dart out izšauties</i>	deceive <i>(pie-)krāpt, (pie-)vilt,</i>
dashing <i>brašs</i>	<i>šmaukt; maldināt</i>
dative <i>datīvs (noun)</i>	deceiver <i>viltnieks</i>
Daugava <i>Daugava</i>	December <i>decembris</i>
daughter <i>meita; god-daughter</i>	decent [colloq. for good] <i>kārtīgs</i>
<i>krustmeita; step-daughter</i>	decide <i>(no-)lemt</i>
<i>pameita; daughter-in-law vedekla</i>	deciduous: deciduous tree <i>lapu koks</i>
dawn <i>ausma</i>	decipher <i>burtot</i>
dawn <i>(iz-)aust</i>	decision <i>lēmums</i>
day <i>diena; every day katru dienu,</i>	deck <i>klājs; on deck uz klāja</i>
<i>diendienā; day and night dienu un</i>	declension <i>deklinācija</i>
<i>nakti; birthday dzimšanas diena;</i>	decline (intrans.) [= refuse] <i>liegties;</i>
<i>feast-day svētki (pl.); good day!</i>	<i>(trans.) (gram.) locīt</i>
<i>labdien!; midday dienas vidus,</i>	decorate <i>(ap-)pušķot, izpušķot,</i>
<i>dienvidus; Midsummer's Day Jāņi</i>	<i>izrotāt; [with embroidery, carvings,</i>
<i>(pl.); Name Day vārda diena; St.</i>	<i>etc.] rakstīt</i>
<i>John's Day Jāņi (pl.); on that day</i>	decoration <i>izdaiļojums, izrotājums</i>
<i>today; these days šais (šīns,</i>	decorative <i>greznis</i>
<i>šajos) laikos; one of these days</i>	decrease (intrans.) <i>kristies,</i>
<i>gan jau; in those days tanls (tais,</i>	<i>(sa-)plakt, (no-)dilt</i>
<i>tajos) laikos; working day</i>	deduce <i>secināt</i>
<i>darbdiena; Day of Judgement</i>	deep <i>dziļš; [of voice, sound] dobjš</i>
<i>pastartiesa; day after tomorrow</i>	defeat <i>pieveikt</i>
<i>parīt</i>	defend <i>aizstāvēt; defend oneself</i>
daybreak <i>ausma</i>	<i>aizstāvēties</i>
dazzled: to be dazzled <i>(ap-)žilbt,</i>	defiant <i>spīrs</i>

definite *noteikts*; (gram.) *noteikts*
 degeneracy: fall into degeneracy
izvirst
 degenerate [morally] *izvirst, pakļst*
 degree [= level] *pakāpe*; [= diploma] *grads*, (often) *grāds*; [of heat] *grads*, (often) *grāds*
 deity *dievlba*
 delay *kavēšanās* (refl.)
 delay (trans.) (*aiz-*)*kavēt, vilcināt; atlikt*
 delicate *glezns; kuls*
 delight *tiksme*
 delight (trans.) *sajūsmināt*
 deliverance *glābiņš*
 delusions *maldī* (pl.)
 delve: delve into *iedziņināties* + loc.
 demolish (*sa-*)*graut*
 Denmark *Dānija*
 denseness *biezums*
 dentist *zobārsts*
 depart *atiet, aizceļot*; departing rider *aizjājējs*
 depend: it all depends on the circumstances *kā kuru reizi*
 deplore *apraudāt*
 deport *aizvest*
 deposit [money] *iemaksāt*
 depository *krātuve*
 depreciate (intrans.) *nokristies*
 depress *nospiest, nomākt*
 depth *dziļums, dziļe*
 deride *izsmiet, apsmiet*
 derisory *smiekla* (invar. adj.)
 descend *noiet*
 describe *aprakstīt, (at-)tēlot*
 desert *tuksnesis*
 design *zīmējums*
 desire *kāre, iekāre, ilgas* (pl.); desire for *ilgas pēc* + gen.
 desire *gribēt, vēlēties*
 despair *izmisums, necerība*

despair *izmist, izsamist*
 despise *nicināt; uzspļaut* + dat.
 dessert: for dessert (adv.) *uzēdām*
 destination *mērķis*
 destroy (*iz-*)*postīt, (sa-)graut, iznīcināt*
 detain *aizkavēt*
 determine *nospraust*
 detest (*ie-*)*nīst*
 detour: make a detour about *mest likumu ap* + acc.
 devastate (*iz-*)*postīt*
 develop (trans.) *attīstīt*; (intrans.) *veidoties*
 development *attīstība*
 devil *velns, jods*; the devil take him! *rauj viņu velns!*
 devise *izdomāt*
 devoted *padevēģs*
 devout *dievbijģs*
 dew *rasa*; dew-covered *rasots*
 dexterous *veikls*
 diamond *dimants*
 dictate *diktēt*
 dictionary *vārdnīca*
 die (*no-*)*mirt*; [of animals] *nosprāgt*; [of plants] *iznīkt*; die out *izmirt*
 differ *atšķirties*
 difference *atšķirība*; it makes no difference *vienalga*
 different *citāds*; different from *citāds nekā*
 difficult *grūts*
 difficulty *grūtība, grūtums*; get along with difficulty *izvilkties*
 dig *rakt*; dig for gold *rakt zeltu*; dig in (trans.) *ierakt*; dig out *izrakt*; dig up *uzrakt*
 dim *blāvs, pusgaišs*
 diminish (intrans.) (*sa-*)*plakt, sarukt*
 dining: dining-room *ēdamistaba*

dinner *vakariņas* (pl.)
 dinosaur *dinozaurs*
 dip *mērkt*
 diphthong *divskanis*
 direct (adj.) *tiešs*
 direct (trans.) (*pie-*)*vērst*
 direction *virziens; puse*
 director *priekšnieks*
 dirges *llķu mūzika*
 dirty *netīrs*
 dirty [by wearing] *savalkāt*
 disappear (*pa-*)*zust, nozust, izzust*
 disappoint *vilt*
 disappointed: to be disappointed *vilties*
 disaster *nelaime; posts*
 disc *ripa*
 discharged: discharged soldier *brīvlaists*
 disclose *atsegt*
 discover *atklāt, uzzināt*
 discovered: to be discovered *atklāties*
 discovery *atklājums, atradums*; new discovery *jaunatklāsme*
 disease *slimība, kaite*
 disembark *izkāpt*
 dish *bloda, trauks*
 dishevelled *izpūris*
 dishonest *negodģgs*
 disintegrate *sairt*
 dismiss *atlaist*
 dismount: dismount from a horse *kāpt no zirga*
 disorder *sajukums*; get into disorder *sajukt*
 disperse (intrans.) *izklst*
 display: display-window *skatlogs*
 displeasure *nepatika*
 disposition *oma*
 dissect (*uz-*)*šķērst*
 dissolute: dissolute fellow *plencis*

dissolve (trans.) [of marriage] *šķirt*;
 (intrans.) (*iz-*)*kust, (iz-)šķīst*
 dissuade *atrunāt*
 distaff: a full distaff *kodaļa, kodeļa*
 distance *attālums; tāle, tālums*;
 remove to a distance (trans.) *attālināt*
 distant *tāls, tāļģš*; distant neighbourhood *pārnovads*; from distant places *no malu malām*
 distil (trans.) *dedzināt*
 distinction *atšķirība*
 distinguish (trans.) [= tell apart] *atšķirt*; [= to make out] *saredzēt*
 distressing *sāpģgs*
 distribute *izdalīt*
 district *apgabals, apvidus, puse*
 disturb *traucēt*
 ditch *grāvis*
 dive (*ie-*)*nirt*
 diver *ūdenslīdģjs*
 divert *novērst*
 divide (trans.) *dallt; šķirt*
 divinity *dievlba*
 dizzy: to become dizzy (*ap-*)*skurbt*;
 to make dizzy *reibināt*
 do (*pa-*)*darīt, izdarīt, iesākt*;
 make do *iztikt*
 doctor *ārsts*
 doctrine *mācība*
 doe *stirna*
 dog *suns*; dog-rose *meža roze*;
 it is raining cats and dogs *līst kā Jāģnos*
 doing *darģšana*
 dollar *dolars*
 donkey *ģzelis*
 door *durvis* (f. pl.); front door *namdurvis* (f. pl.); next door (adv.) *kaimģģnos*; space behind the door *atdzurve*; door-post *stendere*;
 door-step *slieģsnis, slieģsnis*

doubt *šaubas* (pl.)
 doubt *šaubīties, apšaubīt*
 doubtful *šaubīgs*
 dough *mlkla*
 dove *balodis*
 down (adv.) *lejā, uz leju, leju*;
 down below (adv.) *apakšā*
 downhill (adv.) *leju*
 downstairs (adv.) *apakšā*
 downstream: downstream from
apakšpus + gen., lejpūs + gen.
 downwards (adv.) *lejā, uz leju, leju*
 dowry *pūrs*
 doze: doze off *aizsnausties*
 dozen *ducis + gen.*
 drag (trans.) *(pa-)vilkt, stiept*; drag
 away *aizvilkt, aizvizināt*; drag
 hither *atstiept*; drag home
pārvilkt; drag a little *pavilkt*;
 drag on (intrans.) *vilkties, ieitgt*;
 drag oneself *vilkties*; drag oneself
 home *pārvilkties*; drag oneself a
 little *pavilkties*; drag oneself out
izvilkties
 dragon *pūķis*
 drain *noteka*
 drain: drain off (trans.) *novadīt*
 drama *drāma*
 dramatist *drāmatīķis*
 draught [of liquid] *malks*
 draw *(uz-)zīmēt*; [of curtains]
aizvilkt; draw from *smelties*;
 draw in *ievilkt*
 drawing *zīmējums*; drawing-board
studiju dēlītis
 dreadful *briesmīgs, šausmīgs, baigs*
 dream *sapnis, sapņojums*
 dream *sapņot; pasapņot; izsapņot*
 dreaming *sapņojums*
 dreamlike *sapņains*
 dreamy *sapņains*
 drenched: to be drenched *sallt*

dress [= clothing] *tērps*; dress-
 maker *šuvēja*
 dress (trans.) *ģērbt, tērpt*; (intrans.)
(ap-)ģērbties; dress up
(uz-)postties
 dressed: get dressed *(ap-)ģērbties*
 dressing: dressing-room *ģērbtuve*
 drift: drift-ice *vižņi* (pl.)
 drill *apmācība*
 drink *dzēriens; dzira*
 drink *(ie-)dzert*; [soup] *(ie-)strēbt*;
 overdrink *pārdzerties*
 drinker *dzērājs*
 drinking *dzeršana*
 drip *pilēt*
 drive (trans.) *dzīt*; [of car] *vadīt*;
 (intrans.) *braukt*; drive away
 (trans.) *aizdzīt, (aiz-)raidīt*;
 drive home (trans.) *pārdzīt*;
 (intrans.) *pārbraukt*; drive in
 (trans.) *iedzīt*; [of nails] *iesist*;
 (intrans.) *iebraukt*; drive off
 (intrans.) *aizbraukt*; drive out
 (trans.) *izdzīt, iztrenkt, iztriekt*;
 (intrans.) *izbraukt*; drive over
 (intrans.) *pārbraukt*; drive
 together (intrans.) *sabraukt*;
 drive up (intrans.) *piebraukt*;
uzbraukt
 driver *braucējs, šoferis*; engine-
 driver *mašīnists*
 drone *dūkt, dunēt*
 droop *(no-)vīst*
 drop *piliens, pile, lāse*; a drop in the
 ocean *kā piliens jūrā*
 drop: drop in [= fall in] *iebirt*;
 [= call in] *iegriezties*; drop off
nobirt; drop on to *uzpilēt*
 drown (trans.) *noslīcināt*; (intrans.)
(no-)sllkt
 drowned: to be drowned *noslīkt*
 drowsy: become drowsy *samiegoties*

drunk: to get drunk *iereibt*
 drunkard *dzērājs, plencis*
 dry *sauss*; fairly dry *pasauss*; dry
 grass *kūla*
 dry (trans.) *žāvēt*; (intrans.)
(sa-)žūt; dry off (intrans.) *nožūt*;
 dry out (intrans.) *izkalst*;
(iz-)žūt, sažūt; dry up (intrans.)
(sa-)kalst, izsikt
 drying: drying-shed *rija*
 dryish *pasauss*
 duck *pīle*; wild duck *meža pīle*
 due: to be due *pienākties*
 dull [= tedious] *garlaicīgs*;
 [= unintelligent] *stulbs, truls*
 dullness [= tedium] *garlaicība*
 dumb *mēms*
 dune *kāpa*
 during *laikā* (postp. + gen.)
 dusky *krēslains*
 dust *putekļi* (pl.), *pīšļi* (pl.); speck of
 dust *puteklis*
 dusty *putekļains*; become dusty
noputēt
 Dutch *Holandes* (invar. adj.);
holandiešu (invar. adj.); (adv.)
holandiski
 Dutchman *holandietis*, (f.) *-e*
 duty *uzdevums, pienākums*
 dwarf *rūķis*
 dwell *dzīvot, mājot, mist, uzturēties*
 dweller: country-dweller *laucinieks*
 dwelling *mājoklis, mitekļis*
 dwindle [of strength] *zust*
 dye *krāsa*
 dye *(no-)krāsot*
 dying: dying person *mirējs*

each (adj. & pron.) *katrs*; (as
 distributive) *pa + dat.* (see lesson
 98); each time *katreiz*

eager *kārs, dedzīgs*; eager for *kārs
 uz + acc.*
 eagle *ērglis*
 ear *auss* (f.); [of corn] *vārpa*; prick
 up one's ears *auslīties*
 early (adj.) *agrs*; (adv.) *agri*; early
 in the morning *agri no rīta*; fairly
 early (adj.) *paagrs*
 earlyish (adj.) *paagrs*
 earn *(no-)pelnīt*; earn one's living
pelnīt sev maizi; earn a little
papelnīt
 earth *zeme*; the ends of the earth
pasaules mala; on the face of the
 earth *zemes virsū*; how on earth?
kā gan?; where on earth? *kur
 gan?*; who [what] on earth? *kas
 gan?*; whom [what] on earth? *ko
 gan?*
 earthquake *zemestrīce*
 east *austrumi* (pl.); in the east
austrumos; Far East *Tālie*
austrumi; Middle East *Vidējie*
austrumi; (adj.) *austrumu* (invar.
 adj.)
 Easter *Lieldienas* (pl.)
 eastern *austrumu* (invar. adj.)
 easy *viegls*
 eat *(pa-)ēst, apēst*; eat away *saēst*;
 eat one's fill *paēsties*; eat up
apēst, izēst
 echo *atbals* (f.)
 echo (trans.) *atbalsot*
 eddy *atvars*
 edge *mala*; forest's edge *mežmala*
 edible *ēdams*
 educate *audzināt*
 educated *izglītots*
 education *izglītība*
 eel *zutis*
 effect *iespalds*; under the effects of
iespaidā (postp. + gen.)

egg *ola*
 Egypt *Ēģipte*
 Egyptian *Ēģiptes, ēģiptiešu* (invar. adj.); an Egyptian *ēģiptietis, (f.) -e*
 eight *astoņi, astoņēji*; eight hundred *astotšimt, astoņi simti*; eight hundredth *astotšimtais*
 eighteen *astotņpadsmit*
 eighteenth *astotņpadsmitais*
 eighth *astotais*
 eightieth *astotņdesmitais*
 eighty *astotņdesmit*
 either: either... or... *vai nu... vai...*
 eke: eke out a living *izvilkties*
 elapse [of time] *paiet, notecēt*
 elbow *elkonis*
 elect (adj.) *izredzēts*
 elect *vēlēt*
 electric: electric light globe *spuldze*
 electricity *elektrība*
 elegant *smalks*
 elephant *zilonis*; [elephant's] trunk *snuķis*
 eleven *vienpadsmit*
 eleventh *vienpadsmitais*
 else: somewhere else *citur, *citurieni*
 elsewhere *citur, *citurieni*
 embark *kāpt kuģi*
 embellishment *izdaiļojums*
 embrace *apkampt, (ap-)skaut, aptvert, apņemt*
 emerge *iznirt, uz āru nākt*
 emigrant *emigrants*
 eminent *dižs*
 emotional *emocionāls*
 emperor *ķeizars*
 emphasize *izcelt*
 employed *nodarbināts*
 employee *darbinieks*
 emptiness *tukšums*

empty *tukšs*; empty-handed *tukšām rokām*
 empty (trans.) *izkravāt*
 enchant *apburt, noburt*
 enchanting *burvīgs*
 encircle *aplenkt*
 enclose *apstāt*
 enclosure *aploks*
 encourage *drošināt*
 end *beigas* (pl.); *gals*; the ends of the earth *pasaules mala*
 end (trans.) *nobeigt*; (intrans.) *beigties, noslēgties*
 ending (gram.) *galotne*
 endless *bezgalīgs*
 endure *izturēt, ciest, panest*
 enemy *ienaidnieks*
 energy *spars*
 engage (*sa-*)*llgt*; engage in *saistīties*
 engine *mašīna*; engine-driver *mašīnists*
 engineer *inženieris*
 England *Anglija*
 English *angļu* (invar. adj.); *angliski* (adv.)
 Englishman *anglis, (f.) -iete*
 engrossed: to become engrossed *aizrauties*
 enigmatic *miklains*
 enjoy (*iz-*)*baudīt*
 enjoyable *amizants*
 enormous *milzīgs*
 enough *diezgan*; to be enough *pietikt*
 enquire *vaicāt, jautāt, taujāt*
 enquiry *prasīšana*
 enraged *nikns*
 enrol *iestāties*
 enter (intrans.) *ienākt, ieiet*; enter into *saistīties*
 enterprise *uzņēmums*

enthusiasm *sajūsma*
 entice *vilināt*
 entire *pilnīgs*
 entrance *ieēja*; vehicular entrance *iebrauktuve*
 entrust *uzticēt*
 envelope *aploksne*
 environment *apkārtnē*
 envy *skaudība*
 envy (*ap-*)*skaust*
 equip *izriķot* (rare)
 erase *izdzēst*
 Ernest *Ernests*
 err *maldīties, pārskatīties*
 erroneous *aplams*
 error *kļūda*; to make an error in speaking *pārteikties*; to make an error in writing *pārrakstīties*
 escape *aizbēgt, aizmukt, aizsprukt, (iz-)glābties, izlauzties*
 especially *it īpaši*
 essence *būtība*
 establish (*no-*)*dibināt*
 estate *muīža*
 esteem *ieredzēt*
 estimate *aplēse, aplēsums*
 estimate *aplēst*
 Estonia *Igaunija*
 Estonian *igauņu* (invar. adj.); (adv.) *igauņiski*; an Estonian *igaunis, (f.) -iete*
 eternal *mūžīgs*
 eternally *mūžam*
 eternity *mūžība*
 Europe *Eiropa*
 European *Eiropas* (invar. adj.); *eiropisks*; a European *eiropietis, (f.) -e*
 Eve *Ieva*
 Eveline *Evelīna*
 even (adv.) *pat*; not even *pat ne, ne arī*; even a little *kaut cik, kaut drusku*; even if *ja arī*
 evening *vakars*; good evening! *labvakar!*; this evening *šovakar*; yesterday evening *vakarvakarā*; amuse oneself during an evening, have an evening party *vakarēt*; evening meal *vakariņas* (pl.); evening star *vakara zvaigzne*
 event *notikums*
 eventuate *iznākt*
 ever (adv.) *kādreiz*; for ever *mūžam*; ever + comp. *arvien + comp., aizvien + comp.*; ever so white, etc. *balts, etc. jo balts etc.*
 every *katrs*; *ik* (indec.); everybody *visi* (pl.); every day *katru dienu, diendienā*; every moment *ik brīdī*; every month *ik mēnesī*; in every respect *visādi*; everything *viss*; every time *katrreiz*; everywhere *visur, *visurieni*; from everywhere *no malu malām*
 everybody *visi* (pl.)
 everything *viss*
 everywhere *visur, *visurieni*
 evident: become evident *atklāties*
 evil (noun) *launums*
 evil (adj.) *launs, negants*
 evil-doer *laundaris*
 exact *pareizs*
 exactly *tieši*
 examination *pārbaudījums*; fail an examination *neizturēt pārbaudījumu*; pass an examination *izturēt pārbaudījumu*
 examine *pārbaudīt*; *aplūkot*
 example *piemērs*; for example *piemēram*
 excellent *pirmklasīgs*
 except, excepting *izņemot*
 exceptionally + adj. or adv. *retl*

- excerpt *izvilkums*
 excess *pārmērība*
 excessive *lieks*
 excessively *pārlietu*
 exchange *mainīt, (pār-)mīt*
 excitable *tramīgs*
 excite *satraukt, uztraukt;*
(ie-)kairināt
 exclaim *izsaukt, izsaukties*
 exclude *izslēgt*
 excuse *atvainot; excuse me!*
 piedod! piedodiet!; excuse oneself
 aizbildināties
 executioner *bende (m.), soģis (rare)*
 exercise *vingrinājums; written*
 exercise uzdevums; exercise-book
 burtnīca
 exercise (trans.) *vingrināt*
 exert: exert oneself *ņemties*
 exertion *piepūle*
 exhale *izelpot*
 exhausted: to be exhausted [of
 animates] *izvārgt; [of water,*
 supplies, etc.] *izsikt*
 exile *trimdinieks*
 exist *eksistēt, pastāvēt*
 existence: come into existence
rasties
 exit *izeja*
 expect *(sa-)gaidīt*
 expel *izdzīt*
 expensive *dārgs*
 expensiveness *dārgums*
 experience *pārdzīvojums; new*
 experience *jaunatklāsmē*
 experience *pārdzīvot, izbaidīt*
 expert (noun) *zinātājs*
 explain *skaidrot, paskaidrot,*
ieskaidrot, izskaidrot
 explanation *paskaidrojums*
 explore *pētīt*
 explosion *sprādziens*
- export(s) *eksports*
 export *eksportēt*
 express: express train *ātrvilciens*
 express *izsacīt*
 expression *izteiciens*
 extend (trans.) *izplest; (intrans.)*
sniegties, pļesties, stiepties
 extensive *plašs*
 exterminate *izkaut, nomaitāt*
 external *ārējs*
 extinguish *(iz-)dzēst*
 extinguished: to be extinguished
(iz-)dzist, nodzist, apdzist
 extol *cildināt*
 extort *izspiest*
 extra: gather extra *pielasīt; pour in*
 extra *pieliet; pay extra*
piemaksāt; buy extra piepirkt
 extract *izvilkums*
 extract: extract the root (math.)
izvilkt sakni
 extravagance *pārmērība*
 extreme (adj.) *galējs*
 extremely *pārlietu*
 extremity *galotne*
 exultation *gaviles (pl.)*
 eye *acs (f.); my eyes are dazzled*
man apžilbst acis; as far as the eye
 can see *cik tālu acis sniedz*
 eye-lid *plakstiņš*
- face *seja; red-faced sārts; wash*
 one's face *mazgāt muti; [= sur-*
 face] *virsus, virsa; rock-face*
klintaine; on the face of the earth
zemes virsū
 fact *fakts; in fact faktiski*
 factory *fabrika*
 factual *faktisks*
 faculty *fakultāte*
 fade *(no-)vīst; plukt, brukt*

- fail [examination] *neizturēt; [of*
 strength] *zust*
 failure: crop-failure *neraža*
 faint: faint-hearted *gļēvs*
 faint *(no-)ģībt*
 fair (noun) *gada tirgus*
 fair [= comely] *daiļš, piemīllīgs;*
 [= light-coloured] *gaišs; fair-*
 haired person *gaišmatis, (f.) -e;*
 [= considerable] a fair way off
 (adv.) *patālu*
 fairy *lauma; fairy-tale pasaka*
 faith *ticība*
 falcon *vanags*
 fall *kritiens*
 fall *krist; gāzties; [of leaves, tears,*
 etc.] *birt; stumbling and falling*
klupdams krizdams; fall apart
(sa-)irt, izirt, sakrist; fall asleep
(ie-)migt, aizmigt; fall down
nokrist; nomesties; brukt; [of
 clothing] *brukt zemē; fall in ie-*
krist; iebirt; fall in love with iemilē-
ties + loc.; fall into degeneracy
izvirst; fall off nokrist; nobirt; fall
 on *uzbirt; klupt virsū; fall out*
izkrist; izbirt; [= disagree] saplē-
ties; fall to pieces (sa-)lūzt, (sa-)
šķīst, sagrūt; fall to ruins sagrūt;
 fall sick *saslimt; fall silent ap-*
 rimt; fall upon *uzbrukt, brukt virsū;*
uzgāzties
 fallow (noun) *atmata, nora*
 false [= incorrect]: false notions
maldi (pl.); [= artificial] lieks;
 false teeth *liekie zobi*
 fame *slava*
 familiar *aprasts*
 family *ģimene; head of the family*
ģimenes galva (m.)
 famine *bads*
 famous *slavens*
- fangs *zobi (pl.)*
 far (adv.) *tālu (occ. tāli); (adj.) tāls*
 (occ. *tāļš*); Far East *Tālie*
austrumi (pl.); far-sighted
tālredzīgs; as far as līdz + dat.;
 as far as I am concerned *manis*
dē], manuprāt; as far as the eye can
 see *cik tālu acis sniedz*
 fare *klāties*
 farewell (noun) *ardievas (pl.);*
 (interj.) *ardievu!; bid farewell*
 to *atvadīties no + gen.*
 farm (*lauku*) *mājas (pl.); farm-*
 animal *lops; farm-girl meita;*
 farm-hand *puisis; farm-house*
 (*lauku*) *mājas (pl.); farm-worker*
kalps
 farmer *saimnieks; peasant-farmer*
zemnieks
 farthing *vērđiņš*
 fascinated: to become fascinated
aizrauties
 fashion: old-fashioned *vecmodīgs*
 fast (adj.) *ātrs; (adv.) ātri; [of*
 doors, windows, etc.] *ciet; hold*
 fast *saturēt; hold fast to*
pieturēties
 fasten *spraust; fasten to piespraust*
 fastidious *izvēllīgs*
 fat (noun) *tauki (pl.)*
 fat (adj.) *resns; [of meat] trekns;*
 fairly fat *piresns; grow fat*
(iz-)bllst, izplūst
 fate *liktenis*
 fateful *liktenīgs*
 father *tēvs; god-father krusttēvs;*
 grandfather *vectēvs; stepfather*
patēvs
 fatherland *tēvu zeme*
 fatigue *gurdenums, gurdums,*
pagurums
 fault *vaina*

favour <i>labvēlība</i>	<i>arums</i> ; field-mouse <i>lauku pele</i> ;
favourable <i>izdevīgs</i>	field-piece <i>lielgabals</i>
fawn (adj.) <i>pāts</i>	fierce <i>nikns</i>
fear <i>bailēs</i> (pl.), <i>bail</i> , <i>drausmas</i> (pl.);	fiery <i>ugunīgs</i>
shake with fear <i>drebēt aiz bailēm</i>	fifteen <i>piecpadsmiit</i>
fearful <i>baillīgs, tramīgs</i>	fifteenth <i>piecpadsmiitais</i>
feast <i>dzīres</i> (pl.); feast-day <i>svētki</i>	fifth <i>piektais</i>
(pl.)	fiftieth <i>piecdesmitais</i>
feast (one's eyes) <i>mielot acis</i>	fifty <i>piecdesmit</i>
feather <i>spatva</i>	fight (intrans.) <i>kauties, plēsties</i>
February <i>februāris</i>	figure [= build] <i>augums; stāvs</i> ;
feebleness <i>vājība</i>	[= statue] <i>tēls</i> ; [= number]
feed <i>barība</i> ; green-feed <i>sēks</i>	<i>skaitlis</i>
feed <i>barot</i>	file <i>virkne</i>
feel (trans.) [= touch] <i>(ap-)taustīt</i> ;	fill: eat one's fill <i>paēsties</i>
[= experience] <i>(sa-)just</i> ;	fill (trans.) <i>(pie-)pildīt</i> ; (intrans.)
(intrans.) <i>justies</i>	<i>(pie-)pildīties</i> ; fill [space] <i>aizņemt</i>
feeling <i>sajūta, pašsajūta, izjūta</i> ;	film <i>filma</i> ; film-star <i>kino zvaigzne</i>
feelings <i>jūtas</i> (pl.)	finally <i>beidzot, pēdīgi</i>
fell (<i>no-</i>) <i>laist</i>	find (<i>at-</i>) <i>rast</i> ; [after searching]
fellow <i>puisis</i> ; dissolute fellow	<i>sameklēt</i> ; I find it hard, etc., to
<i>plencis</i>	<i>man nākas grūti</i> , etc. + inf.; find
feminine <i>sievišķīgs</i> ; feminine gender	out <i>noskaidrot</i> ; <i>uzzināt, izzināt</i>
<i>sieviešu kārta</i>	finding <i>atradums</i> ; [= verdict] <i>lēmums</i>
fence <i>sēta, žogs</i>	fine <i>naudas sods</i>
ferment (intrans.) <i>(sa-)rūgt</i>	fine [= pleasant] <i>jauks</i> ; [= good]
ferocious <i>nikns</i> ; <i>mežonīgs</i>	<i>lāga</i> (invar. adj.); [not coarse]
ferry <i>celtuve</i>	<i>smalks</i>
fertile <i>auglīgs</i>	finger <i>pirkstis</i> ; finger-nail <i>nags</i>
fervent <i>dedzīgs</i> ; grow fervent	finish (trans.) <i>(pa-)beigt</i> ; (intrans.)
<i>iekaist, iekarst</i>	<i>beigties</i> ; finish blooming <i>izziedēt</i> ;
festival <i>svētki</i> (pl.)	finish paying for <i>nomaksāt</i>
fetch <i>pienest</i>	Finland <i>Somija</i>
fetters <i>važas</i> (pl.)	Finn <i>soms</i> , (f.) <i>-iete</i>
few <i>maz</i> + gen., <i>pāris</i> (indec. +	Finnish <i>somu</i> (invar. adj.); (adv.)
gen.); a few <i>viens otrs</i> + sing.;	<i>somiski</i>
quite a few <i>dažs labs</i> + sing.	fir <i>egle</i> ; fir-needle <i>skuja</i>
fewer <i>mazāk</i> + gen.	fire <i>uguns</i> (f.); [causing damage]
fiancé(e) <i>izredzētais</i> , (f.) <i>-ā</i>	<i>ugunsgrēks</i> ; catch fire <i>aizdegties</i> ;
fickle <i>mainīgs</i>	make a fire <i>kurt</i> ; open fire <i>atklāt</i>
field <i>lauks, tlrums</i> ; battle-field	<i>uguni</i> ; set fire to <i>pielāist uguni</i> +
<i>kaujas lauks</i> ; ploughed field	dat., <i>pielikt uguni</i> + dat.; fire-bri-

gade <i>ugunsdzēsēji</i> (pl.); fireman	[momentarily] <i>uzzibēt</i> ; [of
<i>ugunsdzēsējs</i> ; fire-wood <i>malka</i>	lightning] <i>zibeņot</i>
fire <i>šaut</i>	flat <i>dzlvoklis</i>
fireman <i>ugunsdzēsējs</i>	flat (adj.) <i>plakans</i> ; lying flat <i>guļus</i>
fire-wood <i>malka</i>	(adv.)
firm <i>uzņēmums, firma</i>	flattery <i>glaimi</i> (pl.)
first <i>pirmais</i> ; first class (adj.)	flax <i>lini</i> (pl.)
<i>pirmklasīgs</i> ; (adv.) <i>papriekšu</i>	flee (intrans.) <i>(aiz-)bēgt</i> , <i>(aiz-)mukt</i> ;
firstly <i>pirmkārt</i>	flee into <i>iebēgt</i>
fish <i>zivs</i> (f.); spear fish <i>durt zivis</i> ;	fleet <i>flote</i>
fish-garth <i>tacis</i>	flesh <i>miesa</i> ; see in the flesh
fish [with net] <i>zvejot, pazvejot</i> ; [with	<i>redzēt vaigā</i>
line] <i>makšķerēt</i>	flexible <i>vijīgs, smuidrs</i>
fisherman <i>zvejnieks</i>	flick: flick-knife <i>atsperu nazis</i>
fishing <i>zvejniecība</i> ; fishing-rod	fling <i>(pa-)sviest</i>
<i>makšķere</i>	float <i>peldēt</i>
fissure <i>plaisa, plaisma</i>	flock <i>bars</i>
fist <i>dūre</i>	flock: flock to <i>apstāt</i> ; flock together
fit <i>derēt</i> ; your gloves do not fit me	<i>salaisties</i>
<i>jūsu cimdi man neder</i> ; fit in <i>ietilpt</i> ;	floe: ice-floes <i>vižņi</i> (pl.)
fit out <i>iekārtot</i>	flood <i>plūdi</i> (pl.)
fitting: to be fitting <i>derēt</i> ;	flood (trans.) <i>(ap-)plūdināt</i>
<i>pienākties</i>	floor <i>grīda</i> ; inlaid floor <i>parkets</i>
five <i>pieci, piecēji</i> ; five hundred	flour <i>milti</i> (pl.)
<i>piecsimt, pieci simti</i> ; five hundredth	flourish <i>(uz-)plaukt, zelt</i>
<i>piecsimtais</i> ; in a group of five	floury <i>miltains</i>
<i>piecatā</i> ; of five kinds <i>piecējāds</i>	flow <i>tecēt, plūst</i> ; [of tears] <i>ritēt</i> ,
fix [= appoint] <i>nolikt, noteikt</i> ;	<i>nobirt</i> ; flow around <i>aptecēt</i> ; flow
[= fasten] <i>spraust</i>	away <i>aiztecēt, aizplūst</i> ; flow back
fixed [time, place, etc.] <i>noteikts</i>	<i>atplūst</i> ; flow down <i>notecēt</i> ; flow
fizz <i>plukš(ķ)ēt</i>	in <i>ietecēt, ieplūst</i> ; flow out
flaccid <i>slābans</i>	<i>iztecēt, izplūst</i> ; flow together
flag <i>karogs</i>	<i>saplūst</i>
flag <i>atslābt</i>	flower <i>puķe</i> ; break into flower
flagellant <i>flagellants</i>	<i>izziedēt</i> ; wild flower <i>lauku puķe</i> ,
flake <i>pārsla</i>	<i>meža puķe</i> ; flower-bed <i>(puķu) dobe</i>
flame <i>liesma</i> ; in one enormous sheet	flowery <i>puķains</i>
of flame <i>vienās liesmās</i>	flute <i>flauta</i> ; shepherd's flute
flame <i>liesmot</i>	<i>stabule</i>
flash [of lightning] <i>zibens</i> (gen. <i>-ns</i>)	fly <i>muša</i>
flash (<i>no-</i>) <i>zibēt, plāksnīties</i> ,	fly (intrans.) <i>lidot, laisties</i> ; fly in the
<i>pasplīdēt, lemirdzēties, ļaudlīties</i> ;	air <i>lidot pa gaisu</i> ; fly around

- aplidot*; fly away *aizlidot*,
aizlaisties; fly in *atlidot*; fly open
atsprāgt; fly out *izlaisties*; fly up
over *pārlidot*, *pārlaisties*; fly up
uzlidot, *uzlaisties*
foal *kumeļš*
foam *putas* (pl.); whip up to a foam
sakult putās
fodder *barība*
foe *ienaidnieks*
fog *migla*
fog over (intrans.) *apsvīst*
foggy *migļains*
fold *ieloks*; threefold (adj.)
trīskāršs
fold (trans.) *locīt*; *sakļaut*
folk *tauta*; folk-dance *tautas dejas*;
Old Folks' Home *vecu ļaužu*
nams; folk-song *tautas dziesma*
follow *sekot* + dat.; [rule, etc.]
vadīties, *pieturēties*; follow the
crowd *peldēt straumei līd(i)*
fond: become fond of *iemīlēt*
food *pārtika*, *ēdiens*, *barība*; [tinned]
konservi (pl.)
fool *muļķis*, (f.) *-e*, *nelga* (m. or f.)
foolish *muļķīgs*, *vientiesīgs*
foot *kāja*; on foot *kājām*; keep
on one's feet *turēties uz kājām*;
set foot *spert kāju*; trample
underfoot *mit kājām*; [measure-
ment] *pēda*
footman *sulainis*
footpath *ietne*, *ietve*
foot-wear *apavi* (pl.)
for (prep.) *priekš* + gen.; for and
against *par un pret*; for ever
mūžam; (conj.) *jo*; for... not...
neba
forbid (*aiz-*)*liegt*
force *spars*; by force *ar varu*; Air
Force *gaisa flote*; work force

- darba spēks*; household work force
saiņe
force *piespiest*
foreboding *nojauta*
forehead *piere*
foreign *svešs*; foreign land, foreign
surroundings *svešums*
fore-part *priekšgals*
forest *mežs*; [coniferous] *sils*;
forest-clearer *līdumnieks*; forest's
edge *mežmala*; forest-ranger
mežsargs
forge *kaltuve*
forge *kalt*
forget *aizmirst*
forgive *piedot* + dat.
forgiveness *piedošana*
fork [table] *dakšiņa*; pitchfork
dakša
forked *žuburains*
form *stāvs*; *tēls*; *forma*
form (trans.) *veidot*
formal *formāls*
former *iepriekšējs*, *kādreizējs*
forsake *pamest*
forth: pitch back and forth
klandīties; shoot forth [buds, etc.]
riest
fortieth *četrdesmitais*
fortuitous *nejaušs*
fortunate *laimīgs*
fortunately *laimīgā kārtā*
fortune: good fortune *laime*
forty *četrdesmit*
forward: to come forward *uz āru*
nākt
found (*no-*)*dibināt*
foundation *pamats*
foundry *lietuve*
fountain *strūklaka*; fountain-pen
pildspalva
four *četri*, *četrēji*; four hundred

- četrsimt*, *četri simti*; four hundredth
četrsimtais; in a group of four
četratā; of four kinds *četrējāds*
fourteen *četrpadsmit*
fourteenth *četrpadsmitais*
fourth *ceturtais*
fox *lapsa*
fracture *lauzums*
fragile *trausls*, *trusls*, *glezns*
fragrant *smaržīgs*
France *Francija*
fraternal *brālīgs*
fraud *viltus*
free *brīvs*; [= loose] *svabads*; get
free (*iz-*)*sprukt*
freedom *brīvība*
freeze (trans.) (*ap-*)*saldēt*; (intrans.)
sasalt; freeze over (intrans.)
aizsaldēt
French *franču* (invar. adj.); (adv.)
franciski; a Frenchman *francūzis*,
(f.) *-iete*
fresh *svaigs*, *dzeštrs*
freshness *vēsums*
Friday *piektdiena*; on Friday
piektdien
Frīdis *Frīdis*
friend *draugs*; girl-friend
draudzene
friendly *laipns*, *draudzīgs*; to be on
friendly terms with *būt draugos*
ar + acc.
friendship *draudzība*
fright: take fright *satrūkties*,
iztrūcināties, *nobīties*
frighten (*sa-*)*biedēt*, *sabaidīt*;
[a little] *pabiedēt*
frightened: to be frightened
baidīties; to become frightened
sabaidīties, *nobīties*
fro: run to and fro *tekāt*
from (prep.) *no* + gen.; from now on
turpmāk
front [in battle] *fronte*; front door
namdurvis (pl.); front line *uguns*
līnija; in front of *priekšā* (postp.
+ gen.)
frost *salna*; *sals*
frown: form into a frown *raukties*
fruit *auglis*
fruitful *auglīgs*; *ražens*
fruitless *veltīgs*
fry (trans.) *cept*
fulfilled: to be fulfilled *piepildīties*
full *pilns*; with one's mouth full
ar pilnu muti; full size *visā*
lielumā; full stop *punkts*
fullness *piņība*
funds *līdzekļi* (pl.)
funeral *bēres* (pl.)
funereal: funereal music *līķu*
mūzika
fungus *sēne*
funny *jocīgs*
fur *spalva*; fur coat *kažoks*
furniture *mēbeles* (pl.); an item of
furniture *mēbele*
furrow *ēze*
furthermore *bez tam*
furtive *zaglīgs*
furtively *zagšus*
fussy *izvēlīgs*
futile *veltīgs*
future *nākotne*; in future
turpmāk
future (adj.) *nākams*
gaiety *līksmlība*, *jautrība*
gain [in weight] *pieņemties*
gait *gaita*
gale *auka*
gallery *galerija*; shooting-gallery
šautuve

gallop *aulekšot*; *auļot*
galore *papilnam* (postp. + gen.), *bez jēgas* (postp. + gen.)
game *rotaļa, spēle*; play games *spēlēties*
gaol *cietums*; cool one's heels in *gaol sēdēt* (*cietumā*)
gap *sprauga*
garden *dārzs*; market-garden *dārzniecība*; zoological gardens *zvēru dārzs*
gardener *dārznieks*
garland *vainags, vainags, vija, vītne*
garlic *ķiploki* (pl.); a clove of garlic *ķiploks*
garth: fish-garth *tacis*
gas *gāze*
gasp *elsāt, elsot*
gate *vārti* (pl.)
gateway *pievārte*
gather (trans.) (*sa-*)*lasīt*; gather extra *pielasīt*; gather together (trans.) *sakrāt*; gather one's composure *sapemties*; gather [coat, etc.] about oneself *apņemt*
Gauja *Gauja*
gay *jautrs*
gear *ātrums*
gem *dārgakmens* (gen. -ns)
gender (gram.) *kārta*; feminine gender *sieviešu kārta*; masculine gender *vīriešu kārta*
general (adj.) *vispārējs*
generally *vispār*
generation *paudze; augums*;
generation after generation *augu augumi*
generous *devīgs*
genitive: genitive case *ģenitīvs*
genius *ģenijs*
gentle *maigs, liegs*

gentleman *kungs*
gentleness *maigums*
gently: gently sloping *lēzens*
genuine *īstens, īsts*
genus *kārta*
George *Juris*
German *vācu* (invar. adj.); (adv.) *vāciski*; a German *vācietis*, (f.) -e
Germany *Vācija*
germinate (*uz-*)*dīgt*
gesticulation *mājiens*
get (trans.) (*sa-*)*dabūt*; (intrans.) *tikt*; get [somewhere] *nokļūt*; get away (intrans.) *aizsprukt*; get back (trans.) *atdabūt*; get cold *mesties auksti*; get dark *mesties tumšs*; get in (intrans.) *iekļūt*; what has got into you? *kas tev nāk prātā?*; get lost *nomaldīties*; get married *aprecēties*; get on *klāties*; how are you getting on? *kā jums klājas?*; get on one's nerves *krist uz nerviem*; get out (intrans.) *izkļūt*; get ready (intrans.) *gatavoties, taisīties*; get to *nokļūt, piekļūt, notikt*; get tired *pagurt*; get up (*uz-*)*celties*
ghastly *riebigis*
ghost *gars, ķēms*
giant *milzis*
giddy: become giddy (*no-*)*reibt*, *apreibt*; I feel giddy *man reibst*
gift *dāvana, balva*
gifted *apdāvināts*
gigantic *milzīgs; milzu* (invar. adj.)
giggle *ķiķināt*
gild *zeltot*
gipsy *čigāns*, (f.) -iete
gird: gird around *apjozt*; gird on (*sa-*)*jozties*
girdle *josta*
girdle (trans.) *jozt*

girl *meitene*; farm-girl *meita*;
servant-girl *meita*; girl-friend *draudzene*
give (*ie-*)*dot, sadot*; (*ie-*)*dāvināt*;
give away *atdot*; give back *atdot*; give birth *dzemdēt*; give in (intrans.) *piekāpties*; give out (trans.) *izdot*; give a smile *pasmaidīt*; give up (trans.) *atmest*;
give oneself up to *nodoties*; give way *gāzties*; give a whistle *svilpt*; give one's word *sollties*
giver *devējs*
glad *priecīgs*
gladden (*ie-*)*priecināt*
glance *skats, skatiens*
glaring *spilgts*
glass [substance] *stikls*; [container] *glāze*; glass of wine *glāze vīna*;
wineglass *vīna glāze*; glasses [spectacles] *brilles* (pl.)
glazier *stiklinieks*
gleam *spīgot*
glide (intrans.) *šļukt*
glisten *margot, zaigot*
glitter *mirdzēt, laistīties, margot, mirgot, zaigot, vizēt, vizmot, spulgot, zibēt*
globe: electric light globe *spuldze*
gloomy *drūms*
glory *slava*
glove *cimds*
glow *kvēle*
glow *kvēlot, blāzmot, tvīkt, spīgot, (sa-)kaist*
gnash: gnash one's teeth *griezt zobus*
gnat *ods*
gnaw *grauzt, krimst, saēst*; gnaw out *izgrauzt*
go *iet, doties*; go to the aid of *doties pallyā + dat.*; go around *apiet*; go astray *apmaldīties*; go

away *aiziet*; go to bed *iet gulēt*;
go berserk *trakot*; go brown *nobrūnēt*; go by *iet garām*; by-gone (adj.) *kādreizējs*; go down *noiet*; go home *pāriet*; go in *ieiet*; go numb *stingt*; go out *iziet*; [of fire, etc.] (*iz-*)*dzist, nodzist, apdzist*; go over *pāriet*;
go past *iet garām*; going past (adv.) *garāmejot*; go riding *izjāt*; go and tend animals *iet ganos*; go up to *pieiet*; go for a walk *pastaigāties*; go wrong *maldīties*
goad *rikste*
goal *mērķis*; set (oneself) a goal *spraust sev mērķi*
goat *kaza*; he-goat *āzis*; mountain-goat *kalnu kaza*
goblet *kauss, pokāls*
god *dievs*; God *Dievs*; Latvian god of Thunder *Pērkons*; god-daughter *krustmeita*; god-father *krusttēvs*; god-mother *krustmāte*;
god-parent *kūma* (m. or f.); god-son *krustdēls*
godless *bezdievīgs*
Goethe *Ģēte*
gold *zelts*; dig for gold, mine **gold** *rakt zeltu*; gold-coloured **zeltatns**
golden *zelta* (invar. adj.); golden oriole *vālodze*
gone (adv.) *prom, projām*
good (noun): that's no good *tas neder*; what's the good of that? *kam tas der?*
good (adj.) *labs; krietns; lāga* (invar. adj.); good-bye! *uz redzēšanos! ardievu! sveiks!, sveiki!*; good-day! *labdien!*; good evening! *labvakar!*; good fortune *laime*; Good Lord! *šallgais*

Dievs!; good morning! *labrīt!*;
 good-natured *labsirdīgs, labdabīgs*;
 good-night! *ar labu nakti!*;
 taste good *garšot*
 goose *zoss* (f.)
 gorge *grava*
 gossip *valodas* (pl.); spread gossip
palaist valodas; [of person] *plāpa*
 (m. or f.)
 gossip *plāpāt*; *melst*; gossip [a
 little] *papļāpāt*
 gossipier *plāpa* (m. or f.)
 Gottlieb *Gotlībs*
 gouge: gouge out *izgrebt*
 govern *valdīt*
 government *valdība*
 gown *mantija*
 grab *grābiens*
 grab (trans.) *(sa-)grābt*
 grace (eccl.) *žēlastība*
 gradually *pamazām*
 grain *labība*; grain of corn *grauds*
 grammar *gramatika*
 gramme *grams*
 gramophone: gramophone record
skaņu plate
 granary *klēts* (f.)
 granddaughter *mazmeita*
 grandfather *vecdēvs*
 grandmother *vecmāte*
 grandson *mazdēls*
 granite *granīts*
 grape *vīnoga*
 grasp *grābiens*
 grasp (trans.) *(sa-)grābt*; *(ap-)vert*,
satvert; *sajēgt*
 grass *zāle*; *maurs*; dry grass *kūla*;
 hair-grass *smilga*; grasshopper
sienāzis; grass-snake *zalktis*
 grasshopper *sienāzis*
 grassy *zālains*
 grateful *pateicīgs*

gratitude *pateicība*
 gratuity *dzeramnauda*
 grave *kaps*
 gravel *grants* (f.)
 gravelly *oļains*
 gravy *mērce*
 great *liels*; *dižs*; *lielisks*
 Greece *Griekija*
 greed *kāre*
 greedy *rijīgs*; *kārs*
 Greek *grieķu* (invar. adj.); (adv.)
grieķiski; a Greek *grieķis*, (f.)
-iete
 green *zaļš*; become green *zelt*;
 green-feed *sēks*; greenhouse
siltumnīca
 greenish *zaļgans, iezālgans*
 greenness *zaļums*
 greet *sveicināt*; greet one another
sasveicināties
 greeting(s) *sveiciens*
 grey *pelēks*; [of hair] *sirms*
 grief *žēlabas* (pl.); *sirdēsti* (pl.);
bēda (often *bēdas* pl.); in happiness
 and grief *priekos un bēdās*
 grieve (trans.) *apbēdināt*; (intrans.)
skumt, sērot
 grind [grain] *(sa-)malt*; [= grind
 sharp] *(uz-)trīt*
 grindstone *tecila*
 groove *rieva*
 ground [= earth] *zeme*; clear
 ground *līst līdumu*; paw the ground
mīnāties; sink into the ground
 [for shame, etc.] *ielīst zemē*;
 fallow ground *atmata*; open
 ground *līdums*; sandy ground
smiltājs; sports ground *sporta*
laukums; [= reason] *iemesis*;
pamats; on what grounds? *uz*
kāda pamata?
 group: in a group of two, three, four,

five *divatā, trijatā, četratā,*
piecatā
 grove: birch-grove *birze*; *birzs* (f.)
 grow (trans.) *audzēt*; (intrans.)
augt; grow accustomed *aprast*;
 grow again *ataugt*; grow calm
apklusť; grow dark *(sa-)tumst*,
aptumst, *mesties vakars*; grow fat
(iz-)bilst, izplūst; grow fervent
iekaist, iekarst; grow hot
(sa-)karst; *(sa-)kaist*; grow into
ieaugt; grow pale *bālēt, balot*; grow
 plump *apvelties*; grow rusty *rūsēt*;
 grow shorter *sālsināties*; grow si-
 lent *apklusť*; grow tired working
nostrādāties; grow together *saaugt*;
 grow up *uzaugt, pieaugt, izaugt*;
 grow up [a little]
paaugties; grow warm *(ie-)silt*,
(sa-)sildīties; grow weak
(no-)gurt; grow weary *piekust*,
(no-)gurt
 growl [at] *bārt* + acc.
 growth *augums*; dense patch of
 growth *biezoknis*
 grumble *bārties, sodīties*
 grumpy *ļīns*; become grumpy *saļgt*
 guard *sargs*
 guard *(ap-)sargāt*
 guess *(no-)jaust*
 guest *viesis, ciemiņš*
 guided: to be guided *vadīties*
 guilt *vaina*
 guilty *vainīgs*
 gulp *rijiens*
 gulp: gulp down *(no-)rīt*
 gun: machine-gun *ložmetējs*
 Guna *Guna*
 Guntis *Guntis*
 gush: gush out *izplūst*
 Guste *Guste*
 gutter *noteka*

habit *paradums, ieradums*
 hair *mati* (pl.); dark-haired person
tumšmatis; fair-haired person
gaišmatis; tuft of hair *pinka*;
 hair-grass *smilga*
 hairdresser *frizieris*, (f.) *-e*
 hale: hale and hearty *spīrgts un*
vesels
 half *puse*; half-hour *pusstunda*;
 half-light (noun) *krēslība*; (adj.)
pusgaišs; half-open *pusatvērts*
 hall *zāle*; parish hall *draudzes*
nams; Town Hall *pilsētas nams*
 hallway *vestibīls*
 hammer *āmurs*
 hammer *kalt*
 hand *roka*; clap one's hands
plaušķināt; join hands *sadoties*
rokās; lead by the hand *vest pie*
rokas; shake hands with
(pa-)spiest roku + dat.; hands off!
rokas nost!; at hand (adv.) *klāt*;
pie rokas; empty-handed *tukšām*
rokām; farm-hand *puisis*; on the
 other hand *turpretī*; rough hands
sastrādātas rokas; hand-bag
rokas soma
 hand *(pa-)sniegt*; hand in *iesniegt*;
 hand to *(pa-)sniegt* + dat.; hand
 out *piešķirt*; hand over *nodot*
 hand-bag *soma, rokas soma*
 handkerchief *kabatas lakatiņš*
 handle *kāts*
 handsome *glīts, glīšs*
 handwriting *rokraksts*
 handy: close handy *pie rokas*
 hang (trans.) *(pa-)kārt*; (intrans.)
karāties; hang around waiting
(no-)nīkt; hang down (intrans.)
nokarāties; hang oneself *pakārties*;
 hang [something] over [something]
pārkārt; hang up (trans.) *uzkārt*

hangman <i>bende</i> (m.) (rarely f.)	hazy <i>tvaikains</i>
hangover <i>paģiras</i> (pl.)	he <i>viņš</i>
Hans <i>Ansis</i>	head <i>galva</i> ; toss one's head <i>atmest galvu</i> ; clear hoad <i>gaiša galva</i> ; [= chief] <i>galva</i> (m.); head of the family <i>ģimenes galva</i> (m.)
happen <i>notikt</i>	headdress: cloth headdress adorned with beads <i>zīļu vaiņags</i>
happening <i>notikums</i>	headmaster <i>pārzinis</i>
happiness <i>laime, laimība</i> ; in happiness and grief <i>priekos un bēdās</i>	headstrong <i>stūrgalvīgs</i>
happy <i>priecīgs; laimīgs</i> ; to be happy with <i>būt mierā ar</i> + acc.; make happy <i>aplaimot</i> ; have a happy trip! <i>laimīgu ceļu!</i>	heal (trans.) <i>dziedēt</i> ; (intrans.) <i>(sa-)dzīt</i>
harbour <i>osta</i>	health <i>veselība</i> ; to be in bad health <i>(no-)vārgt</i>
hard [= difficult] <i>grūts</i> ; [= not soft] <i>ciets</i> ; hard-working <i>strādīgs</i>	healthy <i>veselīgs; vesels; sveiks</i>
harden (trans.) <i>rūdīt</i>	heap <i>kaudze, čupa</i> ; in heaps <i>čupā</i>
hardly (adv.) <i>tikko, tik tikko</i>	heap (trans.) <i>(uz-)kraut</i> ; heap upon <i>uzgāzt; sadot</i>
hare <i>zaķis</i>	hear <i>dzirdēt; noklausīties</i> ; hear out <i>noklausīties</i>
harm <i>kaitēt</i> + dat.	hearer <i>klausītājijs</i> (m. refl.), (f.) <i>-ās</i>
harmony <i>saskaņa</i>	hearse <i>llķrati</i> (pl.)
harness <i>(ie-)jūgt</i>	heart <i>sirds</i> (f.); lose heart <i>izmist</i> ; faint-hearted <i>glēvs</i> ; kind-hearted <i>labsirdīgs</i> ; warm-hearted <i>sirsnijs</i> ; heart-break <i>sirdēsti</i> (pl.)
harsh <i>bargs; spalgs; skarbs</i>	heartlessness [towards] <i>bejūtība</i> <i>(pret + acc.)</i>
harshness <i>bardzība, bargums</i>	heartly: hale and hearty <i>spīrgts un vesels</i>
harvest <i>raža</i> ; bad harvest <i>neraža</i>	heat <i>karstums; tveice</i> ; heat-wave <i>karstuma vilnis</i>
haste <i>steiga</i> ; make haste <i>(pa-)steigties</i>	heat <i>sildīt; karsēt</i>
hasten <i>(pa-)steigties, steigt</i> ; <i>traukties, traukt</i> ; <i>mudīties</i> ; hasten away <i>aizsteigties</i>	heave (intrans.) <i>cilāties</i>
hasty <i>straujš</i>	heaven <i>debess</i> (f.); <i>debesis</i> (pl.)
hat <i>cepure</i>	heavy <i>smags</i> ; fairly heavy <i>pasmags</i>
hatch <i>perināt</i>	heavyish <i>pasmags</i>
hate <i>(ie-)nīst</i>	heel: cool one's heels in gaol <i>sēdēt</i> <i>(cietumā)</i>
hatred <i>naidis</i>	height <i>augstums</i>
haughtiness <i>lepnība</i>	heir <i>mantinieks, mantnieks</i>
haughty <i>augstprātīgs</i>	
have <i>būt</i> + dat.	
haven: haven of peace <i>mierosts</i>	
havoc <i>juceklis</i>	
hawk <i>vanags</i>	
hay <i>siens</i> ; haystack <i>siena kaudze</i>	
hazel: hazel-bush <i>lazda</i>	

hell <i>elle, pekļe</i>	hinge <i>vira</i>
helmsman <i>stūrmanis</i>	hinterland <i>aizmugure</i> ; [of lake, sea, river, etc.] <i>piekraste</i>
help <i>paldzība</i> ; call for help <i>saukt pālīgā</i> ; help! (interj.) <i>pālīgā!</i>	hip <i>gurns</i>
help <i>(pa-)līdzēt</i> + dat.; help out <i>izpaldzēt</i> + dat.; [financially, etc.] <i>atbalstīt</i>	hire <i>(sa-)līgt</i>
hen <i>vista</i>	his (indec. poss.) <i>viņa</i>
henceforth <i>turpmāk</i>	his (pron.) <i>viņējs</i>
her (indec. poss.) <i>viņas</i>	hiss <i>šņāciens</i>
herald <i>vēstnesis</i>	hiss <i>šņākt, plukš(k)ēt</i>
Herculean <i>atlantisks</i>	historical <i>vēsturisks</i>
herd <i>bars</i>	history <i>vēsture</i>
here <i>šeit, še; te, tepat</i> ; (after prep.) <i>*šejiene</i> ; here and there <i>šur (un) tur</i>	hit <i>sist</i> ; <i>(ie-)zvelt</i> + dat.
hereafter (noun) <i>aizsaule</i>	hither <i>šurp(u)</i>
hero <i>varonis</i>	hitherto <i>līdz šim</i>
heroic <i>varonijs</i>	hoar-frost <i>salna</i>
heroism <i>varonība</i>	hoarse: scream oneself hoarse <i>nokliegties</i>
hers (pron.) <i>viņējs</i>	hold <i>turēt</i> ; hold on a leash <i>turēt pie saitēs, turēt saitē</i> ; hold fast <i>saturēt</i> ; hold fast to <i>(pie-)turēties</i> ; hold out <i>izturēt</i> ; hold up <i>aizkavēt</i> ; [= contain] (see lesson 172), <i>ietilpt</i>
hesitate <i>vilcināties</i>	hole <i>caurums; bedre</i> ; full of holes <i>caurs, caurumains</i>
hew <i>cirst</i> ; [of stone] <i>apstrādāt</i> ; hew down <i>nocirst</i> ; hew out <i>izcirst</i>	holiday: national holiday <i>valsts svētki</i> (pl.)
hibernate <i>pārziemot</i>	Holland <i>Holande</i>
hide (trans.) <i>(pa-)slēpt, noglabāt</i> ; (intrans.) <i>(pa-)slēpties</i>	hollow (noun) <i>dobums</i>
hiding-place <i>slēptuve</i>	hollow (adj.) <i>dobjš</i>
high (adj.) <i>augsts</i> ; hold a high position <i>būt augstā amatā</i> ; high school <i>vidusskola</i> ; for high stakes <i>uz lielu naudu</i> ; (adv.) <i>augstu, augšā</i> ; high up <i>augstu, augšā</i>	hollow: hollow out <i>izgrebt</i>
highway <i>lielceļš</i>	holy <i>svēts</i> ; holy war <i>krusta karš, krustkarš</i>
hill <i>kalns, paugurs</i> ; sand-hill <i>smilšu kalns, kāpa</i> ; up the hill (adv.) <i>kalnup</i>	home <i>māja</i> ; Old Folks' Home <i>veco lauzu nams</i> ; at home <i>mājā, mājās</i>
hillock <i>cinis</i>	home (adv.) <i>mājā, mājās</i> ; arrive home <i>pārnākt</i> ; bring home <i>pārvest</i> ; carry home <i>pārnest</i> ; come home <i>pārnākt, pārrasties</i> ; drag home <i>pārvilkēt</i> ; drag oneself home <i>pārvilkēties</i> ; drive [animals, etc.]
hilly <i>kalnains, paugurains</i>	
hinder <i>vilcināt; traucēt</i>	
hindrance <i>kavēklis, traucēklis, šķērslis</i>	

home *pārdzīt*; lead home *pārvest*;
 return home *pārrasties*; ride home
pārijāt
 homeland *tēvu zeme, dzimtene*
 homeward(s) *mājā, mājās, mājup*
 homework *uzdevumi* (pl.)
 honest *godīgs*
 honey *medus*
 honeymoon [trip] *kāzu ceļojums*
 honour *gods*; matter of honour
goda lieta
 honour *cienīt*
 honourable (invar. adj.) *goda*
 hook *āķis*
 hop *lēkt*
 hope *cerība*
 hope *cerēt*; there's no hoping *nav*
ko cerēt
 hopelessness *necerība*
 horizon *apvāršnis*
 hormone *hormons*
 horn rags; (mus.) *taure*
 horrible *briesmīgs, šausmīgs*
 horror *šausmas* (pl.), *baisma*
 horse *zirgs*; *kumeļš*; change horses
pārijūt; dismount from a horse
kāpt no zirga; mount a horse *kāpt*
zīrgā; ride a horse *jāt uz zirga*;
 bay horse *bēris*; horse-races
zirgu sacīkstes; horse-shoe *pakavs*;
 horse-tail (bot.) *skosta, skoste*
 horticulture *dārzniecība*
 hospitable *viesmīlīgs*
 hospital *slimnīca*
 hospitality *viesmīllība*
 hostel *mīteklis*
 hostess *nama māte*
 hostile *naidīgs*
 hot *karsts*; I am hot *man ir*
karsti; grow hot (*sa-*)*karst*,
 (*sa-*)*kaist*; hot-house *siltumnīca*
 hotel *viesnīca*

hound *vajāt, noriet*
 hour *stunda*; for hours *stundām*;
 a half-hour *pusstunda*; a quarter-
 hour *ceturtsnis*; working hours
darba stundas
 house *māja*; alms-house *nabagmāja*;
 bath-house *pirts* (f.); bath-house
 attendant *pirtnieks*; city house
nams; country-house *lauku mājas*
 (pl.); farm-house *lauku mājas*
 (pl.); greenhouse *siltumnīca*;
 hot-house *siltumnīca*; poor-house
nabagmāja; printing-house
spiestuve; slaughter-house (*lopu*)
kautuve, lopkautuve; at the house of
pie (prep. + gen.)
 household *saime*; household work
 force *saime*
 housewife *nama māte*
 hovel *būda*
 hover *lidināt, lidināties*
 how (adv. & conj.) *kā*; how on
 earth? *kā gan?*; how are you?
kā jums iet?; how + adv. *cik* +
 adv.; how much? how many?
cik? + gen.
 however *tomēr*
 howl *aurot, rēkt, kaukt*
 hug (*ap-*)*skaut*
 hullo! *sveiks!*; *sveiki!*
 hum (trans. & intrans.) *dungāt*,
dungot; (intrans.) *sanēt, sīkt*,
dūkt, spindzēt, žvingstēt
 human (adj.) *cilvēku* (invar.)
 humane *cilvēcīgs*
 humanity *cilvēce*
 humid *mītrs, drēgns*
 humidity *mitrums*
 humility *pazemība*
 humus *trūdi* (pl.)
 hundred *simt, simts*; birds, etc., by
 the hundred, in their hundreds

simtiem putnu, etc.; hundredfold
 (adj.) *simtkāršs*; a hundred times
simtkārt
 hundredth *simtais*
 Hungarian *ungāru* (invar. adj.);
 (adv.) *ungāriski*; a Hungarian
ungārs, (f.) *-iete*
 Hungary *Ungārija*
 hunger *badš, izsalkums*
 hunger: hunger for *salkt* + gen.
 or *pēc* + gen.
 hungry: to get hungry *izsalkt*
 hunt *medīt*
 hunter *mednieks*
 huntsmanship *medniecība*
 hurrah! (interj.) *urrā!*
 hurry (trans.) *steidzināt*; (intrans.)
steigties, steigt, nesties; hurry
 [excessively] *pārsteigties*; hurry up
 (trans.) *steidzināt*
 hurrying (adj.) *steidzīgs*
 hurt (trans.) *sāpināt*; (intrans.)
sāpēt; hurt suddenly (intrans.)
iesāpēties
 husband *vīrs, laulātais draugs*
 hut *būda*
 hymn: hymn-book *dziesmu grāmata*
 I (pron.) *es*; John and I *mēs ar*
Jāni
 ice *ledus*; drift-ice *vižņi* (pl.);
 (thin) sheet of ice *gāle*; ice-berg
ledus kalns; ice-chest *ledus*
skapis, ledusskapis; ice-cream
saldējums; ice-floes *vižņi* (pl.)
 icicle *lāsteka*
 icy *ledains*
 idea *ideja, doma, iedoma*; *jēga*,
jēdziens; I have not the slightest
 idea about *man nav (ne) mazākās*
jēgas par + acc.
 ideal (noun) *ideāls*

identical *vienāds*
 identity *tāpatība*
 idle *kūtrs*
 idleness *bezdarbība*
 if *ja*; as if *it kā*; even if *ja arī*;
 if only *kaut*
 ignoramus *nepraša* (m. or f.)
 ignorance *neziņa*
 ill *slīms*; become ill *saslimt*
 ill: ill-reputed *šaubīgs*
 illegal *pretlikumīgs*
 illness *slimība*; mental illness *gara*
slimība
 illusion *illūzija*
 image *tēls*
 imagine *iedomāties*
 imbibe *iedzert, iemest*
 imitate *atdarināt*
 immediately *tūlīn, tūlīt, uzreiz*
 immerse *iemērt*
 immigrate *ieceļot*
 immortality *nemirstība*
 imply *nozīmēt*
 import(s) *imports*
 import *importēt, ievest*
 importance *svarīgums, nozīme*,
svars; of importance *no svara*
 important *svarīgs*
 impose *uzlikt*
 impostor *viltnieks*
 imprecation *lāsts*
 impress *iespiest*
 impression *iespaids*; to leave an
 impression on *atstāt iespaidu uz*
 + acc.
 imprint *iespiest*
 improve (trans.) *uzlabot*; (intrans.)
iet augšup
 in (prep.): normally the locative case
 of the noun without preposition;
iekš + gen.
 inadequate *trūcīgs*

- incessant *nemitīgs*
 incessantly *diendienā*
 inch *colla*
 incite *mudināt*
 include *ieskaitīt*; to be included [in] *ietilpt*
 inconsistent *mainīgs*
 increase (intrans.) *pieaugt*, *pieņemties*
 indeed (interj.) *ī!*; (interj. & adv.) *tiešām, patiešām*; (adv.) *gan; tak, taču*
 independence *patstāvība*
 independent *patstāvīgs*
 India *Indija*
 Indian *indiešu* (invar. adj.); an Indian *indietis*, (f.) *-e*
 indicate *rādīt, iezīmēt*
 indicator *rādītājs*
 indifferent *vienaldzīgs*
 indisposed: to be indisposed *sirgt*
 individual (adj.) *individuāls*
 indolent *kūtrs, laisks*
 indulge: indulge in *nodoties*
 industrious *čakls, uzclīgs*
 industry *rūpniecība*
 inebriated: become inebriated *iesilt*
 infirm *vārgs*
 inflamed: become inflamed *iekaist*
 inflammation *iekaisums*
 inflict *uzlikt; nodarīt*
 influence *iespaidis*; under the influence of *iespaidā* (postp. + gen.)
 inform (*pa-*)*ziņot* + dat., *vēstīt* + dat.
 information *ziņas* (pl.)
 infringe *pārkāpt*
 inhabit *apdzīvot*
 inhabitant *iedzīvotājs*
 inhale *ieelpot*
 initiate (noun) *zinātājs*
 initiative *iniciātlva*
 injure *ievainot; sadauzīt*
 injustice *netaisnība*
 ink *tinte*
 inlaid: inlaid floor *parkets*
 inn *krogus*; inn-keeper *krodzinieks*
 inner *iekšējs*
 innocence: protest innocence *liegties*
 inquisitiveness *ziņkāre*
 insect *kukaiņis*
 insert *ielikt, iespraust*
 inside (noun): on the inside of *iekšpus* + gen.
 inside (adv.) *iekšā*
 inside (prep.) *iekšpus* + gen., *iekš* + gen.
 insolvent *maksātnespējīgs*
 inspect *apskatīt, aplūkot*
 inspire *sajūsmināt; apgarot*
 instant: at this instant *pašreiz*
 instead: instead of *vietā* (postp. + gen.)
 instruction *mācība*
 insufficient *trūcīgs*; to be insufficient *pietrūkt*
 insurance *apdrošināšana*; life-insurance *dzīvības apdrošināšana*
 insure *apdrošināt*
 intellect *prāts*
 intellectual (noun) *intellektuālists*
 intelligence *gudrība*
 intend (*no-*)*domāt*
 intensive *spraigš*
 intention *nodoms*
 interdiction *aizliegums*
 interest (in) *interese* (*par* + acc.)
 interesting *interesants*
 interfere *jaukties*
 intermission *starpbrīdis*
 internal *iekšējs*
 international *starptautisks*

- interpreter *tulks*
 interrogate *pratināt*
 interrupt *pārtraukt*
 intersect (intrans.) *sadoties*
 interval *starpbrīdis*
 intoxicated: become intoxicated (*ap-*)*skurbt*
 introduce *iepazīstināt*
 introduction *ievads*
 intrude (*uz-*)*bāzties*
 intuitively: feel intuitively *jaust*
 inundate *aplūdināt*
 invalid (noun) *vājinieks*
 investigate *pētīt*
 invitation *aicinājums, ielūgums*
 invite *aicināt, salūgt*; invite to *aicināt uz* + acc.; invite together *saaicināt*
 Ireland *Irija*
 Irish *īru* (invar. adj.); an Irishman *īrs*, (f.) *-iete*
 iron [substance] *dzelzs* (f.); Iron Age *dzelzs laikmets*; pieces of iron *dzelzis* (pl.); [appliance] *gludeklis*
 iron *gludināt*
 irresolute *neizšķirīgs*
 island *sala*
 islander *salinieks*
 issue: cloud the issue *laist kādam mīglu acīs*
 Italian *italiešu* (invar. adj.); (adv.) *italiski*; an Italian *italietis*, (f.) *-e*
 Italy *Itālija*
 itch *niezēt*
 item: an item of furniture *mēbele*
 Ivan *Jānis*; Ivan the Terrible *Jānis Briesmīgais*
 ivory *zilopkauls*
 Jack *Janka*
 jam *ievārījums*
 January *janvāris*
 Japan *Japāna*
 Japanese *japāņu* (invar. adj.); (adv.) *japāniski*; a Japanese *japānietis*, (f.) *-e*
 jaw *žoklis*
 jay [European] *slīlis*
 jealous *greizsirdīgs*; jealous of *greizsirdīgs uz* + acc.
 jealousy *greizsirdība*
 jingle (intrans.) (*pa-*)*šķindēt*
 job *vieta*; work at a job *strādāt darbu*
 John *Jānis*; St. John's Day *Jāņi* (pl.); St. John's Day bonfire *jāņuguns* (f.)
 join [club, etc.] *iestāties* + loc.; (intrans.) *sadoties*; join hands *sadoties rokās*
 joiner *galdnieks*
 joinery *galdniecība*
 joint *locītava*
 joke *joks*
 joke *jokot*
 jolly: jolly well *gan jau*
 journey *ceļš, ceļojums, brauciens*
 joy *prieks, liksmība*; with joy, for joy *aiz prieka*
 judge *tiesnesis; sōģis*
 judge *spiests; tiesāt*
 judgement: Day of Judgement *pastartiesa*
 juice *sula*
 juicy *sullīgs*
 July *jūlijs*
 jump *lēkt*; jump about *lēkāt*; jump aside *atlēkt*; jump down *nolēkt*; jump in *ielēkt*; jump off *nolēkt*; jump on *uzlēkt*; jump out *izlēkt*; jump over *pārlēkt*; jump up *uzlēkt*; come jumping *atlēkt*
 June *jūnijs*

- juniper *kadiķis*
 just (adj.) *taisns*
 just (adv.) [=only] *tikai*; (emphatic)
 just as *tā kā, tikpat kā, tāpat kā*;
 just like *tā kā, tikpat kā, tāpat kā*;
 just now *nupat*; *tikko*; just then *patlaban*
 justice *taisnība*
- kangaroo *ķengurs*
 keen *čakls*; he is keen to *viņam prāts nesas + inf.*
 keep (trans.) (*pa-*)*turēt*; (*uz-*)*glabāt*, *paglabāt*; to be kept *glabāties*;
 keep on one's feet *turēties uz kājām*; keep quiet *ciest klusu*
 keepsake *piemiņa*
 keg *muca*
 Ķemeri *Ķemeri* (pl.)
 kettle *katls*
 key *atslēga*
 kick *spēriens*
 kick *spert*
 kid *kazlēns*
 kidnap *nolaupīt*
 kill (*no-*)*kaut*, *nogalināt*, *nosist*, *nomaitāt*; to be killed *nosisties*;
 kill time *kavēt laiku*
 kiln *ceplis*; kiln-house *rija*
 kilogramme *kilograms*
 kilometre *kilometrs*
 kind: of all kinds *visāds*; of both kinds *abējāds*; of one, two, three, etc., kinds *vienāds, divējāds, trejāds*, etc.; of that kind *tāds*; of this kind *šāds*; of what kind? *kāds?*
 kind (adj.) *laipns, laipnīgs* (rare); *labsirdīgs, cilvēcīgs*
 kindergarten *bērnu dārzs*
 kindle *iededzināt*
 kindness *laipnība*
- kindred (adj.) *rada* (invar.)
 king *karalis, ķēniņš*
 kinsman *radnieks, tuvinieks*
 kiss *buča*
 kiss (*no-*)*skūpstīt*; kiss one another *skūpstīties*
 kitchen *virtuve*
 kite *pūķis*
 knead (*ie-*)*jaut*
 knee *celis*
 knife *nazis*; flick-knife *atsperu nazis*
 knight *bruņinieks*
 knock *klawēt, klabināt, (pa-)grūst*;
 knock at *pieklawēt*; knock off (trans.) *nodauzīt*
 knoll *paugurs*
 know *zināt*; [a person] *pazīt*; [how to] *mācēt, prast*
 knowledge *zināšanas* (pl.), *zinība*; *atziņa*
 known *zināms*; make known (*iz-*)*paust*
 kow-tow: he kow-tows *viņam llkst mugura*
 Kurzeme *Kurzeme*; of Kurzeme (adj.) *kurzemnieku* (invar.); a native of Kurzeme *kurzemnieks*, (f.) *-ce*
- labourer *strādnieks*
 lace *saite*; shoe-lace *kurpju saite*
 lack *trūkums*
 lack: to be lacking (*pie-*)*trūkt*
 lad *puisis*
 ladder *kāpnes* (pl.); *kāpne*
 ladle *smelt*; ladle out *izsmelt*
 lady *dāma, kundze*; young lady *jaunkundze*
 lake *ezers*
 lamb [animal] *jērs*; [meat] *jēra gaļa*
 lame *klibs, tizls*
 lamentation *vaimanas* (pl.); *žēlabas* (pl.)

- lamp *lampa*
 lance *šķēps*
 land *zeme*; fallow land *atmata, nora*; foreign land *svešums*; native land *dzimtene*
 landlord *saimnieks*
 language *valoda*
 languish (*no-*)*smakt*; *tvīkt*
 lantern *laterna, lukturis*
 lap *klēpis*
 lap [of sea, waves, etc.] (trans.) *apskalot*; lap up [of milk, etc.] (*iz-*)*lakt*
 large *liels*; large sum *liela nauda*
 last (adj.) *bēdzamais, pēdējais, pēdīgs*; *pastars*; last year *pērn*; at last *beidzot, pēdīgi*
 last [in time] *ilgt, vilkties*; *turēties*
 lat *lats*
 late (adj.) *vēls*; [= recently deceased] *nelaiķa* (invar.); to be late *nokavēties*; sooner or later *gan jau*; the latest *jaunākais*; (adv.) *vēlu*
 lately *nesen, pēdējā laikā*
 Latgale *Latgale*; native of Latgale *latgalietis*, (f.) *-e*
 Latgalian (adj.) *latgaliešu* (invar.)
 lather *putas* (pl.)
 Latvia *Latvija*
 Latvian *latviešu* (invar. adj.); (adv.) *latviski*; a Latvian *latvietis*, (f.) *-e*
 laugh *smiet, smieties*; laugh a little *pasmieties*; burst out laughing *iesmieties*; I have/had to laugh *man nāk/nāca smieklī*; one who laughs *smējējies* (refl.), (f.) *-ās*;
 laugh at *izsmiet*
 laughable *smieklā* (invar. adj.)
 laugher *smējējies* (refl.), (f.) *-ās*
 laughter *smieklī* (pl.)
- launch: launch a ship *ieļaut kuģi ūdenī*
 laundry *mazgātava*
 law *likums*; military service law, general mobilization law *kara klausības likums*; daughter-in-law *vedekla*; son-in-law *znots*
 lawful *tiesisks*
 lawn *maurs*
 lay [eggs] *dēt*
 layer *kārta*
 laziness *slinkums*
 lazy *slinks, kūtrs, laisks*; lazy person *sliņķis* (f.) *-e*
 lead *saite*; hold on a lead *turēt pie saites, turēt saitē*
 lead (trans.) *vest*; *vadīt*; lead by the hand *vest pie rokas*; lead home *pārvest*; lead in *ievest*; lead to *uzvest*
 leader *vadonis*
 leaf *lapa*; yellow-leaved *dzeltlapains*
 leafy *lapains, kupls*
 leak *tecēt*; *sūkties*
 lean (adj.) [of people] *tievs*; [of meat] *liess*
 lean (trans.) (*pie-*)*sliet*; (intrans.) (*at-*)*balstīties*; *atspiesties*
 leap *lēciens*
 learn (*ie-*)*mācīties*
 learning *zināšanas* (pl.); *zinība*
 leash *saite*; hold on a leash *turēt pie saites, turēt saitē*
 least: at least *vismaz*
 leather *āda*
 leave (trans.) *atstāt*; leave behind *nolikt*; leave an impression on *atstāt iespaidu uz + acc.*; leave in peace *likt mierā, likt mieru, likt mierā*; (intrans.) *atīst, atzbraukt*
 leave-taking *atvadas* (pl.)

lecture <i>lekcija</i>	light (noun) <i>gaisma</i> ; come to light <i>nākt gaismā</i> ; electric light globe <i>spuldze</i> ; half-light <i>krēsliba</i> ; light-year <i>gaismas gads</i> ; lights <i>ugunis</i> (f. pl.)
lecturer <i>lektors</i>	light (adj.) [of weight] <i>viegls</i> ; [of colour, room, etc.] <i>gaišs</i> ; half-light <i>pusgaišs</i>
lee <i>aizvējš</i>	light (trans.) [of fire, etc.] <i>kurt</i> , (<i>ie-</i>) <i>kurināt</i> ; [of cigarette, pipe, etc.] <i>iepīpēt</i> , <i>aizsmēķēt</i> ; light up (intrans.) (<i>ie-</i>) <i>degt</i>
left <i>kreisis</i> ; on the left, to the left <i>pa kreisi</i>	lighting <i>apgaismojums</i>
leg <i>kāja</i>	lightning <i>zibens</i> (gen. -ns), <i>zibeņi</i> (pl.); a flash of lightning <i>zibens</i> ; as quick as lightning <i>zibeņātrumā</i>
legal <i>tiesisks</i>	like (conj.) <i>kā</i> ; just like <i>tāpat kā</i>
legendary <i>teiksmains</i>	like: I like him <i>viņš man patīk</i> ; I don't like him <i>viņš man nepatīk, es viņu neieredzu</i>
leisure <i>vaļa</i>	liking <i>simpatija</i>
lemon <i>citrons</i>	limb <i>loceklis</i>
lend <i>aizdot</i>	lime <i>kaļķis</i> or <i>kaļķi</i> (pl.)
length <i>garums</i>	limit <i>robeža</i>
lens <i>stikls</i>	limousine <i>limuzīns</i>
leopard <i>leopards</i>	limp <i>klibot</i> ; limp a little <i>paklibot</i>
less (adv.) <i>mazāk</i> + gen.	limpid <i>dzidrs</i>
lesson <i>stunda</i>	linden: linden-tree <i>liepa</i>
let <i>laist</i> ; let down <i>nolaist</i> ; let go <i>atlaist</i> ; let in <i>ielāist</i> ; let out <i>izlaist</i> ; (as third person imperative) <i>lai!</i> ; let it be so! <i>lai top!</i>	line [on paper, etc.] <i>līnija</i> ; [= row] <i>rinda</i> ; front line <i>uguns līnija</i>
letter <i>vēstule</i> ; [of alphabet] <i>burts</i> ; capital letter <i>lielais burts</i> ; lower case letter <i>mazais burts</i>	linen [= fabric] <i>audeklis</i> ; [= washing] <i>veļa</i> ; <i>linu</i> (invar. adj.)
lettuce <i>salāti</i> (pl.)	linger <i>vilcināties, kavēties</i>
level <i>līmenis</i>	linguist <i>valodnieks</i>
level: level off (trans.) <i>līdzināt</i>	linguistics <i>valodniecība</i>
liberal <i>devīgs</i>	linseed <i>lini</i> (pl.)
liberty <i>brīvība</i>	lion <i>lauva</i> (m.)
library <i>bibliotēka</i>	lip <i>lūpa</i>
licence [poetic, etc.] <i>patvaļa</i>	lipstick: put lipstick on, use lipstick <i>krāsot lūpas</i>
lid: eyelid <i>plakstiņš</i>	liquid (adj.) <i>šķidr</i>
lie: lie back <i>atlaisties</i> ; lie down <i>pagulēties, gulties</i> ; lying flat (adv.) <i>guļus</i> ; [= tell lies] <i>melot</i>	listen <i>klausīties</i> + loc. or acc. or

<i>uz</i> + acc.; (interj.) <i>klau!</i> ; listen here! (interj.) <i>vadzi!</i>	lonely <i>vientuļš, vientuļgs</i>
listener <i>klauslājies</i> (refl.), (f.) -ās	long (adj.) [in space] <i>garš</i> ; [in time] <i>ilgs</i> ; [already for] a long time (<i>jau</i>) <i>ilgi</i> ; (<i>jau</i>) <i>sen</i> ; a long time ago (<i>jau</i>) <i>sen</i> ; (adv.) <i>ilgi</i> ; long ago (<i>jau</i>) <i>sen</i> ; not long ago <i>nesen</i> ; not so long ago <i>necik sen</i> ; no longer <i>vairs</i> ; long live...! <i>lai dzīvo...!</i>
literal <i>burtisks</i>	long: long for <i>alkt, salt, tvlkt, ilgoties</i>
literature <i>rakstniecība</i>	longing <i>ilgas</i> (pl.); <i>ilgojumies</i> (refl.); longing for <i>ilgas pēc</i> + gen.
Lithuania <i>Lietuva</i>	longish <i>iegarens</i>
Lithuanian <i>lietuvišu, leišu</i> (invar. adj.); (adv.) <i>lietuviski, leitiski</i> ; a Lithuanian <i>lietuviētis</i> , (f.) -e	look <i>skatiens, skats</i>
little (adj.) <i>mazs</i> ; little boy <i>puisēns</i>	look <i>skatīties, raudzīt, lūkoties</i> ; [= seem] <i>izskatīties</i> ; look around <i>apskatīties</i> ; look at (<i>pa-</i>) <i>skatīties, lūkoties, raudzīties; aplūkot, uzlūkot</i> ; look back on <i>atskatīties</i>
little (adv.) <i>maz</i> + gen.; a little (adv.) <i>drusku, drusciņ, nedaudz, mazliet</i> ; even a little <i>kaut cik, kaut drusku</i>	<i>uz</i> + acc.; look for (<i>sa-</i>) <i>meklēt</i> ; look over <i>apskatīt</i>
littoral <i>piekraste</i>	look! (interj.) <i>skat!, lūkl, rau!, re!</i>
live <i>dzīvot, mist</i> ; live through <i>pārdzīvot</i> ; long live...! <i>lai dzīvo...!</i>	loom <i>rēgoties</i>
lively <i>možs, modrs, raīts, spirts</i>	loose <i>vaļējs, svabads</i> ; come loose (<i>at-</i>) <i>rist; izļodzīties</i>
living: earn one's living <i>peļņt sev maizi</i> ; eke out a living <i>izvilkties</i>	lord <i>kungs</i> ; Good Lord! (interj.) <i>Žēllgais Dievs!</i>
lizard <i>ķirzaka</i>	Lorelei <i>Loreleja</i>
lo! (interj.) <i>rau!</i>	lose (trans.) (<i>pa-</i>) <i>zaudēt</i> ; lose heart <i>izmist</i> ; lose one's way <i>nomaldīties</i> ; lose weight <i>nokristies</i>
load <i>krava; slogs; cart-load vezums</i>	loss <i>zaudējums</i> ; at a loss <i>ar zaudējumu</i>
load (trans.) (<i>uz-</i>) <i>kraut, piekraut, (pie-)kravāt</i>	lost: get lost <i>nomaldīties, apmaldīties</i>
loaf <i>kukulis, klaips</i>	lot [= fate] <i>liktenis</i> ; a lot of <i>daudz</i> + gen.
loafer <i>sliņķis</i> , (f.) -e	loud <i>skaļš, skaņš</i>
loan <i>aizdevums</i>	loudness <i>skaņums</i>
loathe (<i>ie-</i>) <i>nīst</i>	lounge: coffee-lounge <i>kafejnīca</i>
local <i>vietējs</i>	louse <i>uts</i> (f.)
locality <i>apvidus</i>	
locative <i>lokātlivs</i>	
lock <i>slēdze</i>	
lock (trans.) (<i>aiz-</i>) <i>slēgt</i> ; lock up <i>ieslēgt</i>	
log <i>baļķis; šķīla</i>	
logical <i>loģisks</i>	
loin <i>gurns</i>	
London <i>Londona</i>	
loneliness <i>vientuļība</i>	

love *mīlestība, mīla*; fall in love with *iemīlēties* + loc.
 love *mīlēt*
 lover *mīļākais*, (f.) *-ā*
 low (adj.) *zems*; lower *apakšējs*; lower branches [of tree] *pazares* (pl.); lower case letter *mazais burts*; low (adv.): to run low *izsīkt*
 low *maut*
 lower (trans.) *nolaist*
 luck *laime*; trust to luck! *uz labu laimi*
 lumberjack *cirtējs*
 lump *puns*
 lunacy *ārprāts*
 lunch *pusdienas* (pl.)
 lung *plauša*
 lustre *spožums, spodrība*
 luxuriant *grezns*
 luxury *lukss, luksuss*
 lyrical *lirisks*

machine *mašīna*; sewing-machine *šujmašīna, šujammašīna*; machine-gun *ložmetējs*
 mad *traks, dulls*
 madden (trans.) *(sa-)tracināt*
 made: made of *no* + gen.
 madness *ārprāts; trakums*
 magic: practise magic *burt*
 magical *burvīgs*
 magician *burvis*
 magistrate *tiesnesis; soģis*
 magnanimous *augstsirdīgs*
 magnetic *magnētisks*
 magnificence *greznums; godība*
 magnificent *krāšņs, grezns*
 magpie *žagata*
 maidservant *aptekasne*
 maimed *tizls*
 main (adj.) *galvenais*

maize *kukuruza*
 make *taisīt* (occ. *darīt*); make a detour about *mest likumu ap* + acc.; make [a dress, etc.] *(pa-)šūt*; make an error in speaking *pārteikties*; make an error in writing *pārrakstīties*; make a fire *kurt*; make haste *pasteigties*; make a speech *teikt runu*; make (+ adj.) *padarīt*; make anxious *uztraukt*; make known (news, etc.) *paust*; make do *iztikt*; make out *saredzēt*
 maker: bootmaker *kurpnieks*; cabinet-maker *galdnieks*
 male: male choir *vīru koris*
 malevolent *ļauņprātīgs*
 malicious *ļauņprātīgs*
 man *vīrietis, vīrs*; [in folk songs, often] *tautietis*; brave man *drošinieks*; businessman *veikalnieks*; middle-aged man *vīrs vidējos gados*; old man *vecis*; poor man *nabags*; snow-man *sniega vīrs*; young man [in folk-songs, often] *tautu dēls*; zealous man *cenšonis*
 manage (trans.) *(pa-)veikt*; (intrans.) *iztikt*; [+ inf.] *spēt, pagūt*
 manager *pārzinis*
 mandarin *mandarīns*
 mankind *cilvēce*
 mantle *mantija*
 Mantua *Mantuja*
 manufacture *ražot*
 manure *mēsli* (pl.)
 many (adj.) *daudzi*; (adv.) *daudz* + gen.; how many? *cik?*; so many *tik daudz*; many-coloured *raibs*
 maple: maple-tree *kļava*
 Māra *Māra*

marble *marmors*
 marbled *marmorpaneļots*
 march *gājiens*
 March *marts*
 march (intrans.) *sojot*
 mare *ķēve*; mare's-tail (bot.) *skosta, skoste*
 mark *pazīme*
 market *tirgus*; annual market *gada tirgus*; market-garden *dārzniecība*; market-place, market-square *tirgus laukums*
 marriage *laulība*
 married: to get married *aprecēties*
 marry (trans.) [of partner] *(ap-)precēt*; [of celebrant] *(sa-)laulāt*; (intrans.) *(ap-)precēties*; marry off (trans.) *(iz-)precināt*
 marshy *mukls*
 martyr *moceklis*
 marvel (noun) *brīnums*
 marvel (intrans.) *brīnīties*
 marvellous *lielisks; brīnišķīgs, brīnišķs*
 masculine: masculine gender *vīriešu kārtā*
 master: station-master *stacijas priekšnieks*; master craftsman *meistars*
 master (trans.) *apgūt*
 match *sērkokciņš, spīčka; sacikste*
 match *derēt kopā ar* + acc.
 mate [on ships] *stūrmanis*
 material [cloth] *drēbe*; [= substance] *viela*
 matter *lieta*; trivial matter *nieks*; matter of honour *goda lieta*; what's the matter with you? *kas jums kaiš?*
 matter: that doesn't matter *nekas!* (interj.)

mature: being of mature age *gados būdams*
 May *maijs*
 mayor *pilsētas galva* (m.)
 meadow *plava*
 meagre *liess*
 meal *maltīte*; evening-meal *vakariņas* (pl.); midday-meal *pusdienas* (pl.)
 mean (adj.) *skops; nelietīgs*
 mean *nozīmēt*
 meaning *nozīme*; jēga
 means *līdzekļi* (pl.)
 meat *gaļa*
 medal *ordenis*
 meddle *(uz-)bāzties* + dat.; *jaukties*
 mediaeval *viduslaiku* (invar. adj.)
 medicine *zāles* (pl.)
 mediocre *viduwējs*
 Mediterranean: Mediterranean Sea *Vidusjūra*
 meet (trans.) *satikt, sastapt*; [from train, etc.] *sagaidīt*; (intrans.) *(sa-)tikties, sastapties*
 melancholy *sērīgs*
 Melbourne *Melburna*
 melodiousness *melodika*
 melody *meldija, melodija*
 melt (intrans.) *(no-)kust, izkust*
 member *loceklis*; [of teaching staff] *mācības spēks*
 memory *atmiņa*
 mend [clothing] *(sa-)lāpīt*
 mental: mental illness *gara slimība*
 merchandise *preces* (pl.)
 merchant *tirgotājs*; Merchant Navy *tirdzniecības flote*
 merciful *žēlsirdīgs, žēllīgs*
 merciless *nežēllīgs*
 mercilessness *nežēllība*
 mercury *dzīvsudrabs*

mercy <i>žēlsirdība, žēlastība</i> ; Sister of Mercy <i>žēlsirdīgā māsa</i>	saw-mill <i>zāģētava</i> ; spinning-mill <i>vērptuve</i>
mermaid <i>nāra</i>	mill <i>dzirnavnieks, melderis</i>
merry <i>jautrs</i>	million <i>miljons</i>
mess: mess around amateurishly <i>ķēpāties</i>	mind <i>prāts; gars</i> ; alert mind <i>gaiša galva</i> ; change one's mind <i>apdomāties</i> ; simple-minded <i>vientiesīgs</i> ; state of mind <i>pašsajūta</i>
messenger <i>vēstnesis</i>	mind: never mind! <i>nekas!</i> (interj.)
metal <i>metalls</i> ; sheet-metal <i>skārds</i>	mine <i>raktuve</i> ; coal-mine <i>ogļraktuve</i>
metre <i>metrs</i>	mine <i>rakt</i> ; mine [for] gold <i>rakt zeltu</i>
metric <i>metriskas</i>	mine (poss. pron.) <i>manējs</i>
metropolis <i>lielpilsēta</i>	minister [of religion] <i>mācītājs</i>
Michael <i>Miķelis</i>	minute <i>minūte</i>
mid-afternoon: mid-afternoon snack <i>launags</i>	miracle <i>brīnums</i>
midday <i>pusdiena</i> (occ. <i>pusdiene</i>), <i>dienas vidus</i> (occ. <i>dienvidus</i>); midday-meal <i>pusdienas</i> (pl.)	Mirdza <i>Mirdza</i>
middle <i>vidus; viducis</i> ; in the middle of <i>vidū</i> (postp. + gen.)	mirror <i>spogulis</i>
middle (adj.) <i>vidējs</i> ; middle age <i>pusmūžs</i> ; middle-aged <i>pusmūža</i> (invar. adj.); middle-aged man <i>vīrs vidējos gados</i> ; Middle Ages <i>viduslaiki</i> (pl.); Middle East <i>Vidējie austrumi</i> (pl.)	miscalculate <i>pārrēķināties</i>
midsummer: Midsummer's Day <i>Jāņi</i> (pl.)	mischievous <i>ļauņums</i>
midwife <i>vecmāte</i>	miscount <i>pārskaitlīties</i>
Miervaldis <i>Miervaldis</i>	miser <i>skopulis</i>
might <i>varenība</i>	miserly <i>slksts</i>
mighty <i>varens</i>	misfortune <i>nelaime</i>
mile <i>jūdze</i>	misguided <i>maldu</i> (invar. adj.); misguided notions <i>maldi</i> (pl.)
military: military service <i>kara klausība</i> ; military service law <i>kara klausības likums</i> ; military unit <i>komanda</i>	mishear <i>pārsklausīties</i>
milk <i>piens</i> ; rich in milk <i>pienīgs</i> (rare)	mislead <i>maldināt</i>
milk <i>slaukt</i>	miss, Miss <i>jaunkundze</i>
milky <i>pienains</i>	miss [train, bus, etc.] <i>nokavēt</i>
mill <i>dzirnavas</i> (pl.), <i>dzirnavas</i> (pl.);	mistake <i>kļūda</i>

mistaken: to be mistaken *vilties*
 Mister *kungs*
 mistress *mīļākā*; Mistress [= Mrs.] *kundze*
 misunderstand *pārprast*
 mix (trans.) *jaukt*; mix in *piejaukt*;
 mix together *sajaukt*; mix [with] (intrans.) *sajaukties*

moan <i>vaida, nopūta</i>	mosquito <i>ods</i>
moan <i>sūrot, sūroties</i>	moss <i>sūnas</i> (pl.)
moat <i>grāvis</i>	mossy <i>sūnains</i>
mob <i>pūlis</i>	most: for the most part <i>pa lielākai daļai</i> ; most probably <i>droši vien</i>
mock <i>apsmiet, izsmiet</i>	moth <i>nakts tauriņš</i>
moderate <i>mērens</i>	mother <i>māte</i> ; god-mother <i>krustmāte</i> ; grandmother <i>vecāmāte</i> ; step-mother <i>pamāte</i>
modern <i>moderns</i>	motor <i>motors</i> ; motor-car <i>auto</i> (m. indec.), <i>mašīna</i> ; motor-cycle <i>motocikls</i>
modify <i>pārgrozīt</i>	mould <i>izliet</i>
moist <i>mikls, mitrs, valgs, valgans, drēgns</i>	mound <i>cinis</i> ; castle mound <i>pilskalns</i>
moisture <i>mitrums</i>	mount: mount a horse <i>kāpt zirgā</i>
moment <i>brīdis, acumirklis, mirklis</i> ; at the moment <i>acumirkli</i> ; every moment <i>ik brīdi</i> ; just a moment! <i>acumirkli!</i> ; not a moment too soon <i>pats pēdējais laiks</i>	mountain <i>kalns</i> ; mountain-ash <i>sērmūksis, pilādzis</i> ; mountain-goat <i>kalnu kaza</i>
momentary <i>acumirkliģis</i>	mourn <i>sērot</i>
Monday <i>pirmdiena</i> ; on Monday <i>pirmdien</i>	mourner <i>bērinieks</i>
money <i>nauda</i>	mournful <i>sērs</i>
monotonous <i>vienmuļģis</i>	mourning <i>sēras</i> (pl.)
month <i>mēnesis</i> ; the month of May <i>maija mēnesis</i> ; every month <i>ik mēnesi</i>	mouse <i>pele</i> ; as poor as a church-mouse <i>plīks kā baznīcas žurka</i> ; field-mouse <i>lauku pele</i>
moo <i>maut</i>	moustache <i>ūsas</i> (pl.)
mood <i>gara stāvoklis</i>	mouth <i>mute</i> ; with one's mouth full <i>ar pilnu muti</i>
mooing <i>māviens</i>	move (trans.) <i>kustināt</i> ; (intrans.) <i>kustēties</i> ; move apart (intrans.) <i>aizšķirties, atdallties</i> ; move quickly (intrans.) <i>mudlīties</i>
moon <i>mēness</i> (gen. <i>mēness</i>)	movement <i>kustība</i>
moonlight <i>mēnesslīca</i>	mow (no-) <i>plaut</i> ; mow down <i>noplaut</i>
more (adv.) <i>vairāk</i> ; more and more <i>arvien vairāk</i> ; no more <i>vairs</i> ; once more <i>vētreiz, no jauna</i> ; the more... the more... <i>jo... jo...</i>	mower <i>plāvējs</i>
moreover <i>turklāt</i>	Mr <i>kungs</i>
morning <i>rīts, priekšpusdiena</i> ; [early] in the morning <i>(agri) no rīta</i> ; good morning! <i>labrīt!</i> ; this morning <i>šorīt</i> ; morning star <i>rīta zvaigzne, auseklis</i>	Mrs <i>kundze</i>
morose <i>ļīns</i> ; become morose <i>saplkt</i>	much (adv.) <i>daudz</i> + gen.; how much? <i>cik</i> + gen.; so much <i>tik daudz</i> + gen.
morsel <i>kumoss</i>	
Moses <i>Mozus</i>	

mucus *puņķi* (pl.); get mucus on oneself *nopuņķoties*
 mud *dubļi* (pl.), *dūņas* (pl.)
 muddled: become muddled *apjukt*
 muddy *dubļains*
 muffle: muffle oneself up *ietīties*
 multiply (trans.) *reizināt*
 murmur *šalka, šalkas* (pl.)
 murmur *bubināt*
 muscle *muskulis*
 museum *mūzejs*
 mushroom *sēne*
 music *mūzika*; funereal music *liķu mūzika*
 musician *mūziķis*
 mute (adj.) *mēms*
 mutter *norūkt*
 muzzle *purns*
 my (poss. adj.) *mans*
 mystery *noslēpums*
 mythical *teiksmains*

nail [finger, toe] *nags*; [in carpentry, etc.] *nagla*
 nail *naglot*; nail to *pienaglot*; nail together *sanaglot*
 naked *kails*
 name *vārds*; Name Day *vārda diena*; by name *vārdā*; what's your name? *kā tevi sauc?*
 named [to be] *saukties*
 namely *proti*
 nap *snaudiens*; have a nap *pagulēties*
 narrow *šaurš*
 nasty *nelāga* (invar. adj.)
 nation *valsts* (f.); *tauta*
 national *tautisks*; national holiday *valsts svētki* (pl.)
 nationality *tautība*
 native: native land *dzimtene*

natural *dabīgs*; in a natural state *brīvā dabā*
 nature *daba*; good-natured *labdabīgs, labsirdīgs*
 naughty *negants*; *izlaidies*
 nausea: ad nausea *līdz apnikumam*
 nauseating *riebīgs*
 naval: naval base *kara osta*
 navel *naba*
 navigation *jūrniecība*
 navy *flote*; Merchant Navy *tirdzniecības flote*
 near (adj.) *tuvs, tuvējs*; (adv.) *tuvu*; bring near *tuvināt*; *pie* (prep.) (prep. + gen.); *klāt* (postp. + dat.)
 near-by *see near*
 nearly *gandrīz*; we very nearly... *daudz netrūka, ka mēs..., cik tur trūka, ka mēs...*
 necessary *vajadzīgs*; to be necessary *vajadzēt*
 neck *kakls*; neck-tie *kakla saite*
 neckerchief *lakats*
 needle *adata*; fir-needle, pine-needle *skuja*
 needlework *šuveklis*
 needy: needy person *tukšnieks*
 neigh *zviēgt*; neigh softly *bubināt*; neigh suddenly *iezviēgties*
 neighbour *kaimiņš*
 neighbourhood *tuvums*; distant neighbourhood *pārnovads*; in the neighbourhood *kaimiņos*
 neither... nor... *ne... ne...*
 neon (noun) *neons*
 nephew *brāļa dēls, māsas dēls*
 nerve *nervs*; to get on one's nerves *krist uz nerviem*
 nest *ligzda*
 net *tīkls*
 nettle *nātra, nātre*

never (adv.) *nekad, nemūžam*; never again *nekad vairs*; never mind! (interj.) *nekas!*
 new *jauns*; new discovery, new experience *jaunatklāsmē*; New York *Ņujorka*; New Zealand (noun) *Jaunzēlande*; (adj.) *Jaunzēlandes* (invar.); New Zealander *jaunzēlandietis*, (f.) *-e*; something new *kaut kas jauns*
 news *ziņas* (pl.)
 newspaper *avīze, laikraksts*
 next *nākams*; next door *kaimiņos*; next room *blakus istaba*
 nibble *grauzt*
 nice *lāga* (invar. adj.)
 nicotine *nikotīns*
 niece *brāļa meita, māsas meita*
 niggard *skopulis*
 niggardliness *skopulība*
 night *nakts* (f.); sleep the night *pārgulēt*; spend the night *pārnakšņot*; day and night *dienu un nakti*; good night! *ar labu nakti!*
 nightingale *lakstīgala*
 nightmares *murgi* (pl.)
 nihilism *nihilisms*
 nimble *nasks, ņiprs, knašs*
 nine *deviņi, deviņēji*; nine hundred *deviņsimt, deviņi simti*; nine hundredth *deviņsimtais*
 nineteen *deviņpadsmit*
 nineteenth *deviņpadsmitais*
 ninetieth *deviņdesmitais*
 ninety *deviņdesmit*
 ninth *devītais*
 no (particle) *nē*; (adj.) [= not a single] *nekāds, neviens*
 noble (adj.) *cēls*
 nobleman *muižnieks*
 nobody *neviens*

nod (*pa-*)*māt*
 noise *troksnis*
 noisy *trokšņains*
 nominative: nominative case *nominātīvs*
 nonsense: talk nonsense *plāpāt, melst*
 nor *ne arī*; neither... nor... *ne... ne...*
 north (noun) *ziemeļi* (pl.); (adj.) *ziemeļu* (invar.); North Sea *Ziemeļu jūra*; north wind *ziemeļu vējš, ziemelis*
 northern (adj.) *ziemeļu* (invar.)
 Norway *Norvēģija*
 Norwegian *norvēģis*, (f.) *-iete*; (adj.) *norvēģu* (invar.); (adv.) *norvēģiski*
 nose *deguns*
 nostrils *nāsis* (pl.); [horse] *sprauslas* (pl.)
 not (neg. particle) *ne*; not at all (adv.) *nevis, nemaz, nebūt*; not even *ne arī*; not for nothing *ne par velti*; not only *neviens*; not only... but also *neviens... bet arī*; not a single (adj.) *neviens, nekāds*; not... but *nevis... bet*; for... not, yet... not (neg. conj.) *neba*; is it not so? *vai ne?*
 notch *ieciirst*
 note *piezīmēt*
 nothing *nekas*; *nenieka* (gen.; no nom.); not for nothing *ne par velti*
 notice *ievērot*; (*pa-*)*manīt*
 notion *jēdziens*; *iedoma*; to have some notion *jēgt*; misguided notions *maldī* (pl.)
 noun *lietvārds*
 novel *romāns*
 nouvelle *novelle*
 November *novembris*

now *tagad, pašlaik*; from now on *turpmāk*; just now *nupat; tikko*;
right now *pašreiz, patlaban*;
now... now... now... *drīz... drīz... drīz...*;
now and then *šad un tad*; now then! (interj.) *nu!*
nowadays *šais (šinis, šajos) laikos*
nowhere *nekur*
numb: grow numb (*no-*)*tirpt, (sa-)stingt*
number *skaitlis; numurs; skaitis*; a number of *vairāki* (pl. adj.)
numbness *sastingums*
numeral *skaitļa vārds*
nurse *apkopt*
nursing: nursing-sister *žēlsirdīgā māsa*
nut *rieksts*
nymph: water nymph *nāra*;
[seductive] *sirēna, sirēne*

oak *ozols*
oar *airis*
oasis *oaze*
oats *auzas* (pl.)
obey *klausīt* (usually + dat.)
object *priekšmets*; shining object *spīdekļis*
object [to] *iebilst* (*pret* + acc.)
objection [to] *iebildums* (*pret* + acc.)
obligation *pienākums; saistība*
oblige *piespiest*
oblique *slips, šķībs*
oblivion *aizmirstība*
oblong *iegarens*
observe (*ie-*)*vērot*; observe closely *noskatīties*
obstacle *šķērslis; kavēklis; traucēklis*
obstinate *spītīgs*
obtain (trans.) (*sa-*)*dabūt*; (*ie-*)*gūt*
obtuse *stulbs, truls*

occasion: on that occasion *toreiz*
occasionally *brīžam*
occupied *nodarbināts*
occupy *aizņemt*
ocean *okeans*; a drop in the ocean *kā piliens jūrā*; Pacific Ocean *Klusais okeans, Lielais okeans*
o'clock *pulksten(s), pulkstenis* (see lesson 44)
October *oktobris*
odour *smarža*; [unpleasant] *smaka*
Oedipus *Oidips*; Oedipus complex *Oidipa kompleks*
of: made of *no* + gen.
off (adv.) *nost*; hands off! *rokas nost!*
offence: take offence [at] *apvainoties* (*par* + acc.)
offend *apvainot*
offer *piedāvāt; ziedot*
office [place of work] *birojs*; post office *pasts*; [position, job] *amats*;
hold high office *būt augstā amatā*
officer [military] *virsnieks*
official (noun) *ierēdnis*
often *bieži*
oh! (interj.) *ō!, ū!, ail, ak!, vai!, ujal!*;
oh dear! (interj.) *ak!*
oil *eļļa*
oily *eļļains*
old *vecs; sirms*; centuries old (adj.) *simtgadu* (invar.); exceedingly old *vecumvecs*; times of old *senatne*;
old-fashioned *vecmodīgs*; Old Folks' Home *vecu ļaužu nams*; old man *vecis*
omit *izlaist*
on (prep.) *uz* + gen.; (adv.) [of clothing] *mugurā*; put on [clothing] *ģērbt mugurā*; [continually]: dance on and on *dejoj uz nebēdu*;
on to (prep.) *uz* + gen.

once *vienkārt*; [= once upon a time] *reiz, kādreiz*; once again, once more *no jauna; vēlreiz*
one (num.) *viens; vienēji*; one and the same *viens*; onefold (adj.) *vienkāršs*; of one kind *vienāds*;
one-sided *vienpusīgs*; one... another... another *cits... cits... cits...*; one... the other *viens... otrs*; (pron.) one's own *savs* (poss. adj.); *savējs* (poss. pron.); for one's own part *sav(u)kārt*
oneself (refl. pron.): (see lesson 15); (emph. pron.) *pats, (f.) pati*
onion *sīpols*
only (adv.) *tikai, tik; tikai... vien, tik... vien*; if only (conj.) *kaut*;
not only (adv.) *nevien*; not only... but also *nevien... bet arī, tiklab... kā (arī)*
ooh! (interj.) *ū!*
oops! (interj.) *šļuks!*
open (adj.) *atvērts*; [of car, boat, etc.] *vaļējs*; [of field, sky, etc.] *klajš*; half open *pusatvērts*; open ground *līdums*; (adv.) *vaļā*; cut open (*uz-*)*šķērst*; fly open *atsprāgt*
open (trans.) (*at-*)*vērt, vērt vaļā, attaisīt*; [of book, page, etc.] *atšķirt*; [of exhibition, etc.] *atklāt*;
open fire *atklāt uguni*; (intrans.) (*at-*)*vērties*
opera *opera*
operation *operācija*
opinion *doma, uzskats*; in my opinion *pēc manām domām, pēc maniem uzskatiem, manās acīs, manuprāt*
opponent *pretinieks*
opportune *izdevīgs*
oppose *pretoties* + dat.

opposition: come into opposition *sadurties*
oppress (*no-*)*mākt, nospiest* or (conj.) *vai; jeb*; either... or *vai nu... vai*
orange *apelsīns*
orchestra *orķestris*
ordain [= decree] *noteikt*
order [= command] *komanda, pavēle*; (eccl. etc.) *ordenis*; [serial] *kārta*; [= tidiness] *kārtība*; put in order (*sa-*)*kārtot, nokārtot*; in order that (conj.) *lai*
order [= command] (*pa-*)*vēlēt* + dat.; *likt* + dat.; *komandēt*; [meals, etc.] *pasūtīt, pasūtīnāt*; [books, etc.] *izrakstīt*
organ *ērģeles* (pl.)
organist *ērģelnieks*
original (adj.) *īpatnējs*
oriole: golden oriole *vālodze*
orphan *bārenis, (f.) -e; bāris; sērdienis, (f.) -e*
orphanage *bāreņu nams*
Orthodox (eccl.) *pareizticīgs*
Oslo (m. indec.) *Oslo*
other (adj.) [of two] *otrs*; [of more than two] *cits*; on the other hand (adv.) *turpretim, turpretī*; on the other side of *viņpus* (prep. + gen.); at other times (adv.) *citreiz*;
sometime or other (adv.) *gan jau*;
(pron.) one... the other *viens... otrs*; some... others *citi... citi*
otherwise (adv.) *citādi*
our (poss. adj.) *mūsu* (indec.)
ours (poss. pron.) *mūsējs*
out: out of *no* + gen.; *iz* + gen.; out of turn *ārpus kārtas*
outcome *iznākums*
outer (adj.) *ārējs*
outgrow *pāraugt*

outside (noun) *āra*
 outside (adv.) *ārā, laukā*
 outside (prep.) *ārpus* + gen.
 outskirts *pievārte*
 oven *ceplis*
 over (adv.) *pāri*; (prep.) *pār* +
 acc., *pāri* + dat. (also as postp.);
 pass over, go over *pāriet*
 overcoat *mētelis*
 overcome *pārvarēt, pārspēt*
 overdrink *pārdzerties*
 overeat *pārēsties*
 overexert: overexert oneself
pārsteipties
 overfeed *pārbarot*
 overfill *pārpildīt*
 overflow *pārplūst, pārlīt, kūsat*
 overgrow *pāraugt*; become over-
 grown *aizaugt*
 overhear *noklausīties*
 overheat *pārkurināt*
 overload *pārkraut*
 overpay *pārmaksāt*
 oversleep *aizgulēties*
 overstep *pārkāpt*
 overtake *panākt*
 overthrow *nosviest*
 overturn (trans.) (*ap-*)*gāzt*
 overwork (intrans.) *pārstrādāties*
 own: one's own (poss. adj.) *savs*;
 (poss. pron.) *savējs*; for one's own
 part *sav(u)kārt*
 owner *īpašnieks*
 ox *vērsis*

pace *gaita*
 Pacific: Pacific Ocean *Klusais*
okeans, Lielais okeans
 pacify (*sa-*)*mierināt, apklusināt*
 pack (trans.) (*pie-*)*kravāt*
 page *lapas puse, lappuse*
 pain *sāpes* (pl.); I have a pain in my

chest, etc. *man spiež krūtīs*, etc.;
 pains [= efforts] *pūles* (pl.); take
 pains *pūlēties*
 painful *sāpīgs*; to be painful *sāpēt*
 paint *krāsa*
 paint (*no-*)*krāsot*; [pictures]
 (*uz-*)*gleznot*
 painter [= artist] *gleznotājs*
 painting *glezna*
 pair *pāris*
 pale *bāls, blāvs*; grow pale *bālēt*;
balot
 paleness *bāhums*
 palm [of hand] *delna*; [tree] *palma*
 pan [frying, etc.] *panna*
 pander [to] *izpatikt* + dat.
 pane: window-pane *rūts* (f.), *logu*
stikls
 pant *elsāt, elsot, elst*
 paper *papīrs*; sheet of paper *lapa*;
 newspaper *avīze, laikraksts*
 parachute *izpletnis*
 paradise *paradīze*; bird of paradise
paradīzes putns
 paragraph *pants*
 paralyzed *tizls*
 parasol *saulesargs*
 parcel *sainis, vīstiņš*
 pardon *piedošana*
 pardon *atvainot*
 parent: parents *vecāki* (pl.); god-
 parent *kūma* (m. or f.)
 Paris *Parīze*
 parish *draudze*; parish hall
draudzes nams
 park *parks*
 park (trans.) *novietot*
 parody *parodēt*
 parrot *papagailis*
 part *daļa*; fore-part *priekšgals*; for
 the most part *pa lielākai daļai*;
 for one's own part *sav(u)kārt*

part (trans.) *dalīt*
 participle *divdabīs*
 particular [= fussy] *izvēlīgs*
 particularly *visnotaļ*
 parting: parting words *ardievas* (pl.)
 partridge *irbe*
 party *viesības* (pl.); have an evening
 party *vakarēt*
 pass (trans.) [= hand to]
 (*pa-*)*sniegt*; [of examination]
izturēt; (intrans.) [of time] *aiziet*,
aizritēt, aiztecēt; [= cease] *pāriet*
 passage [= corridor] *gaitenis*;
 passage-way *caurbrauktuve*
 passer-by *garāmģājējs*
 passive (gram.) *ciešamās kārtas*
 (invar. adj.); passive voice
ciešamā kārtā
 passport *pase*
 past (noun) *pagātne*
 past (adv.) *garām*; going past (adv.)
garāmejojot; (prep.) *garām* (postp.
 + dat.)
 pastime *laika kavēklis*
 pastor *mācītājs*
 pastry *mikla*
 pasture *ganības* (pl.); *nora*; enclosed
 pasture *aploks*
 patch [for mending] *ielāps*
 path *teka, taka*
 patience *pacietība*
 patient (noun) *slimnieks, vājinieks*
 patient (adj.) *pacietīgs*; to be patient
paciesties
 patronize *apmeklēt*
 Paul *Pāvils*
 paw *ķepa, ķetna*
 day (*sa-*)*maksāt*; *algot*; pay extra
piemaksāt; pay in *iemaksāt*; pay
 off [house, etc.] *nomaksāt*; [debt,
 etc.] *dzēst*; finish paying for
nomaksāt; pay attention to *vērst*

uzmanību uz + acc., *pievērst*
uzmanību + dat.
 pea *zirnis*
 peace *miers*; haven of peace
mierosts; contract peace *lgt*
mieru; leave in peace *likt* + dat.
 + *mieru (miera)*, *likt* + acc. +
mierā; sign peace *lgt mieru*
 peaceful *mierīgs*
 peacock *pāvs*
 peals [of bell, etc.] *zvani* (pl.)
 pear *bumbieris*; pear-tree *bumbiere*
 pearl *pērle*
 peasant: peasant-farmer *zemnieks*
 pebbly *oļains*
 peck [continually] *knābāt*
 peculiar *savāds*; *īpatnējs*
 peculiarity *īpašība*
 peel (trans.) (*no-*)*mizot*
 peeved: get peeved *sapīkt*
 peevish *īgns*
 peevishness *īgnums*
 peewit *ķīvīte*
 pen *spalva*; fountain-pen
pildspalva
 penalty: death penalty *nāves sods*
 pencil *zīmulis*
 penny *penijs*
 people *laudis* (m. pl.)
 pepper *pipari* (pl.)
 per: per annum *gadā*; per day
dienā; per week *nedēļā*
 perceive (*pa-*)*manīt*
 perception *atziņa*
 performance *izrāde*
 perfume *smaržas* (pl.)
 perhaps *varbūt*
 peril *briesmas* (pl.)
 perilousness *bīstamība*
 period *laikmets*
 periodical (noun) *laikraksts*
 perish (*aiz-*)*iet bojā, iznīkt*

permission *atļauja*
 permit (*at-*)*ļaut*
 perpetual *mūžīgs*
 perplexed: become perplexed
apjukst
 perplexity *neziņa*
 persecute *vajāt*
 perseverance *neatlaidība*
 persevering *neatlaidīgs*
 persistent *neatlaidīgs*
 person *cilvēks*; see in person
redzēt vaigā; dark-haired person
tumšmatis, (f.) *-e*; dying person
mirējs; fair-haired person
gaišmatis, (f.) *-e*; needy person
tukšinieks
 perspiration *sviedri* (pl.)
 perspire (*no-*)*svīst*
 persuade *pārliecināt, pierunāt*
 pessimism *pesimisms*
 pester (*uz-*)*bāzties* + dat.
 pestilence *sērga*
 Peter *Pēteris*
 petition *izlūgties*
 petrol *benzīns*
 phantoms *murgi* (pl.)
 pharmacist *aptiekārs*
 pharmacy *aptieka*
 phone *tālrunis*; over the phone *pā tālruni*
 photo *foto* (m. indec.)
 photograph *fotografija, uzņēmums*
 photograph (*no-*)*fotografēt, uzņemt*
 photographer *fotografs*
 physicist *fiziķis*
 piano *klavieres* (pl.)
 pick (*sa-*)*lasīt*, (*no-*)*plūkt*; pick out
izmeklēt; pick up (trans.) *uzņemt*;
 (intrans.) *iet augšup*
 pickpocket *kabatas zaglis*
 picture *bilde*; in a picture *uz bildes*;
 picture theatre *kinoteātris*

piece *gabals; kumoss*; pieces of iron
dzelzis (pl.); field-piece *lielgabals*;
 to pieces (adv.) *pušu, pušam*; fall
 to pieces *salūzt, (sa-)šķīst*
 piercing [sound, etc.] *skaudrs*
 pig *cūka*; wild pig *meža cūka*;
 pig's trotters *cūkas kājas*
 pigeon *balodis*
 pigtail *bize*
 pile *čupa*
 pile (*uz-*)*kraut*
 pillar *stabs*
 pillory *kauna stabs*
 pillow *spilvens*
 pin (*pie-*)*spraušt*
 pinch *kniebiens*
 pinch (*ie-*)*kniebt* + dat.; pinch off
nokniebt
 pine: pine-needle *skuja*; pine-tree
priede
 pine: pine away (*no-*)*nlkt*,
 (*no-*)*vārgt*
 pink *sārts*
 pious *dievbijīgs*
 pipe [for smoking] *pīpe*; [for water,
 etc.] *caurule*; [musical] shepherd's
 pipe *stabule*
 pit [= hole] *bedre*; pit of the
 stomach *pakrūte*
 pitch: pitch back and forth (intrans.)
klandīties
 pitchfork *dakša*
 pithy *kodolīgs*
 pitiful *žēls*
 pity: a pity! (particle) *žēl*
 pity (trans.) *žēlot*
 Pixie *Piksija*
 place *vieta*; hiding-place *slēptuve*;
 market-place *tirgus laukums*;
 place behind the stove *aizkrāsne*;
 place under the roof *paspārne*;
 change places *mainīties vietām*;

from distant places *no malū*
malām; in [some] places *vietām*
 place *stādīt, likt, novietot*; place
 oneself *aizstāties; novietoties*; place
 about *aplīkt*; place somewhere
 else *pārlikst*
 plague *sērga*
 plague: to be plagued *mocīties*
 plaid *sagša*
 plain (noun) *klajums*
 plait *bize*
 plait *pīt*; plait around *appīt*; plait
 together *sapīt*
 plan *plāns*
 plan *plānot*
 plane [aeroplane] *lidmašīna*;
 [carpenter's] *ēvele*
 plane *ēvelēt*
 plank *dēlis*
 plant *stāds*
 plant (*ie-*)*stādīt*; (*sa-*)*dēstīt*
 plaque *plāksne*
 plate *šķīvis*; [= plaque] *plāksne*;
 tinplate *skārds*
 platform [railway] *platforma*,
perons
 play [theatre] *luga*; play on words
vārdu spēle
 play [instrument, game] *spēlēt*;
 [without object, = play games]
spēlēties, rotaļāt(ies)
 playmate *rotaļu biedrs, rotaļnieks*
 playwright *drāmatīķis*
 pleasant *jauks, patīkams*
 please (*pa-*)*tikt* + dat., *izpatikt*
 + dat.
 please! (particle) *lūdzu!*; please do!
lūdzu!
 pleased: to be pleased *priecāties*
 pleasure *izprieca, tīksme*; with
 pleasure *labprāt*
 plebs: the plebs *šādi tādi* (pl.)

pliant *smuidrs*
 plot: vegetable plot *dobe*
 plough *arklis*
 plough (*uz-*)*art*; plough again
pārart; plough in *ieart*
 ploughed: ploughed field *arums*
 pluck (*no-*)*plūkt, plūkāt, raut*; pluck
 off *noplūkt, nokniebt, šķīt*; pluck
 out *izraut*
 plump: grow plump *apvelties*
 plunder *apzagt*
 plunge (in) (*ie-*)*nirt, iegrimt*
 plural (adj.) *plūrāls*
 pocket *kabata; ķeša*; pickpocket
kabatas zaglis
 poem *dzejolis*
 poet *dzejnieks, dziesminieks*
 poetic *poētisks, dzejisks*
 poetry *dzeja*; write poetry *dzejot*
 point *punkts*
 pointed *smails*
 pointer *rādītājs*
 poison *inde*
 poisonous *indīgs*
 poke: poke out (trans.) *izbāzt*; poke
 one's tongue out at somebody
rādīt kādam mēli
 Poland *Polija*
 polar: polar bear *ledus lācis*
 Pole *polis*, (f.) *-iete*
 police *policija*
 policeman *kārtībnieks, policists*
 Polish (adj.) *poļu* (invar.); (adv.)
poliski
 polish *spodrināt*
 pollen *putekļi* (pl.); speck of pollen
puteklis
 polychromy *polichromija*
 pond *dīķis*
 ponder *apdomāt*
 poor *nabadzīgs; nabaga* (invar.); as
 poor as a church-mouse *plīks kā*

baznīcas žurka; poor-house
nabagmāja; poor man *nabags*; [in
 quality] *trūcīgs*
 poppy *magone*
 population *iedzīvotāji* (pl.)
 pork *cūkas gaļa, cūkgaļa*
 porous [of bread] *acains*
 porridge *putra*
 portray *tēlot*
 position *vieta*; [= job] *amats*; hold
 a high position *būt augstā
 amatā*
 possession *īpašums*; take possession
 of *pārņemt*
 possible *iespējams*
 post [= job] *amats*; [= pole]
stabs; door-post *stendere*; post
 office *pasts*
 postage: postage stamp *pastmarka*
 postman *pastnieks*
 postpone *atlikt*
 pot *podis, katls*
 potato *kartupelis*
 pound *mārciņa*
 pour (trans.) *liet, bērt*; pour in
ieliet, iebērt; pour in extra *pieliet*;
 pour off *noliet*; pour on *uzgāzt*;
 pour out *izliet, izbērt, izgāzt*;
 (intrans.) [of rain] *gāzt*
 poverty *nabadzība, trūkums*
 power [= might] *varenība*; [= com-
 mand, sway] *vara*; come to power
nākt pie varas; [electric, etc.]
spēks; power-station *spēkstacija*
 powerful *varens, spēcīgs*
 practical *praktisks*
 practice *apmācība*
 practise: practise magic *burt*
 praise *slavēt, cildināt* (occ. *teikt*)
 praiseworthy *teicams*
 pram *bērnu ratiņi* (pl.)
 pray *lūgt, lūgties*

preach *sprediķot*
 preceding *iepriekšējs*
 precious: precious stone *dārgakmens*
 (gen. -ns)
 precisely *tieši*
 prehistoric *aizvēsturisks*
 prepare (trans.) *(pa-)gatavot,*
sagatavot, (sa-)taisīt (occ. *darīt*);
 (intrans.) *gatavoties, taisīties,*
sakārtoties, (sa-)posties
 prepared *gatavs*
 preposition *prievārds*
 prescribe *izrakstīt*
 presence *klātbūtne*
 present [= gift] *balva*; [= present
 time] *tagadne*; for the present (adv.)
pagaidām; (gram.) *tagadne*
 present (adj.) *tagadējs, pašreizējs*;
 at the present time *pašlaik*;
 (gram.) present tense *tagadne*;
 (adv.) *klāt*
 present [to] *(ie-)dāvināt, dāvēt*;
pasniegt
 presentiment *nojauta*
 press (trans.) *(pa-)spiest*; press
 against (trans.) *piespiest*; (intrans.)
piekļauties; press down (trans.)
nospiest; press together (trans.)
sagrūst; [= iron] *gludināt*
 pressure *spiediēns*
 presumably *laikam*
 pretend *tēlot*; pretend to be
uzdoties, izlikties
 pretty *glīts, glīšs, košs*
 previous *līdzšinējs*
 prey: beast [bird, etc.] of prey
pļesoņa (m. or f.); beast of prey
plēšīgs zvērs
 price *cena*; at any price *par katru
 cenu*
 prick *dūriens*
 prick (trans.) *durt*; *dzelt* + dat.;

prick up [of ears] *sacelt*; prick up
 one's ears *ausīties*
 prickle *ērķšķis, dzelonis*
 pride *lepnums; lepība*; object of pride
lepnums
 priest [heathen] *vaidelaitis, vaidelotis,*
vaidelis
 primaeval *pirmlaicīgs*
 primary: primary school *pamatskola*
 print *iespiest*
 printing: printing-house *spiestuve*
 prison *cietums*; prison sentence
cietuma sods
 prisoner *cietumnieks*
 privation *trūkums*
 prize *balva*
 probably *laikam*; most probably
droši vien
 problem *problēma*
 proceed *virzīties*
 procession *gājiens*
 prodigal: Prodigal Son *pazudušais
 dēls*
 produce *ražot*
 product *ražojums*
 production *ražojums*
 professor *profesors*
 profit *peļņa*; at a profit *ar peļņu*
 profusely (adv.) *papilnam*
 progress *sekmes* (pl.)
 prohibit *aizliegt*
 prohibition *aizliegums*
 prolong (trans.) *vilcināt*
 promise *solljums*
 promise *sollt, soltīties*
 promised: that which is promised
solltais
 pronounce *izrunāt*
 proof *pierādījums*
 prop: prop against (trans.)
(pie-)sliet
 proper *patīss*

property [= possession] *īpašums*;
 [= characteristic] *īpašība*
 prophet *pravietis*
 proposal [of marriage] *bildinājums*
 propose [= suggest] *ieteikt*;
 propose [marriage] to *bildināt* +
 acc.
 proprietor *īpašnieks*
 prospect *izredze*
 prosper *(uz-)plaukt*
 protect *pasargāt*
 protest *liegties; protestēt; protest*
 innocence *liegties*
 proud [of] *lepns* (*uz* or *par* + acc.)
 provident *rūpīgs*
 province *apgabals*
 provisions *pārtika*
 prow (*kuģa*) *priekšgals*
 proximity *tuvums*
 prudence *gudrība*
 prudent *prātīgs*
 pub *krogus* (occ. *krogs*)
 public: in public *sabiedrībā*; public
 servant *ierēdnis*
 publish [book] *izdot*
 puff *elst*
 pull (trans.) *(pa-)vilkt, (pa-)stiept,*
raut; pull (trans.) by *paraut* +
 dat. + *aiz* + gen.; pull a little
pavilkt; pull away (trans.) *atraut*;
 pull down (trans.) *noraut*; pull off
 (trans.) *novilkt, noraut*; pull on
 (trans.) *uzvilkt*; pull out (trans.)
izvilkt, izraut; pull to (trans.)
pievilkt
 pump: pump out *izsūkt*
 punish *sodīt*
 punishment *sods*
 puppy *kucēns*
 purchase *pirkums, iepirkums*
 pure *tīrs; šķīsts*
 purple (noun) *purpurs*

purpose: on purpose *tīšām, tīši*
 pursue *trenkt, triekt*; [= hound]
vajāt
 push *grūdiens*
 push (trans.) *stumt, (pa-)grūst*; push
 aside *atbīdīt*; push away
aizstumt, aizgrūst; push down
nogrūst, nogāzt; push in *iestumt,*
iegrūst; push off *atbīdīt*; push out
izstumt; push over *nogāzt*; push
 together *sagrūst*; push up to
piegrūst
 put *likt*; put oneself *nostāties*;
 put around *aptaisīt*; put aside
atlikt; *uzglabāt*; put away *atlikt*;
noglabāt; put to bed *guldīt*; put
 down *nolikt*; put in *ielikt*; put
 in order *(sa-)kārtot, nokārtot*;
 put on *uzlikt*; [of clothes]
uzģērbt, ģērbt mugurā, uzvilkt,
apvilkt; [of footwear, gloves, rings,
 etc.] *uzmaukt, maukt virsū*; [of
 shoes, socks, etc.] *(uz-)aut,*
uzmaukt, maukt virsū; put on shoes,
 socks, etc. *aut kājas, auties*; put
 on lipstick *krāsot lūpas*; put on
 an act *spēlēt komēdiju*; put out
izlikt; [buds, etc.] *riest*; put the
 shot *grūst lodi*
 putrefy *(sa-)pūt*
 puzzling *mīklains*
 pyre *sārts*
 quarrel *ķilda*
 quarrel *bārties, saplēsties*
 quarrelsome *ķildīgs*
 quarry: stone quarry *akmeņlauztuve*
 quarter *ceturdāļa*; quarter hour
ceturksnis, ceturdaļstunda
 queen *karaliene*
 question *jautājums*
 question (trans.) *pratināt*

queue *rinda*
 quick (adj.) *ātrs, knašs, naīgs, nīprs*;
dzīvs; (adv.) *ātri*; as quick as
 lightning *zibēnātrumā*
 quickly *ātri*; move quickly
mudlīties
 quicksilver *dzīvsudrabs*
 quiet (adj.) *klus; rāms*; to be quiet
klusēt; keep quiet *ciest klusu*
 quieten *apklusināt, apmierināt*
 quietly *(pa-)klusām, klusu*
 quietness *klusums*
 quite (adv.) *gluži, pavisam, tīri, it,*
itīn; quite a few *dažs labs + sing.*
 race *skrējiens*; horse-races *zirgu*
sacīkstes (pl.)
 rack *moku sols*
 radiate *starot*
 radio *radio (m. indec.), radiofons*
 radio-activized *radioaktīvizēts*
 raft *plosts*
 rafter *balķis*
 rag *skranda*
 rage *trakot*; [of sea, etc.] *bangot,*
brāzt, plosīties
 railway *dzelzceļš*
 rain *lietus*; rainbow *varavīksna,*
varavīksne; rain-coat *lietus mētelis*
 rain *(no-)līt, uzlīt*; it is raining *lietus*
līst; it is raining cats and dogs *līst*
kā Jāņos; rain a little *uzlīt*
 rainbow *varavīksna, varavīksne*
 rain-coat *(lietus) mētelis*
 rainy *lietains*
 raise (trans.) [= lift] *(sa-)celt*;
 [= bring up] *audzināt*; [= culti-
vate] audzēt
 rake *grābeklis*
 range: rifle range *šautuve*
 ranger: forest-ranger *mežsargs*
 rank *pakāpe*

rare *rets*
 rarely *reti*
 rash *straujš*
 raspberry *avene*
 rat *žurka*
 rate: birth-rate *dzimstība*
 rather *drīzāk*
 rattle (intrans.) *klabēt, dārdēt*
 rave *trakot*
 raven *krauklis*
 ravine *grava*
 raw *jēls*
 ray *stars*
 razor *bārdas nazis*
 reach *(sa-)sniegt, aizsniegt, piekļūt*
 read *lasīt*; read through *izlasīt*;
 read over *pārlasīt*
 readily *labprāt*
 reading: reading-room *lasītava*
 ready *gatavs*; get ready *gatavoties,*
taisīties, auties
 real *īstens, īsts; faktiskš*
 reality *īstenība, patiesība*
 realize *atskārēt, sajēgt*; to be
 realized *piepildīties*
 really *tiešām, patiešām*
 realm *valsts (f.)*
 reap *(no-)pļaut*
 reaper *pļāvējs*
 rear: rear up *salēkties*
 re-arrange *grozīt, pārkārtot*
 reason *īemesls, pamats*
 reassure *drošināt*
 rebellious *dumpīgs*
 recalculate *pārrēķināt*
 recall *atsaukt*
 recede [of noise] *aizdīmt*
 receive *saņemt, ieņemt*; [people]
uzņemt
 recent *nesens*
 recently *nesen, pēdējā laikā*
 re-christen *pārkristīt*
 recognition *atzinība*
 recognize [person] *pazīt*; recognize
 as... *atzīt par + acc.*
 recommend *ieteikt*
 reconcile *samierināt*
 record: gramophone record *skaņu*
plate
 recount [= tell] *(iz-)stāstīt*;
 [= count again] *pārskaitīt*
 recover (intrans.) *atspirgt*; (trans.)
 [of breath] *atvilkt*
 recriminate *bārties*
 red *sarkans*; dark red *tumšsarkans*;
 red-faced *sārts*
 redder (intrans.) *(no-)sarkt*
 reddish-brown *rūsgans*
 reduce (trans.) *mazināt*
 re-dye *pārkrāsot*
 reeds *niedolis*
 reel *sagrīloties*
 refine *izsmalcināt*
 refit *pārtaisīt*
 reflect (trans.) *atstarot*; (intrans.)
apdomāties, nodomāt
 reflection *atstarojums, atspīdums*
 re-form (trans.) *pārveidot*
 refreshment *veldze*
 refrigerator *ledus skapis, ledusskapis,*
saldētājs
 refuge *pajumte, paspārne*; take
 refuge *verties*
 refuse *atkritumi (pl.)*
 refuse (trans.) [of people] *noraidīt*;
 (intrans.) *liegties*
 regain *atgūt*
 regenerated: to be regenerated
atdzimt
 regiment *pulks*
 region *apgabals*
 register: cash-register *kase*
 regrind *pārmalt*
 regulation *likums*

rehearsal *mēģinājums*
 rehearse *mēģināt*
 reject *atraidīt, noraidīt*
 rejoice *priecāties, līgot*
 relapse *atslīgt*
 relate *pastāstīt, izstāstīt*
 related *rada* (invar. adj.)
 relation *attiecība*; break off relations
saplēsties
 relative *radnieks, tuvinieks*; relatives
radi (pl.)
 release *palaist*; release into *ielaišt*;
 release out of *izlaišt*
 relic *relikvija*
 relief *veldze*
 religion *ticība*
 rely [upon] *uzticēties* + dat.
 remain *palikt*; one who remains
 behind *palicējs*
 remaining *pārējs*
 remains *atliekas* (pl.); [decaying]
trūdi (pl.)
 remake *pārtaisīt*
 remark *piezīmēt*
 remedy [for] *līdzeklis* (pret + acc.)
 remember *atcerēties, atminēt* (ies)
 reminder *piemiņa*
 remove (to a distance) (trans.)
attālināt
 rename *pārkristīt*
 render (+ adj.) *padarīt*
 renew *atjaunot*
 renovate *pārtaisīt*
 reorganize (trans.) *pārveidot*
 re-pack (trans.) *pārkravāt*
 repaint *pārkrāsot*
 repair (*sa-*)*labot*; [clothing]
(sa-)lāpīt
 repay *atmaksāt*
 repeat *atkārtot*
 repeatedly *vairākkārt*
 repetition *atkārtojums*

reply *atteikt*
 report (*pa-*)*ziņot*
 repose *dusa, atdusa*
 repose (intrans.) *atpūsties*
 representative *pārstāvis*
 reprimand *rāt*
 reptile *rāpulis*
 repulse *atvairīt*
 repute: of ill repute *šaubīgs*; to be
 reputed *skaitīties*
 request *lūgums*
 request (*pa-*)*prasīties*
 re-question *pārjautāt*
 requiem *rekvīems*
 requirement *prasība*
 rescue *glābiņš*
 rescue (*iz-*)*glābt*
 resemble *līdzināties*
 re-shoe [horse] *pārkalt*
 reside *mājot*
 resist *atvairīt; pretoties* + dat.
 resound *atskanēt, ribēt*
 resounding *skanīgs*
 respect: in every respect (adv.) *visādi*
 respect *ieredzēt*
 respectful *godbijīgs*
 responsibility *atbildība*
 responsible *atbildīgs*
 rest *dusa, atdusa*
 rest (intrans.) *atpūsties; dusēt*
 restaurant *restorāns*
 restore *atjaunot*
 result *iznākums, rezultāts*
 resurrection *augšāmcelšanās* (refl.)
 retailer *sīktirgotājs*
 retain *paturēt*
 retell *pārstāstīt*
 retrace: retrace one's steps *atkāpties*
 retreat *atkāpties*
 return (intrans.) *atgriezties*; return
 home *pārrasties (mājās)*
 reveal *atklāt*

revenge: take revenge *atmaksāt*
 reverent *godbijīgs*
 reverse (trans.) *atgriezt*
 revive (intrans.) *atspirgt; atdzimt*
 reward *algot*
 re-weigh *pārsvērt*
 rewrite *pārrakstīt*
 rhythmic *ritmisks*
 rice *rīsi* (pl.)
 rich *bagāts, naudīgs*; rich in *bagāts*
ar + acc.; rich in milk *pienīgs*
 (rare)
 riches *bagātība*
 ride *jājiens*
 ride *jāt*; [a given distance] *nojāt*;
 ride around (trans.) *apjāt*; ride
 home *pārjāt*; ride in *iejāt*; ride
 out *izjāt*; ride up *atjāt, piejāt*;
 come riding *atjāt*; go riding *izjāt*;
 ride a horse *jāt uz zirga*
 rider *jātnieks*; departing rider
aizjājējs
 ridiculous *smieklīgs; smiekla* (invar.)
 riffled *rievains*
 rifle *šautene*; automatic rifle
mašīnšautene; rifle range *šautuve*
 Riga *Rīga*
 right (noun) *tiesība*; right(s)
tiesības (pl.); I am right *man ir*
taisnība
 right (adj.) [= correct] *pareizs*; [as
 opposed to left] *labs*; on the right,
 to the right *pa labi*; (adv.) right
 now *patlaban, pašreiz*; right there
turpat
 righteous *krietns*
 ring *gredzens*
 ring *zvanīt*; [= telephone]
piezvanīt + dat.; ring out
ieskanēties
 rinse *skalot*; rinse out *izskalot*;
 rinse over *noskalot*

rip: rip open (intrans.) (*iz-*)*irt*
 ripe *gatavs*
 ripen (intrans.) (*no-*)*briest*
 ripeness *briedums*
 rise (*uz-*)*celties; izslieties*; [of sun]
(uz-)lēkt; rise up *pacelties*,
piecēties; [of dough, etc.] *uzbriest*
 risk *riskēt*
 river *upe*; river-bank *upmala*;
 swim in the river *peldēt pa*
upi
 rivulet *urga*
 road *ceļš*; cross-road(s) *krustceļš*;
 at the cross-roads *krustceļos*; side-
 road *sānceļš* (occ. *sānu ceļš*);
 roadside *ceļmala*
 roadside *ceļmala*
 roam (trans.) *izstaiģāt*
 roar *rūciens, rūkšana*
 roar [of sea, storm, wind, etc.] *krākt*,
šņākt, aurot; [of animals] *rēkt*;
 [of thunder, noises, etc.] *rūkt*
 roaring *rūkoņa*
 roast *cepētis*
 roast (trans.) *cept*
 rob *apzagt, (iz-)laupīt*
 robber *laupītājs*
 rock *akmens*; rock-face *klintaine*
 rock (trans.) *šūpot, tricināt*;
 (intrans.) *šūpoties*; [of boats]
klandīties
 rocking *šūpojiens*
 rod: fishing-rod *makšķere*
 roll (trans.) *velt*; [cigarette] *ilt*;
 (intrans.) *ritēt, velties*; roll around
 (trans.) *apvelt*; roll in (trans.)
ievelt; (intrans.) *ievelties*; roll out
 (trans.) *izvelt*; (intrans.)
izvelties; roll up (trans.) *savīlāt*
 roller *zaļā vārna*
 rolling (adv.) *ripu ripām*
 romantic (adj.) *romantisks*

- roof *jumts*; place under the roof *paspārne*
 roof (trans.) *jumt*
 room *istaba*; *kambaris*; *telpa*; [= space] *vieta*; anteroom *priekštelpa*; ball-room *balles zāle*; bathroom *vannas istaba*; cloak-room *ģērbtuve*; dining-room *ēdamistaba*; dressing-room *ģērbtuve*; the next room *blakus istaba*; reading-room *lasitava*
 rooster *gailis*
 root *sakne*; to extract the root (math.) *izvilkt sakni*; root vegetables *saknes* (pl.)
 rope *virve*, *valgs*
 rose *roze*; dog-rose, wild-rose *meža roze*
 rosy *sārts*; exceedingly rosy *sārtinsārts*
 rot (*sa-*)*pūt*; begin to rot *iepūt*
 rotten [= beastly, colloq.] *pagāna* (invar.)
 rouble *rublis*
 rough [= coarse] *rupjš*; [= superficial] *paviršs*
 round [of ammunition] *šāviens*
 round (adj.) *apaļš*
 route *ceļš*
 row *rinda*, *virkne*
 row *airēt*, *irt*
 royal *karalisks*
 rub (trans.) *berzt*; (intrans.) *trīties*; rub off (trans.) *noberzt*
 rubber *gumija*
 rubbish *atkritumi* (pl.)
 rude *rupjš*
 Rūdis *Rūdis*
 ruffian *nelietis*
 ruin, ruins *drupas* (pl.); fall into ruins *sagrūt*; go to ruin [of people] *pakļst*
 rule *likums*
 rule *valdīt*
 ruler *valdnieks*
 rumble *rūciens*, *rūkšana*
 rumble *ribēt*, *dārdēt*, *klaudzēt*
 rummage *vandīt*
 rumours *valodas* (pl.)
 run *skrējiens*
 run (*pa-*)*skriet*; *plūst*; *tecēt*; run for all one is worth *skriet cik vien jauda*; run oneself tired *noskrieties*; run about *skraidīt*; run around *aptecēt*; run away *aizskriet*; run down *notecēt*; run home *pārskriet*; run in *ieskriet*; *ietecēt*; run low *izsikt*; run off *aizskriet*; run out *izskriet*; *izplūst*; [= be exhausted] *pietrūkt*; run over *pārskriet*; run to and fro *tekāt*; run together *saskriet*; run up *atskriet*; *attecēt*; run up to *pieskriet*; come running *atskriet*; *attecēt*
 rung *pakāpiens*, *pakāpenis*
 runner *skrējējs*
 runny *šķidrš*
 rush *mesties*; *brāzt*; rush forward *drāzties*
 russet *rūsgans*
 Russia *Krievija*
 Russian (noun) *krievs*, (f.) *-iete*; (adj.) *krievu* (invar.); (adv.) *krieviski*
 rustle *čabēt*; [of wind] *šalkt*
 rustling *šalka*, *šalkas* (pl.)
 rusty: grow rusty *rūsēt*
 rut *ēze*
 ruthlessness *nežēlība*
 rye *rudzi* (pl.)
 sable *cauna*
 sack *maiss*

- sacred *svēts*
 sacrifice *ziedot*
 sad *bēdīgs*, *sērīgs*, *sērs*; to be sad *skumdināties*
 sadden *apbēdināt*
 saddle *seglot*
 safe (noun) *naudas skapis*
 safe (adj.) *drošs*, *sveīks*; safe and sound *sveīks un vesels*, *spirgts un vesels*
 sail *peldēt*
 sailor *jūrnīeks*, *kuģinīeks*
 saintly *svēts*
 sake: for the sake of *labad* (postp. + gen.), *dēļ* (postp. + gen.)
 salad *salāti* (pl.)
 salami [generically] *desa*
 salary *alga*
 salesman [-girl, -woman] *pārdevējs*, (f.) *-a*
 salt *sāls* (f.); salt water *sāls ūdens*
 salty *sāļš*
 salvo *zalve*
 same: the same *tas pats*, (f.) *tā pati*; one and the same *viens*; at the same time [as] *reizē* (*ar* + acc.); it's all the same [to me] (*man*) *vienalga*
 sand *smiltis* (pl.); sand-hill *smilšu kalns*; *kāpa*
 sandy *smilšains*; sandy ground *smiltājs*
 sap *sula*
 saplings *ataudze* (sing.)
 satchel *soma*
 satisfied *apmierināts*
 satisfy *apmierināt*
 Saturday *sestdiena*; on Saturday *sestdien*
 sauce *mērce*
 sauerkraut *skābi kāposti* (pl.)
 saurian (noun) *zaurš*
 sausage *desa*
 savage (noun) *mežonis*
 savage (adj.) *mežoniģs*
 save [= rescue] (*iz-*)*glābt*; save oneself (*iz-*)*glābties*; [= keep] *paglabāt*; [= collect] (*ie-*)*krāt*, *sakrāt*
 saw *zāģis*
 saw (*sa-*)*zāģēt*; saw off *nozāģēt*; saw through, saw up *sazāģēt*
 saw-mill *zāģētava*
 say: have one's say *līdzrunāt*
 say *sacīt*; (*pa-*)*teikt*, *noteikt*, (*ie-*)*bilst*
 scales *svāri* (pl.)
 scarcely (*tik*) *tikko*
 scarecrow *putnu biedēklis*
 scarf *lakats*
 scatter (trans.) *bērt*, (*iz-*)*kaisīt*, (*pie-*)*bārstīt*
 scatterbrained *vieglprātīģs*
 scene *skats*; [of play] *aina*
 scenery [theatre] *dekorācijas* (pl.)
 scent *smarža*
 scent *saost*
 sceptical *skeptisks*
 school *skola*; high school *vidusskola*; primary school *pamatskola*; school-boy *skolnieks*; school-teacher *skolotājs*
 science *zinātne*
 scientific *zinātnisks*
 scientist *zinātnieks*
 scissors *šķēres* (pl.)
 scold *rāt*, *bārt*; scold a little *pabārt*
 scolding *bāriens*
 scoop *smelt*
 scorched: get scorched (*ap-*)*svilt*, *apdeģt*, *sagruzdēt*
 scorn *uzsplaut* + dat.
 scornful *splūs*

Scot *skots*, (f.) -*iete*
 Scotland *Skotija*
 Scottish *skotu* (invar. adj.)
 scoundrel *nelietis*
 scour *berzt*
 scrape *grebt*
 scream *kliedziens*
 scream *kliegt, brēkt*; scream oneself
 hoarse *nokliegties*; scream out
 iebrēkties; shouting and screaming
 (adv.) *kliedams brēkdams*
 screen [cinema] *ekrāns*
 screw: corkscrew *korķu*
 velkamais
 scuffle *plūkties, ņemties*
 sculptor *tēlnieks*
 sculpture *tēlniecība*
 scythe *izkaptis* (f.)
 sea *jūra*; Baltic Sea *Baltijas jūra*;
 Caspian Sea *Kaspijas ezers*,
 Kaspijas jūra; Mediterranean Sea
 Vidusjūra; North Sea *Ziemeļu*
 jūra; seaside *jūrmala*
 seaman *jūrnieks*
 seamanship *jūrniecība*
 seamstress *šuvēja*
 search: search for *nomeklēt*
 sea-side *jūrmala*
 season *gada laiks*
 seat *sēdekļis*; change seats
 pārsēsties; take one's seat
 novietoties
 seat (trans.) *nosēdināt*
 seated: to be seated *sēdēt*
 second (noun) *sekunde*
 second *otrais*; for a, the, second
 time *otreiz*
 secondly *otrkārt*
 secret (noun) *noslēpums*; (adj.)
 slepens
 secretary *sekretārs*
 section *daļa; nodaļa*

seductive *kairs*; seductive water-
 nymph *sirēna, sirēne*
 see *redzēt*; see one another
 redzēties; see in person, in the flesh
 redzēt vaigā; as far as the eye can
 see *cik tālu acis sniedz*; see across
 pārredzēt; see to *gādāt par + acc.*;
 see to it that... *gādāt par to, ka...*
 seed *sēkla*
 seek *(sa-)meklēt*
 seem *(iz-)likties, izskatīties, šķist*
 seize *(sa-)ķert, (sa-)vert*; seize
 around *apķert*
 select *izmeklēt, izlasīt*
 self-confidence *pašapziņa*
 selfish *patmīllīgs*
 self-supporting *patstāvīgs*
 self-torturing *pašmociģis*
 self-will *patvaļa*
 sell *pārdot*
 send *sūtīt, raidīt*; send away
 aizsūtīt, atraidīt; send in *iesūtīt*;
 send on [letters, etc.] *pārsūtīt*;
 send out *izsūtīt*; send over
 pārsūtīt
 sensation *izjūta*
 sense [= meaning] *jēga*; where's the
 sense in that? *kāda tur jēga?*;
 bring (somebody) to his senses
 vest pie prāta
 sense *sajust, (no-)ģist*
 sensible *prātīgs*
 sensitive *jūtellīgs*
 sentence (gram.) *teikums*; prison
 sentence *cietuma sods*
 sentence *notiesāt, nosodīt*
 sentimental: excessively sentimental
 [of people] *jūtellīgs*
 separate (trans.) *(at-)šķirt*;
 (intrans.) *(aiz-)šķirties*; separate
 out (intrans.) *atdallties*
 separately *atsevišķi*

September *septembris*
 series [= succession] *virķne*
 serious *nopietns*
 sermon *sprediķis*
 servant *sulainis*; public servant
 ierēdnis; servant-girl *meita*
 serve *apkalpot*
 service: church service
 dievkalpojums; military service
 kara klausība; military service
 law *kara klausības likums*
 set: television set *televīzijas aparāts*
 set (trans.) [= set up, fix]
 (no-)spraut; [of table] *(uz-)klāt*,
 apklāt; (intrans.) [of sun]
 (no-)rietēt; set down (trans.)
 nolikt; set fire to *pielāist, pielikt*,
 uguni + dat.; set foot *spert kāju*;
 set [oneself] a goal *spraut (sev)*
 mērķi; set in [of weather, etc.]
 iestāties, uznākt; set [somebody] on
 [somebody] *raidīt virsū + dat.*; set
 out (intrans.) *izbraukt*
 settle: settle accounts *nokārtoties*;
 settle down (intrans.) *nomesties*
 seven *septiņi, septiņēji*; seven
 hundred *septiņsimt, septiņi simti*;
 seven hundredth *septiņsimtais*,
 septiņi simtais
 seventeen *septiņpadsmit*
 seventeenth *septiņpadsmitais*
 seventh *septītais*
 seventieth *septiņdesmitais*
 seventy *septiņdesmit*
 sever *pārgriezt*
 several *vairāki* (pl.); *viens otrs + sing.*
 severe *spļus*
 sew *(pa-)šūt*; sew on *uzšūt*,
 piešūt; sew together *sašūt*
 sewing *šūveklis*; sewing-machine
 šujmašīna, šujammašīna
 shade *ēna, paēna, pavēnis*

shadow *ēna, paēna*
 shady *ēnains*
 shaft [of wagon, carriage, etc.] *ilķss*
 (f.)
 shake (trans.) *kratīt, tricināt*,
 drebīnāt; (intrans.) *drebēt, trīcēt*,
 trīsēt; shake off *nokratīt*; **shake**
 hands with *(pa-)spiest roku +*
 dat.; shake with fear *drebēt aiz*
 bailēm
 shallow *sekls*; [of plates, etc.]
 lēzens
 shame *kauns*
 shame *kaunināt*
 shape *tēls*; take shape *veidoties*;
 tapt
 shape (trans.) *veidot*
 share: share out *izdallīt*
 sharp *ass; smails; kodīgs, skaudrs*;
 fairly sharp *paass*; sharp-witted
 asprātīgs
 sharpen *(uz-)trīt, asināt*
 sharpish *paass*
 sharpness *asums*
 sharp-witted *asprātīgs*
 shatter (intrans.) *(sa-)pīlēt*
 shave *(no-)dzīt bārdu, (no-)skūt*
 bārdu
 shawl *villaine; lakats*
 she (pron.) *viņa*
 shear *(no-)cirpt*
 shearer *cirpējs*
 shears *dzirkles* (pl.)
 shed *pūnis*; drying shed *rija*
 shed [tears] *liet asaras*
 sheep *aita, avs* (f.)
 sheet *palags*; [of paper] *lapa*; [of
 ice] *gāle*; sheet-metal *skārds*
 sheet-metal *skārds*
 shelf *plaukts*
 shelter *pajumte; paspārne, paēna*,
 pavēnis

- shepherd *gans*; shepherd-boy *gans*; shepherd's flute, pipe *stabule*
- shield *vairogs*
- shimmer *zviļņot*
- shine (noun) *spožums*
- shine (intrans.) *spīdēt, mirdzēt, spulgot, starot, spīgot*; shine on *apspīdēt* (trans.)
- shining *spožs, spodrs, spulgs, zalgs*; shining object *spīdeklis*
- shiny *see* shining
- ship *kuģis*; launch a ship *ielaišt kuģi ūdenī*
- shirt *kreklis*; in shirt-sleeves *vienos kreklos*
- shiver (*no-*)*drebēt*, (*no-*)*skurināties*
- shoe *kurpe*; put on shoes *aut kājas, auties*; horse-shoe *pakaus*; shoe-lace *kurpju saite*
- shoe [horse] *apkalt*
- shoo! (interj.) *kuš!*
- shoot *dzinums*
- shoot (trans.) (*no-*)*šaut*; shoot forth [buds, etc.] *riest*; shoot up (intrans.) *uzšauties*
- shooting; shooting-gallery *šautuve*
- shop *veikals*; baker's shop *maiznīca*; shop-window *skatlogs*
- shopkeeper *tirgotājs*
- shopper *pircejs*
- shopping *iepirkumi* (pl.); shopping basket *iepirkumu grozs*
- short *īss*; *strups*; grow shorter *sālsināties*; short story *novele*; to be in short supply *trūkt*
- shorten (*sa-*)*īsināt*
- shorter; grow shorter *sālsināties*
- shortness *lsums*
- shot *šāviens*; put the shot *grūst lodī*
- shoulder *plecs*
- shout *sauciens, kliedziens*
- shout *kliegt, brēkt, ļaut*; shouting and screaming *kliedams brēkdams*; shout back *atkliegt*; shout out *iekliedties*
- shove *grūdiens*
- shove (trans.) *bāzt*; shove in (trans.) *iebāzt*
- shovel *lāpsta*
- show (*pa-*)*rādīt, izrādīt*; I'll show you! *es tev rādīšu!*; show up (intrans.) (*pa-*)*rādīties*
- shriek *ķērciens*
- shrill *spalgs*
- shrink (intrans.) (*sa-*)*rukt*
- shrivel: shrivel up *savilkties, sarukt*
- shrub *cers*
- shudder (*no-*)*skurināties, iedrebēties*
- shush! (interj.) *kuš!*
- shut (trans.) *aizvērt*; (intrans.) *aizvērties*; shut in *ieslēgt*; shut off *aizgriezt*; shut out *izslēgt*
- shutter *slēģis*
- shy *kautrīgs, bikls, kautrs*
- shyness *kautrība*
- Siamese: a Siamese *siamietis*, (f.) *-e*
- sick *slims*; fall sick *saslimt*; I am sick and tired of it *tas man apnicis*
- sickle *sīrpis*
- side *sāni* (pl.); *puse*; on the other side of *viņpus* (prep. + gen.); on the thin side *patievs* (adj.); on this side of *šaipus* (prep. + gen.); two-sided *divpusīgs*; sea-side *jūrmala*; side-road *sānceļš* (occ. *sānu ceļš*)
- siege *aplēnkums*
- sigh *nopūta*
- sigh *sūrot, sūroties, nopūsties*
- sight *skats*; *redzējums*; catch sight of *ieraudzīt*; far-sighted *tālredzīgs*

- sign *zīme, pazīme*
- sign: sign peace *līgt mieru*; sign on (trans. & intrans.) (*sa-*)*līgt*
- signal *signāls*
- significant *zīmīgs*
- silence *klusums*
- silent *klus*; fall silent, grow silent *apklust*; *aprimt*
- silk *zīds*
- sill: window-sill *bēģelis* (occ. *bēģele*)
- silly *dulls*
- silver *sudrabs, sidrabs*; silver wedding anniversary *sudraba kāzas* (pl.)
- silvery *sudrabains*
- similar *līdzīgs* + dat., *tamlīdzīgs*
- similarly *tāpat*
- simple *vienkāršs*; simple-minded *vientiesīgs*
- simpleton *muļķis*, (f.) *-e*
- sin *grēks*
- sin *grēkot*
- since (prep.) *kopš* + gen.; since when? *kopš kura laika?*; (conj.) (temporal) *kopš*; (causal) *tā kā*
- sincere *sirsniņš*
- sinew *dzisla*
- sinful *grēcīgs*
- sing *dziedāt*; sing to an end *izdziedāt*; sing a little *padziedāt*; sing of *apdziedāt* + acc.
- singed: get singed *apsvilt*
- singer *dziedātājs*
- single: not a single (adj.) *nekāds, nevienš*
- singular (adj.) *singulārs*
- sink (intrans.) *grimt, stigt, sllgt*; sink back *atsllgt*; sink down *nogrimt*; sink in (*ie-*)*stigt, iegrimt*; [= penetrate] *iesūkties*; sink into the ground [for shame, etc.] *tellst zemē*
- sinner *grēcinieks*
- sip *sūkt*
- siren *sirēna, sirēne*
- sister *māsa*; nursing-sister, sister of mercy *žēlsirdīgā māsa*
- sit: sit down (*no-*)*sēsties, apsēsties*; sit down (in) *iesēsties*; sit down (on) *uzsēsties*
- site *vieta*
- situated: to be situated *atrasties*
- situation *situācija*
- six *seši, sešēji*; in a group of six *sešatā*; six hundred *sešsimt, seši simti*; six hundredth *sešsimtais, seši simtais*
- sixteen *sešpadsmit*
- sixteenth *sešpadsmitais*
- sixth (noun) *sestdaļa*; (adj.) *sestais*
- sixtieth *sešdesmitais*
- sixty *sešdesmit*
- size *lielums*; full-size, life-size *visā lielumā*
- sizzle *švirkstēt, plukš(ķ)ēt*
- skilful *veikls*
- skin *āda*; [of fruit, etc.] *miza*
- skin (trans.) (*no-*)*mizot*
- skirt *svārki* (pl.)
- skull *pauris*
- sky *debess* (f.)
- slack *slābans*
- slacken *atslābt*
- slam: slam closed (trans.) *aizslst*
- slander *aprunāt, zaimot, noriet*
- slanting *sllps, šķlps*
- slap! (interj.) *plakš!, plaukš!*
- slaughter (*no-*)*kaut, izkaut*
- slaughter-house (*lopu*) *kautuve, lopkautuve*
- slave *vergs*
- slay *nosist*
- sledge *kamanas* (pl.)
- sleep *miegs*

- sleep *gulēt; dusēt*; sleep the night
pārgulēt; sleep a while *pagulēt*;
sleep away (trans.) *izgulēt*
- sleeper *gulētājs*
- sleepiness *miegainība*
- sleepy *miegains*; become sleepy
samiegoties
- sleeve *piedurkne*; in shirt-sleeves
vienos kreklos
- sleigh *kamanas* (pl.)
- slender *slaidis, slaiķis*
- slice *rieciens, šķēle*
- slide (intrans.) *slīdēt, šļukt*; slide
away *aizslīdēt*; slide down
noslīdēt
- slight: I haven't the slightest idea
[about]... *man nav (ne) mazākās*
jēgas (par + acc.)
- slim *slaidis, slaiķis*
- slime *dūņas* (pl.)
- slimy *glums*
- slip *slīdēt, šļukt*; slip away [of
people] (*aiz-*)*zagties, aizlaisties,*
šmaukt
- slipper *tupele*
- slippery *slidens, glums*
- slope *piekalne, piegāze*
- sloping: gently sloping *lēzens*
- slow *lēns, gauss; tūļģis*
- slowly *lēnām, palēnām, pamazām*
- sluggish *tūļģis*
- slumber *atdusa*
- slumber (*pa-*)*snaust*
- small *mazs*; fairly small *pamazs*;
small change *sīknauda*
- smallish *pamazs*
- smash (trans.) *sadauzīt, saplēst,*
dragāt
- smear (trans.) (*no-*)*ziest*; smear on
uzziest
- smell *smarža*; [unpleasant] *smaka*
- smell (trans.) *saost, pasmaržot*;
(intrans.) *ost*; [sweetly] *smaržot*;
[foul] *smirdēt*; smell of *ost pēc*
+ gen.
- smile *smaidis*; give a smile
pasmaidīt
- smile *smaidīt*; smile a little
pasmaidīt
- smoke *dūmi* (pl.); become black
with smoke (*no-*)*kvēpt*
- smoke (trans.) *smēķēt, pīpēt*; smoke
[to the end] *izsmēķēt, izpīpēt*;
[of food] *žāvēt*; (intrans.) *kūpēt*
- smoky *dūmains*
- smooth *gluds*
- smooth [hair, etc.] (*sa-*)*glaust*;
smooth out *lidzināt*
- snack: mid-afternoon snack *launags*
- snail *gliemezis*
- snake *čūska*; grass-snake *zalktis*
- snatch (*sa-*)*grābt*
- sniff *ošņāt, sprauslāt*
- snivelling *raudullģis*
- snooze *snaudiens*
- snooze (*pa-*)*snaust*
- snore *krāciens*
- snore *krākt*
- snort *sprauslāt, iekrākties*
- snout *purns*
- snow *sniegs*; cover with snow
apsnigt; snow-bunting *sniedze*;
snow-man *sniega vīrs*; snow-
storm *putenis*
- snow *snigt*
- snowed: to be snowed over *nosnigt*
- snowman *sniega vīrs*
- so (adv.) [= thus] *tā*; is that so! *ak*
tā!; is it not so? *vai ne?*; let it be
so! *lai top!*; [+ adj. or adv.] *tik*;
so much, so many *tik daudz* +
gen.; ever so white, etc. *balts, etc.,*
jo balts, etc.

- soak (trans.) (*ie-*)*mērkt*; soak in
(intrans.) *iesūkties*
- soaked: to be soaked (*sa-*)*mirkts,*
salīti
- soap *ziepes* (pl.)
- soapy *ziepjains*
- soar *uzlaisties, uzlidot*
- sob *elsāt, elsoit*
- sober *skaidrā prātā*; become sober
atskurbt
- sobs *elsas* (pl.)
- society *sabiedrība; biedrība*
- sock *zeķe*; put on socks *aut kājas*
- soft *mīksts, maigs*
- soften *mīkstināt*
- softness *maigums*
- soil (trans.) *apvazāt*
- soldier *karavīrs, kareivis*;
discharged soldier *brīvlaists*
- sole (adj.) *vienģis*
- solemn *svinģis*
- solitary *vientuļģis, vientuļš*
- solitude *vientuļība*
- solo *solo* (m. indec.)
- solution *atrisinājums*
- solve *atrisināt*
- sombre *drūms*
- some [= a few] *daži; pāris* (indec.
+ gen.); some... others *citi... citi*;
[= some or other] *kāds*;
dažs; kaut kāds; someone *kāds*;
at some time *kaut kad*; some time
or other *gan jau*
- somehow *kaut kā*
- someone *kāds*
- something *kaut kas*; something new,
etc. *kaut kas jauns, etc.*
- sometimes *dažreiz, pa reizei,*
reizēm, citreiz
- somewhere *kaut kur*; (after prep.)
*kaut *kurlene*; somewhere else *citur*;
(after prep.) **citurīene*
- son *dēls*; godson *krustdēls*;
Prodigal Son *pazudušais dēls*;
step-son *padēls*; son-in-law
znots
- song *dziesma*; folk-song *tautas*
dziesma
- sonorous *skanģis, skaņš*
- soon (*jau*) *drīz*; not a moment too
soon *pats pēdējais laiks*; as soon
as *tikko, tiklīdz*
- sooner *drīzāk*; sooner or later *gan*
jau
- soothe *apmierināt, apklusināt*
- sorceress *burve*
- sore (noun) *vāts* (f.); covered in
sores *vāšains*
- sore (adj.) *jēls*
- sorrow *skumģas* (pl.), *raizes* (pl.)
- sorrow *skumt*
- sorry: I am sorry [for] *man žēl +*
gen.
- sort: any old sort of... *šādi tādi*
(adj.); what sort of...? *kas par?*
+ acc.
- soul *dvēsele* (occ. *dvēslē*)
- sound *skaņa*
- sound (adj.) *sveīks*; safe and sound
sveīks un vesels, spīrgts un vesels
- sound (intrans.) *skanēt*
- soup *zupa, vīra*
- sour *skābs*; turn sour (intrans.)
(*sa-*)*skābt, sarūgt*
- source *avots*
- sourish *skāņš*
- south (noun) *dienvidi* (pl.); (adj.)
dienvidu (invar.)
- southern-wood *dievkociņš*
- souvenir *piemiņa*
- sow (*ie-*)*sēt*
- space *vieta, telpa*; space under a
bridge *patllīte*; space behind the
door *alzdurve*

spacious *plašs*
 spade *lāpsta*
 Spain *Spānija*
 span [of time or distance] *spridis*
 Spaniard *spānietis*, (f.) -e
 Spanish (adj.) *spāniešu*, *spāņu*
 (invar.); (adv.) *spāniski*
 spank *pērt*
 spare *lieks*; spare time *vaļa*
 spark *dzirkstele*, *dzirkste*, *dzirksts*
 (f.)
 sparkle (noun) *dzirkstele*
 sparkle *laisīties*, *zvīguļot*
 sparkling (adj.) *spulgs*, *zalgs*
 speak *runāt*; speak out *izrunāt*;
 begin speaking *ierunāties*; make
 an error in speaking *pārteikties*
 spear *šķēps*
 spear: spear fish *durt zivis*
 special *sevišķs*, *īpašs*
 species *suga*
 speck: speck of dust, speck of pollen
puteklis
 spectacles *brilles* (pl.)
 speech *runa*; make a speech *teikt*
runu
 speed *ātrums*
 speedy *raits*
 spell: break a spell *atburt*
 spell: spell out *burtot*
 spend *izdot*; [of time] *pavadīt*;
 spend the night *pārnakšņot*
 sphere *lode*
 spider *zirneklis*; spider's web
tīmeklis
 spill (trans.) *izliet*; spill upon
 (intrans.) *uzlīt*
 spin (trans.) *(sa-)vērpt*
 spinning-mill *vērptuve*
 spinning-wheel *raitiņš*
 spirit (eccl. etc.) *gars*; [vodka, etc.]
šņabis

spiritual *garīgs*
 spit *spļaut*; spit on *uzspļaut* + dat.
 spiteful *splītīgs*, *spļivs*
 splash! (interj.) *plunkš!*
 splash (intrans.) *šļākt*, *uzlīt*; splash
 momentarily *iešļakstēties*; splash
 out *izšļākties*
 splat! (interj.) *plakš!*
 splendid *lielisks*, *krāšņs*
 splendour *greznums*, *spožums*;
godība
 splinter *šķila*
 split (trans.) *šķelt*; (intrans.)
šķelties
 spoon *karote*
 sport *sports*; sports ground
sporta laukums
 spot (trans.) [= stain] *(ap-)traipīt*;
 [= see] *ieraudzīt*
 spout (intrans.) *šļākt*
 spread (trans.) *(uz-)klāt*; [= extend]
(iz-)plest; [of news, etc.]
(iz-)paust; spread gossip *palaist*
valodas; (intrans.) *izplatīties*
 sprightly *spirgts*
 spring [= source] *avots*; [= coil]
atspere; [season] *pavasaris*,
ziedonis; this spring *šopavasār*
 springy *vingrs*
 sprout *dzinums*
 sprout (intrans.) *(uz-)dīgt*
 spur *piesis*
 spy *spiegot*
 squander *(iz-)šķiest*
 square [in city, etc.] *laukums*;
 market-square *tirgus laukums*
 square (adj.): square verst *kvadrāt-*
versts (f.); cut square *(no-)tēst*
 square [planks, etc.] *(no-)tēst*;
 square up (intrans.) *nokārtoties*
 squash (trans.) *saspiest*
 squat *tupēt*

squawk *ķērkt*
 squeak *kviekt*
 squeal *kviekt*
 squeeze *spiediēns*
 squeeze (trans.) *(pa-)spiest*,
(sa-)žņaupt; squeeze out *izspiest*;
 squeeze together *saspiest*
 squirrel *vāvere*
 squirt (intrans.): squirt out
izšļākties
 stab *dūriens*
 stab *durt*; stab to death *nodurt*
 stack: haystack *siena kaudze*
 staff: member of [teaching] staff
mācības spēks
 stage *pakāpe*; [theatre] *skatuve*
 stagger *sagriļoties*
 stain (trans.) *(ap-)traipīt*
 stair *pakāpiens*, *pakāpenis*; stairs
trepes (pl.), *kāpnes* (pl.), *kāpne*
 stake *sārts*; at the stake *uz sārtas*;
 at stake *uz spēles*; for high stakes
uz lielu naudu
 stalk *kāts*
 stallion *rumaks*
 stamp: postage stamp *pastmarka*
 stamp (trans.) [foot, etc.] *piespert*
 stamping *dipona*
 stand *stāvēt*, *stāties*, *stāt*; stand out
izšķīrties; stand up *izslieties*
 standing *stāvoklis*
 stanza *pants*
 star *zvaigzne*; film-star *kino*
zvaigzne; morning star *rīta*
zvaigzne, *auseklis*; evening star
vakara zvaigzne
 starch *cietināt*
 starling *strazds*
 starry *zvaigžņains*
 start (trans.) *(ie-)sākt*; (intrans.)
sākties; [= shudder] *satrūkties*,
sarauties

startle *satraukt*
 starvation *badis*
 state [= nation] *valsts* (f.); in a
 natural state *brīvā dabā*; state of
 mind *pašsajūta*
 stately *stalts*, *dižens*
 station *stacija*; power-station
spēkstacija; station-master
stacijas priekšnieks
 stature *stāvs*, *augums*
 stay *uzturēties*; be staying [with, at]
sērst
 steal (trans.) *(no-)laupīt*, *(no-)zagt*;
 steal away (intrans.) *(aiz-)zagties*;
 steal in *iezagties*; steal up to
piezagties
 stealthily *zagšus*
 stealthy *slepens*
 steam *suta*, *vaiks*
 steam (intrans.) *kūpēt*
 steel *tērauds*
 steep *kraujš*, *stāvs*
 steeple *tornis*
 step [of ladder, etc.; stage] *pakāpe*,
pakāpiens, *pakāpenis*; carriage step
kāpslis; door-step *sliexnis*,
sliexnis; [= pace] *solis*; step by
 step *solī pa solim*, *solīti pa*
solītim; retrace one's steps
atkāpties
 step-daughter *pameita*
 step-father *patēvs*
 step-mother *pamāte*
 steppe *stepe*
 step-son *padēls*
 sterile *sterils*
 stick *spieķis*, *kociņš*
 stick (trans.) [= fasten, affix]
spraust; stick in *iespraust*;
 (intrans.) [= adhere] *(pie-)līpt*;
 stick into *iedurties*; stick to
 [= not waver from] *turēties*

- stiff *stīvs*
 stiffen (trans.) *cietināt*; (intrans.)
 [of people] (*sa-*)*stingt*
 stiffness *sastingums*
 stifle (trans.) *slāpēt*
 still (adj.) *kluss*
 still (temporal adv.) *vēl*; (emphatic
 adv.) *vēl arvien, arvien vēl*;
 [= however] *tomēr*
 stillness *klusums*
 sting [of bee] *dzelonis*
 sting (*ie-*)*dzelt* + dat.
 stingy *skops*
 stink (intrans.) *smirdēt*
 stir (intrans.) *kustēties*
 stirrup *kāpslis*
 stocking *zeķe*
 stomach *vēders*; pit of the stomach
pakrūte
 stone *akmens* (gen. *-ns*); precious
 stone *dārgakmens*; Stone Age
akmens laikmets; stone quarry
akmeņlauztuve; turn to stone
 (intrans.) *pārukmeņoties*
 stony *akmeņains*
 stoop *pieliekties*
 stop [for bus, etc.] *pietura*; full stop
punkts
 stop (trans.) *beigt*; [of bus, etc.]
apturēt; (intrans.) *apstāties*,
mitēties; [of bus, etc.] *pieturēt*
 store *uzglabāt*; store away *noglabāt*
 stored: to be stored *glabāties*
 storehouse *noliktava*
 stoney *stāvs*
 stories [= gossip] *valodas* (pl.)
 storm *negaiss, vētra, auka*; snow-
 storm *putenis*
 stormy *vētrains*
 story *stāsts*; short story *novēle*;
 stories [= gossip] *valodas* (pl.)
 stout *resns, paresns, tukls, drukns*
- stove *krāsns* (f.); place behind the
 stove *aizkrāsne*
 straight *taisns*
 strain *piepūle*
 strain (trans.) *pārmocīt*
 strange *savāds, svešs, dīvains*,
īpatns
 stranger *sveš(i)nieks*
 strangle *žņaupt*
 strapping *brašs*
 straw: bed-straw *cisas* (pl.)
 strawberry *zemene*
 stray: stray in *piekļīst*
 streaked *rievains*
 stream *strauts*; *straume*
 streamlet *urga*
 street *iela*
 strength *spēks, spars, stiprums*
 strengthen *stiprināt*
 stretch (trans.) (*pa-*)*stiept*; (intrans.)
 (*pa-*)*stiepties*; [= extend]
sniēgties; stretch out (trans.)
 (*iz-*)*plest*; stretch [repeatedly]
 (trans.) *staipt*
 strew (trans.) (*no-*)*kaisīt*,
 (*pie-*)*bārstīt, bērt*; strew in *iebērt*
 strict *stingrs*
 strike (trans.) (*ie-*)*sist*; *iezvelt* +
 dat.; [of match] *uzraut*; strike fire
šķilt uguni; (intrans.) [of hours]
nosist; strike down (trans.) *nosist*;
 [with lightning] *nospert*; strike
 together (trans.) *sasist*
 string *saite*
 strip: strip off (trans.) *nobraucīt*
 striver *censoņs*
 stroke (*pa-*)*glaudīt, glaust*; stroke a
 little *paglaudīt*
 stroll (*aiz-*)*kļīst*; stroll up *atkļīst*
 strong *stiprs*; *stingrs*; strong man
stiprinieks
 struggle *cīņa, cīņiņš, kautiņš*

- struggle *cīnīties, lauzties*; struggle
 along *kulties*
 stubborn *stūrgalvīgs*
 student *students*, (f.) *-e*
 studies: complete one's studies
izstudēt
 studio *darbnīca*
 study *studija*
 study *mācīties*; [at university]
studēt
 stuff *viela*
 stuff [poultry, etc.] *pildīt*
 stumble *klupt*; stumbling and falling
 (adv.) *klupdams krizdams*
 stump: tree-stump *celms*
 stunned: to be stunned *apstulbt*
 stupid *muļķīgs, dumjš*; *muļķa* (invar.)
 stupidity *muļķība*
 style *stīls*
 subject [of study, etc.] *priekšmets*;
 (gram.) *priekšmets*
 sublime *cēls*
 submissive *padevīgs*
 submit (trans.) *iesniegt, iesūtīt*
 subordinate (noun) *apakšnieks*
 subsist *eksistēt*
 substance *viela*
 succeed: succeed in doing something
pagūt + inf.; he is not succeeding
 [in his work] *viņam (darbs)*
nevedas
 success *sekmes* (pl.), *panākumi* (pl.)
 successful *ražens*
 succulent *sullīgs*
 such *šāds*; *tāds*
 suck (*pa-*)*zīst, sūkt*; suck out
izsūkt
 sudden *pēkšņs*
 suddenly *piepeši, pēkšņi, uzreiz*
 suffer *ciest*
 sufferer *cietējs*
 suffering *ciešanas* (pl.)
- suffice *pietikt*
 suffocate (trans.) *smacēt*; (intrans.)
 (*no-*)*smakt*
 sugar *cukurs*
 suggest *ieteikt*
 suggestion *padoms*
 suggestive *kairs*
 suit *uzvalks*
 suitable *derīgs*; to be suitable *derēt*
 suitor *precinieks*
 sulky: become sulky *saigt*
 sulphur *sērs*
 sultry *sulīgs*
 sum: big sum *liela nauda*
 summer *vasara*; this summer (adv.)
šovasar
 summit *galotne, virsotne*
 summon: summon one's courage
saņemt dūšu, saņemties
 sun *saule*; sunrise (*saules*) *lēkts*;
 at sunrise *ar saules lēktu*; sunset
 (*saules*) *riets*
 Sunday *svētdiena*; on Sunday
svētdien
 sundew *raspodiņš*
 sunniness *saulainība*
 sunny *saulains*
 sunrise (*saules*) *lēkts*; at sunrise *ar*
saules lēktu
 sunset (*saules*) *riets*
 sunshine: bright sunshine *saulgozīš*
 superficial *paviršs*
 superfluous *lieks*
 super-human *pārdabīgs*
 supernatural *pārdabīgs*
 supervisor *pārzinis*
 supple *vijīgs, smuidrs*
 supply: to be in short supply *trūkt*
 support (*at-*)*balstīt*
 supporting: self-supporting
patstāvīgs
 suppose *pieņemt*

surface *virsus, virsa*
 surfeit *apnikums*
 surge: surging up *uzbangojums*
 surly *īgns*
 surname *uzvārds*
 surpass *pārspēt*
 surprise *pārsteigt*
 surrender (intrans.) *padoties*
 surround *aplenkt; apstāt*
 surroundings *apvidus*; foreign
 surroundings *svešums*
 survey *pārredzēt*
 survive *izturēt*
 suspect (*no-*)*ģist*
 suspended: to be suspended, hang
 suspended *karāties*
 suspicious *aizdomīgs, šaubīgs*
 swallow (trans.) (*no-*)*rlīt*
 swamp *purvs, stiegnājs*
 swampy *purvainš, mukls, staigns*
 swan *gulbis*
 swap *mainīt*
 swarm *bars*
 swath *vāls*
 sway (intrans.) *viļņoties*
 swaying *šūpojiens*
 sweat *sviedri* (pl.)
 sweat *nosvlst*
 Swede *zviēdrš, (f.) -iete*
 Sweden *Zviedrija*
 Swedish (adj.) *zviēdru* (invar.);
 (adv.) *zviēdriski*
 sweep *slaucīt; sweep away*
aizslaucīt; sweep out izslaucīt
 sweet *salds*; [= comely] *piemīllīgs*;
 smell sweet *smaržot*; bitter-sweet
saldsērīgs
 sweetness *saldums*
 swell (intrans.) (*no-*)*briest*,
 (*uz-*)*tūkt, mīlzt*; swell up
 (*uz-*)*pampt, (iz-)blīst*
 swift [of river, etc.] *straujš*

swim *peldēt*; swim in the river
peldēt pa upi; swim over *pārpeldēt*
 swimmer *peldētājs*
 swimming *peldēšana*; swimming
 across *pārpeldēšana*; swimming-
 bath *peldētava*
 swing *šūpoles* (pl.), *šūpalas* (pl.)
 swing (trans.) *šūpot*; (intrans.)
šūpoties
 swirl (trans.) *rotīt*
 Swiss (noun) *šveicietis, (f.) -e*; (adj.)
Šveices (invar.)
 switch [= goad] *rlkste*
 switch: switch off [light, electricity,
 etc.] *izdzēst*; switch on [light,
 electricity, etc.] *uzdedzināt,*
uzgriezt
 Switzerland *Šveice*
 sword *zobens* (occ. *šķēps*); sword-
 bearer *šķēpnesis*
 Sydney *Sidneja*
 syllable *balsiens, zilbe*
 symbol *simbols*
 sympathy *simpatija*
 synthetic *mākslīgs*
 table *galds*; work-table *darba galds*;
 table-cloth *galdauts*
 tail *aste*; tail-coat *fraka*; horse-
 tail, mare's-tail (bot.) *skosta, skoste*
 tailor *drēbnieks*
 take (*pa-*)*ņemt* (occ. *jemt*); [of
 medicine] *ieņemt, iedzert*; the
 devil take him! *rauj viņu velns!*;
 take away *atņemt, aizvest,*
attālināt, noņemt; take back
atņemt; take care of *gādāt par*
 + acc.; take care of oneself
sargāties; take fright *satrūkties,*
nobīties, iztrūcināties; take in
ieņemt; take into account *vērā*
likt; take off *noņemt*; [of clothes]

ģērbt nost, noģērbt; [of footwear,
 rings, etc.] *maukt nost, nomaukt*;
 [of shoes, etc.] *noaut*; take out
izņemt; take pains *pūlēties*; take
 possession of *pārņemt*; take refuge
tvēties; take one's seat
novietoties; take shape *veidoties,*
tapt; take up *aizņemt*
 taking *ņemšana*
 tale [legendary] *teika*; fairy-tale
pasaka; folk-tale *tautas teika*
 talk *runāt*; talk nonsense *plāpāt,*
melst; talk over *pārrunāties*
 talkative *valodīgs, mutlīgs*
 tall *garš*
 tallness *garums*
 tallow *tauki* (pl.)
 tally (with) *atbilst* + dat.
 tame *rāms*
 tan [of leather] *mīt*
 tango *tango* (m. indec.)
 tanner *āminis*
 tansy *biškrēslīšs, bišu krēslīšs*
 taper *svece, lāpa*
 tardy *gauss*
 target *mērķis*
 tarry *vilcināties*
 tart (noun) *torte*
 tart (adj.) *skāņš*
 task *uzdevums*
 taste [in art, etc.] *gaume*
 taste (trans.) *raudzīt*; (intrans.)
 (*no-*)*garšot*
 tasty *garšs*
 tatter *skranda*
 tattler *plāpa* (m. or f.)
 tavern *krogus, dzertuve*
 tax [= strain]: tax heavily *pārmocīt*
 taxi *taksometrs*
 tea *tēja*
 teach *mācīt, pasniegt*; [a lesson]
pamācīt
 teacher: school-teacher *skolotājs*
 teaching *mācība*; member of teach-
 ing staff *mācības spēks*
 team *komanda*
 tear *asara*; shed tears *liet asaras*
 tear (trans.) *plēst, raut*; (intrans.)
 (*sa-*)*plīst*; tear apart (trans.)
 (*sa-*)*plosīt, saplēst, pārplēst*;
 (intrans.) (*pār-*)*trūkt*; tear off
 (trans.) *noraut, atraut*; tear out
 (trans.) *izraut*
 tearful *raudulīgs*
 tease *kaitināt; apcēlt*
 technical *technisks*
 tedious *garlaicīgs*; become tedious
apnikt
 tedium *garlaicība*
 telegram *telegramma*
 telephone *tālrunis*; by telephone
pa tālruni
 telephone *piezvanīt* + dat.
 telescope *tālskatis*
 television: television set *televīzijas*
aparāts
 tell [= say] (*pa-*)*teikt*; [= recount]
stāstīt; [= order] *likt*; tell lies
melot
 temper *oma*
 temperate *mērens*
 temperature *temperatūra*
 tempest *auka*
 temporal *laicīgs*
 tempt (*ie-*)*kairināt*
 ten *desmit*
 tenant *īrnieks*
 tend (*ap-*)*kopt*; [animals] *ganīt*;
 go and tend animals *iet ganos*
 tender *kusls, liegs*
 tense (gram.) *laiks*; present tense
tagadne
 tense (adj.) *spraigš*
 tension *sastingums*

- tenth *desmitais*
 term: to be on friendly terms with
būt draugos ar + acc.
 terrible *baigs*; Ivan the Terrible
Jānis Briesmīgais
 terrified: to be terrified *iztrūcināties*
 terror *šausmas* (pl.), *drausmas* (pl.),
baisma
 testify *liecināt*
 Thai (noun) *siamietis*, (f.) -*e*
 than *nekā, kā; par* + acc.
 thank *pateikties* + dat.; thank you
paldies
 thanks *pateikšana*; thanks to
pateicoties + dat.
 that (adj.) *tas*, (f.) *tā*, (occ. *viņš*, (f.)
viņa); in those days *tanis* (*tais*,
tajos) *laikos*; (pron.) *tas*, (f.) *tā*;
 is that so! *ak tā!*; (conj.) *ka*
 thatch *jumt*
 thaw (intrans.) *(iz-)kust, nokust*
 theatre *teātris*; picture theatre
kino teātris
 their (poss. adj.) *viņu* (indec.)
 theirs (poss. pron.) *viņējs*
 then *tad*; just then *patlaban*; now
 and then *šad un tad*; now then!
 (interj.) *nul!*; well then! (interj.)
nujā!
 theoretical *teorētisks*
 there *tur*; (after prep.) **turiene*;
 here and there *šur (un) tur*; right
 there *turpat*
 thereby *ar to*
 therefore *tāpēc, tādēļ, tālab*
 thermometer *termometrs*
 they (pron.) *viņi*, (f.) *viņas*
 thick *biezs, trekns*; fairly thick
pabiezs
 thicket *biezoknis, puduris*
 thickish *pabiezs*
 thickness *biezums*
- thief *zaglis*
 thievish *zaglīgs*
 thin *plāns*; [of people] *tievs*; out of
 thin air *no gaisa*; fairly thin, on
 the thin side *patievs*
 thing *lieta; priekšmets*
 think *domāt*; whatever are you
 thinking of? *uz ko tev nesas prāts?*
 third (noun) *trešdaļa*; (adj.)
trešais
 thirdly *treškārt*
 thirst *slāpes* (pl.)
 thirst *slāpt*; thirst for *alkt, tvīkt* +
 gen., *pēc* + gen.
 thirsty: to be thirsty *slāpt*; I am
 thirsty *man slāpst*
 thirteen *trīspadsmit*
 thirteenth *trīspadsmitais*
 thirtieth *trīsdesmitais*
 thirty *trīsdesmit*
 this (adj.) *šis*, (f.) *ši*; this autumn
šoruden; this evening *šovakar*;
 this morning *šorīt*; this spring
šopavasār; this summer *šovasar*;
 this time *šoreiz*; this week
šonedēļ; this winter *šoziem*; this
 year *šogad*; (pron.) *šis*, (f.) *ši*;
šitais, (f.) *šitā*
 thistle *dadzis*
 thither *turp(u)*
 thorn *ērķšķis*; thorn-bush *ērķšķu*
krūms
 thorough *pamatīgs*
 thoroughfare *caurbrauktuve*
 thought *doma*; train of thought
pavediens
 thoughtful *domīgs*
 thoughtless *vieglprātīgs*
 thousand *tūkstoš*; flowers, etc., in
 their thousands *tūkstošiem puķu,*
 etc.
 thousandth *tūkstošais, tūkstotais*

- thrash *piekaut; kult*
 thread *diegs; pavediens*
 thread (trans.) *ievērt*
 threaten *draudēt* + dat.
 three *trīs; treji*; threefold
trīskāršs; three hundred *trīssimt,*
trīs simti; three hundredth *trīs*
simtais, trīssimtais; of three kinds
trejāds; three times *trīskārt*; in a
 group of three *trijatā*
 thresh [grain, etc.] *(iz-)kult*
 thresher *kūlējs*
 threshold *sliexsnis, sliexsnis*
 throat *rīkle*
 throng (intrans.) *drūzmēties*
 through *pa* (prep. + acc.), *caur*
 (prep. + acc.); *cauri* (adv. or
 postp. + dat.)
 throw *sviediens*
 throw *(pa-)mest, (pa-)sviest*;
 [continually] *mētāt*; throw oneself
mesties; throw aside *atmest*;
 throw away *aizmest, aizsviest*;
 throw back *atsviest*; throw down
nomest, nosviest; throw oneself
 down *nomesties*; throw hither
atsviest; throw in *iemest, iesviest*;
 throw off *nomest, nokratīt*; throw
 out *izmest, izsviest*; throw together
samest
 thrust *bāzt*; thrust in *iebāzt*
 thumb *īkšķis*
 thunder *pērkons*; the old Latvian
 god of thunder *Pērkons*
 thunder *(sa-)graut*
 thunderstorm *negaišs*
 Thursday *ceturtdiena*; on Thursday
ceturtdien
 thus (adv.) *tā, tāpat, šitā, šādi*
 ticket *biļete*; ticket-window *kase*
 tidy *kārtīgs*
 tidy *(uz-)post, apkopt*
- tie: necktie *kakla saite*
 tie: tie on *uzsiet*; tie up *iesiet*; tie
 up to *piesiet*
 tight *stingrs*; [of clothing] *šaurš*
 tighten (trans.) *savilkt*
 tightly *ciet, cieši*; tightly twisted
grods
 tile *dakstiņš*
 till *kopt*
 time *laiks*; [= occasion] *reize*; at
 any time *kaut kad*; at times *pa*
reizei, reizēm; each time, every time
katrreiz; for a long time [now]
(jau) ilgi, (jau) sen; a long time
 ago [now] *(jau) sen*; at the one
 time *uz reizi*; at other times
citreiz; at the present time *pašlaik*;
 at the same time [as] *reizē (ar +*
acc.); for a second time *otrrreiz*;
 at some time *kaut kad*; spare time
vaja; that time *toreiz*; this time
šoreiz; three times *trīskārt*; for
 the time being *pagaidām*; once
 upon a time *reiz*; times of old
senatne; have time to *paspēt*; kill,
 waste time *kavēt laiku*; [by clock]
 at what time? *cikos?*; at about
 what time? *ap cikiem?*; what time
 is it? *cik pulksten(i)s?*; until what
 time *līdz cikiem?*
- time-table: train time-table *vilcienu*
saraksts
 timid *kaurīgs, bikls, kautrs*
 timidity *kaurība*
 timorous *baillīgs*
 tinkle (intrans.) *šķindēt*
 tinned: tinned food(s) *konservi* (pl.)
 tinplate *skārds*
 tinsel *vizulis*
 tiny *slks*
 tip [= extremity] *galotne*;
 [= gratuity] *dzeramnauda*

- turn out (trans.) *izraidīt*; (intrans.) *iznākt*; turn to (intrans.) *pievērsties*; turn to stone (intrans.) *pārakmeņoties*; turn up (intrans.) *ierasties, uznākt*; [= become] turn sour (intrans.) *rūgt*
 twelfth *divpadsmitais*
 twelve *divpadsmit*
 twentieth *divdesmitais*
 twenty *divdesmit*
 twice *divkārt*
 twig *zars*
 twilight *krēsla, krēslība*
 twine (trans.): twine around *aptīt*
 twinkle *mirgot, mirdzēt*
 twist (*ap-*)*vīt, pīt, griezt*; twist together *savīt*
 twisted: tightly twisted *grods*
 two *divi*; *divēji*; two hundred *divsimt, divi simti*; two hundredth *divsimtais, divi simtais*
 twofold *divkārtš*
 typical *tipisks*
- umbilical: umbilical cord *nabas saite*
 umbrella *lietus sargs*
 unanimous *vienbalsīgs*
 unbend (trans.) *atliekt*
 uncle *krusttēvs*
 unclean *netīrs*
 uncomfortable *neērts*
 uncommonly (+ adj. or adv.) *reti*
 uncontrolled [child, etc.] *izlaidies*
 uncover *atsegt*
 under (prep.) *zem* + gen.; *apakš* + gen.
 underfoot: crush underfoot *samīt*
 undergo *izbaudīt*
 underling *apakšnieks*
 underneath (prep.): *see* under; (adv.) *apakšā*
- understand *saprast, aptvert*; understand one another *saprasties*
 undone: come undone (*at-*)*rist, norist*
 undoubtedly *neapšaubāmi*
 unexpected *nejaušs*
 unfamiliar *svešs*
 unfortunate *nelaimīgs; nabaga* (invar.)
 unfortunately *nelaimīgā kārtā*
 unfriendly *nelaipns*
 unhappy *nelaimīgs*
 unharness *atjūgt*
 uniform (adj.) *vienāds*
 unimportant *niecīgs*
 unique *vienreizējs*
 unit [military] *komanda*
 unite (trans.) *savienot*; (intrans.) *savienoties*; to be united *savienoties*
 universe *visums*
 university *universitāte, augstskola*
 unkind *nelaipns*
 unlawful *pretlikumīgs*
 unlimited *bezgalīgs*
 unlock (trans.) *atslēgt*
 unpack (trans.) *izkravāt*
 unplait *atpīt*
 unpleasant *nelāga* (invar. adj.)
 unproductive *sterils*
 unrest *nemiers*
 unroll (trans.) *atīt*
 unspeakably *bezgalīgi*
 untied: come untied (*at-*)*rist, norist*
 until (prep.) *līdz* + dat.; until when, until what time? *līdz cikiem?* (conj.) *kamēr, līdz*
 untwine *atpīt*
 unusual *īpatns*
 unusually (+ adj. or adv.) *reti*
 unwrap *atīt*

- up: up to (prep.) *klāt* (postp. + dat.)
 uphill (adv.) *kalnup*
 upper (adj.) *augšējs*
 upright (adv.) *stāvu*
 uproot *izraut*
 upset [= annoyed]: to be upset *sašust; ēsties*; I am upset *man ēdas*
 upstream: upstream from *augšpus* (prep. + gen.)
 upwards (adv.) *augšup*
 urge: urge on *steidzināt; mudināt, paskubināt*
 urgent *steidzams*
 USA *ASV*
 use: to be of use *noderēt*; what's the use of that? *ko tas līdz?*
 use *lietot, lietāt*; use lipstick *krāsot lūpas*
 useful *derīgs*; to be useful *derēt*
 USSR *PSRS*
 usual *parasts, pierasts*
 usually *parasti; allaž, allažin*
 utmost (adj.) *galējs*
- vacation *brīvlaiks*
 vagrant *klaidonis*
 vain (adj.) *veltīgs*; in vain (adv.) *velti*
 valediction *ardievas* (pl.)
 valid *derīgs*
 valley *ieleja, leja*
 valuable *vērtīgs*
 value *vērtība*
 vanish (*iz-*)*gaist, izzust*
 vaporous *tvaikains*
 vapour *suta*
 variable *mainīgs*
 various *dažāds*
 vary (intrans.) *mainīties*
- vegetables *dārzāji* (pl.); root vegetables *saknes* (pl.); vegetable plot *dobe*
 vehicle: vehicle entrance *iebrauktuve*
 veil *šķidrauts*
 veil *aizklāt*
 vein *dzīsla*
 velvet *samts*
 venerate *cieņīt*
 Venice *Venēcija*
 verandah *veranda*
 verb *darbības vārds*
 verdict *lēmums*
 verdure *zaļums*
 verse *pants*
 verst *verste, versts* (f.); square verst *kvadrātversts* (f.)
 very (adv.) *ļoti, tīri, gaužām, gauži*;
 very nearly: we very nearly... *daudz netrūka, ka mēs..., cik tur trūka, ka mēs...; very well! (interj.) labi!*
 vessel *trauks*
 vestibule *vestibils*
 vexed *pikts*
 vicinity *apkārtnē*
 victory *uzvara*; win a victory *uzvarēt*
 Vidzeme *Vidzeme*; a native of Vidzeme *vidzemnieks*
 view *skats*
 village *sādža, ciems*
 villager *sādžinieks*
 villainous *nelietīgs*
 villainy *negantība*
 vinegar *etiķis*
 violet: dame's violet *naktsvijole*
 violin *vijole*
 violinist *vijolnieks*
 virginity *jaunavība*
 virtue *tikums*
 virtuoso (adj.) *virtuozs*

virtuous *tikumīgs*
 vision *redzējums*
 visit: on a visit (adv.) *ciemos*; to be on a visit *sērst*
 visit (trans.) *apciemot*; *apmeklēt*
 visiting: out visiting (adv.) *ciemos*
 visitor *ciemiņš*
 vocative: vocative case *vokātīvs*
 vodka (often) *šņabis*
 voice *balss* (f.); active voice (gram.) *darāmā kārtā*; passive voice (gram.) *ciešamā kārtā*; at the top of one's voice *pilnā kaklā, no pilnas krūts*; give voice to *izrunāt*
 vomit *vemt*
 vote *balss* (f.)
 vowel *patskanis*

wade *brist*; wade in *iebrist*
 wages *alga*
 wagtail *cielava*
 waist *viducis*; waistcoat *veste*
 wait (*pa-*)*gaidīt*; wait for (*pa-*)*gaidīt, sagaidīt*; wait on *apkalpot, aptecēt*; hang around waiting (*no-*)*nīkt*; wait! (interj.) *pag!, paga!*
 waiter *viesmīlis*
 wake (trans.) (*uz-*)*modināt*; (intrans.) (*pa-*)*mosties, atmosties*
 wakefulness *nomods*
 Wales *Velsa*
 walk *gājiens*; go for a walk *pastaigāties*
 walk *iet*; *staigāt*; *soļot*; walk a little *paiet, pastaigāt*; walk along *staigāt pa* + acc.; walk around *apstaigāt*; go for a walk *pastaigāties*; get tired walking *nostaigāties*
 walker *gājējs*
 wall *siena*; *mūris*; *valnis*

wan *bāls*
 wander (*aiz-*)*kļīst, maldīties*; wander up to *piekļīst*
 wanderer *gājējs*; *ceļnieks* (occ. *ceļnieks*)
 wane (*no-*)*dilt*
 want *gribēt*; *gribēties*; I want *es gribu, man gribas*
 war *karš*; holy war *krusta karš, krustkarš*; world war *pasauls karš*
 ward: ward off *nogriezt*
 warehouse *noliktava*
 warm (adj.) *silts*; grow warm (*sa-*)*silt, (sa-)sildīties, iesilt*; warm-hearted *sirsniņš*
 warm (trans.) (*sa-*)*sildīt*; warm oneself (*sa-*)*sildīties*; warm up (intrans.) (*sa-*)*silt, (sa-)sildīties, iesilt*
 warmth *siltums*
 warn *brīdināt*; warn of *brīdināt no* + gen.
 warning *brīdinājums*
 warrior *kareivis*
 wary *piesardzīgs*
 wash (trans.) [= clean] *mazgāt*; wash oneself *mazgāties*; wash one's face *mazgāt muti*; [= lap] *skalot*; (intrans.) [= clean] *mazgāties*; wash away (trans.) *aizskalot, izskalot*; wash off (trans.) *noskalot*; wash out (trans.) *izmazgāt*; wash over (trans.) *nomazgāt*
 washing *veļa*
 wasp *lapsene*
 waste (trans.) (*iz-*)*šķīst*; waste time *kavēt laiku*; waste away (intrans.) (*no-*)*vārgt*
 watch *pulkstenis*; wrist-watch *rokas pulkstenis*

watch *vērot*
 watchful *modrs*
 watchman *sargs*
 water *ūdens* (gen. *-ns*); salt water *sāls ūdens*; water-colours *ūdēns krāsas* (pl.); water-nymph *nāra*; seductive water-nymph *sirēna, sirēne*
 watery *ūdeņains*
 wave *vilnis, banga*; heat wave *karstuma vilnis*
 wave (*pa-*)*māt*
 waving (noun) *mājiens*
 wax *vasks, vaski* (pl.)
 way *ceļš*; give way (intrans.) *gāzties*; lose one's way *nomaldīties*; on the way [to] *ceļā* (*uz* + acc.); a fair way away, off *patālu*; passage-way *caurbrauktuve*; way out *izeja*; [= manner] in both ways *abējādi*
 we (pron.) *mēs*
 weak *vājš*; *kusls*; grow weak (*no-*)*gurt*
 weaken (trans.) *vājināt*; (intrans.) (*no-*)*gurt*
 weakling *vājiniņš, nīkulis*
 weakness *vājība*
 wealth *bagātība*
 wealthy *bagāts, naudīgs*
 weapon *ierocis*
 wear (trans.) *valkāt*; wear a little *pavalkāt*; wear out (trans.) *nolietot, apvazāt, novalkāt*; (intrans.) (*no-*)*dilt*
 weariness *gurdenums, gurdums*
 weary *gurdens, gurdš*; grow weary *piekust*
 weather *laiks*; weather-beaten *appūsts*
 weave *aust*; (*ap-*)*vlīt*; weave in *ieaust*; weave on to *pieaust*

web: spider's web *tīmeklis*
 wedding *kāzas* (pl.); wedding anniversary *kāzu diena*; silver wedding anniversary *sudraba kāzas* (pl.)
 Wednesday *trešdiena*; on Wednesday *trešdien*
 weeds *nezāles* (pl.)
 week *nedēļa*; this week *šonedēļ*
 weep *raudāt*; weeping-willow *sēru vītols*
 weigh *svērt*
 weight *smagums, svars*; lose weight *nokristies (svārā)*
 well (noun) *aka*
 well (adj.) *vesels*; get well *atspirgt*
 well (adv.) *labi*; jolly well *gan jau*; very well! (interj.) *labi!*; well-behaved *rātns*; well-built [of people] *stalts*; well then! (interj.) *nujā!*
 Welsh *Velsas, velsiešu* (invar. adj.)
 Welshman *velsietis*, (f.) *-e*
 west (noun) *rietumi* (pl.); (adj.) *rietumu* (invar.)
 western *rietumu* (invar.)
 Westminster *Vestminstera*
 wet *slapjš*
 wet (*sa-*)*slapināt*
 whack *iezvelt* + dat.
 what (adj.) *kāds*; what a...! *kas par...!*; what kind of? *kāds?*; what sort of...? *kas par...?*; what time is it? *cik pulksten(i)s?*; at what time? *cikos?*; at about what time? *ap cikiem?*; until what time? *līdz cikiem?*; (pron.) *kas*; what on earth? *kas gan?*
 whatever *kas gan*; whatever are you thinking of? *uz ko tev nesas prāts?*
 wheat *kveši* (pl.)
 wheedle *labināt*

wheel *rats, ritenis*; spinning-wheel *ratiņš*
 wheeze *elst*
 when (adv.) *kad*; since when? *kopš kura laika?*; (conj.) *kad*
 where (adv.) *kur*; (after prep.) **kuriene*; where on earth *kur gan*; where to *kurp(u)*; (conj.) *kur*
 whet (*uz-*)*trīt*
 whether (conj.) *vai*
 whetstone *tecila*
 which (adj.) *kāds, kurš*; (rel. pron.) *kas, kurš*
 while: a while ago *pirmīt*
 while (conj.) *kamēr*
 while: while away [of time] *pavadīt, Isināt, palaist*
 whim *untums, iedoma*
 whip *pātaga*
 whip *pērt, šautīt*; whip up to a foam *sakult putās*
 whipping *pēriens, žagari* (pl.)
 whirl *spindzēt*
 whirlpool *atvars*
 whirlwind *viesulis*
 whisky *viskijs*
 whisper: answer in a whisper *atčukstēt*
 whisper *čukstēt*; whisper back *atčukstēt*
 whistle *svilpe, svilpiens*; give a whistle *svilpt*
 whistle *svilpot, svilpt*
 white *balts*
 whiteness *baltums*
 whitewash *kaļķis, kaļķi* (pl.)
 whither *kurp(u)*
 Whitsun *Vasaras svētki* (pl.)
 whiz *žvingstēt*
 who (int. & rel. pron.) *kas, kurš*; who on earth? *kas gan?*; whom on earth? *ko gan?*

whole *viss; vesels*
 wholesaler *lieltirgotājs*
 whooping: whooping-cough *garais klepus*
 why *kāpēc, kādēļ, kālab, priekš kā*, (occ. *kam*); why not? *kāpēc ne?*
 wicked *negants*
 wickedness *negantība*
 wide *plats; plašs*; the wide world *plašā pasaule*
 widen (intrans.) *plesties*
 widow *atraitne*
 widower *atraitnis*
 width *platums*
 wife *sieva, kundze, laulātā draudzene*; take a wife *apsievoties*
 wild [= uncontrolled] *izlaidies*; [= in natural state] wild duck *meža pīle*; wild-flower *lauku puķe, meža puķe*; wild pig *meža cūka*; wild rose *meža roze*
 wilful *stūrgalviņš*
 will: self-will *patvaļa*
 willingly *labprāt*
 willow *vītols*; weeping-willow *sēru vītols*
 wilt (*no-*)*vīst*
 win: win a victory *uzvarēt*; win back *atgūt*
 wind *vējš*; north wind *ziemeļu vējš, ziemelis*; to the [four] winds *pa (gaisu) gaisiem*; area protected from wind *aizvējš*
 wind (trans.) (*sa-*)*tīt*, (*ap-*)*vīt*; [of watch, clock, etc.] *uzvilkt*
 windbag *auša* (m. or f.)
 winding *līkumains, līkumots, līcots*
 window *logs*; display-window, shop-window *skatlogs*; ticket-window *kase*; window-pane *logu stikls, rūs* (f.); window-sill *bēgelis* (occ. *bēģele*)
 windy *vējains*

wine *vīns*; a glass of wine *glāze vīna*; a wineglass *vīna glāze*
 wing *spārns*
 winged *spārnots*
 winter *ziema*; this winter *šoziem*
 winter *pārziemot*
 wipe *slaucīt*; wipe oneself (*no-*)*slaucīties*; wipe away *noraust*; wipe off *noslaucīt*; wipe out *izslaucīt*
 wireless *radio*, (m. indec.) *radiofons*
 wisdom *gudrība, padoms*
 wise *gudrs*; wise-acre *gudrinieks*
 wish *novēlējums*; wishes *novēlējumi* (pl.)
 wish [= desire] *gribēt, vēlēties*; wish [somebody something] (*no-*)*vēlēt*
 witch *ragana; burve*
 with *ar* (prep. + acc.); along with *līdz(i)* (postp. + dat.)
 wither (intrans.) (*sa-*)*kalst*, (*no-*)*vīst*
 without (prep.) *bez* + gen.
 witness *liecinieks*; bear witness *liecināt*
 witty *asprātīgs*
 wizard *burvis*
 woeful *žēls*
 wolf *vilkis*
 woman *sieviete*; beggar-woman *ubadze*
 wonder *brīnums*
 wondrous *brīnišķīgs, brīnišķs*
 wont: to be wont *mēgt*
 wood [material] *koks*; [= forest] *mežs*; wood-cutter *mežnieks*
 wood (adj.) *koka* (invar.)
 wooded *mežains*
 wooden *koka* (invar.)
 woodman *mežnieks*
 woodpecker *dzenis*

wool *vilna*; woollen cloth *vadmala*
 woollen *vilnas* (invar.)
 word *vārds*; give one's word *solīties*; play on words *vārdu spēle*; parting words *ardievas* (pl.)
 work *darbs*; work force *darba spēks*; household work force *saime*; work-table *darba galds*; works [literary, etc.] *raksti* (pl.)
 work *strādāt*; [a given time] *nostrādāt*; [of materials] *apstrādāt*; work as *strādāt par* + acc.; work at a job *strādāt darbu*; grow tired working *nostrādāties*; make [somebody] work *strādīnāt*; work out *izrēķināt; izdomāt*
 worker *strādnieks*; farm-worker *kalps*; tireless worker *darba rūķis*
 working: working day *darbdiena*; working hours *darba stundas* (pl.)
 workshop *darbnīca*
 world *pasaule*; the wide world *plašā pasaule*; world war *pasaules karš*
 worm *tārps*
 worry *rūpes* (pl.), *rūpesti* (pl.)
 worry (trans.) *mocīt*
 worship *pielūgt*
 worth *vērtība*; run for all one is worth *skriet cik vien jauda*
 would: would that...! *kaut...!*
 wound *brūce*
 wound *ievainot*
 wrap *sagša*
 wrap: wrap in *ietīt*; wrap up *ietīt, satīt*
 wreath *apvīt*
 wrestle *lauzties*
 wriggle *locīties*
 wrinkle *grumba, rievā*; wrinkle after wrinkle *grumbu pa grumbiņai*

wrinkled <i>rievains</i>	yell <i>kaukt</i>
wristwatch <i>rokas pulkstenis</i>	yellow <i>dzeltens</i> ; yellow-leaved <i>dzeltlapains</i>
write <i>rakstīt</i> ; write poetry <i>dzejot</i> ;	yes <i>jā</i>
write away to <i>airrakstīt</i> ; write down <i>uzrakstīt</i> ; write off to <i>airrakstīt</i> ;	yesterday <i>vakar</i> ; yesterday evening <i>vakarvakarā</i> ; the day before yesterday <i>aizvakar</i> ; yesterday's, of yesterday <i>vakarējs</i> (adj.)
write out <i>izrakstīt</i> , <i>uzrakstīt</i> ;	yet (adv.) <i>tomēr</i> ; yet... not (neg. conj.) <i>neba</i>
write to <i>atrakstīt</i> ; write to one another <i>sarakstīties</i>	yield (intrans.) <i>padoties</i> , <i>piekāpties</i>
writer <i>rakstnieks</i>	yoke <i>nēši</i> (pl.), <i>nēšas</i> (pl.)
writing: handwriting <i>rokraksts</i> ;	you (pron.) <i>tu</i> ; <i>jūs</i>
make an error in writing <i>pārrakstīties</i>	young <i>jauns</i> ; young lady <i>jaunkundze</i> ; young man [in folk- songs, etc.] <i>tautu dēls</i>
written: written exercise <i>uzdevums</i>	your (poss. adj.) <i>tavs</i> ; <i>jūsu</i> (invar.)
wrong <i>aplams</i> ; <i>maldu</i> (invar.); go wrong <i>maldīties</i> ; I am wrong <i>man nav taisnības</i>	yours (poss. pron.) <i>tavējs</i> ; <i>jūsējs</i>
wrongly <i>aplam</i>	youth [= later childhood] <i>jaunība</i> ; [= young man] <i>jauneklis</i>
yard <i>sēta</i> , <i>pagalms</i>	zealous: zealous man <i>censonis</i>
yarn [woollen] <i>dzija</i>	Zemgale <i>Zemgale</i> ; a native of Zemgale <i>zemgaliētis</i> , (f.) <i>-e</i> ; of Zemgale (adj.) <i>zemgaliešu</i> (invar.)
year <i>gads</i> ; year by year <i>gadu no gada</i> ; for years <i>gadiem</i> ; last year <i>pērn</i> ; light-year <i>gaismas gads</i> ; this year <i>šogad</i>	zoo <i>zvēru dārzs</i>
yearn <i>ilgoties</i>	
yearning <i>ilgas</i> (pl.), <i>ilgojumies</i> (refl.)	

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

The major work in each field is listed first; the others appear in alphabetical order of authors' names.

DICTIONARIES

- Mühlenbach, K., *Latviešu valodas vārdnīca* (ed. J. Endzelīns), 4 vols. (Riga, 1923-32, repr. Chicago, 1953-55). Together with supplement: Endzelīns, J., and Hauzenberga, E., *Papildinājumi un labojumi K. Mūlenbacha Latviešu valodas vārdnīcai*, 2 vols. (Riga, 1934-45, repr. Chicago, 1956).
- Bisenieks, V., and Niselovičs, I., (eds) *Latviešu-vācu vārdnīca*, sastādījis autoru kolektīvs (Riga, 1963).
- Cepurniece, S., Gūtmanis, A., Lukstiņš, G., Strazdiņa, V., Vīlipa, R., and Feldhūns, A., *Svešvārdu vārdnīca* (Riga, 1969).
- Dravnieks, J., *Angliski-latviska vārdnīca* (USA, undated).
- Latviešu pareizrakstības vārdnīca* (USA, 1956).
- Ozoliņš, E., *Svešvārdu vārdnīca* (ed. J. Endzelīns). Pārlabots un papildināts 3. izdevums (Germany, 1958).
- Strādiņa, M. (ed.), *Angļu-latviešu vārdnīca*, sastādījis autoru kolektīvs (Riga, 1957).
- Turkina, E., *Latviski-angliska vārdnīca* (Denmark, 1948).
- Turkina, E., *Latviešu-angļu vārdnīca* (ed. M. Andersone). Trešais, atkārtotais izdevums (Riga, 1963).
- Turkina, E., *Latviešu-angļu vārdnīca* (Copenhagen, 1964).
- Turkina, E., *Angliski-latviska vārdnīca* (Copenhagen, undated).

GRAMMARS

- Sokols, E., et al. (eds.), *Mūsdienu latviešu literārās valodas gramatika* I and II (Riga, 1959, 1962).
- Barret, C., and Blese, E., *Grammaire pratique de la langue latvienne* (Riga, 1928).
- Bērziņa-Baltiņa, V., *Latviešu valodas gramatika*, 5th ed. (USA, 1965).
- Brentano, H., *Lehrbuch der Lettischen Sprache* (Vienna and Leipzig, undated).

- Budīņa-Lazdiņa, T., (*Teach Yourself*) *Latvian* (London, 1966).
 Budīņa-Lazdiņa, T., *Lehrbuch der Lettischen Sprache* (Sweden, 1968).
 Drawneek, J., *Leicht Lettisch* (Riga, 1921).
 Endzelin, J., *Lettische Grammatik* (Riga, 1922).
 Endzelin, J., *Lettisches Lesebuch. Grammatische und metrische Vorbemerkungen, Texte und Glossar* (Heidelberg, 1922).
 Endzelīns, J., *Latviešu valodas gramatika* (Riga, 1951).
 Lautenbach, J., *Kleine lettische Sprachlehre* (Riga, undated).
 Paegle, L., *Samoučitel' latyšskogo jazyka* (Riga, 1925).
 Prince, J. D., *Practical grammar of the Lettish Language* (London, 1925).
 Veksler, B., et al., *Učebnik latyšskogo jazyka dlja vzroslyx I* (2nd ed.) and II (Riga, 1958, 1959).

PHONETICS

- Laua, A., *Latviešu literārās valodas fonētika. Otrs papildināts izdevums* (Riga, 1969).

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers refer to Lessons

- Abbreviated ordinals 75
 Absolute construction 167
 Accusative
 of duration of time 38, 69
 of exclamation 209
 of extent of distance 69
 of point of time 60
 of pronouns with debitive 87
 after understood verb 17
 Address, forms of 76
 Adjectival
 infinitive (English) 57
 prefix *pa-* 159
 suffixes: *-ains* 232, *-isks* 233, *-īgs* 234
 use of past participle 203
 Adjectives
 after *something* 60
 agreement with debitive of *būt* 115
 comparative degree 49, 175
 of neuter form 80
 definite declension 26-31
 of adjectives in *-ējs* 122
 after demonstratives 65, 72
 after possessive adjectives 31
 with proper nouns 31
 in vocative 31, 100
 shortening of endings 122
 diminutive forms 206
 indefinite declension:
 of adjectives in *-s* 14
 of adjectives in *-š* 17
 in accusative of exclamation 209
 interrogative 43
 invariable 66, 106
 modified by adverbs 33
 modified by *too* 123
 negation of 46
 neuter forms 39
 of number:
 in *-ējās* 226
 in *-kārās* 226
 possessive 13
 with following adjective 31
 indeclinable 13
 with *pats* 94
 reflexive 13
 replaced by dative of personal pronoun 147
 superlative degree 52
 of neuter form 81
 Adverbial
 form of days of the week 44
 nouns of place 129
 Adverbs
 cognate 243
 diminutive forms 206
 in *-am*, *-ām* 105
 in *-reiz* 93
 in *-up* 96
 of manner 39
 comparative degree 80, 175
 superlative degree 81
 modified by *too* 123
 modifying adjectives or adverbs 33
 negative
 with negative verb 19
 of number:
 in *-atā* 242
 in *-ējādi* 226
 in *-kārt*:
 cardinal 226
 ordinal 242
 position of 3
 of quantity with genitive 23
 conflicting case requirements 64
 Age, expressions of 56
 Agent of passives 188
 Agreement
 of adjectives:
 with debitive of *būt* 115
 of past participle:
 in debitive perfect tenses 101
 in perfect tenses of possessive expressions 101
 Analogical declension of invariable numbers 44
 Approximate numbers 64
ar, omission of 152
 Articles, lack of 1
 Aspect in verbs 51, 136-138
aut, conjugation of 162

- Avoidance
of double subjects 35
of passive 189
- biedrs*, declension of 192
brist, conjugation of 190
būt, conjugation of 1, 7, 11, 34, 36, 40, 87, 227
- Cardinal numerals 35, 37, 48, 56, 63, 91
cik, analogical declension of 44
Cognate adverbs 243
Comparative degree
of adjectives 49, 175
neuter form 80
of adverbs 80, 175
- Comparisons
of equality 50
of inequality 50, 80
- Conditional 40
debitive mood 90
perfect tense 104
perfect tense, debitive 104
of reflexive verbs 198
- Conflicting case requirements 64
Conjugation: see Long, Mixed, Short
Conjunctive mood 227-231
Continuous present (English) 5
Copula, omission of 151
Correlatives 175
Countries 158
inhabitants of 158
- Dative
absolute 167
with debitive 87
with passive infinitive 188
of personal pronouns 6
in place of possessive adjective 147
plural with prepositions 16
of possession 4
- Days of the week 44
adverbial forms of 44
- Debitive
accusative of pronouns as 'logical' objects 87
of *būt*:
with following adjective 115
with following noun 168
dative of 'logical' subject 87
forms 87-90, 101-104, 201, 230
nominative of 'logical' object 87
omission of *ir* 87
participle agreement in perfect tenses 101
- Definite declension of adjectives 26-31
after demonstratives 65, 72
in *-ējs* 122
shortening of endings 122
- Demonstratives 65, 72
with definite adjective 65, 72
- Depalatalization
in declension of past participle 202
in diminutives of masculine nouns in *-s* 82
in present tense of Mixed conjugation verbs 45
in Short conjugation verbs 193
- Diminutive forms
of adjectives 206
of adverbs 206
of nouns 82-83, 99
irregular from masculine nouns in *-s* 99
of *suns* 99
- Distance expressions with accusative 69
Distributive *pa* 98
dot, conjugation of 12, 34, 36, 40
Double subjects, avoidance of 35
Duration of time 38
- Equality, comparisons of 50
Exclamation, accusative of 209
- Factitive verbs in *-ināt* 241
- Feminine nouns
in *-a* 9
diminutives 82
in *-e* 24
diminutives 83
palatalization in genitive plural 24
lack of 84
in *-s* 79
diminutives 99
palatalization in genitive plural 79
lack of 84-85
- Forms of address 76
- Future tense 34
conjunctive mood 228
debitive mood 89
imperative 210
of verbs in *-st*, *-zt* 119, 193
perfect:
conjunctive 229
debitive 103
indicative 103
of reflexive verbs 197
- Genitive
after adverbs of quantity 10, 23
after numerals 56, 63
as invariable adjective 66
with negative of *būt* 8
in negative possessive expressions 8
object of negative verb 66

- partitive 4, 208
possessive 2
- i* used or not used in second person singular,
present and imperative 12, 193
- iet*, conjugation of 12, 34, 36, 40
- Imperative mood 36
with *-dams* participle 156
future tense 210
of reflexive verbs 199
- Imperfect: see also Long, Mixed, Short
debitive mood 88
of reflexive verbs 196
- Impersonal passive 244
- Indeclinable
adjectives 66, 106
nouns 207
numerals 242
analogical declension of 44
possessive adjectives 13
- Indefinite
adjectives 14, 17
in accusative of exclamation 209
pronouns 130
subjects 22
- Inequality, comparisons of 50, 80
- Infinitives
adjectival (English) 57
in *-st*, *-zt*
future tense 119, 193
participle in *-dams* 193
participle in *-ošs* 163, 193
passive 188
with dative 188
use of 55
- Inhabitants of countries 158
- Interjections 222
- Interrogative
adjectives 43
with *lai* 146
with *vai* 4
- Invariable: see Indeclinable
- Inversion of subject and verb 1
ir, omission of 87, 151
- Irregular nouns:
diminutive forms of masculine nouns
in *-s* 99
feminine in *-e* 84
feminine in *-s* 84-85
masculine in *-is* 142
suns 70
diminutive form 99
- ka*, non-omission of 7
kas, declension of 60
- Languages 158
list, conjugation of 190
- Long conjugation verbs:
conditional 40
future 34
imperative 36
imperfect 20, 21, 42, 54
present 20, 21, 42, 54
summary 22, 59, 108
lūzt, conjugation of 174
- laudis*, declension of 79
- Masculine nouns:
in *-a* 97
in *-e* 97
in *-is* 47
diminutives 83
irregular 142
palatalization in 47
in *-ns* 68
diminutives 99
in *-s* 1-3
diminutives 82
irregular 99
in *-š* 17
diminutives 82
in *-us* 62
diminutives 99
- mēness*, declension of 192
- Mixed conjugation verbs:
conditional 40
future 34
imperative 36
imperfect 10, 11, 18, 58
present 5, 11, 18, 58
depalatalization in 45
palatalization in 32
- Months 92
- Names 76
- Negation
of adjectives 46
of possessive expressions 8
of verbs 7
- Negative
adverbs
with negative verb 19
interrogative 7
pronouns
genitive after negative verb 60
with negative verb 43
separation of 43
verbs 7
with genitive object 66
with negative adverb 19

- with negative pronoun 43
with *vairs* 74
neither...nor 74
- Neuter adjectives 39
comparative degree 80
superlative degree 81
- Nominal suffixes:
-ava 240, *-eklis*, *-ēklis* 239, *-iba* 238, *-iens* 236, *-nieks*, *-niece* 237, *-ums* 235, *-uve* 240
- Nominative:
with debitive 87
in possessive expressions 4
of subject 2
- Nouns
adverbial of place 129
with debitive of *būt* 168
feminine
in *-a* 8
diminutive forms 82
in *-e* 24
diminutive forms 83
palatalization in genitive plural 24
lack of 84
in *-s* 79
diminutive forms 99
palatalization in genitive plural 79
lack of 84–85
indeclinable 207
masculine
in *-a* 97
in *-e* 97
in *-is* 47
diminutive forms 83
irregular 142
palatalization in 47
in *-ns* 68
diminutive forms 99
in *-s* 1–3
diminutives 82
irregular 99
in *-š* 17
diminutive forms 82
in *-us* 62
diminutive forms 99
proper, with adjective 31
reflexive 224–225
summary of declensions 85
verbal 223–224
- Number
adjectives 226
adverbs 226, 242
approximations 64
- Numerals
cardinal 35, 37, 48, 56, 63, 91
in *-ēji* 226
- fractions 242
with genitive 56, 63
conflicting case requirements 64
indeclinable 242
analogically declined 44
ordinal 73, 75, 77, 78, 91
abbreviated 75
- Omission
of *ar* 152
of *ir* 87, 151
- Ordinal
adverbs 242
numerals 73, 75, 77, 78, 91
abbreviated 75
- pa* distributive 98
- Palatalization
in declension of masculine nouns in *-is* 47
lack of 142
in declension of masculine nouns in *-ns* 68
in diminutives of feminine nouns in *-a* 82
in diminutives of masculine nouns in *-s* 82
in genitive plural of feminine nouns in *-e* 24
lack of 84
in genitive plural of feminine nouns in *-s* 79
lack of 84–85
in past participle 193
in present tense of Mixed conjugation verbs 32
in Short conjugation verbs 193
- Participial phrases 202
- Participles
past active 101
agreement in perfect tenses of debitive mood 101
agreement in perfect tenses of possessive expressions 101
declension 202
depalatalization in 202
palatalization in 193
reflexive 200, 202
used adjectivally 203
past passive 187
present active in *-dams* 155
with imperative 156
from infinitives in *-st* 193
reflexive 204
present active in *-ošs* 163
from some infinitives in *-st*, *-zt* 163, 165
reflexive 204
shortening of definite forms 163
present active in *-ot* 164
after verbs of perception 183
in dative absolute 167
reflexive 204

- present passive in *-ams*, *-āms* 179–183
short form after verbs of perception 95, 183
shortening of definite forms 179
syntax 209
- Partitive genitive 4, 208
- Passive
agent of 188
conjunctive 231
impersonal 244
infinitives 188
with dative 188
participles:
past 187
present 179–183
short form after verbs of perception 95
voice of verbs 188
avoidance of 189
- Past: see Participles, Perfect tenses
- pats*
declension 94
with possessive adjective 94
- Perfect tenses
conjunctive 229
debitive 101–104
indicative 101–104
of possessive expressions
agreement of participle 101
reflexive verbs 200
- Personal pronouns: see Pronouns
- Possessive
adjectives
declension 13
with definite adjective 31
indeclinable 13
with *pats* 94
reflexive 13
replaced by dative of personal pronoun 147
expressions 4, 8
agreement of participle in perfect tenses 101
with genitive 8
with nominative 4
genitive 2
pronouns 194
- Postpositions 61
- Prefixes
verbal: *aiz-* 211, *ap-* 212, *at-* 213, *ie-* 214, *iz-* 215, *no-* 216, *pa-* 217, *pār-* 218, *pie-* 219, *sa-* 220, *uz-* 221
- Prepositions with dative plural 16
- Present: see also Long, Mixed, Short, participles, reflexive
conjunctive 227
continuous (English) 5
- debitive 87
omission of *ir* 87
of *tecēt* 45
of *vajadzēt* 45
- Pronouns
negative
genitive after negative verb 60
separation of 43
subject of negative verb 43
personal
accusative with debitives 87
dative 6
replacing possessive adjective 147
declension 15
nominative 1
position of 15, 36
reflexive 15
possessive 194
relative 43
- Purpose clauses 55
- Relative pronouns 43
- Reflexive
nouns 224–225
personal pronoun 15
possessive adjective 13
verbs 195–202, 204
- sargāt*, conjugation of 107
- Separation of negative pronouns 43
- Sequence of tenses 34, 40, 82, 90, 103, 104
- Short conjugation
depalatalization in 193
future of verbs in *-st*, *-zt* 119
palatalization in 193
sub-types:
A–O–A 139–140
dental 131–135
I–E–I 143–145
J 148–150
J/V 160–162
nasal 153–154, 157
palatalized 110–114
palato-dental 165–166
semi-palatalized 117–121
simple palatalized 110–114
st 169–174, 177–178, 184–186
unchanged 124–128
summary 193
use of second person singular *-i* 193
- something* plus adjective 60
- Subject
avoidance of compound 35
inversion with verb 1
- Suffixes
adjectival: *-ains* 232, *-igs* 234, *-isks* 233

- nominal: *-ava* 240, *-eklis*, *-ēklis* 239, *-iba* 238, *-iens* 236, *-nieks*, *-niece* 237, *-ums* 235, *-uve* 240
- suns*
declension 70
diminutive 99
- Superlative
adjectives 52
neuter form 81
adverbs 81
Surnames 76
- šis*
declension 72
with definite adjective 72
- tas*
declension 65
with definite adjective 65
tecēt, present tense 45
Tenses, sequence of 34, 40, 82, 90, 103, 104
Time
of day 44, 86
expressions with accusative 38, 60, 69
too with adjective or adverb 123
- vairs* with negative verb 74
vajadzēt
case of complement 45
present tense 45
- Verbal
nouns in *-šana* 223
reflexive in *-šanās* 224
prefixes: *aiz-* 211, *ap-* 212, *at-* 213, *ie-* 214, *iz-* 215, *no-* 216, *pa-* 217, *pār-* 218, *pie-* 219, *sa-* 220, *uz-* 221
- Verbs: see also Long, Mixed, Short
factive in *-ināt* 241
with indefinite subject 22
inversion with subject 1
negative 7
with negative adverb 19
with negative pronoun 43
negative-interrogative 7
reflexive 195–202, 204
viesis, declension of 142
virt, conjugation of 191
- Vocative
of adjectives 31, 100
of nouns 100

INDEX OF AUTHORS AND READING PASSAGES

Numbers refer to lessons

- Ābele, Kārlis
Melnas zvaigznes 244
Mums, trimdīniekiem... 243
Siamietei 244
Vientulība 243
- Akuraters, Jānis
Kalpa zēna vasara 197, 198, 199
- Aspazija
Dzimtene 212
Ilgu zeme 202
Sidraba šķidrums 226
- Bārda, Fricis
Aka 204
Loreleja 207
Reiz 206
Riets 206
Vakars 204
- Blaumanis, Rūdolfs
Andriksons 224
Brenča pavasara vēstneši 214
Dzīvais ūdens 204
Genoveva 201
Nāves ēnā 215
Salna pavasari 202
Tālavas taurētājs 216
Ziema 225
- Brigadere, Anna
Dievs, daba, darbs 232, 233
Irstošas saistības 236
Meltene Mirdza 235
- Eglītis, Anšlavs
Bestsellers 241, 242
- Esenberģu Jānis
Iļģošanās 243
Mans kaps 244
- Jaunsudrabiņš, Jānis
Vasara 198, 200, 201, 203
- Miesnieks, Jonāss
Lielie Vēvēri 212
- Niedra, Aida
Puna Vipulis 211
- Plūdonis, Vilis
Atraitnes dēls 237, 238
Rekviēms 239
- Poruks, Jānis
Rudens dziesma 205
- Pumpurs, Andrejs
Lāčplēsis 222
- Rainis, Jānis
Celies! 218
Fabrikas meitenes dziesma 217
Gaismas pils 221
Kad nakts 220
Kalnā kāpējs 213
Lauztās priedes 225
Pele un vērsis 220
Rasa un ogas 244
Rīta vēji 219
Senatne 215
- Rozītis, Pāvils
Nāves viņņi 206
- Saulietis, Augusts
Purvā 220
- Skalbe, Kārlis
Pasaka par vērdiņu 230, 231
Pasaka par zelta ābeli 213, 214
- Sprūdzis, Alberts
Koka sirds 210

Strēlerte, Veronika

Aplami sapņi 200

Bikstu nabagmāja 210

Bridinājums 199

Londonas autobusā 207

Mirējs 208

Vakars 207

Vestminsteras abeja 208

Virza, Edvarts

Pulkveža atgriešanās 225

Straumēni 217, 218, 219

Zariņš, Guntis

Ābola vairs nav 227, 228, 229

Neskaties atpakaļ! 240

Zariņš, Kārlis

Melnsilu Pēteris 209